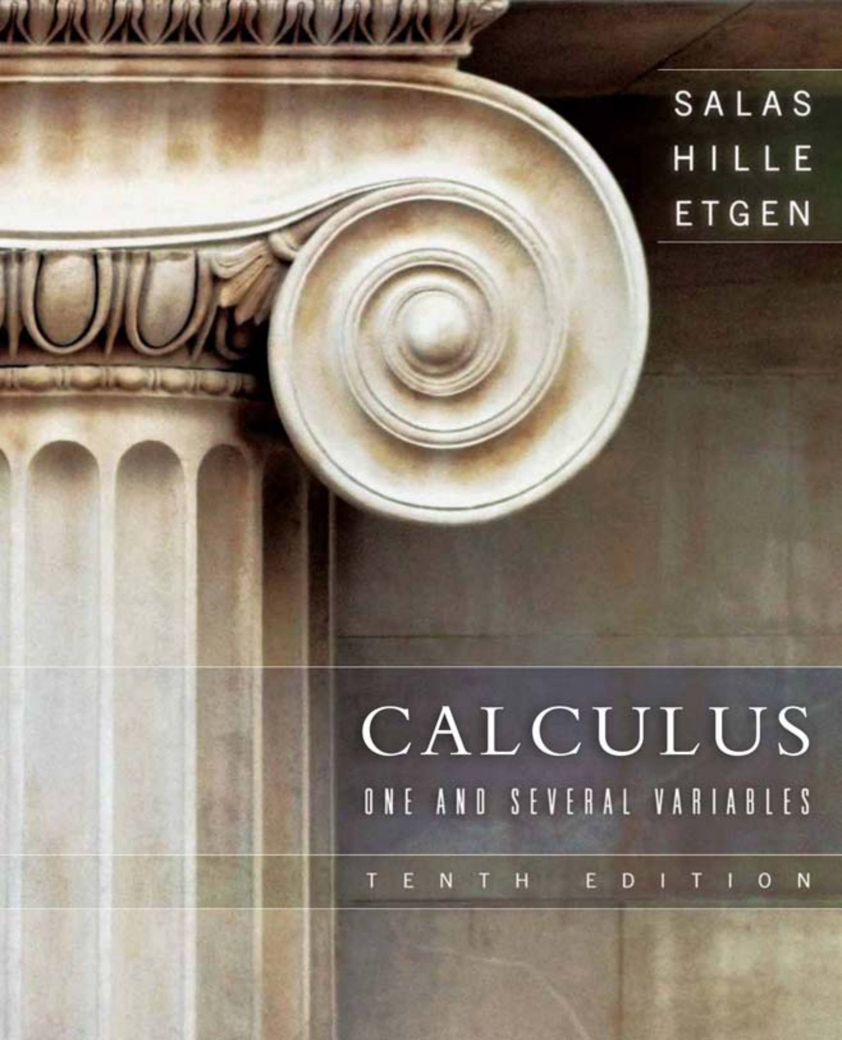


SALAS
HILLE
ETGEN

CALCULUS

ONE AND SEVERAL VARIABLES

TENTH EDITION

June 22

A Math Book

https://telegram.me/AMathbook

کانال تخصصی کتب ریاضی -آنالیز عددی ، آنالیز حقیقی،آنالیز تابعی، هندسه ، نظریه اعداد، ریاضیا...

https://telegram.me/AMathbook

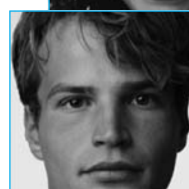
June 19

A Math Book

لینک کانال را در گروههایتان نشر دهید

✅ کانال کتب تخصصی ریاضی...

https://telegram.me/AMathbook



FOR INSTRUCTORS

Wiley**PLUS** is built around the activities you perform in your class each day. With Wiley**PLUS** you can:

Prepare & Present

Create outstanding class presentations using a wealth of resources such as PowerPoint™ slides, image galleries, interactive simulations, and more. You can even add materials you have created yourself.

Create Assignments

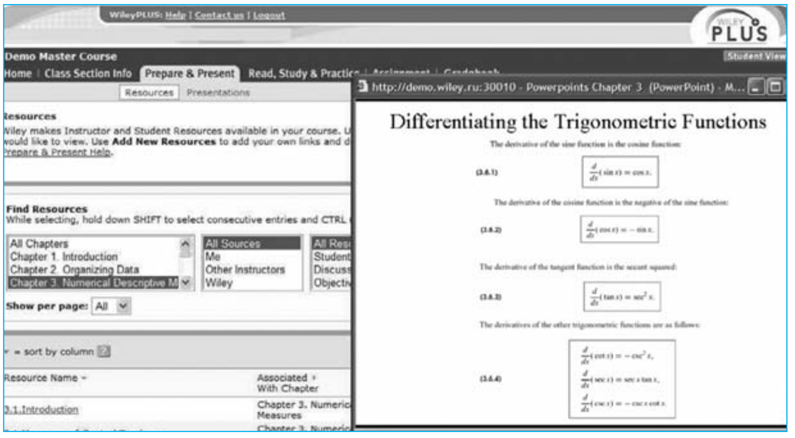
Automate the assigning and grading of homework or quizzes by using the provided question banks, or by writing your own.

Track Student Progress

Keep track of your students' progress and analyze individual and overall class results.

Now Available with WebCT and Blackboard!

> "It has been a great help, and I believe it has helped me to achieve a better grade."
>
> Michael Morris, *Columbia Basin College*



FOR STUDENTS

You have the potential to make a difference!

WileyPLUS is a powerful online system packed with features to help you make the most of your potential and get the best grade you can!

With Wiley**PLUS** you get:

- A complete online version of your text and other study resources.
- Problem-solving help, instant grading, and feedback on your homework and quizzes.
- The ability to track your progress and grades throughout the term.

For more information on what *WileyPLUS* can do to help you and your students reach their potential, please visit www.wiley.com/college/*wileyplus*.

76% of students surveyed said it made them better prepared for tests. *

WILEY PLUS

*Based on a survey of 972 student users of *WileyPLUS*

The Wiley Bicentennial–Knowledge for Generations

Each generation has its unique needs and aspirations. When Charles Wiley first opened his small printing shop in lower Manhattan in 1807, it was a generation of boundless potential searching for an identity. And we were there, helping to define a new American literary tradition. Over half a century later, in the midst of the Second Industrial Revolution, it was a generation focused on building the future. Once again, we were there, supplying the critical scientific, technical, and engineering knowledge that helped frame the world. Throughout the 20th Century, and into the new millennium, nations began to reach out beyond their own borders and a new international community was born. Wiley was there, expanding its operations around the world to enable a global exchange of ideas, opinions, and know-how.

For 200 years, Wiley has been an integral part of each generation's journey, enabling the flow of information and understanding necessary to meet their needs and fulfill their aspirations. Today, bold new technologies are changing the way we live and learn. Wiley will be there, providing you the must-have knowledge you need to imagine new worlds, new possibilities, and new opportunities.

Generations come and go, but you can always count on Wiley to provide you the knowledge you need, when and where you need it!

William J. Pesce
President and Chief Executive Officer

Peter Booth Wiley
Chairman of the Board

June 22

A Math Book

https://telegram.me/AMathbook

کانال تخصصی کتب ریاضی -آنالیز عددی ، آنالیز حقیقی،آنالیز تابعی، هندسه ، نظریه اعداد، ریاضیا...

https://telegram.me/AMathbook

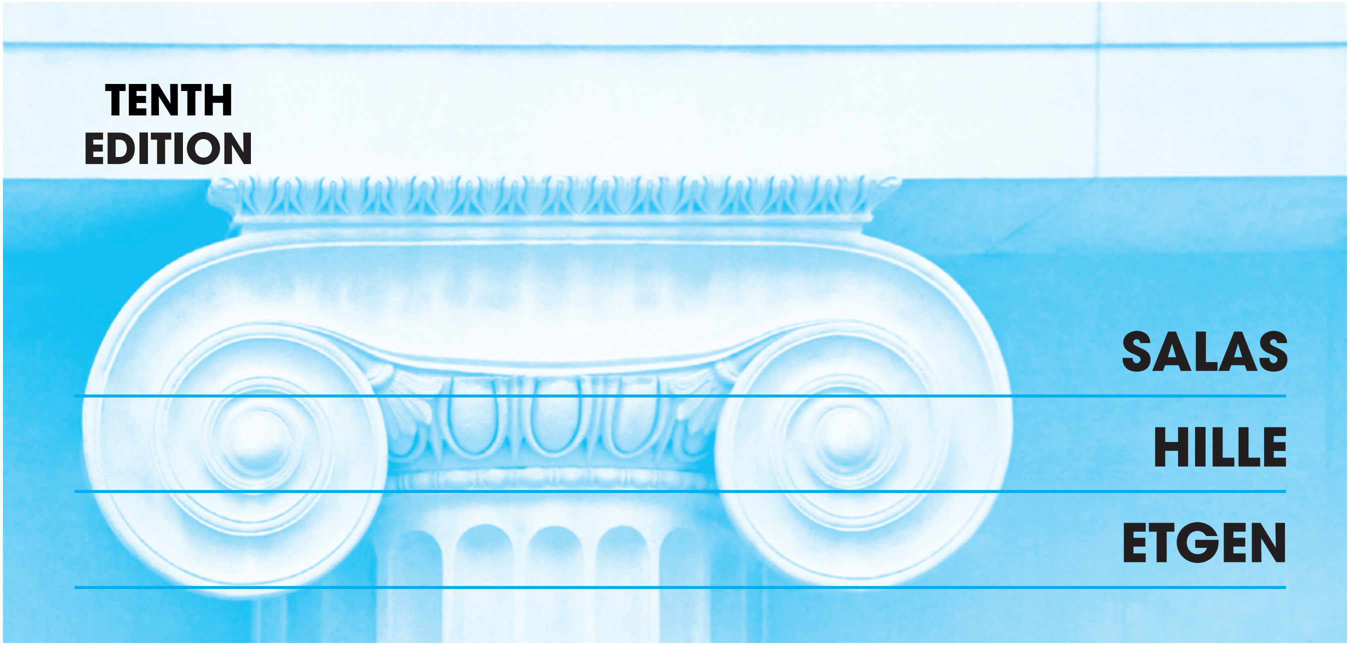
June 19

A Math Book

لینک کانال را در گروههایتان نشر دهید

✅ کانال کتب تخصصی ریاضی...

https://telegram.me/AMathbook



TENTH EDITION

SALAS

HILLE

ETGEN

CALCULUS

ONE AND SEVERAL VARIABLES

JOHN WILEY & SONS, INC.

In fond remembrance of
Einar Hille

ACQUISITIONS EDITOR	Mary Kittell
PUBLISHER	Laurie Rosatone
MARKETING MANAGER	Amy Sell
EDITORIAL ASSISTANT	Danielle Amico
MARKETING ASSISTANT	Tara Martinho
SENIOR PRODUCTION EDITOR	Sandra Dumas
DESIGNER	Hope Miller
SENIOR MEDIA EDITOR	Stefanie Liebman
PRODUCTION MANAGEMENT	Suzanne Ingrao
FREELANCE DEVELOPMENTAL EDITOR	Anne Scanlan-Rohrer
COVER IMAGE	Steven Puetzer/Masterfile

This book was set in New Times Roman by Techbooks, Inc. and printed and bound by Courier(Westford). The cover was printed by Courier(Westford).

This book is printed on acid-free paper. ♾

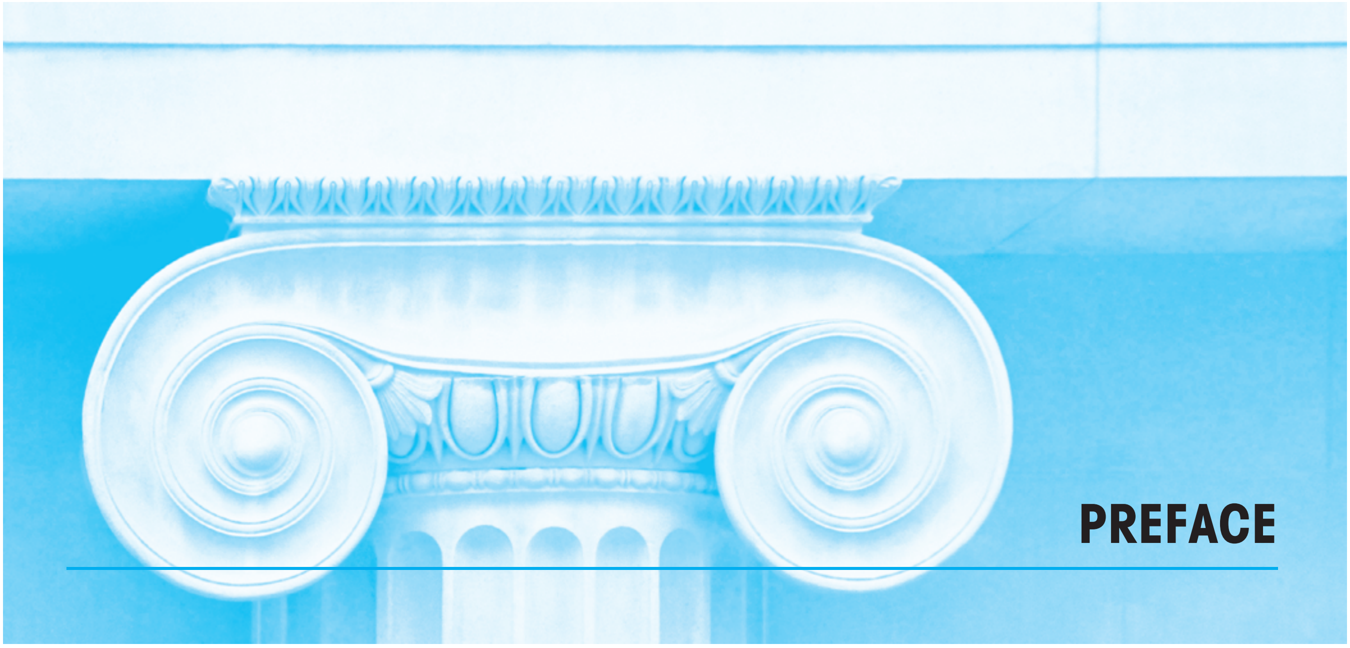
To order books or for customer service please, call 1-800-CALL WILEY (225-5945).

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Salas, Saturnino L.
Calculus—10th ed/Saturnino Salas, Einar Hille, Garrett Etgen.

ISBN-13 978-0471-69804-3
ISBN-10 0-471-69804-0

Printed in the United States of America
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



PREFACE

This text is devoted to the study of single and multivariable calculus. While applications from the sciences, engineering, and economics are often used to motivate or illustrate mathematical ideas, the emphasis is on the three basic concepts of calculus: limit, derivative, and integral.

This edition is the result of a collaborative effort with S.L. Salas, who scrutinized every sentence for possible improvement in precision and readability. His gift for writing and his uncompromising standards of mathematical accuracy and clarity illuminate the beauty of the subject while increasing its accessibility to students. It has been a pleasure for me to work with him.

FEATURES OF THE TENTH EDITION

Precision and Clarity

The emphasis is on mathematical exposition; the topics are treated in a clear and understandable manner. Mathematical statements are careful and precise; the basic concepts and important points are not obscured by excess verbiage.

Balance of Theory and Applications

Problems drawn from the physical sciences are often used to introduce basic concepts in calculus. In turn, the concepts and methods of calculus are applied to a variety of problems in the sciences, engineering, business, and the social sciences through text examples and exercises. Because the presentation is flexible, instructors can vary the balance of theory and applications according to the needs of their students.

Accessibility

This text is designed to be completely accessible to the beginning calculus student without sacrificing appropriate mathematical rigor. The important theorems are explained

and proved, and the mathematical techniques are justified. These may be covered or omitted according to the theoretical level desired in the course.

Visualization

The importance of visualization cannot be over-emphasized in developing students' understanding of mathematical concepts. For that reason, over 1200 illustrations accompany the text examples and exercise sets.

Technology

The technology component of the text has been strengthened by revising existing exercises and by developing new exercises. Well over half of the exercise sets have problems requiring either a graphing utility or a computer algebra system (CAS). Technology exercises are designed to illustrate or expand upon the material developed within the sections.

Projects

Projects with an emphasis on problem solving offer students the opportunity to investigate a variety of special topics that supplement the text material. The projects typically require an approach that involves both theory and applications, including the use of technology. Many of the projects are suitable for group-learning activities.

Early Coverage of Differential Equations

Differential equations are formally introduced in Chapter 7 in connection with applications to exponential growth and decay. First-order linear equations, separable equations, and second linear equations with constant coefficients, plus a variety of applications, are treated in a separate chapter immediately following the techniques of integration material in Chapter 8.

CHANGES IN CONTENT AND ORGANIZATION

In our effort to produce an even more effective text, we consulted with the users of the Ninth Edition and with other calculus instructors. Our primary goals in preparing the Tenth Edition were the following:

1. **Improve the exposition.** As noted above, every topic has been examined for possible improvement in the clarity and accuracy of its presentation. Essentially every section in the text underwent some revision; a number of sections and subsections were completely rewritten.
2. **Improve the illustrative examples.** Many of the existing examples have been modified to enhance students' understanding of the material. New examples have been added to sections that were rewritten or substantially revised.
3. **Revise the exercise sets.** Every exercise set was examined for balance between drill problems, midlevel problems, and more challenging applications and conceptual problems. In many instances, the number of routine problems was reduced and new midlevel to challenging problems were added.

Specific changes made to achieve these goals and meet the needs of today's students and instructors include:

Comprehensive Chapter-End Review Exercise Sets

The Skill Mastery Review Exercise Sets introduced in the Ninth Edition have been expanded into chapter-end exercise sets. Each chapter concludes with a comprehensive set of problems designed to test and to re-enforce students' understanding of basic concepts and methods developed within the chapter. These review exercise sets average over 50 problems per set.

Precalculus Review (Chapter 1)

The content of this chapter—inequalities, basic analytic geometry, the function concept and the elementary functions—is unchanged. However, much of the material has been rewritten and simplified.

Limits (Chapter 2)

The approach to limits is unchanged, but many of the explanations have been revised. The illustrative examples throughout the chapter have been modified, and new examples have been added.

Differentiation and Applications (Chapters 3 and 4)

There are some significant changes in the organization of this material. Realizing that our treatments of linear motion, rates of change per unit time, and the Newton-Raphson method depended on an understanding of increasing/decreasing functions and the concavity of graphs, we moved these topics from Chapter 3 (the derivative) to Chapter 4 (applications of the derivative). Thus, Chapter 3 is now a shorter chapter which focuses solely on the derivative and the processes of differentiation, and Chapter 4 is expanded to encompass all of the standard applications of the derivative—curve-sketching, optimization, linear motion, rates of change, and approximation. As in all previous editions, Chapter 4 begins with the mean-value theorem as the theoretical basis for all the applications.

Integration and Applications (Chapters 5 and 6)

In a brief introductory section, area and distance are used to motivate the definite integral in Chapter 5. While the definition of the definite integral is based on upper and lower sums, the connection with Riemann sums is also given. Explanations, examples, and exercises throughout Chapters 5 and 6 have been modified, but the content and organization remain as in the Ninth Edition.

The Transcendental Functions, Techniques of Integration (Chapters 7 and 8)

The coverage of the inverse trigonometric functions (Chapter 7) has been reduced slightly. The treatment of powers of the trigonometric functions (Chapter 8) has been completely rewritten. The optional sections on first-order linear differential equations and separable differential equations have been moved to Chapter 9, the new chapter on differential equations.

Some Differential Equations (Chapter 9)

This new chapter is a brief introduction to differential equations and their applications. In addition to the coverage of first-order linear equations and separable equations noted

above, we have moved the section on second-order linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients from the Ninth Edition's Chapter 18 to this chapter.

Sequences and Series (Chapters 11 and 12)

Efforts were made to reduce the overall length of these chapters through rewriting and eliminating peripheral material. Eliminating extraneous problems reduced several exercise sets. Some notations and terminology have been modified to be consistent with common usage.

Vectors and Vector Calculus (Chapters 13 and 14)

The introduction to vectors in three-dimensional space has been completely rewritten and reduced from two sections to one. The parallel discussion of vectors in two- and three-dimensional space has been eliminated—the primary focus is on three-dimensional space. The treatments of the dot product, the cross product, lines and planes in Chapter 13, and vector calculus in Chapter 14 are unchanged.

Functions of Several Variables, Gradients, Extreme Values (Chapters 15 and 16); Multiple Integrals, Line and Surface Integrals (Chapters 16 and 17)

The basic content and organization of the material in these four chapters remain as in the ninth edition. Improvements have been made in the exposition, examples, illustrations, and exercises.

Differential Equations (Chapter 19)

This chapter continues the study of differential equations begun in Chapter 9. The sections on Bernoulli, homogeneous and exact equations have been rewritten, and elementary numerical methods are now covered in a separate section. The section on second-order linear nonhomogeneous equations picks up from the treatment of linear homogeneous equations in the new Chapter 9. The applications section—vibrating mechanical systems—is unchanged.

SUPPLEMENTS

An Instructor's Solutions Manual, ISBN 0470127309, includes solutions for all problems in the text.

A Student Solutions Manual, ISBN 0470105534, includes solutions for selected problems in the text.

A Companion Web site, www.wiley.com/college/salas, provides a wealth of resources for students and instructors, including:

- **PowerPoint Slides** for important ideas and graphics for study and note taking.
- **Online Review Quizzes** to enable students to test their knowledge of key concepts. For further review diagnostic feedback is provided that refers to pertinent sections of the text.
- **Animations** comprise a series of interactive Java applets that allow students to explore the geometric significance of many major concepts of Calculus.
- **Algebra and Trigonometry Refreshers** is a self-paced, guided review of key algebra and trigonometry topics that are essential for mastering calculus.

- **Personal Response System Questions** provide a convenient source of questions to use with a variety of personal response systems.
- **Printed Test Bank** contains static tests which can be printed for quick tests.
- **Computerized Test Bank** includes questions from the printed test bank with algorithmically generated problems.

WILEYPLUS

Expect More from Your Classroom Technology

This text is supported by *WileyPLUS*—a powerful and highly integrated suite of teaching and learning resources designed to bridge the gap between what happens in the classroom and what happens at home. *WileyPLUS* includes a complete online version of the text, algorithmically generated exercises, all of the text supplements, plus course and homework management tools, in one easy-to-use website.

Organized Around the Everyday Activities You Perform in Class, *WileyPLUS* Helps You:

Prepare and present: *WileyPLUS* lets you create class presentations quickly and easily using a wealth of Wiley-provided resources, including an online version of the textbook, PowerPoint slides, and more. You can adapt this content to meet the needs of your course.

Create assignments: *WileyPLUS* enables you to automate the process of assigning and grading homework or quizzes. You can use algorithmically generated problems from the text's accompanying test bank, or write your own.

Track student progress: An instructor's grade book allows you to analyze individual and overall class results to determine students' progress and level of understanding.

Promote strong problem-solving skills: *WileyPLUS* can link homework problems to the relevant section of the online text, providing students with context-sensitive help. *WileyPLUS* also features mastery problems that promote conceptual understanding of key topics and video walkthroughs of example problems.

Provide numerous practice opportunities: Algorithmically generated problems provide unlimited self-practice opportunities for students, as well as problems for homework and testing.

Support varied learning styles: *WileyPLUS* includes the entire text in digital format, enhanced with varied problem types to support the array of different student learning styles in today's classroom.

Administer your course: You can easily integrate *WileyPLUS* with another course management system, grade books, or other resources you are using in your class, enabling you to build your course your way.

WileyPLUS Includes A Wealth of Instructor and Student Resources:

Student Solutions Manual: Includes worked-out solutions for all odd-numbered problems and study tips.

Instructor's Solutions Manual: Presents worked out solutions to all problems.

PowerPoint Lecture Notes: In each section of the book a corresponding set of lecture notes and worked out examples are presented as PowerPoint slides that are tied to the examples in the text.

View an online demo at www.wiley.com/college/wileyplus or contact your local Wiley representative for more details.

The Wiley Faculty Network—Where Faculty Connect

The Wiley Faculty Network is a faculty-to-faculty network promoting the effective use of technology to enrich the teaching experience. The Wiley Faculty Network facilitates the exchange of best practices, connects teachers with technology, and helps to enhance instructional efficiency and effectiveness. The network provides technology training and tutorials, including *WileyPLUS* training, online seminars, peer-to-peer exchanges of experiences and ideas, personalized consulting, and sharing of resources.

Connect with a Colleague

Wiley Faculty Network mentors are faculty like you, from educational institutions around the country, who are passionate about enhancing instructional efficiency and effectiveness through best practices. You can engage a faculty mentor in an online conversation at www.wherefacultyconnect.com.

Connect with the Wiley Faculty Network

Web: www.wherefacultyconnect.com
Phone: 1-866-FACULTY

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The revision of a text of this magnitude and stature requires a lot of encouragement and help. I was fortunate to have an ample supply of both from many sources. The present book owes much to the people who contributed to the first nine editions, most recently: Omar Adawi, Parkland College; Mihaly Bakonyi, Georgia State University; Edward B. Curtis, University of Washington; Boris A. Datskovsky, Temple University; Kathy Davis University of Texas-Austin; Dennis DeTurck, University of Pennsylvania; John R. Durbin, University of Texas-Austin; Ronald Gentle, Eastern Washington University; Robert W. Ghrist, Georgia Institute of Technology; Charles H. Giffen, University of Virginia–Charlottesville; Michael Kinyon, Indiana University-South Bend; Susan J. Lamon, Marquette University; Peter A. Lappan, Michigan State University; Nicholas Macri, Temple University; James Martino, Johns Hopkins University; James R. McKinney, California State Polytechnic University-Pomona; Jeff Morgan, Texas A & M University; Peter J. Mucha, Georgia Institute of Technology; Elvira Munoz-Garcia, University of California, Los Angeles; Ralph W. Oberste-Vorth, University of South Florida; Charles Odion, Houston Community College; Charles Peters, University of Houston; Clifford S. Queen, Lehigh University; J. Terry Wilson, San Jacinto College Central and Yang Wang, Georgia Institute of Technology. I am deeply indebted to all of them.

The reviewers and contributors to the Tenth Edition supplied detailed criticisms and valuable suggestions. I offer my sincere appreciation to the following individuals:

Omar Adawi,	Parkland College
Ulrich Albrecht,	Auburn University
Joseph Borzellino,	California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo
Michael R. Colvin,	The University of St. Thomas

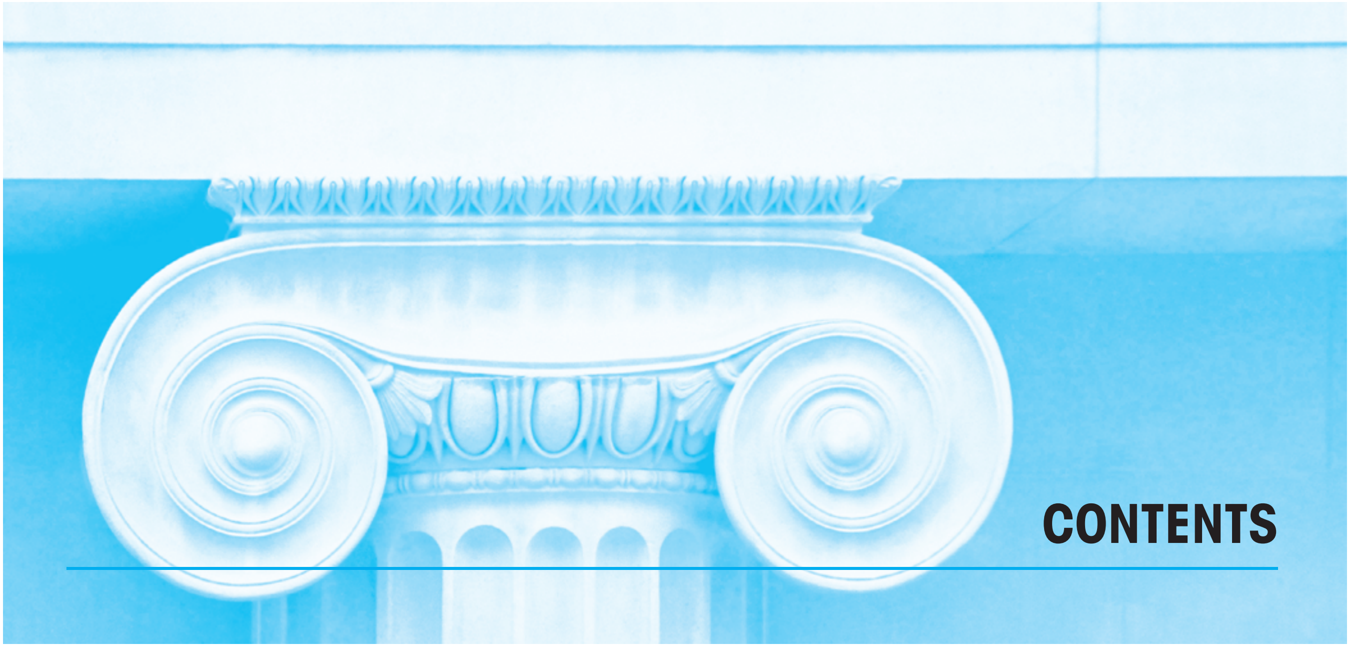
James Dare,	Indiana-Purdue University at Fort Wayne
Nasser Dastrange,	Buena Vista University
David Dorman,	Middlebury College
Martin E. Flashman,	Humboldt State University/Occidental College
David Frank,	University of Minnesota
Melanie Fulton,	High Point University
Isobel Gaensler,	Georgia State University
Frieda Ganter,	West Hills College, Lemoore
Murli M. Gupta,	George Washington University
Aida Kadic-Galeb,	University of Tampa
Mohammad Ghomi,	Georgia Institute of Technology
Robert W. Ghrist,	University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign
Semion Gutman,	University of Oklahoma
Rahim G. Karimpour,	Southern Illinois University- Edwardsville
Robert Keller,	Loras College
Kevin P. Knudson,	Mississippi State University
Ashok Kumar,	Valdosta State University
Jeff Leader,	Rose-Hulman Institute of Technology
Xin Li,	University of Central Florida
Doron Lubinsky,	Georgia Institute of Technology
Edward T. Migliore,	Monterey Peninsula College/University of California, Santa Cruz
Maya Mukherjee,	Morehouse College
Sanjay Mundkur,	Kennesaw State University
Michael M. Neumann,	Mississippi State University
Charles Odion,	Houston Community College
Dan Ostrov,	Santa Clara University
Shahrokh Parvini,	San Diego Mesa College
Chuang Peng,	Morehouse College
Kanishka Perera,	Florida Institute of Technology
Denise Reid,	Valdosta State University
Paul Seeburger,	Monroe Community College
Constance Schober,	University of Central Florida
Peter Schumer,	Middlebury College
Kimberly Shockey	
Henry Smith,	River Parishes Community College
James Thomas,	Colorado State University
James L. Wang,	University of Alabama
Ying Wang,	Augusta State University
Charles Waters,	Minnesota State University, Mankato
Mark Woodard,	Furman University
Yan Wu,	Georgia Southern University
Dekang Xu,	University of Houston

I am especially grateful to Paul Lorczak and Neil Wigley, who carefully read the revised material. They provided many corrections and helpful comments. I would like to thank Bill Ardis for his advice and guidance in the creation of the new technology exercises in the text.

I am deeply indebted to the editorial staff at John Wiley & Sons. Everyone involved in this project has been encouraging, helpful, and thoroughly professional at every stage. In particular, Laurie Rosatone, Publisher, Mary Kittell, Acquisitions Editor, Anne Scanlan-Rohrer, Freelance Developmental Editor and Danielle Amico, Editorial Assistant, provided organization and support when I needed it and prodding when prodding was required. Special thanks go to Sandra Dumas, Production Editor, and Suzanne Ingrao, Production Coordinator, who were patient and understanding as they guided the project through the production stages; Hope Miller, Designer, whose creativity produced the attractive interior design as well as the cover and Stefanie Liebman, Senior Media Editor, who has produced valuable media resources to support my text.

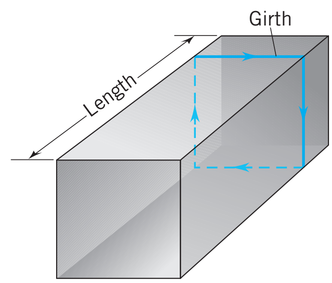
Finally, I want to acknowledge the contributions of my wife, Charlotte; without her continued support, I could not have completed this work.

Garret J. Etgen

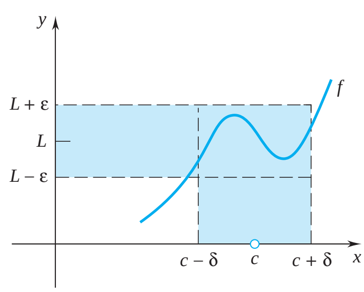


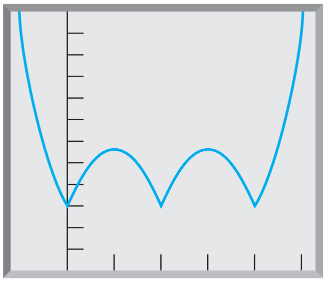
CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 PRECALCULUS REVIEW 1

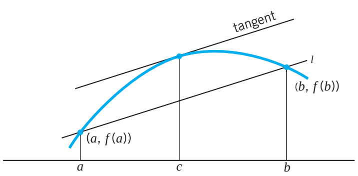


CHAPTER 2 LIMITS AND CONTINUITY 53

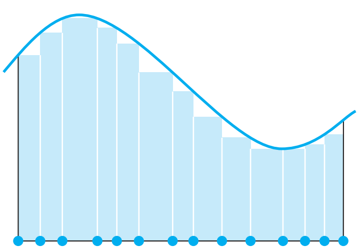




CHAPTER 3 THE DERIVATIVE; THE PROCESS OF DIFFERENTIATION 105

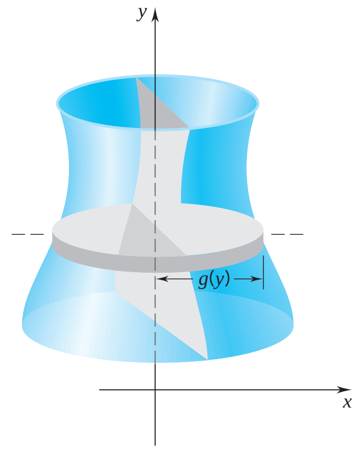


CHAPTER 4 THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM; APPLICATIONS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DERIVATIVES 154

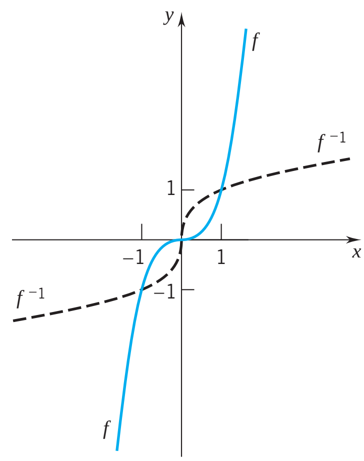


CHAPTER 5 INTEGRATION 234

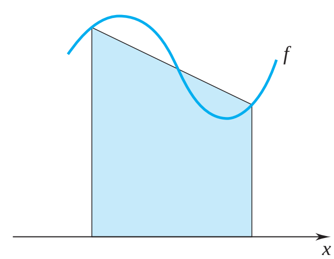
CHAPTER 6 SOME APPLICATIONS OF THE INTEGRAL 292



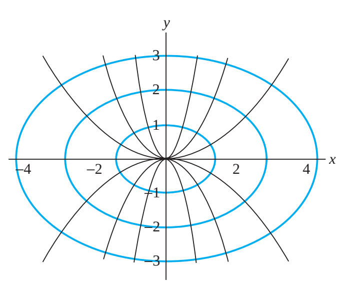
CHAPTER 7 THE TRANSCENDENTAL FUNCTIONS 333



CHAPTER 8 TECHNIQUES OF INTEGRATION 398

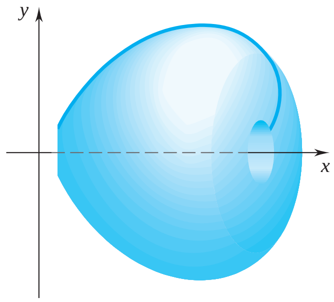


CHAPTER 9 SOME DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS 443

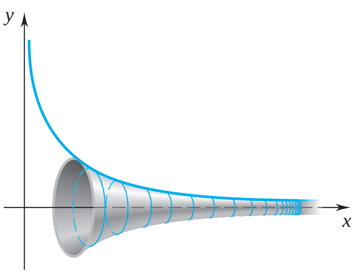


*Denotes optional section.

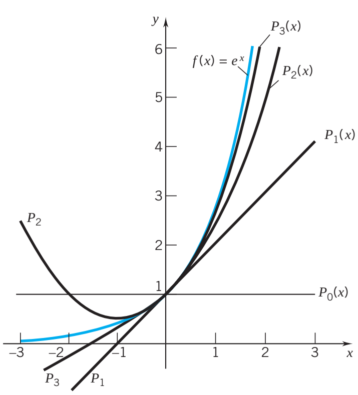
CHAPTER 10 THE CONIC SECTIONS; POLAR COORDINATES; PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS 469

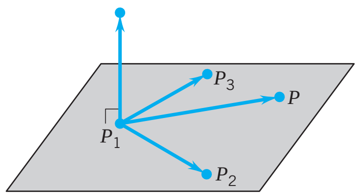


CHAPTER 11 SEQUENCES; INDETERMINATE FORMS; IMPROPER INTEGRALS 528

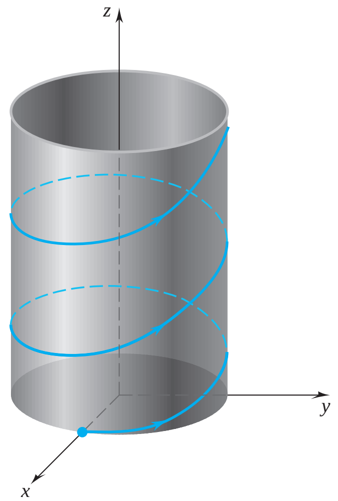


CHAPTER 12 INFINITE SERIES 575

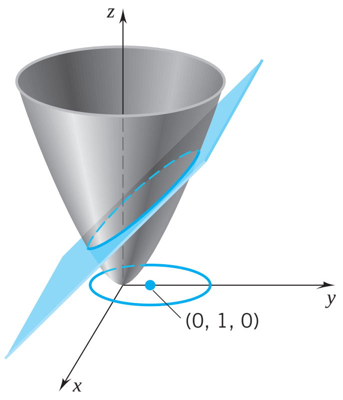




P_3
P
P_1
P_2

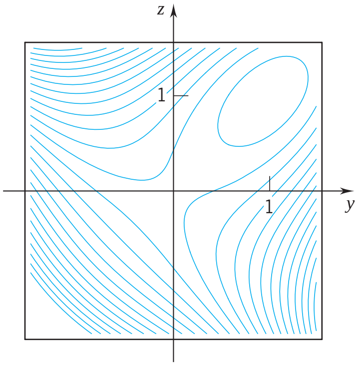


z
y
x

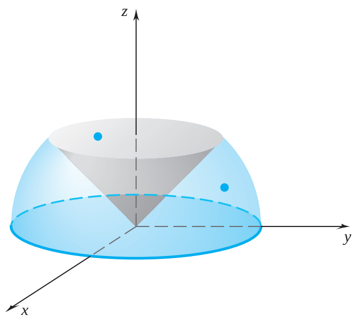


z
y
(0, 1, 0)
x

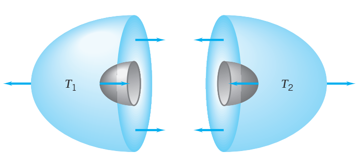
CHAPTER 16 GRADIENTS; EXTREME VALUES; DIFFERENTIALS 788

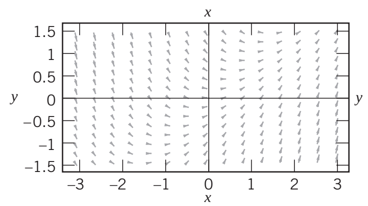


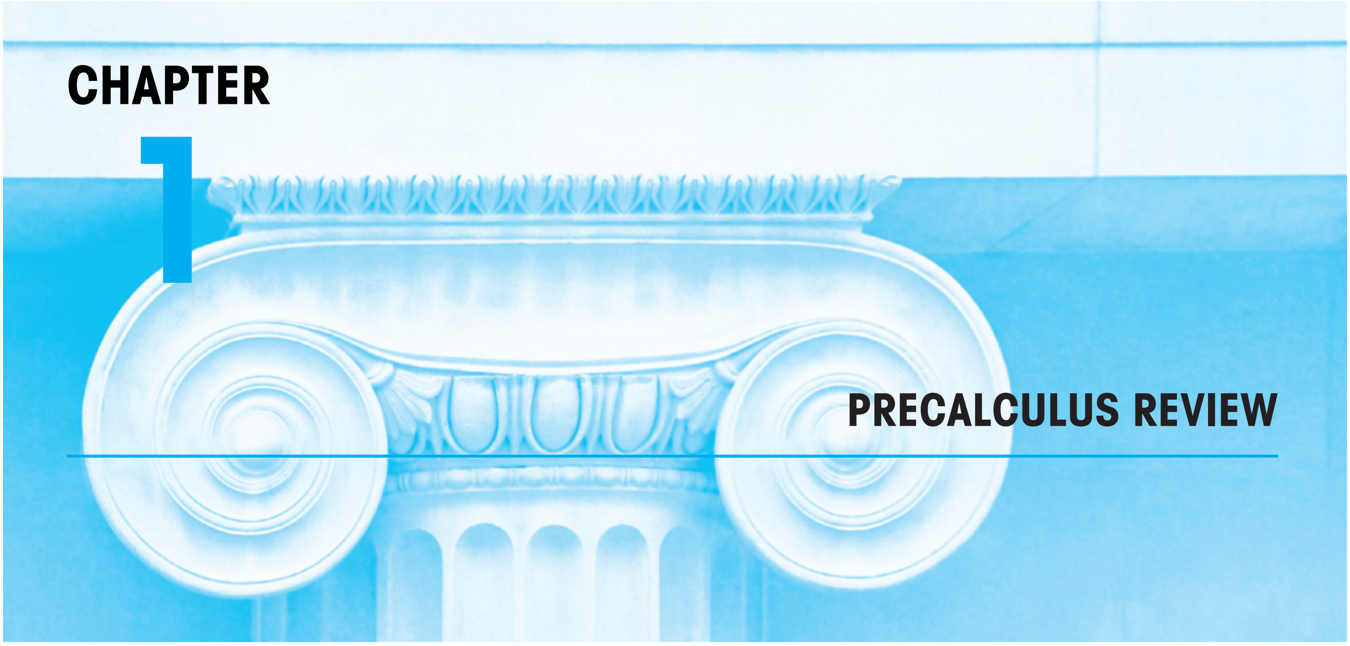
CHAPTER 17 DOUBLE AND TRIPLE INTEGRALS 864



CHAPTER 18 LINE INTEGRALS AND SURFACE INTEGRALS 938




x
1.5
1
0.5
0
−0.5
−1
−1.5
y
y
−3
−2
−1
0
1
2
3
x



CHAPTER 1

PRECALCULUS REVIEW

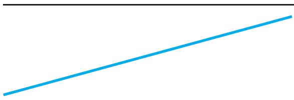
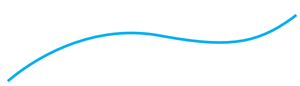
In this chapter we gather together for reference and review those parts of elementary mathematics that are necessary for the study of calculus. We assume that you are familiar with most of this material and that you don't require detailed explanations. But first a few words about the nature of calculus and a brief outline of the history of the subject.

1.1 WHAT IS CALCULUS?

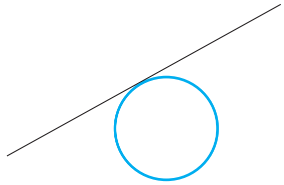
To a Roman in the days of the empire, a "calculus" was a pebble used in counting and gambling. Centuries later, "calculare" came to mean "to calculate," "to compute," "to figure out." For our purposes, calculus is elementary mathematics (algebra, geometry, trigonometry) enhanced by *the limit process*.

Calculus takes ideas from elementary mathematics and extends them to a more general situation. Some examples are on pages 2 and 3. On the left-hand side you will find an idea from elementary mathematics; on the right, this same idea as extended by calculus.

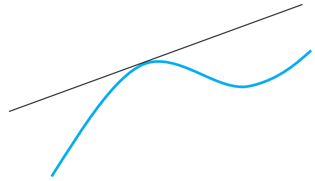
It is fitting to say something about the history of calculus. The origins can be traced back to ancient Greece. The ancient Greeks raised many questions (often paradoxical) about tangents, motion, area, the infinitely small, the infinitely large—questions that today are clarified and answered by calculus. Here and there the Greeks themselves provided answers (some very elegant), but mostly they provided only questions.

Elementary Mathematics	Calculus
 slope of a line $y = mx + b$	 slope of a curve $y = f(x)$

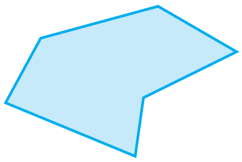
(*Table continues*)



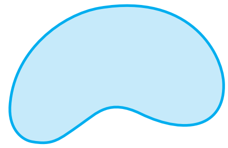
tangent line to
a circle



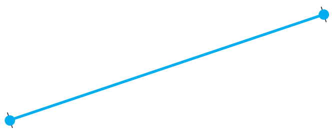
tangent line to a more
general curve



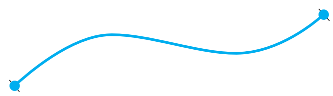
area of a region bounded
by line segments



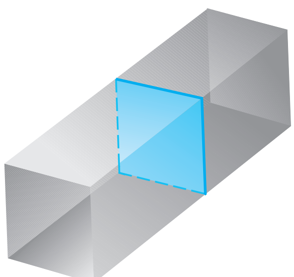
area of a region bounded
by curves



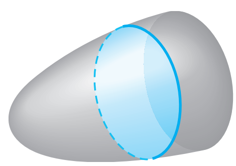
length of a line segment



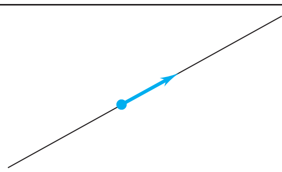
length of a curve



volume of
a rectangular solid

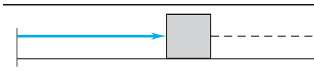


volume of a solid
with a curved boundary

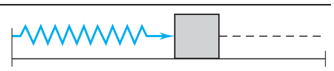


motion along a straight
line with constant velocity

motion along a curved
path with varying velocity

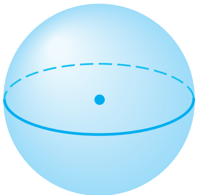


work done by
a constant force

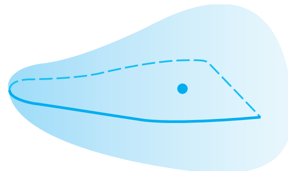


work done by
a varying force

mass of an object of constant density	mass of an object of varying density



center of a sphere



center of gravity of a more general solid

After the Greeks, progress was slow. Communication was limited, and each scholar was obliged to start almost from scratch. Over the centuries, some ingenious solutions to calculus-type problems were devised, but no general techniques were put forth. Progress was impeded by the lack of a convenient notation. Algebra, founded in the ninth century by Arab scholars, was not fully systematized until the sixteenth century. Then, in the seventeenth century, Descartes established analytic geometry, and the stage was set.

The actual invention of calculus is credited to Sir Isaac Newton (1642–1727), an Englishman, and to Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716), a German. Newton's invention is one of the few good turns that the great plague did mankind. The plague forced the closing of Cambridge University in 1665, and young Isaac Newton of Trinity College returned to his home in Lincolnshire for eighteen months of meditation, out of which grew his *method of fluxions*, his *theory of gravitation*, and *his theory of light*. The method of fluxions is what concerns us here. A treatise with this title was written by Newton in 1672, but it remained unpublished until 1736, nine years after his death. The new method (calculus to us) was first announced in 1687, but in vague general terms without symbolism, formulas, or applications. Newton himself seemed reluctant to publish anything tangible about his new method, and it is not surprising that its development on the Continent, in spite of a late start, soon overtook Newton and went beyond him.

Leibniz started his work in 1673, eight years after Newton. In 1675 he initiated the basic modern notation: dx and $\int$. His first publications appeared in 1684 and 1686. These made little stir in Germany, but the two brothers Bernoulli of Basel (Switzerland) took up the ideas and added profusely to them. From 1690 onward, calculus grew rapidly and reached roughly its present state in about a hundred years. Certain theoretical subtleties were not fully resolved until the twentieth century.

■ 1.2 REVIEW OF ELEMENTARY MATHEMATICS

In this section we review the terminology, notation, and formulas of elementary mathematics.

Sets

A *set* is a collection of distinct objects. The objects in a set are called the *elements* or *members* of the set. We will denote sets by capital letters $A, B, C, \ldots$ and use lowercase letters $a, b, c, \ldots$ to denote the elements.

For a collection of objects to be a set it must be *well-defined*; that is, given any object x, it must be possible to determine with certainty whether or not x is an element of the set. Thus the collection of all even numbers, the collection of all lines parallel to a given line l, the solutions of the equation $x^2 = 9$ are all sets. The collection of all intelligent adults is not a set. It's not clear who should be included.

Notions and Notation

the object x is in the set A	$x \in A$
the object x is not in the set A	$x \notin A$
the set of all x which satisfy property P	$\{x : P\}$
$(\{x : x^2 = 9\} = \{-3, 3\})$	
A is a subset of B, A is contained in B	$A \subseteq B$
B contains A	$B \supseteq A$
the union of A and B	$A \cup B$
$(A \cup B = \{x : x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\})$	
the intersection of A and B	$A \cap B$
$(A \cap B = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\})$	
the empty set	$\emptyset$

These are the only notions from set theory that you will need at this point.

Real Numbers

Classification

positive integers[†]	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$
integers	$0, 1, -1, 2, -2, 3, -3, \ldots$
rational numbers	p/q, with p, q integers, $q \neq 0$;
	for example, $5/2, -19/7, -4/1 = -4$
irrational numbers	real numbers that are not rational;
	for example $\sqrt{2}, \sqrt[3]{7}, \pi$

Decimal Representation

Each real number can be expressed as a decimal. To express a rational number p/q as a decimal, we divide the denominator q into the numerator p. The resulting decimal either *terminates* or *repeats*:

$$\frac{3}{5} = 0.6, \qquad \frac{27}{20} = 1.35, \qquad \frac{43}{8} = 5.375$$

are terminating decimals;

$$\frac{2}{3} = 0.6666\cdots = 0.\overline{6}, \qquad \frac{15}{11} = 1.363636\cdots = 1.\overline{36}, \qquad \text{and}$$
$$\frac{116}{37} = 3.135135\cdots = 3.\overline{135}$$

are repeating decimals. (The bar over the sequence of digits indicates that the sequence repeats indefinitely.) The converse is also true; namely, every terminating or repeating decimal represents a rational number.

[†]Also called *natural numbers.*

The decimal expansion of an irrational number can neither terminate nor repeat. The expansions

$$\sqrt{2} = 1.414213562\cdots \qquad \text{and} \qquad \pi = 3.141592653\cdots$$

do not terminate and do not develop any repeating pattern.

If we stop the decimal expansion of a given number at a certain decimal place, then the result is a rational number that approximates the given number. For instance, $1.414 = 1414/1000$ is a rational number approximation to $\sqrt{2}$ and $3.14 = 314/100$ is a rational number approximation to π. More accurate approximations can be obtained by using more decimal places from the expansions.

The Number Line (Coordinate Line, Real Line)

On a horizontal line we choose a point O. We call this point the *origin* and assign to it *coordinate* 0. Now we choose a point U to the right of O and assign to it *coordinate* 1. See Figure 1.2.1. The distance between O and U determines a scale (a unit length). We go on as follows: the point a units to the right of O is assigned coordinate a; the point a units to the left of O is assigned coordinate $-a$.

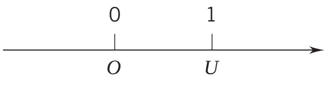


Figure 1.2.1

In this manner we establish a one-to-one correspondence between the points of a line and the numbers of the real number system. Figure 1.2.2 shows some real numbers represented as points on the number line. Positive numbers appear to the right of 0, negative numbers to the left of 0.

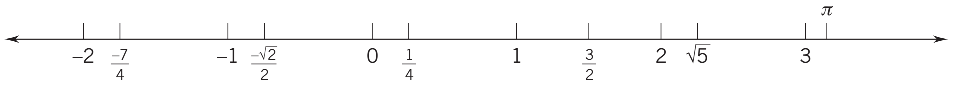


Figure 1.2.2

Order Properties

(i) Either $a < b$, $b < a$, or $a = b$. (trichotomy)

(ii) If $a < b$ and $b < c$, then $a < c$.

(iii) If $a < b$, then $a + c < b + c$ for all real numbers c.

(iv) If $a < b$ and $c > 0$, then $ac < bc$.

(v) If $a < b$ and $c < 0$, then $ac > bc$.

(Techniques for solving inequalities are reviewed in Section 1.3.)

Density

Between any two real numbers there are infinitely many rational numbers and infinitely many irrational numbers. In particular, *there is no smallest positive real number*.

Absolute Value

$$|a| = \begin{cases} a, & \text{if } a \geq 0 \\ -a, & \text{if } a < 0. \end{cases}$$

other characterizations $\quad |a| = \max\{a, -a\};\ |a| = \sqrt{a^2}$.

geometric interpretation $\quad |a| =$ distance between a and 0;

$|a - c| =$ distance between a and c.

properties

(i) $|a| = 0$ iff $a = 0$.[†]
(ii) $|-a| = |a|$.
(iii) $|ab| = |a||b|$.
(iv) $|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|$. (the triangle inequality)[††]
(v) $||a| - |b|| \leq |a - b|$. (a variant of the triangle inequality)
(vi) $|a|^2 = |a^2| = a^2$.

Techniques for solving inequalities that feature absolute value are reviewed in Section 1.3.

Intervals

Suppose that $a < b$. The *open interval* (a, b) is the set of all numbers between a and b:

$$(a, b) = \{x : a < x < b\}.$$

The *closed interval* $[a, b]$ is the open interval (a, b) together with the endpoints a and b:

$$[a, b] = \{x : a \leq x \leq b\}.$$

There are seven other types of intervals:

$$(a, b] = \{x : a < x \leq b\},$$

$$[a, b) = \{x : a \leq x \leq b\},$$

$$(a, \infty) = \{x : a < x\},$$

$$[a, \infty) = \{x : a \leq x\},$$

$$(-\infty, b) = \{x : x < b\},$$

$$(-\infty, b] = \{x : x \leq b\},$$

$$(-\infty, \infty) = \text{the set of real numbers.}$$

Interval notation is easy to remember: we use a square bracket to include an endpoint and a parenthesis to exclude it. On a number line, inclusion is indicated by a solid dot, exclusion by an open dot. The symbols ∞ and $-\infty$, read "infinity" and "negative infinity" (or "minus infinity"), do not represent real numbers. In the intervals listed above, the symbol ∞ is used to indicate that the interval extends indefinitely in the positive direction; the symbol $-\infty$ is used to indicate that the interval extends indefinitely in the negative direction.

Open and Closed

Any interval that contains no endpoints is called *open*: $(a, b), (a, \infty), (-\infty, b), (-\infty, \infty)$ are open. Any interval that contains each of its endpoints (there may be one or two) is called *closed*: $[a, b], [a, \infty), (-\infty, b]$ are closed. The intervals $(a, b]$ and $[a, b)$ are called *half-open* (*half-closed*): $(a, b]$ is open on the left and closed on the right; $[a, b)$ is closed on the left and open on the right. Points of an interval that are not endpoints are called *interior* points of the interval.

[†] By "iff" we mean "if and only if." This expression is used so often in mathematics that it's convenient to have an abbreviation for it.

[††] The absolute value of the sum of two numbers cannot exceed the sum of their absolute values. This is analogous to the fact that in a triangle the length of one side cannot exceed the sum of the lengths of the other two sides.

Boundedness

A set S of real numbers is said to be:

(i) *Bounded above* if there exists a real number M such that

$$x \leq M \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in S;$$

such a number M is called an *upper bound* for S.

(ii) *Bounded below* if there exists a real number m such that

$$m \leq x \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in S;$$

such a number m is called a *lower bound* for S.

(iii) *Bounded* if it is bounded above and below.†

Note that if M is an upper bound for S, then any number greater than M is also an upper bound for S, and if m is a lower bound for S, than any number less than m is also a lower bound for S.

Examples The intervals $(-\infty, 2]$ and $(-\infty, 2)$ are both bounded above by 2 (and by every number greater than 2), but these sets are not bounded below. The set of positive integers $\{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ is bounded below by 1 (and by every number less than 1), but the set is not bounded above; there being no number M greater than or equal to all positive integers, the set has no upper bound. All finite sets of numbers are bounded—(bounded below by the least element and bounded above by the greatest). Finally, the set of all integers, $\{\cdots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \cdots\}$, is unbounded in both directions; it is unbounded above and unbounded below. ❑

Factorials

Let n be a positive integer. By n *factorial*, denoted $n!$, we mean the product of the integers from n down to 1:

$$n! = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1.$$

In particular

$$1! = 1,\ \ 2! = 2 \cdot 1 = 2,\ \ 3! = 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 6,\ \ 4! = 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 24, \ \text{and so on.}$$

For convenience we define $0! = 1$.

Algebra

Powers and Roots

a real, p a positive integer	$a^1 = a, \quad a^p = \overbrace{a \cdot a \cdot \cdots \cdot a}^{p \text{ factors}}$
	$a \neq 0: \quad a^0 = 1, \quad a^{-p} = 1/a^p$
laws of exponents	$a^{p+q} = a^p a^q, \quad a^{p-q} = a^p a^{-q}, \quad (a^q)^p = a^{pq}$
a real, q odd	$a^{1/q}$, called the qth root of a, is the number b such that $b^q = a$
a nonnegative, q even	$a^{1/q}$ is the nonnegative number b such that $b^q = a$
notation	$a^{1/q}$ can be written $\sqrt[q]{a}$ ($a^{1/2}$ is written $\sqrt{a}$)
rational exponents	$a^{p/q} = (a^{1/q})^p$

†In defining *bounded above, bounded below*, and *bounded* we used the conditional "if," not "iff." We could have used "iff," but that would have been unnecessary. Definitions are by their very nature "iff" statements.

Examples

$$2^0 = 1,\ 2^1 = 1,\ 2^2 = 2 \cdot 2 = 4,\ 2^3 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 = 8,\ \text{and so on}$$

$$2^{5+3} = 2^5 \cdot 2^3 = 32 \cdot 8 = 256,\ 2^{3-5} = 2^{-2} = 1/2^2 = 1/4$$

$$(2^2)^3 = 2^{3 \cdot 2} = 2^6 = 64,\ (2^3)^2 = 2^{2 \cdot 3} = 2^6 = 64$$

$$8^{1/3} = 2,\ (-8)^{1/3} = -2,\ 16^{1/2} = \sqrt{16} = 4,\ 16^{1/4} = 2$$

$$8^{5/3} = (8^{1/3})^5 = 2^5 = 32,\ 8^{-5/3} = (8^{1/3})^{-5} = 2^{-5} = 1/2^5 = 1/32 \quad ❏$$

Basic Formulas

$$(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$
$$(a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$$
$$(a+b)^3 = a^3 + 3a^2b + 3ab^2 + b^3$$
$$(a-b)^3 = a^3 - 3a^2b + 3ab^2 - b^3$$
$$a^2 - b^2 = (a-b)(a+b)$$
$$a^3 - b^3 = (a-b)(a^2 + ab + b^2)$$
$$a^4 - b^4 = (a-b)(a^3 + a^2b + ab^2 + b^3)$$

More generally:

$$a^n - b^n = (a-b)(a^{n-1} + a^{n-2}b + \cdots + ab^{n-2} + b^{n-1})$$

Quadratic Equations

The roots of a quadratic equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \qquad \text{with } a \neq 0$$

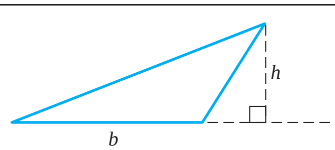
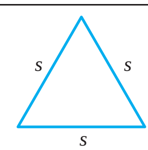
are given by the general quadratic formula

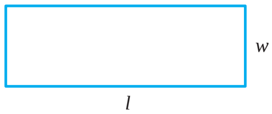
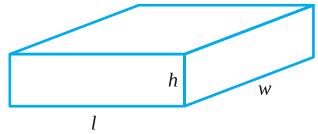
$$r = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

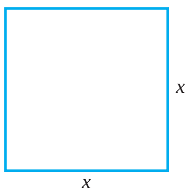
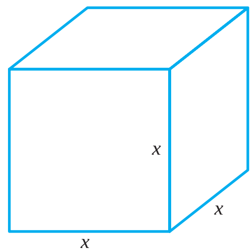
If $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, the equation has two real roots; if $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, the equation has one real root; if $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, the equation has no real roots, but it has two complex roots.

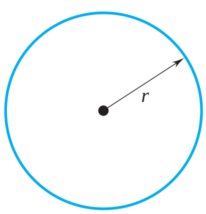
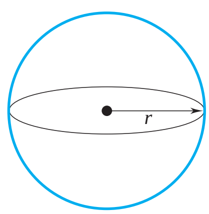
Geometry

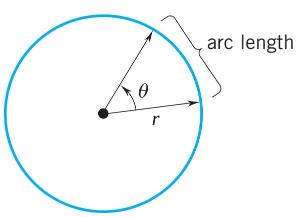
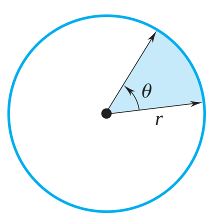
Elementary Figures

Triangle	Equilateral Triangle
	
area = $\frac{1}{2}bh$	area = $\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{3}\,s^2$

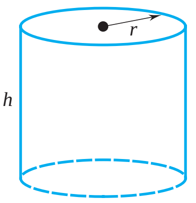
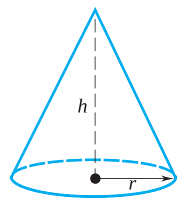
Rectangle	Rectangular Solid
	
area = lw perimeter = $2l + 2w$ diagonal = $\sqrt{l^2 + w^2}$	volume = lwh surface area = $2lw + 2lh + 2wh$

Square	Cube
	
area = x^2 perimeter = $4x$ diagonal = $x\sqrt{2}$	volume = x^3 surface area = $6x^2$

Circle	Sphere
	
area = πr^2 circumference = $2\pi r$	volume = $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ surface area = $4\pi r^2$

Sector of a Circle: radius r, central angle θ measured in radians (see Section 1.6).	
	
arc length = $r\theta$	area = $\frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$

(*Table continues*)

Right Circular Cylinder	Right Circular Cone
	
volume = $\pi r^2 h$ lateral area = $2\pi r h$ total surface area = $2\pi r^2 + 2\pi r h$	volume = $\frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$ slant height = $\sqrt{r^2 + h^2}$ lateral area = $\pi r\sqrt{r^2 + h^2}$ total surface area = $\pi r^2 + \pi r\sqrt{r^2 + h^2}$

EXERCISES 1.2

Exercises 1–10. Is the number rational or irrational?

1. $\frac{17}{7}$.
2. -6.
3. $2.131313\ldots = 2.\overline{13}$.
4. $\sqrt{2} - 3$.
5. 0.
6. $\pi - 2$.
7. $\sqrt[3]{8}$.
8. 0.125.
9. $-\sqrt{9}$.
10. $(\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{3})(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$

Exercises 11–16. Replace the symbol $*$ by $<$, $>$, or = to make the statement true.

11. $\frac{3}{4} * 0.75$.
12. $0.33 * \frac{1}{3}$.
13. $\sqrt{2} * 1.414$.
14. $4 * \sqrt{16}$.
15. $-\frac{2}{7} * -0.285714$.
16. $\pi * \frac{22}{7}$.

Exercises 17–23. Evaluate

17. $|6|$.
18. $|-4|$.
19. $|-3-7|$.
20. $|-5| - |8|$.
21. $|-5| + |-8|$.
22. $|2 - \pi|$.
23. $|5 - \sqrt{5}|$.

Exercises 24–33. Indicate on a number line the numbers x that satisfy the condition.

24. $x \geq 3$
25. $x \leq -\frac{3}{2}$.
26. $-2 \leq x \leq 3$.
27. $x^2 < 16$.
28. $x^2 \geq 16$.
29. $|x| \leq 0$.
30. $x^2 \geq 0$.
31. $|x - 4| \leq 2$.
32. $|x + 1| > 3$.
33. $|x + 3| \leq 0$.

Exercises 34–40. Sketch the set on a number line.

34. $[3, \infty)$.
35. $(-\infty, 2)$.
36. $(-4, 3]$.
37. $[-2, 3] \cup [1, 5]$.
38. $\left[-3, \frac{3}{2}\right) \cap \left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}\right]$.
39. $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-2, \infty)$.
40. $(-\infty, 2) \cap [3, \infty)$.

Exercises 41–47. State whether the set is bounded above, bounded below, bounded. If a set is bounded above, give an upper bound; if it is bounded below, give a lower bound; if it is bounded, give an upper bound and a lower bound.

41. $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$.
42. $\{0, -1, -2, -3, \ldots\}$.
43. The set of even integers.
44. $\{x : x \leq 4\}$.
45. $\{x : x^2 > 3\}$.
46. $\left\{\frac{n-1}{n} : n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots\right\}$.
47. The set of rational numbers less than $\sqrt{2}$.

Exercises 48–50.

48. Order the following numbers and place them on a number line: $\sqrt[3]{\pi}, 2^{\sqrt{\pi}}, \sqrt{2}, 3^{\pi}, \pi^3$.

49. Let $x_0 = 2$ and define $x_n = \dfrac{17 + 2x_{n-1}^3}{3x_{n-1}^2}$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ Find at least five values for x_n. Is the set $S = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n, \ldots\}$ bounded above, bounded below, bounded? If so, give a lower bound and/or an upper bound for S. If n is a large positive integer, what is the approximate value of x_n?

50. Rework Exercise 49 with $x_0 = 3$ and $x_n = \dfrac{231 + 4x_{n-1}^5}{5x_{n-1}^4}$

Exercises 51–56. Write the expression in factored form.

51. $x^2 - 10x + 25$.
52. $9x^2 - 4$.
53. $8x^6 + 64$.
54. $27x^3 - 8$.
55. $4x^2 + 12x + 9$.
56. $4x^4 + 4x^2 + 1$.

Exercises 57–64. Find the real roots of the equation.

57. $x^2 - x - 2 = 0$.
58. $x^2 - 9 = 0$.
59. $x^2 - 6x + 9 = 0$.
60. $2x^2 - 5x - 3 = 0$.
61. $x^2 - 2x + 2 = 0$.
62. $x^2 + 8x + 16 = 0$.
63. $x^2 + 4x + 13 = 0$.
64. $x^2 - 2x + 5 = 0$.

Exercises 65–69. Evaluate.

65. $5!$.
66. $\dfrac{5!}{8!}$.
67. $\dfrac{8!}{3!5!}$.
68. $\dfrac{9!}{3!6!}$.
69. $\dfrac{7!}{0!7!}$.

70. Show that the sum of two rational numbers is a rational number.

71. Show that the sum of a rational number and an irrational number is irrational.

72. Show that the product of two rational numbers is a rational number.

73. Is the product of a rational number and an irrational number necessarily rational? necessarily irrational?

74. Show by example that the sum of two irrational numbers (a) can be rational; (b) can be irrational. Do the same for the product of two irrational numbers.

75. Prove that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational. HINT: Assume that $\sqrt{2} = p/q$ with the fraction written in lowest terms. Square both sides of this equation and argue that both p and q must be divisible by 2.

76. Prove that $\sqrt{3}$ is irrational.

77. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be the set of all rectangles with perimeter P. Show that the square is the element of $\mathcal{S}$ with largest area.

78. Show that if a circle and a square have the same perimeter, then the circle has the larger area. Given that a circle and a rectangle have the same perimeter, which has the larger area?

The following mathematical tidbit was first seen by one of the authors many years ago in Granville, Longley, and Smith, *Elements of Calculus*, now a Wiley book.

79. *Theorem* (a phony one): $1 = 2$.

PROOF (a phony one): Let a and b be real numbers, both different from 0. Suppose now that $a = b$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} ab &= b^2 \\ ab - a^2 &= b^2 - a^2 \\ a(b-a) &= (b+a)(b-a) \\ a &= b + a. \end{aligned}$$

Since $a = b$, we have

$$a = 2a.$$

Division by a, which by assumption is not 0, gives

$$1 = 2. \quad \square$$

What is wrong with this argument?

■ 1.3 REVIEW OF INEQUALITIES

All our work with inequalities is based on the order properties of the real numbers given in Section 1.2. In this section we work with the type if inequalities that arise frequently in calculus, inequalities that involve a variable.

To solve an inequality in x is to find the numbers x that satisfy the inequality. These numbers constitute a set, called the *solution set* of the inequality.

We solve inequalities much as we solve an equation, but there is one important difference. We can maintain an inequality by adding the same number to both sides, or by subtracting the same number from both sides, or by multiplying or dividing both sides by the same *positive* number. But if we multiply or divide by a *negative* number, then the inequality is *reversed*:

$$x - 2 < 4 \quad \text{gives} \quad x < 6, \qquad x + 2 < 4 \quad \text{gives} \quad x < 2,$$

$$\frac{1}{2}x < 4 \quad \text{gives} \quad x < 8,$$

but

$$-\frac{1}{2}x < 4 \quad \text{gives} \quad \underset{\uparrow\text{note, the inequality is reversed}}{x} > -8.$$

Example 1 Solve the inequality

$$-3(4 - x) \le 12.$$

SOLUTION Multiplying both sides of the inequality by $-\frac{1}{3}$, we have

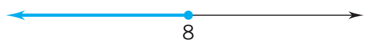
$$4 - x \ge -4. \qquad \text{(the inequality has been reversed)}$$

Subtracting 4, we get

$$-x \ge -8.$$

To isolate x, we multiply by -1. This gives

$$x \le 8. \qquad \text{(the inequality has been reversed again)}$$

The solution set is the interval $(-\infty, 8]$. ❑ 

There are generally several ways to solve a given inequality. For example, the last inequality could have been solved as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} -3(4-x) &\le 12, \\ -12+3x &\le 12, \\ 3x &\le 24, && \text{(we added 12)} \\ x &\le 8. && \text{(we divided by 3)} \end{aligned}$$

To solve a quadratic inequality, we try to factor the quadratic. Failing that, we can complete the square and go on from there. This second method always works.

Example 2 Solve the inequality

$$x^2 - 4x + 3 > 0.$$

SOLUTION Factoring the quadratic, we obtain

$$(x-1)(x-3) > 0.$$

The product $(x-1)(x-3)$ is zero at 1 and 3. Mark these points on a number line (Figure 1.3.1). The points 1 and 3 separate three intervals:

$$(-\infty, 1), \qquad (1, 3), \qquad (3, \infty).$$

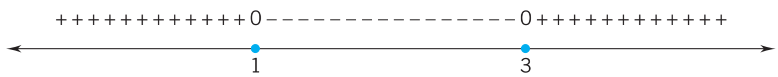
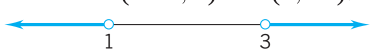


Figure 1.3.1

On each of these intervals the product $(x-1)(x-3)$ keeps a constant sign:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{on } (-\infty, 1) && \text{[to the left of 1]} && \text{sign of } (x-1)(x-3) = (-)(-) = +; \\ &\text{on } (1, 3) && \text{[between 1 and 3]} && \text{sign of } (x-1)(x-3) = (+)(-) = -; \\ &\text{on } (3, \infty) && \text{[to the right of 3]} && \text{sign of } (x-1)(x-3) = (+)(+) = +. \end{aligned}$$

The product $(x-1)(x-3)$ is positive on the open intervals $(-\infty, 1)$ and $(3, \infty)$. The solution set is the union $(-\infty, 1) \cup (3, \infty)$. ❑ 

Example 3 Solve the inequality

$$x^2 - 2x + 5 \le 0.$$

SOLUTION Not seeing immediately how to factor the quadratic, we use the method that always works: completing the square. Note that

$$x^2 - 2x + 5 = (x^2 - 2x + 1) + 4 = (x-1)^2 + 4.$$

This tells us that

$$x^2 - 2x + 5 \ge 4 \qquad \text{for all real } x,$$

and thus there are no numbers that satisfy the inequality we are trying to solve. To put it in terms of sets, the solution set is the empty set $\emptyset$. ❑

In practice we frequently come to expressions of the form

$$(x - a_1)^{k_1}(x - a_2)^{k_2}\ldots(x - a_n)^{k_n}$$

$k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_n$ positive integers, $a_1 < a_2 < \cdots < a_n$. Such an expression is zero at $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$. It is positive on those intervals where the number of negative factors is even and negative on those intervals where the number of negative factors is odd.

Take, for instance,

$$(x + 2)(x - 1)(x - 3).$$

This product is zero at $-2, 1, 3$. It is

negative on	$(-\infty, -2)$,	(3 negative terms)
positive on	$(-2, 1)$,	(2 negative terms)
negative on	$(1, 3)$,	(1 negative term)
positive on	$(3, \infty)$.	(0 negative terms)

See Figure 1.3.2

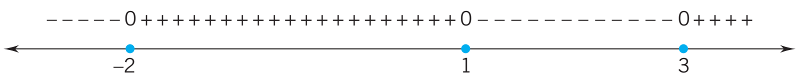


Figure 1.3.2

Example 4 Solve the inequality

$$(x + 3)^5(x - 1)(x - 4)^2 < 0.$$

SOLUTION We view $(x + 3)^5(x - 1)(x - 4)^2$ as the product of three factors: $(x + 3)^5$, $(x - 1)$, $(x - 4)^2$. The product is zero at $-3, 1, 4$. These points separate the intervals

$$(-\infty, -3), \qquad (-3, 1), \qquad (1, 4), \qquad (4, \infty).$$

On each of these intervals the product keeps a constant sign:

positive on	$(-\infty, -3)$,	(2 negative factors)
negative on	$(-3, 1)$,	(1 negative factor)
positive on	$(1, 4)$,	(0 negative factors)
positive on	$(4, \infty)$.	(0 negative factors)

See Figure 1.3.3.

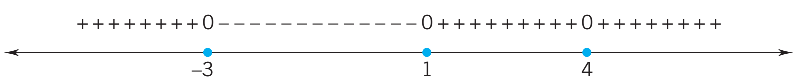


Figure 1.3.3

The solution set is the open interval $(-3, 1)$. ❑

This approach to solving inequalities will be justified in Section 2.6

Inequalities and Absolute Value

Now we take up inequalities that involve absolute values. With an eye toward developing the concept of limits (Chapter 2), we introduce two Greek letters: δ (delta) and ϵ (epsilon).

As you know, for each real number a

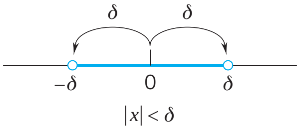
(1.3.1)
$$\boxed{|a| = \begin{cases} a & \text{if } a \geq 0. \\ -a, & \text{if } a < 0, \end{cases} \qquad |a| = \max\{a, -a\}, \qquad |a| = \sqrt{a^2}.}$$

We begin with the inequality

$$|x| < \delta$$

where δ is some positive number. To say that $|x| < \delta$ is to say that x lies within δ units of 0 or, equivalently, that x lies between $-\delta$ and δ. Thus

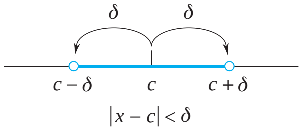
(1.3.2)
$$\boxed{|x| < \delta \qquad \text{iff} \qquad -\delta < x < \delta.}$$



The solution set is the open interval $(-\delta, \delta)$.

To say that $|x - c| < \delta$ is to say that x lies within δ units of c or, equivalently, that x lies between $c - \delta$ and $c + \delta$. Thus

(1.3.3)
$$\boxed{|x - c| < \delta \qquad \text{iff} \qquad c - \delta < x < c + \delta.}$$



The solution set is the open interval $(c - \delta, c + \delta)$.

Somewhat more delicate is the inequality

$$0 < |x - c| < \delta.$$

Here we have $|x - c| < \delta$ with the additional requirement that $x \neq c$. Consequently,

(1.3.4)
$$\boxed{0 < |x - c| < \delta \qquad \text{iff} \qquad c - \delta < x < c \qquad \text{or} \qquad c < x < c + \delta.}$$

The solution set is the union of two open intervals: $(c - \delta, c) \cup (c, c + \delta)$.

The following results are an immediate consequence of what we just showed.

$|x| < \frac{1}{2}$ iff $-\frac{1}{2} < x < \frac{1}{2}$; [solution set: $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$]

$|x - 5| < 1$ iff $4 < x < 6$; [solution set: $(4, 6)$]

$0 < |x - 5| < 1$ iff $4 < x < 5$ or $5 < x < 6$; [solution set: $(4, 5) \cup (5, 6)$]

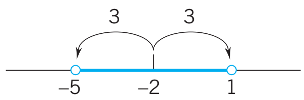
Example 5 Solve the inequality

$$|x + 2| < 3.$$

SOLUTION Once we recognize that $|x + 2| = |x - (-2)|$, we are in familiar territory.

$$|x - (-2)| < 3 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad -2 - 3 < x < -2 + 3 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad -5 < x < 1.$$

The solution set is the open interval $(-5, 1)$. ❑



Example 6 Solve the inequality

$$|3x - 4| < 2.$$

SOLUTION Since

$$|3x - 4| = \left|3\left(x - \tfrac{4}{3}\right)\right| = |3|\left|x - \tfrac{4}{3}\right| = 3\left|x - \tfrac{4}{3}\right|,$$

the inequality can be written

$$3\left|x - \tfrac{4}{3}\right| < 2.$$

This gives

$$\left|x - \tfrac{4}{3}\right| < \tfrac{2}{3}, \qquad \tfrac{4}{3} - \tfrac{2}{3} < x < \tfrac{4}{3} + \tfrac{2}{3}, \qquad \tfrac{2}{3} < x < 2.$$

The solution set is the open interval $(\frac{2}{3}, 2)$.

ALTERNATIVE SOLUTION There is usually more than one way to solve an inequality. In this case, for example, we can write

$$|3x - 4| < 2$$

as

$$-2 < 3x - 4 < 2$$

and proceed from there. Adding 4 to the inequality, we get

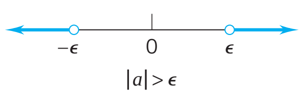
$$2 < 3x < 6.$$

Division by 3 gives the result we had before:

$$\tfrac{2}{3} < x < 2. \quad ❑$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. If you think of $|a|$ as the distance between a and 0, then

(1.3.5) $$\boxed{|a| > \epsilon \quad \text{iff} \quad a > \epsilon \quad \text{or} \quad a < -\epsilon.}$$



Example 7 Solve the inequality

$$|2x + 3| > 5.$$

SOLUTION In general

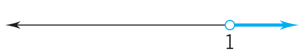
$$|a| > \epsilon \qquad \text{iff} \qquad a > \epsilon \qquad \text{or} \qquad a < -\epsilon.$$

So here

$$2x + 3 > 5 \qquad \text{or} \qquad 2x + 3 < -5.$$

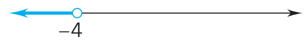
The first possibility gives $2x > 2$ and thus

$$x > 1.$$



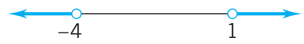
The second possibility gives $2x < -8$ and thus

$$x < -4$$



The total solution is therefore the union

$$(-\infty, -4) \cup (1, \infty). \quad \square$$



We come now to one of the fundamental inequalities of calculus: for all real numbers a and b,

(1.3.6)
$$\boxed{|a + b| \leq |a| + |b|.}$$

This is called the *triangle inequality* in analogy with the geometric observation that "in any triangle the length of each side is less than or equal to the sum of the lengths of the other two sides."

PROOF OF THE TRIANGLE INEQUALITY The key here is to think of $|x|$ as $\sqrt{x^2}$. Note first that

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \leq |a|^2 + 2|a||b| + |b|^2 = (|a| + |b|)^2.$$

Comparing the extremes of the inequality and taking square roots, we have

$$\sqrt{(a + b)^2} \leq |a| + |b|. \qquad \text{(Exercise 51)}$$

The result follows from observing that

$$\sqrt{(a + b)^2} = |a + b|. \quad \square$$

Here is a variant of the triangle inequality that also comes up in calculus: for all real numbers a and b,

(1.3.7)
$$\boxed{\big||a| - |b|\big| \leq |a - b|.}$$

The proof is left to you as an exercise.

EXERCISES 1.3

Exercises 1–20. Solve the inequality and mark the solution set on a number line.

1. $2 + 3x < 5$.
2. $\frac{1}{2}(2x + 3) < 6$.
3. $16x + 64 \leq 16$.
4. $3x + 5 > \frac{1}{4}(x - 2)$.
5. $\frac{1}{2}(1 + x) < \frac{1}{3}(1 - x)$.
6. $3x - 2 \leq 1 + 6x$.
7. $x^2 - 1 < 0$.
8. $x^2 + 9x + 20 < 0$.
9. $x^2 - x - 6 \geq 0$.
10. $x^2 - 4x - 5 > 0$.
11. $2x^2 + x - 1 \leq 0$.
12. $3x^2 + 4x - 4 \geq 0$.
13. $x(x - 1)(x - 2) > 0$.
14. $x(2x - 1)(3x - 5) \leq 0$.
15. $x^3 - 2x^2 + x \geq 0$.
16. $x^2 - 4x + 4 \leq 0$.
17. $x^3(x - 2)(x + 3)^2 < 0$.
18. $x^2(x - 3)(x + 4)^2 > 0$.
19. $x^2(x - 2)(x + 6) > 0$.
20. $7x(x - 4)^2 < 0$.

Exercises 21–36. Solve the inequality and express the solution set as an interval or as the union of intervals.

21. $|x| < 2$.
22. $|x| \geq 1$.
23. $|x| > 3$.
24. $|x - 1| < 1$.
25. $|x - 2| < \frac{1}{2}$.
26. $|x - \frac{1}{2}| < 2$.
27. $0 < |x| < 1$.
28. $0 < |x| < \frac{1}{2}$.
29. $0 < |x - 2| < \frac{1}{2}$.
30. $0 < |x - \frac{1}{2}| < 2$.
31. $0 < |x - 3| < 8$.
32. $|3x - 5| < 3$.
33. $|2x + 1| < \frac{1}{4}$.
34. $|5x - 3| < \frac{1}{2}$.
35. $|2x + 5| > 3$.
36. $|3x + 1| > 5$.

Exercises 37–42. Each of the following sets is the solution of an inequality of the form $|x - c| < \delta$. Find c and δ.

37. $(-3, 3)$.

38. $(-2, 2)$.

39. $(-3, 7)$.

40. $(0, 4)$.

41. $(-7, 3)$.

42. (a, b).

Exercises 43–46. Determine all numbers $A > 0$ for which the statement is true.

43. If $|x - 2| < 1$, then $|2x - 4| < A$.

44. If $|x - 2| < A$, then $|2x - 4| < 3$.

45. If $|x + 1| < A$, then $|3x + 3| < 4$.

46. If $|x + 1| < 2$, then $|3x + 3| < A$.

47. Arrange the following in order :$1, x, \sqrt{x}, 1/x, 1/\sqrt{x}$, given that: (*a*) $x > 1$; (*b*) $0 < x < 1$.

48. Given that $x > 0$, compare

$$\sqrt{\frac{x}{x+1}} \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{\frac{x+1}{x+2}}.$$

49. Suppose that $ab > 0$. Show that if $a < b$, then $1/b < 1/a$.

50. Given that $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, show that if $a^2 \leq b^2$, then $a \leq b$.

51. Show that if $0 \leq a \leq b$, then $\sqrt{a} \leq \sqrt{b}$.

52. Show that $|a - b| \leq |a| + |b|$ for all real numbers a and b.

53. Show that $\big||a| - |b|\big| \leq |a - b|$ for all real numbers a and b. HINT: Calculate $\big||a| - |b|\big|^2$.

54. Show that $|a + b| = |a| + |b|$ iff $ab \geq 0$.

55. Show that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 \leq a \leq b, \quad \text{then} \quad \frac{a}{1+a} \leq \frac{b}{1+b}.$$

56. Let a, b, c be nonnegative numbers. Show that

$$\text{if} \quad a \leq b + c, \quad \text{then} \quad \frac{a}{1+a} \leq \frac{b}{1+b} + \frac{c}{1+c}.$$

57. Show that if a and b are real numbers and $a < b$, then $a < (a + b)/2 < b$. The number $(a + b)/2$ is called the *arithmetic mean* of a and b.

58. Given that $0 \leq a \leq b$, show that

$$a \leq \sqrt{ab} \leq \frac{a+b}{2} \leq b.$$

The number $\sqrt{ab}$ is called the *geometric mean* of a and b.

■ 1.4 COORDINATE PLANE; ANALYTIC GEOMETRY

Rectangular Coordinates

The one-to-one correspondence between real numbers and points on a line can be used to construct a coordinate system for the plane. In the plane, we draw two number lines that are mutually perpendicular and intersect at their origins. Let O be the point of intersection. We set one of the lines horizontally with the positive numbers to the right of O and the other vertically with the positive numbers above O. The point O is called the *origin*, and the number lines are called the *coordinate axes*. The horizontal axis is usually labeled the *x-axis* and the vertical axis is usually labeled the *y-axis*. The coordinate axes separate four regions, which are called *quadrants*. The quadrants are numbered *I, II, III, IV* in the counterclockwise direction starting with the upper right quadrant. See Figure 1.4.1.

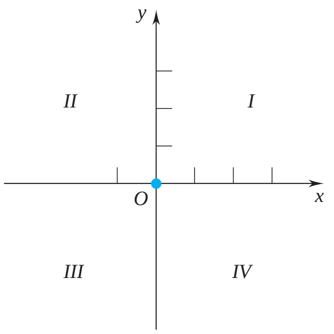


Figure 1.4.1

Rectangular coordinates are assigned to points of the plane as follows (see Figure 1.4.2.). The point on the x-axis with line coordinate a is assigned rectangular coordinates $(a, 0)$. The point on the y-axis with line coordinate b is assigned rectangular coordinates $(0, b)$. Thus the origin is assigned coordinates $(0, 0)$. A point P not on one of the coordinate axes is assigned coordinates (a, b) provided that the line l_1 that passes through P and is parallel to the y-axis intersects the x-axis at the point with coordinates $(a, 0)$, and the l_2 that passes through P and is parallel to the x-axis intersects the y-axis at the point with coordinates $(0, b)$.

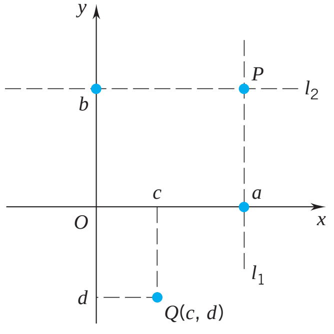


Figure 1.4.2

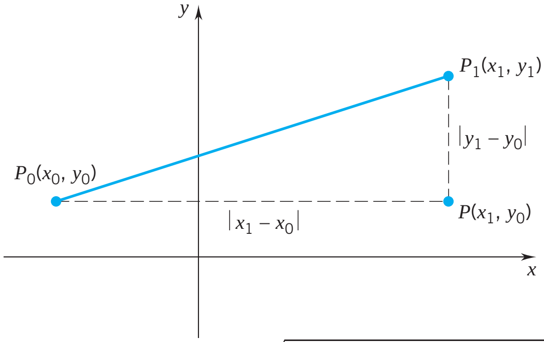
This procedure assigns an ordered pair of real numbers to each point of the plane. Moreover, the procedure is reversible. Given any ordered pair (a, b) of real numbers, there is a unique point P in the plane with coordinates (a, b).

To indicate P with coordinates (a, b) we write $P(a, b)$. The number a is called the *x-coordinate* (the *abscissa*); the number b is called the *y-coordinate* (the *ordinate*). The coordinate system that we have defined is called a *rectangular coordinate system*. It is often referred to as a *Cartesian coordinate system* after the French mathematician René Descartes (1596–1650).

Distance and Midpoint Formulas

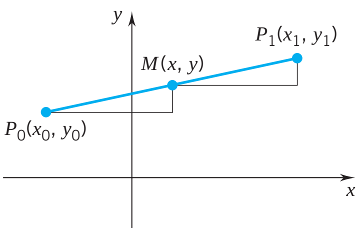
Let $P_0(x_0, y_0)$ and $P_1(x_1, y_1)$ be points in the plane. The formula for the distance $d(P_0, P_1)$ between P_0 and P_1 follows from the *Pythagorean theorem*:

$$d(P_0, P_1) = \sqrt{|x_1 - x_0|^2 + |y_1 - y_0|^2} \underset{\uparrow\, |a|^2 = a^2}{=} \sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2}. \qquad \text{(Figure 1.4.3)}$$



Distance : $d(P_0, P_1) = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2}$

Figure 1.4.3



Midpoint: $M = \left(\frac{x_0+x_1}{2}, \frac{y_0+y_1}{2}\right)$

Figure 1.4.4

Let $M(x, y)$ be the midpoint of the line segment $\overline{P_0P_1}$. That

$$x = \frac{x_0 + x_1}{2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = \frac{y_0 + y_1}{2}$$

follows from the congruence of the triangles shown in Figure 1.4.4

Lines

(i) Slope Let l be the line determined by $P_0(x_0, y_0)$ and $P_1(x_1, y_1)$. If l is not vertical, then $x_1 \neq x_0$ and the slope of l is given by the formula

$$m = \frac{y_1 - y_0}{x_1 - x_0}. \qquad \text{(Figure 1.4.5)}$$

With θ (as indicated in the figure) measured counterclockwise from the x-axis,

$$m = \tan\theta.^\dagger$$

The angle θ is called the inclination of l. If l is vertical, then $\theta = \pi/2$ and the slope of l is not defined.

(ii) Intercepts If a line intersects the x-axis, it does so at some point $(a, 0)$. We call a the x-intercept. If a line intersects the y-axis, it does so at some point $(0, b)$. We call b the y-intercept. Intercepts are shown in Figure 1.4.6.

† The trigonometric functions are reviewed in Section 1.6.

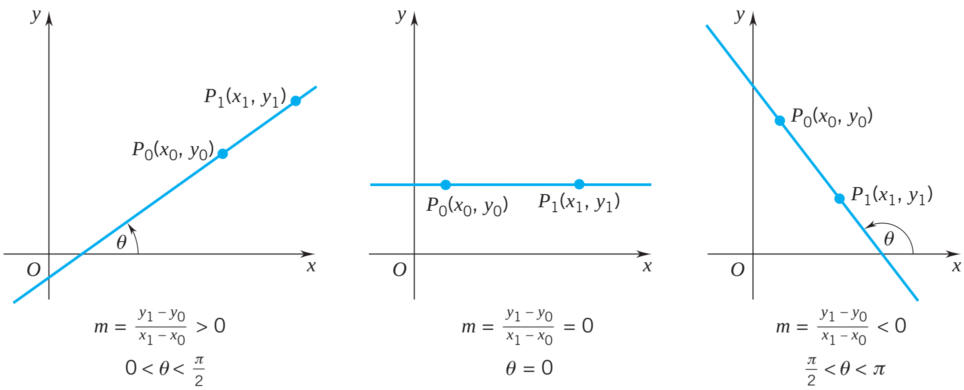


Figure 1.4.5

(iii) Equations

vertical line	$x = a.$	
horizontal line	$y = b.$	
point-slope form	$y - y_0 = m(x - x_0).$	
slope-intercept form	$y = mx + b.$	$(y = b$ at $x = 0)$
two-intercept form	$\dfrac{x}{a} + \dfrac{y}{b} = 1.$	(x-intercept a; y-intercept b)
general form	$Ax + By + C = 0.$	(A and B not both 0)

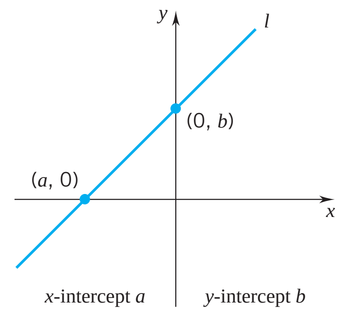


Figure 1.4.6

(iv) Parallel and Perpendicular Nonvertical Lines

parallel	$m_1 = m_2.$
perpendicular	$m_1 m_2 = -1.$

(v) The Angle Between Two Lines The angle between two lines that meet at right angles is $\pi/2$. Figure 1.4.7 shows two lines (l_1, l_2 with inclinations θ_1, θ_2) that intersect but not at right angles. These lines form two angles, marked α and $\pi - \alpha$ in the figure. The smaller of these angles, the one between 0 and $\pi/2$, is called *the angle* between l_1 and l_2. This angle, marked α in the figure, is readily obtained from θ_1 and θ_2.

If neither l_1 nor l_2 is vertical, the angle α between l_1 and l_2 can also be obtained from the slopes of the lines:

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2}.$$

The derivation of this formula is outlined in Exercise 75 of Section 1.6.

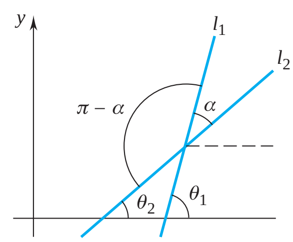


Figure 1.4.7

Example 1 Find the slope and the y-intercept of each of the following lines:

$$l_1 : 20x - 24y - 30 = 0, \qquad l_2 : 2x - 3 = 0, \qquad l_3 : 4y + 5 = 0.$$

SOLUTION The equation of l_1 can be written

$$y = \tfrac{5}{6}x - \tfrac{5}{4}.$$

This is in the form $y = mx + b$. The slope is $\frac{5}{6}$, and the y-intercept is $-\frac{5}{4}$.

The equation of l_2 can be written

$$x = \tfrac{3}{2}.$$

The line is vertical and the slope is not defined. Since the line does not cross the y-axis, the line has no y-intercept.

The third equation can be written

$$y = -\tfrac{5}{4}.$$

The line is horizontal. The slope is 0 and the y-intercept is $-\frac{5}{4}$. The three lines are drawn in Figure 1.4.8. ❑

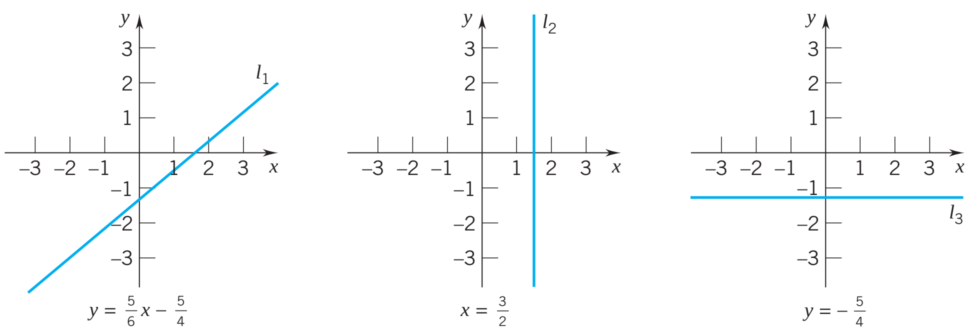


Figure 1.4.8

Example 2 Write an equation for the line l_2 that is parallel to

$$l_1 : 3x - 5y + 8 = 0$$

and passes through the point $P(-3, 2)$.

SOLUTION The equation for l_1 can be written

$$y = \tfrac{3}{5}x + \tfrac{8}{5}.$$

The slope of l_1 is $\frac{3}{5}$. The slope of l_2 must also be $\frac{3}{5}$. (For nonvertical parallel lines, $m_1 = m_2$.)

Since l_2 passes through $(-3, 2)$ with slope $\frac{3}{5}$, we can use the point-slope formula and write the equation as

$$y - 2 = \tfrac{3}{5}(x + 3). \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Write an equation for the line that is perpendicular to

$$l_1 : x - 4y + 8 = 0$$

and passes through the point $P(2, -4)$.

SOLUTION The equation for l_1 can be written

$$y = \tfrac{1}{4}x + 2.$$

The slope of l_1 is $\frac{1}{4}$. The slope of l_2 is therefore -4. (For nonvertical perpendicular lines, $m_1 m_2 = -1$.)

Since l_2 passes through $(2, -4)$ with slope -4, we can use the point-slope formula and write the equation as

$$y + 4 = -4(x - 2). \quad ❏$$

Example 4 Show that the lines

$$l_1 : 3x - 4y + 8 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad l_2 : 12x - 5y - 12 = 0$$

intersect and find their point of intersection.

SOLUTION The slope of l_1 is $\frac{3}{4}$ and the slope of l_2 is $\frac{12}{5}$. Since l_1 and l_2 have different slopes, they intersect at a point.

To find the point of intersection, we solve the two equations simultaneously:

$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 4y + 8 &= 0 \\ 12x - 5y - 12 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying the first equation by -4 and adding it to the second equation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 11y - 44 &= 0 \\ y &= 4. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting $y = 4$ into either of the two given equations, we find that $x = \frac{8}{3}$. The lines intersect at the point $(\frac{8}{3}, 4)$. ❏

Circle, Ellipse, Parabola, Hyperbola

These curves and their remarkable properties are thoroughly discussed in Section 10.1. The information we give here suffices for our present purposes.

Circle

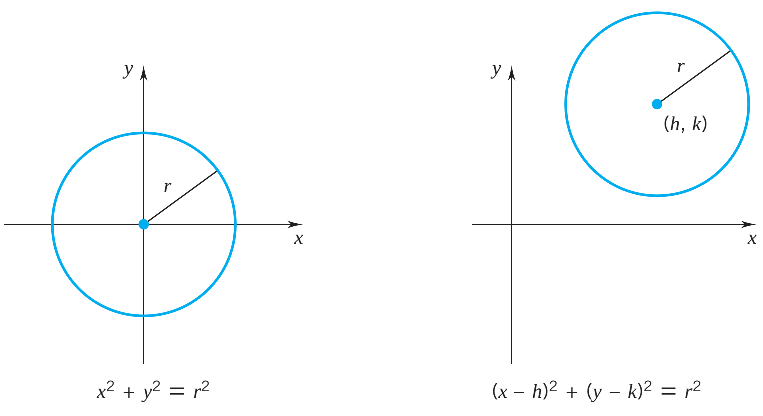
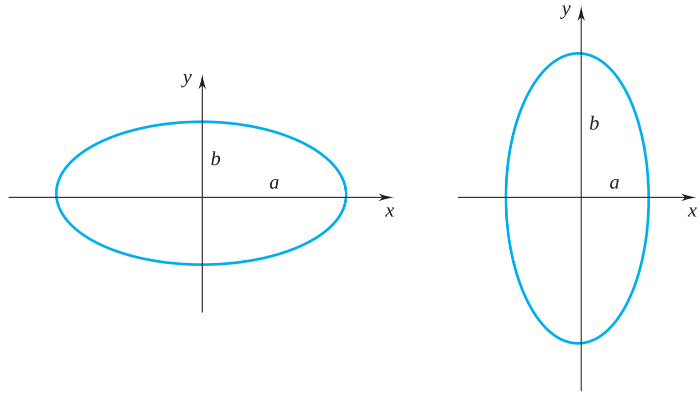


Figure 1.4.9

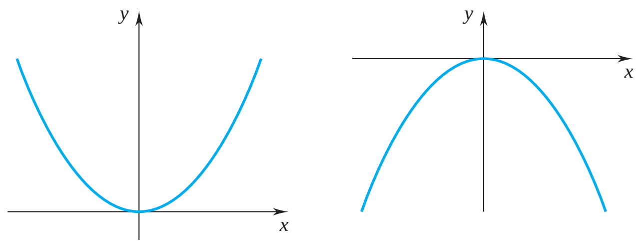
Ellipse



$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1,\ a > b$ $\qquad$ $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1,\ b > a$

Figure 1.4.10

Parabola

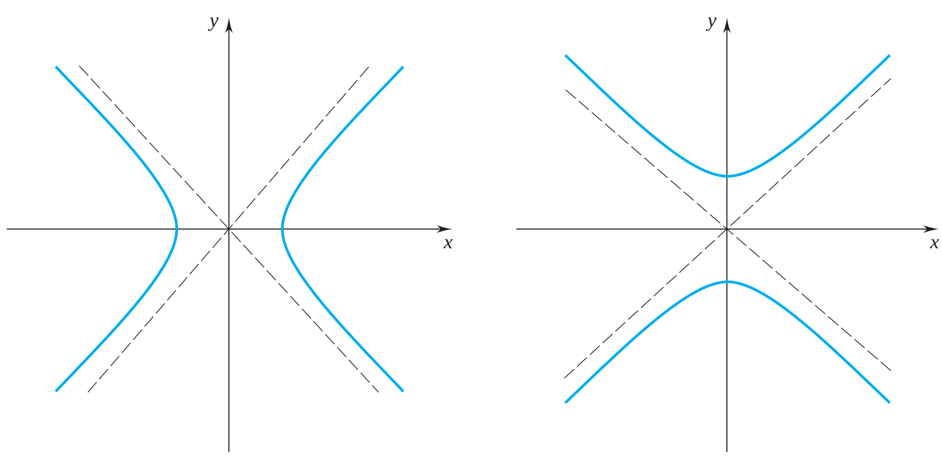


$y = ax^2,\ a > 0$ $\qquad$ $y = ax^2,\ a < 0$

$y = ax^2 + bx + c\ ,\ a > 0$ $\qquad$ $y = ax^2 + bx + c,\ a < 0$

Figure 1.4.11

Hyperbola



$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ $\qquad$ $\frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{x^2}{b^2} = 1$

Figure 1.4.12

Remark The circle, the ellipse, the parabola, and the hyperbola are known as the *conic sections* because each of these configurations can be obtained by slicing a "double right circular cone" by a suitably inclined plane. (See Figure 1.4.13.) ❑

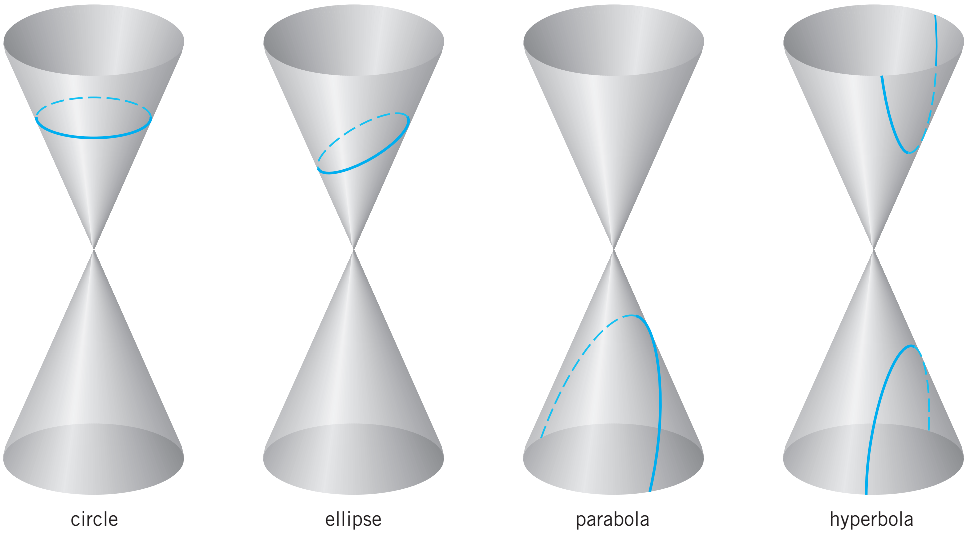


Figure 1.4.13

EXERCISES 1.4

Exercises 1–4. Find the distance between the points.

1. $P_0(0, 5)$, $P_1(6, -3)$. **2.** $P_0(2, 2)$, $P_1(5, 5)$.

3. $P_0(5, -2)$, $P_1(-3, 2)$. **4.** $P_0(2, 7)$, $P_1(-4, 7)$.

Exercises 5–8. Find the midpoint of the line segment P_0P_1.

5. $P_0(2, 4)$, $P_1(6, 8)$. **6.** $P_0(3, -1)$, $P_1(-1, 5)$.

7. $P_0(2, -3)$, $P_1(7, -3)$. **8.** $P_0(a, 3)$, $P_1(3, a)$.

Exercises 9–14. Find the slope of the line through the points.

9. $P_0(-2, 5)$, $P_1(4, 1)$. **10.** $P_0(4, -3)$, $P_1(-2, -7)$.

11. $P(a, b)$, $Q(b, a)$. **12.** $P(4, -1)$, $Q(-3, -1)$.

13. $P(x_0, 0)$, $Q(0, y_0)$. **14.** $O(0, 0)$, $P(x_0, y_0)$.

Exercises 15–20. Find the slope and y-intercept.

15. $y = 2x - 4$. **16.** $6 - 5x = 0$.

17. $3y = x + 6$. **18.** $6y - 3x + 8 = 0$.

19. $7x - 3y + 4 = 0$. **20.** $y = 3$.

Exercises 21–24. Write an equation for the line with

21. slope 5 and y-intercept 2.

22. slope 5 and y-intercept -2.

23. slope -5 and y-intercept 2.

24. slope -5 and y-intercept -2.

Exercises 25–26. Write an equation for the horizontal line 3 units

25. above the x-axis.

26. below the x-axis.

Exercises 27–28. Write an equation for the vertical line 3 units

27. to the left of the y-axis.

28. to the right of the y-axis.

Exercises 29–34. Find an equation for the line that passes through the point $P(2, 7)$ and is

29. parallel to the x-axis.

30. parallel to the y-axis.

31. parallel to the line $3y - 2x + 6 = 0$.

32. perpendicular to the line $y - 2x + 5 = 0$.

33. perpendicular to the line $3y - 2x + 6 = 0$.

34. parallel to the line $y - 2x + 5 = 0$.

Exercises 35–38. Determine the point(s) where the line intersects the circle.

35. $y = x$, $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

36. $y = mx$, $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

37. $4x + 3y = 24$, $x^2 + y^2 = 25$.

38. $y = mx + b$, $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$.

Exercises 39–42. Find the point where the lines intersect.

39. $l_1 : 4x - y - 3 = 0$, $l_2 : 3x - 4y + 1 = 0$.

40. $l_1 : 3x + y - 5 = 0$, $l_2 : 7x - 10y + 27 = 0$.

41. $l_1 : 4x - y + 2 = 0$, $l_2 : 19x + y = 0$.

42. $l_1 : 5x - 6y + 1 = 0, \quad l_2 : 8x + 5y + 2 = 0.$

43. Find the area of the triangle with vertices $(1, -2), (-1, 3), (2, 4)$.

44. Find the area of the triangle with vertices $(-1, 1), (3, \sqrt{2}), (\sqrt{2}, -1)$.

45. Determine the slope of the line that intersects the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 169$ only at the point $(5, 12)$.

46. Find an equation for the line which is tangent to the circle $x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 6y - 15 = 0$ at the point $(4, 1)$. HINT: A line is tangent to a circle at a point P iff it is perpendicular to the radius at P.

47. The point $P(1, -1)$ is on a circle centered at $C(-1, 3)$. Find an equation for the line tangent to the circle at P.

Exercises 48–51. Estimate the point(s) of intersection.

48. $l_1 : 3x - 4y = 7, \quad l_2 : -5x + 2y = 11.$

49. $l_1 : 2.41x + 3.29y = 5, \quad l_2 : 5.13x - 4.27y = 13.$

50. $l_1 : 2x - 3y = 5, \quad \text{circle} : x^2 + y^2 = 4.$

51. circle : $x^2 + y^2 = 9$, parabola : $y = x^2 - 4x + 5$.

Exercises 52–53. The *perpendicular bisector* of the line segment $\overline{PQ}$ is the line which is perpendicular to $\overline{PQ}$ and passes through the midpoint of $\overline{PQ}$. Find an equation for the perpendicular bisector of the line segment that joins the two points.

52. $P(-1, 3), \quad Q(3, -4).$

53. $P(1, -4), \quad Q(4, 9).$

Exercises 54–56. The points are the vertices of a triangle. State whether the triangle is *isosceles* (two sides of equal length), a right triangle, both of these, or neither of these.

54. $P_0(-4, 3), \quad P_1(-4, -1), \quad P_2(2, 1).$

55. $P_0(-2, 5), \quad P_1(1, 3), \quad P_2(-1, 0).$

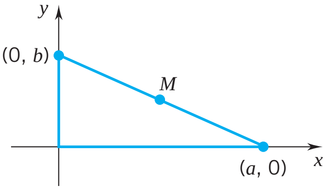
56. $P_0(-1, 2), \quad P_1(1, 3), \quad P_2(4, 1).$

57. Show that the distance from the origin to the line $Ax + By + C = 0$ is given by the formula

$$d(0, l) = \frac{|C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

58. An *equilateral triangle* is a triangle the three sides of which have the same length. Given that two of the vertices of an equilateral triangle are $(0, 0)$ and $(4, 3)$, find all possible locations for a third vertex. How many such triangles are there?

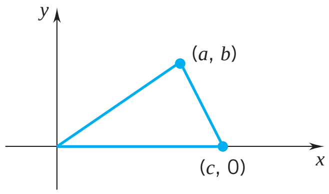
59. Show that the midpoint M of the hypotenuse of a right triangle is equidistant from the three vertices of the triangle. HINT: Introduce a coordinate system in which the sides of the triangle are on the coordinate axes; see the figure.



60. A *median* of a triangle is a line segment from a vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side. Find the lengths of the medians of the triangle with vertices $(-1, -2), (2, 1), (4, -3)$.

61. The vertices of a triangle are $(1, 0), (3, 4), (-1, 6)$. Find the point(s) where the medians of this triangle intersect.

62. Show that the medians of a triangle intersect in a single point (called the *centroid* of the triangle). HINT: Introduce a coordinate system such that one vertex is at the origin and one side is on the positive x-axis; see the figure.



63. Prove that each diagonal of a parallelogram bisects the other. HINT: Introduce a coordinate system with one vertex at the origin and one side on the positive x-axis.

64. $P_1(x_1, y_1), P_2(x_2, y_2), P_3(x_3, y_3), P_4(x_4, y_4)$ are the vertices of a quadrilateral. Show that the quadrilateral formed by joining the midpoints of adjacent sides is a parallelogram.

65. Except in scientific work, temperature is usually measured in degrees Fahrenheit (F) or in degrees Celsius (C). The relation between F and C is linear. (In the equation that relates F to C, both F and C appear to the first degree.) The freezing point of water in the Fahrenheit scale is 32°F; in the Celsius scale it is 0°C. The boiling point of water in the Fahrenheit scale is 212°F; in the Celsius scale it is 100°C. Find an equation that gives the Fahrenheit temperature F in terms of the Celsius temperature C. Is there a temperature at which the Fahrenheit and Celsius readings are equal? If so, find it.

66. In scientific work, temperature is measured on an absolute scale, called the Kelvin scale (after Lord Kelvin, who initiated this mode of temperature measurement). The relation between Fahrenheit temperature F and absolute temperature K is linear. Given that K = 273° when F = 32°, and K = 373° when F = 212°, express K in terms of F. Then use your result in Exercise 65 to determine the connection between Celsius temperature and absolute temperature.

■ 1.5 FUNCTIONS

The fundamental processes of calculus (called *differentiation* and *integration*) are processes applied to functions. To understand these processes and to be able to carry them out, you have to be comfortable working with functions. Here we review some of the basic ideas and the nomenclature. We assume that you are familiar with all of this.

Functions can be applied in a very general setting. At this stage, and throughout the first thirteen chapters of this text, we will be working with what are called *real-valued functions of a real variable,* functions that assign real numbers to real numbers.

Domain and Range

Let's suppose that D is some set of real numbers and that f is a function defined on D. Then f assigns a unique number $f(x)$ to each number x in D. The number $f(x)$ is called the *value* of f at x, or the *image* of x under f. The set D, the set on which the function is defined, is called the *domain* of f, and the set of values taken on by f is called the *range* of f. In set notation

$$\text{dom}\,(f) = D, \qquad \text{range}\,(f) = \{f(x) : x \in D\}.$$

We can specify the function f by indicating exactly what $f(x)$ is for each x in D.

Some examples. We begin with the squaring function

$$f(x) = x^2, \qquad \text{for all real numbers } x.$$

The domain of f is explicitly given as the set of real numbers. Particular values taken on by f can be found by assigning particular values to x. In this case, for example,

$$f(4) = 4^2 = 16, \qquad f(-3) = (-3)^2 = 9, \qquad f(0) = 0^2 = 0.$$

As x runs through the real numbers, x^2 runs through all the nonnegative numbers. Thus the range of f is $[0, \infty)$. In abbreviated form, we can write

$$\text{dom}\,(f) = (-\infty, \infty), \qquad \text{range}\,(f) = [0, \infty)$$

and we can say that f *maps* $(-\infty, \infty)$ onto $[0, \infty)$.

Now let's look at the function g defined by

$$g(x) = \sqrt{2x + 4}, \qquad x \in [0, 6].$$

The domain of g is given as the closed interval $[0, 6]$. At $x = 0$, g takes on the value 2:

$$g(0) = \sqrt{2 \cdot 0 + 4} = \sqrt{4} = 2;$$

at $x = 6$, g has the value 4:

$$g(6) = \sqrt{2 \cdot 6 + 4} = \sqrt{16} = 4.$$

As x runs through the numbers in $[0, 6]$, $g(x)$ runs through the numbers from 2 to 4. Therefore, the range of g is the closed interval $[2, 4]$. The function g maps $[0, 6]$ onto $[2, 4]$.

Some functions are defined *piecewise*. As an example, take the function h, defined by setting

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 1, & \text{if } x < 0 \\ x^2, & \text{if } x \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

As explicitly stated, the domain of h is the set of real numbers. As you can verify, the range of h is also the set of real numbers. Thus the function h maps $(-\infty, \infty)$ onto $(-\infty, \infty)$. A more familiar example is the *absolute value function* $f(x) = |x|$. Here

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x, & \text{if } x < 0. \end{cases}$$

The domain of this function is $(-\infty, \infty)$ and the range is $[0, \infty)$.

Remark Functions are often given by equations of the form $y = f(x)$ with x restricted to some set D, the domain of f. In this setup x is called the *independent variable* (or the *argument* of the function) and y, clearly dependent on x, is called the *dependent variable*. ❑

The Graph of a Function

If f is a function with domain D, then the *graph of* f is the set of all points $P(x, f(x))$ with x in D. Thus the graph of f is the graph of the equation $y = f(x)$ with x restricted to D; namely

$$\text{the graph of } f = \{(x, y) : x \in D, y = f(x)\}.$$

The most elementary way to sketch the graph of a function is to plot points. We plot enough points so that we can "see" what the graph may look like and then connect the points with a "curve." Of course, if we can identify the curve in advance (for example, if we know that the graph is a straight line, a parabola, or some other familiar curve), then it is much easier to draw the graph.

The graph of the squaring function

$$f(x) = x^2, \qquad x \in (-\infty, \infty)$$

is the parabola shown in Figure 1.5.1. The points that we plotted are indicated in the table and marked on the graph. The graph of the function

$$g(x) = \sqrt{2x + 4}, \qquad x \in [0, 6]$$

is the arc shown in Figure 1.5.2

x	x^2
0	0
$\pm\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$
± 1	1
± 2	4

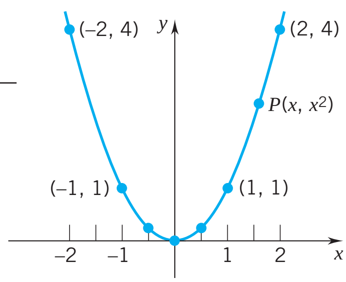


Figure 1.5.1

x	$\sqrt{2x+4}$
0	2
2	$\sqrt{8} \cong 2.8$
4	$\sqrt{12} \cong 3.5$
6	4

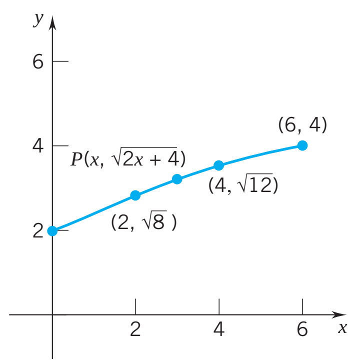


Figure 1.5.2

The graph of the function

$$h(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 1, & \text{if } x < 0 \\ x^2, & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

and the graph of the absolute value function are shown in Figures 1.5.3 and 1.5.4.

Although the graph of a function is a "curve" in the plane, not every curve in the plane is the graph of a function. This raises a question: How can we tell whether a curve is the graph of a function?

A curve C which intersects each vertical line at most once is the graph of a function: for each $P(x, y) \in C$, define $f(x) = y$. A curve C which intersects some vertical line more than once is not the graph of a function: If $P(x, y_1)$ and $P(x, y_2)$ are both on C, then how can we decide what $f(x)$ is? Is it y_1; or is it y_2?

These observations lead to what is called the *vertical line test*: a curve C in the plane is the graph of a function iff no vertical line intersects C at more than one point. Thus circles, ellipses, hyperbolas are not the graphs of functions. The curve shown in Figure 1.5.5 is the graph of a function, but the curve shown in Figure 1.5.6 is not the graph of a function.

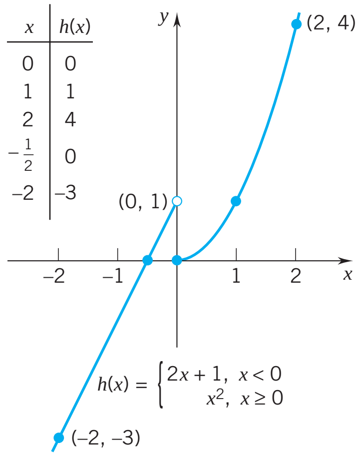


Figure 1.5.3

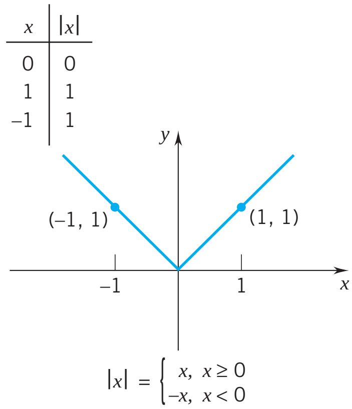


Figure 1.5.4

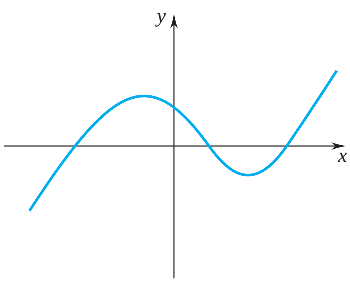


Figure 1.5.5

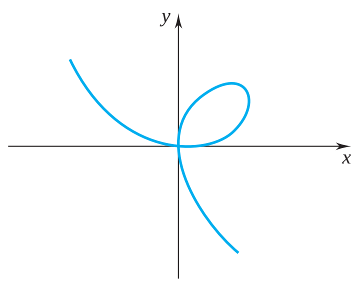


Figure 1.5.6

Graphing calculators and computer algebra systems (CAS) are valuable aids to graphing, but, used mindlessly, they can detract from the understanding necessary for more advanced work. We will not attempt to teach the use of graphing calculators or the ins and outs of computer software, but technology-oriented exercises will appear throughout the text.

Even Functions, Odd Functions; Symmetry

For even integers n, $(-x)^n = x^n$; for odd integers n, $(-x)^n = -x^n$. These simple observations prompt the following definitions:

A function f is said to be *even* if

$$f(-x) = f(x) \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in \text{dom}\,(f);$$

a function f is said to be *odd* if

$$f(-x) = -f(x) \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in \text{dom}\,(f).$$

The graph of an even function is *symmetric about the y-axis*, and the graph of an odd function is *symmetric about the origin*. (Figures 1.5.7 and 1.5.8.)

The absolute value function is even:

$$f(-x) = |-x| = |x| = f(x).$$

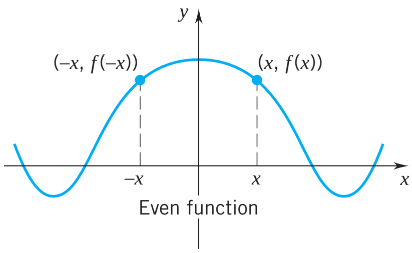


Figure 1.5.7

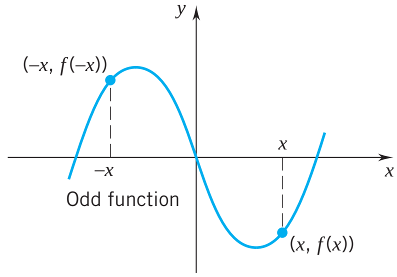


Figure 1.5.8

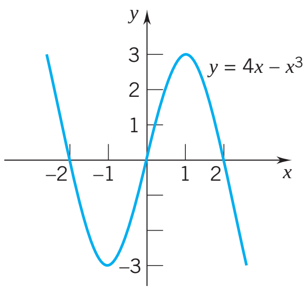


Figure 1.5.9

Its graph is symmetric about the y-axis. (See Figure 1.5.4.) The function $f(x) = 4x - x^3$ is odd:

$$f(-x) = 4(-x) - (-x^3) = -4x + x^3 = -(4x - x^3) = -f(x).$$

The graph, shown in Figure 1.5.9, is symmetric about the origin.

Convention on Domains

If the domain of a function f is not explicitly given, then by convention we take as domain the maximal set of real numbers x for which $f(x)$ is a real number. For the function $f(x) = x^3 + 1$, we take as domain the set of real numbers. For $g(x) = \sqrt{x}$, we take as domain the set of nonnegative numbers. For

$$h(x) = \frac{1}{x-2}$$

we take as domain the set of all real numbers $x \neq 2$. In interval notation.

$$\text{dom}(f) = (-\infty, \infty), \quad \text{dom}(g) = [0, \infty), \quad \text{and} \quad \text{dom}(h) = (-\infty, 2) \cup (2, \infty).$$

The graphs of the three functions are shown in Figure 1.5.10.

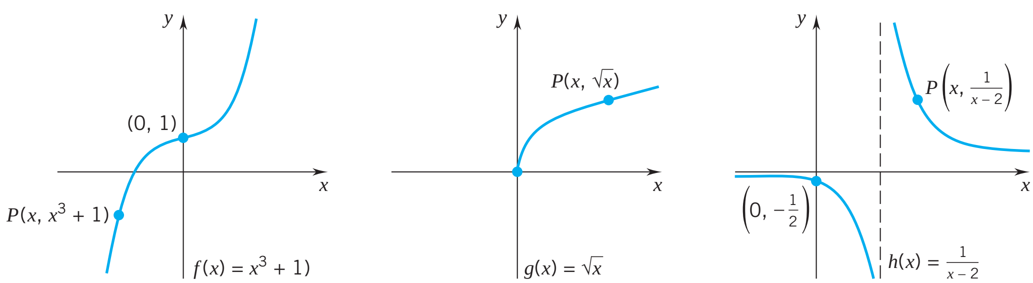


Figure 1.5.10

Example 1 Give the domain of each function:

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{x^2 + x - 6}$, **(b)** $g(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{4 - x^2}}{x - 1}$.

SOLUTION **(a)** You can see that $f(x)$ is a real number iff $x^2 + x - 6 \neq 0$. Since

$$x^2 + x - 6 = (x+3)(x-2),$$

the domain of f is the set of real numbers other than -3 and 2. This set can be expressed as

$$(-\infty, -3) \cup (-3, 2) \cup (2, \infty).$$

(b) For $g(x)$ to be a real number, we need

$$4 - x^2 \geq 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \neq 1.$$

Since $4 - x^2 \geq 0$ iff $x^2 \leq 4$ iff $-2 \leq x \leq 2$, the domain of g is the set of all numbers x in the closed interval $[-2, 2]$ other than $x = 1$. This set can be expressed as the union of two half-open intervals:

$$[-2, 1) \cup (1, 2]. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Give the domain and range of the function:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 - x}} + 5.$$

SOLUTION First we look for the domain. Since $\sqrt{2 - x}$ is a real number iff $2 - x \geq 0$, we need $x \leq 2$. But at $x = 2$, $\sqrt{2 - x} = 0$ and its reciprocal is not defined. We must therefore restrict x to $x < 2$. The domain is $(-\infty, 2)$.

Now we look for the range. As x runs through $(-\infty, 2)$, $\sqrt{2 - x}$ takes on all positive values and so does its reciprocal. The range of f is therefore $(5, \infty)$. The function f maps $(-\infty, 2)$ onto $(5, \infty)$. ❑

Functions are used in applications to show how variable quantities are related. The domain of a function that appears in an application is dictated by the requirements of the application.

Example 3 U.S. Postal Service regulations require that the length plus the girth (the perimeter of a cross section) of a package for mailing cannot exceed 108 inches. A rectangular box with a square end is designed to meet the regulation exactly (see Figure 1.5.11). Express the volume V of the box as a function of the edge length of the square end and give the domain of the function.

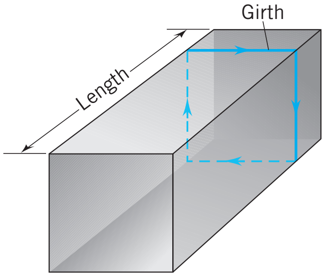


Figure 1.5.11

SOLUTION Let x denote the edge length of the square end and let h denote the length of the box. The girth is the perimeter of the square, or $4x$. Since the box meets the regulations exactly,

$$4x + h = 108 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad h = 108 - 4x.$$

The volume of the box is given by $V = x^2 h$ and so it follows that

$$V(x) = x^2(108 - 4x) = 108x^2 - 4x^3.$$

Since neither the edge length of the square end nor the length of the box can be negative, we have

$$x \geq 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad h = 108 - 4x \geq 0.$$

The second condition requires $x \leq 27$. The full requirement on x, $0 \leq x \leq 27$, gives $\text{dom}(V) = [0, 27]$. ❑

Example 4 A soft-drink manufacturer wants to fabricate cylindrical cans. (See Figure 1.5.12.) The can is to have a volume of 12 fluid ounces, which we take to be approximately 22 cubic inches. Express the total surface area S of the can as a function of the radius and give the domain of the function.

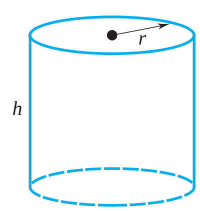


Figure 1.5.12

SOLUTION Let r be the radius of the can and h the height. The total surface area (top, bottom, and lateral area) of a right circular cylinder is given by the formula

$$S = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh.$$

Since the volume $V = \pi r^2 h$ is to be 22 cubic inches, we have

$$\pi r^2 h = 22 \qquad \text{and} \qquad h = \frac{22}{\pi r^2}$$

and therefore

$$S(r) = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi r\left(\frac{22}{\pi r^2}\right) = 2\pi r^2 + \frac{44}{r}. \qquad \text{(square inches)}$$

Since r can take on any positive value, dom $(S) = (0, \infty)$. ❑

EXERCISES 1.5

Exercises 1–6. Calculate (a) $f(0)$, (b) $f(1)$, (c) $f(-2)$, (d) $f(3/2)$.

1. $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x + 2$.

2. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x - 1}{x^2 + 4}$.

3. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 2x}$.

4. $f(x) = |x + 3| - 5x$.

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{|x + 2| + x^2}$.

6. $f(x) = 1 - \dfrac{1}{(x + 1)^2}$.

Exercises 7–10. Calculate (a) $f(-x)$, (b) $f(1/x)$, (c) $f(a + b)$.

7. $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$.

8. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + 1}$.

9. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 + x^2}$.

10. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{|x^2 - 1|}$.

Exercises 11 and 12. Calculate $f(a + h)$ and $[f(a + h) - f(a)]/h$ for $h \neq 0$.

11. $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x$.

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x - 2}$.

Exercises 13–18. Find the number(s) x, if any, where f takes on the value 1.

13. $f(x) = |2 - x|$.

14. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 + x}$.

15. $f(x) = x^2 + 4x + 5$.

16. $f(x) = 4 + 10x - x^2$.

17. $f(x) = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{x^2 - 5}}$.

18. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{|x|}$.

Exercises 19–30. Give the domain and range of the function.

19. $f(x) = |x|$.

20. $g(x) = x^2 - 1$.

21. $f(x) = 2x - 3$.

22. $g(x) = \sqrt{x} + 5$.

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2}$.

24. $g(x) = \dfrac{4}{x}$.

25. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}$.

26. $g(x) = \sqrt{x - 3}$.

27. $f(x) = \sqrt{7 - x} - 1$.

28. $g(x) = \sqrt{x - 1} - 1$.

29. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2 - x}}$.

30. $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{4 - x^2}}$.

Exercises 31–40. Give the domain of the function and sketch the graph.

31. $f(x) = 1$.

32. $f(x) = -1$.

33. $f(x) = 2x$.

34. $f(x) = 2x + 1$.

35. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x + 2$.

36. $f(x) = -\frac{1}{2}x - 3$.

37. $f(x) = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$.

38. $f(x) = \sqrt{9 - x^2}$.

39. $f(x) = x^2 - x - 6$.

40. $f(x) = |x - 1|$.

Exercises 41–44. Sketch the graph and give the domain and range of the function.

41. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1, & x < 0 \\ 1, & x > 0. \end{cases}$

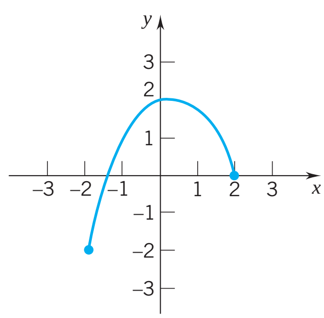
42. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \leq 0 \\ 1 - x, & x > 0. \end{cases}$

43. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + x, & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ x, & 1 < x < 2 \\ \frac{1}{2}x + 1, & 2 \leq x. \end{cases}$

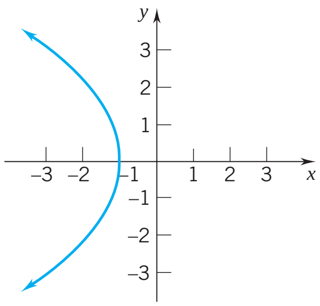
44. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x < 0 \\ -1, & 0 < x < 2 \\ x, & 2 < x. \end{cases}$

Exercises 45–48. State whether the curve is the graph of a function. If it is, give the domain and the range.

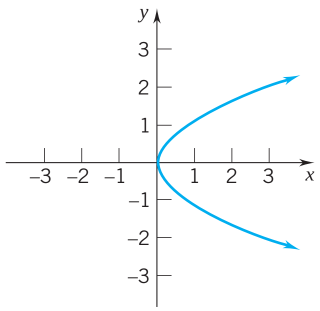
45.



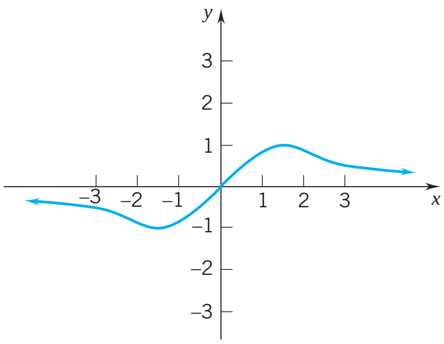
46.



47.



48.



Exercises 49–54. State whether the function is odd, even, or neither.

49. $f(x) = x^3$.

50. $f(x) = x^2 + 1$.

51. $g(x) = x(x-1)$.

52. $g(x) = x(x^2 + 1)$.

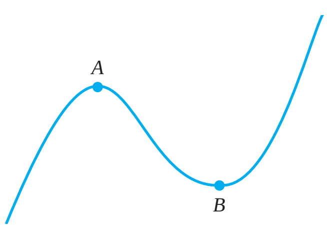
53. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{1-|x|}$.

54. $F(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}$.

55. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - 9}$

56. $f(x) = \sqrt[5]{x - x^3}$.

57. The graph of $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 12x - 6$ looks something like this:

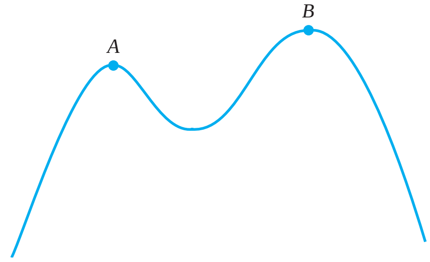


(a) Use a graphing utility to sketch an accurate graph of f.

(b) Find the zero(s) of f (the values of x such that $f(x) = 0$) accurate to three decimal places.

(c) Find the coordinates of the points marked A and B, accurate to three decimal places.

58. The graph of $f(x) = -x^4 + 8x^2 + x - 1$ looks something like this:



(a) Use a graphing utility to sketch an accurate graph of f.

(b) Find the zero(s) of f, if any. Use three decimal place accuracy.

(c) Find the coordinates of the points marked A and B, accurate to three decimal places.

Exercises 59 and 60. Use a graphing utility to draw several views of the graph of the function. Select the one that most accurately shows the important features of the graph. Give the domain and range of the function.

59. $f(x) = |x^3 - 3x^2 - 24x + 4|$.

60. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 8}$.

61. Determine the range of $y = x^2 - 4x - 5$:

(a) by writing y in the form $(x-a)^2 + b$.

(b) by first solving the equation for x.

62. Determine the range of $y = \dfrac{2x}{4-x}$:

(a) by writing y in the form $a + \dfrac{b}{4-x}$.

(b) by first solving the equation for x.

63. Express the area of a circle as a function of the circumference.

64. Express the volume of a sphere as a function of the surface area.

65. Express the volume of a cube as a function of the area of one of the faces.

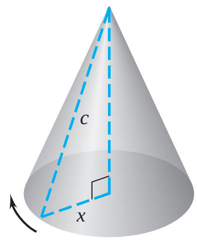
66. Express the volume of a cube as a function of the total surface area.

67. Express the surface area of a cube as a function of the length of the diagonal of a face.

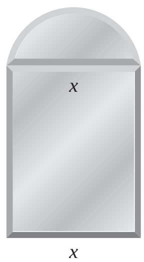
68. Express the volume of a cube as a function of one of the diagonals.

69. Express the area of an equilateral triangle as a function of the length of a side.

70. A right triangle with hypotenuse c is revolved about one of its legs to form a cone. (See the figure.) Given that x is the length of the other leg, express the volume of the cone as a function of x.

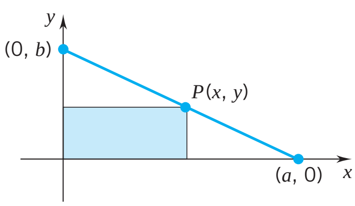


71. A Norman window is a window in the shape of a rectangle surmounted by a semicircle. (See the figure.) Given that the perimeter of the window is 15 feet, express the area as a function of the width x.

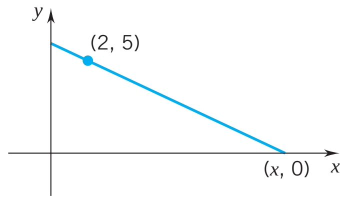


72. A window has the shape of a rectangle surmounted by an equilateral triangle. Given that the perimeter of the window is 15 feet, express the area as a function of the length of one side of the equilateral triangle.

73. Express the area of the rectangle shown in the accompanying figure as a function of the x-coordinate of the point P.

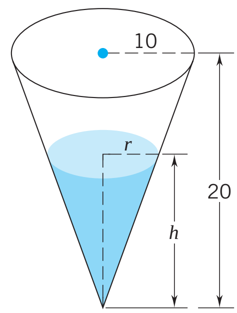


74. A right triangle is formed by the coordinate axes and a line through the point (2,5). (See the figure.) Express the area of the triangle as a function of the x-intercept.

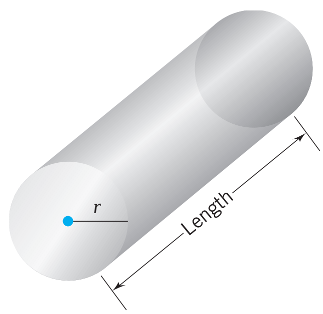


75. A string 28 inches long is to be cut into two pieces, one piece to form a square and the other to form a circle. Express the total area enclosed by the square and circle as a function of the perimeter of the square.

76. A tank in the shape of an inverted cone is being filled with water. (See the figure.) Express the volume of water in the tank as a function of the depth h.



77. Suppose that a cylindrical mailing container exactly meets the U.S. Postal Service regulations given in Example 3. (See the figure.) Express the volume of the container as a function of the radius of an end.



■ 1.6 THE ELEMENTARY FUNCTIONS

The functions that figure most prominently in single-variable calculus are the polynomials, the rational functions, the trigonometric functions, the exponential functions, and the logarithm functions. These functions are generally known as the *elementary functions*. Here we review polynomials, rational functions, and trigonometric functions. Exponential and logarithm functions are introduced in Chapter 7.

Polynomials

We begin with a nonnegative integer n. A function of the form

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 \qquad \text{for all real } x,$$

where the *coefficients* $a_n, a_{n-1}, \ldots, a_1, a_0$ are real numbers and $a_n \neq 0$ is called a (*real*) *polynomial* of *degree* n.

If $n = 0$, the polynomial is simply a constant function:

$$P(x) = a_0 \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

Nonzero constant functions are polynomials of degree 0. The function $P(x) = 0$ for all real x is also a polynomial, but we assign no degree to it.

Polynomials satisfy a condition known as the *factor theorem*: if P is a polynomial and r is a real number, then

$$P(r) = 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad (x - r) \text{ is a factor of } P(x).$$

The real numbers r at which $P(x) = 0$ are called the *zeros* of the polynomial.

The linear functions

$$P(x) = ax + b, \qquad a \neq 0$$

are the polynomials of degree 1. Such a polynomial has only one zero: $r = -b/a$. The graph is the straight line $y = ax + b$.

The quadratic functions

$$P(x) = ax^2 + bx + c, \qquad a \neq 0$$

are the polynomials of degree 2. The graph of such a polynomial is the parabola $y = ax^2 + bx + c$. If $a > 0$, the vertex is the lowest point on the curve; the curve opens up. If $a < 0$, the vertex is the highest point on the curve. (See Figure 1.6.1.)

Figure 1.6.1

The zeros of the quadratic function $P(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ are the roots of the quadratic equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0.$$

The three possibilities are depicted in Figure 1.6.2. Here we are taking $a > 0$.

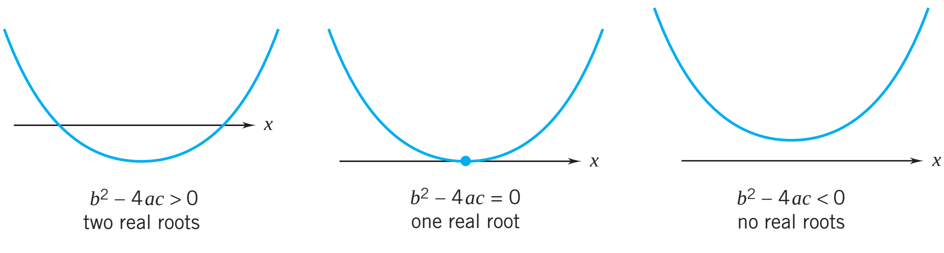


Figure 1.6.2

Polynomials of degree 3 have the form $P(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, $a \neq 0$. These functions are called *cubics*. In general, the graph of a cubic has one of the two following shapes, again determined by the sign of a (Figure 1.6.3). Note that we have not tried to

locate these graphs with respect to the coordinate axes. Our purpose here is simply to indicate the two typical shapes. You can see, however, that for a cubic there are three possibilities: three real roots, two real roots, one real root. (Each cubic has at least one real root.)

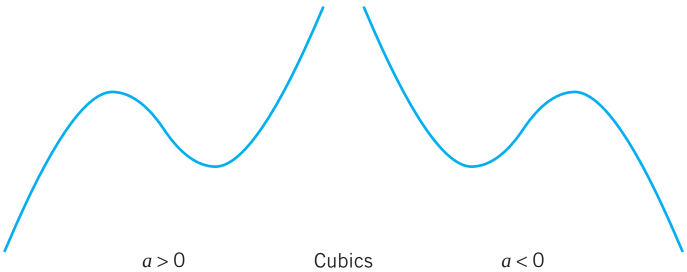


Figure 1.6.3

Polynomials become more complicated as the degree increases. In Chapter 4 we use calculus to analyze polynomials of higher degree.

Rational Functions

A *rational function* is a function of the form

$$R(x) = \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$$

where P and Q are polynomials. Note that every polynomial P is a rational function: $P(x) = P(x)/1$ is the quotient of two polynomials. Since division by 0 is meaningless, a rational function $R = P/Q$ is not defined at those points x (if any) where $Q(x) = 0$; R is defined at all other points. Thus, dom $(R) = \{x : Q(x) \neq 0\}$.

Rational functions $R = P/Q$ are more difficult to analyze than polynomials and more difficult to graph. In particular, we have to examine the behavior of R near the zeros of the denominator and the behavior of R for large values of x, both positive and negative. If, for example, the denominator Q is zero at $x = a$ but the numerator P is not zero at $x = a$, then the graph of R tends to the vertical as x tends to a and the line $x = a$ is called a *vertical asymptote*. If as x becomes very large positive or very large negative the values of R tend to some number b, then the line $y = b$ is called a *horizontal asymptote*. Vertical and horizontal asymptotes are mentioned here only in passing. They will be studied in detail in Chapter 4. Below are two simple examples.

(i) The graph of

$$R(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 - 4x + 4} = \frac{1}{(x-2)^2}$$

is shown in Figure 1.6.4. The line $x = 2$ is a vertical asymptote; the line $y = 0$ (the x-axis) is a horizontal asymptote.

(ii) The graph of

$$R(x) = \frac{x^2}{x^2 - 1} = \frac{x^2}{(x-1)(x+1)}$$

is shown in Figure 1.6.5. The lines $x = 1$ and $x = -1$ are vertical asymptotes; the line $y = 1$ is a horizontal asymptote.

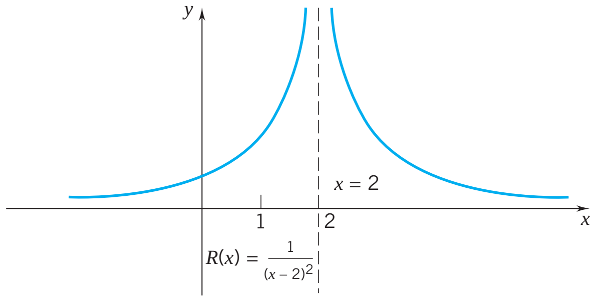


Figure 1.6.4

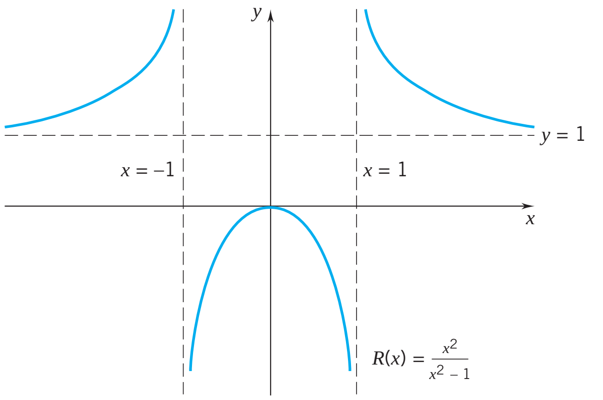


Figure 1.6.5

The Trigonometric Functions

Radian Measure Degree measure, traditionally used to measure angles, has a serious drawback. It is artificial; there is no intrinsic connection between a degree and the geometry of a rotation. Why choose 360° for one complete revolution? Why not 100°? or 400°?

There is another way of measuring angles that is more natural and lends itself better to the methods of calculus: measuring angles in *radians*.

Angles arise from rotations. We will measure angles by measuring rotations. Suppose that the points of the plane are rotated about some point 0. The point 0 remains fixed, but all other points P trace out circular arcs on circles centered at 0. The farther P is from 0, the longer the circular arc (Figure 1.6.6). The *magnitude* of a rotation about 0 is by definition the length of the arc generated by the rotation as measured on a circle at a unit distance from 0.

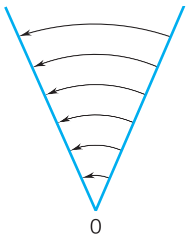


Figure 1.6.6

Now let θ be any real number. The rotation of *radian measure* θ (we shall simply call it the *rotation* θ) is by definition the rotation of magnitude $|\theta|$ in the counterclockwise direction if $\theta > 0$, in the clockwise direction if $\theta < 0$. If $\theta = 0$, there is no movement; every point remains in place.

In degree measure a full turn is effected over the course of 360°. In radian measure, a full turn is effected during the course of 2π radians. (The circumference of a circle of radius 1 is 2π.) Thus

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 360 \text{ degrees}$$

$$\text{one radian} = 360/2\pi \text{ degrees} \cong 57.30^\circ$$

$$\text{one degree} = 2\pi/360 \text{ radians} \cong 0.0175 \text{ radians}.$$

The following table gives some common angles (rotations) measured both in degrees and in radians.

degrees	0°	30°	45°	60°	90°	120°	135°	150°	180°	270°	360°
radians	0	$\frac{1}{6}\pi$	$\frac{1}{4}\pi$	$\frac{1}{3}\pi$	$\frac{1}{2}\pi$	$\frac{2}{3}\pi$	$\frac{3}{4}\pi$	$\frac{5}{6}\pi$	π	$\frac{3}{2}\pi$	2π

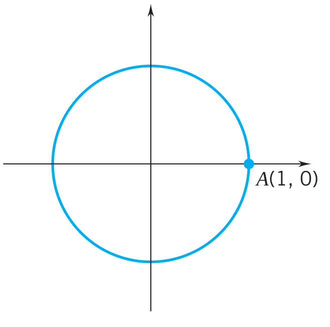


Figure 1.6.7

Cosine and Sine In Figure 1.6.7 you can see a circle of radius 1 centered at the origin of a coordinate plane. We call this the *unit circle*. On the circle we have marked the point A (1, 0).

Now let θ be any real number. The rotation θ takes A (1, 0) to some point P, also on the unit circle. The coordinates of P are completely determined by θ and have names

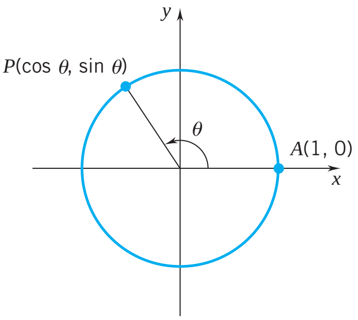


Figure 1.6.8

related to θ. The second coordinate of P is called the *sine* of θ (we write $\sin\theta$) and the first coordinate of P is called the *cosine* of θ (we write $\cos\theta$). Figure 1.6.8 illustrates the idea. To simplify the diagram, we have taken θ from 0 to 2π.

For each real θ, the rotation θ and the rotation $\theta + 2\pi$ take the point A to exactly the same point P. It follows that for each θ,

$$\sin(\theta + 2\pi) = \sin\theta, \qquad \cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta.$$

In Figure 1.6.9 we consider two rotations: a positive rotation θ and its negative counterpart $-\theta$. From the figure, you can see that

$$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta, \qquad \cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta.$$

The sine function is an odd function and the cosine function is an even function.

In Figure 1.6.10 we have marked the effect of consecutive rotations of $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ radians:

$$(a, b) \to (-b, a) \to (-a, -b) \to (b, -a).$$

In each case, $(x, y) \to (-y, x)$. Thus,

$$\sin(\theta + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi) = \cos\theta, \qquad \cos(\theta + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi) = -\sin\theta.$$

A rotation of π radians takes each point to the point antipodal to it: $(x, y) \to (-x, -y)$. Thus

$$\sin(\theta + \pi) = -\sin\theta, \qquad \cos(\theta + \pi) = -\cos\theta.$$

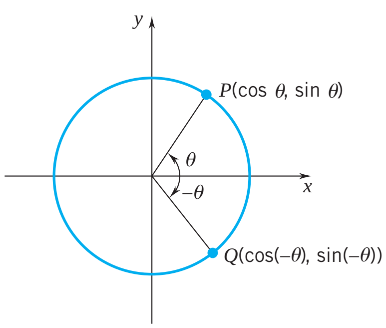


Figure 1.6.9

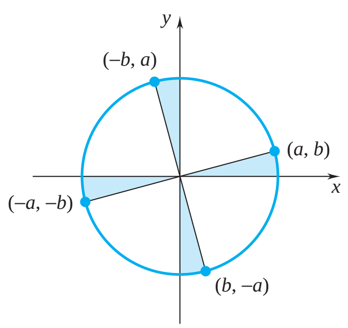


Figure 1.6.10

Tangent, Cotangent, Secant, Cosecant There are four other trigonometric functions: the tangent, the cotangent, the secant, the cosecant. These are obtained as follows:

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}, \qquad \cot\theta = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}, \qquad \sec\theta = \frac{1}{\cos\theta}, \qquad \csc\theta = \frac{1}{\sin\theta}.$$

The most important of these functions is the tangent. Note that the tangent function is an odd function

$$\tan(-\theta) = \frac{\sin(-\theta)}{\cos(-\theta)} = \frac{-\sin\theta}{\cos\theta} = -\tan\theta$$

and repeats itself every π radians:

$$\tan(\theta + \pi) = \frac{\sin(\theta + \pi)}{\cos(\theta + \pi)} = \frac{-\sin\theta}{-\cos\theta} = \tan\theta.$$

Particular Values The values of the sine, cosine, and tangent at angles (rotations) frequently encountered are given in the following table.

	0	$\frac{1}{6}\pi$	$\frac{1}{4}\pi$	$\frac{1}{3}\pi$	$\frac{1}{2}\pi$	$\frac{2}{3}\pi$	$\frac{3}{4}\pi$	$\frac{5}{6}\pi$	π	$\frac{3}{2}\pi$	2π
$\sin\theta$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$	1	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	-1	0
$\cos\theta$	1	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$	-1	0	1
$\tan\theta$	0	$\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}$	1	$\sqrt{3}$	$--$	$-\sqrt{3}$	-1	$-\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}$	0	$--$	0

The (approximate) values of the trigonometric functions for any angle θ can be obtained with a hand calculator or from a table of values.

Identities Below we list the basic trigonometric identities. Some are obvious; some have just been verified; the rest are derived in the exercises.

(i) *unit circle*

$$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1, \qquad \tan^2\theta + 1 = \sec^2\theta, \qquad 1 + \cot^2\theta = \csc^2\theta.$$

(the first identity is obvious; the other two follow from the first)

(ii) *periodicity*[†]

$$\sin(\theta + 2\pi) = \sin\theta, \qquad \cos(\theta + 2\pi) = \cos\theta, \qquad \tan(\theta + \pi) = \tan\theta$$

(iii) *odd and even*

$$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta, \qquad \cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta, \qquad \tan(-\theta) = -\tan\theta.$$

(the sine and tangent are odd functions; the cosine is even)

(iv) *sines and cosines*

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(\theta + \pi) &= -\sin\theta, \qquad & \cos(\theta + \pi) &= -\cos\theta, \\ \sin(\theta + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi) &= \cos\theta, \qquad & \cos(\theta + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi) &= -\sin\theta, \\ \sin(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \theta) &= \cos\theta, \qquad & \cos(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \theta) &= \sin\theta. \end{aligned}$$

(only the third pair of identities still has to be verified)

(v) *addition formulas*

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(\alpha + \beta) &= \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta, \\ \sin(\alpha - \beta) &= \sin\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\alpha\sin\beta, \\ \cos(\alpha + \beta) &= \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta, \\ \cos(\alpha - \beta) &= \cos\alpha\cos\beta + \sin\alpha\sin\beta. \end{aligned}$$

(taken up in the exercises)

(vi) *double-angle formulas*

$$\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta, \qquad \cos 2\theta = \cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta = 2\cos^2\theta - 1 = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta.$$

(follow from the addition formulas)

[†]A function f with an unbounded domain is said to be *periodic* if there exists a number $p > 0$ such that, if θ is in the domain of f, then $\theta + p$ is in the domain and $f(\theta + p) = f(\theta)$. The least number p with this property (if there is a least one) is called the *period* of the function. The sine and cosine have period 2π. Their reciprocals, the cosecant and secant, also have period 2π. The tangent and cotangent have period π.

(vii) *half-angle formulas*

$$\sin^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}(1-\cos 2\theta), \qquad \cos^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}(1+\cos 2\theta)$$

(follow from the double-angle formulas)

In Terms of a Right Triangle For angles θ between 0 and $\pi/2$, the trigonometric functions can also be defined as ratios of the sides of a right triangle. (See Figure 1.6.11.)

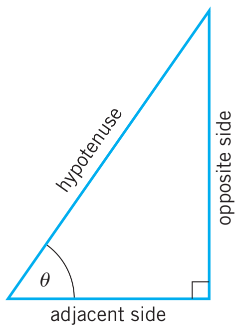


Figure 1.6.11

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}}, \qquad \csc\theta = \frac{\text{hypotenuse}}{\text{opposite side}},$$

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}}, \qquad \sec\theta = \frac{\text{hypotenuse}}{\text{adjacent side}}, \qquad \text{(Exercise 81)}$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}}, \qquad \cot\theta = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{opposite side}}.$$

Arbitrary Triangles Let a, b, c be the sides of a triangle and let A, B, C be the opposite angles. (See Figure 1.6.12.)

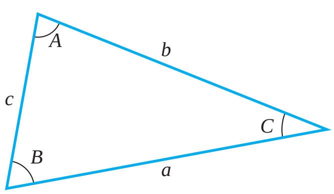


Figure 1.6.12

$$\textit{area} \quad \tfrac{1}{2}ab\,\sin C = \tfrac{1}{2}ac\,\sin B = \tfrac{1}{2}bc\,\sin A.$$

$$\textit{law of sines} \quad \frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}. \qquad \text{(taken up in the exercises)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{law of cosines} \quad a^2 &= b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A, \\ b^2 &= a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B, \\ c^2 &= a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C. \end{aligned}$$

Graphs Usually we work with functions $y = f(x)$ and graph them in the xy-plane. To bring the graphs of the trigonometric functions into harmony with this convention, we replace θ by x and write $y = \sin x$, $y = \cos x$, $y = \tan x$. (These are the only functions that we are going to graph here.) The functions have not changed, only the symbols: x is the rotation that takes $A(1, 0)$ to the point $P(\cos x, \sin x)$. The graphs of the sine, cosine, and tangent appear in Figure 1.6.13.

The graphs of sine and cosine are waves that repeat themselves on every interval of length 2π. These waves appear to chase each other. They do chase each other. In the chase the cosine wave remains $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ units behind the sine wave:

$$\cos x = \sin(x + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi).$$

Changing perspective, we see that the sine wave remains $\frac{3}{2}\pi$ units behind the cosine wave:

$$\sin x = \cos(x + \tfrac{3}{2}\pi).$$

All these waves crest at $y = 1$, drop down to $y = -1$, and then head up again.

The graph of the tangent function consists of identical pieces separated every π units by asymptotes that mark the points x where $\cos x = 0$.

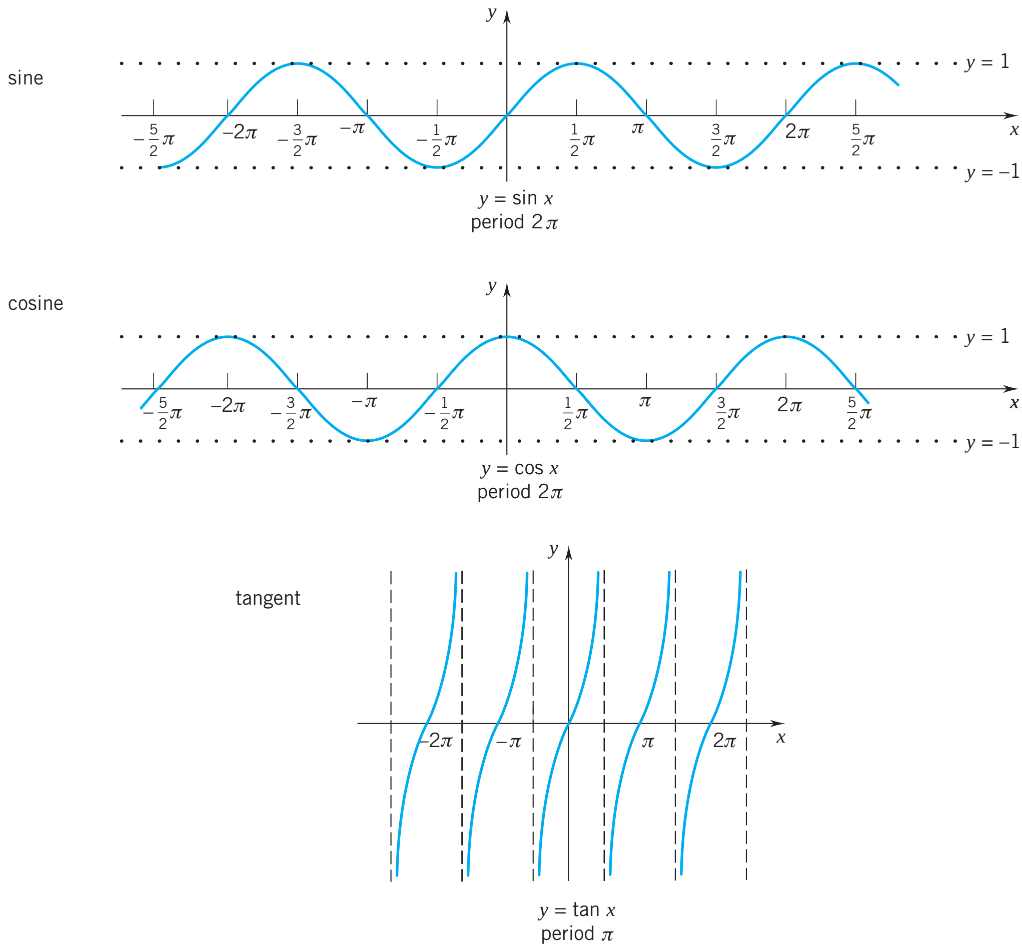


Figure 1.6.13

EXERCISES 1.6

Exercises 1–10. State whether the function is a polynomial, a rational function (but not a polynomial), or neither a polynomial nor a rational function. If the function is a polynomial, give the degree.

1. $f(x) = 3.$

2. $f(x) = 1 + \frac{1}{2}x.$

3. $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}.$

4. $h(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 4}{\sqrt{2}}.$

5. $F(x) = \dfrac{x^3 - 3x^{2/2} + 2x}{x^2 - 1}.$

6. $f(x) = 5x^4 - \pi x^2 + \frac{1}{2}.$

7. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}(\sqrt{x} + 1).$

8. $g(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 2x - 8}{x + 2}.$

9. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}{x^2 - 1}.$

10. $h(x) = \dfrac{(\sqrt{x} + 2)(\sqrt{x} - 2)}{x^2 + 4}.$

Exercises 11–16. Determine the domain of the function and sketch the graph.

11. $f(x) = 3x - \frac{1}{2}.$

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x + 1}.$

13. $g(x) = x^2 - x - 6.$

14. $F(x) = x^3 - x.$

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 4}.$

16. $g(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}.$

Exercises 17–22. Convert the degree measure into radian measure.

17. $225^\circ.$

18. $-210^\circ.$

19. $-300^\circ.$

20. $450^\circ.$

21. $15^\circ.$

22. $3^\circ.$

Exercises 23–28. Convert the radian measure into degree measure.

23. $-3\pi/2.$

24. $5\pi/4.$

25. $5\pi/3$. **26.** $-11\pi/6$.

27. 2. **28.** $-\sqrt{3}$.

29. Show that in a circle of radius *r*, a central angle of θ radians subtends an arc of length $r\theta$.

30. Show that in a circular disk of radius *r*, a sector with a central angle of θ radians has area $\frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$. Take θ between 0 and 2π. HINT: The area of the circle is πr^2.

Exercises 31–38. Find the number(s) x in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ which satisfy the equation.

31. $\sin x = 1/2$. **32.** $\cos x = -1/2$.

33. $\tan x/2 = 1$. **34.** $\sqrt{\sin^2 x} = 1$.

35. $\cos x = \sqrt{2}/2$. **36.** $\sin 2x = -\sqrt{3}/2$.

37. $\cos 2x = 0$. **38.** $\tan x = -\sqrt{3}$.

Exercises 39–44. Evaluate to four decimal place accuracy.

39. $\sin 51°$. **40.** $\cos 17°$.

41. $\sin(2.352)$. **42.** $\cos(-13.461)$.

43. $\tan 72.4°$. **44.** $\cot(7.311)$.

Exercises 45–52. Find the solutions x that are in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$. Express your answers in radians and use four decimal place accuracy.

45. $\sin x = 0.5231$. **46.** $\cos x = -0.8243$.

47. $\tan x = 6.7192$. **48.** $\cot x = -3.0649$.

49. $\sec x = -4.4073$. **50.** $\csc x = 10.260$.

Exercises 51–52. Solve the equation $f(x) = y_0$ for x in $[0, 2\pi]$ by using a graphing utility. Display the graph of f and the line $y = y_0$ in one figure; then use the trace function to find the point(s) of intersection.

51. $f(x) = \sin 3x; \quad y_0 = -1/\sqrt{2}$.

52. $f(x) = \cos \frac{1}{2}x; \quad y_0 = \frac{3}{4}$

Exercises 53–58. Give the domain and range of the function.

53. $f(x) = |\sin x|$ **54.** $g(x) = \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x$.

55. $f(x) = 2\cos 3x$. **56.** $F(x) = 1 + \sin x$.

57. $f(x) = 1 + \tan^2 x$. **58.** $h(x) = \sqrt{\cos^2 x}$.

Exercises 59–62. Determine the period. (The least positive number p for which $f(x + p) = f(x)$ for all x.)

59. $f(x) = \sin \pi x$. **60.** $f(x) = \cos 2x$.

61. $f(x) = \cos \frac{1}{3}x$. **62.** $f(x) = \sin \frac{1}{2}x$.

Exercises 63–68. Sketch the graph of the function.

63. $f(x) = 3\sin 2x$. **64.** $f(x) = 1 + \sin x$.

65. $g(x) = 1 - \cos x$. **66.** $F(x) = \tan \frac{1}{2}x$.

67. $f(x) = \sqrt{\sin^2 x}$. **68.** $g(x) = -2\cos x$.

Exercises 69–74. State whether the function is odd, even, or neither.

69. $f(x) = \sin 3x$. **70.** $g(x) = \tan x$.

71. $f(x) = 1 + \cos 2x$. **72.** $g(x) = \sec x$.

73. $f(x) = x^3 + \sin x$. **74.** $h(x) = \dfrac{\cos x}{x^2 + 1}$.

75. Suppose that l_1 and l_2 are two nonvertical lines. If $m_1 m_2 = -1$, then l_1 and l_2 intersect at right angles. Show that if l_1 and l_2 do not intersect at right angles, then the angle α between l_1 and l_2 (see Section 1.4) is given by the formula

$$\tan \alpha = \left|\frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2}\right|.$$

HINT: Derive the identity

$$\tan(\theta_1 - \theta_2) = \frac{\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2}{1 + \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2}$$

by expressing the right side in terms of sines and cosines.

Exercises 76–79. Find the point where the lines intersect and determine the angle between the lines.

76. $l_1: 4x - y - 3 = 0, \quad l_2: 3x - 4y + 1 = 0$.

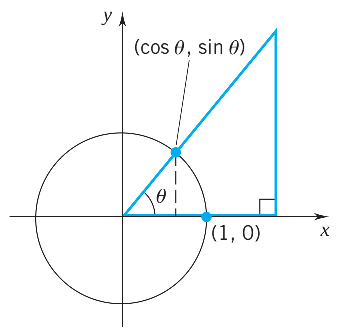
77. $l_1: 3x + y - 5 = 0, \quad l_2: 7x - 10y + 27 = 0$.

78. $l_1: 4x - y + 2 = 0, \quad l_2: 19x + y = 0$.

79. $l_1: 5x - 6y + 1 = 0, \quad l_2: 8x + 5y + 2 = 0$.

80. Show that the function $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational} \end{cases}$ is periodic but has no period.

81. Verify that, for angles θ between 0 and $\pi/2$, the definition of the trigonometric functions in terms of the unit circle and the definitions in terms of a right triangle are in agreement. HINT: Set the triangle as in the figure.



The setting for Exercises 82, 83, 84 is a triangle with sides *a*, *b*, *c* and opposite angles *A*, *B*, *C*.

82. Show that the area of the triangle is given by the formula $A = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin C$.

83. Confirm the law of sines:

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}.$$

HINT: Drop a perpendicular from one vertex to the opposite side and use the two right triangles formed.

84. Confirm the law of cosines:

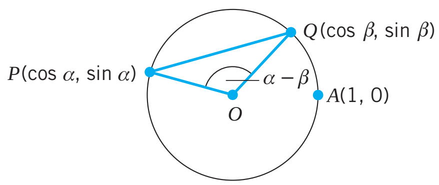
$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A.$$

HINT: Drop a perpendicular from angle B to side b and use the two right triangles formed.

85. Verify the identity

$$\cos(\alpha - \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta + \sin\alpha\sin\beta.$$

HINT: With P and Q as in the accompanying figure, calculate the length of $\overline{PQ}$ by applying the law of cosines.



86. Use Exercise 85 to show that

$$\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta.$$

87. Verify the following identities:

$$\sin(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \theta) = \cos\theta, \qquad \cos(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \theta) = \sin\theta.$$

88. Verify that

$$\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta.$$

HINT: $\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \cos[(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \alpha) - \beta]$.

89. Use Exercise 88 to show that

$$\sin(\alpha - \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\alpha\sin\beta.$$

90. It has been said that "all of trigonometry lies in the undulations of the sine wave." Explain.

C **91.** (a) Use a graphing utility to graph the polynomials

$$f(x) = x^4 + 2x^3 - 5x^2 - 3x + 1,$$
$$g(x) = -x^4 + x^3 + 4x^2 - 3x + 2.$$

(b) Based on your graphs in part (a), make a conjecture about the general shape of the graphs of polynomials of degree 4.

(c) Test your conjecture by graphing

$$f(x) = x^4 - 4x^2 + 4x + 2 \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = -x^4.$$

Conjecture a property shared by the graphs of all polynomials of the form

$$P(x) = x^4 + ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d.$$

Make an analogous conjecture for polynomials of the form.

$$Q(x) = -x^4 + ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d.$$

C **92.** (a) Use a graphing utility to graph the polynomials.

$$f(x) = x^5 - 7x^3 + 6x + 2,$$
$$g(x) = -x^5 + 5x^3 - 3x - 3.$$

(b) Based on your graphs in part (a), make a conjecture about the general shape of the graph of a polynomial of degree 5.

(c) Now graph

$$P(x) = x^5 + ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e$$

for several choices of a, b, c, d, e. (For example, try $a = b = c = d = e = 0$.) How do these graphs compare with your graph of f from part (a)?

C **93.** (a) Use a graphing utility to graph $f_A(x) = A\cos x$ for several values of A; use both positive and negative values. Compare your graphs with the graph of $f(x) = \cos x$.

(b) Now graph $f_B(x) = \cos Bx$ for several values of B. Since the cosine function is even, it is sufficient to use only positive values for B. Use some values between 0 and 1 and some values greater than 1. Again, compare your graphs with the graph of $f(x) = \cos x$.

(c) Describe the effects that the coefficients A and B have on the graph of the cosine function.

C **94.** Let $f_n(x) = x^n$, $n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots$.

(a) Using a graphing utility, draw the graphs of f_n for $n = 2, 4, 6$ in one figure, and in another figure draw the graphs of f_n for $n = 1, 3, 5$.

(b) Based on your results in part (a), make a general sketch of the graph of f_n for even n and for odd n.

(c) Given a positive integer k, compare the graphs of f_k and f_{k+1} on $[0, 1]$ and on $(1, \infty)$.

■ 1.7 COMBINATIONS OF FUNCTIONS

In this section we review the elementary ways of combining functions.

Algebraic Combinations of Functions

Here we discuss with some precision ideas that were used earlier without comment.

On the intersection of their domains, functions can be added and subtracted:

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x), \qquad (f - g)(x) = f(x) - g(x);$$

they can be multiplied:

$$(fg)(x) = f(x)g(x);$$

and, at the points where $g(x) \neq 0$, we can form the quotient:

$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)},$$

a special case of which is the reciprocal:

$$\left(\frac{1}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{1}{g(x)}.$$

Example 1 Let

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x+3} \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) = \sqrt{5-x} - 2.$$

(a) Give the domain of f and of g.
(b) Determine the domain of $f + g$ and specify $(f + g)(x)$.
(c) Determine the domain of f/g and specify $(f/g)(x)$.

SOLUTION

(a) We can form $\sqrt{x+3}$ iff $x + 3 \geq 0$, which holds iff $x \geq -3$. Thus $\text{dom}(f) = [-3, \infty)$. We can form $\sqrt{5-x} - 2$ iff $5 - x \geq 0$, which holds iff $x \leq 5$. Thus $\text{dom}(g) = (-\infty, 5]$.
(b) $\text{dom}(f + g) = \text{dom}(f) \cap \text{dom}(g) = [-3, \infty) \cap (-\infty, 5] = [-3, 5]$,

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = \sqrt{x+3} + \sqrt{5-x} - 2.$$

(c) To obtain the domain of the quotient, we must exclude from $[-3, 5]$ the numbers x at which $g(x) = 0$. There is only one such number: $x = 1$. Therefore

$$\text{dom}\left(\frac{f}{g}\right) = \{x \in [-3, 5] : x \neq 1\} = [-3, 1) \cup (1, 5],$$

$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\sqrt{x+3}}{\sqrt{5-x} - 2}. \quad \square$$

We can multiply functions f by real numbers α and form what are called *scalar multiples* of f:

$$(\alpha f)(x) = \alpha f(x).$$

With functions f and g and real numbers α and β, we can form *linear combinations*:

$$(\alpha f + \beta g)(x) = \alpha f(x) + \beta g(x).$$

These are just specific instances of the products and sums that we defined at the beginning of the section.

You have seen all these algebraic operations many times before:

(i) The polynomials are simply finite linear combinations of powers x^n, each of which is a finite product of identity functions $f(x) = x$. (Here we are taking the point of view that $x^0 = 1$.)
(ii) The rational functions are quotients of polynomials.
(iii) The secant and cosecant are reciprocals of the cosine and the sine.
(iv) The tangent and cotangent are quotients of sine and cosine.

Vertical Translations (Vertical Shifts) Adding a positive constant c to a function raises the graph by c units. Subtracting a positive constant c from a function lowers the graph by c units. (Figure 1.7.1.)

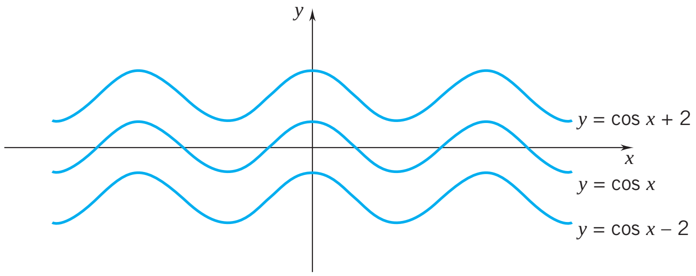


Figure 1.7.1

Composition of Functions

You have seen how to combine functions algebraically. There is another (probably less familiar) way to combine functions, called *composition*. To describe it, we begin with two functions, f and g, and a number x in the domain of g. By applying g to x, we get the number $g(x)$. If $g(x)$ is in the domain of f, then we can apply f to $g(x)$ and thereby obtain the number $f(g(x))$.

What is $f(g(x))$? It is the result of first applying g to x and then applying f to $g(x)$. The idea is illustrated in Figure 1.7.2. This new function—it takes x in the domain of g to $g(x)$ in the domain of f, and assigns to it the value $f(g(x))$—is called the *composition of f with g* and is denoted by $f \circ g$. (See Figure 1.7.3.) The symbol $f \circ g$ is read "f circle g."

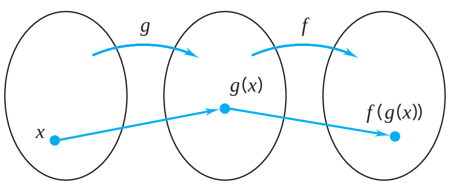


Figure 1.7.2

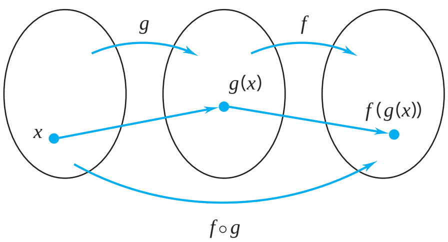


Figure 1.7.3

DEFINITION 1.7.1 COMPOSITION

Let f and g be functions. For those x in the domain of g for which $g(x)$ is in the domain of f, we define the *composition of f with g*, denoted $f \circ g$, by setting

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)).$$

In set notation,

$$\mathrm{dom}(f \circ g) = \{x \in \mathrm{dom}(g) : g(x) \in \mathrm{dom}(f)\}$$

Example 2 Suppose that

$$g(x) = x^2 \qquad \text{(the squaring function)}$$

and

$$f(x) = x + 3. \qquad \text{(the function that adds 3)}$$

Then

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = g(x) + 3 = x^2 + 3.$$

Thus, $f \circ g$ is the function that *first* squares and *then* adds 3.

On the other hand, the composition of g with f gives

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = (x + 3)^2.$$

Thus, $g \circ f$ is the function that *first* adds 3 and *then* squares.

Since f and g are everywhere defined, both $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$ are also everywhere defined. Note that $g \circ f$ is *not* the same as $f \circ g$. ❑

Example 3 Let $f(x) = x^2 - 1$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{3 - x}$.

The domain of g is $(-\infty, 3]$. Since f is everywhere defined, the domain of $f \circ g$ is also $(-\infty, 3]$. On that interval

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = \left(\sqrt{3 - x}\right)^2 - 1 = (3 - x) - 1 = 2 - x.$$

Since $g(f(x)) = \sqrt{3 - f(x)}$, we can form $g(f(x))$ only for those x in the domain of f for which $f(x) \le 3$. As you can verify, this is the set $[-2, 2]$. On $[-2, 2]$

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = \sqrt{3 - (x^2 - 1)} = \sqrt{4 - x^2}. \quad ❑$$

Horizontal Translations (Horizontal Shifts)

Adding a positive constant c to the argument of a function shifts the graph c units left: the function $g(x) = f(x + c)$ takes on at x the value that f takes on at $x + c$. Subtracting a positive constant c from the argument of a function shifts the graph c units to the right: the function $h(x) = f(x - c)$ takes on at x the value that f takes on at $x - c$. (See Figure 1.7.4.)

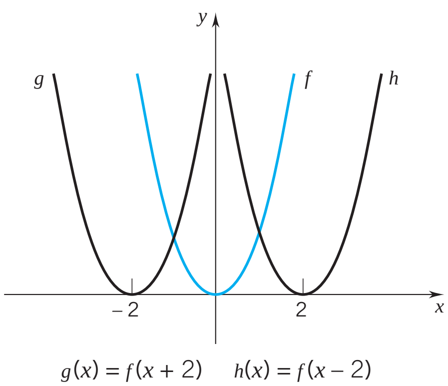


Figure 1.7.4

We can form the composition of more than two functions. For example, the triple composition $f \circ g \circ h$ consists of first h, then g, and then f:

$$(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = f[g(h(x))].$$

We can go on in this manner with as many functions as we like.

Example 4 If $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}, \quad g(x) = x^2 + 1, \quad h(x) = \cos x,$

then
$$(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = f[g(h(x))] = \frac{1}{g(h(x))} = \frac{1}{[h(x)]^2 + 1}$$
$$= \frac{1}{\cos^2 x + 1}. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Find functions f and g such that $f \circ g = F$ given that
$$F(x) = (x + 1)^5.$$

A SOLUTION The function consists of first adding 1 and then taking the fifth power. We can therefore set
$$g(x) = x + 1 \qquad \text{(adding 1)}$$
and
$$f(x) = x^5. \qquad \text{(taking the fifth power)}$$
As you can see,
$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = [g(x)]^5 = (x + 1)^5. \quad ❑$$

Example 6 Find three functions f, g, h such that $f \circ g \circ h = F$ given that
$$F(x) = \frac{1}{|x| + 3}.$$

A SOLUTION F takes the absolute value, adds 3, and then inverts. Let h take the absolute value:
$$\text{set} \qquad h(x) = |x|.$$
Let g add 3:
$$\text{set} \qquad g(x) = x + 3.$$
Let f do the inverting:
$$\text{set} \qquad f(x) = \frac{1}{x}.$$
With this choice of f, g, h, we have
$$(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = f[g(h(x))] = \frac{1}{g(h(x))} = \frac{1}{h(x) + 3} = \frac{1}{|x| + 3}. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 1.7

Exercises 1–8. Set $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x + 1$ and $g(x) = x^2 + 1/x$. Calculate the indicated value.

1. $(f + g)(2)$.
2. $(f - g)(-1)$.
3. $(f \cdot g)(-2)$.
4. $\left(\dfrac{f}{g}\right)(1)$.
5. $(2f - 3g)(\frac{1}{2})$.
6. $\left(\dfrac{f + 2g}{f}\right)(-1)$.
7. $(f \circ g)(1)$.
8. $(g \circ f)(1)$.

Exercises 9–12. Determine $f + g$, $f - g$, $f \cdot g$, f/g, and give the domain of each

9. $f(x) = 2x - 3, \ g(x) = 2 - x$.
10. $f(x) = x^2 - 1, \ g(x) = x + 1/x$.
11. $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 1}, \ g(x) = x - \sqrt{x + 1}$.
12. $f(x) = \sin^2 x, \ g(x) = \cos 2x$.

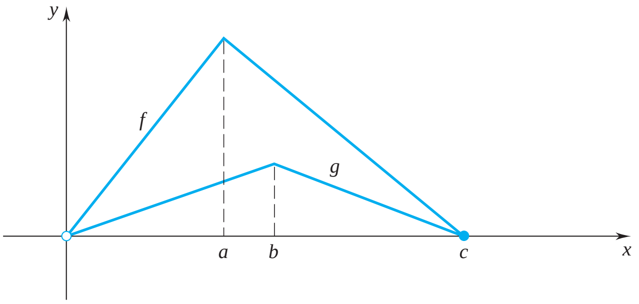
13. Given that $f(x) = x + 1/\sqrt{x}$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{x} - 2\sqrt{x}$, find (a) $6f + 3g$, (b) $f - g$, (c) f/g.

14. Given that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x, & x \le 1 \\ 2x - 1, & x > 1, \end{cases} \quad \text{and } g(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 2 \\ -1, & x \ge 2, \end{cases}$$

find $f + g$, $f - g$, $f \cdot g$. HINT: Break up the domains of the two functions in the same manner.

Exercises 15–22. Sketch the graph with f and g as shown in the figure.



15. $2g$.

16. $\frac{1}{2}f$.

17. $-f$.

18. $0 \cdot g$.

19. $-2g$.

20. $f + g$.

21. $f - g$.

22. $f + 2g$.

Exercises 23–30. Form the composition $f \circ g$ and give the domain.

23. $f(x) = 2x + 5, \quad g(x) = x^2$.

24. $f(x) = x^2, \quad g(x) = 2x + 5$.

25. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad g(x) = x^2 + 5$.

26. $f(x) = x^2 + x, \quad g(x) = \sqrt{x}$.

27. $f(x) = 1/x, \quad g(x) = (x - 2)/x$.

28. $f(x) = 1/(x - 1), \quad g(x) = x^2$.

29. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}, \quad g(x) = \cos 2x$.

30. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}, \quad g(x) = 2\cos x$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

Exercises 31–34. Form the composition $f \circ g \circ h$ and give the domain.

31. $f(x) = 4x, \quad g(x) = x - 1, \quad h(x) = x^2$.

32. $f(x) = x - 1, \quad g(x) = 4x, \quad h(x) = x^2$.

33. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}, \quad g(x) = \dfrac{1}{2x + 1}, \quad h(x) = x^2$.

34. $f(x) = \dfrac{x + 1}{x}, \quad g(x) = \dfrac{1}{2x + 1}, \quad h(x) = x^2$.

Exercises 35–38. Find f such that $f \circ g = F$ given that

35. $g(x) = \dfrac{1 + x^2}{1 + x^4}, \quad F(x) = \dfrac{1 + x^4}{1 + x^2}$.

36. $g(x) = x^2, \quad F(x) = ax^2 + b$.

37. $g(x) = 3x, \quad F(x) = 2\sin 3x$.

38. $g(x) = -x^2, \quad F(x) = \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$.

Exercises 39–42. Find g such that $f \circ g = F$ given that

39. $f(x) = x^3, \quad F(x) = \left(1 - 1/x^4\right)^2$.

40. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}, \quad F(x) = a^2x^2 + \dfrac{1}{a^2x^2}$.

41. $f(x) = x^2 + 1, \quad F(x) = (2x^3 - 1)^2 + 1$.

42. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad F(x) = \sin 1/x$.

Exercises 43–46. Find $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$.

43. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad g(x) = x^2$.

44. $f(x) = 3x + 1, \quad g(x) = x^2$.

45. $f(x) = 1 - x^2, \quad g(x) = \sin x$.

46. $f(x) = x^3 + 1, \quad g(x) = \sqrt[3]{x - 1}$.

47. Find g given that $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + c$.

48. Find f given that $(f \circ g)(x) = g(x) + c$.

49. Find g given that $(fg)(x) = cf(x)$.

50. Find f given that $(f \circ g)(x) = cg(x)$.

51. Take f as a function on $[0, a]$ with range $[0, b]$ and take g as defined below. Compare the graph of g with the graph of f; give the domain of g and the range of g.

(a) $g(x) = f(x - 3)$. (b) $g(x) = 3f(x + 4)$.
(c) $g(x) = f(2x)$. (d) $g(x) = f(\frac{1}{2}x)$.

52. Suppose that f and g are odd functions. What can you conclude about $f \cdot g$?

53. Suppose that f and g are even functions. What can you conclude about $f \cdot g$?

54. Suppose that f is an even function and g is an odd function. What can you conclude about $f \cdot g$?

55. For $x \ge 0$, f is defined as follows:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 1, & x > 1. \end{cases}$$

How is f defined for $x < 0$ if (a) f is even? (b) f is odd?

56. For $x \ge 0$, $f(x) = x^2 - x$. How is f defined for $x < 0$ if (a) f is even? (b) f is odd?

57. Given that f is defined for all real numbers, show that the function $g(x) = f(x) + f(-x)$ is an even function.

58. Given that f is defined for all real numbers, show that the function $h(x) = f(x) - f(-x)$ is an odd function.

59. Show that every function defined for all real numbers can be written as the sum of an even function and an odd function.

60. For $x \ne 0, 1$, define

$$f_1(x) = x, \quad f_2(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \quad f_3(x) = 1 - x,$$

$$f_4(x) = \frac{1}{1 - x}, \; f_5(x) = \frac{x - 1}{x}, \; f_6(x) = \frac{x}{x - 1}.$$

This family of functions is *closed* under composition; that is, the composition of any two of these functions is again one of these functions. Tabulate the results of composing these functions one with the other by filling in the table shown in the figure. To indicate that $f_i \circ f_j = f_k$, write "f_k" in the ith row, jth column. We have already made two entries in the table. Check out these two entries and then fill in the rest of the table.

	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4	f_5	f_6
f_1						
f_2						
f_3				f_6		
f_4			f_2			
f_5						
f_6						

Exercises 61–62. Set $f(x) = x^2 - 4$, $g(x) = \dfrac{3x}{2-x}$, $h(x) = \sqrt{x+4}$, and $k(x) = \dfrac{2x}{3+x}$. Use a CAS to find the indicated composition.

61. (*a*) $f \circ g$; (*b*) $g \circ k$; (*c*) $f \circ k \circ g$.

62. (*a*) $g \circ f$; (*b*) $k \circ g$; (*c*) $g \circ f \circ k$.

Exercises 63 and 64. Set $f(x) = x^2$ and $F(x) = (x-a)^2 + b$.

63. (a) Choose a value for a and, using a graphing utility, graph F for several different values of b. Be sure to choose both positive and negative values. Compare your graphs with the graph of f, and describe the effect that varying b has on the graph of F.

(b) Now fix a value of b and graph F for several values of a; again, use both positive and negative values. Compare your graphs with the graph of f, and describe the effect that varying a has on the graph of F.

(c) Choose values for a and b, and graph $-F$. What effect does changing the sign of F have on the graph?

64. For all values of a and b, the graph of F is a parabola which opens upward. Find values for a and b such that the parabola will have x-intercepts at $-\frac{3}{2}$ and 2. Verify your result algebraically.

Exercises 65–66. Set $f(x) = \sin x$.

65. (a) Using a graphing utility, graph cf for $c = -3, -2, -1, 2, 3$. Compare your graphs with the graph of f.

(b) Now graph $g(x) = f(cx)$ for $c = -3, -2, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{2}, 2, 3$. Compare your graphs with the graph of f.

66. (a) Using a graphing utility, graph $g(x) = f(x-c)$ for $c = -\frac{1}{2}\pi, -\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi, \pi, 2\pi$. Compare your graphs with the graph of f.

(b) Now graph $g(x) = af(bx - c)$ for several values of a, b, c. Describe the effect of a, the effect of b, the effect of c.

■ 1.8 A NOTE ON MATHEMATICAL PROOF; MATHEMATICAL INDUCTION

Mathematical Proof

The notion of proof goes back to Euclid's *Elements*, and the rules of proof have changed little since they were formulated by Aristotle. We work in a deductive system where truth is argued on the basis of assumptions, definitions, and previously proved results. We cannot claim that such and such is true without clearly stating the basis on which we make that claim.

A theorem is an implication; it consists of a hypothesis and a conclusion:

if (hypothesis) . . . , then (conclusion) . . . .

Here is an example:

If a and b are positive numbers, then ab is positive.

A common mistake is to ignore the hypothesis and persist with the conclusion: to insist, for example, that $ab > 0$ just because a and b are numbers.

Another common mistake is to confuse a theorem

$$\text{if } A, \text{ then } B$$

with its converse

$$\text{if } B, \text{ then } A.$$

The fact that a theorem is true does not mean that its converse is true: While it is true that

if a and b are positive numbers, then ab is positive,

it is *not* true that

if ab is positive, then a and b are positive numbers;

[$(-2)(-3)$ is positive but -2 and -3 are not positive].

A third, more subtle mistake is to assume that the hypothesis of a theorem represents the only condition under which the conclusion is true. There may well be other conditions under which the conclusion is true. Thus, for example, not only is it true that

if a and b are positive numbers, then ab is positive

but it is also true that

if a and b are negative numbers, then ab is positive.

In the event that a theorem

$$\text{if } A, \text{ then } B$$

and its converse

$$\text{if } B, \text{ then } A$$

are both true, then we can write

$$A \text{ if and only if } B \quad \text{or more briefly} \quad A \text{ iff } B.$$

We know, for example, that

$$\text{if} \quad x \geq 0, \qquad \text{then } |x| = x;$$

we also know that

$$\text{if} \quad |x| = x, \qquad \text{then } x \geq 0.$$

We can summarize this by writing

$$x \geq 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad |x| = x.$$

Remark We'll use "iff" frequently in this text but not in definitions. As stated earlier in a footnote, definitions are by their very nature *iff statements*. For example, we can say that "a number r is called a *zero* of P if $P(r) = 0$;" we don't have to say "a number r is called a *zero* of P iff $P(r) = 0$." In this situation, the "only if" part is taken for granted. ❑

A final point. One way of proving

$$\text{if } A, \text{ then } B$$

is to assume that

$$A \text{ holds and } B \text{ does not hold} \tag{1}$$

and then arrive at a contradiction. The contradiction is taken to indicate that (1) is a false statement and therefore

if A holds, then B must hold.

Some of the theorems of calculus are proved by this method.

Calculus provides procedures for solving a wide range of problems in the physical and social sciences. The fact that these procedures give us answers that seem to make sense is comforting, but it is only because we can prove our theorems that we can have confidence in the mathematics that is being applied. Accordingly, the study of calculus should include the study of some proofs.

Mathematical Induction

Mathematical induction is a method of proof which can be used to show that certain propositions are true for all positive integers n. The method is based on the following axiom:

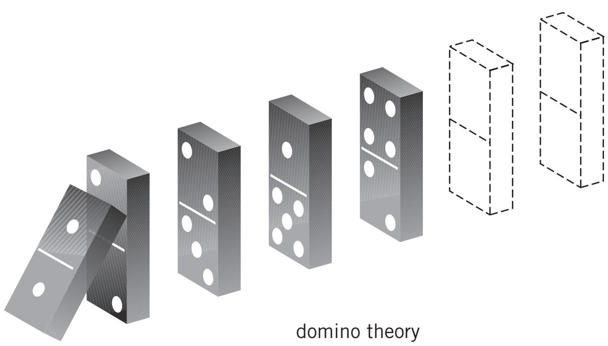
1.8.1 AXIOM OF INDUCTION

Let S be a set of positive integers. If

(A) $1 \in S$, and
(B) $k \in S$ implies that $k+1 \in S$,

then all the positive integers are in S.

You can think of the axiom of induction as a kind of "domino theory." If the first domino falls (Figure 1.8.1), and if each domino that falls causes the next one to fall, then, according to the axiom of induction, each domino will fall.



domino theory

Figure 1.8.1

While we cannot prove that this axiom is valid (axioms are by their very nature assumptions and therefore not subject to proof), we can argue that it is *plausible*.

Let's assume that we have a set S that satisfies conditions (A) and (B). Now let's choose a positive integer m and "argue" that $m \in S$.

From (A) we know that $1 \in S$. Since $1 \in S$, we know that $1+1 \in S$, and thus that $(1+1)+1 \in S$, and so on. Since m can be obtained from 1 by adding 1 successively $(m-1)$ times, it *seems clear* that $m \in S$.

To prove that a given proposition is true for *all* positive integers n, we let S be the set of positive integers for which the proposition is true. We prove first that $1 \in S$; that is, that the proposition is true for $n = 1$. Next we assume that the proposition is true for some positive integer k, and show that it is true for $k+1$; that is, we show that $k \in S$ implies that $k+1 \in S$. Then by the axiom of induction, we conclude that S contains the set of positive integers and therefore the proposition is true for all positive integers.

Example 1 We'll show that

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \quad \text{for all positive integers } n.$$

SOLUTION Let S be the set of positive integers n for which

$$1+2+3+\cdots+n=\frac{n(n+1)}{2}.$$

Then $1 \in S$ since

$$1=\frac{1(1+1)}{2}.$$

Next, we assume that $k \in S$; that is, we assume that

$$1+2+3\cdots+k=\frac{k(k+1)}{2}.$$

Adding up the first $k+1$ integers, we have

$$\begin{aligned}1+2+3+\cdots+k+(k+1)&=[1+2+3+\cdots+k]+(k+1)\\&=\frac{k(k+1)}{2}+(k+1) \qquad \text{(by the induction hypothesis)}\\&=\frac{k(k+1)+2(k+1)}{2}\\&=\frac{(k+1)(k+2)}{2},\end{aligned}$$

and so $k+1 \in S$. Thus, by the axiom of induction, we can conclude that all positive integers are in S; that is, we can conclude that

$$1+2+3+\cdots+n=\frac{n(n+1)}{2} \quad \text{for all positive integers } n. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 We'll show that, if $x \geq -1$, then

$$(1+x)^n \geq 1+nx \quad \text{for all positive integers } n.$$

SOLUTION We take $x \geq -1$ and let S be the set of positive integers n for which

$$(1+x)^n \geq 1+nx.$$

Since

$$(1+x)^1 = 1+1\cdot x,$$

we have $1 \in S$.

We now assume that $k \in S$. By the definition of S,

$$(1+x)^k \geq 1+kx.$$

Since

$$(1+x)^{k+1}=(1+x)^k(1+x) \geq (1+kx)(1+x) \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

and

$$(1+kx)(1+x)=1+(k+1)x+kx^2 \geq 1+(k+1)x,$$

we can conclude that

$$(1+x)^{k+1} \geq 1+(k+1)x$$

and thus that $k+1 \in S$.

We have shown that

$$1 \in S \qquad \text{and that} \qquad k \in S \qquad \text{implies} \qquad k+1 \in S.$$

By the axiom of induction, all positive integers are in S. ❑

Remark An induction does not have to begin with the integer 1. If, for example, you want to show that some proposition is true for all integers $n \geq 3$, all you have to do is show that it is true for $n = 3$, and that, if it is true for $n = k$, then it is true for $n = k + 1$. (Now you are starting the chain reaction by pushing on the third domino.) ❑

EXERCISES 1.8

Exercises 1–10. Show that the statement holds for all positive integers n.

1. $2n \leq 2^n$.

2. $1 + 2n \leq 3^n$.

3. $2^0 + 2^1 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^{n-1} = 2^n - 1$.

4. $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2$.

5. $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1)$.

6. $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \cdots + n^3 = (1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n)^2$.
HINT: Use Example 1.

7. $1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + (n-1)^3 < \frac{1}{4}n^4 < 1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + n^3$.

8. $1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + (n-1)^2 < \frac{1}{3}n^3 < 1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2$.

9. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}} + \cdots + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{n}} > \sqrt{n}$.

10. $\dfrac{1}{1 \cdot 2} + \dfrac{1}{2 \cdot 3} + \dfrac{1}{3 \cdot 4} + \cdots + \dfrac{1}{n(n+1)} = \dfrac{n}{n+1}$.

11. For what integers n is $3^{2n+1} + 2^{n+2}$ divisible by 7? Prove that your answer is correct.

12. For what integers n is $9^n - 8n - 1$ divisible by 64? Prove that your answer is correct.

13. Find a simplifying expression for the product

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right)\cdots\left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right)$$

and verify its validity for all integers $n \geq 2$.

14. Find a simplifying expression for the product

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{3^2}\right)\cdots\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)$$

and verify its validity for all integers $n \geq 2$.

15. Prove that an N-sided convex polygon has $\frac{1}{2}N(N - 3)$ diagonals. Take $N > 3$.

16. Prove that the sum of the interior angles in an N-sided convex polygon is $(N - 2)180°$. Take $N > 2$.

17. Prove that all sets with n elements have 2^n subsets. Count the empty set $\emptyset$ and the whole set as subsets.

18. Show that, given a unit length, for each positive integer n, a line segment of length $\sqrt{n}$ can be constructed by straight edge and compass.

19. Find the first integer n for which $n^2 - n + 41$ is *not* a prime number.

■ CHAPTER 1. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–4. Is the number rational or irrational?

1. 1.25.

2. $\sqrt{16/9}$.

3. $\sqrt{5} + 1$.

4. $1.001001001\ldots$.

Exercises 5–8. State whether the set is bounded above, bounded below, bounded. If the set is bounded above, give an upper bound; if it is bounded below, give a lower bound; if it is bounded, give an upper bound and a lower bound.

5. $S = \{1, 3, 5, 7, \cdots\}$.

6. $S = \{x : x \leq 1\}$.

7. $S = \{x : |x + 2| < 3\}$.

8. $S = \{(-1/n)^n : n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots\}$.

Exercises 9–12. Find the real roots of the equation.

9. $2x^2 + x - 1 = 0$.

10. $x^2 + 2x + 5 = 0$.

11. $x^2 - 10x + 25 = 0$.

12. $9x^3 - x = 0$.

Exercises 13–22. Solve the inequality. Express the solution as an interval or as the union of intervals. Mark the solution on a number line.

13. $5x - 2 < 0$.

14. $3x + 5 < \frac{1}{2}(4 - x)$.

15. $x^2 - x - 6 \geq 0$.

16. $x(x^2 - 3x + 2) \leq 0$.

17. $\dfrac{x+1}{(x+2)(x-2)} > 0$.

18. $\dfrac{x^2 - 4x + 4}{x^2 - 2x - 3} \leq 0$.

19. $|x - 2| < 1$.

20. $|3x - 2| \geq 4$.

21. $\left|\dfrac{2}{x+4}\right| > 2$

22. $\left|\dfrac{5}{x+1}\right| < 1$.

Exercises 23–24. (a) Find the distance between the points P, Q. (b) Find the midpoint of the line segment $\overline{PQ}$.

23. $P(2, -3)$, $Q(1, 4)$.

24. $P(-3, -4)$, $Q(-1, 6)$.

Exercises 25–28. Find an equation for the line that passes through the point $(2, -3)$ and is

25. parallel to the y-axis.

26. parallel to the line $y = 1$.

27. perpendicular to the line $2x - 3y = 6$.

28. parallel to the line $3x + 4y = 12$.

Exercises 29–30. Find the point where the lines intersect.

29. $l_1 : x - 2y = -4, \qquad l_2 : 3x + 4y = 3.$

30. $l_1 : 4x - y = -2, \qquad l_2 : 3x + 2y = 0.$

31. Find the point(s) where the line $y = 8x - 6$ intersects the parabola $y = 2x^2$.

32. Find an equation for the line tangent to the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 6y - 3 = 0$$

at the point $(2, 1)$.

Exercises 33–38. Give the domain and range of the function.

33. $f(x) = 4 - x^2$. **34.** $f(x) = 3x - 2$.

35. $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 4}$. **36.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{1 - 4x^2}$.

37. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 + 4x^2}$. **38.** $f(x) = |2x + 1|$.

Exercises 39–40. Sketch the graph and give the domain and range of the function.

39. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 4 - 2x, & x \leq 2 \\ x - 2, & x > 2 \end{cases}.$

40. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2, & x \leq 0 \\ 2 - x^2, & x > 0 \end{cases}.$

Exercises 41–44. Find the number(s) x in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ which satisfy the equation.

41. $\sin x = -\frac{1}{2}$. **42.** $\cos 2x = -\frac{1}{2}$.

43. $\tan(x/2) = -1$. **44.** $\sin 3x = 0$.

Exercises 45–48. Sketch the graph of the function.

45. $f(x) = \cos 2x$. **46.** $f(x) = -\cos 2x$.

47. $f(x) = 3\cos 2x$. **48.** $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}\cos 2x$.

Exercises 49–51. Form the combinations $f + g$, $f - g$, $f \cdot g$, f/g and specify the domain of combination.

49. $f(x) = 3x + 2, \quad g(x) = x^2 - 1.$

50. $f(x) = x^2 - 4, \quad g(x) = x + 1/x.$

51. $f(x) = \cos^2 x, \quad g(x) = \sin 2x, \quad \text{for } x \in [0, 2\pi].$

Exercises 52–54. Form the compositions $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$, and specify the domain of each of these combinations.

52. $f(x) = x^2 - 2x, \quad g(x) = x + 1.$

53. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 1}, \quad g(x) = x^2 - 5.$

54. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}, \quad g(x) = \sin 2x.$

55. (a) Write an equation in x and y for an arbitrary line l that passes through the origin.

(b) Verify that if $P(a, b)$ lies on l and α is a real number, then the point $Q(\alpha a, \alpha b)$ also lies on l.

(c) What additional conclusion can you draw if $\alpha > 0$? if $\alpha < 0$?

56. *The roots of a quadratic equation*. You can find the roots of a quadratic equation by resorting to the quadratic formula. The approach outlined below is more illuminating. Since division by the leading coefficient does not alter the roots of the equation, we can make the coefficient 1 and work with the equation

$$x^2 + ax + b = 0.$$

(a) Show that the equation $x^2 + ax + b = 0$ can be written as

$$(x - \alpha)^2 - \beta^2 = 0, \quad \text{or}$$
$$(x - \alpha)^2 = 0, \quad \text{or}$$
$$(x - \alpha)^2 + \beta^2 = 0.$$

HINT: Set $\alpha = -a/2$, complete the square, and go on from there.

(b) What are the roots of the equation $(x - \alpha)^2 - \beta^2 = 0$?

(c) What are the roots of the equation $(x - \alpha)^2 = 0$?

(d) Show that the equation $(x - \alpha)^2 + \beta^2 = 0$ has no real roots.

57. Knowing that

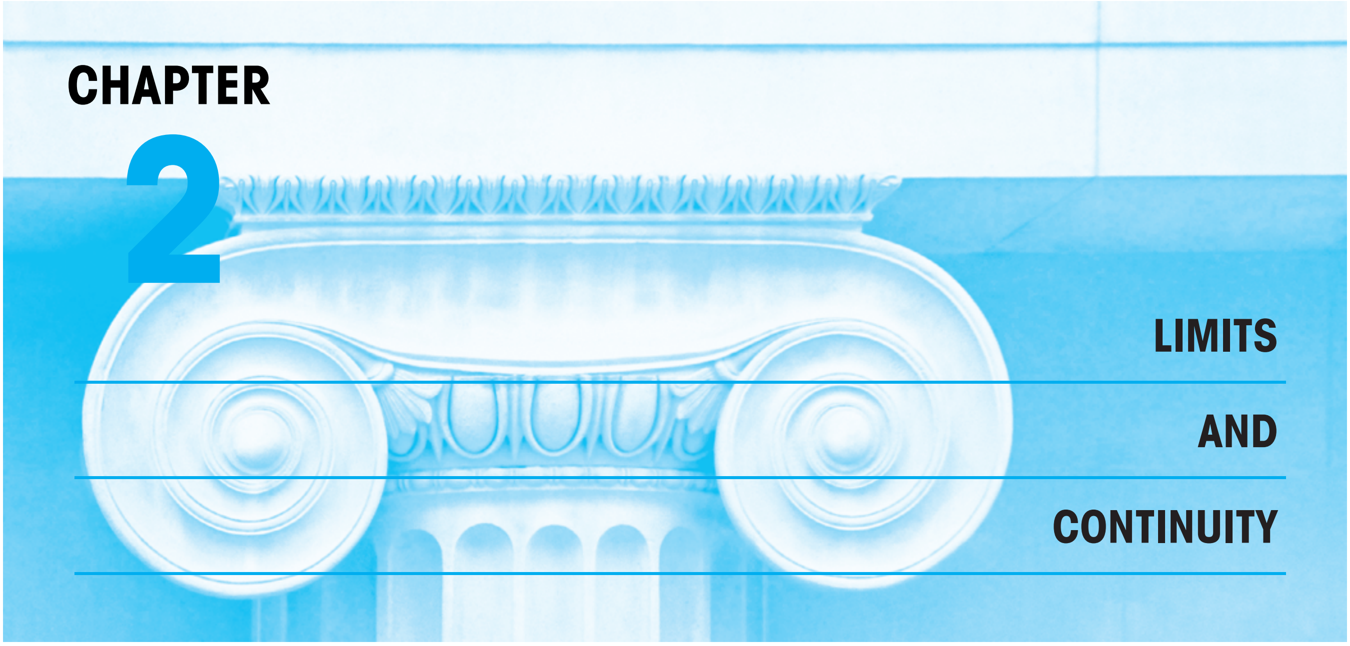
$$|a + b| \leq |a| + |b| \quad \text{for all real } a, b$$

show that

$$|a| - |b| \leq |a - b| \quad \text{for all real } a, b.$$

58. (a) Express the perimeter of a semicircle as a function of the diameter.

(b) Express the area of a semicircle as a function of the diameter.



CHAPTER 2

LIMITS AND CONTINUITY

2.1 THE LIMIT PROCESS (AN INTUITIVE INTRODUCTION)

We could begin by saying that limits are important in calculus, but that would be a major understatement. *Without limits, calculus would not exist. Every single notion of calculus is a limit in one sense or another*. For example,

What is the slope of a curve? It is the limit of slopes of secant lines. (Figure 2.1.1.)

What is the length of a curve? It is the limit of the lengths of polygonal paths inscribed in the curve. (Figure 2.1.2)

What is the area of a region bounded by a curve? It is the limit of the sum of areas of approximating rectangles. (Figure 2.1.3)

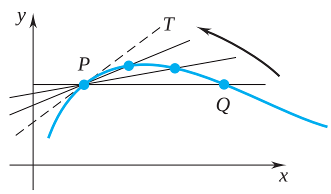


Figure 2.1.1

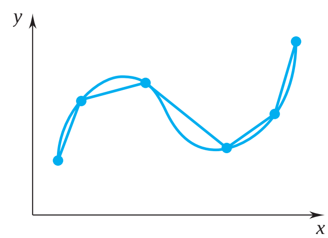


Figure 2.1.2

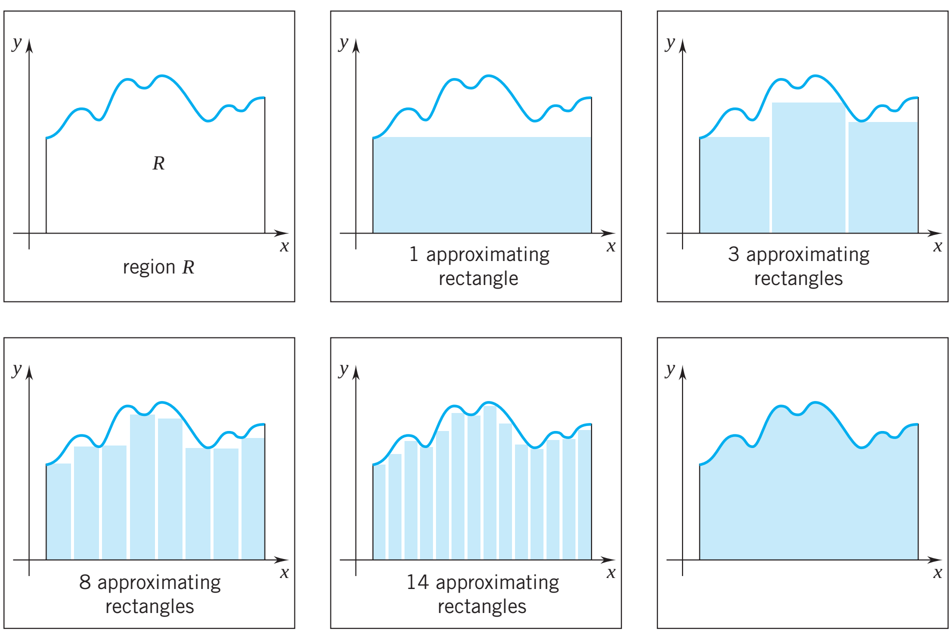


Figure 2.1.3

The Idea of Limit

Technically there are several limit processes, but they are all very similar. Once you master one of them, the others will pose few difficulties. The limit process that we start with is the one that leads to the notion of *continuity* and the notion of *differentiability*. At this stage our approach is completely informal. All we are trying to do here is lay an intuitive foundation for the mathematics that begins in Section 2.2

We start with a number c and a function f defined at all numbers x near c but not necessarily at c itself. In any case, whether or not f is defined at c and, if so, how is totally irrelevant.

Now let L be some real number. We say that *the limit of* $f(x)$ *as* x *tends to* c *is* L and write

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L$$

provided that (roughly speaking)

as x approaches c, f(x) approaches L

or (somewhat more precisely) provided that

$f(x)$ is close to L for all $x \neq c$ which are close to c.

Let's look at a few functions and try to apply this limit idea. Remember, our work at this stage is entirely intuitive.

Example 1 Set $f(x) = 4x + 5$ and take $c = 2$. As x approaches 2, $4x$ approaches 8 and $4x + 5$ approaches $8 + 5 = 13$. We conclude that

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) = 13. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Set $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}$ and take $c = -8$. As x approaches -8, $1 - x$ approaches 9 and $\sqrt{1 - x}$ approaches 3. We conclude that

$$\lim_{x \to -8} f(x) = 3.$$

If for that same function we try to calculate

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x),$$

we run into a problem. The function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}$ is defined only for $x \leq 1$. It is therefore not defined for x near 2, and the idea of taking the limit as x approaches 2 makes no sense at all:

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) \qquad \text{does not exist.} \quad \square$$

Example 3

$$\lim_{x \to 3} \frac{x^3 - 2x + 4}{x^2 + 1} = \frac{5}{2}.$$

First we work with the numerator: as x approaches 3, x^3 approaches 27, $-2x$ approaches -6, and $x^3 - 2x + 4$ approaches $27 - 6 + 4 = 25$. Now for the denominator: as x approaches 3, $x^2 + 1$ approaches 10. The quotient (it would seem) approaches $25/10 = 5/2$. $\square$

The curve in Figure 2.1.4 represents the graph of a function f. The number c is on the x-axis and the limit L is on the y-axis. As x approaches c along the x-axis, $f(x)$ approaches L along the y-axis.

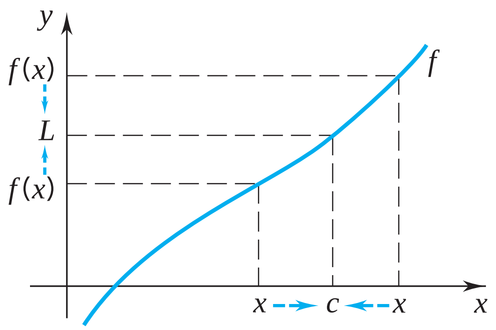


Figure 2.1.4

As we have tried to emphasize, in taking the limit of a function f as x tends to c, it does not matter whether f is defined at c and, if so, how it is defined there. The only thing that matters is the values taken on by f at numbers x near c. Take a look at the three cases depicted in Figure 2.1.5. In the first case, $f(c) = L$. In the second case, f is not defined at c. In the third case, f is defined at c, but $f(c) \neq L$. However, in each case

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L$$

because, as suggested in the figures,

as x approaches c, $f(x)$ approaches L.

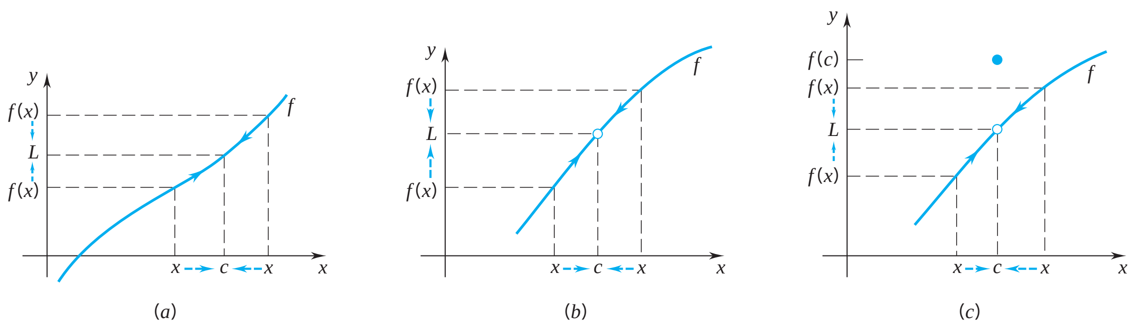


Figure 2.1.5

Example 4 Set $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x - 3}$ and let $c = 3$. Note that the function f is not defined at 3: at 3, both numerator and denominator are 0. But that doesn't matter. For $x \neq 3$, and therefore *for all x near* 3,

$$\frac{x^2 - 9}{x - 3} = \frac{(x - 3)(x + 3)}{x - 3} = x + 3.$$

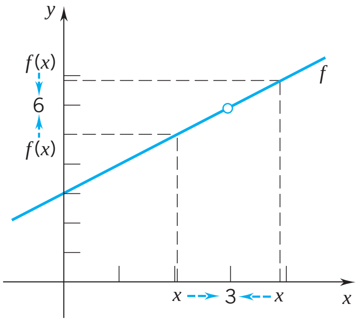


Figure 2.1.6

Therefore, if x is close to 3, then $\dfrac{x^2-9}{x-3} = x+3$ is close to $3+3=6$. We conclude that

$$\lim_{x\to 3} \frac{x^2-9}{x-3} = \lim_{x\to 3}(x+3) = 6.$$

The graph of f is shown in Figure 2.1.6. ❑

Example 5

$$\lim_{x\to 2} \frac{x^3-8}{x-2} = 12.$$

The function $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3-8}{x-2}$ is undefined at $x=2$. But, as we said before, that doesn't matter. For all $x \neq 2$,

$$\frac{x^3-8}{x-2} = \frac{(x-2)(x^2+2x+4)}{x-2} = x^2+2x+4.$$

Therefore,

$$\lim_{x\to 2} \frac{x^3-8}{x-2} = \lim_{x\to 2}(x^2+2x+4) = 12. \quad ❑$$

Example 6 If $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x-4, & x \neq 0 \\ 10, & x = 0, \end{cases}$ then $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = -4$.

It does not matter that $f(0) = 10$. For $x \neq 0$, and thus for all x near 0,

$$f(x) = 3x-4 \quad \text{and therefore} \quad \lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 0}(3x-4) = -4. \quad ❑$$

One-Sided Limits

Numbers x near c fall into two natural categories: those that lie to the left of c and those that lie to the right of c. We write

$$\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x) = L \qquad \text{[The left-hand limit of } f(x) \text{ as } x \text{ tends to } c \text{ is } L.]$$

to indicate that

as x approaches c from the left, f(x) approaches L.

We write

$$\lim_{x\to c^+} f(x) = L \qquad \text{[The right-hand limit of } f(x) \text{ as } x \text{ tends to } c \text{ is } L.]$$

to indicate that

as x approaches c from the right, f(x) approaches L.[†]

[†]The left-hand limit is sometimes written $\lim_{x\uparrow c} f(x)$ and the right-hand limit, $\lim_{x\downarrow c} f(x)$.

As an example, take the function indicated in Figure 2.1.7. As x approaches 5 from the left, $f(x)$ approaches 2; therefore

$$\lim_{x\to 5^-} f(x) = 2.$$

As x approaches 5 from the right, $f(x)$ approaches 4; therefore

$$\lim_{x\to 5^+} f(x) = 4.$$

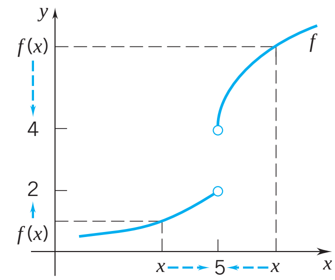


Figure 2.1.7

The full limit, $\lim_{x\to 5} f(x)$, does not exist: consideration of $x < 5$ would force the limit to be 2, but consideration of $x > 5$ would force the limit to be 4.

For a full limit to exist, both one-sided limits have to exist and they have to be equal.

Example 7 For the function f indicated in Figure 2.1.8,

$$\lim_{x\to(-2)^-} f(x) = 5 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to(-2)^+} f(x) = 5.$$

In this case

$$\lim_{x\to -2} f(x) = 5.$$

It does not matter that $f(-2) = 3$.

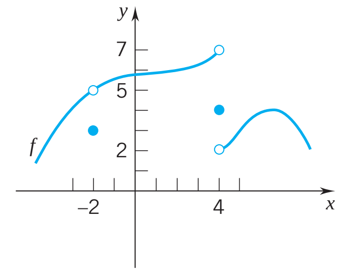


Figure 2.1.8

Examining the graph of f near $x = 4$, we find that

$$\lim_{x\to 4^-} f(x) = 7 \qquad \text{whereas} \qquad \lim_{x\to 4^+} f(x) = 2.$$

Since these one-sided limits are different,

$$\lim_{x\to 4} f(x) \qquad \text{does not exist.} \quad ❑$$

Example 8 Set $f(x) = x/|x|$. Note that $f(x) = 1$ for $x > 0$, and $f(x) = -1$ for $x < 0$:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } x > 0 \\ -1, & \text{if } x < 0. \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 2.1.9)}$$

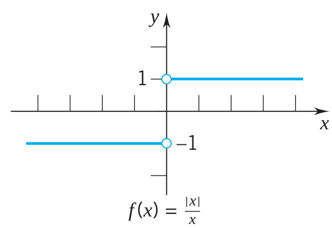


Figure 2.1.9

Let's try to apply the limit process at different numbers c.

If $c < 0$, then for all x sufficiently close to c, $x < 0$ and $f(x) = -1$. It follows that for $c < 0$

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = \lim_{x\to c} (-1) = -1.$$

If $c > 0$, then for all x sufficiently close to c, $x > 0$ and $f(x) = 1$. It follows that for $c < 0$

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = \lim_{x\to c} (1) = 1.$$

However, the function has no limit as x tends to 0:

$$\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x) = -1 \qquad \text{but} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = 1. \quad ❑$$

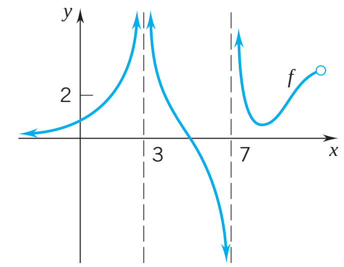


Figure 2.1.10

Example 9 We refer to the function indicated in Figure 2.1.10 and examine the behavior of $f(x)$ for x close to 3 and x close to 7.

As x approaches 3 from the left or from the right, $f(x)$ becomes arbitrarily large and cannot stay close to any number L. Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to 3} f(x) \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

As x approaches 7 from the left, $f(x)$ becomes arbitrarily large negative and cannot stay close to any number L. Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to 7} f(x) \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

The same conclusion can be reached by noting that as x approaches 7 from the right, $f(x)$ becomes arbitrarily large. ❑

Remark To indicate that $f(x)$ becomes arbitrarily large, we can write $f(x) \to \infty$. To indicate that $f(x)$ becomes arbitrarily large negative, we can write $f(x) \to -\infty$.

Go back to Figure 2.1.10, and note that for the function depicted there the following statements hold:

$$\text{as } x \to 3^-, \quad f(x) \to \infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{as } x \to 3^+, \quad f(x) \to \infty.$$

Consequently,

$$\text{as } x \to 3, \qquad f(x) \to \infty.$$

Also,

$$\text{as } x \to 7^-, \quad f(x) \to -\infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{as } x \to 7^+, \quad f(x) \to \infty.$$

We can therefore write

$$\text{as } x \to 7, \qquad |f(x)| \to \infty.$$ ❑

Example 10 We set

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x-2}$$

and examine the behavior of $f(x)$ (a) as x tends to 4 and then (b) as x tends to 2.

(a) As x tends to 4, $x - 2$ tends to 2 and the quotient tends to 1/2. Thus

$$\lim_{x\to 4} f(x) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

(b) As x tends to 2 from the left, $f(x) \to -\infty$. (See Figure 2.1.11.) As x tends to 2 from the right, $f(x) \to \infty$. The function can have no numerical limit as x tends to 2. Thus

$$\lim_{x\to 2} f(x) \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

However, it is true that

$$\text{as } x \to 2, \qquad |f(x)| \to \infty.$$ ❑

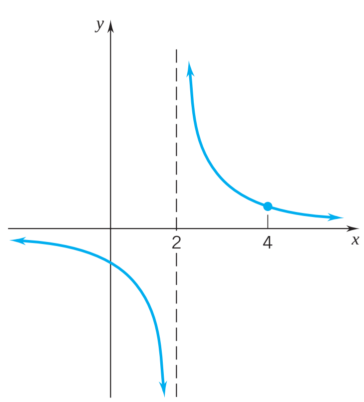


Figure 2.1.11

Example 11 Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x^2, & x < 1 \\ 1/(x-1), & x > 1. \end{cases}$

For $x < 1$, $f(x) = 1 - x^2$. Thus

$$\lim_{x \to 1^-} f(x) = 0.$$

For $x > 1$, $f(x) = 1/(x-1)$. Therefore, as $x \to 1^+$, $f(x) \to \infty$. The function has no numerical limit as $x \to 1$:

$$\lim_{x \to 1} f(x) \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

We now assert that

$$\lim_{x \to 1.5} f(x) = 2.$$

To see this, note that for x close to 1.5, $x > 1$ and therefore $f(x) = 1/(x-1)$. It follows that

$$\lim_{x \to 1.5} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 1.5} \frac{1}{x-1} = \frac{1}{0.5} = 2.$$

See Figure 2.1.12. ❑

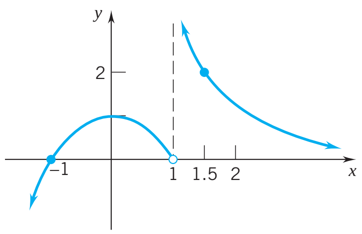


Figure 2.1.12

Example 12 Here we set $f(x) = \sin(\pi/x)$ and show that the function can have no limit as $x \to 0$.

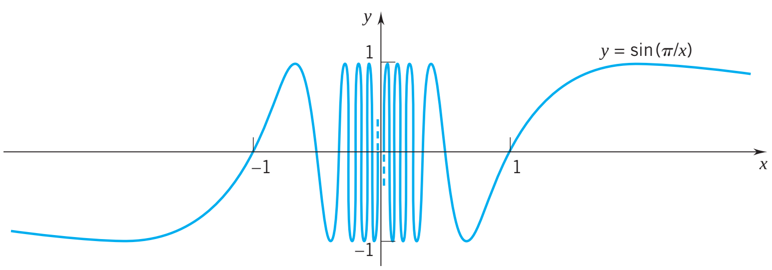


Figure 2.1.13

The function is not defined at $x = 0$, but, as you know, that's irrelevant. What keeps f from having a limit as $x \to 0$ is indicated in Figure 2.1.13. As $x \to 0$, $f(x)$ keeps oscillating between $y = 1$ and $y = -1$ and therefore cannot remain close to any one number L.† ❑

In our final example we rely on a calculator and deduce a limit from numerical calculation.

†We can approach $x = 0$

$$\text{by numbers } a_n = \frac{2}{4n+1} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{by numbers } b_n = -\frac{2}{4n+1},$$

$n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. As you can check, $f(a_n) = 1$ and $f(b_n) = -1$. This confirms the oscillatory behavior of f near $x = 0$.

Example 13 Let $f(x) = (\sin x)/x$. If we try to evaluate f at 0, we get the meaningless ratio 0/0; f is not defined at $x = 0$. However, f is defined for all $x \neq 0$, and so we can consider

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x}.$$

We select numbers that approach 0 closely from the left and numbers that approach 0 closely from the right. Using a calculator, we evaluate f at these numbers. The results are tabulated in Table 2.1.1.

Table 2.1.1

(Left side)		(Right side)	
x (radians)	$\frac{\sin x}{x}$	x (radians)	$\frac{\sin x}{x}$
−1	0.84147	1	0.84147
−0.5	0.95885	0.5	0.95885
−0.1	0.99833	0.1	0.99833
−0.01	0.99998	0.01	0.99998
−0.001	0.99999	0.001	0.99999

These calculations suggest that

$$\lim_{x \to 0^-} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

and therefore that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1.$$

The graph of f, shown in Figure 2.1.14, supports this conclusion. A proof that this limit is indeed 1 is given in Section 2.5. ❑

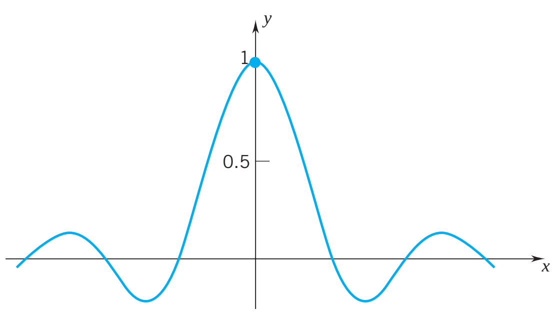


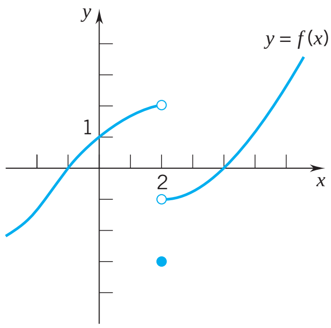
Figure 2.1.14

If you have found all this to be imprecise, you are absolutely right. Our work so far has been imprecise. In Section 2.2 we will work with limits in a more coherent manner.

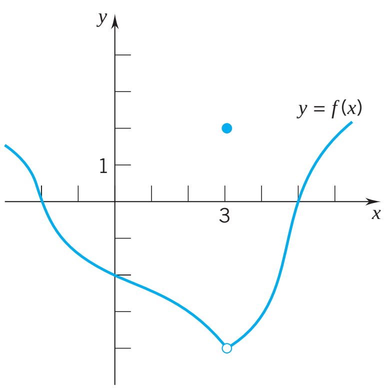
EXERCISES 2.1

Exercises 1–10. You are given a number c and the graph of a function f. Use the graph to find
(a) $\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x\to c^+} f(x)$ (c) $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ (d) $f(c)$

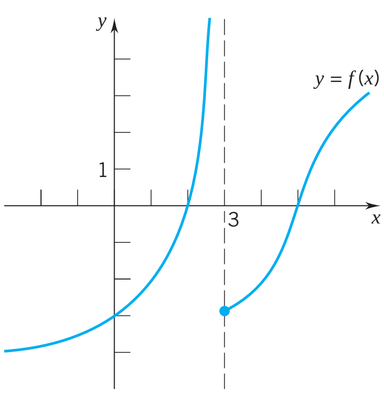
1. $c = 2$.



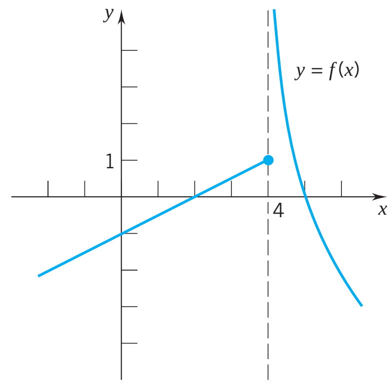
2. $c = 3$.



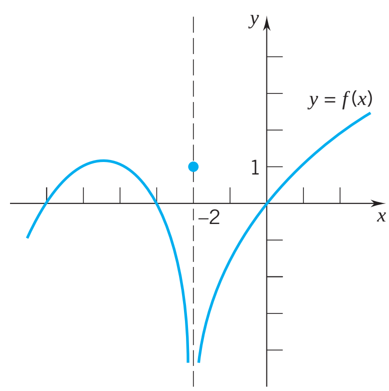
3. $c = 3$.



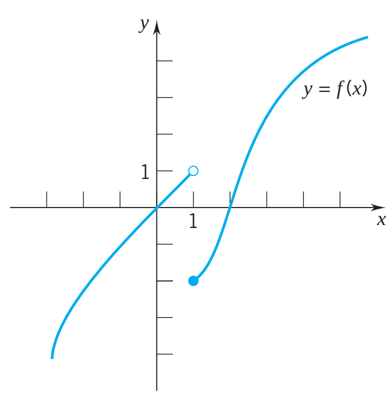
4. $c = 4$.



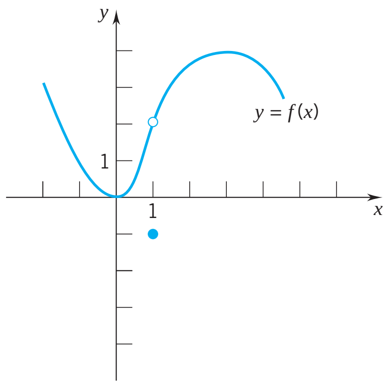
5. $c = -2$.



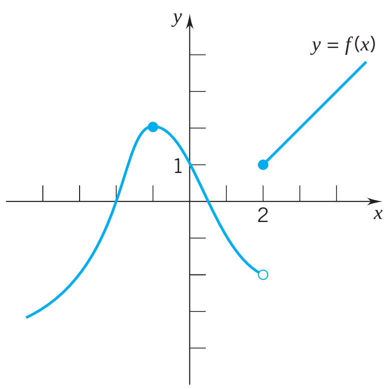
6. $c = 1$.



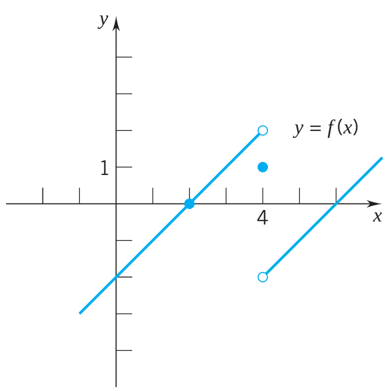
7. $c = 1$.



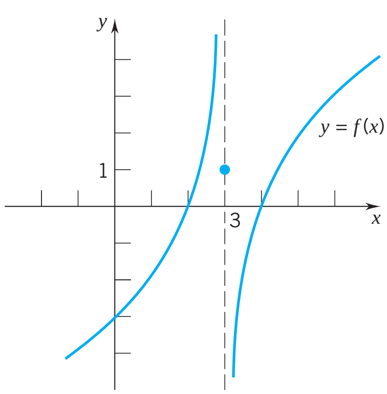
8. $c = -1$.



9. $c = 2$.

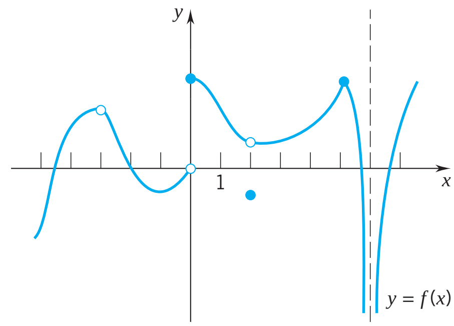


10. $c = 3$.

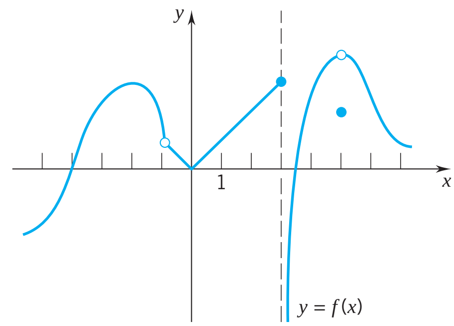


Exercises 11–12. Give the values of c for which $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ does not exist.

11.



12.



Exercises 13–49. Decide on intuitive grounds whether or not the indicated limit exists; evaluate the limit if it does exist.

13. $\lim_{x\to 0}(2x - 1)$.

14. $\lim_{x\to 1}(2 - 5x)$.

15. $\lim_{x\to -2}(x^2 - 2x + 4)$.

16. $\lim_{x\to 4}\sqrt{x^2 + 2x + 1}$.

17. $\lim_{x\to -3}(|x| - 2)$.

18. $\lim_{x\to 0}\dfrac{1}{|x|}$.

19. $\lim_{x\to 1}\dfrac{3}{x+1}$.

20. $\lim_{x\to -1}\dfrac{4}{x+1}$.

21. $\lim_{x\to -1}\dfrac{-2}{x+1}$.

22. $\lim_{x\to 2}\dfrac{1}{3x-6}$.

23. $\lim_{x\to 3}\dfrac{2x-6}{x-3}$.

24. $\lim_{x\to 3}\dfrac{x^2-6x+9}{x-3}$.

25. $\lim_{x\to 3}\dfrac{x-3}{x^2-6x+9}$.

26. $\lim_{x\to 2}\dfrac{x^2-3x+2}{x-2}$.

27. $\lim_{x\to 2}\dfrac{x-2}{x^2-3x+2}$.

28. $\lim_{x\to 1}\dfrac{x-2}{x^2-3x+2}$.

29. $\lim_{x\to 0}\left(x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)$.

30. $\lim_{x\to 1}\left(x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)$.

31. $\lim_{x\to 0}\dfrac{2x-5x^2}{x}$.

32. $\lim_{x\to 3}\dfrac{x-3}{6-2x}$.

33. $\lim_{x\to 1}\dfrac{x^2-1}{x-1}$.

34. $\lim_{x\to 1}\dfrac{x^3-1}{x-1}$.

35. $\lim_{x\to 1}\dfrac{x^3-1}{x+1}$.

36. $\lim_{x\to 1}\dfrac{x^2+1}{x^2-1}$.

37. $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \neq 0 \\ 3, & x = 0. \end{cases}$

38. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x, & x < 1 \\ 3, & x > 1. \end{cases}$

39. $\lim_{x\to 4} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \neq 4 \\ 0, & x = 4. \end{cases}$

40. $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & x < 0 \\ x^2, & x > 0. \end{cases}$

41. $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x < 0 \\ 1+x, & x > 0. \end{cases}$

42. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x, & x < 1 \\ x^2+1, & x > 1. \end{cases}$

43. $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x, & x < 1 \\ x+2, & x \geq 1. \end{cases}$

44. $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x, & x \leq 1 \\ x+1, & x > 1. \end{cases}$

45. $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 2, & x \text{ rational} \\ -2, & x \text{ irrational.} \end{cases}$

46. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$; $\quad f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x, & x \text{ rational} \\ 2, & x \text{ irrational.} \end{cases}$

47. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+1}-\sqrt{2}}{x-1}$.

48. $\lim_{x\to 5} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+5}-\sqrt{30}}{x-5}$.

49. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x^2+1}{\sqrt{2x+2}-2}$.

Exercises 50–54. After estimating the limit using the prescribed values of x, validate or improve your estimate by using a graphing utility.

50. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1-\cos x}{x} \qquad \text{(radian measure)}$$

by evaluating the quotient at $x = \pm 1, \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01, \pm 0.001$.

51. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\tan 2x}{x} \qquad \text{(radian measure)}$$

by evaluating the quotient at $x = \pm 1, \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01, \pm 0.001$.

52. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x-\sin x}{x^3} \qquad \text{(radian measure)}$$

after evaluating the quotient at $x = \pm 1, \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01, \pm 0.001, \pm 0.0001$.

53. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{x^{3/2}-1}{x-1}$$

by evaluating the quotient at $x = 0.9, 0.99, 0.99, 0.9999$ and at $x = 1.1, 1.01, 1.001, 1.0001$.

54. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{2\cos x - 2 + x^2}{x^4} \qquad \text{(radian measure)}$$

by evaluating the quotient at $x = \pm 1, \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01, \pm 0.0001, \pm 0.0001$.

55. (a) Use a graphing utility to estimate $\lim_{x\to 4} f(x)$:

(i) $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2-11x+12}{x-4}$;

(ii) $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2-11x+12}{x^2-8x+16}$.

(b) Use a CAS to find each of the limits in part (a).

56. (a) Use a graphing utility to estimate $\lim_{x\to 4} f(x)$:

(i) $f(x) = \dfrac{3x^2-10x-8}{5x^2+16x-16}$;

(ii) $f(x) = \dfrac{5x^2-26x+24}{4x^2-11x-20}$.

(b) Use a CAS to find each of the limits in part (a).

57. (a) Use a graphing utility to estimate $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$:

(i) $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{6-x}-x}{x-2}$; $\quad$ (ii) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-4x+4}{x-\sqrt{6-x}}$.

(b) Use a CAS to find each of the limits in part (a).

58. (a) Use a graphing utility to estimate $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$

(i) $f(x) = \dfrac{2x-\sqrt{18-x}}{4-x^2}$; $\quad$ (ii) $f(x) = \dfrac{2-\sqrt{2x}}{\sqrt{8x}-4}$.

(b) Use a CAS to find each of the limits in part (a).

Exercises 59–62. Use a graphing utility to find at least one number c at which $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ does not exist.

59. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{|x^3+1|}$.

60. $f(x) = \dfrac{|6x^2-x-35|}{2x-5}$.

61. $f(x) = \dfrac{|x|}{x^5+2x^4+13x^3+26x^2+36x+72}$.

62. $f(x) = \dfrac{5x^3-22x^2+15x+18}{x^3-9x^2+27x-27}$.

63. Use a graphing utility to draw the graphs of

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}\sin x \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) = x\sin\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)$$

for $x \neq 0$ between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$. Describe the behavior of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ for x close to 0.

64. Use a graphing utility to draw the graphs of

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}\tan x \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) = x\tan\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)$$

for $x \neq 0$ between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$. Describe the behavior of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ for x close to 0.

2.2 DEFINITION OF LIMIT

In Section 2.1 we tried to give you an intuitive feeling for the limit process. However, our description was too vague to be called "mathematics." We relied on statements such as

"as x approaches c, $f(x)$ approaches L"

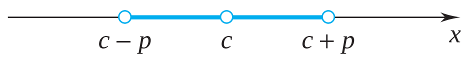
and

"$f(x)$ is close to L for all $x \neq c$ which are close to c."

But what exactly do these statements mean? What are we saying by stating that "$f(x)$ approaches L"? How close is close?

In this section we formulate the limit process in a coherent manner and, by so doing, establish a foundation for more advanced work.

As before, in taking the limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches c, we don't require that f be defined at c, but we do require that f be defined at least on an open interval $(c - p, c + p)$ except possibly at c itself.



To say that

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L$$

is to say that $|f(x) - L|$ can be made as small as we choose, *less than any* $\epsilon > 0$ *we choose*, by restricting x to a sufficiently small set of the form $(c - \delta, c) \cup (c, c + \delta)$, *by restricting x by an inequality of the form* $0 < |x - c| < \delta$ *with* $\delta > 0$ *sufficiently small*.

Phrasing this idea precisely, we have the following definition.

DEFINITION 2.2.1 THE LIMIT OF A FUNCTION

Let f be a function defined at least on an open interval $(c - p, c + p)$ except possibly at c itself. We say that

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L$$

if for each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - L| < \epsilon.$$

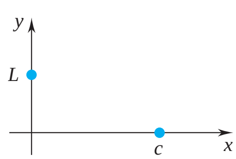


Figure 2.2.1

Figures 2.2.1 and 2.2.2 illustrate this definition.

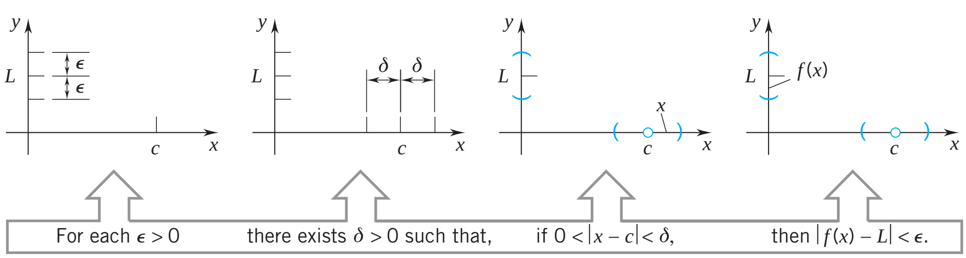


Figure 2.2.2

Except in the case of a constant function, the choice of δ depends on the previous choice of ϵ. We do not require that there exists a number δ which "works" for *all* ϵ, but rather, that for each ϵ there exists a δ which "works" for that particular ϵ.

In Figure 2.2.3, we give two choices of ϵ and for each we display a suitable δ. For a δ to be suitable, all points within δ of c (with the possible exception of c itself) must be taken by the function f to within ϵ of L. In part (b) of the figure, we began with a smaller ϵ and had to use a smaller δ.

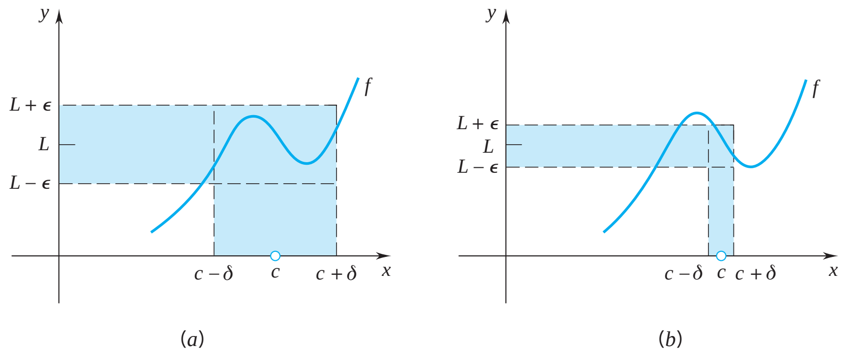


Figure 2.2.3

The δ of Figure 2.2.4 is too large for the given ϵ. In particular, the points marked x_1 and x_2 in the figure are not taken by f to within ϵ of L.

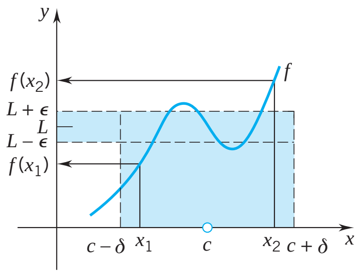


Figure 2.2.4

As these illustrations suggest, the limit process can be described entirely in terms of open intervals. (See Figure 2.2.5.)

(2.2.2)

> Let f be defined at least on an open interval $(c - p, c + p)$ except possibly at c itself. We say that
>
> $$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L$$
>
> if for each open interval $(L - \epsilon, L + \epsilon)$ there is an open interval $(c - \delta, c + \delta)$ such that all the numbers in $(c - \delta, c + \delta)$, with the possible exception of c itself, are mapped by f into $(L - \epsilon, L + \epsilon)$.

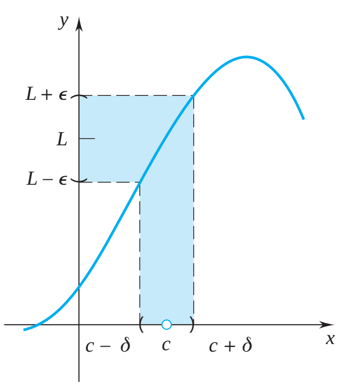


Figure 2.2.5

Next we apply the ϵ, δ definition of limit to a variety of functions. At first you may find the ϵ, δ arguments confusing. It usually takes a little while for the ϵ, δ idea to take hold.

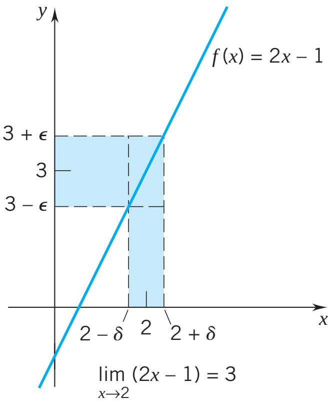


Figure 2.2.6

Example 1 Show that

$$\lim_{x\to 2}(2x-1)=3. \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.6)}$$

Finding a δ. Let $\epsilon > 0$. We seek a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x-2| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |(2x-1)-3| < \epsilon.$$

What we have to do first is establish a connection between

$$|(2x-1)-3| \quad \text{and} \quad |x-2|.$$

The connection is evident:

$$(*) \qquad |(2x-1)-3| = |2x-4| = 2|x-2|.$$

To make $|(2x-1)-3|$ less than ϵ, we need to make $2|x-2| < \epsilon$, which we can accomplish by making $|x-2| < \epsilon/2$. This suggests that we choose $\delta = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon$.

Showing that the δ *"works."* If $0 < |x-2| < \frac{1}{2}\epsilon$, then $2|x-2| < \epsilon$ and, by $(*)$, $|(2x-1)-3| < \epsilon$. ❑

Remark In Example 1 we chose $\delta = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon$, but we could have chosen *any* positive number δ less than $\frac{1}{2}\epsilon$. In general, if a certain δ^* "works" for a given ϵ, then any δ less than δ^* will also work. ❑

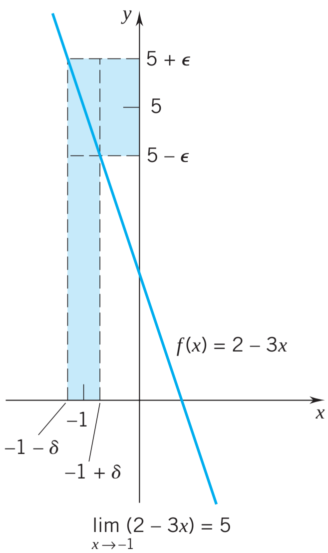


Figure 2.2.7

Example 2 Show that

$$\lim_{x\to -1}(2-3x)=5. \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.7)}$$

Finding a δ. Let $\epsilon > 0$. We seek a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x-(-1)| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |(2-3x)-5| < \epsilon.$$

To find a connection between

$$|x-(-1)| \quad \text{and} \quad |(2-3x)-5|,$$

we simplify both expressions:

$$|x-(-1)| = |x+1|$$

and

$$|(2-3x)-5| = |-3x-3| = |-3||x+1| = 3|x+1|.$$

We can conclude that

$$(**) \qquad |(2-3x)-5| = 3|x-(-1)|.$$

We can make the expression on the left less than ϵ by making $|x-(-1)|$ less than $\epsilon/3$. This suggests that we set $\delta = \frac{1}{3}\epsilon$.

Showing that the δ *"works."* If $0 < |x-(-1)| < \frac{1}{3}\epsilon$, then $3|x-(-1)| < \epsilon$ and, by $(**)$, $|(2-3x)-5| < \epsilon$. ❑

Three Basic Limits

Here we apply the ϵ, δ method to confirm three basic limits that are intuitively obvious. (If the ϵ, δ method did not confirm these limits, then the method would have been thrown out a long time ago.)

Example 3 For each number c,

(2.2.3)
$$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c} x = c.}$$
(Figure 2.2.8)

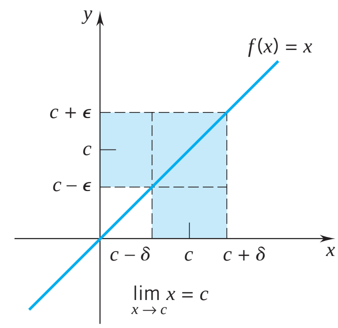


Figure 2.2.8

PROOF Let c be a real number and let $\epsilon > 0$. We must find a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |x - c| < \epsilon.$$

Obviously we can choose $\delta = \epsilon$. ❑

Example 4 For each real number c

(2.2.4)
$$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c} |x| = |c|.}$$
(Figure 2.2.9)

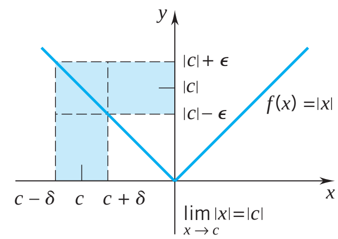


Figure 2.2.9

PROOF Let c be a real number and let $\epsilon > 0$. We seek a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \big||x| - |c|\big| < \epsilon.$$

Since

$$\big||x| - |c|\big| \le |x - c|, \qquad [(1.3.7)]$$

we can choose $\delta = \epsilon$, for

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \epsilon, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \big||x| - |c|\big| < \epsilon. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 For each constant k

(2.2.5)
$$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c} k = k.}$$
(Figure 2.2.10)

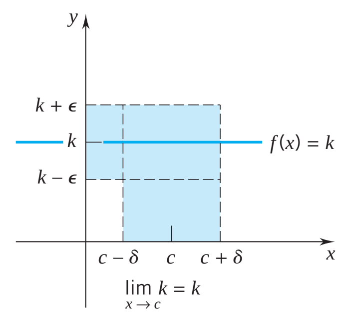


Figure 2.2.10

PROOF Here we are dealing with the constant function

$$f(x) = k.$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. We must find a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |k - k| < \epsilon.$$

Since $|k - k| = 0$, we always have

$$|k - k| < \epsilon$$

no matter how δ is chosen; in short, any positive number will do for δ. ❑

Usually ϵ, δ arguments are carried out in two stages. First we do a little scratch work, labeled "finding a δ" in Examples 1 and 2. This scratch work involves working backward from $|f(x) - L| < \epsilon$ to find a $\delta > 0$ sufficiently small so that we can begin with the inequality $0 < |x - c| < \delta$ and arrive at $|f(x) - L| < \epsilon$. This first stage is

just preliminary, but it shows us how to proceed in the second stage. The second stage consists of showing that the δ "works" by verifying that, for our choice of δ, it is true that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \epsilon.$$

The next two examples will give you a better feeling for this idea of working backward to find a δ.

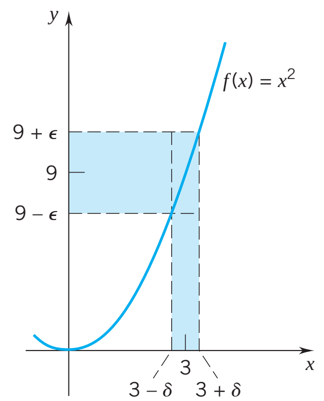


Figure 2.2.11

Example 6

$$\lim_{x \to 3} x^2 = 9 \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.11)}$$

Finding a δ. Let $\epsilon > 0$. We seek a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |x^2 - 9| < \epsilon.$$

The connection between $|x - 3|$ and $|x^2 - 9|$ can be found by factoring:

$$x^2 - 9 = (x + 3)(x - 3),$$

and thus,

$$(*) \qquad |x^2 - 9| = |x + 3||x - 3|.$$

At this point, we need to get an estimate for the size of $|x + 3|$ for x close to 3. For convenience, we'll take x within one unit of 3.

If $|x - 3| < 1$, then $2 < x < 4$ and

$$|x + 3| \le |x| + |3| = x + 3 < 7.$$

Therefore, by $(*)$,

$$(**) \qquad \text{if} \quad |x - 3| < 1, \quad \text{then} \quad |x^2 - 9| < 7|x - 3|.$$

If, in addition, $|x - 3| < \epsilon/7$, then it will follow that

$$|x^2 - 9| < 7(\epsilon/7) = \epsilon.$$

This means that we can let $\delta =$ the minimum of 1 and $\epsilon/7$.

Showing that the δ *"works."* Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \min\{1, \epsilon/7\}$ and assume that

$$0 < |x - 3| < \delta.$$

Then

$$|x - 3| < 1 \quad \text{and} \quad |x - 3| < \epsilon/7.$$

By $(**)$,

$$|x^2 - 9| < 7|x - 3|,$$

and since $|x - 3| < \epsilon/7$, we have

$$|x^2 - 9| < 7(\epsilon/7) = \epsilon. \quad \square$$

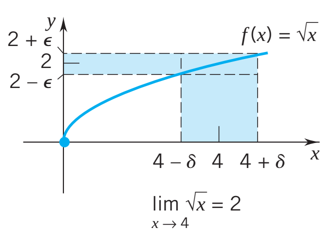


Figure 2.2.12

Example 7

$$\lim_{x \to 4} \sqrt{x} = 2. \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.12)}$$

Finding a δ. Let $\epsilon > 0$. We seek a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 4| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |\sqrt{x} - 2| < \epsilon.$$

To be able to form $\sqrt{x}$, we need to have $x \geq 0$. To ensure this, we must have $\delta \leq 4$. (Explain.)

Remembering that we must have $\delta \leq 4$, let's move on to find a connection between $|x-4|$ and $|\sqrt{x}-2|$. With $x \geq 0$, we can form $\sqrt{x}$ and write

$$x - 4 = (\sqrt{x})^2 - 2^2 = (\sqrt{x}+2)(\sqrt{x}-2).$$

Taking absolute values, we have

$$|x-4| = |\sqrt{x}+2||\sqrt{x}-2|.$$

Since $|\sqrt{x}+2| \geq 2 > 1$, it follows that

$$|\sqrt{x}-2| < |x-4|.$$

This last inequality suggests that we can simply set $\delta \leq \epsilon$. But remember the requirement $\delta \leq 4$. We can meet both requirements on δ by setting $\delta =$ the minimum of 4 and ϵ.

Showing that the δ "works." Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \min\{4, \epsilon\}$ and assume that

$$0 < |x-4| < \delta.$$

Since $\delta \leq 4$, we have $x \geq 0$, and so $\sqrt{x}$ is defined. Now, as shown above,

$$|x-4| = |\sqrt{x}+2||\sqrt{x}-2|.$$

Since $|\sqrt{x}+2| \geq 2 > 1$, we can conclude that

$$|\sqrt{x}-2| < |x-4|.$$

Since $|x-4| < \delta$ and $\delta \leq \epsilon$, it does follow that $|x-2| < \epsilon$. ❑

There are several different ways of formulating the same limit statement. Sometimes one formulation is more convenient, sometimes another. In particular, it is useful to recognize that the following four statements are equivalent:

(2.2.6)

$$\text{(i)}\ \lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L \qquad \text{(ii)}\ \lim_{h\to 0} f(c+h) = L$$
$$\text{(iii)}\ \lim_{x\to c}(f(x)-L) = 0 \qquad \text{(iv)}\ \lim_{x\to c} |f(x)-L| = 0.$$

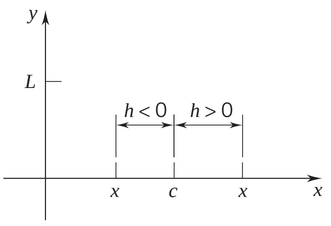


Figure 2.2.13

The equivalence of (i) and (ii) is illustrated in Figure 2.2.13: simply think of h as being the signed distance from c to x. Then $x = c + h$, and x approaches c iff h approaches 0. It is a good exercise in ϵ, δ technique to prove that (i) is equivalent to (ii).

Example 8 For $f(x) = x^2$, we have

$$\lim_{x\to 3} x^2 = 9 \qquad \lim_{h\to 0}(3+h)^2 = 9$$
$$\lim_{x\to 3}(x^2-9) = 0 \qquad \lim_{x\to 3}|x^2-9| = 0. \quad ❑$$

We come now to the ϵ, δ definitions of one-sided limits. These are just the usual ϵ, δ statements, except that for a left-hand limit, the δ has to "work" only for x to the left of c, and for a right-hand limit, the δ has to "work" only for x to the right of c.

DEFINITION 2.2.7 LEFT-HAND LIMIT

Let f be a function defined at least on an open interval of the form $(c - p, c)$. We say that

$$\lim_{x \to c^-} f(x) = L$$

if for each $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad c - \delta < x < c, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - L| < \epsilon.$$

DEFINITION 2.2.8 RIGHT-HAND LIMIT

Let f be a function defined at least on an open interval of the form $(c, c + p)$. We say that

$$\lim_{x \to c^+} f(x) = L$$

if for each $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad c < x < c + \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - L| < \epsilon.$$

As our intuitive approach in Section 2.1 suggested,

(2.2.9) $$\boxed{\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L \qquad \text{iff} \qquad \lim_{x \to c^-} f(x) = L \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to c^+} f(x) = L.}$$

The result follows from the fact that any δ that "works" for the limit will work for both one-sided limits, and any δ that "works" for both one-sided limits will work for the limit.

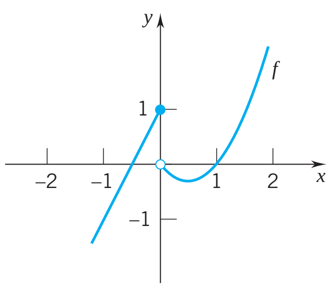


Figure 2.2.14

Example 9 For the function defined by setting

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 1, & x \le 0 \\ x^2 - x, & x > 0, \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.14)}$$

$\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$ does not exist.

PROOF The left- and right-hand limits at 0 are as follows:

$$\lim_{x \to 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 0^-} (2x + 1) = 1, \qquad \lim_{x \to 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 0^+} (x^2 - x) = 0.$$

Since these one-sided limits are different, $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$ does not exist. ❑

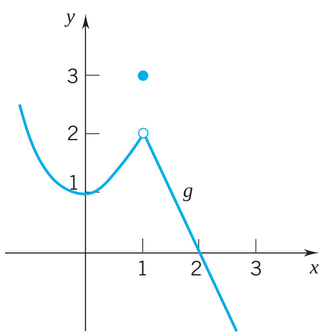


Figure 2.2.15

Example 10 For the function defined by setting

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + x^2, & x < 1 \\ 3, & x = 1 \\ 4 - 2x, & x > 1, \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.15)}$$

$\lim_{x \to 1} g(x) = 2.$

PROOF The left- and right-hand limits at 1 are as follows:

$$\lim_{x\to 1^-} g(x) = \lim_{x\to 1^-}(1+x^2) = 2, \qquad \lim_{x\to 1^+} g(x) = \lim_{x\to 1^+}(4-2x) = 2.$$

Thus, $\lim_{x\to 1} g(x) = 2$. NOTE: It does not matter that $g(1) \neq 2$. ❑

At an endpoint of the domain of a function we can't take a (full) limit and we can't take a one-sided limit from the side on which the function is not defined, but we can try to take a limit from the side on which the function is defined. For example, it makes no sense to write

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\sqrt{x} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0^-}\sqrt{x}.$$

But it does make sense to try to find

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+}\sqrt{x}. \qquad \text{(Figure 2.2.16)}$$

As you probably suspect, this one-sided limit exists and is 0.

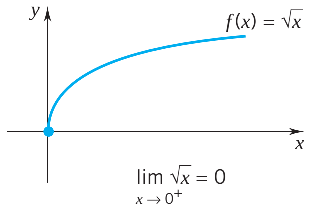


Figure 2.2.16

EXERCISES 2.2

Exercises 1–20. Decide in the manner of Section 2.1 whether or not the indicated limit exists. Evaluate the limits that do exist.

1. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{x}{x+1}$.

2. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{x^2(1+x)}{2x}$.

3. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{x(1+x)}{2x^2}$.

4. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 4}\frac{x}{\sqrt{x}+1}$.

5. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{x^4-1}{x-1}$.

6. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -1}\frac{1-x}{x+1}$.

7. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{x}{|x|}$.

8. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{x^2-1}{x^2-2x+1}$.

9. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -2}\frac{|x|}{x}$.

10. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 9}\frac{x-3}{\sqrt{x}-3}$.

11. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3^+}\frac{x+3}{x^2-7x+12}$.

12. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0^-}\frac{x}{|x|}$.

13. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1^+}\frac{\sqrt{x-1}}{x}$.

14. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3^-}\sqrt{9-x^2}$.

15. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2^+} f(x)$ if $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x-1, & x \le 2 \\ x^2-x, & x > 2. \end{cases}$

16. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -1^-} f(x)$ if $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \le -1 \\ x+2, & x > -1. \end{cases}$

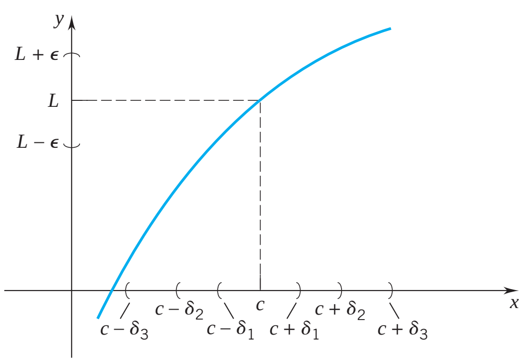
17. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$ if $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3, & x \text{ an integer} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

18. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3} f(x)$ if $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x < 3 \\ 7, & x = 3 \\ 2x+3, & x > 3. \end{cases}$

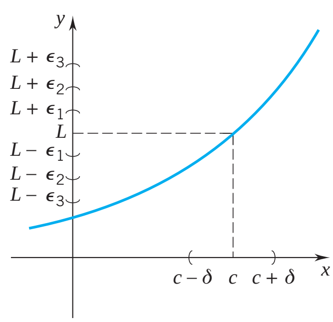
19. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$ if $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3, & x \text{ an integer} \\ 1, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

20. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$ if $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \le 1 \\ 5x, & x > 1. \end{cases}$

21. Which of the δ's displayed in the figure "works" for the given ϵ?



22. For which of the ϵ's given in the figure does the specified δ work?



Exercises 23–26. Find the largest δ that "works" for the given ϵ.

23. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1} 2x = 2;\ \epsilon = 0.1.$

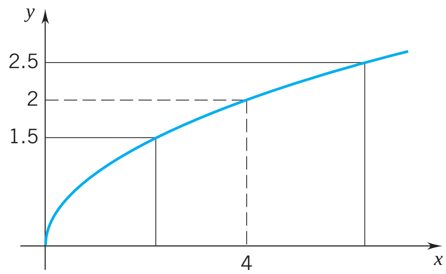
24. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 4} 5x = 20;\ \epsilon = 0.5.$

25. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2} \tfrac{1}{2}x = 1;\ \epsilon = 0.01.$

26. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2} \tfrac{1}{5}x = \tfrac{2}{5};\ \epsilon = 0.1.$

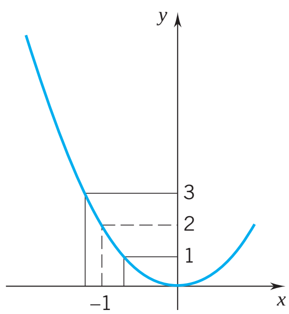
27. The graphs of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ and the horizontal lines $y = 1.5$ and $y = 2.5$ are shown in the figure. Use a graphing utility to find a $\delta > 0$ which is such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 4| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |\sqrt{x} - 2| < 0.5.$$



28. The graphs of $f(x) = 2x^2$ and the horizontal lines $y = 1$ and $y = 3$ are shown in the figure. Use a graphing utility to find a $\delta > 0$ which is such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x + 1| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |2x^2 - 2| < 1.$$



Exercises 29–34. For each of the limits stated and the ϵ's given, use a graphing utility to find a $\delta > 0$ which is such that if $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \epsilon$. Draw the graph of f together with the vertical lines $x = c - \delta$, $x = c + \delta$ and the horizontal lines $y = L - \epsilon$, $y = L + \epsilon$.

29. $\lim\limits_{x \to 2} \left(\frac{1}{4}x^2 + x + 1\right) = 4; \ \epsilon = 0.5, \ \epsilon = 0.25.$

30. $\lim\limits_{x \to -2} (x^3 + 4x + 2) = 2; \ \epsilon = 0.5, \ \epsilon = 0.25.$

31. $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} \dfrac{x - 1}{\sqrt{x} - 1} = 2; \ \epsilon = 0.5, \ \epsilon = 0.25.$

32. $\lim\limits_{x \to -1} \dfrac{1 - 3x}{2x + 4} = 2; \ \epsilon = 0.5, \ \epsilon = 0.1.$

33. $\lim\limits_{x \to 0} \dfrac{\sin 3x}{x} = 3; \ \epsilon = 0.25, \ \epsilon = 0.1.$

34. $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} \tan(\pi x/4) = 1; \epsilon = 0.5, \ \epsilon = 0.1.$

Give an ϵ, δ proof for the following statements.

35. $\lim\limits_{x \to 4} (2x - 5) = 3.$

36. $\lim\limits_{x \to 2} (3x - 1) = 5.$

37. $\lim\limits_{x \to 3} (6x - 7) = 11.$

38. $\lim\limits_{x \to 0} (2 - 5x) = 2.$

39. $\lim\limits_{x \to 2} |1 - 3x| = 5.$

40. $\lim\limits_{x \to 2} |x - 2| = 0.$

41. Let f be some function for which you know only that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < 1, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - 5| < 0.1.$$

Which of the following statements are necessarily true?

(a) If $|x - 3| < 1$, then $|f(x) - 5| < 0.1$.

(b) If $|x - 2.5| < 0.3$, then $|f(x) - 5| < 0.1$.

(c) $\lim\limits_{x \to 3} f(x) = 5$.

(d) If $0 < |x - 3| < 2$, then $|f(x) - 5| < 0.1$.

(e) If $0 < |x - 3| < 0.5$, then $|f(x) - 5| < 0.1$.

(f) If $0 < |x - 3| < \frac{1}{4}$, then $|f(x) - 5| < \frac{1}{4}(0.1)$.

(g) If $0 < |x - 3| < 1$, then $|f(x) - 5| < 0.2$.

(h) If $0 < |x - 3| < 1$, then $|f(x) - 4.95| < 0.05$.

(i) If $\lim\limits_{x \to 3} f(x) = L$, then $4.9 \le L \le 5.1$.

42. Suppose that $|A - B| < \epsilon$ for each $\epsilon > 0$. Prove that $A = B$. HINT: Suppose that $A \ne B$ and set $\epsilon = \frac{1}{2}|A - B|$.

Exercises 43–44. Give the four limit statements displayed in (2.2.6), taking

43. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x - 1}, \ c = 3$

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + 2}, \ c = 1.$

45. Prove that

(2.2.10) $$\boxed{\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = 0, \quad \text{iff} \quad \lim_{x \to c} |f(x)| = 0.}$$

46. (a) Prove that

$$\text{if} \quad \lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L, \quad \text{then} \quad \lim_{x \to c} |f(x)| = |L|.$$

(b) Show that the converse is false. Give an example where

$$\lim_{x \to c} |f(x)| = |L| \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \to c} f(x) = M \ne L,$$

and then give an example where

$$\lim_{x \to c} |f(x)| \quad \text{exists} \quad \text{but} \quad \lim_{x \to c} f(x) \quad \text{does not exist.}$$

47. Give an ϵ, δ proof that statement (i) in (2.2.6) is equivalent to (ii).

48. Give an ϵ, δ proof of (2.2.9).

49. (a) Show that $\lim\limits_{x \to c} \sqrt{x} = \sqrt{c}$ for each $c > 0$.

HINT: If x and c are positive, then

$$0 \le |\sqrt{x} - \sqrt{c}| = \frac{|x - c|}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{c}} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{c}}|x - c|.$$

(b) Show that $\lim\limits_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$.

Give an ϵ, δ proof for the following statements.

50. $\lim\limits_{x \to 2} x^2 = 4.$

51. $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} x^3 = 1.$

52. $\lim\limits_{x \to 3} \sqrt{x + 1} = 2.$

53. $\lim\limits_{x \to 3^-} \sqrt{3 - x} = 0.$

54. Prove that, for the function

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational}, \end{cases}$$

$\lim\limits_{x \to 0} g(x) = 0.$

55. The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational} \end{cases}$$

is called the *Dirichlet function*. Prove that for no number c does $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exist.

Prove the limit statement.

56. $\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x) = L$ iff $\lim_{h\to 0} f(c - |h|) = L$.

57. $\lim_{x\to c^+} f(x) = L$ iff $\lim_{h\to 0} f(c + |h|) = L$.

58. $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$ iff $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x) - L] = 0$.

59. Suppose that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$.

(a) Prove that if $L > 0$, then $f(x) > 0$ for all $x \neq c$ in an interval of the form $(c-\gamma, c+\gamma)$.
HINT: Use an ϵ, δ argument, setting $\epsilon = L$.

(b) Prove that if $L < 0$, then $f(x) < 0$ for all $x \neq c$ in an interval of the form $(c-\gamma, c+\gamma)$.

60. Prove or give a counterexample: if $f(c) > 0$ and $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists, then $f(x) > 0$ for all x in an interval of the form $(c-\gamma, c+\gamma)$.

61. Suppose that $f(x) \leq g(x)$ for all $x \in (c-p, c+p)$, except possibly at c itself.

(a) Prove that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) \leq \lim_{x\to c} g(x)$, provided each of these limits exist.

(b) Suppose that $f(x) < g(x)$ for all $x \in (c-p, c+p)$, except possibly at c itself. Does it follow that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) < \lim_{x\to c} g(x)$?

62. Prove that if $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$, then there are positive numbers δ and B such that if $0 < |x-c| < \delta$, then $|f(x)| < B$.

■ 2.3 SOME LIMIT THEOREMS

As you probably gathered by working through the previous section, it can become rather tedious to apply the ϵ, δ definition of limit time and time again. By proving some general theorems, we can avoid some of this repetitive work. Of course, the theorems themselves (at least the first ones) will have to be proved by ϵ, δ methods.

We begin by showing that if a limit exists, it is unique.

> **THEOREM 2.3.1 THE UNIQUENESS OF A LIMIT**
>
> If $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = M$, then $L = M$.

PROOF We show $L = M$ by proving that the assumption $L \neq M$ leads to the false conclusion that

$$|L - M| < |L - M|.$$

Assume that $L \neq M$. Then $|L-M|/2 > 0$. Since $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$, we know that there exists a $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

(1) if $0 < |x - c| < \delta_1$, then $|f(x) - L| < |L - M|/2$.

(Here we are using $|L - M|/2$ as ϵ.)

Since $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = M$, we know that there exists a $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

(2) if $0 < |x - c| < \delta_2$, then $|f(x) - L| < |L - M|/2$.

(Again, we are using $|L - M|/2$ as ϵ.)

Now let x_1 be a number that satisfies the inequality

$$0 < |x_1 - c| < \text{minimum of } \delta_1 \text{ and } \delta_2.$$

Then, by (1) and (2),

$$|f(x_1) - L| < \frac{|L-M|}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad |f(x_1) - M| < \frac{|L-M|}{2}.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
|L-M| &= |[L-f(x_1)]+[f(x_1)-M]| \\
&\le |L-f(x_1)|+|f(x_1)-M| \\
&\uparrow \text{by the triangle inequality} \\
&= |f(x_1)-L|+|f(x_1)-M| < \frac{|L-M|}{2}+\frac{|L-M|}{2} = |L-M|. \\
&\uparrow |a| = |-a|
\end{aligned}$$

❑

THEOREM 2.3.2

If $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = M$, then

(i) $\lim_{x\to c} [f(x)+g(x)] = L+M,$

(ii) $\lim_{x\to c} [\alpha f(x)] = \alpha L \quad |\alpha|$ a real number

(iii) $\lim_{x\to c} [f(x)g(x)] = LM.$

PROOF Let $\epsilon > 0$. To prove (i), we must show that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x-c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \quad |[f(x)+g(x)]-[L+M]| < \epsilon.$$

Note that

$$(*) \qquad \begin{aligned} |[f(x)+g(x)]-[L+M]| &= |[f(x)-L]+[g(x)-M]| \\ &\le |f(x)-L|+|g(x)-M|. \end{aligned}$$

We can make $|[f(x)+g(x)]-[L+M]|$ less than ϵ by making $|f(x)-L|$ and $|g(x)-M|$ each less than $\frac{1}{2}\epsilon$. Since $\epsilon > 0$, we know that $\frac{1}{2}\epsilon > 0$. Since

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = M,$$

we know that there exist positive numbers δ_1 and δ_2 such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x-c| < \delta_1, \qquad \text{then} \quad |f(x)-L| < \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon$$

and

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x-c| < \delta_2, \qquad \text{then} \quad |g(x)-M| < \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon.$$

Now we set $\delta =$ the minimum of δ_1 and δ_2 and note that, if $0 < |x-c| < \delta$, then

$$|f(x)-L| < \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon \quad \text{and} \quad |g(x)-M| < \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon.$$

Thus, by $(*)$,

$$|[f(x)+g(x)]-[L+M]| < \epsilon.$$

In summary, by setting $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2\}$, we find that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x-c| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \quad |[f(x)+g(x)]-[L+M]| < \epsilon.$$

This completes the proof of (i). For proofs of (ii) and (iii), see the supplement to this section. ❑

If you are wondering about $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)-g(x)]$, note that

$$f(x)-g(x)=f(x)+(-1)g(x),$$

and so the result

(2.3.3) $$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)-g(x)]=L-M}$$

follows from (i) and (ii).

Theorem 2.3.2 can be extended (by mathematical induction) to any finite collection of functions; in particular, if

$$\lim_{x\to c} f_1(x)=L_1, \qquad \lim_{x\to c} f_2(x)=L_2, \qquad \ldots, \qquad \lim_{x\to c} f_n(x)=L_n,$$

and $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$ are real numbers, then

(2.3.4) $$\boxed{\begin{aligned}&\lim_{x\to c}[\alpha_1 f_1(x)+\alpha_2 f_2(x)+\cdots+\alpha_n f_n(x)]\\ &\qquad\qquad =\alpha_1 L_1+\alpha_2 L_2+\cdots+\alpha_n L_n.\end{aligned}}$$

Also,

(2.3.5) $$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c}[f_1(x)f_2(x)\cdots f_n(x)]=L_1L_2\cdots L_n.}$$

For each polynomial $P(x)=a_nx^n+\cdots+a_1x+a_0$ and each real number c

(2.3.6) $$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c} P(x)=P(c).}$$

PROOF We already know that

$$\lim_{x\to c} x=c.$$

From (2.3.5) we know that

$$\lim_{x\to c} x^k=c^k \qquad \text{for each positive integer } k.$$

We also know that $\lim_{x\to c} a_0=a_0$. It follows from (2.3.4) that

$$\lim_{x\to c}[a_nx^n+\cdots+a_1x+a_0]=a_nc^n+\cdots+a_1c+a_0,$$

which says that

$$\lim_{x\to c} P(x)=P(c).$$

A function f for which $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)=f(c)$ is said to be *continuous* at c. What we just showed is that polynomials are continuous at each number c. Continuous functions, our focus in Section 2.4, have a regularity and a predictability not shared by other functions.

Examples

$$\lim_{x \to 1} (5x^2 - 12x + 2) = 5(1)^2 - 12(1) + 2 = -5,$$

$$\lim_{x \to 0} (14x^5 - 7x^2 + 2x + 8) = 14(0)^5 - 7(0)^2 + 2(0) + 8 = 8,$$

$$\lim_{x \to -1} (2x^3 + x^2 - 2x - 3) = 2(-1)^3 + (-1)^2 - 2(-1) - 3 = -2. \quad ❑$$

We come now to reciprocals and quotients.

THEOREM 2.3.7

$$\text{If} \quad \lim_{x \to c} g(x) = M \quad \text{with} \quad M \neq 0, \quad \text{then} \quad \lim_{x \to c} \frac{1}{g(x)} = \frac{1}{M},$$

PROOF Given in the supplement to this section. ❑

Examples

$$\lim_{x \to 4} \frac{1}{x^2} = \frac{1}{16}, \qquad \lim_{x \to 2} \frac{1}{x^3 - 1} = \frac{1}{7}, \qquad \lim_{x \to -3} \frac{1}{|x|} = \frac{1}{|-3|} = \frac{1}{3}. \quad ❑$$

Once you know that reciprocals present no trouble, quotients become easy to handle.

THEOREM 2.3.8

$$\text{If} \ \lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \to c} g(x) = M \quad \text{with} \quad M \neq 0, \quad \text{then} \quad \lim_{x \to c} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{L}{M}.$$

PROOF The key here is to observe that the quotient can be written as a product:

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = f(x)\frac{1}{g(x)}.$$

With

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \to c} \frac{1}{g(x)} = \frac{1}{M},$$

the product rule [part (iii) of Theorem 2.3.2] gives

$$\lim_{x \to c} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = L\frac{1}{M} = \frac{L}{M}. \quad ❑$$

This theorem on quotients applied to the quotient of two polynomials gives us the limit of a rational function. If $R = P/Q$ where P and Q are polynomials and c is a real number, then

(2.3.9) $$\boxed{\lim_{x \to c} R(x) = \lim_{x \to c} \frac{P(x)}{Q(X)} = \frac{P(c)}{Q(c)} = R(c), \qquad \text{provided } Q(c) \neq 0.}$$

This says that a rational function is *continuous* at all numbers c where the denominator is different from zero.

Examples

$$\lim_{x\to 2}\frac{3x-5}{x^2+1}=\frac{6-5}{4+1}=\frac{1}{5}, \qquad \lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^3-3x^2}{1-x^2}=\frac{27-27}{1-9}=0. \quad \square$$

There is no point looking for a limit that does not exist. The next theorem gives a condition under which a quotient does not have a limit.

THEOREM 2.3.10

If $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$ with $L \neq 0$ and $\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = 0$, then $\lim_{x\to c}\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$ does not exist.

PROOF Suppose, on the contrary, that there exists a real number K such that

$$\lim_{x\to c}\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = K.$$

Then

$$L = \lim_{x\to c} f(x) = \lim_{x\to c}\left[g(x)\cdot\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] = \lim_{x\to c} g(x)\cdot\lim_{x\to c}\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = 0\cdot K = 0.$$

This contradicts our assumption that $L \neq 0$. $\square$

Examples From Theorem 2.3.10 you can see that

$$\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{x^2}{x-1}, \qquad \lim_{x\to 2}\frac{3x-7}{x^2-4}, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{5}{x}$$

all fail to exist. $\square$

Now we come to quotients where both the numerator and denominator tend to zero. Such quotients will be particularly important to us as we go on.

Example 1 Evaluate the limits that exist:

(a) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^2-x-6}{x-3}$, **(b)** $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 4}\frac{(x^2-3x-4)^2}{x-4}$, **(c)** $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -1}\frac{x+1}{(2x^2+7x+5)^2}$.

SOLUTION

(a) First we factor the numerator:

$$\frac{x^2-x-6}{x-3} = \frac{(x+2)(x-3)}{x-3}.$$

For $x \neq 3$,

$$\frac{x^2-x-6}{x-3} = x+2.$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^2-x-6}{x-3}=\lim_{x\to 3}(x+2)=5.$$

(b) Note that

$$\frac{(x^2-3x-4)^2}{x-4}=\frac{[(x+1)(x-4)]^2}{x-4}=\frac{(x+1)^2(x-4)^2}{x-4}.$$

Thus for $x \neq 4$,

$$\frac{(x^2-3x-4)^2}{x-4}=(x+1)^2(x-4).$$

It follows that

$$\lim_{x\to 4}\frac{(x^2-3x-4)^2}{x-4}=\lim_{x\to 4}(x+1)^2(x-4)=0.$$

(c) Since

$$\frac{x+1}{(2x^2+7x+5)^2}=\frac{x+1}{[(2x+5)(x+1)]^2}=\frac{x+1}{(2x+5)^2(x+1)^2},$$

for $x \neq -1$,

$$\frac{x+1}{(2x^2+7x+5)^2}=\frac{1}{(2x+5)^2(x+1)}.$$

As $x \to -1$, the denominator tends to 0 but the numerator tends to 1. It follows from Theorem 2.3.10 that

$$\lim_{x\to -1}\frac{1}{(2x+5)^2(x+1)} \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to -1}\frac{x+1}{(2x^2+7x+5)^2} \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$ ❑

Example 2 Justify the following assertions.

(a) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2}\frac{1/x-1/2}{x-2}=-\frac{1}{4}$ **(b)** $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 9}\frac{x-9}{\sqrt{x}-3}=6.$

SOLUTION

(a) For $x \neq 2$,

$$\frac{1/x-1/2}{x-2}=\frac{\dfrac{2-x}{2x}}{x-2}=\frac{-(x-2)}{2x(x-2)}=\frac{-1}{2x}.$$

Thus

$$\lim_{x\to 2}\frac{1/x-1/2}{x-2}=\lim_{x\to 2}\left[\frac{-1}{2x}\right]=-\frac{1}{4}.$$

(b) Before working with the fraction, we remind you that for each positive number c

$$\lim_{x\to c}\sqrt{x}=\sqrt{c}. \qquad \text{(Exercise 49, Section 2.2)}$$

Now to the fraction. First we "rationalize" the denominator:

$$\frac{x-9}{\sqrt{x}-3} = \frac{x-9}{\sqrt{x}-3} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{x}+3}{\sqrt{x}+3} = \frac{(x-9)(\sqrt{x}+3)}{x-9} = \sqrt{x}+3 \quad (x \neq 9).$$

It follows that

$$\lim_{x\to 9} \frac{x-9}{\sqrt{x}-3} = \lim_{x\to 9}[\sqrt{x}+3] = 6. \quad ❑$$

Remark In this section we phrased everything in terms of two-sided limits. Although we won't stop to prove it, *analogous results carry over to one-sided limits*. ❑

EXERCISES 2.3

1. Given that

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = 2, \qquad \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = -1, \qquad \lim_{x\to c} h(x) = 0,$$

evaluate the limits that exist. If the limit does not exist, state how you know that.

(a) $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x) - g(x)]$. (b) $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)]^2$.

(c) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}$. (d) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{h(x)}{f(x)}$.

(e) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{f(x)}{h(x)}$. (f) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{1}{f(x) - g(x)}$.

2. Given that

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = 3, \qquad \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = 0, \qquad \lim_{x\to c} h(x) = -2,$$

evaluate the limits that exist. If the limit does not exist, state how you know that.

(a) $\lim_{x\to c}[3f(x) - 2h(x)]$. (b) $\lim_{x\to c}[h(x)]^3$.

(c) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{h(x)}{x-c}$. (d) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{g(x)}{h(x)}$.

(e) $\lim_{x\to c} \dfrac{4}{f(x) - h(x)}$. (f) $\lim_{x\to c}[3 + g(x)]^2$.

3. When asked to evaluate

$$\lim_{x\to 4} \left(\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{x-4}\right),$$

Moe replies that the limit is zero since $\lim_{x\to 4}\left[\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{4}\right] = 0$ and cites Theorem 2.3.2 as justification. Verify that the limit is actually $-\frac{1}{16}$ and identify Moe's error.

4. When asked to evaluate

$$\lim_{x\to 3} \frac{x^2 + x - 12}{x-3},$$

Moe says that the limit does not exist since $\lim_{x\to 3}(x-3) = 0$ and cites Theorem 2.3.10 (limit of a quotient) as justification. Verify that the limit is actually 7 and identify Moe's error.

Exercises 5–38. Evaluate the limits that exist.

5. $\lim_{x\to 2} 3$.

6. $\lim_{x\to 3}(5 - 4x)^2$.

7. $\lim_{x\to -4}(x^2 + 3x - 7)$.

8. $\lim_{x\to -2} 3|x - 1|$.

9. $\lim_{x\to \sqrt{3}} |x^2 - 8|$.

10. $\lim_{x\to -1} \dfrac{x^2+1}{3x^5+4}$.

11. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left(x - \dfrac{4}{x}\right)$.

12. $\lim_{x\to 5} \dfrac{2-x^2}{4x}$.

13. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x^2+1}{x-1}$.

14. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x^2}{x^2+1}$.

15. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x}{x^2-4}$.

16. $\lim_{h\to 0} h\left(1 - \dfrac{1}{h}\right)$.

17. $\lim_{h\to 0} h\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{h}\right)$.

18. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x-2}{x^2-4}$.

19. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2-4}{x-2}$.

20. $\lim_{x\to -2} \dfrac{(x^2-x-6)^2}{x+2}$.

21. $\lim_{x\to 4} \dfrac{\sqrt{x}-2}{x-4}$.

22. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x-1}{\sqrt{x}-1}$.

23. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x^2-x-6}{(x+2)^2}$.

24. $\lim_{x\to -2} \dfrac{x^2-x-6}{(x+2)^2}$.

25. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{1-1/h^2}{1-1/h}$.

26. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{1-1/h^2}{1+1/h^2}$.

27. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{1-1/h}{1+1/h}$.

28. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{1+1/h}{1+1/h^2}$.

29. $\lim_{t\to -1} \dfrac{t^2+6t+5}{t^2+3t+2}$.

30. $\lim_{x\to 2^+} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2-4}}{x-2}$.

31. $\lim_{t\to 0} \dfrac{t+a/t}{t+b/t}$.

32. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x^2-1}{x^3-1}$.

33. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x^5-1}{x^4-1}$.

34. $\lim_{h\to 0} h^2\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{h}\right)$.

35. $\lim_{h\to 0} h\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{h^2}\right)$.

36. $\lim_{x\to -4} \left(\dfrac{3x}{x+4} + \dfrac{8}{x+4}\right)$.

37. $\lim_{x\to -4} \left(\dfrac{2x}{x+4} + \dfrac{8}{x+4}\right)$.

38. $\lim_{x\to -4} \left(\dfrac{2x}{x+4} - \dfrac{8}{x+4}\right)$.

39. Evaluate the limits that exist.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 4}\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{4}\right)$.

(b) $\lim_{x\to 4}\left[\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{x-4}\right)\right]$.

(c) $\lim_{x\to 4}\left[\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{4}\right)(x-2)\right]$.

(d) $\lim_{x\to 4}\left[\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{x-4}\right)^2\right]$.

40. Evaluate the limits that exist.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^2+x+12}{x-3}$. (b) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^2+x-12}{x-3}$.

(c) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{(x^2+x-12)^2}{x-3}$. (d) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^2+x-12}{(x-3)^2}$.

41. Given that $f(x)=x^2-4x$, evaluate the limits that exist.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 4}\frac{f(x)-f(4)}{x-4}$. (b) $\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{f(x)-f(1)}{x-1}$.

(c) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{f(x)-f(1)}{x-3}$. (d) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{f(x)-f(2)}{x-3}$.

42. Given that $f(x)=x^3$, evaluate the limits that exist.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{f(x)-f(3)}{x-3}$. (b) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{f(x)-f(2)}{x-3}$.

(c) $\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{f(x)-f(3)}{x-2}$. (d) $\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{f(x)-f(1)}{x-1}$.

43. Show by example that $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)+g(x)]$ can exist even if $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ and $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ do not exist.

44. Show by example that $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)g(x)]$ can exist even if $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ and $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ do not exist.

Exercises 45–51. True or false? Justify your answers.

45. If $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)+g(x)]$ exists but $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ does not exist, then $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ does not exist.

46. If $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)+g(x)]$ and $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exist, then it can happen that $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ does not exist.

47. If $\lim_{x\to c}\sqrt{f(x)}$ exists, then $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists.

48. If $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists, then $\lim_{x\to c}\sqrt{f(x)}$ exists.

49. If $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists, then $\lim_{x\to c}\frac{1}{f(x)}$ exists.

50. If $f(x)\le g(x)$ for all $x\ne c$, then $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)\le \lim_{x\to c} g(x)$.

51. If $f(x)< g(x)$ for all $x\ne c$, then $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)< \lim_{x\to c} g(x)$.

52. (a) Verify that

$$\max\{f(x), g(x)\} = \tfrac{1}{2}\{[f(x)+g(x)]+|f(x)-g(x)|\}.$$

(b) Find a similar expression for $\min\{f(x), g(x)\}$.

53. Let $h(x)=\min\{f(x), g(x)\}$ and $H(x)=\max\{f(x), g(x)\}$. Show that

$$\text{if}\quad \lim_{x\to c} f(x)=L \quad\text{and}\quad \lim_{x\to c} g(x)=L,$$
$$\text{then}\quad \lim_{x\to c} h(x)=L \quad\text{and}\quad \lim_{x\to c} H(x)=L.$$

HINT: Use Exercise 52.

54. (*Stability of limit*) Let f be a function defined on some interval $(c-p, c+p)$. Now change the value of f at a finite number of points $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ and call the resulting function g.

(a) Show that if $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)=L$, then $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)=L$.

(b) Show that if $\lim_{x\to c}$ does not exist, then $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ does not exist.

55. (a) Suppose that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)=0$ and $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)g(x)]=1$. Prove that $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ does not exist.

(b) Suppose that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)=L\ne 0$ and $\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)g(x)]=1$. Does $\lim_{x\to c} g(x)$ exist, and if so, what is it?

56. Let f be a function defined at least on an interval $(c-p, c+p)$. Suppose that for each function g

$$\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)+g(x)] \quad\text{does not exist if}\quad \lim_{x\to c} g(x)$$

does not exist.

Show that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ does exist.

(*Difference quotients*) Let f be a function and let c and $c+h$ be numbers in an interval on which f is defined. The expression

$$\frac{f(c+h)-f(c)}{h}$$

is called a *difference quotient* for f. (Limits of difference quotients as $h\to 0$ are at the core of Chapter 3.) In Exercises 57–60, calculate

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(c+h)-f(c)}{h}$$

for the function f and the number c.

57. $f(x)=2x^2-3x$; $c=2$.

58. $f(x)=x^3+1$; $c=-1$.

59. $f(x)=\sqrt{x}$; $c=4$.

60. $f(x)=1/(x+1)$; $c=1$.

61. Calculate

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}$$

for each of the following functions:

(a) $f(x)=x$.

(b) $f(x)=x^2$.

(c) $f(x)=x^3$.

(d) $f(x)=x^4$.

(e) $f(x)=x^n$, n an arbitrary positive integer.
Make a guess and confirm your guess by induction.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 2.3

PROOF OF THEOREM 2.3.2 (II)

We consider two cases: $\alpha \neq 0$ and $\alpha = 0$. If $\alpha \neq 0$, then $\epsilon/|\alpha| > 0$ and, since

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L,$$

we know that there exists $\delta > 0$ such that,

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{|\alpha|}.$$

From the last inequality, we obtain

$$|\alpha||f(x) - L| < \epsilon \quad \text{and thus} \quad |\alpha f(x) - \alpha L| < \epsilon.$$

The case $\alpha = 0$ was treated before. (2.2.5) ❑

PROOF OF THEOREM 2.3.2 (III)

We begin with a little algebra:

$$\begin{aligned}
|f(x)g(x) - LM| &= |[f(x)g(x) - f(x)M] + [f(x)M - LM]| \\
&\leq |f(x)g(x) - f(x)M| + |f(x)M - LM| \\
&= |f(x)||g(x) - M| + |M||f(x) - L| \\
&\leq |f(x)||g(x) - M| + (1 + |M|)|f(x) - L|.
\end{aligned}$$

Now let $\epsilon > 0$. Since $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = M$, we know the following:

1. There exists $\delta_1 > 0$ such that, if $0 < |x - c| < \delta_1$, then

$$|f(x) - L| < 1 \quad \text{and thus} \quad |f(x)| < 1 + |L|.$$

2. There exists $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta_2, \quad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - M| < \left(\frac{\frac{1}{2}\epsilon}{1 + |L|}\right).$$

3. There exists $\delta_3 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta_3, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \left(\frac{\frac{1}{2}\epsilon}{1 + |M|}\right).$$

We now set $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2, \delta_3\}$ and observe that, if $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
|f(x) - LM| &\leq |f(x)||g(x) - M| + (1 + |M|)|f(x) - L| \\
&< \underbrace{(1 + |L|)}_{\text{by (1)}}\underbrace{\left(\frac{\frac{1}{2}\epsilon}{1 + |L|}\right)}_{\text{by (2)}} + (1 + |M|)\underbrace{\left(\frac{\frac{1}{2}\epsilon}{1 + |M|}\right)}_{\text{by (3)}} = \epsilon.
\end{aligned}$$ ❑

PROOF OF THEOREM 2.3.7

For $g(x) \neq 0$,

$$\left|\frac{1}{g(x)} - \frac{1}{M}\right| = \frac{|g(x) - M|}{|g(x)||M|}.$$

Choose $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta_1, \quad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - M| < \frac{|M|}{2}.$$

For such x,

$$|g(x)| > \frac{|M|}{2} \qquad \text{so that} \qquad \frac{1}{|g(x)|} < \frac{2}{|M|}$$

and thus

$$\left|\frac{1}{g(x)} - \frac{1}{M}\right| = \frac{|g(x) - M|}{|g(x)||M|} \leq \frac{2}{|M|^2}|g(x) - M| = \frac{2}{M^2}|g(x) - M|.$$

Now let $\epsilon > 0$ and choose $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta_2, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |g(x) - M| < \frac{M^2}{2}\epsilon.$$

Setting $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2\}$, we find that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left|\frac{1}{g(x)} - \frac{1}{M}\right| < \epsilon. \quad \square$$

■ 2.4 CONTINUITY

In ordinary language, to say that a certain process is "continuous" is to say that it goes on without interruption and without abrupt changes. In mathematics the word "continuous" has much the same meaning.

The concept of continuity is so important in calculus and its applications that we discuss it with some care. First we treat *continuity at a point c* (a number c), and then we discuss *continuity on an interval*.

Continuity at a Point

The basic idea is as follows: We are given a function f and a number c. We calculate (if we can) both $\lim_{x \to c} f(x)$ and $f(c)$. If these two numbers are equal, we say that f is *continuous* at c. Here is the definition formally stated.

DEFINITION 2.4.1

Let f be a function defined at least on an open interval $(c - p, c + p)$. We say that *f is continuous at c* if

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = f(c).$$

If the domain of f contains an interval $(c - p, c + p)$, then f can fail to be continuous at c for only one of two reasons: either

(i) f has a limit as x tends to c, but $\lim_{x \to c} f(x) \neq f(c)$, or

(ii) f has no limit as x tends to c.

In case (i) the number c is called a *removable* discontinuity. The discontinuity can be removed by redefining f at c. If the limit is L, redefine f at c to be L.

In case (ii) the number c is called an *essential* discontinuity. You can change the value of f at a billion points in any way you like. The discontinuity will remain. (Exercise 51.)

The function depicted in Figure 2.4.1 has a removable discontinuity at c. The discontinuity can be removed by lowering the dot into place (i.e., by redefining f at c to be L).

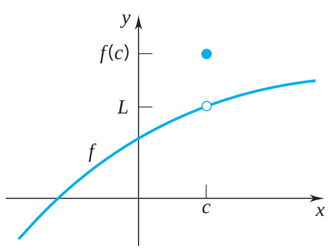


Figure 2.4.1

The functions depicted in Figures 2.4.2, 2.4.3, and 2.4.4 have essential discontinuities at c. The discontinuity in Figure 2.4.2 is, for obvious reasons, called a *jump* discontinuity. The functions of Figure 2.4.3 have *infinite* discontinuities.

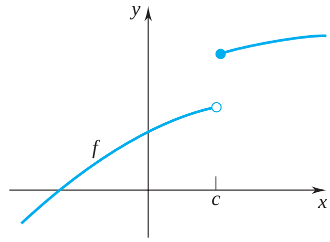


Figure 2.4.2

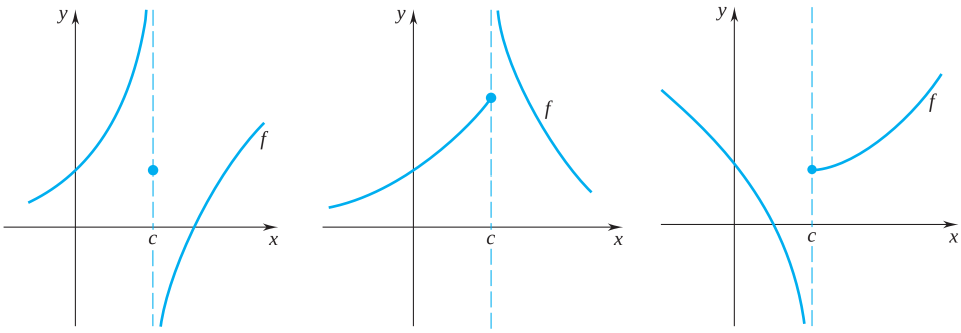


Figure 2.4.3

In Figure 2.4.4, we have tried to portray the Dirichlet function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ -1, & x \text{ irrational} \end{cases}$$

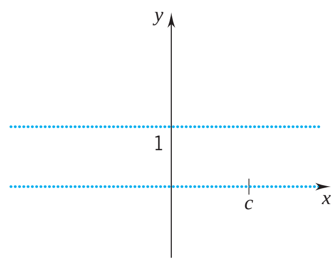


Figure 2.4.4

At no point c does f have a limit. Each point is an essential discontinuity. The function is everywhere discontinuous.

Most of the functions that you have encountered so far are continuous at each point of their domains. In particular, this is true for polynomials P,

$$\lim_{x\to c} P(x) = P(c), \qquad [(2.3.6)]$$

for rational functions (quotients of polynomials) $R = P/Q$,

$$\lim_{x\to c} R(x) = \lim_{x\to c} \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} = \frac{P(c)}{Q(c)} = R(c) \qquad \text{provided} \qquad Q(c) \neq 0, \qquad [(2.3.9)]$$

and for the absolute value function,

$$\lim_{x\to c} |x| = |c|. \qquad [(2.2.4)]$$

As you were asked to show earlier (Exercise 49, Section 2.2),

$$\lim_{x\to c} \sqrt{x} = \sqrt{c} \qquad \text{for each } c > 0.$$

This makes the square-root function continuous at each positive number. What happens at $c = 0$, we discuss later.

With f and g continuous at c, we have

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = f(c) \qquad \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = g(c)$$

and thus, by the limit theorems,

$$\lim_{x\to c}[f(x)+g(x)] = f(c)+g(c), \qquad \lim_{x\to c}[f(x)-g(x)] = f(c)-g(c)$$

$$\lim_{x\to c}[\alpha f(x)] = \alpha f(c) \quad \text{for each real } \alpha \qquad \lim_{x\to c}[f(x)g(x)] = f(c)g(c)$$

$$\text{and, if } g(c) \neq 0, \qquad \lim_{x\to c}[f(x)/g(x)] = f(c)/g(c).$$

We summarize all this in a theorem.

THEOREM 2.4.2

If f and g are continuous at c, then

(i) $f + g$ is continuous at c;
(ii) $f - g$ is continuous at c;
(iii) αf is continuous at c for each real α;
(iv) $f \cdot g$ is continuous at c;
(v) f/g is continuous at c provided $g(c) \neq 0$.

These results can be combined and extended to any finite number of functions.

Example 1 The function $F(x) = 3|x| + \dfrac{x^3 - x}{x^2 - 5x + 6} + 4$ is continuous at all real numbers other than 2 and 3. You can see this by noting that

$$F = 3f + g/h + k$$

where

$$f(x) = |x|, \qquad g(x) = x^3 - x, \qquad h(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6, \qquad k(x) = 4.$$

Since f, g, h, k are everywhere continuous, F is continuous except at 2 and 3, the numbers at which h takes on the value 0. (At those numbers F is not defined.) ❑

Our next topic is the continuity of composite functions. Before getting into this, however, let's take a look at continuity in terms of ϵ, δ. A direct translation of

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = f(c)$$

into ϵ, δ terms reads like this: for each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - f(c)| < \epsilon.$$

Here the restriction $0 < |x - c|$ is unnecessary. We can allow $|x - c| = 0$ because then $x = c$, $f(x) = f(c)$, and thus $|f(x) - f(c)| = 0$. Being 0, $|f(x) - f(c)|$ is certainly less than ϵ.

Thus, an ϵ, δ characterization of continuity at c reads as follows:

(2.4.3)
$$f \text{ is continuous at } c \text{ if } \begin{cases} \text{for each } \epsilon > 0 \text{ there exists a } \delta > 0 \text{ such that} \\ \text{if} \quad |x - c| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - f(c)| < \epsilon. \end{cases}$$

In intuitive terms

$$f \text{ is continuous at } c \qquad \text{if} \qquad \text{for } x \text{ close to } c, \qquad f(x) \text{ is close to } f(c).$$

We are now ready to take up the continuity of composite functions. Remember the defining formula: $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$. (You may wish to review Section 1.7.)

THEOREM 2.4.4

If g is continuous at c and f is continuous at $g(c)$, then the composition $f \circ g$ is continuous at c.

The idea here is as follows: with g continuous at c, we know that

$$\text{for } x \text{ close to } c,\ g(x) \text{ is close to } g(c);$$

from the continuity of f at $g(c)$, we know that

$$\text{with } g(x) \text{ close to } g(c),\ f(g(x)) \text{ is close to } f(g(c)).$$

In summary,

$$\text{with } x \text{ close to } c,\ f(g(x)) \text{ is close to } f(g(c)).$$

The argument we just gave is too vague to be a proof. Here, in contrast, is a proof. We begin with $\epsilon > 0$. We must show that there exists a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - c| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(g(x)) - f(g(c))| < \epsilon.$$

In the first place, we observe that, since f is continuous at $g(c)$, there does exist a number $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

(1) $$\text{if} \quad |t - g(c)| < \delta_1, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(t) - f(g(c))| < \epsilon.$$

With $\delta_1 > 0$, we know from the continuity of g at c that there exists a number $\delta > 0$ such that

(2) $$\text{if} \quad |x - c| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - g(c)| < \delta_1.$$

Combining (2) and (1), we have what we want: by (2),

$$\text{if} \quad |x - c| < \delta, \quad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - g(c)| < \delta_1$$

so that by (1)

$$|f(g(x)) - f(g(c))| < \epsilon.$$

This proof is illustrated in Figure 2.4.5. The numbers within δ of c are taken by g to within δ_1 of $g(c)$, and then by f to within ϵ of $f(g(c))$.

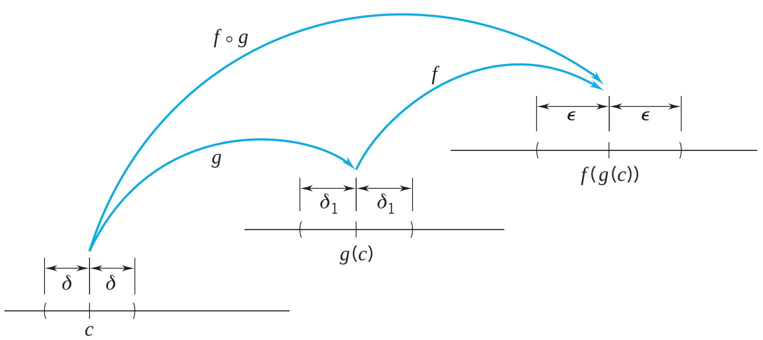


Figure 2.4.5

It's time to look at some examples.

Example 2 The function $F(x) = \sqrt{\dfrac{x^2+1}{x-3}}$ is continuous at all numbers greater than 3. To see this, note that $F = f \circ g$, where

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) = \frac{x^2+1}{x-3}.$$

Now, take any $c > 3$. Since g is a rational function and g is defined at c, g is continuous at c. Also, since $g(c)$ is positive and f is continuous at each positive number, f is continuous at $g(c)$. By Theorem 2.4.4, F is continuous at c. ❑

The continuity of composites holds for any finite number of functions. The only requirement is that each function be continuous *where it is applied*.

Example 3 The function $F(x) = \dfrac{1}{5-\sqrt{x^2+16}}$ is continuous everywhere except at $x = \pm 3$, where it is not defined. To see this, note that $F = f \circ g \circ k \circ h$, where

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \qquad g(x) = 5 - x, \qquad k(x) = \sqrt{x}, \qquad h(x) = x^2 + 16,$$

and observe that each of these functions is being evaluated only where it is continuous. In particular, g and h are continuous everywhere, f is being evaluated only at nonzero numbers, and k is being evaluated only at positive numbers. ❑

Just as we considered one-sided limits, we can consider one-sided continuity.

DEFINITION 2.4.5 ONE-SIDED CONTINUITY

A function f is called

continuous from the left at c if $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to c^-} f(x) = f(c).$

It is called

continuous from the right at c if $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to c^+} f(x) = f(c).$

The function of Figure 2.4.6 is continuous from the right at 0; the function of Figure 2.4.7 is continuous from the left at 1.

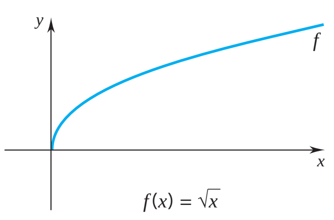


Figure 2.4.6

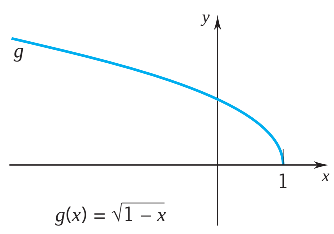


Figure 2.4.7

It follows from (2.2.9) that a function is continuous at c iff it is continuous from both sides at c. Thus

(2.4.6) f is continuous at c iff $f(c)$, $\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x)$, $\lim_{x\to c^+} f(x)$ all exist and are equal.

Example 4 Determine the discontinuities, if any, of the following function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x+1, & x \le 0 \\ 1, & 0 < x \le 1 \\ x^2+1, & x > 1. \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 2.4.8)}$$

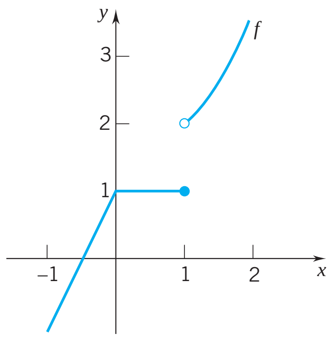


Figure 2.4.8

SOLUTION Clearly f is continuous at each point in the open intervals $(-\infty, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, $(1, \infty)$. (On each of these intervals f is a polynomial.) Thus, we have to check the behavior of f at $x = 0$ and $x = 1$. The figure suggests that f is continuous at 0 and discontinuous at 1. Indeed, that is the case:

$$f(0) = 1, \qquad \lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 0^-} (2x+1) = 1, \qquad \lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 0^+} (1) = 1.$$

This makes f continuous at 0. The situation is different at $x = 1$:

$$\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 1^-} (1) = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 1^+} (x^2+1) = 2.$$

Thus f has an essential discontinuity at 1, a jump discontinuity. ❑

Example 5 Determine the discontinuities, if any, of the following function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3, & x \le -1 \\ x^2 - 2, & -1 < x < 1 \\ 6 - x, & 1 \le x < 4 \\ \dfrac{6}{7-x}, & 4 < x < 7 \\ 5x+2, & x \ge 7. \end{cases}$$

SOLUTION It should be clear that f is continuous at each point of the open intervals $(-\infty, -1)$, $(-1, 1)$, $(1, 4)$, $(4, 7)$, $(7, \infty)$. All we have to check is the behavior of f at $x = -1, 1, 4, 7$. To do so, we apply (2.4.6).

The function is continuous at $x = -1$ since $f(-1) = (-1)^3 = -1$,

$$\lim_{x\to -1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x\to -1^-} (x^3) = -1, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to -1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x\to -1^+} (x^2 - 2) = -1.$$

Our findings at the other three points are displayed in the following chart. Try to verify each entry.

c	$f(c)$	$\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x)$	$\lim_{x\to c^+} f(x)$	Conclusion
1	5	−1	5	discontinuous
4	not defined	2	2	discontinuous
7	37	does not exist	37	discontinuous

The discontinuity at $x = 4$ is removable: if we redefine f at 4 to be 2, then f becomes continuous at 4. The numbers 1 and 7 are essential discontinuities. The discontinuity at 1 is a jump discontinuity; the discontinuity at 7 is an infinite discontinuity: $f(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to 7^-$. ❑

Continuity on Intervals

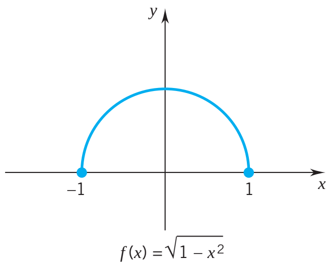


Figure 2.4.9

A function f is said to be *continuous on an interval* if it is continuous at each interior point of the interval and one-sidedly continuous at whatever endpoints the interval may contain.

For example:

(i) The function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$$

is continuous on $[-1, 1]$ because it is continuous at each point of $(-1, 1)$, continuous from the right at -1, and continuous from the left at 1. The graph of the function is the semicircle shown in Figure 2.4.9.

(ii) The function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$$

is continuous on $(-1, 1)$ because it is continuous at each point of $(-1, 1)$. It is not continuous on $[-1, 1)$ because it is not continuous from the right at -1. It is not continuous on $(-1, 1]$ because it is not continuous from the left at 1.

(iii) The function graphed in Figure 2.4.8 is continuous on $(-\infty, 1]$ and continuous on $(1, \infty)$. It is not continuous on $[1, \infty)$ because it is not continuous from the right at 1.

(iv) Polynomials, being everywhere continuous, are continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$.

Continuous functions have special properties not shared by other functions. Two of these properties are featured in Section 2.6. Before we get to these properties, we prove a very useful theorem and revisit the trigonometric functions.

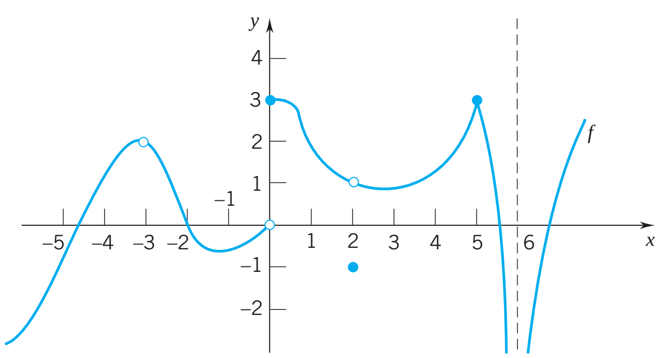
EXERCISES 2.4

1. The graph of f is given in the figure.

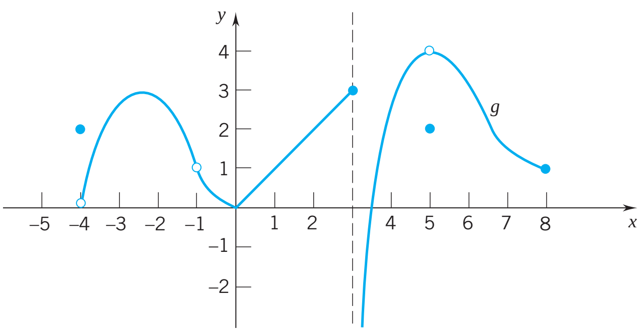
(a) At which points is f discontinuous?

(b) For each point of discontinuity found in (a), determine whether f is continuous from the right, from the left, or neither.

(c) Which, if any, of the points of discontinuity found in (a) is removable? Which, if any, is a jump discontinuity?



2. The graph of g is given in the figure. Determine the intervals on which g is continuous.



Exercises 3–16. Determine whether or not the function is continuous at the indicated point. If not, determine whether the discontinuity is a removable discontinuity or an essential discontinuity. If the latter, state whether it is a jump discontinuity, an infinite discontinuity, or neither.

3. $f(x) = x^3 - 5x + 1; \quad x = 2.$

4. $g(x) = \sqrt{(x-1)^2 + 5}; \quad x = 1.$

5. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 9}; \quad x = 3.$

6. $f(x) = |4 - x^2|; \quad x = 2.$

7. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 4, & x < 2 \\ x^3, & x \geq 2; \end{cases} \quad x = 2.$

8. $h(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 5, & x < 2 \\ x^3, & x \geq 2; \end{cases} \quad x = 2.$

9. $g(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 4, & x < 2 \\ 5, & x = 2 \\ x^3, & x > 2; \end{cases} \quad x = 2.$

10. $g(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 5, & x < 2 \\ 10, & x = 2 \\ 1 + x^3, & x > 2; \end{cases} \quad x = 2.$

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{|x-1|}{x-1}, & x \neq 1 \\ 0, & x = 1; \end{cases} \quad x = 1.$

12. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x, & x < 1 \\ 1, & x = 1; \\ x^2 - 1, & x > 1; \end{cases} \quad x = 1.$

13. $h(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - 1}{x + 1}, & x \neq -1, \\ -2, & x = -1; \end{cases} \quad x = -1.$

14. $g(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x + 1}, & x \neq -1 \\ 0, & x = -1; \end{cases} \quad x = -1.$

15. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x + 2}{x^2 - 4}, & x \neq 2 \\ 4, & x = 2; \end{cases} \quad x = 2$

16. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & x < 0 \\ 0, & x = 0 \\ 1/x^2, & x > 0; \end{cases} \quad x = 0$

Exercises 17–28. Sketch the graph and classify the discontinuities (if any) as being removable or essential. If the latter, is it a jump discontinuity, an infinite discontinuity, or neither.

17. $f(x) = |x - 1|.$

18. $h(x) = |x^2 - 1|.$

19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - 4}{x - 2}, & x \neq 2 \\ 4, & x = 2. \end{cases}$

20. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x - 3}{x^2 - 9}, & x \neq 3, -3 \\ \frac{1}{6}, & x = 3, -3 \end{cases}$

21. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x + 2}{x^2 - x - 6}, & x \neq -2, 3 \\ -\frac{1}{5}, & x = -2, 3. \end{cases}$

22. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - 1, & x < 1 \\ 0, & x = 1 \\ 1/x^2, & x > 1. \end{cases}$

23. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -1, & x < -1 \\ x^3, & -1 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1, & 1 < x. \end{cases}$

24. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \leq -2 \\ \frac{1}{2}x, & -2 < x < 4 \\ \sqrt{x}, & 4 \leq x. \end{cases}$

25. $h(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \leq 0 \\ x^2, & 0 < x < 1 \\ 1, & 1 \leq x < 2 \\ x, & 2 \leq x. \end{cases}$

26. $g(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & x < -1 \\ 3, & x = -1 \\ 2 - x, & -1 < x \leq 1 \\ 1/x^2, & 1 < x. \end{cases}$

27. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 9, & x < -2 \\ x^2 + 1, & -2 < x \leq 1, \\ 3x - 1, & 1 < x < 3 \\ x + 6, & 3 < x. \end{cases}$

28. $g(x) = \begin{cases} x + 7, & x < -3 \\ |x - 2|, & -3 < x < -1 \\ x^2 - 2x, & -1 < x < 3 \\ 2x - 3, & 3 \leq x. \end{cases}$

29. Sketch a graph of a function f that satisfies the following conditions:

1. $\text{dom}(f) = [-3, 3]$.

2. $f(-3) = f(-1) = 1$; $f(2) = f(3) = 2$.

3. f has an infinite discontinuity at -1 and a jump discontinuity at 2.

4. f is right continuous at -1 and left continuous at 2.

30. Sketch a graph of a function f that satisfies the following conditions:

1. $\text{dom}(f) = [-2, 2]$.

2. $f(-2) = f(-1) = f(1) = f(2) = 0$.

3. f has an infinite discontinuity at -2, a jump discontinuity at -1, a jump discontinuity at 1, and an infinite discontinuity at 2.

4. f is continuous from the right at -1 and continuous from the left at 1.

Exercises 31–34. If possible, define the function at 1 so that it becomes continuous at 1.

31. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}.$

32. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x - 1}.$

33. $f(x) = \dfrac{x - 1}{|x - 1|}.$

34. $f(x) = \dfrac{(x - 1)^2}{|x - 1|}.$

35. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x < 1 \\ Ax - 3, & x \geq 1. \end{cases}$ Find A given that f is continuous at 1.

36. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} A^2x^2, & x \leq 2 \\ (1 - A)x, & x > 2. \end{cases}$ For what values of A is f continuous at 2?

37. Give necessary and sufficient conditions on A and B for the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} Ax - B, & x \le 1 \\ 3x, & 1 < x < 2 \\ Bx^2 - A, & 2 \le x \end{cases}$$

to be continuous at $x = 1$ but discontinuous at $x = 2$.

38. Give necessary and sufficient conditions on A and B for the function in Exercise 37 to be continuous at $x = 2$ but discontinuous at $x = 1$.

39. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + cx, & x < 2 \\ c - x, & x \ge 2. \end{cases}$ Find a value of c that makes f continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$. Use a graphing utility to verify your result.

40. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - cx + dx^2, & x \le -1 \\ x^2 + x, & -1 < x < 2 \\ cx^2 + dx + 4, & x \ge 2. \end{cases}$ Find values of c and d that make f continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$. Use a graphing utility to verify your result.

Exercises 41–44. Define the function at 5 so that it becomes continuous at 5.

41. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x+4} - 3}{x - 5}$.

42. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x+4} - 3}{\sqrt{x - 5}}$.

43. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{2x-1} - 3}{x - 5}$.

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 - 7x + 16} - \sqrt{6}}{(x-5)\sqrt{x+1}}$.

Exercises 45–47. At what points (if any) is the function continuous?

45. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational.} \end{cases}$

46. $g(x) = \begin{cases} x, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational.} \end{cases}$

47. $h(x) = \begin{cases} 2x, & x \text{ an integer} \\ x^2, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

48. The following functions are important in science and engineering:

1. The *Heaviside function* $H_c(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < c \\ 1, & x \ge c. \end{cases}$
2. The *unit pulse function*

$$P_{\epsilon,c}(x) = \frac{1}{\epsilon}[H_c(x) - H_{c+\epsilon}(x)].$$

(a) Graph H_c and $P_{\epsilon,c}$.
(b) Determine where each of the functions is continuous.
(c) Find $\lim_{x\to c^-} H_c(x)$ and $\lim_{x\to c^+} H_c(x)$. What can you say about $\lim_{x\to c} H(x)$?

49. (*Important*) Prove that

$$f \text{ is continuous at } c \quad \text{iff} \quad \lim_{h\to 0} f(c+h) = f(c).$$

50. (*Important*) Let f and g be continuous at c. Prove that if:
(a) $f(c) > 0$, then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that $f(x) > 0$ for all $x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$.
(b) $f(c) < 0$, then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that $f(x) < 0$ for all $x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$.
(c) $f(c) < g(c)$, then there exists $\delta > 0$ such that $f(x) < g(x)$ for all $x \in (c - \delta, c + \delta)$.

51. Suppose that f has an essential discontinuity at c. Change the value of f as you choose at any finite number of points $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ and call the resulting function g. Show that g also has an essential discontinuity at c.

52. (a) Prove that if f is continuous everywhere, then $|f|$ is continuous everywhere.
(b) Give an example to show that the continuity of $|f|$ does not imply the continuity of f.
(c) Give an example of a function f such that f is continuous nowhere, but $|f|$ is continuous everywhere.

53. Suppose the function f has the property that there exists a number B such that

$$|f(x) - f(c)| \le B|x - c|$$

for all x in the interval $(c - p, c + p)$. Prove that f is continuous at c.

54. Suppose the function f has the property that

$$|f(x) - f(t)| \le |x - t|$$

for each pair of points x, t in the interval (a, b). Prove that f is continuous on (a, b).

55. Prove that if

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(c+h) - f(c)}{h}$$

exists, then f is continuous at c.

56. Suppose that the function f is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$. Show that f can be written

$$f = f_e + f_o,$$

where f_e is an even function which is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$ and f_o is an odd function which is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$.

Exercises 57–60. The function f is not defined at $x = 0$. Use a graphing utility to graph f. Zoom in to determine whether there is a number k such that the function

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} f(x), & x \ne 0 \\ k, & x = 0 \end{cases}$$

is continuous at $x = 0$. If so, what is k? Support your conclusion by calculating the limit using a CAS.

57. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin 5x}{\sin 2x}$.

58. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{1 - \cos 2x}$.

59. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{|x|}$.

60. $f(x) = \dfrac{x \sin 2x}{\sin x^2}$.

■ 2.5 THE PINCHING THEOREM; TRIGONOMETRIC LIMITS

Figure 2.5.1 shows the graphs of three functions f, g, h. Suppose that, as suggested by the figure, for x close to c, f is trapped between g and h. (The values of these functions at c itself are irrelevant.) If, as x tends to c, both $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ tend to the same limit L, then $f(x)$ also tends to L. This idea is made precise in what we call *the pinching theorem*.

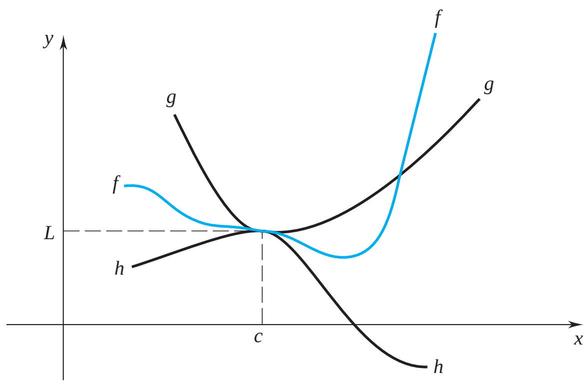


Figure 2.5.1

THEOREM 2.5.1 THE PINCHING THEOREM

Let $p > 0$. Suppose that, for all x such that $0 < |x - c| < p$,

$$h(x) \le f(x) \le g(x).$$

If

$$\lim_{x \to c} h(x) = L \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x \to c} g(x) = L,$$

then

$$\lim_{x \to c} f(x) = L.$$

PROOF Let $\epsilon > 0$. Let $p > 0$ be such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < p, \quad \text{then} \quad h(x) \le f(x) \le g(x).$$

Choose $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta_1, \quad \text{then} \quad L - \epsilon < h(x) < L + \epsilon.$$

Choose $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - c| < \delta_2, \quad \text{then} \quad L - \epsilon < g(x) < L + \epsilon.$$

Let $\delta = \min\{p, \delta_1, \delta_2\}$. For x satisfying $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, we have

$$L - \epsilon < h(x) \le f(x) \le g(x) < L + \epsilon,$$

and thus

$$|f(x) - L| < \epsilon. \quad \square$$

Remark With straightforward modifications, the pinching theorem holds for one-sided limits. We do not spell out the details here because throughout this section we will be working with two-sided limits. ❑

We come now to some trigonometric limits. All calculations are based on radian measure.

As our first application of the pinching theorem, we prove that

(2.5.2) $$\boxed{\lim_{x\to 0} \sin x = 0.}$$

PROOF To follow the argument, see Figure 2.5.2.[†]

For small $x \neq 0$

$$0 < |\sin x| = \text{length of } \overline{BP} < \text{length of } \overline{AP} < \text{length of } \widehat{AP} = |x|.$$

Thus, for such x

$$0 < |\sin x| < |x|.$$

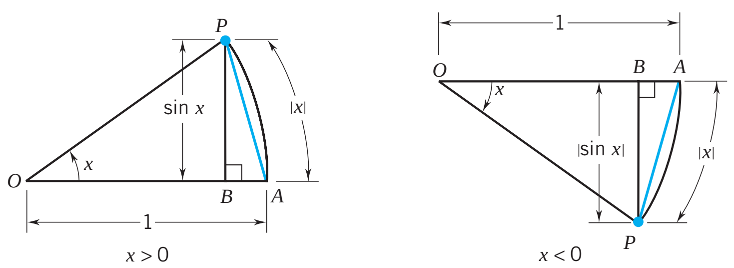


Figure 2.5.2

Since

$$\lim_{x\to 0} 0 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0} |x| = 0,$$

we know from the pinching theorem that

$$\lim_{x\to 0} |\sin x| = 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0} \sin x = 0. \quad ❑$$

From this it follows readily that

(2.5.3) $$\boxed{\lim_{x\to 0} \cos x = 1.}$$

PROOF In general, $\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$. For x close to 0, the cosine is positive and we have

$$\cos x = \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}.$$

As x tends to 0, $\sin x$ tends to 0, $\sin^2 x$ tends to 0, and therefore $\cos x$ tends to 1. ❑

[†]Recall that in a circle of radius 1, a central angle of x radians subtends an arc of length $|x|$.

Next we show that the sine and cosine functions are everywhere continuous; which is to say, for all real numbers c,

(2.5.4)
$$\boxed{\lim_{x\to c} \sin x = \sin c \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to c} \cos x = \cos c.}$$

PROOF Take any real number c. By (2.2.6) we can write

$$\lim_{x\to c} \sin x \qquad \text{as} \qquad \lim_{h\to 0} \sin(c+h).$$

This form of the limit suggests that we use the addition formula

$$\sin(c+h) = \sin c \cos h + \cos c \sin h.$$

Since $\sin c$ and $\cos c$ are constants, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0} \sin(c+h) &= (\sin c)(\lim_{h\to 0} \cos h) + (\cos c)(\lim_{h\to 0} \sin h)\\ &= (\sin c)(1) + (\cos c)(0) = \sin c.\end{aligned}$$

The proof that $\lim_{x\to c} \cos x = \cos c$ is left to you. ❑

The remaining trigonometric functions

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}, \qquad \cot x = \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}, \qquad \sec x = \frac{1}{\cos x}, \qquad \csc x = \frac{1}{\sin x}$$

are all continuous where defined. Justification? They are all quotients of continuous functions.

We turn now to two limits, the importance of which will become clear in Chapter 3:

(2.5.5)
$$\boxed{\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1-\cos x}{x} = 0.}$$

Remark These limits were investigated by numerical methods in Section 2.1, the first in the text, the second in the exercises. ❑

PROOF We show that

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

by using some simple geometry and the pinching theorem. For any x satisfying $0 < x \le \pi/2$ (see Figure 2.5.3), length of $\overline{PB} = \sin x$, length of $\overline{OB} = \cos x$, and length $\overline{OA} = 1$. Since triangle OAQ is a right triangle, $\tan x = \overline{QA}/1 = \overline{QA}$. Now

$$\text{area of triangle } OAP = \frac{1}{2}(1)\sin x = \frac{1}{2}\sin x$$

$$\text{area of sector } OAP = \frac{1}{2}(1)^2 x = \frac{1}{2}x$$

$$\text{area of triangle } OAQ = \frac{1}{2}(1)\tan x = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}.$$

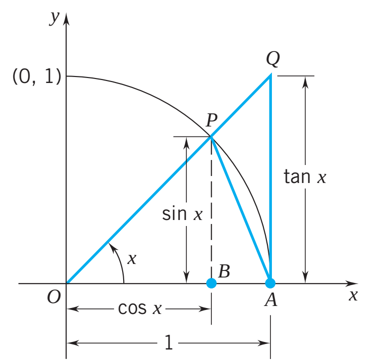


Figure 2.5.3

Since triangle $OAP \subseteq$ sector $OAP \subseteq$ triangle OAQ (and these are all proper containments), we have

$$\frac{1}{2}\sin x < \frac{1}{2}x < \frac{1}{2}\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$$

$$1 < \frac{x}{\sin x} < \frac{1}{\cos x}$$

$$\cos x < \frac{\sin x}{x} < 1.$$

This inequality was derived for $x > 0$, but since

$$\cos(-x) = \cos x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\sin(-x)}{-x} = \frac{-\sin x}{-x} = \frac{\sin x}{x},$$

this inequality also holds for $x < 0$.

We can now apply the pinching theorem. Since

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\cos x = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0} 1 = 1,$$

we can conclude that

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin x}{x} = 1.$$

Now let's show that

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{1-\cos x}{x} = 0.$$

For small $x \neq 0$, $\cos x$ is close to 1 and so $\cos x \neq -1$. Therefore, we can write

$$\frac{1-\cos x}{x} = \left(\frac{1-\cos x}{x}\right)\left(\frac{1+\cos x}{1+\cos x}\right)^{\dagger}$$

$$= \frac{1-\cos^2 x}{x(1+\cos x)}$$

$$= \frac{\sin^2 x}{x(1+\cos x)}$$

$$= \left(\frac{\sin x}{x}\right)\left(\frac{\sin x}{1+\cos x}\right).$$

Since

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin x}{x} = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin x}{1+\cos x} = \frac{0}{2} = 0,$$

it follows that

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{1-\cos x}{x} = 0. \quad \square$$

† This "trick" is a fairly common procedure with trigonometric expressions. It is much like using "conjugates" to revise algebraic expressions:

$$\frac{3}{4+\sqrt{2}} = \frac{3}{4+\sqrt{2}}\cdot\frac{4-\sqrt{2}}{4-\sqrt{2}} = \frac{3(4-\sqrt{2})}{14}.$$

Remark The limit statements in (2.5.5) can be generalized as follows:

(2.5.6)

For each number $a \neq 0$

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin ax}{ax} = 1 \qquad \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1-\cos ax}{ax} = 0.$$

Exercise 38. ❑

We are now in a position to evaluate a variety of trigonometric limits.

Example 1 Find $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin 4x}{3x}$ and $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{1-\cos 2x}{5x}$.

SOLUTION To calculate the first limit, we "pair off" sin 4x with 4x and use (2.5.6):

$$\frac{\sin 4x}{3x} = \frac{4}{4}\cdot\frac{\sin 4x}{3x} = \frac{4}{3}\cdot\frac{\sin 4x}{4x}.$$

Therefore,

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin 4x}{3x} = \lim_{x\to 0}\left[\frac{4}{3}\cdot\frac{\sin 4x}{4x}\right] = \frac{4}{3}\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin 4x}{4x} = \frac{4}{3}(1) = \frac{4}{3}.$$

The second limit can be obtained the same way:

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{1-\cos 2x}{5x} = \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{2}{5}\cdot\frac{1-\cos 2x}{2x} = \frac{2}{5}\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{1-\cos 2x}{2x} = \frac{2}{5}(0) = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find $\lim_{x\to 0} x \cot 3x$.

SOLUTION We begin by writing

$$x\cot 3x = x\frac{\cos 3x}{\sin 3x} = \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{3x}{\sin 3x}\right)(\cos\ 3x).$$

Since

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin 3x}{3x} = 1 \qquad \text{gives} \qquad \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{3x}{\sin 3x} = 1,$$

and $\lim_{x\to 0}\cos\ 3x = \cos\ 0 = 1$, we see that

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\ x\ \cot 3x = \frac{1}{3}\lim_{x\to 0}\left(\frac{3x}{\sin 3x}\right)\lim_{x\to 0}(\cos 3x) = \frac{1}{3}(1)(1) = \frac{1}{3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Find $\lim_{x\to \pi/4} \dfrac{\sin\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)}{\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)^2}$.

SOLUTION
$$\frac{\sin\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)}{(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi)^2} = \left[\frac{\sin\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)}{(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi)}\right]\cdot\frac{1}{x-\frac{1}{4}\pi}.$$

We know that

$$\lim_{x\to\pi/4}\frac{\sin\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)}{x-\frac{1}{4}\pi} = 1.$$

Since $\lim_{x\to\pi/4}\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)=0$, you can see by Theorem 2.3.10 that

$$\lim_{x\to\pi/4}\frac{\sin\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)}{\left(x-\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)^2}\qquad\text{does not exist.}\quad ❑$$

Example 4 Find $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{x^2}{\sec x-1}$.

SOLUTION The evaluation of this limit requires a little imagination. Since both the numerator and denominator tend to zero as x tends to zero, it is not clear what happens to the fraction. However, we can rewrite the fraction in a more amenable form by multiplying both numerator and denominator by $\sec x+1$.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{x^2}{\sec x-1}&=\frac{x^2}{\sec x-1}\left(\frac{\sec x+1}{\sec x+1}\right)\\&=\frac{x^2(\sec x+1)}{\sec^2 x-1}=\frac{x^2(\sec x+1)}{\tan^2 x-1}\\&=\frac{x^2\cos^2 x(\sec x+1)}{\sin^2 x}\\&=\left(\frac{x}{\sin x}\right)^2(\cos^2 x)(\sec x+1).\end{aligned}$$

Since each of these factors has a limit as x tends to 0, the fraction we began with has a limit:

$$\lim_{x\to0}\frac{x^2}{\sec x-1}=\lim_{x\to0}\left(\frac{x}{\sin x}\right)^2\cdot\lim_{x\to0}\cos^2 x\cdot\lim_{x\to0}(\sec x+1)=(1)(1)(2)=2.\quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 2.5

Exercises 1–32. Evaluate the limits that exist.

1. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin 3x}{x}$.

2. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{2x}{\sin x}$.

3. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{3x}{\sin 5x}$.

4. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin 3x}{2x}$.

5. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin 4x}{\sin 2x}$.

6. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin 3x}{5x}$.

7. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin x^2}{x}$.

8. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin x^2}{x^2}$.

9. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin x}{x^2}$.

10. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin^2 x^2}{x^2}$.

11. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin^2 3x}{5x^2}$.

12. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\tan^2 3x}{4x^2}$.

13. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{2x}{\tan 3x}$.

14. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{4x}{\cot 3x}$.

15. $\lim_{x\to0}x\csc x$.

16. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\cos x-1}{2x}$.

17. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{x^2}{1-\cos 2x}$.

18. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{x^2-2x}{\sin 3x}$.

19. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{1-\sec^2 2x}{x^2}$.

20. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{1}{2x\csc x}$.

21. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{2x^2+x}{\sin x}$.

22. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{1-\cos 4x}{9x^2}$.

23. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\tan 3x}{2x^2+5x}$.

24. $\lim_{x\to0}x^2(1+\cot^2 3x)$.

25. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sec x-1}{x\sec x}$.

26. $\lim_{x\to\pi/4}\dfrac{1-\cos x}{x}$.

27. $\lim_{x\to\pi/4}\dfrac{\sin x}{x}$.

28. $\lim_{x\to0}\dfrac{\sin^2 x}{x(1-\cos x)}$.

29. $\lim_{x\to\pi/2}\dfrac{\cos x}{x-\frac{1}{2}\pi}$.

30. $\lim_{x\to\pi}\dfrac{\sin x}{x-\pi}$.

31. $\lim_{x\to\pi/4}\dfrac{\sin\left(x+\frac{1}{4}\pi\right)-1}{x-\frac{1}{4}\pi}$. HINT: $x+\frac{1}{4}\pi=x-\frac{1}{4}\pi+\frac{1}{2}\pi$.

32. $\lim_{x\to\pi/6}\dfrac{\sin\left(x+\frac{1}{3}\pi\right)-1}{x-\frac{1}{6}\pi}$.

33. Show that $\lim_{x\to c}\cos x=\cos c$ for all real numbers c.

Exercises 34–37. Evaluate the limit, taking a and b as nonzero constants.

34. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin ax}{bx}$.

35. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{1-\cos ax}{bx}$.

36. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin ax}{\sin bx}$.

37. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\cos ax}{\cos bx}$.

38. Show that

if $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = L$, then $\lim_{x\to 0} f(ax) = L$ for each $a \neq 0$.

HINT: Let $\epsilon > 0$. If $\delta_1 > 0$ "works" for the first limit, then $\delta = \delta_1/|a|$ "works" for the second limit.

Exercises 39–42. Evaluate $\lim_{h\to 0}[f(c+h) - f(c)]/h$.

39. $f(x) = \sin x$, $c = \pi/4$. HINT: Use the addition formula for the sine function.

40. $f(x) = \cos x$, $c = \pi/3$.

41. $f(x) = \cos 2x$, $c = \pi/6$.

42. $f(x) = \sin 3x$, $c = \pi/2$.

43. Show that $\lim_{x\to 0} x \sin(1/x) = 0$. HINT: Use the pinching theorem.

44. Show that $\lim_{x\to \pi} (x-\pi)\cos^2[1/(x-\pi)] = 0$.

45. Show that $\lim_{x\to 1} |x-1| \sin x = 0$.

46. Let f be the Dirichlet function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational.} \end{cases}$$

Show that $\lim_{x\to 0} x f(x) = 0$.

47. Prove that if there is a number B such that $|f(x)| \leq B$ for all $x \neq 0$, then $\lim_{x\to 0} x f(x) = 0$. NOTE: Exercises 43–46 are special cases of this general result.

48. Prove that if there is a number B such that $|f(x)/x| \leq B$ for all $x \neq 0$, then $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = 0$.

49. Prove that if there is a number B such that $|f(x) - L|/|x-c| \leq B$ for all $x \neq c$, then $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$.

50. Given that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = 0$ and $|g(x)| \leq B$ for all x in an interval $(c-p, c+p)$, prove that

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x)g(x) = 0.$$

Exercises 51–52. Use the limit utility in a CAS to evaluate the limit.

51. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{20x - 15x^2}{\sin 2x}$.

52. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\tan x}{x^2}$.

53. Use a graphing utility to plot $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{\tan 3x}$ on $[-0.2, 0.2]$. Estimate $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; use the zoom function if necessary. Verify your result analytically.

54. Use a graphing utility to plot $f(x) = \dfrac{\tan x}{\tan x + x}$ on $[-0.2, 0.2]$. Estimate $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$; use the zoom function if necessary. Verify your result analytically.

■ 2.6 TWO BASIC THEOREMS

A function which is continuous on an interval does not "skip" any values, and thus its graph is an "unbroken curve." There are no "holes" in it and no "jumps." This idea is expressed coherently by the *intermediate-value theorem*.

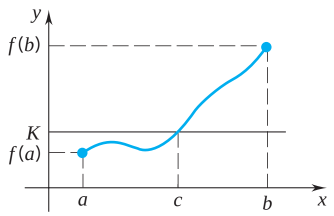


Figure 2.6.1

THEOREM 2.6.1 THE INTERMEDIATE-VALUE THEOREM

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and K is any number between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$, then there is at least one number c in the interval (a, b) such that $f(c) = K$.

We illustrate the theorem in Figure 2.6.1. What can happen in the discontinuous case is illustrated in Figure 2.6.2. There the number K has been "skipped."

It's a small step from the intermediate-value theorem to the following observation:

"continuous functions map intervals onto intervals."

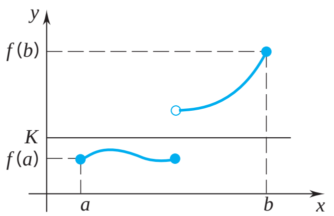


Figure 2.6.2

A proof of the intermediate-value theorem is given in Appendix B. We will assume the result and illustrate its usefulness.

Here we apply the theorem to the problem of locating the zeros of a function. In particular, suppose that the function f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and that either

$$f(a) < 0 < f(b) \qquad \text{or} \qquad f(b) < 0 < f(a) \qquad \text{(Figure 2.6.3)}$$

Then, by the intermediate-value theorem, we know that the equation $f(x) = 0$ has at least one root between a and b.

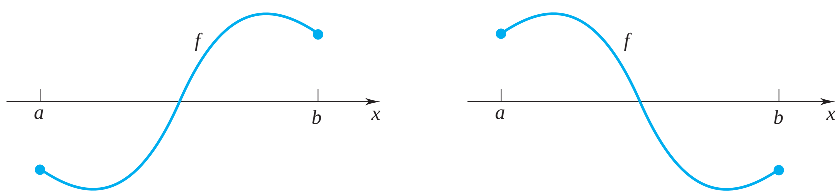


Figure 2.6.3

Example 1 We set $f(x) = x^2 - 2$. Since $f(1) = -1 < 0$ and $f(2) = 2 > 0$, there exists a number c between 1 and 2 such that $f(c) = 0$. Since f increases on $[1, 2]$, there is only one such number. This is the number we call $\sqrt{2}$.

So far we have shown only that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1 and 2. We can locate $\sqrt{2}$ more precisely by evaluating f at 1.5, the midpoint of the interval $[1, 2]$. Since $f(1.5) = 0.25 > 0$ and $f(1) < 0$, we know that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1 and 1.5. We now evaluate f at 1.25, the midpoint of $[1, 1.5]$. Since $f(1.25) \cong -0.438 < 0$ and $f(1.5) > 0$, we know that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1.25 and 1.5. Our next step is to evaluate f at 1.375, the midpoint of $[1.25, 1.5]$. Since $f(1.375) \cong -0.109 < 0$ and $f(1.5) > 0$, we know that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1.375 and 1.5. We now evaluate f at 1.4375, the midpoint of $[1.375, 1.5]$. Since $f(1.4375) \cong 0.066 > 0$ and $f(1.375) < 0$, we know that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1.375 and 1.4375. The average of these two numbers, rounded off to two decimal places, is 1.41. A calculator gives $\sqrt{2} \cong 1.4142$. So we are not far off. ❑

The method used in Example 1 is called the *bisection method*. It can be used to locate the roots of a wide variety of equations. The more bisections we carry out, the more accuracy we obtain.

As you will see in the exercise section, the intermediate-value theorem gives us results that are otherwise elusive, but, as our next example makes clear, the theorem has to be applied with some care.

Example 2 The function $f(x) = 2/x$ takes on the value -2 at $x = -1$ and it takes on the value 2 at $x = 1$. Certainly 0 lies between -2 and 2. Does it follow that f takes on the value 0 somewhere between -1 and 1? No: the function is not continuous on $[-1, 1]$, and therefore it can and does skip the number 0. ❑

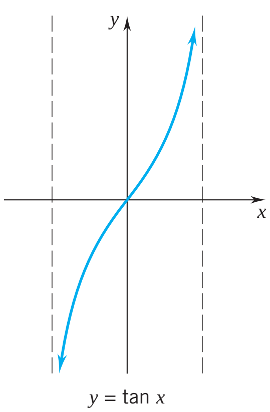


Figure 2.6.4

Boundedness; Extreme Values

A function f is said to be *bounded* or *unbounded* on a set I in the sense in which the set of values taken on by f on the set I is bounded or unbounded.

For example, the sine and cosine functions are bounded on $(-\infty, \infty)$:

$$-1 \leq \sin x \leq 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -1 \leq \cos x \leq 1 \qquad \text{for all } x \in (-\infty, \infty).$$

Both functions map $(-\infty, \infty)$ onto $[-1, 1]$.

The situation is markedly different in the case of the tangent. (See Figure 2.6.4.) The tangent function is bounded on $[0, \pi/4]$; on $[0, \pi/2)$ it is bounded below but

not bounded above; on $(-\pi/2, 0]$ it is bounded above but not bounded below; on $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$ it is unbounded both below and above.

Example 3 Let

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 1/x^2, & x > 0 \\ 0, & x = 0. \end{cases}$$

(Figure 2.6.5)

It is clear that g is unbounded on $[0, \infty)$. (It is unbounded above.) However, it is bounded on $[1, \infty)$. The function maps $[0, \infty)$ onto $[0, \infty)$, and it maps $[1, \infty)$ onto $(0, 1]$. ❑

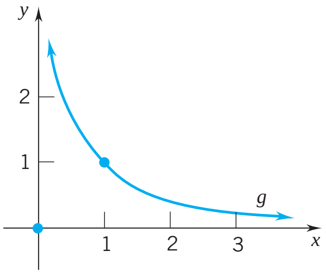


Figure 2.6.5

A function may take on a maximum value; it may take on a minimum value; it may take on both a maximum value and a minimum value; it may take on neither.

Here are some simple examples:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational} \end{cases}$$

takes on both a maximum value (the number 1) and a minimum value (the number 0) on every interval of the real line.

The function

$$f(x) = x^2 \qquad x \in (0, 5]$$

takes on a maximum value (the number 25), but it has no minimum value.

The function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \qquad x \in (0, \infty)$$

has no maximum value and no minimum value.

For a function continuous on a bounded closed interval, the existence of both a maximum value and a minimum value is guaranteed. The following theorem is fundamental.

THEOREM 2.6.2 THE EXTREME-VALUE THEOREM

If f is continuous on a bounded closed interval $[a, b]$, then on that interval f takes on both a maximum value M and a minimum value m.

For obvious reasons, M and m are called the *extreme values* of the function.

The result is illustrated in Figure 2.6.6. The maximum value M is taken on at the point marked d, and the minimum value m is taken on at the point marked c.

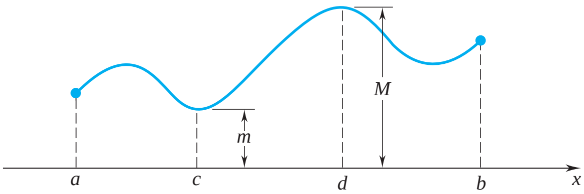


Figure 2.6.6

In Theorem 2.6.2, the full hypothesis is needed. If the interval is not bounded, the result need not hold: the cubing function $f(x) = x^3$ has no maximum on the interval $[0, \infty)$. If the interval is not closed, the result need not hold: the identity function

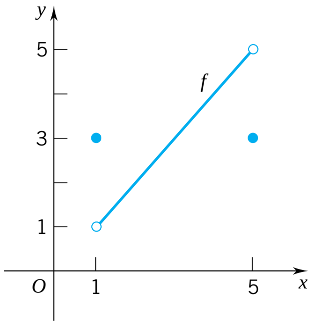


Figure 2.6.7

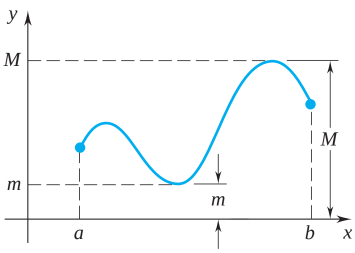
$f(x) = x$ has no maximum and no minimum on (0, 2). If the function is not continuous, the result need not hold. As an example, take the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 3, & x = 1 \\ x, & 1 < x < 5 \\ 3, & x = 5. \end{cases}$$

The graph is shown in Figure 2.6.7. The function is defined on [1, 5], but it takes on neither a maximum value nor a minimum value. The function maps the closed interval [1, 5] onto the open interval (1, 5).

One final observation. From the intermediate-value theorem we know that

"continuous functions map intervals onto intervals."



f: $[a, b] \to [m, M]$

Figure 2.6.8

Now that we have the extreme-value theorem, we know that

"continuous functions map bounded closed intervals $[a, b]$ *onto bounded closed intervals* $[m, M]$*."* (See Figure 2.6.8.)

Of course, if f is constant, then $M = m$ and the interval $[m, M]$ collapses to a point.

A proof of the extreme-value theorem is given in Appendix B. Techniques for determining the maximum and minimum values of functions are developed in Chapter 4. These techniques require an understanding of "differentiation," the subject to which we devote Chapter 3.

EXERCISES 2.6

Exercises 1–8. Use the intermediate-value theorem to show that there is a solution of the given equation in the indicated interval.

1. $2x^3 - 4x^2 + 5x - 4 = 0$; $[1, 2]$.

2. $x^4 - x - 1 = 0$; $[-1, 1]$.

3. $\sin x + 2\cos x - x^2 = 0$; $[0, \pi/2]$.

4. $2\tan x - x = 1$; $[0, \pi/4]$.

5. $x^2 - 2 + \dfrac{1}{2x} = 0$; $[\frac{1}{4}, 1]$.

6. $x^{5/3} + x^{1/3} = 1$; $[-1, 1]$.

7. $x^3 = \sqrt{x+2}$; $[1, 2]$.

8. $\sqrt{x^2 - 3x} - 2 = 0$; $[3, 5]$.

9. Let $f(x) = x^5 - 2x^2 + 5x$. Show that there is a number c such that $f(c) = 1$.

10. Let $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x-1} + \dfrac{1}{x-4}$. Show that there is a number $c \in (1, 4)$ such that $f(c) = 0$.

11. Show that the equation $x^3 - 4x + 2 = 0$ has three distinct roots in $[-3, 3]$ and locate the roots between consecutive integers.

12. Use the intermediate-value theorem to prove that there exists a positive number c such that $c^3 = 2$.

Exercises 13–24. Sketch the graph of a function f that is defined on [0, 1] and meets the given conditions (if possible).

13. f is continuous on [0, 1], minimum value 0, maximum value $\frac{1}{2}$.

14. f is continuous on [0, 1), minimum value 0, no maximum value.

15. f is continuous on (0, 1), takes on the values 0 and 1, but does not take on the value $\frac{1}{2}$.

16. f is continuous on [0, 1], takes on the values -1 and 1, but does not take on the value 0.

17. f is continuous on [0, 1], maximum value 1, minimum value 1.

18. f is continuous on [0, 1] and nonconstant, takes on no integer values.

19. f is continuous on [0, 1], takes on no rational values.

20. f is not continuous on [0, 1], takes on both a maximum value and a minimum value and every value in between.

21. f is continuous on (0, 1), takes on only two distinct values.

22. f is continuous on (0, 1), takes on only three distinct values.

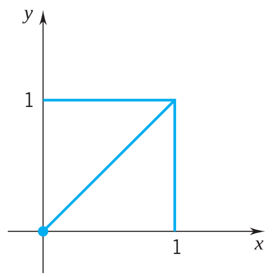
23. f is continuous on (0, 1), and the range of f is an unbounded interval.

24. f is continuous on [0, 1], and the range of f is an unbounded interval.

25. (*Fixed-point property*) Show that if f is continuous on [0, 1] and $0 \leq f(x) \leq 1$ for all $x \in [0, 1]$, then there exists at least one point c in [0, 1] at which $f(c) = c$. HINT: Apply the intermediate-value theorem to the function $g(x) = x - f(x)$.

26. Given that f and g are continuous on $[a, b]$, that $f(a) < g(a)$, and $g(b) < f(b)$, show that there exists at least one number c in (a, b) such that $f(c) = g(c)$. HINT: Consider $f(x) - g(x)$.

27. From Exercise 25 we know that if f is continuous on [0, 1] and $0 \leq f(x) \leq 1$ for all $x \in [0, 1]$, then the graph of f intersects the diagonal of the unit square that joins the vertices (0, 0) and (1, 1). (See the figure.) Show that under these conditions



(a) the graph of f also intersects the other diagonal of the unit square

(b) and, more generally, if g is continuous on [0, 1] with $g(0) = 0$ and $g(1) = 1$, or with $g(0) = 1$ and $g(1) = 0$, then the graph of f intersects the graph of g.

28. Use the intermediate-value theorem to prove that every real number has a cube root. That is, prove that for any real number a there exists a number c such that $c^3 = a$.

29. The intermediate-value theorem can be used to prove that each polynomial equation of odd degree

$$x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 = 0 \quad \text{with } n \text{ odd}$$

has at least one real root. Show that the cubic equation

$$x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

has at least one real root.

30. Let n be a positive integer.

(a) Prove that if $0 \leq a < b$, then $a^n < b^n$.
HINT: Use mathematical induction.

(b) Prove that every nonnegative real number x has a unique nonnegative nth root $x^{1/n}$.
HINT: The existence of $x^{1/n}$ can be seen by applying the intermediate-value theorem to the function $f(t) = t^n$ for $t \geq 0$. The uniqueness follows from part (a).

31. The temperature T (in °C) at which water boils depends on the elevation above sea level. The formula

$$T(h) = 100.862 - 0.0415\sqrt{h + 431.03}$$

gives the approximate value of T as a function of the elevation h measured in meters. Use the intermediate-value theorem to show that water boils at about 98°C at an elevation of between 4000 and 4500 meters.

32. Assume that at any given instant, the temperature on the earth's surface varies continuously with position. Prove that there is at least one pair of points diametrically opposite each other on the equator where the temperature is the same. HINT: Form a function that relates the temperature at diametrically opposite points of the equator.

33. Let $\mathcal{C}$ denote the set of all circles with radius less than or equal to 10 inches. Prove that there is at least one member of $\mathcal{C}$ with an area of exactly 250 square inches.

34. Fix a positive number P. Let $\mathcal{R}$ denote the set of all rectangles with perimeter P. Prove that there is a member of $\mathcal{R}$ that has maximum area. What are the dimensions of the rectangle of maximum area? HINT: Express the area of an arbitrary element of $\mathcal{R}$ as a function of the length of one of the sides.

35. Given a circle C of radius R. Let $\mathcal{F}$ denote the set of all rectangles that can be inscribed in C. Prove that there is a member of $\mathcal{F}$ that has maximum area.

Exercises 36–39. Use the intermediate-value theorem to estimate the location of the zeros of the function. Then use a graphing utility to approximate these zeros to within 0.001.

36. $f(x) = 2x^3 + 4x - 4$.

37. $f(x) = x^3 - 5x + 3$.

38. $f(x) = x^5 - 3x + 1$.

39. $f(x) = x^3 - 2\sin x + \frac{1}{2}$.

Exercises 40–43. Determine whether the function f satisfies the hypothesis of the intermediate-value theorem on the interval $[a, b]$. If it does, use a graphing utility or a CAS to find a number c in (a, b) such that $f(c) = \frac{1}{2}[f(a) + f(b)]$.

40. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{x^2+1}$; $[-2, 3]$.

41. $f(x) = \dfrac{4x+3}{(x-1)}$; $[-3, 2]$.

42. $f(x) = \sec x$; $[-\pi, 2\pi]$.

43. $f(x) = \sin x - 3\cos 2x$; $[\pi/2, 2\pi]$

Exercises 44–47. Use a graphing utility to graph f on the given interval. Is f bounded? Does it have extreme values? If so, what are these extreme values?

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3 - 8x + 6}{4x + 1}$; $[0, 5]$.

45. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{1 + x^2}$; $[-2, 2]$.

46. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin 2x}{x^2}$; $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$.

47. $f(x) = \dfrac{1 - \cos x}{x^2}$; $[-2, 2]$.

■ PROJECT 2.6 The Bisection Method for Finding the Roots of $f(x) = 0$

If the function f is continuous on $[a, b]$, and if $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ have opposite signs, then, by the intermediate-value theorem, the equation $f(x) = 0$ has at least one root in (a, b). For simplicity, let's assume that there is only one such root and call it c. How can we estimate the location of c? The intermediate-value theorem itself gives us no clue. The simplest method for approximating c is called the *bisection method*. It is an iterative process—a basic step is iterated (carried out repeatedly) until c is approximated with as much accuracy as we wish.

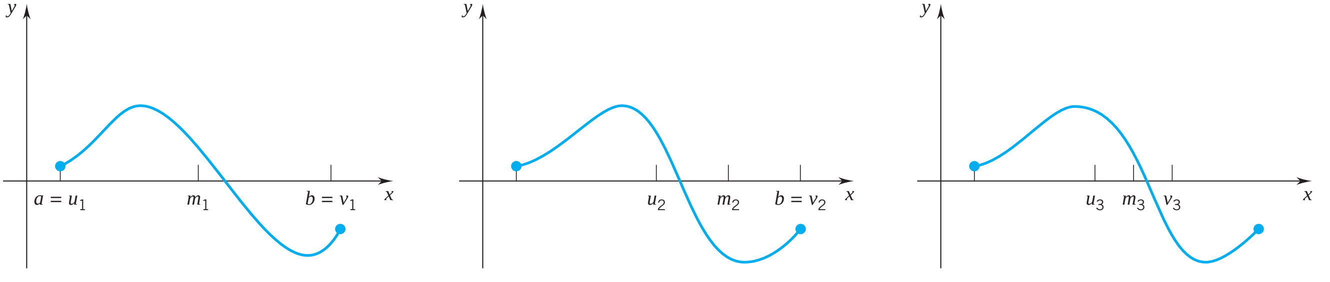
It is standard practice to label the elements of successive approximations by using subscripts $n = 1, 2, 3,$ and so forth. We begin by setting $u_1 = a$ and $v_1 = b$. Now bisect $[u_1, v_1]$. If c is the midpoint of $[u_1, v_1]$, then we are done. If not, then c lies in one of the halves of $[u_1, v_1]$. Call it $[u_2, v_2]$. If c is the midpoint of $[u_2, v_2]$, then we are done. If not, then c lies in one of the halves of $[u_2, v_2]$. Call that half $[u_3, v_3]$ and continue. The first three iterations for a particular function are shown in the figure.

After n bisections, we are examining the midpoint m_n of the interval $[u_n, v_n]$. Therefore, we can be certain that

$$|c - m_n| \leq \frac{1}{2}(v_n - u_n) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{v_{n-1} - u_{n-1}}{2}\right) = \cdots = \frac{b-a}{2^n}.$$

Thus, m_n approximates c to within $(b - a)/2^n$. If we want m_n to approximate c to within a given number ϵ, then we must carry out the iteration to the point where

$$\frac{b-a}{2^n} < \epsilon.$$



Problem 1. In Example 1 we used the function $f(x) = x^2 - 2$ and the bisection method to obtain an estimate of $\sqrt{2}$ accurate to within two decimal places.

(a) Suppose we want a numerical estimate accurate to within 0.001. How many iterations would be required to achieve this accuracy?

(b) How many iterations would be required to obtain a numerical estimate accurate to within 0.0001? 0.00001?

Problem 2. The function $f(x) = x^3 + x - 9$ has one zero c. Locate c between two consecutive integers.

(a) How many iterations of the bisection method would be required to approximate c to within 0.01? Use the bisection method to approximate c to within 0.01.

(b) How many iterations would be required to approximate c to within 0.001? 0.0001?

Problem 3. The function $f(x) = \sin x + x + 3$ has one zero c. Locate c between two consecutive integers.

(a) How many iterations of the bisection method would be required to approximate c to within 0.01? Use the bisection method to approximate c to within 0.01.

(b) How many iterations would be required to approximate c to within 0.00001? 0.000001?

The following modification of the bisection method is sometimes used. Suppose that the function f, continuous on $[a, b]$, has exactly one zero c in the interval (a, b). The line connecting $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$ is drawn and the x-intercept is used as the first approximation for c instead of the midpoint of the interval. The process of bisection is then applied and continued until the desired degree of accuracy is obtained.

Problem 4. Carry out three iterations of the modified bisection method for the functions given in Problems 1, 2, and 3. How does this method compare with the bisection method in terms of the rate at which the approximations converge to the zero c?

CHAPTER 2. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–30. State whether the limit exists; evaluate the limit if it does exist.

1. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{x^2-3}{x+3}$.

2. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2+4}{x^2+2x+1}$.

3. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{(x-3)^2}{x+3}$.

4. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{x^2-9}{x^2-5x+6}$.

5. $\lim_{x\to 2^+} \dfrac{x-2}{|x-2|}$.

6. $\lim_{x\to -2} \dfrac{|x|}{x-2}$.

7. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left(\dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{1-x}{x}\right)$.

8. $\lim_{x\to 3^+} \dfrac{\sqrt{x-3}}{|x-3|}$.

9. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{|x-1|}{x}$.

10. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x^3-1}{|x^3-1|}$.

11. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{\sqrt{x}-1}{x-1}$.

12. $\lim_{x\to 3^+} \dfrac{x^2-2x-3}{\sqrt{x-3}}$.

13. $\lim_{x\to 3^+} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2-2x-3}}{x-3}$.

14. $\lim_{x\to 4} \dfrac{\sqrt{x+5}-3}{x-4}$.

15. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^3-8}{x^4-3x^2-4}$.

16. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{5x}{\sin 2x}$.

17. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\tan^2 2x}{3x^2}$.

18. $\lim_{x\to 0} x \csc 4x$.

19. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x^2-3x}{\tan x}$.

20. $\lim_{x\to \pi/2} \dfrac{\cos x}{2x-\pi}$.

21. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin 3x}{5x^2-4x}$.

22. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{5x^2}{1-\cos 2x}$.

23. $\lim_{x\to -\pi} \dfrac{x+\pi}{\sin x}$.

24. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2-4}{x^3-8}$.

25. $\lim_{x\to 2^-} \dfrac{x-2}{|x^2-4|}$.

26. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{1-2/x}{1-4/x^2}$.

27. $\lim_{x\to 1^+} \dfrac{x^2-3x+2}{\sqrt{x-1}}$.

28. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{1-9/x^2}{1+3x}$.

29. $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x) \quad \text{if } f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1, & x<1 \\ 3x-x^2, & x>1 \end{cases}$.

30. $\lim_{x\to -2} f(x) \quad \text{if } f(x) = \begin{cases} 3+x, & x<-2 \\ 5, & x=-2 \\ x^2-3, & x>-2 \end{cases}$.

31. Let f be some function for which you know only that

$$\text{if} \quad 0<|x-2|<1, \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x)-4|<0.1.$$

Which of the following statements are necessarily true?

(a) If $\quad 0 \le |x-2| < 1, \quad$ then $\quad |f(x)-4| \le 0.1.$

(b) If $\quad 0 < |x-2| < \frac{1}{2}, \quad$ then $\quad |f(x)-4| < 0.05.$

(c) If $\quad 0 \le |x-2.5| < 0.2, \quad$ then $\quad |f(x)-4| < 0.1.$

(d) If $\quad 0 < |x-1.5| < 1, \quad$ then $\quad |f(x)-4| < 0.1.$

(e) If $\quad \lim_{x\to 2} f(x) = L, \quad$ then $\quad 3.9 \le L \le 4.1.$

32. Find a number a for which $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{2x^2-3ax+x-a-1}{x^2-2x-3}$ exists and then evaluate the limit.

33. (a) Sketch the graph of

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x+4, & x<-1 \\ -2x-2, & -1<x<2 \\ 2x, & x>2 \\ x^2, & x=-1,2 \end{cases}$$

(b) Evaluate the limits that exist.

(i) $\lim_{x\to -1^-} f(x)$.

(ii) $\lim_{x\to -1^+} f(x)$.

(iii) $\lim_{x\to -1} f(x)$.

(iv) $\lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$.

(v) $\lim_{x\to 2^+} f(x)$.

(vi) $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$.

(c) (i) Is f continuous from the left at -1? Is f continuous from the right at -1?

(ii) Is f continuous from the left at 2? Is f continuous from the right at 2?

34. (a) Does $\lim_{x\to 0} \cos\left(\dfrac{1-\cos x}{2x}\right)$ exist? If so, what is the limit?

(b) Does $\lim_{x\to 0} \cos\left(\dfrac{\pi \sin x}{2x}\right)$ exist? If so, what is the limit?

35. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x^2-1, & x<2 \\ A, & x=2 \\ x^3-2Bx, & x>2. \end{cases}$ For what values of A and B is f continuous at 2?

36. Give necessary and sufficient conditions on A and B for the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} Ax+B, & x<-1 \\ 2x, & -1 \le x \le 2 \\ 2Bx-A, & 2<x \end{cases}$$

to be continuous at $x=-1$ but discontinuous at $x=2$.

Exercises 37–40. The function f is continuous everywhere except at a. If possible, define f at a so that it becomes continuous at a.

37. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3-2x-15}{x+3}, \quad a=-3.$

38. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x+1}-2}{x-3}, \quad a=3.$

39. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin \pi x}{x}, \quad a=0.$

40. $f(x) = \dfrac{1-\cos x}{x^2}, \quad a=0.$

41. A function f is defined on the interval $[a,b]$. Which of the following statements are necessarily true?

(a) If $f(a)>0$ and $f(b)<0$, then there must exist at least one number c in (a,b) for which $f(c)=0$.

(b) If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ with $f(a) < 0$ and $f(b) > 0$, then there must exist at least one number c in (a, b) for which $f(c) = 0$.
(c) If f is continuous on (a, b) with $f(a) > 0$ and $f(b) < 0$, then there must exist at least one number c in (a, b), for which $f(c) = 0$.
(d) If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ with $f(c) = 0$ for some number c in (a, b), then $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ have opposite signs.

Exercises 42–43. Use the intermediate-value theorem to show that the equation has a solution in the interval specified.

42. $x^3 - 3x - 4 = 0, \quad [2, 3]$.

43. $2\cos x - x + 1, \quad [1, 2]$.

Exercises 44–46. Give an ϵ, δ proof for each statement.

44. $\lim_{x\to 2}(5x - 4) = 6$.

45. $\lim_{x\to -4} |2x + 5| = 3$.

46. $\lim_{x\to 9} \sqrt{x - 5} = 2$.

47. Prove that if $\lim_{x\to 0}[f(x)/x]$ exists, then $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = 0$.

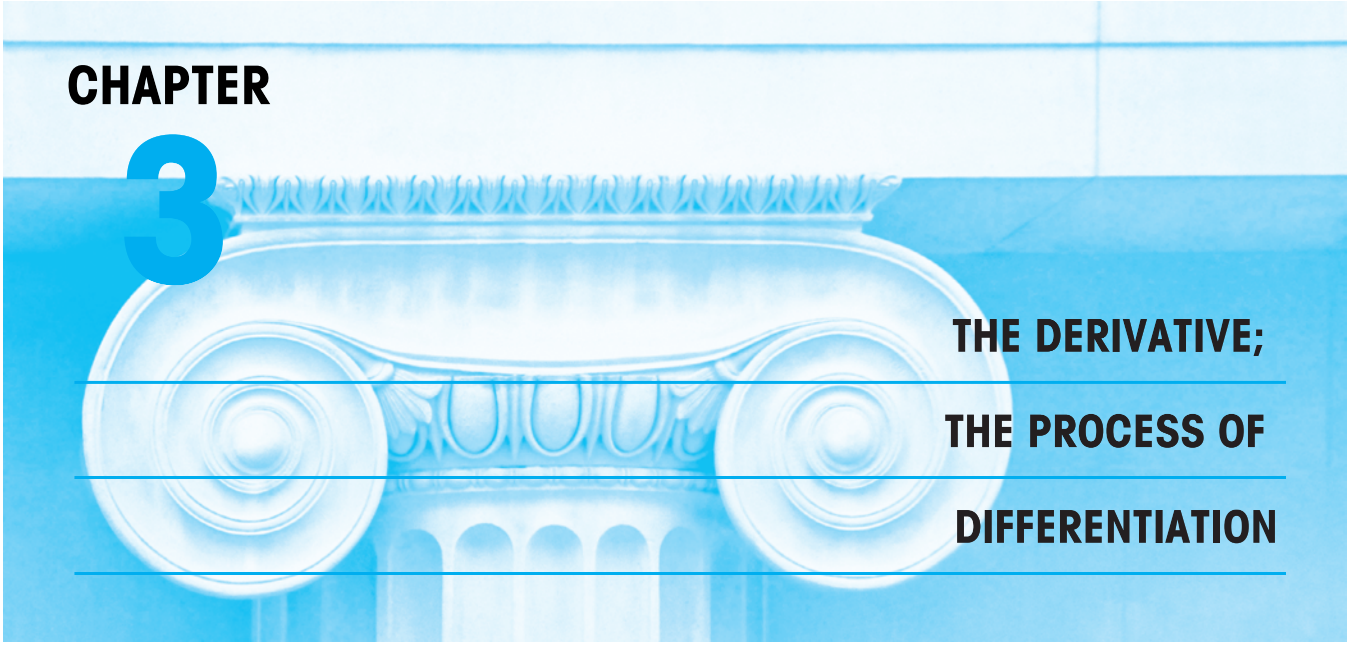
48. Prove that if $\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = l$ and if f is continuous at l, then $\lim_{x\to c} f(g(x)) = f(l)$. HINT: See Theorem 2.4.4.

49. A function f is continuous at all $x \geq 0$. Can f take on the value zero at and only
(a) at the positive integers?
(b) at the reciprocals of the positive integers?

If the answer is yes, sketch a figure that supports your answer; if the answer is no, prove it.

50. Two functions f and g are everywhere defined. Can they both be everywhere continuous
(a) if they differ only at a finite number of points?
(b) if they differ only on a bounded closed interval $[a, b]$?
(c) if they differ only on a bounded open interval (a, b)?

Justify your answers.



CHAPTER 3

THE DERIVATIVE; THE PROCESS OF DIFFERENTIATION

3.1 THE DERIVATIVE

Introduction

We begin with a function f. On the graph of f we choose a point $(x, f(x))$ and a nearby point $(x+h, f(x+h))$. (See Figure 3.1.1.) Through these two points we draw a line. We call this line a *secant line* because it cuts through the graph of f.† The figure shows this secant line first with $h > 0$ and then with $h < 0$.

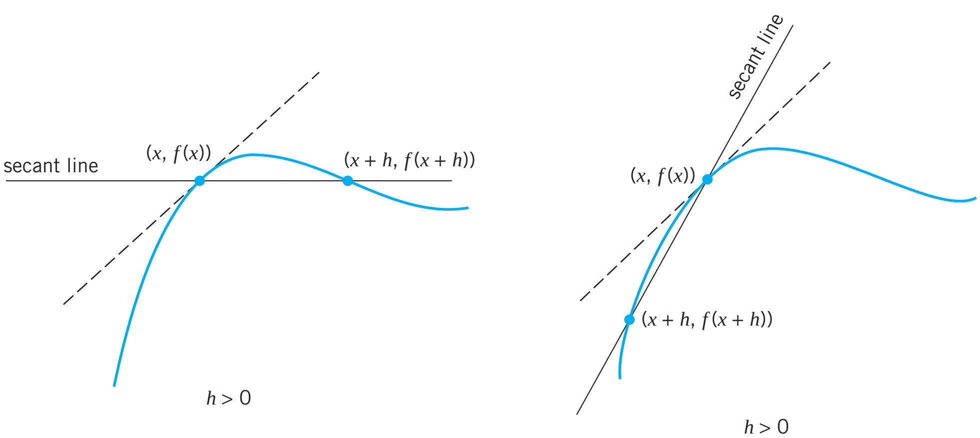


Figure 3.1.1

Whether h is positive or negative, the slope of the secant line is the *difference quotient*

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}. \qquad \text{(Check this out.)}$$

† The word "secant" comes from the Latin "secare," to cut.

If we let h tend to zero (from one side or the other), then ideally the point $(x+h, f(x+h))$ slides along the curve toward $(x, f(x))$, $x+h$ tends to x, $f(x+h)$ tends to $f(x)$, and the slope of the secant

$$(*) \qquad \frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}$$

tends to a limit that we denote by $f'(x)$[†]. While $(*)$ represents the slope of the approaching secant, the number $f'(x)$ represents the slope of the graph at the point $(x, f(x))$.

What we call "differential calculus" is the implementation of this idea.

Derivatives and Differentiation

DEFINITION 3.1.1

A function f is said to be differentiable at x if

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h} \qquad \text{exists.}$$

If this limit exists, it is called the *derivative of* f *at* x and is denoted by $f'(x)$.

As indicated in the introduction, the derivative

$$f'(x)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}$$

represents *slope of the graph of* f *at the point* $(x, f(x))$. The line that passes through the point $(x, f(x))$ with slope $f'(x)$ is called the *tangent line* at the point $(x, f(x))$. (This line is marked by dashes in Figure 3.1.1.)

Example 1 We begin with a linear function

$$f(x)=mx+b\,.$$

The graph of this function is the line $y=mx+b$, a line with constant slope m. We therefore expect $f'(x)$ to be constantly m. Indeed it is: for $h\neq 0$,

$$\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}=\frac{[m(x+h)+b]-[mx+b]}{h}=\frac{mh}{h}=m$$

and therefore

$$f'(x)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0} m=m. \quad ❑$$

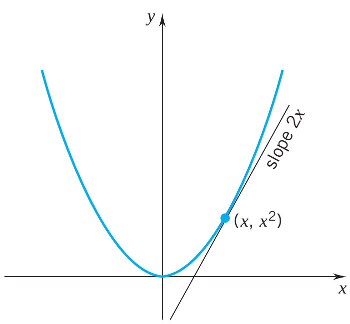


Figure 3.1.2

Example 2 Now we look at the squaring function

$$f(x)=x^2. \qquad \text{(Figure 3.1.2)}$$

To find $f'(x)$, we form the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}=\frac{(x+h)^2-x^2}{h}$$

[†] This prime notation goes back to the French mathematician Joseph-Louis Lagrange (1736–1813). Other notations are introduced later.

and take the limit as $h \to 0$. Since

$$\frac{(x+h)^2 - x^2}{h} = \frac{(x^2 + 2xh + h^2) - x^2}{h} = \frac{2xh + h^2}{h} = 2x + h,$$

we have

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = 2x + h.$$

Therefore

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} (2x + h) = 2x.$$

The slope of the graph changes with x. For $x < 0$, the slope is negative and the curve tends down; at $x = 0$, the slope is 0 and the tangent line is horizontal; for $x > 0$, the slope is positive and the curve tends up. ❑

Example 3 Here we look for $f'(x)$ for the square-root function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \qquad x \geq 0. \qquad \text{(Figure 3.1.3)}$$

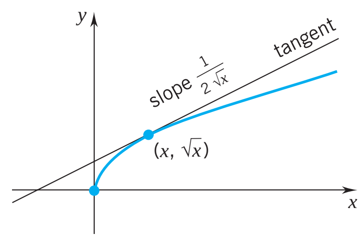


Figure 3.1.3

Since $f'(x)$ is a two-sided limit, we can expect a derivative at most for $x > 0$.

We take $x > 0$ and form the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h}.$$

We simplify this expression by multiplying both numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}$. This gives us

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \left(\frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h}\right)\left(\frac{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{(x+h) - x}{h(\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x})} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}}.$$

It follows that

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}.$$

At each point of the graph to the right of the origin the slope is positive. As x increases, the slope diminishes and the graph flattens out. ❑

The *derivative* f' is a function, its value at x being $f'(x)$. However, this function f' is defined only at those numbers x where f is differentiable. As you just saw in Example 3, while the square-root function is defined on $[0, \infty)$, its derivative f' is defined only on $(0, \infty)$:

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x} \quad \text{for all } x \geq 0; \qquad f'(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} \quad \text{only for } x > 0.$$

To *differentiate* a function f is to find its derivative f'.

Example 4 Let's differentiate the reciprocal function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}. \qquad \text{(Figure 3.1.4)}$$

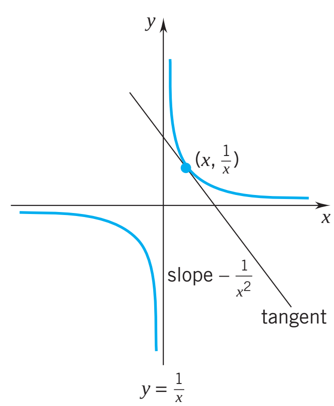


Figure 3.1.4

We begin by forming the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \frac{\dfrac{1}{x+h} - \dfrac{1}{x}}{h}.$$

Now we simplify:

$$\frac{\dfrac{1}{x+h}-\dfrac{1}{x}}{h}=\frac{\dfrac{x}{x(x+h)}-\dfrac{x+h}{x(x+h)}}{h}=\frac{\dfrac{-h}{x(x+h)}}{h}=\frac{-1}{x(x+h)}.$$

It follows that

$$f'(x)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-1}{x(x+h)}=-\frac{1}{x^2}.$$

The graph of the function consists of two curves. On each curve the slope, $-1/x^2$, is negative: large negative for x close to 0 (each curve steepens as x approaches 0 and tends toward the vertical) and small negative for x far from 0 (each curve flattens out as x moves away from 0 and tends toward the horizontal). ❏

Evaluating Derivatives

Example 5 We take $f(x)=1-x^2$ and calculate $f'(-2)$.

We can first find $f'(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned}f'(x)&=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}\\&=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[1-(x+h)^2]-[1-x^2]}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-2xh-h^2}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}(-2x-h)=-2x\end{aligned}$$

and then substitute -2 for x:

$$f'(-2)=-2(-2)=4.$$

We can also evaluate $f'(-2)$ directly:

$$\begin{aligned}f'(-2)&=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(-2+h)-f(-2)}{h}\\&=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[1-(-2+h)^2]-[1-(-2)^2]}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{4h-h^2}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}(4-h)=4.\end{aligned}$$ ❏

Example 6 Let's find $f'(-3)$ and $f'(1)$ given that

$$f(x)=\begin{cases}x^2, & x\le 1\\ 2x-1, & x>1.\end{cases}$$

By definition,

$$f'(-3)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(-3+h)-f(-3)}{h}.$$

For all x sufficiently close to -3, $f(x)=x^2$. Thus

$$f'(-3)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(-3+h)^2-(-3)^2}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(9-6h+h^2)-9}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}(-6+h)=-6.$$

Now let's find

$$f'(1)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h}.$$

Since f is not defined by the same formula on both sides of 1, we will evaluate this limit by taking one-sided limits. Note that $f(1)=1^2=1$.

To the left of 1, $f(x) = x^2$. Thus

$$\lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{(1+h)^2-1}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{(1+2h+h^2)-1}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^-}(2+h) = 2.$$

To the right of 1, $f(x) = 2x - 1$. Thus

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{[2(1+h)-1]-1}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^+} 2 = 2.$$

The limit of the difference quotient exists and is 2:

$$f'(1) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h} = 2. \quad ❑$$

Tangent Lines

If f is differentiable at c, the line that passes through the point $(c, f(c))$ with slope $f'(c)$ is the tangent line at that point. As an equation for this line we can write

(3.1.2) $$\boxed{y - f(c) = f'(c)(x - c).}$$ (point-slope form)

This is the line through $(c, f(c))$ that best approximates the graph of f near the point $(c, f(c))$.

Example 7 We go back to the square-root function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}$$

and write an equation for the tangent line at the point (4, 2).

As we showed in Example 3, for $x > 0$

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}.$$

Thus $f'(4) = \frac{1}{4}$. The equation for the tangent line at the point (4, 2) can be written

$$y - 2 = \tfrac{1}{4}(x - 4). \quad ❑$$

Example 8 We differentiate the function

$$f(x) = x^3 - 12x$$

and seek the points of the graph where the tangent line is horizontal. Then we write an equation for the tangent line at the point of the graph where $x = 3$.

First we calculate the difference quotient:

$$\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h} = \frac{[(x+h)^3 - 12(x+h)] - [x^3 - 12x]}{h}$$

$$= \frac{x^3 + 3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3 - 12x - 12h - x^3 + 12x}{h}$$

$$= \frac{3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3 - 12h}{h} = 3x^2 + 3xh + h^2 - 12.$$

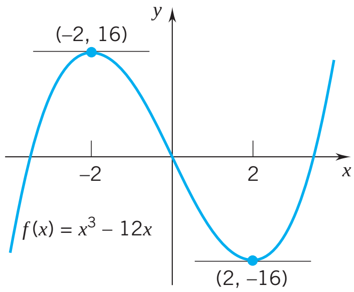


Figure 3.1.5

Now we take the limit as $h \to 0$:

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}(3x^2 + 3xh + h^2 - 12) = 3x^2 - 12.$$

The function has a horizontal tangent at the points $(x, f(x))$ where $f'(x) = 0$. In this case

$$f'(x) = 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad 3x^2 - 12 = 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad x = \pm 2.$$

The graph has a horizontal tangent at the points

$$(-2, f(-2)) = (-2, 16) \qquad \text{and} \qquad (2, f(2)) = (2, -16).$$

The graph of f and the horizontal tangents are shown in Figure 3.1.5.

The point on the graph where $x = 3$ is the point $(3, f(3)) = (3, -9)$. The slope at this point is $f'(3) = 15$, and the equation of the tangent line at this point can be written

$$y + 9 = 15(x - 3). \quad ❑$$

A Note on Vertical Tangents

The cube-root function

$$f(x) = x^{1/3}$$

is everywhere continuous, but as we show below, it is not differentiable at $x = 0$. The difference quotient at $x = 0$,

$$\frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} = \frac{h^{1/3} - 0}{h} = \frac{1}{h^{2/3}},$$

increases without bound as $h \to 0$. In the notation established in Section 2.1,

$$\text{as } h \to 0, \qquad \frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} \to \infty.$$

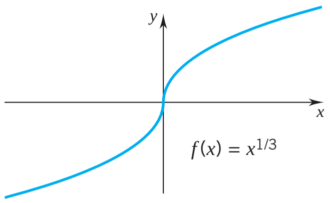


Figure 3.1.6

Thus f is not differentiable at $x = 0$.

The behavior of f at $x = 0$ is depicted in Figure 3.1.6. For reasons geometrically evident, we say that the graph of f has a *vertical tangent* at the origin.†

Differentiability and Continuity

A function can be continuous at a number x without being differentiable there. Viewed geometrically, this can happen for only one of two reasons: either the tangent line at $(x, f(x))$ is vertical (you just saw an example of this), or there is no tangent line at $(x, f(x))$. The lack of a tangent line at a point of continuity is illustrated below.

The graph of the absolute value function

$$f(x) = |x|$$

is shown in Figure 3.1.7. The function is continuous at 0 (it is continuous everywhere), but it is not differentiable at 0:

$$\frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} = \frac{|0+h| - |0|}{h} = \frac{|h|}{h} = \begin{cases} -1, & h < 0 \\ 1, & h > 0 \end{cases}$$

so that

$$\lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} = -1, \qquad \lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} = 1$$

and thus

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

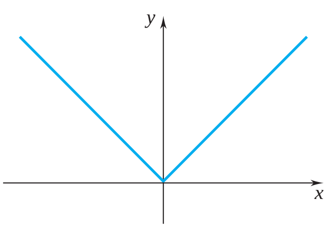


Figure 3.1.7

† Vertical tangents will be considered in detail in Section 4.7.

The lack of differentiability at 0 is evident geometrically. At $x = 0$ the graph changes direction abruptly and there is no tangent line.

Another example of this sort of behavior is offered by the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \le 1 \\ \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}, & x > 1. \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 3.1.8)}$$

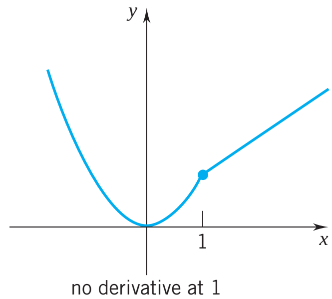


Figure 3.1.8

As you can check, the function is everywhere continuous, but at the point (1, 1) the graph has an abrupt change of direction. The calculation below confirms that f is not differentiable at $x = 1$:

$$\lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{(1+h)^2 - 1}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{h^2 + 2h}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^-} (h+2) = 2,$$

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{\frac{1}{2}(1+h) + \frac{1}{2} - 1}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0^+} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Since these one-sided limits are different,

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h} \qquad \text{does not exist.}$$

For our last example,

$$f(x) = |x^3 - 6x^2 + 8x| + 3, \qquad \text{(Figure 3.1.9)}$$

we used a graphing utility.[†] So doing, it appeared that f is differentiable except, possibly, at $x = 0$, at $x = 2$, and at $x = 4$. There abrupt changes in direction seem to occur. By zooming in near the point $(2, f(2))$, we confirmed that the left-hand limits and right-hand limits of the difference quotient both exist at $x = 2$ but are not equal. See Figure 3.1.10. A similar situation was seen at $x = 0$ and $x = 4$. From the look of it, f fails to be differentiable at $x = 0$, at $x = 2$, and at $x = 4$.

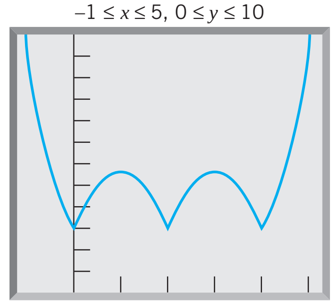


Figure 3.1.9

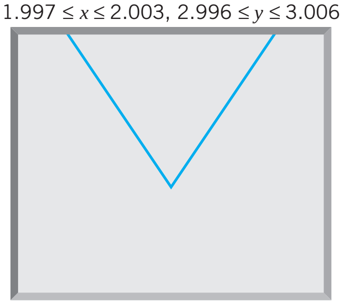


Figure 3.1.10

Although not every continuous function is differentiable, every differentiable function is continuous.

> **THEOREM 3.1.3**
>
> If f is differentiable at x, then f is continuous at x.

PROOF For $h \ne 0$ and $x + h$ in the domain of f,

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \cdot h\,.$$

With f differentiable at x,

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = f'(x).$$

Since $\lim_{h\to 0} h = 0$, we have

$$\lim_{h\to 0} [f(x+h) - f(x)] = \left[\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}\right] \cdot \left[\lim_{h\to 0} h\right] = f'(x) \cdot 0 = 0.$$

[†] It wasn't necessary to use a graphing utility here, but we figured that the use of it might make for a pleasant change of pace

It follows that

$$\lim_{h \to 0} f(x+h) = f(x), \tag{2.2.6}$$

and thus f is continuous at x. ❑

EXERCISES 3.1

Exercises 1–10. Differentiate the function by forming the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

and taking the limit as h tends to 0.

1. $f(x) = 2 - 3x$.
2. $f(x) = k$, k constant.
3. $f(x) = 5x - x^2$.
4. $f(x) = 2x^3 + 1$.
5. $f(x) = x^4$.
6. $f(x) = 1/(x+3)$.
7. $f(x) = \sqrt{x-1}$.
8. $f(x) = x^3 - 4x$.
9. $f(x) = 1/x^2$.
10. $f(x) = 1/\sqrt{x}$.

Exercises 11–16. Find $f'(c)$ by forming the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(c+h) - f(c)}{h}$$

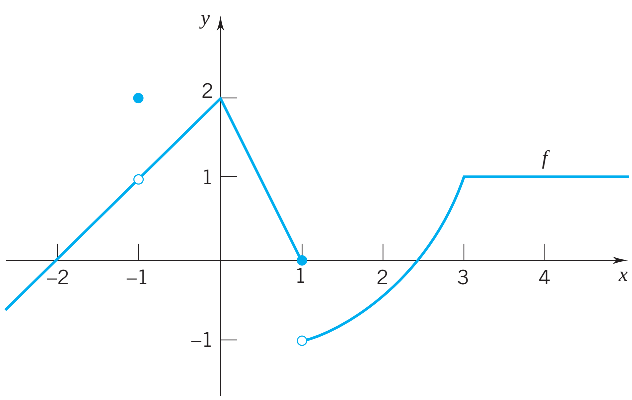
and taking the limit as $h \to 0$.

11. $f(x) = x^2 - 4x$; $c = 3$.
12. $f(x) = 7x - x^2$; $c = 2$
13. $f(x) = 2x^3 + 1$; $c = 1$.
14. $f(x) = 5 - x^4$; $c = -1$.
15. $f(x) = \dfrac{8}{x+4}$; $c = -2$.
16. $f(x) = \sqrt{6-x}$; $c = 2$.

Exercises 17–20. Write an equation for the tangent line at $(c, f(c))$.

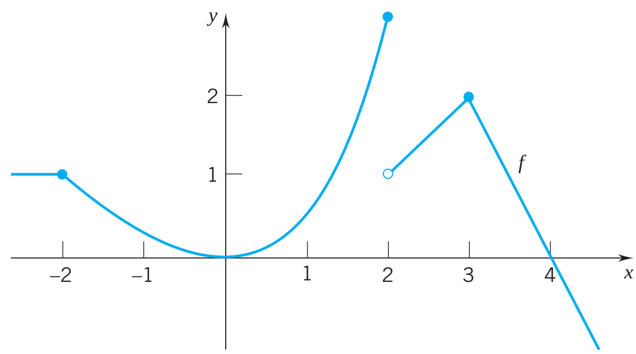
17. $f(x) = 5x - x^2$; $c = 4$.
18. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$; $c = 4$.
19. $f(x) = 1/x^2$; $c = -2$.
20. $f(x) = 5 - x^3$; $c = 2$.

21. The graph of f is shown below.



(a) At which numbers c is f discontinuous? Which of the discontinuities is removable?
(b) At which numbers c is f continuous but not differentiable?

22. Exercise 21 for the function f graphed below.



Exercises 23–28. Draw the graph of f; indicate where f is not differentiable.

23. $f(x) = |x+1|$.
24. $f(x) = |2x - 5|$.
25. $f(x) = \sqrt{|x|}$.
26. $f(x) = |x^2 - 4|$.
27. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \le 1 \\ 2 - x, & x > 1. \end{cases}$
28. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 1, & x \le 2 \\ 3, & x > 2. \end{cases}$

Exercises 29–32. Find $f'(c)$ if it exists.

29. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 4x, & x < 1 \\ 2x^2 + 2, & x \ge 1; \end{cases} \quad c = 1.$

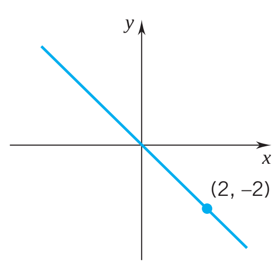
30. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x^2, & x \le 1 \\ 2x^3 + 1, & x > 1; \end{cases} \quad c = 1.$

31. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1, & x \le -1 \\ (x+1)^2, & x > -1; \end{cases} \quad c = -1.$

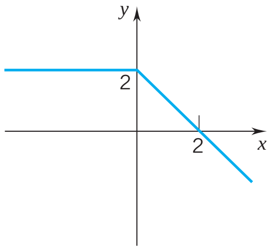
32. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2}x^2, & x < 3 \\ -3x, & x \ge 3; \end{cases} \quad c = 3.$

Exercises 33–38. Sketch the graph of the derivative of the function indicated.

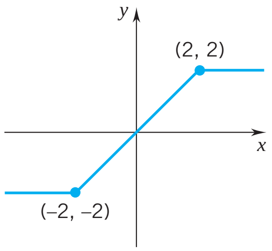
33.



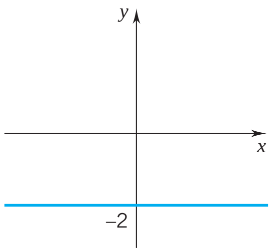
34.



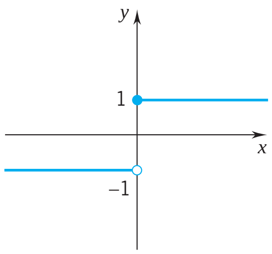
35.



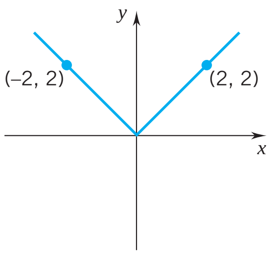
36.



37.



38.



39. Show that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \le 1 \\ 2x, & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

is not differentiable at $x = 1$.

40. Set

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} (x+1)^2, & x \le 0 \\ (x-1)^2, & x > 0. \end{cases}$$

(a) Determine $f'(x)$ for $x \ne 0$.
(b) Show that f is not differentiable at $x = 0$.

41. Find A and B given that the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3, & x \le 1 \\ Ax + B, & x > 1. \end{cases}$$

is differentiable at $x = 1$.

42. Find A and B given that the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 2, & x \le 2 \\ Bx^2 + Ax, & x > 2 \end{cases}$$

is differentiable at $x = 2$.

Exercises 43–48. Give an example of a function f that is defined for all real numbers and satisfies the given conditions.

43. $f'(x) = 0$ for all real x.

44. $f'(x) = 0$ for all $x \ne 0$; $f'(0)$ does not exist.

45. $f'(x)$ exists for all $x \ne -1$; $f'(-1)$ does not exist.

46. $f'(x)$ exists for all $x \ne \pm 1$; neither $f'(1)$ nor $f'(-1)$ exists.

47. $f'(1) = 2$ and $f(1) = 7$.

48. $f'(x) = 1$ for $x < 0$ and $f'(x) = -1$ for $x > 0$.

49. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - x, & x \le 2 \\ 2x - 2, & x > 2. \end{cases}$

(a) Show that f is continuous at 2.
(b) Is f differentiable at 2?

50. Let $f(x) = x\sqrt{x}$, $x \ge 0$. Calculate $f'(x)$ for each $x > 0$.

51. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x^2, & x \le 0 \\ x^2, & x > 0. \end{cases}$

(a) Is f differentiable at 0?
(b) Sketch the graph of f.

52. Set

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational}, \end{cases} \qquad g(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational}. \end{cases}$$

(a) Show that f is not differentiable at 0.
(b) Show that g is differentiable at 0 and give $g'(0)$.

(Normal lines) If the graph of f has a tangent line at $(c, f(c))$, then

(3.1.4) the line through $(c, f(c))$ that is perpendicular to the tangent line is called the *normal line*.

53. Write an equation for the normal line at $(c, f(c))$ given that the tangent line at this point

(a) is horizontal;
(b) has slope $f'(c) \ne 0$;
(c) is vertical.

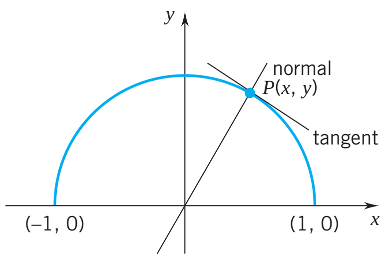
54. All the normals through a circular arc pass through one point. What is this point?

55. As you saw in Example 7, the line $y - 2 = \frac{1}{4}(x - 4)$ is tangent to the graph of the square-root function at the point (4, 2). Write an equation for the normal line through this point.

56. (*A follow-up to Exercise 55*) Sketch the graph of the square-root function displaying both the tangent and the normal at the point (4, 2).

57. The lines tangent and normal to the graph of the squaring function at the point (3, 9) intersect the x-axis at points s units apart. What is s?

58. The graph of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ is the upper half of the unit circle. On that curve (see the figure below) we have marked a point $P(x, y)$.



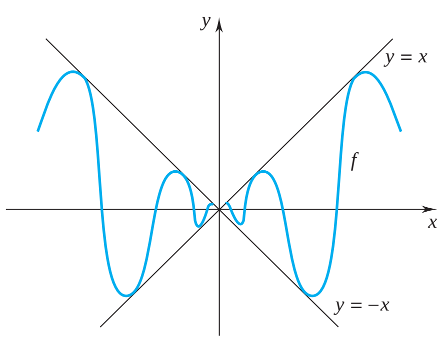
(a) What is the slope of the normal at P? Express your answer in terms of x and y.
(b) Deduce from (a) the slope of the tangent at P. Express your answer in terms of x and y.
(c) Confirm your answer in (b) by calculating

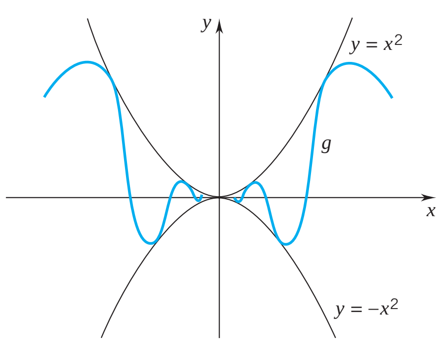
$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{1 - (x + h)^2} - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{h}.$$

HINT: First rationalize the numerator of the difference quotient by multiplying both numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{1 - (x + h)^2} + \sqrt{1 - x^2}$.

59. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} x \sin(1/x), & x \neq 0 \\ 0, & x = 0 \end{cases}$ and $g(x) = x f(x)$.

The graphs of f and g are indicated in the figures below.





(a) Show that f and g are both continuous at 0.
(b) Show that f is not differentiable at 0.
(c) Show that g is differentiable at 0 and give $g'(0)$.

(*Important*). By definition

$$f'(c) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h}$$

provided this limit exists. Setting $x = c + h$, we can write

(3.1.5) $$\boxed{f'(c) = \lim_{x \to c} \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c}}$$

This is an alternative definition of derivative which has advantages in certain situations. Convince yourself of the equivalence of both definitions by calculating $f'(c)$ by both methods.

60. $f(x) = x^3 + 1;\ c = 2.$ **61.** $f(x) = x^2 - 3x;\ c = 1.$

62. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 + x};\ c = 3.$ **63.** $f(x) = x^{1/3};\ c = -1.$

64. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x + 2};\ c = 0.$

65. Set $f(x) = x^{5/2}$ and consider the difference quotient

$$D(h) = \frac{f(2 + h) - f(2)}{h}.$$

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph D for $h \neq 0$. Estimate $f'(2)$ to three decimal places from the graph.
(b) Create a table of values to estimate $\lim_{h \to 0} D(h)$. Estimate $f'(2)$ to three decimal places from the table.
(c) Compare your results from (a) and (b).

66. Exercise 65 with $f(x) = x^{2/3}$.

67. Use the definition of the derivative with a CAS to find $f'(x)$ in general and $f'(c)$ in particular.

(a) $f(x) = \sqrt{5x - 4};\ c = 3.$
(b) $f(x) = 2 - x^2 + 4x^4 - x^6;\ c = -2.$
(c) $f(x) = \dfrac{3 - 2x}{2 + 3x};\ c = -1.$

68. Use a CAS to evaluate, if possible,

$$f'(c) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h}.$$

(a) $f(x) = |x - 1| + 2;\ c = 1.$
(b) $f(x) = (x + 2)^{5/3} - 1;\ c = -2.$
(c) $f(x) = (x - 3)^{2/3} + 3;\ c = 3.$

69. Let $f(x) = 5x^2 - 7x^3$ on $[-1, 1]$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f.
(b) Use the trace function to approximate the points on the graph where the tangent line is horizontal.
(c) Use a CAS to find $f'(x)$.
(d) Use a solver to solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$ and compare what you find to what you found in (b).

70. Exercise 69 with $f(x) = x^3 + x^2 - 4x + 3$ on $[-2, 2]$.

71. Set $f(x) = 4x - x^3$.

(a) Use a CAS to find $f'(\frac{3}{2})$. Then find equations for the tangent T and the normal N at the point $(\frac{3}{2},\ f(\frac{3}{2}))$.

(b) Use a graphing utility to display N, T, and the graph of f in one figure.

(c) Note that T is a good approximation to the graph of f for x close to $\frac{3}{2}$. Determine the interval on which the vertical separation between T and the graph of f is of absolute value less than 0.01.

72. If $f(x) = x$, then $f'(x) = 1 \cdot x^0 = 1$.
If $f(x) = x^2$, then $f'(x) = 2x^1 = 2x$.

(a) Show that

$$\text{if} \qquad f(x) = x^3, \qquad \text{then} \qquad f'(x) = 3x^2.$$

(b) Prove by induction that for each positive integer n,

$$f(x) = x^n \qquad \text{has derivative} \qquad f'(x) = nx^{n-1}.$$

HINT:

$$(x+h)^{k+1} - x^{k+1} = x(x+h)^k - x \cdot x^k + h(x+h)^k.$$

■ 3.2 SOME DIFFERENTIATION FORMULAS

Calculating the derivative of

$$f(x) = (x^3 + 2x - 3)(4x^2 + 1) \qquad \text{or} \qquad f(x) = \frac{6x^2 - 1}{x^4 + 5x + 1}$$

by forming the appropriate difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

and then taking the limit as h tends to 0 is somewhat laborious. Here we derive some general formulas that enable us to calculate such derivatives quite quickly and easily.

We begin by pointing out that constant functions have derivative identically 0:

(3.2.1) $$\boxed{\text{if} \quad f(x) = \alpha, \quad \alpha \text{ any constant}, \quad \text{then} \quad f'(x) = 0 \quad \text{for all } x,}$$

and the identity function $f(x) = x$ has constant derivative 1:

(3.2.2) $$\boxed{\text{if} \quad f(x) = x, \quad \text{then} \quad f'(x) = 1 \quad \text{for all } x.}$$

PROOF For $f(x) = \alpha$,

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\alpha - \alpha}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} 0 = 0.$$

For $f(x) = x$,

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(x+h) - x}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{h}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} 1 = 1. \quad \square$$

Remark These results can be verified geometrically. The graph of a constant function $f(x) = \alpha$ is a horizontal line, and the slope of a horizontal line is 0. The graph of the identity function $f(x) = x$ is the graph of the line $y = x$. The line has slope 1. $\square$

THEOREM 3.2.3 DERIVATIVES OF SUMS AND SCALAR MULTIPLES

Let α be a real number. If f and g are differentiable at x, then $f + g$ and αf are differentiable at x. Moreover,

$$(f+g)'(x) = f'(x) + g'(x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad (\alpha f)'(x) = \alpha f'(x).$$

PROOF To verify the first formula, note that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{(f+g)(x+h)-(f+g)(x)}{h} &= \frac{[f(x+h)+g(x+h)]-[f(x)+g(x)]}{h}\\ &= \frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}+\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}.\end{aligned}$$

By definition,

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h} = f'(x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h} = g'(x).$$

Thus

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(f+g)(x+h)-(f+g)(x)}{h} = f'(x)+g'(x),$$

which means that

$$(f+g)'(x) = f'(x)+g'(x).$$

To verify the second formula, we must show that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(\alpha f)(x+h)-(\alpha f)(x)}{h} = \alpha f'(x).$$

This follows directly from the fact that

$$\frac{(\alpha f)(x+h)-(\alpha f)(x)}{h} = \frac{\alpha f(x+h)-\alpha f(x)}{h} = \alpha\left[\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}\right]. \quad \square$$

Remark In this section and in the next few sections we will derive formulas for calculating derivatives. It will be to your advantage to commit these formulas to memory. You may find it useful to put these formulas into words. According to Theorem 3.2.3,

> "*the derivative of a sum is the sum of the derivatives*" and
> "*the derivative of a scalar multiple is the scalar multiple of the derivative.*" $\square$

Since $f-g = f+(-g)$, it follows that if f and g are differentiable at x, then $f-g$ is differentiable at x, and

(3.2.4) $$\boxed{(f-g)'(x) = f'(x)-g'(x).}$$

"*The derivative of a difference is the difference of the derivatives.*"

These results can be extended by induction to any finite collection of functions: if $f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_n$ are differentiable at x, and $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$ are numbers, then the linear combination $\alpha_1 f_1 + \alpha_2 f_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n f_n$ is differentiable at x and

(3.2.5) $$\boxed{(\alpha_1 f_1 + \alpha_2 f_2 + \cdots + \alpha_n f_n)'(x) = \alpha_1 f_1'(x) + \alpha_2 f_2'(x) + \cdots + \alpha_n f_n'(x).}$$

"*The derivative of a linear combination is the linear combination of the derivatives.*"

THEOREM 3.2.6 THE PRODUCT RULE

If f and g are differentiable at x, then so is their product, and

$$(f \cdot g)'(x) = f(x)g'(x) + g(x)f'(x).$$

"The derivative of a product is the first function times the derivative of the second plus the second function times the derivative of the first."

PROOF We form the difference quotient

$$\frac{(f \cdot g)(x+h) - (f \cdot g)(x)}{h} = \frac{f(x+h)g(x+h) - f(x)g(x)}{h}$$
$$= \frac{f(x+h)g(x+h) - f(x+h)g(x) + f(x+h)g(x) - f(x)g(x)}{h}$$

and rewrite it as

$$f(x+h)\left[\frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}\right] + g(x)\left[\frac{f(x-h) - f(x)}{h}\right].$$

[Here we have added and subtracted $f(x+h)g(x)$ in the numerator and then regrouped the terms so as to display the difference quotients for f and g.] Since f is differentiable at x, we know that f is continuous at x (Theorem 3.1.5) and thus

$$\lim_{h \to 0} f(x+h) = f(x). \qquad \text{(Exercise 49, Section 2.4)}$$

Since

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} = g'(x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = f'(x),$$

we obtain

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(f \cdot g)(x+h) - (f \cdot g)(x)}{h} =$$
$$\lim_{h \to 0} f(x+h) \lim_{h \to 0} \left[\frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}\right] + g(x) \lim_{h \to 0} \left[\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}\right]$$
$$= f(x)g'(x) + g(x)f'(x). \quad \square$$

Using the product rule, it is not hard to show that

(3.2.7) for each positive integer n

$$p(x) = x^n \quad \text{has derivative} \quad p'(x) = nx^{n-1}.$$

In particular,

$p(x) = x$	has derivative	$p'(x) = 1 = 1 \cdot x^0$,[†]
$p(x) = x^2$	has derivative	$p'(x) = 2x$,
$p(x) = x^3$	has derivative	$p'(x) = 3x^2$,
$p(x) = x^4$	has derivative	$p'(x) = 4x^3$,

and so on.

[†] In this setting we are following the convention that x^0 is identically 1 even though in itself 0^0 is meaningless.

PROOF OF (3.2.7) We proceed by induction on n. If $n = 1$, then we have the identity function

$$p(x) = x,$$

which we know has derivative

$$p'(x) = 1 = 1 \cdot x^0.$$

This means that the formula holds for $n = 1$.

We assume now that the result holds for $n = k$; that is, we assume that if $p(x) = x^k$, then $p'(x) = kx^{k-1}$, and go on to show that it holds for $n = k + 1$. We let

$$p(x) = x^{k+1}$$

and note that

$$p(x) = x \cdot x^k.$$

Applying the product rule (Theorem 3.2.6) and our induction hypothesis, we obtain

$$p'(x) = x \cdot kx^{k-1} + x^k \cdot 1 = (k+1)x^k.$$

This shows that the formula holds for $n = k + 1$.

By the axiom of induction, the formula holds for all positive integers n. ❑

Remark Formula (3.2.7) can be obtained without induction. From the difference quotient

$$\frac{p(x+h) - p(x)}{h} = \frac{(x+h)^n - x^n}{h},$$

apply the formula

$$a^n - b^n = (a - b)(a^{n-1} + a^{n-2}b + \cdots + ab^{n-2} + b^{n-1}), \qquad \text{(Section 1.2)}$$

and you'll see that the difference quotient becomes the sum of n terms, each of which tends to x^{n-1} as h tends to zero. ❑

The formula for differentiating polynomials follows from (3.2.5) and (3.2.7):

(3.2.8)

If	$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0,$
then	$P'(x) = na_n x^{n-1} + (n-1)a_{n-1}x^{n-2} + \cdots + 2a_2 x + a_1.$

For example,

$$P(x) = 12x^3 - 6x - 2 \qquad \text{has derivative} \qquad P'(x) = 36x^2 - 6$$

and

$$Q(x) = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 - 2x^2 + x + 5 \qquad \text{has derivative} \qquad Q'(x) = x^3 - 4x + 1.$$

Example 1 Differentiate $F(x) = (x^3 - 2x + 3)(4x^2 + 1)$ and find $F'(-1)$.

SOLUTION We have a product $F(x) = f(x)g(x)$ with

$$f(x) = x^3 - 2x + 3 \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) = 4x^2 + 1.$$

The product rule gives

$$\begin{aligned} F'(x) &= f(x)g'(x) + g(x)f'(x) \\ &= (x^3 - 2x + 3)(8x) + (4x^2 + 1)(3x^2 - 2) \\ &= 8x^4 - 16x^2 + 24x + 12x^4 - 5x^2 - 2 \\ &= 20x^4 - 21x^2 + 24x - 2. \end{aligned}$$

Setting $x = -1$, we have

$$F'(-1) = 20(-1)^4 - 21(-1)^2 + 24(-1) - 2 = 20 - 21 - 24 - 2 = -27. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Differentiate $F(x) = (ax + b)(cx + d)$, where a, b, c, d are constants.

SOLUTION We have a product $F(x) = f(x)g(x)$ with

$$f(x) = ax + b \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) = cx + d.$$

Again we use the product rule

$$F'(x) = f(x)g'(x) + g(x)f'(x).$$

In this case

$$F'(x) = (ax + b)c + (cx + d)a = 2acx + bc + ad.$$

We can also do this problem without using the product rule by first carrying out the multiplication

$$F(x) = acx^2 + bcx + adx + bd$$

and then differentiating

$$F'(x) = 2acx + bc + ad. \quad \square$$

Example 3 Suppose that g is differentiable at each x and that $F(x) = (x^3 - 5x)g(x)$. Find $F'(2)$ given that $g(2) = 3$ and $g'(2) = -1$.

SOLUTION Applying the product rule, we have

$$F'(x) = [(x^3 - 5x)g(x)]' = (x^3 - 5x)g'(x) + g(x)(3x^2 - 5).$$

Therefore,

$$F'(2) = (-2)g'(2) + (7)g(2) = (-2)(-1) + (7)(3) = 23. \quad \square$$

We come now to reciprocals.

THEOREM 3.2.9 THE RECIPROCAL RULE

If g is differentiable at x and $g(x) \neq 0$, then $1/g$ is differentiable at x and

$$\left(\frac{1}{g}\right)'(x) = -\frac{g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}.$$

PROOF Since g is differentiable at x, g is continuous at x. (Theorem 3.1.5) Since $g(x) \neq 0$, we know that $1/g$ is continuous at x and thus that

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{1}{g(x + h)} = \frac{1}{g(x)}.$$

For h different from 0 and sufficiently small, $g(x+h) \neq 0$. The continuity of g at x and the fact that $g(x) \neq 0$ guarantee this. (Exercise 50, Section 2.4) The difference quotient for $1/g$ can be written

$$\frac{1}{h}\left[\frac{1}{g(x+h)} - \frac{1}{g(x)}\right] = \frac{1}{h}\left[\frac{g(x) - g(x+h)}{g(x+h)g(x)}\right]$$
$$= -\left[\frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}\right]\frac{1}{g(x+h)g(x)}.$$

As h tends to zero, the right-hand side (and thus the left) tends to

$$-\frac{g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}. \quad ❑$$

Using the reciprocal rule, we can show that Formula (3.2.7) also holds for negative integers:

(3.2.10)

> for each negative integer n,
> $p(x) = x^n$ has derivative $p'(x) = nx^{n-1}$.

This formula holds at all x except, of course, at $x = 0$, where no negative power is even defined. In particular, for $x \neq 0$,

$p(x) = x^{-1}$ has derivative $p'(x) = (-1)x^{-2} = -x^{-2}$,
$p(x) = x^{-2}$ has derivative $p'(x) = -2x^{-3}$,
$p(x) = x^{-3}$ has derivative $p'(x) = -3x^{-4}$,

and so on.

PROOF OF (3.2.10) Note that

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{g(x)} \quad \text{where} \quad g(x) = x^{-n} \text{ and } -n \text{ is a positive integer.}$$

The rule for reciprocals gives

$$p'(x) = -\frac{g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2} = -\frac{(-nx^{-n-1})}{x^{-2n}} = (nx^{-n-1})x^{2n} = nx^{n-1}. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Differentiate $f(x) = \dfrac{5}{x^2} - \dfrac{6}{x}$ and find $f'(\frac{1}{2})$.

SOLUTION To apply (3.2.10), we write

$$f(x) = 5x^{-2} - 6x^{-1}.$$

Differentiation gives

$$f'(x) = -10x^{-3} + 6x^{-2}.$$

Back in fractional notation,

$$f'(x) = -\frac{10}{x^3} + \frac{6}{x^2}.$$

Setting $x = \frac{1}{2}$, we have

$$f'\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = -\frac{10}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3} + \frac{6}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2} = -80 + 24 = -56. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Differentiate $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{ax^2 + bx + c}$, where a, b, c are constants.

SOLUTION Here we have a reciprocal $f(x) = 1/g(x)$ with

$$g(x) = ax^2 + bx + c.$$

The reciprocal rule (Theorem 3.2.9) gives

$$f'(x) = -\frac{g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2} = -\frac{2ax + b}{[ax^2 + bx + c]^2}. \quad ❑$$

Finally we come to quotients in general.

THEOREM 3.2.11 THE QUOTIENT RULE

If f and g are differentiable at x and $g(x) \neq 0$, then the quotient f/g is differentiable at x and

$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)'(x) = \frac{g(x)f'(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}$$

"The derivative of a quotient is the denominator times the derivative of the numerator minus the numerator times the derivative of the denominator, all divided by the square of the denominator."

Since $f/g = f(1/g)$, the quotient rule can be obtained from the product and reciprocal rules. The proof of the quotient rule is left to you as an exercise. Finally, note that the reciprocal rule is just a special case of the quotient rule. [Take $f(x) = 1$.]

From the quotient rule you can see that all rational functions (quotients of polynomials) are differentiable wherever they are defined.

Example 6 Differentiate $F(x) = \dfrac{6x^2 - 1}{x^4 + 5x + 1}$.

SOLUTION Here we are dealing with a quotient $F(x) = f(x)/g(x)$. The quotient rule,

$$F'(x) = \frac{g(x)f'(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2},$$

gives

$$\begin{aligned} F'(x) &= \frac{(x^4 + 5x + 1)(12x) - (6x^2 - 1)(4x^3 + 5)}{(x^4 + 5x + 1)^2} \\ &= \frac{-12x^5 + 4x^3 + 30x^2 + 12x + 5}{(x^4 + 5x + 1)^2}. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

Example 7 Find equations for the tangent and normal lines to the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{3x}{1 - 2x}$$

at the point $(2, f(2)) = (2, -2)$.

SOLUTION We need to find $f'(2)$. Using the quotient rule, we get

$$f'(x) = \frac{(1-2x)(3) - 3x(-2)}{(1-2x)^2} = \frac{3}{(1-2x)^2}.$$

This gives

$$f'(2) = \frac{3}{[1-2(2)]^2} = \frac{3}{(-3)^2} = \frac{1}{3}.$$

As an equation for the tangent, we can write

$$y - (-2) = \tfrac{1}{3}(x-2), \qquad \text{which simplifies to} \qquad y + 2 = \tfrac{1}{3}(x-2).$$

The equation for the normal line can be written $y + 2 = -3(x-2)$. ❑

Example 8 Find the points on the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{4x}{x^2+4}$$

where the tangent line is horizontal.

SOLUTION The quotient rule gives

$$f'(x) = \frac{(x^2+4)(4) - 4x(2x)}{(x^2+4)^2} = \frac{16-4x^2}{(x^2+4)^2}.$$

The tangent line is horizontal only at the points $(x, f(x))$ where $f'(x) = 0$. Therefore, we set $f'(x) = 0$ and solve for x:

$$\frac{16-4x^2}{(x^2+4)^2} = 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad 16 - 4x^2 = 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad x = \pm 2.$$

The tangent line is horizontal at the points where $x = -2$ or $x = 2$. These are the points $(-2, f(-2)) = (-2, -1)$ and $(2, f(2)) = (2, 1)$. See Figure 3.2.1. ❑

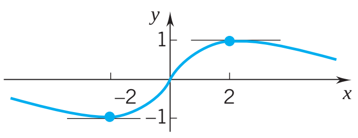


Figure 3.2.1

Remark Some expressions are easier to differentiate if we rewrite them in more convenient form. For example, we can differentiate

$$f(x) = \frac{x^5 - 2x}{x^2} = \frac{x^4 - 2}{x}$$

by the quotient rule, or we can write

$$f(x) = (x^4 - 2)x^{-1}$$

and use the product rule; even better, we can write

$$f(x) = x^3 - 2x^{-1}$$

and proceed from there:

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 + 2x^{-2}. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 3.2

Exercises 1–20. Differentiate.

1. $F(x) = 1 - x$.

2. $F(x) = 2(1 + x)$.

3. $F(x) = 11x^5 - 6x^3 + 8$.

4. $F(x) = \dfrac{3}{x^2}$.

5. $F(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$; $\quad a, b, c$ constant.

6. $F(x) = \dfrac{x^4}{4} - \dfrac{x^3}{3} + \dfrac{x^2}{2} - \dfrac{x}{1}$.

7. $F(x) = -\dfrac{1}{x^2}$.

8. $F(x) = \dfrac{(x^2+2)}{x^3}$.

9. $G(x) = (x^2 - 1)(x - 3)$.

10. $F(x) = x - \dfrac{1}{x}$.

11. $G(x) = \dfrac{x^3}{1-x}$.

12. $F(x) = \dfrac{ax-b}{cx-d}$; a, b, c, d constant.

13. $G(x) = \dfrac{x^2-1}{2x+3}$.

14. $G(x) = \dfrac{7x^4+11}{x+1}$.

15. $G(x) = (x^3-2x)(2x+5)$.

16. $G(x) = \dfrac{x^3+3x}{x^2-1}$.

17. $G(x) = \dfrac{6-1/x}{x-2}$.

18. $G(x) = \dfrac{1+x^4}{x^2}$.

19. $G(x) = (9x^8 - 8x^9)\left(x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)$.

20. $G(x) = \left(1 + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)$.

Exercises 21–26. Find $f'(0)$ and $f'(1)$.

21. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x-2}$.

22. $f(x) = x^2(x+1)$.

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{1-x^2}{1+x^2}$.

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2+x+1}{x^2+2x+1}$.

25. $f(x) = \dfrac{ax+b}{cx+d}$; a, b, c, d constant.

26. $f(x) = \dfrac{ax^2+bx+c}{cx^2+bx+a}$; a, b, c constant.

Exercises 27–30. Find $f'(0)$ given that $h(0) = 3$ and $h'(0) = 2$.

27. $f(x) = xh(x)$.

28. $f(x) = 3x^2 h(x) - 5x$.

29. $f(x) = h(x) - \dfrac{1}{h(x)}$.

30. $f(x) = h(x) + \dfrac{x}{h(x)}$.

Exercises 31–34. Find an equation for the tangent line at the point $(c, f(c))$.

31. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x+2}$; $c = -4$.

32. $f(x) = (x^3 - 2x + 1)(4x - 5)$; $c = 2$.

33. $f(x) = (x^2 - 3)(5x - x^3)$; $c = 1$.

34. $f(x) = x^2 - \dfrac{10}{x}$; $c = -2$.

Exercises 35–38. Find the point(s) where the tangent line is horizontal.

35. $f(x) = (x-2)(x^2 - x - 11)$.

36. $f(x) = x^2 - \dfrac{16}{x}$.

37. $f(x) = \dfrac{5x}{x^2+1}$.

38. $f(x) = (x+2)(x^2 - 2x - 8)$.

Exercises 39–42. Find all x at which (a) $f'(x) = 0$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$; (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

39. $f(x) = x^4 - 8x^2 + 3$.

40. $f(x) = 3x^4 - 4x^3 - 2$.

41. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{4}{x^2}$.

42. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-2x+4}{x^2+4}$.

Exercises 43–44. Find the points where the tangent to the graph of

43. $f(x) = -x^2 - 6$ is parallel to the line $y = 4x - 1$.

44. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x$ is perpendicular to the line $5y - 3x = 8$.

Exercises 45–48. Find a function f with the given derivative.

45. $f'(x) = 3x^2 + 2x + 1$.

46. $f'(x) = 4x^3 - 2x + 4$.

47. $f'(x) = 2x^2 - 3x - \dfrac{1}{x^2}$.

48. $f'(x) = x^4 + 2x^3 + \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$.

49. Find A and B given that the derivative of

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} Ax^3 + Bx + 2, & x \le 2 \\ Bx^2 - A, & x > 2 \end{cases}$$

is everywhere continuous. HINT: First of all, f must be continuous.

50. Find A and B given that the derivative of

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} Ax^2 + B, & x < -1 \\ Bx^5 + Ax + 4, & x \ge -1 \end{cases}$$

is everywhere continuous.

51. Find the area of the triangle formed by the x-axis, the tangent to the graph of $f(x) = 6x - x^2$ at the point (5, 5), and the normal through this point (the line through this point that is perpendicular to the tangent).

52. Find the area of the triangle formed by the x-axis and the lines tangent and normal to the graph of $f(x) = 9 - x^2$ at the point (2, 5).

53. Find A, B, C such that the graph of $f(x) = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ passes through the point (1, 3) and is tangent to the line $4x + y = 8$ at the point (2, 0).

54. Find A, B, C, D such that the graph of $f(x) = Ax^3 + Bx^2 + Cx + D$ is tangent to the line $y = 3x - 3$ at the point (1, 0) and is tangent to the line $y = 18x - 27$ at the point (2, 9).

55. Find the point where the line tangent to the graph of the quadratic function $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ is horizontal. NOTE: This gives a way to find the vertex of the parabola $y = ax^2 + bx + c$.

56. Find conditions on a, b, c, d which guarantee that the graph of the cubic $p(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ has:

(a) exactly two horizontal tangents.
(b) exactly one horizontal tangent.
(c) no horizontal tangents.

57. Find the points $(c, f(c))$ where the line tangent to the graph of $f(x) = x^3 - x$ is parallel to the secant line that passes through the points $(-1, f(-1))$ and $(2, f(2))$.

58. Find the points $(c, f(c))$ where the line tangent to the graph of $f(x) = x/(x+1)$ is parallel to the secant line that passes through the points $(1, f(1))$ and $(3, f(3))$.

59. Let $f(x) = 1/x$, $x > 0$. Show that the triangle that is formed by each line tangent to the graph of f and the coordinate axes has an area of 2 square units.

60. Find two lines through the point (2, 8) that are tangent to the graph of $f(x) = x^3$.

61. Find equations for all the lines tangent to the graph of $f(x) = x^3 - x$ that pass through the point $(-2, 2)$.

62. Set $f(x) = x^3$.

(a) Find an equation for the line tangent to the graph of f at $(c, f(c))$, $c \neq 0$.

(b) Determine whether the tangent line found in (a) intersects the graph of f at a point other than (c, c^3).

If it does, find the x-coordinate of the second point of intersection.

63. Given two functions f and g, show that if f and $f + g$ are differentiable, then g is differentiable. Give an example to show that the differentiability of $f + g$ does not imply that f and g are each differentiable.

64. We are given two functions f and g, with f and $f \cdot g$ differentiable. Does it follow that g is differentiable? If not, find a condition that guarantees that g is differentiable if both f and $f \cdot g$ are differentiable.

65. Prove the validity of the quotient rule.

66. Verify that, if f, g, h are differentiable, then

$$(fgh)'(x) = f'(x)g(x)h(x) + f(x)g'(x)h(x) + f(x)g(x)h'(x).$$

HINT: Apply the product rule to $[f(x)g(x)]h(x)$.

67. Use the result in Exercise 66 to find the derivative of $F(x) = (x^2 + 1)[1 + (1/x)](2x^3 - x + 1)$.

68. Use the result in Exercise 66 to find the derivative of $G(x) = \sqrt{x}[1/(1 + 2x)](x^2 + x - 1)$.

69. Use the product rule to show that if f is differentiable, then

$$g(x) = [f(x)]^2 \quad \text{has derivative} \quad g'(x) = 2f(x)f'(x).$$

70. Use the result in Exercise 69 to find the derivative of $g(x) = (x^3 - 2x^2 + x + 2)^2$.

Exercises 71–74. Use a CAS to find where $f'(x) = 0$, $f'(x) > 0$, $f'(x) < 0$. Verify your results with a graphing utility.

71. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x + 1}$.

72. $f(x) = 8x^5 - 60x^4 + 150x^3 - 125x^2$.

73. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4 - 16}{x^2}$.

74. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3 + 1}{x^4}$.

75. Set $f(x) = \sin x$.

(a) Estimate $f'(x)$ at $x = 0$, $x = \pi/6$, $x = \pi/4$, $x = \pi/3$, and $x = \pi/2$ using the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h}$$

taking $h = \pm 0.001$.

(b) Compare the estimated values of $f'(x)$ found in (a) with the values of $\cos x$ at each of these points.

(c) Use your results in (b) to guess the derivative of the sine function.

76. Let $f(x) = x^4 + x^3 - 5x^2 + 2$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f on the interval $[-4, 4]$ and estimate the x-coordinates of the points where the tangent line to the graph of f is horizontal.

(b) Use a graphing utility to graph $|f|$. Are there any points where f is not differentiable? If so, estimate the numbers where f fails to be differentiable.

3.3 THE d/dx NOTATION; DERIVATIVES OF HIGHER ORDER

The d/dx Notation

So far we have indicated the derivative by a prime. There are, however, other notations that are widely used, particularly in science and in engineering. The most popular of these is the "double-*d*" notation of Leibniz.† In the Leibniz notation, the derivative of a function y is indicated by writing

$$\frac{dy}{dx} \quad \text{if} \quad y \quad \text{is a function of } x,$$
$$\frac{dy}{dt} \quad \text{if} \quad y \quad \text{is a function of } t,$$
$$\frac{dy}{dz} \quad \text{if} \quad y \quad \text{is a function of } z,$$

and so on. Thus,

$$\text{if } y = x^3, \ \frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2; \quad \text{if } y = \frac{1}{t^2}, \ \frac{dy}{dt} = -\frac{2}{t^3}; \quad \text{if } y = \sqrt{z}, \ \frac{dy}{dz} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{z}}$$

† Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716), the German mathematician whose role in the creation of calculus was outlined on page 3.

The symbols

$$\frac{d}{dx}, \quad \frac{d}{dt}, \quad \frac{d}{dz}, \quad \text{and so forth}$$

are also used as prefixes before expressions to be differentiated. For example,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^3 - 4x) = 3x^2 - 4, \quad \frac{d}{dt}(t^2 + 3t + 1) = 2t + 3, \quad \frac{d}{dz}(z^5 - 1) = 5z^4.$$

In the Leibniz notation the differentiation formulas read:

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] + \frac{d}{dx}[g(x)], \quad \frac{d}{dx}[\alpha f(x)] = \alpha\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)],$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] = f(x)\frac{d}{dx}[g(x)] + g(x)\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)],$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{1}{g(x)}\right] = -\frac{1}{[g(x)]^2}\frac{d}{dx}[g(x)],$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] = \frac{g(x)\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] - f(x)\frac{d}{dx}[g(x)]}{[g(x)]^2}.$$

Often functions f and g are replaced by u and v and the x is left out altogether. Then the formulas look like this:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(u + v) = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx}, \quad \frac{d}{dx}(\alpha u) = \alpha\frac{du}{dx},$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(uv) = u\frac{du}{dx} + v\frac{du}{dx},$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{v}\right) = -\frac{1}{v^2}\frac{dv}{dx}, \quad \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u}{v}\right) = \frac{v\frac{du}{dx} - u\frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}.$$

The only way to develop a feeling for this notation is to use it. Below we work out some examples.

Example 1 Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for $y = \frac{3x - 1}{5x + 2}$.

SOLUTION We use the quotient rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(5x + 2)\frac{d}{dx}(3x - 1) - (3x - 1)\frac{d}{dx}(5x + 2)}{(5x + 2)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(5x + 2)(3) - (3x - 1)(5)}{(5x + 2)^2} = \frac{11}{(5x + 2)^2}. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for $y = (x^3 + 1)(3x^5 + 2x - 1)$.

SOLUTION Here we use the product rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (x^3 + 1)\frac{d}{dx}(3x^5 + 2x - 1) + (3x^5 + 2x - 1)\frac{d}{dx}(x^3 + 1)$$

$$= (x^3 + 1)(15x^4 + 2) + (3x^5 + 2x - 1)(3x^2)$$

$$= (15x^7 + 15x^4 + 2x^3 + 2) + (9x^7 + 6x^3 - 3x^2)$$

$$= 24x^7 + 15x^4 + 8x^3 - 3x^2 + 2. \quad \square$$

Example 3 Find $\dfrac{d}{dt}\left(t^3 - \dfrac{t}{t^2-1}\right)$.

SOLUTION

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(t^3 - \frac{t}{t^2-1}\right) = \frac{d}{dt}(t^3) - \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{t}{t^2-1}\right)$$

$$= 3t^2 - \left[\frac{(t^2-1)(1) - t(2t)}{(t^2-1)^2}\right] = 3t^2 + \frac{t^2+1}{(t^2-1)^2}. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Find $\dfrac{du}{dx}$ for $u = x(x+1)(x+2)$.

SOLUTION You can think of u as

$$[x(x+1)](x+2) \quad \text{or as} \quad x[(x+1)(x+2)].$$

From the first point of view,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = [x(x+1)](1) + (x+2)\frac{d}{dx}[x(x+1)]$$

$$= x(x+1) + (x+2)[x(1) + (x+1)(1)]$$

$$(*) \qquad = x(x+1) + (x+2)(2x+1).$$

From the second point of view,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = x\frac{d}{dx}[(x+1)(x+2)] + (x+1)(x+2)(1)$$

$$= x[(x+1)(1) + (x+2)(1)] + (x+1)(x+2)$$

$$(**) \qquad = x(2x+3) + (x+1)(x+2).$$

Both $(*)$ and $(**)$ can be multiplied out to give

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 3x^2 + 6x + 2.$$

Alternatively, this same result can be obtained by first carrying out the multiplication and then differentiating

$$u = x(x+1)(x+2) = x(x^2+3x+2) = x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x$$

so that

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 3x^2 + 6x + 2. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Evaluate dy/dx at $x = 0$ and $x = 1$ given that $y = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2-4}$.

SOLUTION

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(x^2-4)2x - x^2(2x)}{(x^2-4)^2} = -\frac{8x}{(x^2-4)^2}.$$

At $x = 0$, $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{8 \cdot 0}{(0^2-4)^2} = 0;\quad$ at $x = 1$, $\quad \dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{8 \cdot 1}{(1^2-4)^2} = -\dfrac{8}{9}.$ ❑

Remark The notation

$$\left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{x=a}$$

is sometimes used to emphasize the fact that we are evaluating the derivative dy/dx at $x = a$. Thus, in Example 5, we have

$$\left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{x=0} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{x=1} = -\frac{8}{9} \quad ❑$$

Derivatives of Higher Order

As we noted in Section 3.1, when we differentiate a function f we get a new function f', the derivative of f. Now suppose that f' can be differentiated. If we calculate $(f')'$, we get the *second derivative of f*. This is denoted f''. So long as we have differentiability, we can continue in this manner, forming the *third derivative of f*, written f''', and so on. The prime notation is not used beyond the third derivative. For the *fourth derivative of f*, we write $f^{(4)}$ and more generally, for the nth derivative we write $f^{(n)}$. The functions $f', f'', f''', f^{(4)}, \ldots, f^{(n)}$ are called the derivatives of f of *orders* $1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots, n$, respectively. For example, if $f(x) = x^5$, then

$$f'(x) = 5x^4, \quad f''(x) = 20x^3, \quad f'''(x) = 60x^2, \quad f^{(4)}(x) = 120x, \quad f^{(5)}(x) = 120.$$

In this case, all derivatives of orders higher than five are identically zero. As a variant of this notation, you can write $y = x^5$ and then

$$y' = 5x^4, \quad y'' = 20x^3, \quad y''' = 60x^2, \quad \text{and so on.}$$

Since each polynomial P has a derivative P' that is in turn a polynomial, and each rational function Q has a derivative Q' that is in turn a rational function, polynomials and rational functions have derivatives of all orders. In the case of a polynomial of degree n, derivatives of order greater than n are all identically zero. (Explain.)

In the Leibniz notation the derivatives of higher order are written

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right), \qquad \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right), \ldots, \text{ and so on.}$$

or

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}[f(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)]\right], \qquad \frac{d^3}{dx^3}[f(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}[f(x)]\right], \ldots, \text{ and so on.}$$

Below we work out some examples.

Example 6 If $f(x) = x^4 - 3x^{-1} + 5$, then

$$f'(x) = 4x^3 + 3x^{-2} \quad \text{and} \quad f''(x) = 12x^2 - 6x^{-3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 7

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^5 - 4x^3 + 7x) = 5x^4 - 12x^2 + 7,$$

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(x^5 - 4x^3 + 7x) = \frac{d}{dx}(5x^4 - 12x^2 + 7) = 20x^3 - 24x,$$

$$\frac{d^3}{dx^3}(x^5 - 4x^3 + 7x) = \frac{d}{dx}(20x^3 - 24x) = 60x^2 - 24. \quad ❑$$

Example 8 Finally, we consider $y = x^{-1}$. In the Leibniz notation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -x^{-2}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 2x^{-3}, \qquad \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = -6x^{-4}, \qquad \frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = 24x^{-5}, \ldots .$$

On the basis of these calculations, we are led to the general result

$$\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} = (-1)^n n! x^{-n-1}. \quad [\text{Recall that } n! = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 3\cdot 2\cdot 1.]$$

In Exercise 61 you are asked to prove this result. In the prime notation we have

$$y' = -x^{-2}, \qquad y'' = 2x^{-3}, \qquad y''' = -6x^{-4}, \qquad y^{(4)} = 24x^{-5}, \ldots .$$

In general

$$y^{(n)} = (-1)^n n! x^{-n-1}. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 3.3

Exercises 1–10. Find dy/dx.

1. $y = 3x^4 - x^2 + 1.$

2. $y = x^2 + 2x^{-4}.$

3. $y = x - \dfrac{1}{x}.$

4. $y = \dfrac{2x}{1-x}.$

5. $y = \dfrac{x}{1+x^2}.$

6. $y = x(x-2)(x+1).$

7. $y = \dfrac{x^2}{1-x}.$

8. $y = \left(\dfrac{x}{1+x}\right)\left(\dfrac{2-x}{3}\right).$

9. $y = \dfrac{x^3+1}{x^3-1}.$

10. $y = \dfrac{x^2}{(1+x)}.$

Exercises 11–22. Find the indicated derivative.

11. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(2x-5).$

12. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(5x+2).$

13. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(3x^2 - x^{-1})(2x+5)].$

14. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(2x^2 + 3x^{-1})(2x - 3x^{-2})].$

15. $\dfrac{d}{dt}\left(\dfrac{t^4}{2t^3-1}\right).$

16. $\dfrac{d}{dt}\left(\dfrac{2t^3+1}{t^4}\right).$

17. $\dfrac{d}{du}\left(\dfrac{2u}{1-2u}\right).$

18. $\dfrac{d}{du}\left(\dfrac{u^2}{u^3+1}\right).$

19. $\dfrac{d}{du}\left(\dfrac{u}{u-1} - \dfrac{u}{u+1}\right).$

20. $\dfrac{d}{du}[u^2(1-u^2)(1-u^3)].$

21. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\dfrac{x^3+x^2+x+1}{x^3-x^2+x-1}\right).$

22. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\dfrac{x^3+x^2+x-1}{x^3-x^2+x+1}\right).$

Exercises 23–26. Evaluate dy/dx at $x = 2$.

23. $y = (x+1)(x+2)(x+3).$

24. $y = (x+1)(x^2+2)(x^3+3).$

25. $y = \dfrac{(x-1)(x-2)}{(x+2)}.$

26. $y = \dfrac{(x^2+1)(x^2-2)}{x^2+2}.$

Exercises 27–32. Find the second derivative.

27. $f(x) = 7x^3 - 6x^5.$

28. $f(x) = 2x^5 - 6x^4 + 2x - 1.$

29. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-3}{x}.$

30. $f(x) = x^2 - \dfrac{1}{x^2}.$

31. $f(x) = (x^2-2)(x^{-2}+2).$

32. $f(x) = (2x-3)\left(\dfrac{2x+3}{x}\right).$

Exercises 33–38. Find d^3y/dx^3.

33. $y = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + x + 1.$

34. $y = (1+5x)^2.$

35. $y = (2x-5)^2.$

36. $y = \frac{1}{6}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x^2 + x - 3.$

37. $y = x^3 - \dfrac{1}{x^3}.$

38. $y = \dfrac{x^4+2}{x}.$

Exercises 39–44. Find the indicated derivative.

39. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[x\dfrac{d}{dx}(x - x^2)\right].$

40. $\dfrac{d^2}{dx^2}\left[(x^2-3x)\dfrac{d}{dx}(x + x^{-1})\right].$

41. $\dfrac{d^4}{dx^4}[3x - x^4].$

42. $\dfrac{d^5}{dx^5}[ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e].$

43. $\dfrac{d^2}{dx^2}\left[(1+2x)\dfrac{d^2}{dx^2}(5 - x^3)\right].$

44. $\dfrac{d^3}{dx^3}\left[\dfrac{1}{x}\dfrac{d^2}{dx^2}(x^4 - 5x^2)\right].$

Exercises 45–48. Find a function $y = f(x)$ for which:

45. $y' = 4x^3 - x^2 + 4x.$

46. $y' = x - \dfrac{2}{x^3} + 3.$

47. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 5x^4 + \dfrac{4}{x^5}.$

48. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4x^5 - \dfrac{5}{x^4} - 2.$

49. Find a quadratic polynomial p with $p(1) = 3$, $p'(1) = -2$, and $p''(1) = 4$.

50. Find a cubic polynomial p with $p(-1) = 0$, $p'(-1) = 3$, $p''(-1) = -2$, and $p'''(-1) = 6$.

51. Set $f(x) = x^n$, n a positive integer.

(a) Find $f^{(k)}(x)$ for $k = n$.
(b) Find $f^{(k)}(x)$ for $k > n$.
(c) Find $f^{(k)}(x)$ for $k < n$.

52. Let p be an arbitrary polynomial

$$p(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0, \, a_n \neq 0.$$

(a) Find $(d^n/dx^n)[p(x)]$.
(b) What is $(d^k/dx^k)[p(x)]$ for $k > n$?

53. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & x \geq 0 \\ 0, & x < 0 \end{cases}$.

(a) Show that f is differentiable at 0 and give $f'(0)$.
(b) Determine $f'(x)$ for all x.
(c) Show that $f''(0)$ does not exist.
(d) Sketch the graph of f and f'.

54. Set $g(x) = \begin{cases} x^3, & x \geq 0 \\ 0, & x < 0. \end{cases}$

(a) Find $g'(0)$ and $g''(0)$.
(b) Determine $g'(x)$ and $g''(x)$ for all other x.
(c) Show that $g'''(0)$ does not exist.
(d) Sketch the graphs of g, g', g''.

55. Show that in general

$$(f \cdot g)''(x) \neq f(x)g''(x) + f''(x)g(x).$$

56. Verify the identity

$$f(x)g''(x) - f''(x)g(x) = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g'(x) - f'(x)g(x)].$$

Exercises 57–60. Find the numbers x for which (a) $f''(x) = 0$, (b) $f''(x) > 0$, (c) $f''(x) < 0$.

57. $f(x) = x^3$.

58. $f(x) = x^4$.

59. $f(x) = x^4 + 2x^3 - 12x^2$.

60. $f(x) = x^4 + 3x^3 - 6x^2 - x$.

61. Prove by induction that

$$\text{if} \quad y = x^{-1}, \qquad \text{then} \quad \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} = (-1)^n n! x^{-n-1}.$$

62. Calculate y', y'', y''' for $y = 1/x^2$. Use these results to guess a formula for $y^{(n)}$ for each positive integer n, and then prove the validity of your conjecture by induction.

63. Let u, v, w be differentiable functions of x. Express the derivative of the product uvw in terms of the functions u, v, w, and their derivatives.

64. (a) Find $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}(x^n)$ for $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$. Give the general formula.

(b) Give the general formula for $\dfrac{d^{n+1}}{dx^{n+1}}(x^n)$.

65. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1-x}$. Find a formula for $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}[f(x)]$.

66. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{1-x}{1+x}$. Use a CAS to find a formula for $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}[f(x)]$.

67. Set $f(x) = x^3 - x$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to display in one figure the graph of f and the line $l : x - 2y + 12 = 0$.
(b) Find the points on the graph of f where the tangent is parallel to l.
(c) Verify the results you obtained in (b) by adding these tangents to your previous drawing.

68. Set $f(x) = x^4 - x^2$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to display in one figure the graph of f and the line $l : x - 2y - 4 = 0$.
(b) Find the points on the graph of f where the normal is perpendicular to l.
(c) Verify the results you obtained in (b) by adding these normals to your previous drawing.

69. Set $f(x) = x^3 + x^2 - 4x + 1$.

(a) Calculate $f'(x)$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to display in one figure the graphs of f and f'. If possible, graph f and f' in different colors.
(c) What can you say about the graph of f where $f'(x) < 0$? What can you say about the graph of f where $f'(x) > 0$?

70. Set $f(x) = x^4 - x^3 - 5x^2 - x - 2$.

(a) Calculate $f'(x)$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to display in one figure the graphs of f and f'. If possible, graph f and f' in different colors.
(c) What can you say about the graph of f where $f'(x) < 0$? What can you say about the graph of f where $f'(x) > 0$?

71. Set $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x + 3$.

(a) Calculate $f'(x)$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to display in one figure the graphs of f and f'. If possible, graph f and f' in different colors.
(c) What can you say about the graph of f where $f'(x) = 0$?
(d) Find the x-coordinate of each point where the tangent to the graph of f is horizontal by finding the zeros of f' to three decimal places.

72. Set $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^3 - 3x^2 + 4x + 1$.

(a) Calculate $f'(x)$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to display in one figure the graphs of f and f'. If possible, graph f and f' in different colors.
(c) What can you say about the graph of f where $f'(x) = 0$?
(d) Find the x-coordinate of each point where the tangent to the graph of f is horizontal by finding the zeros of f' to three decimal places.

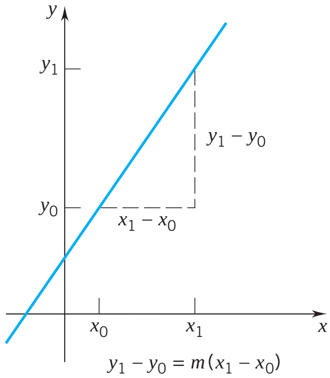


Figure 3.4.1

■ 3.4 THE DERIVATIVE AS A RATE OF CHANGE

In the case of a linear function $y = mx + b$, the graph is a straight line and the slope m measures the steepness of the line by giving the rate of climb of the line, *the rate of change of y with respect to x.*

As x changes from x_0 to x_1, y changes m times as much:

$$y_1 - y_0 = m(x_1 - x_0) \qquad \text{(Figure 3.4.1)}$$

Thus the slope m gives the change in y per unit change in x.

In the more general case of a differentiable function

$$y = f(x)$$

the graph is a curve. The slope

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f'(x)$$

still gives *the rate of change of y with respect to x*, but this rate of change can vary from point to point. At $x = x_1$ (see Figure 3.4.2) the rate of change of y with respect to x is $f'(x_1)$; the steepness of the graph is that of a line of slope $f'(x_1)$. At $x = x_2$, the rate of change of y with respect to x is $f'(x_2)$; the steepness of the graph is that of a line of slope $f'(x_2)$. At $x = x_3$, the rate of change of y with respect to x is $f'(x_3)$; the steepness of the graph is that of a line of slope $f'(x_3)$.

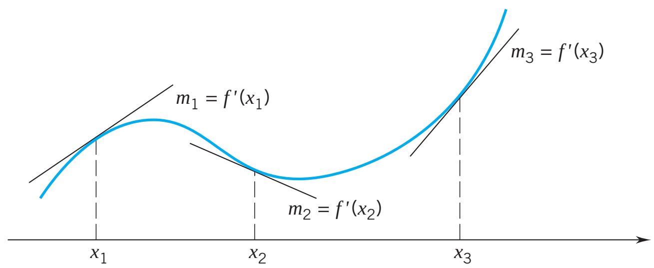


Figure 3.4.2

The derivative as a rate of change is one of the fundamental ideas of calculus. Keep it in mind whenever you see a derivative. This section is only introductory. We'll develop the idea further as we go on.

Example 1 The area of a square is given by the formula $A = x^2$ where x is the length of a side. As x changes, A changes. The rate of change of A with respect to x is the derivative

$$\frac{dA}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(x^2) = 2x.$$

When $x = \frac{1}{4}$, this rate of change is $\frac{1}{2}$: the area is changing at half the rate of x. When $x = \frac{1}{2}$, the rate of change of A with respect to x is 1: the area is changing at the same rate as x. When $x = 1$, the rate of change of A with respect to x is 2 : the area is changing at twice the rate of x.

In Figure 3.4.3 we have plotted A against x. The rate of change of A with respect to x at each of the indicated points appears as the slope of the tangent line. ❑

Example 2 An equilateral triangle of side x has area

$$A = \tfrac{1}{4}\sqrt{3}x^2. \qquad \text{(Check this out.)}$$

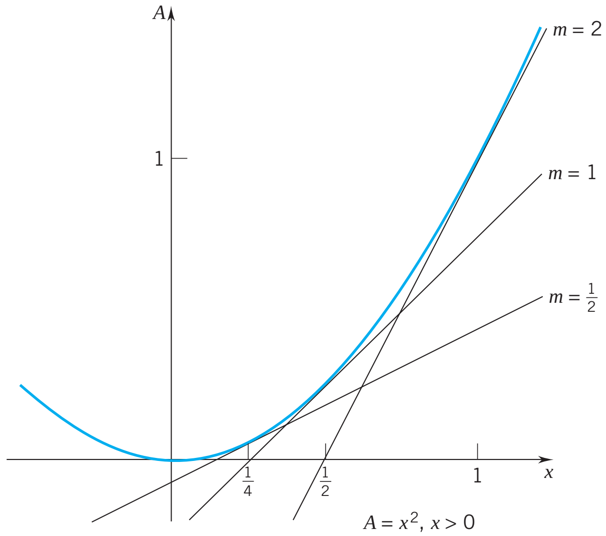


Figure 3.4.3

The rate of change of A with respect to x is the derivative

$$\frac{dA}{dx} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}x.$$

When $x = 2\sqrt{3}$, the rate of change of A with respect to x is 3. In other words, when the side has length $2\sqrt{3}$, the area is changing three times as fast as the length of the side. ❑

Example 3 Set $y = \dfrac{x-2}{x^2}$.

(a) Find the rate of change of y with respect to x at $x = 2$.
(b) Find the value(s) of x at which the rate of change of y with respect to x is 0.

SOLUTION The rate of change of y with respect to x is given by the derivative, dy/dx:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x^2(1) - (x-2)(2x)}{x^4} = \frac{-x^2 + 4x}{x^4} = \frac{4-x}{x^3}.$$

(a) At $x = 2$,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4-2}{2^3} = \frac{1}{4}.$$

(b) Setting $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$, we have $\dfrac{4-x}{x^3} = 0$, and therefore $x = 4$. The rate of change of y with respect to x at $x = 4$ is 0. ❑

Example 4 Suppose that we have a right circular cylinder of changing dimensions. (Figure 3.4.4.) When the base radius is r and the height is h, the cylinder has volume

$$V = \pi r^2 h.$$

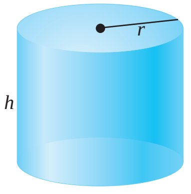


Figure 3.4.4

If r remains constant while h changes, then V can be viewed as a function of h. The rate of change of V with respect to h is the derivative

$$\frac{dV}{dh} = \pi r^2.$$

If h remains constant while r changes, then V can be viewed as a function of r. The rate of change of V with respect to r is the derivative

$$\frac{dV}{dh} = 2\pi r h.$$

Suppose now that r changes but V is kept constant. How does h change with respect to r? To answer this, we express h in terms of r and V:

$$h = \frac{V}{\pi r^2} = \frac{V}{\pi} r^{-2}.$$

Since V is held constant, h is now a function of r. The rate of change of h with respect to r is the derivative

$$\frac{dh}{dr} = -\frac{2V}{\pi} r^{-3} = -\frac{2(\pi r^2 h)}{\pi} r^{-3} = -\frac{2h}{r}. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 3.4

1. Find the rate of change of the area of a circle with respect to the radius r. What is the rate when $r = 2$?

2. Find the rate of change of the volume of a cube with respect to the length s of a side. What is the rate when $s = 4$?

3. Find the rate of change of the area of a square with respect to the length z of a diagonal. What is the rate when $z = 4$?

4. Find the rate of change of $y = 1/x$ with respect to x at $x = -1$.

5. Find the rate of change of $y = [x(x+1)]^{-1}$ with respect to x at $x = 2$.

6. Find the values of x at which the rate of change of $y = x^3 - 12x^2 + 45x - 1$ with respect to x is zero.

7. Find the rate of change of the volume of a sphere with respect to the radius r.

8. Find the rate of change of the surface area of a sphere with respect to the radius r. What is this rate of change when $r = r_0$? How must r_0 be chosen so that the rate of change is 1?

9. Find x_0 given that the rate of change of $y = 2x^2 + x - 1$ with respect to x at $x = x_0$ is 4.

10. Find the rate of change of the area A of a circle with respect to (a) the diameter d; (b) the circumference C.

11. Find the rate of change of the volume V of a cube with respect to

(a) the length w of a diagonal on one of the faces.
(b) the length z of one of the diagonals of the cube.

12. The dimensions of a rectangle are changing in such a way that the area of the rectangle remains constant. Find the rate of change of the height h with respect to the base b.

13. The area of a sector in a circle is given by the formula $A = \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$ where r is the radius and θ is the central angle measured in radians.

(a) Find the rate of change of A with respect to θ if r remains constant.
(b) Find the rate of change of A with respect to r if θ remains constant.
(c) Find the rate of change of θ with respect to r if A remains constant.

14. The total surface area of a right circular cylinder is given by the formula $A = 2\pi r(r + h)$ where r is the radius and h is the height.

(a) Find the rate of change of A with respect to h if r remains constant.
(b) Find the rate of change of A with respect to r if h remains constant.
(c) Find the rate of change of h with respect to r if A remains constant.

15. For what value of x is the rate of change of

$$y = ax^2 + bx + c \text{ with respect to } x$$

the same as the rate of change of

$$z = bx^2 + ax + c \text{ with respect to } x?$$

Assume that a, b, c are constant with $a \neq b$.

16. Find the rate of change of the product $f(x)g(x)h(x)$ with respect to x at $x = 1$ given that

$$f(1) = 0, \quad g(1) = 2, \quad h(1) = -2,$$
$$f'(1) = 1, \quad g'(1) = -1, \quad h'(1) = 0$$

■ 3.5 THE CHAIN RULE

In this section we take up the differentiation of composite functions. Until we get to Theorem 3.5.6, our approach is completely intuitive—no real definitions, no proofs, just informal discussion. Our purpose is to give you some experience with the standard computational procedures and some insight into why these procedures work. Theorem 3.5.6 puts this all on a sound footing.

Suppose that y is a differentiable function of u and u in turn is a differentiable function of x. Then y is a composite function of x. Does y have a derivative with respect to x? Yes it does, and dy/dx is given by a formula that is easy to remember:

(3.5.1)
$$\boxed{\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}.}$$

This formula, known as the *chain rule*, says that

"the rate of change of y with respect to x is the rate of change of y with respect to u times the rate of change of u with respect to x."

Plausible as all this sounds, remember that we have proved nothing. All we have done is assert that the composition of differentiable functions is differentiable and given you a formula—a formula that needs justification and is justified at the end of this section.

Before using the chain rule in elaborate computations, let's confirm its validity in some simple instances.

If $y = 2u$ and $u = 3x$, then $y = 6x$. Clearly

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 6 = 2 \cdot 3 = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx},$$

and so, in this case, the chain rule is confirmed:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

If $y = u^3$ and $u = x^2$, then $y = (x^2)^3 = x^6$. This time

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 6x^5, \qquad \frac{dy}{du} = 3u^2 = 3(x^2)^2 = 3x^4, \qquad \frac{du}{dx} = 2x$$

and once again

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 6x^5 = 3x^4 \cdot 2x = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Example 1 Find dy/dx by the chain rule given that

$$y = \frac{u-1}{u+1} \qquad \text{and} \qquad u = x^2.$$

SOLUTION

$$\frac{dy}{du} = \frac{(u+1)(1)-(u-1)(1)}{(u+1)^2} = \frac{2}{(u+1)^2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{du}{dx} = 2x$$

so that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{dy}{dx} = \left[\frac{2}{(u+1)^2}\right]2x = \frac{4x}{(x^2+1)^2}. \quad \square$$

Remark We would have obtained the same result without the chain rule by first writing y as a function of x and then differentiating:

$$\text{with} \quad y = \frac{u-1}{u+1} \quad \text{and} \quad u = x^2, \quad \text{we have} \quad y = \frac{x^2-1}{x^2+1}$$

and

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(x^2+1)2x - (x^2-1)2x}{(x^2+1)^2} = \frac{4x}{(x^2+1)^2}. \quad \square$$

Suppose now that you were asked to calculate

$$\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2-1)^{100}].$$

You could expand $(x^2-1)^{100}$ into a polynomial by using the binomial theorem (that's assuming that you are familiar with the theorem and are adept at applying it) or you could try repeated multiplication, but in either case you would have a terrible mess on your hands: $(x^2-1)^{100}$ has 101 terms. Using the chain rule, we can derive a formula that will render such calculations almost trivial.

By the chain rule, we can show that, if u is a differentiable function of x and n is a positive or negative integer, then

(3.5.2)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(u^n) = nu^{n-1}\frac{du}{dx}.}$$

If n is a positive integer, the formula holds without restriction. If n is negative, the formula is valid except at those numbers where $u(x) = 0$.

PROOF Set $y = u^n$. In this case,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}$$

gives

$$\frac{d}{dx}(u^n) = \frac{d}{du}(u^n)\frac{du}{dx} = nu^{n-1}\frac{du}{dx}. \quad \square$$

To calculate

$$\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2-1)^{100}],$$

we set $u = x^2 - 1$. Then by our formula

$$\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2-1)^{100}] = 100(x^2-1)^{99}\frac{d}{dx}(x^2-1) = 100(x^2-1)^{99}2x = 200x(x^2-1)^{99}.$$

Remark While it is clear that (3.5.2) is the only practical way to calculate the derivative of $y = (x^2-1)^{100}$, you do have a choice when differentiating a similar, but simpler, function such as $y = (x^2-1)^4$. By (3.5.2)

$$\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2-1)^4] = 4(x^2-1)^3\frac{d}{dx}(x^2-1) = 4(x^2-1)^3 2x = 8x(x^2-1)^3.$$

On the other hand, if we were to first expand the expression $(x^2-1)^4$, we would get

$$y = x^8 - 4x^6 + 6x^4 - 4x^2 + 1$$

and then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 8x^7 - 24x^5 + 24x^3 - 8x.$$

As a final answer, this is correct but somewhat unwieldy. To reconcile the two results, note that $8x$ is a factor of dy/dx:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 8x(x^6 - 3x^4 + 3x^2 - 1),$$

and the expression in parentheses is $(x^2 - 1)^3$ multiplied out. Thus,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 8x(x^2 - 1)^3,$$

as we saw above. However, (3.5.2) gave us this neat, compact result much more efficiently. ❑

Here are additional examples of a similar sort.

Example 2

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^{-3}\right] = -3\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^{-4}\frac{d}{dx}\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right) = -3\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^{-4}\left(1 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right). \quad ❑$$

Example 3

$$\frac{d}{dx}[1 + (2 + 3x)^5]^3 = 3[1 + (2 + 3x)^5]^2\frac{d}{dx}[1 + (2 + 3x)^5].$$

Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}[1 + (2 + 3x)^5] = 5(2 + 3x)^4\frac{d}{dx}(2 + 3x) = 5(2 + 3x)^4(3) = 15(2 + 3x)^4,$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}[1 + (2 + 3x)^5]^3 &= 3[1 + (2 + 3x)^5]^2[15(2 + 3x)^4]\\ &= 45(2 + 3x)^4[1 + (2 + 3x)^5]^2. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 4

Calculate the derivative of $f(x) = 2x^3(x^2 - 3)^4$.

SOLUTION Here we need to use the product rule and the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}[2x^3(x^2 - 3)^4] &= 2x^3\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2 - 3)^4] + (x^2 - 3)^4\frac{d}{dx}(2x^3)\\ &= 2x^3[4(x^2 - 3)^3(2x)] + (x^2 - 3)^4(6x^2)\\ &= 16x^4(x^2 - 3)^3 + 6x^2(x^2 - 3)^4 = 2x^2(x^2 - 3)^3(11x^2 - 9). \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

The formula

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}$$

can be extended to more variables. For example, if x itself depends on s, then we have

(3.5.3)
$$\boxed{\frac{dy}{ds} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}\frac{dx}{ds}.}$$

If, in addition, s depends on t, then

(3.5.4) $$\boxed{\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}\frac{dx}{ds}\frac{ds}{dt},}$$

and so on. Each new dependence adds a new link to the chain.

Example 5 Find dy/ds given that $y = 3u + 1,\ u = x^{-2},\ x = 1 - s.$

SOLUTION

$$\frac{dy}{du} = 3, \qquad \frac{du}{dx} = -2x^{-3}, \qquad \frac{dx}{ds} = -1.$$

Therefore

$$\frac{dy}{ds} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}\frac{dx}{ds} = (3)(-2x^{-3})(-1) = 6x^{-3} = 6(1-s)^{-3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 6 Find dy/dt at $t = 9$ given that

$$y = \frac{u+2}{u-1}, \qquad u = (3s-7)^2, \qquad s = \sqrt{t}.$$

SOLUTION As you can check,

$$\frac{dy}{du} = -\frac{3}{(u-1)^2}, \qquad \frac{du}{ds} = 6(3s-7), \qquad \frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{t}}.$$

At $t = 9$, we have $s = 3$ and $u = 4$, so that

$$\frac{dy}{du} = -\frac{3}{(4-1)^2} = -\frac{1}{3}, \qquad \frac{du}{ds} = 6(9-7) = 12, \qquad \frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{9}} = \frac{1}{6}.$$

Thus, at $t = 9$,

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{ds}\frac{ds}{dt} = \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)(12)\left(\frac{1}{6}\right) = -\frac{2}{3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 7 Gravel is being poured by a conveyor onto a conical pile at the constant rate of 60π cubic feet per minute. Frictional forces within the pile are such that the height is always two-thirds of the radius. How fast is the radius of the pile changing at the instant the radius is 5 feet?

SOLUTION The formula for the volume V of a right circular cone of radius r and height h is

$$V = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h.$$

However, in this case we are told that $h = \frac{2}{3}r$, and so we have

(∗) $$V = \tfrac{2}{9}\pi r^3.$$

Since gravel is being poured onto the pile, the volume, and hence the radius, are functions of time t. We are given that $dV/dt = 60\pi$ and we want to find dr/dt at the

instant $r = 5$. Differentiating $(*)$ with respect to t by the chain rule, we get

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{dV}{dr}\frac{dr}{dt} = \left(\tfrac{2}{3}\pi r^2\right)\frac{dr}{dt}.$$

Solving for dr/dt and using the fact that $dV/dt = 60\pi$, we find that

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{180\pi}{2\pi r^2} = \frac{90}{r^2}.$$

When $r = 5$,

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{90}{(5)^2} = \frac{90}{25} = 3.6.$$

Thus, the radius is increasing at the rate of 3.6 feet per minute at the instant the radius is 5 feet. ❑

So far we have worked entirely in Leibniz's notation. What does the chain rule look like in prime notation? Let's go back to the beginning. Once again, let y be a differentiable function of u: say

$$y = f(u).$$

Let u be a differentiable function of x: say

$$u = g(x).$$

Then

$$y = f(u) = f(g(x)) = (f \circ g)(x)$$

and, according to the chain rule (as yet unproved),

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Since

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}[(f \circ g)(x)] = (f \circ g)'(x), \qquad \frac{dy}{du} = f'(u) = f'(g(x)), \qquad \frac{du}{dx} = g'(x),$$

the chain rule can be written

(3.5.5)
$$\boxed{(f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x))\, g'(x).}$$

The chain rule in prime notation says that

"the derivative of a composition $f \circ g$ at x is the derivative of f at $g(x)$ times the derivative of g at x."

In Leibniz's notation the chain rule *appears* seductively simple, to some even obvious. "After all, to prove it, all you have to do is cancel the du's":

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{\cancel{du}}\,\frac{\cancel{du}}{dx}.$$

Of course, this is just nonsense. What would one cancel from

$$(f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x)?$$

Although Leibniz's notation is useful for routine calculations, mathematicians generally turn to prime notation where precision is required.

It is time for us to be precise. How do we know that the composition of differentiable functions is differentiable? What assumptions do we need? Under what circumstances is it true that

$$(f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x)?$$

The following theorem provides the definitive answer.

THEOREM 3.5.6 THE CHAIN-RULE THEOREM

If g is differentiable at x and f is differentiable at $g(x)$, then the composition $f \circ g$ is differentiable at x and

$$(f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x).$$

A proof of this theorem appears in the supplement to this section. The argument is not as easy as "canceling" the *du*'s.

One final point. The statement

$$(f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x)$$

is often written

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(g(x))] = f'(g(x))g'(x).$$

EXERCISES 3.5

Exercises 1–6. Differentiate the function: (a) by expanding before differentiation, (b) by using the chain rule. Then reconcile your results.

1. $y = (x^2 + 1)^2$.

2. $y = (x^3 - 1)^2$.

3. $y = (2x + 1)^3$.

4. $y = (x^2 + 1)^3$.

5. $y = (x + x^{-1})^2$.

6. $y = (3x^2 - 2x)^2$.

Exercises 7–20. Differentiate the function.

7. $f(x) = (1 - 2x)^{-1}$.

8. $f(x) = (1 + 2x)^5$.

9. $f(x) = (x^5 - x^{10})^{20}$.

10. $f(x) = \left(x^2 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)^3$.

11. $f(x) = \left(x - \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^4$.

12. $f(t) = \left(\dfrac{1}{1+t}\right)^4$.

13. $f(x) = (x - x^3 + x^5)^4$.

14. $f(t) = (t - t^2)^3$.

15. $f(t) = (t^{-1} + t^{-2})^4$.

16. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{4x+3}{5x-2}\right)^3$.

17. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{3x}{x^2+1}\right)^4$.

18. $f(x) = [(2x + 1)^2 + (x + 1)^2]^3$.

19. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{x^3}{3} + \dfrac{x^2}{2} + \dfrac{x}{1}\right)^{-1}$.

20. $f(x) = [(6x + x^5)^{-1} + x]^2$.

Exercises 21–24. Find dy/dx at $x = 0$.

21. $y = \dfrac{1}{1+u^2}, \quad u = 2x + 1$.

22. $y = u + \dfrac{1}{u}, \quad u = (3x + 1)^4$.

23. $y = \dfrac{2u}{1-4u}, \quad u = (5x^2 + 1)^4$.

24. $y = u^3 - u + 1, \quad u = \dfrac{1-x}{1+x}$.

Exercises 25–26. Find dy/dt.

25. $y = \dfrac{1-7u}{1+u^2}, \quad u = 1 + x^2, \quad x = 2t - 5$.

26. $y = 1 + u^2, \quad u = \dfrac{1-7x}{1+x^2}, \quad x = 5t + 2$.

Exercises 27–28. Find dy/dx at $x = 2$.

27. $y = (s + 3)^2, s = \sqrt{t-3}, t = x^2$.

28. $y = \dfrac{1+s}{1-s}, \quad s = t - \dfrac{1}{t}, \quad t = \sqrt{x}$.

Exercises 29–38. Evaluate the following, given that

$f(0) = 1, \; f'(0) = 2, \; f(1) = 0, \; f'(1) = 1,$
$f(2) = 1, \; f'(2) = 1,$

$g(0) = 2, \; g'(0) = 1, \; g(1) = 1, \; g'(1) = 0,$
$g(2) = 1, \; g'(2) = 1,$

$h(0) = 1, \; h'(0) = 2, \; h(1) = 2, \; h'(1) = 1,$
$h(2) = 0, \; h'(2) = 2,$

29. $(f \circ g)'(0)$.

30. $(f \circ g)'(1)$.

31. $(f \circ g)'(2)$.

32. $(g \circ f)'(0)$.

33. $(g \circ f)'(1)$.

34. $(g \circ f)'(2)$.

35. $(f \circ h)'(0)$.

36. $(f \circ h \circ g)'(1)$.

37. $(g \circ f \circ h)'(2)$.

38. $(g \circ h \circ f)'(0)$.

Exercises 39–42. Find $f''(x)$.

39. $f(x) = (x^3 + x)^4$.

40. $f(x) = (x^2 - 5x + 2)^{10}$.

41. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{x}{1-x}\right)^3$.

42. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2+1}\ \left(\text{recall that } \dfrac{d}{dx}[\sqrt{x}] = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}\right)$.

Exercises 43–46. Express the derivative in prime notation.

43. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[f(x^2+1)]$.

44. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[f\left(\dfrac{x-1}{x+1}\right)\right]$.

45. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[[f(x)]^2 + 1]$.

46. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[\dfrac{f(x)-1}{f(x)+1}\right]$.

Exercises 47–50. Determine the values of x for which (a) $f'(x) = 0$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$; (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

47. $f(x) = (1 + x^2)^{-2}$.

48. $f(x) = (1 - x^2)^2$.

49. $f(x) = x(1 + x^2)^{-1}$.

50. $f(x) = x(1 - x^2)^3$.

Exercises 51–53. Find a formula for the nth derivative.

51. $y = \dfrac{1}{1-x}$.

52. $y = \dfrac{x}{1+x}$.

53. $y = (a + bx)^n$; n a positive integer, a, b constants.

54. $y = \dfrac{a}{bx+c}$, a, b, c constants.

Exercises 55–58. Find a function $y = f(x)$ with the given derivative. Check your answer by differentiation.

55. $y' = 3(x^2 + 1)^2(2x)$.

56. $y' = 2x(x^2 - 1)$.

57. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2(x^3 - 2)(3x^2)$.

58. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2(x^3 + 2)^2$.

59. A function L has the property that $L'(x) = 1/x$ for $x \neq 0$. Determine the derivative with respect to x of $L(x^2 + 1)$.

60. Let f and g be differentiable functions such that $f'(x) = g(x)$ and $g'(x) = f(x)$, and let

$$H(x) = [f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2.$$

Find $H'(x)$.

61. Let f and g be differentiable functions such that $f'(x) = g(x)$ and $g'(x) = -f(x)$, and let

$$T(x) = [f(x)]^2 + [g(x)]^2.$$

Find $T'(x)$.

62. Let f be a differentiable function. Use the chain rule to show that:

(a) if f is even, then f' is odd.
(b) if f is odd, then f' is even.

63. The number a is called a *double zero* (or a zero of *multiplicity* 2) of the polynomial P if

$$P(x) = (x-a)^2 q(x) \quad \text{and} \quad q(a) \neq 0.$$

Prove that if a is a double zero of P, then a is a zero of both P and P', and $P''(a) \neq 0$.

64. The number a is called a *triple zero* (or a zero of *multiplicity* 3) of the polynomial P if

$$P(x) = (x-a)^3 q(x) \quad \text{and} \quad q(a) \neq 0.$$

Prove that if a is a triple zero of P, then a is a zero of P, P', and P'', and $P'''(a) \neq 0$.

65. The number a is called a *zero of multiplicity* k of the polynomial P if

$$P(x) = (x-a)^k q(x) \quad \text{and} \quad q(a) \neq 0.$$

Use the results in Exercises 63 and 64 to state a theorem about a zero of multiplicity k.

66. An equilateral triangle of side length x and altitude h has area A given by

$$A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}x^2 \quad \text{where} \quad x = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}h.$$

Find the rate of change of A with respect to h and determine this rate of change when $h = 2\sqrt{3}$.

67. As air is pumped into a spherical balloon, the radius increases at the constant rate of 2 centimeters per second. What is the rate of change of the balloon's volume when the radius is 10 centimeters? (The volume V of a sphere of radius r is $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$.)

68. Air is pumped into a spherical balloon at the constant rate of 200 cubic centimeters per second. How fast is the surface area of the balloon changing when the radius is 5 centimeters? (The surface area S of a sphere of radius r is $4\pi r^2$.)

69. Newton's law of gravitational attraction states that if two bodies are at a distance r apart, then the force F exerted by one body on the other is given by

$$F(r) = -\frac{k}{r^2}$$

where k is a positive constant. Suppose that, as a function of time, the distance between the two bodies is given by

$$r(t) = 49t - 4.9t^2, \qquad 0 \le t \le 10.$$

(a) Find the rate of change of F with respect to t.
(b) Show that $(F \circ r)'(3) = -(F \circ r)'(7)$.

C **70.** Set $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{1-x}$.

(a) Use a CAS to find $f'(9)$. Then find an equation for the line l tangent to the graph of f at the point $(9, f(9))$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to display l and the graph of f in one figure.
(c) Note that l is a good approximation to the graph of f for x close to 9. Determine the interval on which the vertical separation between l and the graph of f is of absolute value less than 0.01.

71. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$.

(a) Use a CAS to find $f'(1)$. Then find an equation for the line l tangent to the graph of f at the point $(1, f(1))$.

(b) Use a graphing utility to display l and the graph of f in one figure.

(c) Note that l is a good approximation to the graph of f for x close to 1. Determine the interval on which the vertical separation between l and the graph of f is of absolute value less than 0.01.

72. Use a CAS to find $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[x^2 \dfrac{d^4}{dx^4}(x^2+1)^4\right]$.

73. Use a CAS to express the following derivatives in f' notation.

(a) $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[f\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)\right]$, (b) $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[f\left(\dfrac{x^2-1}{x^2+1}\right)\right]$,

(c) $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[\dfrac{f(x)}{1+f(x)}\right]$.

74. Use a CAS to find the following derivatives:

(a) $\dfrac{d}{dx}[u_1(u_2(x))]$, (b) $\dfrac{d}{dx}[u_1(u_2(u_3(x)))]$,

(c) $\dfrac{d}{dx}[u_1(u_2(u_3(u_4(x))))]$.

75. Use a CAS to find a formula for $\dfrac{d^2}{dx^2}[f(g(x))]$.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 3.5

To prove Theorem 3.5.6, it is convenient to use a slightly different formulation of derivative.

THEOREM 3.5.7

The function f is differentiable at x iff

$$\lim_{t\to x} \frac{f(t)-f(x)}{t-x} \text{ exists.}$$

If this limit exists, it is $f'(x)$.

PROOF Fix x. For each $t \neq x$ in the domain of f, define

$$G(t) = \frac{f(t)-f(x)}{t-x}.$$

Note that

$$G(x+h) = \frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}$$

and therefore

$$f \text{ is differentiable at } x \qquad \text{iff} \qquad \lim_{h\to 0} G(x+h) \text{ exists.}$$

The result follows from observing that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} G(x+h) = L \qquad \text{iff} \qquad \lim_{t\to x} G(t) = L.$$

For the equivalence of these two limits we refer you to (2.2.6). ❑

PROOF OF THEOREM 3.5.6 By Theorem 3.5.7 it is enough to show that

$$\lim_{t\to x} \frac{f(g(t))-f(g(x))}{t-x} = f'(g(x))g'(x).$$

We begin by defining an auxiliary function F on the domain of f by setting

$$F(y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{f(y)-f(g(x))}{y-g(x)}, & y \neq g(x) \\ f'(g(x)), & y = g(x) \end{cases}$$

F is continuous at $g(x)$ since

$$\lim_{y\to g(x)} F(y) = \lim_{y\to g(x)} \frac{f(y) - f(g(x))}{y - g(x)},$$

and the right-hand side is (by Theorem 3.5.7) $f'(g(x))$, which is the value of F at $g(x)$. For $t \neq x$,

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{f(g(t)) - f(g(x))}{t - x} = F(g(t))\left[\frac{g(t) - g(x)}{t - x}\right].$$

To see this we note that, if $g(t) = g(x)$, then both sides are 0. If $g(t) \neq g(x)$, then

$$F(g(t)) = \frac{f(g(t)) - f(g(x))}{g(t) - g(x)},$$

so that again we have equality.

Since g, being differentiable at x, is continuous at x and since F is continuous at $g(x)$, we know that the composition $F \circ g$ is continuous at x. Thus

$$\lim_{t\to x} F(g(t)) \underset{\uparrow}{=} F(g(x)) = f'(g(x)).$$

by our definition of F

This, together with (1), gives

$$\lim_{t\to x} \frac{f(g(t)) - f(g(x))}{t - x} = f'(g(x))g'(x). \quad ❑$$

■ PROJECT 3.5 ON THE DERIVATIVE OF u^n

If n is a positive or negative integer and the function u is differentiable at x, then by the chain rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^n = n[u(x)]^{n-1}\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)],$$

except that, if n is negative, the formula fails at those numbers x where $u(x) = 0$.

We can obtain this result without appealing to the chain rule by using the product rule and carrying out an induction on n.

Let u be a differentiable function of x. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^2 &= \frac{d}{dx}[u(x)\cdot u(x)]\\ &= u(x)\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)] + u(x)\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]\\ &= 2u(x)\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)];\\ \frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^3 &= \frac{d}{dx}[u(x)\cdot[u(x)]^2]\\ &= u(x)\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^2 + [u(x)]^2\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]\\ &= 2[u(x)]^2\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)] + [u(x)]^2\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]\\ &= 3[u(x)]^2\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)].\end{aligned}$$

Problem 1. Show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^4 = 4[u(x)]^3\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)].$$

Problem 2. Show by induction that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^n = n[u(x)]^{n-1}\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)] \qquad \text{for all positive integers } n.$$

Problem 3. Show that if n is a negative integer, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]^n = n[u(x)]^{n-1}\frac{d}{dx}[u(x)]$$

except at those numbers x where $u(x) = 0$. HINT: Problem 2 and the reciprocal rule.

3.6 DIFFERENTIATING THE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

An outline review of trigonometry—definitions, identities, and graphs—appears in Chapter 1. As indicated there, the calculus of the trigonometric functions is simplified by the use of radian measure. We will use radian measure throughout our work and refer to degree measure only in passing.

The derivative of the sine function is the cosine function:

(3.6.1)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x.}$$

PROOF Fix any number x. For $h \neq 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\sin(x+h)-\sin x}{h} &= \frac{[\sin x\cos h + \cos x \sin h] - [\sin x]}{h}\\ &= \sin x\,\frac{\cos h - 1}{h} + \cos x\,\frac{\sin h}{h}.\end{aligned}$$

Now, as shown in Section 2.5

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos h - 1}{h} = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin h}{h} = 1.$$

Since x is fixed, $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ remain constant as h approaches zero. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(x+h)-\sin x}{h} &= \lim_{h\to 0}\left(\sin x\,\frac{\cos h - 1}{h} + \cos x\,\frac{\sin h}{h}\right)\\ &= \sin x\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos h - 1}{h}\right) + \cos x\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin h}{h}\right).\end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin(x+h)-\sin x}{h} = (\sin x)(0) + (\cos x)(1) = \cos x. \quad ❑$$

The derivative of the cosine function is the negative of the sine function:

(3.6.2)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x.}$$

PROOF Fix any number x. For $h \neq 0$,

$$\cos(x+h) = \cos x\cos h - \sin x \sin h.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(x+h)-\cos x}{h} &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[\cos x\cos h - \sin x\sin h] - [\cos x]}{h}\\ &= \cos x\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos h - 1}{h}\right) - \sin x\left(\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sin h}{h}\right)\\ &= -\sin x. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 1 To differentiate $f(x) = \cos x \sin x$, we use the product rule:

$$\begin{aligned}f'(x) &= \cos x\,\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) + \sin x\,\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x)\\ &= \cos x(\cos x) + \sin x(-\sin x) = \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

We come now to the tangent function. Since $\tan x = \sin x/\cos x$, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \frac{\cos x \dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin x) - \sin x \dfrac{d}{dx}(\cos x)}{\cos^2 x} = \frac{\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x} = \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} = \sec^2 x.$$

The derivative of the tangent function is the secant squared:

(3.6.3)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x.}$$

The derivatives of the other trigonometric functions are as follows:

(3.6.4)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\frac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x, \\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x \tan x, \\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x \cot x. \end{aligned}}$$

The verification of these formulas is left as an exercise.

It is time for some sample problems.

Example 2 Find $f'(\pi/4)$ for $f(x) = x \cot x$.

SOLUTION We first find $f'(x)$. By the product rule,

$$f'(x) = x\frac{d}{dx}(\cot x) + \cot x \frac{d}{dx}(x) = -x\csc^2 x + \cot x.$$

Now we evaluate f' at $\pi/4$:

$$f'(\pi/4) = -\frac{\pi}{4}(\sqrt{2})^2 + 1 = 1 - \frac{\pi}{2}. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Find $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[\dfrac{1 - \sec x}{\tan x}\right]$.

SOLUTION By the quotient rule,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{1-\sec x}{\tan x}\right] &= \frac{\tan x \dfrac{d}{dx}(1-\sec x) - (1-\sec x)\dfrac{d}{dx}(\tan x)}{\tan^2 x} \\ &= \frac{\tan x(-\sec x \tan x) - (1 - \sec x)(\sec^2 x)}{\tan^2 x} \\ &= \frac{\sec x(\sec^2 x - \tan^2 x) - \sec^2 x}{\tan^2 x} \\ &= \frac{\sec x - \sec^2 x}{\tan^2 x} = \frac{\sec x(1 - \sec x)}{\tan^2 x}. \end{aligned}$$

$(\sec^2 x - \tan^2 x = 1)$

Example 4 Find an equation for the line tangent to the curve $y = \cos x$ at the point where $x = \pi/3$.

SOLUTION Since $\cos \pi/3 = 1/2$, the point of tangency is $(\pi/3, 1/2)$. To find the slope of the tangent line, we evaluate the derivative

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin x$$

at $x = \pi/3$. This gives $m = -\sqrt{3}/2$. The equation for the tangent line can be written

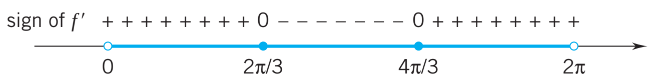
$$y - \frac{1}{2} = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right). \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Set $f(x) = x + 2\sin x$. Find the numbers x in the open interval $(0, 2\pi)$ at which (a) $f'(x) = 0$, (b) $f'(x) > 0$, (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

SOLUTION The derivative of f is the function

$$f'(x) = 1 + 2\cos x.$$

The only numbers in $(0, 2\pi)$ at which $f'(x) = 0$ are the numbers at which $\cos x = -\frac{1}{2}$: $x = 2\pi/3$ and $x = 4\pi/3$. These numbers separate the interval $(0, 2\pi)$ into three open subintervals $(0, 2\pi/3)$, $(2\pi/3, 4\pi/3)$, $(4\pi/3, 2\pi)$. On each of these subintervals f' keeps a constant sign. The sign of f' is recorded below:



Answers:

(a) $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 2\pi/3$ and $x = 4\pi/3$.
(b) $f'(x) > 0$ on $(0, 2\pi/3) \cup (4\pi/3, 2\pi)$.
(c) $f'(x) < 0$ on $(2\pi/3, 4\pi/3)$. ❑

The Chain Rule Applied to the Trigonometric Functions

If f is a differentiable function of u and u is a differentiable function of x, then, as you saw in Section 3.5,

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] = \frac{d}{du}[f(u)]\frac{du}{dx} = f'(u)\frac{du}{dx}.$$

Written in this form, the derivatives of the six trigonometric functions appear as follows:

(3.6.5)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\frac{d}{dx}(\sin u) = \cos u\frac{du}{dx}, && \frac{d}{dx}(\cos u) = -\sin u\frac{du}{dx},\\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\tan u) = \sec^2 u\frac{du}{dx}, && \frac{d}{dx}(\cot u) = -\csc^2 u\frac{du}{dx},\\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\sec u) = \sec u\tan u\frac{du}{dx}, && \frac{d}{dx}(\csc u) = -\csc u\cot u\frac{du}{dx}.\end{aligned}}$$

Example 6

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\cos 2x) = -\sin 2x\frac{d}{dx}(2x) = -2\sin 2x. \quad ❑$$

Example 7

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}[\sec(x^2+1)] &= \sec(x^2+1)\tan(x^2+1)\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+1)\\ &= 2x\sec(x^2+1)\tan(x^2+1). \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 8

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^3 \pi x) &= \frac{d}{dx}(\sin \pi x)^3 \\
&= 3(\sin \pi x)^2 \frac{d}{dx}(\sin \pi x) \\
&= 3(\sin \pi x)^2 \cos \pi x \frac{d}{dx}(\pi x) \\
&= 3(\sin \pi x)^2 \cos \pi x (\pi) = 3\pi \sin^2 \pi x \cos \pi x. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Our treatment of the trigonometric functions has been based entirely on radian measure. When degrees are used, the derivatives of the trigonometric functions contain the extra factor $\frac{1}{180}\pi \cong 0.0175$.

Example 9 Find $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin x^\circ)$.

SOLUTION Since $x^\circ = \frac{1}{180}\pi x$ radians,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x^\circ) = \frac{d}{dx}(\sin \tfrac{1}{180}\pi x) = \tfrac{1}{180}\pi \cos \tfrac{1}{180}\pi x = \tfrac{1}{180}\pi \cos x^\circ. \quad \square$$

The extra factor $\frac{1}{180}\pi$ is a disadvantage, particularly in problems where it occurs repeatedly. This tends to discourage the use of degree measure in theoretical work.

EXERCISES 3.6

Exercises 1–12. Differentiate the function.

1. $y = 3\cos x - 4\sec x$.
2. $y = x^2 \sec x$.
3. $y = x^3 \csc x$.
4. $y = \sin^2 x$.
5. $y = \cos^2 t$.
6. $y = 3t^2 \tan t$.
7. $y = \sin^4 \sqrt{u}$.
8. $y = u \csc u^2$.
9. $y = \tan x^2$.
10. $y = \cos \sqrt{x}$.
11. $y = [x + \cot \pi x]^4$.
12. $y = [x^2 - \sec 2x]^3$.

Exercises 13–24. Find the second derivative.

13. $y = \sin x$.
14. $y = \cos x$.
15. $y = \dfrac{\cos x}{1 + \sin x}$.
16. $y = \tan^3 2\pi x$.
17. $y = \cos^3 2u$.
18. $y = \sin^5 3t$.
19. $y = \tan 2t$.
20. $y = \cot 4u$.
21. $y = x^2 \sin 3x$.
22. $y = \dfrac{\sin x}{1 - \cos x}$.
23. $y = \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x$.
24. $y = \sec^2 x - \tan^2 x$.

Exercises 25–30. Find the indicated derivative.

25. $\dfrac{d^4}{dx^4}(\sin x)$.
26. $\dfrac{d^4}{dx^4}(\cos x)$.
27. $\dfrac{d}{dt}\left[t^2 \dfrac{d^2}{dt^2}(t \cos 3t)\right]$.
28. $\dfrac{d}{dt}\left[t \dfrac{d}{dt}(\cos t^2)\right]$.
29. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[f(\sin 3x)]$.
30. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[\sin(f(3x))]$.

Exercises 31–36. Find an equation for the line tangent to the curve at the point with x coordinate a.

31. $y = \sin x$; $a = 0$.
32. $y = \tan x$; $a = \pi/6$.
33. $y = \cot x$; $a = \pi/6$.
34. $y = \cos x$; $a = 0$.
35. $y = \sec x$; $a = \pi/4$.
36. $y = \csc x$; $a = \pi/3$.

Exercises 37–46. Determine the numbers x between 0 and 2π where the line tangent to the curve is horizontal.

37. $y = \cos x$.
38. $y = \sin x$.
39. $y = \sin x + \sqrt{3}\cos x$.
40. $y = \cos x - \sqrt{3}\sin x$.
41. $y = \sin^2 x$.
42. $y = \cos^2 x$.
43. $y = \tan x - 2x$.
44. $y = 3\cot x + 4x$.
45. $y = 2\sec x + \tan x$.
46. $y = \cot x - 2\csc x$.

Exercises 47–50. Find all x in $(0, 2\pi)$ at which (a) $f'(x) = 0$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$; (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

47. $f(x) = x + 2\cos x$.
48. $f(x) = x - \sqrt{2}\sin x$.
49. $f(x) = \sin x + \cos x$.
50. $f(x) = \sin x - \cos x$.

Exercises 51–54. Find dy/dt (a) by the chain rule and (b) by writing y as a function of t and then differentiating.

51. $y = u^2 - 1$, $u = \sec x$, $x = \pi t$.
52. $y = [\frac{1}{2}(1 + u)]^3$, $u = \cos x$, $x = 2t$.
53. $y = [\frac{1}{2}(1 - u)]^4$, $u = \cos x$, $x = 2t$.
54. $y = 1 - u^2$, $u = \csc x$, $x = 3t$.

55. It can be shown by induction that the nth derivative of the sine function is given by the formula

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}(\sin x) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{(n-1)/2}\cos x, & n \text{ odd} \\ (-1)^{n/2}\sin x, & n \text{ even.} \end{cases}$$

Persuade yourself that this formula is correct and obtain a similar formula for the nth derivative of the cosine function.

56. Verify the following differentiation formulas:

(a) $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x.$

(b) $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x \tan x.$

(c) $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x \cot x.$

57. Use the identities

$$\cos x = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \sin x = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$$

to give an alternative proof of (3.6.2).

58. The double-angle formula for the sine function takes the form: $\sin 2x = 2\sin x\cos x$. Differentiate this formula to obtain a double-angle formula for the cosine function.

59. Set $f(x) = \sin x$. Show that finding $f'(0)$ from the definition of derivative amounts to finding

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin x}{x}. \qquad \text{(see Section 2.5)}$$

60. Set $f(x) = \cos x$. Show that finding $f'(0)$ from the definition of derivative amounts to finding

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\cos x - 1}{x}.$$

Exercises 61–66. Find a function f with the given derivative. Check your answer by differentiation.

61. $f'(x) = 2\cos x - 3\sin x.$

62. $f'(x) = \sec^2 x - \csc^2 x.$

63. $f'(x) = 2\cos 2x + \sec x\tan x.$

64. $f'(x) = \sin 3x - \csc 2x\cot 2x.$

65. $f'(x) = 2x\cos(x^2) - 2\sin 2x.$

66. $f'(x) = x^2\sec^2(x^3) + 2\sec 2x\tan 2x.$

67. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} x\sin(1/x), & x \neq 0 \\ 0, & x = 0. \end{cases}$ and $g(x) = xf(x)$.

In Exercise 62, Section 3.1, you were asked to show that f is continuous at 0 but not differentiable there, and that g is differentiable at 0. Both f and g are differentiable at each $x \neq 0$.

(a) Find $f'(x)$ and $g'(x)$ for $x \neq 0$.
(b) Show that g' is not continuous at 0.

68. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x, & x \geq 0 \\ ax + b, & x < 0. \end{cases}$

(a) For what values of a and b is f differentiable at 0?
(b) Using the values of a and b you found in part (a), sketch the graph of f.

69. Set $g(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x, & 0 \leq x \leq 2\pi/3 \\ ax + b, & 2\pi/3 < x \leq 2\pi. \end{cases}$

(a) For what values of a and b is g differentiable at $2\pi/3$?
(b) Using the values of a and b you found in part (a), sketch the graph of g.

70. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + a\cos x, & x \leq \pi/3 \\ b + \sin(x/2), & x > \pi/3. \end{cases}$

(a) For what values of a and b is f differentiable at $\pi/3$?
(b) Using the values of a and b you found in part (a), sketch the graph of f.

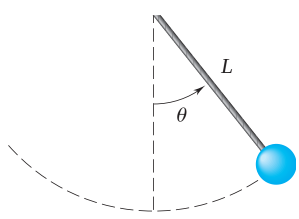
71. Let $y = A\sin\omega t + B\cos\omega t$ where A, B, ω are constants. Show that y satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \omega^2 y = 0.$$

72. A simple pendulum consists of a mass m swinging at the end of a rod or wire of negligible mass. The figure shows a simple pendulum of length L. The angular displacement θ at time t is given by a trigonometric expression:

$$\theta(t) = A\sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

where A, ω, ϕ are constants.



(a) Show that the function θ satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + \omega^2\theta = 0.$$

(Except for notation, this is the equation of Exercise 71.)

(b) Show that θ can be written in the form

$$\theta(t) = A\sin\omega t + B\cos\omega t$$

where A, B, ω are constants.

73. An isosceles triangle has two sides of length c. The angle between them is x radians. Express the area A of the triangle as a function of x and find the rate of change of A with respect to x.

74. A triangle has sides of length a and b, and the angle between them is x radians. Given that a and b are kept constant, find the rate of change of the third side c with respect to x. HINT: Use the law of cosines.

75. Let $f(x) = \cos kx$, k a positive integer. Use a CAS to find

(a) $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}[f(x)]$,
(b) all positive integers m for which $y = f(x)$ is a solution of the equation $y'' + my = 0$.

76. Use a CAS to show that $y = A\cos\sqrt{2}x + B\sin\sqrt{2}x$ is a solution of the equation $y'' + 2y = 0$. Find A and B given that $y(0) = 2$ and $y'(0) = -3$. Verify your results analytically.

77. Let $f(x) = \sin x - \cos 2x$ for $0 \le x \le 2\pi$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to estimate the points on the graph where the tangent is horizontal.

(b) Use a CAS to estimate the numbers x at which $f'(x) = 0$.

(c) Reconcile your results in (a) and (b).

78. Exercise 77 with $f(x) = \sin x - \sin^2 x$ for $0 \le x \le 2\pi$.

Exercises 79–80. Find an equation for the line l tangent to the graph of f at the point with x-coordinate c. Use a graphing utility to display l and the graph of f in one figure. Note that l is a good approximation to the graph of f for x close to c. Determine the interval on which the vertical separation between l and the graph of f is of absolute value less than 0.01.

79. $f(x) = \sin x;\ c = 0$. **80.** $f(x) = \tan x;\ c = \pi/4$.

3.7 IMPLICIT DIFFERENTIATION; RATIONAL POWERS

Up to this point we have been differentiating functions defined *explicitly* in terms of an independent variable. We can also differentiate functions not explicitly given in terms of an independent variable.

Suppose we know that y is a differentiable function of x and satisfies a particular equation in x and y. If we find it difficult to obtain the derivative of y, either because the calculations are burdensome or because we are unable to express y *explicitly* in terms of x, we may still be able to obtain dy/dx by a process called *implicit differentiation*. This process is based on differentiating both sides of the equation satisfied by x and y.

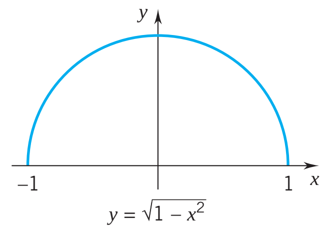


Figure 3.7.1

Example 1 We know that the function $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ (Figure 3.7.1) satisfies the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 3.7.2)}$$

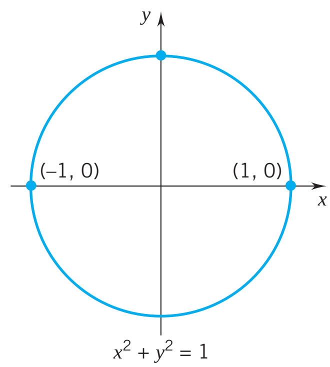


Figure 3.7.2

We can obtain dy/dx by carrying out the differentiation in the usual manner, or we can do it more simply by working with the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

Differentiating both sides of the equation with respect to x (remembering that y is a differentiable function of x), we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^2) + \frac{d}{dx}(y^2) = \frac{d}{dx}(1)$$

$$2x + \underbrace{2y\frac{dy}{dx}}_{\text{(by the chain rule)}} = 0$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y}.$$

We have obtained dy/dx in terms of x and y. Usually this is as far as we can go. Here we can go further since we have y explicitly in terms of x. The relation $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}.$$

Verify this result by differentiating $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$. in the usual manner. ❑

Example 2 Assume that y is a differentiable function of x which satisfies the given equation. Use implicit differentiation to express dy/dx in terms of x and y.

(a) $2x^2y - y^3 + 1 = x + 2y$. **(b)** $\cos(x - y) = (2x + 1)^3 y$.

SOLUTION

(a) Differentiating both sides of the equation with respect to x, we have

$$\underbrace{2x^2\frac{dy}{dx} + 4xy}_{\text{(by the product rule)}} - \underbrace{3y^2\frac{dy}{dx}}_{\text{(by the chain rule)}} = 1 + 2\frac{dy}{dx}$$

$$(2x^2 - 3y^2 - 2)\frac{dy}{dx} = 1 - 4xy.$$

Therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1 - 4xy}{2x^2 - 3y^2 - 2}.$$

(b) We differentiate both sides of the equation with respect to x:

$$\underbrace{-\sin(x-y)\left[1 - \frac{dy}{dx}\right]}_{\text{(by the chain rule)}} = (2x+1)^3\frac{dy}{dx} + 3(2x+1)^2(2)y$$

$$[\sin(x-y) - (2x+1)^3]\frac{dy}{dx} = 6(2x+1)^2 y + \sin(x-y).$$

Thus

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{6(2x+1)^2 y + \sin(x-y)}{\sin(x-y) - (2x+1)^3}. \quad ❑$$

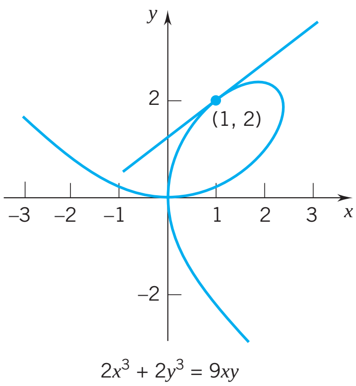


Figure 3.7.3

Example 3 Figure 3.7.3 shows the curve $2x^3 + 2y^3 = 9xy$ and the tangent line at the point (1, 2). What is the slope of the tangent line at that point?

SOLUTION We want dy/dx where $x = 1$ and $y = 2$. We proceed by implicit differentiation:

$$6x^2 + 6y^2\frac{dy}{dx} = 9x\frac{dy}{dx} + 9y$$

$$2x^2 + 2y^2\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x\frac{dy}{dx} + 3y.$$

Setting $x = 1$ and $y = 2$, we have

$$2 + 8\frac{dy}{dx} = 3\frac{dy}{dx} + 6, \qquad 5\frac{dy}{dx} = 4, \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4}{5}.$$

The slope of the tangent line at the point (1, 2) is $4/5$. ❑

We can also find higher derivatives by implicit differentiation.

Example 4 The function $y = (4 + x^2)^{1/3}$ satisfies the equation

$$y^3 - x^2 = 4.$$

Use implicit differentiation to express d^2y/dx^2 in terms of x and y.

SOLUTION Differentiation with respect to x gives

$$(*) \qquad 3y^2\frac{dy}{dx} - 2x = 0.$$

Differentiating again, we have

$$\underbrace{3y^2\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)\frac{d}{dx}(3y^2)}_{\text{(by the product rule)}} - 2 = 0$$

$$3y^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 6y\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 - 2 = 0.$$

Since $(*)$ gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x}{3y^2},$$

we have

$$3y^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + 6y\left(\frac{2x}{3y^2}\right)^2 - 2 = 0.$$

As you can check, this gives

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{6y^3 - 8x^2}{9y^5}. \quad ❑$$

Remark If we differentiate $x^2 + y^2 = -1$ implicitly, we find that

$$2x + 2y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y}.$$

However, the result is meaningless. It is meaningless because there is no real-valued function y of x that satisfies the equation $x^2 + y^2 = -1$. Implicit differentiation can be applied meaningfully to an equation in x and y only if there is a differentiable function y of x that satisfies the equation. ❑

Rational Powers

You have seen that the formula

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$$

holds for all real x if n is a positive integer and for all $x \neq 0$ if n is a negative integer. For $x \neq 0$, we can stretch the formula to $n = 0$ (and it is a bit of a stretch) by writing

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^0) = \frac{d}{dx}(1) = 0 = 0x^{-1}.$$

The formula can then be extended to all rational exponents p/q:

(3.7.1)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(x^{p/q}) = \frac{p}{q}x^{(p/q)-1}.}$$

The formula applies to all $x \neq 0$ where $x^{p/q}$ is defined.

DERIVATION OF (3.7.1) We operate under the assumption that the function $y = x^{1/q}$ is differentiable at all x where $x^{1/q}$ is defined. (This assumption is readily verified from considerations explained in Section 7.1.)

From $y = x^{1/q}$ we get

$$y^q = x.$$

Implicit differentiation with respect to x gives

$$qy^{q-1}\frac{dy}{dx} = 1$$

and therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{q}y^{1-q} = \frac{1}{q}x^{(1-q)/q} = \frac{1}{q}x^{(1/q)-1}.$$

So far we have shown that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{1/q}) = \frac{1}{q}x^{(1/q)-1}.$$

The function $y = x^{p/q}$ is a composite function:

$$y = x^{p/q} = (x^{1/q})^p.$$

Applying the chain rule, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = p(x^{1/q})^{p-1}\frac{d}{dx}(x^{1/q}) = px^{(p-1)/q}\frac{1}{q}x^{(1/q)-1} = \frac{p}{q}x^{(p/q)-1}$$

as asserted. ❑

Here are some simple examples:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{2/3}) = \tfrac{2}{3}x^{-1/3}, \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^{5/2}) = \tfrac{5}{2}x^{3/2}, \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^{-7/9}) = -\tfrac{7}{9}x^{-16/9}.$$

If u is a differentiable function of x, then, by the chain rule

(3.7.2) $$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(u^{p/q}) = \frac{p}{q}u^{(p/q)-1}\frac{du}{dx}.}$$

The verification of this is left to you. The result holds on every open x-interval where $u^{(p/q)-1}$ is defined.

Example 5

$$\textbf{(a)}\ \frac{d}{dx}[(1+x^2)^{1/5}] = \tfrac{1}{5}(1+x^2)^{-4/5}(2x) = \tfrac{2}{5}x(1+x^2)^{-4/5}.$$

$$\textbf{(b)}\ \frac{d}{dx}[(1-x^2)^{2/3}] = \tfrac{2}{3}(1-x^2)^{-1/3}(-2x) = -\tfrac{4}{3}x(1-x^2)^{-1/3}.$$

$$\textbf{(c)}\ \frac{d}{dx}[(1-x^2)^{1/4}] = \tfrac{1}{4}(1-x^2)^{-3/4}(-2x) = -\tfrac{1}{2}x(1-x^2)^{-3/4}.$$

The first statement holds for all real x, the second for all $x \neq \pm 1$, and the third only for $x \in (-1, 1)$. ❑

Example 6

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left[\left(\frac{x}{1+x^2}\right)^{1/2}\right] &= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x}{1+x^2}\right)^{-1/2}\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x}{1+x^2}\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x}{1+x^2}\right)^{-1/2}\frac{(1+x^2)(1)-x(2x)}{(1+x^2)^2}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1+x^2}{x}\right)^{1/2}\frac{1-x^2}{(1+x^2)^2}\\
&= \frac{1-x^2}{2x^{1/2}(1+x^2)^{3/2}}.
\end{aligned}$$

The result holds for all $x > 0$. ❑

EXERCISES 3.7

Preliminary note. In many of the exercises below you are asked to use implicit differentiation. We assure you that in each case there is a function $y = y(x)$ that satisfies the indicated equation and has the requisite derivative(s).

Exercises 1–10. Use implicit differentiation to express dy/dx in terms of x and y.

1. $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

2. $x^3 + y^3 - 3xy = 0$.

3. $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$.

4. $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} = 4$.

5. $x^4 + 4x^3y + y^4 = 1$.

6. $x^2 - x^2y + xy^2 + y^2 = 1$.

7. $(x - y)^2 - y = 0$.

8. $(y + 3x)^2 - 4x = 0$.

9. $\sin(x + y) = xy$.

10. $\tan xy = xy$.

Exercises 11–16. Express d^2y/dx^2 in terms of x and y.

11. $y^2 + 2xy = 16.$

12. $x^2 - 2xy + 4y^2 = 3.$

13. $y^2 + xy - x^2 = 9.$

14. $x^2 - 3xy = 18.$

15. $4\tan y = x^3.$

16. $\sin^2 x + \cos^2 y = 1.$

Exercises 17–20. Evaluate dy/dx and d^2y/dx^2 at the point indicated.

17. $x^2 - 4y^2 = 9; \quad (5, 2).$

18. $x^2 + 4xy + y^3 + 5 = 0; \quad (2, -1).$

19. $\cos(x + 2y) = 0; \quad (\pi/6, \pi/6).$

20. $x = \sin^2 y; \quad (\frac{1}{2}, \pi/4).$

Exercises 21–26. Find equations for the tangent and normal lines at the point indicated.

21. $2x + 3y = 5; \quad (-2, 3).$

22. $9x^2 + 4y^2 = 72; \quad (2, 3).$

23. $x^2 + xy + 2y^2 = 28; \quad (-2, -3).$

24. $x^3 - axy + 3ay^2 = 3a^3; \quad (a, a).$

25. $x = \cos y; \quad \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\pi}{3}\right).$

26. $\tan xy = x; \quad \left(1, \frac{\pi}{4}\right).$

Exercises 27–32. Find dy/dx.

27. $y = (x^3 + 1)^{1/2}.$

28. $y = (x + 1)^{1/3}.$

29. $y = \sqrt[4]{2x^2 + 1}.$

30. $y = (x + 1)^{1/3}(x + 2)^{2/3}.$

31. $y = \sqrt{2 - x^2}\sqrt{3 - x^2}.$

32. $y = \sqrt{(x^4 - x + 1)^3}.$

Exercises 33–36. Carry out the differentiation.

33. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\sqrt{x} + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right).$

34. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\sqrt{\dfrac{3x + 1}{2x + 5}}\right).$

35. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}\right).$

36. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}{x}\right).$

37. (*Important*) Show the general form of the graph.

(a) $f(x) = x^{1/n}, \quad n$ a positive even integer.

(b) $f(x) = x^{1/n}, \quad n$ a positive odd integer.

(c) $f(x) = x^{2/n}, \quad n$ an odd integer greater than 1.

Exercises 38–42. Find the second derivative.

38. $y = \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}.$

39. $y = \sqrt[3]{a + bx}.$

40. $y = x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}.$

41. $y = \sqrt{x}\tan\sqrt{x}.$

42. $y = \sqrt{x}\sin\sqrt{x}.$

43. Show that all normals to the circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ pass through the center of the circle.

44. Determine the x-intercept of the tangent to the parabola $y^2 = x$ at the point where $x = a$.

The angle between two curves is the angle between their tangent lines at the point of intersection. If the slopes are m_1 and m_2, then the angle of intersection α can be obtained from the formula

$$\tan\alpha = \left|\frac{m_2 - m_1}{1 + m_1 m_2}\right|.$$

45. At what angles do the parabolas $y^2 = 2px + p^2$ and $y^2 = p^2 - 2px$ intersect?

46. At what angles does the line $y = 2x$ intersect the curve $x^2 - xy + 2y^2 = 28$?

47. The curves $y = x^2$ and $x = y^3$ intersect at the points (1, 1) and (0, 0). Find the angle between the curves at each of these points.

48. Find the angles at which the circles $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 10$ and $x^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 5$ intersect.

Two curves are said to be *orthogonal* iff, at each point of intersection, the angle between them is a right angle. Show that the curves given in Exercises 49 and 50 are orthogonal.

49. The hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = 5$ and the ellipse $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 72.$

50. The ellipse $3x^2 + 2y^2 = 5$ and $y^3 = x^2$.
HINT: The curves intersect at (1, 1) and (−1, 1)

Two families of curves are said to be *orthogonal trajectories* (of each other) if each member of one family is orthogonal to each member of the other family. Show that the families of curves given in Exercises 51 and 52 are orthogonal trajectories.

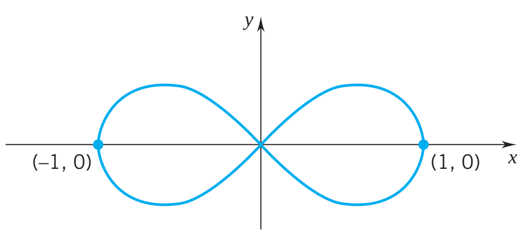
51. The family of circles $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ and the family of lines $y = mx$.

52. The family of parabolas $x = ay^2$ and the family of ellipses $x^2 + \frac{1}{2}y^2 = b$.

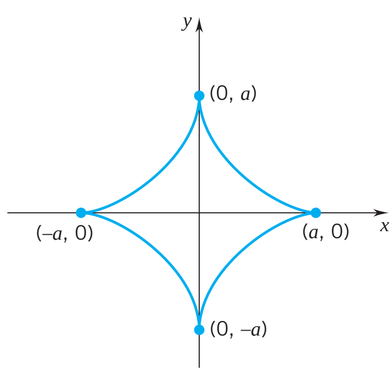
53. Find equations for the lines tangent to the ellipse $4x^2 + y^2 = 72$ that are perpendicular to the line $x + 2y + 3 = 0$.

54. Find equations for the lines normal to the hyperbola $4x^2 - y^2 = 36$ that are parallel to the line $2x + 5y - 4 = 0$.

55. The curve $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = x^2 - y^2$ is called a *lemniscate*. The curve is shown in the figure. Find the four points of the curve at which the tangent line is horizontal.



56. The curve $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$ is called an *astroid*. The curve is shown in the figure.



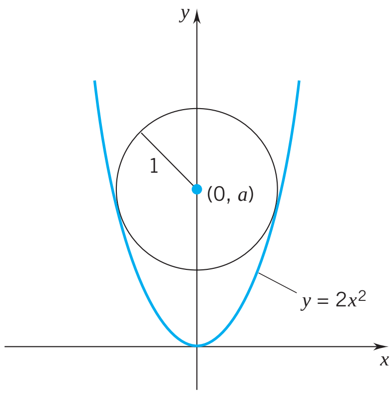
(a) Find the slope of the graph at an arbitrary point (x_1, y_1), which is not a vertex.
(b) At what points of the curve is the slope of the tangent line 0, 1, −1?

57. Show that the sum of the x- and y-intercepts of any line tangent to the graph of

$$x^{1/2} + y^{1/2} = c^{1/2}$$

is constant and equal to c.

58. A circle of radius 1 with center on the y-axis is inscribed in the parabola $y = 2x^2$. See the figure. Find the points of contact.



59. Set $f(x) = 3\sqrt[3]{x}$. Use a CAS to
(a) Find $d(h) = \dfrac{f(h) - f(0)}{h}$.
(b) Find $\lim_{h \to 0^-} d(h)$ and $\lim_{h \to 0^+} d(h)$.
(c) Is there a tangent line at (0, 0)? Explain.
(d) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f on $[-2, 2]$.

60. Exercise 59 with $f(x) = 3\sqrt[3]{x^2}$.

Exercises 61 and 62. Use a graphing utility to determine where

$$\text{(a) } f'(x) = 0; \quad \text{(b) } f'(x) > 0; \quad \text{(c) } f'(x) < 0,$$

61. $f(x) = x\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 1}$. **62.** $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{\sqrt{x}}$.

63. A graphing utility in parametric mode can be used to graph some equations in x and y. Draw the graph of the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ first by setting $x = t$, $y = \sqrt{4 - t^2}$ and then by setting $x = t$, $y = -\sqrt{4 - t^2}$.

Exercises 64–67. Use a CAS to find the slope of the line tangent to the curve at the given point. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve and the tangent line together in one figure.

64. $3x^2 + 4y^2 = 16$; $P(2, 1)$.

65. $4x^2 - y^2 = 20$; $P(3, 4)$.

66. $2\sin y - \cos x = 0$; $P(0, \pi/6)$.

67. $\sqrt[3]{x^2} + \sqrt[3]{y^2} = 4$; $P(1, 3\sqrt{3})$.

68. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the equation $x^3 + y^3 = 6xy$.
(b) Use a CAS to find equations for the lines tangent to the curve at the points where $x = 3$.
(c) Draw the graph of the equation and the tangent lines in one figure.

69. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the *figure-eight* curve

$$x^4 = x^2 - y^2.$$

(b) Find the x-coordinates of the points of the graph where the tangent line is horizontal.

70. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve $(2 - x)y^2 = x^3$. Such a curve is called a *cissoid*.

■ CHAPTER 3. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–4. Differentiate by taking the limit of the appropriate difference quotient.

1. $f(x) = x^3 - 4x + 3$. **2.** $f(x) = \sqrt{1 + 2x}$.

3. $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{x - 2}$. **4.** $F(x) = x \sin x$.

Exercises 5–22. Find the derivative.

5. $y = x^{2/3} - 7^{2/3}$. **6.** $y = 2x^{3/4} - 4x^{-1/4}$.

7. $y = \dfrac{1 + 2x + x^2}{x^3 - 1}$. **8.** $f(t) = (2 - 3t^2)^3$.

9. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}$. **10.** $y = \left(a - \dfrac{b}{x}\right)^2$.

11. $y = \left(a + \dfrac{b}{x^2}\right)^3$. **12.** $y = x\sqrt{2 + 3x}$.

13. $y = \tan\sqrt{2x + 1}$. **14.** $g(x) = x^2\cos(2x - 1)$.

15. $F(x) = (x + 2)^2\sqrt{x^2 + 2}$. **16.** $y = \dfrac{a^2 + x^2}{a^2 - x^2}$.

17. $h(t) = t\sec t^2 + 2t^3$. **18.** $y = \dfrac{\sin 2x}{1 + \cos x}$.

19. $s = \sqrt[3]{\dfrac{2 - 3t}{2 + 3t}}$. **20.** $r = \theta^2\sqrt{3 - 4\theta}$.

21. $f(\theta) = \cot(3\theta + \pi)$. **22.** $y = \dfrac{x \sin 2x}{1 + x^2}$.

Exercises 23–26. Find $f'(c)$.

23. $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x} + \sqrt{x}$; $c = 64$.

24. $f(x) = x\sqrt{8 - x^2}$; $c = 2$.

25. $f(x) = x^2 \sin^2 \pi x$; $c = \dfrac{1}{6}$.

26. $f(x) = \cot 3x$; $c = \dfrac{1}{9}\pi$.

Exercises 27–30. Find equations for the lines tangent and normal to the graph of f at the point indicated.

27. $f(x) = 2x^3 - x^2 + 3$; $(1, 4)$.

28. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x - 3}{3x + 4}$; $(-1, -5)$.

29. $f(x) = (x+1)\sin 2x$; $(0, 0)$.

30. $f(x) = x\sqrt{1+x^2}$; $(1, \sqrt{2})$.

Exercises 31–34. Find the second derivative.

31. $f(x) = \cos(2-x)$.

32. $f(x) = (x^2+4)^{3/2}$.

33. $y = x \sin x$.

34. $g(u) = \tan^2 u$.

Exercises 35–36. Find a formula for the nth derivative.

35. $y = (a - bx)^n$.

36. $y = \dfrac{a}{bx+c}$.

Exercises 37–40. Use implicit differentiation to express dy/dx in terms of x and y.

37. $x^3y + xy^3 = 2$.

38. $\tan(x+2y) = x^2y$.

39. $2x^3 + 3x\cos y = 2xy$.

40. $x^2 + 3x\sqrt{y} = 1 + x/y$.

Exercises 41–42. Find equations for the lines tangent and normal to the curve at the point indicated.

41. $x^2 + 2xy - 3y^2 = 9$; $(3, 2)$.

42. $y\sin 2x - x\sin y = \frac{1}{4}\pi$; $(\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$.

Exercises 43–44. Find all x at which (a) $f'(x) = 0$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$; (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

43. $f(x) = x^3 - 9x^2 + 24x + 3$.

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{1+2x^2}$.

Exercises 45–46. Find all x in $(0, 2\pi)$ at which (a) $f'(x) = 0$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$; (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

45. $f(x) = x + \sin 2x$

46. $f(x) = \sqrt{3}x - 2\cos x$.

47. Find the points on the curve $y = \frac{2}{3}x^{3/2}$ where the inclination of the tangent line is (a) $\pi/4$, (b) $60°$, (c) $\pi/6$.

48. Find equations for all tangents to the curve $y = x^3$ that pass through the point $(0, 2)$.

49. Find equations for all tangents to the curve $y = x^3 - x$ that pass through the point $(-2, 2)$.

50. Find A, B, C given that the curve $y = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ passes through the point $(1, 3)$ and is tangent to the line $x - y + 1 = 0$ at the point $(2, 3)$.

51. Find A, B, C, D given that the curve $y = Ax^3 + Bx^2 + Cx + D$ is tangent to the line $y = 5x - 4$ at the point $(1, 1)$ and is tangent to the line $y = 9x$ at the point $(-1, -9)$.

52. Show that $d/dx(x^{-n}) = -n/x^{n+1}$ for all positive integers n by showing that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h}\left[\frac{1}{(x+h)^n} - \frac{1}{x^n}\right] = -\frac{n}{x^{n+1}}.$$

Exercises 53–57. Evaluate the following limits. HINT: Apply either Definition 3.1.1 or (3.1.5).

53. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{(1+h)^2 - 2(1+h) + 1}{h}$.

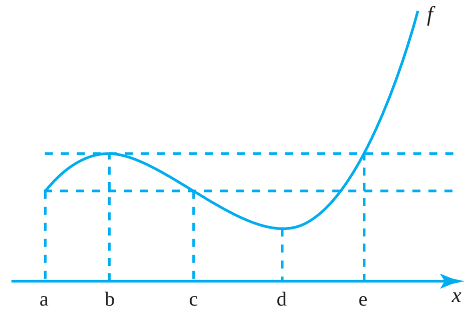
54. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sqrt{9+h} - 3}{h}$.

55. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin(\frac{1}{6}\pi + h) - \frac{1}{2}}{h}$.

56. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2} \frac{x^5 - 32}{x-2}$.

57. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to \pi} \frac{\sin x}{x - \pi}$.

58. The figure is intended to depict a function f which is continuous on $[x_0, \infty)$ and differentiable on (x_0, ∞).



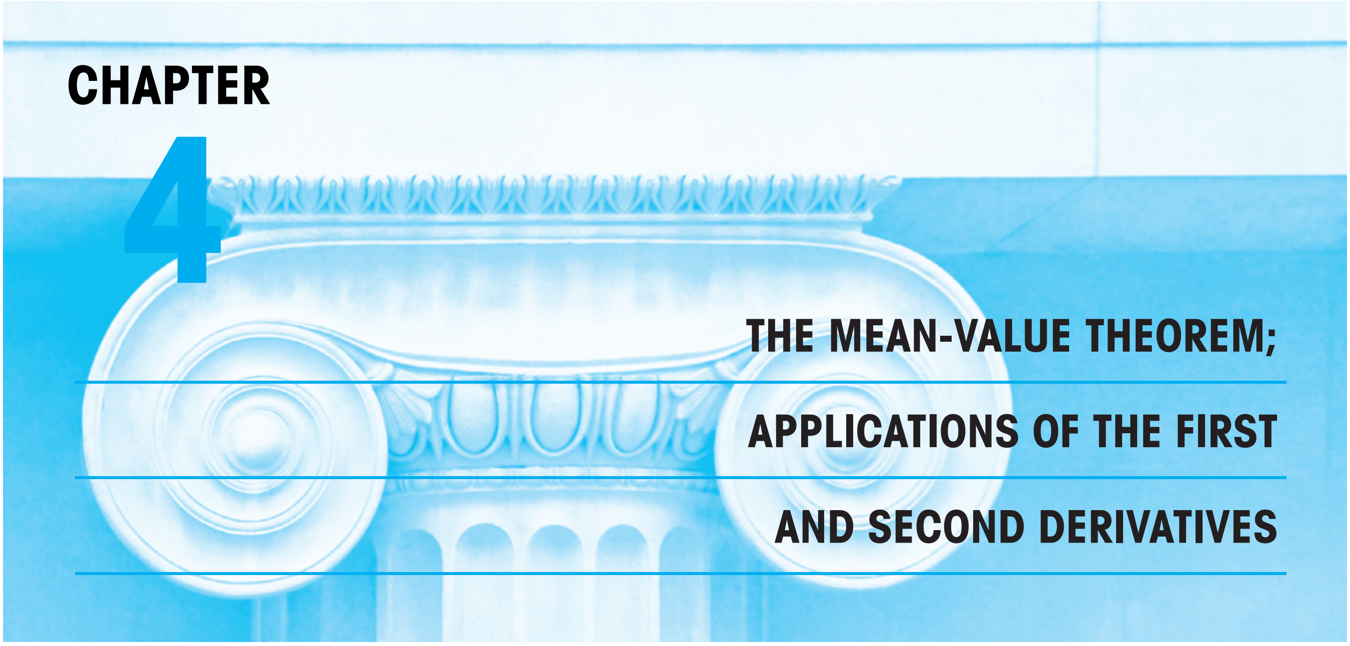
For each $x \in (x_0, \infty)$ define

$$M(x) = \text{maximum value of } f \text{ on } [x_0, x].$$

$$m(x) = \text{minimum value of } f \text{ on } [x_0, x].$$

a. Sketch the graph of M and specify the number(s) at which M fails to be differentiable.

b. Sketch the graph of m and specify the number(s) at which m fails to be differentiable.



CHAPTER 4

THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM; APPLICATIONS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DERIVATIVES

4.1 THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM

We come now to the *mean-value theorem*. From this theorem flow most of the results that give power to the process of differentiation.[†]

THEOREM 4.1.1 THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM

If f is differentiable on the open interval (a, b) and continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$, then there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

Note that for this number

$$f(b) - f(a) = f'(c)(b - a).$$

The quotient

$$\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

is the slope of the line l that passes through the points $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$. To say that there is at least one number c for which

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

is to say that the graph of f has at least one point $(c, f(c))$ at which the tangent line is parallel to the line l. See Figure 4.1.1.

[†] The theorem was first stated and proved by the French mathematician Joseph-Louis Lagrange (1736–1813).

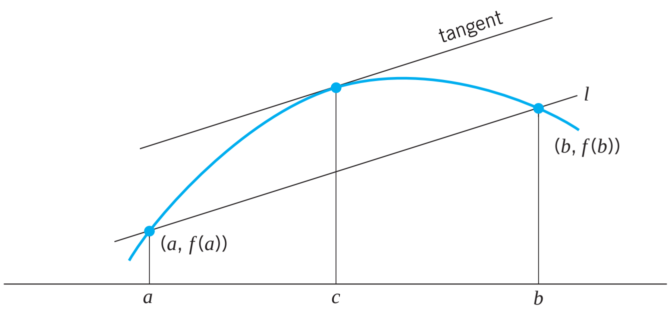


Figure 4.1.1

We will prove the mean-value theorem in steps. First we will show that if a function f has a nonzero derivative at some point x_0, then, for x close to x_0, $f(x)$ is greater than $f(x_0)$ on one side of x_0 and less than $f(x_0)$ on the other side of x_0.

THEOREM 4.1.2

Suppose that f is differentiable at x_0. If $f'(x_0) > 0$, then

$$f(x_0 - h) < f(x_0) < f(x_0 + h)$$

for all positive h sufficiently small. If $f'(x_0) < 0$, then

$$f(x_0 - h) > f(x_0) > f(x_0 + h)$$

for all positive h sufficiently small.

PROOF We take the case $f'(x_0) > 0$ and leave the other case to you. By the definition of the derivative,

$$\lim_{k \to 0} \frac{f(x_0 + k) - f(x_0)}{k} = f'(x_0).$$

With $f'(x_0) > 0$ we can use $f'(x_0)$ itself as ϵ and conclude that there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |k| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{f(x_0 + k) - f(x_0)}{k} - f'(x_0) \right| < f'(x_0).$$

For such k we have

$$-f'(x_0) < \frac{f(x_0 + k) - f(x_0)}{k} - f'(x_0) < f'(x_0)$$

and thus

$$0 < \frac{f(x_o + k) - f(x_0)}{k} < 2f'(x_0). \qquad \text{(Why?)}$$

In particular,

$$(*) \qquad \frac{f(x_0 + k) - f(x_0)}{k} > 0.$$

We have shown that $(*)$ holds for all numbers k which satisfy the condition $0 < |k| < \delta$. If $0 < h < \delta$, then $0 < |h| < \delta$ and $0 < |-h| < \delta$. Consequently,

$$\frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)}{h} > 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{f(x_0 - h) - f(x_0)}{-h} > 0.$$

The first inequality shows that

$$f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0) > 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad f(x_0) < f(x_0 + h).$$

The second inequality shows that

$$f(x_0 - h) - f(x_0) < 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad f(x_0 - h) < f(x_0). \quad \square$$

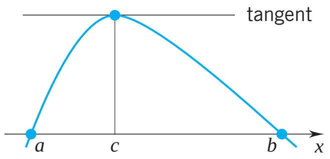


Figure 4.1.2

Next we prove a special case of the mean-value theorem, known as Rolle's theorem [after the French mathematician Michel Rolle (1652–1719), who first announced the result in 1691]. In Rolle's theorem we make the additional assumption that $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are both 0. (See Figure 4.1.2.) In this case the line through $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$ is horizontal. (It is the x-axis.) The conclusion is that there is a point $(c, f(c))$ at which the tangent line is horizontal.

THEOREM 4.1.3 ROLLE'S THEOREM

Suppose that f is differentiable on the open interval (a, b) and continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$. If $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are both 0, then there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which

$$f'(c) = 0.$$

PROOF If f is constantly 0 on $[a, b]$, then $f'(c) = 0$ for all c in (a, b). If f is not constantly 0 on $[a, b]$, then f takes on either some positive values or some negative values. We assume the former and leave the other case to you.

Since f is continuous on $[a, b]$, f must take on a maximum value at some point c of $[a, b]$ (Theorem 2.6). This maximum value, $f(c)$, must be positive. Since $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are both 0, c cannot be a and it cannot be b. This means that c must lie in the open interval (a, b) and therefore $f'(c)$ exists. Now $f'(c)$ cannot be greater than 0 and it cannot be less than 0 because in either case f would have to take on values greater than $f(c)$. (This follows from Theorem 4.1.2.) We can conclude therefore that $f'(c) = 0$. $\square$

Remark Rolle's theorem is sometimes formulated as follows:

Suppose that g is differentiable on the open interval (a, b) and continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$. If $g(a) = g(b)$, then there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which

$$g'(c) = 0.$$

That these two formulations are equivalent is readily seen by setting $f(x) = g(x) - g(a)$ (Exercise 44). $\square$

Rolle's theorem is not just a stepping stone toward the mean-value theorem. It is in itself a useful tool.

Example 1 We use Rolle's theorem to show that $p(x) = 2x^3 + 5x - 1$ has exactly one real zero.

SOLUTION Since p is a cubic, we know that p has at least one real zero (Exercise 29, Section 2.6). Suppose that p has more than one real zero. In particular, suppose that $p(a) = p(b) = 0$ where a and b are real numbers and $a \neq b$. Without loss of generality, we can assume that $a < b$. Since every polynomial is everywhere differentiable, p is differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$. Thus, by Rolle's theorem, there is a number c in (a, b) for which $p'(c) = 0$. But

$$p'(x) = 6x^2 + 5 \geq 5 \qquad \text{for all } x,$$

and $p'(c)$ cannot be 0. The assumption that p has more than one real zero has led to a contradiction. We can conclude therefore that p has only one real zero. ❑

We are now ready to give a proof of the mean-value theorem.

PROOF OF THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM We create a function g that satisfies the conditions of Rolle's theorem and is so related to f that the conclusion $g'(c) = 0$ leads to the conclusion

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

The function

$$g(x) = f(x) - \left[\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a) + f(a)\right]$$

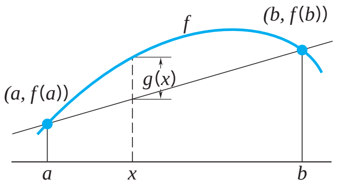


Figure 4.1.3

is exactly such a function. A geometric view of $g(x)$ is given in Figure 4.1.3. The line that passes through $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$ has equation

$$y = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a) + f(a).$$

[This is not hard to verify. The slope is right, and, at $x = a$, $y = f(a)$.] The difference

$$g(x) = f(x) - \left[\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a) + f(a)\right]$$

is simply the vertical separation between the graph of f and the line featured in the figure.

If f is differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$, then so is g. As you can check, $g(a)$ and $g(b)$ are both 0. Therefore, by Rolle's theorem, there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which $g'(c) = 0$. Since

$$g'(x) = f'(x) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a},$$

we have

$$g'(c) = f'(c) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

Since $g'(c) = 0$,

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 The function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}, \qquad -1 \leq x \leq 1$$

satisfies the conditions of the mean-value theorem: it is differentiable on $(-1, 1)$ and continuous on $[-1, 1]$. Thus, we know that there exists a number c between -1 and 1 at which

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(1) - f(-1)}{1 - (-1)} = -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}.$$
$$f(1) = 0,\ f(-1) = \sqrt{2}$$

What is c in this case? To answer this, we differentiate f. By the chain rule,

$$f'(x) = -\frac{1}{2\sqrt{1-x}}.$$

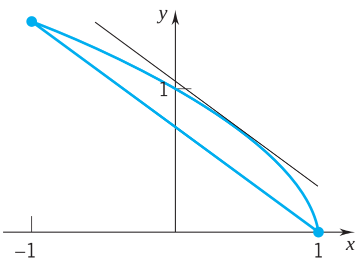


Figure 4.1.4

The condition $f'(c) = -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$ gives

$$-\frac{1}{2\sqrt{1-c}} = -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}.$$

Solve this equation for c and you'll find that $c = \frac{1}{2}$.

The tangent line at $(\frac{1}{2}, f(\frac{1}{2})) = (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2})$ is parallel to the secant line that passes through the endpoints of the graph. (Figure 4.1.4) ❑

Example 3 Suppose that f is differentiable on $(1, 4)$, continuous on $[1, 4]$, and $f(1) = 2$. Given that $2 \le f'(x) \le 3$ for all x in (1,4), what is the least value that f can take on at 4? What is the greatest value that f can take on at 4?

SOLUTION By the mean-value theorem, there is at least one number c between 1 and 4 at which

$$f(4) - f(1) = f'(c)(4-1) = 3f'(c).$$

Solving this equation for $f(4)$, we have

$$f(4) = f(1) + 3f'(c).$$

Since $f'(x) \ge 2$ for every x in $(1, 4)$, we know that $f'(c) \ge 2$. It follows that

$$f(4) \ge 2 + 3(2) = 8.$$

Similarly, since $f'(x) \le 3$ for every x in $(1, 4)$, we know that $f'(c) \le 3$, and therefore

$$f(4) \le 2 + 3(3) = 11.$$

We have shown that $f(4)$ is at least 8 and no more than 11. ❑

Functions which do not satisfy the hypotheses of the mean-value theorem (differentiability on (a, b), continuity on $[a, b]$) may fail to satisfy the conclusion of the theorem. This is demonstrated in the Exercises.

EXERCISES 4.1

Exercises 1–4. Show that f satisfies the conditions of Rolle's theorem on the indicated interval and find all numbers c on the interval for which $f'(c) = 0$.

1. $f(x) = x^3 - x$; $[0, 1]$.
2. $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^2 - 8$; $[-2, 2]$.
3. $f(x) = \sin 2x$; $[0, 2\pi]$.
4. $f(x) = x^{2/3} - 2x^{1/3}$; $[0, 8]$.

Exercises 5–10. Verify that f satisfies the conditions of the mean-value theorem on the indicated interval and find all numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of the theorem.

5. $f(x) = x^2$; $[1, 2]$.
6. $f(x) = 3\sqrt{x} - 4x$; $[1, 4]$.
7. $f(x) = x^3$; $[1, 3]$.
8. $f(x) = x^{2/3}$; $[1, 8]$.

9. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$; $[0, 1]$.

10. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x$; $[-1, 1]$.

11. Determine whether the function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}/(3 + x^2)$ satisfies the conditions of Rolle's theorem on the interval $[-1, 1]$. If so, find the numbers c for which $f'(c) = 0$.

12. The function $f(x) = x^{2/3} - 1$ has zeros at $x = -1$ and at $x = 1$.
(a) Show that f' has no zeros in $(-1, 1)$.
(b) Show that this does not contradict Rolle's theorem.

13. Does there exist a differentiable function f with $f(0) = 2$, $f(2) = 5$, and $f'(x) \leq 1$ for all x in $(0, 2)$? If not, why not?

14. Does there exist a differentiable function f with $f(x) = 1$ only at $x = 0, 2, 3$, and $f'(x) = 0$ only at $x = -1, 3/4, 3/2$? If not, why not?

15. Suppose that f is differentiable on $(2, 6)$ and continuous on $[2, 6]$. Given that $1 \leq f'(x) \leq 3$ for all x in $(2, 6)$, show that

$$4 \leq f(6) - f(2) \leq 12.$$

16. Find a point on the graph of $f(x) = x^2 + x + 3$, x between -1 and 2, where the tangent line is parallel to the line through $(-1, 3)$ and $(2, 9)$.

17. Sketch the graph of

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 2, & x \leq -1 \\ x^3 - x, & x > -1 \end{cases}$$

and find the derivative. Determine whether f satisfies the conditions of the mean-value theorem on the interval $[-3, 2]$ and, if so, find the numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of the theorem.

18. Sketch the graph of

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2 + x^3, & x \leq 1 \\ 3x, & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

and find the derivative. Determine whether f satisfies the conditions of the mean-value theorem on the interval $[-1, 2]$ and, if so, find the numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of the theorem.

19. Set $f(x) = Ax^2 + Bx + C$. Show that, for any interval $[a, b]$, the number c that satisfies the conclusion of the mean-value theorem is $(a + b)/2$, the midpoint of the interval.

20. Set $f(x) = x^{-1}$, $a = -1$, $b = 1$. Verify that there is no number c for which

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

Explain how this does not violate the mean-value theorem.

21. Exercise 20 with $f(x) = |x|$.

22. Graph the function $f(x) = |2x - 1| - 3$. Verify that $f(-1) = 0 = f(2)$ and yet $f'(x)$ is never 0. Explain how this does not violate Rolle's theorem.

23. Show that the equation $6x^4 - 7x + 1 = 0$ does not have more than two distinct real roots.

24. Show that the equation $6x^5 + 13x + 1 = 0$ has exactly one real root.

25. Show that the equation $x^3 + 9x^2 + 33x - 8 = 0$ has exactly one real root.

26. (a) Let f be differentiable on (a, b). Prove that if $f'(x) \neq 0$ for each $x \in (a, b)$, then f has at most one zero in (a, b).
(b) Let f be twice differentiable on (a, b). Prove that if $f''(x) \neq 0$ for each $x \in (a, b)$, then f has at most two zeros in (a, b).

27. Let $P(x) = a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$ be a nonconstant polynomial. Show that between any two consecutive roots of the equation $P'(x) = 0$ there is at most one root of the equation $P(x) = 0$.

28. Let f be twice differentiable. Show that, if the equation $f(x) = 0$ has n distinct real roots, then the equation $f'(x) = 0$ has at least $n - 1$ distinct real roots and the equation $f''(x) = 0$ has at least $n - 2$ distinct real roots.

29. A number c is called a *fixed point* of f if $f(c) = c$. Prove that if f is differentiable on an interval I and $f'(x) < 1$ for all $x \in I$, then f has at most one fixed point in I. HINT: Form $g(x) = f(x) - x$.

30. Show that the equation $x^3 + ax + b = 0$ has exactly one real root if $a \geq 0$ and at most one real root between $-\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}|a|$ and $\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}|a|$ if $a < 0$.

31. Set $f(x) = x^3 - 3x + b$.
(a) Show that $f(x) = 0$ for at most one number x in $[-1, 1]$.
(b) Determine the values of b which guarantee that $f(x) = 0$ for some number x in $[-1, 1]$.

32. Set $f(x) = x^3 - 3a^2x + b$, $a > 0$. Show that $f(x) = 0$ for at most one number x in $[-a, a]$.

33. Show that the equation $x^n + ax + b = 0$, n an even positive integer, has at most two distinct real roots.

34. Show that the equation $x^n + ax + b = 0$, n an odd positive integer, has at most three distinct real roots.

35. Given that $|f'(x)| \leq 1$ for all real numbers x, show that $|f(x_1) - f(x_2)| \leq |x_1 - x_2|$ for all real numbers x_1 and x_2.

36. Let f be differentiable on an open interval I. Prove that, if $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in I, then f is constant on I.

37. Let f be differentiable on (a, b) with $f(a) = f(b) = 0$ and $f'(c) = 0$ for some c in (a, b). Show by example that f need not be continuous on $[a, b]$.

38. Prove that for all real x and y
(a) $|\cos x - \cos y| \leq |x - y|$.
(b) $|\sin x - \sin y| \leq |x - y|$.

39. Let f be differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$.
(a) Prove that if there is a constant M such that $f'(x) \leq M$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then

$$f(b) \leq f(a) + M(b - a).$$

(b) Prove that if there is a constant m such that $f'(x) \geq m$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then

$$f(b) \geq f(a) + m(b - a).$$

(c) Parts (a) and (b) together imply that if there exists a constant K such that $|f'(x)| \leq K$ on (a, b), then

$$f(a) - K(b - a) \leq f(b) \leq f(a) + K(b - a).$$

Show that this is the case.

40. Suppose that f and g are differentiable functions and $f(x)g'(x) - g(x)f'(x)$ has no zeros on some interval I. Assume that there are numbers a, b in I with $a < b$ for which $f(a) = f(b) = 0$, and that f has no zeros in (a, b). Prove that if $g(a) \neq 0$ and $g(b) \neq 0$, then g has exactly one zero in (a, b). HINT: Suppose that g has no zeros in (a, b) and consider $h = f/g$. Then consider $k = g/f$.

41. Suppose that f and g are nonconstant, everywhere differentiable functions and that $f' = g$ and $g' = -f$. Show that between any two consecutive zeros of f there is exactly one zero of g and between any two consecutive zeros of g there is exactly one zero of f.

42. (*Important*) Use the mean-value theorem to show that if f is continuous at x and at $x + h$ and is differentiable between these two numbers, then

$$f(x + h) - f(x) = f'(x + \theta h)h$$

for some number θ between 0 and 1. (In some texts this is how the mean-value theorem is stated.)

43. Let $h > 0$. Suppose f is continuous on $[x_0 - h, x_0 + h]$ and differentiable on $(x_0 - h, x_0 + h)$. Show that if

$$\lim_{x \to x_0} f'(x) = L,$$

then f is differentiable at x_0 and $f'(x_0) = L$. HINT: Exercise 42.

44. Suppose that g is differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$. Without appealing to the mean-value theorem, show that if $g(a) = g(b)$, then there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which $g'(c) = 0$. HINT: Figure out a way to use Rolle's theorem.

45. (*Generalization of the mean-value theorem*) Suppose that f and g both satisfy the hypotheses of the mean-value theorem. Prove that if g' has no zeros in (a, b), then there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which

$$\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{g(b) - g(a)} = \frac{f'(c)}{g'(c)}.$$

This result is known as the *Cauchy mean-value theorem*. It reduces to the mean-value theorem if $g(x) = x$. HINT: To prove the result, set

$$F(x) = [f(b) - f(a)]g(x) - [g(b) - g(a)]f(x).$$

Exercises 46–47. Show that the given function satisfies the hypotheses of Rolle's theorem on the indicated interval. Use a graphing utility to graph f' and estimate the number(s) c where $f'(c) = 0$. Round off your estimates to three decimal places.

46. $f(x) = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 3x - 2; \quad [-2, 1].$

47. $f(x) = 1 - x^3 - \cos(\pi x/2); \quad [0, 1].$

48. Set $f(x) = x^4 - x^3 + x^3 - x$. Find a number b, if possible, such that Rolle's theorem is satisfied on $[0, b]$. If such a number b exists, find a number c that confirms Rolle's theorem on [0, b] and use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f together with the line $y = f(c)$.

49. Exercise 49 with $f(x) = x^4 + x^3 + x^2 - x$.

Exercises 50–52. Use a CAS. Find the x-intercepts of the graph. Between each pair of intercepts, find, if possible, a number c that confirms Rolle's theorem.

50. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x}{x^2 + 2x + 2}.$

51. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4 - 16}{x^2 + 4}.$

52. $f(x) = 125x^7 - 300x^6 - 760x^5 + 2336x^4 + 80x^3 - 4288x^2 + 3840x - 1024.$

Suppose that the function f satisfies the hypotheses of the mean-value theorem on an interval $[a, b]$. We can find the numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of the mean-value theorem by finding the zeros of the function

$$g(x) = f'(x) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

Exercises 53–54. Use a graphing utility to graph the function g that corresponds to the given f on the indicated interval. Estimate the zeros of g to three decimal places. For each zero c in the interval, graph the line tangent to the graph of f at $(c, f(c))$, and graph the line through $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$. Verify that these lines are parallel.

53. $f(x) = x^4 - 7x^2 + 2; \quad [1, 3].$

54. $f(x) = x\cos x + 4\sin x; \quad [-\pi/2, \pi/2].$

Exercises 55–56. The function f satisfies the hypotheses of the mean-value theorem on the given interval $[a, b]$. Use a CAS to find the number(s) c that satisfy the conclusion of the theorem. Then graph the function, the line through the endpoints $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$, and the tangent line(s) at $(c, f(c))$.

55. $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 + x - 1; \quad [1, 4].$

56. $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^3 - x^2 - x + 1; \quad [-2, 3].$

■ 4.2 INCREASING AND DECREASING FUNCTIONS

We are going to talk about functions "increasing" or "decreasing" on an interval. To place our discussion on a solid footing, we will define these terms.

DEFINITION 4.2.1

A function f is said to

(i) *increase* on the interval I if for every two numbers x_1, x_2 in I,

$$x_1 < x_2 \qquad \text{implies that} \qquad f(x_1) < f(x_2);$$

(ii) *decrease* on the interval I if for every two numbers x_1, x_2 in I,

$$x_1 < x_2 \qquad \text{implies that} \qquad f(x_1) > f(x_2).$$

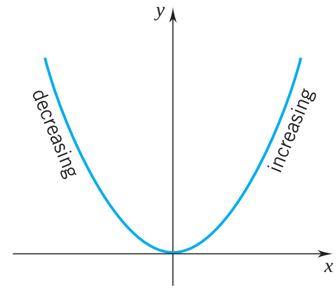


Figure 4.2.1

Preliminary Examples

(a) The squaring function

$$f(x) = x^2 \qquad \text{(Figure 4.2.1)}$$

decreases on $(-\infty, 0]$ and increases on $[0, \infty)$.

(b) The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x < 0 \\ x, & x \geq 0 \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 4.2.2)}$$

is constant on $(-\infty, 0)$; there it neither increases nor decreases. On $[0, \infty)$ the function increases.

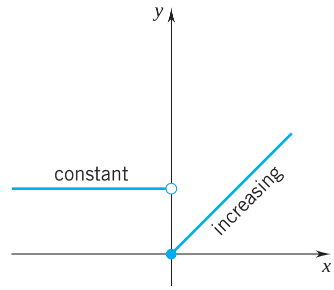


Figure 4.2.2

(c) The cubing function

$$f(x) = x^3 \qquad \text{(Figure 4.2.3)}$$

is everywhere increasing.

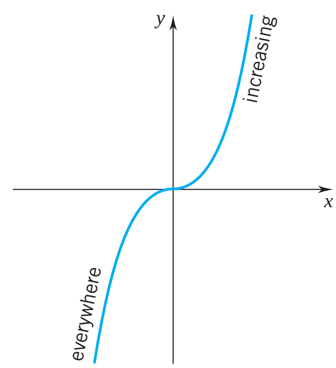
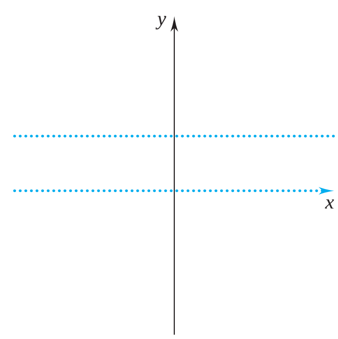


Figure 4.2.3

(d) In the case of the Dirichlet function,

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational}, \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 4.2.4)}$$

there is no interval on which the function increases and no interval on which the function decreases. On every interval the function jumps back and forth between 0 and 1 an infinite number of times. ❑



Dirichlet function

Figure 4.2.4

If f is a differentiable function, then we can determine the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases by examining the sign of the first derivative.

THEOREM 4.2.2

Suppose that f is differentiable on an open interval I.

(i) If $f'(x) > 0$ for all x in I, then f increases on I.

(ii) If $f'(x) < 0$ for all x in I, then f decreases on I.

(iii) If $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in I, then f is constant on I.

PROOF Choose any two numbers x_1 and x_2 in I with $x_1 < x_2$. Since f is differentiable on I, it is continuous on I. Therefore we know that f is differentiable on (x_1, x_2) and

continuous on $[x_1, x_2]$. By the mean-value theorem there is a number c in (x_1, x_2) for which

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1}.$$

In (i), $f'(x) > 0$ for all x. Therefore, $f'(c) > 0$ and we have

$$\frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1} > 0, \qquad \text{which implies that} \qquad f(x_1) < f(x_2).$$

In (ii), $f'(x) < 0$ for all x. Therefore, $f'(c) < 0$ and we have

$$\frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1} < 0, \qquad \text{which implies that} \qquad f(x_1) > f(x_2).$$

In (iii), $f'(x) = 0$ for all x. Therefore, $f'(c) = 0$ and we have

$$\frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1} = 0, \qquad \text{which implies that} \qquad f(x_1) = f(x_2).$$ ❑

Remark In Section 3.2 we showed that if f is constant on an open interval I, then $f'(x) = 0$ for all $x \in I$. Part (iii) of Theorem 4.2.2 gives the converse: if $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in an open interval I, then f is constant on I. Combining these two statements, we can assert that

> if I is an open interval, then
>
> $$f \text{ is constant on } I \qquad \text{iff} \qquad f'(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in I.$$

❑

Theorem 4.2.2 is useful but doesn't tell the complete story. Look, for example, at the function $f(x) = x^2$. The derivative $f'(x) = 2x$ is negative for x in $(-\infty, 0)$, zero at $x = 0$, and positive for x in $(0, \infty)$. Theorem 4.2.2 assures us that

$$f \text{ decreases on } (-\infty, 0) \text{ and increases on } (0, \infty),$$

but actually

$$f \text{ decreases on } (-\infty, 0] \text{ and increases on } [0, \infty).$$

To get these stronger results, we need a theorem that applies to closed intervals.

To extend Theorem 4.2.2 so that it works for an arbitrary interval I, the only additional condition we need is continuity at the endpoint(s).

> **THEOREM 4.2.3**
>
> Suppose that f is differentiable on the interior of an interval I and continuous on all of I.
>
> **(i)** If $f'(x) > 0$ for all x in the interior of I, then f increases on all of I.
> **(ii)** If $f'(x) < 0$ for all x in the interior of I, then f decreases on all of I.
> **(iii)** If $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in the interior of I, then f is constant on all of I.

The proof of this theorem is a simple modification of the proof of Theorem 4.2.2.

It is time for examples.

Example 1 The function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ has derivative $f'(x) = -x/\sqrt{1 - x^2}$. Since $f'(x) > 0$ for all x in $(-1, 0)$ and f is continuous on $[-1, 0]$, f increases on $[-1, 0]$. Since $f'(x) < 0$ for all x in $(0, 1)$ and f is continuous on $[0, 1]$, f decreases on $[0, 1]$. The graph of f is the semicircle shown in Figure 4.2.5. ❑

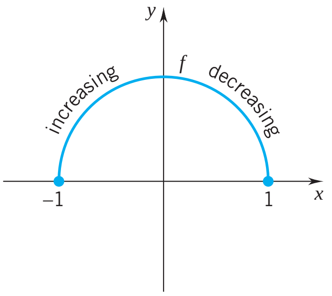


Figure 4.2.5

Example 2 The function $f(x) = 1/x$ is defined for all $x \neq 0$. The derivative $f'(x) = -1/x^2$ is negative for all $x \neq 0$. Thus the function f decreases on $(-\infty, 0)$ and on $(0, \infty)$. (See Figure 4.2.6.) Note that we did not say that f decreases on $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$; it does not. If $x_1 < 0 < x_2$, then $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$. ❑

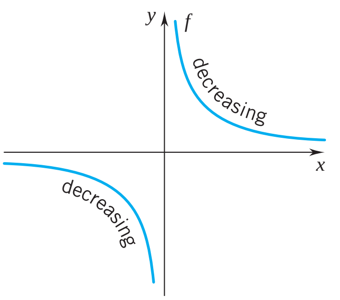


Figure 4.2.6

Example 3 The function $g(x) = \frac{4}{5}x^5 - 3x^4 - 4x^3 + 22x^2 - 24x + 6$ is a polynomial. It is therefore everywhere continuous and everywhere differentiable.

Differentiation gives

$$\begin{aligned} g'(x) &= 4x^4 - 12x^3 - 12x^2 + 44x - 24 \\ &= 4(x^4 - 3x^3 - 3x^2 + 11x - 6) \\ &= 4(x + 2)(x - 1)^2(x - 3). \end{aligned}$$

The derivative g' takes on the value 0 at -2, at 1, and at 3. These numbers determine four intervals on which g' keeps a constant sign:

$$(-\infty, -2), \quad (-2, 1), \quad (1, 3), \quad (3, \infty).$$

The sign of g' on these intervals and the consequences for g are as follows:

sign of g': + + + + + + + + + + + + 0 − − − − − − − − − − − − 0 − − − − − − − − 0 + + + + + + +

behavior of g: increases -2 decreases 1 decreases 3 increases x

Since g is everywhere continuous, g increases on $(-\infty, -2]$, decreases on $[-2, 3]$, and increases on $[3, \infty)$. (See Figure 4.2.7.) ❑

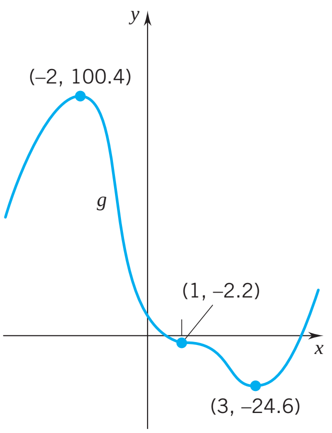


Figure 4.2.7

Example 4 Let $f(x) = x - 2\sin x$, $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$. Find the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases.

SOLUTION In this case $f'(x) = 1 - 2\cos x$. Setting $f'(x) = 0$, we have

$$1 - 2\cos x = 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \cos x = \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

The only numbers in $[0, 2\pi]$ at which the cosine takes on the value $1/2$ are $x = \pi/3$ and $x = 5\pi/3$. It follows that on the intervals $(0, \pi/3)$, $(\pi/3, 5\pi/3)$, $(5\pi/3, 2\pi)$, the derivative f' keeps a constant sign. The sign of f' and the behavior of f are recorded below.

sign of f': − − − − − − − − − 0 + 0 − − − − − − − − −

0 $\frac{\pi}{3}$ π $\frac{5\pi}{3}$ 2π x

behavior of f: decreases increases decreases

Since f is continuous throughout, f decreases on $[0, \pi/3]$, increases on $[\pi/3, 5\pi/3]$, and decreases on $[5\pi/3, 2\pi]$. (See Figure 4.2.8.) ❑

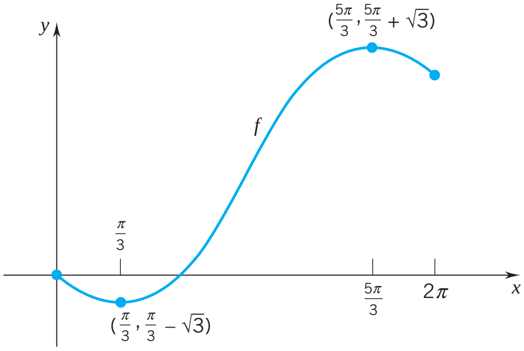


Figure 4.2.8

While the theorems we have proven have wide applicability, they do not tell the whole story.

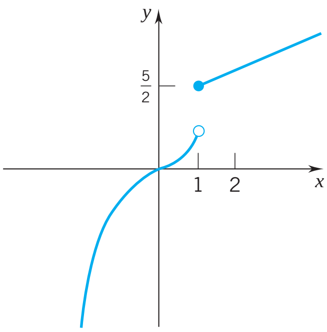


Figure 4.2.9

Example 5 The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3, & x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{2}x + 2, & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

is graphed in Figure 4.2.9. Obviously there is a discontinuity at $x = 1$. The derivative $f'(x)$ is

$$3x^2 \text{ on } (-\infty, 1), \qquad \text{nonexistent at } x = 1, \qquad \tfrac{1}{2} \text{ on } (1, \infty).$$

Since $f'(x) > 0$ on $(-\infty, 0)$ and f is continuous on $(-\infty, 0]$, f increases on $(-\infty, 0]$ (Theorem 4.2.3). Since $f'(x) > 0$ on $(0, 1)$ and is continuous on $[0, 1)$, f increases on $[0, 1)$ (Theorem 4.2.3). Since f increases on $(-\infty, 0]$ and on $[0, 1)$, f increases on $(-\infty, 1)$. (We don't need a theorem to tell us that.) Since $f'(x) > 0$ on $(1, \infty)$ and f is continuous on $[1, \infty)$, f increases on $[1, \infty)$. (Theorem 4.2.3) That f increases on $(-\infty, \infty)$ is not derivable from the theorems we've stated but is obvious by inspection. ❑

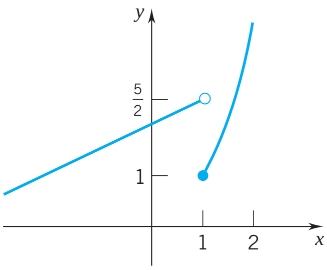


Figure 4.2.10

Example 6 The function

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}x + 2, & x < 1 \\ x^3, & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

is graphed in Figure 4.2.10. Again, there is a discontinuity at $x = 1$. Note that $g'(x)$ is

$$\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ on } (-\infty, 1), \qquad \text{nonexistent at } x = 1, \qquad 3x^2 \text{ on } (1, \infty).$$

The function g increases on $(-\infty, 1)$ and on $[1, \infty)$ but does not increase on $(-\infty, \infty)$. The figure makes this clear. ❑

Equality of Derivatives

If two differentiable functions differ by a constant,

$$f(x) = g(x) + C,$$

then their derivatives are equal:

$$f'(x) = g'(x).$$

The converse is also true. In fact, we have the following theorem.

THEOREM 4.2.4

(i) Let I be an open interval. If $f'(x) = g'(x)$ for all x in I, then f and g differ by a constant on I.

(ii) Let I be an arbitrary interval. If $f'(x) = g'(x)$ for all x in the interior of I, and f and g are continuous on I, then f and g differ by a constant on I.

PROOF Set $H = f - g$. For the first assertion apply (iii) of Theorem 4.2.2 to H. For the second assertion apply (iii) of Theorem 4.2.3 to H. We leave the details as an exercise. ❑

We illustrate the theorem in Figure 4.2.11. At points with the same x-coordinate the slopes are equal, and thus the curves have the same steepness. The separation between the curves remains constant; the curves are "parallel."

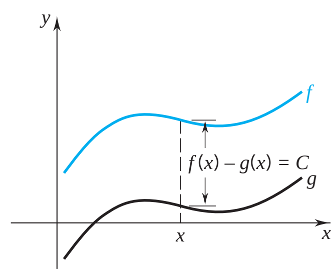


Figure 4.2.11

Example 7 Find f given that $f'(x) = 6x^2 - 7x - 5$ for all real x and $f(2) = 1$.

SOLUTION It is not hard to find a function with the required derivative:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(2x^3 - \frac{7}{2}x^2 - 5x\right) = 6x^2 - 7x - 5.$$

By Theorem 4.2.4 we know that $f(x)$ differs from $g(x) = 2x^3 - \frac{7}{2}x^2 - 5x$ only by some constant C. Thus we can write

$$f(x) = 2x^3 - \tfrac{7}{2}x^2 - 5x + C.$$

To evaluate C we use the fact that $f(2) = 1$. Since $f(2) = 1$ and

$$f(2) = 2(2)^3 - \tfrac{7}{2}(2)^2 - 5(2) + C = 16 - 14 - 10 + C = -8 + C,$$

we have $-8 + C = 1$. Therefore, $C = 9$. The function

$$f(x) = 2x^3 - \tfrac{7}{2}x^2 - 5x + 9$$

is the function with the specified properties. ❑

EXERCISES 4.2

Exercises 1–24. Find the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases.

1. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x + 2$.

2. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 6$.

3. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}$.

4. $f(x) = (x - 3)^3$.

5. $f(x) = x^3(1 + x)$.

6. $f(x) = x(x + 1)(x + 2)$.

7. $f(x) = (x + 1)^4$.

8. $f(x) = 2x - \dfrac{1}{x^2}$.

9. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{|x - 2|}$.

10. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{1 + x^2}$.

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{x^2 - 1}$.

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2 + 1}$.

13. $f(x) = |x^2 - 5|$.

14. $f(x) = x^2(1 + x)^2$.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{x - 1}{x + 1}$.

16. $f(x) = x^2 + \dfrac{16}{x^2}$.

17. $f(x) = \sqrt{\dfrac{1 + x^2}{2 + x^2}}$.

18. $f(x) = |x + 1||x - 2|$.

19. $f(x) = x - \cos x, \quad 0 \le x \le 2\pi$.

20. $f(x) = x + \sin x, \quad 0 \le x \le 2\pi$.

21. $f(x) = \cos 2x + 2\cos x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi$.

22. $f(x) = \cos^2 x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi$.

23. $f(x) = \sqrt{3}x - \cos 2x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi$.

24. $f(x) = \sin^2 x - \sqrt{3}\sin x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi$.

Exercises 25–32. Define f on the domain indicated given the following information.

25. $(-\infty, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = x^2 - 1$; $\quad f(1) = 2$.

26. $(-\infty, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = 2x - 5$; $\quad f(2) = 4$.

27. $(-\infty, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = 5x^4 + 4x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x + 1$; $f(0) = 5$.

28. $(0, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = 4x^{-3}$; $\quad f(1) = 0$.

29. $(0, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = x^{1/3} - x^{1/2}$; $\quad f(0) = 1$.

30. $(0, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = x^{-5} - 5x^{-1/5}$; $\quad f(1) = 0$.

31. $(-\infty, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = 2 + \sin x$; $\quad f(0) = 3$.

32. $(-\infty, \infty)$; $\quad f'(x) = 4x + \cos x$; $\quad f(0) = 1$.

Exercises 33–36. Find the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases.

33. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 7, & x < -3 \\ |x + 1|, & -3 \le x < 1 \\ 5 - 2x, & 1 \le x. \end{cases}$

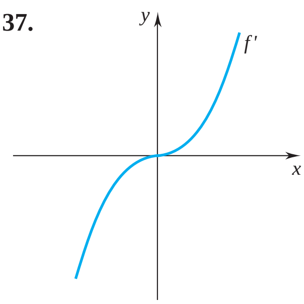
34. $f(x) = \begin{cases} (x - 1)^2 & x < 1 \\ 5 - x, & 1 \le x < 3 \\ 7 - 2x, & 3 \le x. \end{cases}$

35. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 4 - x^2, & x < 1 \\ 7 - 2x, & 1 \le x < 3 \\ 3x - 10, & 3 \le x. \end{cases}$

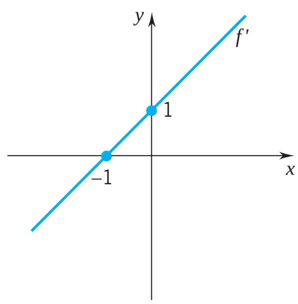
36. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 2, & x < 0 \\ (x - 1)^2, & 0 < x < 3 \\ 8 - x, & 3 < x < 7 \\ 2x - 9, & 7 < x \\ 6, & x = 0, 3, 7. \end{cases}$

Exercises 37–40. The graph of f' is given. Draw a rough sketch of the graph of f given that $f(0) = 1$.

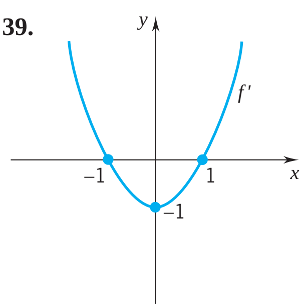
37.



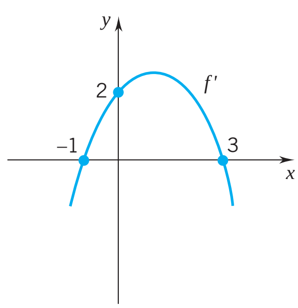
38.



39.

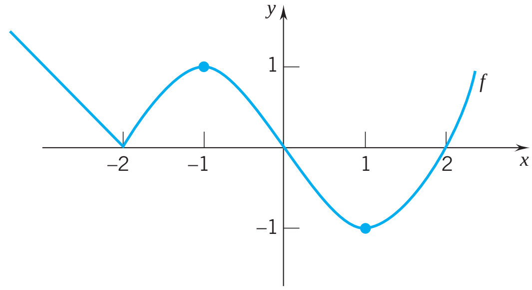


40.

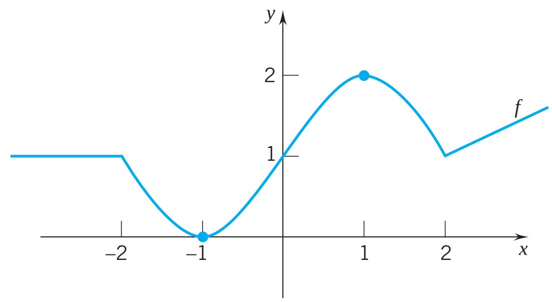


Exercises 41–42. The graph of a function f is given. Sketch the graph of f'. Give the intervals on which $f'(x) > 0$ and the intervals on which $f'(x) < 0$.

41.



42.



Exercises 43–46. Sketch the graph of a differentiable function f that satisfies the given conditions, if possible. If it's not possible, explain how you know it's not possible.

43. $f(x) > 0$ for all x, $f(0) = 1$, and $f'(x) < 0$ for all x.

44. $f(1) = -1$, $f'(x) < 0$ for all $x \neq 1$, and $f'(1) = 0$.

45. $f(-1) = 4$, $f(2) = 2$, and $f'(x) > 0$ for all x.

46. $f(x) = 0$ only at $x = 1$ and at $x = 2$, $f(3) = 4$, $f(5) = -1$.

Exercises 47–50. Either prove the assertion or show that the assertion is not valid by giving a counterexample. A pictorial counterexample suffices.

47. (a) If f increases on $[a, b]$ and increases on $[b, c]$, then f increases on $[a, c]$.
(b) If f increases on $[a, b]$ and increases on $(b, c]$, then f increases on $[a, c]$.

48. (a) If f decreases on $[a, b]$ and decreases on $[b, c]$, then f decreases on $[a, c]$.
(b) If f decreases on $[a, b)$ and decreases on $[b, c]$, then f decreases on [a, c].

49. (a) If f increases on (a, b), then there is no number x in (a, b) at which $f'(x) < 0$.
(b) If f increases on (a, b), then there is no number x in (a, b) at which $f'(x) = 0$.

50. If $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 1$, $x = 2$, $x = 3$, then f cannot possibly increase on $[0, 4]$.

51. Set $f(x) = x - \sin x$.
(a) Show that f increases on $(-\infty, \infty)$.
(b) Use the result in part (a) to show that $\sin x < x$ on $(0, \infty)$ and $\sin x > x$ on $(-\infty, 0)$.

52. Prove Theorem 4.2.4.

53. Set $f(x) = \sec^2 x$ and $g(x) = \tan^2 x$ on the interval $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$. Show that $f'(x) = g'(x)$ for all x in $(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$.

54. Having carried out Exercise 53, you know from Theorem 4.2.4 that there exists a constant C such that $f(x) - g(x) = C$ for all x in $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$. What is C?

55. Suppose that for all real x

$$f'(x) = -g(x) \qquad \text{and} \qquad g'(x) = f(x).$$

(a) Show that $f^2(x) + g^2(x) = C$ for some constant C.
(b) Suppose that $f(0) = 0$ and $g(0) = 1$. What is C?
(c) Give an example of a pair of functions that satisfy parts (a) and (b).

56. Assume that f and g are differentiable on the interval $(-c, c)$ and $f(0) = g(0)$.
(a) Show that if $f'(x) > g'(x)$ for all $x \in (0, c)$, then $f(x) > g(x)$ for all $x \in (0, c)$.
(b) Show that if $f'(x) > g'(x)$ for all $x \in (-c, 0)$, then $f(x) < g(x)$ for all $x \in (-c, 0)$.

57. Show that $\tan x > x$ for all $x \in (0, \pi/2)$.

58. Show that $1 - x^2/2 < \cos x$ for all $x \in (0, \infty)$.

59. Let n be an integer greater than 1. Show that $(1 + x)^n > 1 + nx$ for all $x < 0$.

60. Show that $x - x^3/6 < \sin x$ for all $x > 0$.

61. It follows from Exercises 51 and 60 that

$$x - \tfrac{1}{6}x^3 < \sin x < x \qquad \text{for all } x > 0.$$

Use this result to estimate $\sin 4^\circ$. (The x above is in radians).

62. (a) Show that $\cos x < 1 - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{24}x^4$ for all $x > 0$.
(b) It follows from part (a) and Exercise 58 that

$$1 - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 < \cos x < 1 - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + \tfrac{1}{24}x^4 \qquad \text{for all } x > 0.$$

Use this result to estimate $\cos 6^\circ$. (The x above is in radians.)

Exercises 63–66. Use a graphing utility to graph f and its derivative f' on the indicated interval. Estimate the zeros of f' to three decimal places. Estimate the subintervals on which f increases and the subintervals on which f decreases.

63. $f(x) = 3x^4 - 10x^3 - 4x^2 + 10x + 9$; $[-2, 5]$.

64. $f(x) = 2x^3 - x^2 - 13x - 6$; $[-3, 4]$.

65. $f(x) = x \cos x - 3 \sin 2x$; $[0, 6]$.

66. $f(x) = x^4 + 3x^3 - 2x^2 + 4x + 4$; $[-5, 3]$.

Exercises 67–70. Use a CAS to find the numbers x at which
(a) $f'(x) = 0$, (b) $f'(x) > 0$, (c) $f'(x) < 0$.

67. $f(x) = \cos^3 x,\ 0 \le x \le 2\pi$.

68. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 4}}$.

69. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1}$.

70. $f(x) = 8x^5 - 36x^4 + 6x^3 + 73x^2 + 48x + 9$.

71. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of

$$f(x) = \sin x \sin(x + 2) - \sin^2(x + 1).$$

From the graph, what do you conclude about f and f'? Confirm your conclusions by calculating f'.

■ 4.3 LOCAL EXTREME VALUES

In many problems in economics, engineering, and physics it is important to determine how large or how small a certain quantity can be. If the problem admits a mathematical formulation, it is often reducible to the problem of finding the maximum or minimum value of some function.

Suppose that f is a function defined at some number c. We call c an *interior point* of the domain of f provided f is defined not only at c but at all numbers within an open interval $(c - \delta, c + \delta)$. This being the case, f is defined at all numbers x within δ of c.

DEFINITION 4.3.1 LOCAL EXTREME VALUES

Suppose that f is a function and c is an interior point of the domain. The function f is said to have a *local maximum at c* provided that

$$f(c) \ge f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ sufficiently close to } c.$$

The function f is said to have a local *minimum at c* provided that

$$f(c) \le f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ sufficiently close to } c.$$

The local maxima and minima of f comprise the *local extreme values of f.*

We illustrate these notions in Figure 4.3.1. A careful look at the figure suggests that local maxima and minima occur only at points where the tangent is horizontal [$f'(c) = 0$] or where there is no tangent line [$f'(c)$ does not exist]. This is indeed the case.

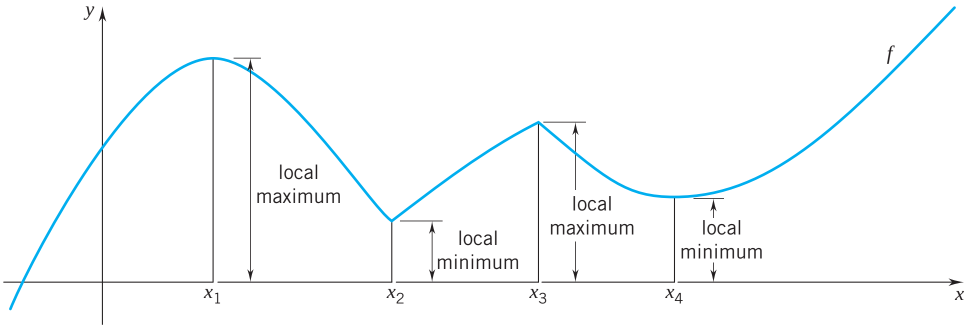


Figure 4.3.1

> **THEOREM 4.3.2**
>
> Suppose that c is an interior point of the domain of f. If f has a local maximum or local minimum at c, then
>
> $$f'(c) = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad f'(c) \text{ does not exist.}$$

PROOF Let's suppose that f has a local extreme value at c, and let's suppose that $f'(c)$ exists. If $f'(c) > 0$ or $f'(c) < 0$, then, by Theorem 4.1.2, there must be points x_1 and x_2 arbitrarily close to c for which

$$f(x_1) < f(c) < f(x_2).$$

This makes it impossible for a local maximum or a local minimum to occur at c. Therefore, if $f'(c)$ exists, it must have the value 0. The only other possibility is that $f'(c)$ does not exist. ❑

On the basis of this result, we make the following definition (an important one):

> **DEFINITION 4.3.3 CRITICAL POINT**
>
> The interior points c of the domain of f for which
>
> $$f'(c) = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad f'(c) \text{ does not exist}$$
>
> are called the *critical points* for f.†

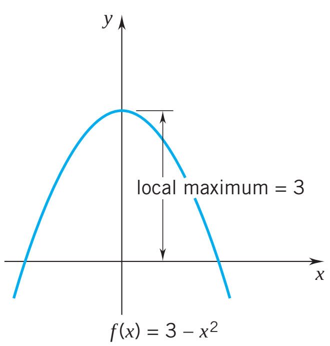


Figure 4.3.2

As a consequence of Theorem 4.3.2, in searching for local maxima and local minima, the only points we need to consider are the critical points.

We illustrate the technique for finding local maxima and minima by some examples. In each case the first step is to find the critical points.

Example 1 For

$$f(x) = 3 - x^2, \qquad \text{(Figure 4.3.2)}$$

†Also called the *critical numbers* for f. We prefer the term "critical point" because it is more in consonance with the term used in the study of functions of several variables.

the derivative

$$f'(x) = -2x$$

exists everywhere. Since $f'(x) = 0$ only at $x = 0$, the number 0 is the only critical point. The number $f(0) = 3$ is a local maximum. ❑

Example 2 In the case of

$$f(x) = |x+1| + 2 = \begin{cases} -x+1, & x < -1 \\ x+3, & x \geq -1, \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 4.3.3)}$$

differentiation gives

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} -1, & x < -1 \\ \text{does not exist}, & x = -1 \\ 1, & x > -1. \end{cases}$$

This derivative is never 0. It fails to exist only at -1. The number -1 is the only critical point. The value $f(-1) = 2$ is a local minimum. ❑

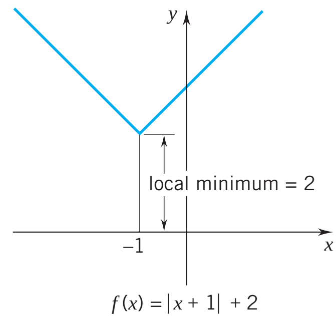


Figure 4.3.3

Example 3 Figure 4.3.4 shows the graph of the function $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x-1}$. The domain is $(-\infty, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$. The derivative

$$f'(x) = -\frac{1}{(x-1)^2}$$

exists throughout the domain of f and is never 0. Thus there are no critical points. In particular, 1 is not a critical point for f because 1 is not in the domain of f. Since f has no critical points, there are no local extreme values. ❑

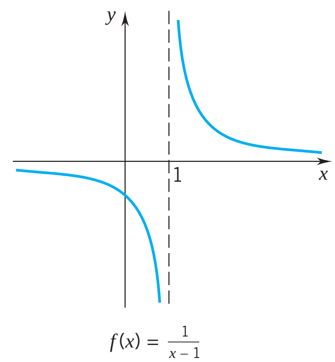


Figure 4.3.4

CAUTION The fact that c is a critical point for f does not gurantee that $f(c)$ is a local extreme value. This is made clear by the next two examples. ❑

Example 4 In the case of the function

$$f(x) = x^3, \qquad \text{(Figure 4.3.5)}$$

the derivative $f'(x) = 3x^2$ is 0 at 0, but $f(0) = 0$ is not a local extreme value. The function is everywhere increasing. ❑

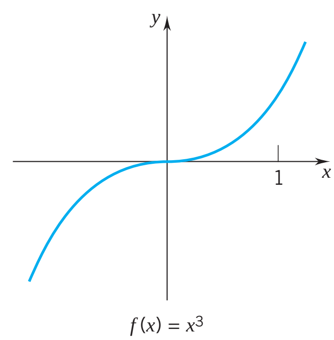


Figure 4.3.5

Example 5 The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -2x+5, & x < 2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}x + 2, & x \geq 2 \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 4.3.6)}$$

is everywhere decreasing. Although 2 is a critical point [$f'(2)$ does not exist], $f(2) = 1$ is not a local extreme value. ❑

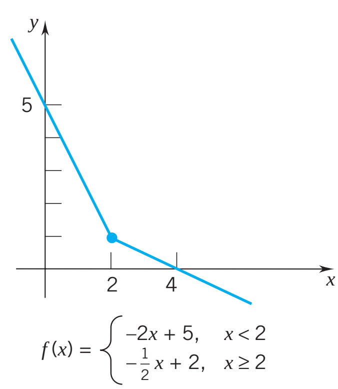


Figure 4.3.6

There are two widely used tests for determining the behavior of a function at a critical point. The first test (given in Theorem 4.3.4) requires that we examine the sign of the first derivative on both sides of the critical point. The second test (given in Theorem 4.3.5) requires that we examine the sign of the second derivative at the critical point itself.

THEOREM 4.3.4 THE FIRST-DERIVATIVE TEST

Suppose that c is a critical point for f and f is continuous at c. If there is a positive number δ such that:

(i) $f'(x) > 0$ for all x in $(c - \delta, c)$ and $f'(x) < 0$ for all x in $(c, c + \delta)$, then $f(c)$ is a local maximum. (Figures 4.3.7 and 4.3.8)

(ii) $f'(x) < 0$ for all x in $(c - \delta, c)$ and $f'(x) > 0$ for all x in $(c, c + \delta)$, then $f(c)$ is a local minimum. (Figures 4.3.9 and 4.3.10)

(iii) $f'(x)$ keeps constant sign on $(c - \delta, c) \cup (c, c + \delta)$, then $f(c)$ is not a local extreme value.

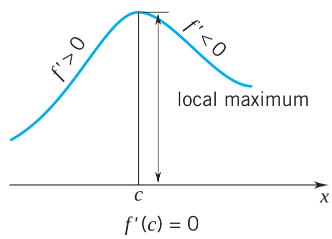


Figure 4.3.7

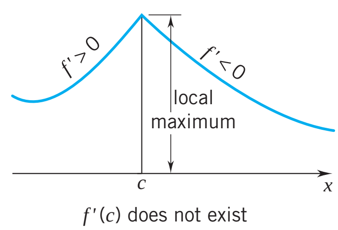


Figure 4.3.8

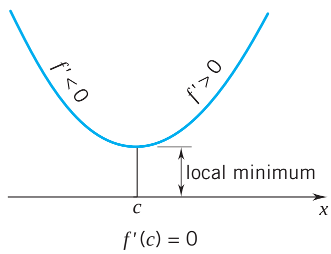


Figure 4.3.9

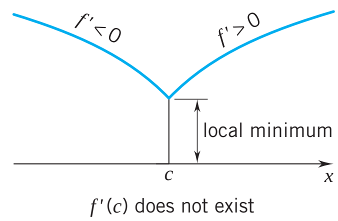


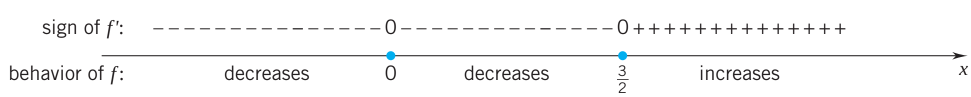
Figure 4.3.10

PROOF The result is a direct consequence of Theorem 4.2.3. ❑

Example 6 The function $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^3$ has derivative

$$f'(x) = 4x^3 - 6x^2 = 2x^2(2x - 3).$$

The only critical points are 0 and $\frac{3}{2}$. The sign of f' is recorded below.



Since f' keeps the same sign on both sides of 0, $f(0) = 0$ is not a local extreme value. However, $f(\frac{3}{2}) = -\frac{27}{16}$ is a local minimum. The graph of f appears in Figure 4.3.11. ❑

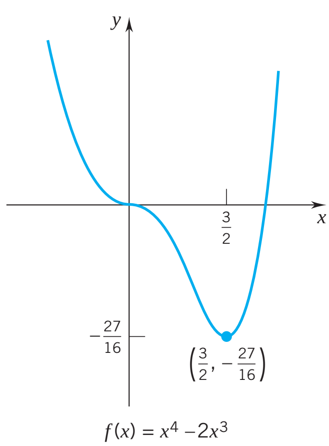


Figure 4.3.11

Example 7 The function $f(x) = 2x^{5/3} + 5x^{2/3}$ is defined for all real x. The derivative of f is given by

$$f'(x) = \tfrac{10}{3}x^{2/3} + \tfrac{10}{3}x^{-1/3} = \tfrac{10}{3}x^{-1/3}(x + 1), \qquad x \neq 0.$$

Since $f'(-1) = 0$ and $f'(0)$ does not exist, the critical points are -1 and 0. The sign of f' is recorded below. (To save space in the diagram, we write "dne" for "does not exist.")

sign of f': ++++++++++++++0 – – – – – – – – – – – – dne+++++++++++++

behavior of f: increases -1 decreases 0 increases x

In this case $f(-1) = 3$ is a local maximum and $f(0) = 0$ is a local minimum. The graph appears in Figure 4.3.12. ❑

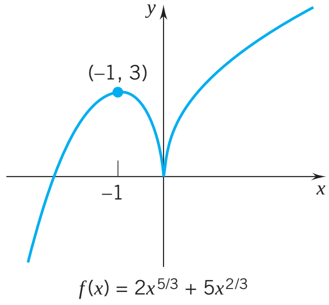


Figure 4.3.12

Remark Note that the first-derivative test can be used at c only if f is continuous at c. The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + 2x, & x \leq 1 \\ 5 - x, & x > 1 \end{cases} \qquad \text{(Figure 4.3.13)}$$

has no derivative at $x = 1$. Therefore 1 is a critical point. While it is true that $f'(x) > 0$ for $x < 1$ and $f'(x) < 0$ for $x > 1$, it does not follow that $f(1)$ is a local maximum. The function is discontinuous at $x = 1$ and the first-derivative test does not apply. ❑

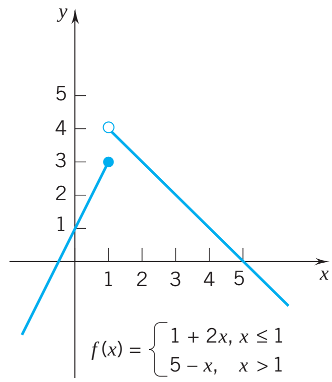


Figure 4.3.13

There are cases where it is difficult to determine the sign of f' on both sides of a critical point. If f is twice differentiable, then the following test may be easier to apply.

> **THEOREM 4.3.5 THE SECOND-DERIVATIVE TEST**
>
> Suppose that $f'(c) = 0$ and $f''(c)$ exists.
>
> **(i)** If $f''(c) > 0$, then $f(c)$ is a local minimum.
>
> **(ii)** If $f''(c) < 0$, then $f(c)$ is a local maximum.

(Note that no conclusion is drawn if $f''(c) = 0$.)

PROOF We handle the case $f''(c) > 0$. The other is left as an exercise. (Exercise 32) Since f'' is the derivative of f', we see from Theorem 4.1.2 that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that, if

$$c - \delta < x_1 < c < x_2 < c + \delta,$$

then

$$f'(x_1) < f'(c) < f'(x_2).$$

Since $f'(c) = 0$, we have

$$f'(x) < 0 \qquad \text{for } x \text{ in } (c - \delta, c) \qquad \text{and} \qquad f'(x) > 0 \qquad \text{for } x \text{ in } (c, c + \delta).$$

By the first-derivative test, $f(c)$ is a local minimum. ❑

Example 8 For $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x^2 - 12x + 5$ we have

$$f'(x) = 6x^2 - 6x - 12 = 6(x^2 - x - 2) = 6(x - 2)(x + 1)$$

and

$$f''(x) = 12x - 6.$$

The critical points are 2 and -1; the first derivative is 0 at each of these points. Since $f''(2) = 18 > 0$ and $f''(-1) = -18 < 0$, we can conclude from the second-derivative test that $f(2) = -15$ is a local minimum and $f(-1) = 12$ is a local maximum. ❑

Comparing the First- and Second-Derivative Tests

The first-derivative test is more general than the second-derivative test. The first-derivative test can be applied at a critical point c even if f is not differentiable at c (provided of course that f is continuous at c). In contrast, the second-derivative test can be applied at c only if f is twice differentiable at c, and, even then, the test gives us information only if $f''(c) \neq 0$.

Example 9 Set $f(x) = x^{4/3}$. Here $f'(x) = \frac{4}{3}x^{1/3}$ so that

$$f'(0) = 0, \qquad f'(x) < 0 \quad \text{for} \quad x < 0, \qquad f'(x) > 0 \quad \text{for} \quad x > 0.$$

By the first-derivative test, $f(0) = 0$ is a local minimum. We cannot get this information from the second-derivative test because $f''(x) = \frac{4}{9}x^{-2/3}$ is not defined at $x = 0$. ❑

Example 10 To show what can happen if the second derivative is zero at a critical point c, we examine the functions

$$f(x) = x^3, \qquad g(x) = x^4, \qquad h(x) = -x^4. \qquad \text{(Figure 4.3.14)}$$

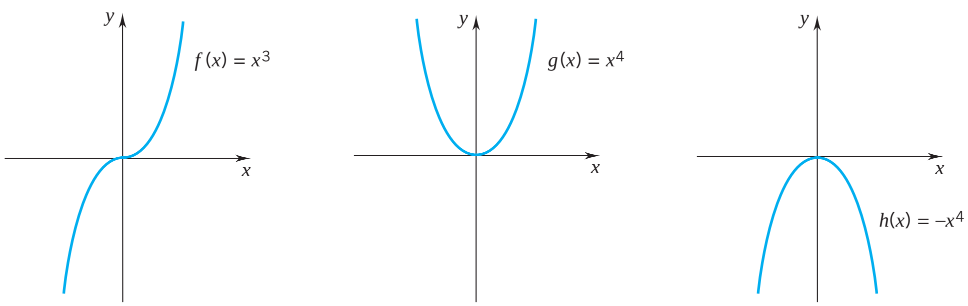


Figure 4.3.14

In each case $x = 0$ is a critical point:

$$\begin{array}{lll} f'(x) = 3x^2, & g'(x) = 4x^3, & h'(x) = -4x^3, \\ f'(0) = 0, & g'(0) = 0, & h'(0) = 0. \end{array}$$

In each case the second derivative is zero at $x = 0$:

$$\begin{array}{lll} f''(x) = 6x, & g''(x) = 12x^2, & h''(0) = -12x^2, \\ f''(0) = 0, & g''(0) = 0, & h''(0) = 0. \end{array}$$

The first function, $f(x) = x^3$, has neither a local maximum nor a local minimum at $x = 0$. The second function, $g(x) = x^4$, has derivative $g'(x) = 4x^3$. Since

$$g'(x) < 0 \quad \text{for} \quad x < 0, \qquad g'(x) > 0 \quad \text{for} \quad x > 0,$$

$g(0)$ is a local minimum. (The first-derivative test.) The last function, being the negative of g, has a local maximum at $x = 0$. ❑

EXERCISES 4.3

Exercises 1–28. Find the critical points and the local extreme values.

1. $f(x) = x^3 + 3x - 2.$

2. $f(x) = 2x^4 - 4x^2 + 6.$

3. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}.$

4. $f(x) = x^2 - \dfrac{3}{x^2}.$

5. $f(x) = x^2(1 - x).$

6. $f(x) = (1 - x)^2(1 + x).$

7. $f(x) = \dfrac{1 + x}{1 - x}.$

8. $f(x) = \dfrac{2 - 3x}{2 + x}.$

9. $f(x) = \dfrac{2}{x(x + 1)}.$

10. $f(x) = |x^2 - 16|.$

11. $f(x) = x^3(1 - x)^2.$

12. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{x - 2}{x + 2}\right)^3.$

13. $f(x) = (1 - 2x)(x - 1)^3.$

14. $f(x) = (1 - x)(1 + x)^3.$

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{1 + x}.$

16. $f(x) = x\sqrt[3]{1 - x}.$

17. $f(x) = x^2\sqrt[3]{2 + x}.$

18. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x + 1} - \dfrac{1}{x - 2}.$

19. $f(x) = |x - 3| + |2x + 1|.$

20. $f(x) = x^{7/3} - 7x^{1/3}.$

21. $f(x) = x^{2/3} + 2x^{-1/3}.$

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3}{x + 1}.$

23. $f(x) = \sin x + \cos x, \quad 0 < x < 2\pi.$

24. $f(x) = x + \cos 2x, \quad 0 < x < \pi.$

25. $f(x) = \sin^2 x - \sqrt{3}\sin x, \quad 0 < x < \pi.$

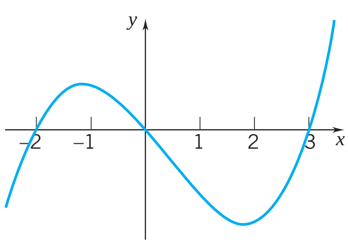
26. $f(x) = \sin^2 x, \quad 0 < x < 2\pi.$

27. $f(x) = \sin x \cos x - 3\sin x + 2x, \quad 0 < x < 2\pi.$

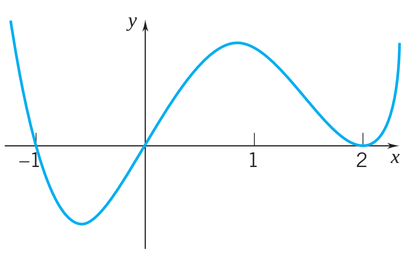
28. $f(x) = 2\sin^3 x - 3\sin x, \quad 0 < x < \pi.$

Exercises 29–30. The graph of f' is given. (a) Find the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases. (b) Find the local maximum(s) and the local minimum(s) of f. Sketch the graph of f given that $f(0) = 1$.

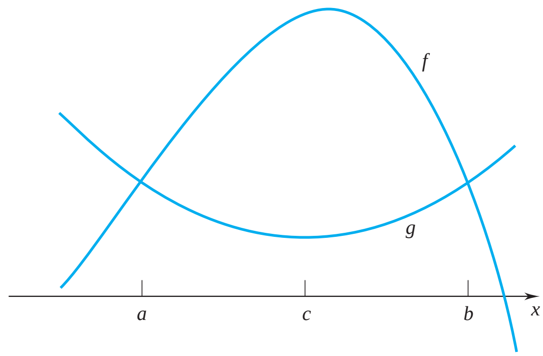
29.



30.



31. Let f and g be the differentiable functions, with graphs shown below. The point c is the point in the interval $[a, b]$ where the vertical separation between the two curves is greatest. Show that the line tangent to the graph of f at $x = c$ is parallel to the line tangent to the graph of g at $x = c$.



32. Prove the validity of the second-derivative test in the case that $f''(c) < 0$.

33. Let $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, $a \neq 0$. Show that f has a local maximum at $x = -b/(2a)$ if $a < 0$ and a local minimum there if $a > 0$.

34. Let $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, $a \neq 0$. Under what conditions on a, b, c will f have: (1) two local extreme values, (2) only one local extreme value, (3) no local extreme values?

35. Find the critical points and the local extreme values of the polynomial

$$P(x) = x^4 - 8x^3 + 22x^2 - 24x + 4.$$

Show that the equation $P(x) = 0$ has exactly two real roots, both positive.

36. A function f has derivative

$$f'(x) = x^3(x - 1)^2(x + 1)(x - 2).$$

At what numbers x, if any, does f have a local maximum? A local minimum?

37. Suppose that $p(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$ has critical points $-1, 1, 2, 3$, and corresponding values $p(-1) = 6$, $p(1) = 1$, $p(2) = 3$, $p(3) = 1$. Sketch a possible graph for p if: (a) n is odd, (b) n is even.

38. Suppose that $f(x) = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ has a local minimum at $x = 2$ and the graph passes through the points $(-1, 3)$ and $(3, -1)$. Find A, B, C.

39. Find a and b given that $f(x) = ax/(x^2 + b^2)$ has a local minimum at $x = -2$ and $f'(0) = 1$.

40. Let $f(x) = x^p(1 - x)^q$, p and q integers greater than or equal to 2.

(a) Show that the critical points of f are 0, $p/(p + q)$, 1.

(b) Show that if p is even, then f has a local minimum at 0.

(c) Show that if q is even, then f has a local minimum at 1.
(d) Show that f has a local maximum at $p/(p+q)$ for all p and q under consideration.

41. Prove that a polynomial of degree n has at most $n-1$ local extreme values.

42. Let $y = f(x)$ be differentiable and suppose that the graph of f does not pass through the origin. The distance D from the origin to a point $P(x, f(x))$ of the graph is given by

$$D = \sqrt{x^2 + [f(x)]^2}.$$

Show that if D has a local extreme value at c, then the line through $(0, 0)$ and $(c, f(c))$ is perpendicular to the line tangent to the graph of f at $(c, f(c))$.

43. Show that $f(x) = x^4 - 7x^2 - 8x - 3$ has exactly one critical point c in the interval $(2, 3)$.

44. Show that $f(x) = \sin x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 2x$ has exactly one critical point c in the interval $(2, 3)$.

45. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{ax^2+b}{cx^2+d}$, $d \neq 0$. Use a CAS to show that f has a local minimum at $x = 0$ if $ad - bc > 0$ and a local maximum at $x = 0$ if $ad - bc < 0$. Confirm this by calculating $ad - bc$ for each of the functions given below and using a graphing utility to draw the graph.

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2+3}{4-x^2}$. (b) $f(x) = \dfrac{3-2x^2}{x^2+2}$.

46. Set

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \sin(1/x), & x \neq 0. \\ 0, & x = 0. \end{cases}$$

Earlier we stated that f is differentiable at 0 and that $f'(0) = 0$. Show that f has neither a local maximum nor a local minimum at $x = 0$.

Exercises 47–49. Use a graphing utility to graph the function on the indicated interval. (a) Use the graph to estimate the critical points and local extreme values. (b) Estimate the intervals on which the function increases and the intervals on which the function decreases. Round off your estimates to three decimal places.

47. $f(x) = 3x^3 - 7x^2 - 14x + 24$; $[-3, 4]$.

48. $f(x) = |3x^3 + x^2 - 10x + 2| + 3x$; $[-4, 4]$.

49. $f(x) = \dfrac{8 \sin 2x}{1 + \frac{1}{2}x^2}$; $[-3, 3]$.

Exercises 50–52. Find the local extreme values of f by using a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and noting the numbers x at which $f'(x) = 0$.

50. $f(x) = -x^5 + 13x^4 - 67x^3 + 171x^2 - 216x + 108$.

51. $f(x) = x^2\sqrt{3x - 2}$.

52. $f(x) = \cos^2 2x$.

Exercises 53–54. The derivative f' of a function f is given. Use a graphing utility to graph f' on the indicated interval. Estimate the critical points of f and determine at each such point whether f has a local maximum, a local minimum, or neither. Round off your estimates to three decimal places.

53. $f'(x) = \sin^2 x + 2 \sin 2x$; $[-2, 2]$.

54. $f'(x) = 2x^3 + x^2 - 4x + 3$; $[-4, 4]$.

■ 4.4 ENDPOINT EXTREME VALUES; ABSOLUTE EXTREME VALUES

We will work with functions defined on an interval or on an interval with a finite number of points removed.

A number c is called the *left endpoint* of the domain of f if f is defined at c but undefined to the left of c. We call c the *right endpoint* of the domain of f if f is defined at c but undefined to the right of c.

The assumptions made on the structure of the domain guarantee that if c is the left endpoint of the domain, then f is defined at least on an interval $[c, c+\delta)$, and if c is the right endpoint, then f is defined at least on an interval $(c-\delta, c]$.

Endpoints of the domain can give rise to what are called *endpoint extreme values*. Endpoint extreme values (illustrated in Figures 4.4.1–4.4.4) are defined below.

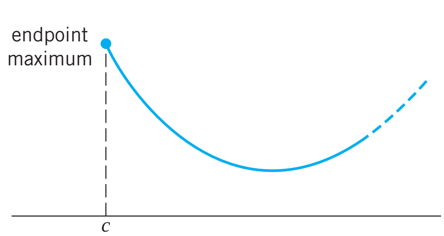


Figure 4.4.1

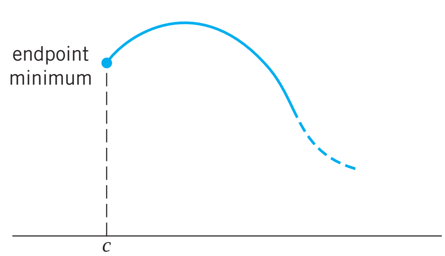


Figure 4.4.2

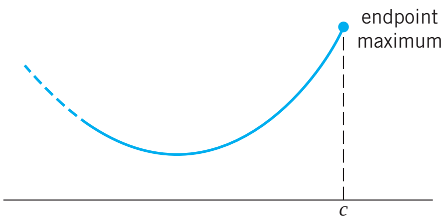


Figure 4.4.3

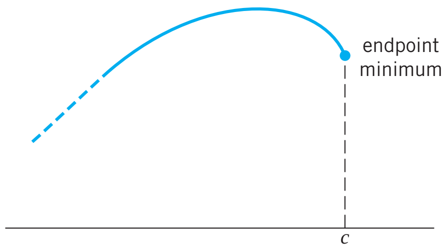


Figure 4.4.4

DEFINITION 4.4.1 ENDPOINT EXTREME VALUES

If c is an endpoint of the domain of f, then f is said to have an *endpoint maximum at c* provided that

$$f(c) \geq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the domain of } f \text{ sufficiently close to } c.$$

It is said to have an *endpoint minimum at c* provided that

$$f(c) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the domain of } f \text{ sufficiently close to } c.$$

Endpoints in the domain of a continuous function which is differentiable at all points of the domain near that endpoint can be tested by examining the sign of the first derivative at nearby points and then reasoning as we did in Section 4.3. Suppose, for example, that c is a left endpoint and that f is continuous from the right at c. If $f'(x) < 0$ at all nearby $x > c$, then f decreases on an interval $[c, c + \delta)$ and $f(c)$ is an endpoint maximum. (Figure 4.4.1) If, on the other hand, $f'(x) > 0$ at all nearby $x > c$, then f increases on an interval $[c, c + \delta)$ and $f(c)$ is an endpoint minimum. (Figure 4.4.2) Similar reasoning can be applied to right endpoints.

Absolute Maxima and Absolute Minima

Whether or not a function f has a local extreme value or an endpoint extreme value at some point c depends entirely on the behavior of f at c and at points close to c. Absolute extreme values, which we define below, depend on the behavior of the function on its entire domain.

We begin with a number d in the domain of f. Here d can be an interior point or an endpoint.

DEFINITION 4.4.2 ABSOLUTE EXTREME VALUES

The function f is said to have an *absolute maximum at d* provided that

$$f(d) \geq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the domain of } f;$$

f is said to have an *absolute minimum at d* provided that

$$f(d) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the domain of } f.$$

A function can be continuous on an interval (or even differentiable there) without taking on an absolute maximum or an absolute minimum. All we can say in general is that if f takes on an absolute extreme value, then it does so at a critical point or at an endpoint.

There are, however, special conditions that guarantee the existence of absolute extreme values. From Section 2.6 we know that continuous functions map bounded closed intervals $[a, b]$ onto bounded closed intervals $[m, M]$; M is the maximum value taken on by f on $[a, b]$ and m is the minimum value. If $[a, b]$ constitutes the entire domain of f, then, clearly, M is the absolute maximum and m is the absolute minimum.

For a function continuous on a bounded closed interval $[a, b]$, the absolute extreme values can be found as indicated below.

Step 1. Find the critical points $c_1, c_2, \ldots$. (These are the numbers in the open interval (a, b) at which the derivative is zero or does not exist.)

Step 2. Calculate $f(a), f(c_1), f(c_2), \ldots, f(b)$.

Step 3. The greatest of these numbers is the absolute maximum value of f and the least of these numbers is the absolute minimum.

Example 1 Find the critical points of the function

$$f(x) = 1 + 4x^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}x^4, \qquad x \in [-1, 3].$$

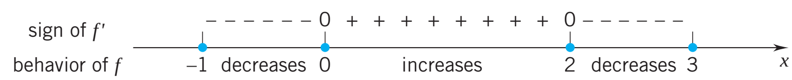
Then find and classify all the extreme values.

SOLUTION Since f is continuous and the entire domain is the bounded closed interval $[-1, 3]$, we know that f has an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum. To find the critical points of f, we differentiate:

$$f'(x) = 8x - 2x^3 = 2x(4 - x^2) = 2x(2 - x)(2 + x).$$

The numbers x in $(-1, 3)$ at which $f'(x) = 0$ are $x = 0$ and $x = 2$. Thus, 0 and 2 are the critical points.

The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:



Taking the endpoints into consideration, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} f(-1) &= 1 + 4(-1)^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}(-1)^4 = \tfrac{9}{2} && \text{is an endpoint maximum;} \\ f(0) &= 1 && \text{is a local minimum;} \\ f(2) &= 1 + 4(2)^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}(2^4) = 9 && \text{is a local maximum;} \\ f(3) &= 1 + 4(3)^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}(3)^4 = -\tfrac{7}{2} && \text{is an endpoint minimum.} \end{aligned}$$

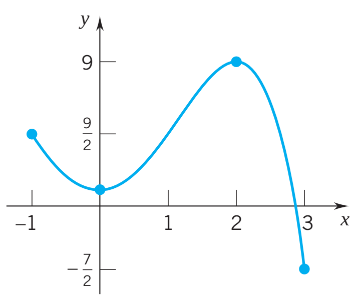


Figure 4.4.5

The least of these extremes, $f(3) = -\frac{7}{2}$, is the absolute minimum; the greatest of these extremes, $f(2) = 9$, is the absolute maximum. The graph of the function is shown in Figure 4.4.5. ❏

Example 2 Find the critical points of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2x + 2, & -\tfrac{1}{2} \le x < 0 \\ x^2 - 2x + 2, & 0 \le x \le 2. \end{cases}$$

Then find and classify all the extreme values.

SOLUTION Since f is continuous on its entire domain, which is the bounded closed interval $[-\frac{1}{2}, 2]$, we know that f has an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum. Differentiating f, we see that $f'(x)$ is

$$2x + 2 \text{ on } (-\tfrac{1}{2}, 0), \qquad \text{nonexistent at } x = 0, \qquad 2x - 2 \text{ on } (0, 2).$$

This makes $x = 0$ a critical point. Since $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 1$, 1 is a critical point.

The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:

sign of f': + + + + + + dne − − − − − − − − − − − − − − − 0 + + + + + + +

behavior of f: $-\frac{1}{2}$ increases 0 decreases 1 increases $\frac{3}{2}$ x

Therefore

$$f(-\tfrac{1}{2}) = \tfrac{1}{4} - 1 + 2 = \tfrac{5}{4} \quad \text{is an endpoint minimum;}$$
$$f(0) = 2 \quad \text{is a local maximum;}$$
$$f(1) = 1 - 2 + 2 = 1 \quad \text{is a local minimum;}$$
$$f(2) = 2 \quad \text{is an endpoint maximum.}$$

The least of these extremes, $f(1) = 1$, is the absolute minimum; the greatest of these extremes, $f(0) = f(2) = 2$, is the absolute maximum. The graph of the function is shown in Figure 4.4.6. ❑

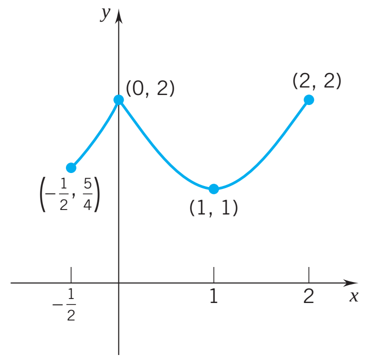


Figure 4.4.6

Behavior of $f(x)$ as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$.

We now state four definitions. Once you grasp the first one, the others become transparent.

To say that

$$\text{as} \quad x \to \infty, \quad f(x) \to \infty$$

is to say that, *as x increases without bound*, $f(x)$ *becomes arbitrarily large*. More precisely, given any positive number M, there exists a positive number K such that

$$\text{if} \quad x \geq K, \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) \geq M.$$

For example, as $x \to \infty$,

$$x^2 \to \infty, \qquad \sqrt{1 + x^2} \to \infty, \qquad \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x^2}\right) \to \infty$$

To say that

$$\text{as} \quad x \to \infty, \quad f(x) \to -\infty$$

is to say that, *as x increases without bound*, $f(x)$ *becomes arbitrarily large negative*: given any negative number M, there exists a positive number K such that

$$\text{if} \quad x \geq K, \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) \leq M.$$

For example, as $x \to \infty$,

$$-x^4 \to -\infty, \qquad 1 - \sqrt{x} \to -\infty, \qquad \tan\left(\frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \to -\infty.$$

To say that

$$\text{as} \quad x \to -\infty, \quad f(x) \to \infty$$

is to say that, *as x decreases without bound*, $f(x)$ *becomes arbitrarily large*: given any positive number M, there exists a negative number K such that

$$\text{if} \quad x \leq K, \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) \geq M.$$

For example, as $x \to -\infty$,

$$x^2 \to \infty, \qquad \sqrt{1 - x} \to \infty, \qquad \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x^2}\right) \to \infty.$$

Finally, to say that

$$\text{as} \quad x \to -\infty, \quad f(x) \to -\infty$$

is to say that, *as x decreases without bound, f(x) becomes arbitrarily large negative*: given any negative number M, there exists a negative number K such that,

$$\text{if} \qquad x \le K, \qquad \text{then} \qquad f(x) \le M.$$

For example, as $x \to -\infty$,

$$x^3 \to -\infty, \qquad -\sqrt{1-x} \to -\infty, \qquad \tan\left(\frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \to -\infty.$$

Remark As you can readily see, $f(x) \to -\infty$ iff $-f(x) \to \infty$. ❑

Suppose now that P is a nonconstant polynomial:

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 \quad (a_n \ne 0,\ n \ge 1).$$

For large $|x|$ — that is, for large positive x and for large negative x — the leading term $a_n x^n$ dominates. Thus, what happens to $P(x)$ as $x \to \pm\infty$ depends entirely on what happens to $a_n x^n$. (You are asked to confirm this in Exercise 43.)

Example 3

(a) As $x \to \infty$, $3x^4 - 100x^3 + 2x - 5 \to \infty$ since $3x^4 \to \infty$.
(b) As $x \to -\infty$, $5x^3 + 12x^2 + 80 \to -\infty$ since $5x^3 \to -\infty$. ❑

Finally, we point out that if $f(x) \to \infty$, then f cannot have an absolute maximum value, and if $f(x) \to -\infty$, then f cannot have an absolute minimum value.

Example 4

Find the critical points of the function

$$f(x) = 6\sqrt{x} - x\sqrt{x}.$$

Then find and classify all the extreme values.

SOLUTION The domain is $[0, \infty)$. To simplify the differentiation, we use fractional exponents:

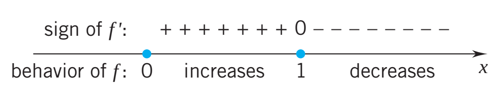
$$f(x) = 6x^{1/2} - x^{3/2}.$$

On $(0, \infty)$

$$f'(x) = 3x^{-1/2} - \frac{3}{2}x^{1/2} = \frac{3(2-x)}{2\sqrt{x}}. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

Since $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 2$, we see that 2 is a critical point.

The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:



Therefore,

$$f(0) = 0 \text{ is an endpoint minimum;}$$

$$f(2) = 6\sqrt{2} - 2\sqrt{2} = 4\sqrt{2} \text{ is a local maximum.}$$

Since $f(x) = \sqrt{x}(6 - x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to \infty$, the function has no absolute minimum value. Since f increases on $[0, 2]$ and decreases on $[2, \infty)$, the local maximum is the absolute maximum. The graph of f appears in Figure 4.4.7. ❑

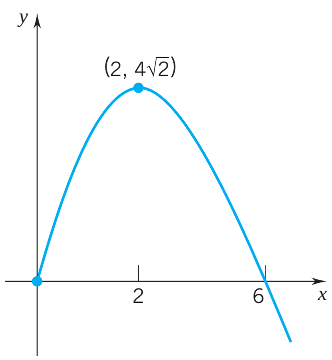


Figure 4.4.7

A Summary for Finding All the Extreme Values (Local, Endpoint, and Absolute) of a Continuous Function f

Step 1. Find the critical points — the interior points c at which $f'(c) = 0$ or $f'(c)$ does not exist.

Step 2. Test each endpoint of the domain by examining the sign of the first derivative at nearby points.

Step 3. Test each critical point c by examining the sign of the first derivative on both sides of c (the first-derivative test) or by checking the sign of the second derivative at c itself (second-derivative test).

Step 4. If the domain is unbounded on the right, determine the behavior of $f(x)$ as $x \to \infty$; if unbounded on the left, check the behavior of $f(x)$ as $x \to -\infty$.

Step 5. Determine whether any of the endpoint extremes and local extremes are absolute extremes.

Example 5 Find the critical points of the function

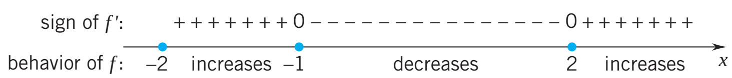
$$f(x) = \tfrac{1}{4}(x^3 - \tfrac{3}{2}x^2 - 6x + 2), \qquad x \in [-2, \infty).$$

The find and classify all the extreme values.

SOLUTION To find the critical points, we differentiate:

$$f'(x) = \tfrac{1}{4}(3x^2 - 3x - 6) = \tfrac{3}{4}(x + 1)(x - 2).$$

Since $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = -1$ and $x = 2$, the numbers -1 and 2 are critical points. The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:



We can see from the sign of f' that

$$f(-2) = \tfrac{1}{4}(-8 - 6 + 12 + 2) = 0 \qquad \text{is an endpoint minimum;}$$

$$f(-1) = \tfrac{1}{4}(-1 - \tfrac{3}{2} + 6 + 2) = \tfrac{11}{8} \qquad \text{is a local maximum;}$$

$$f(2) = \tfrac{1}{4}(8 - 6 - 12 + 2) = -2 \qquad \text{is a local minimum.}$$

The function takes on no absolute maximum value since $f(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to \infty$; $f(2) = -2$ is the absolute minimum value. The graph of f is shown in Figure 4.4.8. ❑

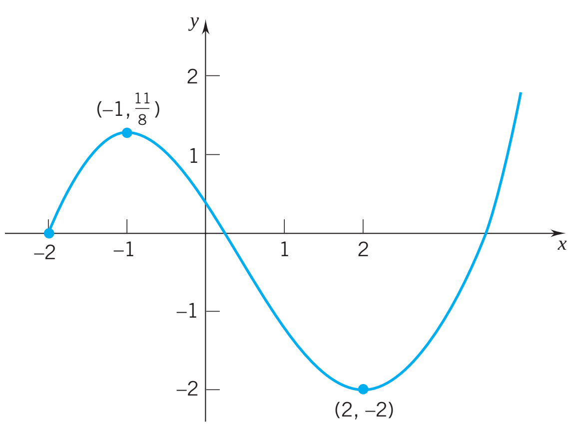


Figure 4.4.8

Example 6 Find the critical points of the function

$$f(x) = \sin x - \sin^2 x, \qquad x \in [0, 2\pi].$$

Then find and classify all the extreme values.

SOLUTION On the interval $(0, 2\pi)$

$$f'(x) = \cos x - 2 \sin x \cos x = \cos x(1 - 2 \sin x).$$

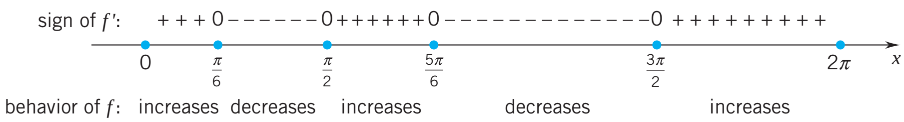
Setting $f'(x) = 0$, we have

$$\cos x(1 - 2 \sin x) = 0.$$

This equation is satisfied by the numbers x at which $\cos x = 0$ and the numbers x at which $\sin x = \frac{1}{2}$. On $(0, 2\pi)$, the cosine is 0 only at $x = \pi/2$ and $x = 3\pi/2$, and the sine is $\frac{1}{2}$ only at $x = \pi/6$ and $x = 5\pi/6$. The critical points, listed in order, are

$$\pi/6, \qquad \pi/2, \qquad 5\pi/6, \qquad 3\pi/2.$$

The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:



Therefore

$f(0) = 0$ is an endpoint minimum; $\quad f(\pi/6) = \frac{1}{4}$ is a local maximum;

$f(\pi/2) = 0$ is a local minimum; $\quad f(5\pi/6) = \frac{1}{4}$ is a local maximum;

$f(3\pi/2) = -2$ is a local minimum; $\quad f(2\pi) = 0$ is an endpoint maximum.

Note that $f(\pi/6) = f(5\pi/6) = \frac{1}{4}$ is the absolute maximum and $f(3\pi/2) = -2$ is the absolute minimum. The graph of the function is shown in Figure 4.4.9. ❑

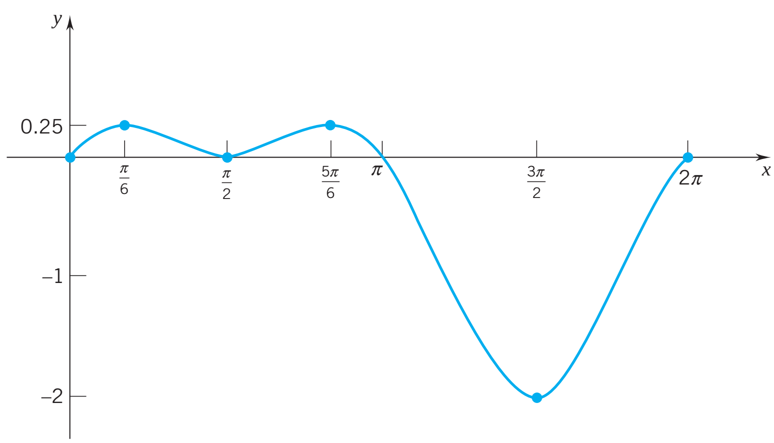


Figure 4.4.9

EXERCISES 4.4

Exercises 1–30. Find the critical points. Then find and classify all the extreme values.

1. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 2}$.

2. $f(x) = (x - 1)(x - 2)$.

3. $f(x) = x^2 - 4x + 1, \quad x \in [0, 3]$.

4. $f(x) = 2x^2 + 5x - 1, \quad x \in [-2, 0]$.

5. $f(x) = x^2 + \dfrac{1}{x}$.

6. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x^2}$.

7. $f(x) = x^2 + \dfrac{1}{x}, \quad x \in \left[\frac{1}{10}, 2\right].$

8. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x^2}, \quad x[1, \sqrt{2}].$

9. $f(x) = (x-1)(x-2), \quad x \in [0, 2].$

10. $f(x) = (x-1)^2(x-2)^2, \quad x \in [0, 4].$

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{4+x^2}, \quad x \in [-3, 1].$

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{1+x^2}, \quad x \in [-1, 2].$

13. $f(x) = (x - \sqrt{x})^2.$

14. $f(x) = x\sqrt{4-x^2}.$

15. $f(x) = x\sqrt{3-x}.$

16. $f(x) = \sqrt{x} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}}.$

17. $f(x) = 1 - \sqrt[3]{x-1}.$

18. $f(x) = (4x-1)^{1/3}(2x-1)^{2/3}.$

19. $f(x) = \sin^2 x - \sqrt{3}\cos x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi.$

20. $f(x) = \cot x + x, \quad 0 \le x \le \frac{2}{3}\pi.$

21. $f(x) = 2\cos^3 x + 3\cos x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi.$

22. $f(x) = \sin 2x - x, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi.$

23. $f(x) = \tan x - x, \quad -\frac{1}{3}\pi \le x \le \frac{1}{2}\pi.$

24. $f(x) = \sin^4 x - \sin^2 x, \quad 0 \le x \le \frac{2}{3}\pi.$

25. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -2x, & 0 \le x < 1 \\ x-3, & 1 \le x \le 4 \\ 5-x, & 4 < x \le 7. \end{cases}$

26. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+9, & -8 \le x < -3 \\ x^2+x, & -3 \le x \le 2 \\ 5x-4, & 2 < x < 5. \end{cases}$

27. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2+1, & -2 \le x < -1 \\ 5+2x-x^2, & -1 \le x \le 3 \\ x-1, & 3 < x < 6. \end{cases}$

28. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2-2x-x^2, & -2 \le x \le 0 \\ |x-2|, & 0 < x < 3 \\ \frac{1}{3}(x-2)^3, & 3 \le x \le 4. \end{cases}$

29. $f(x) = \begin{cases} |x+1|, & -3 \le x < 0 \\ x^2-4x+2, & 0 \le x < 3 \\ 2x-7, & 3 \le x < 4. \end{cases}$

30. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & 0 \le x < 1 \\ -2x, & 1 < x < 2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}x^2, & 2 \le x \le 3. \end{cases}$

Exercises 31–34. Sketch the graph of an everywhere differentiable function that satisfies the given conditions. If you find that the conditions are contradictory and therefore no such function exists, explain your reasoning.

31. Local maximum at -1, local minimum at 1, $f(3) = 6$ the absolute maximum, no absolute minimum.

32. $f(0) = 1$ the absolute minimum, local maximum at 4, local minimum at 7, no absolute maximum.

33. $f(1) = f(3) = 0$, $f'(x) > 0$ for all x.

34. $f'(x) = 0$ at each integer x; f has no extreme values.

35. Show that the cubic $p(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$ has extreme values iff $a^2 > 3b$.

36. Let r be a rational number, $r > 1$, and set

$$f(x) = (1+x)^r - (1+rx) \qquad \text{for} \qquad x \ge -1.$$

Show that 0 is a critical point for f and show that $f(0) = 0$ is the absolute minimum value.

37. Suppose that c is a critical point for f and $f'(x) > 0$ for $x \ne c$. Show that if $f(c)$ is a local maximum, then f is not continuous at c.

38. What can you conclude about a function f continuous on $[a, b]$, if for some c in (a, b), $f(c)$ is both a local maximum and a local minimum?

39. Suppose that f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $f(a) = f(b)$. Show that f has at least one critical point in (a, b).

40. Suppose that $c_1 < c_2$ and that f takes on local maxima at c_1 and c_2. Prove that if f is continuous on $[c_1, c_2]$, then there is at least one point c in (c_1, c_2) at which f takes on a local minimum.

41. Give an example of a nonconstant function that takes on both its absolute maximum and absolute minimum on every interval.

42. Give an example of a nonconstant function that has an infinite number of distinct local maxima and an infinite number of distinct local minima.

43. Let P be a polynomial with positive leading coefficient:

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0, \qquad n \ge 1.$$

Clearly, as $x \to \infty$, $a_n x^n \to \infty$. Show that, as $x \to \infty$, $P(x) \to \infty$ by showing that, given any positive number M, there exists a positive number K such that, if $x \ge K$, then $P(x) \ge M$.

44. Show that of all rectangles with diagonal of length c, the square has the largest area.

45. Let p and q be positive rational numbers and set $f(x) = x^p(1-x)^q$, $0 \le x \le 1$. Find the absolute maximum value of f.

46. The sum of two numbers is 16. Find the numbers given that the sum of their cubes is an absolute minimum.

47. If the angle of elevation of a cannon is θ and a projectile is fired with muzzle velocity v ft/sec, then the range of the projectile is given by the formula

$$R = \frac{v^2 \sin 2\theta}{32} \text{ feet.}$$

What angle of elevation maximizes the range?

48. A piece of wire of length L is to be cut into two pieces, one piece to form a square and the other piece to form an equilateral triangle. How should the wire be cut so as to

(a) maximize the sum of the areas of the square and the triangle?

(b) minimize the sum of the areas of the square and the triangle?

Exercises 49–52. Use a graphing utility to graph the function on the indicated interval. Estimate the critical points of the function and classify the extreme values. Round off your estimates to three decimal places.

49. $f(x) = x^3 - 4x + 2x \sin x; \quad [-2.5, 3].$

50. $f(x) = x^4 - 7x^2 + 10x + 3; \quad [-3, 3].$

51. $f(x) = x \cos 2x - \cos^2 x; \quad [-\pi, \pi].$

52. $f(x) = 5x^{2/3} + 3x^{5/3} + 1; \quad [-3, 1].$

Exercises 53–55. Use a graphing utility to determine whether the function satisfies the hypothesis of the extreme-value theorem on $[a, b]$ (Theorem 2.6.2). If the hypothesis is satisfied, find the absolute maximum value M and the absolute minimum value m. If the hypothesis is not satisfied, find M and m if they exist.

53. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - \sqrt{2-x}, & \text{if } 1 \le x \le 2 \\ 1 - \sqrt{x-2}, & \text{if } 2 < x \le 3; \end{cases} \quad [a, b] = [1, 3].$

54. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{11}{4}x - \frac{19}{4}, & \text{if } 0 \le x \le 3 \\ \sqrt{x-3} + 2, & \text{if } 3 < x \le 4; \end{cases} \quad [a, b] = [0, 4].$

55. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}x + 1, & \text{if } 1 \le x < 4 \\ \sqrt{x-3} + 2, & \text{if } 4 \le x \le 6; \end{cases} \quad [a, b] = [1, 6].$

4.5 SOME MAX-MIN PROBLEMS

The techniques of the preceding two sections can be brought to bear on a wide variety of max-min problems. The *key* idea is to express the quantity to be maximized or minimized as a function of one variable. If the function is differentiable, we can differentiate and analyze the results. We begin with a geometric example.

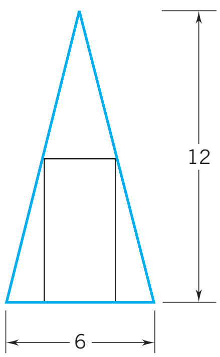


Figure 4.5.1

Example 1 An isosceles triangle has a base of 6 units and a height of 12 units. Find the maximum possible area for a rectangle that is inscribed in the triangle and has one side resting on the base of the triangle. What are the dimensions of the rectangle(s) of maximum area?

SOLUTION Figure 4.5.1 shows the isosceles triangle and a rectangle inscribed in the specified manner. In Figure 4.5.2 we have introduced a rectangular coordinate system. With x and y as in the figure, the area of the rectangle is given by the product

$$A = 2xy.$$

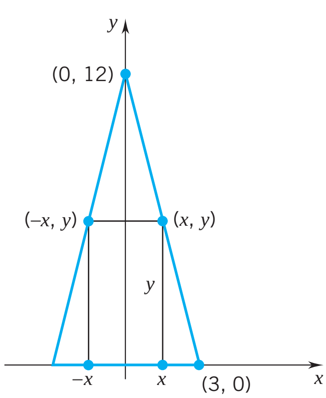


Figure 4.5.2

This is the quantity we want to maximize. To do this we have to express A as a function of only one variable.

Since the point (x, y) lies on the line that passes through $(0, 12)$ and $(3, 0)$,

$$y = 12 - 4x. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

The area of the rectangle can now be expressed entirely in terms of x:

$$A(x) = 2x(12 - 4x) = 24x - 8x^2.$$

Since x and y represent lengths, x and y cannot be negative. As you can check, this restricts x to the closed interval $[0, 3]$.

Our problem can now be formulated as follows: find the absolute maximum of the function

$$A(x) = 24x - 8x^2, \qquad x \in [0, 3].$$

The derivative

$$A'(x) = 24 - 16x$$

is defined for all $x \in (0, 3)$. Setting $A'(x) = 0$, we have

$$24 - 16x = 0 \qquad \text{which implies} \qquad x = \tfrac{3}{2}.$$

The only critical point is $x = \frac{3}{2}$. Evaluating A at the endpoints of the interval and at the critical point, we have:

$$A(0) = 24(0) - 8(0)^2 = 0,$$
$$A\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right) = 24\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right) - 8\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right)^2 = 18,$$
$$A(3) = 24(3) - 8(3)^2 = 0.$$

The function has an absolute maximum of 18, and this value is taken on at $x = \frac{3}{2}$. At $x = \frac{3}{2}$, the base $2x = 3$ and the height $y = 12 - 4x = 6$.

The maximum possible area is 18 square units. The rectangle that produces this area has a base of 3 units and a height of 6 units. ❑

The example we just considered suggests a basic strategy for solving max-min problems.

Strategy

Step 1. Draw a representative figure and assign labels to the relevant quantities.

Step 2. Identify the quantity to maximized or minimized and find a formula for it.

Step 3. Express the quantity to be maximized or minimized in terms of a single variable; use the conditions given in the problem to eliminate the other variable(s).

Step 4. Determine the domain of the function generated by Step 3.

Step 5. Apply the techniques of the preceding sections to find the extreme value(s).

Example 2 A paint manufacturer wants cylindrical cans for its specialty enamels. The can is to have a volume of 12 fluid ounces, which is approximately 22 cubic inches. Find the dimensions of the can that will require the least amount of material. See Figure 4.5.3.

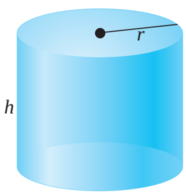


Figure 4.5.3

SOLUTION Let r be the radius of the can and h the height. The total surface area (top, bottom, lateral area) of a circular cylinder of radius r and height h is given by the formula

$$S = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh.$$

This is the quantity that we want to minimize.

Since the volume $V = \pi r^2 h$ is to be 22 cubic inches, we require that

$$\pi r^2 h = 22 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad h = \frac{22}{\pi r^2}.$$

It follows from these equations that r and h must both be positive. Thus, we want to minimize the function

$$S(r) = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi r\left(\frac{22}{\pi r^2}\right) = 2\pi r^2 + \frac{44}{r}, \qquad r \in (0, \infty).$$

Differentiation gives

$$\frac{dS}{dr} = 4\pi r - \frac{44}{r^2} = \frac{4\pi r^3 - 44}{r^2} = \frac{4(\pi r^3 - 11)}{r^2}.$$

The derivative is 0 where $\pi r^3 - 11 = 0$, which is the point $r_0 = (11/\pi)^{1/3}$. Since

$$\frac{dS}{dr} \text{ is } \begin{cases} \text{negative} & \text{for} \quad r < r_0 \\ 0 & \text{at} \quad r = r_0 \\ \text{positive} & \text{for} \quad r > r_0, \end{cases}$$

S decreases on $(0, r_0]$ and increases on $[r_0, \infty)$. Therefore, the function S is minimized by setting $r = r_0 = (11/\pi)^{1/3}$.

The dimensions of the can that will require the least amount of material are as follows:

$$\text{radius } r = (11/\pi)^{1/3} \cong 1.5 \text{ inches}, \qquad \text{height } h = \frac{22}{\pi(11/\pi)^{2/3}} = 2(11/\pi)^{1/3} \cong 3 \text{ inches}.$$

The can should be as wide as it is tall. ❑

Example 3 A window in the shape of rectangle capped by a semicircle is to have perimeter p. Choose the radius of the semicircular part so that the window admits the most light.

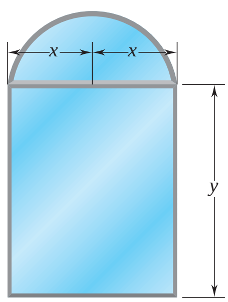


Figure 4.5.4

SOLUTION We take the point of view that the window which admits the most light is the one with maximum area. As in Figure 4.5.4, we let x be the radius of the semicircular part and y be the height of the rectangular part. We want to express the area

$$A = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2 + 2xy$$

as a function of x alone. To do this, we must express y in terms of x.

Since the perimeter is p, we have

$$p = 2x + 2y + \pi x$$

and thus

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2}[p - (2 + \pi)x].$$

Since x and y represent lengths, these variables must be nonnegative. For both x and y to be nonnegative, we must have $0 \le x \le p/(2 + \pi)$.

The area can now be expressed in terms of x alone:

$$\begin{aligned} A(x) &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2 + 2xy \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2 + 2x \left\{\tfrac{1}{2}[p - (2 + \pi)x]\right\} \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2 + px - (2 + \pi)x^2 = px - \left(2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right) x^2. \end{aligned}$$

We want to maximize the function

$$A(x) = px - \left(2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right) x^2, \qquad 0 \le x \le p/(2 + \pi).$$

The derivative

$$A'(x) = p - (4 + \pi)x$$

is 0 only at $x = p/(4 + \pi)$. Since $A(0) = A[p/(2 + \pi)] = 0$, and since $A'(x) > 0$ for $0 < x < p/(4 + \pi)$ and $A'(x) < 0$ for $p/(4 + \pi) < x < p/(2 + \pi)$, the function A is maximized by setting $x = p/(4 + \pi)$. For the window to have maximum area, the radius of the semicircular part must be $p/(4 + \pi)$. ❑

Example 4 The highway department is asked to construct a road between point A and point B. Point A lies on an abandoned road that runs east-west. Point B is 3 miles north of the point of the old road that is 5 miles east of A. The engineering

division proposes that the road be constructed by restoring a section of the old road from A to some point P and constructing a new road from P to B. Given that the cost of restoring the old road is \$2,000,000 per mile and the cost of a new road is \$4,000,000 per mile, how much of the old road should be restored so as to minimize the cost of the project.

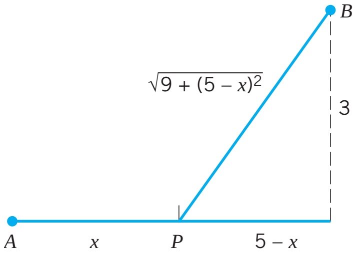


Figure 4.5.5

SOLUTION Figure 4.5.5 shows the geometry of the problem. Notice that we have chosen a straight line joining P and B rather than some curved path. (The shortest connection between two points is provided by the straight-line path.) We let x be the amount of old road that will be restored. Then

$$\sqrt{9+(5-x)^2} = \sqrt{34-10x+x^2}$$

is the length of the new part. The total cost of constructing the two sections of road is

$$C(x) = 2 \cdot 10^6 x + 4 \cdot 10^6 [34-10x+x^2]^{1/2}, \qquad 0 \le x \le 5.$$

We want to find the value of x that minimizes this function.

Differentiation gives

$$C'(x) = 2 \cdot 10^6 + 4 \cdot 10^6 \left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) [34-10x+x^2]^{-1/2}(2x-10)$$

$$= 2 \cdot 10^6 + \frac{4 \cdot 10^6 (x-5)}{[34-10x+x^2]^{1/2}}, \qquad 0 < x < 5.$$

Setting $C'(x) = 0$, we find that

$$1 + \frac{2(x-5)}{[34-10x+x^2]^{1/2}} = 0$$

$$2(x-5) = -[34-10x+x^2]^{1/2}$$

$$4(x^2-10x+25) = 34-10x+x^2$$

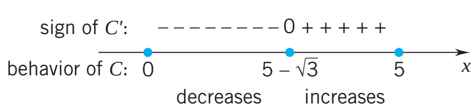
$$3x^2-30x+66 = 0$$

$$x^2-10x+22 = 0.$$

By the general quadratic formula, we have

$$x = \frac{10 \pm \sqrt{100-4(22)}}{2} = 5 \pm \sqrt{3}.$$

The value $x = 5+\sqrt{3}$ is not in the domain of our function; the value we want is $x = 5-\sqrt{3}$. We analyze the sign of C':



Since the function is continuous on $[0, 5]$, it decreases on $[0, 5-\sqrt{3}]$ and increases on $[5-\sqrt{3}, 5]$. The number $x = 5-\sqrt{3} \cong 3.27$ gives the minimum value of C. The highway department will minimize its costs by restoring 3.27 miles of the old road. ❑

Example 5 (*The angle of incidence equals the angle of reflection.*) Figure 4.5.6 depicts light from point A reflected by a mirror to point B. Two angles have been marked: the *angle of incidence*, θ_i, and the *angle of reflection*, θ_r. Experiment shows

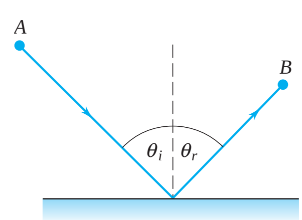


Figure 4.5.6

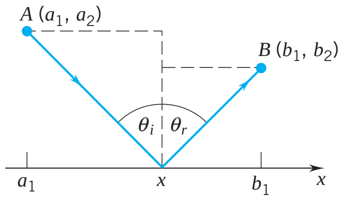


Figure 4.5.7

that $\theta_i = \theta_r$. Derive this result by postulating that the light travels from A to the mirror and then on to B by the shortest possible path.†

SOLUTION We write the length of the path as a function of x. In the setup of Figure 4.5.7,

$$L(x) = \sqrt{(x - a_1)^2 + a_2^2} + \sqrt{(x - b_1)^2 + b_2^2}, \qquad x \in [a_1, b_1].$$

Differentiation gives

$$L'(x) = \frac{x - a_1}{\sqrt{(x - a_1)^2 + a_2^2}} + \frac{x - b_1}{\sqrt{(x - b_1)^2 + b_2^2}}.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} L'(x) = 0 \quad & \text{iff } \frac{x - a_1}{\sqrt{(x - a_1)^2 + a_2^2}} = \frac{b_1 - x}{\sqrt{(x - b_1)^2 + b_2^2}} \\ & \text{iff } \sin\theta_i = \sin\theta_r \qquad \text{(see the figure)} \\ & \text{iff } \theta_i = \theta_r. \end{aligned}$$

That $L(x)$ is minimal when $\theta_i = \theta_r$ can be seen by noting that $L''(x)$ is always positive,

$$L''(x) = \frac{a_2^2}{[(x - a_1)^2 + a_2^2]^{3/2}} + \frac{b_2^2}{[(x - b_1)^2 + b_2^2]^{3/2}} > 0,$$

and applying the second-derivative test. ❏

(We must admit that there is a much simpler way to do Example 5, a way that requires no calculus at all. Can you find it?)

Now we will work out a simple problem in which the function to be maximized is defined not on an interval or on a union of intervals, but on a discrete set of points, in this case a finite collection of integers.

Example 6 A small manufacturer of fine rugs has the capacity to produce 25 rugs per week. Assume (for the sake of this example) that the production of the rugs per week leads to an annual profit which, measured in thousands of dollars, is given by the function $P = 100n - 600 - 3n^2$. Find the level of weekly production that maximizes P.

SOLUTION Since n is an integer, it makes no sense to differentiate

$$P = 100n - 600 - 3n^2$$

with respect to n.

Table 4.5.1, compiled by direct calculation, shows the profit P that corresponds to each production level n from 8 to 25. (For $n < 8$, P is negative; 25 is full capacity.) The table shows that the largest profit comes from setting production at 17 units per week.

We can avoid the arithmetic required to construct the table by considering the function

$$f(x) = 100x - 600 - 3x^2, \qquad 8 \le x \le 25.$$

†This is a special case of Fermat's *principle of least time*, which says that, of all (neighboring) paths, light chooses the one that requires the least time. If light passes from one medium to another, the geometrically shortest path is not necessarily the path of least time.

Table 4.5.1

n	P	n	P	n	P
8	8	14	212	20	200
9	57	15	225	21	177
10	100	16	232	22	148
11	137	17	233	23	113
12	168	18	228	24	72
13	193	19	217	25	25

For integral values of x, the function agrees with P. It is continuous on $[8, 25]$ and differentiable on $(8, 25)$ with derivative

$$f'(x) = 100 - 6x.$$

Obviously, $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = \frac{100}{6} = 16\frac{2}{3}$. Since $f'(x) > 0$ on $(8, 16\frac{2}{3})$ and is continuous at the endpoints, f increases on $[8, 16\frac{2}{3}]$. Since $f'(x) < 0$ on $(16\frac{2}{3}, 25)$ and is continuous at the endpoints, f decreases on $[16\frac{2}{3}, 25]$. The largest value of f corresponding to an integer value of x will therefore occur at $x = 16$ or at $x = 17$. Direct calculation of $f(16)$ and $f(17)$ shows that the choice $x = 17$ is correct. ❑

EXERCISES 4.5

1. Find the greatest possible value of xy given that x and y are both positive and $x + y = 40$.

2. Find the dimensions of the rectangle of perimeter 24 that has the largest area.

3. A rectangular garden 200 square feet in area is to be fenced off against rabbits. Find the dimensions that will require the least amount of fencing given that one side of the garden is already protected by a barn.

4. Find the largest possible area for a rectangle with base on the x-axis and upper vertices on the curve $y = 4 - x^2$.

5. Find the largest possible area for a rectangle inscribed in a circle of radius 4.

6. Find the dimensions of the rectangle of area A that has the smallest perimeter.

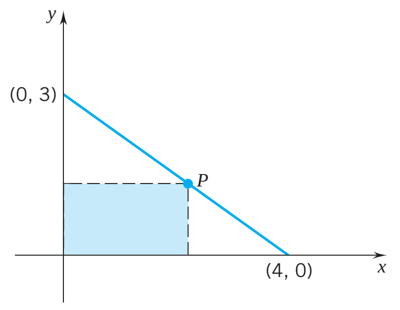
7. How much fencing is needed to define two adjacent rectangular playgrounds of the same width and total area 15,000 square feet?

8. A rectangular warehouse will have 5000 square feet of floor space and will be separated into two rectangular rooms by an interior wall. The cost of the exterior walls is \$150 per linear foot and the cost of the interior wall is \$100 per linear foot. Find the dimensions that will minimize the cost of building the warehouse.

9. Rework Example 3; this time assume that the semicircular portion of the window admits only one-third as much light per square foot as does the rectangular portion.

10. A rectangular plot of land is to be defined on one side by a straight river and on three sides by post-and-rail fencing. Eight hundred feet of fencing are available. How should the fencing be deployed so as to maximize the area of the plot?

11. Find the coordinates of P that maximize the area of the rectangle shown in the figure.



12. A triangle is to be formed as follows: the base of the triangle is to lie on the x-axis, one side is to lie on the line $y = 3x$, and the third side is to pass through the point $(1, 1)$. Assign a slope to the third side that maximizes the area of the triangle.

13. A triangle is to be formed as follows: two sides are to lie on the coordinate axes and the third side is to pass through the point $(2, 5)$. Assign a slope to the third side that minimizes the area of the triangle.

14. Show that, for the triangle of Exercise 13, it is impossible to assign a slope to the third side that maximizes the area of the triangle.

15. What are the dimensions of the base of the rectangular box of greatest volume that can be constructed from 100 square inches of cardboard if the base is to be twice as long as it is wide? Assume that the box has a top.

16. Exercise 15 under the assumption that the box has no top.

17. Find the dimensions of the isosceles triangle of largest area with perimeter 12.

18. Find the point(s) on the parabola $y = \frac{1}{8}x^2$ closest to the point $(0, 6)$.

19. Find the point(s) on the parabola $x = y^2$ closest to the point $(0, 3)$.

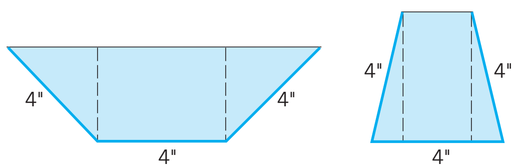
20. Find A and B given that the function $y = Ax^{-1/2} + Bx^{1/2}$ has a minimum of 6 at $x = 9$.

21. Find the maximal possible area for a rectangle inscribed in the ellipse $16x^2 + 9y^2 = 144$.

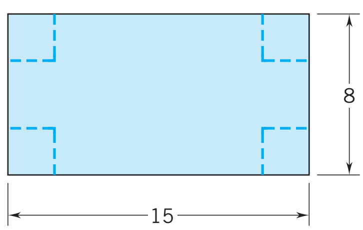
22. Find the maximal possible area for a rectangle inscribed in the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$.

23. A pentagon with a perimeter of 30 inches is to be constructed by adjoining an equilateral triangle to a rectangle. Find the dimensions of the rectangle and triangle that will maximize the area of the pentagon.

24. A 10-foot section of gutter is made from a 12-inch-wide strip of sheet metal by folding up 4-inch strips on each side so that they make the same angle with the bottom of the gutter. Determine the depth of the gutter that has the greatest carrying capacity. *Caution*: There are two ways to sketch the trapezoidal cross section. (See the figure.)



25. From a 15×8 rectangular piece of cardboard four congruent squares are to be cut out, one at each corner. (See the figure.) The remaining crosslike piece is then to be folded into an open box. What size squares should be cut out so as to maximize the volume of the resulting box?



26. A page is to contain 81 square centimeters of print. The margins at the top and bottom are to be 3 centimeters each and, at the sides, 2 centimeters each. Find the most economical dimensions given that the cost of a page varies directly with the perimeter of the page.

27. Let ABC be a triangle with vertices $A = (-3, 0)$, $B = (0, 6)$, $C = (3, 0)$. Let P be a point on the line segment that joins B to the origin. Find the position of P that minimizes the sum of the distances between P and the vertices.

28. Solve Exercise 27 with $A = (-6, 0)$, $B = (0, 3)$, $C = (6, 0)$.

29. An 8-foot-high fence is located 1 foot from a building. Determine the length of the shortest ladder that can be leaned against the building and touch the top of the fence.

30. Two hallways, one 8 feet wide and the other 6 feet wide, meet at right angles. Determine the length of the longest ladder that can be carried horizontally from one hallway into the other.

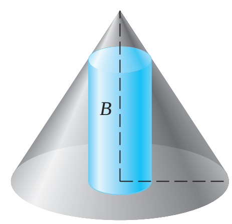
31. A rectangular banner is to have a red border and a rectangular white center. The width of the border at top and bottom is to be 8 inches, and along the sides 6 inches. The total area is to be 27 square feet. Find the dimensions of the banner that maximize the area of the white center.

32. Conical paper cups are usually made so that the depth is $\sqrt{2}$ times the radius of the rim. Show that this design requires the least amount of paper per unit volume.

33. A string 28 inches long is to be cut into two pieces, one piece to form a square and the other to form a circle. How should the string be cut so as to (a) maximize the sum of the two areas? (b) minimize the sum of the two areas?

34. What is the maximum volume for a rectangular box (square base, no top) made from 12 square feet of cardboard?

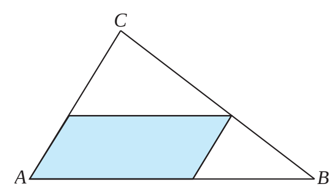
35. The figure shows a cylinder inscribed in a right circular cone of height 8 and base radius 5. Find the dimensions of the cylinder that maximize its volume.



36. As a variant of Exercise 35, find the dimensions of the cylinder that maximize the area of its curved surface.

37. A rectangular box with square base and top is to be made to contain 1250 cubic feet. The material for the base costs 35 cents per square foot, for the top 15 cents per square foot, and for the sides 20 cents per square foot. Find the dimensions that will minimize the cost of the box.

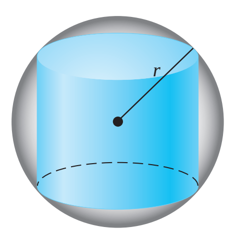
38. What is the largest possible area for a parallelogram inscribed in a triangle ABC in the manner of the figure?



39. Find the dimensions of the isosceles triangle of least area that circumscribes a circle of radius r.

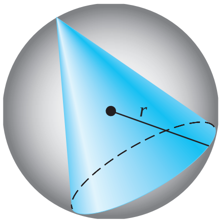
40. What is the maximum possible area for a triangle inscribed in a circle of radius r?

41. The figure shows a right circular cylinder inscribed in a sphere of radius r. Find the dimensions of the cylinder that maximize the volume of the cylinder.



42. As a variant of Exercise 41, find the dimensions of the right circular cylinder that maximize the lateral area of the cylinder.

43. A right circular cone is inscribed in a sphere of radius r as in the figure. Find the dimensions of the cone that maximize the volume of the cone.



44. What is the largest possible volume for a right circular cone of slant height a?

45. A power line is needed to connect a power station on the shore of a river to an island 4 kilometers downstream and 1 kilometer offshore. Find the minimum cost for such a line given that it costs \$50,000 per kilometer to lay wire under water and \$30,000 per kilometer to lay wire under ground.

46. A tapestry 7 feet high hangs on a wall. The lower edge is 9 feet above an observer's eye. How far from the wall should the observer stand to obtain the most favorable view? Namely, what distance from the wall maximizes the visual angle of the observer? HINT: Use the formula for $\tan(A - B)$.

47. An object of weight W is dragged along a horizontal plane by means of a force P whose line of action makes an angle θ with the plane. The magnitude of the force is given by the formula

$$P = \frac{\mu W}{\mu \sin\theta + \cos\theta}$$

where μ denotes the coefficient of friction. Find the value of θ that minimizes P.

48. The range of a projectile fired with elevation angle θ at an inclined plane is given by the formula

$$R = \frac{2v^2 \cos\theta \sin(\theta - \alpha)}{g \cos^2\alpha}$$

where α is the inclination of the target plane, and v and g are constants. Calculate θ for maximum range.

49. Two sources of heat are placed s meters apart—a source of intensity a at A and a source of intensity b at B. The intensity of heat at a point P on the line segment between A and B is given by the formula

$$I = \frac{a}{x^2} + \frac{b}{(s - x)^2},$$

where x is the distance between P and A measured in meters. At what point between A and B will the temperature be lowest?

50. The distance from a point to a line is the distance from that point to the closest point of the line. What point of the line $Ax + By + C = 0$ is closest to the point (x_1, y_1)? What is the distance from (x_1, y_1) to the line?

51. Let f be a differentiable function defined on an open interval I. Let $P(a, b)$ be a point not on the graph of f. Show that if $\overline{PQ}$ is the longest or shortest line segment that joins P to the graph of f, then $\overline{PQ}$ is perpendicular to the graph of f.

52. Draw the parabola $y = x^2$. On the parabola mark a point $P \neq O$. Through P draw the normal line. The normal line intersects the parabola at another point Q. Show that the distance between P and Q is minimized by setting $P = \left(\pm\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.

53. For each integer n, set $f(n) = 6n^4 - 16n^3 + 9n^2$. Find the integer n that minimizes $f(n)$.

54. A local bus company offers charter trips to Blue Mountain Museum at a fare of \$37 per person if 16 to 35 passengers sign up for the trip. The company does not charter trips for fewer than 16 passengers. The bus has 48 seats. If more than 35 passengers sign up, then the fare for every passenger is reduced by 50 cents for each passenger in excess of 35 that signs up. Determine the number of passengers that generates the greatest revenue for the bus company.

55. The Hotwheels Rent-A-Car Company derives an average net profit of \$12 per customer if it services 50 customers or fewer. If it services more than 50 customers, then the average net profit is decreased by 6 cents for each customer over 50. What number of customers produces the greatest total net profit for the company?

56. A steel plant has the capacity to produce x tons per day of low-grade steel and y tons per day of high-grade steel where

$$y = \frac{40 - 5x}{10 - x}.$$

Given that the market price of low-grade steel is half that of high-grade steel, show that about $5\frac{1}{2}$ tons of low-grade steel should be produced per day for maximum revenue.

57. The path of a ball is the curve $y = mx - \frac{1}{400}(m^2 + 1)x^2$. Here the origin is taken as the point from which the ball is thrown and m is the initial slope of the trajectory. At a distance which depends on m, the ball returns to the height from which it was thrown. What value of m maximizes this distance?

58. Given the trajectory of Exercise 57, what value of m maximizes the height at which the ball strikes a vertical wall 300 feet away?

59. A truck is to be driven 300 miles on a freeway at a constant speed of v miles per hour. Speed laws require that $35 \leq v \leq 70$. Assume that the fuel costs \$2.60 per gallon and is consumed at the rate of $1 + (\frac{1}{400})v^2$ gallons per hour. Given that the driver's wages are \$20 per hour, at what speed should the truck be driven to minimize the truck owner's expenses?

60. A tour boat heads out on a 100-kilometer sight-seeing trip. Given that the fixed costs of operating the boat total \$2500 per hour, that the cost of fuel varies directly with the square of the speed of the boat, and at 10 kilometers per hour the cost of the fuel is \$400 per hour, find the speed that minimizes the boat owner's expenses. Is the speed that minimizes the owner's expenses dependent on the length of the trip?

61. An oil drum is to be made in the form of a right circular cylinder to contain 16π cubic feet. The upright drum is to be taller than it is wide, but not more than 6 feet tall. Determine the dimensions of the drum that minimize surface area.

62. The cost of erecting a small office building is \$1,000,000 for the first story, \$1,100,000 for the second, \$1,200,000 for the third, and so on. Other expenses (lot, basement, etc.) are \$5,000,000. Assume that the annual rent is \$200,000 per story. How many stories will provide the greatest return on investment?†

63. Points A and B are opposite points on the shore of a circular lake of radius 1 mile. Maggie, now at point A, wants to reach point B. She can swim directly across the lake, she can walk along the shore, or she can swim part way and walk part way. Given that Maggie can swim at the rate of 2 miles per hour and walks at the rate of 5 miles per hour, what route should she take to reach point B as quickly as possible? (No running allowed.)

64. Our friend Maggie of Exercise 63 finds a row boat. Given that she can row at the rate of 3 miles per hour, what route should she take now? Row directly across, walk all the way, or row part way and walk part way?

†Here by "return on investment" we mean the ratio of income to cost.

65. Set $f(x) = x^2 - x$ and let P be the point $(4, 3)$.
(a) Use a graphing utility to draw f and mark P.
(b) Use a CAS to find the point(s) on the graph of f that are closest to P.
(c) Let Q be a point which satisfies part (b). Determine the equation for the line l_{PQ} through P and Q; then display in one figure the graph of f, the point P, and the line l_{PQ}.
(d) Determine the equation of the line l_N normal to the graph of f at $(Q, f(Q))$.
(e) Compare l_{PQ} and l_N.

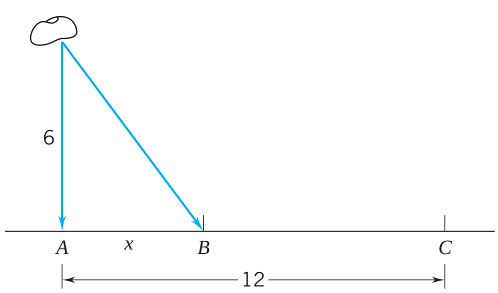
66. Exercise 65 with $f(x) = x - x^3$ and $P(1, 8)$.

67. Find the distance $D(x)$ from a point (x, y) on the line $y + 3x = 7$ to the origin. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of D and then use the trace function to estimate the point on the line closest to the origin.

68. Find the distance $D(x)$ from a point (x, y) on the graph of $f(x) = 4 - x^2$ to the point $P(4, 3)$. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of D and then use the trace function to estimate the point on the graph of f closest to P.

■ PROJECT 4.5 Flight Paths of Birds

Ornithologists studying the flight of birds have determined that certain species tend to avoid flying over large bodies of water during the daylight hours of summer. A possible explanation for this is that it takes more energy to fly over water than land because on a summer day air typically rises over land and falls over water. Suppose that a bird with this tendency is released from an island that is 6 miles from the nearest point A of a straight shoreline. It flies to a point B on the shore and then flies along the shore to its nesting area C, which is 12 miles from A. (See the figure.)



Let W denote the energy per mile required to fly over water, and let L denote the energy per mile required to fly over land.

Problem 1. Show that the total energy E expended by the bird in flying from the island to its nesting area is given by

$$E(x) = W\sqrt{36 + x^2} + L(12 - x), \qquad 0 \le x \le 12$$

where x is the distance from A to B measured in miles.

Problem 2. Suppose that $W = 1.5L$; that is, suppose it takes 50% more energy to fly over water than over land.

(a) Use the methods of Section 4.5 to find the point B to which the bird should fly to minimize the total energy expended.

(b) Use a graphing utility to graph E, and then find the minimum value to confirm your result in part (a). Take $L = 1$.

Problem 3. In general, suppose $W = kL$, $k > 1$.

(a) Find the point B (as a function of k) to which the bird should fly to minimize the total energy expended.

(b) Use a graphing utility to experiment with different values of k to find out how the point B moves as k increases/decreases. Take $L = 1$.

(c) Find the value(s) of k such that the bird will minimize the total energy expended by flying directly to its nest.

(d) Are there any values of k such that the bird will minimize the total energy expended by flying directly to the point A and then along the shore to C?

■ 4.6 CONCAVITY AND POINTS OF INFLECTION

We begin with a sketch of the graph of a function f, Figure 4.6.1. To the left of c_1 and between c_2 and c_3, the graph "curves up" (we call it *concave up*); between c_1 and c_2,

and to the right of c_3, the graph "curves down" (we call it *concave down*). These terms deserve a precise definition.

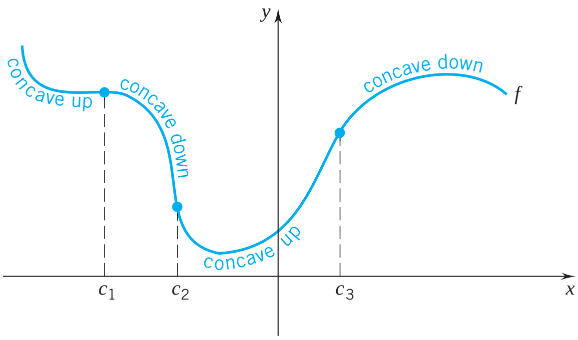


Figure 4.6.1

DEFINITION 4.6.1 CONCAVITY

Let f be a function differentiable on an open interval I. The graph of f is said to be *concave up* on I if f' increases on I; it is said to be *concave down* on I if f' decreases on I.

Stated more geometrically, the graph is concave up on an open interval where the slope increases and concave down on an open interval where the slope decreases.

One more observation: where concave up, the tangent line lies below the graph; where concave down, the tangent line lies above the graph. (Convince yourself of this by adding some tangent lines to the curve shown in Figure 4.6.1.)

Points that join arcs of opposite concavity are called *points of inflection*. The graph in Figure 4.6.1 has three of them: $(c_1, f(c_1))$, $(c_2, f(c_2))$, $(c_3, f(c_3))$. Here is the formal definition:

DEFINITION 4.6.2 POINT OF INFLECTION

Let f be a function continuous at c and differentiable near c. The point $(c, f(c))$ is called a *point of inflection* if there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that the graph of f is concave in one sense on $(c - \delta, c)$ and concave in the opposite sense on $(c, c + \delta)$.

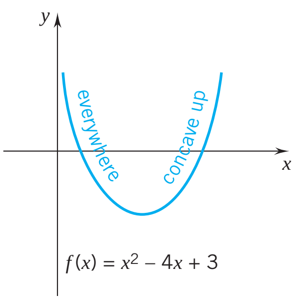


Figure 4.6.2

Example 1 The graph of the quadratic function $f(x) = x^2 - 4x + 3$ is concave up everywhere since the derivative $f'(x) = 2x - 4$ is everywhere increasing. (See Figure 4.6.2.) The graph has no point of inflection. ❑

Example 2 For the cubing function $f(x) = x^3$, the derivative

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 \qquad \text{decreases on } (-\infty, 0] \text{ and increases on } [0, \infty).$$

Thus, the graph of f is concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$ and concave up on $(0, \infty)$. The origin, $(0, 0) = (0, f(0))$, is a point of inflection, the only point of inflection. (See Figure 4.6.3.) ❑

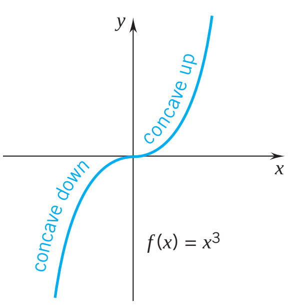


Figure 4.6.3

If f is twice differentiable, we can determine the concavity of the graph from the sign of the second derivative.

THEOREM 4.6.3

Suppose that f is twice differentiable on an open interval I.

(i) If $f''(x) > 0$ for all x in I, then f' increases on I, and the graph of f is concave up.

(ii) If $f''(x) < 0$ for all x in I, then f' decreases on I, and the graph of f is concave down.

PROOF Apply Theorem 4.2.2 to the function f'. ❑

The following result gives us a way of identifying possible points of inflection.

THEOREM 4.6.4

If the point $(c, f(c))$ is a point of inflection, then

$$f''(c) = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad f''(c) \quad \text{does not exist.}$$

PROOF Suppose that $(c, f(c))$ is a point of inflection. Let's assume that the graph of f is concave up to the left of c and concave down to the right of c. The other case can be handled in a similar manner.

In this situation f' increases on an interval $(c - \delta, c)$ and decreases on an interval $(c, c + \delta)$.

Suppose now that $f''(c)$ exists. Then f' is continuous at c. It follows that f' increases on the half-open interval $(c - \delta, c]$ and decreases on the half-open interval $[c, c + \delta)$. This says that f' has a local maximum at c. Since by assumption $f''(c)$ exists, $f''(c) = 0$. (Theorem 4.3.2 applied to f'.)

We have shown that if $f''(c)$ exists, then $f''(c) = 0$. The only other possibility is that $f''(c)$ does not exist. (Such is the case for the function examined in Example 4 below.) ❑

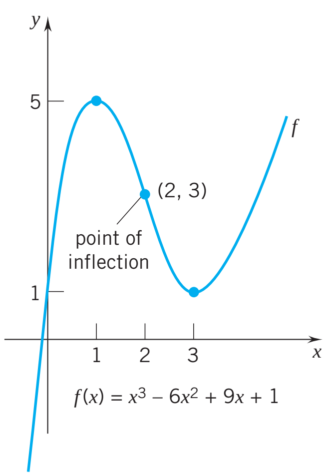


Figure 4.6.4

Example 3

For the function

$$f(x) = x^3 - 6x^2 + 9x + 1 \qquad \text{(Figure 4.6.4)}$$

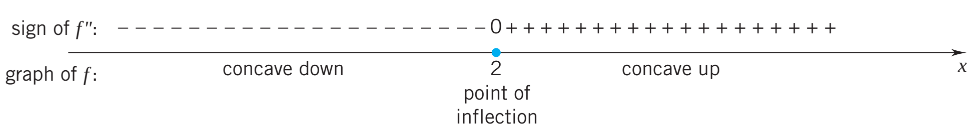
we have

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 - 12x + 9 = 3(x^2 - 4x + 3)$$

and

$$f''(x) = 6x - 12 = 6(x - 2).$$

Note that $f''(x) = 0$ only at $x = 2$, and f'' keeps a constant sign on $(-\infty, 2)$ and on $(2, \infty)$. The sign of f'' on these intervals and the consequences for the graph of f are as follows:



The point $(2, f(2)) = (2, 3)$ is a point of inflection. ❑

Example 4 For

$$f(x) = 3x^{5/3} - 5x \qquad \text{(Figure 4.6.5)}$$

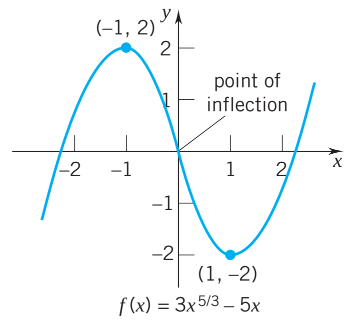


Figure 4.6.5

we have

$$f'(x) = 5x^{2/3} - 5 \quad \text{and} \quad f''(x) = \tfrac{10}{3}x^{-1/3}.$$

The second derivative does not exist at $x = 0$. Since

$$f''(x) \text{ is } \begin{cases} \text{negative,} & \text{for } x < 0 \\ \text{positive,} & \text{for } x > 0, \end{cases}$$

the graph is concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$ and concave up on $(0, \infty)$. Since f is continuous at 0, the point $(0, f(0)) = (0, 0)$ is a point of inflection. ❑

CAUTION The fact that $f''(c) = 0$ or $f''(c)$ does not exist does not guarantee that $(c, f(c))$ is a point of inflection. (The statement that constitutes Theorem 4.6.4 is not an iff statement.) As you can verify, the function $f(x) = x^4$ satisfies the condition $f''(0) = 0$, but the graph is always concave up and there are no points of inflection. If f is discontinuous at c, then $f''(c)$ does not exist, but $(c, f(c))$ cannot be a point of inflection. A point of inflection occurs at c iff f is continuous at c and the point $(c, f(c))$ joins arcs of opposite concavity. ❑

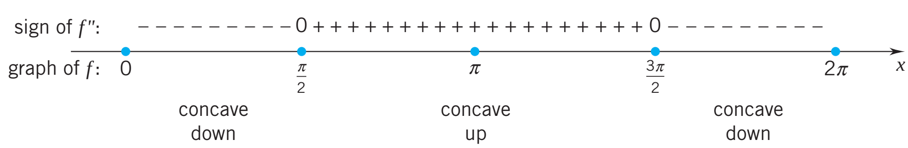
Example 5 Determine the concavity and find the points of inflection (if any) of the graph of

$$f(x) = x + \cos x, \qquad x \in [0, 2\pi].$$

SOLUTION For $x \in [0, 2\pi]$, we have

$$f'(x) = 1 - \sin x \qquad \text{and} \qquad f''(x) = -\cos x.$$

On the interval under consideration $f''(x) = 0$ only at $x = \pi/2$ and $x = 3\pi/2$, and f'' keeps constant sign on $(0, \pi/2)$, on $(\pi/2, 3\pi/2)$, and on $(3\pi/2, 2\pi)$. The sign of f'' on these intervals and the consequences for the graph of f are as follows:



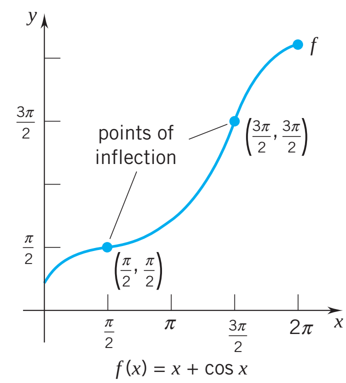
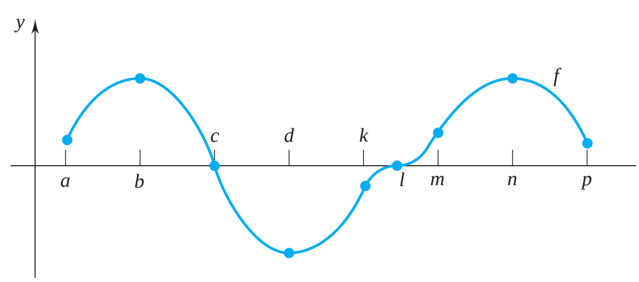


Figure 4.6.6

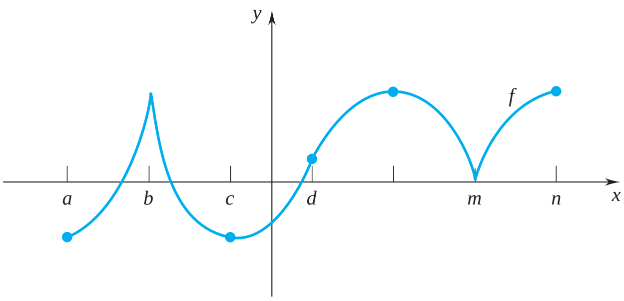
The points $(\pi/2, f(\pi/2)) = (\pi/2, \pi/2)$, and $(3\pi/2, f(3\pi/2)) = (3\pi/2, 3\pi/2)$ are points of inflection. The graph of f is shown in Figure 4.6.6. ❑

EXERCISES 4.6

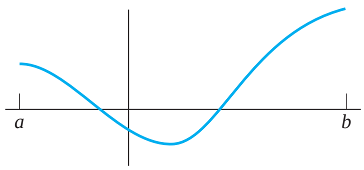
1. The graph of a function f is given in the figure. (a) Determine the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases; (b) determine the intervals on which the graph of f is concave up, the intervals on which the graph is concave down, and give the x-coordinate of each point of inflection.



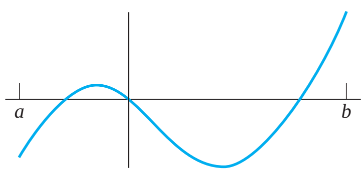
2. Exercise 1 applied to the function f graphed below.



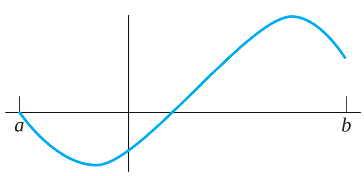
3. The figure below gives the graph of a function f, the graph of its first derivative f', and the graph of its second derivative f'', but not in the correct order. Which curve is the graph of which function?



(a)



(b)



(c)

4. A function f is continuous on $[-4, 4]$ and twice differentiable on $(-4, 4)$. Some information on f, f', and f'' is tabulated below:

x	$(-4, -2)$	-2	$(-2, 0)$	0	$(0, 2)$	2	$(2, 4)$
$f'(x)$	positive	0	negative	negative	negative	0	negative
$f''(x)$	negative	negative	negative	0	positive	0	negative

(a) Give the x-coordinates of the local maxima and minima of f.

(b) Give the x-coordinates of the points of inflection of the graph of f.

(c) Given that $f(0) = 0$, sketch a possible graph for f.

Exercises 5–22. Describe the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection (if any).

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$. **6.** $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}$.

7. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x + 2$. **8.** $f(x) = 2x^2 - 5x + 2$.

9. $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}x^4 - \frac{1}{2}x^2$. **10.** $f(x) = x^3(1 - x)$.

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - 1}$. **12.** $f(x) = \dfrac{x + 2}{x - 2}$.

13. $f(x) = (1 - x)^2(1 + x)^2$. **14.** $f(x) = \dfrac{6x}{x^2 + 1}$.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{1 - \sqrt{x}}{1 + \sqrt{x}}$. **16.** $f(x) = (x - 3)^{1/5}$.

17. $f(x) = (x + 2)^{5/3}$. **18.** $f(x) = x\sqrt{4 - x^2}$.

19. $f(x) = \sin^2 x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

20. $f(x) = 2\cos^2 x - x^2, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

21. $f(x) = x^2 + \sin 2x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

22. $f(x) = \sin^4 x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

C **Exercises 23–26.** Find the points of inflection of the graph of f by using a graphing utility.

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4 - 81}{x^2}$.

24. $f(x) = \sin^2 x - \cos x, \quad -2\pi \le x \le 2\pi$.

25. $f(x) = x^5 + 9x^4 + 26x^3 + 18x^2 - 27x - 27$.

26. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{3 - x}}$.

Exercises 27–34. Find: (a) the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases; (b) the local maxima and the local minima; (c) the intervals on which the graph is concave up and the intervals on which the graph is concave down; (d) the points of inflection. Use this information to sketch the graph of f.

27. $f(x) = x^3 - 9x$. **28.** $f(x) = 3x^4 + 4x^3 + 1$.

29. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{x^2 + 1}$. **30.** $f(x) = x^{1/3}(x - 6)^{2/3}$.

31. $f(x) = x + \sin x, \quad x \in [-\pi, \pi]$.

32. $f(x) = \sin x + \cos x, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

33. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3, & x < 1 \\ 3x - 2, & x \ge 1. \end{cases}$

34. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 4, & x \le -1 \\ 3 - x^2, & x > -1. \end{cases}$

Exercises 35–38. Sketch the graph of a continuous function f that satisfies the given conditions.

35. $f(0) = 1$, $f(2) = -1$; $f'(0) = f'(2) = 0$, $f'(x) > 0$ for $|x - 1| > 1$, $f'(x) < 0$ for $|x - 1| < 1$; $f''(x) < 0$ for $x < 1$, $f''(x) > 0$ for $x > 1$.

36. $f''(x) > 0$ if $|x| > 2$, $f''(x) < 0$ if $|x| < 2$; $f'(0) = 0$, $f'(x) > 0$ if $x < 0$, $f'(x) < 0$ if $x > 0$; $f(0) = 1$, $f(-2) = f(2) = \frac{1}{2}$, $f(x) > 0$ for all x, f is an even function.

37. $f''(x) < 0$ if $x < 0$, $f''(x) > 0$ if $x > 0$; $f'(-1) = f'(1) = 0$, $f'(0)$ does not exist, $f'(x) > 0$ if $|x| > 1$ $f'(x) < 0$

if $|x| < 1$ $(x \neq 0)$; $f(-1) = 2$, $f(1) = -2$; f is an odd function.

38. $f(-2) = 6$, $f(1) = 2$, $f(3) = 4$; $f'(1) = f'(3) = 0$, $f'(x) < 0$ if $|x-2| > 1$, $f'(x) > 0$ if $|x-2| < 1$; $f''(x) < 0$ if $|x+1| < 1$ or $x > 2$, $f''(x) > 0$ if $|x-1| < 1$ or $x < -2$.

39. Find d given that $(d, f(d))$ is a point of inflection of the graph of

$$f(x) = (x-a)(x-b)(x-c).$$

40. Find c given that the graph of $f(x) = cx^2 + x^{-2}$ has a point of inflection at $(1, f(1))$.

41. Find a and b given that the graph of $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2$ passes through the point $(-1, 1)$ and has a point of inflection where $x = \frac{1}{3}$.

42. Determine A and B so that the curve

$$y = Ax^{1/2} + Bx^{-1/2}$$

has a point of inflection at $(1, 4)$.

43. Determine A and B so that the curve

$$y = A\cos 2x + B\sin 3x$$

has a point of inflection at $(\pi/6, 5)$.

44. Find necessary and sufficient conditions on A and B for $f(x) = Ax^2 + Bx + C$

(a) to decrease between A and B with graph concave up.
(b) to increase between A and B with graph concave down.

45. Find a function f with $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 6x + 3$ for all real x and $(1, -2)$ a point of inflection. How many such functions are there?

46. Set $f(x) = \sin x$. Show that the graph of f is concave down above the x-axis and concave up below the x-axis. Does $g(x) = \cos x$ have the same property?

47. Set $p(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$.

(a) Show that the graph of p has exactly one point of inflection. What is x at that point?
(b) Show that p has two local extreme values iff $a^2 > 3b$.
(c) Show that p cannot have only one local extreme value.

48. Show that if a cubic polynomial $p(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$ has a local maximum and a local minimum, then the midpoint of the line segment that connects the local high point to the local low point is a point of inflection.

49. (a) Sketch the graph of a function that satisfies the following conditions: for all real x, $f(x) > 0$, $f'(x) > 0$, $f''(x) > 0$; $f(0) = 1$.
(b) Does there exist a function which satisfies the conditions: $f(x) > 0$, $f'(x) < 0$, $f''(x) < 0$ for all real x? Explain.

50. Prove that a polynomial of degree n can have at most $n - 2$ points of inflection.

Exercises 51–54. Use a graphing utility to graph the function on the indicated interval. (a) Estimate the intervals where the graph is concave up and the intervals where it is concave down. (b) Estimate the x-coordinate of each point of inflection. Round off your estimates to three decimal places.

51. $f(x) = x^4 - 5x^2 + 3$; $[-4, 4]$.

52. $f(x) = x\sin x$; $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$.

53. $f(x) = 1 + x^2 - 2x\cos x$; $[-\pi, \pi]$.

54. $f(x) = x^{2/3}(x^2 - 4)$; $[-5, 5]$.

Exercises 55–58. Use a CAS to determine where:

(a) $f''(x) = 0$, (b) $f''(x) > 0$,
(c) $f''(x) < 0$.

55. $f(x) = 2\cos^2 x - \cos x$, $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

56. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^4 - 1}$.

57. $f(x) = x^{11} - 4x^9 + 6x^7 - 4x^5 + x^3$.

58. $f(x) = x\sqrt{16 - x^2}$.

■ 4.7 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL ASYMPTOTES; VERTICAL TANGENTS AND CUSPS

Vertical and Horizontal Asymptotes

In Figure 4.7.1 you can see the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{|x-c|} \qquad \text{for } x \text{ close to } c.$$

As $x \to c$, $f(x) \to \infty$; that is, given any positive number M, there exists a positive number δ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |x-c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad f(x) \geq M.$$

The line $x = c$ is called a *vertical asymptote*. Figure 4.7.2 shows the graph of

$$g(x) = -\frac{1}{|x-c|} \qquad \text{for } x \text{ close to } c.$$

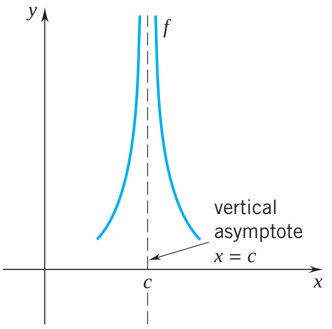


Figure 4.7.1

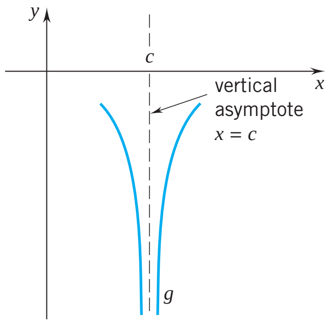


Figure 4.7.2

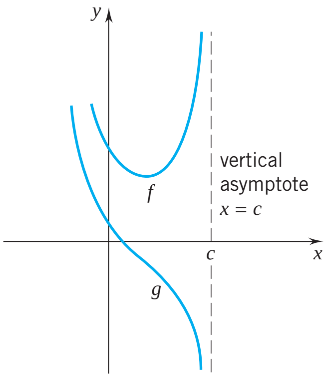


Figure 4.7.3

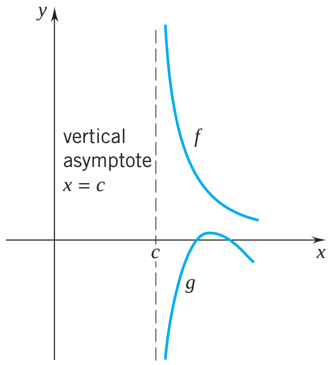


Figure 4.7.4

In this case, as $x \to c$, $g(x) \to -\infty$. Again, the line $x = c$ is called a *vertical asymptote*.

Vertical asymptotes can arise from one-sided behavior. With f and g as in Figure 4.7.3, we write

$$\text{as } x \to c^-, \qquad f(x) \to \infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) \to -\infty.$$

With f and g as in Figure 4.7.4, we write

$$\text{as } x \to c^+, \qquad f(x) \to \infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) \to -\infty.$$

In each case the line $x = c$ is a vertical asymptote for both functions.

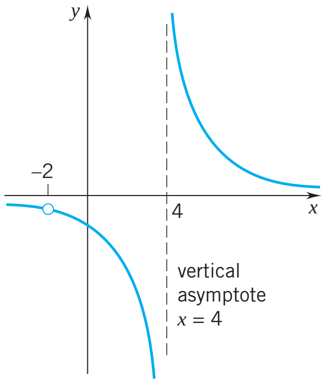


Figure 4.7.5

Example 1 The graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{3x+6}{x^2-2x-8} = \frac{3(x+2)}{(x+2)(x-4)}$$

has a vertical asymptote at $x = 4$: as $x \to 4^+$, $f(x) \to \infty$ and as $x \to 4^-$, $f(x) \to -\infty$. The vertical line $x = -2$ is not a vertical asymptote since as $x \to -2$, $f(x)$ tends to a finite limit: $\lim_{x \to -2} f(x) = \lim_{x \to -2} 3/(x-4) = -\frac{1}{2}$. (Figure 4.7.5) ❑

From your knowledge of trigonometry you know that as $x \to \pi/2^-$, $\tan x \to \infty$ and as $x \to \pi/2^+$, $\tan x \to -\infty$. Therefore the line $x = \pi/2$ is a vertical asymptote. In fact, the lines $x = (2n+1)\pi/2$, $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$, are all vertical asymptotes for the tangent function. (Figure 4.7.6)

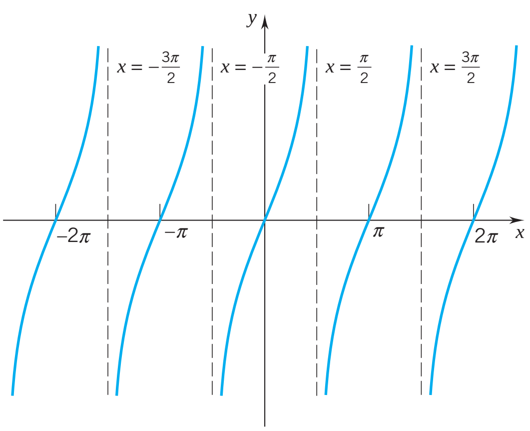


Figure 4.7.6

The graph of a function can have a *horizontal asymptote*. Such is the case (see Figures 4.7.7 and 4.7.8) if, as $x \to \infty$ or as $x \to -\infty$, $f(x)$ tends to a finite limit.

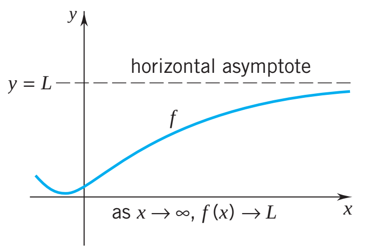


Figure 4.7.7

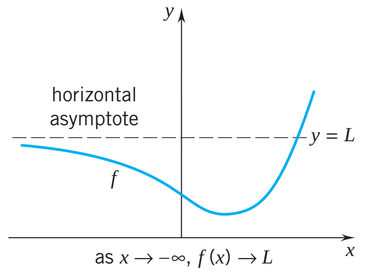


Figure 4.7.8

Example 2 Figure 4.7.9 shows the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{x-2}.$$

As $x \to 2^-$, $f(x) \to -\infty$; as $x \to 2^+$, $f(x) \to \infty$. The line $x = 2$ is a vertical asymptote.

As $x \to \infty$,

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{x-2} = \frac{1}{1-2/x} \to 1.$$

The same holds true as $x \to -\infty$. The line $y = 1$ is a horizontal asymptote. ❑

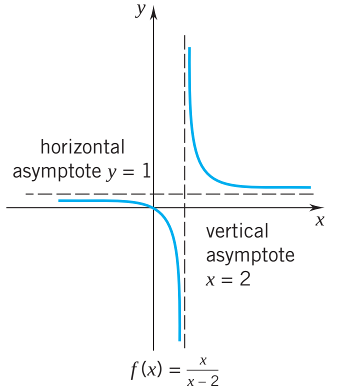


Figure 4.7.9

Example 3 Figure 4.7.10 shows the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{x}, \qquad x > 0.$$

As $x \to 0^+$, $\cos x \to 1$, $1/x \to \infty$, and

$$f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{x} = (\cos x)\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \to \infty.$$

The line $x = 0$ (the y-axis) is a vertical asymptote.

As $x \to \infty$,

$$|f(x)| = \frac{|\cos x|}{|x|} \le \frac{1}{|x|} \to 0$$

and therefore

$$f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{x} \to 0.$$

The line $y = 0$ (the x-axis) is a horizontal asymptote. In this case the graph does not stay to one side of the asymptote. Instead, it wiggles about it with oscillations of ever decreasing amplitude. ❑

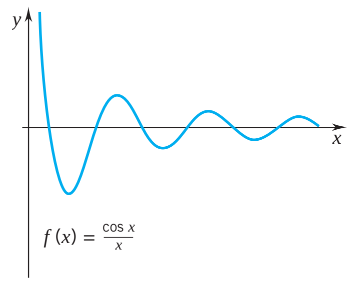


Figure 4.7.10

Example 4 Here we examine the behavior of

$$g(x) = \frac{x + 1 - \sqrt{x}}{x^2 - 2x + 1} = \frac{x + 1 - \sqrt{x}}{(x-1)^2}.$$

First, two observations: (a) Because of the presence of $\sqrt{x}$, g is not defined for negative numbers. The domain of g is $[0, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$. (b) On its domain, g remains positive.

As $x \to 1$,

$$x + 1 - \sqrt{x} \to 1, \qquad (x-1)^2 \to 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) \to \infty.$$

Thus, the line $x = 1$ is a vertical asymptote.

As $x \to \infty$,

$$g(x) = \frac{x + 1 - \sqrt{x}}{x^2 - 2x + 1} = \frac{1 + 1/x - 1/\sqrt{x}}{x - 2 + 1/x} \to 0.$$

(The numerator tends to 1 and the denominator tends to ∞.) The line $y = 0$ (the x-axis) is a horizontal asymptote. ❑

The behavior of a rational function

$$R(x) = \frac{a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0}{b_k x^k + \cdots + b_1 x + b_0} \qquad (a_n \neq 0,\ b_k \neq 0)$$

as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$ is readily understood after division of numerator and denominator by the highest power of x that appears in the configuration.

Examples

(a) For $x \neq 0$, set

$$f(x) = \frac{x^4 - 4x^3 - 1}{2x^5 - x} = \frac{1/x - 4/x^2 - 1/x^5}{2 - 1/x^4}.$$

Both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$,

$$1/x - 4/x^2 - 1/x^5 \to 0, \qquad 2 - 1/x^4 \to 2, \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(x) \to 0.$$

(b) For $x \neq 0$, set

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 3x + 1}{4x^2 - 1} = \frac{1 - 3/x + 1/x^2}{4 - 1/x^2}.$$

Both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$,

$$1 - 3/x + 1/x^2 \to 1, \qquad 4 - 1/x^2 \to 4, \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(x) \to 1/4.$$

(c) For $x \neq 0$, set

$$f(x) = \frac{3x^3 - 7x^2 + 1}{x^2 - 9} = \frac{3 - 7/x + 1/x^3}{1/x - 9/x^3}.$$

Note that for large positive x, $f(x)$ is positive, but for large negative x, $f(x)$ is negative. As $x \to \infty$, the numerator tends to 3, the denominator tends to 0, and the quotient, being positive, tends to ∞; as $x \to -\infty$, the numerator still tends to 3, the denominator still tends to 0, and the quotient, being negative this time, tends to $-\infty$. ❑

Vertical Tangents; Vertical Cusps

Suppose that f is a function continuous at $x = c$. We say that the graph of f has a *vertical tangent* at the point $(c, f(c))$ if

$$\text{as} \quad x \to c, \quad f'(x) \to \infty \quad \text{or} \quad f'(x) \to -\infty.$$

Examples (Figure 4.7.11)

(a) The graph of the cube-root function $f(x) = x^{1/3}$ has a vertical tangent at the point (0, 0):

$$\text{as} \quad x \to 0, \qquad f'(x) = \tfrac{1}{3}x^{-2/3} \to \infty.$$

The vertical tangent is the line $x = 0$ (the y-axis).

(b) The graph of the function $f(x) = (2 - x)^{1/5}$ has a vertical tangent at the point (2, 0):

$$\text{as} \quad x \to 2, \qquad f'(x) = -\tfrac{1}{5}(2 - x)^{-4/5} \to -\infty.$$

The vertical tangent is the line $x = 2$. ❑

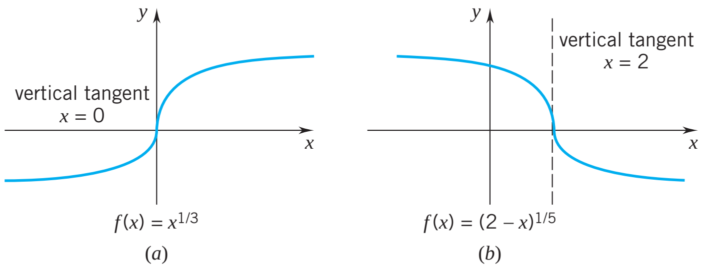


Figure 4.7.11

Occasionally you will see a graph tend to the vertical from one side, come to a sharp point, and then virtually double back on itself on the other side. Such a pattern signals the presence of a "vertical cusp."

Suppose that f is continuous at $x = c$. We say that the graph of f has a *vertical cusp* at the point $(c, f(c))$ if

$$\text{as } x \text{ tends to } c \text{ from one side, } f'(x) \to \infty$$

and

$$\text{as } x \text{ tends to } c \text{ from the other side, } f'(x) \to -\infty.$$

Examples (Figure 4.7.12)

(a) The function $f(x) = x^{2/3}$ is continuous at $x = 0$ and has derivative $f'(x) = \frac{2}{3}x^{-1/3}$. As $x \to 0^+$, $f'(x) \to \infty$; as $x \to 0^-$, $f'(x) \to -\infty$. This tells us that the graph of f has a vertical cusp at the point (0, 0).

(b) The function $f(x) = 2 - (x - 1)^{2/5}$ is continuous at $x = 1$ and has derivative $f'(x) = -\frac{2}{5}(x - 1)^{-3/5}$. As $x \to 1^-$, $f'(x) \to \infty$; as $x \to 1^+$, $f'(x) \to -\infty$. The graph has a vertical cusp at the point (1, 2).

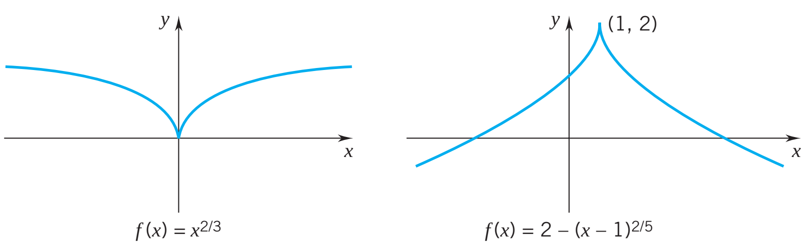
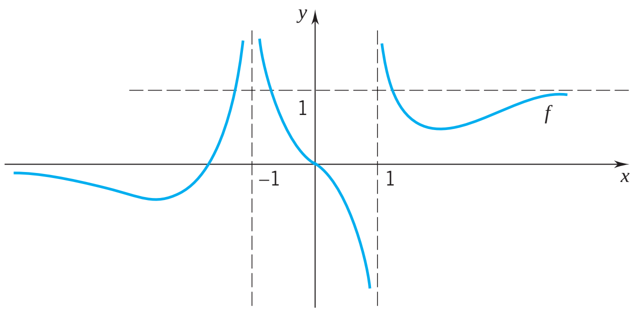


Figure 4.7.12

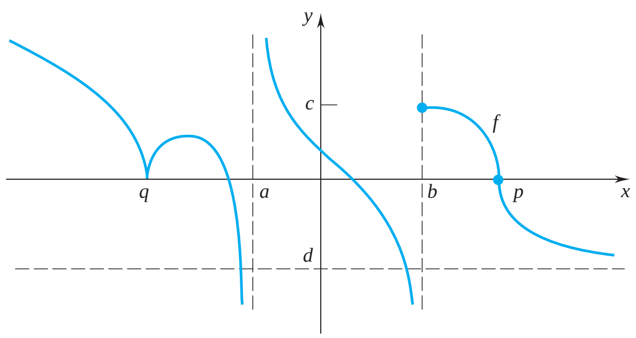
EXERCISES 4.7

1. The graph of a function f is given in the figure.



(a) As $x \to -1$, $f(x) \to ?$
(b) As $x \to 1^-$, $f(x) \to ?$
(c) As $x \to 1^+$, $f(x) \to ?$
(d) As $x \to \infty$, $f(x) \to ?$
(e) As $x \to -\infty$, $f(x) \to ?$
(f) What are the vertical asymptotes?
(g) What are the horizontal asymptotes?

2. The graph of a function f is given in the figure.



(a) As $x \to \infty$, $f(x) \to ?$
(b) As $x \to b^+$, $f(x) \to ?$
(c) What are the vertical asymptotes?
(d) What are the horizontal asymptotes?
(e) Give the numbers c, if any, at which the graph of f has a vertical tangent.
(f) Give the numbers c, if any, at which the graph of f has a vertical cusp.

Exercises 3–20. Find the vertical and horizontal asymptotes

3. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{3x-1}$.

4. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3}{x+2}$.

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x-2}$.

6. $f(x) = \dfrac{4x}{x^2+1}$.

7. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{x^2-9}$.

8. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{4\sqrt{x}-x}$.

9. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{2x-1}{4+3x}\right)^2$.

10. $f(x) = \dfrac{4x^2}{(3x-1)^2}$.

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{3x}{(2x-5)^2}$.

12. $f(x) = \left(\dfrac{x}{1-2x}\right)^3$.

13. $f(x) = \dfrac{3x}{\sqrt{4x^2+1}}$.

14. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^{1/3}}{x^{2/3}-4}$.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{2\sqrt{x}-x-1}$.

16. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}$.

17. $f(x) = \sqrt{x+4} - \sqrt{x}$.

18. $f(x) = \sqrt{x} - \sqrt{x-2}$.

19. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{\sin x - 1}$.

20. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sec x - 1}$.

Exercises 21–34. Determine whether or not the graph of f has a vertical tangent or a vertical cusp at c.

21. $f(x) = (x+3)^{4/3}$; $c = -3$.

22. $f(x) = 3 + x^{2/5}$; $c = 0$.

23. $f(x) = (2-x)^{4/5}$; $c = 2$.

24. $f(x) = (x+1)^{-1/3}$; $c = -1$.

25. $f(x) = 2x^{3/5} - x^{6/5}$; $c = 0$.

26. $f(x) = (x-5)^{7/5}$; $c = 5$.

27. $f(x) = (x+2)^{-2/3}$; $c = -2$.

28. $f(x) = 4 - (2-x)^{3/7}$; $c = 2$.

29. $f(x) = \sqrt{|x-1|}$; $c = 1$.

30. $f(x) = x(x-1)^{1/3}$; $c = 1$.

31. $f(x) = |(x+8)^{1/3}|$; $c = -8$.

32. $f(x) = \sqrt{4-x^2}$; $c = 2$.

33. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^{1/3}+2, & x \le 0 \\ 1 - x^{1/5}, & x > 0; \end{cases}$ $c = 0$.

34. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1+\sqrt{-x}, & x \le 0 \\ (4x-x^2)^{1/3}, & x > 0; \end{cases}$ $c = 0$.

Exercises 35–38. Sketch the graph of the function, showing all asymptotes.

35. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{x-2}$.

36. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(x+1)^2}$.

37. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{1+x^2}$.

38. $f(x) = \dfrac{x-2}{x^2-5x+6}$.

Exercises 39–42. Find (a) the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases, and (b) the intervals on which the graph of f is concave up and the intervals on which it is concave down. Also, determine whether the graph of f has any vertical tangents or vertical cusps. Confirm your results with a graphing utility.

39. $f(x) = x - 3x^{1/3}$.

40. $f(x) = x^{2/3} - x^{1/3}$.

41. $f(x) = \frac{3}{5}x^{5/3} - 3x^{2/3}$.

42. $f(x) = \sqrt{|x|}$.

Exercises 43–46. Sketch the graph of a function f that satisfies the given conditions. Indicate whether the graph of f has any horizontal or vertical asymptotes, and whether the graph has any vertical tangents or vertical cusps. If you find that no function can satisfy all the conditions, explain your reasoning.

43. $f(x) \ge 1$ for all x, $f(0) = 1$; $f''(x) < 0$ for all $x \ne 0$; $f'(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to 0^+$, $f'(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to 0^-$.

44. $f(0) = 0$, $f(3) = f(-3) = 0$; $f(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to 1$, $f(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to -1$, $f(x) \to 1$ as $x \to \infty$, $f(x) \to 1$ as $x \to -\infty$; $f''(x) < 0$ for all $x \neq \pm 1$.

45. $f(0) = 0$; $f(x) \to -1$ as $x \to \infty$, $f(x) \to 1$ as $x \to -\infty$; $f'(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to 0$; $f''(x) < 0$ for $x < 0$, $f''(x) > 0$ for $x > 0$; f is an odd function.

46. $f(0) = 1$; $f(x) \to 4$ as $x \to \infty$, $f(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to -\infty$; $f'(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to 0$; $f''(x) > 0$ for $x < 0$, $f''(x) < 0$ for $x > 0$.

47. Let p and q be positive integers, q odd, $p < q$. Let $f(x) = x^{p/q}$. Specify conditions on p and q so that

(a) the graph of f has a vertical tangent at $(0, 0)$.

(b) the graph of f has a vertical cusp at $(0, 0)$.

48. (*Oblique asymptotes*) Let $r(x) = p(x)/q(x)$ be a rational function. If (degree of p) = (degree of q) + 1, then r can be written in the form

$$r(x) = ax + b + \frac{Q(x)}{q(x)} \quad \text{with} \quad (\text{degree } Q) < (\text{degree } q).$$

Show that $[r(x) - (ax + b)] \to 0$ both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$. Thus the graph of f "approaches the line $y = ax + b$" both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$. The line $y = ax + b$ is called an *oblique asymptote.*

Exercises 49–52. Sketch the graph of the function showing all vertical and oblique asymptotes.

49. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 4}{x}$.

50. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2 + 3x - 2}{x + 1}$.

51. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3}{(x - 1)^2}$.

52. $f(x) = \dfrac{1 + x - 3x^2}{x}$.

Exercises 53–54. Use a CAS to find the oblique asymptotes. Then use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and its asymptotes, and thereby confirm your findings.

53. $f(x) = \dfrac{3x^4 - 4x^3 - 2x^2 + 2x + 2}{x^3 - x}$.

54. $f(x) = \dfrac{5x^3 - 3x^2 + 4x - 4}{x^2 + 1}$

Exercises 55–56. Use a graphing utility to determine whether or not the graph of f has a horizontal asymptote. Confirm your findings analytically.

55. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 2x} - x$.

56. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^4 - x^2} - x^2$.

■ 4.8 SOME CURVE SKETCHING

During the course of the last few sections you have seen how to find the extreme values of a function, the intervals on which a function increases, and the intervals on which it decreases; how to determine the concavity of a graph and how to find the points of inflection; and, finally, how to determine the asymptotic properties of a graph. This information enables us to sketch a pretty accurate graph without having to plot point after point after point.

Before attempting to sketch the graph of a function, we try to gather together the information available to us and record it in an organized form. Here is an outline of the procedure we will follow to sketch the graph of a function f.

(1) *Domain* Determine the domain of f; identify endpoints; find the vertical asymptotes; determine the behavior of f as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$.

(2) *Intercepts* Determine the x- and y-intercepts of the graph. [The y-intercept is the value $f(0)$; the x-intercepts are the solutions of the equation $f(x) = 0$.]

(3) *Symmetry/periodicity* If f is an even function $[f(-x) = f(x)]$, then the graph of f is symmetric about the y-axis; if f is an odd function $[f(-x) = -f(x)]$, then the graph of f is symmetric about the origin. If f is periodic with period p, then the graph of f replicates itself on intervals of length p.

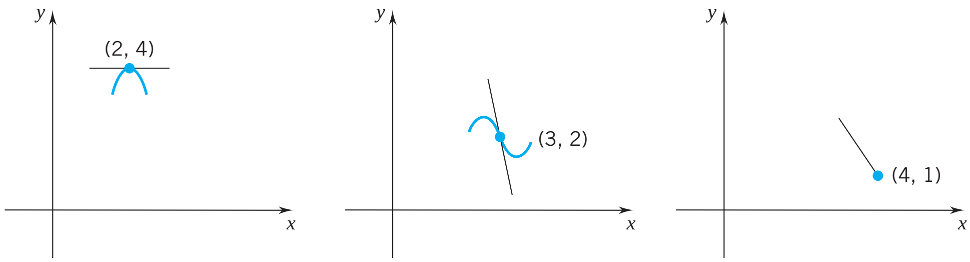
(4) *First derivative* Calculate f'. Determine the critical points; examine the sign of f' to determine the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases; determine the vertical tangents and cusps.

(5) *Second derivative* Calculate f''. Examine the sign of f'' to determine the intervals on which the graph is concave up and the intervals on which the graph is concave down; determine the points of inflection.

(6) *Points of interest and preliminary sketch* Plot the points of interest in a preliminary sketch: intercept points, extreme points (local extreme points, absolute extreme points, endpoint extreme points), and points of inflection.

(7) *The graph* Sketch the graph of f by connecting the points in a preliminary sketch, making sure that the curve "rises," "falls," and "bends" in the proper way. You may wish to verify your sketch by using a graphing utility.

Figure 4.8.1 gives some examples of elements to be included in a preliminary sketch



local maximum: (2, 4) point of inflection: (3, 2) endpoint minimum: (4, 1)

Figure 4.8.1

Example 1 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}x^4 - 2x^2 + \frac{7}{4}$.

SOLUTION

(1) *Domain* This is a polynomial function; so its domain is the set of all real numbers. Since the leading term is $\frac{1}{4}x^4$, $f(x) \to \infty$ both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$. There are no asymptotes.

(2) *Intercepts* The y-intercept is $f(0) = \frac{7}{4}$. To find the x-intercepts, we solve the equation $f(x) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 - 2x^2 + \tfrac{7}{4} &= 0. \\ x^4 - 8x^2 + 7 &= 0, \\ (x^2 - 1)(x^2 - 7) &= 0, \\ (x+1)(x-1)(x+\sqrt{7})(x-\sqrt{7}) &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

The x-intercepts are $x = \pm 1$ and $x = \pm\sqrt{7}$.

(3) *Symmetry/periodicity* Since

$$f(-x) = \tfrac{1}{4}(-x)^4 - 2(-x^2) + \tfrac{7}{4} = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 - 2x^2 + \tfrac{7}{4} = f(x),$$

f is an even function, and its graph is symmetric about the y-axis; f is not a periodic function.

(4) *First derivative*

$$f'(x) = x^3 - 4x = x(x^2 - 4) = x(x+2)(x-2).$$

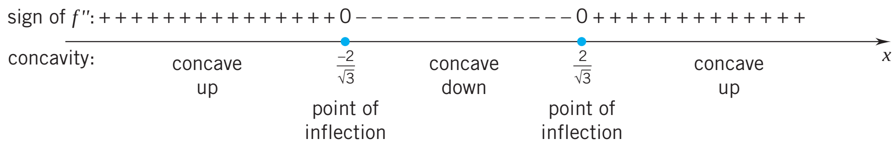
The critical points are $x = 0$, $x = \pm 2$. The sign of f' and behavior of f:

sign of f':	− − − − − − − − − − − −	0	+ + + + + + + + + +	0	− − − − − − − − − −	0	+ + + + + + + + + +
behavior of f:	decreases	−2	increases	0	decreases	2	increases
		local minimum		local maximum		local minimum	

(5) *Second derivative*

$$f''(x) = 3x^2 - 4 = 3\left(x - \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\right)\left(x + \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\right).$$

The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph of f:



(6) *Points of interest and preliminary sketch* (Figure 4.8.2)

$(0, \frac{7}{4})$:	y-intercept point.
$(-1, 0), (1, 0), (-\sqrt{7}, 0), (\sqrt{7}, 0)$:	x-intercept points.
$(0, \frac{7}{4})$:	local maximum point.
$(-2, -\frac{9}{4}), (2, -\frac{9}{4})$:	local and absolute minimum points.
$(-2/\sqrt{3}, -17/36), (2/\sqrt{3}, -17/36)$:	points of inflection.

(7) *The graph* Since the graph is symmetric about the y-axis, we can sketch the graph for $x \geq 0$, and then obtain the graph for $x \leq 0$ by a reflection in the y-axis. See Figure 4.8.3. ❑

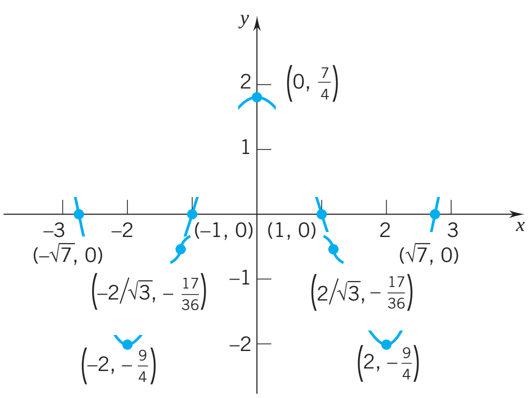


Figure 4.8.2

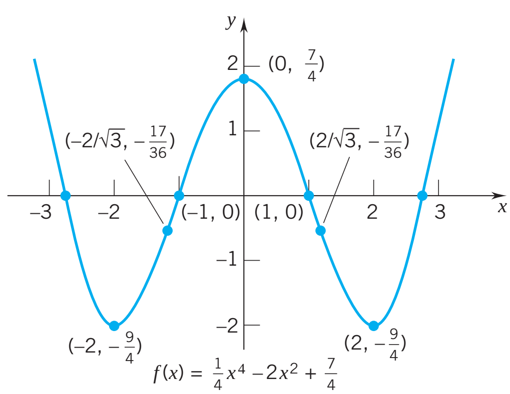


Figure 4.8.3

Example 2 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = x^4 - 4x^3 + 1$, $-1 \leq x < 5$.

SOLUTION

(1) *Domain* The domain is $[-1, 5)$; -1 is the left endpoint, and 5 is a "missing" right endpoint. There are no asymptotes. We do not consider the behavior of f as $x \to \pm\infty$ since f is defined only on $[-1, 5)$.

(2) *Intercepts* The y-intercept is $f(0) = 1$. To find the x-intercepts, we must solve the equation

$$x^4 - 4x^3 + 1 = 0.$$

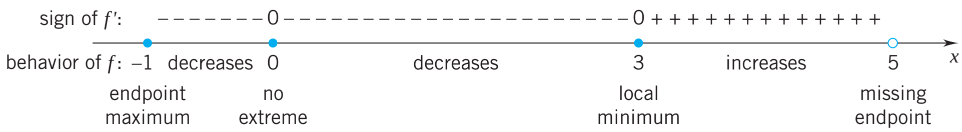
We cannot do this exactly, but we can verify that $f(0) > 0$ and $f(1) < 0$, and that $f(3) < 0$ and $f(4) > 0$. Thus there are x-intercepts in the interval $(0, 1)$ and in the interval $(3, 4)$. We could find approximate values for these intercepts, but we won't stop to do this since our aim here is a sketch of the graph, not a detailed drawing.

(3) *Symmetry/periodicity* The graph is not symmetric about the y-axis: $f(-x) \neq f(x)$. It is not symmetric about the origin: $f(-x) \neq -f(x)$. The function is not periodic.

(4) *First derivative* For $x \in (-1, 5)$

$$f'(x) = 4x^3 - 12x^2 = 4x^2(x-3).$$

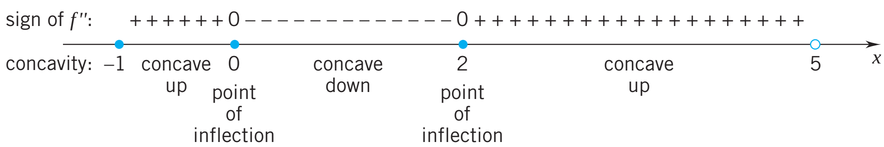
The critical points are $x = 0$ and $x = 3$.



(5) *Second derivative.*

$$f''(x) = 12x^2 - 24x = 12x(x-2).$$

The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph of f:



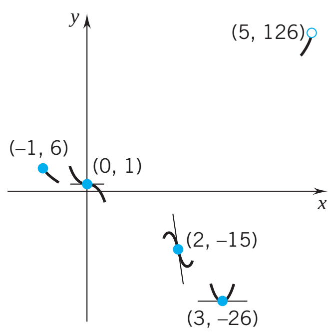


Figure 4.8.4

(6) *Points of interest and preliminary sketch* (Figure 4.8.4)

$(0, 1)$:	y-intercept point; point of inflection with horizontal tangent.
$(-1, 6)$:	endpoint maximum point.
$(2, -15)$:	point of inflection.
$(3, -26)$:	local and absolute minimum point.

As x approaches the missing endpoint 5 from the left, $f(x)$ increases toward a value of 126.

(7) *The graph* Since the range of f makes a scale drawing impractical, we must be content with a rough sketch as in Figure 4.8.5. In cases like this, it is particularly important to give the coordinates of the points of interest. ❑

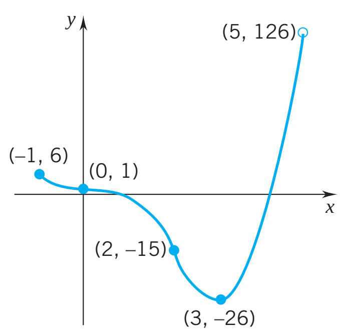


Figure 4.8.5

Example 3 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 3}{x^3}$.

SOLUTION

(1) *Domain* The domain of f consists of all $x \neq 0$, the set $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$. The y-axis (the line $x = 0$) is a vertical asymptote: $f(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to 0^-$ and $f(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to 0^+$. The x-axis (the line $y = 0$) is a horizontal asymptote: $f(x) \to 0$ both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$.

(2) *Intercepts.* There is no y-intercept since f is not defined at $x = 0$. The x-intercepts are $x = \pm\sqrt{3}$.

(3) *Symmetry* Since

$$f(-x) = \frac{(-x)^2 - 3}{(-x)^3} = -\frac{x^2 - 3}{x^3} = -f(x),$$

the graph is symmetric about the origin; f is not periodic.

(4) *First derivative.* It is easier to calculate f' if we first rewrite $f(x)$ using negative exponents:

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 3}{x^3} = x^{-1} - 3x^{-3}$$

gives

$$f'(x) = -x^{-2} + 9x^{-4} = \frac{9 - x^2}{x^4}.$$

The critical points of f are $x = \pm 3$. NOTE: $x = 0$ is not a critical point since 0 is not in the domain of f.

The sign of f' and the behavior of f:

sign of f':	$- - - - - - - - -$	0	$+ + + + + + + + + + + +$	dne	$+ + + + + + + + + + + +$	0	$- - - - - - - - -$	
behavior of f:	decreases	-3 local minimum	increases	0	increases	3 local maximum	decreases	x

(5) *Second derivative*

$$f''(x) = 2x^{-3} - 36x^{-5} = \frac{2(x^2 - 18)}{x^5} = \frac{2(x - 3\sqrt{2})(x + 3\sqrt{2})}{x^5}.$$

The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph of f:

sign of f'':	$- - - - - -$	0	$+ + + + + + + + + + + +$	dne	$- - - - - - - - - - - -$	0	$+ + + + + + + +$	
concavity:	concave down	$-3\sqrt{2}$ point of inflection	concave up	0	concave down	$3\sqrt{2}$ point of inflection	concave up	x

(6) *Points of interest and preliminary sketch* (Figure 4.8.6)

$(-\sqrt{3}, 0), (\sqrt{3}, 0)$: x-intercept points.

$(-3, -2/9)$: local minimum point.

$(3, 2/9)$: local maximum point.

$(-3\sqrt{2}, -5\sqrt{2}/36), (3\sqrt{2}, 5\sqrt{2}/36)$: points of inflection.

(7) *The graph* See Figure 4.8.7. ❑

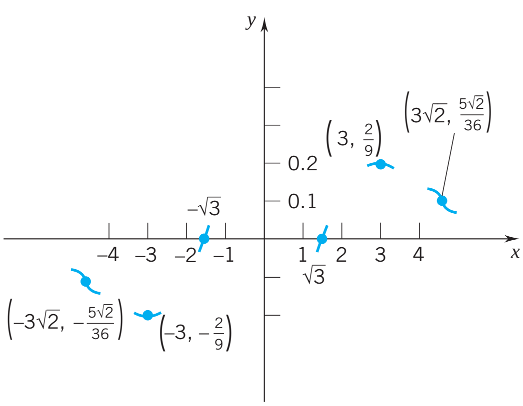


Figure 4.8.6

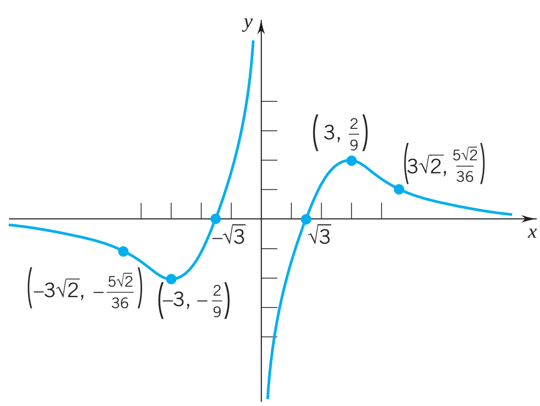


Figure 4.8.7

Example 4 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \frac{3}{5}x^{5/3} - 3x^{2/3}$.

SOLUTION

1. *Domain* The domain of f is the set of real numbers. Since we can express $f(x)$ as $\frac{3}{5}x^{2/3}(x - 5)$, we see that, as $x \to \infty$, $f(x) \to \infty$, and as $x \to -\infty$, $f(x) \to -\infty$. There are no asymptotes.

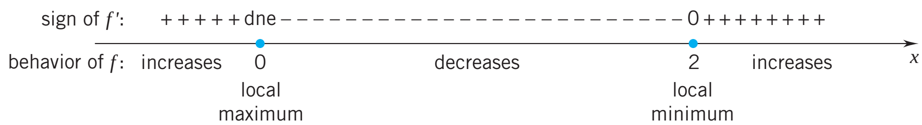
2. *Intercepts* Since $f(0) = 0$, the graph passes through the origin. Thus $x = 0$ is an x-intercept and $y = 0$ is the y-intercept; $x = 5$ is also an x-intercept.

3. *Symmetry/periodicity* There is no symmetry; f is not periodic.

4. *First derivative*

$$f'(x) = x^{2/3} - 2x^{-1/3} = \frac{x-2}{x^{1/3}}.$$

The critical points are $x = 0$ and $x = 2$. The sign of f' and the behavior of f:

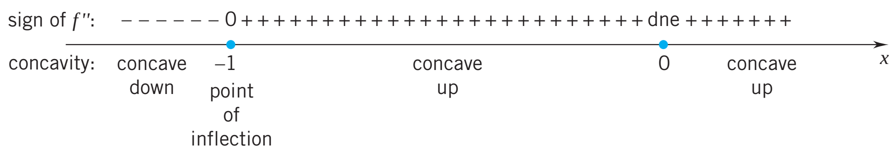


Note that, as $x \to 0^-$, $f'(x) \to \infty$, and as $x \to 0^+$, $f'(x) \to -\infty$. Since f is continuous at $x = 0$, and $f(0) = 0$, the graph of f has a vertical cusp at (0, 0).

5. *Second derivative*

$$f''(x) = \tfrac{2}{3}x^{-1/3} + \tfrac{2}{3}x^{-4/3} = \tfrac{2}{3}x^{-4/3}(x+1).$$

The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph of f:



6. *Points of interest and preliminary sketch* (Figure 4.8.8)

(0, 0):	y-intercept point, local maximum point; vertical cusp.
(0, 0), (5, 0):	x-intercepts points.
$(2, -9\sqrt[3]{4}/5)$:	local minimum point, $f(2) \cong -2.9$.
$(-1, -18/5)$:	point of inflection.

7. *The graph* See Figure 4.8.9. ❏

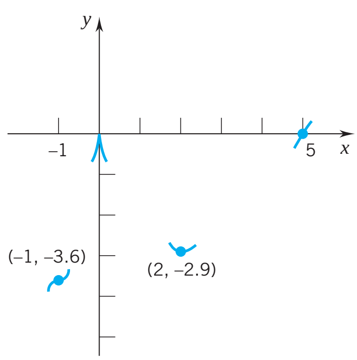


Figure 4.8.8

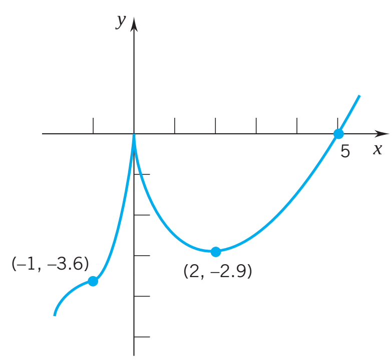


Figure 4.8.9

Example 5 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \sin 2x - 2\sin x$.

SOLUTION

(1) *Domain* The domain of f is the set of all real numbers. There are no asymptotes and, as you can verify, the graph of f oscillates between $\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3}$ and $-\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3}$ both as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$.

(2) *Intercepts* The y-intercept is $f(0) = 0$. To find the x-intercepts, we set $f(x) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sin 2x - 2\sin x &= 2\sin x\cos x - 2\sin x\\ &= 2\sin x(\cos x - 1) = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Since $\sin x = 0$ at all integral multiples of π and $\cos x = 1$ at all integral multiples of 2π, the x-intercepts are the integral multiples of π: all $x = \pm n\pi$.

(3) *Symmetry/periodicity* Since the sine is an odd function,

$$f(-x) = \sin(-2x) - 2\sin(-x) = -\sin 2x + 2\sin x = -f(x).$$

Thus, f is an odd function and the graph is symmetric about the origin. Also, f is periodic with period 2π. On the basis of these two properties, it would be sufficient to sketch the graph of f on the interval $[0, \pi]$. The result could then be extended to the interval $[-\pi, 0]$ using the symmetry, and then to $(-\infty, \infty)$ using the periodicity. However, for purposes of illustration here, we will consider f on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$.

(4) *First derivative*

$$\begin{aligned}f'(x) &= 2\cos 2x - 2\cos x\\ &= 2(2\cos^2 x - 1) - 2\cos x\\ &= 4\cos^2 x - 2\cos x - 2\\ &= 2(2\cos x + 1)(\cos x - 1).\end{aligned}$$

The critical points in $[-\pi, \pi]$ are $x = -2\pi/3$, $x = 0$, $x = 2\pi/3$.

sign of f': + + + + + + + + + 0 − − − − − − − − − − 0 − − − − − − − − − − 0 + + + + + + + + + 0

behavior of f: $-\pi$ increases $\frac{-2\pi}{3}$ decreases 0 decreases $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ increases π x

local maximum (at $\frac{-2\pi}{3}$); local minimum (at $\frac{2\pi}{3}$)

(5) *Second derivative*

$$\begin{aligned}f''(x) &= -4\sin 2x + 2\sin x\\ &= -8\sin x\cos x + 2\sin x\\ &= 2\sin x(-4\cos x + 1).\end{aligned}$$

$f''(x) = 0$ at $x = -\pi, 0, \pi$, and at the numbers x in $[-\pi, \pi]$ where $\cos x = \frac{1}{4}$, which are approximately ± 1.3. The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph on $[-\pi, \pi]$:

sign of f'': 0 − − − − − − − − − − − − − − 0 + + + + + 0 − − − − − 0 + + + + + + + + + + + + + 0

concavity: $-\pi$ concave down -1.3 concave up 0 concave down 1.3 concave up π x

point of inflection (at -1.3); point of inflection (at 0); point of inflection (at 1.3)

(6) *Points of interest and preliminary sketch* (Figure 4.8.10)

$(0, 0)$:	y-intercept point.
$(-\pi, 0), (0, 0), (\pi, 0)$:	x-intercept points; $(0, 0)$ is also a point of inflection.
$(-\frac{2}{3}\pi, \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3})$:	local and absolute maximum point; $\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3} \cong 2.6$.
$(\frac{2}{3}\pi, -\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3})$:	local and absolute minimum point; $-\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3} \cong -2.6$.
$(-1.3, 1.4), (1.3, -1.4)$:	points of inflection (approximately).

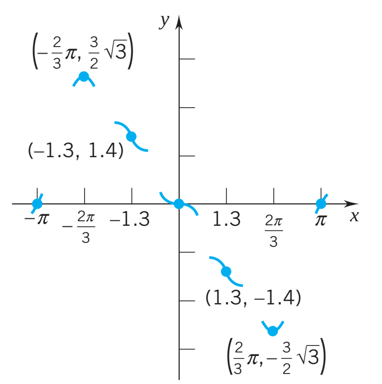


Figure 4.8.10

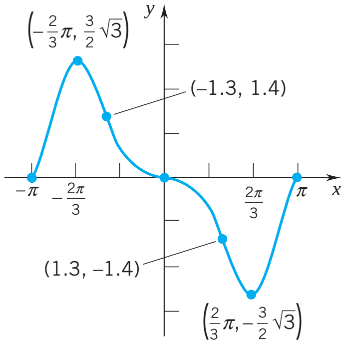


Figure 4.8.11

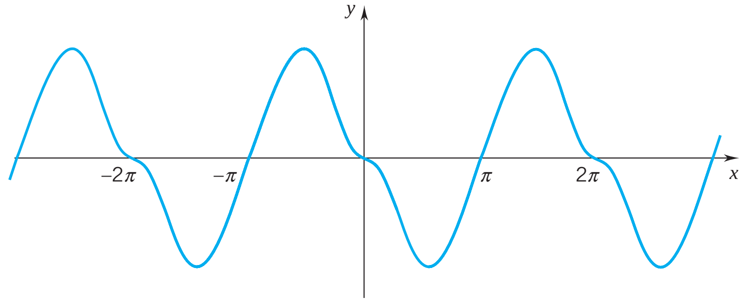


Figure 4.8.12

(7) *The graph* The graph of f on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$ is shown in Figure 4.8.11. An indication of the complete graph is given in Figure 4.8.12. ❑

EXERCISES 4.8

Exercises 1–54. Sketch the graph of the function using the approach presented in this section.

1. $f(x) = (x-2)^2$.

2. $f(x) = 1-(x-2)^2$.

3. $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + x + 1$.

4. $f(x) = x^3 - 9x^2 + 24x - 7$.

5. $f(x) = x^3 + 6x^2, \quad x \in [-4, 4]$.

6. $f(x) = x^4 - 8x^2, \quad x \in (0, \infty)$.

7. $f(x) = \frac{2}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 10x - 1$.

8. $f(x) = x(x^2+4)^2$.

9. $f(x) = x^2 + \dfrac{2}{x}$.

10. $f(x) = x - \dfrac{1}{x}$.

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{x-4}{x^2}$.

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+2}{x^3}$.

13. $f(x) = 2\sqrt{x} - x, \quad x \in [0, 4]$.

14. $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}x - \sqrt{x}, \quad x \in [0, 9]$.

15. $f(x) = 2 + (x+1)^{6/5}$.

16. $f(x) = 2 + (x+1)^{7/5}$.

17. $f(x) = 3x^5 + 5x^3$.

18. $f(x) = 3x^4 + 4x^3$.

19. $f(x) = 1 + (x-2)^{5/3}$.

20. $f(x) = 1 + (x-2)^{4/3}$.

21. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2+4}$.

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2}{x+1}$.

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{(x+3)^2}$.

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2+1}$.

25. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2-4}$.

26. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^3-x}$.

27. $f(x) = x\sqrt{1-x}$.

28. $f(x) = (x-1)^4 - 2(x-1)^2$.

29. $f(x) = x + \sin 2x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

30. $f(x) = \cos^3 x + 6\cos x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

31. $f(x) = \cos^4 x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

32. $f(x) = \sqrt{3}x - \cos 2x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

33. $f(x) = 2\sin^3 x + 3\sin x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

34. $f(x) = \sin^4 x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

35. $f(x) = (x+1)^3 - 3(x+1)^2 + 3(x+1)$.

36. $f(x) = x^3(x+5)^2$.

37. $f(x) = x^2(5-x)^3$.

38. $f(x) = 4 - |2x - x^2|$.

39. $f(x) = 3 - |x^2 - 1|$.

40. $f(x) = x - x^{1/3}$.

41. $f(x) = x(x-1)^{1/5}$.

42. $f(x) = x^2(x-7)^{1/3}$.

43. $f(x) = x^2 - 6x^{1/3}$.

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$.

45. $f(x) = \sqrt{\dfrac{x}{x-2}}$.

46. $f(x) = \sqrt{\dfrac{x}{x+4}}$.

47. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^2-2}}$.

48. $f(x) = 3\cos 4x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

49. $f(x) = 2\sin 3x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

50. $f(x) = 3 + 2\cot x + \csc^2 x, \quad x \in (0, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$.

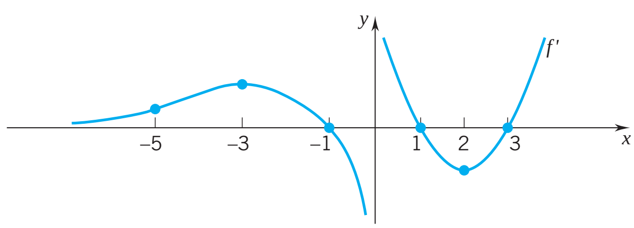
51. $f(x) = 2\tan x - \sec^2 x, \quad x \in (0, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$.

52. $f(x) = 2\cos x + \sin^2 x$.

53. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{1 - \sin x}, \quad x \in (-\pi, \pi)$.

54. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 - \cos x}, \quad x \in (-\pi, \pi)$.

55. Given: f is everywhere continuous, f is differentiable at all $x \neq 0$, $f(0) = 0$, and the graph of f' is as indicated below.



(a) Determine the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which it decreases; find the critical points of f.
(b) Sketch the graph of f''; determine the intervals on which the graph of f is concave up and those on which it is concave down.
(c) Sketch the graph of f.

56. Set

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} \sin(1/x), & x \neq 0 \\ 0, & x = 0, \end{cases}$$

$$G(x) = \begin{cases} x\sin(1/x), & x \neq 0 \\ 0, & x = 0, \end{cases}$$

$$H(x) = \begin{cases} x^2\sin(1/x), & x \neq 0 \\ 0, & x = 0. \end{cases}$$

(a) Sketch a figure that shows the general nature of the graph of F.
(b) Sketch a figure that shows the general nature of the graph of G.
(c) Sketch a figure that shows the general nature of the graph of H.
(d) Which of these functions is continuous at 0?
(e) Which of these functions is differentiable at 0?

57. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3 - x^{1/3}}{x}$. Show that $f(x) - x^2 \to 0$ as $x \to \pm\infty$. This says that the graph of f is *asymptotic* to the parabola $y = x^2$. Sketch the graph of f and feature this asymptotic behavior.

58. The lines $y = (b/a)x$ and $y = -(b/a)x$ are called *asymptotes* of the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

(a) Draw a figure that illustrates this asymptotic behavior.
(b) Show that the first-quadrant arc of the hyperbola, the curve

$$y = \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{x^2 - a^2},$$

is indeed asymptotic to the line $y = (b/a)x$ by showing that

$$\frac{b}{a}\sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - \frac{b}{a}x \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad x \to \infty.$$

(c) Proceeding as in part (b), show that the second-quadrant arc of the hyperbola is asymptotic to the line $y = -(b/a)x$ by taking a suitable limit as $x \to -\infty$. (The asymptotic behavior in the other quadrants can be verified in an analogous manner, or by appealing to symmetry.)

■ 4.9 VELOCITY AND ACCELERATION; SPEED

Suppose that an object (some solid object) moves along a straight line. On the line of motion we choose a point of reference, a positive direction, a negative direction, and a unit distance. This gives us a coordinate system by which we can indicate the position of the object at any given time. Using this coordinate system, we denote by $x(t)$ the position of the object at time t.† There is no loss in generality in taking the line of motion as the x-axis. We can arrange this by choosing a suitable frame of reference.

You have seen that the derivative of a function gives the rate of change of that function at the point of evaluation. Thus, if $x(t)$ gives the position of the object at time t and the position function is differentiable, then the derivative $x'(t)$ gives *the rate of change of the position function at time t*. We call this the *velocity at time t and denote it by* $v(t)$. In symbols,

(4.9.1) $$\boxed{v(t) = x'(t).}$$

Velocity at a particular time t (some call it "instantaneous velocity" at time t) can be obtained as the limit of average velocities. At time t the object is at $x(t)$ and at time $t + h$ it is at $x(t + h)$. If $h > 0$, then $[t, t + h]$ is a time interval and the quotient

$$\frac{x(t+h) - x(t)}{(t+h) - t} = \frac{x(t+h) - x(t)}{h}$$

†If the object is larger than a point mass, we can choose a spot on the object and view the location of that spot as the position of the object. In a course in physics an object is usually located by the position of its center of mass. (Section 17.6.)

gives the *average velocity* during this time interval. If $h < 0$, then $[t+h, t]$ is a time interval and the quotient

$$\frac{x(t) - x(t+h)}{t - (t+h)} = \frac{x(t) - x(t+h)}{-h},$$

which also can be written

$$\frac{x(t+h) - x(t)}{h},$$

gives the *average velocity* during this time interval. Thus, whether h is positive or negative, the difference quotient

$$\frac{x(t+h) - x(t)}{h}$$

gives the average velocity of the object during the time interval of length $|h|$ that begins or ends at t. The statement

$$v(t) = x'(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{x(t+h) - x(t)}{h}$$

expresses the velocity at time t as the limit as $h \to 0$ of these average velocities.

If the velocity function is itself differentiable, then its rate of change with respect to time is called the *acceleration*; in symbols,

(4.9.2)
$$\boxed{a(t) = v'(t) = x''(t).}$$

In the Leibniz notation,

(4.9.3)
$$\boxed{v = \frac{dx}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}.}$$

The magnitude of the velocity, by which we mean the absolute value of the velocity, is called the *speed* of the object:

(4.9.4)
$$\boxed{\text{speed at time } t = \nu(t) = |v(t)|.}$$

The four notions that we have just introduced — position, velocity, acceleration, speed — provide the framework for the description of all straight-line motion.[†] The following observations exploit the connections that exist between these fundamental notions:

(1) Positive velocity indicates motion in the positive direction (x is increasing). Negative velocity indicates motion in the negative direction (x is decreasing).

(2) Positive acceleration indicates increasing velocity (increasing speed in the positive direction, decreasing speed in the negative direction). Negative acceleration indicates decreasing velocity (decreasing speed in the positive direction, increasing speed in the negative direction).

[†]Extended by vector methods (Chapter 14), these four notions provide the framework for the description of all motion.

(3) If the velocity and acceleration have the same sign, the object is speeding up, but if the velocity and acceleration have opposite signs, the object is slowing down.

PROOF OF (1) Note that $v = x'$. If $v > 0$, then $x' > 0$ and x increases. If $v < 0$, then $x' < 0$ and x decreases. $\square$

PROOF OF (2) Note that

$$\nu = \begin{cases} v, & \text{in the positive direction} \\ -v, & \text{in the negative direction.} \end{cases}$$

Suppose that $a > 0$. Then v increases. In the positive direction, $\nu = v$ and therefore ν increases; in the negative direction, $\nu = -v$ and therefore ν decreases.

Suppose that $a < 0$. Then v decreases. In the positive direction, $\nu = v$ and therefore ν decreases; in the negative direction, $\nu = -v$ and therefore ν increases. $\square$

PROOF OF (3) Note that

$$v^2 = \nu^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d}{dt}(v^2) = 2vv' = 2va.$$

If v and a have the same sign, then $va > 0$ and $v^2 = \nu^2$ increases. Therefore ν increases, which means the object is speeding up. If v and a have opposite sign, then $va < 0$ and $v^2 = \nu^2$ decreases. Therefore ν decreases, which means the object is slowing down. $\square$

Example 1 An object moves along the x-axis; its position at each time t given by the function

$$x(t) = t^3 - 12t^2 + 36t - 27.$$

Let's study the motion from time $t = 0$ to time $t = 9$.

The object starts out at 27 units to the left of the origin:

$$x(0) = 0^3 - 12(0)^2 + 36(0) - 27 = -27$$

and ends up 54 units to the right of the origin:

$$x(9) = 9^3 - 12(9)^2 + 36(9) - 27 = 54.$$

We find the velocity function by differentiating the position function:

$$v(t) = x'(t) = 3t^2 - 24t + 36 = 3(t-2)(t-6).$$

We leave it to you to verify that

$$v(t) \text{ is } \begin{cases} \text{positive} & \text{for } 0 \le t < 2 \\ 0, & \text{at } t = 2 \\ \text{negative,} & \text{for } 2 < t < 6 \\ 0, & \text{at } t = 6 \\ \text{positive,} & \text{for } 6 < t \le 9. \end{cases}$$

We can interpret all this as follows: the object begins by moving to the right [$v(t)$ is positive for $0 \le t < 2$]; it comes to a stop at time $t = 2[v(2) = 0]$; it then moves left [$v(t)$ is negative for $2 < t < 6$]; it stops at time $t = 6[v(6) = 0]$; it then moves right and keeps going right [$v(t) > 0$ for $6 < t \le 9$].

We find the acceleration by differentiating the velocity:

$$a(t) = v'(t) = 6t - 24 = 6(t - 4).$$

We note that

$$a(t) \text{ is } \begin{cases} \text{negative}, & \text{for } 0 \le t < 4 \\ 0, & \text{at } t = 4 \\ \text{positive}, & \text{for } 4 < t \le 9. \end{cases}$$

At the beginning the velocity decreases, reaching a minimum at time $t = 4$. Then the velocity starts to increase and continues to increase.

Figure 4.9.1 shows a diagram for the sign of the velocity and a corresponding diagram for the sign of the acceleration. Combining the two diagrams, we have a brief description of the motion in convenient form. The direction of the motion at each time $t \in [0, 9]$ is represented schematically in Figure 4.9.2.

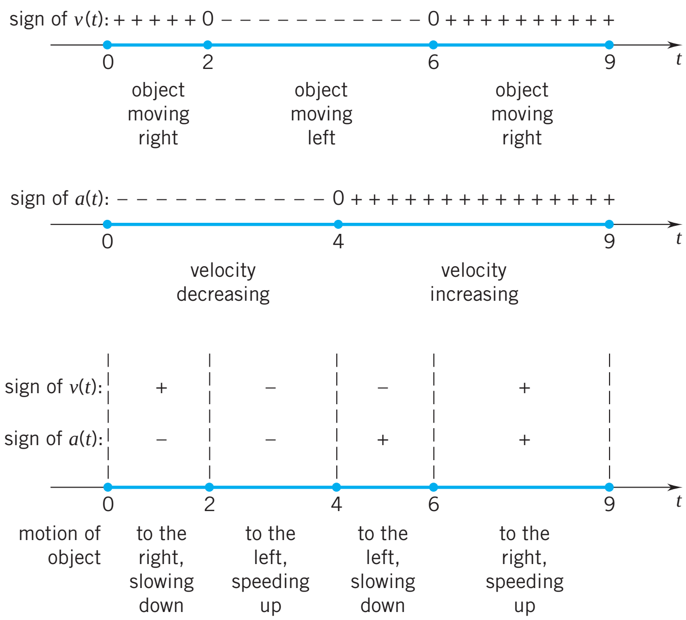


Figure 4.9.1

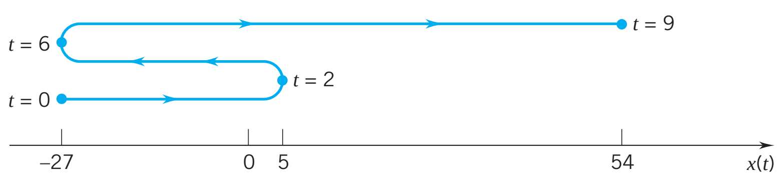


Figure 4.9.2

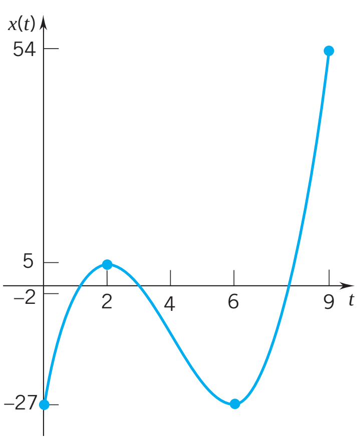


Figure 4.9.3

Another way to represent the motion is to graph x as a function of t, as we do in Figure 4.9.3. The velocity $v(t) = x'(t)$ then appears as the slope of the curve. From the figure, we see that we have positive velocity from $t = 0$ up to $t = 2$, zero velocity at time $t = 2$, then negative velocity up to $t = 6$, zero velocity at $t = 6$, then positive velocity to $t = 9$. The acceleration $a(t) = v'(t)$ can be read from the concavity of the curve. Where the graph is concave down (from $t = 0$ to $t = 4$), the velocity decreases; where the graph is concave up (from $t = 4$ to $t = 9$), the velocity increases. The speed is reflected by the steepness of the curve. The speed decreases from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$, increases from $t = 2$ to $t = 4$, decreases from $t = 4$ to $t = 6$, increases from $t = 6$ to $t = 9$. ❑

A few words about units. The units of velocity, speed, and acceleration depend on the units used to measure distance and the units used to measure time. The units of velocity are units of distance per unit time:

feet per second, meters per second, miles per hour, and so forth.

The units of acceleration are units of distance per unit time per unit time:

feet per second per second, meters per second per second,
miles per hour per hour, and so forth.

Free Fall Near the Surface of the Earth

(In what follows, the line of motion is clearly vertical. So, instead of writing $x(t)$ to indicate position, we'll follow custom and write $y(t)$. Velocity is then $y'(t)$, acceleration is $y''(t)$, and speed is $|y'(t)|$.)

Imagine an object (for example, a rock or an apple) falling to the ground. (Figure 4.9.4.) We will assume that the object is in *free fall*; namely, that the gravitational pull on the object is constant throughout the fall and that there is no air resistance.[†]

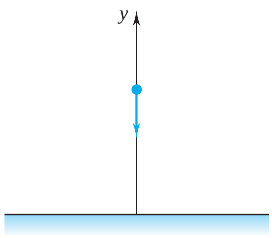


Figure 4.9.4

Galileo's formula for the free fall gives the height of the object at each time t of the fall:

(4.9.5) $$\boxed{y(t) = -\tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 + v_0 t + y_0}$$

where g is a positive constant the value of which depends on the units used to measure time and the units used to measure distance.[††]

Let's examine this formula. First, the point of reference is at ground level and the positive y direction is up. Next, since $y(0) = y_0$, the constant y_0 represents the height of the object at time $t = 0$. This is called the *initial position*. Differentiation gives

$$y'(t) = -gt + v_0.$$

Since $y'(0) = v_0$, the constant v_0 gives the velocity of the object at time $t = 0$. This is called the *initial velocity*. A second differentiation gives

$$y''(t) = -g.$$

This indicates that the object falls with constant negative acceleration $-g$.

The constant g is a *gravitational constant*. If time is measured in seconds and distance in feet, then g is approximately 32 feet per second per second[§]; if time is measured in seconds and distance in meters, then g is approximately 9.8 meters per

[†]In practice, neither of these conditions is ever fully met. Gravitational attraction near the surface of the earth does vary somewhat with altitude, and there is always some air resistance. Nevertheless, in the setting in which we will be working, the results that we obtain are good approximations of the actual motion.

[††]Galileo Galilei (1564–1642), a great Italian astronomer and mathematician, is popularly known today for his early experiments with falling objects. His astronomical observations led him to support the Copernican view of the solar system. For this he was brought before the Inquisition.

[§]The value of this constant varies slightly with latitude and elevation. It is approximately 32 feet per second per second at the equator, elevation zero. In Greenland it is about 32.23.

second per second. In making numerical calculations, we will take g as 32 feet per second per second or as 9.8 meters per second per second. Equation 4.9.5 then reads

$$y(t) = -16t^2 + v_0 t + y_0 \qquad \text{(distance in feet)}$$

or

$$y(t) = 4.9t^2 + v_0 t + y_0. \qquad \text{(distance in meters)}$$

Example 2 A stone is dropped from a height of 98 meters. In how many seconds does it hit the ground? What is the speed at impact?

SOLUTION Here $y_0 = 98$ and $v_0 = 0$. Consequently, we have

$$y(t) = -4.9t^2 + 98.$$

To find the time t at impact, we set $y(t) = 0$. This gives

$$-4.9t^2 + 98 = 0, \qquad t^2 = 20, \qquad t = \pm\sqrt{20} = \pm 2\sqrt{5}.$$

We disregard the negative value and conclude that it takes $2\sqrt{5} \cong 4.47$ seconds for the stone to hit the ground.

The velocity at impact is the velocity at time $t = 2\sqrt{5}$. Since

$$v(t) = y'(t) = -9.8t,$$

we have

$$v(2\sqrt{5}) = -(19.6)\sqrt{5} \cong -43.83.$$

The speed at impact is about 43.83 meters per second. ❑

Example 3 An explosion causes some debris to rise vertically with an initial velocity of 72 feet per second.

(a) In how many seconds does this debris attain maximum height?

(b) What is this maximum height?

(c) What is the speed of the debris as it reaches a height of 32 feet (i) going up? (ii) coming back down?

SOLUTION Since we are measuring distances in feet, the basic equation reads

$$y(t) = -16t^2 + v_0 t + y_0.$$

Here $y_0 = 0$ (it starts at ground level) and $v_0 = 72$ (the initial velocity is 72 feet per second). The equation of motion is therefore

$$y(t) = -16t^2 + 72t.$$

Differentiation gives

$$v(t) = y'(t) = -32t + 72.$$

The maximum height is attained when the velocity is 0. This occurs at time $t = \frac{72}{32} = \frac{9}{4}$. Since $y(\frac{9}{4}) = 81$, the maximum height attained is 81 feet.

To answer part (c), we must find those times t for which $y(t) = 32$. Since

$$y(t) = -16t^2 + 72t,$$

the condition $y(t) = 32$ yields $-16t^2 + 72t = 32$, which simplifies to

$$16t^2 - 72t + 32 = 0.$$

This quadratic has two solutions, $t = \frac{1}{2}$ and $t = 4$. Since $v(\frac{1}{2}) = 56$ and $v(4) = -56$, the velocity going up is 56 feet per second and the velocity coming down is -56 feet per second. In each case the speed is 56 feet per second. ❑

EXERCISES 4.9

Exercises 1–6. An object moves along a coordinate line, its position at each time $t \geq 0$ given by $x(t)$. Find the position, velocity, and acceleration at time t_0. What is the speed at time t_0?

1. $x(t) = 4 + 3t - t^2$; $t_0 = 5$

2. $x(t) = 5t - t^3$; $t_0 = 3$.

3. $x(t) = \dfrac{18}{t+2}$; $t_0 = 1$. **4.** $x(t) = \dfrac{2t}{t+3}$; $t_0 = 3$.

5. $x(t) = (t^2 + 5t)(t^2 + t - 2)$; $t_0 = 1$.

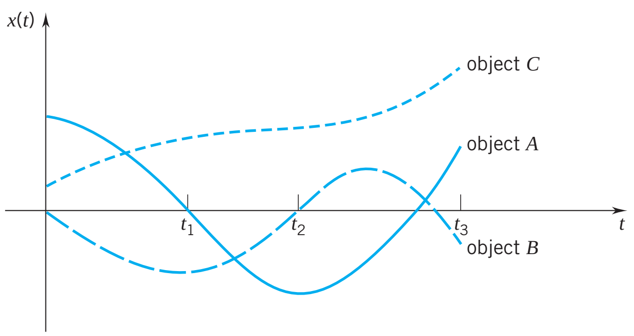
6. $x(t) = (t^2 - 3t)(t^2 + 3t)$; $t_0 = 2$.

Exercises 7–10. An object moves along the x-axis, its position at each time $t \geq 0$ given by $x(t)$. Determine the times, if any, at which (a) the velocity is zero, (b) the acceleration is zero.

7. $x(t) = 5t + 1$. **8.** $x(t) = 4t^2 - t + 3$.

9. $x(t) = t^3 - 6t^2 + 9t - 1$. **10.** $x(t) = t^4 - 4t^3 + 4t^2 + 2$.

Exercises 11–20. Objects A, B, C move along the x-axis. Their positions $x(t)$ from time $t = 0$ to time $t = t_3$ have been graphed in the figure as functions of t.



11. Which object begins farthest to the right?

12. Which object finishes farthest to the right?

13. Which object has the greatest speed at time t_1?

14. Which object maintains the same direction during the time interval $[t_1, t_3]$?

15. Which object begins moving left?

16. Which object finishes moving left?

17. Which object changes direction at time t_2?

18. Which object speeds up throughout the time interval $[0, t_1]$?

19. Which objects slow down during the time interval $[t_1, t_2]$?

20. Which object changes direction during the time interval $[t_2, t_3]$.

Exercises 21–28. An object moves along the x-axis, its position at each time $t \geq 0$ given by $x(t)$. Determine the time interval(s), if any, during which the object satisfies the given condition.

21. $x(t) = t^4 - 12t^3 + 28t^2$; moves right.

22. $x(t) = t^3 - 12t^2 + 21t$; moves left.

23. $x(t) = 5t^4 - t^5$; speeds up.

24. $x(t) = 6t^2 - t^4$; slows down.

25. $x(t) = t^3 - 6t^2 - 15t$; moves left slowing down.

26. $x(t) = t^3 - 6t^2 - 15t$; moves right slowing down.

27. $x(t) = t^4 - 8t^3 - 16t^2$; moves right speeding up.

28. $x(t) = t^4 - 8t^3 - 16t^2$; moves left speeding up.

Exercises 29–32. An object moves along a coordinate line, its position at each time $t \geq 0$ being given by $x(t)$. Find the times t at which the object changes direction.

29. $x(t) = (t+1)^2(t-9)^3$. **30.** $x(t) = t(t-8)^3$.

31. $x(t) = (t^3 - 12t)^4$. **32.** $x(t) = (t^2 - 8t + 15)^3$.

Exercises 33–38. An object moves along the x-axis, its position at each time t given by $x(t)$. Determine those times from $t = 0$ to $t = 2\pi$ at which the object is moving to the right with increasing speed.

33. $x(t) = \sin 3t$. **34.** $x(t) = \cos 2t$.

35. $x(t) = \sin t - \cos t$. **36.** $x(t) = \sin t + \cos t$.

37. $x(t) = t + 2\cos t$. **38.** $x(t) = t - \sqrt{2}\sin t$.

In Exercises 39–52, neglect air resistance. For the numerical calculations, take g as 32 feet per second per second or as 9.8 meters per second per second.

39. An object is dropped and hits the ground 6 seconds later. From what height, in feet, was it dropped?

40. Supplies are dropped from a stationary helicopter and seconds later hit the ground at 98 meters per second. How high was the helicopter?

41. An object is projected vertically upward from ground level with velocity v. Find the height in meters attained by the object.

42. An object projected vertically upward from ground level returns to earth in 8 seconds. Give the initial velocity in feet per second.

43. An object projected vertically upward passes every height less than the maximum twice, once on the way up and once on the way down. Show that the speed is the same in each direction. Measure height in feet.

44. An object is projected vertically upward from the ground. Show that it takes the object the same amount of time to reach its maximum height as it takes for it to drop from that height back to the ground. Measure height in meters.

45. A rubber ball is thrown straight down from a height of 224 feet at a speed of 80 feet per second. If the ball always rebounds with one-fourth of its impact speed, what will be the speed of the ball the third time it hits the ground?

46. A ball is thrown straight up from ground level. How high will the ball go if it reaches a height of 64 feet in 2 seconds?

47. A stone is thrown upward from ground level. The initial speed is 32 feet per second. (a) In how many seconds will the stone hit the ground? (b) How high will it go? (c) With what minimum speed should the stone be thrown so as to reach a height of at least 36 feet?

48. To estimate the height of a bridge, a man drops a stone into the water below. How high is the bridge (a) if the stone hits the water 3 seconds later? (b) if the man hears the splash 3 seconds later? (Use 1080 feet per second as the speed of sound.)

49. A falling stone is at a certain instant 100 feet above the ground. Two seconds later it is only 16 feet above the ground. (a) From what height was it dropped? (b) If it was thrown down with an initial speed of 5 feet per second, from what height was it thrown? (c) If it was thrown upward with an initial speed of 10 feet per second, from what height was it thrown?

50. A rubber ball is thrown straight down from a height of 4 feet. If the ball rebounds with one-half of its impact speed and returns exactly to its original height before falling again, how fast was it thrown originally?

51. Ballast dropped from a balloon that was rising at the rate of 5 feet per second reached the ground in 8 seconds. How high was the balloon when the ballast was dropped?

52. Had the balloon of Exercise 51 been falling at the rate of 5 feet per second, how long would it have taken for the ballast to reach the ground?

53. Two race horses start a race at the same time and finish in a tie. Prove that there must have been at least one time t *during* the race at which the two horses had exactly the same speed.

54. Suppose that the two horses of Exercise 53 cross the finish line together at the same speed. Show that they had the same acceleration at some instant during the race.

55. A certain tollroad is 120 miles long and the speed limit is 65 miles per hour. If a driver's entry ticket at one end of the tollroad is stamped 12 noon and she exits at the other end at 1:40 P.M., should she be given a speeding ticket? Explain.

56. At 1:00 P.M. a car's speedometer reads 30 miles per hour and at 1:15 P.M. it reads 60 miles per hour. Prove that the car's acceleration was exactly 120 miles per hour per hour at least once between 1:00 and 1:15.

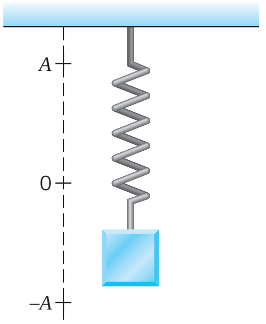
57. A car is stationary at a toll booth. Twenty minutes later, at a point 20 miles down the road, the car is clocked at 60 mph. Explain how you know that the car must have exceeded the 60-mph speed limit some time before being clocked at 60 mph.

58. The results of an investigation of a car accident showed that the driver applied his brakes and skidded 280 feet in 6 seconds. If the speed limit on the street where the accident occurred was 30 miles per hour, was the driver exceeding the speed limit at the instant he applied his brakes? Explain. HINT: 30 miles per hour = 44 feet per second.

59. (*Simple harmonic motion*) A bob suspended from a spring oscillates up and down about an equilibrium point, its vertical position at time t given by

$$y(t) = A\sin(\omega t + \varphi_0)$$

where A, ω, φ_0 are positive constants. (This is an idealization in which we are disregarding friction.)



(a) Show that at all times t the acceleration of the bob $y''(t)$ is related to the position of the bob by the equation

$$y''(t) + \omega^2 y(t) = 0.$$

(b) It is clear that the bob oscillates from $-A$ to A, and the speed of the bob is zero at these points. At what position does the bob attain maximum speed? What is this maximum speed?

(c) What are the extreme values of the acceleration function? Where does the bob attain these extreme values?

60. An object moves along the x-axis, its position from $t = 0$ to $t = 5$ given by

$$x(t) = t^3 - 7t^2 + 10t + 5.$$

(a) Determine the velocity function v. Use a graphing utility to graph v as a function of t.

(b) Use the graph to estimate the times when the object is moving right and the times when it is moving left.

(c) Use the graphing utility to graph the speed v of the object as a function of t. Estimate the time(s) when the object stops. Estimate the maximum speed from $t = 1$ to $t = 4$.

(d) Determine the acceleration function a and use the graphing utility to graph it as a function of t. Estimate the times when the object is speeding up and the times when it is slowing down.

(e) Graph the velocity and acceleration functions on the same set of axes and use the graphs to estimate the times when the object is speeding up and the times when it is slowing down.

■ PROJECT 4.9A Angular Velocity; Uniform Circular Motion

As a particle moves along a circle of radius r, it effects a change in the central angle, marked θ in Figure A. We measure θ in radians. The *angular velocity*, ω,† of the particle is the time rate of change of θ; that is, $\omega = d\theta/dt^{\dagger}$. Circular motion with constant, positive angular velocity is called *uniform circular motion*.

Problem 1. A particle in uniform circular motion traces out a circular arc. The time rate of change of the length of that arc is called the *speed* of the particle. What is the speed of a particle that moves around a circle of radius r with constant, positive angular velocity ω?

Problem 2. The *kinetic energy*, KE, of a particle of mass m is given by the formula

$$\text{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2$$

where v is the speed of the particle. Suppose the particle in Problem 1 has mass m. What is the kinetic energy of the particle?

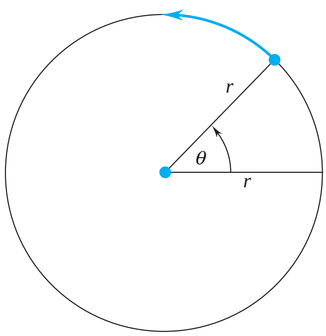


Figure A

†The symbol ω is the lowercase Greek letter "omega."

Problem 3. A point P moves uniformly along the circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ with constant angular velocity ω. Find the x- and y-coordinates of P at time t given that the motion starts at time $t = 0$ with $\theta = \theta_0$. Then find the velocity and acceleration of the projection of P onto the x-axis and onto the y-axis. [The projection of P onto the x-axis is the point $(x, 0)$; the projection of P onto the y-axis is the point $(0, y)$.]

Problem 4. Figure B shows a sector in a circle of radius r. The sector is the union of the triangle T and the segment S. Suppose that the radius vector rotates counterclockwise with a constant angular velocity of ω radians per second. Show that the area of the sector changes at a constant rate but that the area of T and the area of S do not change at a constant rate.

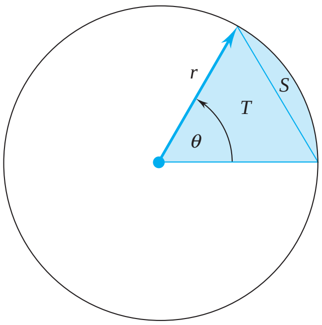


Figure B

Problem 5. Take S and T as in Problem 4. While the area of S and the area of T change at different rates, there is one value of θ between 0 and π at which both areas change at the same rate. Find this value of θ.

■ PROJECT 4.9B Energy of a Falling Body (Near the Surface of the Earth)

If we lift an object, we counteract the force of gravity. In so doing, we increase what physicists call the *gravitational potential energy* of the object. The gravitational potential energy of an object is defined by the formula

$$\text{GPE} = \text{weight} \times \text{height}.$$

Since the weight of an object of mass m is mg where g is the gravitational constant (we take this from physics), we can write

$$\text{GPE} = mgy$$

where y is the height of the object.

If we lift an object and release it, the object drops. As it drops, it loses height and therefore loses gravitational potential energy, but its speed increases. The speed with which the object falls gives the object a form of energy called *kinetic energy*, the energy of motion. The kinetic energy of an object in motion is given by the formula

$$\text{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}\text{m}\nu^2$$

where ν is the speed of the object. For straight-line motion with velocity v we have $v^2 = \nu^2$ and therefore

$$\text{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2.$$

Problem 1. Prove the *law of conservation of energy*:

$$\text{GPE} + \text{KE} = C, \quad \text{constant}.$$

HINT: Differentiate the expression GPE + KE and use the fact that $dv/dt = -g$.

Problem 2. An object initially at rest falls freely from height y_0. Show that the speed of the object at height y is given by

$$v = \sqrt{2g(y_0 - y)}.$$

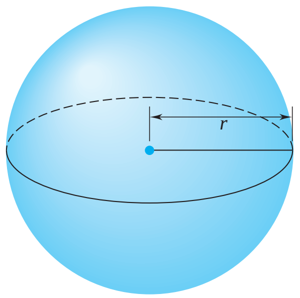
Problem 3. According to the results in Section 4.9, the position of an object that falls from rest from a height y_0 is given by

$$y(t) = -\tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 + y_o.$$

Calculate the speed of the object from this equation and show that the result obtained is equivalent to the result obtained in Problem 2.

■ 4.10 RELATED RATES OF CHANGE PER UNIT TIME

In Section 4.9 we studied straight-line motion and defined velocity as the rate of change of position with respect to time and acceleration as the rate of change of velocity with respect to time. In this section we work with other quantities that vary with time. The fundamental point is this: *if Q is any quantity that varies with time, then the derivative dQ/dt gives the rate of change of that quantity with respect to time.*



Example 1 A spherical balloon is expanding. Given that the radius is increasing at the rate of 2 inches per minute, at what rate is the volume increasing when the radius is 5 inches?

SOLUTION Find dV/dt when $r = 5$ inches, given that $dr/dt = 2$ in./min and

$$V = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3. \qquad \text{(volume of a sphere of radius } r\text{)}$$

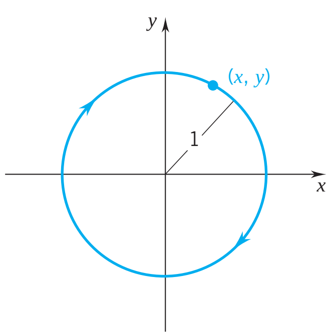
Both r and V are functions of t. Differentiating $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ with respect to t, we have

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = 4\pi r^2 \frac{dr}{dt}.$$

Setting $r = 5$ and $dr/dt = 2$, we find that

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = 4\pi(5^2)2 = 200\pi.$$

When the radius is 5 inches, the volume is increasing at the rate of 200π cubic inches per minute. ❑



Example 2 A particle moves clockwise along the unit circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$. As it passes through the point $(1/2, \sqrt{3}/2)$, its y-coordinate decreases at the rate of 3 units per second. At what rate does the x-coordinate change at this point?

SOLUTION Find dx/dt when $x = 1/2$ and $y = \sqrt{3}/2$, given that $dy/dt = -3$ units/sec and

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1. \qquad \text{(equation of circle)}$$

Differentiating $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ with respect to t, we have

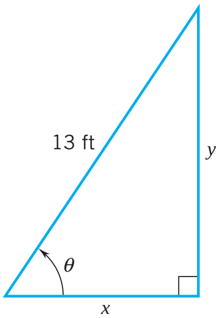
$$2x\frac{dx}{dt} + 2y\frac{dy}{dt} = 0 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad x\frac{dx}{dt} + y\frac{dy}{dt} = 0.$$

Setting $x = 1/2$, $y = \sqrt{3}/2$, and $dy/dt = -3$, we find that

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}(-3) = 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \frac{dx}{dt} = 3\sqrt{3}.$$

As the object passes through the point $(1/2, \sqrt{3}/2)$, the x-coordinate increases at the rate $3\sqrt{3}$ units per second. ❑

Example 3 A 13-foot ladder leans against the side of a building, forming an angle θ with the ground. Given that the foot of the ladder is being pulled away from the building at the rate of 0.1 feet per second, what is the rate of change of θ when the top of the ladder is 12 feet above the ground?



SOLUTION Find $d\theta/dt$ when $y = 12$ feet, given that $dx/dt = 0.1$ ft/sec and

$$\cos\theta = \frac{x}{13}.$$

Differentiation with respect to t gives

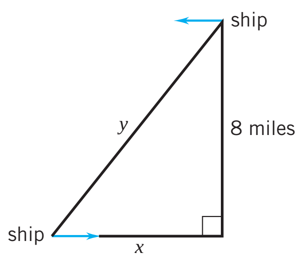
$$-\sin\theta\,\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{13}\frac{dx}{dt}.$$

When $y = 12$, $\sin\ \theta = \frac{12}{13}$. Setting $\sin\theta = \frac{12}{13}$ and $dx/dt = 0.1$, we have

$$-\left(\frac{12}{13}\right)\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{13}(0.1) \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \frac{d\theta}{dt} = -\frac{1}{120}.$$

When the top of the ladder is 12 feet above the ground, θ decreases at the rate of $\frac{1}{120}$ radians per second (about half a degree per second). ❑

Example 4 Two ships, one heading west and the other east, approach each other on parallel courses 8 nautical miles apart.† Given that each ship is cruising at 20 nautical miles per hour (knots), at what rate is the distance between them diminishing when the ships are 10 nautical miles apart?



SOLUTION Let y be the distance between the ships measured in nautical miles. Since the ships are moving in opposite directions at the rate of 20 knots each, their horizontal separation (see the figure) is decreasing at the rate of 40 knots. Thus, we want to find dy/dt when $y = 10$, given that $dx/dt = -40$ knots. (We take dx/dt as negative since x is decreasing.) The variables x and y are related by the equation

$$x^2 + 8^2 = y^2. \qquad \text{(Pythagorean theorem)}$$

Differentiating $x^2 + 8^2 = y^2$ with respect to t, we find that

$$2x\frac{dx}{dt} + 0 = 2y\frac{dy}{dt} \qquad \text{and consequently} \qquad x\frac{dx}{dt} = y\frac{dy}{dt}.$$

When $y = 10$, $x = 6$. (Explain.) Setting $x = 6$, $y = 10$, and $dx/dt = -40$, we have

$$6(-40) = 10\frac{dy}{dt} \qquad \text{so that} \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = -24.$$

(Note that dy/dt is negative since y is decreasing.) When the two ships are 10 miles apart, the distance between them is diminishing at the rate of 24 knots. ❑

The preceding examples were solved by the same general method, a method that we recommend to you for solving problems of this type.

Step 1. Draw a suitable diagram, and indicate the quantities that vary.

Step 2. Specify in mathematical form the rate of change you are looking for, and record all relevant information.

Step 3. Find an equation that relates the relevant variables.

Step 4. Differentiate with respect to time t the equation found in Step 3.

Step 5. State the final answer in coherent form, specifying the units that you are using.

---

†The international nautical mile measures 6080 feet.

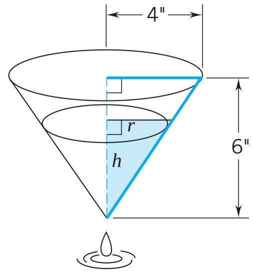


Figure 4.10.1

Example 5 A conical paper cup 8 inches across the top and 6 inches deep is full of water. The cup springs a leak at the bottom and loses water at the rate of 2 cubic inches per minute. How fast is the water level dropping when the water is exactly 3 inches deep?

SOLUTION We begin with a diagram that represents the situation after the cup has been leaking for a while. (Figure 4.10.1.) We label the radius and height of the remaining "cone of water" r and h. We can relate r and h by similar triangles. (Figure 4.10.2.) We measure r and h in inches. Now we seek dh/dt when $h = 3$, given that $dV/dt = -2 \text{ in}^3/\text{min}$,

$$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h \quad \text{(volume of cone)} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{r}{h} = \frac{4}{6} = \frac{2}{3}. \quad \text{(similar triangles)}$$

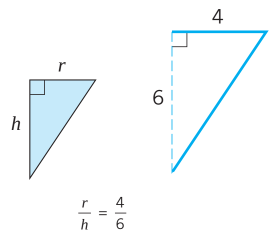


Figure 4.10.2

Using the second equation to eliminate r from the first equation, we have

$$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi\left(\frac{2h}{3}\right)^2 h = \frac{4}{27}\pi h^3.$$

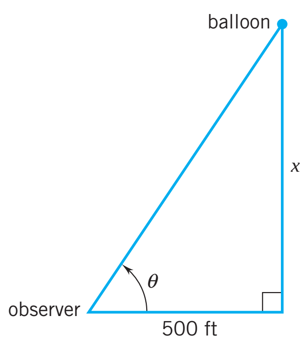
Differentiation with respect to t gives

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{4}{9}\pi h^2 \frac{dh}{dt}.$$

Setting $h = 3$ and $dV/dt = -2$, we have

$$-2 = \frac{4}{9}\pi(3)^2\frac{dh}{dt} \quad \text{and thus} \quad \frac{dh}{dt} = -\frac{1}{2\pi}.$$

When the water is exactly 3 inches deep, the water level is dropping at the rate of $1/2\pi$ inches per minute (about 0.16 inches per minute). ❑



Example 6 A balloon leaves the ground 500 feet away from an observer and rises vertically at the rate of 140 feet per minute. At what rate is the inclination of the observer's line of sight increasing when the balloon is exactly 500 feet above the ground?

SOLUTION Let x be the altitude of the balloon and θ the inclination of the observer's line of sight. Find $d\theta/dt$ when $x = 500$, given that $dx/dt = 140$ ft/min and

$$\tan\theta = \frac{x}{500}.$$

Differentiation with respect to t gives

$$\sec^2\theta\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{500}\frac{dx}{dt}.$$

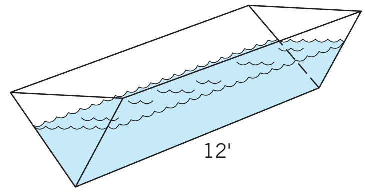
When $x = 500$, the triangle is isosceles. This implies that $\theta = \pi/4$ and $\sec\theta = \sqrt{2}$. Setting $\sec\theta = \sqrt{2}$ and $dx/dt = 140$, we have

$$(\sqrt{2})^2\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{500}(140) \quad \text{and therefore} \quad \frac{d\theta}{dt} = 0.14.$$

When the balloon is exactly 500 feet above the ground, the inclination of the observer's line of sight is increasing at the rate of 0.14 radians per minute (about 8 degrees per minute). ❑

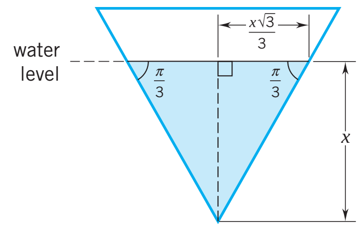
Example 7 A water trough with vertical cross section in the form of an equilateral triangle is being filled at a rate of 4 cubic feet per minute. Given that the trough is 12 feet long, how fast is the level of the water rising when the water reaches a depth of $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet?

SOLUTION Let x be the depth of the water measured in feet and V the volume of water measured in cubic feet. Find dx/dt when $x = 3/2$, given that $dV/dt = 4$ ft^3/min.



$$\text{area of cross section} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2x}{\sqrt{3}}\right)x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}x^2.$$

$$\text{volume of water} = 12\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}x^2\right) = 4\sqrt{3}x^2.$$



cross section of trough

Differentiation of $V = 4\sqrt{3}x^2$ with respect to t gives

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = 8\sqrt{3}x\frac{dx}{dt}.$$

Setting $x = 3/2$ and $dV/dt = 4$, we have

$$4 = 8\sqrt{3}\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)\frac{dx}{dt} \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{1}{3\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{9}\sqrt{3}.$$

When the water reaches a depth of $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet, the water level is rising at the rate of $\frac{1}{9}\sqrt{3}$ feet per minute (about 0.19 feet per minute). ❑

EXERCISES 4.10

1. A point moves along the line $x + 2y = 2$. Find (a) the rate of change of the y-coordinate, given that the x-coordinate is increasing at the rate of 4 units per second; (b) the rate of change of the x-coordinate, given that the y-coordinate is decreasing at the rate of 2 units per second.

2. A particle is moving in the circular orbit $x^2 + y^2 = 25$. As it passes through the point $(3, 4)$, its y-coordinate is decreasing at the rate of 2 units per second. At what rate is the x-coordinate changing?

3. A particle is moving along the parabola $y^2 = 4(x + 2)$. As it passes through the point $(7, 6)$, its y-coordinate is increasing at the rate of 3 units per second. How fast is the x-coordinate changing at this instant?

4. A particle is moving along the parabola $4y = (x + 2)^2$ in such a way that its x-coordinate is increasing at the constant rate of 2 units per second. How fast is the particle's distance from the point $(-2, 0)$ changing as it passes through the point $(2, 4)$?

5. A particle is moving along the ellipse $x^2/16 + y^2/4 = 1$. At each time t its x- and y-coordinates are given by $x = 4\cos t$, $y = 2\sin t$. At what rate is the particle's distance from the origin changing at time t? At what rate is this distance from the origin changing when $t = \pi/4$?

6. A particle is moving along the curve $y = x\sqrt{x}$, $x \geq 0$. Find the points on the curve, if any, at which both coordinates are changing at the same rate.

7. A heap of rubbish in the shape of a cube is being compacted into a smaller cube. Given that the volume decreases at the rate of 2 cubic meters per minute, find the rate of change of an edge of the cube when the volume is exactly 27 cubic meters. What is the rate of change of the surface area of the cube at that instant?

8. The volume of a spherical balloon is increasing at the constant rate of 8 cubic feet per minute. How fast is the radius increasing when the radius is exactly 10 feet? How fast is the surface area increasing at that time?

9. At a certain instant the side of an equilateral triangle is α centimeters long and increasing at the rate of k centimeters per minute. How fast is the area increasing?

10. The dimensions of a rectangle are changing in such a way that the perimeter remains 24 inches. Show that when the area is 32 square inches, the area is either increasing or decreasing 4 times as fast as the length is increasing.

11. A rectangle is inscribed in a circle of radius 5 inches. If the length of the rectangle is decreasing at the rate of 2 inches per second, how fast is the area changing when the length is 6 inches?

12. A boat is held by a bow line that is wound about a bollard 6 feet higher than the bow of the boat. If the boat is drifting away at the rate of 8 feet per minute, how fast is the line unwinding when the bow is 30 feet from the bollard?

13. Two boats are racing with constant speed toward a finish marker, boat A sailing from the south at 13 mph and boat B approaching from the east. When equidistant from the marker, the boats are 16 miles apart and the distance between them is decreasing at the rate of 17 mph. Which boat will win the race?

14. A spherical snowball is melting in such a manner that its radius is changing at a constant rate, decreasing from 16 cm to 10 cm in 30 minutes. How fast is the volume of the snowball changing when the radius is 12 cm?

15. A 13-foot ladder is leaning against a vertical wall. If the bottom of the ladder is being pulled away from the wall at the rate of 2 feet per second, how fast is the area of the

triangle formed by the wall, the ground, and the ladder changing when the bottom of the ladder is 12 feet from the wall?

16. A ladder 13 feet long is leaning against a wall. If the foot of the ladder is pulled away from the wall at the rate of 0.5 feet per second, how fast will the top of the ladder be dropping when the base is 5 feet from the wall?

17. A tank contains 1000 cubic feet of natural gas at a pressure of 5 pounds per square inch. Find the rate of change of the volume if the pressure decreases at a rate of 0.05 pounds per square inch per hour. (Assume Boyle's law: *pressure* $\times$ *volume* $=$ *constant*.)

18. The adiabatic law for the expansion of air is $PV^{1.4} = C$. At a given instant the volume is 10 cubic feet and the pressure is 50 pounds per square inch. At what rate is the pressure changing if the volume is decreasing at a rate of 1 cubic foot per second?

19. A man standing 3 feet from the base of a lamppost casts a shadow 4 feet long. If the man is 6 feet tall and walks away from the lamppost at a speed of 400 feet per minute, at what rate will his shadow lengthen? How fast is the tip of his shadow moving?

20. A light is attached to the wall of a building 64 feet above the ground. A ball is dropped from that height, but 20 feet away from the side of the building. The height y of the ball at time t is given by $y(t) = 64 - 16t^2$. Here we are measuring y in feet and t in seconds. How fast is the shadow of the ball moving along the ground 1 second after the ball is dropped?

21. An object that weighs 150 pounds on the surface of the earth will weigh $150(1 + \frac{1}{4000}r)^{-2}$ pounds when it is r miles above the earth. Given that the altitude of the object is increasing at the rate of 10 miles per minute, how fast is the weight decreasing when the object is 400 miles above the surface?

22. In the special theory of relativity the mass of a particle moving at speed v is given by the expression

$$\frac{m}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}}$$

where m is the mass at rest and c is the speed of light. At what rate is the mass of the particle changing when the speed of the particle is $\frac{1}{2}c$ and is increasing at the rate of $0.01c$ per second?

23. Water is dripping through the bottom of a conical cup 4 inches across and 6 inches deep. Given that the cup loses half a cubic inch of water per minute, how fast is the water level dropping when the water is 3 inches deep?

24. Water is poured into a conical container, vertex down, at the rate of 2 cubic feet per minute. The container is 6 feet deep and the open end is 8 feet across. How fast is the level of the water rising when the container is half full?

25. At what rate is the volume of a sphere changing at the instant when the surface area is increasing at the rate of 4 square centimeters per minute and the radius is increasing at the rate of 0.1 centimeter per minute?

26. Water flows from a faucet into a hemispherical basin 14 inches in diameter at the rate of 2 cubic inches per second. How fast does the water rise (a) when the water is exactly halfway to the top? (b) just as it runs over? (The volume of a spherical segment is given by $\pi rh^2 - \frac{1}{3}\pi h^3$ where r is the radius of the sphere and h is the depth of the segment.)

27. The base of an isosceles triangle is 6 feet. Given that the altitude is 4 feet and increasing at the rate of 2 inches per minute, at what rate is the vertex angle changing?

28. As a boy winds up the cord, his kite is moving horizontally at a height of 60 feet with a speed of 10 feet per minute. How fast is the inclination of the cord changing when the cord is 100 feet long?

29. A revolving searchlight $\frac{1}{2}$ mile from a straight shoreline makes 1 revolution per minute. How fast is the light moving along the shore as it passes over a shore point 1 mile from the shore point nearest to the searchlight?

30. A revolving searchlight 1 mile from a straight shoreline turns at the rate of 2 revolutions per minute in the counterclockwise direction.

(a) How fast is the light moving along the shore when it makes an angle of 45° with the shore?

(b) How fast is the light moving when the angle is 90°?

31. A man starts at a point A and walks 40 feet north. He then turns and walks due east at 4 feet per second. A searchlight placed at A follows him. At what rate is the light turning 15 seconds after the man started walking east?

32. The diameter and height of a right circular cylinder are found at a certain instant to be 10 centimeters and 20 centimeters, respectively. If the diameter is increasing at the rate of 1 centimeter per second, what change in height will keep the volume constant?

33. A horizontal trough 12 feet long has a vertical cross section in the form of a trapezoid. The bottom is 3 feet wide, and the sides are inclined to the vertical at an angle with sine $\frac{4}{5}$. Given that water is poured into the trough at the rate of 10 cubic feet per minute, how fast is the water level rising when the water is exactly 2 feet deep?

34. Two cars, car A traveling east at 30 mph and car B traveling north at 22.5 mph, are heading toward an intersection I. At what rate is the angle IAB changing when cars A and B are 300 feet and 400 feet, respectively, from the intersection?

35. A rope 32 feet long is attached to a weight and passed over a pulley 16 feet above the ground. The other end of the rope is pulled away along the ground at the rate of 3 feet per second. At what rate is the angle between the rope and the ground changing when the weight is exactly 4 feet off the ground?

36. A slingshot is made by fastening the two ends of a 10-inch rubber strip 6 inches apart. If the midpoint of the strip is drawn back at the rate of 1 inch per second, at what rate is the angle between the segments of the strip changing 8 seconds later?

37. A balloon is released 500 feet away from an observer. If the balloon rises vertically at the rate of 100 feet per minute and at the same time the wind is carrying it away horizontally at the rate of 75 feet per minute, at what rate is the inclination of the observer's line of sight changing 6 minutes after the balloon has been released?

38. A searchlight is continually trained on a plane that flies directly above it at an altitude of 2 miles at a speed of 400 miles per hour. How fast does the light turn 2 seconds after the plane passes directly overhead?

39. A baseball diamond is a square 90 feet on a side. A player is running from second base to third base at the rate of 15 feet per second. Find the rate of change of the distance from the player to home plate at the instant the player is 10 feet from third base. (If you are not familiar with baseball, skip this problem.)

40. An airplane is flying at constant speed and altitude on a line that will take it directly over a radar station on the ground. At the instant the plane is 12 miles from the station, it is noted that the plane's angle of elevation is 30° and is increasing at the rate of 0.5° per second. Give the speed of the plane in miles per hour.

41. An athlete is running around a circular track of radius 50 meters at the rate of 5 meters per second. A spectator is 200 meters from the center of the track. How fast is the distance between the two changing when the runner is approaching the spectator and the distance between them is 200 meters?

Exercises 42–44. Here x and y are functions of t and are related as indicated. Obtain the desired derivative from the information given.

42. $2xy^2 - y = 22$. Given that $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = -2$ when $x = 3$ and $y = 2$, find $\dfrac{dx}{dt}$.

43. $x - \sqrt{xy} = 4$. Given that $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 3$ when $x = 8$ and $y = 2$, find $\dfrac{dx}{dt}$.

44. $\sin x = 4\cos y - 1$. Given that $\dfrac{dx}{dt} = -1$ when $x = \pi$ and $y = \dfrac{\pi}{3}$, find $\dfrac{dy}{dt}$.

■ 4.11 DIFFERENTIALS

In Figure 4.11.1 we have sketched the graph of a differentiable function f and below it the tangent line at the point $(x, f(x))$.

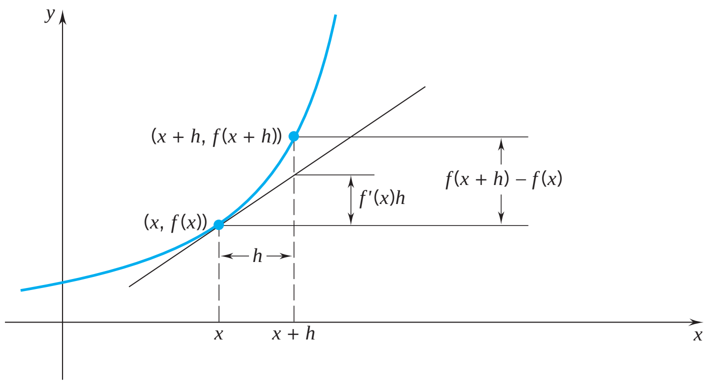


Figure 4.11.1

As the figure suggests, for small $h \neq 0$, $f(x+h) - f(x)$, the change in f from x to $x + h$ can be approximated by the product $f'(x)h$:

(4.11.1)
$$\boxed{f(x+h) - f(x) \cong f'(x)h.}$$

How good is this approximation? It is good in the sense that, for small h the difference between the two quantities,

$$[f(x+h) - f(x)] - f'(x)h,$$

is small compared to h. How small compared to h? Small enough compared to h that its ratio to h, the quotient

$$\frac{[f(x+h) - f(x)] - f'(x)h}{h},$$

tends to 0 as h tends to 0:

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[f(x+h)-f(x)]-f'(x)h}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}-\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f'(x)h}{h}$$
$$=f'(x)-f'(x)=0.$$

The quantities $f(x+h)-f(x)$ and $f'(x)h$ have names:

DEFINITION 4.11.2

For $h \neq 0$ the difference $f(x+h)-f(x)$ is called the *increment of f from x to x + h* and is denoted by Δf:

$$\Delta f = f(x+h)-f(x).^{\dagger}$$

The product $f'(x)h$ is called the *differential of f at x with increment h* and is denoted by df:

$$df = f'(x)h.$$

Display 4.11.1 says that, for small h, Δf and df are approximately equal:

$$\Delta f \cong df.$$

How close is the approximation? Close enough (as we just showed) that the quotient

$$\frac{\Delta f - df}{h}$$

tends to 0 as h tends to 0.

Let's see what all this amounts to in a very simple case. The area of a square of side x is given by the function

$$f(x)=x^2, \qquad x>0.$$

If the length of each side increases from x to $x+h$, the area increases from $f(x)$ to $f(x+h)$. The change in area is the increment Δf:

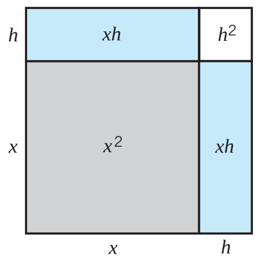


Figure 4.11.2

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta f &= f(x+h)-f(x)\\ &=(x+h)^2-x^2\\ &=(x^2+2xh+h^2)-x^2\\ &=2xh+h^2.\end{aligned}$$

As an estimate for this change, we can use the differential

$$df = f'(x)h = 2xh. \qquad \text{(Figure 4.11.2)}$$

The error of this estimate, the difference between the actual change Δf and the estimated change df, is the difference

$$\Delta f - df = h^2.$$

As promised, the error is small compared to h in the sense that

$$\frac{\Delta f - df}{h}=\frac{h^2}{h}=h$$

tends to 0 as h tends to 0.

† Δ is a Greek letter, the capital of δ. Δf is read "delta f."

Example 1 Use a differential to estimate the change in $f(x) = x^{2/5}$ **(a)** as x increases from 32 to 34, **(b)** as x decreases from 1 to $\frac{9}{10}$.

SOLUTION Since $f'(x) = \frac{2}{5}x^{-3/5} = 2/(5x^{3/5})$, we have

$$df = f'(x)h = \frac{2}{5x^{3/5}}h.$$

(a) We set $x = 32$ and $h = 2$. The differential then becomes

$$df = \frac{2}{5(32)^{3/5}}(2) = \frac{4}{40} = 0.1.$$

A change in x from 32 to 34 increases the value of f by approximately 0.1. For comparison, our hand calculator gives

$$\Delta f = f(34) - f(32) \cong 4.0982 - 4 = 0.0982.$$

(b) We set $x = 1$ and $h = -\frac{1}{10}$. In this case, the differential is

$$df = \frac{2}{5(1)^{3/5}}\left(-\frac{1}{10}\right) = -\frac{2}{50} = -0.04.$$

A change in x from 1 to $\frac{9}{10}$ decreases the value of f by approximately 0.04. For comparison, our hand calculator gives

$$\Delta f = f(0.9) - f(1) = (0.9)^{2/5} - (1)^{2/5} \cong 0.9587 - 1 = -0.0413. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Use a differential to estimate: **(a)** $\sqrt{104}$, **(b)** $\cos 40^\circ$.

SOLUTION
(a) We know that $\sqrt{100} = 10$. We need an estimate for the increase of

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}$$

as x increases from 100 to 104. Here

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} \qquad \text{and} \qquad df = f'(x)h = \frac{h}{2\sqrt{x}}.$$

With $x = 100$ and $h = 4$, df becomes

$$\frac{4}{2\sqrt{100}} = \frac{1}{5} = 0.2.$$

A change in x from 100 to 104 increases the value of the square root by approximately 0.2. It follows that

$$\sqrt{104} \cong \sqrt{100} + 0.2 = 10 + 0.2 = 10.2.$$

As you can check, $(10.2)^2 = 104.04$. Our estimate is not far off.

(b) Let $f(x) = \cos x$, where as usual x is given in radians. We know that $\cos 45^\circ = \cos(\pi/4) = \sqrt{2}/2$. Converting 40° to radians, we have

$$40^\circ = 45^\circ - 5^\circ = \frac{\pi}{4} - \left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right)5 = \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{\pi}{36} \text{ radians.}$$

We use a differential to estimate the change in $\cos x$ as x decreases from $\pi/4$ to $(\pi/4) - (\pi/36)$:

$$f'(x) = -\sin x \qquad \text{and} \qquad df = f'(x)h = -h\sin x.$$

With $x = \pi/4$ and $h = -\pi/36$, df is given by

$$df = -\left(-\frac{\pi}{36}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{\pi}{36}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} = \frac{\pi\sqrt{2}}{72} \cong 0.0617.$$

A decrease in x from $\pi/4$ to $(\pi/4) - (\pi/36)$ increases the value of the cosine by approximately 0.0617. Therefore,

$$\cos 40^\circ \cong \cos 45^\circ + 0.0617 \cong 0.7071 + 0.0616 = 0.7688.$$

Our hand calculator gives $\cos 40^\circ \cong 0.7660$. ❑

Example 3 A metal sphere with a radius of 10 cm is to be covered by a 0.02 cm coating of silver. Approximately how much silver will be required?

SOLUTION We will use a differential to estimate the increase in the volume of a sphere if the radius is increased from 10 cm to 10.02 cm. The volume of a sphere of radius r is given by the formula $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. Therefore

$$dV = 4\pi r^2 h.$$

Taking $r = 10$ and $h = 0.02$, we have

$$dV = 4\pi(10)^2(0.02) = 8\pi \cong 25.133.$$

It will take approximately 25.133 cubic cm of silver to coat the sphere. ❑

Example 4 A metal cube is heated and the length of each edge is thereby increased by 0.1%. Use a differential to show that the surface area of the cube is then increased by about 0.2%.

SOLUTION Let x be the initial length of an edge. The initial surface area is then $S(x) = 6x^2$. As the length increases from x to $x + h$, the surface area increases from $S(x)$ to $S(x + h)$. We will estimate the ratio

$$\frac{\Delta S}{S} = \frac{S(x+h) - S(x)}{S(x)}$$

by

$$\frac{dS}{S} \qquad \text{taking} \qquad h = 0.001x.$$

Here

$$S(x) = 6x^2, \qquad dS = 12xh = 12x(0.001x),$$

and therefore

$$\frac{dS}{S} = \frac{12x(0.001x)}{6x^2} = 0.002.$$

If the length of each edge is increased by 0.1%, the surface area is increased by about 0.2%. ❑

EXERCISES 4.11

1. Use a differential to estimate the change in the volume of a cube caused by an increase h in the length of each side. Interpret geometrically the error of your estimate $\Delta V - dV$.

2. Use a differential to estimate the area of a ring of inner radius r and width h. What is the exact area?

Exercises 3–8. Use a differential to estimate the value of the indicated expression. Then compare your estimate with the result given by a calculator.

3. $\sqrt[3]{1002}$. **4.** $1/\sqrt{24.5}$.

5. $\sqrt[4]{15.5}$. **6.** $(26)^{2/3}$.

7. $(33)^{3/5}$ **8.** $(33)^{-1/5}$.

Exercises 9–12. Use a differential to estimate the value of the expression. (Remember to convert to radian measure.) Then compare your estimate with the result given by a calculator.

9. $\sin 46^\circ$. **10.** $\cos 62^\circ$.

11. $\tan 28^\circ$ **12.** $\sin 43^\circ$.

13. Estimate $f(2.8)$ given that $f(3) = 2$ and $f'(x) = (x^3 + 5)^{1/5}$.

14. Estimate $f(5.4)$ given that $f(5) = 1$ and $f'(x) = \sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2}$.

15. Find the approximate volume of a thin cylindrical shell with open ends given that the inner radius is r, the height is h, and the thickness is t.

16. The diameter of a steel ball is measured to be 16 centimeters, with a maximum error of 0.3 centimeters. Estimate by differentials the maximum error (a) in the surface area as calculated from the formula $S = 4\pi r^2$; (b) in the volume as calculated from the formula $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$.

17. A box is to be constructed in the form of a cube to hold 1000 cubic feet. Use a differential to estimate how accurately the inner edge must be made so that the volume will be correct to within 3 cubic feet.

18. Use differentials to estimate the values of x for which

(a) $\sqrt{x+1} - \sqrt{x} < 0.01$.

(b) $\sqrt[4]{x+1} - \sqrt[4]{x} < 0.002$.

19. A hemispherical dome with a 50-foot radius will be given a coat of paint 0.01 inch thick. The contractor for the job wants to estimate the number of gallons of paint that will be needed. Use a differential to obtain an estimate. (There are 231 cubic inches in a gallon.)

20. View the earth as a sphere of radius 4000 miles. The volume of ice that covers the north and south poles is estimated to be 8 million cubic miles. Suppose that this ice melts and the water produced distributes itself uniformly over the surface of the earth. Estimate the depth of this water.

21. The period P of the small oscillations of a simple pendulum is related to the length L of the pendulum by the equation

$$P = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$$

where g is the (constant) acceleration of gravity. Show that a small change dL in the length of a pendulum produces a change dP in the period that satisfies the equation

$$\frac{dP}{P} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{dL}{L}.$$

22. Suppose that the pendulum of a clock is 90 centimeters long. Use the result in Exercise 21 to determine how the length of the pendulum should be adjusted if the clock is losing 15 seconds per hour.

23. A pendulum of length 3.26 feet goes through one complete oscillation in 2 seconds. Use Exercise 21 to find the approximate change in P if the pendulum is lengthened by 0.01 feet.

24. A metal cube is heated and the length of each edge is thereby increased by 0.1%. Use a differential to show that the volume of the cube is then increased by about 0.3%.

25. We want to determine the area of a circle by measuring the diameter x and then applying the formula $A = \frac{1}{4}\pi x^2$. Use a differential to estimate how accurately we must measure the diameter for our area formula to yield a result that is accurate within 1%.

26. Estimate by differentials how precisely x must be determined (a) for our calculation of x^n to be accurate within 1%; (b) for our estimate of $x^{1/n}$ to be accurate within 1%. (Here n is a positive integer.)

Little-o(h) Let g be a function defined at least on some open interval that contains the number 0. We say that $g(h)$ is *little-o(h)* and write $g(h) = o(h)$ to indicate that, for small h, $g(h)$ is so small compared to h that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(h)}{h} = 0.$$

27. Determine whether the statement is true.

(a) $h^3 = o(h)$

(b) $\dfrac{h^2}{h-1} = o(h)$.

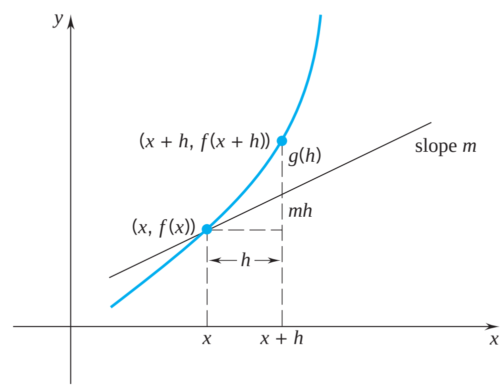
(c) $h^{1/3} = o(h)$.

28. Show that if $g(h) = o(h)$, then $\lim_{h\to 0} g(h) = 0$.

29. Show that if $g_1(h) = o(h)$ and $g_2(h) = o(h)$, then

$$g_1(h) + g_2(h) = o(h) \qquad \text{and} \qquad g_1(h)g_2(h) = o(h).$$

30. The figure shows the graph of a differentiable function f and a line with slope m that passes through the point $(x, f(x))$. The vertical separation at $x + h$ between the line with slope m and the graph of f has been labeled $g(h)$.



(a) Calculate $g(h)$.

(b) Show that, of all lines that pass through $(x, f(x))$, the tangent line is the line that best approximates the graph of f near the point $(x, f(x))$ by showing that

$$g(h) = o(h) \qquad \text{iff} \qquad m = f'(x).$$

Here we dispense with $g(h)$ and call $o(h)$ any expression in h which, for small h, is so small compared to h that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{o(h)}{h} = 0.$$

31. (*A differentiable function is locally almost linear.*) If f is a linear function,

$$f(x) = mx + b,$$

then

$$f(x+h) - f(x) = mh.$$

Show that

(4.11.3)
$$\boxed{\text{a function } f \text{ is differentiable at } x \text{ iff there exists a number } m \text{ such that } f(x+h) - f(x) = mh + o(h).}$$

What is m here?

■ PROJECT 4.11 Marginal Cost, Marginal Revenue, Marginal Profit

In business and economics we recognize that costs, revenues, and profits depend on many factors. Of special interest to us here is the study of how costs, revenues, and profits are affected by changes in production and sales. In this brief section we make the simplifying assumption that all production is sold and therefore units sold = units produced.

Suppose that $C(x)$ represents the cost of producing x units. Although x is usually a nonnegative integer, in theory and practice it is convenient to assume that $C(x)$ is defined for x in some interval and that the function C is differentiable. In this context, the derivative $C'(x)$ is called the *marginal cost at* x.

This terminology deserves some explanation. The difference $C(x+1) - C(x)$ represents the cost of increasing production from x units to $x+1$ units and, as such, gives the cost of producing the $(x+1)$-st unit. *The derivative $C'(x)$ is called the marginal cost at x because it provides an estimate for the cost of the $(x+1)$-st unit*: in general,

$$C(x+h) - C(x) \cong C'(x)h. \qquad \text{(differential estimate)}$$

At $h = 1$ this estimate reads

$$C(x+1) - C(x) \cong C'(x).$$

Thus, as asserted,

$$C'(x) \cong \text{cost of } (x+1)\text{-st unit.} \quad ❏$$

By studying the marginal cost function C', we can obtain an overall view of the changing cost patterns.

Similarly, if $R(x)$ represents the revenue obtained from the sale of x units, then the derivative $R'(x)$, called the *marginal revenue at* x, provides an estimate for the revenue obtained from the sale of the $(x+1)$-st unit.

If $C = C(x)$ and $R = R(x)$ are the cost and revenue functions associated with the production and sale of x units, then the function

$$P(x) = R(x) - C(x)$$

is called the *profit function*. The points x (if any) at which $C(x) = R(x)$ — that is, the values at which "cost" = "revenue"— are called *break-even points*. The derivative $P'(x)$ is called the *marginal profit at* x. By Theorem 4.3.2, maximum profit occurs at a point where $P'(x) = 0$, a point where the marginal profit is zero, which, since

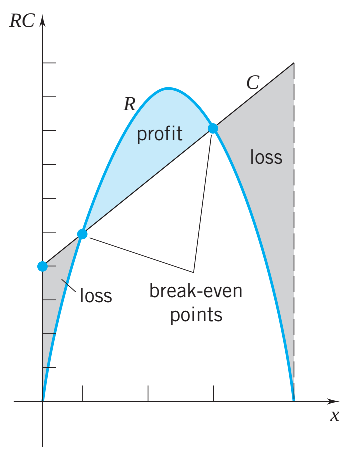
$$P'(x) = R'(x) - C'(x),$$

is a point where the marginal revenue $R'(x)$ equals the marginal cost $C'(x)$.

A word about revenue functions. The revenue obtained from the sale of x units at an average price $p(x)$ is the product of x and $p(x)$:

$$R(x) = xp(x).$$

In classical supply-demand theory, if too many units are sold, the price at which they can be sold comes down. It may come down so much that the product $xp(x)$ starts to decrease. If the market is flooded with units, $p(x)$ tends to zero and revenues are severely impaired. Thus it is that the revenue $R(x)$ increases with x up to a point and then decreases. The figure gives a graphical representation of a pair of cost and revenue functions, shows the break-even points, and indicates the regions of profit and loss.



Problem 1. A manufacturer determines that the total cost of producing x units per hour is given by the function

$$C(x) = 2000 + 50x - \frac{x^2}{20}. \qquad \text{(dollars)}$$

What is the marginal cost at production level 20 units per hour? What is the exact cost of producing the 21st component?

Problem 2. A manufacturer determines that the costs and revenues that result from the production and sale of x units per day are given by the functions

$$C(x) = 12{,}000 + 30x \qquad \text{and} \qquad R(x) = 650x - 5x^2.$$

Find the profit function and determine the break-even points. Find the marginal profit function and determine the production/sales level for maximum profit.

Problem 3. The cost and revenue functions for the production and sale of x units are

$$C(x) = 4x + 1400 \qquad \text{and} \qquad R(x) = 20x - \frac{x^2}{50}.$$

(a) Find the profit function and determine the break-even points.

(b) Find the marginal profit function and determine the production level at which the marginal profit is zero.

(c) Sketch the cost and revenue functions in the same coordinate system and indicate the regions of profit and loss. Estimate the production level that produces maximum profit.

Problem 4. The cost and revenue functions are

$$C(x) = 3000 + 5x \qquad \text{and} \qquad R(x) = 60x - 2x\sqrt{x},$$

with x measured in thousands of units.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph the cost function together with the revenue function. Estimate the break-even points.

(b) Graph the profit function and estimate the production level that yields the maximum profit.

Problem 5. The cost and revenue functions are

$$C(x) = 4 + 0.75x \qquad \text{and} \qquad R(x) = \frac{10x}{1 + 0.25x^2},$$

with x measured in hundreds of units.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph the cost function together with the revenue function. Estimate the break-even points.

(b) Graph the profit function and estimate the production level that yields the maximum profit. Exactly how many units should be produced to maximize profit?

Problem 6. Let $C(x)$ be the cost of producing x units. The *average cost per unit* is $A(x) = C(x)/x$. Show that if $C''(x) > 0$, then the average cost per unit is a minimum at the production levels x where the marginal cost equals the average cost per unit.

Problem 7. Let $R(x)$ be the revenue that results from the sale of x units. The *average revenue per unit* is $B(x) = R(x)/x$. Show that if $R''(x) < 0$, then the average revenue per unit is a maximum at the values x where the marginal revenue equals the average revenue per unit.

■ 4.12 NEWTON-RAPHSON APPROXIMATIONS

Figure 4.12.1 shows the graph of a function f. Since the graph of f crosses the x-axis at $x = c$, the number c is a solution (root) of the equation $f(x) = 0$. In the setup of Figure 4.12.1, we can approximate c as follows: Start at x_1 (see the figure). The tangent line at $(x_1, f(x_1))$ intersects the x-axis at a point x_2 which is closer to c than x_1. The tangent line at $(x_2, f(x_2))$ intersects the x-axis at a point x_3, which in turn is closer to c than x_2. In this manner, we obtain numbers $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}$, which more and more closely approximate c.

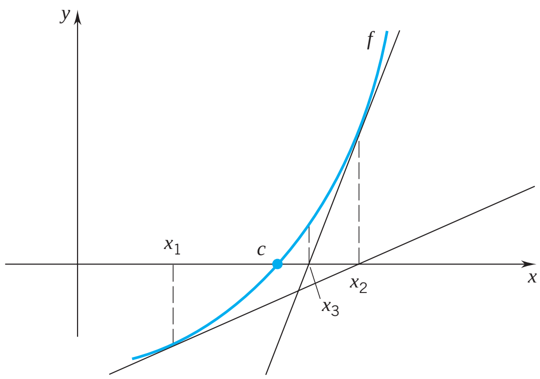


Figure 4.12.1

There is an algebraic connection between x_n and x_{n+1} that we now develop. The tangent line at $(x_n, f(x_n))$ has the equation

$$y - f(x_n) = f'(x_n)(x - x_n).$$

The x-intercept of this line, x_{n+1}, can be found by setting $y = 0$:

$$0 - f(x_n) = f'(x_n)(x_{n+1} - x_n).$$

Solving this equation for x_{n+1}, we have

(4.12.1)
$$\boxed{x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}.}$$

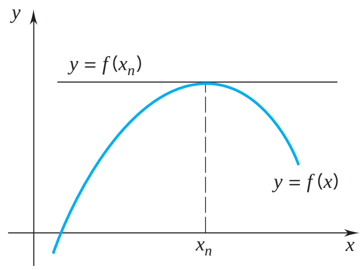


Figure 4.12.2

This method of locating a root of an equation $f(x) = 0$ is called the *Newton-Raphson method*. The method does not work in all cases. First, there are some conditions that must be placed on the function f. Clearly, f must be differentiable at points near the root c. Also, if $f'(x_n) = 0$ for some n, then the tangent line at $(x_n, f(x_n))$ is horizontal and the next approximation x_{n+1} cannot be calculated. See Figure 4.12.2. Thus, we will assume that $f'(x) \neq 0$ at points near c.

The method can also fail for other reasons. For example, it can happen that the first approximation x_1 produces a second approximation x_2, which in turn takes us back to x_1. In this case the approximations simply alternate between x_1 and x_2. See Figure 4.12.3. Another type of difficulty can arise if $f'(x_1)$ is close to zero. In this case the second approximation x_2 can be worse than x_1, the third approximation x_3 can be worse than x_2, and so forth. See Figure 4.12.4.

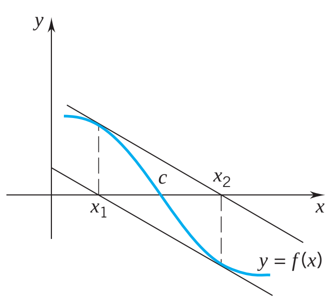


Figure 4.12.3

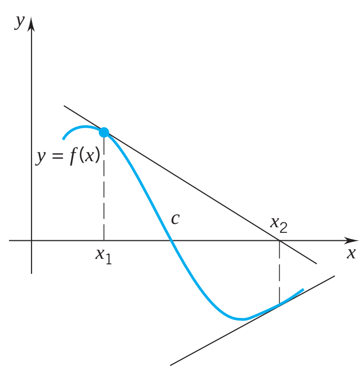


Figure 4.12.4

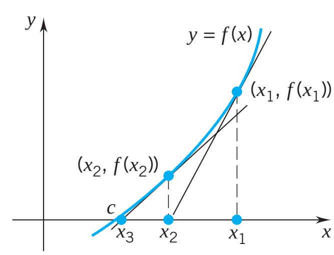


Figure 4.12.5

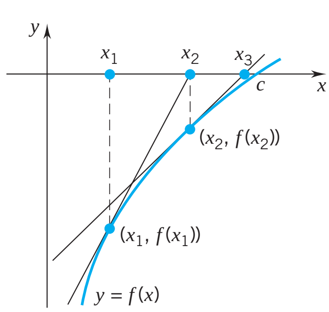


Figure 4.12.6

There is a condition that guarantees that the Newton-Raphson method will work. Suppose that f is twice differentiable and that $f(x)f''(x) > 0$ for all x between c and x_1. If $f(x) > 0$ for such x, then $f''(x) > 0$ for such x and (as shown in Section 4.6) the graph bends up, and we have the situation pictured in Figure 4.12.5. On the other hand, if $f(x) < 0$ for such x, then $f''(x) < 0$ for such x and (as shown in Section 4.6) the graph bends down, and we have the situation pictured in Figure 4.12.6. In each of these cases the approximations $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ tend to the root c.

Example 1 The number $\sqrt{3}$ is a root of the equation $x^2 - 3 = 0$. We will estimate $\sqrt{3}$ by applying the Newton-Raphson method to the function $f(x) = x^2 - 3$ starting

at $x_1 = 2$. [As you can check, $f(x)f''(x) > 0$ on $(\sqrt{3}, 2)$ and therefore we can be sure that the method applies.] Since $f'(x) = 2x$, the Newton-Raphson formula gives

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \left(\frac{x_n^2 - 3}{2x_n}\right) = \frac{x_n^2 + 3}{2x_n}.$$

Successive calculations with this formula (using a calculator) are given in the following table:

n	x_n	$x_{n+1} = \frac{x_n^2+3}{2x_n}$
1	2	1.75000
2	1.75000	1.73214
3	1.73214	1.73205

Since $(1.73205)^2 \cong 2.999997$, the method has generated a very accurate estimate of $\sqrt{3}$ in only three steps. ❑

EXERCISES 4.12

Exercises 1–8. Use the Newton-Raphson method to estimate a root of the equation $f(x) = 0$ starting at the indicated value of x: (a) Express x_{n+1} in terms of x_n. (b) Give x_4 rounded off to five decimal places and evaluate f at that approximation.

1. $f(x) = x^2 - 24$; $x_1 = 5$.

2. $f(x) = x^3 - 4x + 1$; $x_1 = 2$.

3. $f(x) = x^3 - 25$; $x_1 = 3$. **4.** $f(x) = x^5 - 30$; $x_1 = 2$.

5. $f(x) = \cos x - x$; $x_1 = 1$.

6. $f(x) = \sin x - x^2$; $x_1 = 1$.

7. $f(x) = \sqrt{x+3} - x$; $x_1 = 1$.

8. $f(x) = x + \tan x$; $x_1 = 2$.

9. The function $f(x) = x^{1/3}$ is 0 at $x = 0$. Verify that the condition $f(x)f''(x) > 0$ fails everywhere. Show that the Newton-Raphson method starting at *any* number $x_1 \neq 0$ fails to generate numbers that approach the solution $x = 0$. Describe the numbers $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ that the method generates.

10. What results from the application of the Newton-Raphson method to a function f if the starting approximation x_1 is precisely the desired zero of f?

11. Set $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x^2 - 1$.

(a) Show that the equation $f(x) = 0$ has a root between 1 and 2.

(b) Show that the Newton-Raphson method process started at $x_1 = 1$ fails to generate numbers that approach the root that lies between 1 and 2.

(c) Estimate this root by starting at $x_1 = 2$. Determine x_4 rounded off to four decimal places and evaluate $f(x_4)$.

12. The function $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^2 - \frac{17}{16}$ has two zeros, one at a point a between 0 and 2, and the other at $-a$. (f is an even function.)

(a) Show that the Newton-Raphson method fails in the search for a if we start at $x = \frac{1}{2}$. What are the outputs $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ in this case?

(b) Estimate a by starting at $x_1 = 2$. Determine x_4 rounded off to five decimal places and evaluate $f(x_4)$.

13. Set $f(x) = x^2 - a$, $a > 0$. The roots of the equation $f(x) = 0$ are $\pm\sqrt{a}$.

(a) Show that if x_1 is any initial estimate for $\sqrt{a}$, then the Newton-Raphson method gives the iteration formula

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(x_n + \frac{a}{x_n}\right), \qquad n \geq 1.$$

(b) Take $a = 5$. Starting at $x_1 = 2$, use the formula in part (a) to calculate x_4 to five decimal places and evaluate $f(x_4)$.

14. Set $f(x) = x^k - a$, k a positive integer, $a > 0$. The number $a^{1/k}$ is a root of the equation $f(x) = 0$.

(a) Show that if x_1 is any initial estimate for $a^{1/k}$, then the Newton-Raphson method gives the iteration formula

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{1}{k}\left[(k-1)x_n + \frac{a}{x_n^{k-1}}\right].$$

Note that for $k = 2$ this formula reduces to the formula given in Exercise 13.

(b) Use the formula in part (a) to approximate $\sqrt[3]{23}$. Begin at $x_1 = 3$ and calculate x_4 rounded off to five decimal places. Evaluate $f(x_4)$.

15. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x} - a$, $a \neq 0$.

(a) Apply the Newton-Raphson method to derive the iteration formula

$$x_{n+1} = 2x_n - ax_n^2, \qquad n \geq 1.$$

Note that this formula provides a method for calculating reciprocals without recourse to division.

(b) Use the formula in part (a) to calculate 1/2.7153 rounded off to five decimal places.

16. Set $f(x) = x^4 - 7x^2 - 8x - 3$.
(a) Show that f has exactly one critical point c in the interval $(2, 3)$.
(b) Use the Newton-Raphson method to estimate c by calculating x_3. Round off your answer to four decimal places. Does f have a local maximum at c, a local minimum, or neither?

17. Set $f(x) = \sin x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 2x$.
(a) Show that f has exactly one critical point c in the interval $(2, 3)$.
(b) Use the Newton-Raphson method to estimate c by calculating x_3. Round off your answer to four decimal places. Does f have a local maximum at c, a local minimum, or neither?

18. Approximations to π can be obtained by applying the Newton-Raphson method to $f(x) = \sin x$ starting at $x_1 = 3$.
(a) Find x_4 rounded off to four decimal places.
(b) What are the approximations if we start at $x_1 = 6$?

19. The equation $x + \tan x = 0$ has an infinite number of positive roots $r_1, r_2, r_3, \ldots, r_n$ slightly larger than $(n - \frac{1}{2})\pi$. Use the Newton-Raphson method to find r_1 and r_2 to three decimal place accuracy.

CHAPTER 4. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–2. Show that f satisfies the conditions of Rolle's theorem on the indicated interval and find all the numbers c on the interval for which $f'(c) = 0$.

1. $f(x) = x^3 - x; \quad [-1, 1]$.

2. $f(x) = \sin x + \cos x - 1; \quad [0, 2\pi]$.

Exercises 3–6. Verify that f satisfies the conditions of the mean-value theorem on the indicated interval and find all the numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of the theorem.

3. $f(x) = x^3 - 2x + 1; \quad [-2, 3]$.

4. $f(x) = \sqrt{x-1}; \quad [2, 5]$.

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{x-1}; \quad [2, 4]$.

6. $f(x) = x^{3/4}; \quad [0, 16]$.

7. Set $f(x) = x^{1/3} - x$. Note that $f(-1) = f(1) = 0$. Verify that there does not exist a number c in $(-1, 1)$ for which $f'(c) = 0$. Explain how this does not violate Rolle's theorem.

8. Set $f(x) = (x+1)/(x-2)$. Show that there does not exist a number c in $(1, 4)$ for which $f(4) - f(1) = f'(c)(4-1)$. Explain how this does not violate the mean-value theorem.

9. Does there exist a differentiable function f with $f(1) = 5$, $f(4) = 1$, and $f'(x) \geq -1$ for all x in $(1, 4)$? If not, how do you know?

10. Let $f(x) = x^3 - 3x + k$, k constant.
a. Show that $f(x) = 0$ for at most one x in $[-1, 1]$.
b. For what values of k does $f(x) = 0$ for some x in $[-1, 1]$?

Exercises 11–16. Find the intervals on which f increases and the intervals on which f decreases; find the critical points and the local extreme values.

11. $f(x) = 2x^3 + 3x^2 + 1$.

12. $f(x) = x^4 - 4x + 3$.

13. $f(x) = (x+2)^2(x-1)^3$.

14. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{4}{x^2}$.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{1+x^2}$.

16. $f(x) = \sin x - \cos x, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

Exercises 17–22. Find the critical points. Then find and classify all the extreme values.

17. $f(x) = x^3 + 2x^2 + x + 1; \quad x \in [-2, 1]$.

18. $f(x) = x^4 - 8x^2 + 2; \quad x \in [-1, 3]$.

19. $f(x) = x^2 + \dfrac{4}{x^2}; \quad x \in [1, 4]$.

20. $f(x) = \cos^2 x + \sin x; \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

21. $f(x) = x\sqrt{1-x}; \quad x \in (-\infty, 1]$.

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x-2}; \quad x \in (2, \infty)$.

Exercises 23–25. Find all vertical, horizontal, and oblique (see Exercises 4.7) asymptotes.

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{3x^2 - 9x}{x^2 - x - 12}$.

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 4}{x^2 - 5x + 6}$.

25. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4}{x^3 - 1}$.

Exercises 26–28. Determine whether or not the graph of f has a vertical tangent or a vertical cusp at c.

26. $f(x) = (x-1)^{3/5}; \quad c = 1$.

27. $f(x) = \frac{5}{7}x^{7/5} - 5x^{2/5}; \quad c = 0$.

28. $f(x) = 3x^{1/3}(2 + x); \quad c = 0$.

Exercises 29–36. Sketch the graph of the function using the approach outlined in Section 4.8.

29. $f(x) = 6 + 4x^3 - 3x^4$.

30. $f(x) = 3x^5 - 5x^3 + 1$.

31. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{x^2 + 4}$.

32. $f(x) = x^{2/3}(x - 10)$.

33. $f(x) = x\sqrt{4-x}$.

34. $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^2 + 3$.

35. $f(x) = \sin x + \sqrt{3}\cos x, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

36. $f(x) = \sin^2 x - \cos x, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

37. Sketch the graph of a function f that satisfies the following conditions:

$$f(-1) = 3, \ f(0) = 0, \ f(2) = -4;$$
$$f'(-1) = f'(2) = 0;$$
$$f'(x) > 0 \text{ for } x < -1 \text{ and for } x > 2, \ f'(x) < 0$$
$$\text{if } -1 < x < 2;$$
$$f''(x) < 0 \text{ for } x < \tfrac{1}{2}, \ f''(x) > 0 \text{ for } x > \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

38. Given that the surface area of a sphere plus the surface area of a cube is constant, show that the sum of the volumes is minimized by letting the diameter of the sphere equal the length of a side of the cube. What dimensions maximize the sum of the volumes?

39. A closed rectangular box with a square base is to be built subject to the following conditions: the volume is to be 27 cubic feet, the area of the base may not exceed 18 square feet, the height of the box may not exceed 4 feet. Determine the dimensions of the box (a) for minimal surface area; (b) for maximal surface area.

40. The line through $P(1, 2)$ intersects the positive x-axis at $A(a, 0)$ and the positive y-axis at $B(0, b)$. Determine the values of a and b that minimize the area of the triangle OAB.

41. A right circular cylinder is generated by revolving a rectangle of given perimeter P about one of its sides. What dimensions of the rectangle will generate the cylinder of maximum volume?

42. A printed page is to have a total area of 80 square inches. The margins at the top and on the sides are to be 1 inch each; the bottom margin is to be 1.5 inches. Determine the dimensions of the page that maximize the area available for print.

43. An object moves along a coordinate line, its position at time t given by the function $x(t) = t + 2\cos t$. Find those times from $t = 0$ to $t = 2\pi$ when the object is slowing down.

44. An object moves along a coordinate line, its position at time t given by the function $x(t) = (4t - 1)(t - 1)^2$, $t \geq 0$. (a) When is the object moving to the right? When to the left? When does it change direction? (b) What is the maximum speed of the object when moving left?

45. An object moves along a coordinate line, its position at time t given by the function $x(t) = \sqrt{t + 1}$, $t \geq 0$. (a) Show that the acceleration is negative and proportional to the cube of the velocity. (b) Use differentials to obtain numerical estimates for the position, velocity, and acceleration at time $t = 17$. Base your estimate on $t = 15$.

46. A rocket is fired from the ground straight up with an initial velocity of 128 feet per second. (a) When does the rocket reach maximum height? What is maximum height? (b) When does the rocket hit the ground and at what speed?

47. Ballast dropped from a balloon that was rising at the rate of 8 feet per second reached the ground in 10 seconds. How high was the balloon when the ballast was released?

48. A ball thrown straight up from the ground reaches a height of 24 feet in 1 second. How high will the ball go?

49. A boy walks on a straight, horizontal path away from a light that hangs 12 feet above the path. How fast does his shadow lengthen if he is 5 feet tall and walks at the rate of 168 feet per minute?

50. The radius of a cone increases at the rate of 0.3 inches per minute, but the volume remains constant. At what rate does the height of the cone change when the radius is 4 inches and the height is 15 inches?

51. A railroad track crosses a highway at an angle of $60°$. A locomotive is 500 feet from the intersection and moving away from it at the rate of 60 miles per hour. A car is 500 feet from the intersection and moving toward it at the rate of 30 miles per hour. What is the rate of change of the distance between them?

52. A square is inscribed in a circle. Given that the radius of the circle is increasing at the rate of 5 centimeters per minute, at what rate is the area of the square changing when the radius is 10 centimeters?

53. A horizontal water trough 12 feet long has a vertical cross section in the form of an isosceles triangle (vertex down). The base and height of the triangle are each 2 feet. Given that water is being drained out of the trough at the rate of 3 cubic feet per minute, how fast is the water level falling when the water is 1.5 feet deep?

54. Use a differential to estimate $f(3.8)$ given that $f(4) = 2$ and $f'(x) = \sqrt[3]{3x - 4}$.

55. Use a differential to estimate $f(4.2)$ given that $f(x) = \sqrt{x} + 1/\sqrt{x}$.

Exercises 56–57. Use a differential to estimate the value of the expression.

56. $\sqrt[4]{83}$.

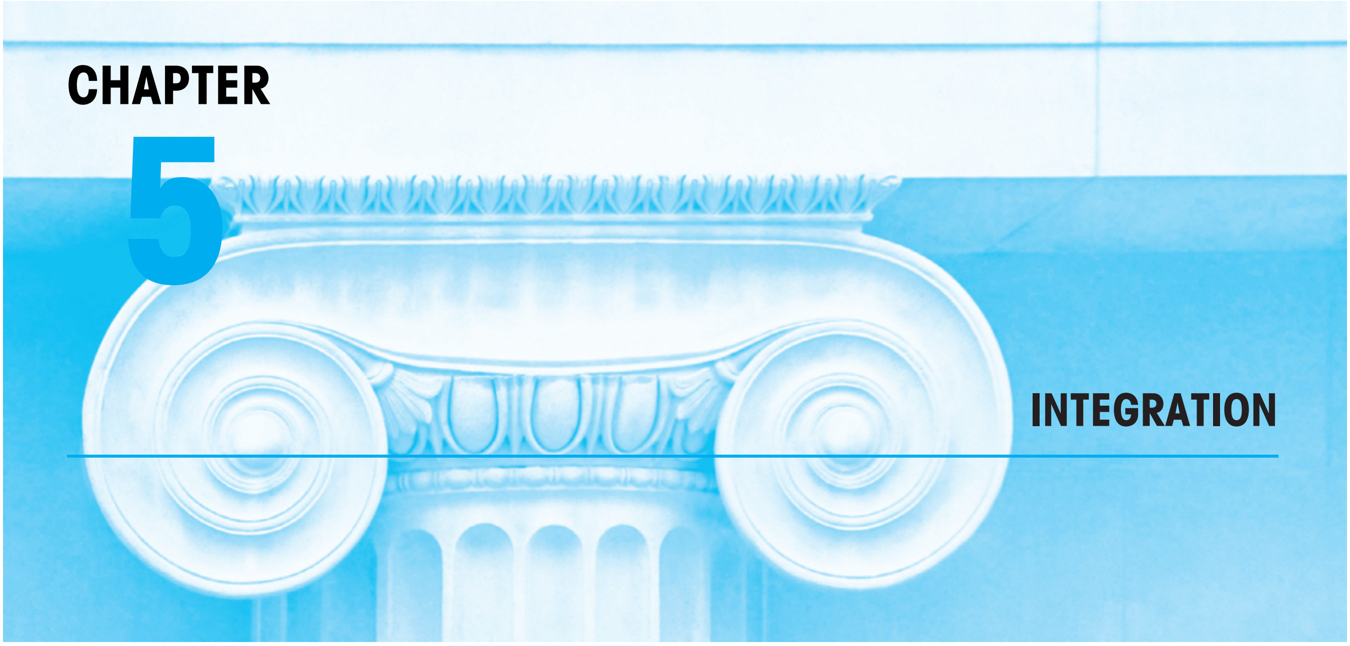
57. $\tan 43°$.

58. A spherical tank with a diameter of 20 feet will be given a coat of paint 0.05 inches thick. Estimate by a differential the amount of paint needed. (Assume that there are 231 cubic inches in a gallon.)

C **Exercises 59–60.** Use the Newton-Raphson method to estimate a root of $f(x) = 0$ starting at the indicated value: (a) Express x_{n+1} in terms of x_n. (b) Give x_4 rounded off to five decimal places and evaluate f at that approximation.

59. $f(x) = x^3 - 10$; $\quad x_1 = 2$.

60. $f(x) = x\sin x - \cos x$; $\quad x_1 = 1$.



5.1 AN AREA PROBLEM; A SPEED-DISTANCE PROBLEM

An Area Problem

In Figure 5.1.1 you can see a region Ω bounded above by the graph of a continuous function f, bounded below by the x-axis, bounded on the left by the line $x = a$, and bounded on the right by the line $x = b$. The question before us is this: What number, if any, should be called the area of Ω?

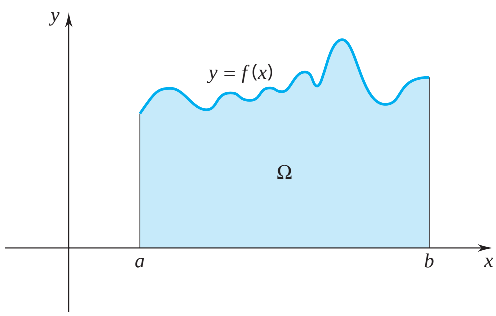


Figure 5.1.1

To begin to answer this question, we split up the interval $[a, b]$ into a finite number of subintervals

$$[x_0, x_1], [x_1, x_2], \ldots, [x_{n-1}, x_n] \qquad \text{with} \qquad a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n = b.$$

This breaks up the region Ω into n subregions:

$$\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \ldots, \Omega_n. \qquad \text{(Figure 5.1.2)}$$

We can estimate the total area of Ω by estimating the area of each subregion Ω_i and adding up the results. Let's denote by M_i the maximum value of f on $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ and by

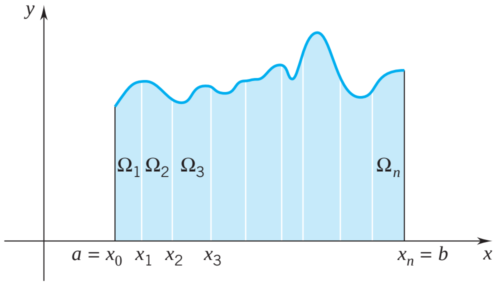


Figure 5.1.2

m_i the minimum value. (We know that there are such numbers because f is continuous.) Consider now the rectangles r_i and R_i of Figure 5.1.3. Since

$$r_i \subseteq \Omega_i \subseteq R_i,$$

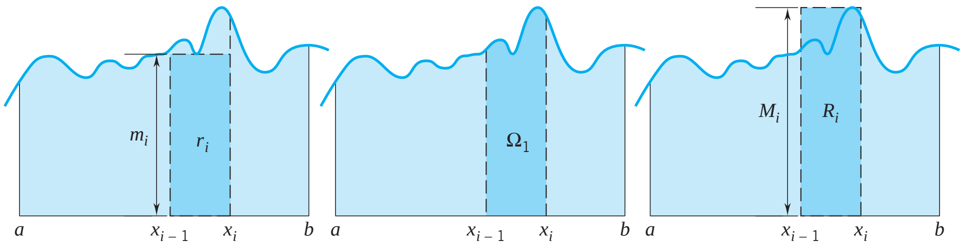


Figure 5.1.3

we must have

$$\text{area of } r_i \leq \text{area of } \Omega_i \leq \text{ area of } R_i.$$

Since the area of a rectangle is the length times the width,

$$m_i(x_i - x_{i-1}) \leq \text{area of } \Omega_i \leq M_i(x_i - x_{i-1}).$$

Setting $\Delta x_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$, we have

$$m_i \Delta x_i \leq \text{area of } \Omega_i \leq M_i \Delta x_i.$$

This inequality holds for $i = 1, i = 2, \ldots, i = n$. Adding up these inequalities, we get on the one hand

(5.1.1) $$\boxed{m_1\Delta x_1 + m_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + m_n\Delta x_n \leq \text{area of } \Omega,}$$

and on the other hand

(5.1.2) $$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega \leq M_1\Delta x_1 + M_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + M_n\Delta x_n.}$$

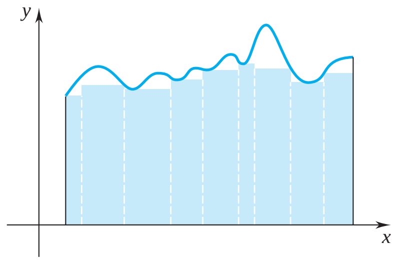
A sum of the form

$$m_1\Delta x_1 + m_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + m_n\Delta x_n \qquad \text{(Figure 5.1.4)}$$

is called a *lower sum for f*. A sum of the form

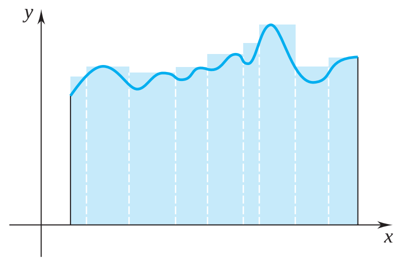
$$M_1\Delta x_1 + M_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + M_n\Delta x_n \qquad \text{(Figure 5.1.5)}$$

is called an *upper sum for f*.



area of shaded region is a lower sum for f

Figure 5.1.4



area of shaded region is an upper sum for f

Figure 5.1.5

Inequalities 5.1.1 and 5.1.2 together tell us that for a number to be a candidate for the title "area of Ω," it must be greater than or equal to every lower sum for f and it must be less than or equal to every upper sum. It can be proven that with f continuous on $[a, b]$ there is one and only one such number. This number we call *the area of* Ω.

A Speed-Distance Problem

If an object moves at a constant speed for a given period of time, then the total distance traveled is given by the familiar formula

$$\text{distance} = \text{speed} \times \text{time}.$$

Suppose now that during the course of the motion the speed v does not remain constant; suppose that it varies continuously. How can we calculate the distance traveled in that case?

To answer this question, we suppose that the motion begins at time a, ends at time b, and during the time interval $[a, b]$ the speed varies continuously.

As in the case of the area problem, we begin by breaking up the interval $[a, b]$ into a finite number of subintervals:

$$[t_0, t_1], [t_1, t_2], \ldots, [t_{n-1}, t_n] \qquad \text{with} \qquad a = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_n = b.$$

On each subinterval $[t_{i-1}, t_i]$ the object attains a certain maximum speed M_i and a certain minimum speed m_i. (How do we know this?) If throughout the time interval $[t_{i-1}, t_i]$ the object were to move constantly at its minimum speed, m_i, then it would cover a distance of $m_i\Delta t_i$ units. If instead it were to move constantly at its maximum speed, M_i, then it would cover a distance of $M_i\Delta t_i$ units. As it is, the actual distance traveled, call it s_i, must lie somewhere in between; namely, we must have

$$m_i\Delta t_i \le s_i \le M_i\Delta t_i.$$

The total distance traveled during full the time interval $[a, b]$, call it s, must be the sum of the distances traveled during the subintervals $[t_{i-1}, t_i]$; thus we must have

$$s = s_1 + s_2 + \cdots + s_n.$$

Since

$$\begin{gathered} m_1 \Delta t_1 \leq s_1 \leq M_1 \Delta t_1 \\ m_2 \Delta t_2 \leq s_2 \leq M_2 \Delta t_2, \\ \vdots \\ m_n \Delta t_n \leq s_n \leq M_n \Delta t_n, \end{gathered}$$

it follows by the addition of these inequalities that

$$m_1 \Delta t_1 + m_2 \Delta t_2 + \cdots + m_n \Delta t_n \leq s \leq M_1 \Delta t_1 + M_2 \Delta t_2 + \cdots + M_n \Delta t_n.$$

A sum of the form

$$m_1 \Delta t_1 + m_2 \Delta t_2 + \cdots + m_n \Delta t_n$$

is called a *lower sum* for the speed function. A sum of the form

$$M_1 \Delta t_1 + M_2 \Delta t_2 + \cdots + M_n \Delta t_n$$

is called an *upper sum* for the speed function. The inequality we just obtained for s tells us that s must be greater than or equal to every lower sum for the speed function, and it must be less than or equal to every upper sum. As in the case of the area problem, it turns out that there is one and only one such number, and this is the total distance traveled.

■ 5.2 THE DEFINITE INTEGRAL OF A CONTINUOUS FUNCTION

The process we used to solve the two problems in Section 5.1 is called *integration*, and the end results of this process are called *definite integrals*. Our purpose here is to establish these notions in a more general way. First, some auxiliary notions.

(5.2.1) By a *partition* of the closed interval $[a, b]$, we mean a finite subset of $[a, b]$ which contains the points a and b.

We index the elements of a partition according to their natural order. Thus, if we say that

$$P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\} \qquad \text{is a partition of } [a, b],$$

you can conclude that

$$a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n = b.$$

Example 1 The sets

$$\{0, 1\}, \qquad \{0, \tfrac{1}{2}, 1\}, \qquad \{0, \tfrac{1}{4}, \tfrac{1}{2}, 1\}, \qquad \{0, \tfrac{1}{4}, \tfrac{1}{3}, \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{5}{8}, 1\}$$

are all partitions of the interval $[0, 1]$. ❑

If $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ is a partition of $[a, b]$, then P breaks up $[a, b]$ into n subintervals

$$[x_0, x_1], [x_1, x_2], \ldots, [x_{n-1}, x_n] \qquad \text{of lengths} \qquad \Delta x_1, \Delta x_2, \ldots, \Delta x_n.$$

Suppose now that f is continuous on $[a, b]$. Then on each subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ the function f takes on a maximum value, M_i, and a minimum value, m_i.

(5.2.2)

> The number
> $$U_f(P) = M_1\Delta x_1 + M_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + M_n\Delta x_n$$
> is called the P *upper sum for* f, and the number
> $$L_f(P) = m_1\Delta x_1 + m_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + m_n\Delta x_n$$
> is called *the* P *lower sum for* f.

Example 2 The function $f(x) = 1 + x^2$ is continuous on $[0, 1]$. The partition $P = \{0, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\}$ breaks up $[0, 1]$ into three subintervals

$$[x_0, x_1] = \left[0, \tfrac{1}{2}\right], \qquad [x_1, x_2] = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{3}{4}\right], \qquad [x_2, x_3] = \left[\tfrac{3}{4}, 1\right]$$

of lengths

$$\Delta x_1 = \tfrac{1}{2} - 0 = \tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad \Delta x_2 = \tfrac{3}{4} - \tfrac{1}{2} = \tfrac{1}{4}, \qquad \Delta x_3 = 1 - \tfrac{3}{4} = \tfrac{1}{4}.$$

Since f increases on $[0, 1]$, it takes on its maximum value at the right endpoint of each subinterval:

$$M_1 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \tfrac{5}{4}, \qquad M_2 = f\left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right) = \tfrac{25}{16}, \qquad M_3 = f(1) = 2.$$

The minimum values are taken on at the left endpoints:

$$m_1 = f(0) = 1, \qquad m_2 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \tfrac{5}{4}, \qquad m_3 = f\left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right) = \tfrac{25}{16}.$$

Thus

$$U_f(P) = M_1\Delta x_1 + M_2\Delta x_2 + M_2\Delta x_3 = \tfrac{5}{4}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + \tfrac{25}{16}\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) + 2\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) = \tfrac{97}{64} \cong 1.52$$

and

$$L_f(P) = m_1\Delta x_1 + m_2\Delta x_2 + m_3\Delta x_3 = 1\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + \tfrac{5}{4}\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) + \tfrac{25}{16}\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) = \tfrac{77}{64} \cong 1.20.$$

For a geometric interpretation of these sums, see Figure 5.2.1. ❑

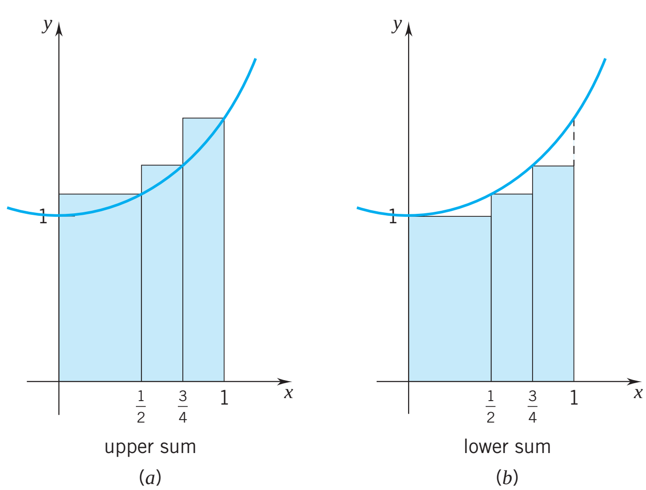


Figure 5.2.1

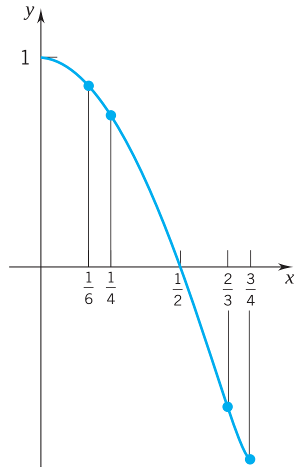


Figure 5.2.2

Example 3 The function $f(x) = \cos \pi x$ is continuous on $\left[0, \frac{3}{4}\right]$. The partition $P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{3}{4}\right\}$ breaks up $\left[0, \frac{3}{4}\right]$ into five subintervals

$$[x_0, x_1] = \left[0, \tfrac{1}{6}\right], \qquad [x_1, x_2] = \left[\tfrac{1}{6}, \tfrac{1}{4}\right], \qquad [x_2, x_3] = \left[\tfrac{1}{4}, \tfrac{1}{2}\right],$$
$$[x_3, x_4] = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{2}{3}\right], \qquad [x_4, x_5] = \left[\tfrac{2}{3}, \tfrac{3}{4}\right]$$

of lengths

$$\Delta x_1 = \tfrac{1}{6}, \qquad \Delta x_2 = \tfrac{1}{12}, \qquad \Delta x_3 = \tfrac{1}{4}, \qquad \Delta x_4 = \tfrac{1}{6}, \qquad \Delta x_5 = \tfrac{1}{12}.$$

See Figure 5.2.2.

The maximum values of f on these subintervals are as follows:

$$M_1 = f(0) = \cos 0 = 1, \qquad M_2 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{6}\right) = \cos \tfrac{1}{6}\pi = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3},$$
$$M_3 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) = \cos \tfrac{1}{4}\pi = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \qquad M_4 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi = 0,$$
$$M_5 = f\left(\tfrac{2}{3}\right) = \cos \tfrac{2}{3}\pi = -\tfrac{1}{2}.$$

and the minimum values are as follows:

$$m_1 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{6}\right) = \cos \tfrac{1}{6}\pi = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}, \qquad m_2 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) = \cos \tfrac{1}{4}\pi = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2},$$
$$m_3 = f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi = 0, \qquad m_4 = f\left(\tfrac{2}{3}\right) = \cos \tfrac{2}{3}\pi = -\tfrac{1}{2},$$
$$m_5 = f\left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right) = \cos \tfrac{3}{4}\pi = -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}.$$

Therefore

$$U_f(P) = 1\left(\tfrac{1}{6}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{12}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) + 0\left(\tfrac{1}{6}\right) + \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\right)\left(\tfrac{1}{12}\right) \cong 0.37$$

and

$$L_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{6}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\left(\tfrac{1}{12}\right) + 0\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right) + \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\right)\left(\tfrac{1}{6}\right) + \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\right)\left(\tfrac{1}{12}\right) \cong 0.06. \quad ❑$$

Both in Example 2 and in Example 3 the separation between $U_f(P)$ and $L_f(P)$ was quite large. Had we added more points to the partitions we chose, the upper sums would have been smaller, the lower sums would have been greater, and the separation between them would have been lessened.

By an argument that we omit here (it appears in Appendix B.4), it can be proved that, with f continuous on $[a, b]$, there is one and only one number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq I \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for } all \text{ partitions } P \text{ of } [a, b].$$

This is the number we want.

DEFINITION 5.2.3 THE DEFINITE INTEGRAL OF A CONTINUOUS FUNCTION

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$. The unique number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq I \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } [a, b]$$

is called the *definite integral* (or more simply *the integral)* of f from a to b and is denoted by

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

The symbol $\int$ dates back to Leibniz and is called an *integral sign*. It is really an elongated *S*—as in *Sum*. The numbers a and b are called *the limits of integration* (a is the *lower limit* and b is the *upper limit*),† and we will speak of *integrating* a function f from a to b. The function f being integrated is called the *integrand*. This is not the only notation. Some mathematicians omit the dx and simply write $\int_a^b f$. We will keep the dx. As we go on, you will see that it does serve a useful purpose.

In the expression

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

the letter x is a "dummy variable"; in other words, it can be replaced by any letter not already in use. Thus, for example,

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,d(x), \qquad \int_a^b f(t)\,dt, \qquad \int_a^b f(z)\,dz$$

all denote exactly the same quantity, the definite integral of f from a to b.

From the introduction to this chapter, you know that if f is nonnegative and continuous on $[a, b]$, then the integral of f from $x = a$ to $x = b$ gives the area below the graph of f from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$A = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

You also know that if an object moves with continuous speed $\nu(t) = |v(t)|$ from time $t = a$ to time $t = b$, then the integral of the speed function ν gives the distance traveled by the object during that time period:

$$s = \int_a^b \nu(t)\,dt = \int_a^b |v(t)|\,dt.$$

We'll come back to these applications and introduce others as we go on. Right now we carry out some computations.

Example 4 (*The integral of a constant function*)

(5.2.4)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b k\,dx = k(b-a).}$$

In this case the integrand is the constant function $f(x) = k$. To verify the formula, we take $P = \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ as an arbitrary partition of $[a, b]$. Since f is constantly k on $[a, b]$, f is constantly k on each subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$. Thus both m_i and M_i are k, and both $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ are

$$k\Delta x_1 + k\Delta x_2 + \cdots + k\Delta x_n = k(\Delta x_1 + \Delta x_2 + \cdots + \Delta x_n) = k(b-a).$$

explain

Therefore it is certainly true that

$$L_f(P) \le k(b-a) \le U_f(P).$$

†There is no connection between the term "limit" as used here and the limits introduced in Chapter 2.

Since this inequality holds for all partitions P of $[a, b]$, we can conclude that

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = k(b-a). \quad \square$$

For example,

$$\int_{-1}^{1} 3\,dx = 3[1-(-1)] = 3(2) = 6 \qquad \text{and}$$

$$\int_{4}^{10} -2\,dx = -2(10-4) = -2(6) = -12.$$

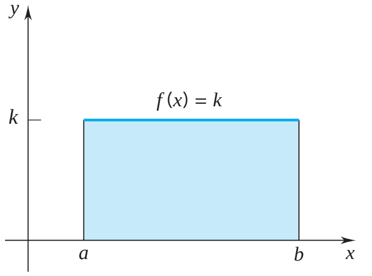


Figure 5.2.3

If $k > 0$, the region between the graph and the x-axis is a rectangle of height k erected on the interval $[a, b]$. (Figure 5.2.3.) The integral gives the area of this rectangle.

Example 5 *(The integral of the identity function)*

(5.2.5)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2).}$$

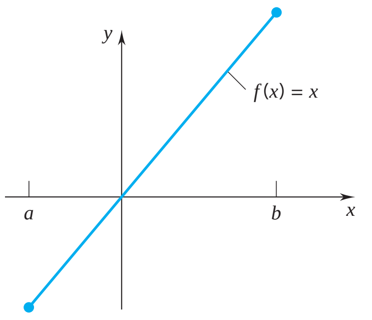


Figure 5.2.4

Here the integrand is the identity function $f(x) = x$. (Figure 5.2.4.) To verify the formula we take $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ as an arbitrary partition of $[a, b]$. On each subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$, the function $f(x) = x$ has a maximum value M_i and a minimum value m_i. Since f is an increasing function, the maximum value occurs at the right endpoint of the subinterval and the minimum value occurs at the left endpoint. Thus $M_i = x_i$ and $m_i = x_{i-1}$. It follows that

$$U_f(P) = x_1\Delta x_1 + x_2\Delta x_2 + \cdots + x_n\Delta x_n$$

and

$$L_f(P) = x_0\Delta x_1 + x_1\Delta x_2 + \cdots + x_{n-1}\Delta x_n.$$

For each index i

$$(*) \qquad x_{i-1} \le \tfrac{1}{2}(x_i + x_{i-1}) \le x_i. \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

Multiplication by $\Delta x_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$ gives

$$x_{i-1}\Delta x_i \le \tfrac{1}{2}(x_i + x_{i-1})(x_i - x_{i-1}) \le x_i\Delta x_i,$$

which we write as

$$x_{i-1}\Delta x_i \le \tfrac{1}{2}\left(x_i^2 - x_{i-1}^2\right) \le x_i\Delta x_i.$$

Summing from $i = 1$ to $i = n$, we find that

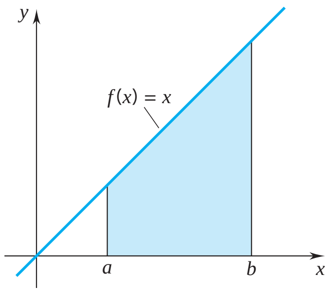
$$(**) \qquad L_f(P) \le \tfrac{1}{2}\left(x_1^2 - x_0^2\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\left(x_2^2 - x_1^2\right) + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{2}\left(x_n^2 - x_{n-1}^2\right) \le U_f(P).$$

The sum in the middle collapses to

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\left(x_n^2 - x_0^2\right) = \tfrac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2).$$

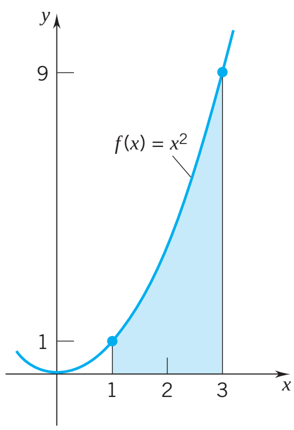
Consequently

$$L_f(P) \le \tfrac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2) \le U_f(P).$$



area of shaded region: $\int_a^b x\,dx = \frac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2)$

Figure 5.2.5



area of shaded region: $\int_1^3 x^2\,dx = \frac{26}{3}$

Figure 5.2.6

Since P was chosen arbitrarily, we can conclude that this inequality holds for all partitions P of $[a, b]$. It follows that

$$\int_a^b x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2). \quad ❑$$

For example,

$$\int_{-1}^{3} x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}[3^2 - (-1)^2] = \tfrac{1}{2}(8) = 4 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_{-2}^{2} x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}[2^2 - (-2)^2] = 0.$$

If the interval $[a, b]$ lies to the right of the origin, then the region below the graph of

$$f(x) = x, \qquad x \in [a, b]$$

is the trapezoid shown in Figure 5.2.5. The integral

$$\int_a^b x\,dx$$

gives the area of this trapezoid: $A = (b - a)[\frac{1}{2}(a + b)] = \frac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2)$.

Example 6

$$\int_1^3 x^2\,dx = \tfrac{26}{3}. \qquad \text{(Figure 5.2.6)}$$

Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ be an arbitrary partition of [1, 3]. On each subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ the function $f(x) = x^2$ has a maximum $M_i = x_i^2$ and a minimum $m_i = x_{i-1}^2$. It follows that

$$U_f(P) = x_1^2 \Delta x_1 + \cdots + x_n^2 \Delta x_n$$

and

$$L_f(P) = x_0^2 \Delta x_1 + \cdots + x_{n-1}^2 \Delta x_n.$$

For each index i, $1 \le i \le n$,

$$3x_{i-1}^2 \le x_{i-1}^2 + x_{i-1}x_i + x_i^2 \le 3x_i^2. \qquad \text{(Verify this)}$$

Division by 3 gives

$$x_{i-1}^2 \le \tfrac{1}{3}\left(x_{i-1}^2 + x_{i-1}x_i + x_i^2\right) \le x_i^2.$$

We now multiply this inequality by $\Delta x_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$. The middle term then becomes

$$\tfrac{1}{3}\left(x_{i-1}^2 + x_{i-1}x_i + x_i^2\right)(x_i - x_{i-1}) = \tfrac{1}{3}\left(x_i^3 - x_{i-1}^3\right),$$

and shows that

$$x_{i-1}^2 \Delta x_i \le \tfrac{1}{3}\left(x_i^3 - x_{i-1}^3\right) \le x_i^2 \Delta x_i.$$

The sum of the terms on the left is $L_f(P)$. The sum of all the middle terms collapses to $\frac{26}{3}$:

$$\tfrac{1}{3}\left(x_1^3 - x_0^3 + x_2^3 - x_1^3 + \cdots + x_n^3 - x_{n-1}^3\right) = \tfrac{1}{3}\left(x_n^3 - x_0^3\right) = \tfrac{1}{3}(3^3 - 1^3) = \tfrac{26}{3}.$$

The sum of the terms on the right is $U_f(P)$. Clearly, then,

$$L_f(P) \le \tfrac{26}{3} \le U_f(P).$$

Since P was chosen arbitrarily, we can conclude that this inequality holds for all partitions P of $[1, 3]$. It follows that

$$\int_1^3 x^2\, dx = \tfrac{26}{3}. \quad ❑$$

The Integral as the Limit of Riemann Sums

For a function f continuous on $[a, b]$, we have defined the definite integral

$$\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$$

as the unique number that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq \int_a^b f(x)\, dx \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } [a, b].$$

This method of obtaining the definite integral (*squeezing* toward it with upper and lower sums) is called the *Darboux method.*†

There is another way to obtain the integral that, in some respects, has distinct advantages. Take a partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$. P breaks up $[a, b]$ into n subintervals

$$[x_0, x_1], [x_1, x_2], \ldots, [x_{n-1}, x_n]$$

of lengths

$$\Delta x_1, \Delta x_2, \ldots, \Delta x_n.$$

Now pick a point x_1^* from $[x_0, x_1]$ and form the product $f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1$; pick a point x_2^* from $[x_1, x_2]$ and form the product $f(x_2^*)\Delta x_2$; go on in this manner until you have formed the products

$$f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1, \quad f(x_2^*)\Delta x_2, \ldots, \quad f(x_n^*)\Delta x_n.$$

The sum of these products

$$S^*(P) = f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + f(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + f(x_n^*)\Delta x_n$$

is called a *Riemann sum.*†† Since $m_i \leq f(x_i^*) \leq M_i$ for each index i, it's clear that

(5.2.6)
$$\boxed{L_f(P) \leq S^*(P) \leq U_f(P).}$$

This inequality holds for all partitions P of $[a, b]$.

Example 7 Let $f(x) = x^2$, $x \in [1, 3]$. Take $P = \left\{1, \frac{3}{2}, 2, 3\right\}$ and set

$$x_1^* = \tfrac{5}{4}, \qquad x_2^* = \tfrac{7}{4}, \qquad x_3^* = \tfrac{5}{2}. \qquad \text{(Figure 5.2.7)}$$

Here $\Delta x_1 = \frac{1}{2}$, $\Delta x_2 = \frac{1}{2}$, $\Delta x_3 = 1$. Therefore

$$S^*(P) = f\left(\tfrac{5}{4}\right)\cdot\tfrac{1}{2} + f\left(\tfrac{7}{4}\right)\cdot\tfrac{1}{2} + f\left(\tfrac{5}{2}\right)\cdot 1 = \tfrac{25}{16}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + \tfrac{49}{16}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + \tfrac{25}{4}(1) = \tfrac{137}{16} \cong 8.5625.$$

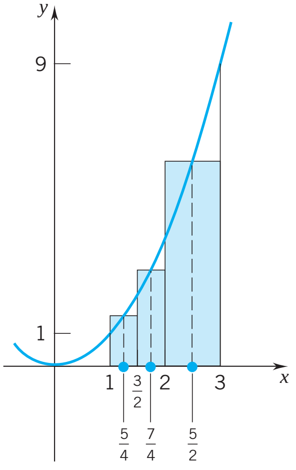


Figure 5.2.7

†After the French mathematician J. G. Darboux (1842–1917).

††After the German mathematician G. F. B. Riemann (1826–1866).

In Example 6 we showed that

$$\int_1^3 x^2\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_1^3 = \tfrac{27}{3} - \tfrac{1}{3} = \tfrac{26}{3} \cong 8.667.$$

Our Riemann approximation is pretty good. ❑

For each partition P of $[a, b]$, we define $\|P\|$, the *norm* of P, by setting

$$\|P\| = \max \Delta x_i, \qquad i = 1, 2, \ldots, n.$$

The definite integral of f is the *limit* of Riemann sums in the following sense: given any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad \|P\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left|S^*(P) - \int_a^b f(x)\,dx\right| < \epsilon$$

no matter how the x_i^* are chosen within the $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$.

We can express this by writing

(5.2.7)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \lim_{\|P\|\to 0} S^*(P),}$$

which in expanded form reads

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \lim_{\|P\|\to 0}\left[f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + f(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + f(x_n^*)\Delta x_n\right].$$

A proof that the definite integral of a continuous function is the limit of Riemann sums in the sense just explained is given in Appendix B.5. Figure 5.2.8 illustrates the idea. Here the base interval is broken up into eight subintervals. The point x_1^* is chosen from $[x_0, x_1]$, x_2^* from $[x_1, x_2]$, and so on.

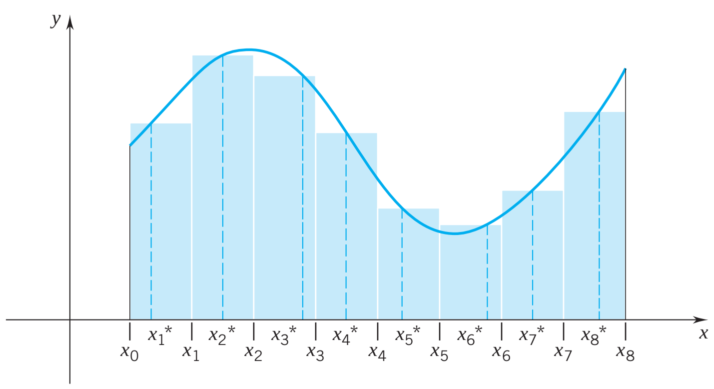


Figure 5.2.8

While the integral represents the area under the curve, the Riemann sum represents the sum of the areas of the shaded rectangles. The difference between the two can be made as small as we wish (less than ϵ) simply by making the maximum length of the base subintervals sufficiently small—that is, by making $\|P\|$ sufficiently small.

This approach to the definite integral was invented by Riemann some years before Darboux began his work. For this reason the integral we have been studying is called the *Riemann integral*.

Remark The process of integration can be extended to discontinuous functions so long as they are not "too" discontinuous.† Basically there are two ways to do this: One way is to extend the meaning of upper and lower sums. Another way, more accessible to us with the tools at hand, is to continue with Riemann sums. This is the course we'll follow when we return to this subject. (Project 5.5.) ❑

†What we mean by this will be touched upon in Project 5.5.

EXERCISES 5.2

Exercises 1–10. Calculate $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$.

1. $f(x) = 2x, \quad x \in [0, 1]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, 1\right\}.$
2. $f(x) = 1 - x, \quad x \in [0, 2]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{3}{4}, 1, 2\right\}.$
3. $f(x) = x^2, \quad x \in [-1, 0]; \quad P = \left\{-1, -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{4}, 0\right\}.$
4. $f(x) = 1 - x^2, \quad x \in [0, 1]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, 1\right\}.$
5. $f(x) = 1 + x^3, \quad x \in [0, 1]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{2}, 1\right\}.$
6. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad x \in [0, 1]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{25}, \frac{4}{25}, \frac{9}{25}, \frac{16}{25}, 1\right\}.$
7. $f(x) = x^2, \quad x \in [-1, 1]; \quad P = \left\{-1, -\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, 1\right\}.$
8. $f(x) = x^2, \quad x \in [-1, 1]; \quad P = \left\{-1, -\frac{3}{4}, -\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, 1\right\}.$
9. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi, \pi\right\}.$
10. $f(x) = \cos x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]; \quad P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi, \pi\right\}.$
11. Let f be a function continuous on $[-1, 1]$ and take P as a partition of $[-1, 1]$. Show that each of the following three statements is false.
    (a) $L_f(P) = 3$ and $U_f(P) = 2$.
    (b) $L_f(P) = 3, \quad U_f(P) = 6, \quad$ and $\quad \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)\,dx = 2.$
    (c) $L_f(P) = 3, \quad U_f(P) = 6, \quad$ and $\quad \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)\,dx = 10.$
12. (a) Given that $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ is an arbitrary partition of $[a, b]$, find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ for $f(x) = x + 3$.
    (b) Use your answers to part (a) to evaluate
$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$
13. Exercise 12 taking $f(x) = -3x$.
14. Exercise 12 taking $f(x) = 1 + 2x$.

Exercises 15–18. Express the limit as a definite integral over the indicated interval.

15. $\lim_{\|P\|\to 0} \left[\left(x_1^2 + 2x_1 - 3\right)\Delta x_1 + \left(x_2^2 + 2x_2 - 3\right)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + \left(x_n^2 + 2x_n - 3\right)\Delta x_n\right]; \quad [-1, 2].$
16. $\lim_{\|P\|\to 0} \left[\left(x_0^3 - 3x_0\right)\Delta x_1 + \left(x_1^3 - 3x_1\right)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + \left(x_{n-1}^3 - 3x_{n-1}\right)\Delta x_n\right]; \quad [0, 3].$
17. $\lim_{\|P\|\to 0} \left[(t_1^*)^2 \sin(2t_1^* + 1)\,\Delta t_1 + (t_2^*)^2 \sin(2t_2^* + 1)\,\Delta t_2 + \cdots + (t_n^*)^2 \sin(2t_n^* + 1)\,\Delta t_n\right]$ where $t_i^* \in [t_{i-1}, t_i]$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n; \quad [0, 2\pi].$
18. $\lim_{\|P\|\to 0} \left[\frac{\sqrt{t_1^*}}{(t_1^*)^2 + 1}\Delta t_1 + \frac{\sqrt{t_2^*}}{(t_2^*)^2 + 1}\Delta t_2 + \cdots + \frac{\sqrt{t_n^*}}{(t_n^*)^2 + 1}\Delta t_n\right]$
    where $t_i^* \in [t_{i-1}, t_i]$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n; \quad [1, 4].$
19. Let Ω be the region below the graph of $f(x) = x^2$, $x \in [0, 1]$. Draw a figure showing the Riemann sum $S^*(P)$ as an estimate for this area. Take $P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\right\}$ and set
$$x_1^* = \tfrac{1}{8}, \qquad x_2^* = \tfrac{3}{8}, \qquad x_3^* = \tfrac{5}{8}, \qquad x_4^* = \tfrac{7}{8}.$$
20. Let Ω be the region below the graph of $f(x) = \frac{3}{2}x + 1$, $x \in [0, 2]$. Draw a figure showing the Riemann sum $S^*(P)$ as an estimate for this area. Take $P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\right\}$ and let the x_i^* be the midpoints of the subintervals.
21. Let $f(x) = 2x$, $x \in [0, 1]$. Take $P = \left\{0, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\right\}$ and set
$$x_1^* = \tfrac{1}{16}, \quad x_2^* = \tfrac{3}{16}, \quad x_3^* = \tfrac{3}{8}, \quad x_4^* = \tfrac{5}{8}, \quad x_5^* = \tfrac{3}{4}.$$
    Calculate the following:
    (a) $L_f(P)$. (b) $S^*(P)$. (c) $U_f(P)$.
22. Taking f as in Exercise 21, determine
$$\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx.$$
23. Evaluate
$$\int_0^1 x^3\,dx$$
    using upper and lower sums. HINT:
$$b^4 - a^4 = (b^3 + b^2a + ba^2 + a^3)(b - a).$$
24. Evaluate
$$\int_0^1 x^4\,dx$$
    using upper and lower sums.

Exercises 25–30. Assume that f and g are continuous, that $a < b$, and that $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx > \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$. Which of the statements necessarily holds for all partitions P of $[a, b]$? Justify your answer.

25. $L_g(P) < U_f(P)$.
26. $L_g(P) < L_f(P)$.
27. $L_g(P) < \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.
28. $U_g(P) < U_f(P)$.
29. $U_f(P) > \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$.
30. $U_g(P) < \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.
31. A partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$ is said to be *regular* if the subintervals $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ all have the same length $\Delta x = (b - a)/n$. Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ be

a regular partition of $[a, b]$. Show that if f is continuous and increasing on $[a, b]$, then

$$U_f(P) - L_f(P) = [f(b) - f(a)]\,\Delta x.$$

32. Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ be a regular partition of the interval $[a, b]$. (See Exercise 31.) Show that if f is continuous and decreasing on $[a, b]$, then

$$U_f(P) - L_f(P) = [f(a) - f(b)]\,\Delta x.$$

33. Set $f(x) = \sqrt{1 + x^2}$.

(a) Verify that f increases on [0, 2].

(b) Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ be a regular partition of [0, 2]. Determine a value of n such that

$$0 \leq \int_0^2 f(x)\,dx - L_f(P) \leq 0.1.$$

(c) Use a programmable calculator or computer to calculate $\int_0^2 f(x)\,dx$ with an error of less than 0.1.

34. Set $f(x) = 1/(1 + x^2)$.

(a) Verify that f decreases on [0, 1].

(b) Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ be a regular partition of [0, 2]. Determine a value of n such that

$$0 \leq \int_0^2 f(x)\,dx - L_f(P) \leq 0.1.$$

(c) Use a programmable calculator or computer to calculate $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$ with an error of less than 0.05. NOTE: You will see in Chapter 7 that the exact value of this integral is $\pi/4$.

35. Show by induction that for each positive integer k,

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + k = \tfrac{1}{2}k(k + 1).$$

36. Show by induction that for each positive integer k,

$$1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + k^2 = \tfrac{1}{6}k(k + 1)(2k + 1).$$

37. Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ be a regular partition of the interval $[0, b]$, and set $f(x) = x$.

(a) Show that

$$L_f(P) = \frac{b^2}{n^2}[0 + 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + (n - 1)].$$

(b) Show that

$$U_f(P) = \frac{b^2}{n^2}[1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n].$$

(c) Use Exercise 35 to show that

$$L_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{2}b^2(1 - \|P\|) \quad \text{and} \quad U_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{2}b^2(1 + \|P\|).$$

(d) Show that for all choices of x_i^*-points

$$\lim_{\|P\|\to 0} S^*(P) = \tfrac{1}{2}b^2 \quad \text{and therefore} \quad \int_0^b x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}b^2.$$

38. Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ be a regular partition of $[0, b]$, and let $f(x) = x^2$.

(a) Show that

$$L_f(P) = \frac{b^3}{n^3}[0^2 + 1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + (n - 1)^2].$$

(b) Show that

$$U_f(P) = \frac{b^3}{n^3}[1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + n^2].$$

(c) Use Exercise 36 to show that

$$L_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{6}b^3(2 - 3||P|| + ||P||^2) \quad \text{and}$$
$$U_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{6}b^3(2 + 3||P|| + ||P||^2).$$

(d) show that for all choices of x_i^*-points

$$\lim_{||P||\to 0} S(P) = \tfrac{1}{3}b^3 \quad \text{and therefore} \quad \int_0^b x^2\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}b^3.$$

39. Let f be a function continuous on $[a, b]$. Show that if P is a partition of $[a, b]$, then $L_f(P), U_f(P)$, and $\frac{1}{2}[L_f(P) + U_f(P)]$ are all Riemann sums.

Exercises 40–43. Using a regular partition P with 10 subintervals, estimate the integral

(a) by $L_f(P)$ and by $U_f(P)$, (b) by $\frac{1}{2}[L_f(P) + U_f(P)]$,

(c) by $S^*(P)$ using the midpoints of the subintervals. How does this result compare with your result in part (b)?

40. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 (x^3 + 2)\,dx.$

41. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \sqrt{x}\,dx.$

42. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \frac{1}{1 + x^2}\,dx.$

43. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \sin \pi x\,dx.$

■ 5.3 THE FUNCTION $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$

The evaluation of the definite integral

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

directly from upper and lower sums or from Riemann sums is usually a laborious and difficult process. Try, for example, to evaluate

$$\int_2^5 \left(x^3 + x^2 - \frac{2x}{1 - x^2}\right) dx \quad \text{or} \quad \int_{-1/2}^{1/4} \frac{x}{1 - x^2}\,dx$$

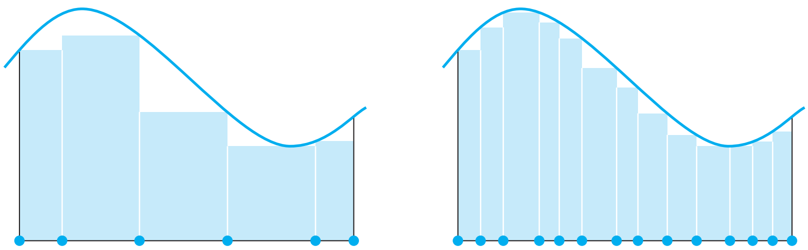
from such sums. Theorem 5.4.2, called the *fundamental theorem of integral calculus*, gives us another way to evaluate such integrals. This other way depends on a connection between integration and differentiation described in Theorem 5.3.5. Along the way we will pick up some information that is of interest in itself.

THEOREM 5.3.1

Suppose that f is continuous on $[a, b]$, and P and Q are partitions of $[a, b]$. If $Q \supseteq P$, then

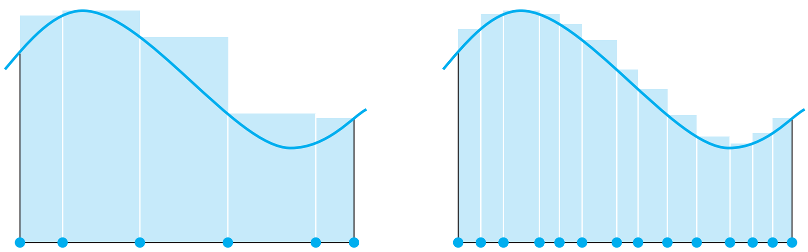
$$L_f(P) \le L_f(Q) \qquad \text{and} \qquad U_f(Q) \le U_f(P).$$

This result can be justified as follows: By adding points to a partition, we make the subintervals $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ smaller. This tends to make the minima, m_i, larger and the maxima, M_i, smaller. Thus the lower sums are made bigger, and the upper sums are made smaller. The idea is illustrated (for a positive function) in Figures 5.3.1 and 5.3.2.



as points are added to a partition, the lower sums tend to get bigger

Figure 5.3.1



as points are added to a partition, the upper sums tend to get smaller

Figure 5.3.2

The next theorem says that the integral is *additive* on intervals.

THEOREM 5.3.2

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $a < c < b$, then

$$\int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt = \int_a^b f(t)\,dt.$$

For nonnegative functions f, this theorem is easily understood in terms of area. The area of part I in Figure 5.3.3 is given by

$$\int_a^c f(t)\,dt;$$

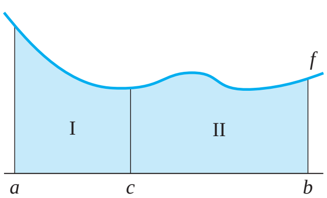


Figure 5.3.3

the area of part II by

$$\int_c^b f(t)\,dt;$$

and the area of the entire region by

$$\int_a^b f(t)\,dt.$$

The theorem says that

$$\boxed{\text{the area of part I} + \text{the area of part II} = \text{the area of the entire region.}}$$ ❑

The fact that the additivity theorem is so easy to understand does not relieve us of the necessity to prove it. Here is a proof.

PROOF OF THEOREM 5.3.2 To prove the theorem, we need only show that for each partition P of $[a, b]$

$$L_f(P) \le \int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt \le U_f(P). \qquad \text{(Why?)}$$

We begin with an arbitrary partition of $[a, b]$:

$$P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}.$$

Since the partition $Q = P \cup \{c\}$ contains P, we know from Theorem 5.3.1 that

(1) $$L_f(P) \le L_f(Q) \qquad \text{and} \qquad U_f(Q) \le U_f(P).$$

The sets

$$Q_1 = Q \cap [a, c] \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q_2 = Q \cap [c, b]$$

are partitions of $[a, c]$ and $[c, b]$, respectively. Moreover

(2) $$L_f(Q_1) + L_f(Q_2) = L_f(Q) \qquad \text{and} \qquad U_f(Q_1) + U_f(Q_2) = U_f(Q).$$

Since

$$L_f(Q_1) \le \int_a^c f(t)\,dt \le U_f(Q_1) \qquad \text{and} \qquad L_f(Q_2) \le \int_c^b f(t)\,dt \le U_f(Q_2),$$

we have

$$L_f(Q_1) + L_f(Q_2) \le \int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt \le U_f(Q_1) + U_f(Q_2),$$

and thus by (2),

$$L_f(Q) \le \int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt \le U_f(Q).$$

Therefore, by (1),

$$L_f(P) \le \int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt \le U_f(P).$$ ❑

Until now we have integrated only from left to right: from a number a to a number b greater than a. We integrate in the other direction by defining

(5.3.3)
$$\boxed{\int_b^a f(t)\,dt = -\int_a^b f(t)\,dt.}$$

The integral from any number to itself is defined to be zero:

(5.3.4)
$$\boxed{\int_c^c f(t)\,dt = 0.}$$

With these additional conventions, the additivity condition

$$\int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt = \int_a^b f(t)\,dt$$

holds for all choices of a, b, c from an interval on which f is continuous, no matter what the order of a, b, c happens to be. We have left the proof of this to you as an exercise. (Exercise 16)

We are now ready to state the all-important connection that exists between integration and differentiation. Our first step is to point out that if f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and c is any number in $[a, b]$, then for each x in $[a, b]$, the integral

$$\int_c^x f(t)\,dt$$

is a number, and consequently we can define a function F on $[a, b]$ by setting

$$F(x) = \int_c^x f(t)\,dt.$$

THEOREM 5.3.5

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$ and let c be any number in $[a, b]$. The function F defined on $[a, b]$ by setting

$$F(x) = \int_c^x f(t)\,dt$$

is continuous on $[a, b]$, differentiable on (a, b), and has derivative

$$F'(x) = f(x) \quad \text{for all } x \text{ in } (a, b).$$

PROOF We will prove the theorem for the special case where the integration that defines F is begun at the left endpoint a; namely, we will prove the theorem for the following function:

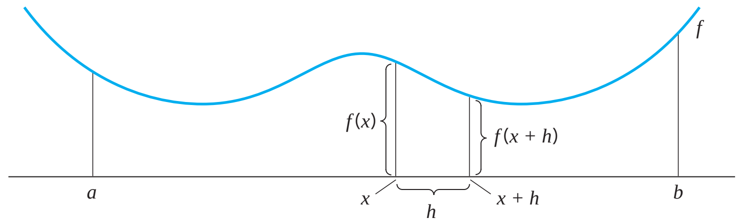
$$F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt.$$

(The more general case is left to you as Exercise 34.)

We begin with x in the half-open interval $[a, b)$ and show that

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} = f(x).$$

A pictorial argument that applies to the case where $f > 0$ is roughed out in Figure 5.3.4.



$F(x)$ = area from a to x and $F(x+h)$ = area from a to $x+h$. Therefore $F(x+h) - F(x)$ = area from x to $x+h$. For small h this is approximately $f(x)\,h$. Thus

$$\frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} \text{ is approximately } \frac{f(x)\,h}{h} = f(x).$$

Figure 5.3.4

Now to a proof. For $a \le x < x + h < b$,

$$\int_a^x f(t)\,dt + \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt = \int_a^{x+h} f(t)\,dt.$$

Therefore

$$\int_a^{x+h} f(t)\,dt - \int_a^x f(t)\,dt = \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt,$$

which, by the definition of F, gives

(1) $$F(x+h) - F(x) = \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt.$$

On the interval $[x, x+h]$, an interval of length h, f takes on a maximum value M_h and a minimum value m_h. On $[x, x+h]$, the product $M_h h$ is an upper sum for f and $m_h h$ is a lower sum for f. (Use the partition $\{x, x+h\}$.) Therefore

$$m_h \cdot h \le \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \le M_h \cdot h.$$

It follows from (1) and the fact that h is positive that

$$m_h \le \frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} \le M_h.$$

Since f is continuous on $[x, x+h]$,

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} m_h = f(x) = \lim_{h\to 0^+} M_h$$

and thus

(2) $$\lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} = f(x).$$

This last statement follows from the “pinching theorem,” Theorem 2.5.1, which, as we remarked in Section 2.5, applies also to one-sided limits. In a similar manner we can prove that, for x in the half-open interval $(a, b]$,

(3) $$\lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} = f(x).$$

For x in the open interval (a, b), both (2) and (3) hold, and we have

$$F'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} = f(x).$$

This proves that F is differentiable on (a, b) and has derivative $F'(x) = f(x)$.

All that remains to be shown is that F is continuous from the right at a and continuous from the left at b. Limit (2) at $x = a$ gives

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{F(a+h) - F(a)}{h} = f(a).$$

Now, for $h > 0$,

$$F(a+h) - F(a) = \frac{F(a+h) - F(a)}{h} \cdot h,$$

and so

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} [F(a+h) - F(a)] = \lim_{h\to 0^+} \left(\frac{F(a+h) - F(a)}{h} \cdot h \right) = f(a) \cdot \lim_{h\to 0^+} h = 0.$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{h\to 0^+} F(a+h) = F(a).$$

This shows that F is continuous from the right at $x = a$. The continuity of F from the left at $x = b$ can be shown in a similar manner by applying limit (3) at $x = b$. ❑

Example 1 The function $F(x) = \int_{-1}^{x} (2t + t^2)\,dt$ for all $x \in [-1, 5]$ has derivative

$$F'(x) = 2x + x^2 \qquad \text{for all } x \in (-1, 5). \quad ❑$$

Example 2 For all real x, define

$$F(x) = \int_0^x \sin \pi t\,dt.$$

Find $F'(\frac{3}{4})$ and $F'(-\frac{1}{2})$.

SOLUTION By Theorem 5.3.5,

$$F'(x) = \sin \pi x \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

Thus, $F'\left(\frac{3}{4}\right) = \sin\left(\frac{3}{4}\pi\right) = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$ and $F'\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sin\left(-\frac{1}{2}\pi\right) = -1.$ ❑

Example 3 Set

$$F(x) = \int_0^x \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt \qquad \text{for all real numbers } x.$$

(a) Find the critical points of F and determine the intervals on which F increases and the intervals on which F decreases.

(b) Determine the concavity of the graph of F and find the points of inflection (if any).

(c) Sketch the graph of F.

SOLUTION

(a) To find the intervals on which F increases and the intervals on which F decreases, we examine the first derivative of F. By Theorem 5.3.5,

$$F'(x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2} \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

Since $F'(x) > 0$ for all real x, F increases on $(-\infty, \infty)$; there are no critical points.

(b) To determine the concavity of the graph and to find the points of inflection, we use the second derivative

$$F''(x) = \frac{-2x}{(1+x^2)^2}.$$

The sign of F'' and the behavior of the graph of F are as follows:

sign of F'': + + + + + + 0 – – – – – – –

behavior of graph: concave up | 0 ↑ point of inflection | concave down

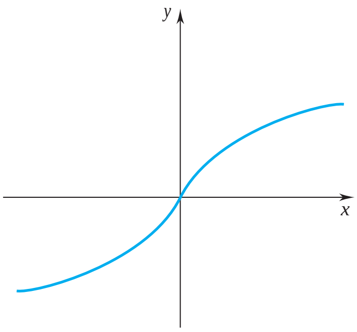


Figure 5.3.5

(c) Since $F(0) = 0$ and $F'(0) = 1$, the graph passes through the origin with slope 1. A sketch of the graph is shown in Figure 5.3.5. As you'll see in Chapter 7, the graph has two horizontal asymptotes: $y = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ and $y = -\frac{1}{2}\pi$. ❑

EXERCISES 5.3

1. Given that

$$\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx = 6, \qquad \int_0^2 f(x)\,dx = 4, \qquad \int_2^5 f(x)\,dx = 1,$$

find the following:

(a) $\displaystyle\int_0^5 f(x)\,dx.$ (b) $\displaystyle\int_1^2 f(x)\,dx.$ (c) $\displaystyle\int_1^5 f(x)\,dx.$

(d) $\displaystyle\int_0^0 f(x)\,dx.$ (e) $\displaystyle\int_2^0 f(x)\,dx.$ (f) $\displaystyle\int_5^1 f(x)\,dx.$

2. Given that

$$\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx = 5, \qquad \int_3^4 f(x)\,dx = 7, \qquad \int_1^8 f(x)\,dx = 11,$$

find the following:

(a) $\displaystyle\int_4^8 f(x)\,dx.$ (b) $\displaystyle\int_4^3 f(x)\,dx.$ (c) $\displaystyle\int_1^3 f(x)\,dx.$

(d) $\displaystyle\int_3^8 f(x)\,dx.$ (e) $\displaystyle\int_8^4 f(x)\,dx.$ (f) $\displaystyle\int_4^4 f(x)\,dx.$

3. Use upper and lower sums to show that

$$0.5 < \int_1^2 \frac{dx}{x} < 1.$$

4. Use upper and lower sums to show that

$$0.6 < \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1+x^2} < 1.$$

5. For $x > -1$, set $F(x) = \int_0^x t\sqrt{t+1}\,dt$.

(a) Find $F(0)$. (b) Find $F'(x)$. (c) Find $F'(2)$.

(d) Express $F(2)$ as an integral of $t\sqrt{t+1}$.

(e) Express $-F(x)$ as an integral of $t\sqrt{t+1}$.

6. Let $F(x) = \int_\pi^x t \sin t\,dt$.

(a) Find $F(\pi)$. (b) Find $F'(x)$. (c) Find $F'(\frac{1}{2}\pi)$.

(d) Express $F(2\pi)$ as an integral of $t \sin t$.

(e) Express $-F(x)$ as an integral of $t \sin t$.

Exercises 7–12. Calculate the following for each F given below:

(a) $F'(-1)$. (b) $F'(0)$. (c) $F'(\frac{1}{2})$. (d) $F''(x)$.

7. $\displaystyle F(x) = \int_0^x \frac{dt}{t^2+9}.$ **8.** $\displaystyle F(x) = \int_x^0 \sqrt{t^2+1}\,dt.$

9. $\displaystyle F(x) = \int_x^1 t\sqrt{t^2+1}\,dt.$ **10.** $\displaystyle F(x) = \int_1^x \sin \pi t\,dt.$

11. $\displaystyle F(x) = \int_1^x \cos \pi t\,dt.$ **12.** $\displaystyle F(x) = \int_2^x (t+1)^3\,dt.$

13. Show that statements (a) and (b) are false.

(a) $U_f(P_1) = 4$ for the partition $P_1 = \{0, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\}$, and
$U_f(P_2) = 5$ for the partition $P_2 = \{0, \frac{1}{4}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\}$.

(b) $L_f(P_1) = 5$ for the partition $P_1 = \{0, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\}$, and
$L_f(P_2) = 4$ for the partition $P_2 = \{0, \frac{1}{4}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\}$.

14. (a) Which continuous functions f defined on $[a, b]$, have the property that $\mathcal{L}_f(P) = \mathcal{U}_f(P)$ for some partition P?
(b) Which continuous functions f defined on $[a, b]$ have the property that $\mathcal{L}_f(P) = \mathcal{U}_f(Q)$ for some partitions P and Q?

15. Which continuous functions f defined on $[a, b]$ have the property that all lower sums $\mathcal{L}_f(P)$ are equal?

16. Show that if f is continuous on an interval I, then

$$\int_a^c f(t)\,dt + \int_c^b f(t)\,dt = \int_a^b f(t)\,dt$$

for *every* choice of a, b, c from I. HINT: Assume $a < b$ and consider the four cases: $c = a$, $c = b$, $c < a$, $b < c$. Then consider what happens if $a > b$ or $a = b$.

Exercises 17 and 18. Find the critical points for F and, at each critical point, determine whether F has a local maximum, a local minimum, or neither.

17. $F(x) = \int_0^x \frac{t-1}{1+t^2}\,dt.$ **18.** $F(x) = \int_0^x \frac{t-4}{1+t^2}\,dt.$

19. For $x > 0$, set $F(x) = \int_1^x (1/t)\,dt.$

(a) Find the critical points for F, if any, and determine the intervals on which F increases and the intervals on which F decreases.
(b) Determine the concavity of the graph of F and find the points of inflection, if any.
(c) Sketch the graph of F.

20. Let $F(x) = \int_0^x t(t-3)^2\,dt.$

(a) Find the critical points for F and determine the intervals on which F increases and the intervals on which F decreases.
(b) Determine the concavity of the graph of F and find the points of inflection, if any.
(c) Sketch the graph of F.

21. Suppose that f is differentiable with $f'(x) > 0$ for all x, and suppose that $f(1) = 0$. Set

$$F(x) = \int_0^x f(t)\,dt.$$

Justify each statement.

(a) F is continuous.
(b) F is twice differentiable.
(c) $x = 1$ is a critical point for F.
(d) F takes on a local minimum at $x = 1$.
(e) $F(1) < 0$.

Make a rough sketch of the graph of F.

22. Suppose that g is differentiable with $g'(x) < 0$ for all $x < 1$, $g'(1) = 0$, and $g'(x) > 0$ for all $x > 1$, and suppose that $g(1) = 0$. Set

$$G(x) = \int_0^x g(t)\,dt.$$

Justify each statement.

(a) G is continuous.
(b) G is twice differentiable.
(c) $x = 1$ is a critical point for G.
(d) The graph of G is concave down for $x < 1$ and concave up for $x > 1$.
(e) G is an increasing function.

Make a rough sketch of the graph of G.

23. (a) Sketch the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2 - x, & -1 \le x \le 0 \\ 2 + x, & 0 < x \le 3. \end{cases}$$

(b) Calculate $F(x) = \int_{-1}^x f(t)\,dt$, $-1 \le x \le 3$, and sketch the graph of F.
(c) What can you conclude about f and F at $x = 0$?

24. (a) Sketch the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + x, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 2x, & 1 < x \le 3. \end{cases}$$

(b) Calculate $F(x) = \int_0^x f(t)\,dt$, $0 \le x \le 3$, and sketch the graph of F.
(c) What can you conclude about f and F at $x = 1$?

Exercises 25–28. Calculate $F'(x)$.

25. $F(x) \int_0^{x^3} t \cos t\,dt.$ HINT: Set $u = x^3$ and use the chain rule.

26. $F(x) = \int_1^{\cos x} \sqrt{1 - t^2}dt.$

27. $F(x) = \int_{x^2}^1 (t - \sin^2 t)\,dt.$

28. $F(x) = \int_0^{\sqrt{x}} \frac{t^2}{1+t^4}dt.$

29. Set $F(x) = 2x + \int_0^x \frac{\sin 2t}{1+t^2}dt.$ Determine

(a) $F(0)$. (b) $F'(0)$. (c) $F''(0)$.

30. Set $F(x) = 2x + \int_0^{x^2} \frac{\sin 2t}{1+t^2}\,dt.$ Determine

(a) $F(0)$. (b) $F'(x)$.

31. Assume that f is continuous and

$$\int_0^x f(t)\,dt = \frac{2x}{4+x^2}.$$

(a) Determine $f(0)$.
(b) Find the zeros of f, if any.

32. Assume that f is continuous and

$$\int_0^x f(t)\,dt = \sin x - x \cos x.$$

(a) Determine $f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right)$. (b) Find $f'(x)$.

33. (*A mean-value theorem for integrals*) Show that if f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then there is a least one number c in (a, b) for which

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = f(c)(b-a).$$

34. We proved Theorem 5.3.5 only in the case that the integration which defines F is begun at the left endpoint a. Show that the result still holds if the integration is begun at an arbitrary point $c \in (a, b)$.

35. Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$. For each $x \in [a, b]$ set

$$F(x) = \int_c^x f(t)\,dt, \quad \text{and} \quad G(x) = \int_d^x f(t)\,dt$$

taking c and d from $[a, b]$.

(a) Show that F and G differ by a constant.
(b) Show that $F(x) - G(x) = \int_c^d f(t)\,dt.$

36. Let f be everywhere continuous and set

$$F(x) = \int_0^x \left[t \int_1^t f(u)\,du \right] dt.$$

Find (a) $F'(x)$. (b) $F'(1)$. (c) $F''(x)$. (d) $F''(1)$.

Exercises 37–40. Use a CAS to carry out the following steps:

(a) Solve the equation $F'(x) = 0$. Determine the intervals on which F increases and the intervals on which F decreases. Produce a figure that displays both the graph of F and the graph of F'.

(b) Solve the equation $F''(x) = 0$. Determine the intervals on which the graph of F is concave up and the intervals on which the graph of F is concave down. Produce a figure that displays both the graph of F and the graph of F''.

37. $F(x) = \int_0^x (t^2 - 3t - 4)\,dt.$

38. $F(x) = \int_0^x (2 - 3\cos t)\,dt, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$

39. $F(x) = \int_x^0 \sin 2t\,dt, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$

40. $F(x) = \int_x^0 (2 - t)^2\,dt.$

5.4 THE FUNDAMENTAL THEOREM OF INTEGRAL CALCULUS

The natural setting for differentiation is an open interval. For functions f defined on an open interval, the antiderivatives of f are simply the functions with derivative f. For continuous functions defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$, the term "antiderivative" takes into account the endpoints a and b.

DEFINITION 5.4.1 ANTIDERIVATIVE ON $[a, b]$

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$. A function G is called an *antiderivative for f on* $[a, b]$ if

G is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $G'(x) = f(x)$ for all $x \in (a, b)$.

Theorem 5.3.5 tells us that if f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then

$$F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$$

is an antiderivative for f on $[a, b]$. This gives us a prescription for constructing antiderivatives. It tells us that we can construct an antiderivative for f by integrating f.

The theorem below, called the "fundamental theorem," goes the other way. It gives us a prescription, not for finding antiderivatives, but for evaluating integrals. It tells us that we can evaluate the integral

$$\int_a^b f(t)\,dt$$

from any antiderivative of f by evaluating the antiderivative at b and at a.

THEOREM 5.4.2 THE FUNDAMENTAL THEOREM OF INTEGRAL CALCULUS

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$. If G is any antiderivative for f on $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(t)\,dt = G(b) - G(a).$$

PROOF From Theorem 5.3.5 we know that the function

$$F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$$

is an antiderivative for f on $[a, b]$. If G is also an antiderivative for f on $[a, b]$, then both F and G are continuous on $[a, b]$ and satisfy $F'(x) = G'(x)$ for all x in (a, b). From Theorem 4.2.4 we know that there exists a constant C such that

$$F(x) = G(x) + C \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } [a, b].$$

Since $F(a) = 0$,

$$G(a) + C = 0 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad C = -G(a).$$

It follows that

$$F(x) = G(x) - G(a) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } [a, b].$$

In particular,

$$\int_a^b f(t)\,dt = F(b) = G(b) - G(a). \quad ❑$$

We now evaluate some integrals by applying the fundamental theorem. In each case we use the simplest antiderivative we can think of.

Example 1 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_1^4 x^2 dx$.

SOLUTION As an antiderivative for $f(x) = x^2$, we can use the function

$$G(x) = \tfrac{1}{3}x^3. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

By the fundamental theorem,

$$\int_1^4 x^2 dx = G(4) - G(1) = \tfrac{1}{3}(4)^3 - \tfrac{1}{3}(1)^3 = \tfrac{64}{3} - \tfrac{1}{3} = 21.$$

NOTE: Any other antiderivative of $f(x) = x^2$ has the form $H(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + C$ for some constant C. Had we chosen such an H instead of G, then we would have had

$$\int_1^4 x^2 dx = H(4) - H(1) = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}(4)^3 + C\right] - \left[\tfrac{1}{3}(1)^3 + C\right] = \tfrac{64}{3} + C - \tfrac{1}{3} - C = 21;$$

the C's would have canceled out. ❑

Example 2 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\,dx$.

SOLUTION Here we use the antiderivative $G(x) = -\cos x$:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\,dx &= G(\pi/2) - G(0)\\ &= -\cos(\pi/2) - [-\cos(0)] = 0 - (-1) = 1. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Notation Expressions of the form $G(b) - G(a)$ are conveniently written

$$\Big[G(x)\Big]_a^b.$$

In this notation

$$\int_1^4 x^2\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_1^4 = \tfrac{1}{3}(4)^3 - \tfrac{1}{3}(1)^3 = 21$$

and

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\,dx = \Big[-\cos x\Big]_0^{\pi/2} = -\cos(\pi/2) - [-\cos(0)] = 1. \quad ❑$$

To calculate

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

by the fundamental theorem, we need to find an antiderivative for f. We do this by working back from the results of differentiation.

For rational r,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{r+1}) = (r+1)x^r.$$

Thus, if $r \neq -1$,

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1}\right) = x^r.$$

This tells us that

$$G(x) = \frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} \qquad \text{is an antiderivative for } f(x) = x^r.$$

Some common trigonometric antiderivatives are listed in Table 5.4.1. Note that in each case the function on the left is the derivative of the function on the right.

Table 5.4.1

Function	Antiderivative	Function	Antiderivative
$\sin x$	$-\cos x$	$\cos x$	$\sin x$
$\sec^2 x$	$\tan x$	$\csc^2 x$	$-\cot x$
$\sec x \tan x$	$\sec x$	$\csc x \cot x$	$-\csc x$

We continue with computations.

$$\int_1^2 \frac{dx}{x^3} = \int_1^2 x^{-3}dx = \left[\frac{x^{-2}}{-2}\right]_1^2 = \left[-\frac{1}{2x^2}\right]_1^2 = -\tfrac{1}{8} - (-\tfrac{1}{2}) = \tfrac{3}{8},$$

$$\int_0^1 t^{5/3}\,dt = \left[\tfrac{3}{8}t^{8/3}\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{3}{8}(1)^{8/3} - \tfrac{3}{8}(0)^{8/3} = \tfrac{3}{8}.$$

$$\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/3} \sec^2 t\,dt = \Big[\tan t\Big]_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/3} = \tan\frac{\pi}{3} - \tan\frac{-\pi}{4} = \sqrt{3} - (-1) = \sqrt{3} + 1.$$

$$\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \csc x \cot x\,dx = \Big[-\csc x\Big]_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} = -\csc\frac{\pi}{2} - \left[-\csc\frac{\pi}{6}\right] = -1 - (-2) = 1.$$

Example 3 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^1 (2x - 6x^4 + 5)dx$.

SOLUTION As an antiderivative we use $G(x) = x^2 - \frac{6}{5}x^5 + 5x$:

$$\int_0^1 (2x - 6x^4 + 5)dx = \left[x^2 - \tfrac{6}{5}x^5 + 5x\right]_0^1 = 1 - \tfrac{6}{5} + 5 = \tfrac{24}{5}. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^1 (x-1)(x+2)\,dx$.

SOLUTION First we carry out the indicated multiplication:

$$(x-1)(x+2) = x^2 + x - 2.$$

As an antiderivative we use $G(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 2x$:

$$\int_{-1}^{1} (x-1)(x+2)\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}x^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 - 2x\right]_{-1}^{1} = -\tfrac{10}{3}. \quad ❑$$

We now give some slightly more complicated examples. The essential step in each case is the determination of an antiderivative. Check each computation in detail.

$$\int_1^2 \frac{x^4+1}{x^2}\,dx = \int_1^2 (x^2 + x^{-2})\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}x^3 - x^{-1}\right]_1^2 = \tfrac{17}{6}.$$

$$\int_1^5 \sqrt{x-1}\,dx = \int_1^5 (x-1)^{1/2}\,dx = \left[\tfrac{2}{3}(x-1)^{3/2}\right]_1^5 = \tfrac{16}{3}.$$

$$\int_0^1 (4-\sqrt{x})^2\,dx = \int_0^1 (16 - 8\sqrt{x} + x)\,dx = \left[16x - \tfrac{16}{3}x^{3/2} + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{67}{6}.$$

$$\int_1^2 -\frac{dt}{(t+2)^2} = \int_1^2 -(t+2)^{-2}\,dt = \left[(t+2)^{-1}\right]_1^2 = -\tfrac{1}{12}.$$

The Linearity of the Integral

The preceding examples suggest some simple properties of the integral that are used regularly in computations. Throughout, take f and g as continuous functions and α and β as constants.

I. Constants may be factored through the integral sign:

(5.4.3)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b \alpha f(x)\,dx = \alpha \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.}$$

For example,

$$\int_1^4 \tfrac{3}{7}\sqrt{x}\,dx = \tfrac{3}{7}\int_1^4 x^{1/2}dx = \frac{3}{7}\left[\frac{x^{3/2}}{3/2}\right]_1^4 = \tfrac{2}{7}\left[(4)^{3/2} - (1)^{3/2}\right] = \tfrac{2}{7}[8-1] = 2.$$

$$\int_0^{\pi/4} 2\cos x\,dx = 2\int_0^{\pi/4} \cos x\,dx = 2\big[\sin x\big]_0^{\pi/4} = 2\left[\sin\frac{\pi}{4} - \sin 0\right]$$
$$= 2\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} = \sqrt{2}.$$

II. The integral of a sum is the sum of the integrals:

(5.4.4)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b [f(x) + g(x)]\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.}$$

For example,

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{\pi/2} (\sin x + \cos x)\,dx &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\,dx + \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos x\,dx \\ &= \big[-\cos x\big]_0^{\pi/2} + \big[\sin x\big]_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= (-\cos\pi/2) - (-\cos 0) + \sin\pi/2 - \sin 0 \\ &= 1 + 1 = 2.\end{aligned}$$

III. The integral of a linear combination is the linear combination of the integrals:

(5.4.5)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b [\alpha f(x) + \beta g(x)]\,dx = \alpha \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \beta \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.}$$

This applies to the linear combination of more than two functions. For example,

$$\int_0^1 (2x - 6x^4 + 5)\,dx = 2\int_0^1 x\,dx - 6\int_0^1 x^4 dx + \int_0^1 5\,dx$$
$$= 2\left[\frac{x^2}{2}\right]_0^1 - 6\left[\frac{x^5}{5}\right]_0^1 + \Big[5x\Big]_0^1 = 1 - \tfrac{6}{5} + 5 = \tfrac{24}{5}.$$

This is the result obtained in Example 3.

Properties I and II are particular instances of Property III. To prove III, let F be an antiderivative for f and let G be an antiderivative for g. Then, since

$$[\alpha F(x) + \beta G(x)]' = \alpha F'(x) + \beta G'(x) = \alpha f(x) + \beta g(x),$$

it follows that $\alpha F + \beta G$ is an antiderivative for $\alpha f + \beta g$. Therefore,

$$\int_a^b [\alpha f(x) + \beta g(x)]\,dx = \Big[\alpha F(x) + \beta G(x)\Big]_a^b$$
$$= [\alpha F(b) + \beta G(b)] - [\alpha F(a) + \beta G(a)]$$
$$= \alpha[F(b) - F(a)] + \beta[G(b) - G(a)]$$
$$= \alpha \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \beta \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.$$

Example 5 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec x[2\tan x - 5\sec x]dx.$

SOLUTION

$$\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec x[2\tan x - 5\sec x]\,dx = \int_0^{\pi/4} [2\sec x\tan x - 5\sec^2 x]\,dx$$
$$= 2\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec x\tan x\,dx - 5\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^2 x\,dx$$
$$= 2\Big[\sec x\Big]_0^{\pi/4} - 5\Big[\tan x\Big]_0^{\pi/4}$$
$$= 2\left[\sec\frac{\pi}{4} - \sec 0\right] - 5\left[\tan\frac{\pi}{4} - \tan 0\right]$$
$$= 2[\sqrt{2} - 1] - 5[1 - 0] = 2\sqrt{2} - 7.$$ ❑

EXERCISES 5.4

Exercises 1–34. Evaluate the integral.

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 (2x - 3)\,dx.$

2. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 (3x + 2)\,dx.$

3. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^0 5x^4 dx.$

4. $\displaystyle\int_1^2 (2x + x^2)\,dx.$

5. $\displaystyle\int_1^4 2\sqrt{x}\,dx.$

6. $\displaystyle\int_0^4 \sqrt[3]{x}\,dx.$

7. $\displaystyle\int_1^5 2\sqrt{x - 1}dx.$

8. $\displaystyle\int_1^2 \left(\frac{3}{x^3} + 5x\right)\,dx.$

9. $\int_{-2}^{0}(x+1)(x-2)\,dx.$

10. $\int_{1}^{0}(t^3+t^2)\,dt.$

11. $\int_{1}^{2}\left(3t+\frac{4}{t^2}\right)dt.$

12. $\int_{-1}^{-1}7x^6dx.$

13. $\int_{0}^{1}(x^{3/2}-x^{1/2})\,dx.$

14. $\int_{0}^{1}(x^{3/4}-2x^{1/2})\,dx.$

15. $\int_{0}^{1}(x+1)^{17}dx.$

16. $\int_{0}^{a}(a^2x-x^3)\,dx.$

17. $\int_{0}^{a}(\sqrt{a}-\sqrt{x})^2dx.$

18. $\int_{-1}^{1}(x-2)^2dx.$

19. $\int_{1}^{2}\frac{6-t}{t^3}\,dt.$

20. $\int_{1}^{3}\left(x^2-\frac{1}{x^2}\right)dx.$

21. $\int_{1}^{2}2x(x^2+1)dx.$

22. $\int_{0}^{1}3x^2(x^3+1)\,dx.$

23. $\int_{0}^{\pi/2}\cos x\,dx.$

24. $\int_{0}^{\pi}3\sin x\,dx.$

25. $\int_{0}^{\pi/4}2\sec^2 x\,dx.$

26. $\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/3}\sec x\tan x\,dx.$

27. $\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/4}\csc u\cot u\,du.$

28. $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/3}-\csc^2 u\,du.$

29. $\int_{0}^{2\pi}\sin x\,dx.$

30. $\int_{0}^{\pi}\tfrac{1}{2}\cos x\,dx.$

31. $\int_{0}^{\pi/3}\left(\frac{2}{\pi}x-2\sec^2 x\right)dx.$

32. $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2}\csc x(\cot x-3\csc x)\,dx.$

33. $\int_{0}^{3}\left[\frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt{4+x^2})\right]dx.$

34. $\int_{0}^{\pi/2}\left[\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^3 x)\right]dx.$

Exercises 35–38. Calculate the derivative with respect to x (a) without integrating; that is, using the results of Section 5.3; (b) by integrating and then differentiating the result.

35. $\int_{1}^{x}(t+2)^2\,dt.$

36. $\int_{0}^{x}(\cos t-\sin t)\,dt.$

37. $\int_{1}^{2x+1}\tfrac{1}{2}\sec u\tan u\,du.$

38. $\int_{x^2}^{2}t(t-1)\,dt.$

39. Define a function F on $[1,8]$ such that $F'(x)=1/x$ and (a) $F(2)=0$; (b) $F(2)=-3$.

40. Define a function F on $[0,4]$ such that $F'(x)=\sqrt{1+x^2}$ and (a) $F(3)=0$; (b) $F(3)=1$.

Exercises 41–44. Verify that the function is nonnegative on the given interval, and then calculate the area below the graph on that interval.

41. $f(x)=4x-x^2;\quad [0,4].$

42. $f(x)=x\sqrt{x}+1;\quad [1,9].$

43. $f(x)=2\cos x;\quad [-\pi/2,\pi/4].$

44. $f(x)=\sec x\tan x;\quad [0,\pi/3].$

Exercises 45–48. Evaluate.

45. (a) $\int_{2}^{5}(x-3)\,dx.$ (b) $\int_{2}^{5}|x-3|\,dx.$

46. (a) $\int_{-4}^{2}(2x+3)\,dx.$ (b) $\int_{-4}^{2}|2x+3|\,dx.$

47. (a) $\int_{-2}^{2}(x^2-1)\,dx.$ (b) $\int_{-2}^{2}|x^2-1|\,dx.$

48. (a) $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi}\cos x\,dx.$ (b) $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi}|\cos x|\,dx.$

Exercises 49–52. Determine whether the calculation is valid. If it is not valid, explain why it is not valid.

49. $\int_{0}^{2\pi}x\cos x\,dx=\Big[x\sin x+\cos x\Big]_0^{2\pi}=1-1=0.$

50. $\int_{0}^{2\pi}\sec^2 x\,dx=\Big[\tan x\Big]_0^{2\pi}=0-0=0.$

51. $\int_{-2}^{2}\frac{1}{x^3}dx=\left[\frac{-1}{2x^2}\right]_{-2}^{2}=-\frac{1}{8}-\left(-\frac{1}{8}\right)=0.$

52. $\int_{-2}^{2}|x|dx=\left[\frac{1}{2}x|x|\right]_{-2}^{2}=2-(-2)=0.$

53. An object starts at the origin and moves along the x-axis with velocity

$$v(t)=10t-t^2,\quad 0\le t\le 10.$$

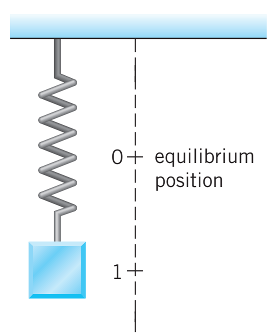
(a) What is the position of the object at any time t, $0\le t\le 10$?
(b) When is the object's velocity a maximum, and what is its position at that time?

54. The velocity of a bob suspended on a spring is given:

$$v(t)=3\sin t+4\cos t,\quad t\ge 0.$$

At time $t=0$, the bob is one unit below the equilibrium position. (See the figure.)

(a) Determine the position of the bob at each time $t\ge 0$.
(b) What is the bob's maximum displacement from the equilibrium position?



Exercises 55–58. Evaluate the integral.

55. $\int_{0}^{4}f(x)dx;\quad f(x)=\begin{cases}2x+1, & 0\le x\le 1\\ 4-x, & 1<x\le 4.\end{cases}$

56. $\int_{-2}^{4}f(x)dx;\quad f(x)=\begin{cases}2+x^2, & -2\le x<0\\ \tfrac{1}{2}x+2, & 0\le x\le 4.\end{cases}$

57. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi} f(x)dx;\quad f(x)=\begin{cases}1+2\cos x, & -\pi/2\le x\le \pi/3\\ (3/\pi)x+1, & \pi/3<x\le\pi.\end{cases}$

58. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{3\pi/2} f(x)dx;\quad f(x)=\begin{cases}2\sin x, & 0\le x\le \pi/2\\ 2+\cos x, & \pi/2<x\le 3\pi/2.\end{cases}$

59. Let $f(x)=\begin{cases}x+2, & -2\le x\le 0\\ 2, & 0<x\le 1\\ 4-2x, & 1<x\le 2,\end{cases}$

and set $g(x)=\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{x} f(t)\,dt.$

(a) Carry out the integration.
(b) Sketch the graphs of f and g.
(c) Where is f continuous? Where is f differentiable? Where is g differentiable?

60. Let $f(x)=\begin{cases}2-x^2, & -1\le x\le 1\\ 1, & 1<x<3\\ 2x-5, & 3\le x\le 5\end{cases}$

and let $g(x)=\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{x} f(t)\,dt.$

(a) Carry out the integration.
(b) Sketch the graphs of f and g.
(c) Where is f continuous? Where is f differentiable? Where is g differentiable?

61. (*Important*) If f is a function and its derivative f' is continuous on $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f'(t)\,dt = f(b)-f(a).$$

Explain the reasoning here.

62. Let f be a function such that f' is continuous on $[a, b]$. Show that

$$\int_a^b f(t)f'(t)\,dt = \frac{1}{2}[f^2(b)-f^2(a)].$$

63. Given that f has a continuous derivative, compare

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\int_a^x f(t)\,dt\right] \quad\text{to}\quad \int_a^x \frac{d}{dt}[f(t)]\,dt.$$

64. Given that f is a continuous function, set $F(x)=\int_0^x xf(t)\,dt$. Find $F'(x)$. HINT: The answer is not $xf(x)$.

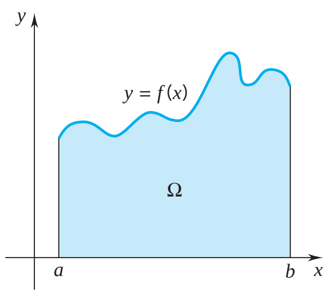


Figure 5.5.1

5.5 SOME AREA PROBLEMS

The calculations of area that we carry out in this section are all based on what you already know: if f is continuous and nonnegative on $[a, b]$, then the area under the graph of f from $x=a$ to $x=b$ is given by the integral of f from $x=a$ to $x=b$; namely, with Ω as in Figure 5.5.1

(5.5.1) $$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.}$$

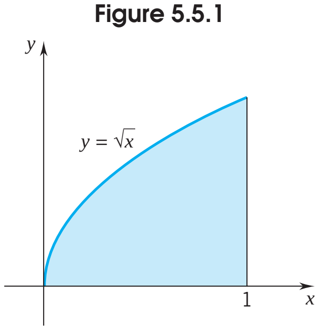


Figure 5.5.2

Example 1 Find the area below the graph of the square-root function from $x=0$ to $x=1$.

SOLUTION The graph is pictured in Figure 5.5.2. The area below the graph is $\frac{2}{3}$:

$$\int_0^1 \sqrt{x}dx = \int_0^1 x^{1/2}dx = \left[\tfrac{2}{3}x^{3/2}\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{2}{3}. \quad ❑$$

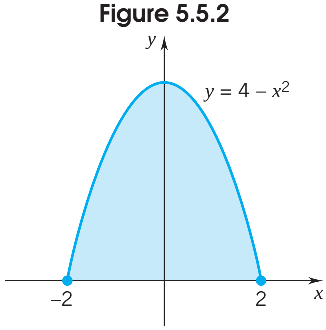


Figure 5.5.3

Example 2 Find the area of the region bounded above by the curve $y=4-x^2$ and below by the x-axis.

SOLUTION The curve intersects the x-axis at $x=-2$ and $x=2$. See Figure 5.5.3. The area of the region is $\frac{32}{3}$:

$$\int_{-2}^{2}(4-x^2)dx = \left[4x-\tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_{-2}^{2} = \tfrac{32}{3}.$$

NOTE: The region is symmetric with respect to the y-axis. Therefore, the area of the region can be stated as $2\int_0^2 (4-x^2)\,dx$:

$$2\int_0^2 (4-x^2)dx = 2\left[4x - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_0^2 = 2\left(8-\tfrac{8}{3}\right) = 2\left(\tfrac{16}{3}\right) = \tfrac{32}{3}.$$

We'll have more to say about the symmetry considerations in Section 5.8 ❑

Now we calculate the areas of somewhat more complicated regions. To avoid excessive repetitions, let's agree at the outset that throughout this section the symbols f, g, h represent continuous functions.

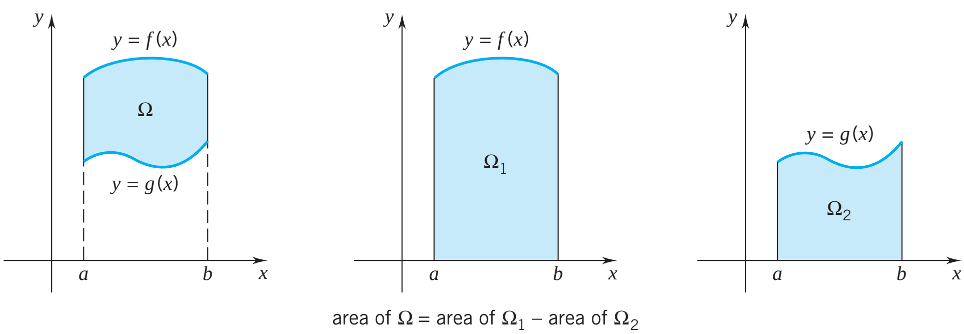


Figure 5.5.4

Look at the region Ω shown in Figure 5.5.4. The upper boundary of Ω is the graph of a nonnegative function f and the lower boundary is the graph of a nonnegative function g. We can obtain the area of Ω by calculating the area of Ω_1 and subtracting off the area of Ω_2. Since

$$\text{area of } \Omega_1 = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \quad \text{and} \quad \text{area of } \Omega_2 = \int_a^b g(x)\,dx,$$

we have

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx - \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.$$

We can combine the two integrals and write

(5.5.2) $$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = \int_a^b [f(x) - g(x)]\,dx.}$$

Example 3 Find the area of the region bounded above by the line $y = x + 2$ and bounded below by the parabola $y = x^2$.

SOLUTION The region is shown in Figure 5.5.5. The limits of integration were found by solving the two equations simultaneously:

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2 = x^2 \qquad &\text{iff} \qquad x^2 - x - 2 = 0 \\ &\text{iff} \qquad (x+1)(x-2) = 0 \\ &\text{iff} \qquad x = -1 \quad \text{or} \quad x = 2. \end{aligned}$$

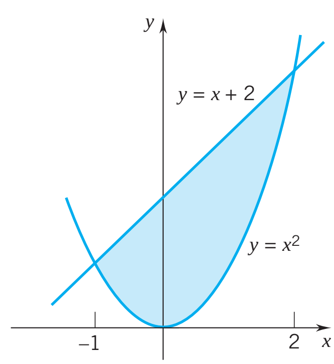


Figure 5.5.5

The area of the region is given by the integral

$$\int_{-1}^{2} \left[(x+2) - x^2\right] dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + 2x - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_{-1}^{2}$$

$$= \left(2 + 4 - \tfrac{8}{3}\right) - \left(\tfrac{1}{2} - 2 + \tfrac{1}{3}\right) = \tfrac{9}{2} \quad ❑$$

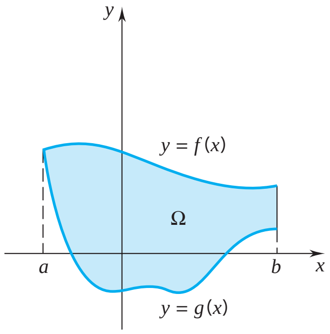


Figure 5.5.6

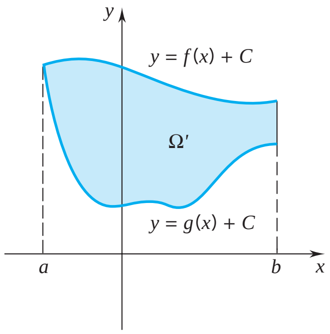


Figure 5.5.7

We derived Formula 5.5.2 under the assumption that f and g were both nonnegative, but that assumption is unnecessary. The formula holds for any region Ω that has

$$\text{an upper boundary of the form} \qquad y = f(x), \qquad x \in [a, b]$$

and

$$\text{a lower boundary of the form} \qquad y = g(x), \qquad x \in [a, b].$$

To see this, take Ω as in Figure 5.5.6. Obviously, Ω is congruent to the region marked Ω' in Figure 5.5.7; Ω' is Ω raised C units. Since Ω' lies entirely above the x-axis, the area of Ω' is given by the integral

$$\int_a^b \{[f(x) + C] - [g(x) + C]\}\, dx = \int_a^b [f(x) - g(x)]\, dx.$$

Since area of Ω = area of Ω',

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_a^b [f(x) - g(x)]\, dx$$

as asserted.

Example 4 Find the area of the region shown in Figure 5.5.8.

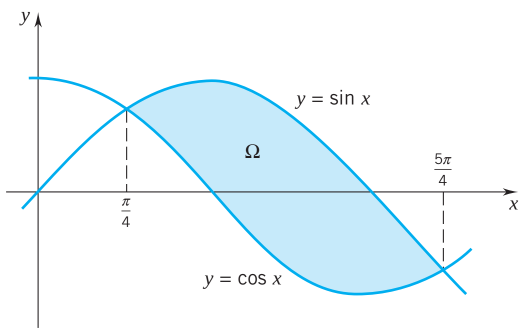


Figure 5.5.8

SOLUTION From $x = \pi/4$ to $x = 5\pi/4$ the upper boundary is the curve $y = \sin x$ and the lower boundary is the curve $y = \cos x$. Therefore

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_{\pi/4}^{5\pi/4} [\sin x - \cos x]\, dx$$

$$= \Big[-\cos x - \sin x\Big]_{\pi/4}^{5\pi/4} = 2\sqrt{2}. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Find the area between

$$y = 4x \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = x^3$$

from $x = -2$ to $x = 2$.

SOLUTION A rough sketch of the region appears in Figure 5.5.9. The drawing is not to scale. What matters to us is that $y = x^3$ is the upper boundary from $x = -2$ to $x = 0$, but it is the lower boundary from $x = 0$ to $x = 2$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\text{area} &= \int_{-2}^{0} [x^3 - 4x]\,dx + \int_{0}^{2} [4x - x^3]\,dx\\ &= \left[\tfrac{1}{4}x^4 - 2x^2\right]_{-2}^{0} + \left[2x^2 - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4\right]_{0}^{2}\\ &= [0 - (-4)] + [4 - 0] = 8. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

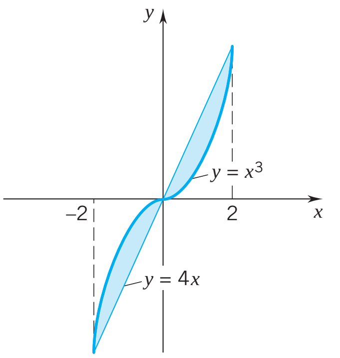


Figure 5.5.9

Example 6 Use integrals to represent the area of the region $\Omega = \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_2$ shaded in Figure 5.5.10.

SOLUTION From $x = a$ to $x = b$, the curve $y = f(x)$ is above the x-axis. Therefore

$$\text{area of } \Omega_1 = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

From $x = b$ to $x = c$, the curve $y = f(x)$ is below the x-axis. The upper boundary for Ω_2 is the curve $y = 0$ (the x-axis) and the lower boundary is the curve $y = f(x)$. Thus

$$\text{area of } \Omega_2 = \int_b^c [0 - f(x)]\,dx = -\int_b^c f(x)\,dx.$$

The area of Ω is the sum of these two areas:

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx - \int_b^c f(x)\,dx. \quad \square$$

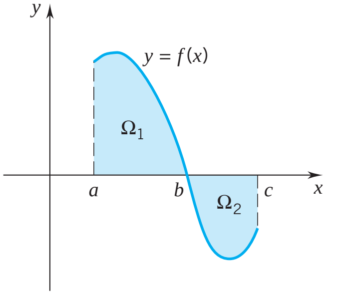


Figure 5.5.10

Figure 5.5.11 shows the graph of a function that crosses the x-axis repeatedly. The area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = a$ to $x = e$ is the sum

$$\text{area of } \Omega_1 + \text{area of } \Omega_2 + \text{area of } \Omega_3 + \text{area of } \Omega_4.$$

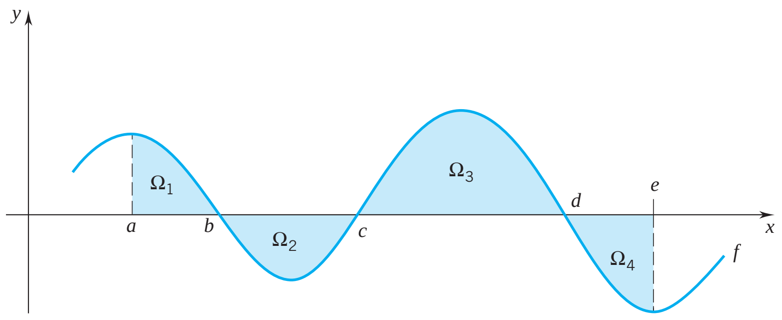


Figure 5.5.11

By the reasoning applied in Example 6, this area is

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx - \int_b^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^d f(x)\,dx - \int_d^e f(x)\,dx.$$

What is the geometric significance of

$$\int_a^e f(x)\,dx?$$

Answer: Since

$$\int_a^e f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \int_b^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^d f(x)\,dx + \int_d^e f(x)\,dx,$$

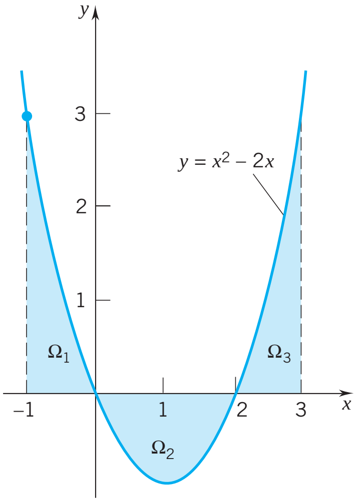


Figure 5.5.12

we have

$$\int_a^e f(x)\,dx = \text{area of } \Omega_1 - \text{area of } \Omega_2 + \text{area of } \Omega_3 - \text{area of } \Omega_4$$
$$= \text{area of } (\Omega_1 \cup \Omega_3) - \text{area of } (\Omega_2 \cup \Omega_4).$$

For a function that changes sign, the region between the graph and the x-axis has two parts: the part above the x-axis and the part below the x-axis. *The integral gives the area of the part above the x-axis minus the area of the part below the x-axis.*

Example 7 Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{3} (x^2 - 2x)\,dx$ and interpret the result in terms of areas. Then find the area between the graph of $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$ and the x-axis from $x = -1$ to $x = 3$.

SOLUTION The graph of $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$ is shown in Figure 5.5.12. Routine calculation gives

$$\int_{-1}^{3} (x^2 - 2x)\,dx = \left[\frac{1}{3}x^3 - x^2\right]_{-1}^{3} = \frac{4}{3}.$$

This integral represents the area of $(\Omega_1 \cup \Omega_3)$ minus the area of Ω_2.

The area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = -1$ to $x = 3$ is the sum

$$A = \text{area of } \Omega_1 + \text{area of } \Omega_2 + \text{area of } \Omega_3$$
$$= \int_{-1}^{0} (x^2 - 2x)\,dx + \left[-\int_0^2 (x^2 - 2x)\,dx\right] + \int_2^3 (x^2 - 2x)\,dx$$
$$= \int_{-1}^{0} (x^2 - 2x)\,dx + \int_0^2 (2x - x^2)\,dx + \int_2^3 (x^2 - 2x)\,dx$$
$$= \left[\frac{1}{3}x^3 - x^2\right]_{-1}^{0} + \left[x^2 - \frac{1}{3}x^3\right]_0^2 + \left[\frac{1}{3}x^3 - x^2\right]_2^3 = \frac{4}{3} + \frac{4}{3} + \frac{4}{3} = 4. \quad ❑$$

We come now to Figure 5.5.13. We leave it to you to convince yourself that the area A of the shaded part is as follows:

$$A = \int_a^b [f(x) - g(x)]\,dx + \int_b^c [g(x) - f(x)]\,dx$$
$$+ \int_c^d [f(x) - g(x)]\,dx + \int_d^e [h(x) - g(x)]\,dx. \quad ❑$$

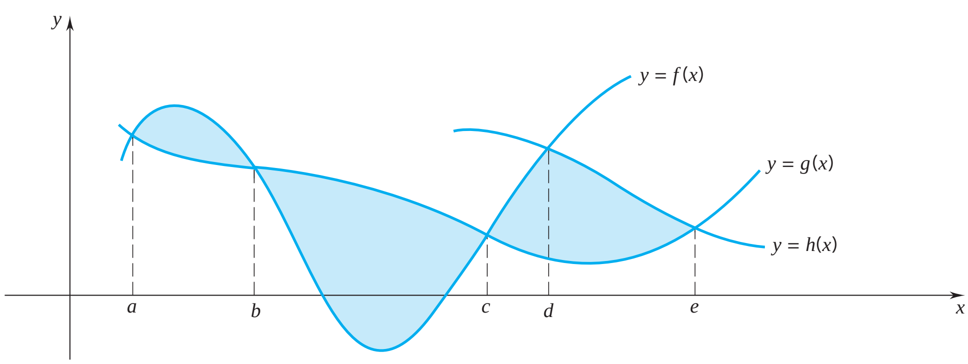


Figure 5.5.13

EXERCISES 5.5

Exercises 1–10. Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis.

1. $f(x) = 2 + x^3, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

2. $f(x) = (x + 2)^{-2}, \quad x \in [0, 2].$

3. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 1}, \quad x \in [3, 8].$

4. $f(x) = x^2(3 + x), \quad x \in [0, 8].$

5. $f(x) = (2x^2 + 1)^2, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

6. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}(x + 1)^{-1/2}, \quad x \in [0, 8].$

7. $f(x) = x^2 - 4, \quad x \in [1, 2].$

8. $f(x) = \cos x, \quad x \in \left[\frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{1}{3}\pi\right].$

9. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad x \in \left[\frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right].$

10. $f(x) = x^3 + 1, \quad x \in [-2, -1].$

Exercises 11–26. Sketch the region bounded by the curves and find its area.

11. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = x^2.$

12. $y = 6x - x^2, \quad y = 2x.$

13. $y = 5 - x^2, \quad y = 3 - x.$

14. $y = 8, \quad y = x^2 + 2x.$

15. $y = 8 - x^2, \quad y = x^2.$

16. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = \frac{1}{4}x.$

17. $x^3 - 10y^2 = 0, \quad x - y = 0.$

18. $y^2 - 27x = 0, \quad x + y = 0.$

19. $x - y^2 + 3 = 0, \quad x - 2y = 0.$

20. $y^2 = 2x, x - y = 4.$

21. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad y = 4.$

22. $y = x^2, \quad y = -\sqrt{x}, \quad x = 4.$

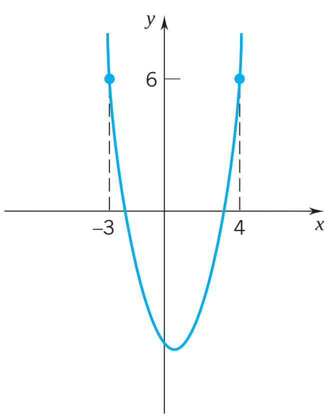
23. $y = \cos x, \quad y = 4x^2 - \pi^2.$

24. $y = \sin x, \quad y = \pi x - x^2.$

25. $y = x, \quad y = \sin x, \quad x = \pi/2.$

26. $y = x + 1, \quad y = \cos x, \quad x = \pi.$

27. The graph of $f(x) = x^2 - x - 6$ is shown in the accompanying figure.

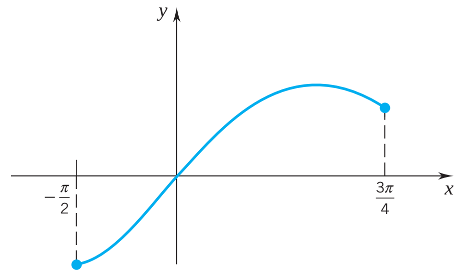


(a) Evaluate $\int_{-3}^{4} f(x)\,dx$ and interpret the result in terms of areas.

(b) Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = -3$ to $x = 4$.

(c) Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = -2$ to $x = 3$.

28. The graph of $f(x) = 2\sin x, x \in [-\pi/2, 3\pi/4]$ is shown in the accompanying figure.



(a) Evaluate $\int_{-\pi/2}^{3\pi/4} f(x)\,dx$ and interpret the result in tems of areas.

(b) Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = -\pi/2$ to $x = 3\pi/4$.

(c) Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = -\pi/2$ to $x = 0$.

29. Set $f(x) = x^3 - x$.

(a) Evaluate $\int_{-2}^{2} f(x)\,dx$.

(b) Sketch the graph of f and find the area between the graph and the x-axis from $x = -2$ to $x = 2$.

30. Set $f(x) = \cos x + \sin x$.

(a) Evaluate $\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\,dx$.

(b) Sketch the graph of f and find the area between the graph and the x-axis from $x = -\pi$ to $x = \pi$.

31. Set $f(x) = x^3 - 4x + 2$.

(a) Evaluate $\int_{-2}^{3} f(x)\,dx$.

(b) Use a graphing utility to graph f and estimate the area between the graph and the x-axis from $x = -2$ to $x = 3$. Use two decimal place accuracy in your approximations.

(c) Are your answers to parts (a) and (b) different? If so, explain why.

32. Set $f(x) = 3x^2 - 2\cos x$.

(a) Evaluate $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} f(x)\,dx$.

(b) Use a graphing utility to graph f and estimate the area between the graph and the x-axis from $x = -\pi/2$ to $x = \pi/2$. Use two decimal place accuracy in your approximations.

(c) Are your answers to parts (a) and (b) different? If so, explain why.

33. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 3 - x, & 1 < x \le 3. \end{cases}$

Sketch the graph of f and find the area between the graph and the x-axis.

34. Set $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3\sqrt{x}, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 4 - x^2, & 1 < x \le 2. \end{cases}$.
Sketch the graph of f and find the area between the graph and the x-axis.

35. Sketch the region bounded by the x-axis and the curves $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ with $x \in [0, \pi/2]$, and find its area.

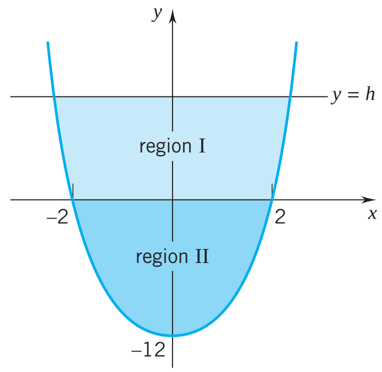
36. Sketch the region bounded by $y = 1$ and $y = 1 + \cos x$ with $x \in [0, \pi]$, and find its area.

37. Use a graphing utility to sketch the region bounded by the curves $y = x^3 + 2x$ and $y = 3x + 1$ with $x \in [0, 2]$, and estimate its area. Use two decimal place accuracy in your approximations.

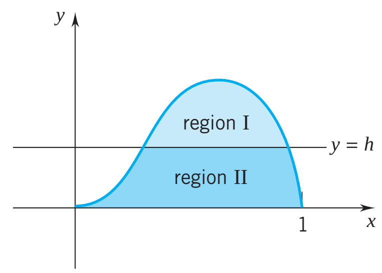
38. Use a graphing utility to sketch the region bounded by the curves $y = x^4 - 2x^2$ and $y = 4 - x^2$ with $x \in [-2, 2]$, and estimate its area. Use two decimal place accuracy in your approximations.

39. A sketch of the curves $y = x^4 - x^2 - 12$ and $y = h$ is shown in the figure.

(a) Use a graphing utility to get an accurate drawing of $y = x^4 - x^2 - 12$.
(b) Find the area of region II.
(c) Estimate h so that region I and region II have equal areas.



40. A sketch of the curves $y = x^3 - x^4$ and $y = h$ is shown in the figure. Estimate h so that region I and region II have equal areas.



■ PROJECT 5.5 Integrability; Integrating Discontinuous Functions

Integrability

We begin with a function f defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$. Whether or not f is continuous on $[a, b]$, we can form arbitrary Riemann sums

$$S^*(P) = f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + \cdots + f(x_n^*)\Delta x_n.$$

If these Riemann sums tend to a finite limit I in the sense already explained (5.2.7), then we say that f is (*Riemann*) *integrable* on $[a, b]$ and set

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = I.$$

A complete explanation of which functions are integrable and which functions are not integrable is beyond the scope of this text. Roughly speaking, a function is integrable iff it is not "too" discontinuous. Thus, for example, the Dirichlet function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \text{ rational} \\ 0, & x \text{ irrational} \end{cases}$$

(which, as you know, is everywhere discontinuous) is not integrable on $[a, b]$: choosing the x_i^* to be rational, we have $f(x_i^*) = 1$ for all i, and therefore

$$S^*(P) = (1)\Delta x_1 + (1)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + (1)\Delta x_n = b - a;$$

choosing the x_i^* to be irrational, we have $f(x_i^*) = 0$ for all i, and therefore

$$S^*(P) = (0)\Delta x_1 + (0)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + (0)\Delta x_n = 0.$$

Clearly the $S^*(P)$ do not tend to a limit as $\|P\| = \max \Delta x_i$ tends to 0. On the other hand, it can be shown that if f is bounded and has at most an enumerable set of discontinuities

$$x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n, \ldots,$$

then f is integrable on $[a, b]$. In particular, bounded functions with only a finite number of discontinuities are integrable. These are the only functions we will be working with.

Remark Were this a treatise in advanced mathematics, we would have to elaborate on the notion of integrability. But this is not a treatise in advanced mathematics; it is a text in calculus, and for calculus the integration of discontinuous functions is not very important. What is important to us in calculus is the link between integration and differentiation described in Theorem 5.3.5 and Theorem 5.4.2. This link is broken at the points where the integrand is discontinuous. ❏

Integrating Discontinuous Functions

Figure A shows three rectangles: the closed rectangle R_1, the rectangle R_2 obtained from R_1 by removing the rightmost side, and the rectangle R_3 obtained from R_1 by removing both sides.

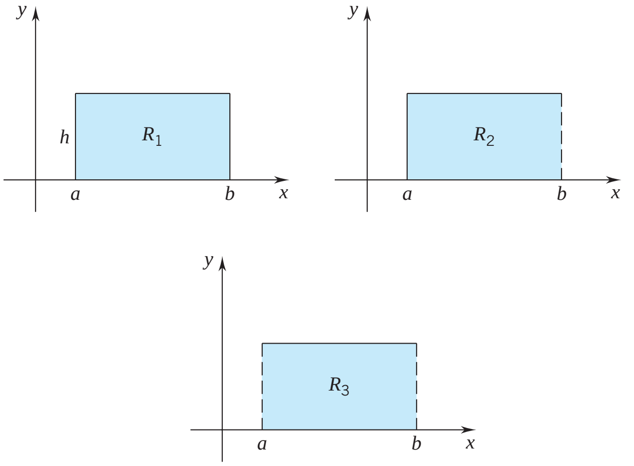


Figure A

The area of R_1 is $(b-a)h$. What is the area of R_2? We obtain R_2 by removing a line segment, which is a set of area 0. It follows that the area of R_2 is also $(b-a)h$. Thus R_3 also has area $(b-a)h$.

It is only a small step from these considerations to the following observation: *If a region Ω has area A, then every region which differs from Ω by only a finite number of line segments also has area A.*

In what follows we will begin by integrating over a closed interval $[a, b]$ functions g that differ from a continuous function f at only a finite number of points. By restricting ourselves to nonnegative functions, we can interpret the integral as the area under the graph and conclude that

$$\int_a^b g(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

Figure B shows the graph of

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}, & x = 0 \\ x, & 0 < x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{2}, & x = 1. \end{cases}$$

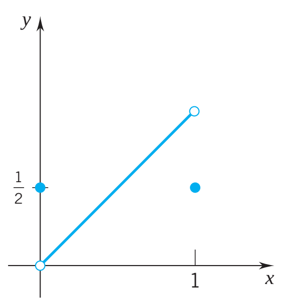


Figure B

On $[0, 1]$ g differs from the identity function $f(x) = x$ only at $x = 0$ and $x = 1$. Therefore

$$\int_0^1 g(x)\,dx = \int_0^1 x\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}x^2\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

Figure C shows the graph of

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x = -1 \\ x^2, & -1 < x < 0 \\ 1, & x = 0 \\ x^2, & 0 < x < 1 \\ 0, & x = 1. \end{cases}$$

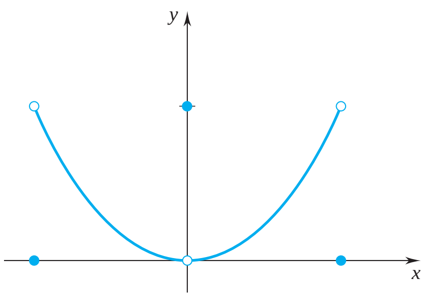


Figure C

On $[-1, 1]$ g differs from the squaring function $f(x) = x^2$ only at $x = -1$, $x = 0$, $x = 1$. Therefore

$$\int_{-1}^1 g(x)\,dx = \int_{-1}^1 x^2\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_{-1}^1 = \tfrac{2}{3}.$$

We come now to a slightly different situation. Figure D shows the graph of

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x, & x \in [0, 1) \\ x-1, & x \in [1, 2) \\ x-2, & x \in [2, 3) \\ x-3, & x \in [3, 4) \\ 0, & x = 4. \end{cases}$$

This functions has jump discontinuities at $x = 1, x = 2, x = 3, x = 4$. We can integrate g on $[0, 4]$ by integrating from integer to integer and adding up the results:

$$\int_0^4 g(x)\,dx = \int_0^1 x\,dx + \int_1^2 (x-1)\,dx + \int_2^3 (x-2)\,dx + \int_3^4 (x-3)\,dx.$$

Since the area under each line segment is $\frac{1}{2}$, the integral of g adds up to $4(\frac{1}{2}) = 2$. ❑

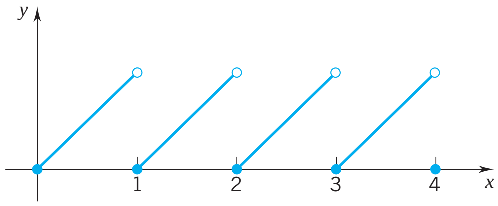


Figure D

Problem 1. (*The greatest integer functions*) The expression $[x]$ is used to denote the greatest integer less than x.

a. Sketch the graph of the function $g(x) = [x)$ and integrate g from $x = 0$ to $x = 5$.

The expression $[x]$ is used to denote the greatest integer less than or equal to x.

b. Sketch the graph of $g(x) = [x]$ and integrate g from $x = 0$ to $x = 5$.

c. Sketch the graph of $h(x) = [x] - [x)$ and integrate h from $x = 0$ to $x = 5$.

Problem 2. Graph the function g and evaluate the integral of g over the interval on which it is defined.

a. $$g(x) = \begin{cases} 2 - x, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 2 + x, & 1 < x \le 2. \end{cases}$$

b. $$g(x) = \begin{cases} x^2, & 0 \le x < 2 \\ x, & 2 \le x \le 5. \end{cases}$$

c. $$g(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x, & 0 \le x < \frac{1}{2}\pi \\ \sin x, & \frac{1}{2}\pi \le x < \pi \\ \frac{1}{2}, & \pi \le x \le 2\pi. \end{cases}$$

Problem 3. For each of the functions g in Problem 2, form the integral

$$G(x) = \int_0^x g(t)\,dt.$$

a. Show that for the first function, G is not differentiable at $x = 1$.

b. Show that for the second function, G is not differentiable at $x = 2$.

c. Show that for the third function, G is not differentiable at $x = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ and not differentiable at $x = \pi$.

HINT: In each case show that at the selected value of x

$$\lim_{h \to 0^-} \frac{G(x+h) - G(x)}{h} \ne \lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{G(x+h) - G(x)}{h}.$$

■ 5.6 INDEFINITE INTEGRALS

We begin with a continuous function f. If F is an antiderivative for f on $[a, b]$, then

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \Big[F(x)\Big]_a^b.$$

If C is a constant, then

$$\Big[F(x) + C\Big]_a^b = [F(b) + C] - [F(a) + C] = F(b) - F(a) = \Big[F(x)\Big]_a^b.$$

Thus we can replace (1) by writing

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \Big[F(x) + C\Big]_a^b.$$

If we have no particular interest in the interval $[a, b]$ but wish instead to emphasize that F is an antiderivative for f, which on open intervals simply means that $F' = f$, then we omit the a and the b and simply write

$$\int f(x)\,dx = F(x) + C.$$

Antiderivatives expressed in this manner are called *indefinite integrals*. The constant C is called the *constant of integration*; it is an *arbitrary* constant and we can assign to it any value we choose. Each value of C gives a particular antiderivative, and each antiderivative is obtained from a particular value of C.

For rational r different from -1 we have

$$\int x^r\,dx = \frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + C.$$

In particular,

$$\int x^2 dx = \tfrac{1}{3}x^3 + C \quad \text{and} \quad \int \sqrt{x}\, dx = \tfrac{2}{3}x^{3/2} + C.$$

Table 5.6.1 gives the antiderivatives of Table 5.4.1 expressed as indefinite integrals.

Table 5.6.1

$\int \sin x\, dx = -\cos x + C$	$\int \cos x\, dx = \sin x + C$
$\int \sec^2 x\, dx = \tan x + C$	$\int \csc^2 x\, dx = -\cot x + C$
$\int \sec x \tan x\, dx = \sec x + C$	$\int \csc x \cot x\, dx = -\csc x + C$

The calculation of indefinite integrals is a linear process. Unless α and β are both zero,

(5.6.1)
$$\boxed{\int [\alpha f(x) + \beta g(x)]\, dx = \alpha \int f(x)\, dx + \beta \int g(x)\, dx.^{\dagger}}$$

The equation holds in the following sense: if F and G are antiderivatives for f and g, then

$$\int [\alpha f(x) + \beta g(x)]\, dx = \alpha F(x) + \beta G(x) + C$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha \int f(x)\, dx + \beta \int g(x)\, dx &= \alpha[F(x) + C_1] + \beta[G(x) + C_2]\\ &= \alpha F(x) + \beta G(x) + \alpha C_1 + \beta C_2.\end{aligned}$$

With α and β not both zero, $\alpha C_1 + \beta C_2$ is an arbitrary constant that we can denote by C thereby confirming (5.6.1). ❑

Example 1 Calculate $\int [5x^{3/2} - 2\csc^2 x]\, dx$.

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\int [5x^{3/2} - 2\csc^2 x]\, dx &= 5\int x^{3/2} dx - 2\int \csc^2 x\, dx\\ &= 5\left(\tfrac{2}{5}\right)x^{5/2} + C_1 - 2(-\cot x) + C_2\\ &= 2x^{5/2} + 2\cot x + C.\end{aligned}$$

writing C for $C_1 + C_2$

Example 2 Find f given that $f'(x) = x^3 + 2$ and $f(0) = 1$.

SOLUTION Since f' is the derivative of f, f is an antiderivative for f'. Thus

$$f(x) = \int (x^3 + 2)\, dx = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 + 2x + C$$

† Explain how (5.6.1) fails if α and β are both zero.

for some value of the constant C. To evaluate C, we use the fact that $f(0) = 1$. Since

$$f(0) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad f(0) = \tfrac{1}{4}(0)^4 + 2(0) + C = C,$$

we see that $C = 1$. Therefore

$$f(x) = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 + 2x + 1. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Find f given that

$$f''(x) = 6x - 2, \qquad f'(1) = -5, \qquad \text{and } f(1) = 3.$$

SOLUTION First we get f' by integrating f'':

$$f'(x) = \int (6x - 2)\,dx = 3x^2 - 2x + C.$$

Since

$$f'(1) = -5 \quad \text{and} \quad f'(1) = 3(1)^2 - 2(1) + C = 1 + C,$$

we have

$$-5 = 1 + C \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad C = -6.$$

Therefore

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 - 2x - 6.$$

Now we get f by integrating f':

$$f(x) = \int (3x^2 - 2x - 6)\,dx = x^3 - x^2 - 6x + K.$$

(We are writing the constant of integration as K because we used C before and it would be confusing to assign to C two different values in the same problem.) Since

$$f(1) = 3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(1) = (1)^3 - (1)^2 - 6(1) + K = -6 + K,$$

we have

$$3 = -6 + K \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad K = 9.$$

Therefore

$$f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 6x + 9. \quad ❑$$

Application to Motion

Example 4 An object moves along a coordinate line with velocity

$$v(t) = 2 - 3t + t^2 \quad \text{units per second.}$$

Its initial position (position at time $t = 0$) is 2 units to the right of the origin. Find the position of the object 4 seconds later.

SOLUTION Let $x(t)$ be the position (coordinate) of the object at time t. We are given that $x(0) = 2$. Since $x'(t) = v(t)$,

$$x(t) = \int v(t)\,dt = \int (2 - 3t + t^2)\,dt = 2t - \tfrac{3}{2}t^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}t^3 + C.$$

Since $x(0) = 2$ and $x(0) = 2(0) - \frac{3}{2}(0)^2 + \frac{1}{3}(0)^3 + C = C$, we have $C = 2$ and

$$x(t) = 2t - \tfrac{3}{2}t^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}t^3 + 2.$$

The position of the object at time $t = 4$ is the value of this function at $t = 4$:

$$x(4) = 2(4) - \tfrac{3}{2}(4)^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}(4)^3 + 2 = 7\tfrac{1}{3}.$$

At the end of 4 seconds the object is $7\frac{1}{3}$ units to the right of the origin.

The motion of the object is represented schematically in Figure 5.6.1. ❑

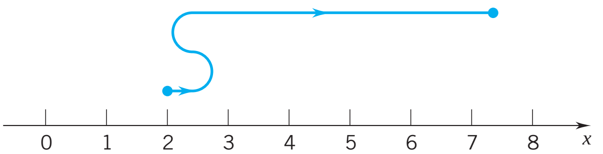


Figure 5.6.1

Recall that the speed ν is the absolute value of velocity (Section 4.9):

$$\text{speed at time } t = \nu(t) = |v(t)|,$$

and the integral of the speed function gives the distance traveled (Section 5.1):

(5.6.2) $$\boxed{\int_a^b |v(t)|\, dt = \text{distance traveled from time } t = a \text{ to time } t = b.}$$

Example 5 An object moves along the x-axis with acceleration $a(t) = 2t - 2$ units per second per second. Its initial position (position at time $t = 0$) is 5 units to the right of the origin. One second later the object is moving left at the rate of 4 units per second.

(a) Find the position of the object at time $t = 4$ seconds.
(b) How far does the object travel during these 4 seconds?

SOLUTION (a) Let $x(t)$ and $v(t)$ denote the position and velocity of the object at time t. We are given that $x(0) = 5$ and $v(1) = -4$. Since $v'(t) = a(t)$,

$$v(t) = \int a(t)\, dt = \int (2t - 2)\, dt = t^2 - 2t + C.$$

Since

$$v(1) = -4 \quad \text{and} \quad v(1) = (1)^2 - 2(1) + C = -1 + C,$$

we have $C = -3$ and therefore

$$v(t) = t^2 - 2t - 3.$$

Since $x'(t) = v(t)$,

$$x(t) = \int v(t)\, dt = \int (t^2 - 2t - 3)\, dt = \tfrac{1}{3}t^3 - t^2 - 3t + K.$$

Since

$$x(0) = 5 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x(0) = \tfrac{1}{3}(0)^3 - (0)^2 - 3(0) + K = K,$$

we have $K = 5$. Therefore

$$x(t) = \tfrac{1}{3}t^3 - t^2 - 3t + 5.$$

As you can check, $x(4) = -\frac{5}{3}$. At time $t = 4$ the object is $\frac{5}{3}$ units to the left of the origin.

(b) The distance traveled from time $t = 0$ to $t = 4$ is given by the integral

$$s = \int_0^4 |v(t)|\,dt = \int_0^4 |t^2 - 2t - 3|\,dt.$$

To evaluate this integral, we first remove the absolute value sign. As you can verify,

$$|t^2 - 2t - 3| = \begin{cases} -(t^2 - 2t - 3), & 0 \le t < 3 \\ t^2 - 2t - 3, & 3 \le t \le 4 \end{cases}$$

Thus

$$s = \int_0^3 (3 + 2t - t^2)\,dt + \int_3^4 (t^2 - 2t - 3)\,dt$$

$$= \left[3t + t^2 - \frac{1}{3}t^3\right]_0^3 + \left[\frac{1}{3}t^3 - t^2 - 3t\right]_3^4 = \frac{34}{3}.$$

During the 4 seconds the object travels a distance of $\frac{34}{3}$ units.

The motion of the object is represented schematically in Figure 5.6.2. ❑

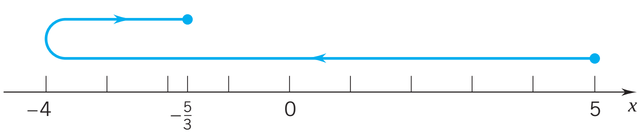


Figure 5.6.2

QUESTION The object in Example 5 leaves $x = 5$ at time $t = 0$ and arrives at $x = -\frac{5}{3}$ at time $t = 4$. The separation between $x = 5$ and $x = -\frac{5}{3}$ is only $|5 - (-\frac{5}{3})| = \frac{20}{3}$. How is it possible that the object travels a distance of $\frac{34}{3}$ units?

ANSWER The object does not maintain a fixed direction. It changes direction at time $t = 3$. You can see this by noting that the velocity function

$$v(t) = t^2 - 2t - 3 = (t - 3)(t + 1)$$

changes signs at $t = 3$.

Example 6 Find the equation of motion for an object that moves along a straight line with constant acceleration a from an initial position x_0 with initial velocity v_0.

SOLUTION Call the line of the motion the x-axis. Here $a(t) = a$ at all times t. To find the velocity we integrate the acceleration:

$$v(t) = \int a\,dt = at + C.$$

The constant C is the initial velocity v_0:

$$v_0 = v(0) = a \cdot 0 + C = C.$$

We see therefore that

$$v(t) = at + v_0.$$

To find the position function, we integrate the velocity:

$$x(t) = \int v(t)\,dt = \int (at + v_0)\,dt = \tfrac{1}{2}at^2 + v_0 t + K.$$

The constant K is the initial position x_0:

$$x_0 = x(0) = \tfrac{1}{2}a \cdot 0^2 + v_0 \cdot 0 + K = K.$$

The equation of motion can be written

(5.6.3) $$\boxed{x(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}at^2 + v_0 t + x_0.^{\dagger}}$$ ❑

† In the case of a free-falling body, $a = -g$ and we have Galileo's equation for free fall. See (4.9.5). There we denoted the initial position by y_0 (instead of by x_0) because there the motion was viewed as taking place along the y-axis.

EXERCISES 5.6

Exercises 1–18. Calculate.

1. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^4}.$

2. $\displaystyle\int (x-1)^2\,dx.$

3. $\displaystyle\int (ax+b)\,dx.$

4. $\displaystyle\int (ax^2+b)\,dx.$

5. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x}}.$

6. $\displaystyle\int \left(\frac{x^3+1}{x^5}\right)dx.$

7. $\displaystyle\int \left(\frac{x^3-1}{x^2}\right)dx.$

8. $\displaystyle\int \left(\sqrt{x}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)dx.$

9. $\displaystyle\int (t-a)(t-b)\,dt.$

10. $\displaystyle\int (t^2-a)(t^2-b)\,dt.$

11. $\displaystyle\int \frac{(t^2-a)(t^2-b)}{\sqrt{t}}\,dt.$

12. $\displaystyle\int (2-\sqrt{x})(2+\sqrt{x})\,dx.$

13. $\displaystyle\int g(x)g'(x)\,dx.$

14. $\displaystyle\int \sin x\cos x\,dx.$

15. $\displaystyle\int \tan x\sec^2 x\,dx.$

16. $\displaystyle\int \frac{g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}\,dx.$

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{4}{(4x+1)^2}\,dx.$

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{3x^2}{(x^3+1)^2}\,dx.$

Exercises 19–32. Find f from the information given.

19. $f'(x) = 2x - 1,\quad f(3) = 4.$

20. $f'(x) = 3 - 4x,\quad f(1) = 6.$

21. $f'(x) = ax + b,\quad f(2) = 0.$

22. $f'(x) = ax^2 + bx + c,\quad f(0) = 0.$

23. $f'(x) = \sin x,\quad f(0) = 2.$

24. $f'(x) = \cos x,\quad f(\pi) = 3.$

25. $f''(x) = 6x - 2,\quad f'(0) = 1,\quad f(0) = 2.$

26. $f''(x) = -12x^2,\quad f(0) = 1,\quad f(0) = 2.$

27. $f''(x) = x^2 - x,\quad f'(1) = 0,\quad f(1) = 2.$

28. $f''(x) = 1 - x,\quad f'(2) = 1,\quad f(2) = 0.$

29. $f''(x) = \cos x,\quad f'(0) = 1,\quad f(0) = 2.$

30. $f''(x) = \sin x,\quad f'(0) = -2,\quad f(0) = 1.$

31. $f''(x) = 2x - 3,\quad f(2) = -1,\quad f(0) = 3.$

32. $f''(x) = 5 - 4x,\quad f(1) = 1,\quad f(0) = -2.$

33. Compare $\displaystyle\frac{d}{dx}\left[\int f(x)\,dx\right]$ to $\displaystyle\int \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)]\,dx.$

34. Calculate

$$\int [f(x)g''(x) - g(x)f''(x)]\,dx.$$

35. An object moves along a coordinate line with velocity $v(t) = 6t^2 - 6$ units per second. Its initial position (position at time $t = 0$) is 2 units to the left of the origin. (a) Find the position of the object 3 seconds later. (b) Find the total distance traveled by the object during those 3 seconds.

36. An object moves along a coordinate line with acceleration $a(t) = (t+2)^3$ units per second per second. (a) Find the velocity function given that the initial velocity is 3 units per second. (b) Find the position function given that the initial velocity is 3 units per second and the initial position is the origin.

37. An object moves along a coordinate line with acceleration $a(t) = (t+1)^{-1/2}$ units per second per second. (a) Find the velocity function given that the initial velocity is 1 unit per second. (b) Find the position function given that the initial velocity is 1 unit per second and the initial position is the origin.

38. An object moves along a coordinate line with velocity $v(t) = t(1-t)$ units per second. Its initial position is 2 units to the left of the origin. (a) Find the position of the object 10 seconds later. (b) Find the total distance traveled by the object during those 10 seconds.

39. A car traveling at 60 mph decelerates at 20 feet per second per second. (a) How long does it take for the car to come to a complete stop? (b) What distance is required to bring the car to a complete stop?

40. An object moves along the x-axis with constant acceleration. Express the position $x(t)$ in terms of the initial position x_0,

the initial velocity v_0, the velocity $v(t)$, and the elapsed time t.

41. An object moves along the x-axis with constant acceleration a. Verify that

$$[v(t)]^2 = v_0^2 + 2a[x(t) - x_0].$$

42. A bobsled moving at 60 mph decelerates at a constant rate to 40 mph over a distance of 264 feet and continues to decelerate at that same rate until it comes to a full stop. (a) What is the acceleration of the sled in feet per second per second? (b) How long does it take to reduce the speed to 40 mph? (c) How long does it take to bring the sled to a complete stop from 60 mph? (d) Over what distance does the sled come to a complete stop from 60 mph?

43. In the AB-run, minicars start from a standstill at point A, race along a straight track, and come to a full stop at point B one-half mile away. Given that the cars can accelerate uniformly to a maximum speed of 60 mph in 20 seconds and can brake at a maximum rate of 22 feet per second per second, what is the best possible time for the completion of the AB-run?

Exercises 44–46. Find the general law of motion of an object that moves in a straight line with acceleration $a(t)$. Write x_0 for the initial position and v_0 for the initial velocity.

44. $a(t) = \sin t$.

45. $a(t) = 2A + 6Bt$.

46. $a(t) = \cos t$.

47. As a particle moves about the plane, its x-coordinate changes at the rate of $t^2 - 5$ units per second and its y-coordinate changes at the rate of $3t$ units per second. If the particle is at the point (4, 2) when $t = 2$ seconds, where is the particle 4 seconds later?

48. As a particle moves about the plane, its x-coordinate changes at the rate of $t - 2$ units per second and its y-coordinate changes at the rate of $\sqrt{t}$ units per second. If the particle is at the point (3, 1) when $t = 4$ seconds, where is the particle 5 second later?

49. A particle moves along the x-axis with velocity $v(t) = At + B$. Determine A and B given that the initial velocity of the particle is 2 units per second and the position of the particle after 2 seconds of motion is 1 unit to the left of the initial position.

50. A particle moves along the x-axis with velocity $v(t) = At^2 + 1$. Determine A given that $x(1) = x(0)$. Compute the total distance traveled by the particle during the first second.

51. An object moves along a coordinate line with velocity $v(t) = \sin t$ units per second. The object passes through the origin at time $t = \pi/6$ seconds. When is the next time: (a) that the object passes through the origin? (b) that the object passes through the origin moving from left to right?

52. Exercise 51 with $v(t) = \cos t$.

53. An automobile with varying velocity $v(t)$ moves in a fixed direction for 5 minutes and covers a distance of 4 miles. What theorem would you invoke to argue that for at least one instant the speedometer must have read 48 miles per hour?

54. A speeding motorcyclist sees his way blocked by a haywagon some distance s ahead and slams on his brakes. Given that the brakes impart to the motorcycle a constant negative acceleration a and that the haywagon is moving with speed v_1 in the same direction as the motorcycle, show that the motorcyclist can avoid collision only if he is traveling at a speed less than $v_1 + \sqrt{2|a|s}$.

55. Find the velocity $v(t)$ given that $a(t) = 2[v(t)]^2$ and $v_0 \neq 0$.

Exercises 56 and 57. Find and compare

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int f(x)\,dx\right) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)]\,dx.$$

56. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x^3 + x^4}{\sqrt{x}}$.

57. $f(x) = \cos x - 2\sin x$.

Exercises 58–61. Use a CAS to find f from the information given.

58. $f'(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x}+1}{\sqrt{x}}$; $\quad f(4) = 2$.

59. $f'(x) = \cos x - 2\sin x$; $\quad f(\pi/2) = 2$.

60. $f''(x) = 3\sin x + 2\cos x$; $\quad f(0) = 0,\ f'(0) = 0$.

61. $f''(x) = 5 - 3x + x^2$; $\quad f(0) = -3,\ f'(0) = 4$.

5.7 WORKING BACK FROM THE CHAIN RULE; THE u-SUBSTITUTION

To differentiate a composite function, we apply the chain rule. To integrate the outputs of the chain rule, we have to apply the chain rule in reverse. This process requires some ingenuity.

Example 1 Calculate

$$\int (x^2 - 1)^4 x\,dx.$$

SOLUTION From the chain rule we know that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[(x^2 - 1)^5] = 5(x^2 - 1)^4 2x = 10(x^2 - 1)^4 x.$$

Working back from this, we have

$$\int (x^2-1)^4 x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{10}\int 10(x^2-1)^4 x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{10}(x^2-1)^5 + C.$$

You can check the result by differentiation. ❑

Example 2 Calculate

$$\int \sin^2 x \cos x\,dx.$$

SOLUTION Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\sin x] = \cos x,$$

we know from the chain rule that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\sin^3 x] = 3\sin^2 x \cos x.$$

Working back from this, we have

$$\int \sin^2 x \cos x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}\int 3\sin^2 x \cos x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}\sin^3 x + C.$$

You can check the result by differentiation. ❑

Example 3 Calculate

$$\int 2x^2 \sin(x^3+1)\,dx.$$

SOLUTION Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\cos x] = -\sin x,$$

we know that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\cos(x^3+1)] = -\sin(x^3+1)\,3x^2.$$

Therefore

$$\int 2x^2 \sin(x^3+1)\,dx = -\tfrac{2}{3}\int -\sin(x^3+1)\,3x^2 dx = -\tfrac{2}{3}\cos(x^3+1) + C.$$

You can check the result by differentiation. ❑

We carried out these integrations by making informed guesses based on our experience with the chain rule. The underlying principle can be stated as follows:

THEOREM 5.7.1

If f is a continuous function and $F' = f$, then

$$\int f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx = F(u(x)) + C$$

for all functions $u = u(x)$ which have values in the domain of f and continuous derivative u'

PROOF The key here is the chain rule. If f is continuous and $F' = f$, then

$$\int f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx = \int F'(u(x))u'(x)\,dx = \underset{\text{by the chain rule}}{\int} \frac{d}{dx}[F(u(x))]\,dx = F(u(x)) + C.$$

The *u-substitution*, described below, offers a somewhat mechanical way of carrying out such calculations. Set

$$u = u(x), \qquad du = u'(x)\,dx.$$

Then write

$$\int f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx = \int f(u)\,du = \underset{\text{where } F' = f}{F(u)} + C = F(u(x)) + C. \quad \square$$

Below we carry out some integrations by u-substitution. In each case the first step is to discern a function $u = u(x)$ which, up to a multiplicative constant, puts our integral in the form

$$\int f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx.$$

Example 4 Calculate

$$\int \frac{1}{(3+5x)^2}\,dx.$$

SOLUTION Set $u = 3 + 5x$, $du = 5\,dx$. Then

$$\frac{1}{(3+5x)^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{u^2}\left(\frac{1}{5}du\right) = \frac{1}{5}u^{-2}du$$

and

$$\int \frac{1}{(3+5x)^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{5}\int u^{-2}du = -\frac{1}{5}u^{-1} + C = -\frac{1}{5(3+5x)} + C. \quad \square$$

Example 5 Calculate $\int x^2\sqrt{4+x^3}\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = 4 + x^3$, $du = 3x^2\,dx$. Then

$$x^2\sqrt{4+x^3}\,dx = \underbrace{(4+x^3)^{1/2}}_{u^{1/2}}\,\underbrace{x^2dx}_{\frac{1}{3}\,du} = \tfrac{1}{3}u^{1/2}du$$

and

$$\int x^2\sqrt{4+x^3}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}\int u^{1/2}du = \tfrac{2}{9}u^{3/2} + C = \tfrac{2}{9}(4+x^3)^{3/2} + C. \quad \square$$

Example 6 Calculate $\int 2x^3\sec^2(x^4+1)\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = x^4 + 1$, $du = 4x^3\,dx$. Then

$$2x^3\sec^2(x^4+1)\,dx = 2\,\underbrace{\sec^2(x^4+1)}_{\sec^2 u}\,\underbrace{x^3dx}_{\frac{1}{4}\,du} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sec^2 u\,du$$

and

$$\int 2x^3\sec^2(x^4+1)\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int \sec^2 u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}\tan u + C = \tfrac{1}{2}\tan(x^4+1) + C. \quad \square$$

Example 7 Calculate $\int \sec^3 x \tan x\, dx$.

SOLUTION We can write $\sec^3 x \tan x\, dx$ as $\sec^2 x \sec x \tan x\, dx$. Setting

$$u = \sec x, \qquad du = \sec x \tan x\, dx,$$

we have

$$\sec^3 x \tan x\, dx = \underbrace{\sec^2 x}_{u^2}\ \underbrace{(\sec x \tan x)\, dx}_{du} = u^2 du.$$

Therefore

$$\int \sec^3 x \tan x\, dx = \int u^2 du = \tfrac{1}{3}u^3 + C = \tfrac{1}{3}\sec^3 x + C. \quad ❑$$

Remark Every integral that we have calculated by a u-substitution can be calculated without it. All that's required is a firm grasp of the chain rule and some capacity for pattern recognition. Suggestion: redo these calculations without using a u-substitution. ❑

Example 8 Evaluate $\int_0^2 (x^2 - 1)(x^3 - 3x + 2)^3\, dx$.

SOLUTION We need to find an antiderivative for the integrand. The indefinite integral

$$\int (x^2 - 1)(x^3 - 3x + 2)^3 dx$$

gives the set of all antiderivatives, and so we will calculate this first. Set

$$u = x^3 - 3x + 2, \qquad du = (3x^2 - 3)\, dx = 3(x^2 - 1)\, dx.$$

Then

$$(x^2 - 1)(x^3 - 3x + 2)^3 dx = \underbrace{(x^3 - 3x + 2)^3}_{u^3}\ \underbrace{(x^2 - 1)\, dx}_{\frac{1}{3}du} = \tfrac{1}{3}u^3 du.$$

It follows that

$$\int (x^2 - 1)(x^3 - 3x + 2)^3 dx = \tfrac{1}{3}\int u^3 du = \tfrac{1}{12}u^4 + C = \tfrac{1}{12}(x^3 - 3x + 2)^4 + C.$$

To evaluate the definite integral, we need only one antiderivative. We choose the one with $C = 0$. This gives

$$\int_0^2 (x^2 - 1)(x^3 - 3x + 2)^3 dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{12}(x^3 - 3x + 2)^4\right]_0^2 = 20. \quad ❑$$

The Definite Integral $\int_a^b f(u(x))u'(x)\, dx$

We can evaluate a definite integral of the form

$$\int_a^b f(u(x))\, u'(x)\, dx$$

by first calculating the corresponding indefinite integral as we did in Example 8 or by employing the following formula:

(5.7.2)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx = \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f(u)\,du.}$$

This formula is called the *change-of-variables formula*. The formula can be used to evaluate $\int_a^b f(u(x))\,u'(x)\,dx$ provided that u' is continuous on $[a, b]$ and f is continuous on the set of values taken on by u on $[a, b]$. Since u is continuous, this set is an interval that contains a and b.

PROOF Let F be an antiderivative for f. Then $F' = f$ and

$$\int_a^b f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx = \int_a^b F'(u(x))\,u'(x)\,dx$$
$$= \Big[F(u(x))\Big]_a^b = F(u(b)) - F(u(a)) = \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f(u)\,du.$$

We redo Example 8, this time using the change-of-variables formula.

Example 9 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^2 (x^2-1)(x^3-3x+2)^3\,dx.$

SOLUTION As before, set $u = x^3 - 3x + 2$, $du = 3(x^2-1)\,dx$. Then

$$(x^2-1)(x^3-3x+2)^3 = \tfrac{1}{3}u^3\,du.$$

At $x = 0$, $u = 2$. At $x = 2$, $u = 4$. Therefore,

$$\int_0^2 (x^2-1)(x^3-3x+2)^3\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}\int_2^4 u^3 du$$
$$= \Big[\tfrac{1}{12}u^4\Big]_2^4 = \tfrac{1}{12}(4)^4 - \tfrac{1}{12}(2)^4 = 20. \quad ❑$$

Example 10 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{1/2} \cos^3 \pi x \sin \pi x\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = \cos \pi x$, $du = -\pi \sin \pi x\,dx$. Then

$$\cos^3 \pi x \sin \pi x\,dx = \underbrace{\cos^3 \pi x}_{u^3}\ \underbrace{\sin \pi x\,dx}_{-\frac{1}{\pi}du} = -\tfrac{1}{\pi}u^3 du.$$

At $x = 0$, $u = 1$. At $x = 1/2$, $u = 0$. Therefore

$$\int_0^{1/2} \cos^3 \pi x \sin \pi x\,dx = -\frac{1}{\pi}\int_1^0 u^3 du = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^1 u^3 du = \frac{1}{\pi}\left[\frac{1}{4}u^4\right]_0^1 = \frac{1}{4\pi}. \quad ❑$$

The u-substitution can be applied to every integral with a continuous integrand:

$$\int f(x)\,dx = \underset{\uparrow \text{set } u(x) = x}{\int} f(u(x))u'(x)\,dx.$$

Of course there is no point to this. A u-substitution should be made only if it facilitates the integration. In the next two examples we have to use a little imagination to find a useful substitution.

Example 11 Calculate $\int x(x-3)^5\,dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = x - 3$. Then $du = dx$ and $x = u + 3$.
Now

$$x(x-3)^5 dx = (u+3)u^5 du = (u^6 + 3u^5)\,du$$

and

$$\int x(x-3)^5 dx = \int (u^6 + 3u^5)\,du$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{7}u^7 + \tfrac{1}{2}u^6 + C = \tfrac{1}{7}(x-3)^7 + \tfrac{1}{2}(x-3)^6 + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 12 Evaluate $\int_0^{\sqrt{3}} x^5\sqrt{x^2+1}\,dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = x^2 + 1$. Then $du = 2x\,dx$ and $x^2 = u - 1$.
Now

$$x^5\sqrt{x^2+1}\,dx = \underbrace{x^4}_{(u-1)^2}\ \underbrace{\sqrt{x^2+1}}_{\sqrt{u}}\ \underbrace{x\,dx}_{\frac{1}{2}du} = \tfrac{1}{2}(u-1)^2\sqrt{u}\,du.$$

At $x = 0$, $u = 1$. At $x = \sqrt{3}$, $u = 4$. Thus

$$\int_0^{\sqrt{3}} x^5\sqrt{x^2+1}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_1^4 (u-1)^2\sqrt{u}\,du$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\int_1^4 (u^{5/2} - 2u^{3/2} + u^{1/2})du$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\left[\tfrac{2}{7}u^{7/2} - \tfrac{4}{5}u^{5/2} + \tfrac{2}{3}u^{3/2}\right]_1^4$$
$$= \left[u^{3/2}\left(\tfrac{1}{7}u^2 - \tfrac{2}{5}u + \tfrac{1}{3}\right)\right]_1^4 = \tfrac{848}{105}. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 5.7

Exercises 1–20. Calculate.

1. $\int \frac{dx}{(2-3x)^2}$.

2. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2x+1}}$.

3. $\int \sqrt{2x+1}\,dx$.

4. $\int \sqrt{ax+b}\,dx$.

5. $\int (ax+b)^{3/4}dx$.

6. $\int 2ax(ax^2+b)^4\,dx$.

7. $\int \frac{t}{(4t^2+9)^2}\,dt$.

8. $\int \frac{3t}{(t^2+1)^2}\,dt$.

9. $\int x^2(1+x^3)^{1/4}\,dx$.

10. $\int x^{n-1}\sqrt{a+bx^n}\,dx$.

11. $\int \frac{s}{(1+s^2)^3}\,ds$.

12. $\int \frac{2s}{\sqrt[3]{6-5s^2}}\,ds$.

13. $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}\,dx$.

14. $\int \frac{x^2}{(1-x^3)^{2/3}}\,dx$.

15. $\int 5x(x^2+1)^{-3}\,dx$.

16. $\int 2x^3(1-x^4)^{-1/4}\,dx$.

17. $\int x^{-3/4}(x^{1/4}+1)^{-2}dx$.

18. $\int \frac{4x+6}{\sqrt{x^2+3x+1}}\,dx$.

19. $\int \frac{b^3x^3}{\sqrt{1-a^4x^4}}\,dx$.

20. $\int \frac{x^{n-1}}{\sqrt{a+bx^n}}\,dx$.

Exercises 21–26. Evaluate.

21. $\int_0^1 x(x^2+1)^3\,dx$.

22. $\int_{-1}^0 3x^2(4+2x^3)^2\,dx$.

23. $\int_{-1}^1 \frac{r}{(1+r^2)^4}\,dr$.

24. $\int_0^3 \frac{r}{\sqrt{r^2+16}}\,dr$.

25. $\int_0^a y\sqrt{a^2-y^2}\,dy$.

26. $\int_{-a}^0 y^2\left(1-\frac{y^3}{a^2}\right)^{-2}\,dy$.

Exercises 27–30. Find the area below the graph of f.

27. $f(x) = x\sqrt{2x^2+1}$, $x \in [0, 2]$.

28. $f(x) = \frac{x}{(2x^2+1)^2}$, $x \in [0, 2]$.

29. $f(x) = x^{-3}(1+x^{-2})^{-3}$, $x \in [1, 2]$.

30. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x+5}{(x+2)^2(x+3)^2}, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

Exercises 31–37. Calculate.

31. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{x+1}\,dx.$ [set $u = x + 1$]

32. $\displaystyle\int 2x\sqrt{x-1}\,dx.$

33. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{2x-1}\,dx.$

34. $\displaystyle\int t(2t+3)^8\,dt.$

35. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x\sqrt{x}+x}}\,dx.$

36. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{0} x^3(x^2+1)^6\,dx.$

37. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{x+3}{\sqrt{x+1}}\,dx.$

38. $\displaystyle\int_2^5 \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x-1}}\,dx.$

39. Find an equation $y = f(x)$ for the curve that passes through the point $(0, 1)$ and has slope

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x\sqrt{x^2+1}.$$

40. Find an equation $y = f(x)$ for the curve that passes through the point $(4, \frac{1}{3})$ and has slope

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}(1+\sqrt{x})^2}.$$

Exercises 41–64. Calculate.

41. $\displaystyle\int \cos(3x+1)\,dx.$

42. $\displaystyle\int \sin 2\pi x\,dx.$

43. $\displaystyle\int \csc^2 \pi x\,dx.$

44. $\displaystyle\int \sec 2x \tan 2x\,dx.$

45. $\displaystyle\int \sin(3-2x)\,dx.$

46. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2 x \cos x\,dx.$

47. $\displaystyle\int \cos^4 x \sin x\,dx.$

48. $\displaystyle\int x \sec^2 x^2\,dx.$

49. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

50. $\displaystyle\int \csc(1-2x)\cot(1-2x)\,dx.$

51. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{1+\sin x}\cos x\,dx.$

52. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{1+\cos x}}\,dx.$

53. $\displaystyle\int \sin \pi x \cos \pi x\,dx.$

54. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2 \pi x \cos \pi x\,dx.$

55. $\displaystyle\int \sin \pi x \cos^2 \pi x\,dx.$

56. $\displaystyle\int (1+\tan^2 x)\sec^2 x\,dx.$

57. $\displaystyle\int x \sin^3 x^2 \cos x^2\,dx.$

58. $\displaystyle\int x \sin^4(x^2-\pi)\cos(x^2-\pi)\,dx.$

59. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^2 x}{\sqrt{1+\tan x}}\,dx.$

60. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\csc^2 2x}{\sqrt{2+\cot 2x}}\,dx.$

61. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos(1/x)}{x^2}\,dx.$

62. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin(1/x)}{x^2}\,dx.$

63. $\displaystyle\int x^2 \tan(x^3+\pi)\sec^2(x^3+\pi)\,dx.$

64. $\displaystyle\int (x\sin^2 x - x^2 \sin x \cos x)\,dx.$

Exercises 65–70. Evaluate.

65. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin^4 x \cos x\,dx.$

66. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} \sec x \tan x\,dx.$

67. $\displaystyle\int_{1/4}^{1/3} \sec^2 \pi x\,dx.$

68. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{2}x \sin \frac{\pi}{2}x\,dx.$

69. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x \cos^3 x\,dx.$

70. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi} x \cos x^2 dx.$

71. Derive the formula

$$\int \sin^2 x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x + C.$$

HINT: Recall the half-angle formula $\sin^2\theta = \frac{1}{2}(1-\cos 2\theta)$.

72. Derive the formula

$$\int \cos^2 x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x + \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x + C.$$

Calculate.

73. $\displaystyle\int \cos^2 5x\,dx.$

74. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2 3x\,dx.$

75. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^2 2x\,dx.$

76. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 x\,dx.$

Exercises 77–81. Find the area between the curves.

77. $y = \cos x, \quad y = -\sin x, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \frac{\pi}{2}.$

78. $y = \cos \pi x, \quad y = \sin \pi x, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}.$

79. $y = \cos^2 \pi x, \quad y = \sin^2 \pi x, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}.$

80. $y = \cos^2 \pi x, \quad y = -\sin^2 \pi x, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}.$

81. $y = \csc^2 \pi x, \quad y = \sec^2 \pi x, \quad x = \frac{1}{6}, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}.$

82. Calculate

$$\int \sin x \cos x\,dx.$$

(a) Setting $u = \sin x$.
(b) Setting $u = \cos x$.
(c) Reconcile your answers to parts (a) and (b).

83. Calculate

$$\int \sec^2 x \tan x\,dx$$

(a) Setting $u = \sec x$.
(b) Setting $u = \tan x$.
(c) Reconcile your answers to parts (a) and (b).

84. Let f be a continuous function, c a real number. Show that

(a) $$\int_{a+c}^{b+c} f(x-c)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx,$$

and, if $c \neq 0$,

(b) $$\frac{1}{c}\int_{ac}^{bc} f(x/c)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

For Exercises 85 and 86 reverse the roles of x and u in (5.7.2) and write

$$\int_{x(a)}^{x(b)} f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x(u))x'(u)\,du.$$

85. (*The area of a circular region*) The circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ encloses a circular disc of radius r. Justify the familiar formula $A = \pi r^2$ by integration. HINT: The quarter-disk in the first quadrant is the region below the curve $y = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$, $x \in [0, r]$. Therefore

$$A = 4\int_0^r \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}\,dx.$$

Set $x = r\sin u$, $dx = r\cos u\,du$.

86. Find the area enclosed by the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$.

■ 5.8 ADDITIONAL PROPERTIES OF THE DEFINITE INTEGRAL

We come now to some properties of the definite integral that we'll make use of time and time again. Some of the properties are pretty obvious; some are not. All are important.

I. The integral of a nonnegative continuous function is nonnegative:

(5.8.1) $$\boxed{\text{if} \quad f(x) \ge 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in [a, b], \quad \text{then} \quad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \ge 0.}$$

The integral of a positive continuous function is positive:

(5.8.2) $$\boxed{\text{if} \quad f(x) > 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in [a, b], \quad \text{then} \quad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx > 0.}$$

Reasoning: (5.8.1) holds because in this case all of the lower sums $L_f(P)$ are nonnegative; (5.8.2) holds because in this case all the lower sums are positive. ❑

II. The integral is order-preserving: for continuous functions f and g,

(5.8.3) $$\boxed{\text{if} \quad f(x) \le g(x) \text{ for all } x \in [a, b], \quad \text{then} \quad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b g(x)\,dx}$$

and

(5.8.4) $$\boxed{\text{if} \quad f(x) < g(x) \quad \text{for all} \quad x \in [a, b], \quad \text{then} \quad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx < \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.}$$

PROOF OF (5.8.3) If $f(x) \le g(x)$ on $[a, b]$, then $f(x) - f(x) \ge 0$ on $[a, b]$. Thus by (5.8.1)

$$\int_a^b [g(x) - f(x)]\,dx \ge 0.$$

This gives

$$\int_a^b g(x)\,dx - \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \ge 0$$

and shows that

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.$$

The proof of (5.8.4) is similarly simple. ❑

III. Just as the absolute value of a sum of numbers is less than or equal to the sum of the absolute values of those numbers,

$$|x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n| \le |x_1| + |x_2| + \cdots + |x_n|,$$

the absolute value of an integral of a continuous function is less than or equal to the integral of the absolute value of that function:

(5.8.5) $$\boxed{\left|\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\right| \le \int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx.}$$

PROOF OF (5.8.5) Since $-|f(x)| \le f(x) \le |f(x)|$, it follows from (5.8.3) that

$$-\int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx \le \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx.$$

This pair of inequalities is equivalent to (5.8.5). ❑

IV. If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then

(5.8.6) $$\boxed{m(b-a) \le \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \le M(b-a)}$$

where m is the minimum value of f on $[a, b]$ and M is the maximum.

Reasoning: $m(b-a)$ is a lower sum for f and $M(b-a)$ is an upper sum. ❑

You know from Theorem 5.3.5 that, if f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then for all $x \in (a, b)$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_a^x f(t)\,dt\right) = f(x).$$

Below we give an extension of this result that plays a large role in Chapter 7.

V. If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and u is a differentiable function of x with values in $[a, b]$, then for all $u(x) \in (a, b)$

(5.8.7) $$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_a^{u(x)} f(t)\,dt\right) = f(u(x))u'(x).}$$

PROOF OF (5.8.7) Since f is continuous on $[a, b]$, the function

$$F(u) = \int_a^u f(t)\,dt$$

is differentiable on (a, b) and

$$F'(u) = f(u).$$

This we know from Theorem 5.3.5. The result that we are trying to prove follows from noting that

$$\int_a^{u(x)} f(t)\,dt = F(u(x))$$

and applying the chain rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_a^{u(x)} f(t)\,dt\right) = \frac{d}{dx}[F(u(x))] = F'(u(x))u'(x) = f(u(x))u'(x).$$ ❑

Example 1 Find $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_0^{x^3} \frac{1}{1+t}\,dt\right)$.

SOLUTION At this stage you probably cannot carry out the integration: it requires the natural logarithm function. (Not introduced in this text until Chapter 7.) But for our purposes, that doesn't matter. By (5.8.7),

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^{x^3} \frac{1}{1+t}\,dt\right) = \frac{1}{1+x^3}3x^2 = \frac{3x^2}{1+x^3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_x^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt\right)$.

SOLUTION The idea is to express the integral in terms of integrals that have constant lower limits of integration. Once we have done that, we can apply (5.8.7). In this case, we choose 0 as a convenient lower limit. Then, by the additivity of the integral,

$$\int_0^{x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt + \int_x^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt = \int_0^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt.$$

Thus

$$\int_x^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt = \int_0^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt - \int_0^{x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt.$$

Differentiation gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_x^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt\right) &= \frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^{2x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt\right) - \frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^{x} \frac{1}{1+t^2}\,dt\right)\\ &= \frac{1}{1+(2x)^2}(2) - \frac{1}{1+x^2}(1) = \frac{2}{1+4x^2} - \frac{1}{1+x^2}. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

by (5.8.7)

VI. Now a few words about the role of symmetry in integration. Suppose that f is continuous on an interval of the form $[-a, a]$, a closed interval symmetric about the origin.

(5.8.8)

(a) if f is odd on $[-a, a]$, then $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = 0$.

(b) if f is even on $[-a, a]$, then $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^{a} f(x)\,dx$.

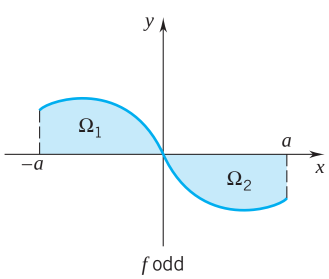


Figure 5.8.1

These assertions can be verified by a simple change of variables. (Exercise 34.) Here we look at these assertions from the standpoint of area. For convenience we refer to Figures 5.8.1 and 5.8.2.

For the odd function,

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = \int_{-a}^{0} f(x)\,dx + \int_0^{a} f(x)\,dx = \text{area of } \Omega_1 - \text{area of } \Omega_2 = 0.$$

For the even function,

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = \text{area of } \Omega_1 + \text{area of } \Omega_2 = 2(\text{area of } \Omega_2) = 2\int_0^{a} f(x)\,dx. \quad ❑$$

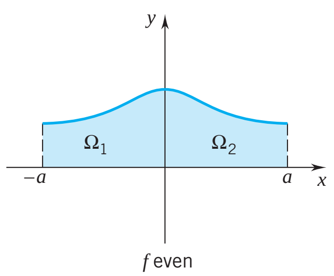


Figure 5.8.2

Suppose we were asked to evaluate

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} (\sin x - x\cos x)^3 dx.$$

A laborious calculation would show that this integral is zero. We don't have to carry out that calculation. The integrand is an odd function, and the interval of integration is symmetric about the origin. Thus we can tell immediately that the integral is zero:

$$\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} (\sin x - x\cos x)^3 dx = 0.$$

EXERCISES 5.8

Assume that f and g are continuous on $[a, b]$ and

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx > \int_a^b g(x)\,dx.$$

Answer questions 1–6, giving supporting reasons.

1. Does it necessarily follow that $\int_a^b [f(x) - g(x)]\,dx > 0$?

2. Does it necessarily follow that $f(x) > g(x)$ for all $x \in [a, b]$?

3. Does it necessarily follow that $f(x) > g(x)$ for at least some $x \in [a, b]$?

4. Does it necessarily follow that

$$\left|\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\right| > \left|\int_a^b g(x)\,dx\right|?$$

5. Does it necessarily follow that $\int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx > \int_a^b |g(x)|\,dx$?

6. Does it necessarily follow that $\int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx > \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$?

Assume that f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = 0.$$

Answer questions 7–15, giving supporting reasons.

7. Does it necessarily follow that $f(x) = 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$?

8. Does it necessarily follow that $f(x) = 0$ for at least some $x \in [a, b]$?

9. Does it necessarily follow that $\int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx = 0$?

10. Does it necessarily follow that $|\int_a^b f(x)\,dx| = 0$?

11. Must all upper sums $U_f(P)$ be nonnegative?

12. Must all upper sums $U_f(P)$ be positive?

13. Can a lower sum $L_f(P)$ be positive?

14. Does it necessarily follow that $\int_a^b [f(x)]^2\,dx = 0$?

15. Does it necessarily follow that $\int_a^b [f(x) + 1]\,dx = b - a$?

16. Derive a formula for

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_{u(x)}^b f(t)\,dt\right)$$

given that u is differentiable and f is continuous.

Exercises 17–23. Calculate.

17. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_0^{1+x^2} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{2t+5}}\right).$

18. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_1^{x^2} \frac{dt}{t}\right).$

19. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_x^a f(t)\,dt\right).$

20. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_0^{x^3} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1+t^2}}\right).$

21. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_{x^2}^3 \frac{\sin t}{t}\,dt\right).$

22. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_{\tan x}^4 \sin t^2\,dt\right).$

23. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_1^{\sqrt{x}} \frac{t^2}{1+t^2}\,dt\right).$

24. Show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_{u(x)}^{v(x)} f(t)\,dt\right) = f(v(x))v'(x) - f(u(x))u'(x)$$

given that u and v are differentiable and f is continuous.

Exercises 25–28. Calculate. HINT: Exercise 24.

25. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_x^{x^2} \frac{dt}{t}\right).$

26. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_{\sqrt{x}}^{x^2+x} \frac{dt}{2+\sqrt{t}}\right).$

27. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_{\tan x}^{2x} t\sqrt{1+t^2}\,dt\right).$

28. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int_{3x}^{1/x} \cos 2t\,dt\right).$

29. Prove (5.8.4).

30. (*Important*) Prove that, if f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and

$$\int_a^b |f(x)|\,dx = 0,$$

then $f(x) = 0$ for all x in $[a, b]$. HINT: Exercise 50, Section 2.4.

31. Find $H'(2)$ given that

$$H(x) = \int_{2x}^{x^3-4} \frac{x}{1+\sqrt{t}}\,dt.$$

32. Find $H'(3)$ given that

$$H(x) = \frac{1}{x}\int_3^x [2t - 3H'(t)]\,dt.$$

33. (a) Let f be continuous on $[-a, 0]$. Use a change of variable to show that

$$\int_{-a}^{0} f(x)\,dx = \int_{0}^{a} f(-x)\,dx.$$

(b) Let f be continuous on $[-a, a]$. Show that

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = \int_{0}^{a} [f(x) + f(-x)]\,dx.$$

34. Let f be a function continuous on $[-a, a]$. Prove the statement basing your argument on Exercise 33.

(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = 0$ if f is odd.

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = 2\int_{0}^{a} f(x)\,dx$ if f is even.

Exercises 35–38. Evaluate using symmetry considerations.

35. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} (x + \sin 2x)\,dx.$

36. $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{3} \frac{t^3}{1+t^2}\,dt.$

37. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} (1 + x^2 - \cos x)\,dx.$

38. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} (x^2 - 2x + \sin x + \cos 2x)\,dx.$

■ 5.9 MEAN-VALUE THEOREMS FOR INTEGRALS; AVERAGE VALUE OF A FUNCTION

We begin with a result that we asked you to prove earlier. (Exercise 33, Section 5.3.)

THEOREM 5.9.1 THE FIRST MEAN-VALUE THEOREM FOR INTEGRALS

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which

$$\int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx = f(c)(b-a).$$

This number $f(c)$ is called *the average value* (or *mean value*) *of f on* $[a, b]$.

We now have the following identity:

(5.9.2) $$\boxed{\int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx = (\textit{the average value of } f \textit{ on } [a, b]) \cdot (b-a).}$$

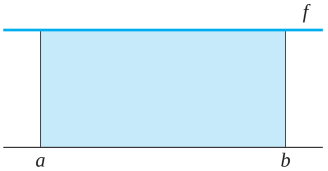


Figure 5.9.1

This identity provides a powerful, intuitive way of viewing the definite integral. Think for a moment about area. If f is constant and positive on $[a, b]$, then Ω, the region below the graph, is a rectangle. Its area is given by the formula

$$\text{area of } \Omega = (\text{the constant value of } f \text{ on } [a, b]) \cdot (b-a). \qquad \text{(Figure 5.9.1)}$$

If f is now allowed to vary continuously on $[a, b]$, then we have

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx,$$

and the area formula reads

$$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = (\textit{the average value of } f \text{ on } [a, b]) \cdot (b-a).} \qquad \text{(Figure 5.9.2)}$$

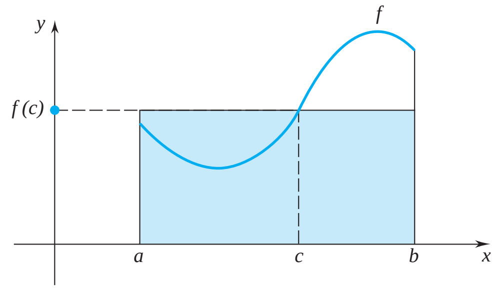


Figure 5.9.2

Think now about motion. If an object moves along a line with constant speed v during the time interval $[a, b]$, then

$$\text{distance traveled} = (\text{the constant value of } v \text{ on } [a, b]) \cdot (b - a).$$

If the speed v varies, then we have

$$\text{distance traveled} = \int_a^b v(t)\,dt,$$

and the formula reads

$$\boxed{\textit{distance traveled} = (\textit{the average speed on } [a, b]) \cdot (b - a).}$$

Let's calculate some simple averages. Writing f_{avg} for the average value of f on $[a, b]$, we have

$$f_{\text{avg}} = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

The average value of a constant function $f(x) = k$ is, of course, k:

$$f_{\text{avg}} = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b k\,dx = \frac{k}{b-a}\Big[x\Big]_a^b = \frac{k}{b-a}(b-a) = k.$$

The average value of a constant multiple of the identity function $f(x) = \alpha x$ is the arithmetical average of the values taken on by the function at the endpoints of the interval:

$$f_{\text{avg}} = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b \alpha x\,dx = \frac{1}{b-a}\left[\frac{\alpha}{2}x^2\right]_a^b$$

$$= \frac{1}{b-a}\left[\frac{\alpha}{2}(b^2 - a^2)\right] = \frac{\alpha b + \alpha a}{2} = \frac{f(b) + f(a)}{2}.$$

What is the average value of the squaring function $f(x) = x^2$?

$$f_{\text{avg}} = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b x^2 dx = \frac{1}{b-a}\left[\frac{x^3}{3}\right]_a^b = \frac{1}{b-a}\left(\frac{b^3 - a^3}{3}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{b-a}\left[\frac{(b^2 + ab + a^2)(b-a)}{3}\right] = \tfrac{1}{3}(b^2 + ab + a^2).$$

The average value of the squaring function on $[a, b]$ is not $\frac{1}{2}(b^2 + a^2)$; it is $\frac{1}{3}(b^2 + ab + a^2)$. On $[1, 3]$ the values of the squaring function range from 1 to 9. While the arithmetic average of these two values is 5, the average value of the squaring function on the entire interval $[1, 3]$ is not 5; it is $\frac{13}{3}$.

There is an extension of Theorem 5.9.1 which, as you'll see, is useful in applications.

THEOREM 5.9.3 THE SECOND MEAN-VALUE THEOREM FOR INTEGRALS

If f and g are continuous on $[a, b]$ and g is nonnegative, then there is a number c in (a, b) for which

$$\int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx = f(c)\int_a^b g(x)\,dx.$$

This number $f(c)$ is called the *g-weighted average of f on* $[a, b]$.

We will prove this theorem (and thereby obtain a proof of Theorem 5.9.1) at the end of this section. First, some physical considerations.

The Mass of a Rod Imagine a thin rod (a straight material wire of negligible thickness) lying on the x-axis from $x = a$ to $x = b$. If the *mass density* of the rod (the mass per unit length) is constant, then the total mass M of the rod is simply the density λ times the length of the rod: $M = \lambda(b - a)$.[†] If the density λ varies continuously from point to point, say $\lambda = \lambda(x)$, then the mass of the rod is the average density of the rod times the length of the rod:

$$M = (\text{average density}) \cdot (\text{length}).$$

This is an integral:

(5.9.4)
$$\boxed{M = \int_a^b \lambda(x)\,dx.}$$

The Center of Mass of a Rod Continue with that same rod. If the rod is homogeneous (constant density), then the center of mass of the rod (we denote this point by x_M) is simply the midpoint of the rod:

$$x_M = \tfrac{1}{2}(a + b). \qquad \text{(the average of } x \text{ from } a \text{ to } b)$$

If the rod is not homogeneous, the center of mass is still an average, but now a weighted average, *the density-weighted average of x from a to b*; namely, x_M is the point for which

$$x_M \int_a^b \lambda(x)\,dx = \int_a^b x\lambda(x)\,dx.$$

Since the integral on the left is M, we have

(5.9.5)
$$\boxed{x_M M = \int_a^b x\lambda(x)\,dx.}$$

Example 1 A rod of length L is placed on the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = L$. Find the mass of the rod and the center of mass given that the density of the rod varies directly as the distance from the $x = 0$ endpoint of the rod.

[†]The symbol λ is the Greek letter "lambda."

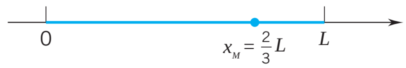
SOLUTION Here $\lambda(x) = kx$ where k is some positive constant. Therefore

$$M = \int_0^L kx\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}kx^2\right]_0^L = \tfrac{1}{2}kL^2$$

and

$$x_M M = \int_0^L x(kx)\,dx = \int_0^L kx^2\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}kx^3\right]_0^L = \tfrac{1}{3}kL^3.$$

Division by M gives $x_M = \frac{2}{3}L$.



In this instance the center of mass is to the right of the midpoint. This makes sense. After all, the density increases from left to right. Thus mass accumulates near the right tip of the rod. ❑

We know from physics that, close to the surface of the earth, where the force of gravity is given by the familiar formula $W = mg$, the center of mass is the *center of gravity*. This is the balance point. For the rod of Example 1, the balance point is at $x = \frac{2}{3}L$. Supported at that point, the rod will be in balance.

Later (in Project 10.6) you will see that a projectile fired at an angle follows a parabolic path. (Here we are disregarding air resistance.) Suppose that a rod is hurled into the air end over end. Certainly not every point of the rod can follow a parabolic path. What moves in a parabolic path is the center of mass of the rod.

We go back now to Theorem 5.9.3 and prove it. [There is no reason to construct a separate proof for Theorem 5.9.1. It is Theorem 5.9.3 with $g(x)$ identically 1.]

PROOF OF THEOREM 5.9.3 Since f is continuous on $[a, b]$, f takes on a minimum value m on $[a, b]$ and a maximum value M. Since g is nonnegative on $[a, b]$,

$$mg(x) \le f(x)g(x) \le Mg(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } [a, b].$$

Therefore

$$\int_a^b mg(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b M\,g(x)\,dx$$

and

$$m\int_a^b g(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx \le M\int_a^b g(x)\,dx.$$

We know that $\int_a^b g(x)\,dx \ge 0$. If $\int_a^b g(x)\,dx = 0$, then, by the inequality we just derived, $\int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx = 0$ and the theorem holds for all choices of c in (a, b). If $\int_a^b g(x)\,dx > 0$, then

$$m \le \frac{\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx}{\displaystyle\int_a^b g(x)\,dx} \le M$$

and by the intermediate-value theorem (Theorem 2.6.1) there exists a number c in (a, b) for which

$$f(c) = \frac{\int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx}{\int_a^b g(x)\,dx}.$$

Obviously, then,

$$f(c)\int_a^b g(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)g(x)\,dx. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 5.9

Exercises 1–12. Determine the average value of the function on the indicated interval and find an interior point of this interval at which the function takes on its average value.

1. $f(x) = mx + b, \quad x \in [0, c]$.

2. $f(x) = x^2, \quad x \in [-1, 1]$.

3. $f(x) = x^3, \quad x \in [-1, 1]$.

4. $f(x) = x^{-2}, \quad x \in [1, 4]$.

5. $f(x) = |x|, \quad x \in [-2, 2]$.

6. $f(x) = x^{1/3}, \quad x \in [-8, 8]$.

7. $f(x) = 2x - x^2, \quad x \in [0, 2]$.

8. $f(x) = 3 - 2x, \quad x \in [0, 3]$.

9. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad x \in [0, 9]$.

10. $f(x) = 4 - x^2, \quad x \in [-2, 2]$.

11. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

12. $f(x) = \cos x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

13. Let $f(x) = x^n$, n a positive integer. Determine the average value of f on the interval $[a, b]$.

14. Given that f is continuous on $[a, b]$, compare

$$f(b)(b - a) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_a^b f(x)dx.$$

(a) if f is constant on $[a, b]$; (b) if f increases on $[a, b]$; (c) if f decreases on $[a, b]$.

15. Suppose that f has a continuous derivative on $[a, b]$. What is the average value of f' on $[a, b]$?

16. Determine whether the assertion is true or false on an arbitrary interval $[a, b]$ on which f and g are continuous.

(a) $(f + g)_{\text{avg}} = f_{\text{avg}} + g_{\text{avg}}$.
(b) $(\alpha f)_{\text{avg}} = \alpha f_{\text{avg}}$.
(c) $(fg)_{\text{avg}} = (f_{\text{avg}})(g_{\text{avg}})$.
(d) $(f g)_{\text{avg}} = (f_{\text{avg}})/g_{\text{avg}}$).

17. Let $P(x, y)$ be an arbitrary point on the curve $y = x^2$. Express as a function of x the distance from P to the origin and calculate the average of this distance as x ranges from 0 to $\sqrt{3}$.

18. Let $P(x, y)$ be an arbitrary point on the line $y = mx$. Express as a function of x the distance from P to the origin and calculate the average of this distance as x ranges from 0 to 1.

19. A stone falls from rest in a vacuum for t seconds. (Section 4.9). (a) Compare its terminal velocity to its average velocity; (b) compare its average velocity during the first $\frac{1}{2}t$ seconds to its average velocity during the next $\frac{1}{2}t$ seconds.

20. Let f be continuous. Show that, if f is an odd function, then its average value on every interval of the form $[-a, a]$ is zero.

21. Suppose that f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = 0$. Prove that there is at least one number c in (a, b) for which $f(c) = 0$.

22. Show that the average value of the functions $f(x) = \sin \pi x$ and $g(x) = \cos \pi x$ is zero on every interval of length $2n$, n a positive integer.

23. An object starts from rest at the point x_0 and moves along the x-axis with constant acceleration a.

(a) Derive formulas for the velocity and position of the object at each time $t \geq 0$.
(b) Show that the average velocity over any time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is the arithmetic average of the initial and final velocities on that interval.

24. Find the point on the rod of Example 1 that breaks up that rod into two pieces of equal mass. (Observe that this point is not the center of mass.)

25. A rod 6 meters long is placed on the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 6$. The mass density is $12/\sqrt{x + 1}$ kilograms per meter.

(a) Find the mass of the rod and the center of mass.
(b) What is the average mass density of the rod?

26. For a rod that extends from $x = a$ to $x = b$ and has mass density $\lambda = \lambda(x)$, the integral

$$\int_a^b (x - c)\lambda(x)dx$$

gives what is called the *mass moment* of the rod about the point $x = c$. Show that the mass moment about the center of mass is zero. (The center of mass can be defined as the point about which the mass moment is zero.)

27. A rod of length L is placed on the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = L$. Find the mass of the rod and the center of mass if the mass density of the rod varies directly: (a) as the square root of the distance from $x = 0$; (b) as the square of the distance from $x = L$.

28. A rod of varying mass density, mass M, and center of mass x_M, extends from $x = a$ to $x = b$. A partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$ decomposes the rod into n pieces in the obvious way. Show that, if the n pieces have masses $M_1, M_2, \ldots, M_n$ and centers of mass $x_{M_1}, x_{M_2}, \ldots, x_{M_n}$, then

$$x_M M = x_{M_1} M_1 + x_{m_2} M_2 + \cdots + x_{M_n} M_n.$$

29. A rod that has mass M and extends from $x = 0$ to $x = L$ consists of two pieces with masses M_1, M_2. Given that the center of mass of the entire rod is at $x = \frac{1}{4}L$ and the center of mass of the first piece is at $x = \frac{1}{8}L$, determine the center of mass of the second piece.

30. A rod that has mass M and extends from $x = 0$ to $x = L$ consists of two pieces. Find the mass of each piece given that the center of mass of the entire rod is at $x = \frac{2}{3}L$, the center of mass of the first piece is at $x = \frac{1}{4}L$, and the center of mass of the second piece is at $x = \frac{7}{8}L$.

31. A rod of mass M and length L is to be cut from a long piece that extends to the right from $x = 0$. Where should the cuts be made if the density of the long piece varies directly as the distance from $x = 0$? (Assume that $M \geq \frac{1}{2}kL^2$ where k is the constant of proportionality in the density function.)

32. Is the conclusion of Theorem 5.9.3 valid if g is negative throughout $[a, b]$? If so, prove it.

33. Prove Theorem 5.9.1 without invoking Theorem 5.9.3.

34. Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$. Let $a < c < b$. Prove that $f(c) = \lim_{h\to 0^+}$ (average value of f on $[c - h, c + h]$).

35. Prove that two distinct continuous functions cannot have the same average on every interval.

36. The *arithmetic average* of n numbers is the sum of the numbers divided by n. Let f be a function continuous on $[a, b]$. Show that the average value of f on $[a, b]$ is the limit of arithmetic averages of values taken on by f on $[a, b]$ in the following sense: Partition $[a, b]$ into n subintervals of equal length $(b - a)/n$ and let $S^*(P)$ be a corresponding Riemann sum. Show that $S^*(P)/(b - a)$ is an arithmetic average of n values taken on by f and the limit of these arithmetic averages as $\|P\| \to 0$ is the average value of f on $[a, b]$.

37. A partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$ breaks up $[a, b]$ into n subintervals

$$[x_0, x_1], [x_1, x_2], \ldots, [x_{n-1}, x_n].$$

Show that if f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then there are n numbers $x_i^* \in [x_{i-1}, x_i]$ such that

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + f(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + f(x_n^*)\Delta x_n.$$

(Thus each partition P of $[a, b]$ gives rise to a Riemann sum which is exactly equal to the definite integral.)

38. Let $f(x) = x^3 - x + 1$ for $x \in [-1, 2]$.
(a) Find the average value of f on this interval.
(b) Estimate with three decimal place accuracy a number c in the interval at which f takes on its average value.
(c) Use a graphing utility to illustrate your results with a figure similar to Figure 5.9.2.

39. Exercise 38 taking $f(x) = \sin x$ with $x \in [0, \pi]$.

40. Exercise 38 taking $f(x) = 2\cos 2x$ with $x \in [-\pi/4, \pi/6]$.

41. Set $f(x) = -x^4 + 10x^2 + 25$.
(a) Estimate the numbers a and b with $a < b$ for which $f(a) = f(b) = 0$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f on $[a, b]$.
(c) Estimate the numbers c in (a, b) for which

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx = f(c)(b - a).$$

42. Exercise 41 taking $f(x) = 8 + x^2 - x^4$.

CHAPTER 5. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–22. Calculate.

1. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3 - 2x + 1}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$ **2.** $\displaystyle\int (x^{3/5} - 3x^{5/3})\,dx.$

3. $\displaystyle\int t^2(1 + t^3)^{10}\,dt.$ **4.** $\displaystyle\int (1 + 2\sqrt{x})^2\,dx.$

5. $\displaystyle\int \frac{(t^{2/3} - 1)^2}{t^{1/3}}\,dt.$ **6.** $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{x^2 - 2}\,dx.$

7. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{2 - x}\,dx.$ **8.** $\displaystyle\int x^2(2 + 2x^3)^4\,dx.$

9. $\displaystyle\int \frac{(1 + \sqrt{x})^5}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$ **10.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin(1/x)}{x^2}\,dx.$

11. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{1 + \sin x}}\,dx.$ **12.** $\displaystyle\int (\sec\theta - \tan\theta)^2 d\theta.$

13. $\displaystyle\int (\tan 3\theta - \cot 3\theta)^2 d\theta.$ **14.** $\displaystyle\int x\sin^3 x^2 \cos x^2\,dx.$

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{1 + \cos 2x}\,dx.$ **16.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{1 - \sin 2x}\,dx.$

17. $\displaystyle\int \sec^3 \pi x \tan \pi x\,dx.$ **18.** $\displaystyle\int ax\sqrt{1 + bx^2}\,dx.$

19. $\displaystyle\int ax\sqrt{1 + bx}\,dx.$ **20.** $\displaystyle\int ax^2\sqrt{1 + bx}\,dx.$

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{g(x)g'(x)}{\sqrt{1 + g^2(x)}}\,dx.$ **22.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{g'(x)}{g^3(x)}\,dx.$

Exercises 23–28. Evaluate.

23. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{2}(x^2-2x+3)\,dx.$ **24.** $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{x}{(x^2+1)^3}\,dx.$

25. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\sin^3 2x\cos 2x\,dx.$ **26.** $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/8}(\tan^2 2x+\sec^2 2x)\,dx.$

27. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 (x^2+1)(x^3+3x-6)^{1/3}\,dx.$

28. $\displaystyle\int_1^8 \frac{(1+x^{1/3})^2}{x^{2/3}}\,dx.$

29. Assume that f is a continuous function and that

$$\int_0^2 f(x)\,dx=3,\qquad \int_0^3 f(x)\,dx=1,\qquad \int_3^5 f(x)\,dx=8.$$

(a) Find $\int_2^3 f(x)\,dx$.

(b) Find $\int_2^5 f(x)\,dx$.

(c) Explain how we know that $f(x)\geq 4$ for at least one x in $[3,5]$.

(d) Explain how we know that $f(x)<0$ for at least one x in $[2,3]$.

30. Let f be a function continuous on $[-2,8]$ and let $g(x)=f(x)+3$. If $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{8} f(x)dx=4$, what is $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{8} g(x)dx$?

Exercises 31–36. Sketch the region bounded by the curves and find its area.

31. $y=4-x^2,\ y=x+2.$

32. $y=4-x^2,\ x+y+2=0.$

33. $y^2=x,\quad x=3y.$

34. $y=\sqrt{x}$, the x-axis, $y=6-x$.

35. $y=x^3$, the x-axis, $x+y=2$.

36. $4y=x^2-x^4,\ x+y+1=0.$

Exercises 37–41. Carry out the differentiation.

37. $\displaystyle\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^x \frac{dt}{1+t^2}\right).$ **38.** $\displaystyle\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^{x^2} \frac{dt}{1+t^2}\right).$

39. $\displaystyle\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_x^{x^2} \frac{dt}{1+t^2}\right).$ **40.** $\displaystyle\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^{\sin x} \frac{dt}{1-t^2}\right).$

41. $\displaystyle\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int_0^{\cos x} \frac{dt}{1-t^2}\right).$

42. At each point (x,y) of a curve γ the slope is $x\sqrt{x^2+1}$. Find an equation $y=f(x)$ for γ given that γ passes through the point $(0,1)$.

43. Let $\displaystyle F(x)=\int_0^x \frac{1}{t^2+2t+2}\,dt,\quad x$ real

(a) Does F take on the value 0? If so, where?
(b) Show that F increases $(-\infty,\infty)$.
(c) Determine the concavity of the graph of F.
(d) Sketch the graph of F.

44. Assume that f is a continuous function and that

$$\int_0^x t f(t)\,dt = x\sin x+\cos x-1.$$

(a) Find $f(\pi)$. (b) Calculate $f'(x)$.

Exercises 44–46. Find the average value of f on the indicated interval.

44. $\displaystyle f(x)=\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+9}};\quad [0,4].$

45. $f(x)=x+2\sin x;\quad [0,\pi].$

46. Find the average value of $f(x)=\cos x$ on every closed interval of length 2π.

Exercises 47–50. Let f be a function continuous on $[\alpha,\beta]$ and let Ω be the region between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x=\alpha$ to $x=\beta$. Draw a figure. Do not assume that f keeps constant sign.

47. Write an integral over $[\alpha,\beta]$ that gives the area of the portion of Ω that lies above the x-axis minus the area of the portion of Ω that lies below the x-axis.

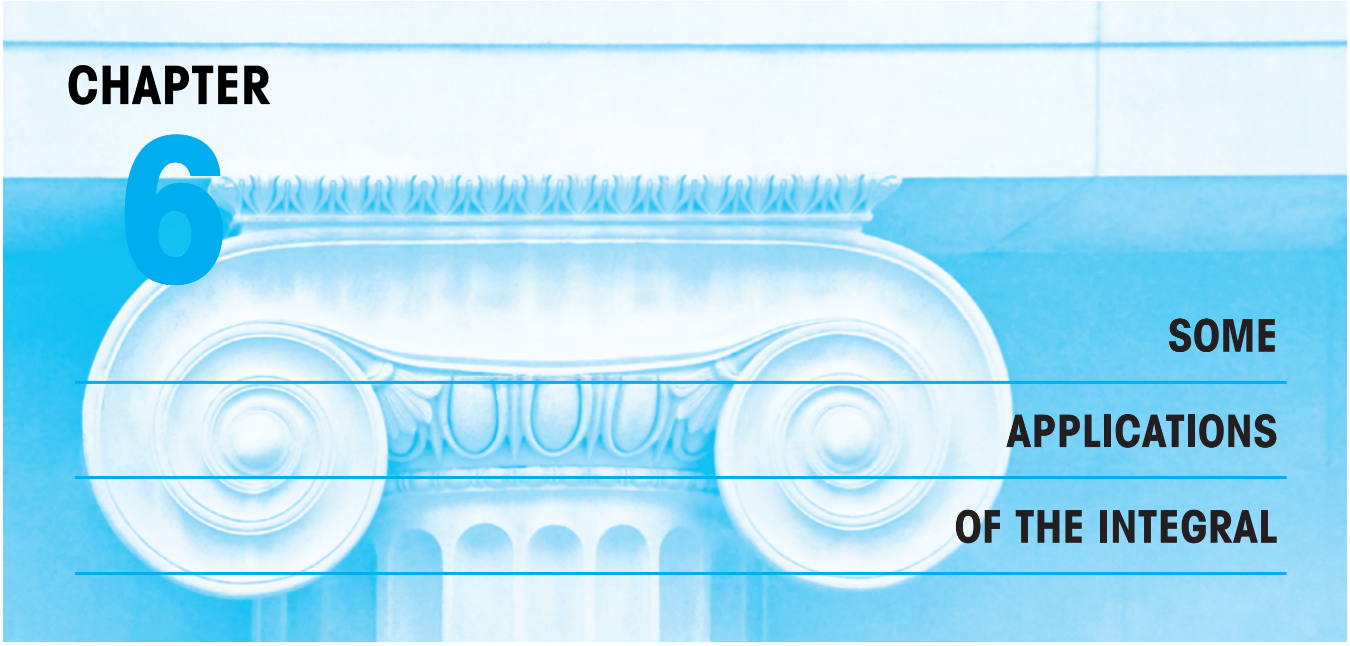
48. Write an integral over $[\alpha,\beta]$ that gives the area of Ω.

49. Write an integral over $[\alpha,\beta]$ that gives the area of the portion of Ω that lies above the x-axis.

50. Write an integral over $[\alpha,\beta]$ that gives the area of the portion of Ω that lies below the x-axis.

51. A rod extends from $x=0$ to $x=a$, $a>0$. Find the center of mass if the density of the rod varies directly as the distance from $x=2a$.

52. A rod extends from $x=0$ to $x=a$, $a>0$. Find the center of mass if the density of the rod varies directly as the distance from $x=\frac{1}{4}a$.



CHAPTER 6

SOME APPLICATIONS OF THE INTEGRAL

6.1 MORE ON AREA

Representative Rectangles

You have seen that the definite integral can be viewed as the limit of Riemann sums:

$$\textbf{(1)}\qquad \int_a^b f(x)dx = \lim_{\|P\|\to 0}\left[f(x_1^*)\,\Delta x_1 + f(x_2^*)\,\Delta x_2 + \cdots + f(x_n^*)\,\Delta x_n\right].$$

With x_i^* chosen arbitrarily from $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$, you can think of $f(x_i^*)$ as a *representative* value of f for that interval. If f is positive, then the product

$$f(x_i^*)\,\Delta x_i$$

gives the area of the *representative rectangle* shown in Figure 6.1.1. Formula (1) tells us that we can approximate the area under the curve as closely as we wish by adding up the areas of representative rectangles. (Figure 6.1.2)

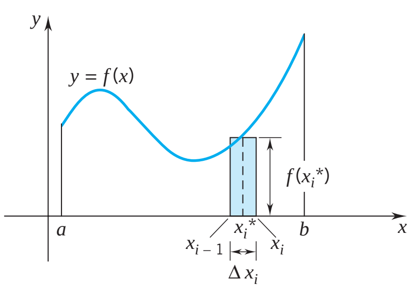


Figure 6.1.1

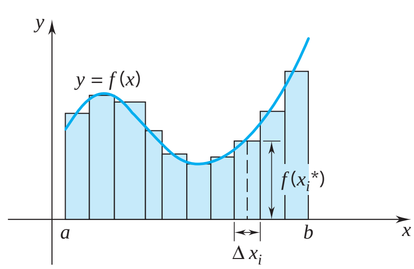


Figure 6.1.2

Figure 6.1.3 shows a region Ω bounded above by the graph of a function f and bounded below by the graph of a function g. As you know, we can obtain the area of Ω

by integrating the *vertical separation* $f(x) - g(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$A = \int_a^b [f(x) - g(x)]\,dx.$$

In this case the approximating Riemann sums are of the form

$$[f(x_1^*) - g(x_1^*)]\Delta x_1 + [f(x_2^*) - g(x_2^*)]\Delta x_2 + \cdots + [f(x_n^*) - g(x_n^*)]\Delta x_n.$$

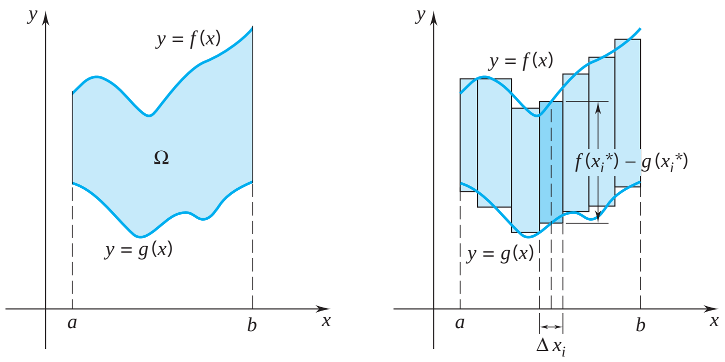


Figure 6.1.3

Here a representative rectangle has

$$\text{height} \qquad f(x_i^*) - g(x_i^*), \qquad \text{width} \qquad \Delta x_i,$$

and area

$$[f(x_i^*) - g(x_i^*)]\Delta x_i.$$

Example 1 Find the area A of the set shaded in Figure 6.1.4.

SOLUTION From $x = -1$ to $x = 2$ the vertical separation is the difference $2x^2 - (x^4 - 2x^2)$. Therefore

$$A = \int_{-1}^{2} [2x^2 - (x^4 - 2x^2)]\,dx = \int_{-1}^{2} (4x^2 - x^4)\,dx$$

$$= \left[\tfrac{4}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{5}x^5\right]_{-1}^{2} = \left[\tfrac{32}{3} - \tfrac{32}{5}\right] - \left[-\tfrac{4}{3} + \tfrac{1}{5}\right] = \tfrac{27}{5} \quad ❑$$

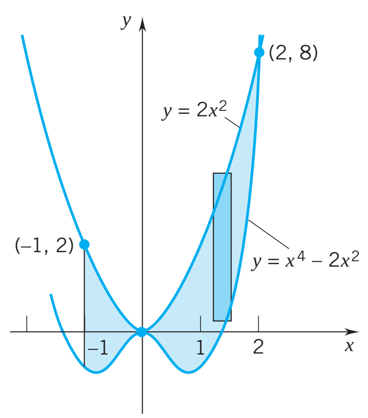


Figure 6.1.4

Areas Obtained by Integration with Respect to y

We can interchange the roles played by x and y. In Figure 6.1.5 you see a region Ω, the boundaries of which are given not in terms of x but in terms of y. Here we set the representative rectangles horizontally and calculate the area of the region as the limit of sums of the form

$$[F(y_1^*) - G(y_1^*)]\Delta y_1 + [F(y_2^*) - G(y_2^*)]\Delta y_2 + \cdots + [F(y_n^*) - G(y_n^*)]\Delta y_n.$$

These are Riemann sums for the integral of $F - G$. The area formula now reads

$$A = \int_o^d [F(y) - G(y)]\,dy.$$

In this case we are integrating with respect to y the *horizontal separation* $F(y) - G(y)$ from $y = c$ to $y = d$.

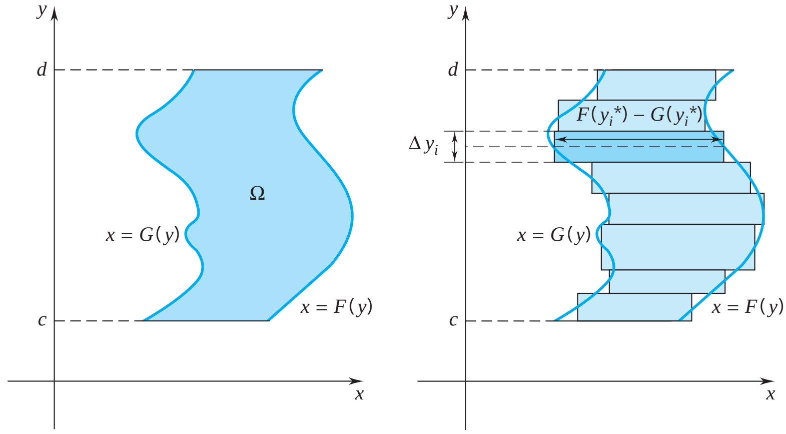


Figure 6.1.5

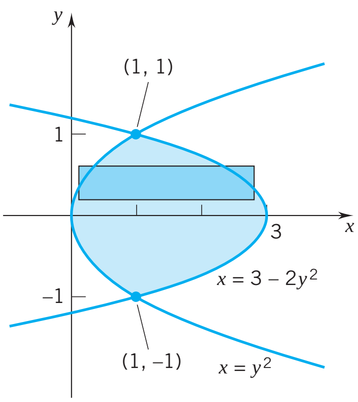


Figure 6.1.6

Example 2 Find the area of the region bounded on the left by the curve $x = y^2$ and bounded on the right by the curve $x = 3 - 2y^2$.

SOLUTION The region is sketched in Figure 6.1.6. The points of intersection can be found by solving the two equations simultaneously:

$$x = y^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x = 3 - 2y^2$$

together imply that

$$y = \pm 1.$$

The points of intersection are (1, 1) and (1, −1). The easiest way to calculate the area is to set our representative rectangles horizontally and integrate with respect to y. We then find the area of the region by integrating the horizontal separation

$$(3 - 2y^2) - y^2 = 3 - 3y^2$$

from $y = -1$ to $y = 1$:

$$A = \int_{-1}^{1} (3 - 3y^2)\,dy = \Big[3y - y^3\Big]_{-1}^{1} = 4.$$

NOTE: Our solution did not take advantage of the symmetry of the region. The region is symmetric about the x-axis (the integrand is an even function of y), and so

$$A = 2\int_{0}^{1} (3 - 3y^2)\,dy = 2\Big[3y - y^3\Big]_{0}^{1} = 4. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Calculate the area of the region bounded by the curves $x = y^2$ and $x - y = 2$ first **(a)** by integrating with respect to x and then **(b)** by integrating with respect to y.

SOLUTION Simple algebra shows that the two curves intersect at the points (1, −1) and (4, 2).

(a) To obtain the area of the region by integration with respect to x, we set the representative rectangles vertically and express the bounding curves as functions of x. Solving $x = y^2$ for y we get $y = \pm\sqrt{x}$; $y = \sqrt{x}$ is the upper half of the parabola and $y = -\sqrt{x}$ is the lower half. The equation of the line can be written $y = x - 2$. (See Figure 6.1.7.)

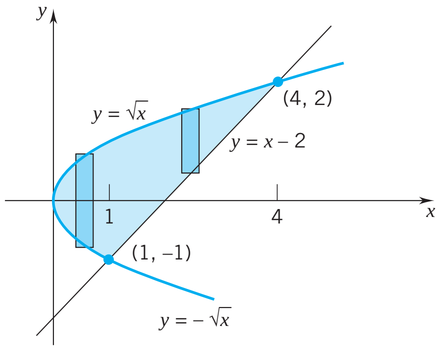


Figure 6.1.7

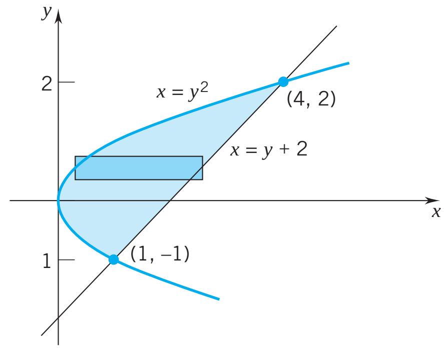


Figure 6.1.8

The upper boundary of the region is the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$. However, the lower boundary consists of two parts: $y = -\sqrt{x}$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$, and $y = x - 2$ from $x = 1$ to $x = 4$. Thus, we use two integrals:

$$A = \int_0^1 [\sqrt{x} - (-\sqrt{x})]\,dx + \int_1^4 \sqrt{x} - (x-2)\,dx$$

$$= 2\int_0^1 \sqrt{x}\,dx + \int_1^4 (\sqrt{x} - x + 2)\,dx = \left[\tfrac{4}{3}x^{3/2}\right]_0^1 + \left[\tfrac{2}{3}x^{3/2} - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + 2x\right]_1^4 = \tfrac{9}{2}.$$

(b) To obtain the area by integration with respect to y, we set the representative rectangles horizontally. (See Figure 6.1.8.) The right boundary is the line $x = y + 2$ and the left boundary is the curve $x = y^2$. Since y ranges from -1 to 2,

$$A = \int_{-1}^{2} [(y+2) - y^2]\,dy = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}y^2 + 2y - \tfrac{1}{3}y^3\right]_{-1}^{2} = \tfrac{9}{2}.$$

In this instance integration with respect to y was the more efficient route to take. ❑

EXERCISES 6.1

Exercises 1–14. Sketch the region bounded by the curves. Represent the area of the region by one or more integrals (a) in terms of x; (b) in terms of y. Evaluation not required.

1. $y = x^2, \quad y = x + 2.$

2. $y = x^2, \quad y = -4x.$

3. $y = x^3, \quad y = 2x^2.$

4. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = x^3.$

5. $y = -\sqrt{x}, \quad y = x - 6, \quad y = 0.$

6. $x = y^3, \quad x = 3y + 2.$

7. $y = |x|, \quad 3y - x = 8.$

8. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad y = 3.$

9. $x + 4 = y^2, \quad x = 5.$

10. $x = |y|, \quad x = 2.$

11. $y = 2x, \quad x + y = 9, \quad y = x - 1.$

12. $y = x^3, \quad y = x^2 + x - 1.$

13. $y = x^{1/3}, \quad y = x^2 + x - 1.$

14. $y = x + 1, \quad y + 3x = 13, \quad 3y + x + 1 = 0.$

Exercises 15–26. Sketch the region bounded by the curves and calculate the area of the region.

15. $4x = 4y - y^2, \quad 4x - y = 0.$

16. $x + y^2 - 4 = 0, \quad x + y = 2.$

17. $x = y^2, \quad x = 12 - 2y^2.$

18. $x + y = 2y^2, \quad y = x^3.$

19. $x + y - y^3 = 0, \quad x - y + y^2 = 0.$

20. $8x = y^3, \quad 8x = 2y^3 + y^2 - 2y.$

21. $y = \cos x, \quad y = \sec^2 x, \quad x \in [-\pi/4, \pi/4].$

22. $y = \sin^2 x, \quad y = \tan^2 x, \quad x \in [-\pi/4, \pi/4].$
HINT: $\sin^2 x = \tfrac{1}{2}(1 - \cos 2x).$

23. $y = 2\cos x, \quad y = \sin 2x, \quad x \in [-\pi, \pi].$

24. $y = \sin x, \quad y = \sin 2x, \quad x \in [0, \pi/2].$

25. $y = \sin^4 x \cos x, \quad x \in [0, \pi/2].$

26. $y = \sin 2x, \quad y = \cos 2x, \quad x \in [0, \pi/4].$

Exercises 27–28. Use integration to find the area of the triangle with the given vertices.

27. (0, 0), (1, 3), (3, 1).

28. (0, 1), (2, 0), (3, 4).

29. Use integration to find the area of the trapezoid with vertices (−2, −2), (1, 1), (5, 1), (7, −2).

30. Sketch the region bounded by $y = x^3$, $y = -x$, and $y = 1$. Find the area of the region.

31. Sketch the region bounded by $y = 6 - x^2$, $y = x\,(x \le 0)$, and $y = -x\,(x \ge 0)$. Find the area of the region.

32. Find the area of the region bounded by the parabolas $x^2 = 4py$ and $y^2 = 4px$, p a positive constant.

33. Sketch the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $y = 4$. This region is divided into two subregions of equal area by a line $y = c$. Find c.

34. The region between $y = \cos x$ and the x-axis for $x \in [0, \pi/2]$ is divided into two subregions of equal area by a line $x = c$. Find c.

Exercises 35–38. Represent the area of the given region by one or more integrals.

35. The region in the first quadrant bounded by the x-axis, the line $y = \sqrt{3}x$, and the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

36. The region in the first quadrant bounded by the y-axis, the line $y = \sqrt{3}x$, and the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

37. The region determined by the intersection of the circles $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and $(x-2)^2 + (y-2)^2 = 4$.

38. The region in the first quadrant bounded by the x-axis, the parabola $y = x^2/3$, and the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

39. Take $a > 0$, $b > 0$, n a positive integer. A rectangle with sides parallel to the coordinate axes has one vertex at the origin and opposite vertex on the curve $y = bx^n$ at a point where $x = a$. Calculate the area of the part of the rectangle that lies below the curve. Show that the ratio of this area to the area of the entire rectangle is independent of a and b, and depends solely on n.

40. (a) Calculate the area of the region in the first quadrant bounded by the coordinate axes and the parabola $y = 1 + a - ax^2$, $a > 0$.
(b) Determine the value of a that minimizes this area.

41. Use a graphing utility to draw the region bounded by the curves $y = x^4 - 2x^2$ and $y = x + 2$. Then find (approximately) the area of the region.

42. Use a graphing utility to sketch the region bounded by the curves $y = \sin x$ and $y = |x - 1|$. Then find (approximately) the area of the region.

43. A section of rain gutter is 8 feet long. Vertical cross sections of the gutter are in the shape of the parabolic region bounded by $y = \frac{4}{9}x^2$ and $y = 4$, with x and y measured in inches. What is the volume of the rain gutter?

HINT: $V =$ (cross-sectional area) $\times$ length.

44. (a) Calculate the area A of the region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 1/x^2$ and the x-axis with $x \in [1, b]$.
(b) What happens to A as $b \to \infty$?

45. (a) Calculate the area A of the region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 1/\sqrt{x}$ and the x-axis with $x \in [1, b]$.
(b) What happens to A as $b \to \infty$?

46. (a) Let $r > 1$, r rational. Calculate the area A of the region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 1/x^r$ and the x-axis with $x \in [1, b]$. What happens to A as $b \to \infty$?
(b) Let $0 < r < 1$, r rational. Calculate the area A of the region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 1/x^r$ and the x-axis with $x \in [1, b]$. What happens to A as $b \to \infty$?

6.2 VOLUME BY PARALLEL CROSS SECTIONS; DISKS AND WASHERS

Figure 6.2.1 shows a plane region Ω and a solid formed by translating Ω along a line perpendicular to the plane of Ω. Such a solid is called a *right cylinder with cross section* Ω.

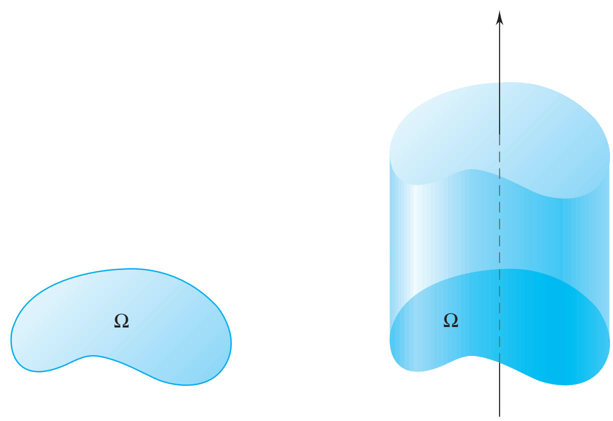
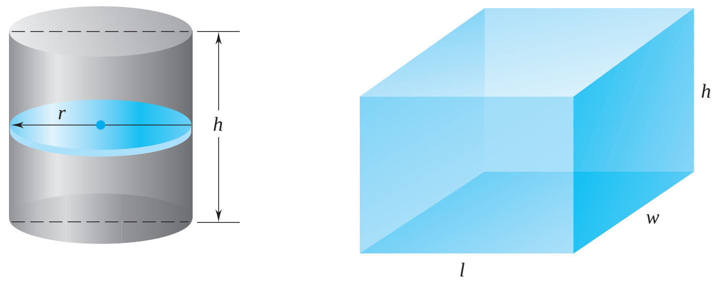


Figure 6.2.1

If Ω has area A and the solid has height h, then the volume of the solid is a simple product:

$$V = A \cdot h. \qquad \text{(cross-sectional area} \cdot \text{height)}$$

Two elementary examples are given in Figure 6.2.2.



$V = (\pi r^2)h$ = (cross-sectional area) · height $V = (l \cdot w) \cdot h$ = (cross-sectional area) · height

Figure 6.2.2

To calculate the volume of a more general solid, we introduce a coordinate axis and then examine the cross sections of the solid that are perpendicular to that axis. In Figure 6.2.3 we depict a solid and a coordinate axis that we label the x-axis. As in the figure, we suppose that the solid lies entirely between $x = a$ and $x = b$. The figure shows an arbitrary cross section perpendicular to the x-axis. By $A(x)$ we mean the area of the cross section at coordinate x.

If the cross-sectional area $A(x)$ varies continuously with x, then we can find the volume V of the solid by integrating $A(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

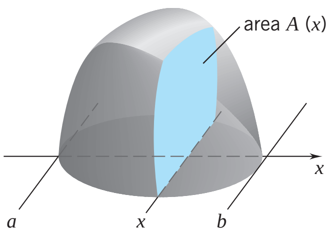


Figure 6.2.3

(6.2.1)
$$\boxed{V = \int_a^b A(x)\,dx.}$$

DERIVATION OF THE FORMULA Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\}$ be a partition of $[a, b]$. On each subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ choose a point x_i^*. The solid from x_{i-1} to x_i can be approximated by a slab of cross-sectional area $A(x_i^*)$ and thickness Δx_i. The volume of this slab is the product

$$A(x_i^*)\Delta x_i. \qquad \text{(Figure 6.2.4)}$$

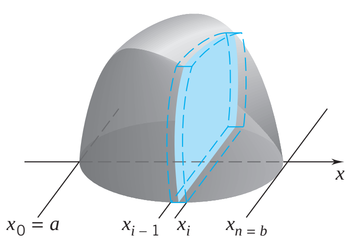


Figure 6.2.4

The sum of these products,

$$A(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + A(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + A(x_n^*)\Delta x_n,$$

is a Riemann sum which approximates the volume of the entire solid. As $\|P\| \to 0$, such Riemann sums converge to

$$\int_a^b A(x)\,dx. \quad ❑$$

Remark (*Average-value point of view*) Formula (6.2.1) can be written

(6.2.2)
$$\boxed{V = (\text{average cross-sectional area}) \cdot (b - a).}$$

Example 1 Find the volume of the pyramid of height h given that the base of the pyramid is a square with sides of length r and the apex of the pyramid lies directly above the center of the base

SOLUTION Set the x-axis as in Figure 6.2.5. The cross section at coordinate x is a square. Let s denote the length of the side of that square. By similar triangles

$$\frac{\frac{1}{2}s}{h-x} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}r}{h} \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad s = \frac{r}{h}(h-x).$$

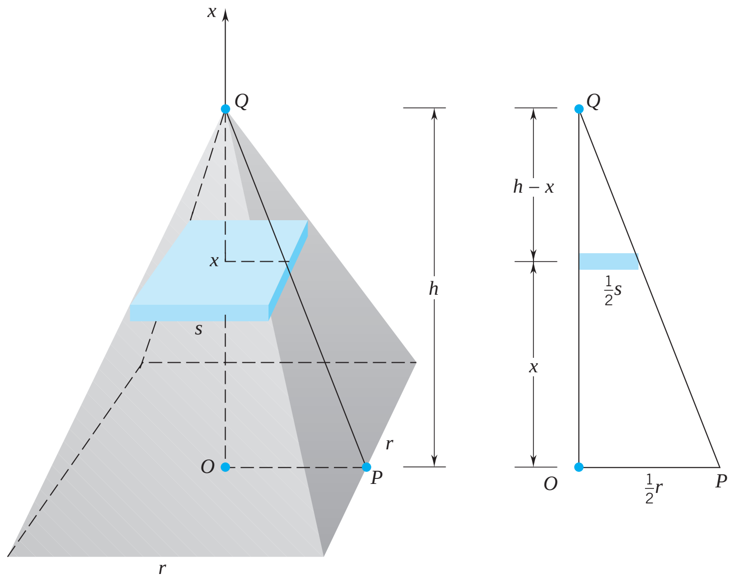


Figure 6.2.5

The area $A(x)$ of the square at coordinate x is $s^2 = (r^2/h^2)(h-x)^2$. Thus

$$V = \int_0^h A(x)dx = \frac{r^2}{h^2}\int_0^h (h-x)^2 dx = \frac{r^2}{h^2}\left[-\frac{(h-x)^3}{3}\right]_0^h = \tfrac{1}{3}r^2h. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 The base of a solid is the region enclosed by the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Find the volume of the solid given that each cross section perpendicular to the x-axis is an isosceles triangle with base in the region and altitude equal to one-half the base.

SOLUTION Set the x-axis as in Figure 6.2.6. The cross section at coordinate x is an isosceles triangle with base $\overline{PQ}$ and altitude $\frac{1}{2}\overline{PQ}$. The equation of the ellipse can be written

$$y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2).$$

Since

$$\text{length of } \overline{PQ} = 2y = \frac{2b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2},$$

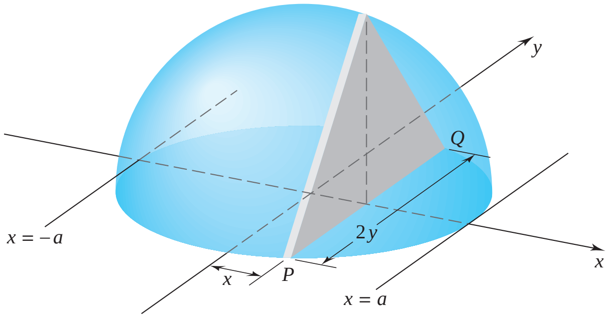


Figure 6.2.6

the isosceles triangle has area

$$A(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}bh = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\right)\left(\frac{b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\right) = \frac{b^2}{a^2}(a^2 - x^2).$$

We can find the volume of the solid by integrating $A(x)$ from $x = -a$ to $x = a$:

$$V = \int_{-a}^{a} A(x)\,dx = \underbrace{2\int_0^a A(x)\,dx}_{\text{by symmetry}}$$

$$= \frac{2b^2}{a^2}\int_0^a (a^2 - x^2)\,dx = \frac{2b^2}{a^2}\left[a^2x - \frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^a = \tfrac{4}{3}ab^2. \quad ❏$$

Example 3 The base of a solid is the region between the parabolas

$$x = y^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x = 3 - 2y^2.$$

Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are squares.

SOLUTION The solid is pictured in Figure 6.2.7. The two parabolas intersect at (1, 1) and (1, −1). From $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ the cross section at coordinate x has area

$$A(x) = (2y)^2 = 4y^2 = 4x.$$

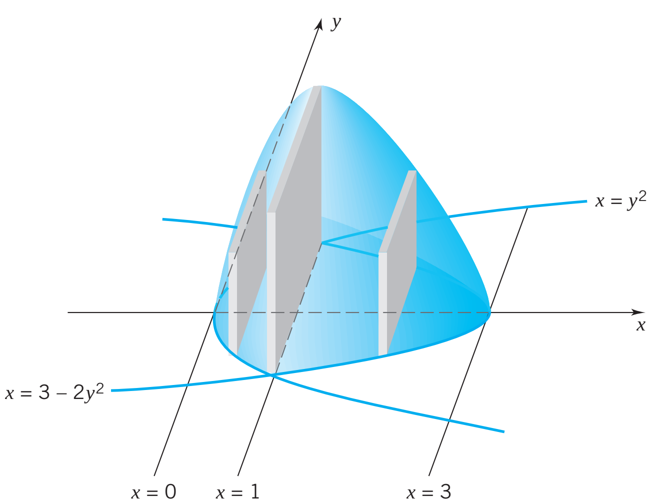


Figure 6.2.7

(Here we are measuring the span across the first parabola $x = y^2$.) The volume of the solid from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ is

$$V_1 = \int_0^1 4x\,dx = \left[2x^2\right]_0^1 = 2.$$

From $x = 1$ to $x = 3$, the cross section at coordinate x has area

$$A(x) = (2y)^2 = 4y^2 = 2(3 - x) = 6 - 2x.$$

(Here we are measuring the span across the second parabola $x = 3 - 2y^2$.) The volume of the solid from $x = 1$ to $x = 3$ is

$$V_2 = \int_1^3 (6 - 2x)\,dx = \left[6x - x^2\right]_1^3 = 4.$$

The total volume is

$$V_1 + V_2 = 6. \quad ❑$$

Solids of Revolution: Disk Method

Suppose that f is nonnegative and continuous on $[a, b]$. (See Figure 6.2.8.) If we revolve about the x-axis the region bounded by the graph of f and the x-axis, we obtain a solid.

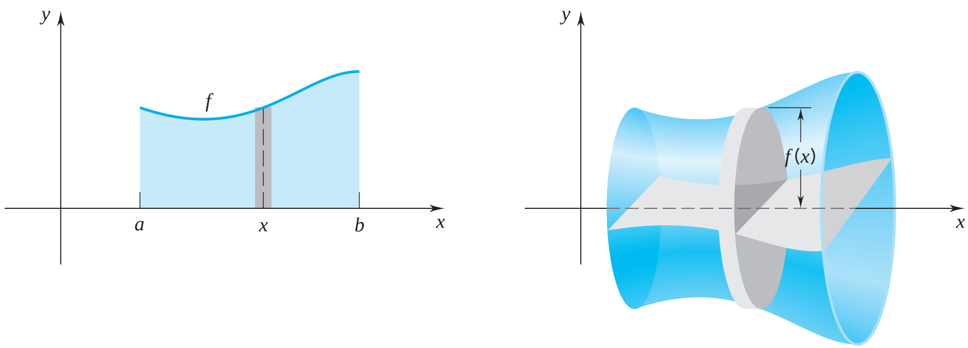


Figure 6.2.8

The volume of this solid is given by the formula

(6.2.3)
$$\boxed{V = \int_a^b \pi[f(x)]^2\,dx.}$$

VERIFICATION The cross section at coordinate x is a circular *disk* of radius $f(x)$. The area of this disk is $\pi[f(x)]^2$. We can get the volume of the solid by integrating this function from $x = a$ to $x = b$. ❑

Among the simplest solids of revolution are the circular cone and sphere.

Example 4 We can generate a circular cone of base radius r and height h by revolving about the x-axis the region below the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{r}{h}x, \qquad 0 \le x \le h. \qquad \text{(Figure 6.2.9)}$$

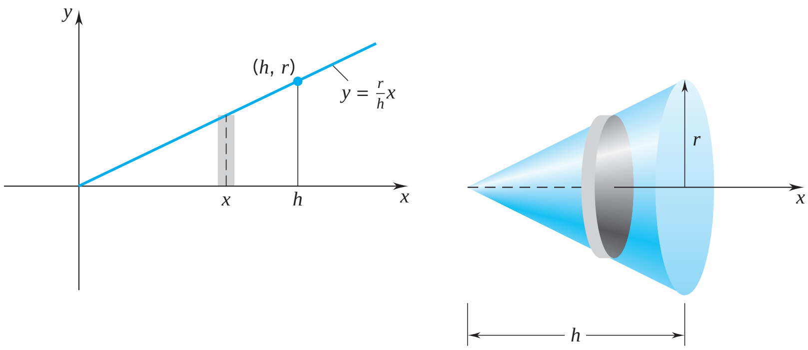


Figure 6.2.9

By (6.2.3),

$$\text{volume of cone} = \int_0^h \pi \left[\frac{r}{h}x\right]^2 dx = \frac{\pi r^2}{h^2}\int_0^h x^2 dx = \frac{\pi r^2}{h^2}\left[\frac{x^3}{3}\right]_0^h = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 A sphere of radius r can be obtained by revolving about the x-axis the region below the graph of

$$f(x) = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}, \qquad -r \le x \le r. \qquad \text{(Draw a figure.)}$$

Therefore

$$\text{volume of sphere} = \int_{-r}^{r} \pi(r^2 - x^2)\,dx = \pi\left[r^2x - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_{-r}^{r} = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3.$$

NOTE: Archimedes derived this formula (by somewhat different methods) in the third century B.C. ❑

We can interchange the roles played by x and y. By revolving about the y-axis the region of Figure 6.2.10, we obtain a solid of cross-sectional area $A(y) = \pi[g(y)]^2$ and volume

(6.2.4)
$$\boxed{V = \int_c^d \pi[g(y)]^2\,dy.}$$

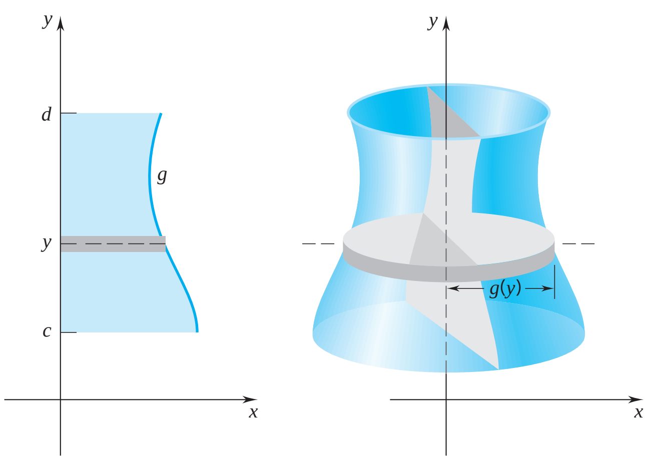


Figure 6.2.10

Example 6 Let Ω be the region bounded below by the curve $y = x^{2/3} + 1$, bounded to the left by the y-axis, and bounded above by the line $y = 5$. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis. (See Figure 6.2.11.)

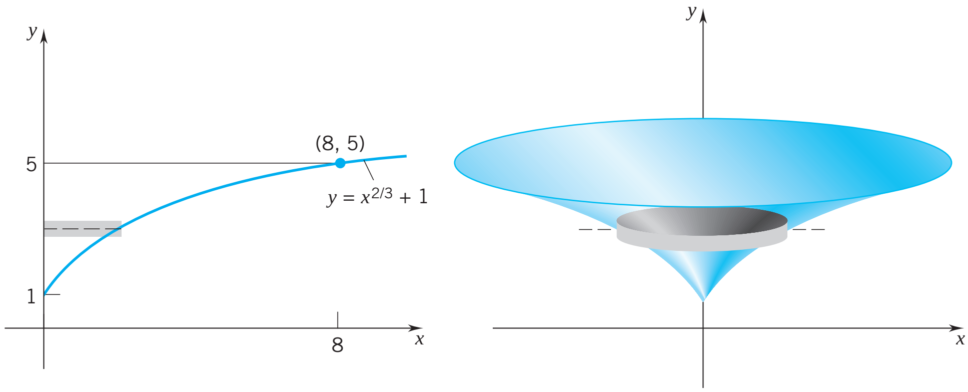


Figure 6.2.11

SOLUTION To apply (6.2.4) we need to express the right boundary of Ω as a function of y:

$$y = x^{2/3} + 1 \quad \text{gives} \quad x^{2/3} = y - 1 \quad \text{and thus} \quad x = (y-1)^{3/2}.$$

The volume of the solid obtained by revolving Ω about the y-axis is given by the integral

$$V = \int_1^5 \pi[g(y)]^2 dy = \pi \int_1^5 [(y-1)^{3/2}]^2 dy$$
$$= \pi \int_1^5 (y-1)^3 dy = \pi \left[\frac{(y-1)^4}{4}\right]_1^5 = 64\pi \quad ❑$$

Solids of Revolution: Washer Method

The washer method is a slight generalization of the disk method. Suppose that f and g are nonnegative continuous functions with $g(x) \le f(x)$ for all x in $[a, b]$. (See Figure 6.2.12.) If we revolve the region Ω about the x-axis, we obtain a solid. The volume of

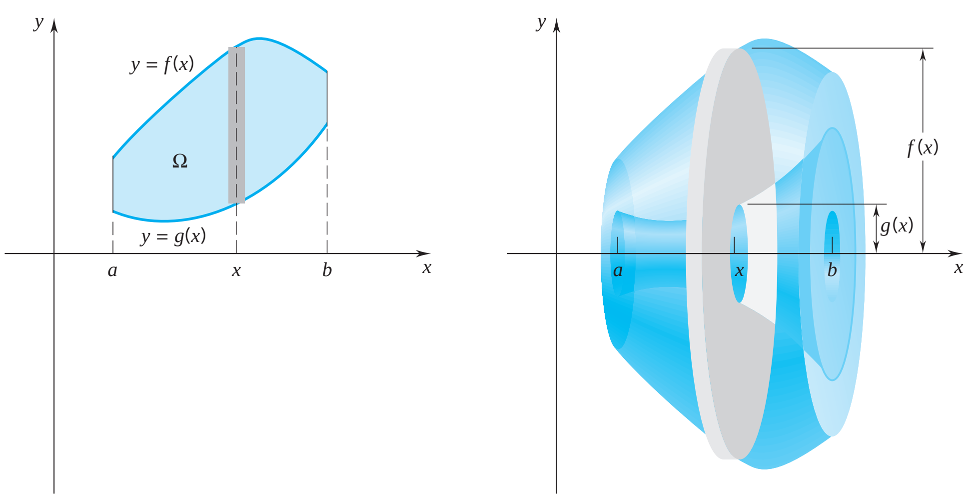


Figure 6.2.12

this solid is given by the formula

(6.2.5) $$\boxed{V = \int_a^b \pi([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2)\,dx.}$$ (washer method about the x-axis)

VERIFICATION The cross section at coordinate x is a circular ring (in this setting we call it a *washer*) of outer radius $f(x)$, inner radius $g(x)$, and area

$$A(x) = \pi[f(x)]^2 - \pi[g(x)]^2 = \pi([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2).$$

We can get the volume of this solid by integrating $A(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$. ❑

As before, we can interchange the roles played by x and y. By revolving the region depicted in Figure 6.2.13 *about the y-axis*, we obtain a solid of volume

(6.2.6) $$\boxed{V = \int_c^d \pi([F(y)]^2 - [G(y)]^2)\,dy.}$$ (washer method about the y-axis)

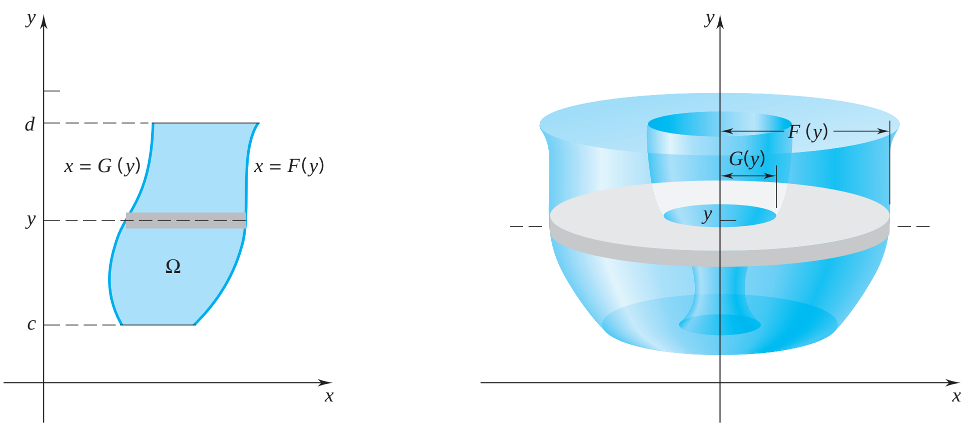


Figure 6.2.13

Example 7 Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region between

$$y = x^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = 2x$$

(a) about the x-axis. **(b)** about the y-axis.

SOLUTION The curves intersect at the points (0, 0) and (2, 4).

(a) We refer to Figure 6.2.14. For each x from 0 to 2, the x cross section is a washer of outer radius $2x$ and inner radius x^2. By (6.2.5),

$$V = \int_0^2 \pi[(2x)^2 - (x^2)^2]\,dx = \pi\int_0^2 (4x^2 - x^4)\,dx = \pi\left[\tfrac{4}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{5}x^5\right]_0^2 = \tfrac{64}{15}\pi.$$

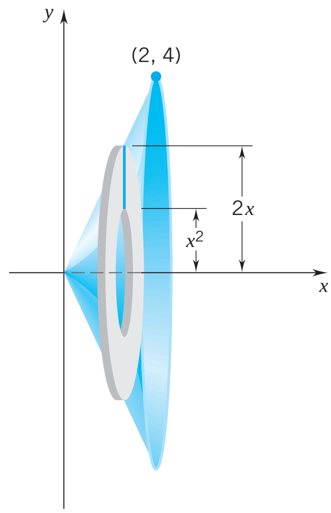


Figure 6.2.14

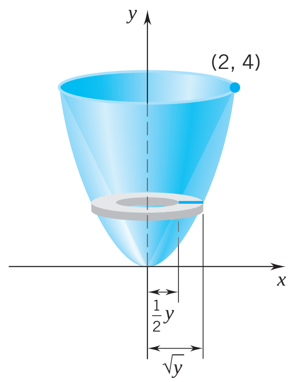


Figure 6.2.15

(b) The solid is depicted in Figure 6.2.15. For each y from 0 to 4, the y cross section is a washer of outer radius $\sqrt{y}$ and inner radius $\frac{1}{2}y$. By (6.2.6),

$$V = \int_0^4 \pi\left[(\sqrt{y})^2 - \left(\tfrac{1}{2}y\right)^2\right] dy = \pi \int_0^4 \left(y - \tfrac{1}{4}y^2\right) dy$$

$$= \pi\left[\tfrac{1}{2}y^2 - \tfrac{1}{12}y^3\right]_0^4 = \tfrac{8}{3}\pi. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 6.2

Exercises 1–16. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves and find the volume of the solid generated by revolving this region about the x-axis.

1. $y = x, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 1.$

2. $x + y = 3, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 0$

3. $y = x^2, \quad y = 9$

4. $y = x^3, \quad y = 8, \quad x = 0.$

5. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = x^3.$

6. $y = x^2, \quad y = x^{1/3}.$

7. $y = x^3, \quad x + y = 10, \quad y = 1.$

8. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad x + y = 6, \quad y = 1.$

9. $y = x^2, \quad y = x + 2.$

10. $y = x^2, \quad y = 2 - x$

11. $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}, \quad y = 0.$

12. $y = 1 - |x|, \quad y = 0.$

13. $y = \sec x, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}\pi, \quad y = 0.$

14. $y = \csc x, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}\pi, \quad x = \frac{3}{4}\pi, \quad y = 0.$

15. $y = \cos x, \quad y = x + 1, \quad x = \frac{1}{2}\pi.$

16. $y = \sin x, \quad x = \frac{1}{4}\pi, \quad x = \frac{1}{2}\pi, \quad y = 0.$

Exercises 17–26. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves and find the volume of the solid generated by revolving this region about the y-axis.

17. $y = 2x, \quad y = 4, \quad x = 0.$

18. $x + 3y = 6, \quad x = 0, \quad y = 0.$

19. $x = y^3, \quad x = 8, \quad y = 0.$

20. $x = y^2, \quad x = 4.$

21. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = x^3.$

22. $y = x^2, \quad y = x^{1/3}.$

23. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad x = 4.$

24. $x + y = 3, \quad 2x + y = 6, \quad x = 0.$

25. $x = y^2, \quad x = 2 - y^2.$

26. $x = \sqrt{9 - y^2}, \quad x = 0.$

27. The base of a solid is the disk bounded by the circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) squares; (b) equilateral triangles.

28. The base of a solid is the region bounded by the ellipse $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$. Find the volume of the solid given that cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) equilateral triangles; (b) squares.

29. The base of a solid is the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $y = 4$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) squares; (b) semicircles; (c) equilateral triangles.

30. The base of a solid is the region between the parabolas $x = y^2$ and $x = 3 - 2y^2$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are:

(a) rectangles of height h; (b) equilateral triangles;
(c) isosceles right triangles, hypotenuse on the xy-plane.

31. Carry out Exercise 29 with the cross sections perpendicular to the y-axis.

32. Carry out Exercise 30 with the cross sections perpendicular to the y-axis.

33. The base of a solid is the triangular region bounded by the y-axis and the lines $x + 2y = 4$, $x - 2y = 4$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) squares; (b) isosceles right triangles with hypotenuse on the xy-plane.

34. The base of a solid is the region bounded by the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) isosceles right triangles, hypotenuse on the xy-plane; (b) squares; (c) isosceles triangles of height 2.

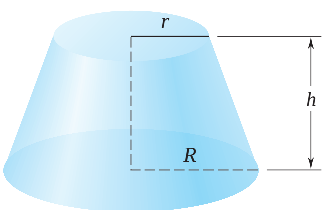
35. The base of a solid is the region bounded by $y = 2\sqrt{\sin x}$ and the x-axis with $x \in [0, \pi/2]$. Find the volume of the solid given that cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) equilateral triangles; (b) squares.

36. The base of a solid is the region bounded by $y = \sec x$ and $y = \tan x$ with $x \in [0, \pi/4]$. Find the volume of the solid given that cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) semicircles; (b) squares.

37. Find the volume enclosed by the surface obtained by revolving the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ about the x-axis.

38. Find the volume enclosed by the surface obtained by revolving the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ about the y-axis.

39. Derive a formula for the volume of the frustum of a right circular cone in terms of the height h, the lower base radius R, and the upper base radius r. (See the figure.)



40. Find the volume enclosed by the surface obtained by revolving the equilateral triangle with vertices $(0, 0)$, $(a, 0)$, $(\frac{1}{2}a, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}a)$ about the x-axis.

41. A hemispherical basin of radius r feet is being used to store water. To what percent of capacity is it filled when the water is:

(a) $\frac{1}{2}r$ feet deep? (b) $\frac{1}{3}r$ feet deep?

42. A sphere of radius r is cut by two parallel planes: one, a units above the equator; the other, b units above the equator. Find the volume of the portion of the sphere that lies between the two planes. Assume that $a < b$.

43. A sphere of radius r is cut by a plane h units above the equator. Take $0 < h < r$. The top portion is called a *cap*. Derive the formula for the volume of a cap.

44. A hemispherical punch bowl 2 feet in diameter is filled to within 1 inch of the top. Thirty minutes after the party starts, there are only 2 inches of punch left at the bottom of the bowl.

(a) How much punch was there at the beginning?
(b) How much punch was consumed?

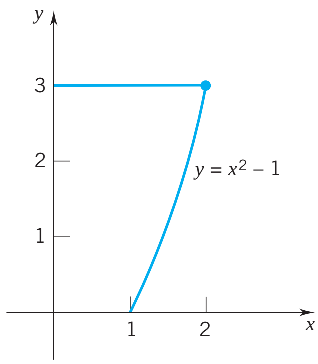
45. Let $f(x) = x^{-2/3}$ for $x > 0$.

(a) Sketch the graph of f.
(b) Calculate the area of the region bounded by the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = 1$ to $x = b$. Take $b > 1$.
(c) The region in part (b) is rotated about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.
(d) What happens to the area of the region as $b \to \infty$? What happens to the volume of the solid?

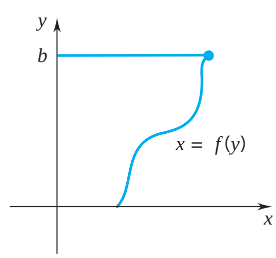
46. This is a continuation of Exercise 45.

(a) Calculate the area of the region bounded by the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = c$ to $x = 1$. Take $0 < c < 1$.
(b) The region in part (a) is rotated about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.
(c) What happens to the area of the region as $c \to 0^+$? What happens to the volume of the solid?

47. With x and y measured in feet, the configuration shown in the figure is revolved about the y-axis to form a parabolic container, no top. Given that a liquid is poured into the container at the rate of two cubic feet per minute, how fast is the level of the liquid rising when the depth of the liquid is 1 foot? 2 feet?



48. Let $x = f(y)$ be continuous and positive on the interval $[0, b]$. The configuration in the figure is revolved about the y-axis to form a container, no top. Suppose that the container is filled with water which then evaporates at a rate proportional to the area of the surface of the water. Show that the water level drops at a constant rate.



49. Set $f(x) = x^5$ and $g(x) = 2x$, $x \geq 0$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to display the graphs of f and g in one figure.
(b) Use a CAS to find the points of intersection of the two graphs.
(c) Use a CAS to find the area of the region bounded by the two graphs.

(d) The region in part (c) is revolved about the x-axis. Use a CAS to find the volume of the resulting solid.

50. Carry out Exercise 49 taking $f(x) = \sqrt{2x - 1}$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 4x + 4$.

51. The region between the graph of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ and the x-axis, $0 \leq x \leq 4$, is revolved about the line $y = 2$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

52. The region bounded by the curves $y = (x - 1)^2$ and $y = x + 1$ is revolved about the line $y = -1$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

53. The region between the graph of $y = \sin x$ and the x-axis, $0 \leq x \leq \pi$, is revolved about the line $y = 1$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

54. The region bounded by $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$, with $\pi/4 \leq x \leq \pi$, is revolved about the line $y = 1$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

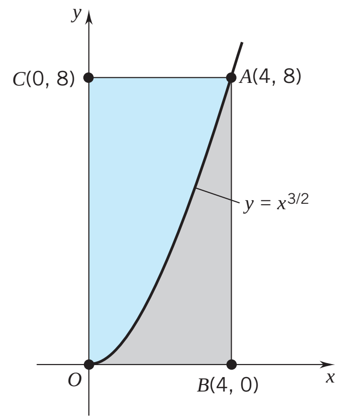
55. The region bounded by the curves $y = x^2 - 2x$ and $y = 3x$ is revolved about the line $y = -1$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

56. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $x = y^2$: (a) about the line $x = -2$; (b) about the line $x = 3$.

57. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y^2 = 4x$ and $y = x$: (a) about the x-axis; (b) about the line $x = 4$.

58. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $y = 4x$: (a) about the line $x = 5$; (b) about the line $x = -1$.

59. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region OAB in the figure about: (a) the x-axis; (b) the line AB; (c) the line CA; (d) the y-axis.



60. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region OAC in the figure accompanying Exercise 59 about: (a) the y-axis; (b) the line CA; (c) the line AB; (d) the x-axis.

■ 6.3 VOLUME BY THE SHELL METHOD

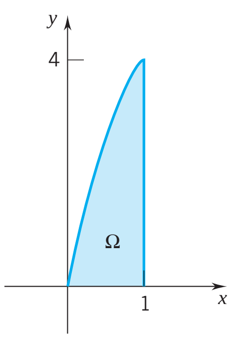


Figure 6.3.1

Figure 6.3.1 shows the region Ω below the curve $y = 5x - x^5$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$. By revolving Ω about the y-axis we obtain a solid of revolution. This solid has a certain volume. Call it V. To calculate V by the washer method we would have to express the curved boundary of Ω in the form $x = \phi(y)$, and this we can't do: given that $y = 5x - x^5$, we have no way of expressing x in terms of y. Thus, in this instance, the washer method fails. Below we introduce another method of calculating volume, a method by which we can avoid the difficulty just cited. It is called the *shell method*.

To describe the shell method of calculating volumes, we begin with a solid cylinder of radius R and height h, and from it we cut out a cylindrical core of radius r. (Figure 6.3.2)

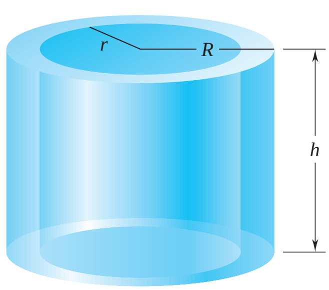


Figure 6.3.2

Since the original cylinder has volume $\pi R^2 h$ and the piece removed has volume $\pi r^2 h$, the cylindrical shell that remains has volume

(6.3.1)
$$\boxed{\pi R^2 h - \pi r^2 h = \pi h(R + r)(R - r).}$$

We will use this shortly.

Now let $[a, b]$ be an interval with $a \geq 0$ and let f be a nonnegative function continuous on $[a, b]$. If the region bounded by the graph of f and the x-axis is revolved about the y-axis, then a solid is generated. (Figure 6.3.3) The volume of this solid can be obtained from the formula

(6.3.2)
$$\boxed{V = \int_a^b 2\pi x f(x)\, dx.}$$

This is called the *shell-method formula*.

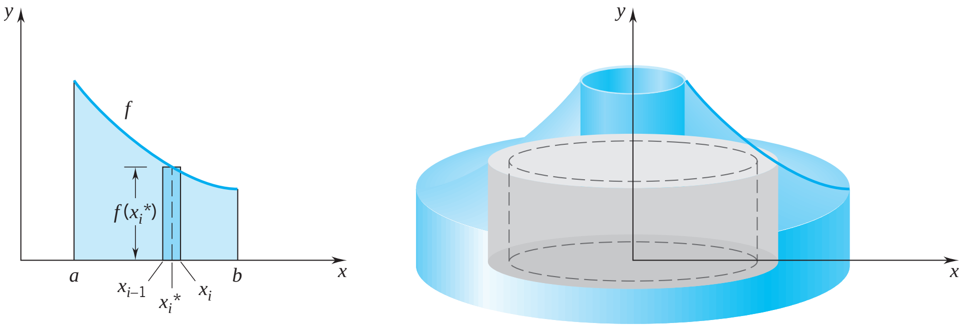


Figure 6.3.3

DERIVATION OF THE FORMULA We take a partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$ and concentrate on what happens on the ith subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$. Recall that when we form a Riemann sum we are free to choose x_i^* as any point from $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$. For convenience we take x_i^* as the midpoint $\frac{1}{2}(x_{i-1} + x_i)$. The representative rectangle of height $f(x_i^*)$ and base Δx_i (see Figure 6.3.2) generates a cylindrical shell of height $f(x_i^*)$, inner radius $r = x_{i-1}$, and outer radius $R = x_i$. We can calculate the volume of this shell by (6.3.1). Since

$$h = f\left(x_i^*\right) \qquad \text{and} \qquad R + r = x_i + x_{i-1} = 2x_i^* \qquad \text{and} \qquad R - r = \Delta x_i,$$

the volume of this shell is

$$\pi h(R + r)(R - r) = 2\pi x_i^* f\left(x_i^*\right)\Delta x_i.$$

The volume of the entire solid can be approximated by adding up the volumes of these shells:

$$V \cong 2\pi x_1^* f\left(x_1^*\right) \Delta x_1 + 2\pi x_2^* f\left(x_2^*\right) \Delta x_2 + \cdots + 2\pi x_n^* f\left(x_n^*\right) \Delta x_n.$$

The sum on the right is a Riemann sum. As $\|P\| \to 0$, such Riemann sums converge to

$$\int_a^b 2\pi x f(x)\, dx. \quad \square$$

Remark (*Average-value point of view*) To give some geometric insight into the shell-method formula, we refer to Figure 6.3.4. As the region below the graph of f is revolved about the y-axis, the vertical line segment at x generates a cylindrical surface of radius x, height $f(x)$, and lateral area $2\pi x f(x)$. As x ranges from $x = a$ to $x = b$, the cylindrical surfaces form a solid. The shell-method formula

$$V = \int_a^b 2\pi x f(x)\, dx$$

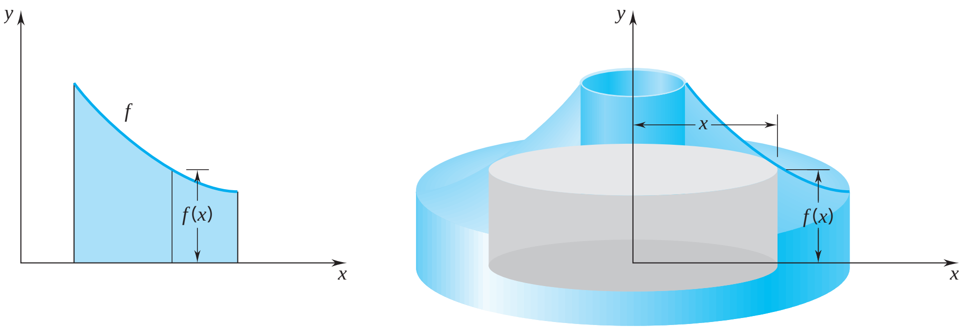


Figure 6.3.4

states that the volume of this solid can be expressed by writing

(6.3.3)
$$\boxed{V = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{the average lateral area of}\\ \text{the component cylindrical surfaces}\end{array}\right)\cdot(b-a)}$$

This is the point of view we'll take. ❑

Example 1 The region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 4x - x^2$ and the x-axis from $x = 1$ to $x = 4$ is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

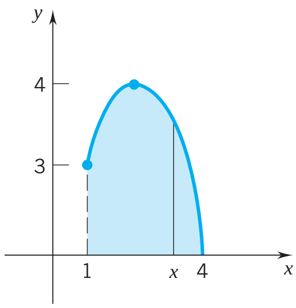


Figure 6.3.5

SOLUTION See Figure 6.3.5. The line segment x units from the y-axis, $1 \le x \le 4$, generates a cylinder of radius x, height $f(x)$, and lateral area $2\pi x f(x)$. Thus

$$V = \int_1^4 2\pi x(4x - x^2)\,dx = 2\pi \int_1^4 (4x^2 - x^3)\,dx = 2\pi\left[\tfrac{4}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4\right]_1^4 = \tfrac{81}{2}\pi. \quad ❑$$

The shell-method formula can be generalized. With Ω the region from $x = a$ to $x = b$ shown in Figure 6.3.6, the volume generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis is given by the formula

(6.3.4)
$$\boxed{V = \int_a^b 2\pi x[f(x) - g(x)]\,dx.} \qquad \text{(shell method about the } y\text{-axis)}$$

The integrand $2\pi x[f(x) - g(x)]$ is the lateral area of the cylindrical surface, which is at a distance x from the axis of rotation.

As usual, we can interchange the roles played by x and y. With Ω the region from $y = c$ to $y = d$ shown in Figure 6.3.7, the volume generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis is given by the formula

(6.3.5)
$$\boxed{V = \int_e^d 2\pi y[F(y) - G(y)]\,dy.} \qquad \text{(shell method about the } x\text{-axis)}$$

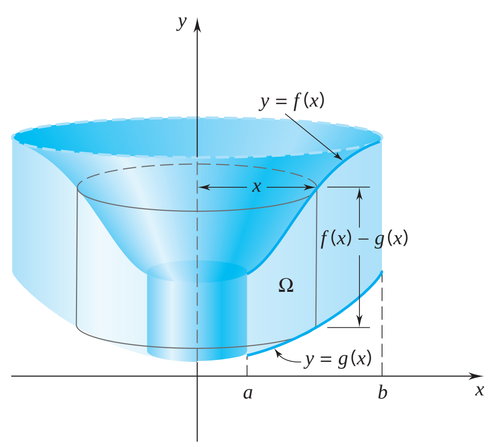


Figure 6.3.6

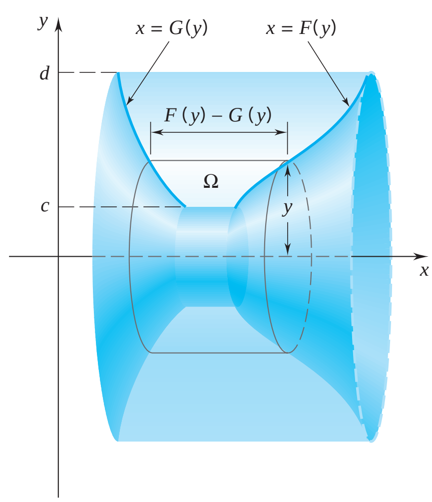


Figure 6.3.7

The integrand $2\pi y\,[F(y) - G(y)]$ is the lateral area of the cylindrical surface, which is at a distance y from the axis of rotation.

Example 2 Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region between

$$y = x^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = 2x$$

(a) about the y-axis, **(b)** about the x-axis.

SOLUTION The curves intersect at the points (0, 0) and (2, 4).

(a) We refer to Figure 6.3.8. For each x from 0 to 2 the line segment at a distance x from the y-axis generates a cylindrical surface of radius x, height $(2x - x^2)$, and lateral area $2\pi x(2x - x^2)$. By (6.3.4),

$$V = \int_0^2 2\pi x(2x - x^2)\,dx = 2\pi \int_0^2 (2x^2 - x^3)\,dx = 2\pi\left[\tfrac{2}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4\right]_0^2 = \tfrac{8}{3}\pi.$$

(b) We begin by expressing the bounding curves as functions of y. We write $x = \sqrt{y}$ for the right boundary and $x = \frac{1}{2}y$ for the left boundary. (See Figure 6.3.9.) For each y from 0 to 4 the line segment at a distance y from the x-axis generates a cylindrical surface of radius y, height $(\sqrt{y} - \frac{1}{2}y)$, and lateral area $2\pi y(\sqrt{y} - \frac{1}{2}y)$. By (6.3.5),

$$V = \int_0^4 2\pi y(\sqrt{y} - \tfrac{1}{2}y)\,dy = \pi \int_0^4 (2y^{3/2} - y^2)\,dy$$

$$= \pi\left[\tfrac{4}{5}y^{5/2} - \tfrac{1}{3}y^3\right]_0^4 = \tfrac{64}{15}\pi. \quad ❑$$

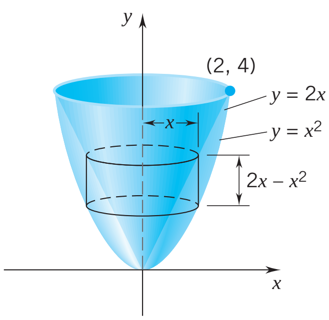


Figure 6.3.8

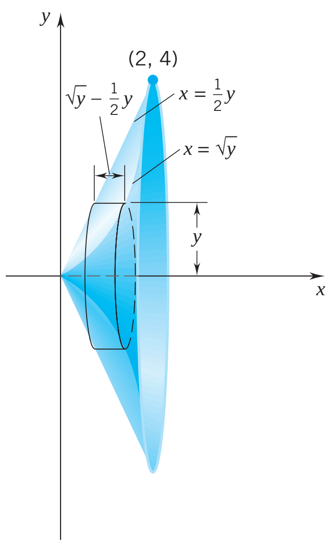


Figure 6.3.9

Example 3 A round hole of radius r is drilled through the center of a half-ball of radius a ($r < a$). Find the volume of the remaining solid.

SOLUTION A half-ball of radius a can be formed by revolving about the y-axis the first quadrant region bounded by $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$. What remains after the hole is drilled is the solid formed by revolving about the y-axis only that part of the region which is shaded in Figure 6.3.10.

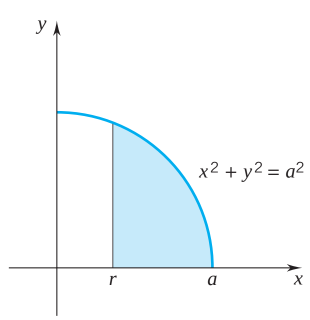


Figure 6.3.10

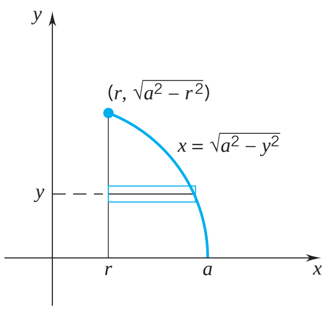


Figure 6.3.11

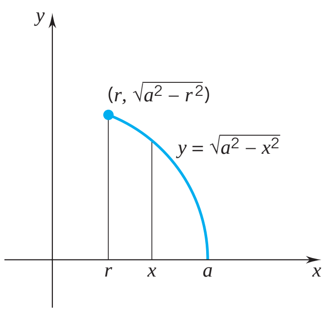


Figure 6.3.12

(a) By the washer method. We refer to Figure 6.3.11.

$$V = \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-r^2}} \pi\left(\left[\sqrt{a^2 - y^2}\right]^2 - r^2\right) dy = \pi \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-r^2}} (a^2 - r^2 - y^2)\, dy$$

$$= \pi\left[(a^2 - r^2)y - \tfrac{1}{3}y^3\right]_0^{\sqrt{a^2-r^2}} = \tfrac{2}{3}\pi(a^2 - r^2)^{3/2}\,.$$

(b) By the shell method. We refer to Figure 6.3.12.

$$V = \int_r^a 2\pi x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\, dx.$$

Set $u = a^2 - x^2,\ du = -2x\, dx$. At $x = r, u = a^2 - r^2$; at $x = a, u = 0$. Therefore,

$$V = \int_r^a 2\pi x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\, dx = -\pi \int_{a^2-r^2}^0 u^{1/2} du = \pi \int_0^{a^2-r^2} u^{1/2} du$$

$$= \pi\left[\tfrac{2}{3}u^{3/2}\right]_0^{a^2-r^2} = \tfrac{2}{3}\pi(a^2 - r^2)^{3/2}.$$

If $r = 0$, no hole is drilled and $V = \frac{2}{3}\pi a^3$, the volume of the entire half-ball. ❑

In our last example we revolve a region about a line parallel to the *y*-axis.

Example 4 The region Ω between $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $y = x^2, 0 \le x \le 1$, is revolved about the line $x = -2$. (See Figure 6.3.13.) Find the volume of the solid which is generated.

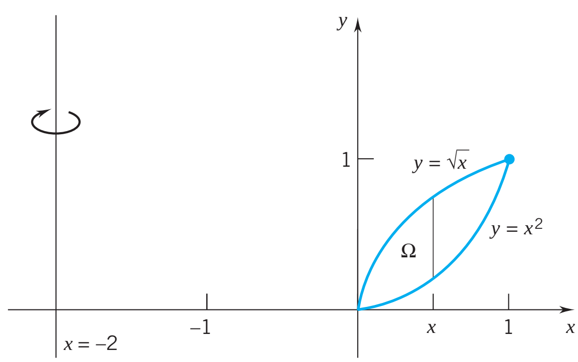


Figure 6.3.13

SOLUTION We use the shell method. For each x in $[0, 1]$ the line segment at x generates a cylindrical surface of radius $x + 2$, height $\sqrt{x} - x^2$, and lateral area $2\pi(x + 2)(\sqrt{x} - x^2)$. Therefore

$$V = \int_0^1 2\pi(x + 2)(\sqrt{x} - x^2)\, dx$$

$$= 2\pi \int_0^1 (x^{3/2} + 2x^{1/2} - x^3 - 2x^2)\, dx$$

$$= 2\pi\left[\tfrac{2}{5}x^{5/2} + \tfrac{4}{3}x^{3/2} - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 - \tfrac{2}{3}x^3\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{49}{30}\pi. \quad ❑$$

Remark We began this section by explaining that the washer method does not provide a way for us to calculate the volume generated by revolving about the y-axis the region shown in Figure 6.3.1. By the shell method we can easily calculate this volume:

$$V = \int_0^1 2\pi x(5x - x^5)\,dx = 2\pi \int_0^1 (5x^2 - x^6)\,dx = 2\pi\left[\tfrac{5}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{7}x^7\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{64}{21}\pi. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 6.3

Exercises 1–12. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves and use the shell method to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

1. $y = x, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 1.$

2. $x + y = 3, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 0.$

3. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad x = 4, \quad y = 0.$

4. $y = x^3, \quad x = 2, \quad y = 0.$

5. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = x^3.$

6. $y = x^2, \quad y = x^{1/3}.$

7. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad y = 4.$

8. $y = x, \quad y = 1, \quad x + y = 6.$

9. $x = y^2, \quad x = y + 2.$

10. $x = y^2, \quad x = 2 - y.$

11. $x = \sqrt{9 - y^2}, \quad x = 0.$

12. $x = |y|, \quad x = 2 - y^2.$

Exercises 13–24. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves and use the shell method to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis.

13. $x + 3y = 6, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 0.$

14. $y = x, \quad y = 5, \quad x = 0.$

15. $y = x^2, \quad y = 9.$

16. $y = x^3, \quad y = 8, \quad x = 0.$

17. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = x^3.$

18. $y = x^2, \quad y = x^{1/3}.$

19. $y = x^2, \quad y = x + 2.$

20. $y = x^2, \quad y = 2 - x.$

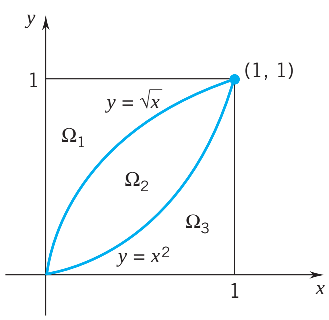
21. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad x = 4.$

22. $y = x, \quad x + y = 8, \quad x = 1.$

23. $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}, \quad x + y = 1.$

24. $y = x^2, \quad y = 2 - |x|.$

Exercises 25–30. The figure shows three regions within the unit square. Express the volume obtained by revolving the indicated region about the indicated line: (a) by an integral with respect to x; (b) by an integral with respect to y. Calculate each volume by evaluating one of these integrals



25. Ω_1, the y-axis.

26. Ω_1, the line $y = 2$.

27. Ω_2, the x-axis.

28. Ω_2, the line $x = -3$.

29. Ω_3, the y-axis.

30. Ω_3, the line $y = -1$.

31. Use the shell method to find the volume enclosed by the surface obtained by revolving the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ about the y-axis.

32. Carry out Exercise 31 with the ellipse revolved about the x-axis.

33. Find the volume enclosed by the surface generated by revolving the equilateral triangle with vertices $(0, 0)$, $(a, 0)$, $(\frac{1}{2}a, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}a)$ about the y-axis.

34. A ball of radius r is cut into two pieces by a horizontal plane a units above the center of the ball. Determine the volume of the upper piece by using the shell method.

35. Carry out Exercise 59 of Section 6.2, this time using the shell method.

36. Carry out Exercise 60 of Section 6.2, this time using the shell method.

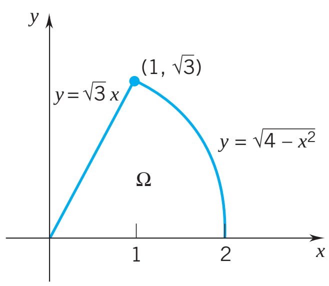
37. (a) Verify that $F(x) = x \sin x + \cos x$ is an antiderivative of $f(x) = x \cos x$.
(b) Find the volume generated by revolving about the y-axis the region between $y = \cos x$ and the x-axis, $0 \leq x \leq \pi/2$.

38. (a) Sketch the region in the right half-plane that is outside the parabola $y = x^2$ and is between the lines $y = x + 2$ and $y = 2x - 2$.
(b) The region in part (a) is revolved about the y-axis. Use the method that you find most practical to calculate the volume of the solid generated.

For Exercises 39–42, set

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{3}x, & 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \sqrt{4 - x^2}, & 1 \leq x \leq 2, \end{cases}$$

and let Ω be the region between the graph of f and the x-axis. (See the figure.)



39. Revolve Ω about the y-axis.
(a) Express the volume of the resulting solid as an integral in x.
(b) Express the volume of the resulting solid as an integral in y.
(c) Calculate the volume of the solid by evaluating one of these integrals.

40. Carry out Exercise 39 for Ω revolved about the x-axis.

41. Carry out parts (a) and (b) of Exercise 39 for Ω revolved about the line $x = 2$.

42. Carry out parts (a) and (b) of Exercise 39 for Ω revolved about the line $y = -1$.

43. Let Ω be the circular disk $(x - b)^2 + y^2 \leq a^2$, $0 < a < b$. The doughnut-shaped region generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis is called a *torus*. Express the volume of the torus as:
(a) a definite integral in x.
(b) a definite integral in y.

44. The circular disk $x^2 + y^2 \leq a^2$, $a > 0$, is revolved about the line $x = a$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

45. Let r and h be positive numbers. The region in the first quadrant bounded by the line $x/r + y/h = 1$ and the coordinate axes is rotated about the y-axis. Use the shell method to derive the formula for the volume of a cone of radius r and height h.

46. A hole is drilled through the center of a ball of radius r, leaving a solid with a hollow cylindrical core of height h. Show that the volume of this solid is independent of the radius of the ball.

47. The region Ω in the first quadrant bounded by the parabola $y = r^2 - x^2$ and the coordinate axes is revolved about the y-axis. The resulting solid is called a *paraboloid.* A vertical hole of radius a, $a < r$, centered along the y-axis, is drilled through the paraboloid. Find the volume of the solid that remains: (a) by integrating with respect to x; (b) by integrating with respect to y.

C **48.** (a) Draw the graph of $f(x) = \sin \pi x^2$, $x \in [-3, 3]$.
(b) Let Ω be the region bounded by the graph of f and the x-axis with $x \in [0, 1]$. If Ω is revolved about the x-axis and the disk method is used to calculate the volume, then the resulting integral *cannot be* readily evaluated by the fundamental theorem of calculus. Use a CAS to estimate this volume.
(c) If Ω is revolved about the y-axis and the shell method is used to calculate the volume, then the resulting integral *can be* evaluated by the fundamental theorem of calculus. Calculate this volume.

C **49.** Set $f(x) = \sin x$ and $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}x$.
(a) Use a graphing utility to display the graphs of f and g in one figure.
(b) Use a CAS to find the points of intersection of the two graphs.
(c) Use a CAS to find the area of the region bounded by the two graphs.
(d) The region in part (c) is revolved about the y-axis. Use a CAS to find the volume of the resulting solid.

C **50.** Set $f(x) = \dfrac{2}{(x+1)^2}$ and $g(x) = \frac{3}{2} - \frac{1}{2}x$.
(a) Use a graphing utility to display the graphs of f and g in one figure.
(b) Use a CAS to find the points of intersection of the two graphs.
(c) Use a CAS to find the area of the region in the first quadrant bounded by the graphs.
(d) The region in part (c) is revolved about the y-axis. Use a CAS to find the volume of the resulting solid.

■ 6.4 THE CENTROID OF A REGION; PAPPUS'S THEOREM ON VOLUMES

The Centroid of a Region

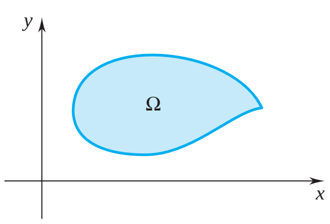


Figure 6.4.1

In Section 5.9 you saw how to locate the center of mass of a thin rod. Suppose now that we have a thin distribution of matter, a *plate*, laid out in the xy-plane in the shape of some region Ω. (Figure 6.4.1) If the mass density of the plate varies from point to point, then the determination of the center of mass of the plate requires the evaluation of a double integral. (Chapter 17) If, however, the mass density of the plate is constant throughout Ω, then the center of mass depends only on the shape of Ω and falls on a point $(\overline{x}, \overline{y})$ that we call the *centroid.* Unless Ω has a very complicated shape, we can locate the centroid by ordinary one-variable integration.

We will use two guiding principles to locate the centroid of a plane region. The first is obvious. The second we take from physics; the result conforms to physical intuition and is easily justified by double integration

Principle 1: Symmetry If the region has an axis of symmetry, then the centroid $(\overline{x}, \overline{y})$ lies somewhere along that axis. In particular, if the region has a center, then the center is the centroid.

Principle 2: Additivity If the region, having area A, consists of a finite number of pieces with areas $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ and centroids $(\bar{x}_1, \bar{y}_1), \ldots, (\bar{x}_n, \bar{y}_n)$, then

(6.4.1)
$$\boxed{\bar{x}A = \bar{x}_1 A_1 + \cdots + \bar{x}_n A_n \qquad \text{and} \qquad \bar{y}A = \bar{y}_1 A_1 + \cdots + \bar{y}_n A_n.}$$

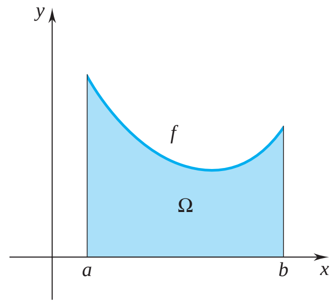


Figure 6.4.2

We are now ready to bring the techniques of calculus into play. Figure 6.4.2 shows the region Ω under the graph of a continuous function f. Denote the area of Ω by A. The centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ of Ω can be obtained from the following formulas:

(6.4.2)
$$\boxed{\bar{x}A = \int_a^b x f(x)\,dx, \quad \bar{y}A = \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}[f(x)]^2\,dx.}$$

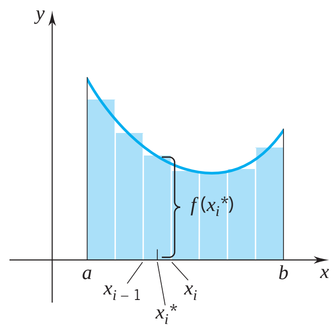


Figure 6.4.3

DERIVATION To derive these formulas we choose a partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$. This breaks up $[a, b]$ into n subintervals $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$. Choosing x_i^* as the midpoint of $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$, we form the midpoint rectangles R_i shown in Figure 6.4.3. The area of R_i is $f(x_i^*)\,\Delta x_i$, and the centroid of R_i is its center $(x_i^*, \frac{1}{2}f(x_i^*))$. By (6.4.1), the centroid $(\bar{x}_p, \bar{y}_p)$ of the union of all these rectangles satisfies the following equations:

$$\bar{x}_p A_p = x_1^* f\left(x_1^*\right)\Delta x_1 + \cdots + x_n^* f\left(x_n^*\right)\Delta x_n,$$

$$\bar{y}_p A_p = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[f\left(x_1^*\right)\right]^2 \Delta x_1 + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{2}\left[f\left(x_n^*\right)\right]^2 \Delta x_n.$$

(Here A_P represents the area of the union of the n rectangles.) As $\|P\| \to 0$, the union of rectangles tends to the shape of Ω and the equations we just derived tend to the formulas given in (6.4.2). ❑

Before we start looking for centroids, we should explain what we are looking for. We learn from physics that, in our world of $W = mg$, the centroid of a plane region Ω is the balance point of the plate Ω, at least in the following sense: If Ω has centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$, then the plate Ω can be balanced on the line $x = \bar{x}$ and it can be balanced on the line $y = \bar{y}$. If $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ is actually in Ω, which is not necessarily the case, then the plate can be balanced at this point.

Example 1 Locate the centroid of the quarter-disk shown in Figure 6.4.4.

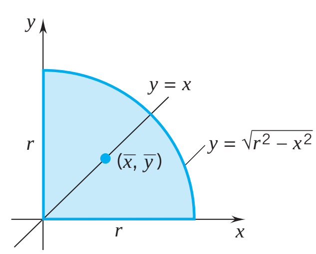


Figure 6.4.4

SOLUTION The quarter-disk is symmetric about the line $y = x$. Therefore we know that $\bar{x} = \bar{y}$. Here

$$\bar{y}A = \int_0^r \tfrac{1}{2}[f(x)]^2 dx = \int_0^r \tfrac{1}{2}(r^2 - x^2)\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[r^2 x - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_0^r = \tfrac{1}{3}r^3.$$

$$b(x) = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$$

Since $A = \frac{1}{4}\pi r^2$,

$$\bar{y} = \frac{\frac{1}{3}r^3}{\frac{1}{4}\pi r^2} = \frac{4r}{3\pi}.$$

The centroid of the quarter-disk is the point

$$\left(\frac{4r}{3\pi}, \frac{4r}{3\pi}\right).$$

NOTE: It is almost as easy to calculate $\overline{x}A$:

$$\overline{x}A = \int_0^r xf(x)\,dx = \int_0^r x\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}\,dx$$

$$= -\tfrac{1}{2}\int_{r^2}^0 u^{1/2}\,du \qquad [u = (r^2 - x^2),\, du = -2x\,dx]$$

$$= -\tfrac{1}{2}\left[\tfrac{2}{3}u^{3/2}\right]_{r^2}^0 = \tfrac{1}{3}r^3,$$

and proceed from there. ❑

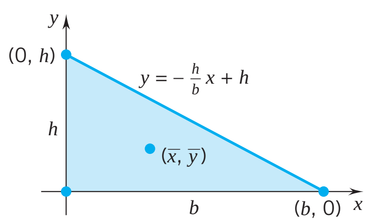


Figure 6.4.5

Example 2 Locate the centroid of the triangular region shown in Figure 6.4.5.

SOLUTION The hypotenuse lies on the line

$$y = -\frac{h}{b}x + h\,.$$

Hence

$$\overline{x}A = \int_0^b xf(x)\,dx = \int_0^b \left(-\frac{h}{b}x^2 + hx\right)dx = \frac{1}{6}b^2h$$

and

$$\overline{y}A = \int_0^b \tfrac{1}{2}[f(x)]^2\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^b \left(\frac{h^2}{b^2}x^2 - \frac{2h^2}{b}x + h^2\right)dx = \tfrac{1}{6}bh^2.$$

Since $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$, we have

$$\overline{x} = \frac{\frac{1}{6}b^2h}{\frac{1}{2}bh} = \tfrac{1}{3}b \qquad \text{and} \qquad \overline{y} = \frac{\frac{1}{6}bh^2}{\frac{1}{2}bh} = \tfrac{1}{3}h\,.$$

The centroid is the point $(\frac{1}{3}b, \frac{1}{3}h)$. ❑

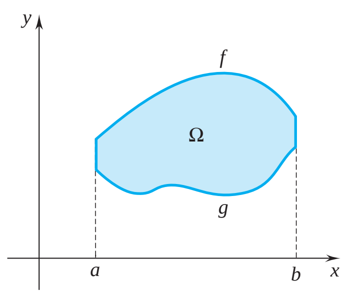


Figure 6.4.6

Figure 6.4.6 shows the region Ω between the graphs of two continuous functions f and g. In this case, if Ω has area A and centroid $(\overline{x}, \overline{y})$, then

(6.4.3)
$$\boxed{\overline{x}A = \int_a^b x[f(x) - g(x)]\,dx, \quad \overline{y}A = \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2)\,dx.}$$

VERIFICATION Let A_f be the area below the graph of f and let A_g be the area below the graph of g. Then, in obvious notation,

$$\overline{x}A + \overline{x}_gA_g = \overline{x}_fA_f \qquad \text{and} \qquad \overline{y}A + \overline{y}_gA_g = \overline{y}_fA_f$$

Therefore

$$\overline{x}A = \overline{x}_fA_f - \overline{x}_gA_g = \int_a^b xf(x)\,dx - \int_a^b xg(x)\,dx = \int_a^b x[f(x) - g(x)]\,dx$$

and

$$\overline{y}A = \overline{y}_fA_f - \overline{y}_gA_g = \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}[f(x)]^2\,dx - \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}[g(x)]^2\,dx$$

$$= \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2)\,dx. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Locate the centroid of the region shown in Figure 6.4.7.

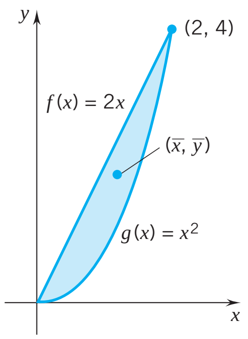


Figure 6.4.7

SOLUTION Here there is no symmetry we can appeal to. We must carry out the calculations.

$$A = \int_0^2 [f(x) - g(x)]\,dx = \int_0^2 (2x - x^2)\,dx = \left[x^2 - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_0^2 = \tfrac{4}{3},$$

$$\overline{x} = \int_0^2 x[f(x) - g(x)]\,dx = \int_0^2 (2x^2 - x^3)\,dx = \left[\tfrac{2}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4\right]_0^2 = \tfrac{4}{3},$$

$$\overline{y}A = \int_0^2 \tfrac{1}{2}([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2)\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^2 (4x^2 - x^4)\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[\tfrac{4}{3}x^3 - \tfrac{1}{5}x^5\right]_0^2 = \tfrac{32}{15}.$$

Therefore $\overline{x} = \frac{4}{3}/\frac{4}{3} = 1$ and $\overline{y} = \frac{32}{15}/\frac{4}{3} = \frac{8}{5}$. The centroid is the point $\left(1, \frac{8}{5}\right)$.

Pappus's Theorem on Volumes

All the formulas that we have derived for volumes of solids of revolution are simple corollaries to an observation made by a brilliant ancient Greek, Pappus of Alexandria (circa 300 A.D.).

THEOREM 6.4.4 PAPPUS'S THOREM ON VOLUMES†

A plane region is revolved about an axis that lies in its plane. If the region does not cross the axis, then the volume of the resulting solid of revolution is the area of the region multiplied by the circumference of the circle described by the centroid of the region:

$$V = 2\pi \overline{R} A$$

where A is the area of the region and $\overline{R}$ is the distance from the axis of revolution to the centroid of the region. (See Figure 6.4.8.)

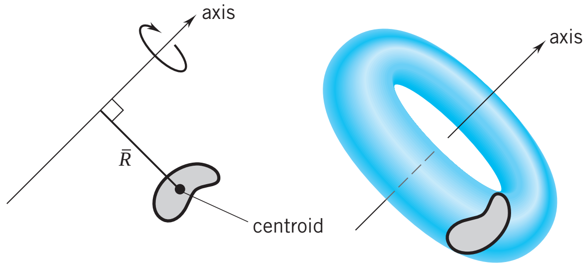


Figure 6.4.8

Basically we have derived only two formulas for the volumes of solids of revolution:

The Washer-Method Formula If the region Ω of Figure 6.4.6 is revolved about the x-axis, the resulting solid has volume

$$V_x = \int_a^b \pi([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2)\,dx.$$

†This theorem is found in Book VII of Pappus's *Mathematical Collection*, largely a survey of ancient geometry to which Pappus made many original contributions (among them this theorem). Much of what we know today of Greek geometry we owe to Pappus.

The Shell-Method Formula If the region Ω of Figure 6.4.6 is revolved about the y-axis, the resulting solid has volume

$$V_y = \int_a^b 2\pi x[f(x) - g(x)]\,dx.$$

Note that

$$V_x = \int_a^b \pi([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2)\,dx$$
$$= 2\pi \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}\left([f(x)]^2 - [g(x)]^2\right)\,dx = 2\pi\bar{y}A = 2\pi\bar{R}A$$

and

$$V_y = \int_a^b 2\pi x[f(x) - g(x)]\,dx = 2\pi\bar{x}A = 2\pi\bar{R}A,$$

as asserted by Pappus. ❑

Remark In stating Pappus's theorem, we assumed a complete revolution. If Ω is only partially revolved about a given axis, then the volume of the resulting solid is simply the area of Ω multiplied by the length of the circular arc described by the centroid. ❑

Applying Pappus's Theorem

Example 4 Earlier we saw that the region in Figure 6.4.7 has area $\frac{4}{3}$ and centroid $\left(1, \frac{8}{5}\right)$. Find the volumes of the solids formed by revolving this region **(a)** about the y-axis, **(b)** about the line $y = 5$.

SOLUTION

(a) We have already calculated this volume by two methods: by the washer method and by the shell method. The result was $V = \frac{8}{3}\pi$. Now we calculate the volume by Pappus's theorem. Here we have $\bar{R} = 1$ and $A = \frac{4}{3}$. Therefore

$$V = 2\pi(1)\left(\tfrac{4}{3}\right) = \tfrac{8}{3}\pi.$$

(b) In this case $\bar{R} = 5 - \frac{8}{5} = \frac{17}{5}$ and $A = \frac{4}{3}$. Therefore

$$V = 2\pi\left(\tfrac{17}{5}\right)\left(\tfrac{4}{3}\right) = \tfrac{136}{15}\pi.$$

Example 5 Find the volume of the torus generated by revolving the circular disk

$$(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 \le r^2, \qquad h, k \ge r \qquad \text{(Figure 6.4.9)}$$

(a) about the x-axis, **(b)** about the y-axis.

SOLUTION The centroid of the disk is the center (h, k). This lies k units from the x-axis and h units from the y-axis. The area of the disk is πr^2. Therefore

(a) $V_x = 2\pi(k)(\pi r^2) = 2\pi^2 k r^2$. **(b)** $V_y = 2\pi(h)(\pi r^2) = 2\pi^2 h r^2$. ❑

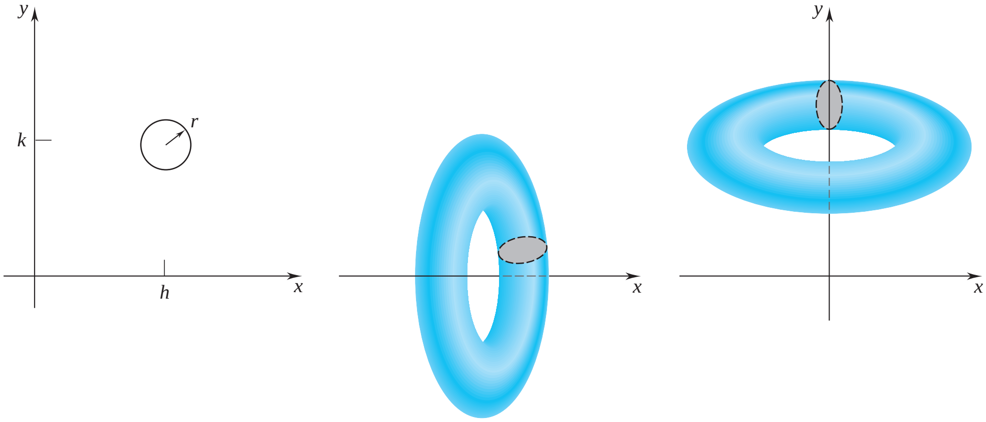


Figure 6.4.9

Example 6 Locate the centroid of the half-disk

$$x^2 + y^2 \leq r^2, \qquad y \geq 0$$

by appealing to Pappus's theorem.

SOLUTION Since the half-disk is symmetric about the y-axis, we know that $\overline{x} = 0$. All we need is $\overline{y}$.

If we revolve the half-disk about the x-axis, we obtain a solid ball of volume $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. The area of the half-disk is $\frac{1}{2}\pi r^2$. By Pappus's theorem

$$\tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3 = 2\pi \overline{y}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi r^2\right).$$

Simple division gives $\overline{y} = 4r/3\pi$. ❑

Remark Centroids of solids of revolution are introduced in Project 6.4. ❑

EXERCISES 6.4

Exercises 1–14. Sketch the region bounded by the curves. Locate the centroid of the region and find the volume generated by revolving the region about each of the coordinate axes.

1. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 4.$ **2.** $y = x^3, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 2.$

3. $y = x^2, \quad y = x^{1/3}.$ **4.** $y = x^3, \quad y = \sqrt{x}.$

5. $y = 2x, \quad y = 2, \quad x = 3.$ **6.** $y = 3x, \quad y = 6, \quad x = 1.$

7. $y = x^2 + 2, \quad y = 6, \quad x = 0.$

8. $y = x^2 + 1, \quad y = 1, \quad x = 3.$

9. $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} = 1, \quad x + y = 1.$

10. $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}, \quad x + y = 1.$

11. $y = x^2, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 1, \quad x = 2.$

12. $y = x^{1/3}, \quad y = 1, \quad x = 8.$

13. $y = x, \quad x + y = 6, \quad y = 1.$

14. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad x = 3.$

Exercises 15–24 Locate the centroid of the bounded region determined by the curves.

15. $y = 6x - x^2, \quad y = x.$ **16.** $y = 4x - x^2, \quad y = 2x - 3.$

17. $x^2 = 4y, \quad x - 2y + 4 = 0.$

18. $y = x^2, \quad 2x - y + 3 = 0.$

19. $y^3 = x^2, \quad 2y = x.$ **20.** $y^2 = 2x, \quad y = x - x^2.$

21. $y = x^2 - 2x, \quad y + 6x - x^2.$

22. $y = 6x - x^2, \quad x + y = 6.$

23. $x + 1 = 0, \quad x + y^2 = 0.$

24. $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} = \sqrt{a}, \quad x = 0, \quad y = 0.$

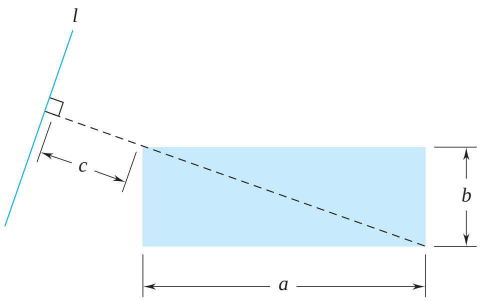
25. Let Ω be the annular region (ring) formed by the circles

$$x^2 + y^2 = \tfrac{1}{4} \qquad x^2 + y^2 = 4.$$

(a) Locate the centroid of Ω. (b) Locate the centroid of the first-quadrant part of Ω. (c) Locate the centroid of the upper half of Ω.

26. The ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ encloses a region of area πab. Locate the centroid of the upper half of the region.

27. The rectangle in the accompanying figure is revolved about the line marked l. Find the volume of the resulting solid.



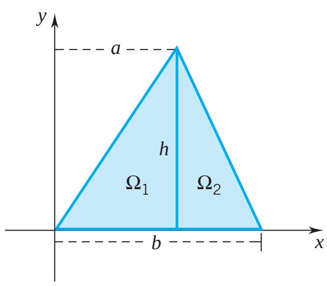
28. In Example 2 of this section you saw that the centroid of the triangle in Figure 6.4.5 is at the point $\left(\frac{1}{3}b, \frac{1}{3}h\right)$.

(a) Verify that the line segments that join the centroid to the vertices divide the triangle into three triangles of equal area.

(b) Find the distance d from the centroid of the triangle to the hypotenuse.

(c) Find the volume generated by revolving the triangle about the hypotenuse.

29. The triangular region in the figure is the union of two right triangles Ω_1, Ω_2. Locate the centroid: (a) of Ω_1, (b) of Ω_2, (c) of the entire region.



30. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the entire triangular region of Exercise 29. (a) about the x-axis; (b) about the y-axis.

31. (a) Find the volume of the ice-cream cone of Figure A. (A right circular cone topped by a solid hemisphere.)

(b) Find $\overline{x}$ for the region Ω in Figure B.

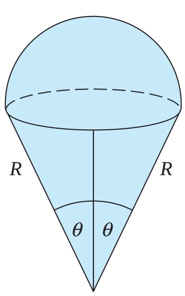


Figure A

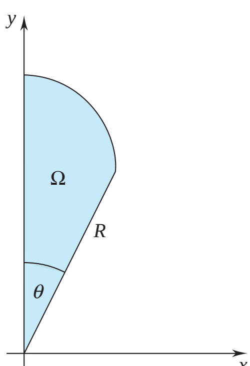
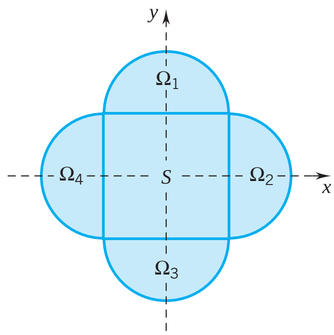


Figure B

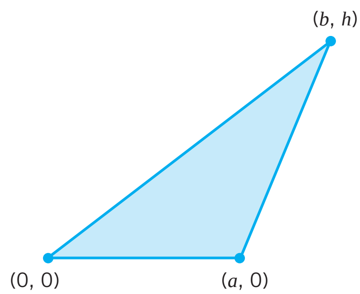
32. The region Ω in the accompanying figure consists of a square S of side $2r$ and four semidisks of radius r. Locate the centroid of each of the following.

(a) Ω. (b) Ω_1. (c) $S \cup \Omega_1$. (d) $S \cup \Omega_3$.
(e) $S \cup \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_3$. (f) $S \cup \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_2$.
(g) $S \cup \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_2 \cup \Omega_3$.



33. Give an example of a region that does not contain its centroid.

34. The centroid of a triangular region can be located without integration. Find the centroid of the region shown in the accompanying figure by applying Principles 1 and 2. Then verify that this point $\overline{x}, \overline{y}$ lies on each median of the triangle, two-thirds of the distance from the vertex to the opposite side.



35. Use a graphing utility to draw the graphs of $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$ and $y = x^3$ for $x \geq 0$. Let Ω be the region bounded by the two curves. Use a CAS to find:

(a) the area of Ω.

(b) the centroid of Ω; plot the centroid.

(c) the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis.

(d) the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

36. Exercise 35 with $y = x^2 - 2x + 4$ and $y = 2x + 1$.

37. Use a graphing utility to draw the graphs of $y = 16 - 8x$ and $y = x^4 - 5x^2 + 4$. Let Ω be the region bounded by the two curves. Use a CAS to find:

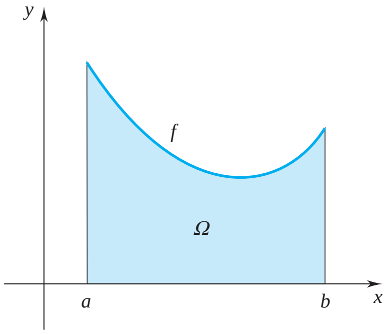
(a) the area of Ω. (b) the centroid of Ω.

38. Exercise 37 with $y = 2 + \sqrt{x+2}$ and $y = \frac{1}{6}(5x^2 + 3x - 2)$.

■ PROJECT 6.4 Centroid of a Solid of Revolution

If a solid is *homogeneous* (constant mass density), then the center of mass depends only on the shape of the solid and is called the *centroid*. In general, determination of the centroid of a solid requires triple integration. (Chapter 17.) However, if the solid is a solid of revolution, then the centroid can be found by one-variable integration.

Let Ω be the region shown in the figure and let T be the solid generated by revolving Ω around the x-axis. By symmetry, the centroid of T is on the x-axis. Thus the centroid of T is determined solely by its x-coordinate $\overline{x}$.



Problem 1. Show that $\overline{x}V = \int_a^b \pi x[f(x)]^2\,dx$ where V is the volume of T.

HINT: Use the following principle: if a solid of volume V consists of a finite number of pieces with volumes $V_1, V_2, \ldots, V_n$ and the pieces have centroids $\overline{x}_1, \overline{x}_2, \ldots, \overline{x}_n$, then $\overline{x}V = \overline{x}_1V_1 + \overline{x}_2V_2 + \cdots + \overline{x}_nV_n$.

Now revolve Ω around the y-axis and let S be the resulting solid. By symmetry, the centroid of S lies on the y-axis and is determined solely by its y-coordinate $\overline{y}$.

Problem 2. Show that $\overline{y}V = \int_a^b \pi x[f(x)]^2 dx$ where V is the volume of S.

Problem 3. Use the results in Problems 1 and 2 to locate the centroid of each of the following solids:

(a) A solid cone of base radius r and height h.

(b) A ball of radius r.

(c) The solid generated by revolving about the x-axis the first-quadrant region bounded by the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ and the coordinate axes.

(d) The solid generated by revolving the region below the graph of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, $x \in [0, 1]$, (i) about the x-axis; (ii) about the y-axis.

(e) The solid generated by revolving the region below the graph of $f(x) = 4 - x^2$, $x \in [0, 2]$, (i) about the x-axis; (ii) about the y-axis.

■ 6.5 THE NOTION OF WORK

We begin with a constant force F directed along some line that we call the x-axis. By convention we view F as positive if it acts in the direction of increasing x and negative if it acts in the direction of decreasing x. (Figure 6.5.1)

Figure 6.5.1

Suppose now that an object moves along the x-axis from $x = a$ to $x = b$ subject to this constant force F. The *work* done by F during the displacement is by definition the *force times the displacement:*

(6.5.1) $$\boxed{W = F \cdot (b - a).}$$

It is not hard to see that, if F acts in the direction of the motion, then $W > 0$, but if F acts against the motion, then $W < 0$. Thus, for example, if an object slides off a table and falls to the floor, then the work done by gravity is positive (earth's gravity points down). But if an object is lifted from the floor and raised to tabletop level, then the work done by gravity is negative. However, the work done by the hand that lifts the object is positive.

To repeat, if an object moves from $x = a$ to $x = b$ subject to a constant force F, then the work done by F is the constant value of F times $b - a$. What is the work done by F if F does not remain constant but instead varies continuously as a function of x? As you would expect, we then define the work done by F as the *average value of F times $b - a$*:

(6.5.2) $$\boxed{W = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.}$$ (Figure 6.5.2)

Figure 6.5.2

Hooke's Law

You can sense a variable force in the action of a steel spring. Stretch a spring within its elastic limit and you feel a pull in the opposite direction. The greater the stretching, the harder the pull of the spring. Compress a spring within its elastic limit and you feel a push against you. The greater the compression, the harder the push. According to Hooke's law (Robert Hooke, 1635–1703), the force exerted by the spring can be written

$$F(x) = -kx$$

where k is a positive number, called *the spring constant*, and x is the displacement from the equilibrium position. The minus sign indicates that the spring force always acts in the direction opposite to the direction in which the spring has been deformed (the force always acts so as to restore the spring to its equilibrium state).

Remark Hooke's law is only an approximation, but it is a good approximation for small displacements. In the problems that follow, we assume that the restoring force of the spring is given by Hooke's law. ❑

Example 1 A spring of natural length L, compressed to length $\frac{7}{8}L$, exerts a force F_0.

(a) Find the work done by the spring in restoring itself to natural length.

(b) What work must be done to stretch the spring to length $\frac{11}{10}L$?

SOLUTION Place the spring on the x-axis so that the equilibrium point falls at the origin. View compression as a move to the left. (See Figure 6.5.3.)

Our first step is to determine the spring constant. Compressed $\frac{1}{8}L$ units to the left, the spring exerts a force F_0. Thus, by Hooke's law

$$F_0 = F\left(-\tfrac{1}{8}L\right) = -k\left(-\tfrac{1}{8}L\right) = \tfrac{1}{8}kL.$$

Therefore $k = 8F_0/L$. The force law for this spring reads

$$F(x) = -\left(\frac{8F_0}{L}\right)x.$$

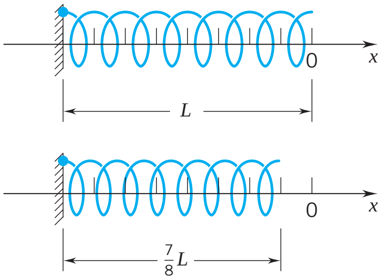


Figure 6.5.3

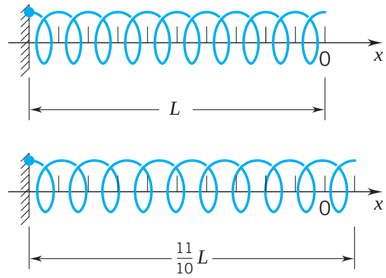


Figure 6.5.4

(a) To find the work done by this spring in restoring itself to equilibrium, we integrate $F(x)$ from $x = -\frac{1}{8}L$ to $x = 0$:

$$W = \int_{-L/8}^{0} F(x)\,dx = \int_{-L/8}^{0} -\left(\frac{8F_0}{L}\right) x\,dx = -\frac{8F_0}{L}\left[\frac{x^2}{2}\right]_{-L/8}^{0} = \frac{LF_0}{16}.$$

(b) We refer to Figure 6.5.4. To stretch the spring, we must counteract the force of the spring. The force exerted by the spring when stretched x units is

$$F(x) = -\left(\frac{8F_0}{L}\right)x.$$

To counter this force, we must apply the opposite force

$$-F(x) = \left(\frac{8F_0}{L}\right)x.$$

The work we must do to stretch the spring to length $\frac{11}{10}L$ can be found by integrating $-F(x)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \frac{1}{10}L$:

$$W = \int_{0}^{L/10} -F(x)\,dx = \int_{0}^{L/10} \left(\frac{8F_0}{L}\right) x\,dx = \frac{8F_0}{L}\left[\frac{x^2}{2}\right]_{0}^{L/10} = \frac{LF_0}{25}. \quad ❑$$

Units The unit of work is the work done by a unit force which displaces an object a unit distance in the direction of the force. If force is measured in *pounds* and distance is measured in *feet*, then the work is given in *foot-pounds*. In the SI system force is measured in *newtons*, distance is measured in *meters*, and work is given in *newton-meters*. These are called *joules*. There are other units used to quantify work, but for our purposes foot-pounds and joules are sufficient.†

Example 2 Stretched $\frac{1}{3}$ meter beyond its natural length, a certain spring exerts a restoring force with a magnitude of 10 newtons. What work must be done to stretch the spring an additional $\frac{1}{3}$ meter?

SOLUTION Place the spring on the x-axis so that the equilibrium point falls at the origin. View stretching as a move to the right and assume Hooke's law: $F(x) = -kx$.

When the spring is stretched $\frac{1}{3}$ meter, it exerts a force of -10 newtons (10 newtons to the left). Therefore, $-10 = -k(\frac{1}{3})$ and $k = 30$.

†The term "*newton*" deserves definition. In general, force is measured by the acceleration that it imparts. The definition of a *newton* of force is made on that basis; namely, a force is said to measure 1 *newton* if it acts in the positive direction and imparts an acceleration of 1 meter per second per second to a mass of 1 kilogram.

To find the work necessary to stretch the spring an additional $\frac{1}{3}$ meter, we integrate the opposite force $-F(x) = 30x$ from $x = \frac{1}{3}$ to $x = \frac{2}{3}$:

$$W = \int_{1/3}^{2/3} 30x\,dx = 30\left[\tfrac{1}{2}x^2\right]_{1/3}^{2/3} = 5 \text{ joules.} \quad ❑$$

Counteracting the Force of Gravity

To lift an object we must counteract the force of gravity. Therefore, the work required to lift an object is given by the equation

(6.5.3) $$\boxed{\text{work} = (\text{weight of the object}) \times (\text{distance lifted}).^{\dagger}}$$

If an object is lifted from level $x = a$ to level $x = b$ and the weight of the object varies continuously with x—say the weight is $w(x)$—then the work done by the lifting force is given by the integral

(6.5.4) $$\boxed{W = \int_a^b w(x)\,dx.}$$

This is just a special case of (6.5.2).

Example 3 A 150-pound bag of sand is hoisted from the ground to the top of a 50-foot building by a cable of negligible weight. Given that sand leaks out of the bag at the rate of 0.75 pounds for each foot that the bag is raised, find the work required to hoist the bag to the top of the building.

SOLUTION Once the bag has been raised x feet, the weight of the bag has been reduced to $150 - 0.75x$ pounds. Therefore

$$W = \int_0^{50} (150 - 0.75x)\,dx = \left[150x - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.75)x^2\right]_0^{50}$$

$$= 150(50) - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.75)(50)^2 = 6562.5 \text{ foot-pounds} \quad ❑$$

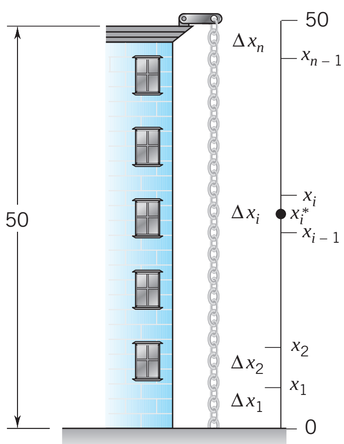


Figure 6.5.5

Example 4 What is the work required to hoist the sandbag of Example 3 given that the cable weighs 1.5 pounds per foot?

SOLUTION To the work required to hoist the sandbag of Example 3, which we found to be 6562.5 foot-pounds, we must add the work required to hoist the cable.

Instead of trying to apply (6.5.4), we go back to fundamentals. We partition the interval [0,50] as in Figure 6.5.5 and note that the ith piece of cable weighs $1.5\Delta x_i$ pounds and is approximately $50 - x_i^*$ feet from the top of the building. Thus the work required to lift this piece to the top is approximately

$$(1.5)\Delta x_i\left(50 - x_i^*\right) = 1.5\left(50 - x_i^*\right)\Delta x_i \text{ foot-pounds.}$$

† The weight of an object of mass m is the product mg where g is the magnitude of the acceleration due to gravity. The value of g is approximately 32 feet per second per second; in the metric system, approximately 9.8 meters per second per second.

It follows that the work required to hoist the entire cable is approximately

$$1.5(50 - x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + 1.5(50 - x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + 1.5(50 - x_n^*)\Delta x_n \text{ foot-pounds.}$$

This sum is a Riemann sum which, as max $\Delta x_i \to 0$, converges to the definite integral

$$\int_0^{50} 1.5(50 - x)\,dx = 1.5\Big[50x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2\Big]_0^{50} = 1875.$$

The work required to hoist the cable is 1875 foot-pounds.

The work required to hoist the sandbag by this cable is therefore

$$6562.5 \text{ foot-pounds} + 1875 \text{ foot-pounds} = 8437.5 \text{ foot-pounds.} \quad ❑$$

Remark We just found that a hanging 50-foot cable that weighs 1.5 pounds per foot can be lifted to the point from which it hangs by doing 1875 foot-pounds of work. This result can be obtained by viewing the weight of the entire cable as concentrated at the center of mass of the cable: The cable weighs $1.5 \times 50 = 75$ pounds. Since the cable is homogeneous, the center of mass is at the midpoint of the cable, 25 feet below the suspension point. The work required to lift 75 pounds a distance of 25 feet is

$$75 \text{ pounds} \times 25 \text{ feet} = 1875 \text{ foot-pounds.}$$

We have found that this simplification works. But how come? To understand why this simplification works, we reason as follows: Initially the cable hangs from a suspension point 50 feet high. The work required to lift the bottom half of the cable to the 25-foot level can be offset exactly by the work done in lowering the top half of the cable to the 25-foot level. Thus, without doing any work (on a net basis), we can place the entire cable at the 25-foot level and proceed from there. ❑

(NOTE: In Exercise 31 you are asked to extend the center-of-mass argument to the nonhomogeneous case.)

Pumping Out a Tank Figure 6.5.6 depicts a storage tank filled to within a feet of the top with some liquid. Assume that the liquid is homogeneous and weighs $\sigma^\dagger$ pounds per cubic foot. Suppose now that this storage tank is pumped out from above so that the level of the liquid drops to b feet below the top of the tank. How much work has been done?

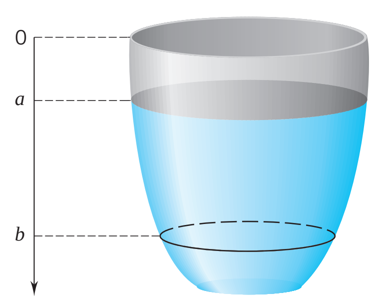


Figure 6.5.6

For each $x \in [a, b]$, we let

$$A(x) = \text{cross-sectional area } x \text{ feet below the top of the tank,}$$
$$s(x) = \text{distance that the } x\text{-level must be lifted.}$$

We let $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ be an arbitrary partition of $[a, b]$ and focus our attention on the ith subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$. (Figure 6.5.7) Taking x_i^* as an arbitrary point in the ith subinterval, we have

$$A(x_i^*)\Delta x_i = \text{approximate volume of the } i\text{th layer of liquid,}$$
$$\sigma A(x_i^*)\Delta x_i = \text{approximate weight of this volume,}$$
$$s(x_i^*) = \text{approximate distance this weight is to be lifted.}$$

†The symbol σ is the lowercase Greek letter "sigma."

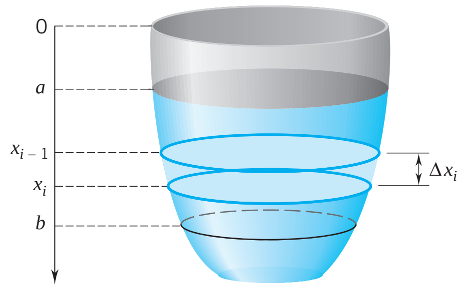


Figure 6.5.7

Therefore

$$\sigma s(x_i^*)A(x_i^*)\Delta x_i = \text{approximate work (weight} \times \text{distance) required to pump out this layer of liquid.}$$

The work required to pump out all the liquid can be approximated by adding up all these terms:

$$W \cong \sigma s(x_1^*)A(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + \sigma s(x_2^*)A(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + \sigma s(x_n^*)A(x_n^*)\Delta x_n.$$

The sum on the right is a Riemann sum. As $\|P\| \to 0$, such Riemann sums converge to give

(6.5.5)
$$\boxed{W = \int_a^b \sigma s(x)\, A(x)\, dx.}$$

We use this result in Example 5.

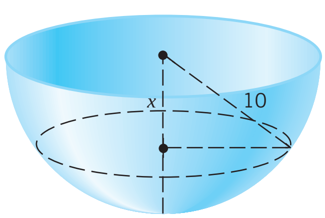


Figure 6.5.8

Example 5 A hemispherical water tank of radius 10 feet is being pumped out. (See Figure 6.5.8.) Find the work done in lowering the water level from 2 feet below the top of the tank to 4 feet below the top of the tank given that the pump is placed **(a)** at the top of the tank, (**b**) 3 feet above the top of the tank.

SOLUTION Take 62.5 pounds per cubic foot as the weight of water. From the figure you can see that the cross section x feet below the top of the tank is a disk of radius $\sqrt{100 - x^2}$. The area of this disk is

$$A(x) = \pi(100 - x^2).$$

In case (**a**) we have $s(x) = x$. Therefore

$$W = \int_2^4 62.5\pi x(100 - x^2)\, dx = 33{,}750\,\pi \cong 106,029 \text{ foot-pounds}.$$

In case (**b**) we have $s(x) = x + 3$. Therefore

$$W = \int_2^4 62.5\pi(x+3)(100 - x^2)dx = 67{,}750\,\pi \cong 212,843 \text{ foot-pounds.} \quad \square$$

Suggestion: Work out Example 5 without invoking Formula (6.5.5). Simply construct the pertinent Riemann sums.

EXERCISES 6.5

Exercises 1–2. An object moves along the x-axis coordinatized in feet under the action of a force of $F(x)$ pounds. Find the work done by F in moving the object from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

1. $F(x) = x(x^2+1)^2;\qquad a = 1, b = 4.$

2. $F(x) = 2x\sqrt{x+1};\qquad a = 3, b = 8.$

Exercises 3–6. An object moves along the x-axis coordinatized in meters under the action of a force of $F(x)$ newtons. Find the work done by F in moving the object from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

3. $F(x) = x\sqrt{x^2+7};\qquad a = 0, b = 3.$

4. $F(x) = x^2 + \cos 2x;\qquad a = 0, b = \frac{1}{4}\pi.$

5. $F(x) = x + \sin 2x;\qquad a = \frac{1}{6}\pi, b = \pi.$

6. $F(x) = \dfrac{\cos 2x}{\sqrt{2+\sin 2x}};\qquad a = 0, b = \dfrac{1}{2}\pi.$

7. A 600-pound force compresses a 10-inch automobile coil exactly 1 inch. How much work must be done to compress that coil to 5 inches?

8. Five foot-pounds of work are needed to stretch a certain spring from 1 foot beyond natural length to 3 feet beyond natural length. How much stretching beyond natural length is achieved by a 6-pound force?

9. Stretched 4 feet beyond natural length, a certain spring exerts a restoring force of 200 pounds. How much work is required to stretch the spring: (a) 1 foot beyond natural length? (b) $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet beyond natural length?

10. A certain spring has natural length L. Given that W is the work required to stretch the spring from L feet to $L + a$ feet, find the work required to stretch the spring: (a) from L feet to $L + 2a$ feet; (b) from L feet to $L + na$ feet; (c) from $L + a$ feet to $L + 2a$ feet; (d) from $L + a$ feet to $L + na$ feet.

11. Find the natural length of a spring given that the work required to stretch it from 2 feet to 2.1 feet is one-half of the work required to stretch it from 2.1 feet to 2.2 feet.

12. A cylindrical tank of height 6 feet standing on a base of radius 2 feet is full of water. Find the work required to pump the water: (a) to an outlet at the top of the tank; (b) to a level of 5 feet above the top of the tank. (Take the weight of water as 62.5 pounds per cubic foot.)

13. A cylindrical tank of radius 3 feet and length 8 feet is laid out horizontally. The tank is half full of oil that weighs 60 pounds per cubic foot.

(a) Verify that the work done in pumping out the oil to the top of the tank is given by the integral

$$960\int_0^3 (x+3)\sqrt{9-x^2}\,dx.$$

Evaluate this integral by evaluating the integrals

$$\int_0^3 x\sqrt{9-x^2}\,dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_0^3 \sqrt{9-x^2}\,dx$$

separately.

(b) What is the work required to pump out the oil to a level 4 feet above the top of the tank?

C **14.** Exercise 12 with the same tank laid out horizontally. Use a CAS for the integration.

15. Calculate the work required to hoist the cable of Example 4 by applying (6.5.4).

16. In the coordinate system used to derive (6.5.5) the liquid moves in the negative direction. How come W is positive?

17. A conical container (vertex down) of radius r feet and height h feet is full of liquid that weighs σ pounds per cubic foot. Find the work required to pump out the top $\frac{1}{2}h$ feet of liquid: (a) to the top of the tank; (b) to a level k feet above the top of the tank.

18. What is the work done by gravity if the tank of Exercise 17 is completely drained through an opening at the bottom?

19. A container of the form obtained by revolving the parabola $y = \frac{3}{4}x^2$, $0 \le x \le 4$, about the y-axis is full of water. Here x and y are given in meters. Find the work done in pumping the water: (a) to an outlet at the top of the tank; (b) to an outlet 1 meter above the top of the tank. Take $\sigma = 9800$.

20. The force of gravity exerted by the earth on a mass m at a distance r from the center of the earth is given by Newton's formula,

$$F = -G\frac{mM}{r^2},$$

where M is the mass of the earth and G is the universal gravitational constant. Find the work done by gravity in pulling a mass m from $r = r_1$ to $r = r_2$.

21. A chain that weighs 15 pounds per foot hangs to the ground from the top of an 80-foot building. How much work is required to pull the chain to the top of the building?

22. A box that weighs w pounds is dropped to the floor from a height of d feet. (a) What is the work done by gravity?

(b) Show that the work is the same if the box slides to the floor along a smooth inclined plane. (By saying "smooth," we are saying disregard friction.)

23. A 200-pound bag of sand is hoisted at a constant rate by a chain from ground level to the top of a building 100 feet high.

(a) How much work is required to hoist the bag if the weight of the chain is negligible?

(b) How much work is required to hoist the bag if the chain weighs 2 pounds per foot?

24. Suppose that the bag in Exercise 23 has a tear in the bottom and sand leaks out at a constant rate so that only 150 pounds of sand are left when the bag reaches the top.

(a) How much work is required to hoist the bag if the weight of the chain is negligible?

(b) How much work is required to hoist the bag if the chain weighs 2 pounds per foot?

25. A 100-pound bag of sand is lifted for 2 seconds at the rate of 4 feet per second. Find the work done in lifting the bag if the sand leaks out at the rate of half a pound per second.

26. A rope is used to pull up a bucket of water from the bottom of a 40-foot well. When the bucket is full of water, it weighs 40 pounds; however, there is a hole in the bottom, and the water leaks out at the constant rate of $\frac{1}{2}$ gallon for each 10 feet that the bucket is raised. Given that the weight of the rope is negligible, how much work is done in lifting the bucket to the top of the well? (Assume that water weighs 8.3 pounds per gallon.)

27. A rope of length l feet that weighs σ pounds per foot is lying on the ground. What is the work done in lifting the rope so that it hangs from a beam: (a) l feet high; (b) $2l$ feet high?

28. A load of weight w is lifted from the bottom of a shaft h feet deep. Find the work done given that the rope used to hoist the load weighs σ pounds per foot.

29. An 800-pound steel beam hangs from a 50-foot cable which weighs 6 pounds per foot. Find the work done in winding 20 feet of the cable about a steel drum.

30. A water container initially weighing w pounds is hoisted by a crane at the rate of n feet per second. What is the work done if the container is raised m feet and the water leaks out constantly at the rate of p gallons per second? (Assume that the water weighs 8.3 pounds per gallon.)

31. A chain of variable mass density hangs to the ground from the top of a building of height h. Show that the work required to pull the chain to the top of the building can be obtained by assuming that the weight of the entire chain is concentrated at the center of mass of the chain.

32. An object moves along the x-axis. At $x = a$ it has velocity v_a, and at $x = b$ it has velocity v_b. Use Newton's second law of motion, $F = ma = m(dv/dt)$, to show that

$$W = \int_a^b F(x)dx = \frac{1}{2}mv_b^2 - \frac{1}{2}mv_a^2.$$

The term $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ is called the *kinetic energy* of the object. What you have been asked to show is that *the work done on an object equals the change in kinetic energy of that object*. This is an important result.

33. An object of mass m is dropped from a height h. Express the impact velocity in terms of the gravitational constant g and the height h.

In Exercises 34–37 use the relation between work and kinetic energy given in Exercise 32.

34. The same amount of work on two objects results in the speed of one being three times that of the other. How are the masses of the two objects related?

35. A major league baseball weighs 5 oz. How much work is required to throw a baseball at a speed of 95 mph? (The ball's mass is its weight in pounds divided by 32 ft /sec^2, the acceleration due to gravity.)

36. How much work is required to increase the speed of a 2000-pound vehicle from 30 mph to 55 mph?

37. The speed of an earth satellite at an altitude of 100 miles is approximately 17,000 mph. How much work is required to launch a 1000-lb satellite into a 100-mile orbit?

(Power) Power is *work per unit time*. Suppose an object moves along the x-axis under the action of a force F. The work done by F in moving the object from $x = a$ to arbitrary x is given by the integral

$$W = \int_a^x F(u)du.$$

Viewing position as a function of time, setting $x = x(t)$, we have

$$P = \frac{dW}{dt} = F(x(t))\frac{dx}{dt} = F[x(t)]\, v(t).$$

This is called the *power* expended by the force F. If force is measured in pounds, distance in feet, and time in seconds, then power is given in foot-pounds per second. If force is measured in newtons, distance in meters, and time in seconds, then power is given in joules per second. These are called *watts*. Commonly used in engineering is the term *horsepower*:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ horsepower} &= 550 \text{ foot-pounds per second} \\ &= 746 \text{ watts.} \end{aligned}$$

38. (a) Assume constant acceleration. What horsepower must an engine produce to accelerate a 3000-pound truck from 0 to 60 miles per hour (88 feet per second) in 15 seconds along a level road?

(b) What horsepower must the engine produce if the road rises 4 feet for every 100 feet of road?

HINT: Integration is not required to answer these questions.

39. A cylindrical tank set vertically with height 10 feet and radius 5 feet is half-filled with water. Given that a 1-horsepower pump can do 550 foot-pounds of work per second, how long will it take a $\frac{1}{2}$-horsepower pump:

(a) to pump the water to an outlet at the top of the tank?

(b) to pump the water to a point 5 feet above the top of the tank?

40. A storage tank in the form of a hemisphere topped by a cylinder is filled with oil that weighs 60 pounds per cubic foot. The hemisphere has a 4-foot radius; the height of the cylinder is 8 feet.

(a) How much work is required to pump the oil to the top of the tank?

(b) How long would it take a $\frac{1}{2}$ -horsepower motor to empty out the tank?

41. Show that *the rate of change of the kinetic energy of an object is the power of the force expended on it.*

■ *6.6 FLUID FORCE

If you pour oil into a container of water, you'll see that the oil soon rises to the top. Oil weighs less than water.

For any fluid, the weight per unit volume is called the *weight density* of the fluid. We'll denote this by the Greek letter σ.

An object submerged in a fluid experiences a *compressive force that acts at right angles to the surface of the body exposed to the fluid*. (It is to counter these compressive forces that submarines have to be built so structurally strong.)

Fluid in a container exerts a downward force on the base of the container. What is the magnitude of this force? It is the weight of the column of fluid directly above it. (Figure 6.6.1.) If a container with base area A is filled to a depth h by a fluid of weight density σ, the downward force on the base of the container is given by the product

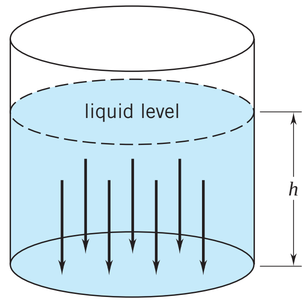


Figure 6.6.1

(6.6.1)
$$\boxed{F = \sigma h A.}$$

Fluid force acts not only on the base of the container but also on the walls of the container. In Figure 6.6.2, we have depicted a vertical wall standing against a body of liquid. (Think of it as the wall of a container or as a dam at the end of a lake.) We want to calculate the force exerted by the liquid on this wall.

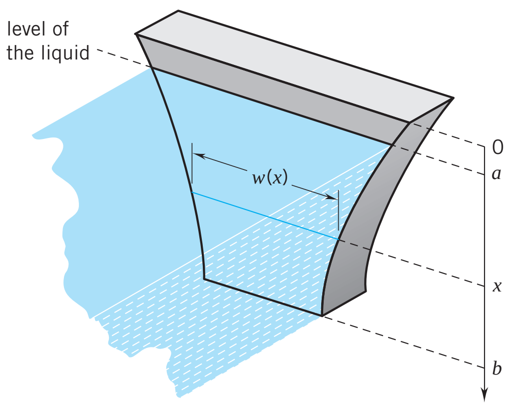


Figure 6.6.2

As in the figure, we assume that the liquid extends from depth a to depth b, and we let $w(x)$ denote the width of the wall at depth x. A partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$ of small norm subdivides the wall into n narrow horizontal strips. (See Figure 6.6.3.)

We can estimate the force on the ith strip by taking x_i^* as the midpoint of $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$. Then

$$w(x_i^*) = \text{the approximate width of the } i\text{th strip}$$

and

$$w(x_i^*)\Delta x_i = \text{the approximate area of the } i\text{th strip}.$$

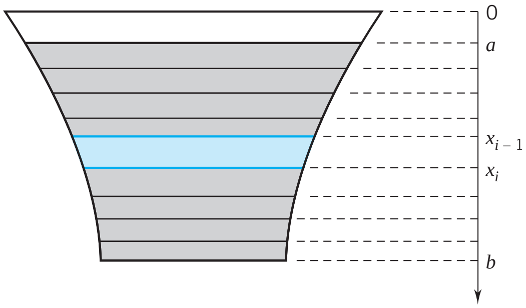


Figure 6.6.3

Since this strip is narrow, all the points of the strip are approximately at depth x_i^*. Thus, using (6.6.1), we can estimate the force on the ith strip by the product

$$\sigma x_i^* w(x_i^*)\Delta x_i.$$

Adding up all these estimates, we have an estimate for the force on the entire wall:

$$F \cong \sigma x_i^* w(x_i^*)\Delta x_1 + \sigma x_2^* w(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + \sigma x_n^* w(x_n^*)\Delta x_n.$$

The sum on the right is a Riemann sum for the integral

$$\int_a^b \sigma x w(x)\, dx.$$

As $\|P\| \to 0$, such Riemann sums converge to that integral. Thus we have

(6.6.2)

$$\boxed{\text{fluid force against the wall} = \int_a^b \sigma x w(x)\, dx.}$$

The Weight Density of Water The weight density σ of water is approximately 62.5 pounds per cubic foot; equivalently, about 9800 newtons per cubic meter. We'll use these values in carrying out computations.

Example 1 A cylindrical water main 6 feet in diameter is laid out horizontally. (Figure 6.6.4) Given that the main is capped half-full, calculate the fluid force on the cap.

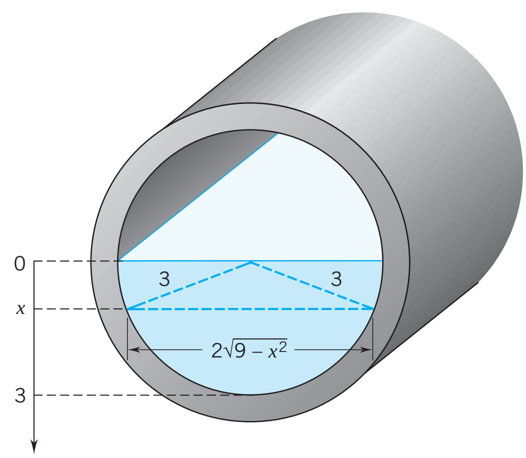


Figure 6.6.4

SOLUTION Here $\sigma = 62.5$ pounds per cubic foot. From the figure we see that $w(x) = 2\sqrt{9 - x^2}$. The fluid force on the cap can be calculated as follows:

$$F = \int_0^3 (62.5)x(2\sqrt{9 - x^2})\,dx = 62.5\int_0^3 2x\sqrt{9 - x^2}dx = 1125 \text{ pounds.} \quad \square$$

Example 2 A metal plate in the form of a trapezoid is affixed to a vertical dam as in Figure 6.6.5. The dimensions shown are in meters. Calculate the fluid force on the plate taking the weight density of water as 9800 newtons per cubic meter.

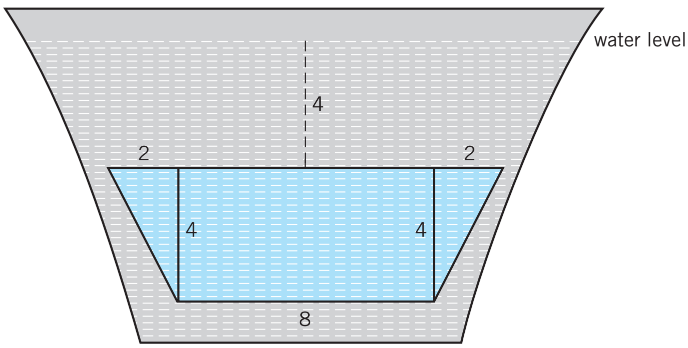


Figure 6.6.5

SOLUTION First we find the width of the plate x meters below the water level. By similar triangles (see Figure 6.6.6),

$$t = \tfrac{1}{2}(8 - x) \qquad \text{so that} \qquad w(x) = 8 + 2t = 16 - x.$$

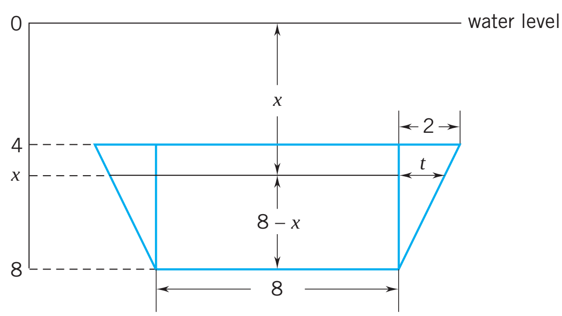


Figure 6.6.6

The fluid force against the plate is

$$\int_4^8 9800x(16 - x)\,dx = 9800\int_4^8 (16x - x^2)\,dx$$

$$= 9800\left[8x^2 - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_4^8 \cong 2{,}300{,}000 \text{ newtons.} \quad \square$$

EXERCISES *6.6

1. A rectangular plate 8 feet by 6 feet is submerged vertically in a tank of water, an 8-foot edge at the surface of the water. Find the force of the water on each side of the plate.

2. A square plate 6 feet by 6 feet is submerged vertically in a tank of water, one edge parallel to the surface of the water. Calculate the fluid force on each side of the plate given that the center of the plate is 4 feet below the surface of the water.

3. A vertical dam at the end of a reservoir is in the form of an isosceles trapezoid: 100 meters across at the surface of the water, 60 feet across at the bottom. Given that the reservoir is 20 meters deep, calculate the force of the water on the dam.

4. A square metal plate 5 meters by 5 meters is affixed to the lowermost portion of the dam of Exercise 3. What is the force of the water on the plate?

5. A plate in the form of an isosceles trapezoid 4 meters at the top, 6 meters at the bottom, and 3 meters high has its upper edge 10 meters below the top of the dam of Exercise 3. Calculate the force of the water on this plate.

6. A vertical dam in the shape of a rectangle is 1000 feet wide and 100 feet high. Calculate the force on the dam given that

(a) the water at the dam is 75 feet deep;
(b) the water at the dam is 50 feet deep.

7. Each end of a horizontal oil tank is elliptical, with horizontal axis 12 feet long, vertical axis 6 feet long. Calculate the force on an end when the tank is half full of oil that weighs 60 pounds per cubic foot.

8. Each vertical end of a vat is a segment of a parabola (vertex down) 8 feet across the top and 16 feet deep. Calculate the force on an end when the vat is full of liquid that weighs 70 pounds per cubic foot.

9. The vertical ends of a water trough are isosceles right triangles with the 90° angle at the bottom. Calculate the force on an end of the trough when the trough is full of water given that the legs of the triangle are 8 feet long.

10. The vertical ends of a water trough are isosceles triangles 5 feet across the top and 5 feet deep. Calculate the force on an end when the trough is full of water.

11. The ends of a water trough are semicircular disks with radius 2 feet. Calculate the force of the water on an end given that the trough is full of water.

12. The ends of a water trough have the shape of the parabolic segment bounded by $y = x^2 - 4$ and $y = 0$; the measurements are in feet. Assume that the trough is full of water and set up an integral that gives the force of the water on an end.

13. A horizontal cylindrical tank of diameter 8 feet is half full of oil that weighs 60 pounds per cubic foot. Calculate the force on an end.

14. Calculate the force on an end of the tank of Exercise 13 when the tank is full of oil.

15. A rectangular metal plate 10 feet by 6 feet is affixed to a vertical dam, the center of the plate 11 feet below water level. Calculate the force on the plate given that (a) the 10-foot sides are horizontal, (b) the 6-foot sides are horizontal.

16. A vertical cylindrical tank of diameter 30 feet and height 50 feet is full of oil that weighs 60 pounds per cubic foot. Calculate the force on the curved surface.

17. A swimming pool is 8 meters wide and 14 meters long. The pool is 1 meter deep at the shallow end and 3 meters deep at the deep end; the depth increases linearly from the shallow end to the deep end. Given that the pool is full of water, calculate

(a) the force of the water on each of the sides,
(b) the force of the water on each of the ends.

18. Relate the force on a vertical dam to the centroid of the submerged surface of the dam.

19. Two identical metal plates are affixed to a vertical dam. The centroid of the first plate is at depth h_1, and the centroid of the second plate is at depth h_2. Compare the forces on the two plates given that the two plates are completely submerged.

20. Show that if a plate submerged in a liquid makes an angle θ with the vertical, then the force on the plate is given by the formula

$$F = \int_a^b \sigma x\, w(x) \sec\theta \, dx$$

where σ is the weight density of the liquid and $w(x)$ is the width of the plate at depth x, $a \le x \le b$.

21. Find the force of the water on the bottom of the swimming pool of Exercise 17.

22. The face of a rectangular dam at the end of a reservoir is 1000 feet wide, 100 feet tall, and makes an angle of 30° with the vertical. Find the force of the water on the dam given that

(a) the water level is at the top of the dam;
(b) the water at the dam is 75 feet deep.

■ CHAPTER 6. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–4. Sketch the region bounded by the curves. Represent the area of the region by one or more definite integrals (a) in terms of x; (b) in terms of y. Find the area of the region using the more convenient representation.

1. $y = 2 - x^2, \;\; y = -x$

2. $y = x^3, \;\; y = -x, \;\; y = 1$

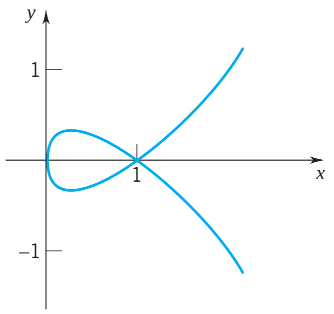
3. $y^2 = 2(x - 1), x - y = 5$

4. $y^3 = x^2, \;\; x - 3y + 4 = 0$

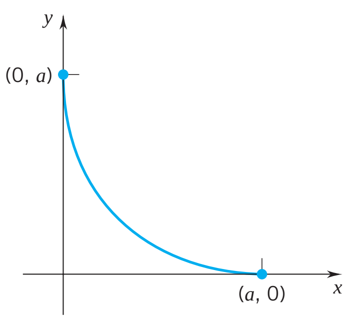
5. Find the area of the region bounded by $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ between consecutive intersections of the two graphs.

6. Find the area of the region bounded by $y = \tan^2 x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/4$.

7. The curve $y^2 = x(1 - x)^2$ is shown in the figure. Find the area of the loop.



8. The curve $x^{1/2} + y^{1/2} = a^{1/2}$ is shown in the figure. Find the area of the region bounded by the curve and the coordinate axes.



9. The base of a solid is the disk bounded by the circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are: (a) semicircles; (b) isosceles right triangles with hypotenuse on the xy-plane.

10. The base of a solid is the region bounded by the equilateral triangle of side length a with one vertex at the origin and altitude along the positive x-axis. Find the volume of the solid given that cross-sections perpendicular to the x-axis are squares with one side on the base of the solid.

11. The base of a solid is the region in the first quadrant bounded by the coordinate axes and the line $2x + 3y = 6$. Find the volume of the solid given that the cross sections perpendicular to the x-axis are semicircles.

12. A solid in the shape of a right circular cylinder of radius 3 has its base on the xy-plane. A wedge is cut from the cylinder by a plane that passes through a diameter of the base and is inclined to the xy-plane at an angle of 30°. Find the volume of the wedge.

Exercises 13–24. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves and find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the axis indicated.

13. $x^2 = 4y, \quad y = \frac{1}{2}x; \quad x$-axis.

14. $x^2 = 4y, \quad y = \frac{1}{2}x; \quad y$-axis.

15. $y = x^3, \quad y = 1, \quad x = 0; \quad x$-axis.

16. $y = x^3, \quad y = 1, \quad x = 0; \quad y$-axis.

17. $y = \sec x, \quad y = 0, \quad 0 \le x \le \pi/4; \quad x$-axis.

18. $y = \cos x, \quad -\pi/2 \le x \le \pi/2; \quad x$-axis.

19. $y = \sin x^2, \quad 0 \le x \le \sqrt{\pi}; \quad y$-axis.

20. $y = \cos x^2, \quad 0 \le x \le \sqrt{\pi/2}; \quad y$-axis.

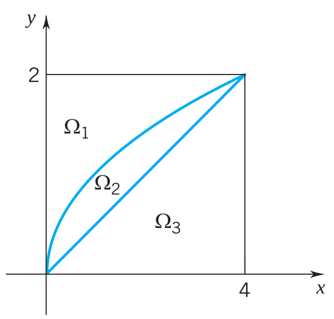
21. $y = 3x - x^2, \quad y = x^2 - 3x, \quad y$-axis.

22. $y = 3x - x^2, \quad y = x^2 - 3x, \quad x = 4.$

23. $y = (x - 1)^2, \quad y = x + 1; \quad x$-axis.

24. $y = x^2 - 2x, \quad y = 3x; \quad y$-axis.

Exercises 25–30. The figure shows three regions within the rectangle bounded by the coordinate axes and the lines $x = 4$ and $y = 2$. Express the volume obtained by revolving the indicated region about the indicated line: (a) by an integral with respect to x; (b) by an integral with respect to y. Calculate each volume by evaluating one of these integrals



25. Ω_1; the x-axis.

26. Ω_1; the line $y = 2$.

27. Ω_2; the line $x = -1$.

28. Ω_2; the y-axis.

29. Ω_3; the y-axis.

30. Ω_3; the line $y = -2$.

Exercises 31–34. Find the centroid of the bounded region determined by the curves.

31. $y = 4 - x^2, \quad y = 0.$

32. $y = x^3, \quad y = 4x.$

33. $y = x^2 - 4, \quad y = 2x - x^2.$

34. $y = \cos x, \quad y = 0$ from $x = -\pi/2$ to $x = \pi/2$.

Exercises 35–36. Sketch the region bounded by the curves. Determine the centroid of the region and the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region about each of the coordinate axes.

35. $y = x, \quad y = 2 - x^2, \quad 0 \le x \le 1$

36. $y = x^3, \quad x = y^3, \quad 0 \le x \le 1.$

37. An object moves along the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 3$ subject to a force $F(x) = x\sqrt{7 + x^2}$. Given that x is measured in feet and F in pounds, determine the work done by F.

38. One of the springs that supports a truck has a natural length of 12 inches. Given that a force of 8000 pounds compresses this spring $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, find the work required to compress the spring from 12 inches to 9 inches.

39. The work required to stretch a spring from 9 inches to 10 inches is 1.5 times the work needed to stretch the spring from 8 inches to 9 inches. What is the natural length of the spring?

40. A conical tank 10 feet deep and 8 feet across the top is filled with water to a depth of 5 feet. Find the work done in pumping the water (a) to an outlet at the top of the tank; (b) to an outlet 1 foot below the top of the tank. Take $\sigma = 62.5$ pounds per cubic foot as the weight density of water.

41. A 25-foot chain that weighs 4 pounds per foot hangs from the top of a tall building. How much work is required to pull the chain to the top of the building?

42. A bucket that weighs 5 pounds when empty rests on the ground filled with 60 pounds of sand. The bucket is lifted to the top of a 20 foot building at a constant rate. The sand leaks out of the bucket at a constant rate and only two-thirds of the sand remains when the bucket reaches the top. Find the work done in lifting the bucket of sand to the top of the building.

43. A spherical oil tank of radius 10 feet is half full of oil that weighs 60 pounds per cubic foot. Find the work required to pump the oil to an outlet at the top of the tank.

44. A rectangular fish tank has length 1 meter, width $\frac{1}{2}$ meter, depth $\frac{1}{2}$ meter. Given that the tank is full of water, find

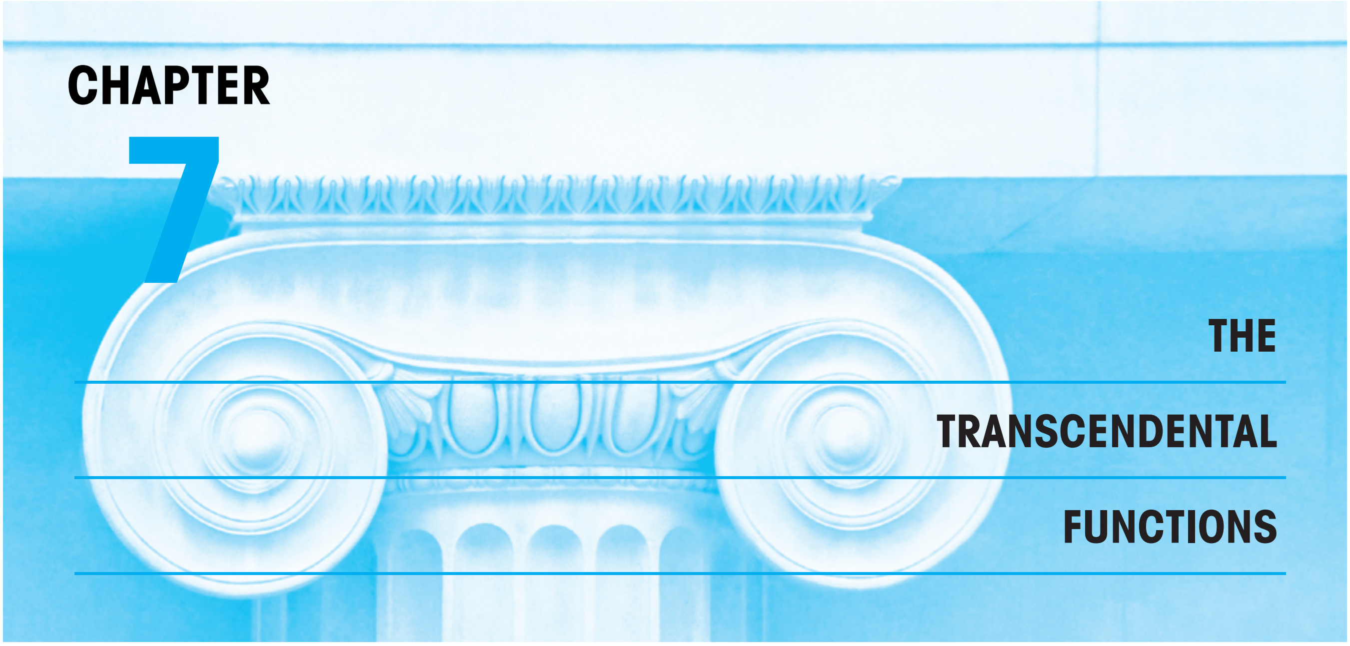
(a) the force of the water on each of the sides of the tank;
(b) the force of the water on the bottom of the tank.

Take the weight density of water as 9800 newtons per cubic meter.

45. A vertical dam is in the form of an isosceles trapezoid 300 meters across the top, 200 meters across the bottom, 50 meters high.

(a) What is the force of the water on the face of the dam when the water level is even with the top of the dam?
(b) What is the force of the water on the dam when the water level is 10 meters below the the top of the dam?

Take the weight density of water as 9800 newtons per cubic meter.



CHAPTER 7 THE TRANSCENDENTAL FUNCTIONS

Some real numbers satisfy polynomial equations with integer coefficients:

$$\tfrac{3}{5} \text{ satisfies the equation } \quad 5x - 3 = 0;$$

$$\sqrt{2} \text{ satisfies the equation } \quad x^2 - 2 = 0.$$

Such numbers are called *algebraic*. There are, however, numbers that are not algebraic, among them π. Such numbers are called *transcendental*.

Some functions satisfy polynomial equations with polynomial coefficients:

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{\pi x + \sqrt{2}} \qquad \text{satisfies the equation} \qquad (\pi x + \sqrt{2})\, f(x) - x = 0;$$

$$f(x) = 2\sqrt{x} - 3x^2 \qquad \text{satisfies the equation} \qquad [\,f(x)]^2 + 6x^2 f(x) + (9x^4 - 4x) = 0.$$

Such functions are called *algebraic*. There are, however, functions that are not algebraic. Such functions are called *transcendental*. You are already familiar with some transcendental functions—the trigonometric functions. In this chapter we introduce other transcendental functions: the logarithm function, the exponential function, and the trigonometric inverses. But first, a little more on functions in general.

■ 7.1 ONE-TO-ONE FUNCTIONS; INVERSES

One-to-One Functions

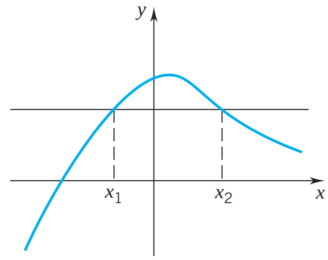
A function can take on the same value at different points of its domain. Constant functions, for example, take on the same value at all points of their domains. The quadratic function $f(x) = x^2$ takes on the same value at $-c$ as it does at c; so does the absolute-value function $g(x) = |x|$. The function

$$f(x) = 1 + (x - 3)(x - 5)$$

takes on the same value at $x = 5$ as it does at $x = 3$:

$$f(3) = 1, \qquad f(5) = 1.$$

Functions for which this kind of repetition *does not* occur are called *one-to-one functions*.



f is not one-to-one: $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$

Figure 7.1.1

DEFINITION 7.1.1

A function f is said to be *one-to-one* if there are no two distinct numbers in the domain of f at which f takes on the same value.

$$f(x_1) = f(x_2) \qquad \text{implies} \qquad x_1 = x_2.$$

Thus, if f is one-to-one and x_1, x_2 are different points of the domain, then

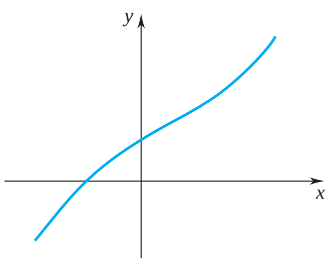
$$f(x_1) \neq f(x_2).$$

The functions

$$f(x) = x^3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(x) = \sqrt{x}$$

are both one-to-one. The cubing function is one-to-one because no two distinct numbers have the same cube. The square-root function is one-to-one because no two distinct nonnegative numbers have the same square root.

There is a simple geometric test, called the *horizontal line test*, which can be used to determine whether a function is one-to-one. Look at the graph of the function. If some horizontal line intersects the graph more than once, then the function is not one-to-one. (Figure 7.1.1) If, on the other hand, no horizontal line intersects the graph more than once, then the function is one-to-one (Figure 7.1.2).



f is one-to-one

Figure 7.1.2

Inverses

We begin with a theorem about one-to-one functions.

THEOREM 7.1.2

If f is a one-to-one function, then there is one and only one function g defined on the range of f that satisfies the equation

$$f(g(x)) = x \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the range of } f.$$

PROOF The proof is straightforward. If x is in the range of f, then f must take on the value x at some number. Since f is one-to-one, there can be only one such number. We have called that number $g(x)$. ❑

The function that we have named g in the theorem is called the *inverse* of f and is usually denoted by the symbol f^{-1}.

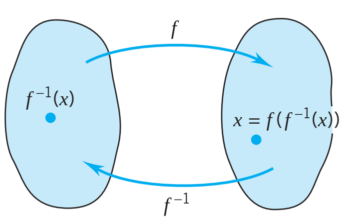


Figure 7.1.3

DEFINITION 7.1.3 INVERSE FUNCTION

Let f be a one-to-one function. The *inverse* of f, denoted by f^{-1}, is the unique function defined on the range of f that satisfies the equation

$$f(f^{-1}(x)) = x \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the range of } f. \qquad \text{(Figure 7.1.3)}$$

Remark The notation f^{-1} for the inverse function is standard, at least in the United States. Unfortunately, there is the danger of confusing f^{-1} with the reciprocal of f, that is, with $1/f(x)$. The "-1" in the notation for the inverse of f is *not an exponent*; $f^{-1}(x)$ *does not mean* $1/f(x)$. On those occasions when we want to express $1/f(x)$ using the exponent -1, we will write $[f(x)]^{-1}$. ❑

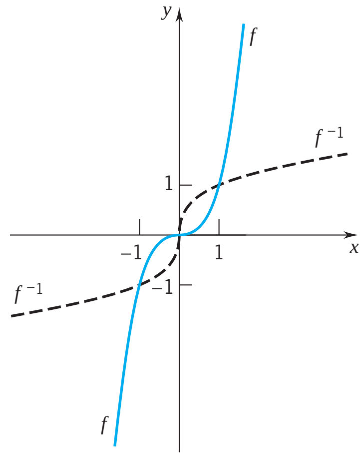


Figure 7.1.4

Example 1 You have seen that the cubing function

$$f(x) = x^3$$

is one-to-one. Find the inverse.

SOLUTION We set $y = f^{-1}(x)$ and apply f to both sides:

$$f(y) = x$$
$$y^3 = x \qquad (f \text{ is the cubing function})$$
$$y = x^{1/3}.$$

Recalling that $y = f^{-1}(x)$, we have

$$f^{-1}(x) = x^{1/3}.$$

The inverse of the cubing function is the cube-root function. The graphs of $f(x) = x^3$ and $f^{-1}(x) = x^{1/3}$ are shown in Figure 7.1.4. ❑

Remark We set $y = f^{-1}(x)$ to avoid clutter. It is easier to work with a single letter y than with the expression $f^{-1}(x)$. ❑

Example 2 Show that the linear function

$$y = 3x - 5$$

is one-to-one. Then find the inverse.

SOLUTION To show that f is one-to-one, let's suppose that

$$f(x_1) = f(x_2).$$

Then

$$3x_1 - 5 = 3x_2 - 5$$
$$3x_1 = 3x_2$$
$$x_1 = x_2.$$

The function is one-to-one since

$$f(x_1) = f(x_2) \qquad \text{implies} \qquad x_1 = x_2.$$

(Viewed geometrically, the result is obvious. The graph is a line with slope 3 and as such cannot be intersected by any horizontal line more than once.)

Now let's find the inverse. To do this, we set $y = f^{-1}(x)$ and apply f to both sides:

$$f(y) = x$$
$$3y - 5 = x$$
$$3y = x + 5$$
$$y = \tfrac{1}{3}x + \tfrac{5}{3}.$$

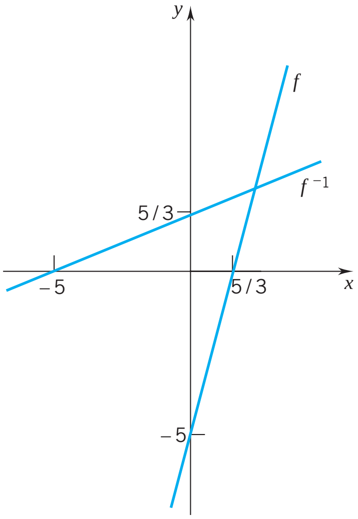


Figure 7.1.5

Recalling that $y = f^{-1}(x)$, we have

$$f^{-1}(x) = \tfrac{1}{3}x + \tfrac{5}{3}.$$

The graphs of f and f^{-1} are shown in Figure 7.1.5. ❑

Example 3 Find the inverse of the function

$$f(x) = (1 - x^3)^{1/5} + 2.$$

SOLUTION We set $y = f^{-1}(x)$ and apply f to both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &= x \\ (1 - y^3)^{1/5} + 2 &= x \\ (1 - y^3)^{1/5} &= x - 2 \\ 1 - y^3 &= (x - 2)^5 \\ y^3 &= 1 - (x - 2)^5 \\ y &= [1 - (x - 2)]^5]^{1/3}. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling that $y = f^{-1}(x)$, we have

$$f^{-1}(x) = [1 - (x - 2)^5]^{1/3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Show that the function

$$F(x) = x^5 + 2x^3 + 3x - 4$$

is one-to-one.

SOLUTION Setting $F(x_1) = F(x_2)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1^5 + 2x_1^3 + 3x_1 - 4 &= x_2^5 + 2x_2^3 + 3x_2 - 4 \\ x_1^5 + 2x_1^3 + 3x_1 &= x_2^5 + 2x_2^3 + 3x_2. \end{aligned}$$

How to go on from here is far from clear. The algebra becomes complicated.

Here is another approach. Differentiating F, we get

$$F'(x) = 5x^4 + 6x^2 + 3.$$

Note that $F'(x) > 0$ for all x and therefore F is an increasing function. Increasing functions are clearly one-to-one: $x_1 < x_2$ implies $F(x_1) < F(x_2)$, and so $F(x_1)$ cannot possibly equal $F(x_2)$. ❑

Remark In Example 4 we used the sign of the derivative to test for one-to-oneness. For functions defined on an interval, the sign of the derivative and one-to-oneness can be summarized as follows: functions with positive derivative are increasing functions and therefore one-to-one; functions with negative derivative are decreasing functions and therefore one-to-one. ❑

Suppose that the function f has an inverse. Then, by definition, f^{-1} satisfies the equation

(7.1.4) $$\boxed{f(f^{-1}(x)) = x \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the range of } f.}$$

It is also true that

(7.1.5) $$\boxed{f^{-1}(f(x)) = x \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the domain of } f.}$$

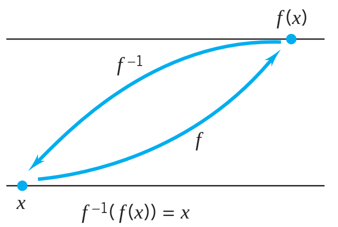


Figure 7.1.6

PROOF Take x in the domain of f and set $y = f(x)$. Since y is the range of f,

$$f(f^{-1}(y)) = y.$$

This means that

$$f(f^{-1}(f(x))) = f(x)$$

and tells us that f takes on the same value at $f^{-1}(f(x))$ as it does at x. With f one-to-one, this can only happen if

$$f^{-1}(f(x)) = x. \quad ❑$$

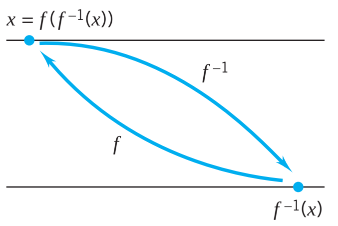


Figure 7.1.7

Equation (7.1.5) tells us that f^{-1} undoes what is done by f:

f takes x to $f(x)$; $\qquad f^{-1}$ takes $f(x)$ back to x. (Figure 7.1.6)

Equation (7.1.4) tells us that f undoes what is done by f^{-1}:

f^{-1} takes x to $f^{-1}(x)$; $\qquad f$ takes $f^{-1}(x)$ back to x. (Figure 7.1.7)

It is evident from this that

$$\boxed{\text{domain of } f^{-1} = \text{range of } f \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{range of } f^{-1} = \text{domain of } f.}$$

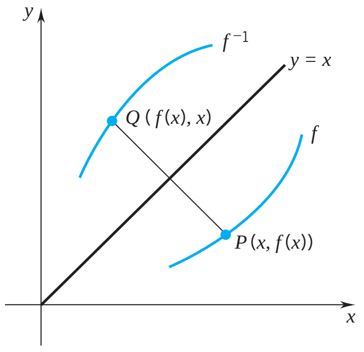


Figure 7.1.8

The Graphs of f and f^{-1}

The graph of f consists of points $(x, f(x))$. Since f^{-1} takes on the value x at $f(x)$, the graph of f^{-1} consists of points $(f(x), x)$. If, as usual, we use the same scale on the y-axis as we do on the x-axis, then the points $(x, f(x))$ and $(f(x), x)$ are symmetric with respect to the line $y = x$. (Figure 7.1.8.) Thus we see that

$$\boxed{\text{the graph of } f^{-1} \text{ is the graph of } f \text{ reflected in the line } y = x.}$$

This idea pervades all that follows.

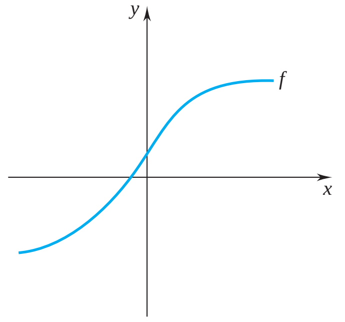


Figure 7.1.9

Example 5 Sketch the graph of f^{-1} for the function f graphed in Figure 7.1.9.

SOLUTION First we draw the line $y = x$. Then we reflect the graph of f in that line. The result is shown in Figure 7.1.10. ❑

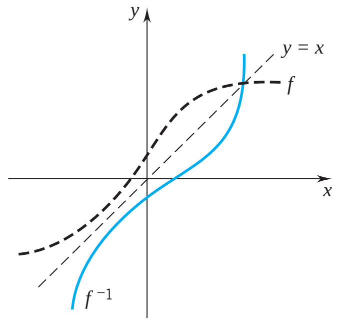


Figure 7.1.10

Continuity and Differentiability of Inverses

Let f be a one-to-one function. Then f has an inverse, f^{-1}. Suppose, in addition, that f is continuous. Since the graph of f has no "holes" or "gaps," and since the graph of f^{-1} is simply the reflection of the graph of f in the line $y = x$, we can conclude that the graph of f^{-1} also has no holes or gaps; namely, we can conclude that f^{-1} is also continuous. We state this result formally; a proof is given in Appendix B.3.

THEOREM 7.1.6

Let f be a one-to-one function defined on an open interval I. If f is continuous, then its inverse f^{-1} is also continuous.

Now suppose that f is differentiable. Is f^{-1} necessarily differentiable? Let's assume so for the moment.

From the definition of inverse, we know that

$$f(f^{-1}(x)) = x \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in the range of } f.$$

Differentiation gives

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(f^{-1}(x))] = 1.$$

However, by the chain rule,

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(f^{-1}(x))] = f'(f^{-1}(x))(f^{-1})'(x).$$

Therefore

$$f'(f^{-1}(x))(f^{-1})'(x) = 1,$$

and, if $f'(f^{-1}(x)) \neq 0$,

(7.1.7) $$\boxed{(f^{-1})'(x) = \frac{1}{f'(f^{-1}(x))}.}$$

For a geometric understanding of this relation, we refer you to Figure 7.1.11.

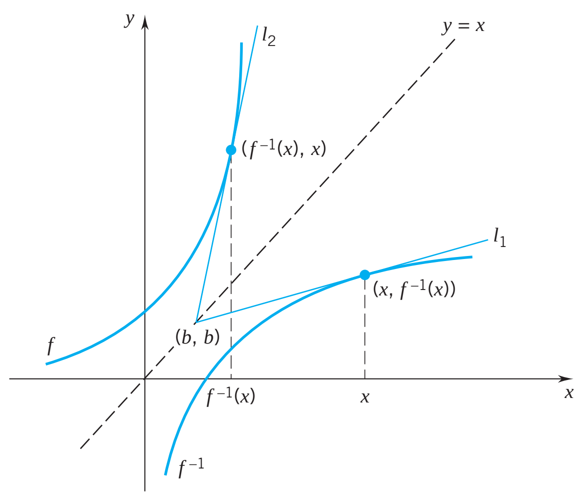


Figure 7.1.11

The graphs of f and f^{-1} are reflections of each other in the line $y = x$. The tangent lines l_1 and l_2 are also reflections of each other. From the figure,

$$(f^{-1})'(x) = \text{slope of } l_1 = \frac{f^{-1}(x) - b}{x - b}, \qquad f'(f^{-1}(x)) = \text{slope of } l_2 = \frac{x - b}{f^{-1}(x) - b},$$

so that $(f^{-1})'(x)$ and $f'(f^{-1}(x))$ are indeed reciprocals.

The figure shows two tangents intersecting the line $y = x$ at a common point. If the tangents have slope 1, they do not intersect that line at all. However, in that case, both graphs have slope 1, the derivatives are 1, and the relation holds. One more observation. We have assumed that $f'(f^{-1}(x)) \neq 0$. If $f'(f^{-1}(x)) = 0$, then the tangent to the graph of f at $(f^{-1}(x), x)$ is horizontal, and the tangent to the graph of f^{-1} at $(x, f^{-1}(x))$ is vertical. In this case f^{-1} is not differentiable at x.

Formula (7.1.7) has an unwieldy look about it; too many fussy little symbols. The following characterization of $(f^{-1})'$ may be easier to understand.

THEOREM 7.1.8

Let f be a one-to-one function differentiable on an open interval I. Let a be a point of I and let $f(a) = b$. If $f'(a) \neq 0$, then f^{-1} is differentiable at b and

$$(f^{-1})'(b) = \frac{1}{f'(a)}.$$

This theorem, proven in Appendix B.3, places our discussion on a firm footing.

Remark Note that $a = f^{-1}(b)$, and therefore

$$(f^{-1})'(b) = \frac{1}{f'(a)} = \frac{1}{f'(f^{-1}(b))}.$$

This is simply (7.1.7) at $x = b$. ❑

We rely on Theorem 7.1.8 when we cannot solve for f^{-1} explicitly and yet we want to evaluate $(f^{-1})'$ at a particular number.

Example 6 The function $f(x) = x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x$ is differentiable and has range $(-\infty, \infty)$.

(a) Show that f is one-to-one.

(b) Calculate $(f^{-1})'(9)$.

SOLUTION

(a) To show that f is one-to-one, we note that

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2} > 0 \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

Thus f is an increasing function and therefore one-to-one.

(b) To calculate $(f^{-1})'(9)$, we want to find a number a for which $f(a) = 9$. Then $(f^{-1})'(9)$ is simply $1/f'(a)$.

The assumption $f(a) = 9$ gives

$$a^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}a = 9$$

and tells us $a = 2$. (We must admit that this example was contrived so that the algebra would be easy to carry out.) Since $f'(2) = 3(2)^2 + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{25}{2}$, we conclude that

$$(f^{-1})'(9) = \frac{1}{f'(2)} = \frac{1}{\frac{25}{2}} = \frac{2}{25}. \quad ❑$$

Finally, a few words about differentiating inverses in the Leibniz notation. Suppose that y is a one-to-one function of x:

$$y = y(x).$$

Then x is a one-to-one function of y:

$$x = x(y).$$

Moreover,

$$y(x(y)) = y \qquad \text{for all } y \text{ in the domain of } x.$$

Assuming that y is a differentiable function of x and x is a differentiable function of y, we have

$$y'(x(y))x'(y) = 1,$$

which, if $y'(x(y)) \neq 0$, gives

$$x'(y) = \frac{1}{y'(x(y))}.$$

In the Leibniz notation, we have

(7.1.9) $$\boxed{\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{1}{dy/dx}.}$$

The rate of change of x with respect to y is the reciprocal of the rate of change of y with respect to x.

Where are these rates of change to be evaluated? Given that $y(a) = b$, the right side is to be evaluated at $x = a$ and the left side at $y = b$.

EXERCISES 7.1

Exercises 1–26. Determine whether or not the function is one-to-one and, if so, find the inverse. If the function has an inverse, give the domain of the inverse.

1. $f(x) = 5x + 3.$

2. $f(x) = 3x + 5.$

3. $f(x) = 1 - x^2.$

4. $f(x) = x^5.$

5. $f(x) = x^5 + 1.$

6. $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 2.$

7. $f(x) = 1 + 3x^3.$

8. $f(x) = x^3 - 1.$

9. $f(x) = (1 - x)^3.$

10. $f(x) = (1 - x)^4.$

11. $f(x) = (x + 1)^3 + 2.$

12. $f(x) = (4x - 1)^3.$

13. $f(x) = x^{3/5}.$

14. $f(x) = 1 - (x - 2)^{1/3}.$

15. $f(x) = (2 - 3x)^3.$

16. $f(x) = (2 - 3x^2)^3.$

17. $f(x) = \sin x,\ x \in \left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$

18. $f(x) = \cos x,\ x \in \left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$

19. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}.$

20. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 - x}.$

21. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}.$

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{|x|}.$

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^3 + 1}.$

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 - x} - 1.$

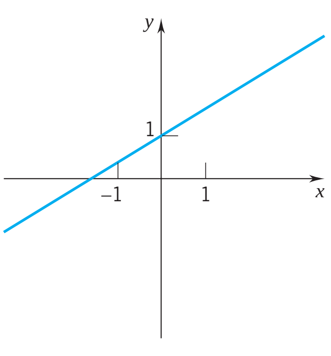
25. $f(x) = \dfrac{x + 2}{x + 1}.$

26. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(x + 1)^{2/3}}.$

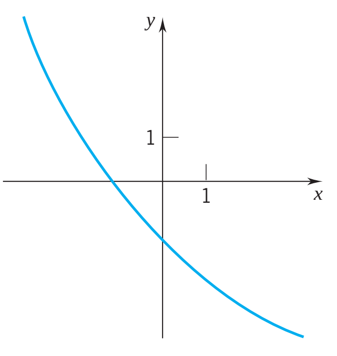
27. What is the relation between a one-to-one function f and the function $(f^{-1})^{-1}$?

Exercises 28–31. Sketch the graph of the inverse of the function graphed below.

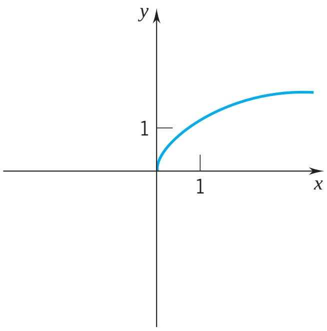
28.



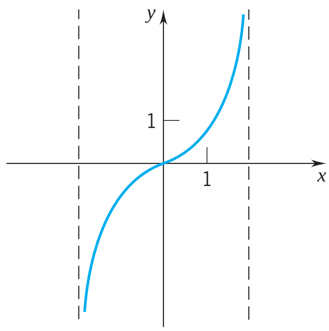
29.



30.



31.



32. (a) Show that the composition of two one-to-one functions, f and g, is one-to-one.
(b) Express $(f \circ g)^{-1}$ in terms of f^{-1} and g^{-1}.

33. (a) Let $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + x^2 + kx$, k a constant. For what values of k is f one-to-one?
(b) Let $g(x) = x^3 + kx^2 + x$, k a constant. For what values of k is g one-to-one?

34. (a) Suppose that f has an inverse, $f(2) = 5$, and $f'(2) = -\frac{3}{4}$. What is $(f^{-1})'(5)$?
(b) Suppose that f has an inverse, $f(2) = -3$, and $f'(2) = \frac{2}{3}$. If $g = 1/f^{-1}$, what is $g'(-3)$?

Exercises 35–44. Verify that f has an inverse and find $(f^{-1})'(c)$.

35. $f(x) = x^3 + 1; \quad c = 9.$

36. $f(x) = 1 - 2x - x^3; \quad c = 4.$

37. $f(x) = x + 2\sqrt{x}, \quad x > 0; \quad c = 8.$

38. $f(x) = \sin x, -\frac{1}{2}\pi < x < \frac{1}{2}\pi; \quad c = -\frac{1}{2}.$

39. $f(x) = 2x + \cos x; \quad c = \pi.$

40. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+3}{x-1}, \quad x > 1; \quad c = 3.$

41. $f(x) = \tan x, -\frac{1}{2}\pi < x < \frac{1}{2}\pi; \quad c = \sqrt{3}.$

42. $f(x) = x^5 + 2x^3 + 2x; \quad c = -5.$

43. $f(x) = 3x - \dfrac{1}{x^3}, \quad x > 0; \quad c = 2.$

44. $f(x) = x - \pi + \cos x, \quad 0 < x < 2\pi; \quad c = -1.$

Exercises 45–47. Find a formula for $(f^{-1})'(x)$ given that f is one-to-one and its derivative satisfies the equation given.

45. $f'(x) = f(x).$

46. $f'(x) = 1 + [f(x)]^2.$

47. $f'(x) = \sqrt{1 - [f(x)]^2}.$

48. Set

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3 - 1, & x < 0 \\ x^2, & x \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

(a) Sketch the graph of f and verify that f is one-to-one.
(b) Find f^{-1}.

For Exercises 49 and 50, let $f(x) = \dfrac{ax+b}{cx+d}$.

49. (a) Show that f is one-to-one iff $ad - bc \neq 0$.
(b) Suppose that $ad - bc \neq 0$. Find f^{-1}.

50. Determine the constants a, b, c, d for which $f = f^{-1}$.

51. Set

$$f(x) = \int_2^x \sqrt{1 + t^2}\, dt.$$

(a) Show that f has an inverse.
(b) Find $(f^{-1})'(0)$.

52. Set

$$f(x) = \int_1^{2x} \sqrt{16 + t^4}\, dt.$$

(a) Show that f has an inverse.
(b) Find $(f^{-1})'(0)$.

53. Let f be a twice differentiable one-to-one function and set $g = f^{-1}$.
(a) Show that

$$g''(x) = -\frac{f''[g(x)]}{(f'[g(x)])^3}.$$

(b) Suppose that the graph of f is concave up (down). What can you say then about the graph of f^{-1}?

54. Let P be a polynomial of degree n.
(a) Can P have an inverse if n is even? Support your answer.
(b) Can P have an inverse if n is odd? If so, give an example. Then give an example of a polynomial of odd degree that does not have an inverse.

55. The function $f(x) = \sin x$, $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$, is one-to-one, differentiable, and its derivative does not take on the value 0. Thus f has a differentiable inverse $y = f^{-1}(x)$. Find dy/dx by setting $f(y) = x$ and differentiating implicitly. Express the result as a function of x.

56. Exercise 55 for $f(x) = \tan x$, $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$.

Exercises 57–60. Find f^{-1}.

57. $f(x) = 4 + 3\sqrt{x-1}, \quad x \geq 1.$

58. $f(x) = \dfrac{3x}{2x+5}, \quad x \neq -5/2.$

59. $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{8 - x} + 2.$

60. $f(x) = \dfrac{1-x}{1+x}.$

Exercises 61–64. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f. Show that f is one-to-one by consideration of f'. Draw a figure that displays both the graph of f and the graph of f^{-1}.

61. $f(x) = x^3 + 3x + 2.$

62. $f(x) = x^{3/5} - 1.$

63. $f(x) = 4\sin 2x, \quad -\pi/4 \leq x \leq \pi/4.$

64. $f(x) = 2 - \cos 3x, \quad 0 \leq x \leq \pi/3.$

■ 7.2 THE LOGARITHM FUNCTION, PART I

You have seen that if n is an integer different from -1, then the function $f(x) = x^n$ is a derivative:

$$x^n = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}\right).$$

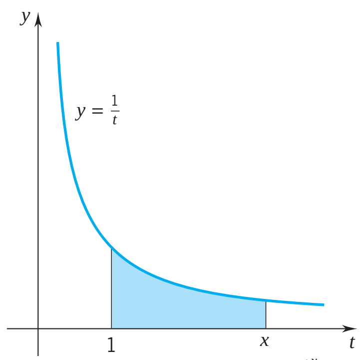
This formula breaks down if $n = -1$, for then $n + 1 = 0$ and the right side of the formula is meaningless.

No function that we have studied so far has derivative $x^{-1} = 1/x$. However, we can easily construct one: set

$$L(x) = \int_1^x \frac{1}{t}\,dt.$$

From Theorem 5.3.5 we know that L is differentiable and

$$L'(x) = \frac{1}{x} \qquad \text{for all } x > 0.$$



area of shaded region $= L(x) = \int_1^x \frac{dt}{t}$

Figure 7.2.1

This function has a remarkable property that we'll get to in a moment. First some preliminary observations: Make sure you understand them.

(1) L is defined for all $x > 0$.

(2) Since

$$L'(x) = \frac{1}{x} \qquad \text{for all } x > 0,$$

L increases on $(0, \infty)$.

(3) $L(x)$ is negative if $0 < x < 1$, $\quad L(1) = 0$, $\quad L(x)$ is positive for $x > 1$.

(4) For $x > 1$, $L(x)$ gives the area of the region shaded in Figure 7.2.1.

Now to the remarkable property.

THEOREM 7.2.1

For all positive numbers a and b,

$$L(ab) = L(a) + L(b).$$

PROOF Set $b > 0$. For all $x > 0$, $L(xb)$ and $L(x)$ have the same derivative:

$$\frac{d}{dx}[L(xb)] = \underbrace{\frac{1}{xb}\cdot b}_{\text{chain rule}} = \frac{1}{x} = \frac{d}{dx}[L(x)].$$

Therefore the two functions differ by some constant C:

$$L(xb) = L(x) + C. \qquad \text{(Theorem 4.2.4)}$$

We can evaluate C by setting $x = 1$:

$$L(b) = L(1 \cdot b) = \underbrace{L(1) + C}_{L(1)=0} = C.$$

It follows that, for all $x > 0$,

$$L(x \cdot b) = L(x) + L(b).$$

We get the statement made in the theorem by setting $x = a$. ❑

From Theorem 7.2.1 and the fact that $L(1) = 0$, it readily follows that

(7.2.2)

(1) for all positive numbers b, $\quad L(1/b) = -L(b)$

and

(2) for all positive numbers a and b, $\quad L(a/b) = L(a) - L(b)$.

PROOF

(1) $0 = L(1) = L(b \cdot 1/b) = L(b) + L(1/b)$ and therefore $L(1/b) = -L(b)$;

(2) $L(a/b) = L(a \cdot 1/b) = L(a) + L(1/b) = L(a) - L(b)$. ❑

We now prove that

(7.2.3)

for all positive numbers a and all rational numbers p/q,

$$L(a^{p/q}) = \frac{p}{q}L(a).$$

PROOF You have seen that $d[L(x)]/dx = 1/x$. By the chain rule,

$$\frac{d}{dx}[L(x^{p/q})] = \frac{1}{x^{p/q}}\frac{d}{dx}(x^{p/q}) \underset{(3.7.1)}{=} \frac{1}{x^{p/q}}\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)x^{(p/q)-1} = \frac{p}{q}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{p}{q}L(x)\right].$$

Since $L(x^{p/q})$ and $\dfrac{p}{q}L(x)$ have the same derivative, they differ by a constant:

$$L(x^{p/q}) = \frac{p}{q}L(x) + C.$$

Since both functions are zero at $x = 1$, $C = 0$. Therefore $L(x^{p/q}) = \dfrac{p}{q}L(x)$ for all $x > 0$. We get the theorem as stated by setting $x = a$. ❑

The domain of L is $(0, \infty)$. What is the range of L?

(7.2.4) The range of L is $(-\infty, \infty)$.

PROOF Since L is continuous on $(0, \infty)$, we know from the intermediate-value theorem that it "skips" no values. Thus, the range of L is an interval. To show that the interval is $(-\infty, \infty)$, we need only show that the interval is unbounded above and unbounded below. We can do this by taking M as an arbitrary positive number and showing that L takes on values greater than M and values less than $-M$.

Let M be an arbitrary positive number. Since

$$L(2) = \int_1^2 \frac{1}{t}\,dt$$

is positive (explain), we know that some positive multiple of $L(2)$ must be greater than M; namely, we know that there exists a positive integer n such that

$$nL(2) > M.$$

Multiplying this equation by -1, we have

$$-nL(2) < -M.$$

Since

$$nL(2) = L(2^n) \qquad \text{and} \qquad -nL(2) = L(2^{-n}), \tag{7.2.3}$$

we have

$$L(2^n) > M \qquad \text{and} \qquad L(2^{-n}) < -M.$$

This proves that the range of L is unbounded in both directions. Since the range of L is an interval, it must be $(-\infty, \infty)$, the set of all real numbers. ❑

The Number e

Since the range of L is $(-\infty, \infty)$ and L is an increasing function (and therefore one-to-one), we know that L takes on as a value every real number and it does so only once. In particular, there is one and only one real number at which L takes on the value 1. *This unique number is denoted throughout the world by the letter e*†.

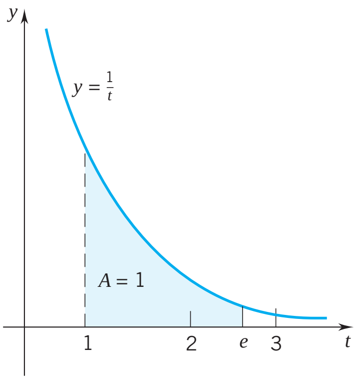


Figure 7.2.2

Figure 7.2.2 locates e on the number line: the area under the curve $y = 1/t$ from $t = 1$ to $t = e$ is exactly 1.

The Logarithm Function

Since

$$L(e) = \int_1^e \frac{1}{t}\,dt = 1,$$

we see from (7.2.3) that

(7.2.5)

$$\boxed{\text{for all rational numbers } p/q \qquad L(e^{p/q}) = \frac{p}{q}.}$$

The function that we have labeled L is known as the *natural logarithm function*, or more simply as the *logarithm function*, and from now on $L(x)$ will be written $\ln x$. Here are the arithmetic properties of the logarithm function that we have already established. Both a and b represent arbitrary positive real numbers.

(7.2.6)

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \ln(1) = 0, & \ln(e) = 1, \\ \ln(ab) = \ln a + \ln b, & \ln(1/b) = -\ln b, \\ \ln(a/b) = \ln a - \ln b, & \ln a^{p/q} = \dfrac{p}{q}\ln a. \end{array}}$$

† After the celebrated Swiss mathematician Leonhard Euler (1707–1783), considered by many the greatest mathematician of the eighteenth century.

The Graph of the Logarithm Function

You know that the logarithm function

$$\ln x = \int_1^x \frac{1}{t}\,dt$$

has domain $(0, \infty)$, range $(-\infty, \infty)$, and derivative

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{1}{x}.$$

For small x the derivative is large (near 0, the curve is steep); for large x the derivative is small (far out, the curve flattens out). At $x = 1$ the logarithm is 0 and its derivative $1/x$ is 1. [The graph crosses the x-axis at the point (1, 0), and the tangent line at that point is parallel to the line $y = x$.] The second derivative,

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(\ln x) = -\frac{1}{x^2},$$

is negative on $(0, \infty)$. (The graph is concave down throughout.) We have sketched the graph in Figure 7.2.3. The y-axis is a vertical asymptote:

$$\text{as } x \to 0^+, \qquad \ln x \to -\infty.$$

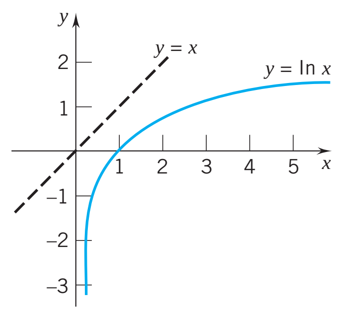


Figure 7.2.3

Example 1 We use upper and lower sums to estimate

$$\ln 2 = \int_1^2 \frac{dt}{t} \qquad \text{(Figure 7.2.4)}$$

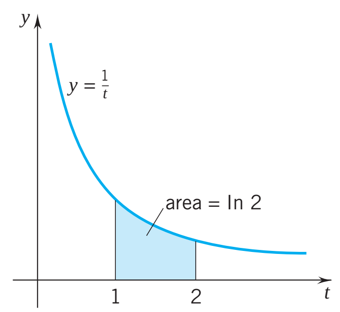


Figure 7.2.4

from the partition

$$P = \{1 = \tfrac{10}{10}, \tfrac{11}{10}, \tfrac{12}{10}, \tfrac{13}{10}, \tfrac{14}{10}, \tfrac{15}{10}, \tfrac{16}{10}, \tfrac{17}{10}, \tfrac{18}{10}, \tfrac{19}{10}, \tfrac{20}{10} = 2\}.$$

Using a calculator, we find that

$$L_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{10}\left(\tfrac{10}{11} + \tfrac{10}{12} + \tfrac{10}{13} + \tfrac{10}{14} + \tfrac{10}{15} + \tfrac{10}{16} + \tfrac{10}{17} + \tfrac{10}{18} + \tfrac{10}{19} + \tfrac{10}{20}\right)$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{11} + \tfrac{1}{12} + \tfrac{1}{13} + \tfrac{1}{14} + \tfrac{1}{15} + \tfrac{1}{16} + \tfrac{1}{17} + \tfrac{1}{18} + \tfrac{1}{19} + \tfrac{1}{20} > 0.668$$

and

$$U_f(P) = \tfrac{1}{10}\left(\tfrac{10}{10} + \tfrac{10}{11} + \tfrac{10}{12} + \tfrac{10}{13} + \tfrac{10}{14} + \tfrac{10}{15} + \tfrac{10}{16} + \tfrac{10}{17} + \tfrac{10}{18} + \tfrac{10}{19}\right)$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{10} + \tfrac{1}{11} + \tfrac{1}{12} + \tfrac{1}{13} + \tfrac{1}{14} + \tfrac{1}{15} + \tfrac{1}{16} + \tfrac{1}{17} + \tfrac{1}{18} + \tfrac{1}{19} < 0.719.$$

We know then that

$$0.668 < L_f(P) \le \ln 2 \le U_f(P) < 0.719.$$

The average of these two estimates,

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(0.668 + 0.719) = 0.6935,$$

is not far off. Rounded off to four decimal places, our calculator gives $\ln 2 \cong 0.6931$. ❑

Table 7.2.1 gives the natural logarithms of the integers 1 through 10 rounded off to the nearest hundredth.

■ **Table 7.2.1**

n	$\ln n$	n	$\ln n$
1	0.00	6	1.79
2	0.69	7	1.95
3	1.10	8	2.08
4	1.39	9	2.20
5	1.61	10	2.30

Example 2 Use the properties of logarithms and Table 7.2.1 to estimate the following:

(a) $\ln 0.2$. **(b)** $\ln 0.25$. **(c)** $\ln 2.4$. **(d)** $\ln 90$.

SOLUTION

(a) $\ln 0.2 = \ln \frac{1}{5} = -\ln 5 \cong -1.61.$ **(b)** $\ln 0.25 = \ln \frac{1}{4} = -\ln 4 \cong -1.39.$

(c) $\ln 2.4 = \ln \frac{12}{5} = \ln \frac{(3)(4)}{5} = \ln 3 + \ln 4 - \ln 5 \cong 0.88.$

(d) $\ln 90 = \ln [(9)(10)] = \ln 9 + \ln 10 \cong 4.50.$ ❑

Example 3 Estimate e on the basis of Table 7.2.1.

SOLUTION We know that $\ln e = 1$. From the table you can see that

$$3 \ln 3 - \ln 10 \cong 1.$$

The expression on the left can be written

$$\ln 3^3 - \ln 10 = \ln 27 - \ln 10 = \ln \tfrac{27}{10} = \ln 2.7.$$

This tells us that $\ln 2.7 \cong 1$ and therefore $e \cong 2.7.$ ❑

Remark It can be shown that e is an irrational number, in fact a transcendental number. The decimal expansion of e to twelve decimal places reads

$$e \cong 2.718281828459.^{\dagger}$$ ❑

† Exercise 66 in Section 12.6 guides you through a proof of the irrationality of e. A proof that e is transcendental is beyond the reach of this text.

EXERCISES 7.2

Exercises 1–10. Estimate the logarithm on the basis of Table 7.2.1; check your results on a calculator.

1. $\ln 20.$ **2.** $\ln 16.$

3. $\ln 1.6.$ **4.** $\ln 3^4.$

5. $\ln 0.1.$ **6.** $\ln 2.5.$

7. $\ln 7.2.$ **8.** $\ln \sqrt{630}.$

9. $\ln \sqrt{2}$ **10.** $\ln 0.4.$

11. Verify that the area under the curve $y = 1/x$ from $x = 1$ to $x = 2$ equals the area from $x = 2$ to $x = 4$, the area from $x = 3$ to $x = 6$, the area from $x = 4$ to $x = 8$, and, more generally, the area from $x = k$ to $x = 2k$. Draw some figures.

12. Verify that the area under the curve $y = 1/x$ from $x = 1$ to $x = m$ equals the area from $x = 2$ to $x = 2m$, the area from $x = 3$ to $x = 3m$, and, more generally, the area from $x = k$ to $x = km$.

13. Estimate

$$\ln 1.5 = \int_1^{1.5} \frac{dt}{t}$$

by using the approximation $\frac{1}{2}[L_f(P) + U_f(P)]$ with

$$P = \{1 = \tfrac{8}{8}, \tfrac{9}{8}, \tfrac{10}{8}, \tfrac{11}{8}, \tfrac{12}{8} = 1.5\}.$$

14. Estimate

$$\ln 2.5 = \int_1^{2.5} \frac{dt}{t}$$

by using the approximation $\frac{1}{2}[L_f(P) + U_f(P)]$ with

$$P = \{1 = \tfrac{4}{4}, \tfrac{5}{4}, \tfrac{6}{4}, \tfrac{7}{4}, \tfrac{8}{4}, \tfrac{9}{4}, \tfrac{10}{4} = 2.5\}.$$

15. Taking $\ln 5 \cong 1.61$, use differentials to estimate (a) $\ln 5.2$, (b) $\ln 4.8$, (c) $\ln 5.5$.

16. Taking $\ln 10 \cong 2.30$, use differentials to estimate (a) $\ln 10.3$, (b) $\ln 9.6$, (c) $\ln 11$.

Exercises 17–22. Solve the equation for x.

17. $\ln x = 2.$ **18.** $\ln x = -1.$

19. $(2 - \ln x) \ln x = 0.$ **20.** $\frac{1}{2} \ln x = \ln (2x - 1).$

21. $\ln [(2x + 1)(x + 2)] = 2 \ln (x + 2).$

22. $2 \ln (x + 2) - \frac{1}{2} \ln x^4 = 1.$

23. Show that

$$\lim_{x \to 1} \frac{\ln x}{x - 1} = 1.$$

HINT: Note that $\dfrac{\ln x}{x - 1} = \dfrac{\ln x - \ln 1}{x - 1}$ and interpret the limit as a derivative.

Exercises 24–25. Let n be a positive integer greater than 2. Draw relevant figures.

24. Find the greatest integer k for which

$$\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}+\cdots+\frac{1}{k}<\ln n.$$

25. Find the least integer k for which

$$\ln n<1+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}+\cdots+\frac{1}{k}.$$

Exercises 26–28. A function g is given. (i) Use the intermediate-value theorem to conclude that there is a number r in the indicated interval at which $g(r)=\ln r$. (ii) Use a graphing utility to draw a figure that displays both the graph of the logarithm and the graph of g on the indicated interval. Find r accurate to four decimal places.

26. $g(x)=2x-3$; $[1, 2]$.

27. $g(x)=\sin x$; $[2, 3]$.

28. $g(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2}$; $[1, 2]$.

Exercises 29–30. Estimate the limit numerically by evaluating the function at the indicated values of x. Then use a graphing utility to zoom in on the graph and justify your estimate.

29. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{\ln x}{x-1}$; $x=1\pm 0.5,\ 1\pm 0.1,\ 1\pm 0.01,\ 1\pm 0.001,\ 1\pm 0.0001.$

30. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0^+}\sqrt{x}\ln x$; $x=0.5,\ 0.1,\ 0.01,\ 0.001,\ 0.0001.$

■ 7.3 THE LOGARITHM FUNCTION, PART II

Differentiating and Graphing

We know that for $x>0$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln x)=\frac{1}{x}.$$

As usual, we differentiate composite functions by the chain rule. Thus

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\ln(1+x^2)]=\frac{1}{1+x^2}\frac{d}{dx}(1+x^2)=\frac{2x}{1+x^2}\qquad\text{for all real } x$$

and

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\ln(1+3x)]=\frac{1}{1+3x}\frac{d}{dx}(1+3x)=\frac{3}{1+3x}\qquad\text{for all } x>-\tfrac{1}{3}.$$

Example 1 Determine the domain and find $f'(x)$ for

$$f(x)=\ln(x\sqrt{4+x^2}).$$

SOLUTION For x to be in the domain of f, we must have $x\sqrt{4+x^2}>0$, and thus we must have $x>0$. The domain of f is the set of positive numbers.

Before differentiating f, we make use of the special properties of the logarithm:

$$f(x)=\ln(x\sqrt{4+x^2})=\ln x+\ln[(4+x^2)^{1/2}]=\ln x+\tfrac{1}{2}\ln(4+x^2).$$

From this we see that

$$f'(x)=\frac{1}{x}+\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{4+x^2}\cdot 2x=\frac{1}{x}+\frac{x}{4+x^2}=\frac{4+2x^2}{x(4+x^2)}.\quad ❑$$

Example 2 Sketch the graph of

$$f(x)=\ln|x|.$$

SOLUTION The function, defined at all $x\neq 0$, is an even function: $f(-x)=f(x)$ for all $x\neq 0$. The graph has two branches:

$$y=\ln(-x),\quad x<0\qquad\text{and}\qquad y=\ln x,\quad x>0.$$

Each branch is the mirror image of the other. (Figure 7.3.1.) ❑

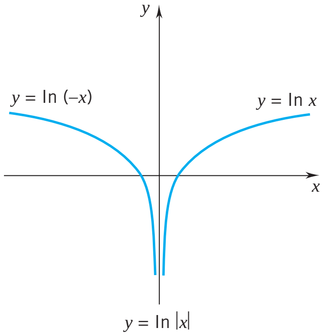


Figure 7.3.1

Example 3 (*Important*) Show that

(7.3.1) $$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x|) = \frac{1}{x} \qquad \text{for all} \quad x \neq 0.}$$

SOLUTION For $x > 0$,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x|) = \frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{1}{x}.$$

For $x < 0$, we have $|x| = -x > 0$, and therefore

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x|) = \frac{d}{dx}[\ln(-x)] = \frac{1}{-x}\frac{d}{dx}(-x) = \left(\frac{1}{-x}\right)(-1) = \frac{1}{x}. \quad ❑$$

Applying the chain rule, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln|1 - x^3|) = \frac{1}{1 - x^3}\frac{d}{dx}(1 - x^3) = \frac{-3x^2}{1 - x^3} = \frac{3x^2}{x^3 - 1}$$

and

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\ln\left|\frac{x-1}{x-2}\right|\right) = \frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x-1|) - \frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x-2|) = \frac{1}{x-1} - \frac{1}{x-2}.$$

Example 4 Set $f(x) = x \ln x$.

(a) Give the domain of f and indicate where f takes on the value 0. **(b)** On what intervals does f increase? decrease? **(c)** Find the extreme values of f. **(d)** Determine the concavity of the graph and give the points of inflection. **(e)** Sketch the graph of f.

SOLUTION Since the logarithm function is defined only for positive numbers, the domain of f is $(0, \infty)$. The function takes on the value 0 at $x = 1: f(1) = 1 \ln 1 = 0$.

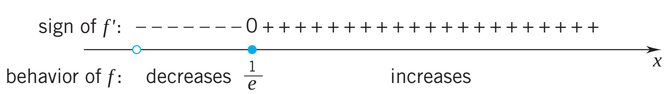
Differentiating f, we have

$$f'(x) = x \cdot \frac{1}{x} + \ln x = 1 + \ln x.$$

To find the critical points of f, we set $f'(x) = 0$:

$$1 + \ln x = 0, \qquad \ln x = -1, \qquad x = \frac{1}{e}. \qquad \text{(verify this)}$$

Since the logarithm is an increasing function, the sign chart for f' looks like this:



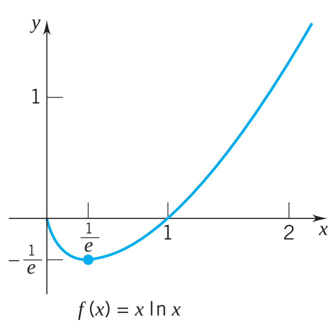


Figure 7.3.2

f decreases on $(0, 1/e]$ and increases on $[1/e, \infty)$. Therefore

$$f(1/e) = \frac{1}{e}\ln\left(\frac{1}{e}\right) = \frac{1}{e}(\ln 1 - \ln e) = -\frac{1}{e} \cong -\frac{1}{2.72} \cong -0.368$$

is a local minimum for f and the absolute minimum.

Since $f''(x) = 1/x > 0$ for $x > 0$, the graph of f is concave up throughout. There are no points of inflection.

You can verify numerically that $\lim_{x\to 0^+} x \ln x = 0$. Finally note that as $x \to \infty$, $x \ln x \to \infty$.

A sketch of the graph of f is shown in Figure 7.3.2. ❑

Example 5 Set $f(x) = \ln\left(\dfrac{x^4}{x-1}\right)$.

(a) Specify the domain of f. **(b)** On what intervals does f increase? decrease? **(c)** Find the extreme values of f. **(d)** Determine the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection. **(e)** Sketch the graph, specifying the asymptotes if any.

SOLUTION Since the logarithm function is defined only for positive numbers, the domain of f is the open interval $(1, \infty)$.

Making use of the special properties of the logarithm, we write

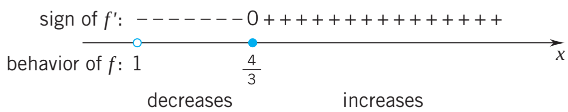
$$f(x) = \ln x^4 - \ln(x-1) = 4\ln x - \ln(x-1).$$

Differentiation gives

$$f'(x) = \frac{4}{x} - \frac{1}{x-1} = \frac{3x-4}{x(x-1)}$$

$$f''(x) = -\frac{4}{x^2} + \frac{1}{(x-1)^2} = -\frac{(x-2)(3x-2)}{x^2(x-1)^2}.$$

Since f is defined only for $x > 1$, we disregard all $x \le 1$. Note that $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 4/3$ (critical point) and we have:

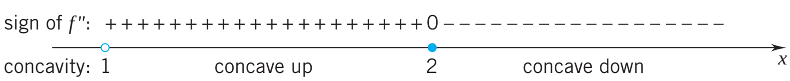


Thus f decreases on $(1, \frac{4}{3}]$ and increases on $[\frac{4}{3}, \infty)$. The number

$$f\left(\tfrac{4}{3}\right) = 4\ln 4 - 3\ln 3 \cong 2.25$$

is a local minimum and the absolute minimum. There are no other extreme values.

Testing for concavity: observe that $f''(x) = 0$ at $x = 2$. (We ignore $x = 2/3$ since $2/3$ is not part of the domain of f.) The sign chart for f'' looks like this:



The graph is concave up on $(1, 2)$ and concave down on $(2, \infty)$. The point

$$(2, f(2)) = (2, 4\ln 2) \cong (2, 2.77)$$

is a point of inflection, the only point of inflection.

Before sketching the graph, we note that the derivative

$$f'(x) = \frac{4}{x} - \frac{1}{x-1}$$

is very large negative for x close to 1 and very close to 0 for x large. This tells us that the graph is very steep for x close to 1 and very flat for x large. See Figure 7.3.3. The line $x = 1$ is a vertical asymptote: as $x \to 1^+$, $f(x) \to \infty$. ❑

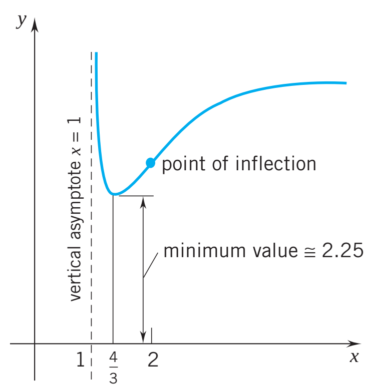


Figure 7.3.3

Integration

The integral counterpart of (7.3.1) takes the form

(7.3.2)
$$\boxed{\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \ln|x| + C.}$$

The relation is valid on every interval that does not include 0.

Integrals of the form

$$\int \frac{u'(x)}{u(x)}dx \qquad \text{with } u(x) \neq 0 \qquad \text{can be written} \qquad \int \frac{1}{u}\,du$$

by setting

$$u = u(x), \qquad du = u'(x)\,dx.$$

Example 6 Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{1-4x^3}\,dx$.

SOLUTION Up to a constant factor, x^2 is the derivative of $1-4x^3$. Therefore, we set

$$u = 1-4x^3, \qquad du = -12x^2 dx.$$

$$\int \frac{x^2}{1-4x^3}dx = -\tfrac{1}{12}\int \frac{du}{u} = -\tfrac{1}{12}\ln|u| + C = -\tfrac{1}{12}\ln|1-4x^3| + C. \quad \square$$

Example 7 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_1^2 \frac{6x^2+2}{x^3+x+1}\,dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = x^3+x+1, \quad du = (3x^2+1)\,dx.$

At $x = 1,\ u = 3$; at $x = 2,\ u = 11$.

$$\int_1^2 \frac{6x^2+2}{x^3+x+1}dx = 2\int_3^{11}\frac{du}{u} = 2\Big[\ln|u|\Big]_3^{11}$$

$$= 2(\ln 11 - \ln 3) = 2\ln\left(\tfrac{11}{3}\right). \quad \square$$

Here is an example of a different sort.

Example 8 Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{\ln x}{x}dx$.

SOLUTION Since $1/x$ is the derivative of $\ln x$, we set

$$u = \ln x, \qquad du = \frac{1}{x}\,dx.$$

This gives

$$\int \frac{\ln x}{x}dx = \int u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}u^2 + C = \tfrac{1}{2}(\ln x)^2 + C. \quad \square$$

Integration of the Trigonometric Functions

We repeat Table 5.6.1:

$\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x + C$	$\int \cos x\,dx = \sin x + C$
$\int \sec^2 x\,dx = \tan x + C$	$\int \csc^2 x\,dx = -\cot x + C$
$\int \sec x \tan x\,dx = \sec x + C$	$\int \csc x \cot x\,dx = -\csc x + C$

Now that you are familiar with the logarithm function, we can add four more basic formulas to the table:

(7.3.3)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}&\int \tan x\,dx = -\ln|\cos x| + C = \ln|\sec x| + C\\ &\int \cot x\,dx = \ln|\sin x| + C\\ &\int \sec x\,dx = \ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C\\ &\int \csc x\,dx = \ln|\csc x - \cot x| + C\end{aligned}}$$

The derivation of these formulas runs as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \tan x\,dx &= \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}dx \qquad (\text{set } u = \cos x, \quad du = -\sin x\,dx)\\ &= -\int \frac{du}{u} = -\ln|u| + C\\ &= -\ln|\cos x| + C = \ln\left|\frac{1}{\cos x}\right| + C\\ &= \ln|\sec x| + C.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\int \cot x\,dx &= \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}dx \qquad (\text{set } u = \sin x, \quad du = \cos x\,dx)\\ &= \int \frac{du}{u} = \ln|u| + C = \ln|\sin x| + C.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sec x\,dx &\overset{\dagger}{=} \int \sec x \frac{\sec x + \tan x}{\sec x + \tan x}dx\\ &= \int \frac{\sec x\tan x + \sec^2 x}{\sec x + \tan x}dx\\ &\qquad [\text{set } u = \sec x + \tan x, \quad du = (\sec x\tan x + \sec^2 x)\,dx]\\ &= \int \frac{du}{u} = \ln|u| + C = \ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C.\end{aligned}$$

The derivation of the formula for $\int \csc x\,dx$ is left to you.

Example 9 Calculate $\int \cot \pi x\,dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = \pi x, \quad du = \pi\,dx$.

$$\int \cot \pi x\,dx = \frac{1}{\pi}\int \cot u\,du = \frac{1}{\pi}\ln|\sin u| + C = \frac{1}{\pi}\ln|\sin \pi x| + C. \quad ❏$$

† Only experience prompts us to multiply numerator and denominator by $\sec x + \tan x$.

Remark The u-substitution simplifies many calculations, but you will find with experience that you can carry out many of these integrations without it. ❑

Example 10 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/8} \sec 2x\, dx$.

SOLUTION As you can check, $\frac{1}{2}\ln|\sec 2x + \tan 2x|$ is an antiderivative for $\sec 2x$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{\pi/8} \sec 2x\, dx &= \tfrac{1}{2}\Big[\ln|\sec 2x + \tan 2x|\Big]_0^{\pi/8}\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}[\ln(\sqrt{2}+1) - \ln 1] = \tfrac{1}{2}\ln(\sqrt{2}+1) \cong 0.44\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Example 11 Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^2 3x}{1+\tan 3x}\, dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = 1 + \tan 3x$, $\quad du = 3\sec^2 3x\, dx$.

$$\int \frac{\sec^2 3x}{1+\tan 3x}\, dx = \frac{1}{3}\int \frac{du}{u} = \frac{1}{3}\ln|u| + C = \frac{1}{3}\ln|1+\tan 3x| + C.$$ ❑

Logarithmic Differentiation

We can differentiate a lengthy product

$$g(x) = g_1(x)g_2(x)\cdots g_n(x)$$

by first writing

$$\begin{aligned}\ln|g(x)| &= \ln(|g_1(x)||g_2(x)|\cdots|g_n(x)|)\\ &= \ln|g_1(x)| + \ln|g_2(x)| + \cdots + \ln|g_n(x)|\end{aligned}$$

and then differentiating:

$$\frac{g'(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{g_1'(x)}{g_1(x)} + \frac{g_2'(x)}{g_2(x)} + \cdots + \frac{g_n'(x)}{g_n(x)}.$$

Multiplication by $g(x)$ then gives

(7.3.4)
$$\boxed{g'(x) = g(x)\left(\frac{g_1'(x)}{g_1(x)} + \frac{g_2'(x)}{g_2(x)} + \cdots + \frac{g_n'(x)}{g_n(x)}\right).}$$

The process by which $g'(x)$ was obtained is called *logarithmic differentiation*. Logarithmic differentiation is valid at all points x where $g(x) \neq 0$. At points x where $g(x) = 0$, the process fails.

A product of n factors,

$$g(x) = g_1(x)g_2(x)\cdots g_n(x)$$

can, of course, also be differentiated by repeated applications of the product rule, Theorem 3.2.6. The great advantage of logarithmic differentiation is that it readily gives us an explicit formula for the derivative, a formula that's easy to remember and easy to work with.

Example 12 Calculate the derivative of

$$g(x) = x(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)$$

by logarithmic differentiation.

SOLUTION We can write down $g'(x)$ directly from Formula (7.3.4):

$$g'(x) = x(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)\left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{x-2} + \frac{1}{x-3}\right);$$

or we can go through the process by which we derived Formula (7.3.4):

$$\ln|g(x)| = \ln|x| + \ln|x-1| + \ln|x-2| + \ln|x-3|,$$

$$\frac{g'(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{x-2} + \frac{1}{x-3}$$

$$g'(x) = x(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)\left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{x-2} + \frac{1}{x-3}\right). \quad ❏$$

The result is valid at all numbers x other than 0, 1, 2, 3. These are the numbers where $g(x) = 0$. ❏

Logarithmic differentiation can be applied to quotients.

Example 13 Calculate the derivative of

$$g(x) = \frac{(x^2+1)^3(2x-5)^2}{(x^2+5)^2}$$

by logarithmic differentiation.

SOLUTION Our first step is to write

$$g(x) = (x^2+1)^3(2x-5)^2(x^2+5)^{-2}.$$

Then, according to (7.3.4),

$$g'(x) = \frac{(x^2+1)^3(2x-5)^2}{(x^2+5)^2}\left[\frac{3(x^2+1)^2(2x)}{(x^2+1)^3} + \frac{2(2x-5)(2)}{(2x-5)^2} + \frac{(-2)(x^2+5)^{-3}(2x)}{(x^2+5)^{-2}}\right]$$

$$= \frac{(x^2+1)^3(2x-5)^2}{(x^2+5)^2}\left(\frac{6x}{x^2+1} + \frac{4}{2x-5} - \frac{4x}{x^2+5}\right).$$

We don't have to rely on (7.3.4). We can simply write

$$\begin{aligned}\ln|g(x)| &= \ln|(x^2+3)^3| + \ln|(2x-5)^2| - \ln|(x^2+5)^2| \\ &= 3\ln|x^2+1| + 2\ln|2x-5| - 2\ln|x^2+5|\end{aligned}$$

and go on from there:

$$\frac{g'(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{3(2x)}{x^2+1} + \frac{2(2)}{2x-5} - \frac{2(2x)}{x^2+5}$$

$$g'(x) = g(x)\left(\frac{6x}{x^2+1} + \frac{4}{2x-5} - \frac{4x}{x^2+5}\right).$$

The result is valid at all numbers x other than $\frac{5}{2}$. At this number $g(x) = 0$. ❏

That logarithmic differentiation fails at the points where a product $g(x)$ is 0 is not a serious deficiency because at these points we can easily apply the product rule. For example, suppose that $g(a) = 0$. Then one of the factors of $g(x)$ is 0 at $x = a$. We write that factor in front and call it $g_1(x)$. We then have

$$g(x) = g_1(x)[g_2(x)\cdots g_n(x)] \qquad \text{with} \qquad g_1(a) = 0.$$

By the product rule,

$$g'(x) = g_1(x)\frac{d}{dx}[g_2(x)\cdots g_n(x)] + g_1'(x)\,[g_2(x)\cdots g_n(x)].$$

Since $g_1(a) = 0$,

$$g'(a) = g_1'(a)[g_2(a)\cdots g_n(a)].$$

We go back to the function of Example 12 and calculate the derivative of

$$g(x) = x(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)$$

at $x = 3$ by the method just described. Since it is the factor $x - 3$ that is 0 at $x = 3$, we write

$$g(x) = (x-3)\,[x(x-1)(x-2)].$$

By the product rule,

$$g'(x) = (x-3)\frac{d}{dx}[x(x-1)(x-2)] + 1[x(x-1)(x-2)].$$

Therefore

$$g'(3) = 3(3-1)(3-2) = 6.$$

EXERCISES 7.3

Exercises 1–14. Determine the domain and find the derivative.

1. $f(x) = \ln 4x$.

2. $f(x) = \ln(2x+1)$.

3. $f(x) = \ln(x^3+1)$.

4. $f(x) = \ln[(x+1)^3]$.

5. $f(x) = \ln\sqrt{1+x^2}$.

6. $f(x) = (\ln x)^3$.

7. $f(x) = \ln|x^4-1|$.

8. $f(x) = \ln(\ln x)$.

9. $f(x) = (2x+1)^2\ln(2x+1)$.

10. $f(x) = \ln\left|\dfrac{x+2}{x^3-1}\right|$.

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\ln x}$.

12. $f(x) = \ln\sqrt[4]{x^2+1}$.

13. $f(x) = \sin(\ln x)$.

14. $f(x) = \cos(\ln x)$.

Exercises 15–36. Calculate.

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x+1}$.

16. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{3-x}$.

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{3-x^2}\,dx$.

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x+1}{x^2}\,dx$.

19. $\displaystyle\int \tan 3x\,dx$.

20. $\displaystyle\int \sec\tfrac{1}{2}\pi x\,dx$.

21. $\displaystyle\int x\sec x^2\,dx$.

22. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\csc^2 x}{2+\cot x}\,dx$.

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{(3-x^2)^2}\,dx$.

24. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\ln(x+a)}{x+a}\,dx$.

25. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin x}{2+\cos x}\,dx$.

26. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^2 2x}{4-\tan 2x}\,dx$.

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\ln x}\,dx$.

28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{2x^3-1}\,dx$.

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x(\ln x)^2}$.

30. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec 2x\tan 2x}{1+\sec 2x}\,dx$.

31. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin x-\cos x}{\sin x+\cos x}\,dx$.

32. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}(1+\sqrt{x})}\,dx$. HINT: Set $u = 1+\sqrt{x}$.

33. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{1+x\sqrt{x}}\,dx$.

34. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\tan(\ln x)}{x}\,dx$.

35. $\displaystyle\int (1+\sec x)^2\,dx$.

36. $\displaystyle\int (3-\csc x)^2\,dx$.

Exercises 37–46. Evaluate.

37. $\displaystyle\int_1^e \frac{dx}{x}$.

38. $\displaystyle\int_1^{e^2} \frac{dx}{x}$.

39. $\displaystyle\int_e^{e^2} \frac{dx}{x}$.

40. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \left(\frac{1}{x+1}-\frac{1}{x+2}\right)dx$.

41. $\displaystyle\int_4^5 \frac{x}{x^2-1}\,dx$.

42. $\displaystyle\int_{1/4}^{1/3} \tan\pi x\,dx$.

43. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos x}{1+\sin x}\, dx.$ **44.** $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} (1+\csc x)^2\, dx.$

45. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \cot x\, dx.$ **46.** $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{e} \frac{\ln x}{x}\, dx.$

47. Pinpoint the error in the following:

$$\int_1^5 \frac{1}{x-2}\, dx = \Big[\ln|x-2|\Big]_1^5 = \ln 3.$$

48. Show that $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\ln(1+x)}{x} = 1$ from the definition of derivative.

Exercises 49–52. Calculate the derivative by logarithmic differentiation and then evaluate g' at the indicated value of x.

49. $g(x) = (x^2+1)^2(x-1)^5 x^3; \quad x = 1.$

50. $g(x) = x(x+a)(x+b)(x+c); \quad x = -b.$

51. $g(x) = \dfrac{x^4(x-1)}{(x+2)(x^2+1)}; \quad x = 0.$

52. $g(x) = \left[\dfrac{(x-1)(x-2)}{(x-3)(x-4)}\right]^2; \quad x = 2.$

Exercises 53–56. Sketch the region bounded by the curves and find its area.

53. $y = \sec x, \quad y = 2, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \pi/6.$

54. $y = \csc \frac{1}{2}\pi x, \quad y = x, \quad x = \frac{1}{2}.$

55. $y = \tan x, \quad y = 1, \quad x = 0.$

56. $y = \sec x, \quad y = \cos x, \quad x = 0, \quad x = \frac{\pi}{4}.$

Exercises 57–58. Find the area of the part of the first quadrant that lies between the curves.

57. $x + 4y - 5 = 0$ and $xy = 1.$

58. $x + y - 3 = 0$ and $xy = 2.$

59. The region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 1/\sqrt{1+x}$ and the x-axis for $0 \le x \le 8$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

60. The region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = 3/(1+x^2)$ and the x-axis for $0 \le x \le 3$ is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

61. The region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = \sqrt{\sec x}$ and the x-axis for $-\pi/3 \le x \le \pi/3$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

62. The region bounded by the graph of $f(x) = \tan x$ and the x-axis for $0 \le x \le \pi/4$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

63. A particle moves along a coordinate line with acceleration $a(t) = -(t+1)^{-2}$ feet per second per second. Find the distance traveled by the particle during the time interval $[0, 4]$ given that the initial velocity $v(0)$ is 1 foot per second.

64. Exercise 63 taking $v(0)$ as 2 feet per second.

Exercises 65–66. Find a formula for the nth derivative.

65. $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}(\ln x).$ **66.** $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}[\ln(1-x)].$

67. Show that $\int \csc x\; dx = \ln|\csc x - \cot x| + C$ using the methods of this section.

68. (a) Show that for $n = 2$, (7.3.4) reduces to the product rule (3.2.6) except at those points where $g(x) = 0$.
(b) Show that (7.3.4) applied to

$$g(x) = \frac{g_1(x)}{g_2(x)}$$

reduces to the quotient rule (3.2.10) except at those points where $g(x) = 0$.

Exercises 69–74. (i) Find the domain of f, (ii) find the intervals on which the function increases and the intervals on which it decreases, (iii) find the extreme values, (iv) determine the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection, and, finally, (v) sketch the graph, indicating asymptotes.

69. $f(x) = \ln(4-x).$ **70.** $f(x) = x - \ln x.$

71. $f(x) = x^2 \ln x.$ **72.** $f(x) = \ln(4-x)^2.$

73. $f(x) = \ln\left[\dfrac{x}{1+x^2}\right].$ **74.** $f(x) = \ln\left[\dfrac{x^3}{x-1}\right].$

75. Show that the average slope of the logarithm curve from $x = a$ to $x = b$ is

$$\frac{1}{b-a}\ln\left(\frac{b}{a}\right).$$

76. (a) Show that $f(x) = \ln 2x$ and $g(x) = \ln 3x$ have the same derivative.
(b) Calculate the derivative of $F(x) = \ln kx$, where k is any positive number.
(c) Explain these results in terms of the properties of logarithms.

Exercises 77–80. Use a graphing utility to graph f on the indicated interval. Estimate the x-intercepts of the graph of f and the values of x where f has either a local or absolute extreme value. Use four decimal place accuracy in your answers.

77. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}\ln x; \quad (0, 10].$

78. $f(x) = x^3 \ln x; \quad (0, 2].$

79. $f(x) = \sin(\ln x); \quad (1, 100].$

80. $f(x) = x^2 \ln(\sin x); \quad (0, 2].$

81. A particle moves along a coordinate line with acceleration $a(t) = 4 - 2(t+1) + 3/(t+1)$ feet per second per second from $t = 0$ to $t = 3$.
(a) Find the velocity v of the particle at each time t during the motion given that $v(0) = 2$.
(b) Use a graphing utility to graph v and a together.
(c) Estimate the time t at which the particle has maximum velocity and the time at which it has minimum velocity. Use four decimal place accuracy.

82. Exercise 81 with $a(t) = 2\cos 2(t+1) + 2/(t+1)$ feet per second per second from $t = 0$ to $t = 7$.

83. Set $f(x) = 1/x$ and $g(x) = -x^2 + 4x - 2$.
(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f and g together.

(b) Use a CAS to find the points where the two graphs intersect.
(c) Use a CAS to find the area of the region bounded by the two graphs.

84. Exercise 83 taking $f(x) = \dfrac{x-1}{x}$ and $g(x) = |x-2|$.

Exercises 85–86. Use a CAS to find (i) $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$; (ii) the points where f, f' and f'' are zero; (iii) the intervals on which f, f' and f'' are positive, negative; (iv) the extreme values of f.

85. $f(x) = \dfrac{\ln x}{x^2}$.

86. $f(x) = \dfrac{1 + 2\ln x}{2\sqrt{\ln x}}$.

7.4 THE EXPONENTIAL FUNCTION

Rational powers of e already have an established meaning: by $e^{p/q}$ we mean the qth root of e raised to the pth power. But what is meant by $e^{\sqrt{2}}$ or e^{π}?

Earlier we proved that each rational power $e^{p/q}$ has logarithm p/q:

(7.4.1) $$\boxed{\ln e^{p/q} = \frac{p}{q}.}$$

The definition of e^z for z irrational is patterned after this relation.

DEFINITION 7.4.2

If z is irrational, then by e^z we mean the unique number that has logarithm z:

$$\ln e^z = z.$$

What is $e^{\sqrt{2}}$? It is the unique number that has logarithm $\sqrt{2}$. What is e^{π}? It is the unique number that has logarithm π. Note that e^x now has meaning for every real value of x: it is the unique number that has logarithm x.

DEFINITION 7.4.3

The function

$$E(x) = e^x \qquad \text{for all real } x$$

is called the *exponential function*.

Some properties of the exponential function are listed below.

(1) In the first place,

(7.4.4) $$\boxed{\ln e^x = x \qquad \text{for all real } x}$$

Writing $L(x) = \ln x$ and $E(x) = e^x$, we have

$$L(E(x)) = x \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

This says that the *exponential function is the inverse of the logarithm function.*

(2) The graph of the exponential function appears in Figure 7.4.1. It can be obtained from the graph of the logarithm by reflection in the line $y = x$.

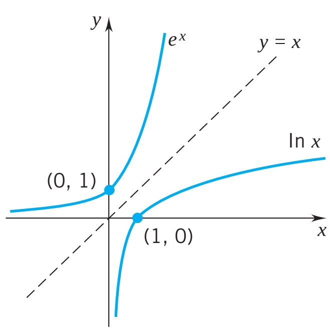


Figure 7.4.1

(3) Since the graph of the logarithm lies to the right of the y-axis, the graph of the exponential function lies above the x-axis:

(7.4.5)
$$\boxed{e^x > 0 \qquad \text{for all real } x.}$$

(4) Since the graph of the logarithm crosses the x-axis at (1, 0), the graph of the exponential function crosses the y-axis at (0, 1):

$$\ln 1 = 0 \qquad \text{gives} \qquad e^0 = 1.$$

(5) Since the y-axis is a vertical asymptote for the graph of the logarithm function, the x-axis is a horizontal asymptote for the graph of the exponential function:

$$\text{as } x \to -\infty, \quad e^x \to 0.$$

(6) Since the exponential function is the inverse of the logarithm function, the logarithm function is the inverse of the exponential function; thus

(7.4.6)
$$\boxed{e^{\ln x} = x \qquad \text{for all } x > 0.}$$

You can verify this equation directly by observing that both sides have the same logarithm:

$$\ln(e^{\ln x}) = \ln x$$

since, for all real t, $\ln e^t = t$.

You know that for rational exponents

$$e^{(p/q + r/s)} = e^{p/q} \cdot e^{r/s}.$$

This property holds for all exponents, including irrational exponents

THEOREM 7.4.7

$$e^{a+b} = e^a \cdot e^b \qquad \text{for all real } a \text{ and } b.$$

PROOF

$$\ln e^{a+b} = a + b = \ln e^a + \ln e^b = \ln(e^a \cdot e^b).$$

The one-to-oneness of the logarithm function gives

$$e^{a+b} = e^a \cdot e^b. \quad \square$$

We leave it to you to verify that

(7.4.8)
$$\boxed{e^{-b} = \frac{1}{e^b} \qquad \text{and} \qquad e^{a-b} = \frac{e^a}{e^b}.}$$

We come now to one of the most important results in calculus. It is marvelously simple.

THEOREM 7.4.9

The exponential function is its own derivative: for all real x,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x.$$

PROOF The logarithm function is differentiable, and its derivative is never 0. It follows (Section 7.1) that its inverse, the exponential function, is also differentiable. Knowing this, we can show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x$$

by differentiating both sides of the identity

$$\ln e^x = x.$$

On the left-hand side, the chain rule gives

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln e^x) = \frac{1}{e^x}\frac{d}{dx}(e^x).$$

On the right-hand side, the derivative is 1:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x) = 1.$$

Equating these derivatives, we have

$$\frac{1}{e^x}\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = 1 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x. \quad \square$$

Compositions are differentiated by the chain rule.

Example 1

(a) $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{kx}) = e^{kx}\frac{d}{dx}(kx) = e^{kx}k = ke^{kx}.$

(b) $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{\sqrt{x}}) = e^{\sqrt{x}}\frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt{x}) = e^{\sqrt{x}}\left(\frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}\right) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}e^{\sqrt{x}}.$

(c) $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{-x^2}) = e^{-x^2}\frac{d}{dx}(-x^2) = e^{-x^2}(-2x) = -2x\, e^{-x^2}.$ $\square$

The relation

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x \qquad \text{and its corollary} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(e^{kx}) = k\, e^{kx}$$

have important applications to engineering, physics, chemistry, biology, and economics. We take up some of these applications in Section 7.6.

Example 2

Let $f(x) = xe^{-x}$ for all real x.

(a) On what intervals does f increase? decrease?

(b) Find the extreme values of f.

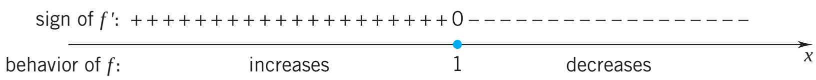
(c) Determine the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection.

(d) Sketch the graph indicating the asymptotes if any.

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= xe^{-x}, \\ f'(x) &= xe^{-x}(-1) + e^{-x} = (1-x)e^{-x}, \\ f''(x) &= (1-x)e^{-x}(-1) - e^{-x} = (x-2)e^{-x}. \end{aligned}$$

Since $e^{-x} > 0$ for all x, we have $f'(x) = 0$ only at $x = 1$. (critical point) The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:

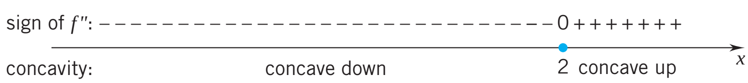


The function f increases on $(-\infty, 1]$ and decreases on $[1, \infty)$. The number

$$f(1) = \frac{1}{e} \cong \frac{1}{2.72} \cong 0.368$$

is a local maximum and the absolute maximum. The function has no other extreme values.

The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph of f are as follows:



The graph is concave down on $(-\infty, 2)$ and concave up on $(2, \infty)$. The point

$$(2, f(2)) = (2, 2e^{-2}) \cong \left(2, \frac{2}{(2.72)^2}\right) \cong (2, 0.27)$$

is a point of inflection, the only point of inflection. In Section 11.6 we show that as $x \to \infty$, $f(x) = x/e^x \to 0$. Accepting this result for now, we conclude that the x-axis is a horizontal asymptote. The graph is given in Figure 7.4.2. ❑

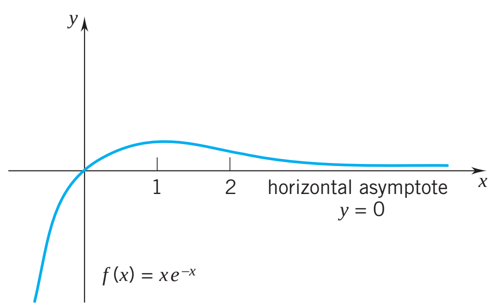


Figure 7.4.2

Example 3 Let $f(x) = e^{-x^2/2}$ for all real x.

(a) Determine the symmetry of the graph and find the asymptotes.
(b) On what intervals does f increase? decrease?
(c) Find the extreme values.
(d) Determine the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection.
(e) Sketch the graph.

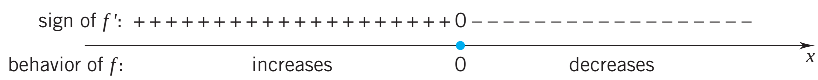
SOLUTION Since $f(-x) = e^{-(-x)^2/2} = e^{-x^2/2} = f(x)$, f is an even function. Thus the graph is symmetric about the y-axis. As $x \to \pm\infty$, $e^{-x^2/2} \to 0$. Therefore, the x-axis is a horizontal asymptote. There are no vertical asymptotes.

Differentiating f, we have

$$f'(x) = e^{-x^2/2}(-x) = -xe^{-x^2/2}$$

$$f''(x) = -x(-xe^{-x^2/2}) - e^{-x^2/2} = (x^2 - 1)e^{-x^2/2}.$$

Since $e^{-x^2/2} > 0$ for all x, we have $f'(x) = 0$ only at $x = 0$ (critical point). The sign of f' and the behavior of f are as follows:

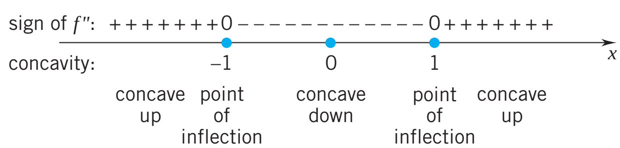


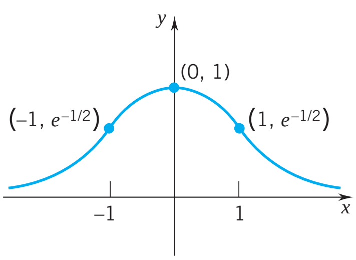
The function increases on $(-\infty, 0]$ and decreases $[0, \infty)$. The number

$$f(0) = e^0 = 1$$

is a local maximum and the absolute maximum. The function has no other extreme values.

Now consider $f''(x) = (x^2 - 1)e^{-x^2/2}$. The sign of f'' and the concavity of the graph of f are as follows:





$f(x) = e^{-x^2/2}$

Figure 7.4.3

The graph of f is concave up on $(-\infty, -1)$ and on $(1, \infty)$; the graph is concave down on $(-1, 1)$. The points $(-1, e^{-1/2})$ and $(1, e^{-1/2})$ are points of inflection.

The graph of f is the bell-shaped curve sketched in Figure 7.4.3.[†] ❑

The integral counterpart of Theorem 7.4.9 takes the form

(7.4.10)
$$\boxed{\int e^x\,dx = e^x + C.}$$

In practice

$$\int e^{u(x)}u'(x)\,dx \qquad \text{is reduced to} \qquad \int e^u\,du$$

by setting

$$u = u(x), \qquad du = u'(x)\,dx.$$

Example 4 Find $\displaystyle\int 9\,e^{3x}\,dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = 3x$, $\quad du = 3\,dx$.

$$\int 9\,e^{3x}\,dx = 3\int e^u\,du = 3e^u + C = 3\,e^{3x} + C.$$

[†]Bell-shaped curves play a big role in probability and statistics.

If you recognize at the very beginning that

$$3\,e^{3x} = \frac{d}{dx}(e^{3x}),$$

then you can dispense with the u-substitution and simply write

$$\int 9\,e^{3x}\,dx = 3\int 3\,e^{3x}\,dx = 3e^{3x} + C. \quad \square$$

Example 5 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = \sqrt{x}, \quad du = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

$$\int \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}dx = 2\int e^u\,du = 2e^u + C = 2e^{\sqrt{x}} + C.$$

If you recognize from the start that

$$\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\right) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(e^{\sqrt{x}}\right),$$

then you can dispense with the u-substitution and integrate directly:

$$\int \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}dx = 2\int \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\right)dx = 2e^{\sqrt{x}} + C. \quad \square$$

Example 6 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^{3x}}{e^{3x}+1}\,dx.$

SOLUTION We can put this integral in the form

$$\int \frac{1}{u}\,du$$

by setting

$$u = e^{3x} + 1, \qquad du = 3e^{3x}\,dx.$$

Then

$$\int \frac{e^{3x}}{e^{3x}+1}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}\int \frac{1}{u}\,du = \tfrac{1}{3}\ln|u| + C = \tfrac{1}{3}\ln(e^{3x}+1) + C. \quad \square$$

Example 7 Evaluate

$$\int_0^{\sqrt{2\ln 3}} xe^{-x^2/2}dx.$$

SOLUTION Set $u = -\frac{1}{2}x^2, \quad du = -x\,dx.$

At $x = 0, \ u = 0;$ at $x = \sqrt{2\ln 3}, \quad u = -\ln 3.$ Thus

$$\int_0^{\sqrt{2\ln 3}} xe^{-x^2/2}dx = -\int_0^{-\ln 3} e^u du = -\Big[e^u\Big]_0^{-\ln 3} = 1 - e^{-\ln 3} = 1 - \tfrac{1}{3} = \tfrac{2}{3}. \quad \square$$

Example 8 Evaluate $\int_0^1 e^x(e^x+1)^{1/5}dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = e^x + 1, \quad du = e^x\,dx$.

At $\quad x = 0,\ u = 2;\quad$ at $x = 1, \quad u = e + 1$. Thus

$$\int_0^1 e^x(e^x+1)^{1/5}dx = \int_2^{e+1} u^{1/5}du = \left[\tfrac{5}{6}u^{6/5}\right]_2^{e+1} = \tfrac{5}{6}[(e+1)^{6/5} - 2^{6/5}]. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 7.4

Exercises 1–24. Differentiate.

1. $y = e^{-2x}$.
2. $y = 3e^{2x+1}$.
3. $y = e^{x^2-1}$.
4. $y = 2e^{-4x}$.
5. $y = e^x \ln x$.
6. $y = x^2e^x$.
7. $y = x^{-1}e^{-x}$.
8. $y = e^{\sqrt{x}+1}$.
9. $y = \frac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x})$.
10. $y = \frac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x})$.
11. $y = e^{\sqrt{x}} \ln \sqrt{x}$.
12. $y = (3 - 2e^{-x})^3$.
13. $y = (e^{x^2} + 1)^2$.
14. $y = (e^{2x} - e^{-2x})^2$.
15. $y = (x^2 - 2x + 2)e^x$.
16. $y = x^2e^x - xe^{x^2}$.
17. $y = \dfrac{e^x - 1}{e^x + 1}$.
18. $y = \dfrac{e^{2x} - 1}{e^{2x} + 1}$.
19. $y = e^{4\ln x}$.
20. $y = \ln e^{3x}$.
21. $f(x) = \sin(e^{2x})$.
22. $f(x) = e^{\sin 2x}$.
23. $f(x) = e^{-2x}\cos x$.
24. $f(x) = \ln(\cos e^{2x})$.

Exercises 25–42. Calculate.

25. $\int e^{2x}\,dx$.
26. $\int e^{-2x}\,dx$.
27. $\int e^{kx}\,dx$.
28. $\int e^{ax+b}\,dx$.
29. $\int xe^{x^2}\,dx$.
30. $\int xe^{-x^2}\,dx$.
31. $\int \dfrac{e^{1/x}}{x^2}\,dx$.
32. $\int \dfrac{e^{2\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$.
33. $\int \ln e^x\,dx$.
34. $\int e^{\ln x}\,dx$.
35. $\int \dfrac{4}{\sqrt{e^x}}\,dx$.
36. $\int \dfrac{e^x}{e^x + 1}\,dx$.
37. $\int \dfrac{e^x}{\sqrt{e^x + 1}}\,dx$.
38. $\int \dfrac{xe^{ax^2}}{e^{ax^2} + 1}\,dx$.
39. $\int \dfrac{e^{2x}}{2e^{2x} + 3}\,dx$.
40. $\int \dfrac{\sin(e^{-2x})}{e^{2x}}\,dx$.
41. $\int \cos x e^{\sin x}\,dx$.
42. $\int e^{-x}[1 + \cos(e^{-x})]\,dx$.

Exercises 43–52. Evaluate.

43. $\int_0^1 e^x\,dx$.
44. $\int_0^1 e^{-kx}\,dx$.
45. $\int_0^{\ln\pi} e^{-6x}\,dx$.
46. $\int_0^1 xe^{-x^2}\,dx$.
47. $\int_0^1 \dfrac{e^x + 1}{e^x}\,dx$.
48. $\int_0^1 \dfrac{4 - e^x}{e^x}\,dx$.
49. $\int_0^{\ln 2} \dfrac{e^x}{e^x + 1}\,dx$.
50. $\int_0^1 \dfrac{e^x}{4 - e^x}\,dx$.
51. $\int_0^1 x(e^{x^2} + 2)\,dx$.
52. $\int_0^{\ln\pi/4} e^x \sec e^x\,dx$.

53. Let a be a positive constant.
(a) Find a formula for the nth derivative of $f(x) = e^{ax}$.
(b) Find a formula for the nth derivative of $f(x) = e^{-ax}$.

54. A particle moves along a coordinate line, its position at time t given by the function

$$x(t) = Ae^{kt} + Be^{-kt}. \qquad (A > 0,\ B > 0,\ k > 0)$$

(a) Find the times t at which the particle is closest to the origin.
(b) Show that the acceleration of the particle is proportional to the position coordinate. What is the constant of proportionality?

55. A rectangle has one side on the x-axis and the upper two vertices on the graph of $y = e^{-x^2}$. Where should the vertices be placed so as to maximize the area of the rectangle?

56. A rectangle has two sides on the positive x- and y-axes and one vertex at a point P that moves along the curve $y = e^x$ in such a way that y increases at the rate of $\frac{1}{2}$ unit per minute. How is the area of the rectangle changing when $y = 3$?

57. Set $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$.
(a) What is the symmetry of the graph?
(b) On what intervals does the function increase? decrease?
(c) What are the extreme values of the function?
(d) Determine the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection.
(e) The graph has a horizontal asymptote. What is it?
(f) Sketch the graph.

58. Let Ω be the region below the graph of $y = e^x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$.
(a) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis.

(b) Set up the definite integral that gives the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis using the shell method. (You will see how to evaluate this integral in Section 8.2.)

59. Let Ω be the region below the graph of $y = e^{-x^2}$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$.

(a) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

(b) Form the definite integral that gives the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis using the disk method. (At this point we cannot carry out the integration.)

Exercises 60–63. Sketch the region bounded by the curves and find its area.

60. $x = e^{2y}, \quad x = e^{-y}, \quad x = 4.$

61. $y = e^x, \quad y = e^{2x}, \quad y = e^4.$

62. $y = e^x, \quad y = e, \quad y = x, \quad x = 0.$

63. $x = e^y, \quad y = 1, \quad y = 2, \quad x = 2.$

Exercises 64–68. Determine the following: (i) the domain; (ii) the intervals on which f increases, decreases; (iii) the extreme values; (iv) the concavity of the graph and the points of inflection. Then sketch the graph, indicating all asymptotes.

64. $f(x) = (1 - x)e^x.$

65. $f(x) = e^{(1/x^2)}.$

66. $f(x) = x^2e^{-x}.$

67. $f(x) = x^2 \ln x.$

68. $f(x) = (x - x^2)e^{-x}$

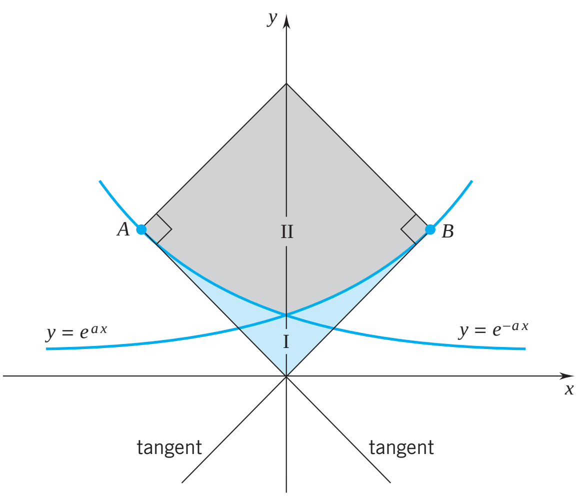
69. For each positive integer n find the number x_n for which $\int_0^{x_n} e^x\,dx = n.$

70. Find the critical points and the extreme values. Take k as a positive integer.

(a) $f(x) = x^k \ln x, \qquad x > 0.$

(b) $f(x) = x^k e^{-x}, \qquad x$ real.

71. Take $a > 0$ and refer to the figure.



(a) Find the points of tangency, marked A and B.

(b) Find the area of region I.

(c) Find the area of region II.

72. Prove that for all $x > 0$ and all positive integers n

$$e^x > 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!}.$$

Recall that $n! = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1.$

HINT: $\quad e^x = 1 + \int_0^x e^t\,dt > 1 + \int_0^x dt = 1 + x$

$$e^x = 1 + \int_0^x e^t\,dt > 1 + \int_0^x (1+t)dt$$

$$= 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2}, \quad \text{and so on.}$$

73. Prove that, if n is a positive integer, then

$$e^x > x^n \quad \text{for all } x \text{ sufficiently large.}$$

HINT: Exercise 72.

74. Set $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$ and $g(x) = x^2$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw a figure that displays the graphs of f and g.

(b) Estimate the x-coordinates a and $b\,(a < b)$ of the two points where the curves intersect. Use four decimal place accuracy.

(c) Estimate the area between the two curves from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

75. Exercise 74 with $f(x) = e^x$ and $g(x) = 4 - x^2$.

Exercises 76–78. Use a graphing utility to draw a figure that displays the graphs of f and g. The figure should suggest that f and g are inverses. Show that this is true by verifying that $f(g(x)) = x$ for each x in the domain of g.

76. $f(x) = e^{2x}, \quad g(x) = \ln\sqrt{x}; \quad x > 0.$

77. $f(x) = e^{x^2}, \quad g(x) = \sqrt{\ln x}; \quad x \geq 1.$

78. $f(x) = e^{x-2}, \quad g(x) = 2 + \ln x; \quad x > 0.$

79. Set $f(x) = \sin e^x$. (a) Find the zeros of f. (b) Use a graphing utility to graph f.

80. Exercise 79 with $f(x) = e^{\sin x} - 1$.

81. Set $f(x) = e^{-x}$ and $g(x) = \ln x$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw a figure that displays the graphs of f and g.

(b) Estimate the x-coordinate of the point where the two graphs intersect.

(c) Estimate the slopes at the point of intersection.

(d) Are the curves perpendicular to each other?

82. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw a figure that displays the graphs of $f(x) = 10e^{-x}$ and $g(x) = 7 - e^x$.

(b) Find the x-coordinates a and $b\,(a < b)$ of the two points where the curves intersect.

(c) Use a CAS to find the area between the two curves from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

83. Use a CAS to calculate the integral.

(a) $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{1 - e^x}\,dx.$ $\qquad$ (b) $\displaystyle\int e^{-x}\left(\frac{1 - e^x}{e^x}\right)^4 dx.$

(c) $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^{\tan x}}{\cos^2 x}\,dx.$

PROJECT 7.4 Some Rational Bounds for the Number *e*

The purpose of this project is to lead you through a proof that, for each positive integer n

(7.4.11)
$$\boxed{\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^n \le e \le \left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{n+1}.}$$

It will follow that

$$(1+\tfrac{1}{2})^2 \le e \le (1+\tfrac{1}{2})^3,$$
$$(1+\tfrac{1}{3})^3 \le e \le (1+\tfrac{1}{3})^4,$$
$$(1+\tfrac{1}{4})^4 \le e \le (1+\tfrac{1}{4})^5, \qquad \text{and so on.}$$

The proof outlined below is based directly on the definition of the logarithm function

$$\ln x = \int_1^x \frac{1}{t}\,dt, \qquad x > 0$$

and on the characterization of e as the unique number for which

$$\int_1^e \frac{1}{t}\,dt = 1.$$

The proof has two steps.

Step 1. Show that for each positive integer n,

$$\frac{1}{n+1} \le \ln\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right) \le \frac{1}{n}.$$

HINT: For all numbers t in $[1, 1+\frac{1}{n}]$,

$$\frac{1}{1+\frac{1}{n}} \le \frac{1}{t} \le 1.$$

Step 2. Show that

$$\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^n \le e \le \left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{n+1}$$

by applying the exponential function to each entry in the inequality derived in Step 1.

The bounds that we have derived for e are simple, elegant, and easy to remember, but they do not provide a very efficient method for calculating e. For example, rounded off to seven decimal places,

$$\left(1+\frac{1}{100}\right)^{100} \cong 2.7048138 \quad \text{and} \quad \left(1+\frac{1}{100}\right)^{101} \cong 2.7318620.$$

Apparently a lot of accuracy here, but it doesn't help us much in finding a decimal expansion for e. It tells us only that, rounded off to one decimal place, $e \cong 2.7$. For a more accurate decimal expansion of e, we need to resort to very large values of n. A much more efficient way of calculating e is given in Section 12.6.

7.5 ARBITRARY POWERS; OTHER BASES

Arbitrary Powers: The Function $f(x) = x^r$

The elementary notion of exponent applies only to rational numbers. Expressions such as

$$10^5, \qquad 2^{1/3}, \qquad 7^{-4/5}, \qquad \pi^{-1/2}$$

make sense, but so far we have attached no meaning to expressions such as

$$10^{\sqrt{2}}, \qquad 2^{\pi}, \qquad 7^{-\sqrt{3}}, \qquad \pi^{e}.$$

The extension of our sense of exponent to allow for irrational exponents is conveniently done by making use of the logarithm function and the exponential function. The heart of the matter is to observe that for $x > 0$ and p/q rational,

$$x^{p/q} = e^{(p/q)\ln x}.$$

(To verify this, take the logarithm of both sides.) We *define* x^z for irrational z by setting

$$x^z = e^{z \ln x}.$$

We can now state that

(7.5.1)
$$\boxed{\text{if} \quad x > 0, \quad \text{then} \quad x^r = e^{r \ln x} \quad \text{for all real numbers } r.}$$

In particular,

$$10^{\sqrt{2}} = e^{\sqrt{2}\ln 10}, \qquad 2^{\pi} = e^{\pi \ln 2}, \qquad 7^{-\sqrt{3}} = e^{-\sqrt{3}\ln 7}, \qquad \pi^{e} = e^{e \ln \pi}.$$

With this extended sense of exponent, the usual laws of exponents still hold:

(7.5.2)
$$\boxed{x^{r+s} = x^r x^s, \qquad x^{r-s} = \frac{x^r}{x^s}, \qquad (x^r)^s = x^{rs}}$$

PROOF

$$x^{r+s} = e^{(r+s)\ln x} = e^{r\ln x} \cdot e^{s \ln x} = x^r x^s,$$

$$x^{r-s} = e^{(r-s)\ln x} = e^{r\ln x} \cdot e^{-s \ln x} = \frac{e^{r\ln x}}{e^{s\ln x}} = \frac{x^r}{x^s},$$

$$(x^r)^s = e^{s\ln x^r} = e^{rs\ln x} = x^{rs}. \quad ❑$$

The differentiation of arbitrary powers follows the pattern established for rational powers; namely, for each real number r and each $x > 0$

(7.5.3)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(x^r) = rx^{r-1}.}$$

PROOF

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^r) = \frac{d}{dx}(e^{r\ln x}) = e^{r\ln x}\frac{d}{dx}(r\ln x) = x^r \cdot \frac{r}{x} = rx^{r-1}.$$

Another way to see this is to write $f(x) = x^r$ and use logarithmic differentiation:

$$\ln f(x) = r \ln x$$

$$\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{r}{x}$$

$$f'(x) = \frac{rf(x)}{x} = \frac{rx^r}{x} = rx^{r-1}. \quad ❑$$

Thus

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(x^{\sqrt{2}}\right) = \sqrt{2}\,x^{\sqrt{2}-1} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^{\pi}) = \pi x^{\pi-1}.$$

As usual, we differentiate compositions by the chain rule. Thus

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[(x^2+5)^{\sqrt{3}}\right] = \sqrt{3}(x^2+5)^{\sqrt{3}-1}\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+5) = 2\sqrt{3}\,x(x^2+5)^{\sqrt{3}-1}.$$

Example 1 Find $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[(x^2+1)^{3x}\right]$.

SOLUTION One way to find this derivative is to observe that $(x^2+1)^{3x} = e^{3x\ln(x^2+1)}$ and then differentiate:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[(x^2+1)^{3x}\right] = \frac{d}{dx}\left[e^{3x\ln(x^2+1)}\right] = e^{3x\ln(x^2+1)}\left[3x \cdot \frac{2x}{x^2+1} + 3\ln(x^2+1)\right]$$

$$= (x^2+1)^{3x}\left[\frac{6x^2}{x^2+1} + 3\ln(x^2+1)\right].$$

Another way to find this derivative is to set $f(x) = (x^2+1)^{3x}$, take the logarithm of both sides, and proceed from there

$$\ln f(x) = 3x \cdot \ln(x^2+1)$$

$$\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = 3x \cdot \frac{2x}{x^2+1} + [\ln(x^2+1)](3) = \frac{6x^2}{x^2+1} + 3\ln(x^2+1)$$

$$f'(x) = f(x)\left[\frac{6x^2}{x^2+1} + 3\ln(x^2+1)\right]$$

$$= (x^2+1)^{3x}\left[\frac{6x^2}{x^2+1} + 3\ln(x^2+1)\right]. \quad ❑$$

Each derivative formula gives rise to a companion integral formula. The integral version of (7.5.3) takes the form

(7.5.4)
$$\boxed{\int x^r\,dx = \frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + C, \qquad \text{for} \quad r \neq -1.}$$

Note the exclusion of $r = -1$. What is the integral if $r = -1$?

Example 2 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3}{(2x^4+1)^\pi}\,dx$.

SOLUTION Set $u = 2x^4 + 1, \quad du = 8x^3 dx$.

$$\int \frac{x^3}{(2x^4+1)^\pi}\,dx = \frac{1}{8}\int u^{-\pi}\,du = \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{u^{1-\pi}}{1-\pi}\right) + C = \frac{(2x^4+1)^{1-\pi}}{8(1-\pi)} + C. \quad ❑$$

Base p: The Function $f(x) = p^x$

To form the function $f(x) = x^r$, we take a positive variable x and raise it to a constant power r. To form the function $f(x) = p^x$, we take a positive constant p and raise it to a variable power x. Since $1^x = 1$ for all x, the function is of interest only if $p \neq 1$.

Functions of the form $f(x) = p^x$ are called *exponential functions with base p*. The high status enjoyed by Euler's number e comes from the fact that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x.$$

For other bases the derivative has an extra factor:

(7.5.5)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(p^x) = p^x \ln p.}$$

PROOF

$$\frac{d}{dx}(p^x) = \frac{d}{dx}(e^{x\ln p}) = e^{x\ln p}\ln p = p^x \ln p. \quad ❑$$

For example,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(2^x) = 2^x \ln 2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(10^x) = 10^x \ln 10.$$

The next differentiation requires the chain rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(2^{3x^2}\right) = 2^{3x^2}(\ln 2)\frac{d}{dx}(3x^2) = 6x2^{3x^2}\ln 2.$$

The integral version of (7.5.5) reads

(7.5.6)
$$\boxed{\int p^x\,dx = \frac{1}{\ln p}p^x + C.}$$

The formula holds for all positive numbers p different from 1. For example,

$$\int 2^x\,dx = \frac{1}{\ln 2}2^x + C.$$

Example 3 Find $\displaystyle\int x5^{-x^2}dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = -x^2, \quad du = -2x\,dx.$

$$\int x5^{-x^2}dx = -\frac{1}{2}\int 5^u du = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{\ln 5}\right)5^u + C$$
$$= \frac{-1}{2\ln 5}5^{-x^2} + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_1^2 3^{2x-1}dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = 2x - 1, \quad du = 2\,dx.$
At $x = 1, \quad u = 1;$ at $x = 2, \quad u = 3.$ Thus

$$\int_1^2 3^{2x-1}\,dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_1^3 3^u\,du = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{\ln 3}\cdot 3^u\right]_1^3 = \frac{12}{\ln 3} \cong 10.923. \quad ❑$$

Base p: The Function $f(x) = \log_p x$

If $p > 0$, then

$$\ln p^t = t\ln p \qquad \text{for all } t.$$

If p is also different from 1, then $\ln p \neq 0$, and we have

$$\frac{\ln p^t}{\ln p} = t.$$

This indicates that the function

$$f(x) = \frac{\ln x}{\ln p}$$

satisfies the relation

$$f(p^t) = t \qquad \text{for all real } t.$$

In view of this, we call

$$\frac{\ln x}{\ln p}$$

the logarithm of x *to the base* p and write

(7.5.7)
$$\boxed{\log_p x = \frac{\ln x}{\ln p}.}$$

The relation holds for all $x > 0$ and assumes that p is a positive number different from 1. For example,

$$\log_2 32 = \frac{\ln 32}{\ln 2} = \frac{\ln 2^5}{\ln 2} = \frac{5 \ln 2}{\ln 2} = 5$$

and

$$\log_{100}\left(\tfrac{1}{10}\right) = \frac{\ln\left(\tfrac{1}{10}\right)}{\ln 100} = \frac{\ln 10^{-1}}{\ln 10^2} = \frac{-\ln 10}{2 \ln 10} = -\frac{1}{2}. \quad ❑$$

We can obtain these same results more directly from the relation

(7.5.8)
$$\boxed{\log_p p^t = t.}$$

Accordingly

$$\log_2 32 = \log_2 2^5 = 5 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \log_{100}\left(\tfrac{1}{10}\right) = \log_{100}(100^{-1/2}) = -\tfrac{1}{2}.$$

Since $\log_p x$ and $\ln x$ differ only by a constant factor, there is no reason to introduce new differentiation and integration formulas. For the record, we simply point out that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\log_p x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\ln x}{\ln p}\right) = \frac{1}{x \ln p}.$$

If p is e, the factor $\ln p$ is 1 and we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\log_e x) = \frac{1}{x}.$$

The logarithm to the base e, $\ln = \log_e$, is called *the natural logarithm* (or simply *the logarithm*) because it is the logarithm with the simplest derivative.

Example 5 Calculate

(a) $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\log_5 |x|)$, **(b)** $\dfrac{d}{dx}[\log_2(3x^2 + 1)]$, **(c)** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x \ln 10}\,dx$.

SOLUTION

(a) $$\frac{d}{dx}(\log_5 |x|) = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{\ln |x|}{\ln 5}\right] = \frac{1}{x \ln 5}.$$

(b) $$\frac{d}{dx}[\log_2(3x^2 + 1)] = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{\ln(3x^2 + 1)}{\ln 2}\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{(3x^2 + 1)\ln 2}\frac{d}{dx}(3x^2 + 1) = \frac{6x}{(3x^2 + 1)\ln 2}.$$

by the chain rule

(c) $$\int \frac{1}{x \ln 10}\,dx = \frac{1}{\ln 10}\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \frac{\ln |x|}{\ln 10} + C = \log_{10} |x| + C. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 7.5

Exercises 1–8. Evaluate.

1. $\log_2 64$.

2. $\log_2 \frac{1}{64}$.

3. $\log_{64} \frac{1}{2}$.

4. $\log_{10} 0.01$.

5. $\log_5 1$.

6. $\log_5 0.2$.

7. $\log_5 125$.

8. $\log_2 4^3$.

Exercises 9–12. Show that the identity holds.

9. $\log_p xy = \log_p x + \log_p y$.

10. $\log_p \dfrac{1}{x} = -\log_p x$.

11. $\log_p x^y = y \log_p x$.

12. $\log_p \dfrac{x}{y} = \log_p x - \log_p y$.

Exercises 13–16. Find the numbers x which satisfy the equation.

13. $10^x = e^x$.

14. $\log_5 x = 0.04$.

15. $\log_x 10 = \log_4 100$.

16. $\log_x 2 = \log_3 x$.

17. Estimate $\ln a$ given that $e^{t_1} < a < e^{t_2}$.

18. Estimate e^b given that $\ln x_1 < b < \ln x_2$.

Exercises 19–28. Differentiate.

19. $f(x) = 3^{2x}$.

20. $g(x) = 4^{3x^2}$.

21. $f(x) = 2^{5x} 3^{\ln x}$.

22. $F(x) = 5^{-2x^2+x}$.

23. $g(x) = \sqrt{\log_3 x}$.

24. $h(x) = 7^{\sin x^2}$.

25. $f(x) = \tan(\log_5 x)$.

26. $g(x) = \dfrac{\log_{10} x}{x^2}$.

27. $F(x) = \cos(2^x + 2^{-x})$.

28. $h(x) = a^{-x} \cos bx$.

Exercises 29–35. Calculate.

29. $\int 3^x \, dx$.

30. $\int 2^{-x} \, dx$.

31. $\int (x^3 + 3^{-x}) \, dx$.

32. $\int x 10^{-x^2} \, dx$.

33. $\int \dfrac{dx}{x \ln 5}$.

34. $\int \dfrac{\log_5 x}{x} \, dx$.

35. $\int \dfrac{\log_2 x^3}{x} \, dx$.

36. Show that, if a, b, c are positive, then

$$\log_a c = \log_a b \log_b c$$

provided that a and b are both different from 1.

Exercises 37–40. Find $f'(e)$.

37. $f(x) = \log_3 x$.

38. $f(x) = x \log_3 x$.

39. $f(x) = \ln(\ln x)$.

40. $f(x) = \log_3(\log_2 x)$.

Exercises 41–42. Calculate $f'(x)$ by first taking the logarithm of both sides.

41. $f(x) = p^x$.

42. $f(x) = p^{g(x)}$.

Exercises 43–52. Calculate.

43. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(x+1)^x]$.

44. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(\ln x)^x]$.

45. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(\ln x)^{\ln x}]$.

46. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)^x\right]$.

47. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[x^{\sin x}]$.

48. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(\cos x)^{(x^2+1)}]$.

49. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(\sin x)^{\cos x}]$.

50. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[x^{(x^2)}]$.

51. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[x^{(2^x)}]$.

52. $\dfrac{d}{dx}[(\tan x)^{\sec x}]$.

53. Show that

$$\text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^x \to e.$$

HINT: Since the logarithm function has derivative 1 at $x = 1$,

$$\text{as } h \to 0, \qquad \frac{\ln(1+h) - \ln 1}{h} = \frac{\ln(1+h)}{h} \to 1.$$

Exercises 54–58. Draw a figure that displays the graphs of both functions.

54. $f(x) = e^x$ and $g(x) = 3^x$.

55. $f(x) = e^x$ and $g(x) = 2^x$.

56. $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = \log_3 x$.

57. $f(x) = 2^x$ and $g(x) = \log_2 x$.

58. $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = \log_2 x$.

Exercises 59–65. Evaluate.

59. $\int_1^2 2^{-x} \, dx$.

60. $\int_0^1 4^x \, dx$.

61. $\int_1^4 \dfrac{dx}{x \ln 2}$.

62. $\int_0^2 p^{x/2} \, dx$.

63. $\int_0^1 x 10^{1+x^2} \, dx$.

64. $\int_0^1 \dfrac{5p^{\sqrt{x+1}}}{\sqrt{x+1}} \, dx$.

65. $\int_0^1 (2^x + x^2) \, dx$.

Exercises 66–68. Give the exact value.

66. $7^{1/\ln 7}$.

67. $5^{(\ln 17)/(\ln 5)}$.

68. $(16)^{1/\ln 2}$.

69. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw a figure that displays the graphs of both $f(x) = 2^x$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 1$.
(b) Use a CAS to find the x-coordinates of the three points where the curves intersect.
(c) Use a CAS to find the area of the bounded region that lies between the two curves.

70. Exercise 69 for $f(x) = 2^{-x}$ and $g(x) = 1/x^2$.

■ 7.6 EXPONENTIAL GROWTH AND DECAY

We begin by comparing exponential change to linear change. Let $y = y(t)$ be a function of time t.

If y is a linear function, a function of the form

$$y(t) = kt + C, \qquad (k, C \text{ constants})$$

then y changes by the *same additive amount during all periods of the same duration*:

$$y(t + \Delta t) = k(t + \Delta t) + C = (kt + C) + k\Delta t = y(t) + k\Delta t.$$

During every period of length Δt, y changes by the same amount $k\Delta t$.

If y is a function of the form

$$y(t) = Ce^{kt}, \qquad (k, C \text{ constants})$$

then y changes by the same *multiplicative factor during all periods of the same duration*:

$$y(t + \Delta t) = Ce^{k(t+\Delta t)} = Ce^{kt}e^{k\Delta t} = e^{k\Delta t}y(t).$$

During every period of length Δt, y changes by the factor $e^{k\Delta t}$.

Functions of the form

$$f(t) = Ce^{kt}$$

have the property that the derivative $f'(t)$ is proportional to $f(t)$:

$$f'(t) = Cke^{kt} = kCe^{kt} = kf(t).$$

Moreover, they are the only such functions:

THEOREM 7.6.1

If

$$f'(t) = kf(t) \quad \text{for all } t \text{ in some interval,}$$

then there is a constant C such that

$$f(t) = Ce^{kt} \quad \text{for all } t \text{ in that interval.}$$

PROOF We assume that

$$f'(t) = kf(t)$$

and write

$$f'(t) - kf(t) = 0.$$

Multiplying this equation by e^{-kt}, we have

$$(*) \qquad e^{-kt}f'(t) - k\,e^{-kt}f(t) = 0.$$

Observe now that the left side of this equation is the derivative

$$\frac{d}{dt}[e^{-kt}f(t)]. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

Equation $(*)$ can therefore be written

$$\frac{d}{dt}[e^{-kt}f(t)] = 0.$$

It follows that

$$e^{-kt}f(t) = C \qquad \text{for some constant } C.$$

Multiplication by e^{kt} gives

$$f(t) = Ce^{kt}. \quad \square$$

Remark In the study of exponential growth or decay, time is usually measured from time $t = 0$. The constant C is the value of f at time $t = 0$:

$$f(0) = Ce^0 = C.$$

This is called the *initial value of f*. Thus the exponential $f(t) = Ce^{kt}$ can be written

$$f(t) = f(0)e^{kt}. \quad \square$$

Example 1 Find $f(t)$ given that $f'(t) = 2f(t)$ for all t and $f(0) = 5$.

SOLUTION The fact that $f'(t) = 2f(t)$ tells us that $f(t) = Ce^{2t}$ where C is some constant. Since $f(0) = C = 5$, we have $f(t) = 5e^{2t}$. $\square$

Population Growth

Under ideal conditions (unlimited space, adequate food supply, immunity to disease, and so on), the rate of increase of a population P at time t is proportional to the size of the population at time t. That is,

$$P'(t) = kP(t)$$

where $k > 0$ is a constant, called the *growth constant*. Thus, by our theorem, the size of the population at any time t is given by

$$P(t) = P(0)e^{kt},$$

and the population is said to grow *exponentially*. This is a model of uninhibited growth. In reality, the rate of increase of a population does not continue to be proportional to the size of the population. After some time has passed, factors such as limitations on space or food supply, diseases, and so forth set in and affect the growth rate of the population.

Example 2 In 1980 the world population was approximately 4.5 billion and in the year 2000 it was approximately 6 billion. Assume that the world population at each time t increases at a rate proportional to the world population at time t. Measure t in years after 1980.

(a) Determine the growth constant and derive a formula for the population at time t.

(b) Estimate how long it will take for the world population to reach 9 billion (double the 1980 population).

(c) The world population for 2002 was reported to be about 6.2 billion. What population did the formula in part (a) predict for the year 2002?

SOLUTION Let $P(t)$ be the world population in billions t years after 1980. Since $P(0) = 4.5 = \frac{9}{2}$, the basic equation $P'(t) = kP(t)$ gives

$$P(t) = \tfrac{9}{2}e^{kt}.$$

(a) Since $P(20) = 6$, we have

$$\tfrac{9}{2}e^{20k} = 6, \qquad 20k = \ln\tfrac{12}{9} = \ln\tfrac{4}{3}, \qquad k = \tfrac{1}{20}\ln\tfrac{4}{3} \cong 0.0143.$$

The growth constant k is approximately 0.0143. The population t years after 1980 is

$$P(t) \cong \tfrac{9}{2}e^{0.0143t}.$$

(b) To find the value of t for which $P(t) = 9$, we set $\frac{9}{2}e^{0.0143t} = 9$:

$$e^{0.0143t} = 2, \qquad 0.0143t = \ln 2, \qquad \text{and} \qquad t = \frac{\ln 2}{0.0143} \cong 48.47.$$

Based on the data given, the world population should reach 9 billion approximately $48\frac{1}{2}$ years after 1980—around midyear 2028. (As of January 1, 2002, demographers were predicting that the world population would peak at 9 billion in the year 2070 and then start to decline.)

(c) The population predicted for the year 2002 is

$$P(22) \cong \tfrac{9}{2}e^{0.0143(22)} = \tfrac{9}{2}e^{0.3146} \cong 6.164$$

billion, not far off the reported figure of 6.2 billion. ❑

Bacterial Colonies

Example 3 The size of a bacterial colony increases at a rate proportional to the size of the colony. Suppose that when the first measurement is taken, time $t = 0$, the colony occupies an area of 0.25 square centimeters and 8 hours later the colony occupies 0.35 square centimeters.

(a) Estimate the size of the colony t hours after the initial measurement is taken. What is the expected size of the colony at the end of 12 hours?

(b) Find the *doubling time*, the time it takes for the colony to double in size.

SOLUTION Let $S(t)$ be the size of the colony at time t, size measured in square centimeters, t measured in hours. The basic equation $S'(t) = kS(t)$ gives

$$S(t) = S(0)\,e^{kt}.$$

Since $S(0) = 0.25$, we have

$$S(t) = (0.25)\,e^{kt}.$$

We can evaluate the growth constant k from the fact that $S(8) = 0.35$:

$$0.35 = (0.25)\,e^{8k}, \qquad e^{8k} = 1.4, \qquad 8k = \ln(1.4)$$

and therefore

$$k = \tfrac{1}{8}\ln(1.4) \cong 0.042.$$

(a) The size of the colony at time t is

$$S(t) \cong (0.25)\,e^{0.042t} \quad \text{square centimeters.}$$

The expected size of the colony at the end of 12 hours is

$$S(12) \cong (0.25)\,e^{0.042(12)} \cong (0.25)\,e^{0.504} \cong 0.41 \text{ square centimeters.}$$

(b) To find the doubling time, we seek the value of t for which $S(t) = 2(0.25) = 0.50$. Thus we set

$$(0.25)\,e^{0.042t} = 0.50$$

and solve for t:

$$e^{0.042t} = 2, \qquad 0.042t = \ln 2, \qquad t = \frac{\ln 2}{0.042} \cong 16.50.$$

The doubling time is approximately $16\frac{1}{2}$ hours. ❑

Remark There is a way of expressing $S(t)$ that uses the exact value of k. We have seen that $k = \frac{1}{8}\ln(1.4)$. Therefore

$$S(t) = (0.25)e^{(t/8)\ln(1.4)} = (0.25)\,e^{\ln(1.4)^{t/8}} = (0.25)(1.4)^{t/8}.$$

We leave it to you as an exercise to verify that the population function derived in Example 2 can be written $P(t) = \frac{9}{2}\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^{t/20}$. ❑

Radioactive Decay

Although different radioactive substances decay at different rates, each radioactive substance decays at a rate proportional to the amount of the substance present: if $A(t)$ is the amount present at time t, then

$$A'(t) = kA(t) \qquad \text{for some constant } k.$$

Since A decreases, the constant k, called the *decay constant*, is a negative number. From general considerations already explained, we know that

$$A(t) = A(0)\,e^{kt}$$

where $A(0)$ is the amount present at time $t = 0$.

The *half-life* of a radioactive substance is the time T it takes for half of the substance to decay. The decay constant k and the half-life T are related by the equation

(7.6.2) $$\boxed{kT = -\ln 2.}$$

PROOF The relation $A(T) = \frac{1}{2}A(0)$ gives

$$\tfrac{1}{2}A(0) = A(0)e^{kT}, \qquad e^{kT} = \tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad kT = -\ln 2. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Today we have A_0 grams of a radioactive substance with a half-life of 8 years.

(a) How much of this substance will remain in 16 years?
(b) How much of the substance will remain in 4 years?
(c) What is the decay constant?
(d) How much of the substance will remain in t years?

SOLUTION We know that exponentials change by the same factor during all time periods of the same length.

(a) During the first 8 years A_0 will decrease to $\frac{1}{2}A_0$, and during the following 8 years it will decrease to $\frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{2}A_0) = \frac{1}{4}A_0$. Answer: $\frac{1}{4}A_0$ grams.
(b) In 4 years A_0 will decrease to some fractional multiple αA_0 and in the following 4 years to $\alpha^2 A_0$. Since $\alpha^2 = \frac{1}{2}$, $\alpha = \sqrt{2}/2$. Answer: $(\sqrt{2}/2)A_0$ grams.
(c) In general, $kT = -\ln 2$. Here $T = 8$ years. Answer: $k = -\frac{1}{8}\ln 2$.
(d) In general, $A(t) = A(0)e^{kt}$. Here $A(0) = A_0$ and $k = -\frac{1}{8}\ln 2$. Answer: $A(t) = A_0 e^{-\frac{1}{8}(\ln 2)t}$. ❑

Example 5 Cobalt-60 is a radioactive substance used extensively in radiology. It has a half-life of 5.3 years. Today we have a sample of 100 grams.

(a) Determine the decay constant of cobalt-60.
(b) How much of the 100 grams will remain in t years?
(c) How long will it take for 90% of the sample to decay?

SOLUTION

(a) Equation (7.6.2) gives

$$k = \frac{-\ln 2}{T} = \frac{-\ln 2}{5.3} \cong -0.131.$$

(b) Given that $A(0) = 100$, the amount that will remain in t years is

$$A(t) = 100e^{-0.131t}.$$

(c) If 90% of the sample decays, then 10%, which is 10 grams, remains. We seek the time t at which

$$100e^{-0.131t} = 10.$$

We solve this equation for t:

$$e^{-0.131t} = 0.1, \qquad -0.131t = \ln(0.1), \qquad t = \frac{\ln(0.1)}{-0.131} \cong 17.6.$$

It will take approximately 17.6 years for 90% of the sample to decay. ❑

Compound Interest

Consider money invested at annual interest rate r. If the accumulated interest is credited once a year, then the interest is said to be compounded annually; if twice a year, then semiannually; if four times a year, then quarterly. The idea can be pursued further. Interest can be credited every day, every hour, every second, every half-second, and so on. In the limiting case, interest is credited instantaneously. Economists call this *continuous compounding*.

The economists' formula for continuous compounding is a simple exponential:

(7.6.3) $$\boxed{A(t) = A_0e^{rt}.}$$

Here t is measured in years,

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 &= A(0) = \text{the initial investment,} \\ r &= \text{the annual interest rate expressed as a decimal,} \\ A(t) &= \text{the principal at time } t. \end{aligned}$$

A DERIVATION OF THE COMPOUND INTEREST FORMULA Fix t and take h as a small time increment. Then

$$A(t+h) - A(t) = \text{interest earned from time } t \text{ to time } t+h.$$

Had the principal remained $A(t)$ from time t to time $t+h$, the interest earned during this time period would have been

$$rhA(t).$$

Had the principal been $A(t+h)$ throughout the time interval, the interest earned would have been

$$rhA(t+h).$$

The actual interest earned must be somewhere in between:

$$rhA(t) \leq A(t+h) - A(t) \leq rhA(t+h).$$

Dividing by h, we get

$$rA(t) \leq \frac{A(t+h) - A(t)}{h} \leq rA(t+h).$$

If A varies continuously, then, as h tends to zero, $rA(t+h)$ tends to $rA(t)$ and (by the pinching theorem) the difference quotient in the middle must also tend to $rA(t)$:

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{A(t+h) - A(t)}{h} = rA(t).$$

This says that

$$A'(t) = rA(t).$$

Thus, with continuous compounding, the principal increases at a rate proportional to the amount present and the growth constant is the interest rate r. Now, it follows that

$$A(t) = Ce^{rt}.$$

If A_0 is the initial investment, we have $C = A_0$ and therefore $A(t) = A_0 e^{rt}$. ❑

Remark Frequency of compounding affects the return on principal, but (on modest sums) not very much. Listed below are the year-end values of \$1000 invested at 6% under various forms of compounding:

(a) Annual compounding: $1000(1 + 0.06) = \$1060$.
(b) Quarterly compounding: $1000[1 + (.06/4)]^4 = \$1061.36$.
(c) Monthly compounding: $1000[1 + (.06/12)]^{12} = \$1061.67$.
(d) Continuous compounding: $1000\, e^{0.06} \cong \$1061.84$. ❑

Example 6 \$1000 is deposited in a bank account that yields 5% compounded continuously. Estimate the value of the account 6 years later. How much interest will have been earned during that 6-year period?

SOLUTION Here $A_0 = 1000$ and $r = 0.05$. The value of the account t years after the deposit is made is given by the function

$$A(t) = 1000\, e^{0.05t}.$$

At the end of the sixth year, the value of the account will be

$$A(6) = 1000\, e^{0.05(6)} = 1000\, e^{0.3} \cong 1349.86.$$

Interest earned: \$349.86. ❑

Example 7 How long does it take to double your money at interest rate r compounded continuously?

SOLUTION During t years an initial investment A_0 grows in value to

$$A(t) = A_0\, e^{rt}.$$

You double your money once you have reached the time period t for which

$$A_0\, e^{rt} = 2A_0.$$

Solving this equation for t, we have

$$e^{rt} = 2, \qquad rt = \ln 2, \qquad t = \frac{\ln 2}{r} \cong \frac{0.69}{r}.$$ ❑

For example, at 8% an investment doubles in value in $\frac{0.69}{0.08} = 8.625$ years.

Remark A popular estimate for the doubling time at an interest rate α% is the *rule of 72:*

$$\text{doubling time} \cong \frac{72}{\alpha}.$$

According to this rule, the doubling time at 8% is approximately $\frac{72}{8} = 9$ years. Here is how the rule originated:

$$\frac{0.69}{\alpha/100} = \frac{69}{\alpha} \cong \frac{72}{\alpha}.$$

For rough calculations 72 is preferred to 69 because 72 has more divisors.† ❑

†This way of calculating doubling time is too inaccurate for our purposes. We will not use it.

EXERCISES 7.6

NOTE: Some of these exercises require a calculator or graphing utility.

1. Find the amount of interest earned by \$500 compounded continuously for 10 years:
(a) at 6%, (b) at 8%, (c) at 10%.

2. How long does it take for a sum of money to double if compounded continuously:
(a) at 6%? (b) at 8%? (c) at 10%?

3. At what rate r of continuous compounding does a sum of money triple in 20 years?

4. At what rate r of continuous compounding does a sum of money double in 10 years?

5. Show that the population function derived in Example 2 can be written $P(t) = \frac{9}{2}\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^{t/20}$.

6. A biologist observes that a certain bacterial colony triples every 4 hours and after 12 hours occupies 1 square centimeter.
(a) How much area was occupied by the colony when first observed?
(b) What is the doubling time for the colony?

7. A population P of insects increases at a rate proportional to the current population. Suppose there are 10,000 insects at time $t = 0$ and 20,000 insects a week later.
(a) Find an expression for the number $P(t)$ of insects at each time $t > 0$.
(b) How many insects will there be in $\frac{1}{2}$ year? In 1 year?

8. Determine the time period in which $y = Ce^{kt}$ changes by a factor of q.

9. The population of a certain country increases at the rate of 3.5% per year. By what factor does it increase every 10 years? What percentage increase per year will double the population every 15 years?

10. According to the Bureau of the Census, the population of the United States in 1990 was approximately 249 million and in 2000, 281 million. Use this information to estimate the population in 1980. (The actual figure was about 227 million.)

11. Use the data of Exercise 10 to predict the population for 2010. Compare the prediction for 2001 with the actual reported figure of 284.8 million.

12. Use the data of Exercise 10 to estimate how long it will take for the U.S population to double.

13. It is estimated that the arable land on earth can support a maximum of 30 billion people. Extrapolate from the data given in Example 2 to estimate the year when the food supply will become insufficient to support the world population. (Rest assured that there are strong reasons to believe that such extrapolations are invalid. Conditions change.)

14. Water is pumped into a tank to dilute a saline solution. The volume of the solution, call it V, is kept constant by continuous outflow. The amount of salt in the tank, call it s, depends on the amount of water that has been pumped in; call this x. Given that

$$\frac{ds}{dx} = -\frac{s}{V},$$

find the amount of water that must be pumped into the tank to eliminate 50% of the salt. Take V as 10,000 gallons.

15. A 200-liter tank initially full of water develops a leak at the bottom. Given that 20% of the water leaks out in the first 5 minutes, find the amount of water left in the tank t minutes after the leak develops if the water drains off at a rate proportional to the amount of water present.

16. What is the half-life of a radioactive substance if it takes 5 years for one-third of the substance to decay?

17. Two years ago there were 5 grams of a radioactive substance. Now there are 4 grams. How much will remain 3 years from now?

18. A year ago there were 4 grams of a radioactive substance. Now there are 3 grams. How much was there 10 years ago?

19. Suppose the half-life of a radioactive substance is n years. What percentage of the substance present at the start of a year will decay during the ensuing year?

20. A radioactive substance weighed n grams at time $t = 0$. Today, 5 years later, the substance weighs m grams. How much will it weigh 5 years from now?

21. The half-life of radium-226 is 1620 years. What percentage of a given amount of the radium will remain after 500 years? How long will it take for the original amount to be reduced by 75%?

22. Cobalt-60 has a half-life of 5.3 years. What percentage of a given amount of cobalt will remain after 8 years? If you have 100 grams of cobalt now, how much was there 3 years ago?

23. (*The power of exponential growth)* Imagine two racers competing on the x-axis (which has been calibrated in meters), a linear racer LIN [position function of the form $x_1(t) = kt + C$] and an exponential racer EXP [position function of the form $x_2(t) = e^{kt} + C$]. Suppose that both racers start out simultaneously from the origin, LIN at 1 million meters per second, EXP at only 1 meter per second. In the early stages of the race, fast-starting LIN will move far ahead of EXP, but in time EXP will catch up to LIN, pass her, and leave her hopelessly behind. Show that this is true as follows:

(a) Express the position of each racer as a function of time, measuring t in seconds.

(b) Show that LIN's lead over EXP starts to decline about 13.8 seconds into the race.

(c) Show that LIN is still ahead of EXP some 15 seconds into the race but far behind 3 seconds later.

(d) Show that, once EXP passes LIN, LIN can never catch up.

24. (*The weakness of logarithmic growth*) Having been soundly beaten in the race of Exercise 23, LIN finds an opponent she can beat, LOG, the logarithmic racer [position function $x_3(t) = k\ln(t+1) + C$]. Once again the racetrack is the x-axis calibrated in meters. Both racers start out at the origin, LOG at 1 million meters per second, LIN at only 1 meter per second. (LIN is tired from the previous race.) In this race LOG will shoot ahead and remain ahead for a long time, but eventually LIN will catch up to LOG, pass her, and leave her permanently behind. Show that this is true as follows:

(a) Express the position of each racer as a function of time t, measuring t in seconds.

(b) Show that LOG's lead over LIN starts to decline $10^6 - 1$ seconds into the race.

(c) Show that LOG is still ahead of LIN $10^7 - 1$ seconds into the race but behind LIN $10^8 - 1$ seconds into the race.

(d) Show that, once LIN passes LOG, LOG can never catch up.

25. Atmospheric pressure p varies with altitude h according to the equation

$$\frac{dp}{dh} = kp \qquad \text{where } k \text{ is a constant.}$$

Given that p is 15 pounds per square inch at sea level and 10 pounds per square inch at 10,000 feet, find p at: (a) 5000 feet; (b) 15,000 feet.

26. The compound interest formula

$$Q = Pe^{rt}$$

can be written

$$P = Qe^{-rt}.$$

In this formulation we have P as the investment required today to obtain Q in t years. In this sense P dollars is *present value* of Q dollars to be received t years from now. Find the present value of \$20,000 to be received 4 years from now. Assume continuous compounding at 4%.

27. Find the interest rate r needed for \$6000 to be the present value of \$10,000 8 years from now.

28. You are 45 years old and are looking forward to an annual pension of \$50,000 per year at age 65. What is the present-day purchasing power (present value) of your pension if money can be invested over this period at a continuously compounded interest rate of: (a) 4%? (b) 6%? (c) 8%?

29. The cost of the tuition, fees, room, and board at XYZ College is currently \$25,000 per year. What would you expect to pay 3 years from now if the costs at XYZ are rising at the continuously compounded rate of: (a) 5%? (b) 8%? (c) 12%?

30. A boat moving in still water is subject to a retardation proportional to its velocity. Show that the velocity t seconds after the power is shut off is given by the formula $v = \alpha e^{-kt}$ where α is the velocity at the instant the power is shut off.

31. A boat is drifting in still water at 4 miles per hour; 1 minute later, at 2 miles per hour. How far has the boat drifted in that 1 minute? (See Exercise 30.)

32. During the process of inversion, the amount A of raw sugar present decreases at a rate proportional to A. During the first 10 hours, 1000 pounds of raw sugar have been reduced to 800 pounds. How many pounds will remain after 10 more hours of inversion?

33. The method of *carbon dating* makes use of the fact that all living organisms contain two isotopes of carbon, carbon-12, denoted ^{12}C (a stable isotope), and carbon-14, denoted ^{14}C (a radioactive isotope). The ratio of the amount of ^{14}C to the amount of ^{12}C is essentially constant (approximately 1/10,000). When an organism dies, the amount of ^{12}C present remains unchanged, but the ^{14}C decays at a rate proportional to the amount present with a half-life of approximately 5700 years. This change in the amount of ^{14}C relative to the amount of ^{12}C makes it possible to estimate the time at which the organism lived. A fossil found in an archaeological dig was found to contain 25% of the original amount of ^{14}C. What is the approximate age of the fossil?

34. The Dead Sea Scrolls are approximately 2000 years old. How much of the original ^{14}C remains in them?

Exercises 35–37. Find all the functions f that satisfy the equation for all real t.

35. $f'(t) = t f(t)$. HINT: Write $f'(t) - t f(t) = 0$ and multiply the equation by $e^{-t^2/2}$.

36. $f'(t) = \sin t\, f(t)$.

37. $f'(t) = \cos t\, f(t)$.

38. Let g be a function everywhere continuous and not identically zero. Show that if $f'(t) = g(t) f(t)$ for all real t, then either f is identically zero or f does not take on the value zero.

■ 7.7 THE INVERSE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

Arc Sine

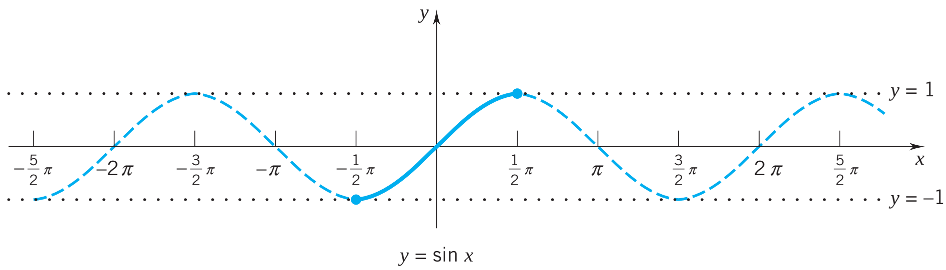


Figure 7.7.1

Figure 7.7.1 shows the sine wave. Clearly the sine function is not one-to-one: it takes on every value from -1 to 1 an infinite number of times. However, on the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$ it takes on every value from -1 to 1, but only once. (See the solid part of the wave.) Thus the function

$$y = \sin x, \qquad x \in \left[-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right]$$

maps the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$ onto $[-1, 1]$ in a one-to-one manner and has an inverse that maps $[-1, 1]$ back to $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$, also in a one-to-one manner. The inverse is called the *arc sine function*:

$$y = \arcsin x, \qquad x \in [-1, 1]$$

is the inverse of the function

$$y = \sin x, \qquad x \in \left[-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right].$$

These functions are graphed in Figure 7.7.2. Each graph is the reflection of the other in the line $y = x$.

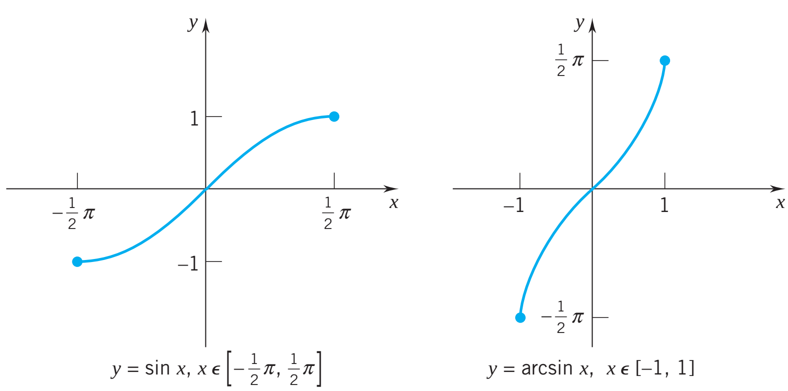


Figure 7.7.2

Since these functions are inverses,

(7.7.1) $$\boxed{\text{for all } x \in [-1, 1], \qquad \sin(\arcsin x) = x}$$

and

(7.7.2) $$\boxed{\text{for all } x \in \left[-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right], \qquad \arcsin(\sin x) = x.}$$

Table 7.7.1 gives some representative values of the sine function from $x = -\frac{1}{2}\pi$ to $x = \frac{1}{2}\pi$. Reversing the order of the columns, we have a table for the arc sine. (Table 7.7.2.)

On the basis of Table 7.7.2 one could guess that for all $x \in [-1, 1]$

$$\arcsin(-x) = -\arcsin(x).$$

This is indeed the case. Being the inverse of an odd function ($\sin(-x) = -\sin x$ for all $x \in [-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$), the arc sine is itself an odd function. (We leave it to you to verify this.)

■ **Table 7.7.1**

x	$\sin x$
$-\frac{1}{2}\pi$	-1
$-\frac{1}{3}\pi$	$-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$
$-\frac{1}{4}\pi$	$-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$
$-\frac{1}{6}\pi$	$-\frac{1}{2}$
0	0
$\frac{1}{6}\pi$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{4}\pi$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$
$\frac{1}{3}\pi$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{1}{2}\pi$	1

■ **Table 7.7.2**

x	arcsin
-1	$-\frac{1}{2}\pi$
$-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$	$-\frac{1}{3}\pi$
$-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$	$-\frac{1}{4}\pi$
$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{6}\pi$
0	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{6}\pi$
$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}\pi$
$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}\pi$
1	$\frac{1}{2}\pi$

Example 1 Calculate if defined:

(a) $\arcsin(\sin\frac{1}{16}\pi)$ **(b)** $\arcsin(\sin\frac{7}{3}\pi)$

(c) $\sin(\arcsin\frac{1}{3})$ **(d)** $\arcsin(\sin\frac{9}{5}\pi)$

(e) $\sin(\arcsin 2)$.

SOLUTION

(a) Since $\frac{1}{16}\pi$ is in the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$, we know from (7.7.2) that

$$\arcsin\left(\sin\tfrac{1}{16}\pi\right) = \tfrac{1}{16}\pi.$$

(b) Since $\frac{7}{3}\pi$ is not in the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$, we cannot apply (7.7.2) directly. However, $\frac{7}{3}\pi = \frac{1}{3}\pi + 2\pi$ and $\sin(\frac{1}{3}\pi + 2\pi) = \sin(\frac{1}{3}\pi)$. Therefore

$$\arcsin\left(\sin\tfrac{7}{3}\pi\right) = \arcsin\left(\sin\tfrac{1}{3}\pi\right) \underset{\text{from (7.7.2)}}{=} \tfrac{1}{3}\pi.$$

(c) From (7.7.1),

$$\sin\left(\arcsin\tfrac{1}{3}\right) = \tfrac{1}{3}.$$

(d) Since $\frac{9}{5}\pi$ is not within the interval $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$, we cannot apply (7.7.2) directly. However, $\frac{9}{5}\pi = 2\pi - \frac{1}{5}\pi$. Therefore

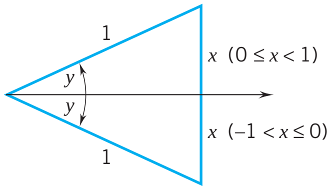
$$\arcsin\left(\sin\tfrac{9}{5}\pi\right) = \arcsin\left[\sin\left(-\tfrac{1}{5}\pi\right)\right] \underset{\text{from (7.7.2)}}{=} -\tfrac{1}{5}\pi.$$

(e) The expression $\sin(\arcsin 2)$ makes no sense since 2 is not in the domain of the arc sine. (There is *no* angle with sine 2.) The arc sine is defined only on $[-1, 1]$. ❑

Since the derivative of the sine function,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x,$$

is nonzero on $(-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$, the arc sine function is differentiable on the open interval $(-1, 1)$[†]. We can find the derivative as follows: reading from the accompanying figure



$$y = \arcsin x$$
$$\sin y = x$$
$$\cos y \frac{dy}{dx} = 1$$
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\cos y} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}.$$

Thus

(7.7.3)
$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\arcsin x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}.}$$

Example 2

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\arcsin 3x^2) = \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(3x^2)^2}}\cdot\frac{d}{dx}(3x^2)}_{\text{the chain rule}} = \frac{6x}{\sqrt{1-9x^4}}.$$

NOTE: We continue with the convention that if the domain of a function f is not specified explicitly, then it is understood to be the maximal set of real numbers x for which $f(x)$ is a real number. In this case, the domain is the set of real numbers x for which $-1 \le 3x^2 \le 1$. This is the interval $[-1/\sqrt{3},\ 1/\sqrt{3}]$. ❑

The integral counterpart of (7.7.3) reads

(7.7.4)
$$\boxed{\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \arcsin x + C.}$$

Example 3 Show that for $a > 0$

(7.7.5)
$$\boxed{\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} = \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + C.}$$

SOLUTION We change variables so that a^2 is replaced by 1 and we can use (7.7.4). To this end we set

$$au = x, \quad a\,du = dx.$$

[†]Section 7.1.

Then

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \underbrace{\int \frac{a\,du}{\sqrt{a^2 - a^2u^2} } = \int \frac{a\,du}{a\sqrt{1-u^2}}}_{\text{since } a > 0}$$

$$= \int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = \arcsin u + C = \arcsin \frac{x}{a} + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\sqrt{3}} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx$.

SOLUTION By (7.7.5),

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4-x^2}} = \arcsin \frac{x}{2} + C.$$

It follows that

$$\int_0^{\sqrt{3}} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx = \left[\arcsin \frac{x}{2}\right]_0^{\sqrt{3}} = \arcsin \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \arcsin 0 = \frac{\pi}{3} - 0 = \frac{\pi}{3}. \quad ❑$$

Arc Tangent

Although not one-to-one on its full domain, the tangent function is one-to-one on the open interval $(-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$ and on that interval the function takes on as a value every real number. (See Figure 7.7.3.) Thus the function

$$y = \tan x, \qquad x \in \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right)$$

maps the interval $(-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$ onto $(-\infty, \infty)$ in a one-to-one manner and has an inverse that maps $(-\infty, \infty)$ back to $(-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$, also in a one-to-one manner. This inverse is called the *arc tangent*: the *arc tangent function*

$$y = \arctan x, \qquad x \in (-\infty, \infty)$$

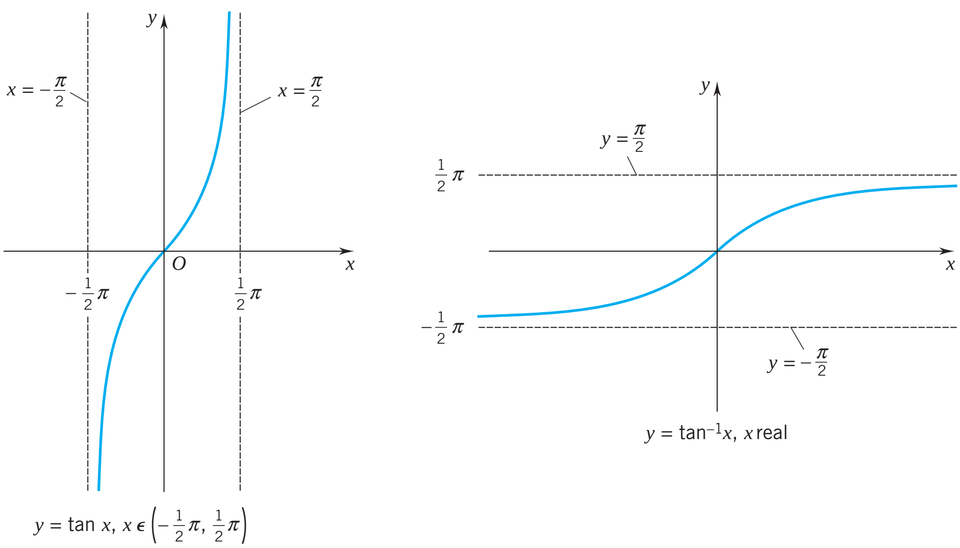


Figure 7.7.3

is the inverse of the function

$$y = \tan x, \quad x \in \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right).$$

These functions are graphed in Figure 7.7.3.

Each graph is the reflection of the other in the line $y = x$. While the tangent has vertical asymptotes, the inverse tangent has horizontal asymptotes. Both functions are odd functions.

Since these functions are inverses,

(7.7.6) $\quad$ for all real numbers $x \qquad \tan(\arctan x) = x$

and

(7.7.7) $\quad$ for all $x \in \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right), \qquad \arctan(\tan x) = x.$

It is hard to make a mistake with (7.7.6) since that relation holds for all real numbers, but the application of (7.7.7) requires some care since it applies only to x in $(-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi)$. Thus, while $\arctan(\tan \tfrac{1}{4}\pi) = \tfrac{1}{4}\pi$, $\arctan(\tan \tfrac{7}{5}\pi) \neq \tfrac{7}{5}\pi$. To calculate $\arctan(\tan \tfrac{7}{5}\pi)$, we use the fact that the tangent function has period π. Therefore

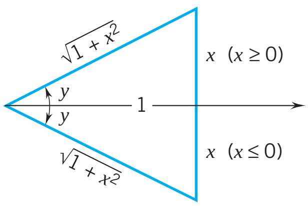
$$\arctan\left(\tan \tfrac{7}{5}\pi\right) = \arctan\left(\tan \tfrac{2}{5}\pi\right) = \tfrac{2}{5}\pi.$$

The final equality holds since $\tfrac{2}{5}\pi \in (-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi)$.

Since the derivative of the tangent function,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x = \frac{1}{\cos^2 x},$$

is never 0 on $(-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi)$, the arc tangent function is everywhere differentiable. (Section 7.1) We can find the derivative as we did for the arc sine: reading from the figure



$$y = \arctan x$$

$$\tan y = x$$

$$\sec^2 y \frac{dy}{dx} = 1$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sec^2 y} = \cos^2 y = \frac{1}{1+x^2}.$$

We have found that

(7.7.8) $\quad \dfrac{d}{dx}(\arctan x) = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}.$

Example 5

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\arctan(ax^2+bx+c)] = \frac{1}{1+(ax^2+bx+c)^2} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(ax^2+bx+c)$$

by the chain rule

$$= \frac{2ax+b}{1+(ax^2+bx+c)^2}. \quad ❑$$

The integral counterpart of (7.7.8) reads

(7.7.9)
$$\boxed{\int \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = \arctan x + C.}$$

Example 6 Show that, for $a \neq 0$,

(7.7.10)
$$\boxed{\int \frac{dx}{a^2+x^2} = \frac{1}{a}\arctan\frac{x}{a} + C.}$$

SOLUTION We change variables so that a^2 is replaced by 1 and we can use (7.7.9). We set

$$au = x, \qquad a\,du = dx.$$

Then

$$\int \frac{dx}{a^2+x^2} = \int \frac{a\,du}{a^2+a^2u^2} = \frac{1}{a}\int \frac{du}{1+u^2}$$
$$\underset{(7.7.9)}{=} \frac{1}{a}\arctan u + C = \frac{1}{a}\arctan\frac{x}{a} + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 7 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \frac{dx}{4+x^2}$.

SOLUTION By (7.7.10),

$$\int \frac{dx}{4+x^2} = \int \frac{dx}{2^2+x^2} = \frac{1}{2}\arctan\frac{x}{2} + C,$$

and therefore

$$\int_0^2 \frac{dx}{4+x^2} = \left[\frac{1}{2}\arctan\frac{x}{2}\right]_0^2 = \frac{1}{2}\arctan 1 - \frac{1}{2}\arctan 0 = \frac{\pi}{8}. \quad ❑$$

Arc Cosine, Arc Cotangent, Arc Secant, Arc Cosecant

These functions are not as important to us as the arc sine and arc tangent, but they do deserve some attention.

Arc Cosine While the cosine function is not one-to-one, it is one-to-one on $[0, \pi]$ and maps that interval onto $[-1, 1]$. (Figure 1.6.13) The *arc cosine* function

$$y = \arccos x, \qquad x \in [-1, 1]$$

is the inverse of the function

$$y = \cos x, \qquad x \in [0, \pi].$$

Arc Cotangent The cotangent function is one-to-one on $(0, \pi)$ and maps that interval onto $(-\infty, \infty)$. The *arc cotangent* function

$$y = \operatorname{arccot} x, \qquad x \in (-\infty, \infty)$$

is the inverse of the function

$$y = \cot x, \qquad x \in (0, \pi).$$

Arc Secant, Arc Cosecant These functions can be defined explicitly in terms of the arc cosine and the arc sine. For $|x| \geq 1$, we set

$$\operatorname{arcsec} x = \arccos(1/x), \qquad \operatorname{arccsc} x = \arcsin(1/x).$$

In the Exercises you are asked to show that for all $|x| \geq 1$

$$\sec(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \csc(\operatorname{arccsc} x) = x.$$

Relations to $\frac{1}{2}\pi$

Where defined

(7.7.11)

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \arcsin x + \arccos x &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \\ \arctan x + \operatorname{arccot} x &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \\ \operatorname{arcsec} x + \operatorname{arccsc} x &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi. \end{aligned}}$$

We derive the first relation; the other two we leave to you. (Exercises 73, 74.)

Our derivation is based on the identity

$$\cos\theta = \sin\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \theta\right). \qquad \text{(Section 1.6)}$$

Suppose that $y = \arccos x$. Then

$$\cos y = x \qquad \text{with} \qquad y \in [0, \pi]$$

and therefore

$$\sin\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - y\right) = x \qquad \text{with} \qquad \left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi - y\right) \in \left[-\tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right].$$

It follows that

$$\arcsin x = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi - y, \qquad \arcsin x + y = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \qquad \arcsin x + \arccos x = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi$$

as asserted. ❑

Derivatives

(7.7.12)

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\frac{d}{dx}(\arcsin x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}, && \frac{d}{dx}(\arccos x) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\arctan x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}, && \frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arccot} x) = -\frac{1}{1+x^2} \\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = \frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}}, && \frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arccsc} x) = -\frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}}. \end{aligned}}$$

VERIFICATION The derivatives of the arc sine and the arc tangent were calculated earlier. That the derivatives of the arc cosine and the arc cotangent are as stated follows immediately from (7.7.11). Once we show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = \frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}},$$

the last formula will follow from (7.7.11). Hence we focus on the arc secant. Since

$$\operatorname{arcsec} x = \arccos(1/x),$$

the chain rule gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arcsec} x) &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(1/x)^2}}\cdot\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)\\ &= -\frac{\sqrt{x^2}}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}\left(-\frac{1}{x^2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{x^2}}{x^2\sqrt{x^2-1}}.\end{aligned}$$

This tells us that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = \begin{cases}\dfrac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}, & \text{for } x > 1\\ \dfrac{1}{-x\sqrt{x^2-1}}, & \text{for } x < -1.\end{cases}$$

The statement

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = \frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}}$$

is just a summary of this result. ❑

Remark on Notation The expressions $\arcsin x$, $\arctan x$, $\arccos x$, and so on are sometimes written $\sin^{-1} x$, $\tan^{-1} x$, $\cos^{-1} x$, and so on. ❑

EXERCISES 7.7

Exercises 1–9. Determine the exact value.

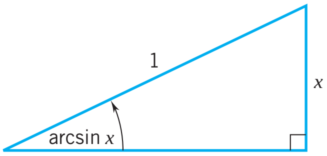
1. (a) $\arctan 0$; (b) $\arcsin(-\sqrt{3}/2)$.
2. (a) $\operatorname{arcsec} 2$; (b) $\arctan(\sqrt{3})$.
3. (a) $\arccos(-\frac{1}{2})$; (b) $\operatorname{arcsec}(-\sqrt{2})$.
4. (a) $\sec(\operatorname{arcsec}[-2/\sqrt{3}])$; (b) $\sec(\arccos[-\frac{1}{2}])$.
5. (a) $\cos(\operatorname{arcsec} 2)$; (b) $\arctan(\sec 0)$.
6. (a) $\arcsin(\sin[11\pi/6])$; (b) $\arctan(\tan[11\pi/4])$.
7. (a) $\arccos(\sec[7\pi]/6)$; (b) $\operatorname{arcsec}(\sin[13\pi/6])$.
8. (a) $\cos(\arcsin[\frac{3}{5}])$; (b) $\sec\left(\arctan[\frac{4}{3}]\right)$.
9. (a) $\sin(2\arccos[\frac{1}{2}])$; (b) $\cos(2\arcsin[\frac{4}{5}])$.

10. (a) What are the domain and range of the arc cosine?
(b) What are the domain and range of the arc cotangent?

Exercises 11–32. Differentiate.

11. $y = \arctan(x+1)$.
12. $y = \arctan\sqrt{x}$.
13. $f(x) = \operatorname{arcsec}(2x^2)$.
14. $f(x) = e^x \arcsin x$.
15. $f(x) = x \arcsin 2x$.
16. $f(x) = e^{\arctan x}$.
17. $u = (\arcsin x)^2$.
18. $v = \arctan e^x$.
19. $y = \dfrac{\arctan x}{x}$.
20. $y = \operatorname{arcsec}\sqrt{x^2+2}$.
21. $f(x) = \sqrt{\arctan 2x}$.
22. $f(x) = \ln(\arctan x)$.
23. $y = \arctan(\ln x)$.
24. $g(x) = \operatorname{arcsec}(\cos x + 2)$.
25. $\theta = \arcsin(\sqrt{1-r^2})$.
26. $\theta = \arcsin\left(\dfrac{r}{r+1}\right)$.
27. $g(x) = x^2 \operatorname{arcsec}^{-1}\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)$.
28. $\theta = \arctan\left(\dfrac{1}{1+r^2}\right)$.
29. $y = \sin[\operatorname{arcsec}(\ln x)]$.
30. $f(x) = e^{\sec^{-1} x}$.
31. $f(x) = \sqrt{c^2-x^2} + c \arcsin\left(\dfrac{x}{c}\right)$. Take $c > 0$.
32. $y = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{c^2-x^2}} - \arcsin\left(\dfrac{x}{c}\right)$. Take $c > 0$.

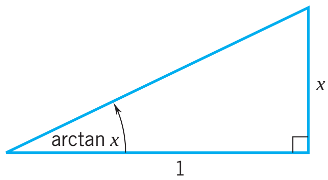
33. If $0 < x < 1$, then $\arcsin x$ is the radian measure of the acute angle that has sine x. We can construct an angle of radian measure $\arcsin x$ by drawing a right triangle with a side of length x and hypotenuse of length 1. Use the accompanying figure to determine the following:



(a) $\sin(\arcsin x)$.
(b) $\cos(\arcsin x)$.
(c) $\tan(\arcsin x)$
(d) $\cot(\arcsin x)$
(e) $\sec(\arcsin x)$
(f) $\csc(\arcsin x)$.

34. If $0 < x < 1$, then $\arctan x$ is the radian measure of the acute angle with tangent x. We can construct an angle of radian

measure arctan x by drawing a right triangle with legs of length x and 1. Use the accompanying figure to determine the following:



(a) $\tan(\arctan x)$ (b) $\cot(\arctan x)$
(c) $\sin(\arctan x)$ (d) $\cos(\arctan x)$
(e) $\sec(\arctan x)$ (f) $\csc(\arctan x)$.

35. Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2-(x+b)^2}}\,dx$ taking $a>0$.

HINT: Set $au = x + b$.

36. Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{a^2+(x+b)^2}\,dx$ taking $a>0$.

37. Show that $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\,dx = \left|\frac{1}{a}\right| \operatorname{arcsec}\left|\frac{x}{a}\right| + C,$ taking $a>0$.

38. (a) Verify, without reference to right triangles, that for all $|x| \ge 1$

$$\sec(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \csc(\operatorname{arcsec} x) = x.$$

(b) What is the range of the arc secant? (The arc secant is the inverse of the secant restricted to this set.)

(c) What is the range of the arc cosecant? (The arc cosecant is the inverse of the cosecant restricted to this set.)

Exercises 39–52. Evaluate.

39. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$.

40. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^1 \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$.

41. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1/\sqrt{2}} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

42. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}$.

43. $\displaystyle\int_0^5 \frac{dx}{25+x^2}$.

44. $\displaystyle\int_5^8 \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2-16}}$.

45. $\displaystyle\int_0^{3/2} \frac{dx}{9+4x^2}$.

46. $\displaystyle\int_2^5 \frac{dx}{9+(x-2)^2}$.

47. $\displaystyle\int_{3/2}^3 \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{16x^2-9}}$.

48. $\displaystyle\int_4^6 \frac{dx}{(x-3)\sqrt{x^2-6x+8}}$.

49. $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{-2} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4-(x+3)^2}}$.

50. $\displaystyle\int_{\ln 2}^{\ln 3} \frac{e^{-x}}{\sqrt{1-e^{-2x}}}\,dx$.

51. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\ln 2} \frac{e^x}{1+e^{2x}}\,dx$.

52. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3-4x^2}}\,dx$.

Exercise 53–62. Calculate.

53. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^4}}\,dx$.

54. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^2 x}{\sqrt{9-\tan^2 x}}\,dx$.

55. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{1+x^4}\,dx$.

56. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4x-x^2}}$.

57. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^2 x}{9+\tan^2 x}\,dx$.

58. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos x}{3+\sin^2 x}\,dx$.

59. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\arcsin x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx$.

60. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\arctan x}{1+x^2}\,dx$.

61. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{1-(\ln x)^2}}$.

62. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x[1+(\ln x)^2]}$.

63. Find the area below the curve $y = 1/\sqrt{4-x^2}$ from $x=-1$ to $x=1$.

64. Find the area below the curve $y = 3/(9+x^2)$ from $x=-3$ to $x=3$.

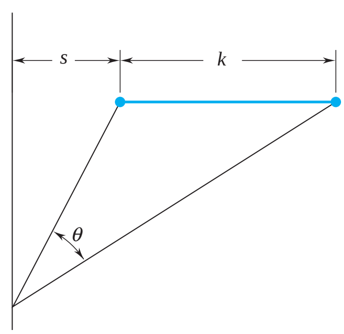
65. Sketch the region bounded above by $y = 8/(x^2+4)$ and bounded below by $4y = x^2$. What is the area of this region?

66. The region below the curve $y = 1/\sqrt{4+x^2}$ from $x=0$ to $x=2$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

67. The region in Exercise 66 is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

68. The region below the curve $y = 1/x^2\sqrt{x^2-9}$ from $x = 2\sqrt{3}$ to $x=6$ is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

69. A billboard k feet wide is perpendicular to a straight road and is s feet from the road. From what point on the road would a motorist have the best view of the billboard; that is, at what point on the road (see the figure) is the angle θ subtended by the billboard a maximum?



70. A person walking along a straight path at the rate of 6 feet per second is followed by a spotlight that is located 30 feet from the path. How fast is the spotlight turning at the instant the person is 50 feet past the point on the path that is closest to the spotlight?

71. (a) Show that

$$F(x) = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2-x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\arcsin\left(\frac{x}{a}\right),\ a>0$$

is an antiderivative for $f(x) = \sqrt{a^2-x^2}$.

(b) Use the result in part (a) to calculate $\displaystyle\int_{-a}^{a}\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx$ and interpret your result as an area.

72. Set

$$f(x) = \arctan\left(\frac{a+x}{1-ax}\right), \; x \neq 1/a.$$

(a) Show that $f'(x) = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$, $x \neq 1/a$.
(b) Show that there is no constant C such that $f(x) = \arctan x + C$ for all $x \neq 1/a$.
(c) Find constants C_1 and C_2 such that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \arctan x + C_1 \quad &\text{for } x < 1/a \\ f(x) &= \arctan x + C_2 \quad &\text{for } x > 1/a. \end{aligned}$$

73. Show, without reference to right triangles, that

$$\arctan x + \operatorname{arccot} x = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi \quad \text{for all real } x.$$

HINT: Use the identity $\cot\theta = \tan\left(\frac{1}{2}\pi - \theta\right)$.

74. Show, without reference to right triangles, that

$$\operatorname{arcsec} x + \operatorname{arccsc} x = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi \qquad \text{for } |x| \geq 1.$$

75. The statement

$$\int_0^3 \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx = \arcsin 3 - \arcsin 0 = \arcsin 3$$

is nonsensical since the sine function does not take on the value 3. Where did we go wrong here?

76. Evaluate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\arcsin x}{x}$$

numerically. Justify your answer by other means.

77. Estimate the integral

$$\int_0^{0.5} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx$$

by using the partition $\{0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5\}$ and the intermediate points

$$x_1^* = 0.05, \quad x_2^* = 0.15, \quad x_3^* = 0.25,$$
$$x_4^* = 0.35, \quad x_5^* = 0.45.$$

Note that the sine of your estimate is close to 0.5. Explain the reason for this.

78. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$ on $[0, 10]$.

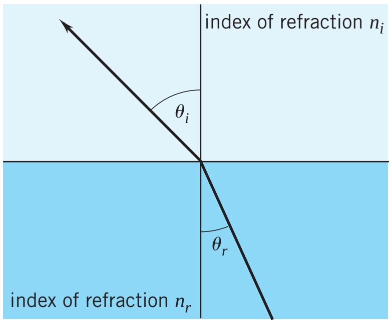
(a) Calculate $\int_0^n f(x)\,dx$ for $n = 1000, 2500, 5000, 10{,}000$.
(b) What number are these integrals approaching?
(c) Determine the value of

$$\lim_{t\to\infty} \int_0^t \frac{1}{1+x^2}\,dx.$$

■ PROJECT 7.7 Refraction

Dip a straight stick in a pool of water and it appears to bend. Only in a vacuum does light travel at speed c (the famous c of $E = mc^2$). Light does not travel as fast through a material medium. The *index of refraction n* of a medium relates the speed of light in that medium to c:

$$n = \frac{c}{\text{speed of light in the medium}}$$

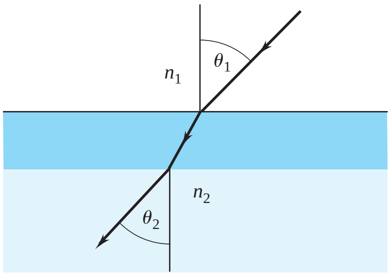


When light travels from one medium to another, it changes direction; we say that light is *refracted*. Experiment shows that the *angle of refraction* θ_r is related to the *angle of incidence* θ_i by Snell's law:

$$n_i \sin\theta_i = n_r \sin\theta_r.$$

Like the law of reflection (see Example 5, Section 4.5), Snell's law of refraction can be derived from Fermat's principle of least time.

Problem 1. A light beam passes from a medium with index of refraction n_1 through a plane sheet of material with top and bottom faces parallel and then out into some other medium with index of refraction n_2. Show that Snell's law implies the $n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$ regardless of the thickness of the sheet or its index of refraction.



A star is not where it is supposed to be. The index of refraction of the atmosphere varies with height above the earth's surface, $n = n(y)$, and light that passes through the atmosphere follows some curved path, $y = y(x)$. Think of the atmosphere as a succession of thin parallel slabs. When a light ray strikes a slab at height y, it is traveling at some angle θ to the vertical; when it emerges at height $y + \Delta y$, it is traveling at a slightly different angle, $\theta + \Delta\theta$.

Problem 2.

(a) Use the result in Problem 1 to show that

$$\frac{1}{n}\frac{dn}{dy} = -\cot\theta\frac{d\theta}{dy} = \frac{d^2y/dx^2}{1+(dy/dx)^2}.$$

(b) Verify that the slope of the light path must vary in such a way that

$$1+(dy/dx)^2 = (\text{constant})\,[n(y)]^2.$$

(c) How must n vary with height y for light to travel along a circular arc?

■ 7.8 THE HYPERBOLIC SINE AND COSINE

Certain combinations of the exponentials e^x and e^{-x} occur so frequently in mathematical applications that they are given special names. The *hyperbolic sine* (sinh) and *hyperbolic cosine* (cosh) are the functions defined as follows:

(7.8.1) $$\boxed{\sinh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x}), \qquad \cosh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x}).}$$

The reason for these names will become apparent as we go on.

Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sinh x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\tfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x})\right] = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x})$$

and

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\cosh x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left[\tfrac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x})\right] = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x}),$$

we have

(7.8.2) $$\boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\sinh x) = \cosh x, \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(\cosh x) = \sinh\ x.}$$

In short, each of these functions is the derivative of the other.

The Graphs

We begin with the hyperbolic sine. Since

$$\sinh(-x) = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^{-x} - e^x) = -\tfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x}) = -\sinh x,$$

the hyperbolic sine is an odd function. The graph is therefore symmetric about the origin. Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sinh x) = \cosh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x}) > 0 \qquad \text{for all real } x,$$

the hyperbolic sine increases everywhere. Since

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(\sinh x) = \frac{d}{dx}(\cosh x) = \sinh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x}),$$

you can see that

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(\sinh x) \quad \text{is} \quad \begin{cases} \text{negative}, & \text{for} \quad x < 0 \\ 0, & \text{at} \quad x = 0 \\ \text{positive}, & \text{for} \quad x > 0. \end{cases}$$

The graph is therefore concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$ and concave up on $(0, \infty)$. The point $(0, \sinh 0) = (0, 0)$ is a point of inflection, the only point of inflection. The slope at the origin is $\cosh 0 = 1$. A sketch of the graph appears in Figure 7.8.1.

We turn now to the hyperbolic cosine. Since

$$\cosh(-x) = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^{-x} + e^{x}) = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^{x} + e^{-x}) = \cosh x,$$

the hyperbolic cosine is an even function. The graph is therefore symmetric about the y-axis. Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\cosh\ x) = \sinh\ x,$$

you can see that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\cosh\ x) \quad \text{is} \quad \begin{cases} \text{negative,} & \text{for} \quad x < 0 \\ 0, & \text{at} \quad x = 0 \\ \text{positive,} & \text{for} \quad x > 0. \end{cases}$$

The function therefore decreases on $(-\infty, 0]$ and increases on $[0, \infty)$. The number

$$\cosh 0 = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^{0} + e^{-0}) = \tfrac{1}{2}(1 + 1) = 1$$

is a local and absolute minimum. There are no other extreme values. Since

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(\cosh\ x) = \frac{d}{dx}(\sinh\ x) = \cosh x > 0 \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

the graph is everywhere concave up. (See Figure 7.8.2.)

Figure 7.8.3 shows the graphs of three functions:

$$y = \sinh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^{x} - e^{-x}), \qquad y = \tfrac{1}{2}e^{x}, \qquad y = \cosh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^{x} + e^{-x}).$$

Since $e^{-x} > 0$, it follows that, for all real x,

$$\sinh x < \tfrac{1}{2}e^{x} < \cosh x. \qquad \text{for all real } x.$$

Although markedly different for negative x, these functions are almost indistinguishable for large positive x. This follows from the fact that, as $x \to \infty$, $e^{-x} \to 0$.

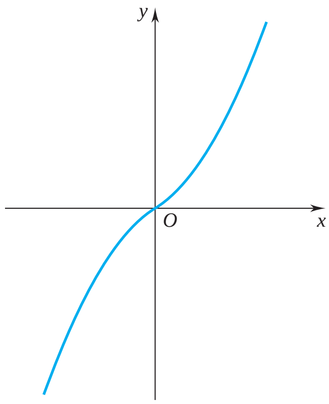


Figure 7.8.1

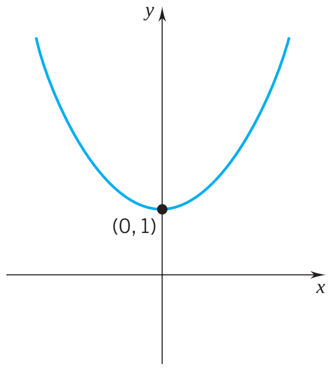


Figure 7.8.2

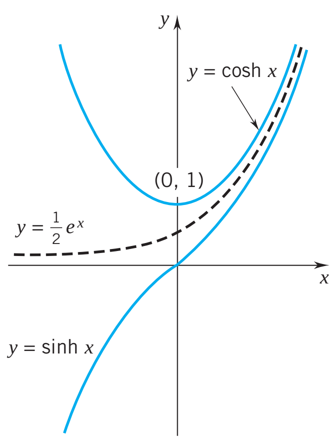


Figure 7.8.3

The Catenary

A preliminary point: in what follows we use the fact that for all real numbers t

$$\cosh^2 t = 1 + \sinh^2 t.$$

The verification of this identity is left to you as an exercise.

Figure 7.8.4 depicts a flexible cable of uniform density supported from two points of equal height. The cable sags under its own weight and so forms a curve. Such a curve is called a *catenary*. (After the Latin word for chain.)

To obtain a mathematical characterization of the catenary, we introduce an x,y-coordinate system so that the lowest point of the chain falls on the positive y-axis (Figure 7.8.5). An engineering analysis of the forces that act on the cable shows that the shape of the catenary, call it $y = f(x)$, is such that

$$(*) \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}$$

where a is a positive constant that depends on the length of the cable and on its mass density. As we show below, curves of the form

$$(**) \qquad y = a\cosh\frac{x}{a} + C \qquad (C \ \text{constant})$$

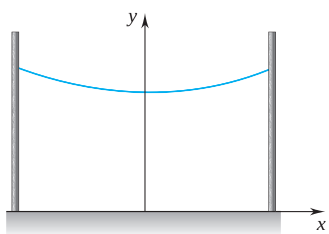


Figure 7.8.4

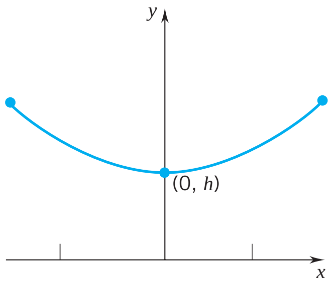


Figure 7.8.5

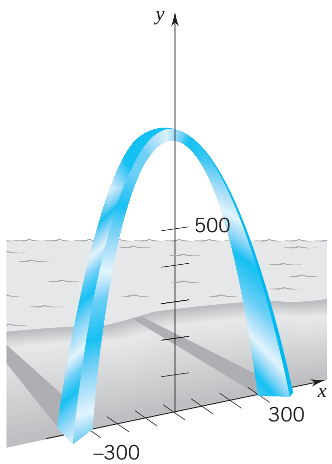


Figure 7.8.6

meet this condition exactly:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a\left(\sinh\frac{x}{a}\right)\frac{1}{a} = \sinh\frac{x}{a}$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \left(\cosh\frac{x}{a}\right)\frac{1}{a} = \frac{1}{a}\cosh\frac{x}{a}$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{a}\cosh\frac{x}{a} = \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1+\sinh^2\frac{x}{a}} = \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}.$$

follows from $\cosh^2 t = 1 + \sinh^2 t$

The cable of Figure 7.8.5 is of the form

$$y = a\cosh\frac{x}{a} + (h-a).$$

[This assertion is based on the fact that only curves of the form (∗∗) satisfy (∗) and the conditions imposed by Figure 7.8.5. This can be proven.]

The Gateway Arch in St. Louis, Missouri, is in the shape of an inverted catenary (see Figure 7.8.6). This arch is 630 feet high at its center, and it measures 630 feet across the base. The value of the constant a for this arch is approximately 127.7, and its equation takes the form

$$y = -127.7\cosh(x/127.7) + 757.7.$$

Identities

The hyperbolic sine and cosine functions satisfy identities similar to those satisfied by the "circular" sine and cosine.

(7.8.3)

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\cosh^2 t - \sinh^2 t = 1,\\ &\sinh(t+s) = \sinh t\ \cosh s + \cosh t\ \sinh s,\\ &\cosh(t+s) = \cosh t\ \cosh s + \sinh t\ \sinh s,\\ &\sinh 2t = 2\sinh t\cosh t,\\ &\cosh 2t = \cosh^2 t + \sinh^2 t.\end{aligned}}$$

The verification of these identities is left to you as a collection of exercises.

Relation to the Hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = 1$

The hyperbolic sine and cosine are related to the hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = 1$ much as the "circular" sine and cosine are related to the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$:

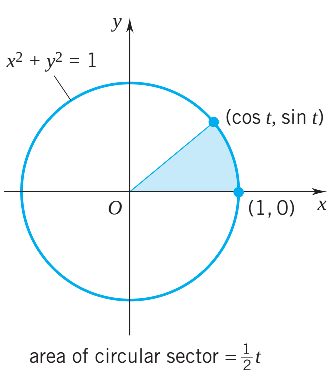


Figure 7.8.7

1. For each real t,

$$\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t = 1,$$

and thus the point $(\cos t, \sin t)$ lies on the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$. For each real t,

$$\cosh^2 t - \sinh^2 t = 1,$$

and thus the point $(\cosh t, \sinh t)$ lies on the hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = 1$.

2. For each t in $[0, 2\pi]$ (see Figure 7.8.7), the number $\frac{1}{2}t$ gives the area of the circular sector generated by the circular arc that begins at $(1, 0)$ and ends at $(\cos t, \sin t)$. As

we prove below, for each $t > 0$ (see Figure 7.8.8), the number $\frac{1}{2}t$ gives the area of the hyperbolic sector generated by the hyperbolic arc that begins at $(1, 0)$ and ends at $(\cosh t, \sinh t)$.

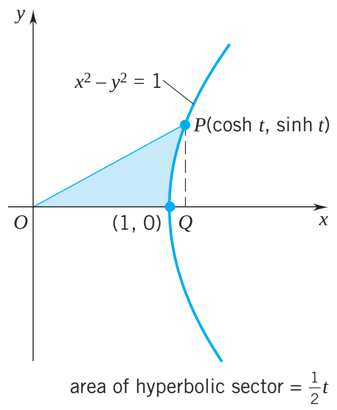


Figure 7.8.8

PROOF Let $A(t)$ be the area of the hyperbolic sector. Then,

$$A(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cosh t \sinh t - \int_1^{\cosh t} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx.$$

The first term, $\frac{1}{2}\cosh t \sinh t$, gives the area of the triangle OPQ, and the integral

$$\int_1^{\cosh t} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx$$

gives the area of the unshaded portion of the triangle. We wish to show that

$$A(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}t \qquad \text{for all } t \geq 0.$$

We will do so by showing that

$$A'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2} \qquad \text{for all } t > 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad A(0) = 0.$$

Differentiating $A(t)$, we have

$$A'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[\cosh t \frac{d}{dt}(\sinh t) + \sinh t \frac{d}{dt}(\cosh t)\right] - \frac{d}{dt}\left(\int_1^{\cosh t} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx\right),$$

and therefore

(1) $$A'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}(\cosh^2 t + \sinh^2 t) - \frac{d}{dt}\left(\int_1^{\cosh t} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx\right),$$

Now we differentiate the integral:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\int_1^{\cosh t} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx\right) = \underbrace{\sqrt{\cosh^2 t - 1}}_{(5.8.7)}\frac{d}{dt}(\cosh t) = \sinh t \cdot \sinh t = \sinh^2 t.$$

Substituting this last expression into (1), we have

$$A'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}(\cosh^2 t + \sinh^2 t) - \sinh^2 t = \tfrac{1}{2}(\cosh^2 t - \sinh^2 t) = \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

It is not hard to see that $A(0) = 0$:

$$A(0) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cosh 0\ \sinh 0 - \int_1^{\cosh 0} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}(1)(0) - \int_1^1 \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\,dx = 0. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 7.8

Exercises 1–18. Differentiate.

1. $y = \sinh x^2$.

2. $y = \cosh(x + a)$.

3. $y = \sqrt{\cosh ax}$.

4. $y = (\sinh ax)(\cosh ax)$.

5. $y = \dfrac{\sinh x}{\cosh x - 1}$.

6. $y = \dfrac{\sinh x}{x}$.

7. $y = a \sinh bx - b \cosh ax$.

8. $y = e^x(\cosh x + \sinh x)$.

9. $y = \ln|\sinh ax|$.

10. $y = \ln|1 - \cosh ax|$.

11. $y = \sinh(e^{2x})$.

12. $y = \cosh(\ln x^3)$.

13. $y = e^{-x} \cosh 2x$.

14. $y = \arctan(\sinh x)$.

15. $y = \ln(\cosh x)$.

16. $y = \ln(\sinh x)$.

17. $y = (\sinh x)^x$.

18. $y = x^{\cosh x}$.

Exercises 19–25. Verify the identity.

19. $\cosh^2 t - \sinh^2 t = 1$.

20. $\sinh(t + s) = \sinh t\ \cosh s + \cosh t\ \sinh s$.

21. $\cosh(t + s) = \cosh t\ \cosh s + \sinh t\ \sinh s$.

22. $\sinh 2t = 2 \sinh t\ \cosh t$.

23. $\cosh 2t = \cosh^2 t + \sinh^2 t = 2\cosh^2 t - 1 = 2\sinh^2 t + 1$.

24. $\cosh(-t) = \cosh t$; the hyperbolic cosine function is even.

25. $\sinh(-t) = -\sinh t$; the hyperbolic sine function is odd.

Exercises 26–28. Find the absolute extreme values.

26. $y = 5\cosh x + 4\sinh x$.

27. $y = -5\cosh x + 4\sinh x$.

28. $y = 4\cosh x + 5\sinh x$.

29. Show that for each positive integer n

$$(\cosh x + \sinh x)^n = \cosh nx + \sinh nx.$$

30. Verify that $y = A\cosh cx + B\sinh cx$ satisfies the equation $y'' - c^2 y = 0$.

31. Determine A, B, and c so that $y = A\cosh cx + B\sinh cx$ satisfies the conditions $y'' - 9y = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = 1$. Take $c > 0$.

32. Determine A, B, and c so that $y = A\cosh cx + B\sinh cx$ satisfies the conditions $4y'' - y = 0$, $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = 2$. Take $c > 0$.

Exercises 33–44. Calculate.

33. $\displaystyle\int \cosh ax\, dx$.

34. $\displaystyle\int \sinh ax\, dx$.

35. $\displaystyle\int \sinh^2 ax \cosh ax\, dx$.

36. $\displaystyle\int \sinh ax \cosh^2 ax\, dx$.

37. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sinh ax}{\cosh ax}\, dx$.

38. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cosh ax}{\sinh ax}\, dx$.

39. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sinh ax}{\cosh^2 ax}\, dx$.

40. $\displaystyle\int \sinh^2 x\, dx$.

41. $\displaystyle\int \cosh^2 x\, dx$.

42. $\displaystyle\int \sinh 2x\, e^{\cosh 2x}\, dx$.

43. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sinh\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}\, dx$.

44. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sinh x}{1 + \cosh x}\, dx$.

Exercises 45 and 46. Find the average value of the function on the interval indicated.

45. $f(x) = \cosh x, \quad x \in [-1, 1]$.

46. $f(x) = \sinh 2x, \quad x \in [0, 4]$.

47. Find the area below the curve $y = \sinh x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \ln 10$.

48. Find the area below the curve $y = \cosh 2x$ from $x = -\ln 5$ to $x = \ln 5$.

49. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving about the x-axis the region between $y = \cosh x$ and $y = \sinh x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$.

50. The region below the curve $y = \sinh x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \ln 5$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

51. The region below the curve $y = \cosh 2x$ from $x = -\ln 5$ to $x = \ln 5$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

52. (a) Evaluate

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\sinh x}{e^x}.$$

(b) Evaluate

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\cosh x}{e^{ax}}$$

if $0 < a < 1$ and if $a > 1$.

53. Use a graphing utility to sketch in one figure the graphs of $f(x) = 2 - \sinh x$ and $g(x) = \cosh x$.

(a) Use a CAS to find the point in the first quadrant where the two graphs intersect.

(b) Use a CAS to find the area of the region in the first quadrant bounded by the graphs of f and g and the y-axis.

54. Use a graphing utility to sketch in one figure the graphs of $f(x) = \cosh x - 1$ and $g(x) = 1/\cosh x$.

(a) Use a CAS to find the points where the two graphs intersect.

(b) Use a CAS to find the area of the region bounded by the graphs of f and g.

■ *7.9 THE OTHER HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

The hyperbolic tangent is defined by setting

$$\tanh x = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x} = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}.$$

There is also a *hyperbolic cotangent*, a *hyperbolic secant*, and a *hyperbolic cosecant*:

$$\coth x = \frac{\cosh x}{\sinh x}, \qquad \operatorname{sech} x = \frac{1}{\cosh x}, \qquad \operatorname{csch} x = \frac{1}{\sinh x}.$$

The derivatives are as follows:

(7.9.1)

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\frac{d}{dx}(\tanh x) = \operatorname{sech}^2 x, && \frac{d}{dx}(\coth x) = -\operatorname{csch}^2 x,\\ &\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{sech} x) = -\operatorname{sech} x \tanh x, && \frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{csch} x) = -\operatorname{csch} x \coth x. \end{aligned}}$$

These formulas are easy to verify. For instance,

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tanh x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x}\right) = \frac{\cosh x \frac{d}{dx}(\sinh x) - \sinh x \frac{d}{dx}(\cosh x)}{\cosh^2 x}$$
$$= \frac{\cosh^2 x - \sinh^2 x}{\cosh^2 x} = \frac{1}{\cosh^2 x} = \operatorname{sech}^2 x.$$

We leave it to you to verify the other formulas.

Let's examine the hyperbolic tangent a little further. Since

$$\tanh(-x) = \frac{\sinh(-x)}{\cosh(-x)} = \frac{-\sinh x}{\cosh x} = -\tanh x,$$

the hyperbolic tangent is an odd function and thus the graph is symmetric about the origin. Since

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tanh x) = \operatorname{sech}^2 x > 0 \qquad \text{for all real } x,$$

the function is everywhere increasing. From the relation

$$\tanh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}} = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}} \cdot \frac{e^x}{e^x} = \frac{e^{2x} - 1}{e^{2x} + 1} = \frac{e^{2x} + 1 - 2}{e^{2x} + 1} = 1 - \frac{2}{e^{2x} + 1},$$

you can see that $\tanh x$ always remains between -1 and 1. Moreover,

$$\text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \tanh x \to 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{as } x \to -\infty, \qquad \tanh x \to -1.$$

The lines $y = 1$ and $y = -1$ are horizontal asymptotes. To check on the concavity of the graph, we take the second derivative:

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(\tanh x) = \frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{sech}^2 x) = 2 \operatorname{sech} x \frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{sech} x)$$
$$= 2 \operatorname{sech} x\,(-\operatorname{sech} x \tanh x)$$
$$= -2 \operatorname{sech}^2 x \tanh x.$$

Since

$$\tanh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}} \quad \text{is} \quad \begin{cases} \text{negative}, & \text{for} \quad x < 0 \\ 0, & \text{at} \quad x = 0 \\ \text{positive}, & \text{for} \quad x > 0, \end{cases}$$

you can see that

$$\frac{d^2}{dx^2}(\tanh x) \quad \text{is} \quad \begin{cases} \text{positive}, & \text{for} \quad x < 0 \\ 0, & \text{at} \quad x = 0 \\ \text{negative}, & \text{for} \quad x > 0. \end{cases}$$

The graph is therefore concave up on $(-\infty, 0)$ and concave down on $(0, \infty)$. The point $(0, \tanh 0) = (0, 0)$ is a point of inflection. At the origin the slope is

$$\operatorname{sech}^2 0 = \frac{1}{\cosh^2 0} = 1.$$

The graph is shown in Figure 7.9.1.

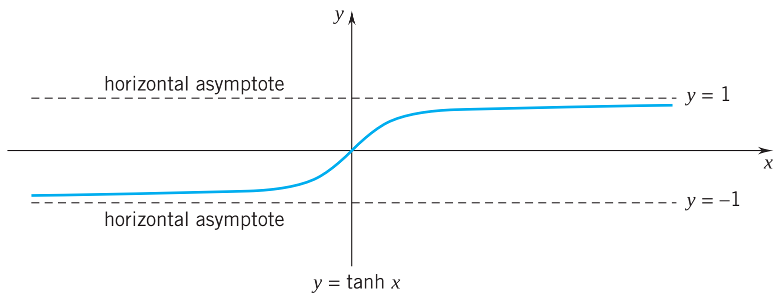


Figure 7.9.1

The Hyperbolic Inverses

Of the six hyperbolic functions, only the hyperbolic cosine and its reciprocal, hyperbolic secant, fail to be one-to-one (refer to the graphs of $y = \sinh x$, $y = \cosh x$, and $y = \tanh x$). Thus, the hyperbolic sine, hyperbolic tangent, hyperbolic cosecant, and hyperbolic cotangent functions all have inverses. If we restrict the domains of the hyperbolic cosine and hyperbolic secant functions to $x \geq 0$, then these functions will also have inverses. The hyperbolic inverses that are important to us are the *inverse hyperbolic sine*, the *inverse hyperbolic cosine*, and the *inverse hyperbolic tangent*.
These functions,

$$y = \sinh^{-1} x, \qquad y = \cosh^{-1} x, \qquad y = \tanh^{-1} x,$$

are the inverses of

$$y = \sinh x, \qquad y = \cosh x \quad (x \geq 0), \qquad y = \tanh x$$

respectively.[†]

THEOREM 7.9.2

(i) $\sinh^{-1} x = \ln\left(x + \sqrt{x^2+1}\right), \qquad x \text{ real}$

(ii) $\cosh^{-1} x = \ln\left(x + \sqrt{x^2-1}\right), \qquad x \geq 1$

(iii) $\tanh^{-1} x = \frac{1}{2}\ln\left(\dfrac{1+x}{1-x}\right), \qquad -1 < x < 1.$

PROOF To prove (i), we set $y = \sinh^{-1} x$ and note that

$$\sinh y = x.$$

This gives in sequence:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(e^y - e^{-y}) = x, \qquad e^y - e^{-y} = 2x \qquad e^y - 2x - e^{-y} = 0, \qquad e^{2y} - 2x\,e^y - 1 = 0.$$

This last equation is a quadratic equation in e^y. From the general quadratic formula, we find that

$$e^y = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(2x \pm \sqrt{4x^2+4}\right) = x \pm \sqrt{x^2+1}.$$

Since $e^y > 0$, the minus sign on the right is impossible. Consequently, we have

$$e^y = x + \sqrt{x^2+1},$$

[†]The expressions $\sinh^{-1} x$, $\cosh^{-1} x$, $\tan^{-1} x$ can be written $\operatorname{arcsinh} x$, $\operatorname{arccosh} x$, $\operatorname{arctanh} x$. However the "-1" notation is more common.

and, taking the natural log of both sides,

$$y = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2+1}).$$

To prove (ii), we set

$$y = \cosh^{-1} x, \qquad x \geq 1$$

and note that

$$\cosh y = x \qquad \text{and} \qquad y \geq 0.$$

This gives in sequence:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(e^y + e^{-y}) = x, \qquad e^y + e^{-y} = 2x, \qquad e^{2y} - 2xe^y + 1 = 0.$$

Again we have a quadratic in e^y. Here the general quadratic formula gives

$$e^y = \tfrac{1}{2}(2x \pm \sqrt{4x^2-4}) = x \pm \sqrt{x^2-1}.$$

Since y is nonnegative,

$$e^y = x \pm \sqrt{x^2-1}$$

cannot be less than 1. This renders the negative sign impossible (check this out) and leaves

$$e^y = x + \sqrt{x^2-1}$$

as the only possibility. Taking the natural log of both sides, we get

$$y = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2-1}).$$

The proof of (iii) is left as an exercise. ❑

EXERCISES 7.9

Exercises 1–10. Differentiate.

1. $y = \tanh^2 x$.

2. $y = \tanh^2 3x$.

3. $y = \ln(\tanh x)$.

4. $y = \tanh(\ln x)$.

5. $y = \sinh(\arctan e^{2x})$.

6. $y = \operatorname{sech}(3x^2+1)$.

7. $y = \coth(\sqrt{x^2+1})$.

8. $y = \ln(\operatorname{sech} x)$.

9. $y = \dfrac{\operatorname{sech} x}{1+\cosh x}$.

10. $y = \dfrac{\cosh x}{1+\operatorname{sech} x}$.

Exercises 11–13. Verify the formula.

11. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\coth x) = -\operatorname{csch}^2 x$.

12. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{sech} x) = -\operatorname{sech} x \tanh x$.

13. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{csch} x) = -\operatorname{csch} x \coth x$.

14. Show that

$$\tanh(t+s) = \frac{\tanh t + \tanh s}{1 + \tanh t \tanh s}.$$

15. Given that $\tanh x_0 = \frac{4}{5}$, find (a) $\operatorname{sech} x_0$.
HINT: $1 - \tanh^2 x = \operatorname{sech}^2 x$. Then find (b) $\cosh x_0$, (c) $\sinh x_0$, (d) $\coth x_0$, (e) $\operatorname{csch} x_0$.

16. Given that $\tanh t_0 = -\frac{5}{12}$, evaluate the remaining hyperbolic functions at t_0.

17. Show that, if $x^2 \geq 1$, then $x - \sqrt{x^2-1} \leq 1$.

18. Show that

$$\tanh^{-1} x = \frac{1}{2}\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right), \qquad -1 < x < 1.$$

19. Show that

$$\textbf{(7.9.3)} \qquad \boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\sinh^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}, \qquad x \text{ real.}}$$

20. Show that

$$\textbf{(7.9.4)} \qquad \boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\cosh^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}, \qquad x > 1.}$$

21. Show that

$$\textbf{(7.9.5)} \qquad \boxed{\frac{d}{dx}(\tanh^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{1-x^2}, \qquad -1 < x < 1.}$$

22. Show that
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{sech}^{-1}x) = \frac{-1}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}, \qquad 0 < x < 1.$$

23. Show that
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{csch}^{-1}x) = \frac{-1}{|x|\sqrt{1+x^2}}, \qquad x \neq 0.$$

24. Show that
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\coth^{-1}x) = \frac{1}{1-x^2}, \qquad |x| > 1.$$

25. Sketch the graph of $y = \operatorname{sech} x$, giving: (a) the extreme values; (b) the points of inflection; and (c) the concavity.

26. Sketch the graphs of (a) $y = \coth x$, (b) $y = \operatorname{csch} x$.

27. Graph $y = \sinh x$ and $y = \sinh^{-1} x$ in the same coordinate system. Find all points of inflection.

28. Sketch the graphs of (a) $y = \cosh^{-1} x$, (b) $y = \tanh^{-1} x$.

29. Given that $\tan\phi = \sinh x$, show that

(a) $\dfrac{d\phi}{dx} = \operatorname{sech} x$.

(b) $x = \ln(\sec\phi + \tan\phi)$.

(c) $\dfrac{dx}{d\phi} = \sec\phi$.

30. The region bounded by the graph of $y = \operatorname{sech} x$ between $x = -1$ and $x = 1$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the solid generated.

Exercises 31–40. Calculate.

31. $\int \tanh x\, dx$.

32. $\int \coth x\, dx$.

33. $\int \operatorname{sech} x\, dx$.

34. $\int \operatorname{csch} x\, dx$.

35. $\int \operatorname{sech}^3 x \tanh x\, dx$.

36. $\int x \operatorname{sech}^2 x^2\, dx$.

37. $\int \tanh x \ln(\cosh x)\, dx$.

38. $\int \dfrac{1 + \tanh x}{\cosh^2 x}\, dx$.

39. $\int \dfrac{\operatorname{sech}^2 x}{1 + \tanh x}\, dx$.

40. $\int \tanh^5 x \operatorname{sech}^2 x\, dx$.

Exercises 41–43. Verify the formula. In each case, take $a > 0$.

41. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}\, dx = \sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + C.$

42. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\, dx = \cosh^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + C.$

43. $$\int \frac{1}{a^2-x^2}\, dx = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{a}\tanh^{-1}\left(\dfrac{x}{a}\right) + C & \text{if } |x| < a. \\[2ex] \dfrac{1}{a}\coth^{-1}\left(\dfrac{x}{a}\right) + C & \text{if } |x| > a. \end{cases}$$

44. If an object of mass m falling from rest under the action of gravity encounters air resistance that is proportional to the square of its velocity, then the velocity $v(t)$ of the object at time t satisfies the equation
$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = mg - kv^2$$
where $k > 0$ is the constant of proportionality and g is the gravitational constant.

(a) Show that
$$v(t) = \sqrt{\frac{mg}{k}}\tanh\left(\sqrt{\frac{gk}{m}}\,t\right)$$
is a solution of the equation which satisfies $v(0) = 0$.

(b) Find
$$\lim_{t\to\infty} v(t).$$
This limit is called the *terminal velocity* of the body.

CHAPTER 7. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–8. Determine whether the function f is one-to-one and, if so, find the inverse.

1. $f(x) = x^{1/3} + 2$.

2. $f(x) = x^2 - x - 6$.

3. $f(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{x-1}$.

4. $f(x) = (2x+1)^3$.

5. $f(x) = e^{1/x}$.

6. $f(x) = \sin 2x + \cos x$

7. $f(x) = x \ln x$.

8. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x+1}{3-2x}$.

Exercises 9–12. Show that f has an inverse and find $(f^{-1})'(c)$.

9. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1+e^x}$; $\quad c = \frac{1}{2}$.

10. $f(x) = 3x - \dfrac{1}{x^3}$, $x > 0$; $\quad c = 2$.

11. $f(x) = \displaystyle\int_0^x \sqrt{4+t^2}\, dt$; $\quad c = 0$.

12. $f(x) = x - \pi + \cos x$; $\quad c = -1$.

Exercises 13–22. Calculate the derivative.

13. $f(x) = (\ln x^2)^3$.

14. $y = 2\sin(e^{3x})$.

15. $g(x) = \dfrac{e^x}{1+e^{2x}}$.

16. $f(x) = (x^2+1)^{\sinh x}$.

17. $y = \ln(x^3 + 3^x)$.

18. $g(x) = \arctan(\cosh x)$.

19. $f(x) = (\cosh x)^{1/x}$.

20. $f(x) = 2x^3 \arcsin(x^2)$.

21. $f(x) = \log_3\left(\dfrac{1+x}{1-x}\right)$. **22.** $f(x) = \operatorname{arcsec}\sqrt{x^2+4}$.

Exercises 23–38. Calculate.

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^x}{\sqrt{1-e^{2x}}}\,dx$. **24.** $\displaystyle\int_1^e \frac{\sqrt{\ln x}}{x}\,dx$.

25. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos x}{4+\sin^2 x}\,dx$. **26.** $\displaystyle\int \tan x \ln(\cos x)\,dx$.

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$. **28.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^4-9}}\,dx$.

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{5^{\ln x}}{x}\,dx$. **30.** $\displaystyle\int_0^2 x^2 e^{x^3}\,dx$.

31. $\displaystyle\int_1^8 \frac{x^{1/3}}{x^{4/3}+1}\,dx$. **32.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec x\tan x}{1+\sec^2 x}\,dx$.

33. $\displaystyle\int 2^x \sinh 2^x\,dx$. **34.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^x}{e^x+e^{-x}}\,dx$.

35. $\displaystyle\int_2^5 \frac{1}{x^2-4x+13}\,dx$. **36.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{15+2x-x^2}}\,dx$.

37. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \operatorname{sech}^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\,dx$. **38.** $\displaystyle\int \tanh^2 2x\,dx$.

Exercises 39–42. Find the area below the graph.

39. $y = \dfrac{x}{x^2+1}$, $x \in [0, 1]$. **40.** $y = \dfrac{1}{x^2+1}$, $x \in [0, 1]$.

41. $y = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$, $x \in \left[0, \tfrac{1}{2}\right]$.

42. $y = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$, $x \in \left[0, \tfrac{1}{2}\right]$.

43. (a) Apply the mean-value theorem to the function $f(x) = \ln(1+x)$ to show that for all $x > -1$

$$\frac{x}{1+x} < \ln(1+x) < x.$$

(b) Use the result in part (a) to show that $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\ln(1+x)}{x} = 1$.

44. Show that for all positive integers m and n with $1 < m < n$

$$\ln\frac{n+1}{m} < \frac{1}{m} + \frac{1}{m+1} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} < \ln\frac{n}{m-1}.$$

HINT: $\displaystyle\frac{1}{k+1} < \int_k^{k+1}\frac{dx}{x} < \frac{1}{k}$.

45. Find the area of the region between the curve $xy = a^2$, the x-axis, and the vertical lines $x = a$, $x = 2a$.

46. Find the area of the region between the curve $y = \sec\frac{1}{2}\pi x$ and the x-axis from $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $x = \frac{1}{2}$.

47. Let Ω be the region between the graph of $y = (1+x^2)^{-1/2}$ and the x-axis, from $x = 0$ to $x = \sqrt{3}$. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω (a) about the x-axis; (b) about the y-axis.

48. Let Ω be the region between the graph of $y = (1+x^2)^{-1/4}$ and the x-axis, from $x = 0$ to $x = \frac{1}{2}$. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω (a) about the x-axis; (b) about the y-axis.

49. Exercise 48 for the function $f(x) = x^2 e^{-x^2}$.

50. Let $f(x) = \dfrac{\ln x}{x}$ on $(0, \infty)$. (a) Find the intervals where f increases and the intervals where it decreases; (b) find the extreme values; (c) determine the concavity of the graph and find the points of inflection; (d) sketch the graph, including all asymptotes.

51. Given that $|a| < 1$, find the value of b for which

$$\int_0^1 \frac{b}{\sqrt{1-b^2x^2}}\,dx = \int_0^a \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx.$$

52. Show that

$$\int_0^1 \frac{a}{1+a^2x^2}\,dx = \int_0^a \frac{1}{1+x^2}\,dx \quad \text{for all real numbers } a.$$

53. A certain bacterial culture, growing exponentially, increases from 20 grams to 40 grams in the period from 6 a.m. to 8 a.m.

(a) How many grams will be present at noon?
(b) How long will it take for the culture to reach 200 grams?

54. A certain radioactive substance loses 20% of its mass per year. What is the half-life of the substance?

55. Polonium-210 decays exponentially with a half-life of 140 days.

(a) At time $t = 0$ a sample of polonium-210 has a mass of 100 grams. Find an expression that gives the mass at an arbitrary time t.
(b) How long will it take for the 100-gram mass to decay to 75 grams?

56. From 1980 to 1990 the population of the United States grew from 227 million to 249 million. During that same period the population of Mexico grew from 62 million to 79 million. If the populations of the United States and Mexico continue to grow at these rates, when will the two populations be equal?

57. The population of a suburb of a large city is increasing at a rate proportional to the number of people currently living in the suburb. If, after two years, the population has doubled and after four years the population is 25,000, find:

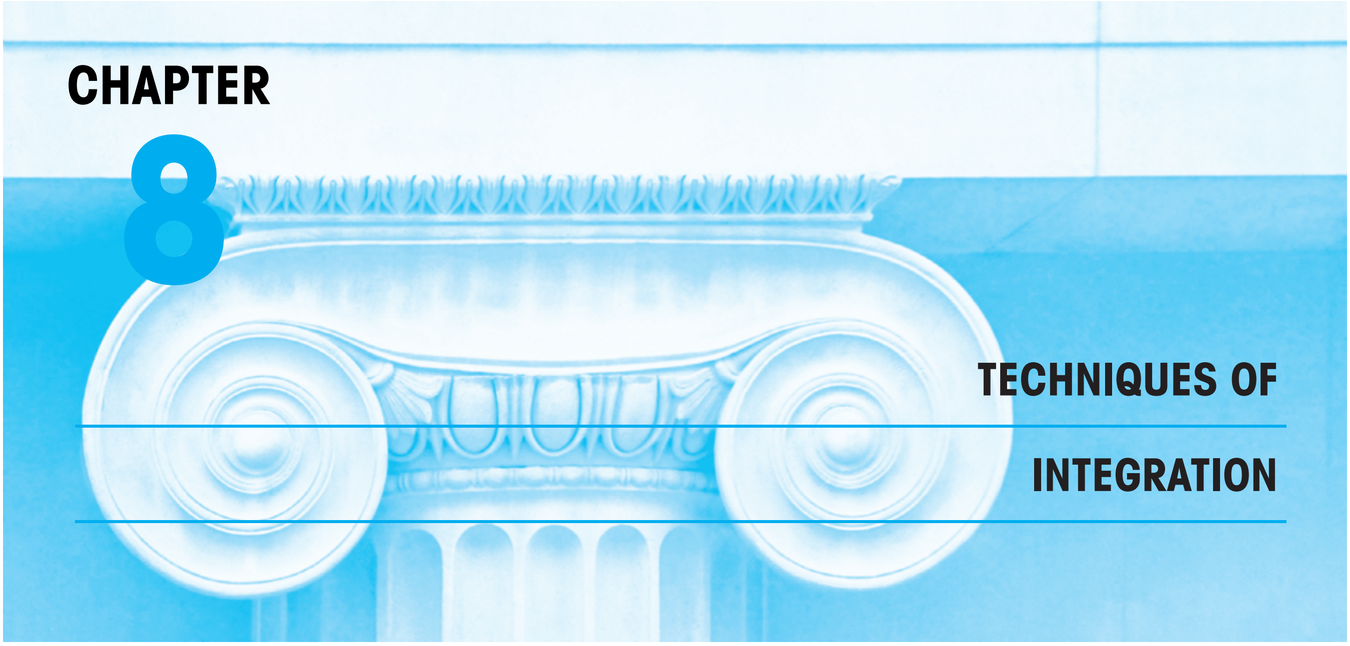
(a) the number of people living in the suburb initially;
(b) the length of time for the population to quadruple.

58. Let p and q be numbers greater than 1 which satisfy the condition $1/p + 1/q = 1$. Show that for all positive a and b

$$ab \le \frac{a^p}{p} + \frac{b^q}{q}.$$

HINT: Let C be the curve $y = x^{p-1}$, $x \ge 0$. Let Ω_1 be the region between C and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = a$. Let Ω_2 be the region between C and the y-axis from $y = 0$ to $y = b$. Argue that

$$ab \le \text{ area of } \Omega_1 + \text{ area of } \Omega_2.$$



CHAPTER 8

TECHNIQUES OF INTEGRATION

8.1 INTEGRAL TABLES AND REVIEW

We begin by listing the more important integrals with which you are familiar.

1. $\displaystyle\int k\,du = ku + C, \qquad k \text{ constant.}$

2. $\displaystyle\int u^r\,du = \frac{u^{r+1}}{r+1} + C, \qquad r \text{ constant}, r \neq -1.$

3. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{u}du = \ln|u| + C.$

4. $\displaystyle\int e^u\,du = e^u + C.$

5. $\displaystyle\int p^u du = \frac{p^u}{\ln p} + C, \qquad p > 0 \text{ constant}, p \neq 1.$

6. $\displaystyle\int \sin u\,du = -\cos u + C.$

7. $\displaystyle\int \cos u\,du = \sin u + C.$

8. $\displaystyle\int \tan u\,du = \ln|\sec u| + C.$

9. $\displaystyle\int \cot u\,du = \ln|\sin u| + C.$

10. $\displaystyle\int \sec u\,du = \ln|\sec u + \tan u| + C.$

11. $\displaystyle\int \csc u\,du = \ln|\csc u - \cot u| + C.$

12. $\displaystyle\int \sec u \tan u\,du = \sec u + C.$

13. $\displaystyle\int \csc u \cot u\,du = -\csc u + C.$

14. $\displaystyle\int \sec^2 u\,du = \tan u + C.$

15. $\displaystyle\int \csc^2 u\,du = -\cot u + C.$

16. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{a^2 - u^2}}\,du = \arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C, \qquad a > 0 \text{ constant.}$

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{a^2 + u^2} = \frac{1}{a}\arctan\frac{u}{a} + C, \qquad a > 0 \text{ constant.}$

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{|u|\sqrt{u^2 - a^2}}\,du = \frac{1}{a}\,\text{arcsec}\,\frac{u}{a} + C, \qquad a > 0 \text{ constant.}$

19. $\displaystyle\int \sinh u\,du = \cosh u + C.$ **20.** $\displaystyle\int \cosh u\,du = \sinh u + C.$

For review we work out a few integrals by u-substitution.

Example 1 Calculate $\displaystyle\int x \tan x^2 dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = x^2$, $du = 2x\,dx$. Then

$$\int x \tan x^2 dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int \underset{\uparrow\,\text{Formula 8}}{\tan u\,du} = \tfrac{1}{2}\ln|\sec u| + C = \tfrac{1}{2}\ln|\sec x^2| + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Calculate $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{e^x}{e^x + 2}\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set

$$u = e^x + 2, \quad du = e^x dx. \quad \text{At } x = 0,\, u = 3;\ \text{at } x = 1,\, u = e + 2.$$

Thus

$$\int_0^1 \frac{e^x}{e^x + 2}\,dx = \underset{\text{Formula 3}}{\int_3^{e+2} \frac{du}{u}} = \Big[\ln|u|\Big]_3^{e+2}$$

$$= \ln(e + 2) - \ln 3 = \ln\left[\tfrac{1}{3}(e + 2)\right] \cong 0.45. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos 2x}{(2 + \sin 2x)^{1/3}}\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = 2 + \sin 2x$, $du = 2\cos 2x\,dx$. Then

$$\int \frac{\cos 2x}{(2 + \sin 2x)^{1/3}}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int \frac{1}{u^{1/3}}\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}\underset{\text{Formula 2}}{\int u^{-1/3}\,du} = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right)u^{2/3} + C$$

$$= \tfrac{3}{4}(2 + \sin 2x)^{2/3} + C. \quad ❑$$

The final example requires a little algebra.

Example 4 Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + 2x + 5}.$

SOLUTION First we complete the square in the denominator:

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + 2x + 5} = \int \frac{dx}{(x^2 + 2x + 1) + 4} = \int \frac{dx}{(x + 1)^2 + 4}.$$

We know that

$$\int \frac{du}{u^2 + 4} = \frac{1}{2}\arctan\frac{u}{2} + C.$$

Setting

$$u = x + 1, \quad du = dx,$$

we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2+2x+5} = \int \frac{du}{u^2+2^2} = \frac{1}{2}\arctan\frac{u}{2} + C = \frac{1}{2}\arctan\left(\frac{x+1}{2}\right) + C. \quad ❑$$

Using a Table of Integrals A table of over 100 intergrals, including those listed at the beginning of this section, appears on the inside covers of this text. This is a relatively short list. Mathematical handbooks such as *Burington's Handbook of Mathematical Tables and Formulas* and *CRC Standard Mathematical Tables* contain extensive tables; the table in the CRC reference lists 600 integrals.

The entries in a table of integrals are grouped by the form of the integrand: "forms containing $a+bu$," "forms containing $\sqrt{a^2-u^2}$," "trigonometric forms," and so forth. The table on the inside covers is grouped in this manner. This is the only table of integrals we'll refer to in this text.

Example 5 We use the table to calculate

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4+x^2}}.$$

SOLUTION Of the integrals containing $\sqrt{a^2+u^2}$, the one that fits our needs is Formula 77:

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}} = \ln\left|u+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\right| + C.$$

In our case, $a=2$ and $u=x$. Therefore

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4+x^2}} = \ln\left|x+\sqrt{4+x^2}\right| + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 6 We use the table to calculate

$$\int \frac{dx}{3x^2(2x-1)}.$$

SOLUTION The presence of the linear expression $2x-1$ prompts us to look in the $a+bu$ grouping. The formula that applies is Formula 109:

$$\int \frac{du}{u^2(a+bu)} = -\frac{1}{au} + \frac{b}{a^2}\ln\left|\frac{a+bu}{u}\right| + C.$$

In our case $a=-1$, $b=2$, $u=x$. Therefore

$$\int \frac{dx}{3x^2(2x-1)} = \frac{1}{3}\int \frac{dx}{x^2(2x-1)} = \frac{1}{3}\left[\frac{1}{x} + 2\ln\left|\frac{2x-1}{x}\right|\right] + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 7 We use the table to calculate

$$\int \frac{\sqrt{9-4x^2}}{x^2}dx.$$

SOLUTION Closest to what we need is Formula 90:

$$\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2-u^2}}{u^2}du = -\frac{1}{u}\sqrt{a^2-u^2} - \arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C.$$

We can write our integral to fit the formula by setting

$$u = 2x, \quad du = 2\,dx.$$

Doing this, we have

$$\int \frac{\sqrt{9-4x^2}}{x^2}\,dx = 2\int \frac{\sqrt{9-u^2}}{u^2}\,du = 2\left[-\frac{1}{u}\sqrt{9-u^2} - \arcsin\frac{u}{3}\right] + C$$

Check this out.

$$= 2\left[-\frac{1}{2x}\sqrt{9-4x^2} - \arcsin\frac{2x}{3}\right] + C. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 8.1

Exercises 1–38. Calculate.

1. $\int e^{2-x}\,dx.$

2. $\int \cos\frac{2}{3}x\,dx.$

3. $\int_0^1 \sin\pi x\,dx.$

4. $\int_0^1 \sec\pi x\tan\pi x\,dx.$

5. $\int \sec^2(1-x)\,dx.$

6. $\int \frac{dx}{5^x}.$

7. $\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/3} \cot x\,dx.$

8. $\int_0^1 \frac{x^3}{1+x^4}\,dx.$

9. $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx.$

10. $\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} \frac{dx}{\cos^2 x}.$

11. $\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} \frac{\sin x}{\cos^2 x}\,dx.$

12. $\int \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

13. $\int_1^2 \frac{e^{1/x}}{x^2}\,dx.$

14. $\int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{1-x^4}}\,dx.$

15. $\int_0^c \frac{dx}{x^2+c^2}.$

16. $\int a^x e^x\,dx.$

17. $\int \frac{\sec^2\theta}{\sqrt{3\tan\theta+1}}\,d\theta.$

18. $\int \frac{\sin\phi}{3-2\cos\phi}\,d\phi.$

19. $\int \frac{e^x}{a\,e^x - b}\,dx.$

20. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-4x+13}.$

21. $\int \frac{x}{(x+1)^2+4}\,dx.$

22. $\int \frac{\ln x}{x}\,dx.$

23. $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^4}}\,dx.$

24. $\int \frac{e^x}{1+e^{2x}}\,dx.$

25. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2+6x+10}.$

26. $\int e^x\tan e^x\,dx.$

27. $\int x\sin x^2\,dx.$

28. $\int \frac{x}{9+x^4}\,dx.$

29. $\int \tan^2 x\,dx.$

30. $\int \cosh 2x\sinh^3 2x\,dx.$

31. $\int_1^c \frac{\ln x^3}{x}\,dx.$

32. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{\arctan x}{1+x^2}\,dx.$

33. $\int \frac{\arcsin x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx.$

34. $\int e^x\cosh(2-e^x)\,dx.$

35. $\int \frac{1}{x\ln x}\,dx.$

36. $\int_{-1}^1 \frac{x^2}{x^2+1}\,dx.$

37. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1+\sin x}{\cos^2 x}\,dx.$

38. $\int_0^{1/2} \frac{1+x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx.$

Exercises 39–48. Calculate using our table of integrals.

39. $\int \sqrt{x^2-4}\,dx.$

40. $\int \sqrt{4-x^2}\,dx.$

41. $\int \cos^3 2t\,dt.$

42. $\int \sec^4 t\,dt.$

43. $\int \frac{dx}{x(2x+3)}.$

44. $\int \frac{x\,dx}{2+3x}.$

45. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2+9}}{x^2}\,dx.$

46. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2-2}}.$

47. $\int x^3\ln x\,dx.$

48. $\int x^3\sin x\,dx.$

49. Evaluate $\int_0^\pi \sqrt{1+\cos x}\,dx.$
HINT: $\cos x = 2\cos^2\frac{1}{2}x - 1.$

50. Calculate $\int \sec^2 x\tan x\,dx$ in two ways.

(a) Set $u = \tan x$ and verify that

$$\int \sec^2 x\tan x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\tan^2 x + C_1.$$

(b) Set $u = \sec x$ and verify that

$$\int \sec^2 x\tan x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\sec^2 x + C_2.$$

(c) Reconcile the results in parts (a) and (b).

51. Verify that, for each positive integer n:

(a) $\int_0^\pi \sin^2 nx\,dx = \frac{1}{2}\pi.$
HINT: $\sin^2\theta = \frac{1}{2}(1-\cos 2\theta)$

(b) $\int_0^\pi \sin nx\cos nx\,dx = 0.$

(c) $\int_0^{\pi/n} \sin nx\cos nx\,dx = 0.$

52. (a) Calculate $\int \sin^3 x\,dx$. HINT: $\sin^2 x = 1 - \cos^2 x$.
(b) Calculate $\int \sin^5 x\,dx$.
(c) Explain how to calculate $\int \sin^{2k-1} x\,dx$ for an arbitrary positive integer k.

53. (a) Calculate $\int \tan^3 x\,dx$. HINT: $\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$.
(b) Calculate $\int \tan^5 x\,dx$.
(c) Calculate $\int \tan^7 x\,dx$.
(d) Explain how to calculate $\int \tan^{2k+1} x\,dx$ for an arbitrary positive integer k.

54. (a) Sketch the region between the curves $y = \csc x$ and $y = \sin x$ over the interval $[\frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$.
(b) Calculate the area of that region.
(c) The region is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

55. (a) Use a graphing utility to sketch the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sin x + \cos x} \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \le x \le \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

(b) Find A and B such that $\sin x + \cos x = A \sin(x + B)$.
(c) Find the area of the region between the graph of f and the x-axis.

56. (a) Use a graphing utility to sketch the graph of $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$.
(b) Let $a > 0$. The region between the graph of f and the y-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = a$ is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.
(c) Find the value of a for which the solid in part (b) has a volume of 2 cubic units.

57. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curves

$$y = \frac{x^2 + 1}{x + 1} \quad \text{for} \quad x > -1 \quad \text{and} \quad x + 2y = 16$$

in the same coordinate system.
(b) These curves intersect at two points and determine a bounded region Ω. Estimate the x-coordinates of the two points of intersection accurate to two decimal places.
(c) Determine the approximate area of the region Ω.

58. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curve

$$y^2 = x^2(1 - x).$$

(b) Your drawing in part (a) should show that the curve forms a loop for $0 \le x \le 1$. Calculate the area of the loop. HINT: Use the symmetry of the curve.

■ 8.2 INTEGRATION BY PARTS

We begin with the formula for the derivative of a product:

$$u(x)v'(x) + v(x)u'(x) = (u \cdot v)'(x).$$

Integrating both sides, we get

$$\int u(x)v'(x)\,dx + \int v(x)u'(x)\,dx = \int (u \cdot v)'(x)\,dx.$$

Since

$$\int (u \cdot v)'(x)\,dx = u(x)v(x) + C,$$

we have

$$\int u(x)v'(x)\,dx + \int v(x)u'(x)\,dx = u(x)v(x) + C$$

and therefore

$$\int u(x)v'(x)\,dx = u(x)v(x) - \int v(x)u'(x)\,dx + C.$$

Since the calculation of

$$\int v(x)u'(x)\,dx$$

will yield its own arbitrary constant, there is no reason to keep the constant C. We therefore drop it and write

(8.2.1)
$$\boxed{\int u(x)v'(x)\,dx = u(x)v(x) - \int v(x)u'(x)\,dx.}$$

The process of finding

$$\int u(x)v'(x)\,dx$$

by calculating

$$\int v(x)u'(x)\,dx$$

and then using (8.2.1) is called *integration by parts*.

Usually we write

$$u = u(x), \qquad dv = v'(x)\,dx$$
$$du = u'(x)\,dx, \qquad v = v(x).$$

Then the formula for integration by parts reads

(8.2.2)
$$\boxed{\int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du.}$$

Integration by parts is a very versatile tool. According to (8.2.2) we can calculate $\int u\,dv$ by calculating $\int v\,du$ instead. The payoff is immediate in those cases where we can choose u and v so that

$$\int v\,du \qquad \text{is easier to calculate than} \qquad \int u\,dv.$$

Example 1 Calculate $\int x\,e^x\,dx$.

SOLUTION We want to separate x from e^x. Setting

$$u = x, \qquad dv = e^x\,dx$$

we have

$$du = dx, \qquad v = e^x.$$

Accordingly,

$$\int x\,e^x dx = \int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du = xe^x - \int e^x\,dx = xe^x - e^x + C.$$

Our choice of u and dv worked out well. Does the choice of u and dv make a difference? Suppose we had set

$$u = e^x, \qquad dv = x\,dx.$$

Then we would have had

$$du = e^x dx, \qquad v = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2.$$

In this case integration by parts would have led to

$$\int x\,e^x dx = \int u\,dv = uv - \int v\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2e^x - \tfrac{1}{2}\int x^2e^x\,dx,$$

giving us an integral which at this stage is difficult for us to deal with. This choice of u and dv would not have been helpful. ❑

Example 2 Calculate $\int x \sin 2x\, dx$.

SOLUTION Setting

$$u = x, \qquad dv = \sin 2x\, dx,$$

we have

$$du = dx, \qquad v = -\tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x.$$

Therefore,

$$\int x \sin 2x\, dx = -\tfrac{1}{2}x\cos 2x - \int -\tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x\, dx = -\tfrac{1}{2}x\cos 2x + \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x + C.$$

As you can verify, had we set

$$u = \sin 2x, \qquad dv = x\, dx,$$

then we would have run into an integral more difficult to evaluate than the integral with which we started. ❑

In Examples 1 and 2 there was only one effective way of choosing u and dv. With some integrals we have more latitude.

Example 3 Calculate $\int x \ln x\, dx$.

SOLUTION Setting

$$u = \ln x, \qquad dv = x\, dx,$$

we have

$$du = \frac{1}{x}\, dx, \qquad v = \frac{x^2}{2}.$$

The substitution gives

$$\int x \ln x\, dx = \int u\, dv = uv - \int v\, du$$

$$= \frac{x^2}{2}\ln x - \int \frac{1}{x}\frac{x^2}{2}\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 \ln x - \tfrac{1}{2}\int x\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2\ln x - \tfrac{1}{4}x^2 + C.$$

ANOTHER APPROACH This time we set

$$u = x\ln x, \qquad dv = dx$$

so that

$$du = (1 + \ln x)\, dx, \qquad v = x.$$

In this case the relation

$$\int u\, dv = uv - \int v\, du$$

gives

$$\int x \ln x\, dx = x^2 \ln x - \int x(1 + \ln x)\, dx.$$

The new integral is more complicated than the one with which we started. It may therefore look like we are worse off than when we began, but that is not the case. Going

on, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int x \ln x\, dx &= x^2 \ln x - \int x\, dx - \int x \ln x\, dx \\
2\int x \ln x\, dx &= x^2 \ln x - \int x\, dx \\
&= x^2 \ln x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + C \\
\int x \ln x\, dx &= \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 \ln x - \tfrac{1}{4}x^2 + C.
\end{aligned}$$

This is the result we obtained before. In the last step we wrote $C/2$ as C. We can do this because C represents an arbitrary constant. ❑

Remark As you just saw, integration by parts can be useful even if $\int v\, du$ is not easier to calculate than $\int u\, dv$. What matters to us is the interplay between the two integrals. ❑

To calculate some integrals, we have to integrate by parts more than once.

Example 4 Calculate $\int x^2 e^{-x}\, dx$.

SOLUTION Setting

$$u = x^2, \qquad dv = e^{-x}\, dx,$$

we have

$$du = 2x\, dx \qquad v = -e^{-x}.$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned}
\int x^2 e^{-x}\, dx = \int u\, dv = uv - \int v\, du &= -x^2 e^{-x} - \int -2x e^{-x}\, dx \\
&= -x^2 e^{-x} + \int 2x e^{-x}\, dx.
\end{aligned}$$

We now calculate the integral on the right, again by parts. This time we set

$$u = 2x, \qquad dv = e^{-x}\, dx.$$

This gives

$$du = 2\, dx, \qquad v = -e^{-x}$$

and thus

$$\begin{aligned}
\int 2x e^{-x}\, dx = \int u\, dv = uv - \int v\, du &= -2x e^{-x} - \int -2e^{-x}\, dx \\
&= -2x e^{-x} + \int 2e^{-x}\, dx = -2x e^{-x} - 2e^{-x} + C.
\end{aligned}$$

Combining this with our earlier calculations, we have

$$\int x^2 e^{-x}\, dx = -x^2 e^{-x} - 2x e^{-x} - 2e^{-x} + C = -(x^2 + 2x + 2)e^{-x} + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Calculate $\int e^x \cos x\, dx$.

SOLUTION Once again we'll need to integrate by parts twice. First we write

$$u = e^x, \qquad dv = \cos x\, dx$$
$$du = e^x\, dx, \qquad v = \sin x.$$

This gives

$$(1) \qquad \int e^x \cos x\, dx = \int u\, dv = uv - \int v\, du = e^x \sin x - \int e^x \sin x\, dx.$$

Now we work with the integral on the right. Setting

$$u = e^x, \qquad dv = \sin x\, dx$$
$$du = e^x\, dx, \qquad v = -\cos x,$$

we have

$$(2) \qquad \int e^x \sin x\, dx = \int u\, dv = uv - \int v\, du = -e^x \cos x + \int e^x \cos x\, dx.$$

Substituting (2) into (1), we get

$$\int e^x \cos x\, dx = e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x - \int e^x \cos x\, dx$$
$$2\int e^x \cos x\, dx = e^x(\sin x + \cos x)$$
$$\int e^x \cos x\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}e^x(\sin x + \cos x).$$

Since this is an indefinite integral, we add an arbitrary constant C:

$$\int e^x \cos x\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}e^x(\sin x + \cos x) + C.$$

(We began this example by setting $u = e^x$, $dv = \cos x\, dx$. As you can check, the substitution $u = \cos x$, $dv = e^x\, dx$ would have worked out just as well.) ❑

Integration by parts is often used to calculate integrals where the integrand is a mixture of function types; for example, polynomials mixed with exponentials, polynomials mixed with trigonometric functions, and so forth. Some integrands, however, are better left as mixtures; for example,

$$\int 2xe^{x^2} dx = e^{x^2} + C \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int 3x^2 \cos x^3 dx = \sin x^3 + C.$$

Any attempt to separate these integrands for integration by parts is counterproductive. The mixtures in these integrands arise from the chain rule, and we need these mixtures to calculate the integrals.

Example 6 Calculate $\int x^5 \cos x^3\, dx$.

SOLUTION To integrate $\cos x^3$, we need an x^2 factor. So we'll keep x^2 together with $\cos x^3$ and set

$$u = x^3, \qquad dv = x^2 \cos x^3\, dx.$$

Then

$$du = 3x^2\,dx, \qquad v = \tfrac{1}{3}\sin x^3$$

and

$$\int x^5 \cos x^3\,dx = \tfrac{1}{3}x^3 \sin x^3 - \int x^2 \sin x^3\,dx$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{3}x^3 \sin x^3 + \tfrac{1}{3}\cos x^3 + C. \quad ❑$$

The counterpart to (8.2.1) for definite integrals reads

(8.2.3)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b u(x)v'(x)\,dx = \Big[u(x)v(x)\Big]_a^b - \int_a^b v(x)u'(x)\,dx.}$$

This follows directly from writing the product rule as

$$u(x)v'(x) = (u \cdot v)'(x) - v(x)u'(x).$$

Just integrate from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

We can circumvent this formula by working with indefinite integrals and bringing in the limits of integration only at the end. This is the course we will follow in the next example.

Example 7 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_1^2 x^3 \ln x\,dx$.

SOLUTION First we calculate the indefinite integral, proceeding by parts. We set

$$u = \ln x, \qquad dv = x^3\,dx$$
$$du = \frac{1}{x}\,dx, \qquad v = \frac{1}{4}x^4.$$

This gives

$$\int x^3 \ln x\,dx = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 \ln x - \tfrac{1}{4}\int x^3 dx = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 \ln x - \tfrac{1}{16}x^4 + C.$$

To evaluate the definite integral, we need only one antiderivative. We choose the one with $C = 0$. This gives

$$\int_1^2 x^3 \ln x\,dx = \Big[\tfrac{1}{4}x^4 \ln x - \tfrac{1}{16}x^4\Big]_1^2 = 4\ln 2 - \tfrac{15}{16}. \quad ❑$$

Through integration by parts, we construct an antiderivative for the logarithm, for the arc sine, and for the arc tangent.

(8.2.4)
$$\boxed{\int \ln x\,dx = x\ln x - x + C.}$$

(8.2.5)
$$\boxed{\int \arcsin x\,dx = x \arcsin x + \sqrt{1 - x^2} + C.}$$

(8.2.6)
$$\boxed{\int \arctan x\, dx = x\arctan x - \tfrac{1}{2}\ln(1+x^2) + C.}$$

We will work with the arc sine. The logarithm and the arc tangent formulas are left to the Exercises.

To find the integral of the arc sine, we set

$$u = \arcsin x, \qquad dv = dx$$
$$du = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx, \qquad v = x.$$

This gives

$$\int \arcsin x\, dx = x\arcsin x - \int \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx = x\arcsin x + \sqrt{1-x^2} + C. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 8.2

Exercises 1–40. Calculate.

1. $\int xe^{-x}\,dx.$

2. $\int_0^2 x2^x\,dx.$

3. $\int x^2e^{-x^3}\,dx.$

4. $\int x\ln x^2\,dx.$

5. $\int_0^1 x^2e^{-x}\,dx.$

6. $\int x^3e^{-x^2}\,dx.$

7. $\int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{1-x}}\,dx.$

8. $\int \frac{dx}{x(\ln x)^3}.$

9. $\int_1^{c^2} x\ln\sqrt{x}\,dx.$

10. $\int_0^3 x\sqrt{x+1}\,dx.$

11. $\int \frac{\ln(x+1)}{\sqrt{x+1}}\,dx.$

12. $\int x^2(e^x-1)\,dx.$

13. $\int (\ln x)^2\,dx.$

14. $\int x(x+5)^{-14}\,dx.$

15. $\int x^3 3^x\,dx.$

16. $\int \sqrt{x}\ln x\,dx.$

17. $\int x(x+5)^{14}\,dx.$

18. $\int (2^x+x^2)^2\,dx.$

19. $\int_0^{1/2} x\cos\pi x\,dx.$

20. $\int_0^{\pi/2} x^2\sin x\,dx.$

21. $\int x^2(x+1)^9\,dx.$

22. $\int x^2(2x-1)^{-7}\,dx.$

23. $\int e^x\sin x\,dx.$

24. $\int (e^x+2x)^2\,dx.$

25. $\int_0^1 \ln(1+x^2)\,dx.$

26. $\int x\ln(x+1)\,dx.$

27. $\int x^n\ln x\,dx, \quad n \neq -1.$

28. $\int e^{3x}\cos 2x\,dx.$

29. $\int x^3\sin x^2\,dx.$

30. $\int x^3\sin x\,dx.$

31. $\int_0^{1/4} \arcsin 2x\,dx.$

32. $\int \frac{\arcsin 2x}{\sqrt{1-4x^2}}\,dx.$

33. $\int_0^1 x\arctan x^2\,dx.$

34. $\int \cos\sqrt{x}\,dx.$ HINT: Set $u=\sqrt{x},\ dv = \frac{\cos\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

35. $\int x^2\cosh 2x\,dx.$

36. $\int_{-1}^1 x\sinh 2x^2\,dx.$

37. $\int \frac{1}{x}\arcsin(\ln x)\,dx.$

38. $\int \cos(\ln x)\,dx.$ HINT: Integrate by parts twice.

39. $\int \sin(\ln x)\,dx.$

40. $\int_1^{2e} x^2(\ln x)^2\,dx.$

41. Derive (8.2.4): $\int \ln x\,dx = x\ln x - x + C.$

42. Derive (8.2.6):

$$\int \arctan x\,dx = x\arctan x - \tfrac{1}{2}\ln(1+x^2) + C.$$

Derive the following three formulas.

43. $\int x^k\ln x\,dx = \frac{x^{k+1}}{k+1}\ln x - \frac{x^{k+1}}{(k+1)^2} + C,\ k \neq -1.$

44. $\int e^{ax}\cos bx\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}(a\cos bx + b\sin bx)}{a^2+b^2} + C.$

45. $\int e^{ax}\sin bx\,dx = \frac{e^{ax}(a\sin bx - b\cos bx)}{a^2+b^2} + C.$

46. What happens if you try integration by parts to calculate $\int e^{ax}\cosh ax\,dx$? Calculate this integral by some other method.

47. Set $f(x) = x\sin x$. Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x=0$ to $x=\pi$.

48. Set $g(x) = x\cos\frac{1}{2}x$. Find the area between the graph of g and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$.

Exercises 49–50. Find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis.

49. $f(x) = \arcsin x, \quad x \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\right]$.

50. $f(x) = xe^{-2x}, \quad x \in [0, 2]$.

51. Let Ω be the region between the graph of the logarithm function and the x-axis from $x = 1$ to $x = e$. (a) Find the area of Ω. (b) Find the centroid of Ω. (c) Find the volume of the solids generated by revolving Ω about each of the coordinate axes.

52. Let $f(x) = \dfrac{\ln x}{x}$, $x \in [1, 2e]$.

(a) Find the area of the region Ω bounded by the graph of f and the x-axis.
(b) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis.

Exercises 53–56. Find the centroid of the region under the graph.

53. $f(x) = e^x, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

54. $f(x) = e^{-x}, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

55. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

56. $f(x) = \cos x, \quad x \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right]$.

57. The mass density of a rod that extends from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ is given by the function $\lambda(x) = e^{kx}$ where k is a constant. (a) Calculate the mass of the rod. (b) Find the center of mass of the rod.

58. The mass density of a rod that extends from $x = 2$ to $x = 3$ is given by the logarithm function $f(x) = \ln x$. (a) Calculate the mass of the rod. (b) Find the center of mass of the rod.

Exercises 59–62. Find the volume generated by revolving the region under the graph about the y-axis.

59. $f(x) = \cos\frac{1}{2}\pi x, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

60. $f(x) = x\sin x, \quad x \in [0, \pi]$.

61. $f(x) = x\,e^x, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

62. $f(x) = x\cos x, \quad x \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right]$.

63. Let Ω be the region under the curve $y = e^x$, $x \in [0, 1]$. Find the centroid of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis. (For the appropriate formula, see Project 6.4.)

64. Let Ω be the region under the graph of $y = \sin x$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right]$. Find the centroid of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis. (For the appropriate formula, see Project 6.4.)

65. Let Ω be the region between the curve $y = \cosh x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$. Find the area of Ω and determine the centroid.

66. Let Ω be the region given in Exercise 65. Find the centroid of the solid generated by revolving Ω:

(a) about the x-axis; (b) about the y-axis

67. Let n be a positive integer. Use integration by parts to show that

$$\int x^n e^{ax}\,dx = \frac{x^n e^{ax}}{a} - \frac{n}{a}\int x^{n-1}e^{ax}\,dx, \quad a \neq 0.$$

68. Let n be a positive integer. Show that

$$\int (\ln x)^n dx = x(\ln x)^n - n\int (\ln x)^{n-1}\,dx.$$

The formula given in Exercise 67 reduces the calculation of $\int x^n e^{ax}\,dx$ to the calculation of $\int x^{n-1}e^{ax}\,dx$. The formula given in Exercise 68 reduces the calculation of $\int (\ln x)^n\,dx$ to the calculation of $\int (\ln x)^{n-1}\,dx$. Formulas (such as these) which reduce the calculation of an expression in n to the calculation of the corresponding expression in $n-1$ are called *reduction formulas*.

Exercises 69–72. Calculate the following integrals by using the appropriate reduction formulas.

69. $\displaystyle\int x^3 e^{2x}\,dx$.

70. $\displaystyle\int x^2 e^{-x}\,dx$.

71. $\displaystyle\int (\ln x)^3\,dx$.

72. $\displaystyle\int (\ln x)^4\,dx$.

73. (a) As you can probably see, were you to integrate $\int x^3 e^x\,dx$ by parts, the result would be of the form

$$\int x^3 e^x\,dx = Ax^3e^x + Bx^2e^x + Cxe^x + De^x + E.$$

Differentiate both sides of this equation and solve for the coefficients A, B, C, D. In this manner you can calculate the integral without actually carrying out the integration.

(b) Calculate $\int x^3 e^x\,dx$ by using the appropriate reduction formula.

74. If P is a polynomial of degree k, then

$$\int P(x)\,e^x dx = [P(x) - P'(x) + \cdots \pm P^{(k)}(x)]e^x + C.$$

Verify this statement. For simplicity, take $k = 4$.

75. Use the statement in Exercise 74 to calculate:

(a) $\displaystyle\int (x^2 - 3x + 1)e^x\,dx$. (b) $\displaystyle\int (x^3 - 2x)e^x\,dx$.

76. Use integration by parts to show that if f has an inverse with continuous first derivative, then

$$\int f^{-1}(x)\,dx = xf^{-1}(x) - \int x(f^{-1})'(x)\,dx.$$

77. Show that if f and g have continuous second derivatives and $f(a) = g(a) = f(b) = g(b) = 0$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x)g''(x)\,dx = \int_a^b g(x)f''(x)\,dx.$$

78. You are familiar with the identity

$$f(b) - f(a) = \int_a^b f'(x)\,dx.$$

(a) Assume that f has a continuous second derivative. Use integration by parts to derive the identity

$$f(b) - f(a) = f'(a)(b-a) - \int_a^b f''(x)(x-b)\,dx.$$

(b) Assume that f has a continuous third derivative. Use the result in part (a) and integration by parts to derive the identity

$$f(b)-f(a)=f'(a)(b-a)+\frac{f''(a)}{2}(b-a)^2 - \int_a^b \frac{f'''(x)}{2}(x-b)^2\,dx.$$

Going on in this manner, we are led to what are called Taylor series (Chapter 12).

79. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve $y = x\sin x$ for $x \geq 0$. Then use a CAS to calculate the area between the curve and the x-axis

(a) from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$.

(b) from $x = \pi$ to $x = 2\pi$.

(c) from $x = 2\pi$ to $x = 3\pi$.

(d) What is the area between the curve and the x-axis from $x = n\pi$ to $x = (n+1)\pi$? Take n an arbitrary nonnegative integer.

80. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve $y = x\cos x$ for $x \geq 0$. Then use a CAS to calculate the area between the curve and the x-axis

(a) from $x = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ to $x = \frac{3}{2}\pi$.

(b) from $x = \frac{3}{2}\pi$ to $x = \frac{5}{2}\pi$.

(c) from $x = \frac{5}{2}\pi$ to $x = \frac{7}{2}\pi$.

(d) What is the area between the curve and the x-axis from $x = \frac{1}{2}(2n-1)\pi$ to $x = \frac{1}{2}(2n+1)\pi$? Take n an arbitrary positive integer.

81. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve $y = 1 - \sin x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$. Then use a CAS

(a) to find the area of the region Ω between the curve and the x-axis.

(b) to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

(c) to find the centroid of Ω.

82. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve $y = xe^x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 10$. Then use a CAS

(a) to find the centroid of the region Ω between the curve and the x-axis.

(b) to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis.

(c) to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

■ PROJECT 8.2 Sine Waves $y = \sin nx$ and Cosine Waves $y = \cos nx$

Problem 1. Show that for each positive integer n,

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 nx\,dx = \pi \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_0^{2\pi} \cos^2 nx\,dx = \pi.$$

HINT: Use the identities

$$\sin^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta, \qquad \cos^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta.$$

Problem 2. Show that for $m \neq n$,

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \sin nx\,dx = 0$$

and

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \cos mx \cos nx\,dx = 0.$$

HINT: Verify that

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \cos[(m+n)x]\,dx = 0.$$

Then use the addition formula

$$\cos(\alpha+\beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

to show that

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \cos mx \cos nx\,dx = \int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \sin nx\,dx.$$

Evaluate the cosine integral by parts.

Problem 3. Show that for $m \neq n$,

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \cos nx\,dx = 0.$$

HINT: Verify that

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin[(m+n)x]\,dx = 0.$$

Then use the addition formula

$$\sin(\alpha+\beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

to show that

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \cos nx\,dx + \int_0^{2\pi} \cos mx \sin nx\,dx = 0.$$

Evaluate the second integral by parts.

Summary

For each positive integer n

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 nx\,dx = \pi \quad \text{and}$$

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \cos^2 nx\,dx = \pi,$$

(8.2.6) and for positive integers $m \neq n$

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \sin nx\;dx = 0,$$

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \cos mx \cos nx\;dx = 0,$$

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin mx \cos nx\;dx = 0.$$

These relations lie at the heart of wave theory.

Problem 4. (*The superposition of waves*) A function of the form

$$f(x) = a_1 \sin x + a_2 \sin 2x + \cdots + a_n \sin nx + b_1 \cos x + b_2 \cos 2x + \cdots + b_n \cos nx$$

is called a *trigonometric polynomial*, and the coefficients a_k, b_k are called the *Fourier coefficients*.† Determine the a_k and b_k from $k = 1$ to $k = n$.

HINT: Evaluate

$$\int_0^{2\pi} f(x) \sin kx\;dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_0^{2\pi} f(x) \cos kx\;dx$$

using the relations just summarized.

†After the French mathematician J. B. J. Fourier (1768–1830), who was the first to use such polynomials to closely approximate functions of great generality.

■ 8.3 POWERS AND PRODUCTS OF TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

Integrals of trigonometric powers and products can usually be reduced to elementary integrals by the imaginative use of the basic trigonometric identities and, here and there, some integration by parts.

These are the identities that we'll rely on:

Unit circle relations

$$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1, \qquad \tan^2\theta + 1 = \sec^2\theta, \qquad \cot^2\theta + 1 = \csc^2\theta$$

Addition formulas

$$\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\sin(\alpha - \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\cos(\alpha - \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta + \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

Double-angle formulas

$$\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta, \qquad \cos 2\theta = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta$$

Half-angle formulas

$$\sin^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta, \qquad \cos^2\theta = \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta.$$

Sines and Cosines

Example 1 Calculate

$$\int \sin^2 x \cos^5 x\;dx.$$

SOLUTION The relation $\cos^2 x = 1 - \sin^2 x$ enables us to express $\cos^4 x$ in terms of $\sin x$. The integrand then becomes

$$(\text{a polynomial in } \sin x)\cos x,$$

an expression that we can integrate by the chain rule.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sin^2 x \cos^5 x\, dx &= \int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x \cos x\, dx \\
&= \int \sin^2 x(1-\sin^2 x)^2 \cos x\, dx \\
&= \int (\sin^2 x - 2\sin^4 x + \sin^6 x)\cos x\, dx \\
&= \tfrac{1}{3}\sin^3 x - \tfrac{2}{5}\sin^5 x + \tfrac{1}{7}\sin^7 x + C. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Calculate

$$\int \sin^5 x\, dx$$

SOLUTION The relation $\sin^2 x = 1 - \cos^2 x$ enables us to express $\sin^4 x$ in terms of $\cos x$. The integrand then becomes

$$(\text{a polynomial in } \cos x)\sin x,$$

an expression that we can integrate by the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sin^5 x\, dx &= \int \sin^4 x \sin x\, dx \\
&= \int (1-\cos^2 x)^2 \sin x\, dx \\
&= \int (1 - 2\cos^2 x + \cos^4 x)\sin x\, dx \\
&= \int \sin x\, dx - 2\int \cos^2 x \sin x\, dx + \int \cos^4 x \sin x\, dx \\
&= -\cos x + \tfrac{2}{3}\cos^3 x - \tfrac{1}{5}\cos^5 x + C. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Example 3 Calculate

$$\int \sin^2 x\, dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int \cos^2 x\, dx.$$

SOLUTION Since $\sin^2 x = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos 2x$ and $\cos^2 x = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\cos 2x$,

$$\int \sin^2 x\, dx = \int \left(\tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x\right) dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x + C$$

and

$$\int \cos^2 x\, dx = \int \left(\tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x\right) dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x + \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x + C. \quad \square$$

Example 4 Calculate

$$\int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x \, dx.$$

SOLUTION The relation $2 \sin x \cos x = \sin 2x$ gives $\sin^2 x \cos^2 x = \frac{1}{4}\sin^2 2x$ and that we can integrate:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x \, dx &= \tfrac{1}{4}\int \sin^2 2x \, dx \\ &= \tfrac{1}{4}\int \left(\tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 4x\right) dx \\ &= \tfrac{1}{8}\int dx - \tfrac{1}{8}\int \cos 4x \, dx = \tfrac{1}{8}x - \tfrac{1}{32}\sin 4x + C. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

Example 5 Calculate

$$\int \sin^4 x \, dx.$$

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\sin^4 x = (\sin^2 x)^2 = \left(\tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x\right)^2 &= \tfrac{1}{4} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x + \tfrac{1}{4}\cos^2 2x \\ &= \tfrac{1}{4} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{8}\cos 4x \\ &= \tfrac{3}{8} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x + \tfrac{1}{8}\cos 4x.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sin^4 x \, dx &= \int \left(\tfrac{3}{8} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2x + \tfrac{1}{8}\cos 4x\right) dx \\ &= \tfrac{3}{8}x - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x + \tfrac{1}{32}\sin 4x + C. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

Example 6 Calculate

$$\int \sin 5x \sin 3x \, dx.$$

SOLUTION The only identities that feature the product of sines with different arguments are the addition formulas for the cosine:

$$\cos(\alpha - \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta + \sin\alpha\sin\beta, \qquad \cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta.$$

We can express $\sin\alpha\sin\beta$ in terms of something we can integrate by subtracting the second equation from the first one.

In our case we have

$$\begin{aligned}\cos 2x &= \cos(5x - 3x) = \cos 5x \cos 3x + \sin 5x \sin 3x \\ \cos 8x &= \cos(5x + 3x) = \cos 5x \cos 3x - \sin 5x \sin 3x\end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\sin 5x \sin 3x = \tfrac{1}{2}(\cos 2x - \cos 8x).$$

Using this relation, we have

$$\int \sin 5x \sin 3x \, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int \cos 2x \, dx - \tfrac{1}{2}\int \cos 8x \, dx$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2x - \tfrac{1}{16}\sin 8x + C. \quad ❑$$

Tangents and Secants

Example 7 Calculate

$$\int \tan^4 x \, dx.$$

SOLUTION The relation $\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$ gives

$$\tan^4 x = \tan^2 x \sec^2 x - \tan^2 x = \tan^2 x \sec^2 x - \sec^2 x + 1.$$

Therefore

$$\int \tan^4 x \, dx = \int (\tan^2 x \sec^2 x - \sec^2 x + 1)\, dx$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{3}\tan^3 x - \tan x + x + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 8 Calculate

$$\int \sec^3 x \, dx.$$

SOLUTION The relation $\sec^2 x = \tan^2 x + 1$ gives

$$\int \sec^3 x \, dx = \int \sec x\,(\tan^2 x + 1)\, dx = \int \sec x \tan^2 x \, dx + \int \sec x \, dx.$$

We know the second integral, but the first integral gives us problems. (Here the relation $\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$ doesn't help, for, as you can check, that takes us right back to where we started.)

Not seeing any other way to proceed, we try integration by parts on the original integral. Setting

$$u = \sec x, \qquad dv = \sec^2 x \, dx$$
$$du = \sec x \tan x \, dx, \qquad v = \tan x,$$

we have

$$\int \sec^3 x \, dx = \sec x \tan x - \int \sec x \tan^2 x \, dx$$

$$= \sec x \tan x - \int \sec^3 x \, dx + \int \sec x \, dx$$

$\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$

$$2\int \sec^3 x \, dx = \sec x \tan x + \int \sec x \, dx$$

$$\int \sec^3 x \, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\sec x \tan x + \tfrac{1}{2}\ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 9 Calculate

$$\int \sec^6 x\, dx.$$

SOLUTION Applying the relation $\sec^2 x = \tan^2 x + 1$ to $\sec^4 x$, we can express the integrand as

$$(\text{a polynomial in } \tan x) \sec^2 x.$$

We can integrate this by the chain rule:

$$\sec^6 x = \sec^4 x \sec^2 x = (\tan^2 x + 1)^2 \sec^2 x = (\tan^4 x + 2\tan^2 x + 1)\sec^2 x.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \int \sec^6 x\, dx &= \int (\tan^4 x \sec^2 x + 2\tan^2 x \sec^2 x + \sec^2 x)\, dx \\ &= \tfrac{1}{5}\tan^5 x + \tfrac{2}{3}\tan^3 x + \tan x + C. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Example 10 Calculate

$$\int \tan^5 x \sec^3 x\, dx.$$

SOLUTION Applying the relation $\tan^2 x = \sec^2 x - 1$ to $\tan^4 x$, we can express the integrand as

$$(\text{a polynomial in } \sec x) \sec x \tan x.$$

We can integrate this by the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \int \tan^5 x \sec^3 x\, dx &= \int \tan^4 x \sec^2 x \sec x \tan x\, dx \\ &= \int (\sec^2 x - 1)^2 \sec^2 x \sec x \tan x\, dx \\ &= \int (\sec^6 x - 2\sec^4 x + \sec^2 x) \sec x \tan x\, dx \\ &= \tfrac{1}{7}\sec^7 x - \tfrac{2}{5}\sec^5 x + \tfrac{1}{3}\sec^3 x + C. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Cotangents and Cosecants

The integrals in Examples 7–10 featured tangents and secants. In carrying out the integrations, we relied on the identity $\tan^2 x + 1 = \sec^2 x$ and in one instance resorted to integration by parts. To calculate integrals that feature cotangents and cosecants, use the identity $\cot^2 x + 1 = \csc^2 x$ and, if necessary, integration by parts.

EXERCISES 8.3

Exercises 1–44. Calculate. (If you run out of ideas, use the examples as models.)

1. $\int \sin^3 x\, dx.$

2. $\int_0^{\pi/8} \cos^2 4x\, dx.$

3. $\int_0^{\pi/6} \sin^2 3x\, dx.$

4. $\int \cos^3 x\, dx.$

5. $\int \cos^4 x \sin^3 x\, dx.$

6. $\int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x\, dx.$

7. $\int \sin^3 x \cos^3 x\, dx.$

8. $\int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x\, dx.$

9. $\int \sec^2 \pi x\, dx.$

10. $\int \csc^2 2x\, dx.$

11. $\int \tan^3 x\, dx.$

12. $\int \cot^3 x\, dx.$

13. $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^4 x\, dx.$

14. $\int \cos^3 x \cos 2x\, dx.$

15. $\int \sin 2x \cos 3x\, dx.$

16. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos 2x \sin 3x\, dx.$

17. $\int \tan^2 x \sec^2 x\, dx.$

18. $\int \cot^2 x \csc^2 x\, dx.$

19. $\int \sin^2 x \sin 2x\, dx.$

20. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^4 x\, dx.$

21. $\int \sin^6 x\, dx.$

22. $\int \cos^5 x \sin^5 x\, dx.$

23. $\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \cot^2 x\, dx.$

24. $\int \tan^6 x\, dx.$

25. $\int \cot^3 x \csc^3 x\, dx.$

26. $\int \tan^3 x \sec^3 x\, dx.$

27. $\int \sin 5x \sin 2x\, dx.$

28. $\int \sec^4 3x\, dx.$

29. $\int \sin^{5/2} x \cos^3 x\, dx.$

30. $\int \dfrac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x}\, dx.$

31. $\int \tan^5 3x\, dx.$

32. $\int \cot^5 2x\, dx.$

33. $\int_{-1/6}^{1/3} \sin^4 3\pi x \cos^3 3\pi x\, dx.$

34. $\int_0^{1/2} \cos \pi x \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x\, dx.$

35. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \cos 4x \sin 2x\, dx.$

36. $\int (\sin 3x - \sin x)^2\, dx.$

37. $\int \tan^4 x \sec^4 x\, dx.$

38. $\int \cot^4 x \csc^4 x\, dx.$

39. $\int \sin \tfrac{1}{2}x \cos 2x\, dx.$

40. $\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 ax\, dx, \quad a \neq 0.$

41. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^3 x \sec^2 x\, dx.$

42. $\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \csc^3 x \cot x\, dx.$

43. $\int_0^{\pi/6} \tan^2 2x\, dx.$

44. $\int_0^{\pi/3} \tan x \sec^{3/2} x\, dx.$

45. Find the area between the curve $y = \sin^2 x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi$.

46. The region between the curve $y = \cos x$ and the x-axis from $x = -\pi/2$ to $x = \pi/2$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

47. The region of Exercise 45 is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

48. The region bounded by the y-axis and the curves $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$, $0 \le x \le \pi/4$, is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

49. The region bounded by the y-axis, the line $y = 1$, and the curve $y = \tan x$, $x \in [0, \pi/4]$, is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

50. The region between the curve $y = \tan^2 x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/4$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

51. The region between the curve $y = \tan x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/4$ is revolved about the line $y = -1$. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

52. The region between the curve $y = \sec^2 x$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \pi/4$ is revolved about the x axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

53. (a) Use integration by parts to show that for $n > 2$

$$\int \sin^n x\, dx = -\frac{1}{n}\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{n-1}{n}\int \sin^{n-2} x\, dx.$$

(b) Then show that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x\, dx = \frac{n-1}{n}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-2} x\, dx.$$

(c) Verify the *Wallis sine formulas*:
for even $n \ge 2$,

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x\, dx = \frac{(n-1)\cdots 5\cdot 3\cdot 1}{n\cdots 6\cdot 4\cdot 2}\cdot\frac{\pi}{2};$$

for odd $n \ge 3$,

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x\, dx = \frac{(n-1)\cdots 4\cdot 2}{n\cdots 5\cdot 3}.$$

54. Use Exercise 53 to show that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x\, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x\, dx.$$

55. Evaluate by the Wallis formulas:

(a) $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^7 x\, dx.$ (b) $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^6 x\, dx.$

C **56.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the function $f(x) = x + \sin 2x$, $x \in [0, \pi]$. The region between the graph of f and the x-axis is revolved about the x-axis.
(a) Use a CAS to find the volume of the resulting solid.
(b) Calculate the volume exactly by carrying out the integration.

C **57.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the function $g(x) = \sin^2 x^2$, $x \in [0, \sqrt{\pi}]$. The region between the graph of g and the x-axis is revolved about the y-axis.
(a) Use a CAS to find the volume of the resulting solid.
(b) Calculate the volume exactly by carrying out the integration.

C **58.** Use a graphing utility to draw in one figure the graphs of both $f(x) = 1 + \cos x$ and $g(x) = \sin \tfrac{1}{2}x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 2\pi$.
(a) Use a CAS to find the points where the two curves intersect; then find the area between the two curves.
(b) The region between the two curves is revolved about the x-axis. Use a CAS to find the volume of the resulting solid.

■ 8.4 INTEGRALS FEATURING $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$, $\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$, $\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}$

Preliminary Remark By reversing the roles played by x and u in the statement of Theorem 5.7.1, we can conclude that

(8.4.1)

$$\text{if } F' = f, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \int f(x(u))x'(u)\,du = F(x(u)) + C$$

and

$$\int_{x(a)}^{x(b)} f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x(u))x'(u)\,du.$$

These are the substitution rules that we will follow in this section. ❑

Integrals that feature $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$, $\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$, or $\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}$ can often be calculated by a *trigonometric substitution*. Taking $a > 0$, we proceed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{for } \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} && \text{we set} && x = a \sin u; \\ &\text{for } \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} && \text{we set} && x = a \tan u; \\ &\text{for } \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} && \text{we set} && x = a \sec u. \end{aligned}$$

In making such substitutions, we must make clear exactly what values of u we are using. Failure to do this can lead to nonsensical results.

We begin with a familiar integral.

Example 1 You know that

$$\int_{-a}^{a} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\,dx$$

represents the area of the half-disk of radius a and is therefore $\frac{1}{2}\pi a^2$. (Figure 8.4.1) We confirm this by a trigonometric substitution.

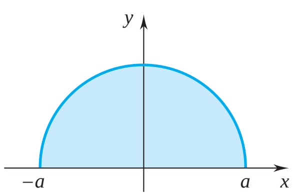


Figure 8.4.1

For x from $-a$ to a, we set

$$x = a \sin u, \qquad dx = a \cos u\,du,$$

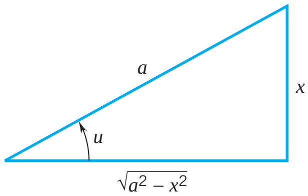
taking u from $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ to $\frac{1}{2}\pi$. For such u, $\cos u \geq 0$ and

$$\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} = \sqrt{a^2 - a^2 \sin^2 u} = a \cos u.$$

At $\quad u = -\frac{1}{2}\pi, x = -a; \quad$ at $\quad u = \frac{1}{2}\pi, x = a$. Therefore

$$\int_{-a}^{a} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\,dx = \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} a^2 \cos^2 u\,du = a^2 \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \left(\tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2u\right) du = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi a^2. \quad ❑$$

To a limited extent we can give a geometric view of a trigonometric substitution by drawing a suitable right triangle. Since the right triangle interpretation applies only to u between 0 and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$, we will not use it as the basis of our calculations.



Example 2 To calculate

$$\int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - x^2)^{3/2}}\, dx$$

we note that the integral can be written

$$\int \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}\right)^3 dx.$$

This integral features $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$. For each x between $-a$ and a, we set

$$x = a \sin u, \qquad dx = a \cos u\, du,$$

taking u between $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$. For such u, $\cos u > 0$ and

$$\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} = a \cos u.$$

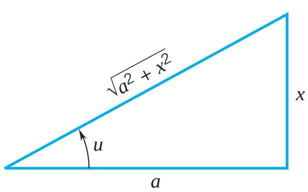
Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{dx}{(a^2 - x^2)^{3/2}} &= \int \frac{a \cos u}{(a \cos u)^3}\, du \\
&= \frac{1}{a^2} \int \frac{1}{\cos^2 u}\, du \\
&= \frac{1}{a^2} \int \sec^2 u\, du \\
&= \frac{1}{a^2} \tan u + C = \frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} + C.
\end{aligned}$$

$\tan u = \dfrac{\sin u}{\cos u}$

Check the result by differentiation. ❑

Before giving the next example, we point out that, at those numbers u where $\cos u \neq 0$, $\sec u$ and $\cos u$ have the same sign ($\sec u = 1/\cos u$).



Example 3 We calculate

$$\int \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}\, dx.$$

For each real number x, we set

$$x = a \tan u, \qquad dx = a \sec^2 u\, du,$$

taking u between $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$. For such u, $\sec u > 0$ and

$$\sqrt{a^2 + x^2} = a \sec u.$$

Check this out.

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}\, dx &= \int (a \sec u)\, a \sec^2 u\, du \\
&= a^2 \int \sec^3 u\, du
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2}(\sec u \tan u + \ln|\sec u + \tan u|) + C$$

Example 7, Section 8.3

$$= \frac{a^2}{2}\left[\frac{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}{a}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + \ln\left|\frac{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}{a} + \frac{x}{a}\right|\right] + C$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}x\sqrt{a^2+x^2} + \tfrac{1}{2}a^2 \ln|x + \sqrt{a^2+x^2}| - \tfrac{1}{2}a^2 \ln a + C.$$

Noting that $x + \sqrt{a^2+x^2} > 0$ and, absorbing the constant $-\frac{1}{2}a^2 \ln a$ in C, we can write

(8.4.2)
$$\boxed{\int \sqrt{a^2+x^2}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}x\sqrt{a^2+x^2} + \tfrac{1}{2}a^2 \ln\left(x + \sqrt{a^2+x^2}\right) + C.}$$

This is a standard integration formula. (Formula 78) ❑

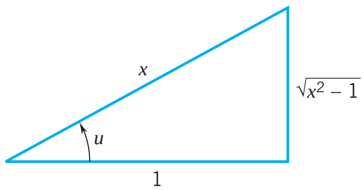
Example 4 We calculate

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}.$$

The domain of the integrand consists of two separated sets: all $x > 1$ and all $x < -1$.

Both for $x > 1$ and $x < -1$, we set

$$x = \sec u, \qquad dx = \sec u \tan u\, du.$$



For $x > 1$ we take u between 0 and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$; for $x < -1$ we take u between π and $\frac{3}{2}\pi$. For such u, $\tan u > 0$ and

$$\sqrt{x^2-1} = \tan u.$$

Therefore,

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-1}} = \int \frac{\sec u \tan u}{\tan u}\,du = \int \sec u\,du$$
$$= \ln|\sec u + \tan u| + C$$
$$= \ln|x + \sqrt{x^2-1}| + C.$$

Check the result by differentiation. ❑

Example 5 We calculate

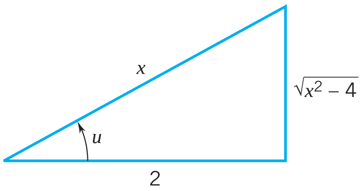
$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2-4}}.$$

For $x > 2$ and $x < -2$, we set

$$x = 2\sec u, \qquad dx = 2\sec u \tan u\, du.$$

For $x > 2$ we take u between 0 and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$; for $x < -2$ we take u between π and $\frac{3}{2}\pi$. For such u, $\tan u > 0$ and

$$\sqrt{x^2-4} = 2\tan u.$$



With this substitution

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2-4}} = \int \frac{2\sec u \tan u}{4\sec^2 u \cdot 2\tan u}\, du$$
$$= \frac{1}{4}\int \frac{1}{\sec u}\, du$$
$$= \frac{1}{4}\int \cos u \, du$$
$$= \frac{1}{4}\sin u + C = \frac{\sqrt{x^2-4}}{4x} + C.$$

Check the result by differentiation. ❑

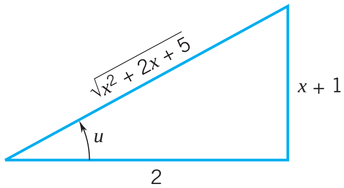
Remark Before rushing into a trigonometric substitution, look at the integral carefully to see whether there is a simpler way to proceed. For instance, you can calculate

$$\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\, dx$$

by setting $x = a\sin u$, and so on, but you can also carry out the integration by setting $u = a^2 - x^2$. Try both substitutions and decide which is the more effective. ❑

Example 6 Calculate

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}}.$$



By completing the square under the radical, we can write the integral as

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x+1)^2+4}}.$$

For each real number x, we set

$$x + 1 = 2\tan u, \qquad dx = 2\sec^2 u \, du,$$

taking u between $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$. For such u, $\sec u > 0$ and

$$\sqrt{(x+1)^2+4} = \sqrt{4\tan^2 u + 4} = 2\sqrt{\tan^2 u + 1} = 2\sec u.$$

Therefore

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} = \int \frac{2\sec^2 u}{2\sec u}\, du$$
$$= \int \sec u \, du = \ln|\sec u + \tan u| + C$$
$$= \ln|\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{x^2+2x+5} + \tfrac{1}{2}(x+1)| + C$$
$$= \ln\tfrac{1}{2} + \ln|\sqrt{x^2+2x+5} + x + 1| + C.$$

Absorbing the constant $\ln\frac{1}{2}$ in C and noting that the expression within the absolute value signs is positive, we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} = \ln\left(\sqrt{x^2+2x+5} + x + 1\right) + C.$$

Check the result by differentiation. ❑

Trigonometric substitutions can be effective in cases where the quadratic is not under a radical sign. In particular, the reduction formula

(8.4.3)
$$\boxed{\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^n}\,dx = \frac{1}{a^{2n-1}}\int \cos^{2(n-1)} u\,du}$$

(a very useful little formula) can be obtained by setting $x = a\tan u$, taking u between $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and $\frac{1}{2}\pi$. The derivation of this formula is left to you as an exercise.

EXERCISES 8.4

Exercises 1–34. Calculate.

1. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$.

2. $\displaystyle\int_{5/2}^{4} \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2-4}}\,dx$.

3. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{x^2-1}\,dx$.

4. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx$.

5. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx$.

6. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^2-4}}\,dx$.

7. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{(1-x^2)^{3/2}}\,dx$.

8. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{4+x^2}}\,dx$.

9. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1/2} \frac{x^2}{(1-x^2)^{3/2}}\,dx$.

10. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{a^2+x^2}\,dx$.

11. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{4-x^2}\,dx$.

12. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{16-x^2}}\,dx$.

13. $\displaystyle\int_0^5 x^2\sqrt{25-x^2}\,dx$.

14. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x^4}\,dx$.

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{(x^2+8)^{3/2}}\,dx$.

16. $\displaystyle\int_0^a \sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx$.

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$.

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2-1}}{x}\,dx$.

19. $\displaystyle\int_0^3 \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{9+x^2}}\,dx$.

20. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$.

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}$.

22. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+2)^{3/2}}$.

23. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{(5-x^2)^{3/2}}$.

24. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{e^x\sqrt{4+e^{2x}}}$.

25. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}$.

26. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^x}{\sqrt{9-e^{2x}}}\,dx$.

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{e^x\sqrt{e^{2x}-9}}$.

28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-2x-3}}$.

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x^2-4x+4)^{3/2}}$.

30. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{6x-x^2}}\,dx$.

31. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{6x-x^2-8}\,dx$.

32. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x+2}{\sqrt{x^2+4x+13}}\,dx$.

33. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{(x^2+2x+5)^2}\,dx$.

34. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2-2x+3}}\,dx$.

35. Use integration by parts to derive the formula

$$\int \operatorname{arcsec} x\,dx = x\operatorname{arcsec} x - \ln\left|x+\sqrt{x^2-1}\right| + C.$$

36. Calculate $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x}\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx$

(a) by setting $u = \sqrt{a^2-x^2}$.
(b) by a trigonometric substitution.
(c) Then reconcile the results.

37. Verify (8.4.3).

Exercises 38–39. Use (8.4.3) to calculate the integral.

38. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{(x^2+1)^2}\,dx$.

39. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{(x^2+1)^3}\,dx$.

Exercises 40–41. Calculate the integral: (a) by integrating by parts, (b) by applying a trigonometric substitution.

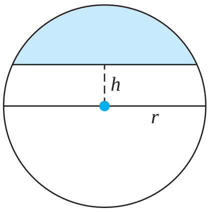
40. $\displaystyle\int x\arctan x\,dx$.

41. $\displaystyle\int x\arcsin x\,dx$.

42. Find the area under the curve $y = (\sqrt{x^2-9})/x$ from $x = 3$ to $x = 5$.

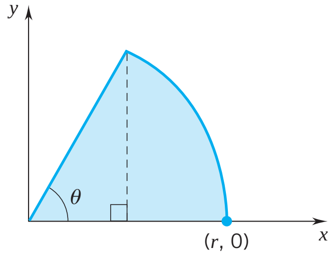
43. The region under the curve $y = 1/(1+x^2)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the resulting solid.

44. The shaded part in the figure is called a *circular segment*. Calculate the area of the segment:



45. Show that in a disk of radius r a sector with central angle of radian measure θ has area $A = \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$. HINT: Assume first

that $0 < \theta < \frac{1}{2}\pi$ and subdivide the region as indicated in the figure. Then verify that the formula holds for any sector.



46. Find the area of the region bounded on the left and right by the two branches of the hyperbola $(x^2/a^2) - (y^2/b^2) = 1$, and above and below by the lines $y = \pm b$.

47. Find the area between the right branch of the hyperbola $(x^2/9) - (y^2/16) = 1$ and the line $x = 5$.

48. If the circle $(x - b)^2 + y^2 = a^2, b > a > 0$, is revolved about the y-axis, the resulting "doughnut-shaped" solid is called a *torus*. Use the shell method to find the formula for the volume of the torus.

49. Calculate the mass and the center of mass of a rod that extends from $x = 0$ to $x = a > 0$ and has mass density $\lambda(x) = (x^2 + a^2)^{-1/2}$.

50. Calculate the mass and center of mass of the rod of Exercise 49 given that the rod has mass density $\lambda(x) = (x^2 + a^2)^{-3/2}$.

For Exercises 51–53, let Ω be the region under the curve $y = \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}$ from $x = a$ to $x = \sqrt{2}\,a$.

51. Sketch Ω, find the area of Ω, and locate the centroid.

52. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the x-axis and determine the centroid of that solid.

53. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis and determine the centroid of that solid.

54. Use a trigonometric substitution to derive the formula

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}\,dx = \ln\left(x + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}\right) + C.$$

55. Use a trigonometric substitution to derive the formula

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}\,dx = \ln\left|x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}\right| + C.$$

C **56.** Set $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$. Use a CAS

(a) to draw the graph of f;
(b) to find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = \frac{1}{2}$;
(c) to find the volume of the solid generated by revolving about the y-axis the region described in part (b).

C **57.** Set $f(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 - 9}}{x^2}$, $x \geq 3$. Use a CAS

(a) to draw the graph of f;
(b) to find the area between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = 3$ to $x = 6$;
(c) to locate the centroid of the region described in part (b).

8.5 RATIONAL FUNCTIONS; PARTIAL FRACTIONS

In this section we present a method for integrating rational functions. Recall that a rational function is, by definition, the quotient of two polynomials. For example,

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 - 4}, \qquad g(x) = \frac{2x^2 + 3}{x(x - 1)^2}, \qquad h(x) = \frac{3x^4 - 20x^2 + 17}{x^3 + 2x^2 - 7}$$

are rational functions, but

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}, \qquad g(x) = \frac{x^2 + 1}{\ln x}, \qquad h(x) = \frac{\sin x}{x}$$

are not rational functions.

A rational function $R(x) = P(x)/Q(x)$ is said to be *proper* if the degree of the numerator is less than the degree of the denominator. If the degree of the numerator is greater than or equal to the degree of the denominator, then the rational function is called *improper*.† We will focus our attention on *proper rational functions* because any improper rational function can be written as a sum of a polynomial and a proper rational function:

$$\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} = p(x) + \frac{r(x)}{Q(x)}.^{\dagger\dagger}$$

†These terms are taken from the familiar terms used to describe rational numbers p/q.

††This is analogous to writing an improper fraction as a so-called *mixed number*.

This is accomplished simply by dividing the denominator into the numerator.

As is shown in algebra, every proper rational function can be written as the sum of *partial fractions*, fractions of the form

(8.5.1)
$$\boxed{\frac{A}{(x-\alpha)^k} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{Bx+C}{(x^2+\beta x+\gamma)^k}}$$

with $x^2 + \beta x + \gamma$ irreducible.† Such a sum is called a *partial fraction decomposition*.

We begin by calculating some partial fraction decompositions. Later we will use these decompostions to calculate integrals.

Example 1 (*The denominator splits into distinct linear factors*.) For

$$\frac{2x}{x^2-x-2} = \frac{2x}{(x-2)(x+1)}$$

we write

$$\frac{2x}{x^2-x-2} = \frac{A}{x-2} + \frac{B}{x+1},$$

with the constants A and B to be determined.

Multiplication by $(x-2)(x+1)$ yields the equation

(1) $$2x = A(x+1) + B(x-2)$$

We illustrate two methods for finding A and B.

METHOD 1 We substitute numbers for x in (1):

$$\text{Setting } x = 2, \text{ we get } 4 = 3A, \text{ which gives } A = \tfrac{4}{3},$$

$$\text{Setting } x = -1, \text{ we get } -2 = -3B, \text{ which gives } B = \tfrac{2}{3}.$$

The desired decomposition reads

$$\frac{2x}{x^2-x-2} = \frac{4}{3(x-2)} + \frac{2}{3(x+1)}.$$

You can verify this by carrying out the addition on the right.

METHOD 2 (This method is based on the observation that two polynomials are equal iff their coefficients are equal.)

We rewrite (1) as

$$2x = (A+B)x + (A-2B).$$

Equating coefficients, we have

$$A + B = 2$$
$$A - 2B = 0.$$

We can find A and B by solving these equations simultaneously. The solutions are again: $A = \frac{4}{3}$, $B = \frac{2}{3}$. ❑

† Not factorable into linear expressions with real coefficients. This is the case if $\beta^2 - 4\gamma < 0$.

> In general, each distinct linear factor $x - \alpha$ in the denominator gives rise to a term of the form
> $$\frac{A}{x-\alpha}.$$

Example 2 (*The denominator has a repeated linear factor.*) For

$$\frac{2x^2+3}{x(x-1)^2},$$

we write

$$\frac{2x^2+3}{x(x-1)^2} = \frac{A}{x} + \frac{B}{x-1} + \frac{C}{(x-1)^2}.$$

This leads to

$$2x^2+3 = A(x-1)^2 + Bx(x-1) + Cx.$$

To determine A, B, C, we substitute three values for x. (Method 1.) We select 0 and 1 because for these values of x several terms on the right will drop out. As a third value of x, any other number will do; we select 2 just to keep the arithmetic simple.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Setting } x = 0, \text{ we get } 3 = A.\\
&\text{Setting } x = 1, \text{ we get } 5 = C.\\
&\text{Setting } x = 2, \text{ we get } 11 = A + 2B + 2C,\\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{which, with } A = 3 \text{ and } C = 5, \text{ gives } B = -1.
\end{aligned}$$

This gives us

$$\frac{2x^2+3}{x(x-1)^2} = \frac{3}{x} - \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{5}{(x-1)^2}. \quad ❑$$

> In general, each factor of the form $(x-a)^k$ in the denominator gives rise to an expression of the form
> $$\frac{A_1}{x-\alpha} + \frac{A_2}{(x-\alpha)^2} + \cdots + \frac{A_k}{(x-\alpha)^k}.$$

Example 3 (*The denominator has an irreducible quadratic factor.*) For

$$\frac{x^2+5x+2}{(x+1)(x^2+1)},$$

we write

$$\frac{x^2+5x+2}{(x+1)(x^2+1)} = \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{Bx+C}{x^2+1}$$

and obtain

$$x^2+5x+2 = A(x^2+1) + (Bx+C)(x+1) = (A+B)x^2 + (B+C)x + A + C.$$

Equating coefficients (Method 2), we have

$$A + B = 1$$
$$B + C = 5$$
$$A + C = 2.$$

This system of equations is satisfied by $A = -1$, $B = 2$, $C = 3$. (Check this out.) The decomposition reads

$$\frac{x^2 + 5x + 2}{(x+1)(x^2+1)} = \frac{-1}{x+1} + \frac{2x+3}{x^2+1}.$$

(We could have obtained this result by using Method 1; for example, by setting $x = -1$, $x = 0$, $x = 1$.) ❑

In the examples that follow, we'll use Method 1.

Example 4 (*The denominator has an irreducible quadratic factor.*) For

$$\frac{1}{x(x^2+x+1)},$$

we write

$$\frac{1}{x(x^2+x+1)} = \frac{A}{x} + \frac{Bx + C}{x^2+x+1}$$

and obtain

$$1 = A(x^2 + x + 1) + (Bx + C)x.$$

Again, we select values of x that produce simple arithmetic.

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= A & &(x = 0)\\ 1 &= 3A + B + C & &(x = 1)\\ 1 &= A + B - C & &(x = -1). \end{aligned}$$

From this we find that

$$A = 1, \qquad B = -1, \qquad C = -1,$$

and therefore

$$\frac{1}{x(x^2+x+1)} = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}.$$ ❑

In general, each irreducible quadratic factor $x^2 + \beta x + \gamma$ in the denominator gives rise to a term of the form

$$\frac{Ax + B}{x^2 + \beta x + \gamma}.$$

Example 5 (*The denominator has a repeated irreducible quadratic factor*.) For

$$\frac{3x^4 + x^3 + 20x^2 + 3x + 31}{(x+1)(x^2+4)^2},$$

we write

$$\frac{3x^4 + x^3 + 20x^2 + 3x + 31}{(x+1)(x^2+4)^2} = \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{Bx + C}{x^2+4} + \frac{Dx+E}{(x^2+4)^2}.$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} 3x^4 + x^3 + 20x^2 + 3x + 31 = {} & A(x^2+4)^2 + (Bx + C)(x+1)(x^2+4) \\ & + (Dx + E)(x+1). \end{aligned}$$

This time we use $x = -1, 0, 1, 2, -2$:

$$\begin{aligned} 50 &= 25A & &(x = -1) \\ 31 &= 16A \qquad\quad + \ 4C \qquad + \ E & &(x = 0) \\ 58 &= 25A + 10B + 10C + 2D + 2E & &(x = 1) \\ 173 &= 64A + 48B + 24C + 6D + 3E & &(x = 2) \\ 145 &= 64A + 16B - \ 8C + 2D - \ E & &(x = -2). \end{aligned}$$

With a little patience, you can determine that

$$A = 2, \qquad B = 1, \qquad C = 0, \qquad D = 0, \qquad E = -1.$$

This gives the decomposition

$$\frac{3x^4 + x^3 + 20x^2 + 3x + 31}{(x+1)(x^2+4)^2} = \frac{2}{x+1} + \frac{x}{x^2+4} - \frac{1}{(x^2+4)^2}. \quad ❑$$

In general, each multiple irreducible quadratic factor $(x^2 + \beta x + \gamma)^k$ in the denominator gives rise to an expression of the form

$$\frac{A_1 x + B_1}{x^2 + \beta x + \gamma} + \frac{A_2 x + B_2}{(x^2 + \beta x + \gamma)^2} + \cdots + \frac{A_k x + B_k}{(x^2 + \beta x + \gamma)^k}.$$

As indicated at the beginning of this section, if the rational function is improper, then a polynomial will appear in the decomposition.

Example 6 (*An improper rational function.*) The quotient

$$\frac{x^5 + 2}{x^2 - 1}$$

is improper. Dividing the denominator into the numerator, we find that

$$\frac{x^5+2}{x^2-1} = x^3 + x + \frac{x+2}{x^2-1}. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

The decomposition of the remaining fraction reads

$$\frac{x+2}{x^2-1} = \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{B}{x-1}.$$

As you can verify, $A = -\frac{1}{2}$, $B = \frac{3}{2}$. Therefore

$$\frac{x^5+2}{x^2-1} = x^3 + x - \frac{1}{2(x+1)} + \frac{3}{2(x-1)}. \quad ❑$$

We have been decomposing quotients into partial fractions in order to integrate them. Here we carry out the integrations, leaving some of the details to you.

Example 1′

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{2x}{x^2-x-2}\,dx &= \int \left[\frac{4}{3(x-2)} + \frac{2}{3(x+1)}\right] dx\\ &= \tfrac{4}{3}\ln|x-2| + \tfrac{2}{3}\ln|x+1| + C\\ &= \tfrac{1}{3}\ln[(x-2)^4(x+1)^2] + C. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 2′

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{2x^2+3}{x(x-1)^2}\,dx &= \int \left[\frac{3}{x} - \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{5}{(x-1)^2}\right] dx\\ &= 3\ln|x| - \ln|x-1| - \frac{5}{x-1} + C\\ &= \ln\left|\frac{x^3}{x-1}\right| - \frac{5}{x-1} + C \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 3′

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{x^2+5x+2}{(x+1)(x^2+1)}\,dx &= \int \left(\frac{-1}{x+1} + \frac{2x+3}{x^2+1}\right) dx\\ &= -\int \frac{1}{x+1}\,dx + \int \frac{2x+3}{x^2+1}\,dx.\end{aligned}$$

Since

$$-\int \frac{1}{x+1}\,dx = -\ln|x+1| + C_1$$

and

$$\int \frac{2x+3}{x^2+1}\,dx = \int \frac{2x}{x^2+1}\,dx + 3\int \frac{1}{x^2+1}\,dx = \ln(x^2+1) + 3\arctan x + C_2,$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{x^2+5x+2}{(x+1)(x^2+1)}\,dx &= -\ln|x+1| + \ln(x^2+1) + 3\arctan x + C\\ &= \ln\left|\frac{x^2+1}{x-1}\right| + 3\arctan x + C. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 4′

$$I = \int \frac{dx}{x(x^2+x+1)} = \int \left(\frac{1}{x} - \frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}\right) dx = \ln|x| - \int \frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}\,dx.$$

To calculate the remaining integral, note that $(d/dx)(x^2+x+1) = 2x+1$. We can manipulate the integrand to get a term of the form du/u with $u = x^2+x+1$:

$$\frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}[2x+1]+\frac{1}{2}}{x^2+x+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{2x+1}{x^2+x+1} + \frac{1}{x^2+x+1}\right).$$

This gives us

$$\int \frac{x+1}{x^2+x+1}dx = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{2x+1}{x^2+x+1}dx + \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{1}{x^2+x+1}dx.$$

The first integral is a logarithm:

$$\frac{1}{2}\int \frac{2x+1}{x^2+x+1}dx = \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+x+1) + C_1. \qquad (x^2+x+1>0 \text{ for all } x)$$

The second integral is an arc tangent:

$$\frac{1}{2}\int \frac{1}{x^2+x+1}dx = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dx}{(x+\frac{1}{2})^2+(\sqrt{3}/2)^2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\arctan\left[\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)\right] + C_2.$$

Combining the results, we have the integral we want:

$$I = \ln|x| - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+x+1) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\arctan\left[\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)\right] + C. \quad ❏$$

Example 5′

$$\int \frac{3x^4+x^3+20x^2+3x+31}{(x+1)(x^2+4)^2}dx = \int\left[\frac{2}{x+1}+\frac{x}{x^2+4}-\frac{1}{(x^2+4)^2}\right]dx.$$

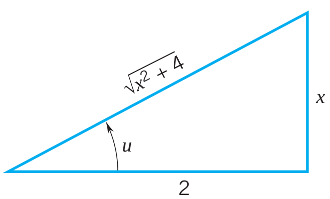
The first two fractions are easy to integrate:

$$\int \frac{2}{x+1}dx = 2\ln|x+1| + C_1,$$

$$\int \frac{x}{x^2+4}dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\int \frac{2x}{x^2+4}dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+4) + C_2.$$

The integral of the last fraction is of the form

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+a^2)^n}.$$



As you saw in the preceding section, such integrals can be calculated by setting $x = a\tan u$, $u \in (-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$. [(8.4.3).] In this case

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+4)^2} = \frac{1}{8}\int \cos^2 u\,du$$

$x = 2\tan u$

$$= \frac{1}{16}\int (1+\cos 2u)\,du$$

half-angle formula

$$= \frac{1}{16}u + \frac{1}{32}\sin 2u + C_3$$

$$= \frac{1}{16}u + \frac{1}{16}\sin u\cos u + C_3$$

$\sin 2u = 2\sin u\cos u$

$$= \frac{1}{16}\arctan\frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{16}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+4}}\right)\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{x^2+4}}\right) + C_3$$

$$= \frac{1}{16}\arctan\frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{x}{x^2+4}\right) + C_3.$$

The integral we want is equal to

$$2\ln|x+1| + \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+4) - \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{x}{x^2+4}\right) - \frac{1}{16}\arctan\frac{x}{2} + C. \quad \square$$

Example 6′

$$\int \frac{x^5+2}{x^2-1}dx = \int \left[x^3 + x - \frac{1}{2(x+1)} + \frac{3}{2(x-1)}\right]dx$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}\ln|x+1| + \tfrac{3}{2}\ln|x-1| + C. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 8.5

Exercises 1–8. Decompose into partial fractions.

1. $\dfrac{1}{x^2+7x+6}$.

2. $\dfrac{x^2}{(x-1)(x^2+4x+5)}$.

3. $\dfrac{x}{x^4-1}$.

4. $\dfrac{x^4}{(x-1)^3}$.

5. $\dfrac{x^2-3x-1}{x^3+x^2-2x}$.

6. $\dfrac{x^3+x^2+x+2}{x^4+3x^2+2}$.

7. $\dfrac{2x^2+1}{x^3-6x^2+11x-6}$.

8. $\dfrac{1}{x(x^2+1)^2}$.

Exercises 9–30. Calculate.

9. $\displaystyle\int \frac{7}{(x-2)(x+5)}\,dx$.

10. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{(x+1)(x+2)(x+3)}\,dx$.

11. $\displaystyle\int \frac{2x^4-4x^3+4x^2+3}{x^3-x^2}\,dx$.

12. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2+1}{x(x^2-1)}\,dx$.

13. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^5}{(x-2)^2}\,dx$.

14. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^5}{x-2}\,dx$.

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x+3}{x^2-3x+2}\,dx$.

16. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2+3}{x^2-3x+2}\,dx$.

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x-1)^3}$.

18. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2+2x+2}$.

19. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{(x-1)^2(x+1)}\,dx$.

20. $\displaystyle\int \frac{2x-1}{(x+1)^2(x-2)^2}\,dx$.

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^4-16}$.

22. $\displaystyle\int \frac{3x^5-3x^2+x}{x^3-1}\,dx$.

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3+4x^2-4x-1}{(x^2+1)^2}\,dx$.

24. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{(x^2+16)^2}$.

25. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^4+4}$.†

26. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^4+16}$.†

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x-3}{x^3+x^2}\,dx$.

28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{(x-1)(x^2+1)^2}\,dx$.

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x+1}{x^3+x^2-6x}\,dx$.

30. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3+x^2+x+3}{(x^2+1)(x^2+3)}\,dx$.

Exercises 31–34. Evaluate.

31. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \frac{x}{x^2+5x+6}\,dx$.

32. $\displaystyle\int_1^3 \frac{1}{x^3+x}\,dx$.

33. $\displaystyle\int_1^3 \frac{x^2-4x+3}{x^3+2x^2+x}\,dx$.

34. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \frac{x^3}{(x^2+2)^2}\,dx$.

Exercises 35–38. Calculate.

35. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin^2\theta-2\sin\theta-8}\,d\theta$.

36. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^t}{e^{2t}+5e^t+6}\,dt$.

37. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{t([\ln t]^2-4)}\,dt$.

38. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sec^2\theta}{\tan^3\theta-\tan^2\theta}\,d\theta$.

Exercises 39–45. Derive the formula.

39. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u}{a+bu}\,du = \frac{1}{b^2}(a+bu-a\ln|a+bu|)+C$.

40. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u(a+bu)} = \frac{1}{a}\ln\left|\frac{u}{a+bu}\right|+C$.

41. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u^2(a+bu)} = -\frac{1}{au}+\frac{b}{a^2}\ln\left|\frac{a+bu}{u}\right|+C$.

42. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u(a+bu)^2} = \frac{1}{a(a+bu)}+\frac{1}{a^2}\ln\left|\frac{a+bu}{u}\right|+C$.

43. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{a^2-u^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\ln\left|\frac{a+u}{a-u}\right|+C$.

44. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u\,du}{a^2-u^2} = -\tfrac{1}{2}\ln|a^2-u^2|+C$.

45. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2du}{a^2-u^2} = -u+\frac{a}{2}\ln\left|\frac{a+u}{a-u}\right|+C$.

Exercises 46–47. Calculate

$$\int \frac{du}{(a+bu)(c+du)}$$

with the coefficients as stipulated.

46. a, b, c, d all different from 0, $\quad ad = bc$.

47. a, b, c, d all different from 0, $\quad ad \neq bc$.

---

†HINT: With $a > 0$, $x^4 + a^2 = (x^2 + \sqrt{2a}x + a)(x^2 - \sqrt{2a}x + a)$.

48. Show that for $y = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 1}$,

$$\frac{d^n y}{dx^n} = \frac{(-1)^n n!}{2}\left[\frac{1}{(x-1)^{n+1}} - \frac{1}{(x+1)^{n+1}}\right].$$

49. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region between the curve $y = 1/\sqrt{4 - x^2}$ and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 3/2$: (a) about the x-axis; (b) about the y-axis.

50. Calculate

$$\int x^3 \arctan x \, dx.$$

51. Find the centroid of the region under the curve $y = (x^2 + 1)^{-1}$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$.

52. Find the centroid of the solid generated by revolving the region of Exercise 51 about: (a) the x-axis; (b) the y-axis.

53. Use a CAS to decompose into partial fractions.

(a) $\dfrac{6x^4 + 11x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x - 2}{x^2(x+1)^3}$.

(b) $-\dfrac{x^3 + 20x^2 + 4x + 93}{(x^2+4)(x^2-9)}$.

(c) $\dfrac{x^2 + 7x + 12}{x(x^2 + 2x + 4)}$.

Exercises 54–55. Use a CAS to decompose the integrand into partial fractions. Use the decomposition to evaluate the integral.

54. $\displaystyle\int \frac{2x^6 - 13x^5 + 23x^4 - 15x^3 + 40x^2 - 24x + 9}{x^5 - 6x^4 + 9x^2}\, dx.$

55. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^8 + 2x^7 + 7x^6 + 23x^5 + 10x^4 + 95x^3 - 19x^2 + 133x - 52}{x^6 + 2x^5 + 5x^4 - 16x^3 + 8x^2 + 32x - 48}\, dx.$

56. Use a CAS to calculate the integrals

$$\int \frac{1}{x^2 + 2x + n}\, dx, \; n = 0, 1, 2.$$

Verify your results by differentiation.

57. Set

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{x^2 + 5x + 6}.$$

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f.
(b) Calculate the area of the region that lies between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = 0$ to $x = 4$.

58. (a) The region of Exercise 57 is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the solid generated.
(b) Find the centroid of the solid described in part (a).

59. Set

$$f(x) = \frac{9 - x}{(x+3)^2}.$$

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f.
(b) Find the area of the region that lies between the graph of f and the x-axis from $x = -2$ to $x = 9$.

60. (a) The region of Exercise 59 is revolved about the x-axis. Find the volume of the solid generated.
(b) Find the centroid of the solid described in part (a).

■ *8.6 SOME RATIONALIZING SUBSTITUTIONS

There are integrands which are not rational functions but can be transformed into rational functions by a suitable substitution. Such substitutions are known as *rationalizing substitutions.*

First we consider integrals in which the integrand contains an expression of the form $\sqrt[n]{f(x)}$. In such cases, setting $u = \sqrt[n]{f(x)}$, which is equivalent to setting $u^n = f(x)$, is sometimes effective. The idea is to replace fractional exponents by integer exponents; integer exponents are usually easier to work with.

Example 1 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{1 + \sqrt{x}}$.

SOLUTION To rationalize the integrand, we set

$$u^2 = x, \qquad 2u\, du = dx,$$

taking $u \geq 0$. Then $u = \sqrt{x}$ and

$$\int \frac{dx}{1+\sqrt{x}} = \int \frac{2u}{1+u}du \underset{\text{divide}}{=} \int \left(2 - \frac{2}{1+u}\right) du$$

$$\underset{1+u>0}{=} 2u - 2\ln(1+u) + C$$

$$= 2\sqrt{x} - 2\ln(1+\sqrt{x}) + C. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt[3]{x}+\sqrt{x}}$.

SOLUTION Here the integrand contains two distinct roots, $\sqrt[3]{x}$ and $\sqrt{x}$. We can eliminate both radicals by setting

$$u^6 = x, \qquad 6u^5 du = dx,$$

taking $u > 0$. This substitution gives $\sqrt[3]{x} = u^2$ and $\sqrt{x} = u^3$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt[3]{x}+\sqrt{x}} &= \int \frac{6u^5}{u^2+u^3}\,du = 6\int \frac{u^3}{1+u}\,du \\
\text{divide} \longrightarrow\quad &= 6\int \left(u^2 - u + 1 - \frac{1}{1+u}\right) du \\
1+u>0 \longrightarrow\quad &= 6\left[\tfrac{1}{3}u^3 - \tfrac{1}{2}u^2 + u - \ln(1+u) + C\right] \\
&= 2\sqrt{x} - 3\sqrt[3]{x} + 6\sqrt[6]{x} - 6\ln(1+\sqrt[6]{x}) + C. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

Example 3 Find $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{1-e^x}\,dx$.

SOLUTION To rationalize the integrand, we set

$$u = \sqrt{1-e^x}.$$

Then $0 \le u < 1$. To express dx in terms of u and du, we solve the equation for x:

$$u^2 = 1-e^x, \qquad 1-u^2 = e^x, \qquad \ln(1-u^2) = x, \qquad -\frac{2u}{1-u^2}\,du = dx.$$

The rest is straightforward:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sqrt{1-e^x}\,dx &= \int u\left(-\frac{2u}{1-u^2}\right) du \\
&= \int \frac{2u^2}{u^2-1}\,du = \int \left(2 + \frac{1}{u-1} - \frac{1}{u+1}\right) du \quad \longleftarrow \text{divide; then use partial fractions} \\
&= 2u + \ln|u-1| - \ln|u+1| + C \\
&= 2u + \ln\left|\frac{u-1}{u+1}\right| + C \\
&= 2\sqrt{1-e^x} + \ln\left|\frac{\sqrt{1-e^x}-1}{\sqrt{1-e^x}+1}\right| + C. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

Now we consider rational expressions in $\sin x$ and $\cos x$. Suppose, for example, that we want to calculate

$$\int \frac{1}{3\sin x - 4\cos x}\,dx.$$

We can convert the integrand into a rational function of u by setting

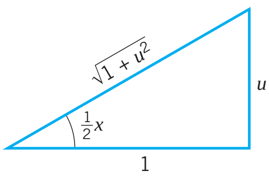
$$u \tan \tfrac{1}{2}x \qquad \text{taking } x \text{ between } -\pi \text{ and } \pi.$$

This gives

$$\cos\tfrac{1}{2}x = \frac{1}{\sec\frac{1}{2}x} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\tan^2\frac{1}{2}x}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+u^2}}$$

and

$$\sin\tfrac{1}{2}x = \cos\tfrac{1}{2}x\ \tan\tfrac{1}{2}x = \frac{u}{\sqrt{1+u^2}}.$$



The right triangle illustrates these relations for $x \in (0, \pi)$.

Note that

$$\sin x = 2\sin\tfrac{1}{2}x\cos\tfrac{1}{2}x = \frac{2u}{1+u^2}$$

and

$$\cos x = \cos^2\tfrac{1}{2}x - \sin^2\tfrac{1}{2}x = \frac{1-u^2}{1+u^2}.$$

Since $u = \tan\frac{1}{2}x$ with $\frac{1}{2}x \in (-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$, $\frac{1}{2}x = \arctan u$ and $x = 2\arctan u$. Therefore

$$dx = \frac{2}{1+u^2}\,du.$$

In summary, if the integrand is a rational expression in $\sin x$ and $\cos x$, then the substitution $u = \tan\frac{1}{2}x$, $x \in (-\pi, \pi)$, gives

$$\sin x = \frac{2u}{1+u^2}, \qquad \cos x = \frac{1-u^2}{1+u^2}, \qquad dx = \frac{2}{1+u^2}\,du$$

and converts the integrand into a rational function of u. The resulting integral can then be calculated by the methods of Section 8.5.

Example 4 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{3\sin x - 4\cos x}\,dx.$

SOLUTION Set $u = \tan\frac{1}{2}x$ with $x \in (-\pi, \pi)$. Then

$$\frac{1}{3\sin\ x - 4\cos x} = \frac{1}{[6u/(1+u^2)] - [4(1-u^2)/(1+u^2)]} = \frac{1+u^2}{4u^2+6u-4}$$

and

$$\int \frac{1}{3\sin\ x - 4\cos x}\,dx = \int \frac{1+u^2}{4u^2+6u-4}\cdot\frac{2}{1+u^2}\,du = \int \frac{1}{2u^2+3u-2}\,du.$$

Since

$$\frac{1}{2u^2+3u-2} = \frac{1}{(u+2)(2u-1)} = \frac{-1/5}{u+2} + \frac{2/5}{2u-1}, \qquad \text{(partial fractions)}$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{1}{2u^2+3u-2}\,du &= -\frac{1}{5}\int\frac{1}{u+2}\,du + \frac{2}{5}\int\frac{1}{2u-1}\,du \\ &= -\tfrac{1}{5}\ln|u+2| + \tfrac{1}{5}\ln|2u-1| + C \\ &= -\tfrac{1}{5}\ln|\tan\tfrac{1}{2}x + 2| + \tfrac{1}{5}\ln|2\tan\tfrac{1}{2}x - 1| + C. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

EXERCISES *8.6

Exercises 1–30. Calculate.

1. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{1-\sqrt{x}}.$ **2.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{1+x}\,dx.$

3. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{1+e^x}\,dx.$ **4.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x(x^{1/3}-1)}.$

5. $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{1+x}\,dx.$ **6.** $\displaystyle\int x^2\sqrt{1+x}\,dx.$

7. $\displaystyle\int (x+2)\sqrt{x-1}\,dx.$ **8.** $\displaystyle\int (x-1)\sqrt{x+2}\,dx.$

9. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3}{(1+x^2)^3}\,dx.$ **10.** $\displaystyle\int x(1+x)^{1/3}\,dx.$

11. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}-1}\,dx.$ **12.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{x+1}}\,dx.$

13. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{x-1}+1}{\sqrt{x-1}-1}\,dx.$ **14.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1-e^x}{1+e^x}\,dx.$

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+e^x}}.$ **16.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{1+e^{-x}}.$

17. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{x+4}}\,dx.$ **18.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{x+1}{x\sqrt{x-2}}\,dx.$

19. $\displaystyle\int 2x^2(4x+1)^{-5/2}\,dx.$ **20.** $\displaystyle\int x^2\sqrt{x-1}\,dx.$

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{(ax+b)^{3/2}}\,dx.$ **22.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{ax+b}}\,dx.$

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{1+\cos x-\sin x}\,dx.$ **24.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{2+\cos x}\,dx.$

25. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{2+\sin x}\,dx.$ **26.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin x}{1+\sin^2 x}\,dx.$

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sin x+\tan x}\,dx.$ **28.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{1+\sin x+\cos x}\,dx.$

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1-\cos x}{1+\sin x}\,dx.$ **30.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{5+3\sin x}\,dx.$

Exercises 31–36. Evaluate.

31. $\displaystyle\int_0^4 \frac{x^{3/2}}{x+1}\,dx.$ **32.** $\displaystyle\int_0^8 \frac{1}{1+\sqrt[3]{x}}\,dx.$

33. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin 2x}{2+\cos x}\,dx.$ **34.** $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{1+\sin x}\,dx.$

35. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{\sin x-\cos x-1}\,dx.$ **36.** $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{\sqrt{x}}{1+\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

37. Use the method of this section to show that

$$\int \sec x\,dx = \int \frac{1}{\cos x}\,dx = \ln\left|\frac{1+\tan\frac{1}{2}x}{1-\tan\frac{1}{2}x}\right| + C.$$

38. (a) Another way to calculate $\int \sec x\,dx$ is to write

$$\int \sec x\,dx = \int \frac{\cos x}{\cos^2 x}\,dx = \int \frac{\cos x}{1-\sin^2 x}\,dx.$$

Use the method of this section to show that

$$\int \sec x\,dx = \ln\sqrt{\frac{1+\sin x}{1-\sin x}} + C.$$

(b) Show that the result in part (a) is equivalent to the familiar formula

$$\int \sec x\,dx = \ln|\sec x+\tan x| + C.$$

39. (a) Use the approach given in Exercise 38 (a) to show that

$$\int \csc x\,dx = \ln\sqrt{\frac{1-\cos x}{1+\cos x}} + C.$$

(b) Show that the result in part (a) is equivalent to the formula

$$\int \csc x\,dx = \ln|\csc x-\cot x| + C.$$

40. The integral of a rational function of $\sinh x$ and $\cosh x$ can be transformed into a rational function of u by means of the substitution $u=\tanh\frac{1}{2}x$. Show that this substitution gives

$$\sinh x = \frac{2u}{1-u^2},\qquad \cosh x = \frac{1+u^2}{1-u^2},\qquad dx = \frac{2}{1-u^2}\,du.$$

Exercises 41–44. Integrate by setting $u=\tanh\frac{1}{2}x$.

41. $\displaystyle\int \operatorname{sech} x\,dx.$ **42.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{1+\cosh x}\,dx.$

43. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sinh x+\cosh x}\,dx.$ **44.** $\displaystyle\int \frac{1-e^x}{1+e^x}\,dx.$

■ 8.7 NUMERICAL INTEGRATION

To evaluate a definite integral of a continuous function by the formula

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b)-F(a),$$

we must be able to find an antiderivative F and we must to able to evaluate this antiderivative both at a and at b. When this is not feasible, the method fails.

The method fails even for such simple-looking integrals as

$$\int_0^1 \sqrt{x}\sin x\,dx \qquad \text{or} \qquad \int_0^1 e^{-x^2}\,dx.$$

There are no *elementary functions* with derivative $\sqrt{x}\sin x$ or e^{-x^2}.

Here we take up some simple numerical methods for estimating definite integrals—methods that you can use whether or not you can find an antiderivative. All the methods we describe involve only simple arithmetic and are ideally suited to the computer.

We focus now on

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

We suppose that f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and, for pictorial convenience, assume that f is positive. Take a regular partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ of $[a, b]$, subdividing the interval into n subintervals each of length $(b - a)/n$:

$$[a, b] = [x_0, x_1] \cup \cdots \cup [x_{i-1}, x_i] \cup \cdots \cup [x_{n-1}, x_n]$$

with

$$\Delta x_i = \frac{b-a}{n}.$$

The region Ω_i pictured in Figure 8.7.1, can be approximated in many ways.

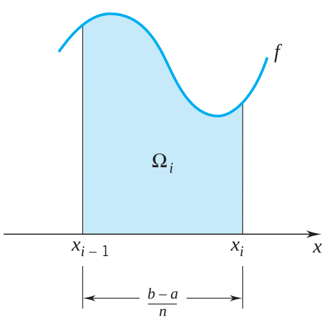


Figure 8.7.1

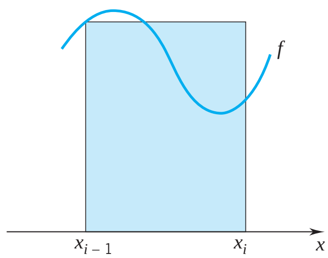


Figure 8.7.2

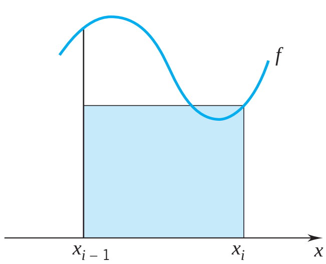


Figure 8.7.3

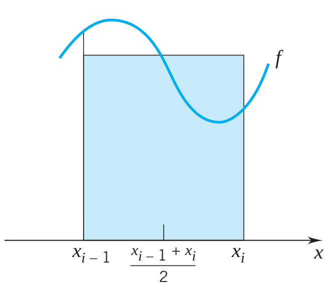


Figure 8.7.4

(1) By the left-endpoint rectangle (Figure 8.7.2):

$$\text{area} \cong f(x_{i-1})\Delta x_i = f(x_{i-1})\left(\frac{b-a}{n}\right).$$

(2) By the right-endpoint rectangle (Figure 8.7.3):

$$\text{area} \cong f(x_i)\Delta x_i = f(x_i)\left(\frac{b-a}{n}\right).$$

(3) By the midpoint rectangle (Figure 8.7.4):

$$\text{area} \cong f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right)\Delta x_i = f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right)\left(\frac{b-a}{n}\right).$$

(4) By a trapezoid (Figure 8.7.5):

$$\text{area} \cong \frac{1}{2}[f(x_{i-1}) + f(x_i)]\Delta x_i = \frac{1}{2}[f(x_{i-1}) + f(x_i)]\left(\frac{b-a}{n}\right).$$

(5) By a parabolic region (Figure 8.7.6): take the parabola $y = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ that passes through the three points indicated.

$$\text{area} \cong \frac{1}{6}\left[f(x_{i-1}) + 4f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right) + f(x_i)\right]\Delta x_i$$

$$= \left[f(x_{i-1}) + 4f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right) + f(x_i)\right]\left(\frac{b-a}{6n}\right).$$

You can verify this formula for the area under the parabola by doing Exercises 11 and 12. (If the three points are collinear, the parabola degenerates to a straight line and the parabolic region becomes a trapezoid. The formula then gives the area of that trapezoid.)

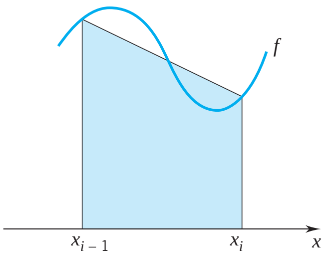


Figure 8.7.5

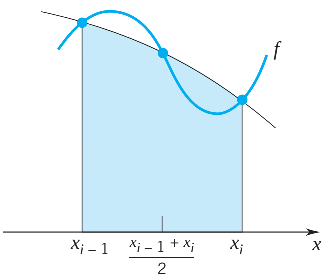


Figure 8.7.6

The approximations to Ω_i just considered yield the following estimates for

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

(1) The left-endpoint estimate:

$$L_n = \frac{b-a}{n}[f(x_0) + f(x_1) + \cdots + f(x_{n-1})].$$

(2) The right-endpoint estimate:

$$R_n = \frac{b-a}{n}[f(x_1) + f(x_2) + \cdots + f(x_n)].$$

(3) The midpoint estimate:

$$M_n = \frac{b-a}{n}\left[f\left(\frac{x_0+x_1}{2}\right) + \cdots + f\left(\frac{x_{n-1}+x_n}{2}\right)\right].$$

(4) The trapezoidal estimate (*trapezoidal rule*):

$$T_n = \frac{b-a}{n}\left[\frac{f(x_0)+f(x_1)}{2} + \frac{f(x_1)+f(x_2)}{2} + \cdots + \frac{f(x_{n-1})+f(x_n)}{2}\right]$$

$$= \frac{b-a}{2n}[f(x_0) + 2f(x_1) + \cdots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)].$$

(5) The parabolic estimate (*Simpson's rule*):

$$S_n = \frac{b-a}{6n}\left\{f(x_0) + f(x_n) + 2[f(x_1) + \cdots + f(x_{n-1})]\right.$$

$$\left. + 4\left[f\left(\frac{x_0+x_1}{2}\right) + \cdots + f\left(\frac{x_{n-1}+x_n}{2}\right)\right]\right\}.$$

The first three estimates, L_n, R_n, M_n, are Riemann sums (Section 5.2); T_n and S_n, although not explicitly written as Riemann sums, can be written as Riemann sums. (Exercise 26.) It follows from (5.2.6) that any one of these estimates can be used to approximate the integral as closely as we may wish. All we have to do is take n sufficiently large.

As an example, we will find the approximate value of

$$\ln 2 = \int_1^2 \frac{dx}{x}$$

by applying each of the five estimates. Here

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \qquad [a, b] = [1, 2].$$

Taking $n = 5$, we have

$$\frac{b-a}{n} = \frac{2-1}{5} = \frac{1}{5}.$$

The partition points are

$$x_0 = \tfrac{5}{5}, \quad x_1 = \tfrac{6}{5}, \quad x_2 = \tfrac{7}{5}, \quad x_3 = \tfrac{8}{5}, \quad x_4 = \tfrac{9}{5}, \quad x_5 = \tfrac{10}{5}. \qquad \text{(Figure 8.7.7)}$$

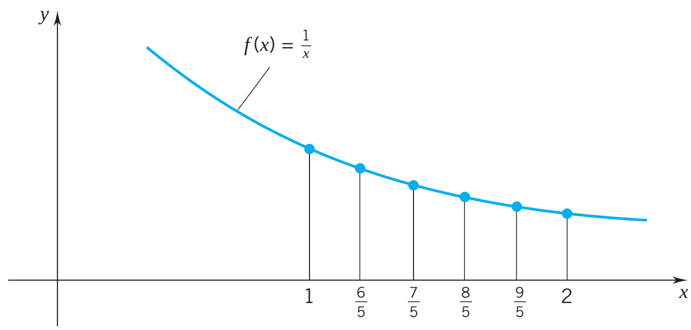


Figure 8.7.7

Using a calculator and rounding off to four decimal places, we have the following estimates:

$$L_5 = \tfrac{1}{5}\left(\tfrac{5}{5} + \tfrac{5}{6} + \tfrac{5}{7} + \tfrac{5}{8} + \tfrac{5}{9}\right) = \left(\tfrac{1}{5} + \tfrac{1}{6} + \tfrac{1}{7} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{9}\right) \cong 0.7456.$$

$$R_5 = \tfrac{1}{5}\left(\tfrac{5}{6} + \tfrac{5}{7} + \tfrac{5}{8} + \tfrac{5}{9} + \tfrac{5}{10}\right) = \left(\tfrac{1}{6} + \tfrac{1}{7} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{9} + \tfrac{1}{10}\right) \cong 0.6456.$$

$$M_5 = \tfrac{1}{5}\left(\tfrac{10}{11} + \tfrac{10}{13} + \tfrac{10}{15} + \tfrac{10}{17} + \tfrac{10}{19}\right) = 2\left(\tfrac{1}{11} + \tfrac{1}{13} + \tfrac{1}{15} + \tfrac{1}{17} + \tfrac{1}{19}\right) \cong 0.6919.$$

$$T_5 = \tfrac{1}{10}\left(\tfrac{5}{5} + \tfrac{10}{6} + \tfrac{10}{7} + \tfrac{10}{8} + \tfrac{10}{9} + \tfrac{5}{10}\right) = \left(\tfrac{1}{10} + \tfrac{1}{6} + \tfrac{1}{7} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{9} + \tfrac{1}{20}\right) \cong 0.6956.$$

$$S_5 = \tfrac{1}{30}\left[\tfrac{5}{5} + \tfrac{5}{10} + 2\left(\tfrac{5}{6} + \tfrac{5}{7} + \tfrac{5}{8} + \tfrac{5}{9}\right) + 4\left(\tfrac{10}{11} + \tfrac{10}{13} + \tfrac{10}{15} + \tfrac{10}{17} + \tfrac{10}{19}\right)\right] \cong 0.6932.$$

Since the integrand $1/x$ decreases throughout the interval $[1, 2]$, you can expect the left-endpoint estimate, 0.7456, to be too large, and you can expect the right-endpoint estimate, 0.6456, to be too small. The other estimates should be better.

The value of ln 2 given on a calculator is $\ln 2 \cong 0.69314718$, which is 0.6931 rounded off to four decimal places. Thus S_5 is correct to the nearest thousandth.

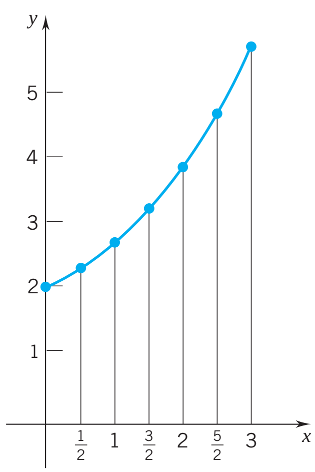


Figure 8.7.8

Example 1 Find the approximate value of $\displaystyle\int_0^3 \sqrt{4 + x^3}\, dx$ by the trapezoidal rule. Take $n = 6$.

SOLUTION Each subinterval has length $\dfrac{b-a}{n} = \dfrac{3-0}{6} = \dfrac{1}{2}$. The partition points are

$$x_0 = 0, \quad x_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}, \quad x_2 = 1, \quad x_3 = \tfrac{3}{2}, \quad x_4 = 2, \quad x_5 = \tfrac{5}{2}, \quad x_6 = 3. \qquad \text{(Figure 8.7.8)}$$

Then

$$T_6 \cong \tfrac{1}{4}\left[f(0) + 2f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + 2f(1) + 2f\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right) + 2f(2) + 2f\left(\tfrac{5}{2}\right) + f(3)\right],$$

with $f(x) = \sqrt{4+x^3}$. Using a calculator and rounding off to three decimal places, we have

$$f(0) = 2.000, \quad f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) \cong 2.031, \quad f(1) \cong 2.236, \quad f\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right) \cong 2.716,$$
$$f(2) \cong 3.464, \quad f\left(\tfrac{5}{2}\right) \cong 4.430, \quad f(3) \cong 5.568.$$

Thus

$$T_6 \cong \tfrac{1}{4}(2.000 + 4.062 + 4.472 + 5.432 + 6.928 + 8.860 + 5.568) \cong 9.331. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find the approximate value of

$$\int_0^3 \sqrt{4+x^3}\,dx$$

by Simpson's rule. Take $n = 3$.

SOLUTION There are three subintervals, each of length

$$\frac{b-a}{n} = \frac{3-0}{3} = 1.$$

Here

$$x_0 = 0, \quad x_1 = 1, \quad x_2 = 2, \quad x_3 = 3,$$
$$\frac{x_0+x_1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad \frac{x_1+x_2}{2} = \frac{3}{2}, \quad \frac{x_2+x_3}{2} = \frac{5}{2}.$$

Simpson's rule yields

$$S_3 = \tfrac{1}{6}\left[f(0) + f(3) + 2f(1) + 2f(2) + 4f\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + 4f\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\right) + 4f\left(\tfrac{5}{2}\right)\right],$$

with $f(x) = \sqrt{4+x^3}$. Taking the values of f as calculated in Example 1, we have

$$S_3 = \tfrac{1}{6}(2.000 + 5.568 + 4.472 + 6.928 + 8.124 + 10.864 + 17.72) \cong 9.279.$$

For comparison, the value of this integral accurate to five decimal places is 9.27972. ❑

Error Estimates

A numerical estimate is useful only to the extent that we can gauge its accuracy. When we use any kind of approximation method, we face two forms of error: the error inherent in the method we use (we call this the *theoretical error*) and the error that accumulates from rounding off the decimals that arise during the course of computation (we call this the *round-off error*). The effect of round-off error is obvious: if at each step we round off too crudely, then we can hardly expect an accurate final result. We will examine theoretical error.

We begin with a function f continuous and increasing on $[a, b]$. We subdivide $[a, b]$ into n nonoverlapping intervals, each of length $(b-a)/n$. We want to estimate

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

by the left-endpoint method. What is the theoretical error? It should be clear from Figure 8.7.9 that the theoretical error does not exceed

$$[f(b) - f(a)]\left(\frac{b-a}{n}\right).$$

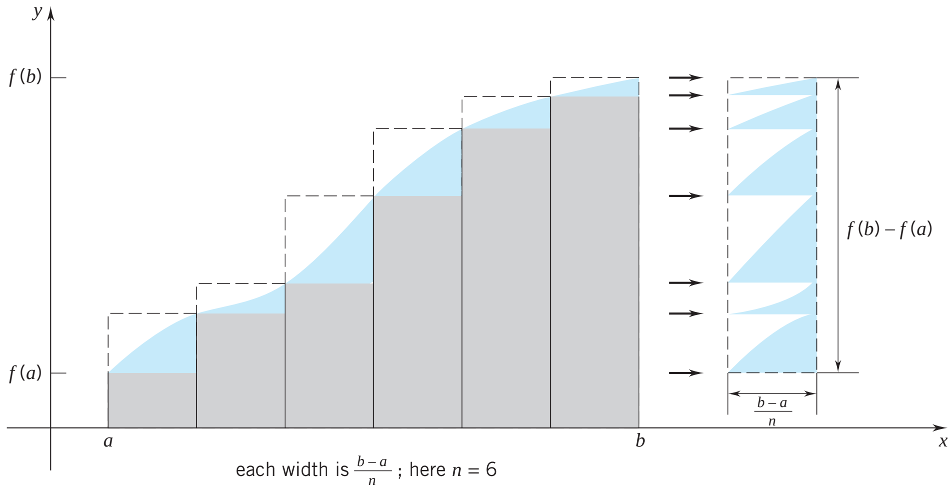


Figure 8.7.9

The error is represented by the sum of the areas of the shaded regions. These regions, when shifted to the right, all fit together within a rectangle of height $f(b) - f(a)$ and base $(b-a)/n$.

Similar reasoning shows that, under the same circumstances, the theoretical error associated with the trapezoidal method does not exceed

$$(*) \qquad \tfrac{1}{2}[f(b) - f(a)]\left(\frac{b-a}{n}\right).$$

In this setting, at least, the trapezoidal estimate does a better job than the left-endpoint estimate.

The trapezoidal rule is more accurate than (∗) suggests. As is shown in texts on numerical analysis, if f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and twice differentiable on (a, b), then the theoretical error of the trapezoidal rule,

$$E_n^T = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx - T_n,$$

can be written

(8.7.1)
$$\boxed{E_n^T = -\frac{(b-a)^3}{12n^2}f''(c),}$$

where c is some number between a and b. Usually we cannot pinpoint c any further. However, if f'' is bounded on $[a, b]$, say $|f''(x)| \le M$ for $a \le x \le b$, then

(8.7.2)
$$\boxed{|E_n^T| \le \frac{(b-a)^3}{12n^2}M.}$$

Recall the trapezoidal-rule estimate of ln 2 derived at the beginning of this section:

$$\ln 2 = \int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\,dx \cong 0.696.$$

To find the theoretical error, we apply (8.72). Here

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \qquad f'(x) = -\frac{1}{x^2}, \qquad f''(x) = \frac{2}{x^3}.$$

Since f'' is a decreasing function, it takes on its maximum value at the left endpoint of the interval. Thus $|f''(x)| \leq f''(1) = 2$ on $[1, 2]$. Therefore, with $a = 1$, $b = 2$, and $n = 5$, we have

$$|E_5^T| \leq \frac{(2-1)^3}{12 \cdot 5^2} \cdot 2 = \frac{1}{150} < 0.007.$$

The estimate 0.696 is in theoretical error by less than 0.007.

To get an estimate for

$$\ln 2 = \int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\, dx$$

that is accurate to four decimal places, we need

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{(b-a)^3}{12n^2} M < 0.00005.$$

Since

$$\frac{(b-a)^3}{12\,n^2} M \leq \frac{(2-1)^3}{12\,n^2} \cdot 2 = \frac{1}{6\,n^2},$$

we can satisfy (1) by having

$$\frac{1}{6n^2} < 0.00005,$$

which is to say, by having

$$n^2 > 3333.$$

As you can check, $n = 58$ is the smallest integer that satisfies this inequality. In this case, the trapezoidal rule requires a regular partition with at least 58 subintervals to guarantee four decimal place accuracy.

Simpson's rule is more effective than the trapezoidal rule. If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $f^{(4)}$ exists on (a, b), then the theoretical error for Simpson's rule,

$$E_n^S = \int_a^b f(x)\, dx - S_n,$$

can be written

(8.7.3)
$$\boxed{E_n^S = -\frac{(b-a)^5}{2880n^4} f^{(4)}(c),}$$

where, as before, c is some number between a and b. Whereas (8.7.1) varies as $1/n^2$, this quantity varies as $1/n^4$. Thus, for comparable n, we can expect greater accuracy from Simpson's rule. In addition, if we assume that $f^{(4)}(x)$ is bounded on $[a, b]$, say $|f^{(4)}(x)| \leq M$ for $a \leq x \leq b$, then

(8.7.4)
$$\boxed{|E_n^S| \leq \frac{(b-a)^5}{2880n^4} M.}$$

To estimate

$$\ln 2 = \int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\,dx$$

by the trapezoidal rule with theoretical error less than 0.00005, we needed to subdivide the interval [1, 2] into at least fifty-eight subintervals of equal length. To achieve the same degree of accuracy with Simpson's rule, we need only four subintervals:

$$\text{for } f(x) = 1/x, \qquad f^{(4)}(x) = 24/x^4.$$

Therefore $|f^{(4)}(x)| \leq 24$ for all $x \in [1, 2]$ and

$$|E_n^S| \leq \frac{(2-1)^5}{2880\,n^4}\,24 = \frac{1}{120\,n^4}.$$

This quantity is less than 0.00005 provided only that $n^4 > 167$. This condition is met by $n = 4$.

Remark If your calculus course is computer related, you will no doubt see these and other numerical methods more thoroughly applied. ❑

EXERCISES 8.7

In Exercises 1–10 round off your calculations to four decimal places.

1. Estimate

$$\int_0^{12} x^2\,dx$$

by: (a) the left-cndpoint estimate, $n = 12$; (b) the right-endpoint estimate, $n = 12$; (c) the midpoint estimate, $n = 6$; (d) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 12$; (e) Simpson's rule, $n = 6$. Check your results by performing the integration.

2. Estimate

$$\int_0^1 \sin^2 \pi x\,dx$$

by: (a) the midpoint estimate, $n = 3$; (b) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 6$; (c) Simpson's rule, $n = 3$. Check your results by performing the integration.

3. Estimate

$$\int_0^3 \frac{dx}{1+x^3}$$

by: (a) the left-endpoint estimate, $n = 6$; (b) the right-endpoint estimate, $n = 6$; (c) the midpoint estimate, $n = 3$; (d) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 6$; (e) Simpson's rule, $n = 3$.

4. Estimate

$$\int_0^\pi \frac{\sin x}{\pi + x}\,dx$$

by: (a) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 6$; (b) Simpson's rule, $n = 3$. (Note the superiority of Simpson's rule.)

5. Estimate the value of π by estimating the integral

$$\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = \arctan 1 = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

by (a) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 6$; (b) Simpson's rule, $n = 3$.

6. Estimate

$$\int_0^2 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{4+x^3}}$$

by: (a) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 4$; (b) Simpson's rule, $n = 2$.

7. Estimate

$$\int_{-1}^1 \cos x^2\,dx$$

by: (a) the midpoint estimate, $n = 4$; (b) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 8$; (c) Simpson's rule, $n = 4$.

8. Estimate

$$\int_1^2 \frac{e^x}{x}\,dx$$

by: (a) the midpoint estimate, $n = 4$; (b) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 8$; (c) Simpson's rule, $n = 4$.

9. Estimate

$$\int_0^2 e^{-x^2}\,dx$$

by: (a) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 10$; (b) Simpson's rule, $n = 5$.

10. Estimate

$$\int_2^4 \frac{1}{\ln x}\,dx$$

by: (a) the midpoint estimate, $n = 4$; (b) the trapezoidal rule, $n = 8$; (c) Simpson's rule, $n = 4$.

11. Show that there is a unique parabola of the form $y = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ through three distinct noncollinear points with different x-coordinates.

12. Show that the function $g(x) = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ satisfies the condition

$$\int_a^b g(x)\,dx = \frac{b-a}{6}\left[g(a) + 4g\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) + g(b)\right]$$

for every interval $[a, b]$.

Exercises 13–22. Determine the values of n which guarantee a theoretical error less than ϵ if the integral is estimated by: (a) the trapezoidal rule; (b) Simpson's rule.

13. $\int_1^4 \sqrt{x}\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.01$.

14. $\int_1^3 x^5\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.01$.

15. $\int_1^4 \sqrt{x}\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.00001$.

16. $\int_1^3 x^5\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.00001$.

17. $\int_0^\pi \sin x\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.001$.

18. $\int_0^\pi \cos x\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.001$.

19. $\int_1^3 e^x\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.01$.

20. $\int_1^e \ln x\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.01$.

21. $\int_0^2 e^{-x^2}\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.0001$.

22. $\int_0^2 e^x\,dx$; $\epsilon = 0.00001$.

23. Show that Simpson's rule is exact (theoretical error zero) for every polynomial of degree 3 or less.

24. Show that the trapezoidal rule is exact (theoretical error zero) if f is linear.

25. (a) Set $f(x) = x^2$. Let $[a, b] = [0, 1]$ and take $n = 2$. Show that in this case the theoretical error inequality

$$|E_n^T| \le \frac{(b-a)^3}{12n^2} M$$

is replaced by equality if M is taken as the maximum value of f'' on $[a, b]$.

(b) Set $f(x) = x^4$. Let $[a, b] = [0, 1]$ and take $n = 1$. Show that in this case the theoretical error inequality

$$|E_n^S| \le \frac{(b-a)^5}{2880n^4} M$$

is replaced by equality if M is taken as the maximum value of $f^{(4)}$ on $[a, b]$.

26. Show that, if f is continuous, then T_n and S_n can both be written as Riemann sums.

27. Let f be a function positive on $[a, b]$. Compare

$$M_n, \quad T_n, \quad \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

given that the graph of f is: (a) concave up; (b) concave down.

28. Show that $\frac{1}{3}T_n + \frac{2}{3}M_n = S_n$.

29. Use a CAS and the trapezoidal rule to estimate:

(a) $\int_0^{10} (x + \cos x)\,dx, \quad n = 50.$

(b) $\int_{-4}^{7} (x^5 - 5x^4 + x^3 - 3x^2 - x + 4)\,dx, \quad n = 30.$

30. Use a CAS and Simpson's rule to estimate:

(a) $\int_{-4}^{3} \frac{x^2}{x^2+4}\,dx, \quad n = 50.$

(b) $\int_0^{\pi/6} (x + \tan x)\,dx, \quad n = 25.$

31. Estimate the theoretical error if Simpson's rule with $n = 20$ is used to approximate

$$\int_1^5 \frac{x^2-4}{x^2+9}\,dx.$$

32. Estimate the theoretical error if the trapezoidal rule with $n = 30$ is used to approximate

$$\int_2^7 \frac{x^2}{x^2+1}\,dx.$$

■ CHAPTER 8. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–40. Calculate.

1. $\int \frac{\cos x}{4 + \sin^2 x}\,dx.$

2. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{x^2}{1+x^2}\,dx.$

3. $\int 2x \sinh x\,dx.$

4. $\int (\tan x + \cot x)^2\,dx.$

5. $\int \frac{x-3}{x^2(x+1)}\,dx.$

6. $\int x \arctan x\,dx.$

7. $\int \sin 2x \cos x\,dx.$

8. $\int 3x\,e^{-3x}\,dx.$

9. $\int_0^3 \ln\sqrt{x+1}\,dx.$

10. $\int \frac{2}{x(1+x^2)}\,dx.$

11. $\int \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x}\,dx.$

12. $\int \frac{\cos x}{\sin^3 x}\,dx.$

13. $\int_0^1 e^{-x}\cosh x\,dx$

14. $\int \frac{x^2+3}{\sqrt{x^2+9}}\,dx$

15. $\int \frac{dx}{e^x - 4e^{-x}}.$

16. $\int \frac{1}{x^3-1}\,dx,$

17. $\displaystyle\int x2^x\,dx.$

18. $\displaystyle\int \ln(x\sqrt{x})\,dx.$

19. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}{x^2}\,dx.$

20. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 x^2e^{x^3}\,dx.$

21. $\displaystyle\int x^3e^{x^2}\,dx.$

22. $\displaystyle\int \sin 2x\sin 3x\,dx.$

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin^5 x}{\cos^7 x}\,dx.$

24. $\displaystyle\int\left(\frac{\sqrt{4+x^2}}{x}-\frac{x}{\sqrt{4+x^2}}\right)dx.$

25. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/3}\frac{\sin x}{\sin 2x}\,dx.$

26. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x+3}{\sqrt{x^2+2x-8}}\,dx.$

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2+x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx.$

28. $\displaystyle\int x\tan^2 2x\,dx.$

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\cos^4 x}{\sin^2 x}\,dx.$

30. $\displaystyle\int_0^3 x\ln\sqrt{x^2+1}\,dx.$

31. $\displaystyle\int (\sin 2x+\cos 2x)^2\,dx.$

32. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{\cos x}\sin^3 x\,dx.$

33. $\displaystyle\int \frac{5x+1}{(x+2)(x^2-2x+1)}\,dx.$

34. $\displaystyle\int \tan^{3/2}x\sec^4 x\,dx.$

35. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+1}-\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$

36. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1/2}\cos\pi x\cos\tfrac{1}{2}\pi x\,dx.$

37. $\displaystyle\int x^2\cos 2x\,dx.$

38. $\displaystyle\int e^{2x}\sin 4x\,dx.$

39. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1-\sin 2x}{1+\sin 2x}\,dx.$

40. $\displaystyle\int \frac{5x+3}{(x-1)(x^2+2x+5)}\,dx.$

41. Show that, for $a\neq 0$,

(a) $\displaystyle\int x^n\cos ax\,dx=\frac{x^n\sin ax}{a}-\frac{n}{a}\int x^{n-1}\sin ax\,dx,$

(b) $\displaystyle\int x^n\sin ax\,dx=-\frac{x^n\cos ax}{a}+\frac{n}{a}\int x^{n-1}\cos ax\,dx.$

42. Use the formulas in Exercise 41 to calculate

(a) $\displaystyle\int x^2\cos 3x\,dx.$ (b) $\displaystyle\int x^3\sin 4x\,dx.$

43. (a) Show that

$$\int x^m(\ln x)^n\,dx=\frac{x^{m+1}(\ln x)^n}{m+1}-\frac{n}{m+1}\times\int x^m(\ln x)^{n-1}\,dx.$$

(b) Calculate $\displaystyle\int x^4(\ln x)^3\,dx.$

44. Calculate the area of the region between the curve $y=x^2\arctan x$ and the x-axis from $x=0$ to $x=1$.

45. Find the centroid of the region bounded by the graph of $y=(1-x^2)^{-1/2}$ and the x-axis, $x\in\left[0,\frac{1}{2}\right]$.

46. Let $f(x)=x+\sin x$ and $g(x)=x$ both for $x\in[0,\pi]$.

(a) Sketch the graphs of f and g in the same coordinate system.

(b) Calculate the area of the region Ω between the graphs of f and g.

(c) Calculate the centroid of Ω.

47. (a) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving about the x-axis the region Ω of Exercise 45.

(b) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving about the y-axis the region Ω of Exercise 45.

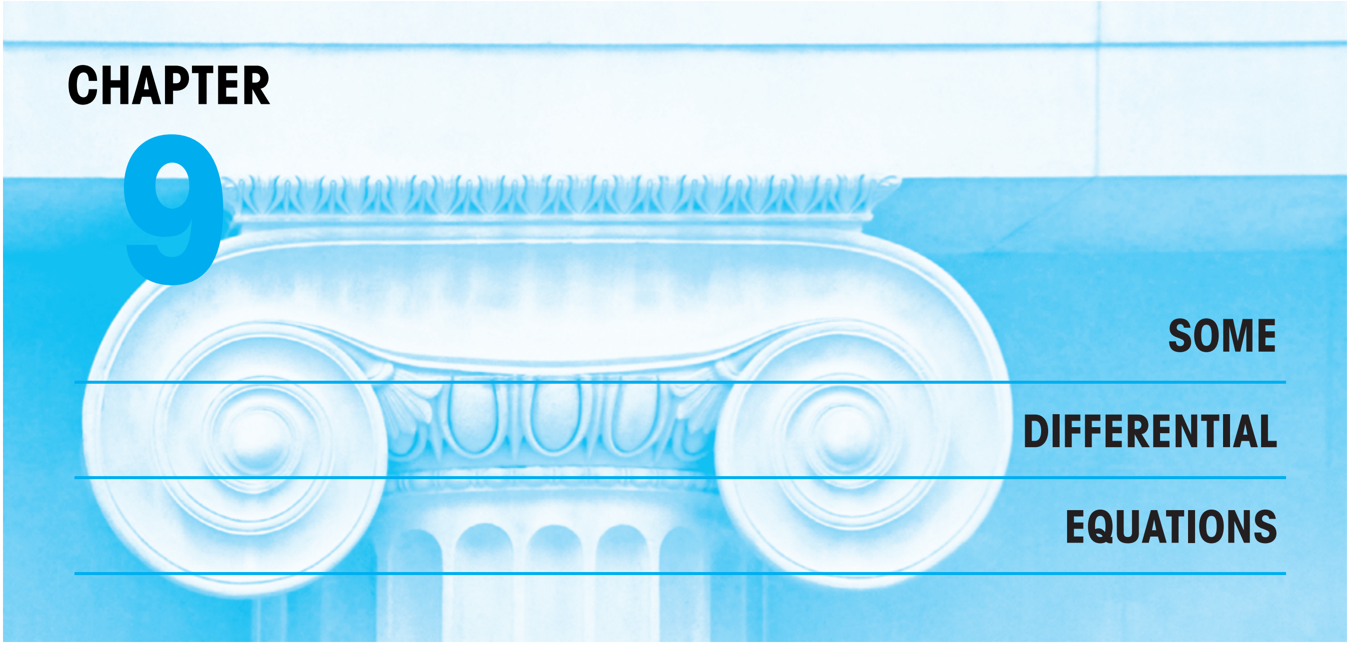
48. The region between the curve $y=\ln 2x$ and the x-axis from $x=1$ to $x=e$ is revolved about the y-axis. Find the volume of the solid generated.

49. Estimate $\displaystyle\int_0^2\sqrt{x^3+x}\,dx$ by: (a) the midpoint estimate, $n=4$; (b) the trapezoidal rule, $n=8$; (c) Simpson's rule, $n=4$. Round off your calculations to four decimal places.

50. Estimate $\displaystyle\int_0^2\sqrt{1+3x}\,dx$ by: (a) the trapezoidal rule, $n=8$; (b) Simpson's rule, $n=4$. Round off your calculations to four decimal places. (c) Find the exact value of the integral and compare it to your results in (a) and (b).

51. For the integral of Exercise 50, determine the values of n which guarantee a theoretical error of less than 0.00001 if the integral is estimated by: (a) the trapezoidal rule; (b) Simpson's rule.

52. Estimate $\displaystyle\int_1^3\frac{e^{-x}}{x}\,dx$ by: (a) the trapezoidal rule, $n=8$; (c) Simpson's rule, $n=4$. Round off your calculations to four decimal places.



CHAPTER 9

SOME DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

Introduction

An equation that relates an unknown function to one or more of its derivatives is called a *differential equation*. We have already introduced some differential equations. In Chapter 7 we used the differential equation

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = ky \qquad \text{[there written } f'(t) = kf(t)\text{]}$$

to model exponential growth and decay. In various exercises (Section 3.6 and 4.9) we used the differential equation

$$\text{(2)} \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \omega^2 y = 0,$$

the equation of simple harmonic motion, to model the motion of a simple pendulum and the oscillation of a weight suspended at the end of a spring.

The *order* of a differential equation is the order of the highest derivative that appears in the equation. Thus (1) is a *first-order* equation and (2) is a *second-order* equation.

A function that satisfies a differential equation is called a *solution* of the equation. Finding the solutions of a differential equation is called *solving* the equation.

All functions $y = Ce^{kt}$ where C is a constant are solutions of equation (1):

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = kCe^{kt} = ky.$$

All functions of the form $y = C_1 \cos \omega t + C_2 \sin \omega t$, where C_1 and C_2 constants are solutions of equation (2):

$$\begin{aligned} y &= C_1 \cos \omega t + C_2 \sin \omega t \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= -\omega C_1 \sin \omega t + \omega C_2 \cos \omega t \\ \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} &= -\omega^2 C_1 \cos \omega t - \omega^2 C_2 \sin \omega t = -\omega^2 y \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \omega^2 y = 0.$$

Remark Differential equations reach far beyond the boundaries of pure mathematics. Countless processes in the physical sciences, in the life sciences, in engineering, and in the social sciences are modeled by differential equations.

The study of differential equations is a huge subject, certainly beyond the scope of this text or any text on calculus. In this little chapter we examine some simple, but useful, differential equations. We continue the study of differential equations in Chapter 19.

One more point. In (1) and (2) we used the letter t to indicate the independent variable because we're looking at changes with respect to time. In much of what follows, we'll use the letter x. Whether we use x or t doesn't matter. What matters is the structure of the equation ❑

■ 9.1 FIRST-ORDER LINEAR EQUATIONS

A differential equation of the form

(9.1.1) $$\boxed{y' + p(x)y = q(x)}$$

is called a *first-order linear differential equation*. Here p and q are given functions defined and continuous on some interval I.

[In the simplest case, $p(x) = 0$ for all x, the equation reduces to

$$y' = q(x).$$

The solutions of this equation are the antiderivatives of q.]

Solving Equations $y' + p(x)y = q(x)$ First we calculate

$$H(x) = \int p(x)\,dx,$$

omitting the constant of integration. (We want one antiderivative for p, not a whole collection of them.) We form $e^{H(x)}$, multiply the equation by $e^{H(x)}$, and obtain

$$e^{H(x)}y' + e^{H(x)}p(x)y = e^{H(x)}q(x).$$

The left side of this equation is the derivative of $e^{H(x)}y$. (Verify this.) Thus, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[e^{H(x)}y\right] = e^{H(x)}q(x).$$

Integration gives

$$e^{H(x)}y = \int e^{H(x)}q(x)\,dx + C$$

and yields

(9.1.2) $$\boxed{y(x) = e^{-H(x)}\left[\int e^{H(x)}q(x)\,dx + C\right].}$$ ❑

Remark There is no reason to commit this formula to memory. What is important here is the method of solution. The key step is multiplication by $e^{H(x)}$, where $H(x) = \int p(x)\,dx$. It is multiplication by this factor, called an *integrating factor*, that enables us to write the left side in a form that we can integrate directly. ❑

Note that (9.1.2) contains an arbitrary constant C. A close look at the steps taken to obtain this solution makes it clear that that this solution includes *all* the functions that satisfy the differential equation. For this reason we call it the *general solution*. By assigning a particular value to the constant C, we obtain what is called a *particular solution*.

Example 1 Find the general solution of the equation

$$y' + ay = b, \qquad a, b \text{ constants}, \qquad a \neq 0.$$

SOLUTION First we calculate an integrating factor:

$$H(x) = \int a\,dx = ax \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad e^{H(x)} = e^{ax}.$$

Multiplying the differential equation by e^{ax}, we get

$$e^{ax}y' + a\,e^{ax}y = b\,e^{ax}.$$

The left-hand side is the derivative of $e^{ax}y$. (Verify this.) Thus, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}[e^{ax}y] = b\,e^{ax}.$$

We integrate this equation and find that

$$e^{ax}y = \frac{b}{a}e^{ax} + C.$$

It follows that

$$y = \frac{b}{a} + Ce^{-ax}.$$

This is the general solution. ❑

Example 2 Find the general solution of the equation

$$y' + 2xy = x$$

and then find the particular solution y for which $y(0) = 2$.

SOLUTION This equation has the form (9.1.1). To solve the equation, we calculate the integrating factor $e^{H(x)}$:

$$H(x) = \int 2x\,dx = x^2 \qquad \text{and so} \qquad e^{H(x)} = e^{x^2}.$$

Multiplication by e^{x^2} gives

$$e^{x^2}y' + 2xe^{x^2}y = xe^{x^2}$$
$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[e^{x^2}y\right] = xe^{x^2}.$$

Integrating this equation, we get

$$e^{x^2}y = \tfrac{1}{2}e^{x^2} + C,$$

which we write as

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2} + Ce^{-x^2}.$$

This is the general solution. To find the solution y for which $y(0) = 2$, we set $x = 0$, $y = 2$ and solve for C:

$$2 = \tfrac{1}{2} + Ce^0 = \tfrac{1}{2} + C \qquad \text{and so} \qquad C = \tfrac{3}{2}.$$

The function

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{3}{2}e^{-x^2}$$

is the particular solution that satisfies the given condition. ❑

Remark When a differential equation is used as a mathematical model in some application, there is usually an *initial condition* $y(x_0) = y_0$ that makes it possible to evaluate the arbitrary constant that appears in the general solution. The problem of finding a particular solution that satisfies a given condition is called an *initial-value problem*. ❑

Example 3 Solve the initial-value problem:

$$xy' - 2y = 3x^4, \qquad y(-1) = 2.$$

SOLUTION This differential equation does not have the form of (9.1.1), but we can put it in that form by dividing the equation by x:

$$y' - \frac{2}{x}y = 3x^3.$$

Now we set

$$H(x) = \int -\frac{2}{x}\,dx = -2\ln x = \ln x^{-2}$$

and get the integrating factor

$$e^{H(x)} = e^{\ln x^{-2}} = x^{-2}.$$

Multiplication by x^{-2} gives

$$x^{-2}y' - 2x^{-3}y = 3x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}[x^{-2}y] = 3x.$$

Integrating this equation, we get

$$x^{-2}y = \tfrac{3}{2}x^2 + C,$$

which we write as

$$y = \tfrac{3}{2}x^4 + Cx^2.$$

This is the general solution. Applying the initial condition, we have

$$y(-1) = 2 = \tfrac{3}{2}(-1)^4 + C(-1)^2 = \tfrac{3}{2} + C.$$

This gives $C = \frac{1}{2}$. The function $y = \frac{3}{2}x^4 + \frac{1}{2}x^2$ is the solution of the initial-value problem. (Check this out.) ❑

Applications

Newton's Law of Cooling Newton's law of cooling states that the rate of change of the temperature T of an object is proportional to the difference between T and the (assumed constant) temperature τ of the surrounding medium, called the *ambient temperature*. The mathematical formulation of Newton's law takes the form

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = m(T - \tau) \qquad \text{where } m \text{ is a constant.}$$

Remark The constant m in this model must be negative; for if the object is warmer than the ambient temperature ($T - \tau > 0$), then its temperature will decrease ($dT/dt < 0$), which implies $m < 0$; if the object is colder than the ambient temperature ($T - \tau < 0$), its temperature will increase ($dT/dt > 0$), which again implies $m < 0$. ❑

To emphasize that the constant of proportionality is negative, we write Newton's law of cooling as

(9.1.3)
$$\boxed{\frac{dT}{dt} = -k(T - \tau), \qquad k > 0 \text{ constant.}}$$

This equation can be rewritten as

$$\frac{dT}{dt} + kT = k\tau,$$

a first-order linear equation with $p(t) = k$ and $q(t) = k\tau$ constant. From the result in Example 1, we see that

$$T = \frac{k\tau}{k} + Ce^{-kt} = \tau + Ce^{-kt}.$$

The constant C is determined by the initial temperature $T(0)$:

$$T(0) = \tau + Ce^0 = \tau + C \qquad \text{so that} \qquad C = T(0) - \tau.$$

The temperature of the object at any time t is given by the function

(9.1.4)
$$\boxed{T(t) = \tau + [T(0) - \tau]e^{-kt}.}$$

Example 4 A cup of coffee is served to you at 185°F in a room where the temperature is 65°F. Two minutes later, the temperature of the coffee has dropped to 155°F. How many more minutes would you expect to wait for the coffee to cool to 105°F?

SOLUTION In this case $\tau = 65$ and $T(0) = 185$. Therefore

$$T(t) = 65 + [185 - 65]e^{-kt} = 65 + 120e^{-kt}.$$

To determine the constant of proportionality k, we use the fact that $T(2) = 155$:

$$T(2) = 65 + 120e^{-2k} = 155, \qquad e^{-2k} = \tfrac{90}{120} = \tfrac{3}{4}, \qquad k = -\tfrac{1}{2}\ln(3/4) \cong 0.144.$$

Taking k as 0.144, we write $T(t) = 65 + 120e^{-0.144t}$ for the temperature of the coffee at time t.

Now we want to find the value of t for which $T(t) = 105°$F. To do this, we solve the equation

$$65 + 120e^{-0.144t} = 105$$

for t:

$$120e^{-0.144t} = 40, \qquad -0.144t = \ln(1/3), \qquad t \cong 7.63\,\text{min}.$$

Therefore you would expect to wait another 5.63 minutes. ❑

Remark In arriving at the function $T(t) = 65 + 120e^{-0.144t}$, we used 0.144 for k. But this is only an approximation to k. We can avoid this slight inaccuracy by stopping at $e^{-2k} = \frac{3}{4}$ and writing

$$e^{-k} = \left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right)^{1/2}, \qquad e^{-kt} = \left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right)^{t/2}, \qquad T(t) = 65 + 120\left(\tfrac{3}{4}\right)^{t/2}.$$

This version of T is exact and therefore preferable on a theoretical basis. However, it has a disadvantage: it's harder to use in computations. For our purposes, both versions of T are acceptable. ❑

A Mixing Problem

Example 5 A chemical manufacturing company has a 1000-gallon holding tank which it uses to control the release of pollutants into a sewage system. Initially the tank has 360 gallons of fluid containing 2 pounds of pollutant per gallon. Fluid containing 3 pounds of pollutant per gallon enters the tank at the rate of 80 gallons per hour and is uniformly mixed with the fluid already in the tank. Simultaneously, fluid is released from the tank at the rate of 40 gallons per hour. Determine the rate (lbs/gal) at which the pollutant is being released after 10 hours of this process.

SOLUTION Let $P(t)$ be the amount of pollutant (in pounds) in the tank at time t. The rate of change of pollutant in the tank, dP/dt, satisfies the condition

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = (\text{rate in}) - (\text{rate out}).$$

The pollutant is entering the tank at the rate of $3 \times 80 = 240$ pounds per hour (rate in).

Fluid is entering the tank at the rate of 80 gallons per hour and is leaving at the rate of 40 gallons per hour. The amount of fluid in the tank is increasing at the rate of 40 gallons per hour, and so there are $360 + 40t$ gallons of fluid in the tank at time t. We can now conclude that the amount of pollutant per gallon in the tank at time t is given by the function

$$\frac{P(t)}{360 + 40t},$$

and the rate at which pollutant is leaving the tank is

$$40\frac{P(t)}{360 + 40t} = \frac{P(t)}{9 + t} \qquad (\text{rate out}).$$

Therefore, our differential equation reads

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = (\text{rate in}) - (\text{rate out}) = 240 - \frac{P}{9 + t},$$

which we can write as

$$\frac{dP}{dt} + \frac{1}{9+t}P = 240.$$

This is a first-order linear differential equation. Here we have

$$p(t) = \frac{1}{9+t} \qquad \text{and} \qquad H(t) = \int \frac{1}{9+t}\,dt = \ln|9+t| = \ln(9+t). \qquad (9+t>0)$$

As an integrating factor, we use

$$e^{H(t)} = e^{\ln(9+t)} = 9+t.$$

Multiplying the differential equation by $9+t$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(9+t)\frac{dP}{dt} + P &= 240(9+t)\\ \frac{d}{dt}[(9+t)P] &= 240(9+t)\\ (9+t)P &= 120(9+t)^2 + C\\ P(t) &= 120(9+t) + \frac{C}{9+t}.\end{aligned}$$

Since the amount of pollutant in the tank is initially $2 \times 360 = 720$ (pounds), we see that

$$P(0) = 120(9) + \frac{C}{9} = 720, \qquad \text{which implies that} \qquad C = -3240.$$

Thus, the function

$$P(t) = 120(9+t) - \frac{3240}{9+t} \qquad \text{(pounds)}$$

gives the amount of pollutant in the tank at any time t. After 10 hours there are $360 + 40(10) = 760$ gallons of fluid in the tank, and there are

$$P(10) = 120(19) - \tfrac{3240}{19} \cong 2109$$

pounds of pollutant. Therefore, the rate at which pollutant is being released into the sewage system after 10 hours is $\frac{2109}{760} \cong 2.78$ pounds per gallon. ❑

EXERCISES 9.1

Exercises 1–6. Determine whether the functions satisfy the differential equation.

1. $2y' - y = 0;\quad y_1(x) = e^{x/2},\quad y_2(x) = x^2 + 2e^{x/2}.$

2. $y' + xy = x;\quad y_1(x) = e^{-x^2/2},\quad y_2(x) = 1 + Ce^{-x^2/2}.$

3. $y' + y = y^2;\quad y_1(x) = \dfrac{1}{e^x+1},\quad y_2(x) = \dfrac{1}{Ce^x+1}.$

4. $y'' + 4y = 0;\quad y_1(x) = 2\sin 2x,\quad y_2(x) = 2\cos x.$

5. $y'' - 4y = 0;\quad y_1(x) = e^{2x},\quad y_2(x) = C\sinh 2x.$

6. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 7e^{3x};\quad y_1(x) = e^{-x} + 2e^{3x},$
$y_2(x) = \tfrac{7}{4}xe^{3x}.$

Exercises 7–22. Find the general solution.

7. $y' - 2y = 1.$

8. $xy' - 2y = -x.$

9. $2y' + 5y = 2.$

10. $y' - y = -2e^{-x}.$

11. $y' - 2y = 1 - 2x.$

12. $xy' + 2y = \dfrac{\cos x}{x}.$

13. $xy' - 4y = -2nx.$

14. $y' + y = 2 + 2x.$

15. $y' - e^x y = 0.$

16. $y' - y = e^x.$

17. $(1 + e^x)y' + y = 1.$

18. $xy' + y = (1 + x)e^x.$

19. $y' + 2xy = xe^{-x^2}.$

20. $xy' - y = 2x\ln x.$

21. $y' + \dfrac{2}{x+1}y = 0.$

22. $y' + \dfrac{2}{x+1}y = (x+1)^{5/2}.$

Exercises 23–28. Find the particular solution determined by the initial condition.

23. $y' + y = x,\quad y(0) = 1.$

24. $y' - y = e^{2x},\quad y(1) = 1.$

25. $y' + y = \dfrac{1}{1+e^x},\quad y(0) = e.$

26. $y' + y = \dfrac{1}{1+2e^x}, \quad y(0) = e$

27. $xy' - 2y = x^3e^x, \quad y(1) = 0.$

28. $xy' + 2y = xe^{-x}, \quad y(1) = -1.$

29. Find all functions that satisfy the differential equation $y' - y = y'' - y'$ HINT: Set $z = y' - y$.

30. Find the general solution of $y' + ry = 0$, r constant.

(a) Show that if y is a solution and $y(a) = 0$ at some number $a \geq 0$, then $y(x) = 0$ for all x. (Thus a solution y is either identically zero or never zero.)

(b) Show that if $r < 0$, then all nonzero solutions are unbounded.

(c) Show that if $r > 0$, then all solutions tend to 0 as $x \to \infty$.

(d) What are the solutions if $r = 0$?

Exercises 31 and 32 are given in reference to the differential equation

$$y' + p(x)y = 0$$

with p continuous on an interval I.

31. (a) Show that if y_1 and y_2 are solutions, then $u = y_1 + y_2$ is also a solution.

(b) Show that if y is a solution and C is a constant, then $u = Cy$ is also a solution.

32. (a) Let $a \in I$. Show that the general solution can be written

$$y(x) = Ce^{-\int_a^x p(t)\,dt}$$

(b) Show that if y is a solution and $y(b) = 0$ for some $b \in I$, then $y(x) = 0$ for all $x \in I$.

(c) Show that if y_1 and y_2 are solutions and $y_1(b) = y_2(b)$ for some $b \in I$, then $y_1(x) = y_2(x)$ for all $x \in I$.

Exercises 33 and 34 are given in reference to the differential equation (9.1.1)

$$y' + p(x)y = q(x),$$

with p and q continuous on some interval I.

33. Let $a \in I$ and let $H(x) = \int_a^x p(t)dt$. Show that

$$y(x) = e^{-H(x)} \int_a^x q(t)e^{H(t)}dt$$

is the solution of the differential equation that satisfies the initial condition $y(a) = 0$.

34. Show that if y_1 and y_2 are solutions of (9.1.1), then $y = y_1 - y_2$ is a solution of $y' + p(x)y = 0$.

35. A thermometer is taken from a room where the temperature is 72°F to the outside, where the temperature is 32°F. Outside for $\frac{1}{2}$ minute, the thermometer reads 50°F. What will the thermometer read after it has been outside for 1 minute? How many minutes does the thermometer have to be outside for it to read 35°F?

36. A small metal ball at room temperature 20°C is dropped into a large container of boiling water (100°C). Given that the temperature of the ball increases 2° in 2 seconds, what will be the temperature of the ball 6 seconds after immersion? How long does the ball have to remain in the boiling water for the temperature of the ball to reach 90°C?

37. An object falling from rest in air is subject not only to gravitational force but also to air resistance. Assume that the air resistance is proportional to the velocity and acts in a direction opposite to the motion. Then the velocity of the object at time t satisfies an equation of the form

$$v' = 32 - kv,$$

where k is a positive constant and $v(0) = 0$. Here we are measuring distance in feet and the positive direction is down.

(a) Find $v(t)$.

(b) Show that $v(t)$ cannot exceed $32/k$ and that $v(t) \to 32/k$ as $t \to \infty$.

(c) Sketch the graph of v.

38. Suppose that a certain population P has a birth rate dB/dt and a death rate dD/dt. Then the rate of change of P is the difference

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = \frac{dB}{dt} - \frac{dD}{dt}$$

(a) Assume that $dB/dt = aP$ and $dD/dt = bP$, where a and b are constants. Find $P(t)$ if $P(0) = P_0 > 0$.

(b) What happens to $P(t)$ as $t \to \infty$ if

(i) $a > b$, (ii) $a = b$, (iii) $a < b$?

39. The current i in an electrical circuit consisting of a resistance R, inductance L, and voltage E varies with time according to the formula

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + Ri = E.$$

Take R, L, E as positive constants.

(a) Find $i(t)$ if $i(0) = 0$.

(b) What limit does the current approach as $t \to \infty$?

(c) In how many seconds does the current reach 90% of this limit?

40. The current i in an electrical circuit consisting of a resistance R, inductance L, and a voltage $E \sin \omega t$ varies with time according to the formula

$$L\frac{di}{dt} + Ri = E \sin \omega t.$$

Take R, L, E as positive constants.

(a) Find $i(t)$ if $i(0) = i_0$.

(b) What happens to the current in this case as $t \to \infty$?

(c) Sketch the graph of i.

41. A 200-liter tank, initially full of water, develops a leak at the bottom. Given that 20% of the water leaks out in the first 5 minutes, find the amount of water left in the tank t minutes after the leak develops:

(a) if the water drains off at a rate proportional to the amount of water present.

(b) if the water drains off at a rate proportional to the product of the time elapsed and the amount of water present.

42. At a certain moment a 100-gallon mixing tank is full of brine containing 0.25 pound of salt per gallon. Find the amount of

salt present t minutes later if the brine is being continuously drawn off at the rate of 3 gallons per minute and replaced by brine containing 0.2 pound of salt per gallon.

43. An advertising company introduces a new product to a metropolitan area of population M. Let $P = P(t)$ denote the number of people who become aware of the product by time t. Suppose that P increases at a rate which is proportional to the number of people still unaware of the product. The company determines that no one was aware of the product at the beginning of the campaign $[P(0) = 0]$ and that 30% of the people were aware of the product after 10 days of advertising.

(a) Give the differential equation that describes the number of people who become aware of the product by time t.
(b) Determine the solution of the differential equation from part (a) that satisfies the initial condition $P(0) = 0$.
(c) How long does it take for 90% of the population to become aware of the product?

44. A drug is fed intravenously into a patient's bloodstream at a constant rate r. Simultaneously, the drug diffuses into the patient's body at a rate proportional to the amount of drug present.

(a) Determine the differential equation that describes the amount $Q(t)$ of the drug in the patient's bloodstream at time t.
(b) Determine the solution $Q = Q(t)$ of the differential equation found in part (a) that satisfies the initial condition $Q(0) = 0$.
(c) What happens to $Q(t)$ as $t \to \infty$?

45. (a) The differential equation

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = (2\cos 2\pi t)P$$

models a population that undergoes periodic fluctuations. Assume that $P(0) = 1000$ and find $P(t)$. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of P.

(b) The differential equation

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = (2\cos 2\pi t)P + 2000\cos 2\pi t$$

models a population that undergoes periodic fluctuations as well as periodic migration. Continue to assume that $P(0) = 1000$ and find $P(t)$ in this case. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of P and estimate the maximum value of P.

46. The *Gompertz equation*

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = P(a - b\ln P),$$

where a and b are positive constants, is another model of population growth.

(a) Find the solution of this differential equation that satisfies the initial condition $P(0) = P_0$. HINT: Define a new dependent variable Q by setting $Q = \ln P$.
(b) What happens to $P(t)$ as $t \to \infty$?
(c) Determine the concavity of the graph of P.
(d) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of P in the case where $a = 4$, $b = 2$, and $P_0 = \frac{1}{2}e^2$. Does the graph confirm your result in part (c)?

■ 9.2 INTEGRAL CURVES; SEPARABLE EQUATIONS

Introduction

We begin with a pair of functions P and Q which have continuous derivatives $P' = p$, $Q' = q$ and form the equation

$$(1) \qquad P(x) + Q(y) = C, \qquad C \text{ constant.}$$

Note that in this equation the x's and y's are not intermingled; they are separated.

Equation (1) represents a one-parameter family of curves. Different values of the parameter C give different curves.

If $y = y(x)$ is a differentiable function which on its domain satisfies (1), then by implicit differentiation we find that

$$P'(x) + Q'(y)y' = 0.$$

Since $P' = p$ and $Q' = q$, we have

$$(2) \qquad p(x) + q(y)y' = 0.$$

In this sense, curves (1) satisfy differential equation (2).

What does this mean? It means that if $y = y(x)$ is a differentiable function and its graph lies on one of the curves

$$P(x) + Q(y) = C,$$

then along the graph of the function the numbers x, $y(x)$, $y'(x)$ are related by the equation

$$p(x) + q(y(x))y'(x) = 0.$$

Separable Equations

In our introduction we started with a family of curves in the xy-plane and obtained the differential equation satisfied by these curves in the sense explained. Now we reverse the process. We start with a differential equation and obtain the family of curves which satisfy it. These curves are called the *integral curves* (or *solution curves*) of the differential equation

Our starting point is a differential equation of the form

(9.2.1)
$$\boxed{p(x) + q(y)y' = 0,}$$

with p and q continuous. A differential equation which can be written in this form is called *separable*.

To find the integral curves of (9.2.1), we expand the equation to read

$$p(x) + q(y(x))y'(x) = 0.$$

Integrating this equation with respect to x, we find that

$$\int p(x)\,dx + \int q(y(x))y'(x)\,dx = C,$$

where C is an arbitrary constant. From $y = y(x)$, we have $dy = y'(x)\,dx$. Therefore

$$\int p(x)\,dx + \int q(y)\,dy = C.$$

The variables have been separated. Now, if P is an antiderivative of p and Q is an antiderivative of q, then this last equation can be written

(9.2.2)
$$\boxed{P(x) + Q(y) = C.}$$

This equation represents a one-parameter family of curves, and these curves are the integral curves (solution curves) of the differential equation.

Example 1 The differential equation

$$x + yy' = 0$$

is separable. (The variables are already separated.) We can find the integral curves by writing

$$\int x\,dx + \int y\,dy = C.$$

Carrying out the integration, we have

$$\tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}y^2 + C,$$

which, since C is arbitrary, we can write as

$$x^2 + y^2 = C.$$

For this equation to give us a curve, we must take $C > 0$. (If $C < 0$, there are no real numbers x, y which satisfy the equation. If $C = 0$, there is no curve—just a point, the origin.) For $C > 0$, the equation gives the circle of radius $\sqrt{C}$ centered at the origin. The family of integral curves consists of all circles centered at the origin. ❏

Example 2 Show that the differential equation

$$y + yy' = xy - y'$$

is separable and find an integral curve which satisfies the initial condition $y(2) = 1$.

SOLUTION First we show that the equation is separable. To do this, we write

$$(y+1)y' = y(x-1)$$
$$y(1-x) + (y+1)y' = 0.$$

Next we divide the equation by y. As you can verify, the horizontal line $y = 0$ is an integral curve. However, we can ignore it because it doesn't satisfy the initial condition $y(2) = 1$. With $y \neq 0$, we can write

$$1 - x + \frac{y+1}{y}y' = 0,$$
$$1 - x + \left(1 + \frac{1}{y}\right)y' = 0.$$

The equation is separable. Writing

$$\int (1-x)\,dx + \int \left(1 + \frac{1}{y}\right)\,dy = C,$$

we find that the integral curves take the form

$$x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + y + \ln|y| = C.$$

The condition $y(2) = 1$ forces

$$2 - \tfrac{1}{2}(2)^2 + 1 + \ln(1) = C, \qquad \text{which implies} \qquad C = 1.$$

The integral curve that satisfies the initial condition is the curve

$$x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + y + \ln|y| = 1.$$

Figure 9.2.1 shows the curve for $x > 0$. ❏

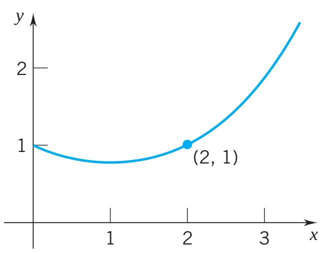


Figure 9.2.1

Functions as Solutions

If the equations of the integral curves can be solved for y in terms of x, then the integral curves are graphs of functions $y = f(x)$. Functions so obtained satisfy the differential equation and are therefore solutions of the differential equation in the ordinary sense.

Example 3 Show that the differential equation

$$y' = xe^{y-x}$$

is separable and find the integral curves. Show that these curves are the graphs of functions. Verify by differentiation that these functions are solutions of the differential equation

SOLUTION The equation is separable since it can be written as

$$xe^{-x} - e^{-y}y' = 0. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

Setting

$$\int xe^{-x}\,dx - \int e^{-y}\,dy = C,$$

we have $-xe^{-x} - e^{-x} + e^{-y} = C$ and therefore

$$e^{-y} = xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C.$$

These equations give the integral curves.

To show that these curves are the graphs of functions, we take the logarithm of both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(e^{-y}) &= \ln(xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C) \\ -y &= \ln(xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C) \\ y &= -\ln(xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C). \end{aligned}$$

The integral curves are the graphs of the functions

$$y = -\ln(xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C).$$

Since

$$y' = -\frac{-xe^{-x} + e^{-x} - e^{-x}}{xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C} = \frac{xe^{-x}}{xe^{-x} + e^{-x} + C} = \frac{xe^{-x}}{e^{-y}},$$

we have

$$y' = xe^{y-x}.$$

This shows that the functions satisfy the differential equation. ❑

Applications

In the mid-nineteenth century the Belgian mathematician P. F. Verhulst used the differential equation

(9.2.3) $$\boxed{\frac{dy}{dt} = ky\,(M - y),}$$

where k and M are positive constants, to model population growth. This equation is now known as the *logistic equation*, and its solutions are functions called *logistic functions*. Life scientists have used this equation to model the spread of disease, and social scientists have used it to study the dissemination of information. In the case of disease, if M denotes the total number of people in the population under consideration and $y(t)$ is the number of infected people at time t, then the differential equation states that the rate of growth of the disease is proportional to the product of the number of people who are infected and the number who are not infected.

The differential equation is separable, since it can be written in the form

$$k - \frac{1}{y(M-y)}y' = 0.$$

Integrating this equation, we have

$$\int k\,dt - \int \frac{1}{y(M-y)}\,dy = C$$

$$kt - \int \left(\frac{1/M}{y} + \frac{1/M}{M-y}\right)dy = C \qquad \text{(partial fraction decomposition)}$$

and therefore

$$\frac{1}{M}\ln|y| - \frac{1}{M}\ln|M-y| = kt + C.$$

These are the integral curves.

It is a good exercise in manipulating logarithms, exponentials, and arbitrary constants to show that such equations can be solved for y in terms of t, and thus the solutions can be expressed as functions of t. The result can be written as

$$y = \frac{CM}{C + e^{-Mkt}}. \qquad \text{(not the same } C \text{ as above)}$$

If R is the number of people initially infected, then the solution function $y = y(t)$ satisfies the initial condition $y(0) = R$. From this we see that

$$R = \frac{CM}{C+1} \quad \text{and therefore} \quad C = \frac{R}{M-R}.$$

As you can check, this value of C gives

(9.2.4)
$$\boxed{y(t) = \frac{MR}{R + (M-R)e^{-Mkt}}.}$$

This particular solution is shown graphically in Figure 9.2.2. Note that y is an increasing function. In the Exercises you are asked to show that the graph is concave up on $[0, t_1]$ and concave down on $[t_1, \infty)$. In the case of a disease, this means that the disease spreads at an increasing rate up to time $t = t_1$; and after t_1 the disease is still spreading, but at a decreasing rate. As $t \to \infty$, $e^{-Mkt} \to 0$, and therefore $y^{(t)} \to M$. Over time, according to this model, the disease will tend to infect the entire population.

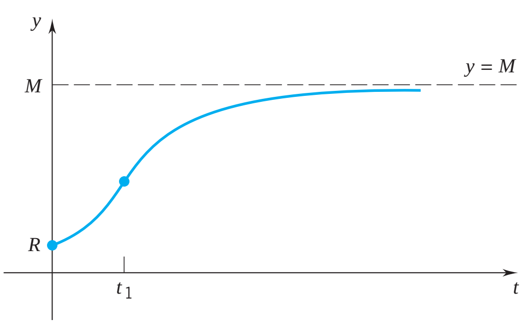


Figure 9.2.2

Example 4 Assume that a rumor spreads through a population of 5000 people at a rate proportional to the product of the number of people who have heard it and the number who have not heard it. Suppose that by a certain day, call it time $t = 0$, 100 people have heard the rumor and 2 days later the rumor is known to 500 people. How long will it take for the rumor to spread to half of the population?

SOLUTION Let $y(t)$ denote the number of people aware of the rumor by time t. Then y satisfies the logistic equation with $M = 5000$ and the initial condition $R = y(0) = 100$. Thus, by (9.2.4),

$$y(t) = \frac{100(5000)}{100 + 4900e^{-5000kt}} = \frac{5000}{1 + 49e^{-5000kt}}.$$

The constant of proportionality k can be determined from the condition $y(2) = 500$:

$$500 = \frac{5000}{1 + 49e^{-10,000k}}, \qquad 1 + 49e^{-10,000\,k} = 10, \qquad e^{-10,000\,k} = \frac{9}{49}.$$

Therefore

$$-10,000k = \ln(9/49) \qquad \text{and} \qquad k \cong 0.00017.$$

Taking k as 0.00017, we have

$$y(t) = \frac{5000}{1 + 49e^{-0.85t}}.$$

To determine how long it will take for the rumor to spread to half of the population, we seek the value of t for which

$$2500 = \frac{5000}{1 + 49e^{-0.85t}}.$$

Solving this equation for t, we get

$$1 + 49e^{-0.85t} = 2, \qquad e^{-0.85t} = \frac{1}{49}, \qquad t = \frac{\ln(1/49)}{-0.85} \cong 4.58.$$

It will take slightly more than $4\frac{1}{2}$ days for the rumor to spread to half of the population. ❑

Differential Notation

The equation

(1) $$p(x) + q(y)y' = 0$$

can obviously be written

(2) $$p(x) + q(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0.$$

In differential notation the equation reads

(3) $$p(x)\,dx + q(y)\,dy = 0.$$

These equations are equivalent and can all be solved by setting

$$\int p(x)\,dx + \int q(y)\,dy = C.$$

Of these formulations we prefer (1) and (2) because they are easy to understand in terms of the notions we have emphasized; some authors prefer (3) because it leads more directly to the method of solution:

$$\int p(x)\,dx + \int q(y)\,dy = C.$$

EXERCISES 9.2

Exercises 1–12. Find the integral curves. If the curves are the graphs of functions $y = f(x)$, determine all the functions that satisfy the equation.

1. $y' = y\sin(2x+3)$.

2. $y' = (x^2+1)(y^2+y)$.

3. $y' = (xy)^3$.

4. $y' = 3x^2(1+y^2)$.

5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\sin 1/x}{x^2 y \cos y}$.

6. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y^2+1}{y+xy}$.

7. $y' = xe^{x+y}$.

8. $y' = xy^2 - x - y^2 + 1$.

9. $(y\ln x)\,y' = \dfrac{(y+1)^2}{x}$.

10. $e^y \sin 2x\,dx + \cos x\,(e^{2y} - y)\,dy = 0$.

11. $(y\ln x)y' = \dfrac{y^2+1}{x}$.

12. $y' = \dfrac{1+2y^2}{y\sin x}$.

Exercises 13–20. Solve the initial-value problem.

13. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x\sqrt{\dfrac{1-y^2}{1-x^2}}, \quad y(0) = 0$.

14. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{e^{x-y}}{1+e^x}, \quad y(1) = 0$.

15. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2y - y}{y+1}, \quad y(3) = 1$.

16. $x^2y' = y - xy, \quad y(-1) = -1$.

17. $(xy^2 + y^2 + x + 1)\,dx + (y-1)\,dy = 0, \quad y(2) = 0$.

18. $\cos y\,dx + (1 + e^{-x})\sin y\,dy = 0, \quad y(0) = \pi/4$.

19. $y' = 6e^{2x-y}, \quad y(0) = 0$.

20. $xy' - y = 2x^2y, \quad y(1) = 1$.

21. Suppose that a chemical A combines with a chemical B to form a compound C. In addition, suppose that the rate at which C is produced at time t varies directly with the amounts of A and B present at time t. With this model, if A_0 grams of A are mixed with B_0 grams of B, then

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = k(A_0 - C)(B_0 - C).$$

(a) Find the amount of compound C present at time t if $A_0 = B_0$.
(b) Find the amount of compound C present at time t if $A_0 \neq B_0$.

22. Assume that the growth of a certain biological culture is modeled by the differential equation

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = 0.0020S\,(800 - S),$$

where $S = S(t)$ denotes the size of the culture, measured in square millimeters, at time t. When first observed, at time $t = 0$, the culture occupied an area of 100 square millimeters.

(a) Determine the size of the culture at each later time t.
(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the graphs of S and dS/dt.
(c) At what time t does the culture grow most rapidly? Use three decimal place accuracy.

23. When an object of mass m moves through air or a viscous medium, it is acted on by a frictional force that acts in the direction opposite to its motion. This frictional force depends on the velocity of the object and (within close approximation) is given by

$$F(v) = -\alpha v - \beta v^2,$$

where α and β are positive constants.

(a) From Newton's second law, $F = ma$, we have

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = -\alpha v - \beta v^2.$$

Solve this differential equation to find $v = v(t)$.
(b) Find v if the object has initial velocity $v(0) = v_0$.
(c) What happens to $v(t)$ as $t \to \infty$?

24. A descending parachutist is acted on by two forces: a constant downward force mg and the upward force of air resistance, which (within close approximation) is of the form $-\beta v^2$ where β is a positive constant. (In this problem we are taking the downward direction as positive.)

(a) Express t in terms of the velocity v, the initial velocity v_0, and the constant $v_c = \sqrt{mg/\beta}$.
(b) Express v as a function of t.
(c) Express the acceleration a as a function of t. Verify that the acceleration never changes sign and in time tends to zero.
(d) Show that in time v tends to v_c. (This number v_c is called the *terminal velocity*.)

25. A flu virus is spreading rapidly through a small town with a population of 25,000. The virus is spreading at a rate proportional to the product of the number of people who have been infected and the number who haven't been infected. When first reported, at time $t = 0$, 100 people had been infected and 10 days later, 400 people.

(a) How many people will have been infected by time t? (Measure t in days.)
(b) How long will it take for the infection to reach half of the population?
(c) Use a graphing utility to graph the function you found in part (a).

26. Let y be the logistic function (9.2.4). Show that dy/dt increases for $y < M/2$ and decreases for $y > M/2$. What can you conclude about dy/dt when $y = M/2$? Explain.

27. A rescue package of mass 100 kilograms is dropped from a plane flying at a height of 4000 meters. As the object falls, the air resistance is equal to twice its velocity. After 10 seconds, the package's parachute opens and the air resistance is now four times the square of its velocity.

(a) What is the velocity of the package the instant the parachute opens?
(b) What is the velocity of the package t seconds after the parachute opens?
(c) What is the terminal velocity of the package?

HINT: There are two differential equations that govern the package's velocity and position: one for the free-fall period and one for the period after the parachute opens.

28. It is known that m parts of chemical A combine with n parts of chemical B to produce a compound C. Suppose that the rate at which C is produced varies directly with the product of the amounts of A and B present at that instant. Find the amount of C produced in t minutes from an initial mixing of A_0 pounds of A with B_0 pounds of B, given that:

(a) $n = m$, $A_0 = B_0$, and A_0 pounds of C are produced in the first minute.

(b) $n = m$, $A_0 = \frac{1}{2}B_0$, and A_0 pounds of C are produced in the first minute.

(c) $n \neq m$, $A_0 = B_0$, and A_0 pounds of C are produced in the first minute.

HINT: Denote by $A(t)$, $B(t)$, $C(t)$ the amounts of A, B, C present at time t. Observe that $C'(t) = kA(t)B(t)$. Then note that

$$A_0 - A(t) = \frac{m}{m+n}C(t) \quad \text{and} \quad B_0 - B(t) = \frac{n}{m+n}C(t)$$

and thus

$$C'(t) = k\left[A_0 - \frac{m}{m+n}C(t)\right]\left[B_0 - \frac{n}{m+n}C(t)\right].$$

■ PROJECT 9.2 ORTHOGONAL TRAJECTORIES

If two curves intersect at right angles, one with slope m_1 and the other with slope m_2, then $m_1 m_2 = -1$. A curve that intersects every member of a family of curves at right angles is called an *orthogonal trajectory* for that family of curves.

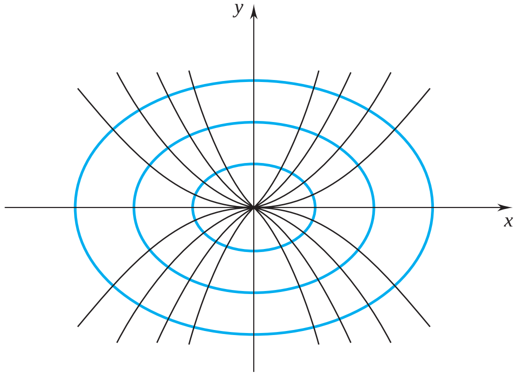
A differential equation of the form

$$y' = f(x, y),$$

where $f(x, y)$ is an expression in x and y, generates a family of curves: all the integral curves of that particular equation. The orthogonal trajectories of this family are the integral curves of the differential equation

$$y' = -\frac{1}{f(x, y)}.$$

The figure indicates a family of parabolas $y = Cx^2$. The orthogonal trajectories of this family of parabolas constitute a family of ellipses.



We can establish this by starting with the equation

$$y = Cx^2$$

and differentiating. Differentiation gives

$$y' = 2Cx.$$

Since $y = Cx^2$, we have $C = y/x^2$, and thus

$$y' = 2\left(\frac{y}{x^2}\right)x = \frac{2y}{x}.$$

The orthogonal trajectories are the integral curves of the differential equation

$$y' = -\frac{x}{2y}.$$

As you can check, the solutions of this equation can be written in the form

$$x^2 + 2y^2 = K^2.$$

Problem 1. Find the orthogonal trajectories of the following families of curves. In each case draw several of the curves and several of the orthogonal trajectories.

a. $2x + 3y = C$. **b.** $y = Cx$.
c. $xy = C$. **d.** $y = Cx^3$.
e. $y = Ce^x$. **f.** $x = Cy^4$.

Problem 2. Find the orthogonal trajectories of the following families of curves. In each case use a CAS to draw several of the curves and several of the orthogonal trajectories. If you can, graph the curves in one color and the orthogonal trajectories in another.

a. $y^2 - x^2 = C$. **b.** $y^2 = Cx^3$.
c. $y = \dfrac{Ce^x}{x}$. **d.** $e^x \sin y = C$.

Problem 3. Show that the given family of curves is *self-orthogonal*. Use a graphing utility to graph at least four members of the family.

a. $y^2 = 4C(x + C)$. **b.** $\dfrac{x^2}{C^2} + \dfrac{y^2}{C^2 - 4} = 1$.

■ 9.3 THE EQUATION $y'' + ay' + by = 0$

A differential equation of the form

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0, \tag{9.3.1}$$

where a and b are real numbers, is called a *homogeneous second-order linear differential equation with constant coefficients*.

By a *solution* of this equation, we mean a function $y = y(x)$ that satisfies the equation for all real x.

The Characteristic Equation

As you can readily verify, the function $y = e^{-ax}$ satisfies the differential equation

$$y' + ay = 0. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

This suggests that the differential equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

may have a solution of the form $y = e^{rx}$.

If $y = e^{rx}$, then

$$y' = re^{rx} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y'' = r^2e^{rx}.$$

Substitution into the differential equation gives

$$r^2e^{rx} + are^{rx} + b\,e^{rx} = e^{rx}(r^2 + ar + b) = 0,$$

and since $e^{rx} \neq 0$,

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0.$$

This shows that the function $y = e^{rx}$ satisfies the differential equation iff

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0.$$

This quadratic equation in r is called the *characteristic equation*.

The nature of the solutions of the differential equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

depends on the nature of the characteristic equation. There are three cases to be considered: the characteristic equation has two distinct real roots; it has only one real root; it has no real roots. We'll consider these cases one at a time.

Case 1: The characteristic equation has two distinct real roots r_1 and r_2. In this case both

$$y_1 = e^{r_1x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_2 = e^{r_2x}$$

are solutions of the differential equation.

Case 2: The characteristic equation has only one real root $r = \alpha$. In this case the characteristic equation takes the form

$$(r - \alpha)^2 = 0.$$

This can be written

$$r^2 - 2\alpha r + \alpha^2 = 0.$$

The differential equation then reads

$$y'' - 2\alpha y' + \alpha^2 y = 0.$$

As you are asked to show in Exercise 33, the substitution $y = ue^{\alpha x}$ gives

$$u'' = 0.$$

This equation is satisfied by

the constant function $\quad u_1 = 1 \quad$ and $\quad$ the identity function $u_2 = x$.

Thus the original differential equation is satisfied by the products

$$y_1 = e^{\alpha x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_2 = xe^{\alpha x}. \qquad \text{(Verify this.)}$$

Case 3: The characteristic equation has two complex roots

$$r_1 = \alpha + i\beta, \qquad r_2 = \alpha - i\beta \qquad \text{with } \beta \neq 0.$$

In this case the characteristic equation takes the form

$$(r - \alpha - i\beta)(r - \alpha + i\beta) = 0,$$

which, multiplied out, becomes

$$r^2 - 2\alpha r + (\alpha^2 + \beta^2) = 0.$$

The differential equation thus reads

$$y'' - 2\alpha y' + (\alpha^2 + \beta^2)y = 0.$$

As you are asked to show in Exercise 33, the substitution $y = ue^{\alpha x}$ eliminates α and gives

$$u'' + \beta^2 u = 0.$$

This equation, the equation of simple harmonic motion, is satisfied by the functions

$$u_1 = \cos \beta x \qquad \text{and} \qquad u_2 = \sin \beta x.^\dagger$$

Thus, the original differential equation is satisfied by the products

$$y_1 = e^{\alpha x} \cos \beta x \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_2 = e^{\alpha x} \sin \beta x.$$

Linear Combinations of Solutions; Existence and Uniqueness of Solutions; Wronskians

Observe that *if y_1 and y_2 are both solutions of the homogeneous equation, then every linear combination*

$$u(x) = C_1 y_1(x) + C_2 y_2(x)$$

is also a solution.

PROOF Set

$$u = C_1 y_1 + C_2 y_2$$

and observe that

$$u' = C_1 y_1' + C_2 y_2' \qquad \text{and} \qquad u'' = C_1 y_1'' + C_2 y_2''.$$

† You have seen this before. In any case, you can easily verify it by differentiation.

Since y_1 and y_2 are solutions of (9.3.1),

$$y_1'' + ay_1' + by_1 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_2'' + ay_2' + by_2 = 0.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} u'' + au' + bu &= (C_1y_1'' + C_2y_2'') + a(C_1y_1' + C_2y_2') + b(C_1y_1 + C_2y_2) \\ &= C_1(y_1'' + ay_1' + by_1) + C_2(y_2'' + ay_2' + by_2) \\ &= C_1(0) + C_2(0) = 0. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

You have seen how to obtain solutions of the differential equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

from the characteristic equation

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0.$$

We can form more solutions by taking linear combinations of these solutions. Question: Are there still other solutions or do all solutions arise in this manner? Answer: All solutions of the homogeneous equation are linear combinations of the solutions that we have already found.

To show this, we have to go a little deeper into the theory. Our point of departure is a result that we prove in a supplement to this section.

THEOREM 9.3.2

EXISTENCE AND UNIQUENESS THEOREM
Let x_0, α_0, α_1 be arbitrary real numbers. The homogeneous equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

has a unique solution $y = y(x)$ that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(x_0) = \alpha_0, \qquad y'(x_0) = \alpha_1.$$

Geometrically, the theorem says that there is one and only one solution the graph of which passes through a prescribed point (x_0, α_0) with prescribed slope α_1. We assume the result and go on from there.

DEFINITION 9.3.3

Let y_1 and y_2 be two solutions of

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0.$$

The *Wronskian*[†] of y_1 and y_2 is the function W defined for all real x by

$$W(x) = y_1(x)y_2'(x) - y_2(x)y_1'(x).$$

[†]Named after Count Hoene Wronski, a Polish mathematician (1776–1853).

Note that the Wronskian can be written as the 2×2 determinant

$$W(x) = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(x) & y_2(x) \\ y_1'(x) & y_2'(x) \end{vmatrix}. \qquad \text{(Appendix A.2)}$$

Wronskians have a very special property.

THEOREM 9.3.4

If both y_1 and y_2 are solutions of

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0,$$

then their Wronskian W is either identically zero or never zero.

PROOF Assume that both y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the equation and set

$$W = y_1 y_2' - y_2 y_1'.$$

Differentiation gives

$$W' = y_1 y_2'' + y_1' y_2' - y_1' y_2' - y_1'' y_2' = y_1 y_2'' - y_1'' y_2.$$

Since y_1 and y_2 are solutions, we know that

$$y_1'' + ay_1' + by_1 = 0$$

and

$$y_2'' + ay_2' + by_2 = 0.$$

Multiplying the first equation by $-y_2$ and the second equation by y_1, we have

$$\begin{aligned} -y_1'' y_2 - ay_1' y_2 - by_1 y_2 &= 0 \\ y_2'' y_1 + ay_2' y_1 + by_2 y_1 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

We now add these two equations and obtain

$$(y_1 y_2'' - y_2 y_1'') + a(y_1 y_2' - y_2 y_1') = 0.$$

In terms of the Wronskian, we have

$$W' + aW = 0.$$

This is a first-order linear differential equation with general solution

$$W(x) = Ce^{-ax}.$$

If $C = 0$, then W is identically 0; if $C \neq 0$, then W is never zero. ❑

THEOREM 9.3.5

Every solution of the homogeneous equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

can be expressed in a unique manner as the linear combination of any two solutions with a nonzero Wronskian.

PROOF Let u be any solution of the equation and let y_1, y_2 be any two solutions with nonzero Wronskian. Choose a number x_0 and form the equations

$$C_1 y_1(x_0) + C_2 y_2(x_0) = u(x_0)$$
$$C_1 y_1'(x_0) + C_2 y_2'(x_0) = u'(x_0).$$

The Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 at x_0,

$$W(x_0) = y_1(x_0)y_2'(x_0) - y_2(x_0)y_1'(x_0),$$

is different from zero. This guarantees that the system of equations (1) has a unique solution given by

$$C_1 = \frac{u(x_0)y_2'(x_0) - y_2(x_0)u'(x_0)}{y_1(x_0)y_2'(x_0) - y_2(x_0)y_1'(x_0)}, \qquad C_2 = \frac{y_1(x_0)u'(x_0) - u(x_0)y_1'(x_0)}{y_1(x_0)y_2'(x_0) - y_2(x_0)y_1'(x_0)}.$$

Our work is finished. The function $C_1y_1 + C_2y_2$ is a solution of the equation which by (1) has the same value as u at x_0 and the same derivative. Thus, by Theorem 9.3.2, $C_1y_1 + C_2y_2$ and u cannot be different functions; that is,

$$u = C_1y_1 + C_2y_2.$$

This proves the theorem. ❑

The General Solution

The arbitrary linear combination $y = C_1y_1 + C_2y_2$ of any two solutions with nonzero Wronskian is called the *general solution*. By the theorem we just proved, we can obtain any *particular* solution by adjusting C_1 and C_2.

We now return to the solutions obtained earlier and prove the final result, for practical purposes the summarizing result.

THEOREM 9.3.6

Given the equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0,$$

we form the characteristic equation

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0.$$

I. If the characteristic equation has two distinct real roots r_1 and r_2, then the general solution takes the form

$$y = C_1e^{r_1x} + C_2e^{r_2x}.$$

II. If the characteristic equation has only one real root $r = \alpha$, then the general solution takes the form

$$y = C_1e^{\alpha x} + C_2xe^{\alpha x} = (C_1 + C_2x)e^{\alpha x}.$$

III. If the characteristic equation has two complex roots,

$$r_1 = \alpha + i\beta \qquad \text{and} \qquad r_2 = \alpha - i\beta,$$

then the general solution takes the form

$$y = C_1e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x + C_2e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x = e^{\alpha x}(C_1\cos\beta x + C_2\sin\beta x).$$

PROOF To prove this theorem, it is enough to show that the three solution pairs

$$e^{r_1 x},\, e^{r_2 x} \qquad e^{\alpha x},\, x\, e^{\alpha x} \qquad e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x,\, e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x$$

all have nonzero Wronskians. The Wronskian of the first pair is the function

$$\begin{aligned} W(x) &= e^{r_1 x}\frac{d}{dx}(e^{r_2 x}) - \frac{d}{dx}(e^{r_1 x})e^{r_2 x} \\ &= e^{r_1 x} r_2\, e^{r_2 x} - r_1\, e^{r_1 x}\, e^{r_2 x} = (r_2 - r_1)\, e^{(r_1+r_2)x}. \end{aligned}$$

$W(x)$ is different from zero since, by assumption, $r_2 \neq r_1$.

We leave it to you to verify that the other pairs also have nonzero Wronskians. ❑

It is time to use what we have learned.

Example 1 Find the general solution of the equation $y'' + 2y' - 15y = 0$. Then find the particular solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \qquad y'(0) = -1.$$

SOLUTION The characteristic equation is the quadratic $r^2 + 2r - 15 = 0$. Factoring the left side, we have

$$(r+5)(r-3) = 0.$$

There are two real roots: -5 and 3. The general solution takes the form

$$y = C_1\, e^{-5x} + C_2\, e^{3x}.$$

Differentiating the general solution, we have

$$y' = -5C_1\, e^{-5x} + 3C_2\, e^{3x}.$$

The conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \qquad y'(0) = -1$$

are satisfied iff

$$C_1 + C_2 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -5C_1 + 3C_2 = -1.$$

Solving these two equations simultaneously, we find that

$$C_1 = \tfrac{1}{8}, \qquad C_2 = -\tfrac{1}{8}.$$

The solution that satisfies the prescribed initial conditions is the function

$$y = \tfrac{1}{8}e^{-5x} - \tfrac{1}{8}e^{3x}. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find the general solution of the equation $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0$.

SOLUTION The characteristic equation takes the form $r^2 + 4r + 4 = 0$, which can be written

$$(r+2)^2 = 0.$$

The number -2 is the only root and

$$y = C_1 e^{-2x} + C_2 x e^{-2x}$$

is the general solution. ❑

Example 3 Find the general solution of the equation $y'' + y + 3y = 0$.

SOLUTION The characteristic equation is $r^2 + r + 3 = 0$. The quadratic formula shows that there are two complex roots:

$$r_1 = -\tfrac{1}{2} + i\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{11}, \qquad r_2 = -\tfrac{1}{2} - i\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{11}.$$

The general solution takes the form

$$y = e^{-x/2}[C_1 \cos(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{11}x) + C_2 \sin(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{11}x)]. \quad ❑$$

In our final example we revisit the equation of simple harmonic motion.

Example 4 Find the general solution of the equation

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = 0. \qquad (\omega \neq 0).$$

SOLUTION The characteristic equation is $r^2 + \omega^2 = 0$ and the roots are

$$r_1 = \omega i, \qquad r_2 = -\omega i.$$

Thus the general solution is

$$y = C_1 \cos \omega x + C_2 \sin \omega x. \quad ❑$$

Remark As you probably recall, the equation in Example 4 describes the oscillatory motion of an object suspended by a spring under the assumption that there are no forces acting on the spring-mass system other than the restoring force of the spring. This spring-mass problem and some generalizations of it are studied in Section 19.5. In the Exercises you are asked to show that the general solution that we gave above can be written

$$y = A \sin(\omega x + \phi_0),$$

where A and ϕ_0 are constants with $A > 0$ and $\phi_0 \in [0, 2\pi)$. ❑

EXERCISES 9.3

Exercises 1–18. Find the general solution.

1. $y'' + 2y' - 8y = 0$.
2. $y'' - 13y' + 42y = 0$.
3. $y'' + 8y' + 16y = 0$.
4. $y'' + 7y' + 3y = 0$.
5. $y'' + 2y' + 5y' = 0$.
6. $y'' - 3y' + 8y = 0$.
7. $2y'' + 5y' - 3y = 0$.
8. $y'' - 12y = 0$.
9. $y'' + 12y = 0$.
10. $y'' - 3y' + \frac{9}{4}y = 0$.
11. $5y'' + \frac{11}{4}y' - \frac{3}{4}y = 0$.
12. $2y'' + 3y' = 0$.
13. $y'' + 9y = 0$.
14. $y'' - y' - 30y = 0$.
15. $2y'' + 2y' + y' = 0$.
16. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = 0$.
17. $8y'' + 2y' - y = 0$.
18. $5y'' - 2y' + y = 0$.

Exercises 19–24. Solve the initial-value problem.

19. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$.
20. $y'' + 2y' + y = 0, \quad y(2) = 1, \quad y'(2) = 2$.
21. $y'' + \frac{1}{4}y = 0, \quad y(\pi) = 1, \quad y'(\pi) = -1$.
22. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = -1, \quad y'(0) = -1$.
23. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 2, \quad y'(-1) = 1$.
24. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = 0, \quad y'(\pi/2) = 2$.

25. Find all solutions of the equation $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$ that satisfy the given conditions:
(a) $y(0) = 1$. (b) $y'(0) = 1$.
(c) $y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$.

26. Show that the general solution of the differential equation

$$y'' - \omega^2 y = 0 \qquad (\omega > 0)$$

can be written

$$y = C_1 \cosh \omega x + C_2 \sinh \omega x.$$

27. Suppose that the roots r_1 and r_2 of the characteristic equation are real and distinct. Then they can be written as $r_1 = \alpha + \beta$ and $r_2 = \alpha - \beta$, where α and β are real. Show that the general solution of the homogeneous equation can be expressed in the form

$$y = e^{\alpha x}(C_1 \cosh \beta x + C_2 \sinh \beta x).$$

28. Show that the general solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = 0$$

can be written

$$y = A\ \sin(\omega x + \phi_0)$$

where A and ϕ_0 are constants with $A > 0$ and $\phi_0 \in [0, 2\pi)$.

29. Complete the proof of Theorem 9.3.6 by showing that the following solutions have nonzero Wronskians.

(a) $y_1 = e^{\alpha x}, \quad y_2 = x\,e^{\alpha x}$. (one root case)

(b) $y_1 = e^{\alpha x}\cos\beta x, \ y_2 = e^{\alpha x}\sin\beta x$. (complex root case)

30. In the absence of any external electromotive force, the current i in a simple electrical circuit varies with time t according to the formula

$$L\frac{d^2 i}{dt^2} + R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = 0. \qquad (L, R, C \text{ constants})^\dagger$$

Find the general solution of this equation given that $L = 1$, $R = 10^3$, and

(a) $C = 5 \times 10^{-6}$.

(b) $C = 4 \times 10^{-6}$.

(c) $C = 2 \times 10^{-6}$.

31. Find a differential equation $y'' + ay' + by = 0$ that is satisfied by both functions.

(a) $y_1 = e^{2x}, \quad y_2 = e^{-4x}$.

(b) $y_1 = 3\,e^{-x}, \quad y_2 = 4\,e^{5x}$.

(c) $y_1 = 2\,e^{3x}, \quad y_2 = xe^{3x}$.

32. Find a differential equation $y'' + ay' + by = 0$ that is satisfied by both functions.

(a) $y_1 = 2\cos 2x, \quad y_2 = -\sin 2x$.

(b) $y_1 = e^{-2x}\cos 3x, \quad y_2 = 2e^{-2x}\sin\ 3x$.

33. (a) Show that the substitution $y = e^{\alpha x}u$ transforms

$$y'' - 2\alpha y' + \alpha^2 y = 0 \qquad \text{into} \qquad u'' = 0.$$

(b) Show that the substitution $y = e^{\alpha x}u$ transforms

$$y'' - 2\alpha y' + (\alpha^2 + \beta^2)y = 0 \quad \text{into} \quad u'' + \beta^2 u = 0.$$

Exercises 34 and 35 relate to the differential equation $y'' + ay' + by = 0$, where a and b are nonnegative constants.

34. Prove that if a and b are both positive, then $y(x) \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$ for all solutions y of the equation.

35. (a) Prove that if $a = 0$ and $b > 0$, then all solutions of the equation are bounded.

(b) Suppose that $a > 0$, $b = 0$, and $y = y(x)$ is a solution of the equation. Prove that

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} y(x) = k$$

for some constant k. Determine k for the solution that satisfies the initial conditions: $y(0) = y_0$, $y'(0) = y_1$.

36. (*Important*) Let y_1, y_2 be solutions of the homogeneous equation. Show that the Wronskian of y_1, y_2 is zero iff one of these functions is a scalar multiple of the other.

37. Let y_1, y_2 be solutions of the homogeneous equation. Show that if $y_1(x_0) = y_2(x_0) = 0$ for some number x_0, then one of these functions is a scalar multiple of the other.

(Euler equation) An equation of the form

$$(*) \qquad x^2 y'' + \alpha x y' + \beta y = 0,$$

where α and β are real numbers, is called an *Euler equation.*

38. Show that the Euler equation $(*)$ can be transformed into an equation of the form

$$\frac{d^2y}{dz^2} + a\frac{dy}{dz} + by = 0$$

where a and b are real numbers, by means of the change of variable $z = \ln x$. HINT: If $z = \ln x$, then by the chain rule,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dz}\frac{dz}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dz}\frac{1}{x}.$$

Now calculate d^2y/dx^2 and substitute the result into the differential equation.

Exercises 39–42. Use the change of variable indicated in Exercise 38 to transform the given equation into an equation with constant coefficients. Find the general solution of that equation, and then express it in terms of x.

39. $x^2y'' - xy' - 8y = 0$.

40. $x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 0$.

41. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = 0$.

42. $x^2y'' - xy' + 5y = 0$.

† L is inductance, R is resistance, and C is capacitance. If L is given in henrys, R in ohms, C in farads, and t in seconds, then the current is given in amperes.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 9.3

PROOF OF THEOREM 9.3.2

Existence: Take two solutions y_1, y_2 with nonzero Wronskian

$$W(x) = y_1(x)y_2'(x) - y_2(x)y_1'(x).$$

For any numbers x_0, α_0, α_1 the equations

$$C_1y_1(x_0) + C_2y_2(x_0) = \alpha_0$$

$$C_1y_1'(x_0) + C_2y_2'(x_0) = \alpha_1$$

can be solved for C_1 and C_2. For those values of C_1 and C_2, the function

$$y = C_1y_1 + C_2y_2$$

is a solution of the homogeneous equation that satisfies the prescribed initial conditions.

Uniqueness: Let us assume that there are two distinct solutions y_1, y_2 that satisfy the same prescribed initial conditions

$$y_1(x_0) = \alpha_0 = y_2(x_0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_1'(x_0) = \alpha_1 = y_2'(x_0).$$

Then the solution $y = y_1 - y_2$ satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(x_0) = 0,\ y'(x_0) = 0.$$

Since y_1 and y_2 are, by assumption, distinct functions, there is at least one number x_1 at which y is not zero. Therefore, by the continuity of y there exists an interval I on which y does not take on the value zero.

Now let u be *any* solution of the homogeneous equation. The Wronskian of y and u is zero at x_0:

$$W(x_0) = y(x_0)u'(x_0) - u(x_0)y'(x_0) = (0)u'(x_0) - u(x_0)(0) = 0.$$

Therefore the Wronskian of y and u is everywhere zero. Since $y(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \in I$, the quotient u/y is defined on I, and on that interval

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u}{y}\right) = \frac{yu' - uy'}{y^2} = \frac{W}{y^2} = 0, \qquad \frac{u}{y} = C, \qquad \text{and} \qquad u = Cy.$$

We have shown that on the interval I every solution is some scalar multiple of y.

Now let u_1 and u_2 be any two solutions with a nonzero Wronskian W. From what we have just shown, there are constants C_1 and C_2 such that on I

$$u_1 = C_1 y \qquad \text{and} \qquad u_2 = C_2 y.$$

Then on I

$$W = u_1u_2' - u_2u_1' = (C_1y)(C_2y') - (C_2y)(C_1y') = C_1C_2(yy' - yy') = 0.$$

This contradicts the statement that $W \neq 0$.

The assumption that there are two distinct solutions that satisfy the same prescribed initial conditions has led to a contradiction. This proves uniqueness.

CHAPTER 9. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–10. Find the general solution.

1. $y' + y = 2e^{-2x}$.

2. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2y\ \cos 2x}{2y^2 + 1}$.

3. $y^2 + 1 = yy'\ \sec^2 x$.

4. $\dfrac{y}{x}y' = \dfrac{e^x}{\ln\ y}$.

5. $x^2y' + 3xy = \sin 2x$.

6. $xy' + 2y = 2e^{x^2}$.

7. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1 + x^2 + y^2 + x^2y^2$.

8. $y' = \dfrac{x^2y - y}{y + 1}$.

9. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^3 - 2y}{x}$.

10. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = xy^2\sqrt{1 + x^2}$.

Exercises 11–14. Solve the initial-value problem.

11. $x^2y' + xy = 2 + x^2; \quad y(1) = 2$.

12. $yy' = 4x\sqrt{y^2 + 1}; \quad y(0) = 1$.

13. $e^{-x}y' = e^x - 2e^x y; \quad y(0) = \dfrac{1}{2} + \dfrac{1}{e}$.

14. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \sec y\ \tan\ x; \quad y(0) = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$.

Exercises 15–22. Find the general solution.

15. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0$.

16. $y'' + y' + \frac{1}{4}y = 0$.

17. $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$.

18. $y'' - 4y' = 0$.

19. $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0$.

20. $y'' + 4y = 0$.

21. $y'' + 4y' + 13y = 0$.

22. $3y'' - 5y' - 2y = 0$.

Exercises 23–26. Solve the initial-value problem.

23. $y'' - y' = 0; \quad y(0) = 1,\ y'(0) = 0$.

24. $y'' + 7y' + 12y = 0; \quad y(0) = 2,\ y'(0) = 8$.

25. $y'' - 6y' + 13y = 0; \quad y(0) = 2,\ y'(0) = 2$.

26. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0; \quad y(-1) = 2,\ y'(-1) = 1$.

Exercises 27–28. Find the orthogonal trajectories of the family of curves.

27. $y = Ce^{2x}$.

28. $y = \dfrac{C}{1 + x^2}$.

Exercises 29–30. Find the values of r, if any, for which $y = x^r$ is a solution of the equation.

29. $x^2y'' + 4xy + 2y = 0$. **30.** $x^2y'' - xy' - 8y = 0$.

31. An investor has found a business that is increasing in value at a rate proportional to the square of its present value. If the business was worth 1 million dollars one year ago and is worth 1.5 million dollars today, how much will it be worth 1 year from now? One and one-half years from now? Two years from now?

32. An investor has found a business that is increasing in value at a rate proportional to the square root of its present value. If the business was worth 1 million dollars two years ago and is worth 1.44 million dollars today, how much will it be worth 5 years from now? When will the business be worth 4 million dollars?

33. The rate at which a certain drug is absorbed into the bloodstream is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = a - by$$

where a and b are positive constants and $y = y(t)$ is the amount of the drug in the bloodstream at time t (hours).

(a) Find the solution of the differential equation that satisfies the initial condition $y(0) = 0$.
(b) Show that $\lim_{t\to\infty} y(t)$ exists and give the value of this limit.
(c) How long will it take for the concentration of the drug to reach 90% of its limiting value?

34. A metal bar at a temperature of 100°C is placed in a freezer kept at a constant temperature of 0°C. After 20 minutes the temperature of the bar is 50°C.

(a) What is the temperature of the bar after 30 minutes?
(b) How long will it take for the temperature of the bar to reach 25°C?

35. An object at an unknown temperature is placed in a room which is held at a constant temperature of 70°F. After 10 minutes the temperature of the object is 20°F and after 20 minutes its temperature is 35°F.

(a) Find an expression for the temperature of the object at time t.
(b) What was the temperature of the object when it was placed in the room?

36. A 1200-gallon tank initially contains 40 pounds of salt dissolved in 600 gallons of water. Water containing 1/2 pound of salt per gallon is poured into the tank at the rate of 6 gallons per minute. The mixture is continually stirred and is drained from the tank at the rate of 4 gallon per minute.

(a) Find T, the length of time needed to fill the tank.
(b) Find the amount of salt in the tank at any time t, $0 \le t \le T$.
(c) Find the amount of salt in the tank at the instant it overflows.

37. A tank initially holds 80 gallons of a brine solution containing 1/8 pounds of salt per gallon. Another brine solution containing 1 pound of salt per gallon is poured into the tank at the rate of 4 gallons per minute. The mixture is continuously stirred and is drained from the tank at the rate of 8 gallons per minute.

(a) Find T, the length of time needed to empty the tank.
(b) Find the amount of salt in the tank at any time t, $0 \le t \le T$.
(c) Find the amount of salt in the tank at the instant it contains exactly 40 gallons of the solution.

C **38.** The differential equation

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = P(10^{-1} - 10^{-5}P)$$

models the population of a certain community. Assume that $P(0) = 2000$ and that time t is measured in months.

(a) Find $P(t)$ and show that $\lim_{t\to\infty} P(t)$ exists.
(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of P and estimate how long it will take for the population to reach 90% of its limiting value.

39. A rumor is spreading through a town with a population of 20,000. The rumor is spreading at a rate proportional to the product of the number of people who have heard it and the number of people who have not heard it. Ten days ago 500 people had heard the rumor; today 1200 have heard it.

(a) How many people will have heard the rumor 10 days from now?
(b) At what time will the rumor be spreading the fastest?

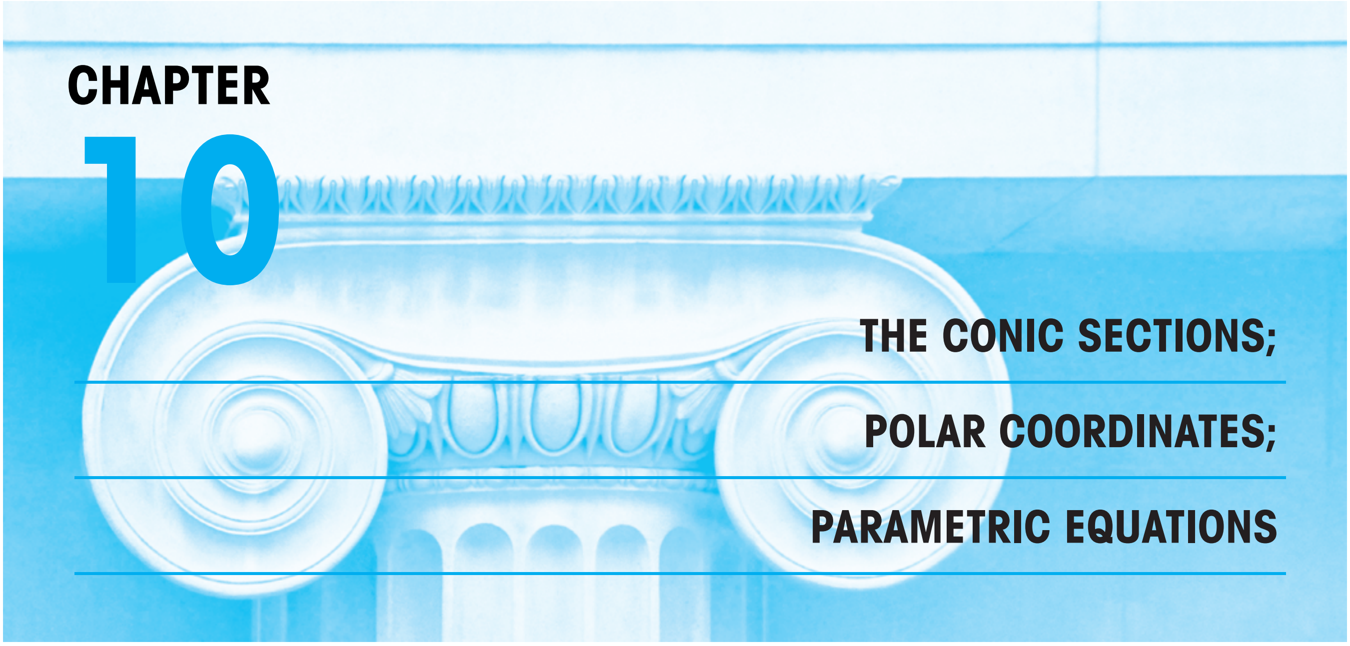
40. If a flexible cable of uniform density is suspended between two fixed points at equal height, then the shape $y = y(x)$ of the cable must satisfy the initial-value problem

$$(1)\qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1 + \left[\frac{dy}{dx}\right]^2}, \qquad y(0) = a, \qquad y'(0) = 0.$$

Setting $u = dy/dx$, we have the equation

$$(2)\qquad \frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{1 + u^2}.$$

(a) Solve equation (2).
(b) Integrate to find the shape of the cable.



CHAPTER 10

THE CONIC SECTIONS; POLAR COORDINATES; PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

10.1 GEOMETRY OF PARABOLA, ELLIPSE, HYPERBOLA

You are familiar with parabola, ellipse, hyperbola in the sense that you recognize the equations of these curves and the general shape. Here we define these curves geometrically (Figure 10.1.1), derive the equations from the geometric definition, and explain the role played by these curves in the reflection of light and sound. (See Figure 10.1.1.)

Geometric Definition

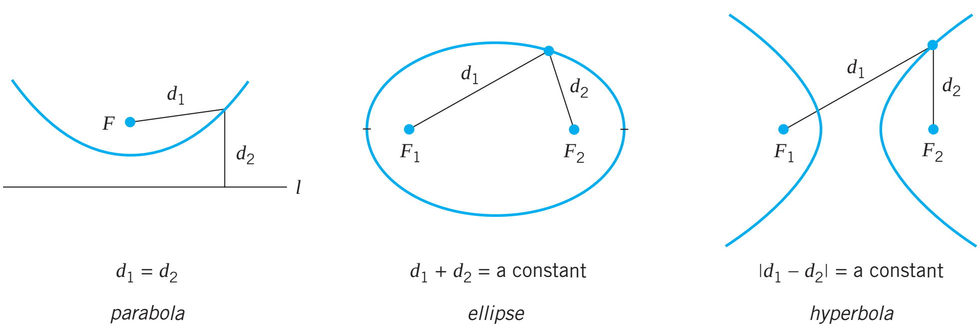


Figure 10.1.1

Parabola

Standard Position F on the positive y-axis, l horizontal. Then F has coordinates of the form $(c, 0)$ with $c > 0$ and l has equation $x = -c$.

Equation $\boxed{x^2 = 4cy, \qquad c > 0.}$

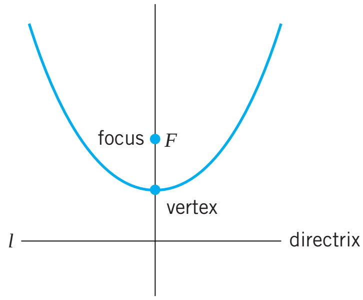


Figure 10.1.2

Derivation of the Equation A point $P(x, y)$ lies on the parabola iff $d_1 = d_2$, which here means

$$\sqrt{x^2 + (y - c)^2} = y + c.$$

This equation simplifies to

$$x^2 = 4cy. \qquad \text{(verify this)}$$

Terminology A parabola has a *focus*, a *directrix*, a *vertex*, and an *axis*. These are indicated in Figure 10.1.2.

Ellipse

Standard Position F_1 and F_2 on the x-axis at equal distances c from the origin. Then F_1 is at $(-c, 0)$ and F_2 at $(c, 0)$. With d_1 and d_2 as in the defining figure, set $d_1 + d_2 = 2a$.

Equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2 - c^2} = 1.$$

Setting $b = \sqrt{a^2 - c^2}$, we have

$$\boxed{\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.} \qquad \text{(the familiar equation)}$$

Derivation of the Equation A point $P(x, y)$ lies on the ellipse iff $d_1 + d_2 = 2a$, which here means iff

$$\sqrt{(x + c)^2 + y^2} + \sqrt{(x - c)^2 + y^2} = 2a.$$

This equation simplifies to

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2 - c^2} = 1, \qquad \text{(verify this)}$$

which, with $b = \sqrt{a^2 - c^2}$, is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

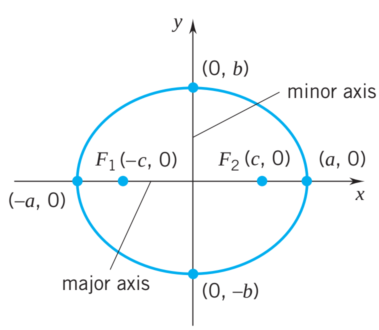


Figure 10.1.3

Terminology An ellipse has two *foci*, F_1 and F_2, a *major axis, a minor axis*, and four *vertices*. These are indicated in Figure 10.1.3 for an ellipse in standard position. The point at which the axes of the ellipse intersect is called the *center* of the ellipse.

Hyperbola

Standard Position F_1 and F_2 on the x-axis at equal distances c from the origin. Then F_1 is at $(-c, 0)$ and F_2 at $(c, 0)$. With d_1 and d_2 as in the defining figure, set $|d_1 - d_2| = 2a$.

Equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{c^2 - a^2} = 1.$$

Setting $b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2}$, we have

$$\boxed{\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.} \qquad \text{(the familiar equation)}$$

Derivation of the Equation A point $P(x, y)$ lies on the hyperbola iff $|d_1 - d_2| = 2a$, which here means iff

$$\sqrt{(x+c)^2 + y^2} - \sqrt{(x-c)^2 + y^2} = \pm 2a.$$

This equation simplifies to

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{c^2 - a^2} = 1, \qquad \text{(verify this)}$$

which, with $b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2}$, is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Terminology A hyperbola has two *foci*, F_1 and F_2, two *vertices*, a *transverse axis* that joins the two vertices, and two *asymptotes*. These are indicated in Figure 10.1.4 for a hyperbola in standard position. The midpoint of the transverse axis is called the center of the hyperbola.

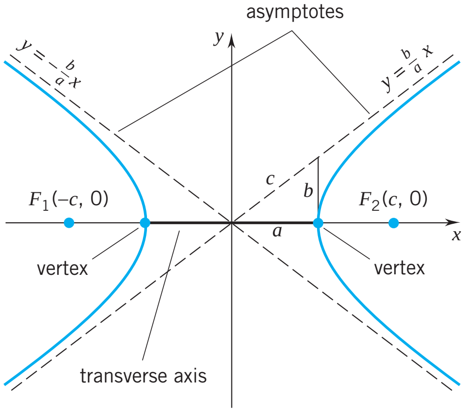


Figure 10.1.4

Translations

Suppose that x_0 and y_0 are real numbers and S is a set in the xy-plane. By replacing each point (x, y) of S by $(x + x_0, y + y_0)$, we obtain a set S' which is congruent to S and obtained from S without any rotation. (Figure 10.1.5.) Such a displacement is called a *translation*.

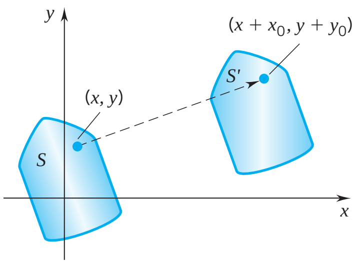


Figure 10.1.5

The translation

$$(x, y) \longrightarrow (x + x_0, y + y_0)$$

applied to a curve C with equation $E(x, y) = 0$[†] *results in a curve C' with equation* $E(x - x_0, y - y_0) = 0$.

[†]Every equation in x and y can be written in this manner: simply transfer the right side of the equation to the left side.

PROOF The coordinates of (x, y) satisfy the equation $E(x, y) = 0$

iff

the coordinates of $(x + x_0, y + y_0)$ satisfy the equation $E(x - x_0, y - y_0) = 0$. ❑

Examples

(1) The translation $(x, y) \to (x - 1, y + 3)$ moves points one unit left and three units up. Applying this translation to the parabola with equation $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$, we obtain the parabola with equation $y - 3 = \frac{1}{2}(x + 1)^2$.

(2) The translation $(x, y) \to (x + 5, y - 4)$ moves points five units right and four units down. Applying this translation to the ellipse with equation

$$\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{4} = 1,$$

we obtain the ellipse with equation

$$\frac{(x - 5)^2}{9} + \frac{(y + 4)^2}{4} = 1. \quad ❑$$

Earlier (Exercise 57, Section 1.4) you were asked to show that the distance between the origin and any line $l : Ax + By + C = 0$ is given by the formula

$$(*) \qquad d(0, l) = \frac{|C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

By means of a translation we can show that the distance between any point $P(x_0, y_0)$ and the line $l : Ax + By + C = 0$ is given by the formula

$$\textbf{(10.1.1)} \qquad \boxed{d(P, l) = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.}$$

PROOF The translation $(x, y) \to (x - x_0, y - y_0)$ takes the point $P(x_0, y_0)$ to the origin O and the line $l : Ax + By + C = 0$ to the line

$$l' : A(x + x_0) + B(y + y_0) + C = 0.$$

We can write this equation as

$$Ax + By + K = 0 \qquad \text{with} \qquad K = \overbrace{Ax_0 + By_0 + C}^{\text{(a constant)}}.$$

Applying $(*)$ to l', we have

$$d(O, l') = \frac{|K|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

Since P and l have been moved the same distance in the same direction, P to O and l to l', we can conclude that $d(P, l) = d(O, l')$. This confirms (10.1.1). ❑

We will rely on this result later in the section.

Parabolic Mirrors

The discussion below is based on the geometric principle of reflected light (introduced in Example 5, Section 4.5): *the angle of incidence equals the angle of reflection.*

Take a parabola and revolve it about its axis. This gives you a parabolic surface. A curved mirror of this form is called a *parabolic mirror*. Such mirrors are used in searchlights (automotive headlights, flashlights, etc.) and in reflecting telescopes. Our purpose here is to explain the reason for this.

We begin with a parabola and choose the coordinate system so that the equation takes the form $x^2 = 4cy$ with $c > 0$. We can express y in terms of x by writing

$$y = \frac{x^2}{4c}.$$

Since

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x}{4c} = \frac{x}{2c},$$

the tangent line at the point $P(x_0, y_0)$ has slope $m = x_0/2c$ and has equation

$$(1) \qquad (y - y_0) = \frac{x_0}{2c}(x - x_0).$$

For the rest, we refer to Figure 10.1.6.

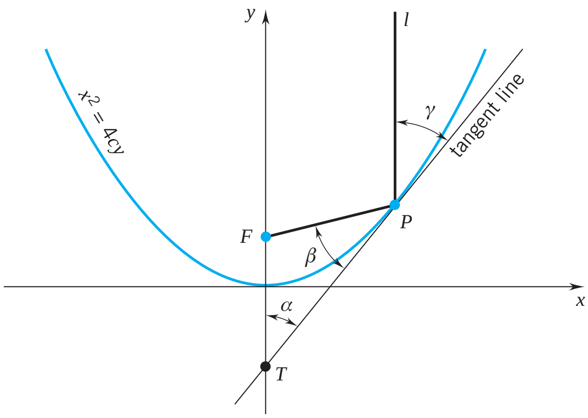


Figure 10.1.6

In the figure we have drawn a ray (a half-line) l parallel to the axis of the parabola, which in this setup is the y-axis. We want to show that the angles marked β and γ are equal.

Since the tangent line at $P(x_0, y_0)$ is not vertical, it intersects the y-axis at some point T. To find the coordinates of T, we set $x = 0$ in (1) and solve for y. This gives

$$y = y_0 - \frac{x_0^2}{2c}.$$

Since the point (x_0, y_0) lies on the parabola, we know that $x_0^2 = 4cy_0$ and therefore

$$y = y_0 - \frac{x_0^2}{2c} = y_0 - \frac{4cy_0}{2c} = -y_0.$$

The y-coordinate of T is $-y_0$. Since the focus F is at $(c, 0)$,

$$d(F, T) = y_0 + c.$$

The distance between F and P is also $y_0 + c$:

$$d(F, P) = \sqrt{x_0^2 + (y_0 - c)^2} = \sqrt{4cy_0 + (y_0 - c)^2} = \sqrt{(y_0 + c)^2} = y_0 + c.$$

$(x_0^2 = 4cy_0)$ $\qquad\qquad$ $(y_0 + c > 0)$

Since $d(F, T) = d(F, P)$, the triangle TFP is isosceles and the angles marked α and β are equal. Since l is parallel to the y-axis, $\alpha = \gamma$ and thus (and this is what we wanted to show) $\beta = \gamma$.

The fact that $\beta = \gamma$ has important optical consequences. It means (Figure 10.1.7) that light emitted from a source at the focus of a parabolic mirror is reflected in a beam parallel to the axis of that mirror; this is the principle of the searchlight. It also means that light coming to a parabolic mirror in a beam parallel to the axis of the mirror is reflected entirely to the focus; this is the principle of the reflecting telescope.

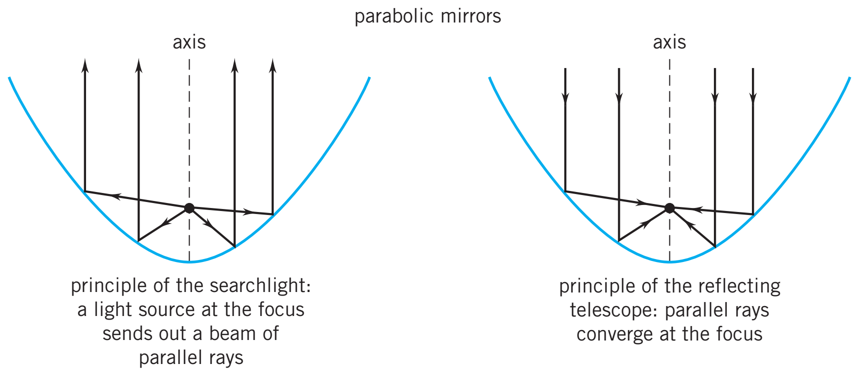


Figure 10.1.7

Elliptical Reflectors

Like the parabola, the ellipse has an interesting reflecting property. To derive it, we work with the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Differentiating implicitly with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{2x}{a^2} + \frac{2y}{b^2}\frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{b^2 x}{a^2 y}.$$

The slope of the ellipse at a point $P(x_0, y_0)$ not on the x-axis is therefore

$$-\frac{b^2 x_0}{a^2 y_0},$$

and the tangent line at that point has equation

$$y - y_0 = -\frac{b^2 x_0}{a^2 y_0}(x - x_0).$$

We can rewrite this last equation as

$$(b^2 x_0)x + (a^2 y_0)y - a^2 b^2 = 0.$$

We can now show the following:

(10.1.2) At each point P of the ellipse, the focal radii $\overline{F_1 P}$ and $\overline{F_2 P}$ make equal angles with the tangent.

PROOF If P lies on the x-axis, the focal radii both lie on the x-axis and the result is clear. To visualize the argument for a point $P = P(x_0, y_0)$ not on the x-axis, see Figure 10.1.8.

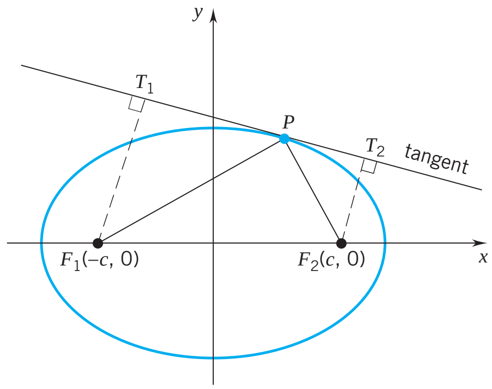


Figure 10.1.8

To show that $\overline{F_1P}$ and $\overline{F_2P}$ make equal angles with the tangent, we need only show that the triangles PT_1F_1 and PT_2F_2 are similar. We can do this by showing that

$$\frac{d(T_1, F_1)}{d(F_1, P)} = \frac{d(T_2, F_2)}{d(F_2, P)}$$

which, in view of (10.1.1), can be done by showing that

$$\frac{|-b^2x_0c - a^2b^2|}{\sqrt{(x_0+c)^2 + y_0^2}} = \frac{|b^2x_0c - a^2b^2|}{\sqrt{(x_0-c)^2 + y_0^2}}. \qquad \text{(verify this)}$$

This equation simplifies to

$$\frac{(x_0c + a^2)^2}{(x_0+c)^2 + y_0^2} = \frac{(x_0c - a^2)^2}{(x_0-c)^2 + y_0^2}$$

$$(a^2 - c^2)x_0^2 + a^2y_0^2 = a^2(a^2 - c^2)$$

$$\frac{x_0^2}{a^2} + \frac{y_0^2}{b^2} = 1. \qquad (b = \sqrt{a^2 - c^2})$$

This last equation holds since the point $P(x_0, y_0)$ is on the ellipse. ❑

The result we just proved has the following physical consequence:

(10.1.3) An elliptical reflector takes light or sound originating at one focus and reflects it to the other focus.

In elliptical rooms called "whispering chambers," a whisper at one focus, inaudible nearby, is easily heard at the other focus. You will experience this phenomenon if you visit the Statuary Room in the Capitol in Washington, D.C. In many hospitals there are elliptical water tubs designed to break up kidney stones. The patient is positioned so that the stone is at one focus. Small vibrations set off at the other focus are so efficiently concentrated that the stone is shattered.

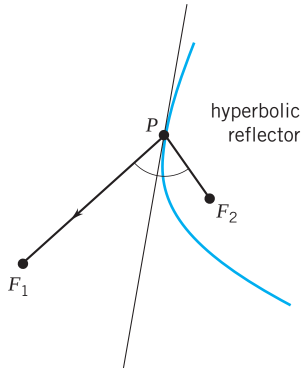


Figure 10.1.9

Hyperbolic Reflectors

A straightforward calculation that you are asked to carry out in the Exercises shows that:

(10.1.4) At each point P of a hyperbola, the tangent line bisects the angle between the focal radii $\overline{F_1P}$ and $\overline{F_2P}$.

For some consequences of this, we refer you to Figure 10.1.9. There you see the right branch of a hyperbola with foci F_1, F_2. Light or sound aimed at F_2 from any point to the left of the reflector is beamed to F_1.

EXERCISES 10.1

Exercises 1–8. Find the vertex, focus, axis, and directrix of the given parabola. Then sketch the parabola.

1. $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$.
2. $y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$.
3. $y = \frac{1}{2}(x-1)^2$.
4. $y = -\frac{1}{2}(x-1)^2$.
5. $y + 2 = \frac{1}{4}(x-2)^2$.
6. $y - 2 = \frac{1}{4}(x+2)^2$.
7. $y = x^2 - 4x$.
8. $y = x^2 + x + 1$.

Exercises 9–16. An ellipse is given. Find the center, the foci, the length of the major axis, and the length of the minor axis. Then sketch the ellipse.

9. $x^2/9 + y^2/4 = 1$.
10. $x^2/4 + y^2/9 = 1$.
11. $3x^2 + 2y^2 = 12$.
12. $3x^2 + 4y^2 - 12 = 0$.
13. $4x^2 + 9y^2 - 18y = 27$.
14. $4x^2 + y^2 - 6y + 5 = 0$.
15. $4(x-1)^2 + y^2 = 64$.
16. $16(x-2)^2 + 25(y-3)^2 = 400$.

Exercises 17–26. A hyperbola is given. Find the center, the vertices, the foci, the asymptotes, and the length of the transverse axis. Then sketch the hyperbola.

17. $x^2 - y^2 = 1$.
18. $y^2 - x^2 = 1$.
19. $x^2/9 - y^2/16 = 1$.
20. $x^2/16 - y^2/9 = 1$.
21. $y^2/16 - x^2/9 = 1$.
22. $y^2/9 - x^2/16 = 1$.
23. $(x-1)^2/9 - (y-3)^2/16 = 1$.
24. $(x-1)^2/16 - (y-3)^2/9 = 1$.
25. $4x^2 - 8x - y^2 + 6y - 1 = 0$.
26. $-3x^2 + y^2 - 6x = 0$.

27. A parabola intersects a rectangle of area A at two opposite vertices. Show that, if one side of the rectangle falls on the axis of the parabola, then the parabola subdivides the rectangle into two pieces, one of area $\frac{1}{3}A$, the other of area $\frac{2}{3}A$.

28. A line through the focus of a parabola intersects the parabola at two points P and Q. Show that the tangent line through P is perpendicular to the tangent line through Q.

29. Show that the graph of every quadratic function $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ is a parabola. Find the vertex, the focus, the axis, and the directrix.

30. Find the centroid of the first-quadrant portion of the elliptical region $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 \leq a^2b^2$.

31. Find the center, the vertices, the foci, the asymptotes, and the length of the transverse axis of the hyperbola with equation $xy = 1$. HINT: Define new XY-coordinates by setting $x = X + Y$ and $y = X - Y$.

32. As t ranges from 0 to 2π, the points $(a\cos t, b\sin t)$ generate a curve in the xy-plane. Identify the curve.

33. An ellipse has area A and major axis of length $2a$. What is the distance between the foci?

34. A searchlight reflector is in the shape of a parabolic mirror. If it is 5 feet in diameter and 2 feet deep at the center, how far is the focus from the vertex of the mirror?

The line that passes through the focus of a parabola and is parallel to the directrix intersects the parabola at two points A and B. The line segment $\overline{AB}$ is called the *latus rectum* of the parabola.

In Exercises 35–38 we work with the parabola $x^2 = 4cy$, $c > 0$. By Ω we mean the region bounded below by the parabola and above by the latus rectum.

35. Find the length of the latus rectum.

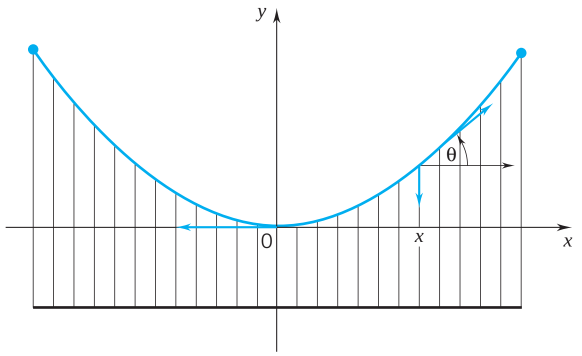
36. What is the slope of the parabola at the endpoints of the latus rectum?

37. Determine the area of Ω and locate the centroid.

38. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis and locate the centroid of the solid. (For the centroid formulas, see Project 6.4.)

39. Suppose that a flexible inelastic cable (see the figure) fixed at the ends supports a horizontal load. (Imagine a suspension

bridge and think of the load on the cable as the roadway.) Show that, if the load has constant weight per unit length, then the cable hangs in the form of a parabola.



HINT: The part of the cable that supports the load from 0 to x is subject to the following forces:

(1) the weight of the load, which in this case is proportional to x.
(2) the horizontal pull at $0: p(0)$.
(3) the tangential pull at $x: p(x)$.

Balancing the vertical forces, we have

$$kx = p(x)\sin\theta. \qquad \text{(weight = vertical pull at } x\text{)}$$

Balancing the horizontal forces, we have

$$p(0) = p(x)\cos\theta. \qquad \text{(pull at 0 = horizontal pull at } x\text{)}$$

40. A lighting panel is perpendicular to the axis of a parabolic mirror. Show that all light rays beamed parallel to this axis are reflected to the focus of the mirror *in paths of the same length.*

41. All equilateral triangles are similar; they differ only in scale. Show that the same is true of all parabolas.

For Exercises 42–44 we refer to a hyperbola in standard position.

42. Find functions $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$ such that, as t ranges over the set of real numbers, the points $(x(t), y(t))$ traverse
(a) the right branch of the hyperbola.
(b) the left branch of the hyperbola.

43. Find the area of the region between the right branch of the hyperbola and the vertical line $x = 2a$.

44. Show that at each point P of the hyperbola the tangent line bisects the angle between the focal radii $\overline{F_1P}$ and $\overline{F_2P}$.

Although all parabolas have exactly the same shape (Exercise 41), ellipses come in different shapes. The shape of an ellipse depends on its *eccentricity e.* This is half the distance between the foci divided by half the length of the major axis:

(10.1.5) $$\boxed{e = c/a.}$$

For every ellipse, $0 < e < 1$.

Exercises 45–48. Determine the eccentricity of the ellipse.

45. $x^2/25 + y^2/16 = 1$.

46. $x^2/16 + y^2/25 = 1$.

47. $(x - 1)^2/25 + (y + 2)^2/9 = 1$.

48. $(x + 1)^2/169 + (y - 1)^2/144 = 1$.

49. Suppose that E_1 and E_2 are both ellipses with the same major axis. Compare the shape of E_1 to the shape of E_2 if $e_1 < e_2$.

50. What happens to an ellipse with major axis $2a$ if e tends to 0?

51. What happens to an ellipse with major axis $2a$ if e tends to 1?

Exercises 52–53. Write an equation for the ellipse.

52. Major axis from $(-3, 0)$ to $(3, 0)$, eccentricity $\frac{1}{3}$.

53. Major axis from $(-3, 0)$ to $(3, 0)$, eccentricity $\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2}$.

54. Let l be a line and let F be a point not on l. You have seen that the set of points P for which

$$d(F, P) = d(l, P)$$

is a parabola. Show that, if $0 < e < 1$, then the set of all points P for which

$$d(F, P) = e\, d(l, P)$$

is an ellipse of eccentricity e. HINT: Begin by choosing a coordinate system whereby F falls on the origin and l is a vertical line $x = k$.

The shape of a hyperbola is determined by its *eccentricity e.* This is half the distance between the foci divided by half the length of the transverse axis:

(10.1.6) $$\boxed{e = c/a.}$$

For all hyperbolas, $e > 1$.

Exercises 55–58. Determine the eccentricity of the hyperbola.

55. $x^2/9 - y^2/16 = 1$.

56. $x^2/16 - y^2/9 = 1$.

57. $x^2 - y^2 = 1$.

58. $x^2/25 - y^2/144 = 1$.

59. Suppose H_1 and H_2 are both hyperbolas with the same transverse axis. Compare the shape of H_1 to the shape of H_2 if $e_1 < e_2$.

60. What happens to a hyperbola if e tends to 1 ?

61. What happens to a hyperbola if e increases without bound?

62. (Compare to Exercise 54.) Let l be a line and let F be a point not on l. Show that, if $e > 1$, then the set of all points P for which

$$d(F, P) = e\, d(l, P)$$

is a hyperbola of eccentricity, e. HINT: Begin by choosing a coordinate system whereby F falls on the origin and l is a vertical line $x = k$.

63. Show that every parabola has an equation of the form

$$(\alpha x + \beta y)^2 = \gamma x + \delta y + \epsilon \qquad \text{with} \qquad \alpha^2 + \beta^2 \neq 0.$$

HINT: Take $l: Ax + By + C = 0$ as the directrix, $F(a, b)$ as the focus.

■ 10.2 POLAR COORDINATES

We use coordinates to indicate position with respect to a frame of reference. When we use rectangular coordinates, our frame of reference is a pair of lines that intersect at right angles. In this section we introduce an alternative to the rectangular coordinate system called the *polar coordinate system*. This system lends itself particularly well to the representation of curves that spiral about a point and closed curves that have a high degree of symmetry. In the polar coordinate system, the frame of reference is a point O that we call the *pole* and a ray that emanates from it that we call the *polar axis*. (Figure 10.2.1)

Figure 10.2.1

In Figure 10.2.2 we have drawn two more rays from the pole One lies at an angle of θ radians from the polar axis; we call it ray θ. The opposite ray lies at an angle of $\theta + \pi$ radians; we call it ray $\theta + \pi$.

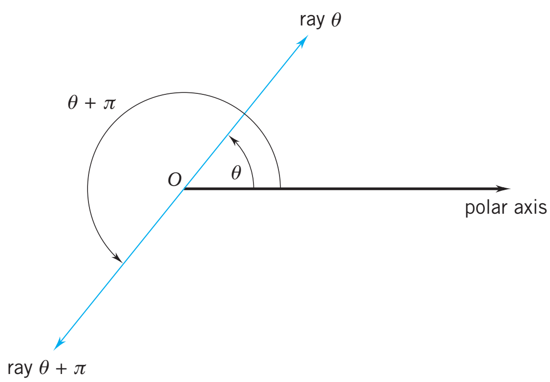


Figure 10.2.2

Figure 10.2.3 shows some points along these rays, labeled with *polar coordinates.*

(10.2.1)

> In general, a point is assigned *polar coordinates* $[r, \theta]$ if it lies at a distance $|r|$ from the pole
>
> on the ray θ, if $r \geq 0$ and on the ray $\theta + \pi$ if $r < 0$.

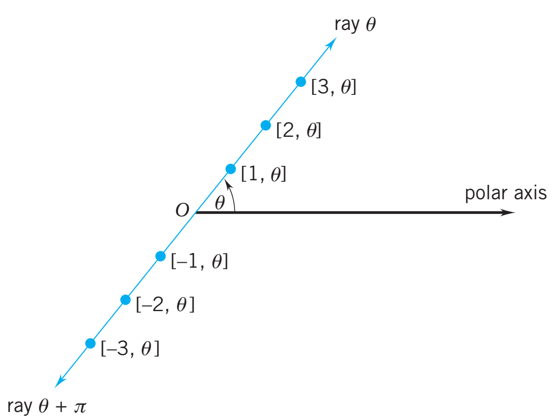


Figure 10.2.3

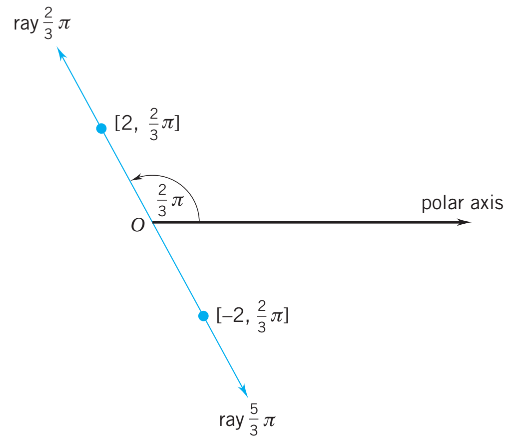


Figure 10.2.4

Figure 10.2.4 shows the point $[2, \frac{2}{3}\pi]$. The point lies two units from the pole on the ray $\frac{2}{3}\pi$. The point $[-2, \frac{2}{3}\pi]$ also lies two units from the pole, not on the ray $\frac{2}{3}\pi$, but on the opposite ray, the ray $\frac{5}{3}\pi$.

Polar coordinates are not unique. Many pairs $[r, \theta]$ can represent the same point.

(1) If $r = 0$, it does not matter how we choose θ. The resulting point is still the pole:

(10.2.2) $$\boxed{O = [0, \theta] \qquad \text{for all } \theta.}$$

(2) Geometrically there is no distinction between angles that differ by an integer multiple of 2π. Consequently, as suggested in Figure 10.2.5,

(10.2.3) $$\boxed{[r, \theta] = [r, \theta + 2n\pi], \qquad \text{for all integers } n.}$$

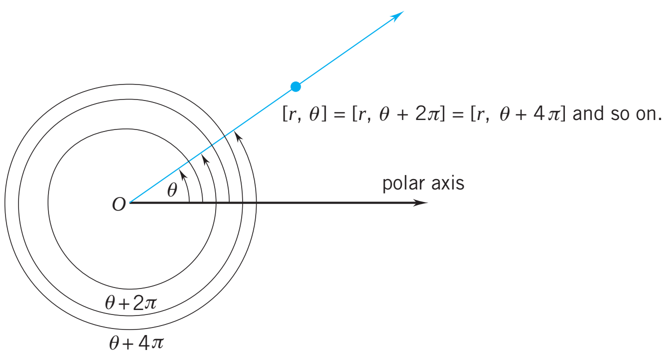


Figure 10.2.5

(3) Adding π to the second coordinate is equivalent to changing the sign of the first coordinate:

(10.2.4) $$\boxed{[r, \theta + \pi] = [-r, \theta].}$$ (Figure 10.2.6)

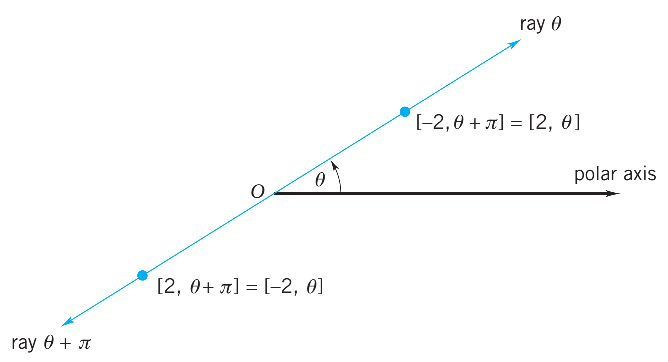


Figure 10.2.6

Remark Some authors do not allow r to take on negative values. There are some advantages to this approach. For example, the polar coordinates of a point are unique if θ is restricted to the interval $[0, 2\pi)$ or to $(-\pi, \pi]$. On the other hand, there are advantages in graphing and finding points of intersection that follow from letting r take on any real value, and this is the approach that we have adopted. Since there is no convention on this issue, you should be aware of the two approaches. ❑

Relation to Rectangular Coordinates

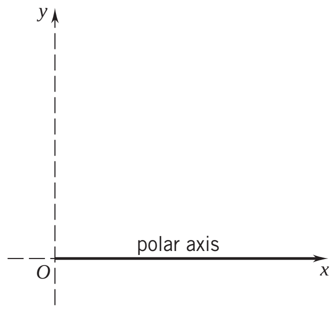


Figure 10.2.7

In Figure 10.2.7 we have superimposed a polar coordinate system on a rectangular coordinate system. We have placed the pole at the origin and directed the polar axis along the positive x-axis.

The relation between polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$ and rectangular coordinates (x, y) is given by the following equations:

(10.2.5)
$$\boxed{x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta.}$$

PROOF We'll consider three cases separately: $r = 0$, $r > 0$, $r < 0$.

Case 1: $r = 0$. In this case the formula holds since $[r, \theta]$ is the origin and both x and y are 0:

$$0 = 0\cos\theta, \qquad 0 = 0\sin\theta.$$

Case 2: $r > 0$. Suppose that $[r, \theta] = (x, y)$. Then (x, y) lies on ray θ, and $(x/r, y/r)$ also lies on ray θ. (Draw a figure.) Since (x, y) lies at distance r from the origin,

$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2.$$

It follows that

$$\left(\frac{x^2}{r^2}\right) + \left(\frac{y^2}{r^2}\right) = 1.$$

This places $(x/r, y/r)$ on the unit circle. Thus $(x/r, y/r)$ is the point on the unit circle which lies on ray θ. It follows from the very definition of sine and cosine (Section 1.7) that

$$\frac{x}{r} = \cos\theta, \qquad \frac{y}{r} = \sin\theta$$

and thus

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta.$$

Case 3: $r < 0$. Since $[r, \theta] = [-r, \theta + \pi]$ and $-r > 0$, we know from the previous case that

$$x = -r\cos(\theta + \pi), \qquad y = -r\sin(\theta + \pi).$$

Since

$$\cos(\theta + \pi) = -\cos\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sin(\theta + \pi) = -\sin\theta,$$

once again we have

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta. \quad ❑$$

From the relations we just proved, it should be clear that, unless $x = 0$,

(10.2.6)
$$\boxed{\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x},}$$

and, under all circumstances,

(10.2.7)
$$\boxed{x^2 + y^2 = r^2.}$$

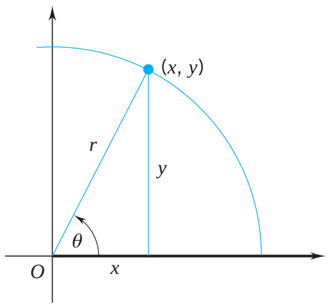


Figure 10.2.8

Figure 10.2.8 illustrates all this for points in the first quadrant.

Example 1 Find the rectangular coordinates of the point P with polar coordinates $[-2, \frac{1}{3}\pi]$.

SOLUTION The relations $\quad x = r\cos\theta, \quad y = r\sin\theta \quad$ give

$$x = -2\cos\tfrac{1}{3}\pi = -2(\tfrac{1}{2}) = -1, \qquad y = -2\sin\tfrac{1}{3}\pi = -2(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}) = -\sqrt{3}.$$

The point P has rectangular coordinates $(-1, -\sqrt{3})$. ❑

Example 2 Find all possible polar coordinates for the point P that has rectangular coordinates $(-2, 2\sqrt{3})$.

SOLUTION We know that $\quad r\cos\theta = -2, \quad r\sin\theta = 2\sqrt{3}.\quad$ It follows that

$$r^2 = r^2\cos^2\theta + r^2\sin^2\theta = (-2)^2 + (2\sqrt{3})^2 = 16,$$

so that $r = \pm 4$.

Taking $r = 4$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 4\cos\theta &= -2 \qquad & 4\sin\theta &= 2\sqrt{3} \\ \cos\theta &= -\tfrac{1}{2} \qquad & \sin\theta &= \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}. \end{aligned}$$

These equations are satisfied by setting $\theta = \frac{2}{3}\pi$, or more generally by setting

$$\theta = \tfrac{2}{3}\pi + 2n\pi.$$

The polar coordinates of P with first coordinate $r = 4$ are all pairs of the form

$$[4, \tfrac{2}{3}\pi + 2n\pi],$$

where n ranges over the set of integers.

We could go through the same process again, this time taking $r = -4$, but there is no need to do so. Since $[r, \theta] = [-r, \theta + \pi]$, we know that

$$[4, \tfrac{2}{3}\pi + 2n\pi] = [-4, (\tfrac{2}{3}\pi + \pi) + 2n\pi].$$

The polar coordinates of P with first coordinate $r = -4$ are thus all pairs of the form

$$[-4, \tfrac{5}{3}\pi + 2n\pi]$$

where again n ranges over the set of integers. ❑

Here are some simple sets specified in polar coordinates. We leave it to you to draw appropriate figures.

(1) The circle of radius a centered at the origin is given by the equation

$$r = a.$$

The interior of the circle is given by $r < a$ and the exterior by $r > a$.

(2) The line that passes through the origin with an inclination of α radians has polar equation

$$\theta = \alpha.$$

(3) For $a \neq 0$, the vertical line $x = a$ has polar equation

$$r\cos\theta = a \qquad \text{or, equivalently,} \qquad r = a\sec\theta.$$

(What's the equation if $a = 0$?)

(4) For $b \neq 0$, the horizontal line $y = b$ has polar equation

$$r\sin\theta = b \qquad \text{or, equivalently,} \qquad r = b\csc\theta.$$

(What's the equation if $b = 0$?)

Example 3 Find an equation in polar coordinates for the hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$.

SOLUTION Setting $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$, we have

$$r^2\cos^2\theta - r^2\sin^2\theta = a^2$$
$$r^2(\cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta) = a^2$$
$$r^2\cos 2\theta = a^2. \quad ❑$$

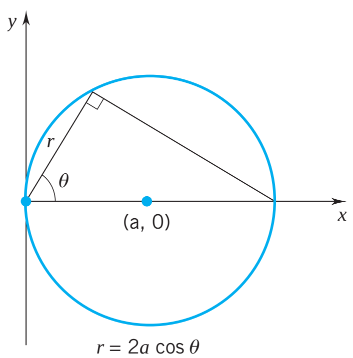


Figure 10.2.9

Example 4 Show that the equation $r = 2a\cos\theta$ represents a circle. (Take $a > 0$ and see Figure 10.2.9.)

SOLUTION Multiplication by r gives

$$r^2 = 2ar\cos\theta$$
$$x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$$
$$x^2 - 2ax + y^2 = 0$$
$$x^2 - 2ax + a^2 + y^2 = a^2$$
$$(x-a)^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

This is the circle of radius a centered at the point with rectangular coordinates $(a, 0)$. ❑

Symmetry

Symmetry about the x- and y-axes and symmetry about the origin are illustrated in Figure 10.2.10. The coordinates marked are, of course, not the only ones possible. (The difficulties that can arise from this are explored in Section 10.3.)

Example 5 Test the curve $r^2 = \cos 2\theta$ for symmetry.

SOLUTION Since $\cos[2(-\theta)] = \cos(-2\theta) = \cos 2\theta$, you can see that if $[r, \theta]$ is on the curve, then so is $[r, -\theta]$. This tells us that the curve is symmetric about the x-axis. Since

$$\cos[2(\pi - \theta)] = \cos(2\pi - 2\theta) = \cos(-2\theta) = \cos 2\theta,$$

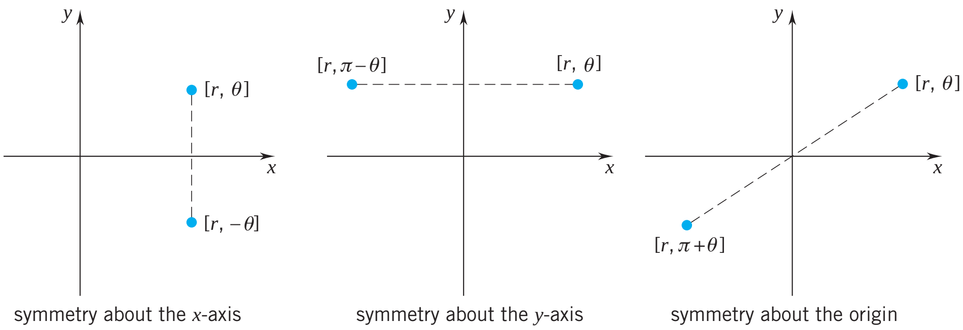


Figure 10.2.10

you can see that if $[r, \theta]$ is on the curve, then so is $[r, \pi - \theta]$. The curve is therefore symmetric about the y-axis.

Being symmetric about both axes, the curve must be symmetric about the origin. You can verify this directly by noting that

$$\cos\,[2(\pi + \theta)] = \cos\,(2\pi + 2\theta) = \cos\,2\theta,$$

so that if $[r, \theta]$ lies on the curve, then so does $[r, \pi + \theta]$. A sketch of the curve appears in Figure 10.2.11. Such a curve is called a *lemniscate*. ❑

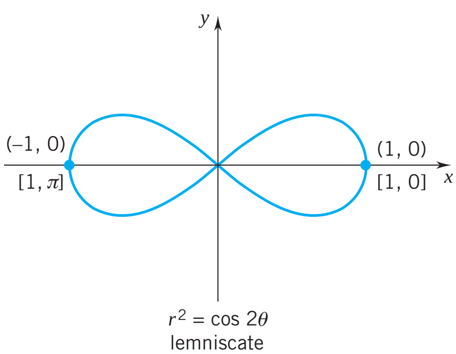


Figure 10.2.11

EXERCISES 10.2

Exercises 1–8. Plot the point with these polar coordinates.

1. $[1, \frac{1}{3}\pi]$. **2.** $[1, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$.

3. $[-1, \frac{1}{3}\pi]$. **4.** $[-1, -\frac{1}{3}\pi]$.

5. $[4, \frac{5}{4}\pi]$. **6.** $[-2, 0]$.

7. $[-\frac{1}{2}, \pi]$. **8.** $[\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}\pi]$.

Exercises 9–16. Give the rectangular coordinates of the point.

9. $[3, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$. **10.** $[4, \frac{1}{6}\pi]$.

11. $[-1, -\pi]$. **12.** $[-1, \frac{1}{4}\pi]$.

13. $[-3, -\frac{1}{3}\pi]$ **14.** $[2, 0]$.

15. $[3, -\frac{1}{2}\pi]$. **16.** $[2, 3\pi]$.

Exercises 17–24. Below some points are specified in rectangular coordinates. Give all possible polar coordinates for each point.

17. $(0, 1)$. **18.** $(1, 0)$.

19. $(-3, 0)$. **20.** $(4, 4)$.

21. $(2, -2)$. **22.** $(3, -3\sqrt{3})$.

23. $(4\sqrt{3}, 4)$. **24.** $(\sqrt{3}, -1)$.

25. Find a formula for the distance between $[r_1, \theta_1]$ and $[r_2, \theta_2]$.

26. Show that for $r_1 > 0$, $r_2 > 0$, $|\theta_1 - \theta_2| < \pi$ the distance formula you found in Exercise 25 reduces to the law of cosines.

Exercises 27–30. Find the point $[r, \theta]$ symmetric to the given point (a) about the x-axis; (b) about the y-axis; (c) about the origin. Express your answer with $r > 0$ and $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)$.

27. $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{6}\pi]$. **28.** $[3, -\frac{5}{4}\pi]$.

29. $[-2, \frac{1}{3}\pi]$. **30.** $[-3, -\frac{7}{4}\pi]$.

Exercises 31–36. Test the curve for symmetry about the coordinate axes and for symmetry about the origin.

31. $r = 2 + \cos\theta$. **32.** $r = \cos 2\theta$.

33. $r(\sin\theta + \cos\theta) = 1$. **34.** $r\sin\theta = 1$.

35. $r^2 \sin 2\theta = 1$. **36.** $r^2 \cos 2\theta = 1$.

Exercises 37–48. Write the equation in polar coordinates.

37. $x = 2$. **38.** $y = 3$.

39. $2xy = 1$. **40.** $x^2 + y^2 = 9$.

41. $x^2 + (y-2)^2 = 4$. **42.** $(x-a)^2 + y^2 = a^2$.

43. $y = x$. **44.** $x^2 - y^2 = 4$.

45. $x^2 + y^2 + x = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

46. $y = mx$. **47.** $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 2xy$.

48. $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = x^2 - y^2$.

Exercises 49–58. Identify the curve and write the equation in rectangular coordinates.

49. $r\sin\theta = 4$. **50.** $r\cos\theta = 4$.

51. $\theta = \frac{1}{3}\pi$. **52.** $\theta^2 = \frac{1}{9}\pi^2$.

53. $r = 2(1 - \cos\theta)^{-1}$. **54.** $r = 2\sin\theta$.

55. $r = 6\cos\theta$. **56.** $\theta = -\frac{1}{2}\pi$.

57. $\tan\theta = 2$. **58.** $r = 4\sin(\theta + \pi)$.

Exercises 59–62. Write the equation in rectangular coordinates and identify the curve.

59. $r = \dfrac{4}{2 - \cos\theta}$. **60.** $r = \dfrac{6}{1 + 2\sin\theta}$.

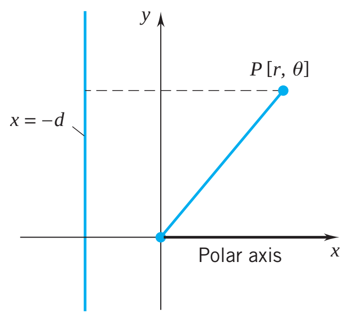
61. $r = \dfrac{4}{1 - \cos\theta}$. **62.** $r = \dfrac{2}{3 + 2\sin\theta}$.

63. Show that if a and b are not both zero, then the curve

$$r = 2a\sin\theta + 2b\cos\theta$$

is a circle. Find the center and the radius.

64. Find a polar equation for the set of points $P[r, \theta]$ such that the distance from P to the pole equals the distance from P to the line $x = -d$. Take $d \geq 0$. See the figure.



65. Find a polar equation for the set of points $P[r, \theta]$ such that the distance from P to the pole is half the distance from P to the line $x = -d$. Take $d > 0$.

66. Find a polar equation for the set of points $P[r, \theta]$ such that the distance from P to the pole is twice the distance from P to the line $x = -d$. Take $d > 0$.

■ 10.3 SKETCHING CURVES IN POLAR COORDINATES

Here we sketch some curves that are (relatively) simple in polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$ but devilishly difficult to work with in rectangular coordinates (x, y).

Example 1 Sketch the curve $r = \theta$, $\theta \geq 0$ in polar coordinates.

SOLUTION At $\theta = 0$, $r = 0$; at $\theta = \frac{1}{4}\pi$, $r = \frac{1}{4}\pi$; at $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$, $r = \frac{1}{2}\pi$; and so on. The curve is shown in detail from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$ in Figure 10.3.1. It is an unending spiral, *the spiral of Archimedes*. More of the spiral is shown on a smaller scale in the right part of the figure. ❑

Now to some closed curves.

Example 2 Sketch the curve $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$ in polar coordinates.

SOLUTION Since the cosine function is periodic with period 2π, the curve $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$ is a closed curve which repeats itself on every θ-interval of length 2π. We will draw the curve from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$. That will account for r in every direction.

We begin by representing the function $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$ in rectangular coordinates (θ, r). This puts us in familiar territory and enables us to see at a glance how r varies with θ.

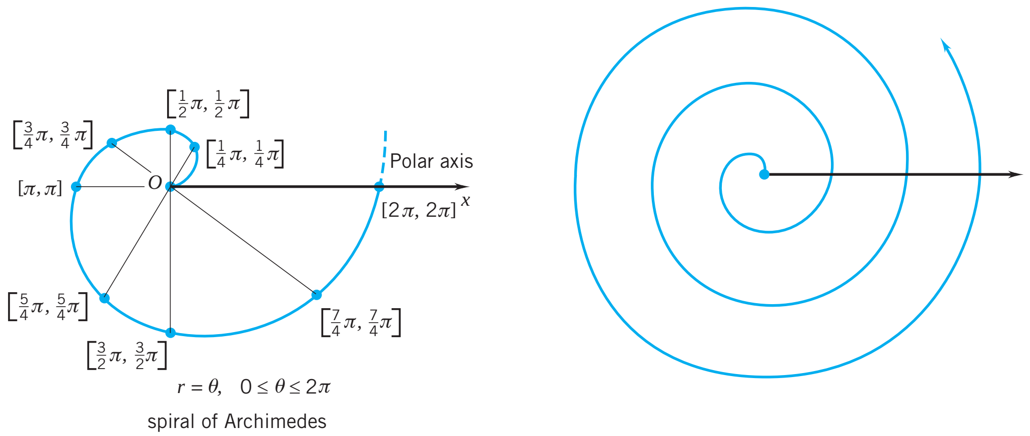


Figure 10.3.1

In Figure 10.3.2 we have marked the values of θ where r is zero and the values of θ where r takes on an extreme value.

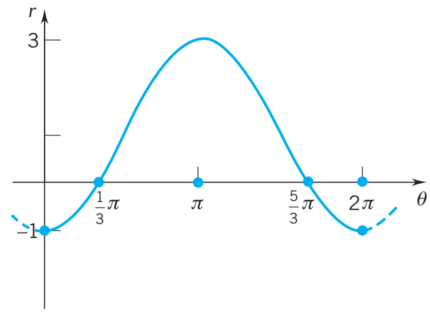


Figure 10.3.2

Reading from the figure we have the following: as θ increases from 0 to $\frac{1}{3}\pi$, r increases from -1 to 0; as θ increases from $\frac{1}{3}\pi$ to π, r increases from 0 to 3; as θ increases from π to $\frac{5}{3}\pi$, r decreases from 3 to 0; finally, as θ increases from $\frac{5}{3}\pi$ to 2π, r decreases from 0 to -1.

By applying this information step by step, we develop a sketch of the curve $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$ in polar coordinates. (Figure 10.3.3.)

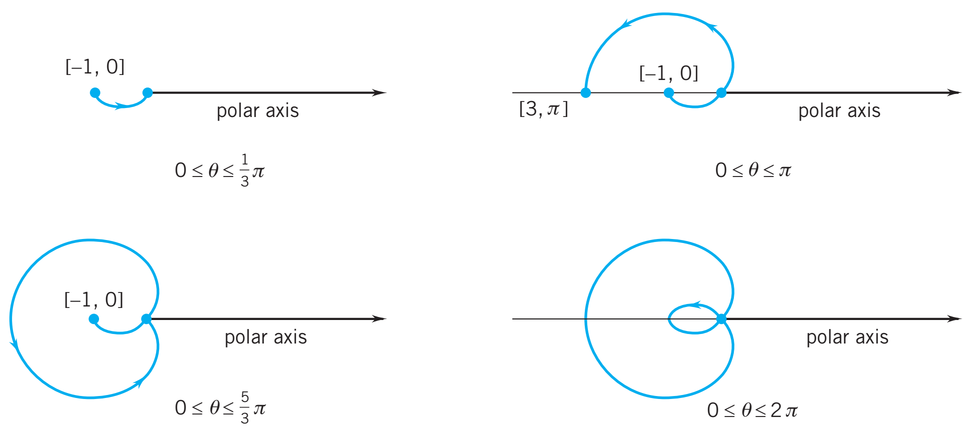


Figure 10.3.3

NOTE: Here we did more work then we had to. Since the function $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$ is an even function $[r(-\theta) = r(\theta)]$, the polar curve is symmetric about the x-axis. Then, having drawn the curve from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$, we could have obtained the lower half of the curve simply by flipping over the upper half. ❑

Example 3 Sketch the curve $r = \cos 2\theta$ in polar coordinates.

SOLUTION Since the cosine function has period 2π, the function $r = \cos 2\theta$ has period π. Thus it may seem that we can restrict ourselves to sketching the curve from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$. But this is not the case. To obtain the complete curve, we must account for r in every direction; that is, from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

Figure 10.3.4 shows $r = \cos 2\theta$ represented in rectangular coordinates (θ, r) from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$. In the figure we have marked the values of θ where r is zero and the values where r has an extreme value.

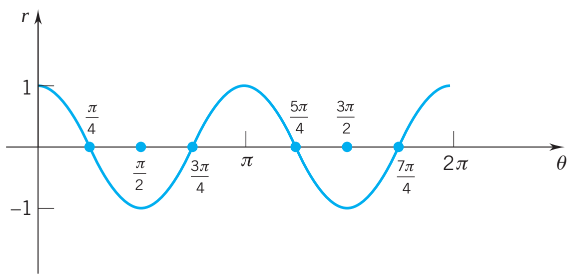


Figure 10.3.4

Translating Figure 10.3.4 into polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$, we obtain a sketch of the curve $r = \cos 2\theta$ in polar coordinates. (Figure 10.3.5.) The sketch is developed in eight stages. These stages are determined by the values of θ marked in Figure 10.3.4.† ❑

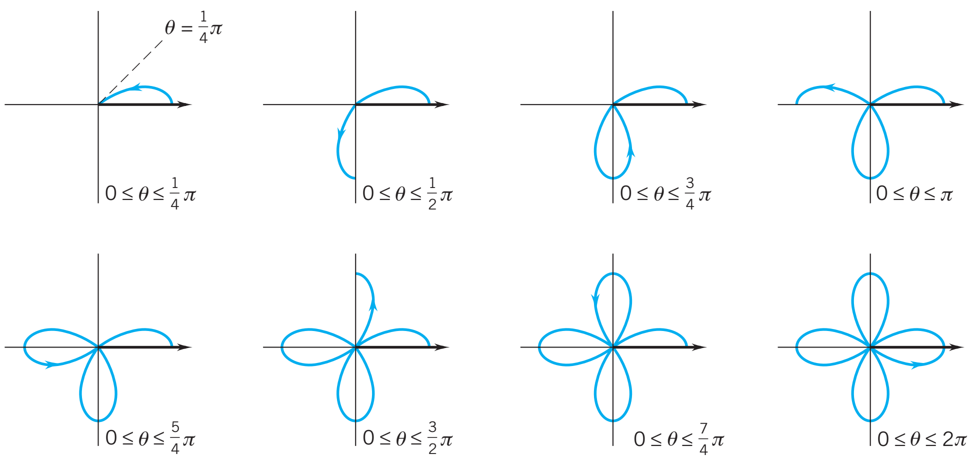


Figure 10.3.5

†Once again we did more work than we had to. Since the function $r = \cos 2\theta$ is an even function, the polar curve $r = \cos 2\theta$ is symmetric about the x-axis. Thus, having drawn the curve from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$, we could have obtained the rest of the curve by reflection in the horizontal axis.

Example 4 Figure 10.3.6 shows four *cardioids*, heart-shaped curves. Rotation of $r = 1 + \cos\theta$ by $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ radians (measured in the counterclockwise direction) gives

$$r = 1 + \cos\left(\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right) = 1 + \sin\theta.$$

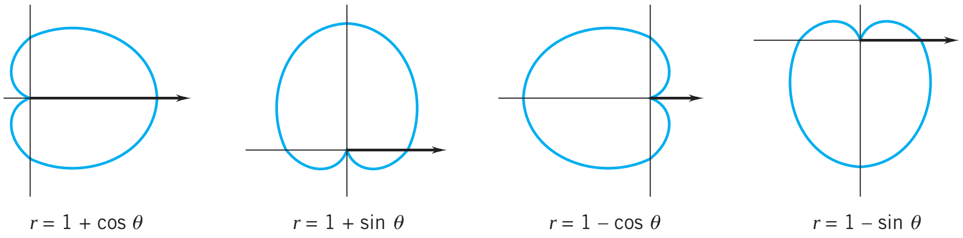


Figure 10.3.6

Rotation by another $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ radians gives

$$r = 1 + \cos(\theta - \pi) = 1 - \cos\theta.$$

Rotation by yet another $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ radians gives

$$r = 1 + \cos\left(\theta - \tfrac{3}{2}\pi\right) = 1 - \sin\theta.$$

Note how easy it is to rotate axes in polar coordinates: each change

$$\cos\theta \to \sin\theta \to -\cos\theta \to -\sin\theta$$

represents a counterclockwise rotation by $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ radians. ❑

At this point we will try to give you a brief survey of some of the basic polar curves. (The numbers a and b that appear below are to be interpreted as nonzero constants.)

Lines: $\theta = a, \qquad r = a\sec\theta, \qquad r = a\csc\theta.$ (Figure 10.3.7)

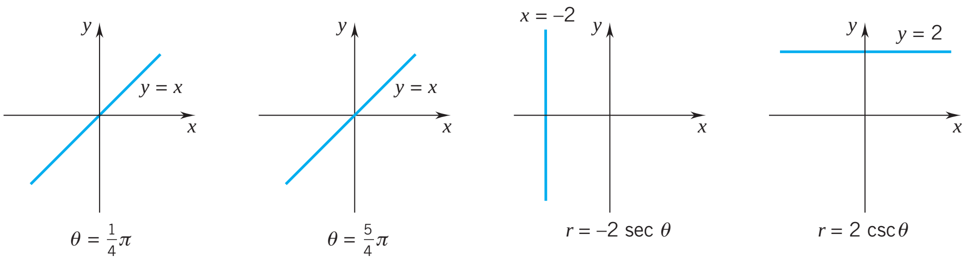


Figure 10.3.7

Circles: $r = a, \qquad r = a\sin\theta, \qquad r = a\cos\theta.$ (Figure 10.3.8)

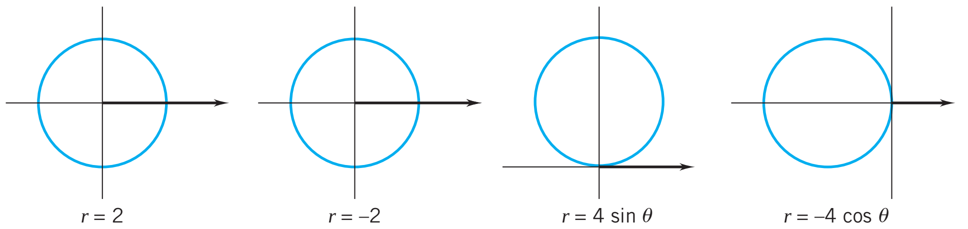


Figure 10.3.8

Limaçons[†]: $r = a + b\sin\theta, \qquad r = a + b\cos\theta.$ (Figure 10.3.9)

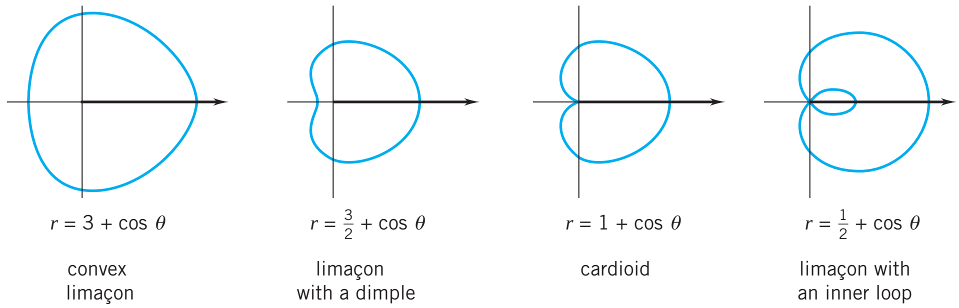


Figure 10.3.9

The general shape of the curve depends on the relative magnitudes of a and b.

Lemniscates[††]: $r^2 = a\sin 2\theta, \qquad r^2 = a\cos 2\theta$ (Figure 10.3.10)

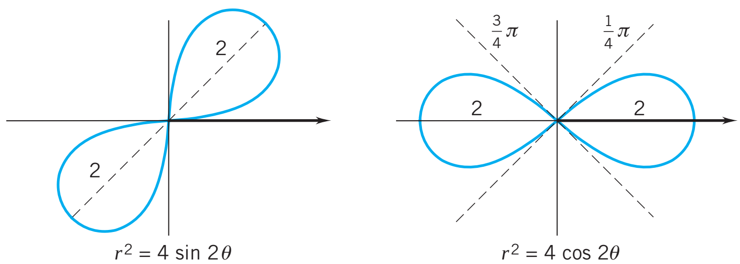


Figure 10.3.10

Petal Curves: $r = a\sin n\theta, \qquad r = a\cos n\theta, \qquad \text{integer } n.$ (Figure 10.3.11)

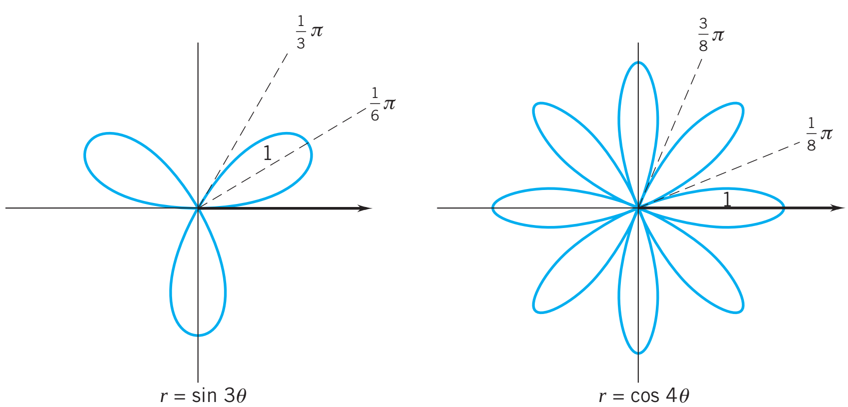


Figure 10.3.11

If n is *odd*, there are n petals. If n is *even*, there are $2n$ petals.

[†] From the French term for "snail". The word is pronounced with a soft *c*.
[††] From the Latin *lemniscatus*, meaning "adorned with pendant ribbons."

The Intersection of Polar Curves

The fact that a single point has many pairs of polar coordinates can cause complications. In particular, it means that a point $[r_1, \theta_1]$ can lie on a curve given by a polar equation although the coordinates r_1 and θ_1 do not satisfy the equation. For example, the coordinates of $[2, \pi]$ do not satisfy the equation $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$:

$$r^2 = 2^2 = 4 \qquad \text{but} \qquad 4\cos\theta = 4\cos\pi = -4.$$

Nevertheless the point $[2, \pi]$ does lie on the curve $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$. We know this because $[2, \pi] = [-2, 0]$ and the coordinates of $[-2, 0]$ do satisfy the equation:

$$r^2 = (-2)^2 = 4, \qquad 4\cos\theta = 4\cos 0 = 4$$

In general, a point $P[r_1, \theta_1]$ lies on a curve given by a polar equation if it has at least one polar coordinate representation $[r, \theta]$ with coordinates that satisfy the equation. The difficulties are compounded when we deal with two or more curves. Here is an example.

Example 5 Find the points where the cardioids

$$r = a(1 - \cos\theta) \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = a(1 + \cos\theta) \qquad (a > 0)$$

intersect.

SOLUTION We begin by solving the two equations simultaneously. Adding these. equations, we get $2r = 2a$ and thus $r = a$, Given that $r = a$, we can conclude that $\cos\theta = 0$ and therefore $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi$. The points $[a, \frac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi]$ all lie on both curves. Not all of these points are distinct:

$$\text{for } n \text{ even, } \left[a, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi\right] = \left[a, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right]: \qquad \text{for } n \text{ odd, } \left[a, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi\right] = \left[a, \tfrac{3}{2}\pi\right].$$

In short, by solving the two equations simultaneously we have arrived at two common points:

$$\left[a, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right] = (0, a) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \left[a, \tfrac{3}{2}\pi\right] = (0, -a).$$

However, by sketching the two curves (see Figure 10.3.12), we see that there is a third point at which the curves intersect; the two curves intersect at the origin, which clearly lies on both curves:

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{for} & r = a(1 - \cos\theta) & \text{take} & \theta = 0, 2\pi, \ldots, \\ \text{for} & r = a(1 + \cos\theta) & \text{take} & \theta = \pi, 3\pi, \ldots, \end{array}$$

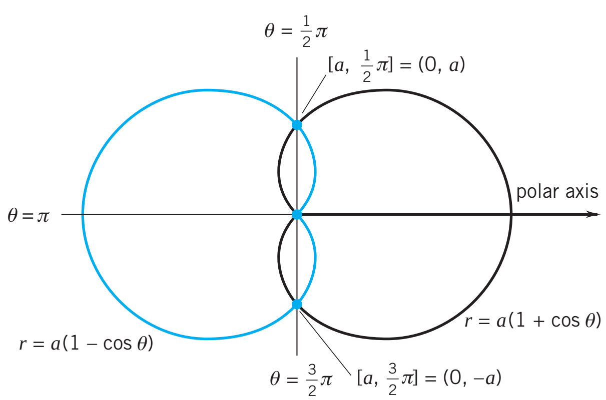


Figure 10.3.12

The reason that the origin does not appear when we solve the two equations simultaneously is that the curves do not pass through the origin "simultaneously"; that is, they

do not pass through the origin for the same values of θ. Think of each of the equations

$$r = a(1 - \cos\theta) \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = a(1 + \cos\theta)$$

as giving the position of an object at time θ. At the points we found by solving the two equations simultaneously, the objects collide. (They both arrive there at the same time.) At the origin the situation is different. Both objects pass through the origin, but no collision takes place because the objects pass through the origin at *different* times. ❑

Remark Problems of incidence [does the point P lie on the curve $r = \rho(\theta)$?] and problems of intersection [where do the polar curves $r = \rho_1(\theta)$ and $r = \rho_2(\theta)$ intersect?] can usually be analyzed by sketching the curves. However, there are situations where such problems can be handled more readily by first changing to rectangular coordinates (x, y). ❑

EXERCISES 10.3

Exercises 1–32. Sketch the polar curve.

1. $\theta = -\frac{1}{4}\pi$.

2. $r = -3$.

3. $r = 4$.

4. $r = 3\cos\theta$.

5. $r = -2\sin\theta$.

6. $\theta = \frac{2}{3}\pi$.

7. $r\csc\theta = 3$.

8. $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.

9. $r = \theta, \quad -\frac{1}{2}\pi \le \theta \le \pi$.

10. $r\sec\theta = -2$.

11. $r = \sin 3\theta$.

12. $r^2 = \cos 2\theta$.

13. $r^2 = \sin 2\theta$.

14. $r = \cos 2\theta$.

15. $r^2 = 4, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \frac{3}{4}\pi$.

16. $r = \sin\theta$.

17. $r^3 = 9r$.

18. $\theta = -\frac{1}{4}, \quad 1 \le r < 2$.

19. $r = -1 + \sin\theta$.

20. $r^2 = 4r$.

21. $r = \sin 2\theta$.

22. $r = \cos 3\theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

23. $r = \cos 5\theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

24. $r = e^{\theta}, \quad -\pi \le \theta \le \pi$.

25. $r = 2 + \sin\theta$.

26. $r = \cot\theta$.

27. $r = \tan\theta$.

28. $r = 2 - \cos\theta$.

29. $r = 2 + \sec\theta$.

30. $r = 3 - \csc\theta$.

31. $r = -1 + 2\cos\theta$.

32. $r = 1 + 2\sin\theta$.

Exercises 33–36. Determine whether the point lies on the curve.

33. $r^2\cos\theta = 1; \quad [1, \pi]$.

34. $r^2 = \cos 2\theta; \quad [1, \frac{1}{4}\pi]$.

35. $r = \sin\frac{1}{3}\theta; \quad [\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$

36. $r^2 = \sin 3\theta; \quad [1, -\frac{5}{6}\pi]$.

37. Show that the point $[2, \pi]$ lies both on $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$ and on $r = 3 + \cos\theta$.

38. Show that the point $[2, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$ lies both on $r^2\sin\theta = 4$ and on $r = 2\cos 2\theta$.

Exercises 39–46. Sketch the curves and find the points at which they intersect. Express your answers in rectangular coordinates.

39. $r = \sin\theta, \quad r = -\cos\theta$.

40. $r^2 = \sin\theta, \quad r = 2 - \sin\theta$.

41. $r = \cos^2\theta, \quad r = -1$.

42. $r = 2\sin\theta, \quad r = 2\cos\theta$.

43. $r = 1 - \cos\theta, \quad r = \cos\theta$.

44. $r = 1 - \cos\theta, \quad r = \sin\theta$.

45. $r = \sin 2\theta, \quad r = \sin\theta$.

46. $r = 1 - \cos\theta, \quad r = 1 + \sin\theta$.

47. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curves

$$r = 1 + \cos\left(\theta - \tfrac{1}{3}\pi\right) \quad \text{and} \quad r = 1 + \cos\left(\theta + \tfrac{1}{6}\pi\right).$$

Compare these curves to the curve $r = 1 + \cos\theta$.

(b) More generally, compare the curve $r = f(\theta - \alpha)$ to the curve $r = f(\theta)$. (Take $\alpha > 0$.)

48. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curves

$$r = 1 + \sin\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad r^2 = 4\sin 2\theta$$

using the same polar axis.

(b) Use a CAS to find the points where the two curves intersect.

49. Exercise 48 for the curves

$$r = 1 + \cos\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = 1 + \cos\tfrac{1}{2}\theta.$$

50. Exercise 48 for the curves

$$r = 2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = 2\sin 3\theta.$$

51. Exercise 48 for the curves

$$r = 1 - 3\cos\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = 2 - 5\sin\theta.$$

52. (a) The electrostatic charge distribution consisting of a charge q ($q > 0$) at the point $[r, 0]$ and a charge $-q$ at $[r, \pi]$ is called a *dipole*. The *lines of force* for the dipole are given by the equations

$$r = k\sin^2\theta.$$

Use a graphing utility to draw the lines of force for $k = 1, 2, 3$.

(b) The *equipotential lines* (the set of points with equal electric potential) for the dipole are given by the equations

$$r^2 = m\cos\theta$$

Use a graphing utility to draw the equipotential lines for $m = 1, 2, 3$.

(c) Draw the curves $r = 2\sin^2\theta$ and $r^2 = 2\cos\theta$ using the same polar axis. Estimate the xy-coordinates of the points where the two curves intersect.

53. Use a graphing utility to draw the curves

$$r = 1 + \sin k\theta + \cos^2 2k\theta$$

for $k = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$. Suggest a name for such curves.

54. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve $r = e^{\cos\theta} - 2\cos 4\theta$. Suggest a name for this curve.

55. The curves $r = A\cos k\theta$ and $r = A\sin k\theta$ are known as *petal curves*. (See Figure 10.3.11.) Use a graphing utility to draw the curves

$$r = 2\cos k\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = 2\sin k\theta$$

for $k = \frac{3}{2}$ and $k = \frac{5}{2}$. Form a conjecture about the shape of these curves for numbers k of the form $(2m+1)/2$.

56. Use a graphing utility to draw the curves

$$r = 2\cos k\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad r = 2\sin k\theta$$

for $k = \frac{4}{3}$ and $k = \frac{5}{3}$. Make a conjecture about the shape of these curves for $k = m/3$ (a) m even, not a multiple of 3; (b) m odd, not a multiple of 3.

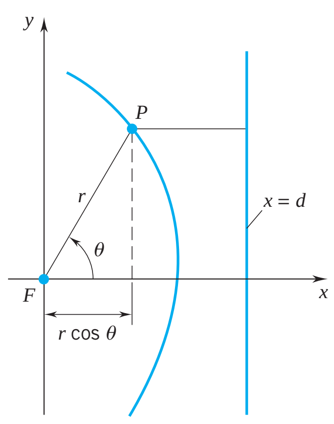
■ PROJECT 10.3 Parabola, Ellipse, Hyperbola in Polar Coordinates

In Section 10.1 we defined a parabola in terms of a focus and a directrix, but our definitions of the ellipse and hyperbola were given in terms of two foci; there was no mention of a directrix. In this project we give a unified approach to the conic sections that involves a focus and a directrix in all three cases.

Let F be a point of the plane and l a line which does not pass through F. We call F the *focus* and l the *directrix*. Let e be a positive number (the *eccentricity*) and consider the set of points P that satisfy the condition

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{\text{distance from } P \text{ to } F}{\text{distance from } P \text{ to } l} = e.$$

In the figure, we have superimposed a rectangular coordinate system on a polar coordinate system. We have placed F at the origin and taken l as the vertical line $x = d$, $d > 0$.



Problem 1. Show that the set of points P that satisfy condition (1) is given by the polar equation

$$\text{(2)} \qquad r = \frac{ed}{1 + e\cos\theta}.$$

Problem 2. Verify the following statements.

a. If $0 < e < 1$, equation (2) gives an ellipse of eccentricity e with right focus at the origin, major axis horizontal:

$$\frac{(x+c)^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2 - c^2} = 1 \quad \text{with} \quad a = \frac{ed}{1 - e^2}, \quad c = ea.$$

b. If $e = 1$, equation (2) gives a parabola with focus at the origin and directrix $x = d$:

$$y^2 = -4\frac{d}{2}\left(x - \frac{d}{2}\right).$$

c. If $e > 1$, equation (2) gives a hyperbola of eccentricity e with left focus at the origin, transverse axis horizontal:

$$\frac{(x-c)^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{c^2 - a^2} = 1 \quad \text{with} \quad a = \frac{ed}{e^2 - 1}, \quad c = ea.$$

Problem 3. Identify the curve and write the equation in rectangular coordinates.

a. $r = \dfrac{8}{4 + 3\cos\theta}$.

b. $r = \dfrac{6}{1 + 2\cos\theta}$.

c. $r = \dfrac{6}{2 + 2\cos\theta}$.

Problem 4. Taking α and β as positive constants, relate the curves

$$r = \frac{\alpha}{1 + \beta\sin\theta}, \qquad r = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \beta\cos\theta}, \qquad r = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \beta\sin\theta}$$

to the curve

$$r = \frac{\alpha}{1 + \beta\cos\theta}.$$

HINT: Example 4.

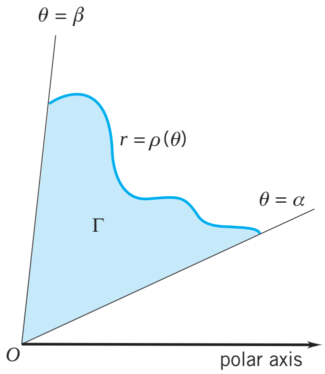


Figure 10.4.1

■ 10.4 AREA IN POLAR COORDINATES

Here we develop a way of calculating the area of a region with boundary given in polar coordinates.

As a start, we suppose that α and β are two real numbers with $\alpha < \beta \le \alpha + 2\pi$. We take ρ[†] as a function that is continuous on $[\alpha, \beta]$ and keeps constant sign on that interval. We want the area of the polar region Γ generated by the curve

$$r = \rho(\theta), \qquad \alpha \le \theta \le \beta.$$

Such a region is portrayed in Figure 10.4.1.

In the figure $\rho(\theta)$ remains nonnegative. If $\rho(\theta)$ were negative, the region Γ would appear on the opposite side of the pole. In either case, the area of Γ is given by the formula

(10.4.1)
$$\boxed{A = \int_\alpha^\beta \tfrac{1}{2}[\rho(\theta)]^2 d\theta.}$$

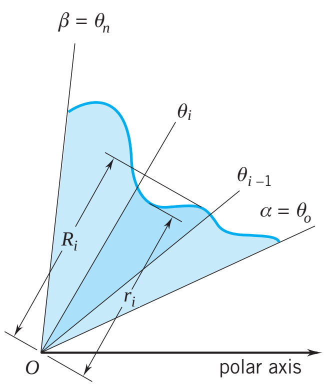


Figure 10.4.2

PROOF We consider the case where $\rho(\theta) \ge 0$. We take $P = \{\theta_1, \theta_2, \ldots, \theta_n\}$ as a partition of $[\alpha, \beta]$ and direct our attention to the region from θ_{i-1} to θ_i. We set

$$r_i = \text{min value of } \rho \text{ on } [\theta_{i-1}, \theta_i] \qquad \text{and} \qquad R_i = \text{max value of } \rho \text{ on } [\theta_{i-1}, \theta_i].$$

The part of Γ that lies from θ_{i-1} to θ_i contains a circular sector of radius r_i and central angle $\Delta\theta_i - \theta_{i-1}$ and is contained in a circular sector of radius R_i with the same central angle $\Delta\theta_i$. (See Figure 10.4.2.) Its area A_i must therefore satisfy the inequality

$$\tfrac{1}{2}r_i^2\Delta\theta_i \le A \le \tfrac{1}{2}R_i^2\Delta\theta_i.^{\dagger\dagger}$$

By adding up these inequalities from $i = 1$ to $1 = n$, we can see that the total area A of Γ must satisfy the inequality

(1) $$L_f(P) \le A \le U_f(P)$$

where $f(\theta) = \frac{1}{2}[\rho(\theta)]^2$. Since f is continuous and (1) holds for every partition P of $[\alpha, \beta]$, we can conclude that

$$A = \int_\alpha^\beta f(\theta)\, d\theta = \int_\alpha^\beta \tfrac{1}{2}[\rho(\theta)]^2 d\theta. \quad \square$$

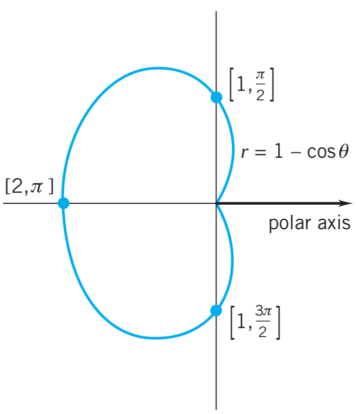


Figure 10.4.3

Example 1 Calculate the area enclosed by the cardioid

$$r = 1 - \cos\theta, \qquad \text{(Figure 10.4.3)}$$

SOLUTION The entire curve is traced out as θ increases from 0 to 2π. Note that $1 - \cos\theta \ge 0$ for all θ in $[0, 2\pi]$. Since $1 - \cos\theta$ keeps constant sign on $[0, 2\pi]$,

$$A = \int_0^{2\pi} \tfrac{1}{2}(1 - \cos\theta)^2 d\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} (1 - 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta)\, d\theta$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} (\tfrac{3}{2} - 2\cos\theta + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta)\, d\theta.$$

half-angle formula: $\cos^2\theta = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta$

[†] The symbol ρ is the lower case Greek letter "rho."
[††] The area of a circular sector of radius r and central angle α is $\frac{1}{2}r^2\alpha$.

Since

$$\int_o^{2\pi} \cos\theta\, d\theta = \sin\theta\Big|_0^{2\pi} = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_0^{2\pi} \cos 2\theta\, d\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta\Big|_0^{2\pi} = 0,$$

we have

$$A = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \tfrac{3}{2}\, d\theta = \tfrac{3}{4}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta = \tfrac{3}{2}\pi. \quad \square$$

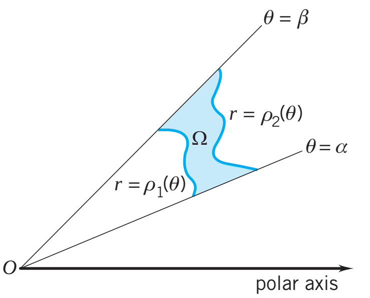


Figure 10.4.4

A slightly more complicated type of region is pictured in Figure 10.4.4. We approach the problem of calculating the area of the region Ω in the same way that we calculated the area between two curves in Section 5.5; that is, we calculate the area out to $r = p_2(\theta)$ and subtract from it the area out to $r = p_1(\theta)$. This gives

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_\alpha^\beta \tfrac{1}{2}[\rho_2(\theta)]^2 d\theta - \int_\alpha^\beta \tfrac{1}{2}[\rho_1(\theta)]^2 d\theta,$$

which can be written

(10.4.2)
$$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = \int_\alpha^\beta \tfrac{1}{2}([\rho_2(\theta)]^2 - [\rho_1(\theta)]^2) d\theta.}$$

To find the area between two polar curves, we first determine the curves that serve as outer and inner boundaries of the region and the intervals of θ values over which these boundaries are traced out. Since the polar coordinates of a point are not unique, extra care must be used to determine these intervals of θ values.

Example 2 Find the area of the region that lies within the circle $r = 2\cos\theta$ but is outside the circle $r = 1$.

SOLUTION The region is shown in Figure 10.4.5. Our first step is to find the values of θ for the two points where the circles intersect:

$$2\cos\theta = 1, \qquad \cos\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad \theta = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi,\ \tfrac{5}{3}\pi.$$

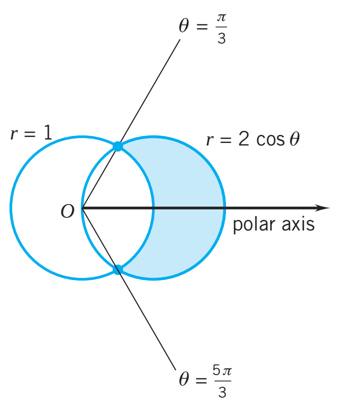


Figure 10.4.5

Since the region is symmetric about the polar axis, the area below the polar axis equals the area above the polar axis. Thus

$$A = 2\int_0^{\pi/3} \tfrac{1}{2}([2\cos\theta]^2 - [1]^2)\, d\theta.$$

Carry out the integration and you will see that $A = \frac{1}{3}\pi + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3} \cong 1.91.$ $\square$

Example 3 Find the area A of the region between the inner and outer loops of the limaçon

$$r = 1 - 2\cos\theta \qquad \text{(Figure 10.4.6)}$$

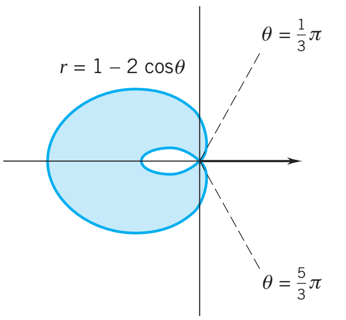


Figure 10.4.6

SOLUTION We find that $r = 0$ at $\theta = \pi/3$ and at $\theta = 5\pi/3$. The outer loop is traced out as θ increases from $\pi/3$ to $\theta = 5\pi/3$. Thus

$$\text{area within outer loop} = A_1 = \int_{\pi/3}^{5\pi/3} \tfrac{1}{2}[1 - 2\cos\theta]^2\, d\theta.$$

The lower half of the inner loop is traced out as θ increases from 0 to $\pi/3$ and the upper half as θ increases from $5\pi/3$ to 2π. (Verify this.) Therefore

$$\text{area within inner loop} = A_2 = \int_0^{\pi/3} \tfrac{1}{2}[1-2\cos\theta]^2 d\theta + \int_{5\pi/3}^{2\pi} \tfrac{1}{2}[1-2\cos\theta]^2\, d\theta.$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\int \tfrac{1}{2}[1-2\cos\theta]^2 d\theta &= \int \tfrac{1}{2}[1-4\cos\theta+4\cos^2\theta]\, d\theta\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\int [1-4\cos\theta+2(1+\cos 2\theta)]\, d\theta\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\int [3-4\cos\theta+2\cos 2\theta]\, d\theta\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}[3\theta-4\sin\theta+\sin 2\theta]+C.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$A_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}\Big[3\theta - 4\sin\theta + \sin 2\theta\Big]_{\pi/3}^{5\pi/3} = 2\pi + \tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{3},$$

$$\begin{aligned}A_2 &= \tfrac{1}{2}\Big[3\theta - 4\sin\theta + \sin 2\theta\Big]_0^{\pi/3} + \tfrac{1}{2}\Big[3\theta - 4\sin\theta + \sin 2\theta\Big]_{5\pi/3}^{2\pi}\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \tfrac{3}{4}\sqrt{3} + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \tfrac{3}{4}\sqrt{3} = \pi - \tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{3},\end{aligned}$$

and

$$A = A_1 - A_2 = 2\pi + \tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{3} - \left(\pi - \tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{3}\right) = \pi + 3\sqrt{3} \cong 8.34. \quad ❑$$

Remark We could have done Example 3 more efficiently by exploiting the symmetry of the region. The region is symmetric about the x-axis. Therefore

$$A = 2\int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} \tfrac{1}{2}[1-2\cos\theta]^2\, d\theta - 2\int_0^{\pi/3} \tfrac{1}{2}[1-2\cos\theta]^2\, d\theta. \quad ❑$$

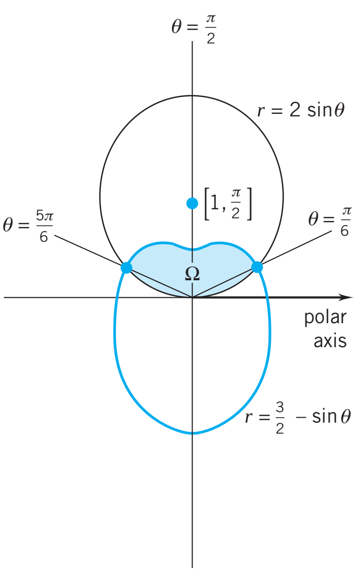


Figure 10.4.7

Example 4 The region Ω common to the circle $r = 2\sin\theta$ and the limaçon $r = \frac{3}{2} - \sin\theta$ is indicated in Figure 10.4.7. The θ-coordinates from 0 to 2π of the points of intersection can be found by solving the two equations simultaneously:

$$2\sin\theta = \tfrac{3}{2} - \sin\theta, \qquad \sin\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad \theta = \tfrac{1}{6}\pi, \tfrac{5}{6}\pi.$$

Therefore the area of Ω can be represented as follows:

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_0^{\pi/6} \tfrac{1}{2}[2\sin\theta]^2 d\theta + \int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} \tfrac{1}{2}[\tfrac{3}{2} - \sin\theta]^2 d\theta + \int_{5\pi/6}^{\pi} \tfrac{1}{2}[2\sin\theta]^2 d\theta;$$

or, by the symmetry of the region,

$$\text{area of } \Omega = 2\int_0^{\pi/6} \tfrac{1}{2}[2\sin\theta]^2 d\theta + 2\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \tfrac{1}{2}\left[\tfrac{3}{2} - \sin\theta\right]^2 d\theta.$$

As you can verify, the area of Ω is $\frac{5}{4} - \frac{15}{8}\sqrt{3} \cong 0.68$. ❑

EXERCISES 10.4

Exercises 1–6. Calculate the area enclosed by the curve. Take $a > 0$.

1. $r = a\cos\theta \quad$ from $\theta = -\frac{1}{2}\pi$ to $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

2. $r = a\cos 3\theta \quad$ from $\theta = -\frac{1}{6}\pi$ to $\theta = \frac{1}{6}\pi$.

3. $r = a\sqrt{\cos\, 2\theta} \quad$ from $\theta = -\frac{1}{4}\pi$ to $\theta = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

4. $r = a(1 + \cos 3\theta) \quad$ from $\theta = -\frac{1}{3}\pi$ to $\theta = \frac{1}{3}\pi$.

5. $r^2 = a^2\sin^2\theta$.

6. $r^2 = a^2\sin^2 2\theta$.

Exercises 7–16. Find the area between the curves.

7. $r = \tan 2\theta \quad$ and the rays $\quad \theta = 0, \quad \theta = \frac{1}{8}\pi$.

8. $r = \cos\theta, \quad r = \sin\theta, \quad$ and the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

9. $r = 2\cos\theta, \quad r\cos\theta, \quad$ and the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

10. $r = 1 + \cos\theta, \quad r = \cos\theta, \quad$ and the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

11. $r = a(4\cos\theta - \sec\theta) \quad$ and the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

12. $r = \frac{1}{2}\sec^2\frac{1}{2}\theta \quad$ and the vertical line through the origin.

13. $r = e^\theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi; \quad r = \theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi; \quad$ the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \pi$.

14. $r = e^\theta, \quad 2\pi \le \theta \le 3\pi; \quad r = \theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi; \quad$ the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \pi$.

15. $r = e^\theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi; \quad r = e^{\theta/2}, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi; \quad$ the rays $\theta = 2\pi, \quad \theta = 3\pi$.

16. $r = e^\theta, \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi; \quad r = e^\theta, \quad 2\pi \le \theta \le 3\pi; \quad$ the rays $\theta = 0, \quad \theta = \pi$.

Exercises 17–28. Represent the area by one or more integrals.

17. Outside $r = 2$, but inside $r = 4\sin\theta$.

18. Outside $r = 1 - \cos\theta$, but inside $r = 1 + \cos\theta$.

19. Inside $r = 4$, but to the right of $r = 2\sec\theta$.

20. Inside $r = 2$, but outside $r = 4\cos\theta$.

21. Inside $r = 4$, but between the lines $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ and $r = 2\sec\theta$.

22. Inside the inner loop of $r = 1 - 2\sin\theta$.

23. Inside one petal of $r = 2\sin 3\theta$.

24. Outside $r = 1 + \cos\theta$, but inside $r = 2 - \cos\theta$.

25. Interior to both $r = 1 - \sin\theta$ and $r = \sin\theta$.

26. Inside one petal of $r = 5\cos 6\theta$.

27. Outside $r = \cos 2\theta$, but inside $r = 1$.

28. Interior to both $r = 2a\cos\theta$ and $r = 2a\sin\theta$, $a > 0$.

29. Find the area within the three circles: $r = 1$, $r = 2\cos\theta$, $r = 2\sin\theta$.

30. Find the area outside the circle $r = a$ but inside the lemniscate $r^2 = 2a^2\cos 2\theta$.

31. Fix $a > 0$ and let n range over the set of positive integers. Show that the petal curves $r = a\cos 2n\theta$ and $r = a\sin 2n\theta$ all enclose exactly the same area. What is this area?

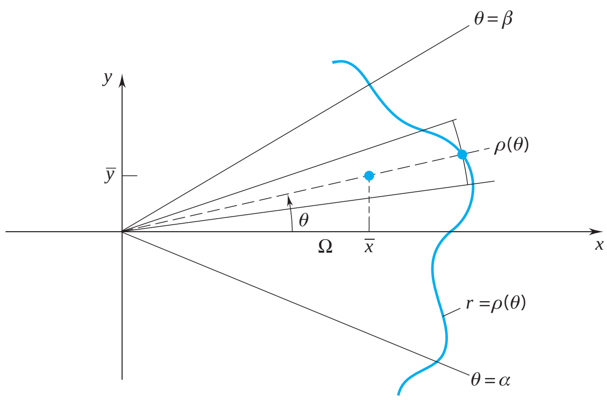
32. Fix $a > 0$ and let n range over the set of positive integers. Show that the petal curves $r = a\cos([2n+1]\theta)$ and $r = a\sin([2n+1]\theta)$ all enclose exactly the same area. What is this area?

Centroids in Polar Coordinates

The accompanying figure shows a region Ω bounded by a polar curve $r = \rho(\theta)$ from $\theta = \alpha$ to $\theta = \beta$ with $\alpha < \beta \le \alpha + 2\pi$. We take $\rho(\theta)$ as nonnegative. A partition of $[\alpha, \beta]$, $\{\alpha = \theta_0, \theta_1, \theta_2, \dots, \theta_n = \beta\}$, breaks up Ω into n subregions with areas A_i and centroids $(\overline{x_i}, \overline{y_i})$. As explained in Section 6-4, if Ω has centroid $(\overline{x}, \overline{y})$ and area A, then

$$\overline{x}A = \overline{x_1}A_1 + \overline{x_2}A_2 + \cdots + \overline{x_n}A_n,$$
$$\overline{y}A = \overline{y_1}A_1 + \overline{y_2}A_2 + \cdots + \overline{y_n}A_n.$$

Approximate $(\overline{x_i}, \overline{y_i})$ by the centroid (x_i^*, y_i^*) of the triangle shown in the figure and approximate A_i by the area of the circular sector of radius $\rho(x_i^*)$ from $\theta = \theta_{i-1}$ to $\theta = \theta_i$. (Recall that the centroid of a triangle lies on each median, two-thirds of the distance from the vertex to the opposite side. Exercise 34, Section 6.4.)



33. Go on to show that the rectangular coordinates $\overline{x}, \overline{y}$ of the centroid of Ω are given by the equations

(10.4.3)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\overline{x}A &= \frac{1}{3}\int_\alpha^\beta \rho^3(\theta)\cos\theta\, d\theta,\\ \overline{y}A &= \frac{1}{3}\int_\alpha^\beta \rho^3(\theta)\sin\theta\, d\theta\end{aligned}}$$

where A is the area of Ω.

34. In Section 6.4 we showed that the quarter-disk of Figure 6.4.4 has centroid $(4r/3\pi, 4r/3\pi)$. Obtain this result from (10.4.3).

35. Find the rectangular coordinates of the centroid of the region enclosed by the cardioid $r = 1 + \cos\theta$.

36. Find the rectangular coordinates of the centroid of the region enclosed by the cardioid $r = 2 + \sin\theta$.

Exercises 37–38. Use a graphing utility to draw the polar curve. Then use a CAS to find the area of the region it encloses.

37. $r = 2 + \cos\theta$. **38.** $r = 2\cos 3\theta$.

Exercises 39–40. Use a graphing utility to draw the polar curve. Then use a CAS to find the area inside the first curve but outside the second curve.

39. $r = 4\cos 3\theta, \quad r = 2$.

40. $r = 2\cos\theta, \quad r = 1 - \cos\theta$.

41. The curve

$$y^2 = x^2\left(\frac{a-x}{a+x}\right), a > 0$$

is called a *strophoid*.

(a) Show that in polar coordinates the equation can be written

$$r = a\cos 2\theta \sec\theta.$$

(b) Draw the curve for $a = 1, 2, 4$. Use a graphing utility.
(c) Setting $a = 2$, find the area inside the loop.

42. The curve

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 = ax^2y, \quad a > 0$$

is called a *bifolium*.

(a) Show that in polar coordinates the equation can be written

$$r = a\sin\theta\cos^2\theta.$$

(b) Draw the curve for $a = 1, 2, 4$. Use a graphing utility.
(c) Setting $a = 2$, find the area inside one of the loops.

■ 10.5 CURVES GIVEN PARAMETRICALLY

So far we have specified curves by equations in rectangular coordinates or by equations in polar coordinates. Here we introduce a more general method. We begin with a pair of functions $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$ differentiable on the interior of an interval I. At the endpoints of I (if any) we require only one-sided continuity.

For each number t in I we can interpret $(x(t), y(t))$ as the point with x-coordinate $x(t)$ and y-coordinate $y(t)$. Then, as t ranges over I, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out a path in the xy-plane. (Figure 10.5.1.) We call such a path a *parametrized curve* and refer to t as the *parameter*.

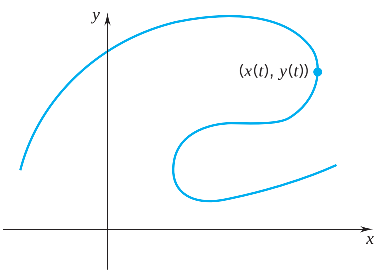


Figure 10.5.1

Example 1 Identify the curve parametrized by the functions

$$x(t) = t + 1, \qquad y(t) = 2t - 5 \qquad t \in (-\infty, \infty).$$

SOLUTION We can express $y(t)$ in terms of $x(t)$:

$$y(t) = 2[x(t) - 1] - 5 = 2x(t) - 7.$$

The functions parametrize the line $y = 2x - 7$: as t ranges over the set of real numbers, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out the line $y = 2x - 7$. ❑

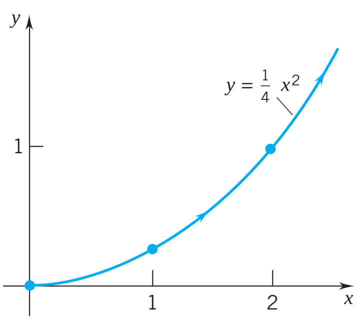


Figure 10.5.2

Example 2 Identify the curve parametrized by the functions

$$x(t) = 2t, \qquad y(t) = t^2 \qquad t \in [0, \infty).$$

SOLUTION For each $t \in [0, \infty)$, both $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are nonnegative. Therefore the curve lies in the first quadrant.

From the first equation we have $t = \frac{1}{2}x(t)$ and therefore

$$y(t) = \tfrac{1}{4}[x(t)]^2.$$

The functions parametrize the right half of the parabola $y = \frac{1}{4}x^2$: as t ranges over the interval $[0, \infty)$, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out the parabolic arc $y = \frac{1}{4}x^2$, $x \geq 0$. (Figure 10.5.2.) ❑

Example 3 Identify the curve parametrized by the functions

$$x(t) = \sin^2 t, \qquad y(t) = \cos t \qquad t \in [0, \pi].$$

SOLUTION Since $x(t) \geq 0$, the curve lies in the right half-plane. Since

$$x(t) = \sin^2 t = 1 - \cos^2 t = 1 - [y(t)]^2,$$

the points $(x(t), y(t))$ all lie on the parabola

$$x = 1 - y^2. \qquad \text{(Figure 10.5.3)}$$

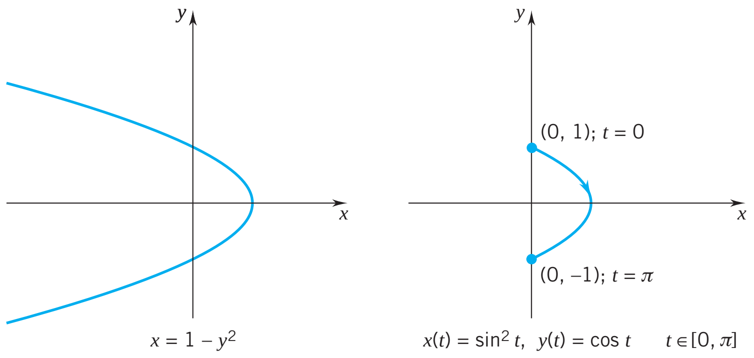


Figure 10.5.3

At $t = 0$, $x = 0$ and $y = 1$; at $t = \pi$, $x = 0$ and $y = -1$. As t ranges from 0 to π, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traverses the parabolic arc

$$x = 1 - y^2, \qquad -1 \leq y \leq 1$$

from the point (0, 1) to the point (0, −1). ❑

Remark Changing the domain in Example 3 to all real t does *not* give us any more of the parabola. For any given t we still have

$$0 \leq x(t) \leq 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -1 \leq y(t) \leq 1.$$

As t ranges over the set of real numbers, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out that same parabolic arc back and forth an infinite number of times. ❑

Straight Lines Given that $(x_0, y_0) \neq (x_1, y_1)$, the functions

(10.5.1) $$\boxed{x(t) = x_0 + t(x_1 - x_0), \qquad y(t) = y_0 + t(y_1 - y_0) \qquad t \in (-\infty, \infty)}$$

parametrize the line that passes through the points (x_0, y_0) and (x_1, y_1).

PROOF If $x_1 = x_0$, then we have

$$x(t) = x_0, \qquad y(t) = y_0 + t(y_1 - y_0).$$

As t ranges over the set of real numbers, $x(t)$ remains constantly x_0 and $y(t)$ ranges over the set of real numbers. The functions parametrize the vertical line $x = x_0$.

If $x_1 \neq x_0$, then we can solve the first equation for t:

$$t = \frac{x(t) - x_0}{x_1 - x_0}.$$

Substituting this into the second equation, we find that

$$y(t) - y_0 = \frac{y_1 - y_0}{x_1 - x_0}[x(t) - x_0].$$

The functions parametrize the line with equation

$$y - y_0 = \frac{y_1 - y_0}{x_1 - x_0}(x - x_0).$$

This is the line that passes through the points (x_0, y_0) and (x_1, y_1). ❏

Ellipses and Circles Take $a, b > 0$. The functions $x(t) = a\cos t$, $y(t) = b\sin t$ satisfy the identity

$$\frac{[x(t)]^2}{a^2} + \frac{[y(t)]^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

As t ranges over any interval of length 2π, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Usually we let t range from 0 to 2π and parametrize the ellipse by setting

(10.5.2) $$\boxed{x(t) = a\cos t, \qquad y(t) = b\sin t \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi].}$$

If $b = a$, we have a circle. We can parametrize the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2$$

by setting

(10.5.3) $$\boxed{x(t) = a\cos t, \qquad y(t) = a\sin t \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi].}$$

Hyperbolas Take $a, b > 0$. The functions $x(t) = a\cosh t$, $y(t) = b\sinh t$ satisfy the identity

$$\frac{[x(t)]^2}{a^2} - \frac{[y(t)]^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Since $x(t) = a\cosh t > 0$ for all t, as t ranges over the set of real numbers, the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out the right branch of the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 10.5.4)}$$

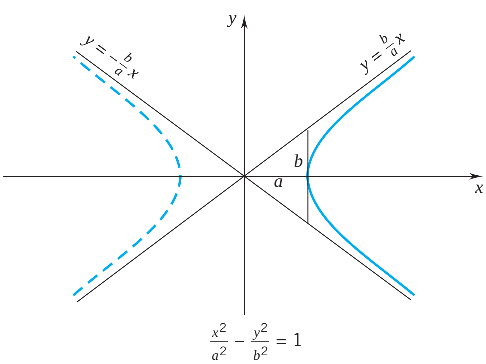


Figure 10.5.4

Two observations.

(1) Usually we think of t as representing time. Then $(x(t), y(t))$ gives position at time t. As time progresses, $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out a path in the xy-plane. Different parametrizations of the same path give different ways of traversing that path. (Examples 4 and 5.)

(2) On occasion we'll find it useful to parametrize the graph of a function $y = f(x)$ defined on an interval I. We can do this by setting

$$x(t) = t, \qquad y(t) = f(t) \qquad t \in I,$$

As t ranges over I, the point $(t, f(t))$ traces out the graph of f.

Example 4 The line that passes through the points (1, 2) and (3, 6) has equation $y = 2x$. The line segment that joins these points is the graph of the function

$$y = 2x, \qquad 1 \leq x \leq 3.$$

We will parametrize this line segment in different ways using the parameter t to indicate time measured in seconds.

We begin by setting

$$x(t) = t, \qquad y(t) = 2t \qquad t \in [1, 3].$$

At time $t = 1$, the particle is at the point (1, 2). It traverses the line segment and arrives at the point (3, 6) at time $t = 3$.

Now we set

$$x(t) = t + 1, \qquad y(t) = 2t + 2 \qquad t \in [0, 2].$$

At time $t = 0$, the particle is at the point (1, 2). It traverses the line segment and arrives at the point (3, 6) at time $t = 2$.

The equations

$$x(t) = 3 - t, \qquad y(t) = 6 - 2t \qquad t \in [0, 2]$$

represent a traversal of that same line segment but in the opposite direction. At time $t = 0$, the particle is at the point (3, 6). It arrives at (1, 2) at time $t = 2$.

Set

$$x(t) = 3 - 4t, \qquad y(t) = 6 - 8t \qquad t \in \left[0, \tfrac{1}{2}\right].$$

Now the particle traverses the same line segment in only half a second. At time $t = 0$, the particle is at the point (3, 6). It arrives at (1, 2) at time $t = \frac{1}{2}$.

Finally we set

$$x(t) = 2 - \cos t, \qquad y(t) = 4 - 2\cos t \qquad t \in [0, 4\pi].$$

In this instance the particle begins and ends its motion at the point (1, 2), having traced and retraced the line segment twice during a span of 4π seconds. (See Figure 10.5.5.) ❑

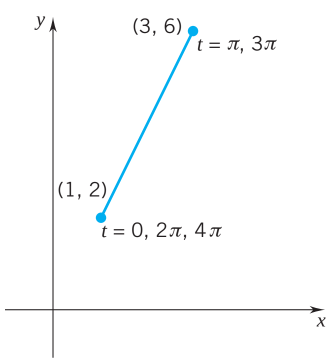


Figure 10.5.5

Remark If the path of an object is given in terms of a time parameter t and we eliminate the parameter to obtain an equation in x and y, it may be that we obtain a clearer view of the path, but we do so at considerable expense. The equation in x and y does not tell us where the particle is at any time t. The parametric equations do. ❑

Example 5 We return to the ellipse $\dfrac{x^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ and again use the parameter t to measure time measured in seconds.

A particle with position given by the equations

$$x(t) = a\cos t, \qquad y(t) = b\sin t \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

traverses the ellipse in a counterclockwise manner. It begins at the point (a, 0) and makes a full circuit in 2π seconds. If the equations of motion are

$$x(t) = a\cos 2\pi t, \qquad y(t) = -b\sin 2\pi t \qquad t \in [0, 1],$$

the particle still travels the same ellipse, but in a different manner. Once again it starts at $(a, 0)$, but this time it moves clockwise and makes a full circuit in only 1 second. If the equations of motion are

$$x(t) = a\sin 4\pi t, \qquad y(t) = -b\cos 4\pi t \qquad t \in [0, \infty],$$

the motion begins at $(0, b)$ and goes on in perpetuity. The motion is clockwise, a complete circuit taking place every half second. ❑

Intersections and Collisions

Example 6 Two particles start at the same instant, the first along the linear path

$$x_1(t) = \tfrac{16}{3} - \tfrac{8}{3}t, \qquad y_1(t) = 4t - 5 \qquad t \geq 0$$

and the second along the elliptical path

$$x_2(t) = 2\sin\tfrac{1}{2}\pi t, \qquad y_2(t) = -3\cos\tfrac{1}{2}\pi t \qquad t \geq 0.$$

(a) At what points, if any, do the paths intersect?

(b) At what points, if any, do the particles collide?

SOLUTION To see where the paths intersect, we find equations for them in x and y. The linear path can be written

$$3x + 2y - 6 = 0, \qquad x \leq \tfrac{16}{3}$$

and the elliptical path

$$\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1.$$

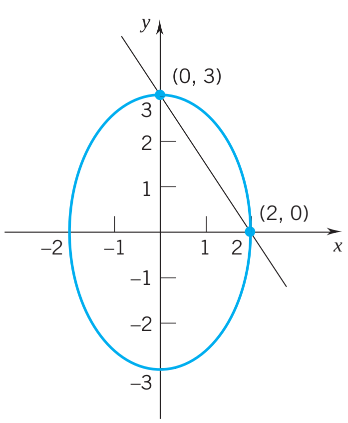


Figure 10.5.6

Solving the two equations simultaneously, we get

$$x = 2, \quad y = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x = 0, \quad y = 3.$$

This means that the paths intersect at the points (2, 0) and (0, 3). This answers part (a).

Now for part (b). The first particle passes through the point (2, 0) only when

$$x_1(t) = \frac{16}{3} - \frac{8}{3}t = 2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_1(t) = 4t - 5 = 0.$$

As you can check, this happens only when $t = \frac{5}{4}$. When $t = \frac{5}{4}$, the second particle is elsewhere. Hence no collision takes place at (2, 0) There is, however, a collision at (0,3) because both particles get there at exactly the same time, $t = 2$:

$$x_1(2) = 0 = x_2(2), \qquad y_1(2) = 3 = y_2(2). \qquad \text{(See Figure 10.5.6.)}$$ ❑

EXERCISES 10.5

Exercises 1–12. Express the curve by an equation in x and y.

1. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = 2t + 1.$

2. $x(t) = 3t - 1, \quad y(t) = 5 - 2t.$

3. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = 4t^4 + 1.$

4. $x(t) = 2t - 1, \quad y(t) = 8t^3 - 5.$

5. $x(t) = 2\cos t, \quad y(t) = 3\sin t.$

6. $x(t) = \sec^2 t, \quad y(t) = 2 + \tan t.$

7. $x(t) = \tan t, \quad y(t) = \sec t.$

8. $x(t) = 2 - \sin t, \quad y(t) = \cos t.$

9. $x(t) = \sin t, \quad y(t) = 1 + \cos^2 t.$

10. $x(t) = e^t, \quad y(t) = 4 - e^{2t}.$

11. $x(t) = 4\sin t, \quad y(t) = 3 + 2\sin t.$

12. $x(t) = \csc t, \quad y(t) = \cot t.$

Exercises 13–21. Express the curve by an equation in x and y; then sketch the curve.

13. $x(t) = e^{2t}, \quad y(t) = e^{2t} - 1 \quad t \le 0.$

14. $x(t) = 3\cos t, \quad y(t) = 2 - \cos t \quad 0 \le t \le \pi.$

15. $x(t) = \sin t, \quad y(t) = \csc t \quad 0 < t \le \frac{1}{4}\pi.$

16. $x(t) = 1/t, \quad y(t) = 1/t^2 \quad 0 < t < 3.$

17. $x(t) = 3 + 2t, \quad y(t) = 5 - 4t \quad -1 \le t \le 2.$

18. $x(t) = \sec t, \quad y(t) = \tan t \quad 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{4}\pi.$

19. $x(t) = \sin \pi t, \quad y(t) = 2t \quad 0 \le t \le 4.$

20. $x(t) = 2\sin t, \quad y(t) = \cos t \quad 0 \le t \le \frac{1}{2}\pi.$

21. $x(t) = \cot t, \quad y(t) = \csc t \quad \frac{1}{4}\pi \le t < \frac{1}{2}\pi.$

22. (*Important*) Parametrize the polar curve $r = \rho(\theta)$, $\theta \in [\alpha, \beta]$.

23. A particle with position given by the equations

$$x(t) = \sin 2\pi t, \quad y(t) = \cos 2\pi t \quad t \in [0, 1].$$

starts at the point (0, 1) and traverses the unit circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ once in a clockwise manner. Write equations in the form

$$x(t) = f(t), \quad y(t) = g(t) \qquad t \in [0, 1].$$

so that the particle

(a) begins at (0, 1) and traverses the circle once in a counterclockwise manner;
(b) begins at (0, 1) and traverses the circle twice in a clockwise manner;
(c) traverses the quarter circle from (1, 0) to (0, 1);
(d) traverses the three-quarter circle from (1, 0) to (0, 1).

24. A particle with position given by the equations

$$x(t) = 3\cos 2\pi t, \quad y(t) = 4\sin 2\pi t \qquad t \in [0, 1].$$

starts at the point (3, 0) and traverses the ellipse $16x^2 + 9y^2 = 144$ once in a counterclockwise manner. Write equations of the form

$$x(t) = f(t), \quad y(t) = g(t) \qquad t \in [0, 1],$$

so that the particle

(a) begins at (3, 0) and traverses the ellipse once in a clockwise manner;
(b) begins at (0, 4) and traverses the ellipse once in a clockwise manner;
(c) begins at (−3, 0) and traverses the ellipse twice in a counterclockwise manner;
(d) traverses the upper half of the ellipse from (3, 0) to (0, 3).

25. Find a parametrization

$$x = x(t), \quad y = y(t) \qquad t \in (-1, 1),$$

for the horizontal line $y = 2$.

26. Find a parametrization

$$x(t) = \sin f(t), \quad y(t) = \cos f(t) \qquad t \in (0, 1),$$

which traces out the unit circle infinitely often.

Exercises 27–32. Find a parametrization

$$x = x(t), \quad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [0, 1]$$

for the given curve.

27. The line segment from (3, 7) to (8, 5).

28. The line segment from (2, 6) to (6, 3).

29. The parabolic arc $x = 1 - y^2$ from (0, −1) to (0,1).

30. The parabolic arc $x = y^2$ from (4, 2) to (0, 0).

31. The curve $y^2 = x^3$ from (4, 8) to (1, 1).

32. The curve $y^3 = x^2$ from (1, 1) to (8, 4).

(Important) For Exercises 33–36 assume that the curve

$$C : x = x(t), \quad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [c, d],$$

is the graph of a nonnegative function $y = f(x)$ over an interval $[a, b]$. Assume that $x'(t)$ and $y(t)$ are continuous, $x(c) = a$ and $x(d) = b$.

33. (*The area under a parametrized curve*) Show that

$$\text{(10.5.4)} \qquad \boxed{\text{the area below } C = \int_c^d y(t)\, x'(t)\, dt.}$$

HINT: Since C is the graph of f, $y(t) = f(x(t))$.

34. (*The centroid of a region under a parametrized curve*). Show that, if the region under C has area A and centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$, then

(10.5.5)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\bar{x}A &= \int_c^d x(t)\; y(t)\, x'(t)\, dt,\\ \bar{y}A &= \int_c^d \tfrac{1}{2}[y(t)]^2 x'(t)\, dt.\end{aligned}}$$

35. (*The volume of the solid generated by revolving about a coordinate axis the region under a parametrized curve*) Show that

(10.5.6)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}V_x &= \int_c^d \pi[y(t)]^2 x'(t)\, dt,\\ V_y &= \int_c^d 2\pi x(t)y(t)\, x'(t)\, dt.\\ &\quad \text{provided } x(c) \geq 0\end{aligned}}$$

36. (*The centroid of the solid generated by revolving about a coordinate axis the region under a parametrized curve*) Show that

(10.5.7)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\bar{x}V_x &= \int_c^d \pi x(t)[y(t)]^2 x'(t)\, dt,\\ \bar{y}V_y &= \int_c^d \pi x(t)[y(t)]^2 x'(t)\, dt\\ &\quad \text{provided } x(c) \geq 0.\end{aligned}}$$

37. Sketch the curve

$$x(t) = at, \quad y(t) = a(1 - \cos t) \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

and find the area below it. Take $a > 0$.

38. Determine the centroid of the region under the curve of Exercise 37.

39. Find the volume generated by revolving the region of Exercise 38 about: (a) the x-axis; (b) the y-axis.

40. Find the centroid of the solid generated by revolving the region of Exercise 38 about: (a) the x-axis; (b) the y-axis.

41. Give a parametrization for the upper half of the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ that satisfies the assumptions made for Exercises 33–36.

42. Use the parametrization you chose for Exercise 41 to find (a) the area of the region enclosed by the ellipse; (b) the centroid of the upper half of that region.

43. Two particles start at the same instant, the first along the ray

$$x(t) = 2t + 6, \quad y(t) = 5 - 4t \qquad t \geq 0$$

and the second along the circular path

$$x(t) = 3 - 5\cos \pi t, \quad y(t) = 1 + 5\sin \pi t \qquad t \geq 0.$$

(a) At what points, if any, do these paths intersect?
(b) At what points, if any, do the particles collide?

44. Two particles start at the same instant, the first along the elliptical path

$$x_1(t) = 2 - 3\cos \pi t, \quad y_1(t) = 3 + 7\sin \pi t \qquad t \geq 0.$$

and the second along the parabolic path

$$x_2(t) = 3t + 2, \quad y_2(t) = -\tfrac{7}{15}(3t+1)^2 + \tfrac{157}{15} \qquad t \geq 0.$$

(a) At what points, if any, do these paths intersect?
(b) At what points, if any, do the particles collide?

We can determine the points where a parametrized curve

$$C: \quad x = x(t), \quad y = y(t) \qquad t \in I$$

intersects itself by finding the numbers r and s in $I (r \neq s)$ for which

$$x(r) = x(s) \quad \text{and} \quad y(r) = y(s).$$

Use this method to find the point(s) of self-intersection of each of the following curves.

45. $x(t) = t^2 - 2t, \quad y(t) = t^3 - 3t^2 + 2t \qquad t$ real.

46. $x(t) = \cos t(1 - 2\sin t), \quad y(t) = \sin t\,(1 - 2\sin t)$
$t \in [0, \pi]$.

47. $x(t) = \sin 2\pi t, \quad y(t) = 2t - t^2 \qquad t \in [0, 4]$.

48. $x(t) = t^3 - 4t, \quad y(t) = t^3 - 3t^2 + 2t \qquad t$ real.

Exercises 49–52. A particle moves along the curve described by the parametric equations $x = f(t)$, $y = g(t)$. Use a graphing utility to draw the path of the particle and describe the motion of the particle as it moves along the curve.

49. $x = 2t, \quad y = 4t - t^2 \qquad 0 \leq t \leq 6$.

50. $x = 3(t^2 - 3), \quad y = t^3 - 3t \qquad -3 \leq t \leq 3$.

51. $x = \cos(t^2 + t), \quad y = \sin(t^2 + t) \qquad 0 \leq t \leq 2.1$.

52. $x = \cos(\ln t), \quad y = \sin(\ln t) \qquad 1 \leq t \leq e^{2\pi}$.

53. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve

$$x(\theta) = \cos\theta(a - b\sin\theta), \qquad y(\theta) = \sin\theta\,(a - b\sin\theta)$$

from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$ given that

(a) $a = 1, b = 2$.
(b) $a = 2, b = 2$.
(c) $a = 2, b = 1$.
(d) In general, what can you say about the curve if $a < b$? $a > b$?
(e) Express the curve in the form $r = \rho(\theta)$.

■ PROJECT 10.5 Parabolic Trajectories

In the early part of the seventeenth century Galileo Galilei observed the motion of stones projected from the tower of Pisa and concluded that their trajectory was parabolic. Using calculus, together with some simplifying assumptions, we obtain results that agree with Galileo's observations.

Consider a projectile fired at an angle θ, $0 < \theta < \pi/2$, from a point (x_0, y_0) with initial velocity v_0. (Figure A.) The horizontal component of v_0 is $v_0 \cos\theta$, and the vertical component is $v_0 \sin\theta$. (Figure B.) Let $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$ be parametric equations for the path of the projectile.

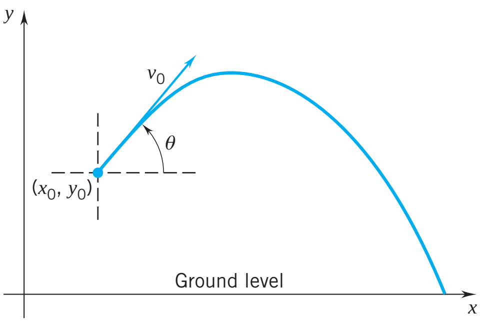


Figure A

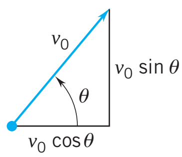


Figure B

We neglect air resistance and the curvature of the earth. Under these circumstances there is no horizontal acceleration and

$$x''(t) = 0.$$

The only vertical acceleration is due to gravity; therefore

$$y''(t) = -g.$$

Problem 1. Show that the path of the projectile (the trajectory) is given parametrically by the functions

$$x(t) = (v_0 \cos\theta)t + x_0, \quad y(t) = -\tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 + (v_0 \sin\theta)t + y_0.$$

Problem 2. Show that in rectangular coordinates the equation of the trajectory can be written

$$y = -\frac{g}{2v_0^2}\sec^2\theta\,(x - x_0)^2 + \tan\theta(x - x_0) + y_0.$$

Problem 3. Measure distances in feet, time in seconds, and set $g = 32\text{ft/sec}^2$. Take (x_0, y_0) as the origin and the x-axis as ground level. Consider a projectile fired at an angle θ with initial velocity v_0.

a. Give parametric equations for the trajectory; give an equation in x and y for the trajectory.
b. Find the range of the projectile, which in this case is the x-coordinate of the point of impact.
c. How many seconds after firing does the impact take place?
d. Choose θ so as to maximize the range.
e. Choose θ so that the projectile lands at $x = b$.

Problem 4.

a. Use a graphing utility to draw the path of the projectile fired at an angle of $30°$ with initial velocity $v_0 = 1500$ ft/sec. Determine the range of the projectile and the height reached.
b. Keeping $v_0 = 1500$ ft/sec, experiment with several values of θ. Confirm that $\theta = \pi/4$ maximizes the range. What angle maximizes the height reached?

■ 10.6 TANGENTS TO CURVES GIVEN PARAMETRICALLY

Let C be a curve parametrized by the functions

$$x = x(t), \quad y = y(t)$$

defined on some interval I. We will assume that I is an open interval and the parametrizing functions are differentiable.

Since a parametrized curve can intersect itself, at a point of C there can be

(i) one tangent, (ii) two or more tangents, or (iii) no tangent at all. (Figure 10.6.1)

To make sure that there is at least one tangent line at each point of C, we will make the additional assumption that

(10.6.1) $$\boxed{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2 \neq 0.}$$

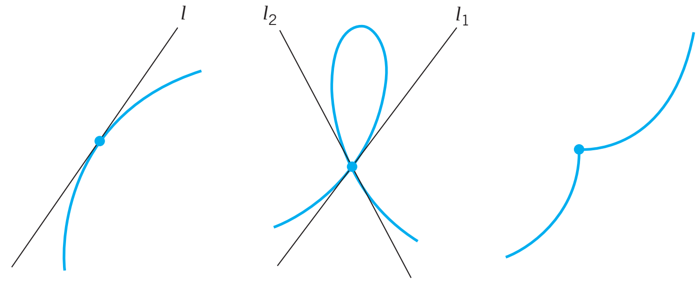


Figure 10.6.1

This is equivalent to assuming that $x'(t)$ and $y'(t)$ are never simultaneously zero. Without this assumption almost anything can happen. See Exercises 31–35.

Now choose a point (x_0, y_0) on the curve C and a time t_0 at which

$$x(t_0) = x_0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y(t_0) = y_0.$$

We want the slope m of the curve as it passes through the point (x_0, y_0) at time t_0†. To find this slope, we assume that $x'(t_0) \neq 0$. With $x'(t_0) \neq 0$, we can be sure that, for h sufficiently small but different from zero,

$$x(t_0 + h) - x(t_0) \neq 0. \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

For such h we can form the quotient

$$\frac{y(t_0 + h) - y(t_0)}{x(t_0 + h) - x(t_0)}.$$

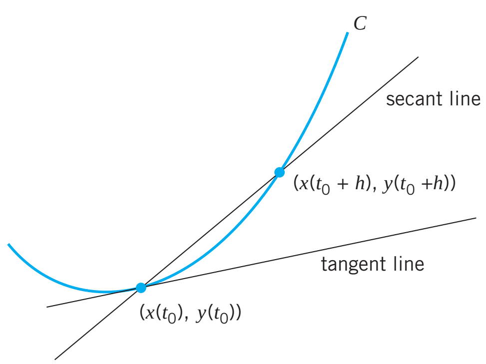


Figure 10.6.2

This quotient is the slope of the secant line pictured in Figure 10.6.2. The limit of this quotient as h tends to zero is the slope of the tangent line and thus the slope of the curve. Since

$$\frac{y(t_0 + h) - y(t_0)}{x(t_0 + h) - x(t_0)} = \frac{(1/h)[y(t_0 + h) - y(t_0)]}{(1/h)[x(t_0 + h) - x(t_0)]} \to \frac{y'(t_0)}{x'(t_0)} \quad \text{as } h \to 0,$$

† It could pass through the point (x_0, y_0) at other times also.

you can see that

(10.6.2)
$$\boxed{m = \frac{y'(t_0)}{x'(t_0)}.}$$

As an equation of the tangent line, we can write

$$y - y(t_0) = \frac{y'(t_0)}{x'(t_0)}[x - x(t_0)]. \qquad \text{(point-slope form)}$$

Multiplication by $x'(t_0)$ gives

$$y'(t_0)[x - x(t_0)] - x'(t_0)[y - y(t_0)] = 0$$

and thus

(10.6.3)
$$\boxed{y'(t_0)[x - x_0] - x'(t_0)[y - y_0] = 0.}$$

We derived this equation under the assumption that $x'(t_0) \neq 0$. If $x'(t_0) = 0$, (10.6.3) still makes sense. It is simply $y'(t_0)[x - x_0] = 0$, which, since $y'(t_0) \neq 0$,† can be simplified to read

(10.6.4)
$$\boxed{x = x_0.}$$

In this case the tangent line is vertical.

Example 1 Find an equation for each tangent to the curve

$$x(t) = t^3, \qquad y(t) = 1 - t \qquad t \in (-\infty, \infty)$$

at the point $(8, -1)$.

SOLUTION Since the curve passes through the point $(8, -1)$ only when $t = 2$, there can be only one tangent line at that point. Differentiating $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, we have

$$x'(t) = 3t^2, \qquad y'(t) = -1$$

and therefore

$$x'(2) = 12, \qquad y'(2) = -1.$$

The tangent line has equation

$$(-1)[x - 8] - 12[y - (-1)] = 0. \qquad \text{[by (10.6.3)]}$$

This reduces to

$$x + 12y + 4 = 0. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Find the points on the curve

$$x(t) = 3 - 4\sin t, \qquad y(t) = 4 + 3\cos t \qquad t \in (-\infty, \infty)$$

at which there is (i) a horizontal tangent, (ii) a vertical tangent.

† We are assuming that $x'(t)$ and $y'(t)$ are not simultaneously zero.

SOLUTION Since the derivatives

$$x'(t) = -4\cos t \qquad \text{and} \qquad y'(t) = -3\sin t$$

are never simultaneously zero, the curve does have at least one tangent line at each of its points.

To find the points at which there is a horizontal tangent, we set $y'(t) = 0$. This gives $t = n\pi$, $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$ Horizontal tangents occur at all points of the form $(x(n\pi), y(n\pi))$. Since

$$x(n\pi) = 3 - 4\sin n\pi = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad y(n\pi) = 4 + 3\cos n\pi = \begin{cases} 7, & n \text{ even} \\ 1, & n \text{ odd}, \end{cases}$$

horizontal tangents occur only at (3,7) and (3,1).

To find the points at which there is a vertical tangent, we set $x'(t) = 0$. This gives $t = \frac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi$, $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \cdots$. Vertical tangents occur at all points of the form $(x(\frac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi), y(\frac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi))$. Since

$$x\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi\right) = 3 - 4\sin\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi\right) = \begin{cases} -1, & n \text{ even} \\ 7, & n \text{ odd} \end{cases}$$

and

$$y\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi\right) = 4 + 3\cos\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi + n\pi\right) = 4,$$

vertical tangents occur only at $(-1, 4)$ and $(7, 4)$. ❑

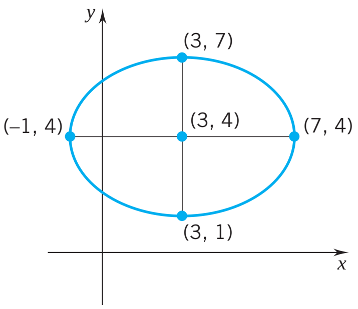


Figure 10.6.3

Remark The results obtained in Example 2 become obvious once you recognize the parametrized curve as the ellipse

$$\frac{(x-3)^2}{16} + \frac{(y-4)^2}{9} = 1.$$

The ellipse is sketched in Figure 10.6.3 ❑

Example 3

The curve parametrized by the functions

$$x(t) = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}, \qquad y(t) = \frac{t(1-t^2)}{1+t^2} \qquad t \in (-\infty, \infty)$$

is called a *strophoid*. The curve is shown in Figure 10.6.4. Find equations for the lines tangent to the curve at the origin. Then find the points at which there is a horizontal tangent.

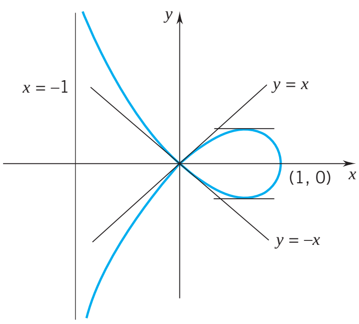


Figure 10.6.4

SOLUTION The curve passes through the origin when $t = -1$ and when $t = 1$. (Verify this.) Differentiating $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, we have

$$x'(t) = \frac{(1+t^2)(-2t) - (1-t^2)(2t)}{(1+t^2)^2} = \frac{-4t}{(1+t^2)^2}$$

$$y'(t) = \frac{(1+t^2)(1-3t^2) - t(1-t^2)(2t)}{(1+t^2)^2} = \frac{1-4t^2-t^4}{(1+t^2)^2}.$$

At time $t = -1$, the curve passes through the origin with slope

$$\frac{y'(-1)}{x'(-1)} = \frac{-1}{1} = -1.$$

Therefore, the tangent line has equation $y = -x$.

At time $t = 1$, the curve passes through the origin with slope

$$\frac{y'(1)}{x'(1)} = \frac{-1}{-1} = 1.$$

Therefore, the tangent line has equation $y = x$.

To find the points at which there is a horizontal tangent, we set $y'(t) = 0$. this gives

$$1 - 4t^2 - t^4 = 0.$$

This equation is a quadratic in t^2. By the quadratic formula,

$$t^2 = \frac{-4 + \sqrt{16+4}}{2} = -2 \pm \sqrt{5}.$$

Since $t^2 \geq 0$, we exclude the possibility that $t^2 = -2 - \sqrt{5}$. We are left with $t^2 = \sqrt{5} - 2$. This gives $t = \pm\sqrt{\sqrt{5}-2}$. Note that

$$x\left(\pm\sqrt{\sqrt{5}-2}\right) = \frac{1-(\sqrt{5}-2)}{1+(\sqrt{5}-2)} = \frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{2} \cong 0.62$$

and

$$y\left(\pm\sqrt{\sqrt{5}-2}\right) = \left(\pm\sqrt{\sqrt{5}-2}\right)x = \left(\pm\sqrt{\sqrt{5}-2}\right)\frac{\sqrt{5}-1}{2} \cong \pm 0.30.$$

There is a horizontal tangent line at the points $(0.62, \pm 0.30)$. (The coordinates are approximations.) ❑

We can apply these ideas to a curve given in polar coordinates by an equation of the form $r = \rho(\theta)$. The coordinate transformations

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta$$

enable us to parametrize such a curve by setting

$$x(\theta) = \rho(\theta)\cos\theta, \qquad y(\theta) = \rho(\theta)\sin\theta.$$

Example 4 Take $a > 0$. Find the slope of the spiral $r = a\theta$ at $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$. (The curve is shown for $\theta \geq 0$ in Figure 10.6.5.)

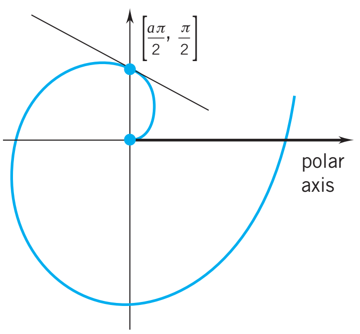


Figure 10.6.5

SOLUTION We write

$$x(\theta) = r\cos\theta = a\theta\cos\theta, \qquad y(\theta) = r\sin\theta = a\theta\sin\theta.$$

Now we differentiate:

$$x'(\theta) = -a\theta\sin\theta + a\cos\theta, \qquad y'(\theta) = a\theta\cos\theta + a\sin\theta.$$

Since

$$x'\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right) = -\tfrac{1}{2}\pi a \qquad \text{and} \qquad y'\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\pi\right) = a,$$

the slope of the curve at $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ is

$$\frac{y'\left(\frac{1}{2}\pi\right)}{x'\left(\frac{1}{2}\pi\right)} = -\frac{2}{\pi} \cong -0.64. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Find the points of the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$ at which the tangent line is vertical.

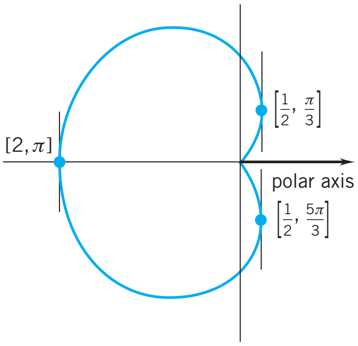


Figure 10.6.6

SOLUTION Since the cosine function has period 2π, we need only concern ourselves with θ in $[0, 2\pi)$. The curve can be parametrized by setting

$$x(\theta) = (1 - \cos\theta)\cos\theta, \qquad y(\theta) = (1 - \cos\theta)\sin\theta.$$

Differentiating and simplifying, we find that

$$x'(\theta) = (2\cos\theta - 1)\sin\theta, \qquad y'(\theta) = (1 - \cos\theta)(1 + 2\cos\theta).$$

The only numbers in the interval $[0, 2\pi)$ at which x' is zero and y' is not zero are $\frac{1}{3}\pi, \pi, \frac{5}{3}\pi$. The tangent line is vertical at

$$\left[\tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{1}{3}\pi\right], \qquad [2, \pi], \qquad \left[\tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{5}{3}\pi\right]. \qquad \text{(Figure 10.6.6)}$$

These points have rectangular coordinates $(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{3}), (-2, 0), (\frac{1}{4}, -\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{3})$. ❑

EXERCISES 10.6

Exercises 1–8. Find an equation in x and y for the line tangent to the curve.

1. $x(t) = t, \quad y(t) = t^3 - 1 \quad$ at $t = 1$.
2. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = t + 5 \quad$ at $t = 2$.
3. $x(t) = 2t, \quad y(t) = \cos\pi t \quad$ at $t = 0$.
4. $x(t) = 2t - 1, \quad y(t) = t^4 \quad$ at $t = 1$.
5. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = (2 - t)^2 \quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{2}$.
6. $x(t) = 1/t, \quad y(t) = t^2 + 1 \quad$ at $t = 1$.
7. $x(t) = \cos^3 t, \quad y(t) = \sin^3 t \quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.
8. $x(t) = e^t, \quad y(t) = 3e^{-t} \quad$ at $t = 0$.

Exercises 9–14. Find an equation in x and y for the line tangent to the polar curve at the indicated value of θ.

9. $r = 4 - 2\sin\theta \quad \theta = 0$.
10. $r = 4\cos 2\theta \quad \theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.
11. $r = \dfrac{4}{5 - \cos\theta} \quad \theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.
12. $r = \dfrac{5}{4 - \cos\theta} \quad \theta = \frac{1}{6}\pi$.
13. $r = \dfrac{\sin\theta - \cos\theta}{\sin\theta + \cos\theta} \quad \theta = 0$.
14. $r = \dfrac{\sin\theta + \cos\theta}{\sin\theta - \cos\theta} \quad \theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

Exercises 15–18. Parametrize the curve by a pair of differentiable functions

$$x = x(t), \qquad y = y(t) \quad \text{with} \quad [x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2 \neq 0.$$

Sketch the curve and determine the tangent line at the origin from the parametrization that you selected.

15. $y = x^3$. **16.** $x = y^3$.
17. $y^5 = x^3$. **18.** $y^3 = x^5$.

Exercises 19–26. Find the points (x, y) at which the curve has: (a) a horizontal tangent; (b) a vertical tangent. Then sketch the curve.

19. $x(t) = 3t - t^3, \quad y(t) = t + 1$.
20. $x(t) = t^2 - 2t, \quad y(t) = t^3 + 12t$.
21. $x(t) = 3 - 4\sin t, \quad y(t) = 4 + 3\cos t$.
22. $x(t) = \sin 2t, \quad y(t) = \sin t$.
23. $x(t) = t^2 - 2t, \quad y(t) = t^3 - 3t^2 + 2t$.
24. $x(t) = 2 - 5\cos t, \quad y(t) = 3 + \sin t$.
25. $x(t) = \cos t, \quad y(t) = \sin 2t$.
26. $x(t) = 3 + 2\sin t, \quad y(t) = 2 + 5\sin t$.

27. Find the tangent(s) to the curve

$$x(t) = -t + 2\cos\tfrac{1}{4}\pi t, \quad y(t) = t^4 - 4t^2$$

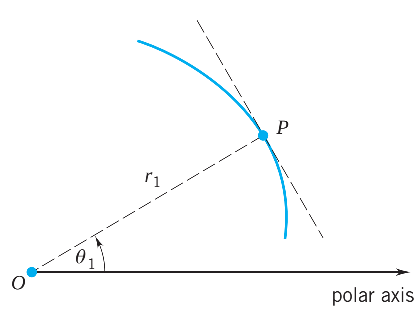
at the point (2, 0).

28. Find the tangent(s) to the curve

$$x(t) = t^3 - t, \quad y(t) = t\sin\tfrac{1}{2}\pi t$$

at the point (0, 1).

29. Let $P[r_1, \theta_1]$ be a point on a polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ as in the figure. Show that if $f'(\theta_1) = 0$ but $f(\theta_1) \neq 0$, then the tangent line at P is perpendicular to the line segment $\overline{OP}$.



30. If $0 < a < 1$, the polar curve $r = a - \cos\theta$ is a limaçon with an inner loop. Choose a so that the curve will intersect itself at the pole in a right angle.

Exercises 31–35. Verify that $x'(0) = y'(0) = 0$ and that the given description holds at the point where $t = 0$. Sketch the curve.

31. $x(t) = t^3, \quad y(t) = t^2$; cusp.

32. $x(t) = t^3, \quad y(t) = t^5$; horizontal tangent.

33. $x(t) = t^5, \quad y(t) = t^3$; vertical tangent.

34. $x(t) = t^3 - 1, \quad y(t) = 2t^3$; tangent with slope 2.

35. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = t^2 + 1$; no tangent line.

36. Suppose that $x = x(t), y = y(t)$ are twice differentiable functions that parametrize a curve. Take a point on the curve at which $x'(t) \neq 0$ and d^2y/dx^2 exists. Show that

$$\textbf{(10.6.5)} \qquad \boxed{\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{x'(t)y''(t) - y'(t)x''(t)}{[x'(t)]^3}.}$$

Exercises 37–40. Calculate d^2y/dx^2 at the indicated point without eliminating the parameter t.

37. $x(t) = \cos t, \quad y(t) = \sin t \quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{6}\pi$.

38. $x(t) = t^3, \quad y(t) = t - 2 \quad$ at $t = 1$.

39. $x(t) = e^t, \quad y(t) = e^{-t} \quad$ at $t = 0$.

40. $x(t) = \sin^2 t, \quad y(t) = \cos t \quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

41. Let $x = 2 + \sec t, \quad y = 2 - \tan t$. Use a CAS to find d^2y/dx^2.

42. Use a CAS to find an equation in x and y for the line tangent to the curve

$$x = \sin^2 t \quad y = \cos^2 t \qquad \text{at } t = \tfrac{1}{4}\pi.$$

Then use a graphing utility to sketch a figure that shows the curve and the tangent line.

43. Exercise 42 for $x = e^{-3t}, \quad y = e^t \quad$ at $t = \ln 2$.

44. Use a CAS to find an equation in x and y for the line tangent to the polar curve

$$r = \frac{4}{2 + \sin\theta} \qquad \text{at } \theta = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi.$$

Then use a graphing utility to sketch a figure that shows the curve and the tangent line.

■ 10.7 ARC LENGTH AND SPEED

Figure 10.7.1 represents a curve C parametrized by a pair of functions

$$x = x(t), \qquad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [a, b].$$

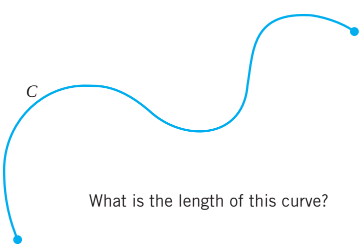


Figure 10.7.1

We will assume that the functions are *continuously differentiable* on $[a, b]$ (have first derivatives which are continuous on $[a, b]$). We want to determine the length of C.

Here our experience in Chapter 5 can be used as a model. To decide what should be meant by the area of a region Ω, we approximated Ω by the union of a finite number of rectangles. To decide what should be meant by the length of C, we approximate C by the union of a finite number of line segments.

Each number t in $[a, b]$ gives rise to a point $P = P(x(t), y(t))$ that lies on C. By choosing a finite number of points in $[a, b]$,

$$a = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_{i-1} < t_i < \cdots < t_{n-1} < t_n = b,$$

we obtain a finite number of points on C,

$$P_0, P_1, \ldots, P_{i-1}, P_i, \ldots, P_{n-1}, P_n.$$

We join these points consecutively by line segments and call the resulting path,

$$\gamma = \overline{P_0P_1} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{P_{i-1}, P_i} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{P_{n-1}P_n},$$

a polygonal path inscribed in C. (See Figure 10.7.2.)

The length of such a polygonal path is the sum of the distances between consecutive vertices:

$$\text{length of } \gamma = L(\gamma) = d(P_0, P_1) + \cdots + d(P_{i-1}, P_i) + \cdots + d(p_{n-1}, P_n).$$

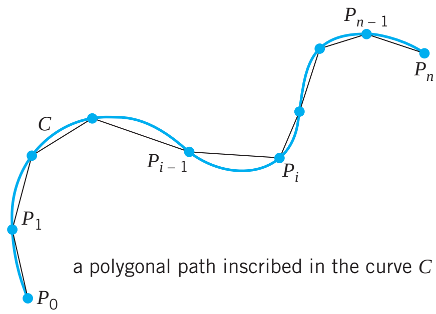


Figure 10.7.2

The ith line segment $\overline{P_{i-1}P_i}$ has length

$$d(P_{i-1}, P_i) = \sqrt{[x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})]^2 + [y(t_i) - y(t_{i-1})]^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{\left[\frac{x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{t-1}}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{y(t_i) - y(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}}\right]^2}(t_i - t_{i-1}).$$

By the mean-value theorem, there exist points t_i^* and t_i^{**}, both in the interval (t_{i-1}, t_i), for which

$$\frac{x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}} = x'(t_i^*) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{y(t_i) - y(t_{t-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}} = y'(t_i^{**}).$$

Letting $\Delta t_i = t_i - t_{i-t}$, we have

$$d(P_{i-1}, P_i) = \sqrt{[x'(t_i^*)]^2 + [y'(t_i^{**})]^2}\ \Delta t_i.$$

Adding up these terms, we obtain

$$L(\gamma) = \sqrt{[x'(t_1^*)]^2 + [y'(t_1^{**})]^2}\ \Delta t_1 + \cdots + \sqrt{[x'(t_n^*)]^2 + [y'(t_n^{**})]^2}\ \Delta t_n.$$

As written, $L(\gamma)$ is not a Riemann sum: in general, $t_i^* \neq t_i^{**}$. It is nevertheless true (and at the moment we ask you to take on faith) that, as max $\Delta t_i \to 0$, $L(\gamma)$ approaches the integral

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt.$$

Arc Length Formulas

By the argument just given, admittedly incomplete, we have obtained a way to calculate arc length. The length of the path C traced out by a pair of continuously differentiable functions

$$x = x(t), \quad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [a, b]$$

is given by the formula

(10.7.1)
$$\boxed{L(C) = \int_a^b \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt.}$$

More insight into this formula is provided in Chapter 14.

Let's use (10.7.1) to obtain the circumference of the unit circle. Parametrizing the unit circle by setting

$$x(t) = \cos t, \qquad y(t) = \sin t \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi],$$

we have

$$x'(t) = -\sin t, \qquad y'(t) = \cos t$$

and thus

$$\text{circumference} = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{\sin^2 t + \cos^2 t}\, dt = \int_0^{2\pi} 1\, dt = 2\pi.$$

Nothing surprising here. But suppose we parametrize the unit circle by setting

$$x(t) = \cos 2t, \qquad y(t) = \sin 2t \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi].$$

Then we have

$$x'(t) = -2\sin 2t, \quad y'(t) = 2\cos 2t$$

and the arc length formula gives

$$L(C) = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{4\sin^2 2t + 4\cos^2 2t}\; dt = \int_0^{2\pi} 2\, dt = 4\pi.$$

This is not the circumference of the unit circle. What's wrong here? There is nothing wrong here. Formula (10.7.1) gives the length of the path traced out by the parametrizing functions. The functions $x(t) = \cos 2t$, $y(t) = \sin 2t$ with $t \in [0, 2\pi]$ trace out the unit circle not once, but twice. Hence the discrepancy.

When applying (10.7.1) to calculate the arc length of a curve given to us geometrically, we must make sure that the functions that we use to parametrize the curve trace out each arc of the curve only once.

Suppose now that C is the graph of a continuously differentiable function

$$y = f(x), \qquad x \in [a, b].$$

We can parametrize C by setting

$$x(t) = t, \qquad y(t) = f(t) \qquad t \in [a, b].$$

Since

$$x'(t) = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y'(t) = f'(t),$$

(10.7.1) gives

$$L(C) = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + [f'(t)]^2}\, dt.$$

Replacing t by x, we can write:

(10.7.2)

$$\boxed{\text{The length of the graph of } f = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\, dx.}$$

A direct derivation of this formula is outlined in Exercise 52.

Example 1 The function $f(x) = \frac{1}{6}x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^{-1}$ has derivative

$$f'(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}x^{-2}.$$

In this case

$$1+[f'(x)]^2 = 1+\left(\tfrac{1}{4}x^4-\tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{1}{4}x^{-4}\right) = \tfrac{1}{4}x^4+\tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{1}{4}x^{-4} = \left(\tfrac{1}{2}x^2+\tfrac{1}{2}x^{-2}\right)^2.$$

The length of the graph from $x=1$ to $x=3$ is

$$\int_1^3 \sqrt{1+[f'(x)]^2}\,dx = \int_1^3 \sqrt{\left(\tfrac{1}{2}x^2+\tfrac{1}{2}x^{-2}\right)^2}\,dx$$

$$= \int_1^3 \left(\tfrac{1}{2}x^2+\tfrac{1}{2}x^{-2}\right)\,dx = \left[\tfrac{1}{6}x^3-\tfrac{1}{2}x^{-1}\right]_1^3 = \tfrac{14}{3}. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 The graph of the function $f(x)=x^2$ from $x=0$ to $x=1$ is a parabolic arc. The length of this arc is given by

$$\int_0^1 \sqrt{1+[f'(x)]^2}\,dx = \int_0^1 \sqrt{1+4x^2}\,dx = 2\int_0^1 \sqrt{\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^2+x^2}\,dx$$

$$= \left[x\sqrt{\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^2+x^2}+\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^2\ln\left(x+\sqrt{\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^2+x^2}\right)\right]_0^1$$

by (8.4.1)

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{5}+\tfrac{1}{4}\ln\left(2+\sqrt{5}\right) \cong 1.48. \quad ❑$$

Suppose now that C is the graph of a continuously differentiable polar function

$$r=\rho(\theta), \qquad \alpha\le\theta\le\beta.$$

We can parametrize C by setting

$$x(\theta)=\rho(\theta)\cos\theta, \qquad y(\theta)=\rho(\theta)\sin\theta \qquad \theta\in[\alpha,\beta].$$

A straightforward calculation that we leave to you shows that

$$[x'(\theta)]^2+[y'(\theta)]^2=[\rho(\theta)]^2+[\rho'(\theta)]^2.$$

The arc length formula then reads

(10.7.3)

$$\boxed{L(C)=\int_\alpha^\beta \sqrt{[\rho(\theta)]^2+[\rho'(\theta)]^2}\,d\theta.}$$

Example 3 For fixed $a>0$, the equation $r=a$ represents a circle of radius a. Here

$$\rho(\theta)=a \qquad \text{and} \qquad \rho'(\theta)=0.$$

The circle is traced out once as θ ranges from 0 to 2π. Therefore the length of the curve (the circumference of the circle) is given by

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{[\rho(\theta)]^2+[\rho'(\theta)^2]}\,d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{a^2+0^2}\,d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} a\,d\theta = 2\pi a. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 We calculate the arc length of the cardioid $r=a(1-\cos\theta)$. We take $a>0$. To make sure that no arc of the curve is traced out more than once, we restrict

θ to the interval $[0, 2\pi]$. Here

$$\rho(\theta) = a(1 - \cos\theta) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \rho'(\theta) = a\sin\theta,$$

so that

$$[\rho(\theta)]^2 + [\rho'(\theta)]^2 = a^2(1 - 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta) + a^2\sin^2\theta = 2a^2(1 - \cos\theta).$$

The identity $\frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos\theta) = \sin^2\frac{1}{2}\theta$ gives

$$[\rho(\theta)]^2 + [\rho'(\theta)]^2 = 4a^2\sin^2\tfrac{1}{2}\theta.$$

The length of the cardioid is $8a$:

$$\int_0^{2\pi}\sqrt{[\rho(\theta)]^2 + [\rho'(\theta)]^2}\,d\theta = \underbrace{\int_0^{2\pi} 2a\sin\tfrac{1}{2}\theta\,d\theta}_{\sin\frac{1}{2}\theta \geq 0 \text{ for } \theta \in [0, 2\pi]} = 4a\Big[-\cos\tfrac{1}{2}\theta\Big]_0^{2\pi} = 8a. \quad \square$$

The Geometric Significance of dx/ds and dy/ds

Figure 10.7.3 shows the graph of a function $y = f(x)$ which we assume to be continuously differentiable. At the point (x, y) the tangent line has an inclination marked α_x. Note that $\alpha_x \in (-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$.

The length of the arc from a to x can be written

$$s(x) = \int_a^x \sqrt{1 + [f'(t)]^2}\,dt.$$

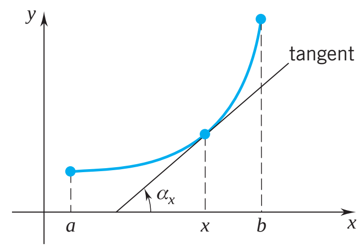


Figure 10.7.3

Differentiation with respect to x gives $s'(x) = \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}$. (Theorem 5.3.5.) Using the Leibniz notation, we have

$$\frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} = \underbrace{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2\alpha_x} = \sec\,\alpha_x}_{\sec\alpha_x > 0 \text{ for } \alpha_x \in (-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)}.$$

Note that s is a one-to-one function of x with nonzero derivative (the derivative is at least 1) and therefore has a differentiable inverse. By (7.1.9)

$$\frac{dx}{ds} = \frac{1}{\sec\,\alpha_x} = \cos\,\alpha_x.$$

To find dy/ds, we note that

$$\tan\alpha_x = \frac{dy}{dx} = \underbrace{\frac{dy}{ds}\frac{ds}{dx}}_{\text{chain rule}} = \frac{dy}{ds}\sec\alpha_x.$$

Multiplication by $\cos\alpha_x$ gives

$$\frac{dy}{ds} = \sin\alpha_x.$$

For the record,

(10.7.4) $\boxed{\dfrac{dx}{ds} = \cos\alpha_x \quad \text{and} \quad \dfrac{dy}{ds} = \sin\alpha_x \quad \text{where } \alpha_x \text{ is the inclination of the tangent line at the point } (x, y).}$

Speed Along a Plane Curve

So far we have talked about speed only in connection with straight-line motion. How can we calculate the speed of an object that moves along a curve? Imagine an object moving along some curved path. Suppose that $(x(t), y(t))$ gives the position of the object at time t. The distance traveled by the object from time zero to any later time t is simply the length of the path up to time t:

$$s(t) = \int_0^t \sqrt{[x'(u)]^2 + [y'(u)]^2}\, du.$$

The time rate of change of this distance is what we call the *speed* of the object. Denoting the speed of the object at time t by $v(t)$, we have

(10.7.5)
$$\boxed{v(t) = s'(t) = \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}.}$$

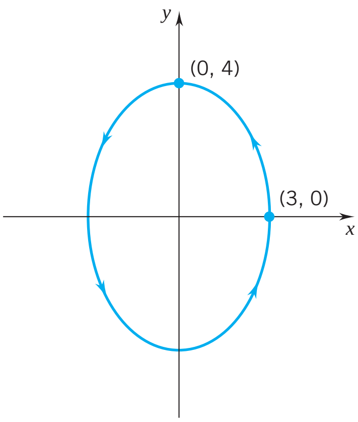


Figure 10.7.4

Example 5 The position of a particle at time t is given by the parametric equations

$$x(t) = 3\cos 2t, \qquad y(t) = 4\sin 2t \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi].$$

Find the speed of the particle at time t and determine the times when the speed is a maximum and when it is a minimum.

SOLUTION The path of the particle is the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 10.7.4)}$$

The particle moves around the curve in the counterclockwise direction, the direction indicated by the arrows. The speed of the particle at time t is

$$v(t) = \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2} = \sqrt{(-6\sin\ 2t)^2 + (8\ \cos\ 2t)^2} = \sqrt{36\sin^2 2t + 64\cos^2 2t}$$
$$= \sqrt{36 + 28\cos^2 2t}. \qquad (\sin^2 2t = 1 - \cos^2 2t)$$

The maximum speed is 8, and this occurs when $\cos^2 2t = 1$; that is, when $t = 0, \pi/2, \pi, 3\pi/2, 2\pi$. At these times, $\sin^2 2t = 0$ and the particle is at an end of the minor axis. The minimum speed is 6, which occurs when $\cos^2 2t = 0$ (and $\sin^2 2t = 1$); that is, when $t = \pi/4, 3\pi/4, 5\pi/4, 7\pi/4$. At these times, the particle is at an end of the major axis. ❑

In the Leibniz notation the formula for speed reads

(10.7.6)
$$\boxed{v = \frac{dx}{dt} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2}.}$$

If we know the speed of an object and we know its mass, then we can calculate its kinetic energy.

Example 6 A particle of mass m slides down a frictionless curve (see Figure 10.7.5) from a point (x_0, y_0) to a point (x_1, y_1) under the force of gravity. As discussed in Project 4.9B, the particle has two forms of energy during the motion: gravitational potential energy mgy and kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. Show that the sum of these two quantities remains constant:

$$GPE + KE = C.$$

In terms of the variables of motion this reads

$$mgy + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = C.$$

SOLUTION The particle is subjected to a vertical force $-\,mg$ (a downward force of magnitude mg). Since the particle is constrained to remain on the curve, the effective force on the particle is tangential. The tangential component of the vertical force is $-mg\ \sin\alpha$ (see Figure 10.7.5.) The speed of the particle is ds/dt and the tangential acceleration is d^2s/dt^2. (It is as if the particle were moving along the tangent line.)

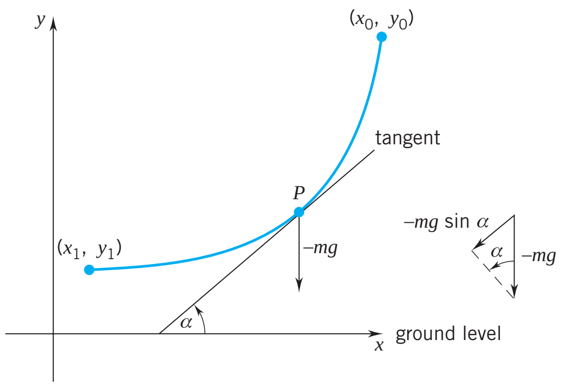


Figure 10.7.5

Therefore, by Newton's law $F = ma$, we have

$$m\frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = -mg\sin\,\alpha = \underbrace{-mg\frac{dy}{ds}}_{\text{by (10.7.4)}}.$$

Thus we can write

$$mg\frac{dy}{ds} + m\frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = 0$$

$$mg\frac{dy}{ds}\frac{ds}{dt} + m\frac{ds}{dt}\frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = 0 \qquad \text{(we multiplied by } \tfrac{ds}{dt}\text{)}$$

$$mg\frac{dy}{dt} + mv\frac{dv}{dt} = 0. \qquad \text{(chain rule)}$$

Integrating with respect to t, we have

$$mgy + \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = C,$$

as asserted. ❑

EXERCISES 10.7

Exercises 1–18. Find the length of the graph and compare it to the straight-line distance between the endpoints of the graph.

1. $f(x) = 2x + 3, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

2. $f(x) = 3x + 2, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

3. $f(x) = (x - \frac{4}{9})^{3/2}, \quad x \in [1, 4].$

4. $f(x) = x^{3/2}, \quad x \in [0, 44].$

5. $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{x}(x - 3), \quad x \in [0, 3].$

6. $f(x) = \frac{2}{3}(x - 1)^{3/2}, \quad x \in [1, 2].$

7. $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}(x^2 + 2)^{3/2}, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

8. $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}(x^2 - 2)^{3/2}, \quad x \in [2, 4].$

9. $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}x^2 - \frac{1}{2}\ln x, \quad x \in [1, 5].$

10. $f(x) = \frac{1}{8}x^2 - \ln x, \quad x \in [1, 4].$

11. $f(x) = \frac{3}{8}x^{4/3} - \frac{3}{4}x^{2/3}, \quad x \in [1, 8].$

12. $f(x) = \frac{1}{10}x^5 + \frac{1}{6}x^{-3}, \quad x \in [1, 2].$

13. $f(x) = \ln(\sec x), \quad x \in [0, \frac{1}{4}\pi].$

14. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2, \quad x \in [0, 1].$

15. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{x^2 - 1} - \frac{1}{2}\ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1}), \quad x \in [1, 2].$

16. $f(x) = \cosh x, \quad x \in [0, \ln 2].$

17. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{3 - x^2} + \frac{3}{2}\arcsin(\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}x), \quad x \in [0, 1].$

18. $f(x) = \ln(\sin x), \quad x \in [\frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi].$

Exercises 19–24. The equations give the position of a particle at each time t during the time interval specified. Find the initial speed of the particle, the terminal speed, and the distance traveled.

19. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = 2t \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \sqrt{3}$.

20. $x(t) = t - 1, \quad y(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2 \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$.

21. $x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = t^3 \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$.

22. $x(t) = a\cos^3 t, \quad y(t) = a\sin^3 t \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

23. $x(t) = e^t \sin t, \quad y(t) = e^t \cos t \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \pi$.

24. $x(t) = \cos t + t\sin t, \quad y(t) = \sin t - t\cos t \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \pi$.

25. Let $a > 0$. Find the length of the path traced out by

$$x(\theta) = a(\theta - \sin\theta), \quad y(\theta) = a(1 - \cos\theta)$$

as θ ranges from 0 to 2π.

26. Let $a > 0$. Find the length of the path traced out by

$$x(\theta) = 2a\cos\theta - a\cos 2\theta,$$

$$y(\theta) = 2a\sin\theta - a\sin 2\theta.$$

as θ ranges from 0 to 2π.

27. (a) Let $a > 0$. Find the length of the path traced out by

$$x(\theta) = 3a\cos\theta + a\cos 3\theta,$$

$$y(\theta) = 3a\sin\theta - a\sin 3\theta$$

as θ ranges from 0 to 2π.

(b) Show that this path can also be parametrized by

$$x(\theta) = 4a\cos^3\theta, \quad y(\theta) = 4a\sin^3\theta \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi.$$

28. The curve defined parametrically by

$$x(\theta) = \theta\cos\theta, \quad y(\theta) = \theta\sin\theta.$$

is called an *Archimedean spiral*. Find the length of the arc traced out as θ ranges from 0 to 2π.

Exercises 29–36. Find the length of the polar curve.

29. $r = 1 \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

30. $r = 3 \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$.

31. $r = e^\theta \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 4\pi$. (logarithmic spiral)

32. $r = a\,e^\theta, a > 0, \quad$ from $\theta = -2\pi$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

33. $r = e^{2\theta} \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

34. $r = 1 + \cos\theta \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

35. $r = 1 - \cos\theta \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

36. $r = 2a\sec\theta, a > 0, \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

37. At time t a particle has position

$$x(t) = 1 + \arctan t, \quad y(t) = 1 - \ln\sqrt{1 + t^2}.$$

Find the total distance traveled from time $t = 0$ to time $t = 1$. Give the initial speed and the terminal speed.

38. At time t a particle has position

$$x(t) = 1 + \cos t, \quad y(t) = t - \sin t.$$

Find the total distance traveled from time $t = 0$ to time $t = 2t$. Give the initial speed and the terminal speed.

39. Find c given that the length of the curve $y = \ln x$ from $x = 1$ to $x = e$ equals the length of the curve $y = e^x$ from $x = 0$ to $x = c$.

40. Find the length of the curve $y = x^{2/3}, x \in [1, 8]$. HINT: Work with the mirror image $y = x^{3/2}, x \in [1, 4]$.

41. Set $f(x) = 3x - 5$ on $[-3, 4]$.

(a) Draw the graph of f and the coordinates of the midpoint of the line segment.

(b) Find the coordinates of the midpoint by finding the number c for which

$$\int_{-3}^{c} \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\,dx = \int_{c}^{4} \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\,dx.$$

42. Set $f(x) = x^{3/2}$ on $[1, 5]$. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and a CAS to find the coordinates of the midpoint. HINT: Find the number c for which

$$\int_{1}^{c} \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{2}\int_{1}^{5} \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\,dx.$$

43. Show that the curve $y = \cosh x$ has the property that for every interval $[a, b]$ the length of the curve from $x = a$ to $x = b$ equals the area under the curve from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

44. Let $f(x) = 2\ln x$ on $[1, e]$. Draw the graph of f and use a CAS to estimate the length of the graph.

45. Let $f(x) = \sin x - x\cos x$ on $[0, \pi]$. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and use a CAS to estimate the length of the graph.

46. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curve

$$x(t) = e^{2t}\cos 2t, \quad y(t) = e^{2t}\sin 2t \qquad 0 \le t \le \pi/3.$$

(b) Use a CAS to estimate the length of the curve. Round off your answer to four decimal places.

47. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curve

$$x(t) = t^2, \quad y(t) = t^3 - t \qquad t \text{ real}.$$

(b) Your drawing should show that the curve has a loop. Use a CAS to estimate the length of the loop. Round off your answer to four decimal places.

48. The curve

$$x(t) = \frac{3t}{t^3 + 1}, \quad y(t) = \frac{3t^2}{t^3 + 1} \quad t \ne -1.$$

is called the *folium of Descartes.*

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw this curve.

(b) Your drawing in part (a) should show that the curve has a loop in the first quadrant. Use a CAS to estimate the length of the loop. Round off your answer to four decimal places. HINT: Use symmetry.

49. Sketch the polar curve

$$r = 1 - \cos\theta, \qquad 0 \le \theta \le \pi$$

and calculate the length of the curve.

50. Use a graphing utility to draw the polar curve

$$r = \sin 5\theta, \qquad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$$

and use a CAS to calculate the length of the curve to four decimal place accuracy.

51. (a) Let $a > b > 0$. Show that the arc length of the ellipse

$$x(t) = a\cos t, \quad y(t) = b\sin t \qquad 0 \le t \le 2\pi.$$

is given by the formula

$$L = 4a\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{1 - e^2\cos^2 t}\, dt.$$

where $e = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}/a$ is the eccentricity. The integrand does not have an elementary antiderivative.

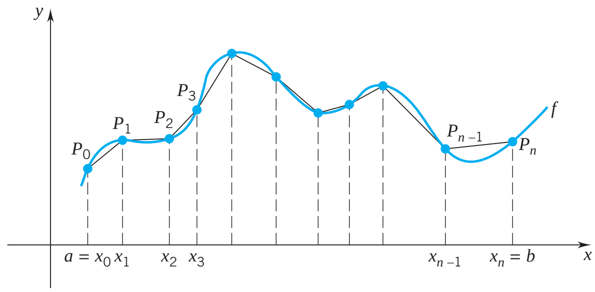
(b) Set $a = 5$ and $b = 4$. Approximate the arc length of the ellipse using a CAS. Round off your answer to two decimal places.

52. The figure shows the graph of a function f continuously differentiable from $x = a$ to $x = b$ together with a polynomial approximation. Show that the length of this polygonal approximation can be written as the following Riemann sum:

$$\sqrt{1 + [f'(x_1^*)]^2}\Delta x_1 + \cdots + \sqrt{1 + [f'(x_n^*)]^2}\Delta x_n.$$

As $\|P\| = \max \Delta x_i$ tends to 0, such Riemann sums tend to

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2} dx.$$



53. Suppose that f is continuously differentiable from $x = a$ to $x = b$. Show that the

(10.7.7)

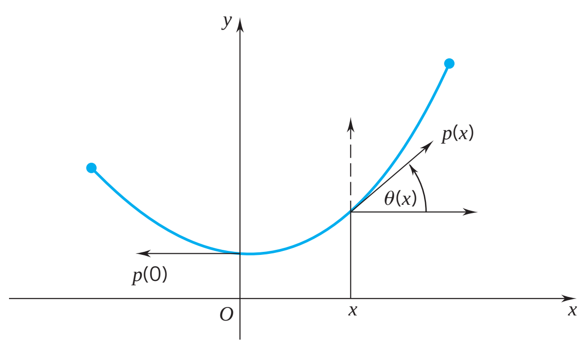
length of the graph of $f = \int_a^b \lvert\sec[\alpha(x)]\rvert\, dx$ where $\alpha(x)$ is the inclination of the tangent line at $(x, f(x))$.

54. Show that a homogeneous, flexible, inelastic rope hanging from two fixed points assumes the shape of a *catenary*:

$$f(x) = a\cosh\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) = \frac{a}{2}(e^{x/a} + e^{-x/a}). \qquad (a > 0)$$

HINT: Refer to the figure. The part of the rope that corresponds to the interval $[0, x]$ is subject to the following forces:

(1) its weight, which is proportional to its length;
(2) a horizontal pull at 0, $p(0)$;
(3) a tangential pull at x, $p(x)$.



■ 10.8 THE AREA OF A SURFACE OF REVOLUTION; THE CENTROID OF A CURVE; PAPPUS'S THEOREM ON SURFACE AREA

The Area of a Surface of Revolution

In Figure 10.8.1 you can see the frustum of a cone; one radius marked r, the other R. The slant height is marked s. An interesting elementary calculation that we leave to you

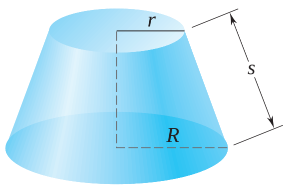


Figure 10.8.1

shows that the area of this slanted surface is given by the formula

(10.8.1) $$\boxed{A = \pi(r + R)s.}$$ (Exercise 21)

This formula forms the basis for all that follows.

Let C be a curve in the upper half-plane (Figure 10.8.2). The curve can meet the x-axis, but only at a finite number of points. We will assume that C is parametrized by a pair of continuously differentiable functions

$$x = x(t), \qquad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [c, d].$$

Furthermore, we will assume that C is *simple*: no two values of t between c and d give rise to the same point of C; that is, the curve does not intersect itself.

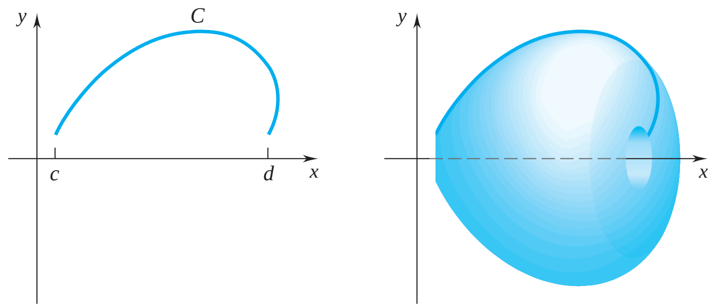


Figure 10.8.2

If we revolve C about the x-axis, we obtain a surface of revolution. The area of that surface is given by the formula

(10.8.2) $$\boxed{A = \int_c^d 2\pi y(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt.}$$

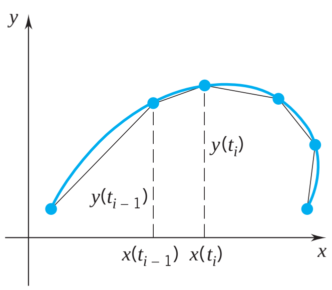


Figure 10.8.3

We will try to outline how this formula comes about. The argument is similar to the one given in Section 10.7 for the length of a curve.

Each partition $P = \{c = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_n = d\}$ of $[c, d]$ generates a polygonal approximation to C. (Figure 10.8.3) Call this polygonal approximation C_p. By revolving C_p about the x-axis, we get a surface made up of n conical frustums.

The ith frustum (Figure 10.8.4) has slant height

$$s_i = \sqrt{[x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})]^2 + [y(t_i) - y(t_{i-1})]^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{\left[\frac{x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}}\right]^2 \left[\frac{y(t_i) - y(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}}\right]^2}\,(t_i - t_{i-1}).$$

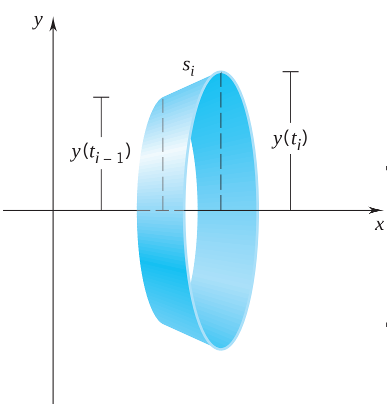


Figure 10.8.4

The lateral area $\pi[y(t_{i-1}) + y(t_i)]s_i$ [see 10.8.1] can be written

$$\pi[y(t_{i-1}) + y(t_i)]\sqrt{\left[\frac{x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{y(t_i) - y(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}}\right]^2}\,(t_i - t_{i-1}).$$

There exist points $t_i^*, t_i^{**}, t_i^{***}$, all in $[t_{i-1}, t_i]$, such that

$$\underbrace{y(t_i) + y(t_{i-1}) = 2y(t_i^*)}_{\text{intermediate-value theorem}}, \qquad \underbrace{\frac{x(t_i) - x(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}} = x'(t_i^{**}), \qquad \frac{y(t_i) - y(t_{i-1})}{t_i - t_{i-1}} = y'(t_i^{***})}_{\text{mean-value theorem}}.$$

Let $\Delta t_i = t_i - t_{i-1}$. We can now write the lateral area of the ith frustum as

$$2\pi y(t_i^*)\sqrt{[\lambda'(t_i^{**})]^2 + [y'(t^{***})]^2}\ \Delta t_i.$$

The area generated by revolving all of C_p is the sum of these terms:

$$2\pi y(t_1^*)\sqrt{[x'(t_1^{**})]^2 + [y'(t_1^{***})]^2}\ \Delta t_i + \cdots + 2\pi y(t_n^*)\sqrt{[x'(t_n^{**})]^2 + [y'(t_n^{***})]^2}\ \Delta t_n.$$

This is not a Riemann sum: we don't know that $t_i^* = t^{**} = t_i^{***}$. But it is "close" to a Riemann sum. Close enough that, as $\|P\| \to 0$, this "almost" Riemann sum tends to the integral:

$$\int_c^d 2\pi y(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt.$$

That this is so follows from a theorem of advanced calculus known as Duhamel's principle. We will not attempt to fill in the details. $\square$

Example 1 Derive a formula for the surface area of a sphere from (10.8.2.)

SOLUTION We can generate a sphere of radius r by revolving the arc

$$x(t) = r\cos t, \qquad y(t) = r\sin t \qquad t \in [0, \pi]$$

about the x-axis. Differentiation gives

$$x'(t) = -r\sin t, \quad y'(t) = r\cos t.$$

By (10.8.2),

$$\begin{aligned} A &= 2\pi\int_0^\pi r\sin t\sqrt{r^2(\sin^2 t + \cos^2 t)}\, dt \\ &= 2\pi r^2\int_0^\pi \sin t\, dt = 2\pi r^2\Big[-\cos t\Big]_0^\pi = 4\pi r^2. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Find the area of the surface generated by revolving about the x-axis the curve $y^2 - 2\ln y = 4x$ from $y = 1$ to $y = 2$.

SOLUTION We can represent the curve parametrically by setting

$$x(t) = \tfrac{1}{4}(t^2 - 2\ln t), \qquad y(t) = t \qquad t \in [1, 2].$$

Here

$$x'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}(t - t^{-1}), \qquad y'(t) = 1$$

and

$$[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2 = \left[\tfrac{1}{2}(t + t^{-1})\right]^2. \qquad \text{(check this)}$$

It follows that

$$A = \int_1^2 2\pi t\left[\tfrac{1}{2}(t + t^{-1})\right]dt = \int_1^2 \pi(t^2 + 1)\, dt = \pi\left[\tfrac{1}{3}t^3 + t\right]_1^2 = \tfrac{10}{3}\pi. \quad \square$$

Suppose now that C is the graph of a continuously differentiable nonnegative function $y = f(x)$, $x \in [a, b]$. The area of the surface generated by revolving C about the x-axis is given by the formula

(10.8.3)
$$\boxed{A = \int_a^b 2\pi f(x)\sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\,dx.}$$

This follows readily from (10.8.2). Set

$$x = t, \quad y(t) = f(t) \qquad t \in [a, b].$$

Apply (10.3.2) and then replace the dummy variable t by x.

Example 3 Find the area of the surface generated by revolving about the x-axis the graph of the sine function from $x = 0$ to $x = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

SOLUTION Setting $f(x) = \sin x$, we have $f'(x) = \cos x$ and therefore

$$A = \int_0^{\pi/2} 2\pi \sin x\sqrt{1 + \cos^2 x}\,dx.$$

To calculate this integral, we set

$$u = \cos x, \quad du = -\sin x\,dx.$$

At $\quad x = 0, \quad u = 1; \quad$ at $\quad x = \frac{1}{2}\pi, u = 0$. Therefore

$$A = -2\pi\int_1^0 \sqrt{1 + u^2}\,du = 2\pi\int_0^1 \sqrt{1 + u^2}\,du$$

$$\underset{\text{by (8.4.1)}}{=} 2\pi\left[\tfrac{1}{2}u\sqrt{1 + u^2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\ln\left(u + \sqrt{1 + u^2}\right)\right]_0^1$$

$$= \pi[\sqrt{2} + \ln(1 + \sqrt{2})] \cong 2.3\pi \cong 7.23. \quad \square$$

Centroid of a Curve

The centroid of a plane region Ω is the center of mass of a homogeneous plate in the shape of Ω. Likewise, the centroid of a solid of revolution T is the center of mass of a homogeneous solid in the shape of T. All this was covered in Section 6.4.

What do we mean by the centroid of a plane curve C? Exactly what you would expect. By the *centroid* of a plane curve C, we mean the center of mass of a homogeneous wire in the shape of C. (There is no suggestion here that the centroid of a curve lies on the curve itself. In general, it does not.)

We can locate the centroid of a curve from the following principles, which we take from physics.

> *Principle 1: Symmetry.* If a curve has an axis of symmetry, then the centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ lies somewhere along that axis.
>
> *Principle 2: Additivity.* If a curve with length L is broken up into a finite number of pieces with arc lengths $\Delta s_1, \ldots, \Delta s_n$ and centroids $(\bar{x}_1, \bar{y}_1), \cdots, (\bar{x}_n \bar{y}_n)$, then
>
> $$\bar{x}L = \bar{x}_1\Delta s_1 + \cdots + \bar{x}_n\Delta s_n \text{ and } \bar{y}L = \bar{y}_1\Delta s_1 + \cdots + \bar{y}_n\Delta s_n.$$

Figure 10.8.5 shows a curve C that begins at A and ends at B. Let's suppose that the curve is continuously differentiable (can be parametrized by continuously differentiable functions) and that the length of the curve is L. We want a formula for the centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$.

Let $(X(s), Y(s))$ be the point on C that is at an arc distance s from the initial point A. (What we are doing here is called *parametrizing C by arc length.*) A partition

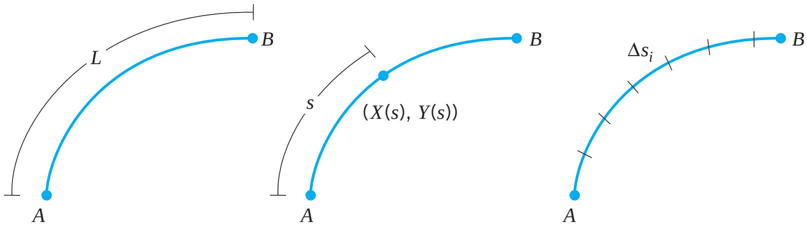


Figure 10.8.5

$P = \{0 = s_0 < s_1 < \cdots < s_n = L\}$ of $[0, L]$ breaks up C into n little pieces of lengths $\Delta s_1, \ldots, \Delta s_n$ and centroids $(\overline{x}_1, \overline{y}_1), \ldots, (\overline{x}_n, \overline{y}_n)$. From Principle 2 we know that

$$\overline{x}L = \overline{x}_1 \Delta s_1 + \cdots + \overline{x}_n \Delta s_n \qquad \text{and} \qquad \overline{y}L = \overline{y}_1 \Delta s_i + \cdots + \overline{y}_n \Delta s_n.$$

Now for each i let $s_i^* = \frac{1}{2}(s_{i-1} + s_i)$. Then $\overline{x}_i \cong X(s_i^*)$ and $\overline{y}_i \cong Y(s_i^*)$. [We are approximating $(\overline{x}_i, \overline{y}_i)$ by the center of the ith little piece.] We can therefore write

$$\overline{x}L \cong \overline{X}_1(s_1^*)\Delta s_1 + \cdots + \overline{X}_n(s_n^*)\Delta s_n, \qquad \overline{y}L \cong \overline{Y}_1(s_1^*)\Delta s_1 + \cdots + \overline{Y}_n(s_n^*)\Delta s_n.$$

The sums on the right are Riemann sums tending to easily recognizable limits: letting $\|P\| \to 0$, we have

(10.8.4) $$\boxed{\overline{x}L \int_0^L X(s)\, ds \qquad \text{and} \qquad \overline{y}L = \int_0^L Y(s)\, ds.}$$

These formulas give the centroid of a curve in terms of the arc length parameter. It is but a short step from here to formulas stated in terms of a more general parameter.

Suppose that the curve C is given parametrically by the functions

$$x = x(t), \qquad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [c, d]$$

where t is now an arbitrary parameter. Then

$$s(t) = \int_c^t \sqrt{[x'(u)]^2 + [y'(u)]^2}\, du, \qquad ds = s'(t)\, dt = \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt.$$

At $s = 0, t = c$; at $s = L, t = d$. Changing variables in (10.8.4) from s to t, we have

$$\overline{x}L = \int_c^d X(s(t))\, s'(t)\, dt = \int_c^d X(s(t))\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt$$

$$\overline{y}L = \int_c^d Y(s(t))\, s'(t)\, dt = \int_c^d Y(s(t))\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt.$$

A moment's reflection shows that

$$X(s(t)) = x(t) \qquad \text{and} \qquad Y(s(t)) = y(t).$$

We can then write

(10.8.5)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\bar{x}L &= \int_c^d x(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2+[y'(t)]^2}\,dt\\ \bar{y}L &= \int_c^d y(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2+[y'(t)]^2}\,dt.\end{aligned}}$$

These are the centroid formulas stated in terms of an arbitrary parameter t.

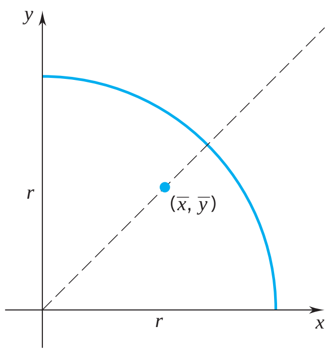


Figure 10.8.6

Example 4 Locate the centroid of the quarter-circle shown in Figure 10.8.6.

SOLUTION We can parametrize that quarter-circle by setting

$$x(t) = r\cos t, \qquad y(t) = r\sin t \qquad t \in [0, \pi/2].$$

Since the curve is symmetric about the line $x = y$, we know that $\bar{x} = \bar{y}$. Here $x'(t) = -r\sin t$ and $y'(t) = r\cos t$. Therefore

$$\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2} = \sqrt{r^2\sin^2 t + r^2\cos^2 t} = r.$$

By (10.8.5)

$$\bar{y}L = \int_0^{\pi/2}(r\ \sin t)r\ dt = r^2\int_0^{\pi/2}\sin t\ dt = r^2\Big[-\cos t\Big]_0^{\pi/2} = r^2.$$

Note that $L = \pi r/2$. Therefore $\bar{y} = r^2/L = 2r/\pi$. The centroid of the quarter-circle is at the point $(2r/\pi, 2r/\pi)$. ❑

Remark In Section 6.4 we found that the centroid of the quarter-disk is at the point $(4r/3\pi, 4r/3\pi)$. This point is closer to the origin than the centroid of the quarter-circle. To be expected, since on average the points of the quarter-disk are closer to the origin than the points of the quarter-circle. ❑

Example 5 Take $a > 0$. Locate the centroid of the cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$.

SOLUTION The curve (see Figure 10.3.6) is symmetric about the x-axis. Thus $\bar{y} = 0$. To find $\bar{x}$ we parametrize the curve as follows: taking $\theta \in [0, 2\pi]$, we set

$$x(\theta) = r\cos\theta = a(1-\cos\theta)\cos\theta,$$
$$y(\theta) = r\sin\theta = a(1-\cos\theta)\sin\theta.$$

A straightforward calculation shows that

$$[x'(\theta)]^2 + [y'(\theta)]^2 = 4a^2\sin^2\tfrac{1}{2}\theta.$$

Applying (10.8.5), we have

$$\bar{x}L = \int_0^{2\pi}[a(1-\cos\theta)\cos\theta]\left[2a\sin\tfrac{1}{2}\theta\right]d\theta = \underset{\text{(check this out)}}{-\tfrac{32}{5}a^2}.$$

By Example 4 of Section 10.7, $L = 8a$. Thus $\bar{x} = \left(-\frac{32}{5}a^2\right)/8a = -\frac{4}{5}a$. The centroid of the curve is at the point $\left(-\frac{4}{5}a, 0\right)$. ❑

If C is a continuously differentiable curve of the form

$$y = f(x), \qquad x \in [a, b],$$

then (10.8.5) reduces to

(10.8.6)
$$\bar{x}L = \int_a^b x\sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\, dx, \quad \bar{y}L = \int_a^b f(x)\sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\, dx.$$

You can easily verify this.

Pappus's Theorem on Surface Area

That same Pappus who gave us that wonderful theorem on volumes of solids of revolution (Theorem 6.4.4) gave us the following equally marvelous result on surface area:

THEOREM 10.8.7 PAPPUS'S THEOREM ON SURFACE AREA

A plane curve is revolved about an axis that lies in its plane. The curve may meet the axis but, if so, only at a finite number of points: If the curve does not cross the axis, then the area of the resulting surface of revolution is the length of the curve multiplied by the circumference of the circle described by the centroid of the curve:

$$A = 2\pi \bar{R} L$$

where L is the length of the curve and $\bar{R}$ is the distance from the axis of revolution to the centroid of the curve.

Pappus did not have calculus to help him when he made his inspired guesses; he did his work thirteen centuries before Newton or Leibniz was born. With the formulas that we have developed through calculus (through Newton and Leibniz, that is), Pappus's theorem is easily verified. Call the plane of the curve the xy-plane and call the axis of rotation the x-axis. Then $\bar{R} = \bar{y}$ and

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \int_c^d 2\pi y(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt \\ &= 2\pi \int_c^d y(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\, dt = 2\pi \bar{y} L = 2\pi \bar{R} L. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

EXERCISES 10.8

Exercises 1–10. Find the length of the curve, locate the centroid, and determine the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve about the x-axis.

1. $f(x) = 4, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

2. $f(x) = 2x, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

3. $y = \frac{4}{3}x, \quad x \in [0, 3]$.

4. $y = -\frac{12}{5}x + 12, \quad x \in [0, 5]$.

5. $x(t) = 3t, \quad y(t) = 4t \quad t \in [0, 2]$.

6. $r = 5, \quad \theta \in \left[0, \frac{1}{4}\pi\right]$.

7. $x(t) = 2\cos t, \quad y(t) = 2\sin t \quad t \in \left[0, \frac{1}{6}\pi\right]$.

8. $x(t) = \cos^3 t, \quad y(t) = \sin^3 t \quad t \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right]$.

9. $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ with $x \in \left[-\frac{1}{2}a, \frac{1}{2}a\right]$ and $y > 0$.

10. $r = 1 + \cos\theta, \quad \theta \in [0, \pi]$.

Exercises 11–18. Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve about the x-axis.

11. $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3, \quad x \in [0, 2]$.

12. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad x \in [1, 2]$.

13. $4y = x^3, \quad x \in [0, 1]$.

14. $y^2 = 9x, \quad x \in [0, 4]$.

15. $y = \cos x,\ x \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right]$.

16. $f(x) = 2\sqrt{1-x}, \quad x \in [-1, 0]$.

17. $r = e^\theta, \quad \theta \in \left[0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right]$.

18. $y = \cosh x, \quad x \in [0, \ln 2]$.

19. Take $a > 0$. The curve

$$x(\theta) = a(\theta - \sin\theta), \quad y(\theta) = a(1 - \cos\theta) \quad \theta \text{ real}$$

is called a *cycloid*.

(a) Find the area under the curve from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.
(b) Find the area of the surface generated by revolving this part of the curve about the x-axis.

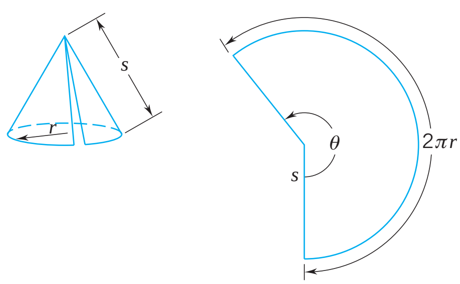
20. Take $a > 0$. The curve

$$x(\theta) = 3a\cos\theta + a\cos 3\theta,$$
$$y(\theta) = 3a\sin\theta - a\sin 3\theta$$

is called a *hypocycloid*.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curves with $a = 1, 2, \frac{1}{2}$.
(b) Take $a = 1$. Find the area enclosed by the curve.
(c) Take $a = 1$. Set up a definite integral that gives the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve about the x-axis.

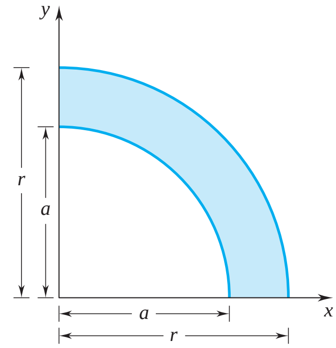
21. By cutting a cone of slant height s and base radius r along a lateral edge and laying the surface flat, we can form a sector of a circle of radius s. (See the figure.) Use this idea to verify (10.8.1).



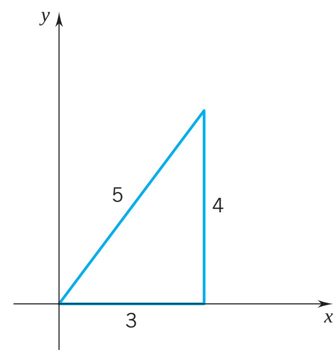
area $= \frac{1}{2}\theta s^2$, θ in radians

22. The figure shows a ring formed by two quarter-circles. Call the corresponding quarter-discs Ω_a and Ω_r. From Section 6.4 we know that Ω_a has centroid at $(4a/3\pi, 4a/3\pi)$ and Ω_r has centroid at $(4r/3\pi, 4r/3\pi)$.

(a) Locate the centroid of the ring without integration.
(b) Locate the centroid of the outer arc from your answer to part (a) by letting a tend to r.



23. (a) Locate the centroid of each side of the triangle in the figure.



(b) Use your answers in part (a) to calculate the centroid of the triangle.
(c) Where is the centroid of the triangular region?
(d) Where is the centroid of the curve consisting of sides 4 and 5?
(e) Use Pappus's theorem to find the lateral surface area of a cone of base radius 4 and height 3.

24. Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve about the x-axis.

(a) $2x = y\sqrt{y^2 - 1} + \ln|y - \sqrt{y^2 - 1}|,\ y \in [2, 5]$.
(b) $6a^2xy = y^4 + 3a^4,\ \ y \in [a, 3a]$.

25. Use Pappus's theorem to find the surface area of the *torus* generated by revolving about the x-axis the circle $x^2 + (y - b^2) = a^2$. $(0 < a \le b)$

26. (a) We calculated the surface area of a sphere from (10.8.2), not from (10.8.3). Could we just as well have used (10.8.3)? Explain.
(b) Verify that (10.8.2) applied to

$$C: \quad x(t) = \cos t, \quad y(t) = r \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

gives $A = 8\pi r$. However, the surface obtained by revolving C about the x-axis is a cylinder of base radius r and height 2, and therefore A should be $4\pi r$. What's wrong here?

27. (*An interesting property of the sphere*) Slice a sphere along two parallel planes a fixed distance apart. Show that the

surface area of the band so obtained depends only on the distance between the planes, not on their location.

28. Locate the centroid of a first-quadrant circular arc

$$C: x(t) = r\cos t, \quad y(t) = r\sin t, \qquad t \in [\theta_1, \theta_2].$$

29. Find the surface area of the ellipsoid obtained by revolving the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \qquad (0 < b < a)$$

(a) about its major axis; (b) about its minor axis.

The Centroid of a Surface of Revolution

If a material surface is homogeneous (constant mass density), then the center of mass of that material surface is called the *centroid*. In general, the determination of the centroid of a surface requires the use of *surface integrals*. (Chapter 18) However, if the surface is a surface of revolution, then the centroid can be found by ordinary one-variable integration.

30. Let C be a simple curve in the upper half-plane parametrized by a pair of continuously differentiable functions.

$$x = x(t), \quad y = y(t) \qquad t \in [c, d].$$

By revolving C about the x-axis, we obtain a surface of revolution, the area of which we denote by A. By symmetry, the centroid of the surface lies on the x-axis. Thus the centroid is completely determined by its x-coordinate $\bar{x}$. Show that

(10.8.8) $$\boxed{\bar{x}A = \int_c^d 2\pi x(t)y(t)\sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\,dt}$$

by assuming the following additivity principle: if the surface is broken up into n surfaces of revolution with areas $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ and the centroids of the surfaces have x-coordinates $\bar{x}_1, \ldots, \bar{x}_n$, then

$$\bar{x}A = \bar{x}_1A_1 + \cdots + \bar{x}_nA_n.$$

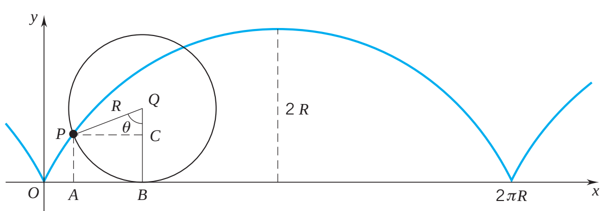
31. Locate the centroid of a hemisphere of radius r.

32. Locate the centroid of a conical surface of base radius r and height h.

33. Locate the centroid of the lateral surface of the frustum of a cone of height h, base radius R, upper radius r.

■ PROJECT 10.8 The Cycloid

Take a wheel (a roll of tape will do) and mark a point on the rim. Call that point P. Now roll the wheel slowly, keeping your eyes on P. The jumping-kangaroo path described by P is called a *cycloid*. To obtain a mathematical characterization of the cycloid, let the radius of the wheel be R and set the wheel on the x-axis so that the point P starts out at the origin. The figure shows P after a turn of θ radians.



cycloid

Problem 1. Show that the cycloid can be parametrized by the functions

$$x(\theta) = R(\theta - \sin\theta), \quad y(\theta) = R(1 - \cos\theta).$$

HINT: Length of OB = length of $\widehat{PB} = R\theta$.

Problem 2.

a. At the end of each arch, the cycloid comes to a cusp. Show that x' and y' are both 0 at the end of each arch.

b. Show that the area under an arch of the cycloid is three times the area of the rolling circle.

c. Find the length of an arch of the cycloid.

Problem 3.

a. Locate the centroid of the region under the first arch of the cycloid.

b. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region under an arch of the cycloid about the x-axis.

c. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region under an arch of the cycloid about the y-axis.

The curve given parametrically by

$$x(\phi) = R(\phi + \sin\phi), \quad y(\phi) = R(1 - \cos\phi), \quad \phi \in [-\pi, \pi]$$

is called the *inverted cycloid*. It is obtained by reflecting one arch of the cycloid in the x-axis and then translating the resulting curve so that the low point is at the origin.

Problem 4. Use a graphing utility to draw the inverted cycloid.

Problem 5.

a. Find the inclination α of the line tangent to the inverted cycloid at the point $(x\phi, y(\phi))$.

b. Let s be the arc distance from the low point of the inverted cycloid to the point $(x(\phi), y(\phi))$. Show that $s = 4R\sin\frac{1}{2}\phi = 4R\sin\alpha$, where α is the inclination of the tangent line at $(x(\phi), y(\phi))$.

Visualize two particles sliding without friction down an arch of the inverted cycloid. If the two particles are released at the same time from different positions, which one will reach the bottom first? Neither—they will both get there at exactly the same time. Being the only curve that has this property, the inverted

arch of a cycloid is known as the *tautochrone*, the *same-time* curve.

Problem 6. Verify that the inverted arch of a cycloid has the tautochrone property by showing that:

a. The effective gravitational force on a particle of mass m is $-mg\sin\alpha$, where α is the inclination of the tangent line at the position of the particle. From this, conclude that

$$(*)\qquad \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = -g\sin\alpha.$$

b. Combine $(*)$ with Problem 5(b) to show that each descending particle is the downward phase of simple harmonic motion with period

$$T = 4\pi\sqrt{R/g}.$$

Thus, while the amplitude of the motion depends on the point of release, the frequency does not. Two particles released simultaneously from different points of the curve will reach the low point of the curve in exactly the same amount of time: $T/4 = \pi\sqrt{R/g}$.

Suppose now that a particle descends without friction along a curve from point A to a point B not directly below it. What should be the shape of the curve so that the particle descends from A to B in the least possible time? This question was first formulated by Johann Bernoulli and posed by him as a challenge to the scientific community in 1696. The challenge was readily accepted and within months the answer was found—by Johann Bernoulli himself, by his brother Jacob, by Newton, by Leibniz, and by L'Hôpital. The answer? Part of an inverted cycloid. Because of this, the inverted cycloid is heralded as the *brachystochrone*, the *least-time* curve.

A proof that the inverted cycloid is the least-time curve, the curve of quickest descent, is beyond our reach. The argument requires a sophisticated variant of calculus known as *the calculus of variations*. We can, however, compare the time of descent along a cycloid to the time of descent along a straight-line path.

Problem 7. You have seen that a particle descends along the inverted arch of a cycloid from $(\pi R, 2R)$ to $(0, 0)$ in time $t = T/4 = \pi\sqrt{R/g}$. What is the time of descent along a straight-line path?

CHAPTER 10. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–8. Identify the conic section. If the curve is a parabola, find the vertex, focus, axis, and directrix; if the curve is an ellipse, find the center, the foci, and the lengths of the major and minor axes; if the curve is a hyperbola, find the center, vertices, the foci, the asymptotes, and the length of the transverse axis. Then sketch the curve.

1. $x^2 - 4y - 4 = 0$.
2. $x^2 - 4y^2 - 10x + 41 = 0$.
3. $x^2 + 4y^2 + 6x + 8 = 0$.
4. $9x^2 + 4y^2 - 18x - 8y = 23$.
5. $4x^2 - 9y^2 - 8x - 18y + 31 = 0$.
6. $x^2 - 10x - 8y + 41 = 0$.
7. $9x^2 + 25y^2 - 18x + 100y - 116 = 0$.
8. $2x^2 - 3y^2 + 4\sqrt{3}x - 6\sqrt{3}y = 9$.

Exercises 9–10. Give the rectangular coordinates of the point.

9. $[-4, \frac{1}{3}\pi]$. **10.** $[\sqrt{2}, -\frac{5}{4}\pi]$.

Exercises 11–14. Points are specified in rectangular coordinates. Give all possible polar coordinates for each point.

11. $(0, -4)$. **12.** $(-\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$.
13. $(2\sqrt{3}, -2)$. **14.** $(-1, \sqrt{3})$.

Exercises 15–18. Write the equation in polar coordinates.

15. $y = x^2$. **16.** $x^2 + y^2 - 2x = 0$.
17. $x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 2y = 0$. **18.** $y^2 = \dfrac{x^4}{1 - x^2}$.

Exercises 19–22. Write the equation in rectangular coordinates.

19. $r = 5\sec\theta$. **20.** $r = -4\cos\theta$.
21. $r = 3\cos\theta + 4\sin\theta$. **22.** $r^2 = \sec 2\theta$.

Exercises 23–26. Sketch the polar curve.

23. $r = 2(1 - \sin\theta)$. **24.** $r = 2 + \cos 2\theta$.
25. $r = \sin^2(\theta/2)$. **26.** $r = 1 - 2\sin\theta$.

Exercises 27–28. Sketch the curves and find the points at which they intersect.

27. $r = \sqrt{2}\sin\theta, \quad r^2 = \cos 2\theta$.
28. $r = 2\cos\theta, \quad r = 2\sqrt{3}\sin\theta$.

Exercises 29–30. Sketch the curve and find the area it encloses.

29. $r = 2(1 - \cos\theta)$. **30.** $r^2 = 4\sin 2\theta$.

31. Find the area inside one petal of $r = 2\cos 4\theta$.

32. Find the area inside the circle $r = \sin\theta$ but outside the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.

33. Find the area which is common to the two circles: $r = 2\sin\theta, \quad r = \sin\theta + \cos\theta$.

Exercises 34–38. Express the curve by an equation in x and y; then sketch the curve.

34. $x = 1/t, \quad y = t^2 + 1, \quad t \neq 0$.
35. $x = \sin t, \quad y = \cos 2t, \quad 0 \leq t \leq \pi$.
36. $x = \cosh t, \quad y = \sinh t, \quad -\infty < t < \infty$.
37. $x = e^t, \quad y = e^{2t} - 2e^t + 1, \quad t \geq 0$.
38. $x = t + 2, \quad y = t^2 + 4t + 8, \quad t \leq 0$.

39. Find a parametrization $x = x(t),\ y = y(t),\ t \in [0, 1]$, for the line segment from $(1, 4)$ to $(5, 6)$.

40. Find a parametrization $x = x(t),\ y = y(t),\ t \in [0, 1]$, for the line segment from $(2, -1)$ to $(-2, 3)$.

41. A particle traverses the ellipse $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$ in a clockwise manner beginning at the point $(0, 2)$. Find a parametrization $x = x(t),\ y = y(t),\ t \in [0, 2\pi]$, for the path of the particle.

Exercises 42–43. Find an equation in x and y for the line tangent to the curve.

42. $x(t) = 3t - 1,\ y(t) = 9t^2 - 3t, \quad t = 1.$

43. $x(t) = 3e^t,\ y(t) = 5e^{-t}, \quad t = 0.$

44. Find an equation in x and y for the line tangent to the polar curve $C : r = 2\sin 2\theta$, at $\theta = \pi/4$.

Exercises 45–46. Find the points (x, y) at which the given curve has (a) a horizontal tangent, (b) a vertical tangent.

45. $x(t) = t^2 + 2t,\ y(t) = t^3 + \frac{3}{2}t^2 - 6t.$

46. $x(t) = 2\cos t - \cos 2t,\ y(t) = 2\sin t - \sin 2t.$

47. Find dy/dx and d^2y/dx^2 for the curve $C : x = 3t^2$, $y = 4t^3$.

48. An object moves in a plane so that dx/dt and d^2y/dt^2 are nonzero constants. Identify the path of the object.

Exercises 49–54. Find the length of the curve.

49. $y = x^{3/2} + 2 \quad$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \frac{5}{9}$.

50. $y = \ln(1 - x^2) \quad$ from $x = 0$ to $x = \frac{1}{2}$.

51. $x(t) = \cos t, \quad y(t) = \sin^2 t \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

52. $x(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2, \quad y(t) = \frac{2}{3}(6t + 9)^{3/2} \quad$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 4$.

53. $r = 1 - \sin\theta \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$.

54. $r = \theta^2 \quad$ from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \sqrt{5}$.

Exercises 55–58. Find the area of the surface generated by revolving the curve about the x-axis.

55. $y^2 = 4x \quad$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 24$.

56. $x(t) = \frac{2}{3}t^{3/2},\ y(t) = t \quad$ from $t = 3$ to $t = 8$.

57. $6xy = x^4 + 3 \quad$ from $x = 1$ to $x = 3$.

58. $3x^2 + 4y^2 = 3a^2, \quad y \geq 0.$

59. Show that, if f is continuously differentiable on $[a, b]$ and f' is never zero, then the length of the graph of f^{-1} = the length of the graph of f.

60. A particle starting at time $t = 0$ at the point (4, 2) moves until time $t = 1$ with $x'(t) = x(t)$ and $y'(t) = 2y(t)$. Find the initial speed v_0, the terminal speed v_1, and the distance traveled s.

Exercises 61–63 concern the *astroid*: the curve

$$x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}.$$

61. Sketch the astroid and show that the curve can be parametrized by setting

$$x(\theta) = a\cos^3\theta, \quad y(\theta) = a\sin^3\theta \quad \theta \in [0, 2\pi].$$

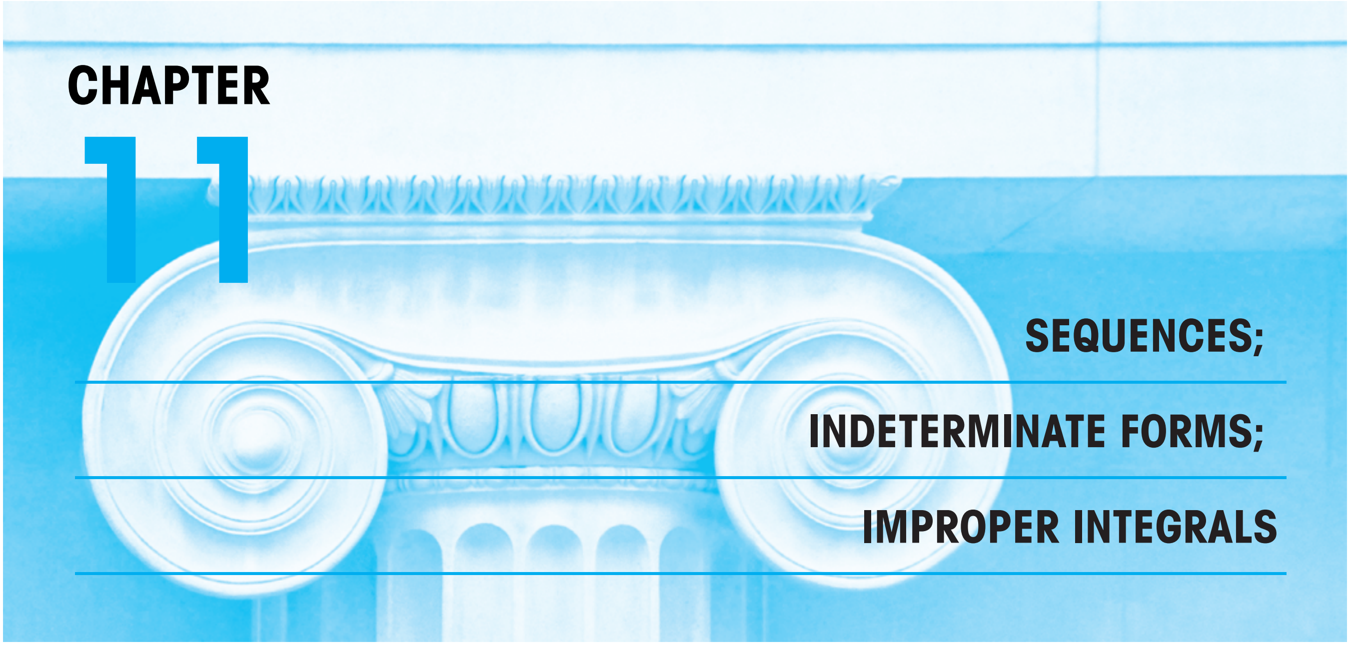
62. Find the length of the astroid.

63. Find the centroid of the first-quadrant part of the astroid.

64. A particle moves from time $t = 0$ to $t = 1$ so that $x(t) = 4t - \sin\pi t,\ y(t) = 4t + \cos\pi t$.

(a) When does the particle have minimum speed? When does it have maximum speed?

(b) What is the slope of the tangent line at the point where $t = \frac{1}{4}$?



CHAPTER 11

SEQUENCES; INDETERMINATE FORMS; IMPROPER INTEGRALS

■ 11.1 THE LEAST UPPER BOUND AXIOM

So far our approach to the real number system has been somewhat primitive. We have simply taken the point of view that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the set of points on a line and the set of real numbers, and that this enables us to measure all distances, take all roots of nonnegative numbers, and, in short, fill in all the gaps left by the set of rational numbers. This point of view is basically correct and has served us well, but it is not sufficiently sharp to put our theorems on a sound basis, nor is it sufficiently sharp for the work that lies ahead.

We begin with a nonempty set S of real numbers. As indicated in Section 1.2, a number M is an *upper bound* for S if

$$x \leq M \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in S.$$

It follows that if M is an upper bound for S, then every number in $[M, \infty)$ is also an upper bound for S. Of course, not all sets of real numbers have upper bounds. Those that do are said to be *bounded above*.

It is clear that every set that has a largest element has an upper bound: if b is the largest element of S, then $x \leq b$ for all $x \in S$. This makes b an upper bound for S. The converse is false: the sets

$$S_1 = (-\infty, 0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad S_2 = \{1/2, 2/3, 3/4, \cdots, n/(n+1), \cdots\}$$

both have upper bounds (for instance, 2 is an upper bound for each set), but neither has a largest element.

Let's return to the first set, S_1. While $(-\infty, 0)$ does not have a largest element, the set of its upper bounds, namely $[0, \infty)$, does have a smallest element, namely 0. We call 0 the *least upper bound* of $(-\infty, 0)$.

Now let's reexamine S_2. While the set of quotients

$$\frac{n}{n+1} = 1 - \frac{1}{n+1}, \; n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots,$$

does not have a greatest element, the set of its upper bounds, $[1, \infty)$, does have a least element, 1. The number 1 is the *least upper bound* of that set of quotients.

In general, if S is a nonempty set of numbers which is bounded above, then the *least upper bound* of S is the least number which is an upper bound for S.

We now state explicitly one of the key *assumptions* that we make about the real number system. This assumption, called the *least upper bound axiom*, provides the sharpness and clarity that we require.

AXIOM 11.1.1 THE LEAST UPPER BOUND AXIOM

Every nonempty set of real numbers that has an upper bound has a *least* upper bound.

Some find this axiom obvious; some find it unintelligible. For those of you who find it obvious, note that the axiom is not satisfied by the rational number system; namely, it is not true that every nonempty set of rational numbers that has a rational upper bound has a least rational upper bound. (For a detailed illustration of this, we refer you to Exercise 33.) Those who find the axiom unintelligible will come to understand it by working with it.

We indicate the least upper bound of a set S by writing lub S. As you will see from the examples below, the least upper bound idea has wide applicability.

(1) $\text{lub}\,(-\infty, 0) = 0, \qquad \text{lub}(-\infty, 0] = 0.$

(2) $\text{lub}\,(-4, -1) = -1, \qquad \text{lub}(-4, -1] = -1.$

(3) $\text{lub}\,\{1/2, 2/3, 3/4, \cdots, n/(n+1), \cdots\} = 1.$

(4) $\text{lub}\,\{-1/2, -1/8, -1/27, \cdots, -1/n^3, \cdots\} = 0.$

(5) $\text{lub}\,\{x : x^2 < 3\} = \text{lub}\{x : -\sqrt{3} < x < \sqrt{3}\} = \sqrt{3}.$

(6) For each decimal fraction

$$b = 0.b_1b_2b_3, \cdots,$$

we have

$$b = \text{lub}\,\{0.b_1, 0.b_1b_2, 0.b_1b_2b_3, \cdots\}.$$

(7) If S consists of the lengths of all polygonal paths inscribed in a semicircle of radius 1, then lub $S = \pi$ (half the circumference of the unit circle).

The least upper bound of a set has a special property that deserves particular attention. The idea is this: the fact that M is the least upper bound of set S does not guarantee that M is in S (indeed, it need not be, as illustrated in the preceding examples), but it guarantees that we can approximate M as closely as we wish by elements of S.

THEOREM 11.1.2

If M is the least upper bound of the set S and ϵ is a positive number, then there is at least one number s in S such that

$$M - \epsilon < s \leq M.$$

PROOF Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since M is an upper bound for S, the condition $s \leq M$ is satisfied by all numbers s in S. All we have to show therefore is that there is some number s in S such that

$$M - \epsilon < s.$$

Suppose on the contrary that there is no such number in S. We then have

$$x \le M - \epsilon \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in S.$$

This makes $M - \epsilon$ an upper bound for S. But this cannot be, for then $M - \epsilon$ is an upper bound for S that is *less* than M, which contradicts the assumption that M is the *least* upper bound. ❑

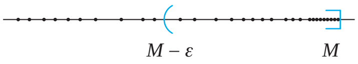


Figure 11.1.1

The theorem we just proved is illustrated in Figure 11.1.1. Take S as the set of points marked in the figure. If $M = \text{lub}\, S$, then S has at least one element in every half-open interval of the form $(M - \epsilon, M]$.

Example 1

(a) Let $S = \{1/2, 2/3, 3/4, \cdots, n/(n+1), \cdots\}$ and take $\epsilon = 0.0001$. Since 1 is the least upper bound of S, there must be a number $s \in S$ such that

$$1 - 0.0001 < s < 1.$$

There is: take, for example, $s = \dfrac{99,999}{100,000}$.

(b) Let $S = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ and take $\epsilon = 0.00001$. It is clear that 3 is the least upper bound of S. Therefore, there must be a number $s \in S$ such that

$$3 - 0.00001 < s \le 3.$$

There is: $s = 3$. ❑

We come now to lower bounds. Recall that a number m is a *lower bound* for a nonempty set S if

$$m \le x \qquad \text{for all} \qquad x \in S.$$

Sets that have lower bounds are said to be *bounded below*. Not all sets have lower bounds, but those that do have *greatest lower bounds*. We don't have to assume this. We can prove it by using the least upper bound axiom.

THEOREM 11.1.3

Every nonempty set of real numbers that has a lower bound has a *greatest* lower bound.

PROOF Suppose that S is nonempty and that it has a lower bound k. Then

$$k \le s \qquad \text{for all} \qquad s \in S.$$

It follows that $-s \le -k$ for all $s \in S$; that is,

$$\{-s : s \in S\} \qquad \text{has an upper bound} - k.$$

From the least upper bound axiom we conclude that $\{-s : s \in S\}$ has a least upper bound; call it m. Since $-s \le m$ for all $s \in S$, we can see that

$$-m \le s \qquad \text{for all} \qquad s \in S,$$

and thus $-m$ is a lower bound for S. We now assert that $-m$ is the greatest lower bound of the set S. To see this, note that, if there existed a number m_1 satisfying

$$-m < m_1 \le s \qquad \text{for all} \qquad s \in S,$$

then we would have

$$-s \leq -m_1 < m \qquad \text{for all} \qquad s \in S,$$

and thus m would not be the *least* upper bound of $\{-s : s \in S\}$.[†] ❑

The greatest lower bound, although not necessarily in the set, can be approximated as closely as we wish by members of the set. In short, we have the following theorem, the proof of which is left as an exercise.

THEOREM 11.1.4

If m is the greatest lower bound of the set S and ϵ is a positive number, then there is at least one number s in S such that

$$m \leq s < m + \epsilon.$$

The theorem is illustrated in Figure 11.1.2. If $m = \text{glb}\, S$ (that is, if m is the greatest lower bound of the set S), then S has at least one element in every half-open interval of the form $[m, m + \epsilon)$.

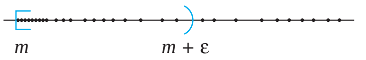


Figure 11.1.2

Remark Given that a function f is defined and continuous on $[a, b]$, what do we know about f? Certainly the following:

(1) We know that if f takes on two values, then it takes on every value in between (the intermediate-value theorem). Thus f maps intervals onto intervals.
(2) We know that f takes on both a maximum value and minimum value (the extreme-value theorem).

We "know" this, but actually we have proven none of it. With the least upper bound axiom in hand, we can prove both theorems. (Appendix B.) ❑

[†]We proved Theorem 11.1.3 by assuming the least upper bound axiom. We could have proceeded the other way. We could have set Theorem 11.1.3 as an axiom and then proved the least upper bound axiom as a theorem.

EXERCISES 11.1

Exercises 1–20. Find the least upper bound (if it exists) and the greatest lower bound (if it exists).

1. $(0, 2)$.
2. $[0, 2]$.
3. $(0, \infty)$.
4. $(-\infty, 1)$.
5. $\{x : x^2 < 4\}$.
6. $\{x : |x - 1| < 2\}$.
7. $\{x : x^3 \geq 8\}$.
8. $\{x : x^4 \leq 16\}$.
9. $\left\{2\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{1}{3}, 2\frac{1}{4}, \cdots\right\}$.
10. $\left\{-1, -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{1}{4}, \cdots\right\}$.
11. $\{0.9, 0.99, 0.999, \cdots\}$
12. $\{-2, 2, -2.1, 2.1, -2.11, 2.11, \cdots\}$.
13. $\{x : \ln x < 1\}$.
14. $\{x : \ln x > 0\}$.
15. $\{x : x^2 + x - 1 < 0\}$.
16. $\{x : x^2 + x + 2 \geq 0\}$.
17. $\{x : x^2 > 4\}$.
18. $\{x : |x - 1| > 2\}$.
19. $\{x : \sin x \geq -1\}$.
20. $\{x : e^x < 1\}$.

Exercises 21–24. Find a number s that satisfies the assertion made in Theorem 11.1.4 for S and ϵ as given below.

21. $S = \left\{\frac{1}{11}, \left(\frac{1}{11}\right)^2, \left(\frac{1}{11}\right)^3, \cdots, \left(\frac{1}{11}\right)^n, \cdots\right\}, \quad \epsilon = 0.001.$

22. $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \quad \epsilon = 0.0001.$

23. $S = \left\{\frac{1}{10}, \frac{1}{1000}, \frac{1}{100{,}000}, \cdots, \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^{2n-1}, \cdots\right\},$
$\epsilon = \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^k (k \geq 1).$

24. $S = \left\{\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \cdots, \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n, \cdots\right\}, \quad \epsilon = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^k (k \geq 1).$

25. Prove Theorem 11.1.4 by imitating the proof of Theorem 11.1.2.

26. Let $S = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_n\}$ be a finite nonempty set of real numbers.

(a) Show that S is bounded.
(b) Show that lub S and glb S are elements of S.

27. Suppose that b is an upper bound for a set S of real numbers. Prove that if $b \in S$, then $b =$ lub S.

28. Let S be a bounded set of real numbers and suppose that lub $S =$ glb S. What can you conclude about S?

29. Suppose that S is a nonempty bounded set of real numbers and T is a nonempty subset of S.

(a) Show that T is bounded.
(b) Show that glb $S \leq$ glb $T \leq$ lub $T \leq$ lub S.

30. Show by example

(a) that the least upper bound of a set of rational numbers need not be rational.
(b) that the least upper bound of a set of irrational numbers need not be irrational.

31. Let c be a positive number. Prove that the set $S = \{c, 2c, 3c, \cdots, nc, \cdots\}$ is not bounded above.

32. (a) Show that the least upper bound of a set of negative numbers cannot be positive.
(b) Show that the greatest lower bound of a set of positive numbers cannot be negative.

33. The set S of rational numbers x with $x^2 < 2$ has rational upper bounds but no least rational upper bound. The argument goes like this. Suppose that S has a least rational upper bound and call it x_0. Then either

$$x_0^2 = 2, \qquad \text{or} \qquad x_0^2 > 2, \qquad \text{or} \qquad x_0^2 < 2.$$

(a) Show that $x_0^2 = 2$ is impossible by showing that if $x_0^2 = 2$, then x_0 is not rational.
(b) Show that $x_0^2 > 2$ is impossible by showing that if $x_0^2 > 2$, then there is a positive integer n for which $(x_0 - \frac{1}{n})^2 > 2$, which makes $x_0 - \frac{1}{n}$ a rational upper bound for S that is less than the least rational upper bound x_0.
(c) Show that $x_0^2 < 2$ is impossible by showing that if $x_0^2 < 2$, then there is a positive integer n for which $(x_0 + \frac{1}{n})^2 < 2$. This places $x_0 + \frac{1}{n}$ in S and shows that x_0 cannot be an upper bound for S.

34. Recall that a *prime number* is an integer $p > 1$ that has no positive integer divisors other than 1 and p. A famous theorem of Euclid states that there are an infinite number of primes (and therefore the set of primes is unbounded above). Prove that there are an infinite number of primes. HINT: Following the way of Euclid, assume that there are only a finite number of primes $p_1, p_2, \cdots, p_n$ and examine the number $x = (p_1 p_2 \cdots p_n) + 1$.

35. Let $S = \left\{2, \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2, \left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^3, \left(\frac{5}{4}\right)^4, \cdots, \left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right)^n, \cdots\right\}$.

(a) Use a graphing utility or CAS to calculate $\left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right)^n$ for $n = 5, 10, 100, 1000, 10,000$.
(b) Does S have a least upper bound? If so, what is it? Does S have a greatest lower bound? If so, what is it?

36. Let $S = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_n, \cdots\}$ with $a_1 = 4$ and for further subscripts $a_{n+1} = 3 - 3/a_n$.

(a) Calculate the numbers $a_2, a_3, a_4, \cdots, a_{10}$.
(b) Use a graphing utility or CAS to calculate $a_{20}, a_{30}, \cdots, a_{50}$.
(c) Does S have a least upper bound? If so, what is it? Does S have a greatest lower bound? If so, what is it?

37. Let $S = \{\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2\sqrt{2}}, \sqrt{2\sqrt{2\sqrt{2}}}, \cdots\}$. Thus $S = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_n, \cdots\}$ with $a_1 = \sqrt{2}$ and for further subscripts $a_{n+1} = \sqrt{2a_n}$.

(a) Use a graphing utility or CAS to calculate the numbers $a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_{10}$.
(b) Show by induction that $a_n < 2$ for all n.
(c) What is the least upper bound of S?
(d) In the definition of S, replace 2 by an arbitrary positive number c. What is the least upper bound in this case?

38. Let $S = \{\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}, \sqrt{2+\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}}}, \cdots\}$. Thus $a_1 = \sqrt{2}$ and for further subscripts $a_{n+1} = \sqrt{2 + a_n}$.

(a) Use a graphing utility or CAS to calculate the numbers $a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_{10}$.
(b) Show by induction that $a_n < 2$ for all n.
(c) What is the least upper bound of S?
(d) In the definition of S, replace 2 by an arbitrary positive number c. What is the least upper bound in this case?

■ 11.2 SEQUENCES OF REAL NUMBERS

To this point we have considered sequences only in a peripheral manner. Here we focus on them.

What is a sequence of real numbers?

DEFINITION 11.2.1 SEQUENCE OF REAL NUMBERS

A *sequence of real numbers* is a real-valued function defined on the set of positive integers.

You may find this definition somewhat surprising, but in a moment you will see that it makes sense.

Suppose we have a sequence of real numbers

$$a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_n, \cdots$$

What is a_1? It is the image of 1. What is a_2? It is the image of 2. What is a_3? It is the image of 3. In general, a_n is the image of n, the value that the function takes on at the integer n.

By convention, a_1 is called the *first term* of the sequence, a_2 the *second term*, and so on. More generally, a_n, the term with *index n*, is called the nth *term*.

Sequences can be defined by giving the law of formation. For example:

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{1}{n} && \text{is the sequence} && 1, \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{1}{3}, \tfrac{1}{4}, \cdots; \\ b_n &= \frac{n}{n+1} && \text{is the sequence} && \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{2}{3}, \tfrac{3}{4}, \tfrac{4}{5}, \cdots; \\ c_n &= n^2 && \text{is the sequence} && 1, 4, 9, 16, \cdots. \end{aligned}$$

It's like defining f by giving $f(x)$.

Sequences can be multiplied by constants; they can be added, subtracted, and multiplied. From

$$a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_n, \cdots \qquad \text{and} \qquad b_1, b_2, b_3, \cdots, b_n, \cdots$$

we can form

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the scalar product sequence} &: \alpha a_1, \alpha a_2, \alpha a_3, \cdots, \alpha a_n, \cdots, \\ \text{the sum sequence} &: a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3, \cdots, a_n + b_n, \cdots, \\ \text{the difference sequence} &: a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2, a_3 - b_3, \cdots, a_n - b_n, \cdots, \\ \text{the product sequence} &: a_1 b_1, a_2 b_2, a_3 b_3, \cdots, a_n b_n, \cdots. \end{aligned}$$

If the b_i*'s* are all different from zero, we can form

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the reciprocal sequence} &: \frac{1}{b_1}, \frac{1}{b_2}, \frac{1}{b_3}, \cdots, \frac{1}{b_n}, \cdots, \\ \text{the quotient sequence} &: \frac{a_1}{b_1}, \frac{a_2}{b_2}, \frac{a_3}{b_3}, \cdots, \frac{a_n}{b_n}, \cdots. \end{aligned}$$

The *range* of a sequence is the set of values taken on by the sequence. While there can be repetition in a sequence, there can be no repetition in the statement of its range. The range is a set, and in a set there is no repetition. A number is either in a particular set or it's not. It can't be there more than once. The sequences

$$0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, \cdots \qquad \text{and} \qquad 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, \cdots$$

both have the same range: the set $\{0, 1\}$. The range of the sequence

$$0, 1, -1, 2, 2, -2, 3, 3, 3, -3, 4, 4, 4, 4, -4, \cdots$$

is the set of integers.

Boundedness and unboundedness for sequences are what they are for other real-valued functions. Thus the sequence $a_n = 2^n$ is bounded below (with greatest lower bound 2) but unbounded above. The sequence $b_n = 2^{-n}$ is bounded. It is bounded below with greatest lower bound 0, and it is bounded above with least upper bound $\frac{1}{2}$.

Many of the sequences we work with have some regularity. They either have an upward tendency or they have a downward tendency. The following terminology is standard. The sequence with terms a_n is said to be

$$\begin{array}{llll} \textit{increasing} & \text{if} & a_n < a_{n+1} & \text{for all } n, \\ \textit{nondecreasing} & \text{if} & a_n \le a_{n+1} & \text{for all } n, \\ \textit{decreasing} & \text{if} & a_n > a_{n+1} & \text{for all } n, \\ \textit{nonincreasing} & \text{if} & a_n \ge a_{n+1} & \text{for all } n. \end{array}$$

A sequence that satisfies any of these conditions is called *monotonic*.

The sequences

$$1, \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{1}{3}, \tfrac{1}{4}, \cdots, \tfrac{1}{n}, \cdots$$
$$2, 4, 8, 16, \cdots, 2^n, \cdots$$
$$2, 2, 4, 4, 6, 6, \cdots, 2n, 2n, \cdots$$

are monotonic. The sequence

$$1, \tfrac{1}{2}, 1, \tfrac{1}{3}, 1, \tfrac{1}{4}, 1, \cdots$$

is not monotonic.

Now to some examples that are less trivial.

Example 1 The sequence $a_n = \dfrac{n}{n+1}$ is increasing. It is bounded below by $\frac{1}{2}$ (the greatest lower bound) and above by 1 (the least upper bound).

PROOF Since

$$\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} = \frac{(n+1)/(n+2)}{n/(n+1)} = \frac{n+1}{n+2} \cdot \frac{n+1}{n} = \frac{n^2+2n+1}{n^2+2n} > 1,$$

we have $a_n < a_{n+1}$. This confirms that the sequence is increasing. The sequence can be displayed as

$$\tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{2}{3}, \tfrac{3}{4}, \tfrac{4}{5}, \cdots, \tfrac{98}{99}, \tfrac{99}{100}, \cdots$$

It is clear that $\frac{1}{2}$ is the greatest lower bound and 1 is the least upper bound. (See the two representations in Figure 11.2.1.) ❑

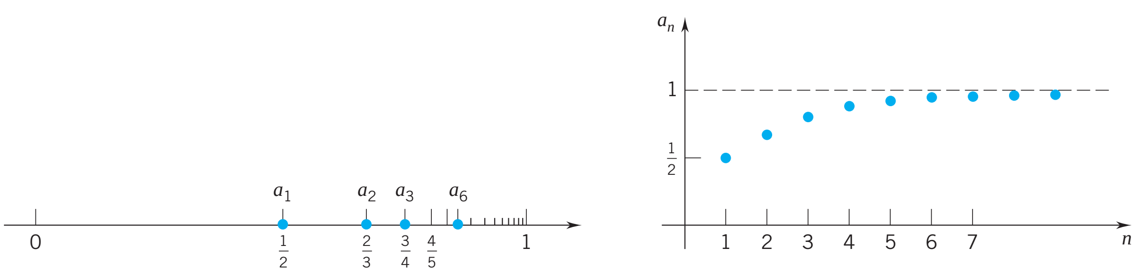


Figure 11.2.1

Example 2 The sequence $a_n = \dfrac{2^n}{n!}$ is nonincreasing and starts decreasing at $n = 2$.[†]

[†]Recall that $n! = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1$.

PROOF The first two terms are equal:

$$a_1 = \frac{2^1}{1!} = 2 = \frac{2^2}{2!} = a_2.$$

For $n \geq 2$ the sequence decreases:

$$\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} = \frac{2^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \cdot \frac{n!}{2^n} = \frac{2}{n+1} < 1. \qquad \text{(see Figure 11.2.2)} \quad \square$$

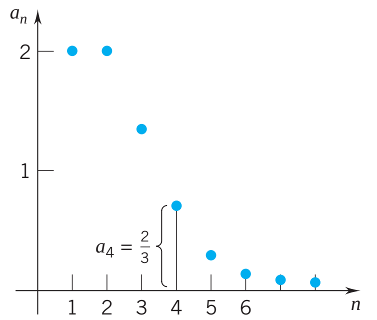


Figure 11.2.2

Example 3 For $c > 1$, the sequence $a_n = c^n$ increases without bound.

PROOF Choose a number $c > 1$. Then

$$\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} = \frac{c^{n+1}}{c^n} = c > 1.$$

This shows that the sequence increases. To show the unboundedness, we take an arbitrary positive number M and show that there exists a positive integer k for which

$$c^k \geq M.$$

A suitable k is one for which

$$k \geq \frac{\ln M}{\ln c},$$

for then

$$k \ln c \geq \ln M, \qquad \ln c^k \geq \ln M, \qquad c^k \geq M. \quad \square$$

Since sequences are defined on the set of positive integers and not on an interval, they are not directly susceptible to the methods of calculus. Fortunately, we can sometimes circumvent this difficulty by dealing initially, not with the sequence itself, but with a differentiable function of a real variable x that agrees with the given sequence at the positive integers n.

Example 4 The sequence $a_n = \dfrac{n}{e^n}$ is decreasing. It is bounded above by $1/e$ and below by 0.

PROOF We will work with the function

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{e^x}.$$

Note that $f(1) = 1/e = a_1$, $f(2) = 2/e^2 = a_2$, $f(3) = 3/e^3 = a_3$, and so on.

Differentiating f, we get

$$f'(x) = \frac{e^x - xe^x}{e^{2x}} = \frac{1-x}{e^x}.$$

Since $f'(x) < 0$ for $x > 1$, f decreases on $[1, \infty)$. Thus $f(1) > f(2) > f(3) > \cdots$. Thus $a_1 > a_2 > a_3 > \cdots$. The sequence is decreasing.

The first term $a_1 = 1/e$ is the least upper bound of the sequence. Since all the terms of the sequence are positive, 0 is a lower bound for the sequence.

In Figure 11.2.3 we have sketched the graph of $f(x) = x/e^x$ and marked some of the points (n, a_n). As the figure suggests, the a_n decrease toward 0. The number 0 is the greatest lower bound of the sequence.† $\square$

†Proof of this is readily obtained by a method outlined in Section 11.6.

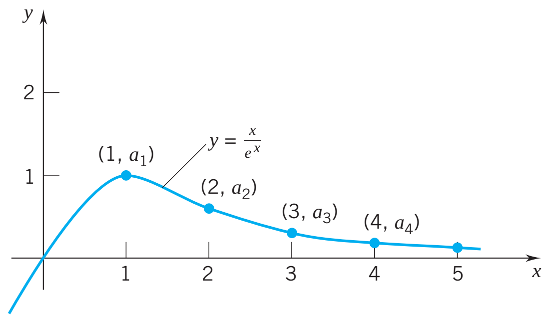


Figure 11.2.3

Example 5 The sequence $a_n = n^{1/n}$ decreases for $n \geq 3$.

PROOF We could compare a_n with a_{n+1} directly, but it is easier to consider the function

$$f(x) = x^{1/x}$$

instead. Since $f(x) = e^{(1/x)\ln x}$, we have

$$f'(x) = e^{(1/x)\ln x}\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x}\ln x\right) = x^{1/x}\left(\frac{1-\ln x}{x^2}\right).$$

For $x > e$, $f'(x) < 0$. This shows that f decreases on $[e, \infty)$. Since $3 > e$, the function f decreases on $[3, \infty)$, and the sequence decreases for $n \geq 3$. ❑

EXERCISES 11.2

Exercises 1–8. The first several terms of a sequence $a_1, a_2 \cdots$ are given. Assume that the pattern continues as indicated and find an explicit formula for the a_n.

1. $2, 5, 8, 11, 14, \cdots$.

2. $2, 0, 2, 0, 2, \cdots$.

3. $1, -\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{5}, -\frac{1}{7}, \frac{1}{9}, \cdots$

4. $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{7}{8}, \frac{15}{16}, \frac{31}{32}, \cdots$.

5. $2, \frac{5}{2}, \frac{10}{3}, \frac{17}{4}, \frac{26}{5}, \cdots$.

6. $-\frac{1}{4}, \frac{2}{9}, -\frac{3}{16}, \frac{4}{25}, -\frac{5}{36}, \cdots$.

7. $1, \frac{1}{2}, 3, \frac{1}{4}, 5, \frac{1}{6}, \cdots$.

8. $1, 2, \frac{1}{9}, 4, \frac{1}{25}, 6, \frac{1}{49}, \cdots$.

Exercises 9–40. Determine the boundedness and monotonicity of the sequence with a_n, as indicated.

9. $\dfrac{2}{n}$.

10. $\dfrac{(-1)^n}{n}$.

11. $\dfrac{n+(-1)^n}{n}$.

12. $(1.001)^n$.

13. $(0.9)^n$.

14. $\dfrac{n-1}{n}$.

15. $\dfrac{n^2}{n+1}$.

16. $\sqrt{n^2+1}$.

17. $\dfrac{4n}{\sqrt{4n^2+1}}$.

18. $\dfrac{2^n}{4^n+1}$.

19. $\dfrac{4^n}{2^n+100}$.

20. $\dfrac{n^2}{\sqrt{n^3+1}}$.

21. $\ln\left(\dfrac{2n}{n+1}\right)$.

22. $\dfrac{n+2}{3^{10}\sqrt{n}}$.

23. $\dfrac{(n+1)^2}{n^2}$.

24. $(-1)^n\sqrt{n}$.

25. $\sqrt{4-\dfrac{1}{n}}$.

26. $\ln\left(\dfrac{n+1}{n}\right)$.

27. $(-1)^{2n+1}\sqrt{n}$.

28. $\dfrac{\sqrt{n+1}}{\sqrt{n}}$.

29. $\dfrac{2^n-1}{2^n}$.

30. $\dfrac{1}{2n} - \dfrac{1}{2n+3}$.

31. $\sin\dfrac{\pi}{n+1}$.

32. $(-\frac{1}{2})^n$.

33. $(1.2)^{-n}$.

34. $\dfrac{n+3}{\ln(n+3)}$.

35. $\dfrac{1}{n} - \dfrac{1}{n+1}$.

36. $\cos n\pi$.

37. $\dfrac{\ln(n+2)}{n+2}$.

38. $\dfrac{(-2)^n}{n^{10}}$.

39. $\dfrac{3^n}{(n+1)^2}$.

40. $\dfrac{1-(\frac{1}{2})^n}{(\frac{1}{2})^n}$.

41. Show that the sequence $a_n = 5^n/n!$ decreases for $n \geq 5$. Is the sequence nonincreasing?

42. Let M be a positive integer. Show that $a_n = M^n/n!$ decreases for $n \geq M$.

43. Show that, if $0 < c < d$, then the sequence

$$a_n = (c^n + d^n)^{1/n}$$

is bounded and monotonic.

44. Show that linear combinations and products of bounded sequences are bounded.

Sequences can be defined *recursively*: one or more terms are given explicitly; the remaining ones are then defined in terms of their predecessors.

Exercises 45–56. Give the first six terms of the sequence and then give the nth term.

45. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = \dfrac{1}{n+1} a_n.$

46. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = a_n + 3n(n+1) + 1.$

47. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}(a_n + 1).$

48. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2} a_n + 1.$

49. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = a_n + 2.$

50. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = \dfrac{n}{n+1} a_n.$

51. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = a_n + 2n + 1.$

52. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1.$

53. $a_1 = 1; \quad a_{n+1} = a_n + \cdots + a_1.$

54. $a_1 = 3; \quad a_{n+1} = 4 - a_n.$

55. $a_1 = 1, \quad a_2 = 3; \quad a_{n+1} = 2a_n - a_{n-1}, \quad n \geq 2.$

56. $a_1 = 1, \quad a_2 = 3; \quad a_{n+1} = 3a_n - 2n - 1, \quad n \geq 2.$

Exercises 57–60. Use mathematical induction to prove the following assertions.

57. If $a_1 = 1$ and $a_{n+1} = 2a_n + 1$, then $a_n = 2^n - 1$.

58. If $a_1 = 3$ and $a_{n+1} = a_n + 5$, then $a_n = 5n - 2$.

59. If $a_1 = 1$ and $a_{n+1} = \dfrac{n+1}{2n} a_n$, then $a_n = \dfrac{n}{2^n - 1}$.

60. If $a_1 = 1$ and $a_{n+1} = a_n - \dfrac{1}{n(n+1)}$, then $a_n = \dfrac{1}{n}$.

61. Let r be a real number, $r \neq 0$. Define

$$\begin{aligned}
S_1 &= 1 \\
S_2 &= 1 + r \\
S_3 &= 1 + r + r^2 \\
&\;\vdots \\
S_n &= 1 + r + r^2 + \cdots + r^{n-1} \\
&\;\vdots
\end{aligned}$$

(a) Suppose that $r = 1$. What is S_n for $n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots$?

(b) Suppose that $r \neq 1$. Find a formula for S_n that does not involve adding up the powers of r. HINT: Calculate $S_n - rS_n$.

62. Set $a_n = \dfrac{1}{n(n+1)}$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots$, and form the sequence

$$\begin{aligned}
S_1 &= a_1 \\
S_2 &= a_1 + a_2 \\
S_3 &= a_1 + a_2 + a_3 \\
&\;\vdots \\
S_n &= a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \cdots + a_n \\
&\;\vdots
\end{aligned}$$

Find a formula for S_n that does not involve adding up the terms $a_1, a_2, a_3, \cdots$. HINT: Use partial fractions to write $1/[k(k+1)]$ as the sum of two fractions.

63. A ball is dropped from a height of 100 feet. Each time it hits the ground, it rebounds to 75% of its previous height.

(a) Let S_n be the distance that the ball travels between the nth and the $(n+1)$st bounce. Find a formula for S_n.

(b) Let T_n be the time that the ball is in the air between the nth and the $(n+1)$st bounce. Find a formula for T_n.

64. Suppose that a bacterial culture is growing exponentially (Section 7.6) and that the culture doubles every 12 hours. Obtain a formula for the number P_n of square millimeters of culture expected in n hours given that the culture measured 5 square millimeters when first observed.

C **65.** Define a sequence by setting $a_n = \sqrt{n^2 + n} - n$, $n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots$. Use a graphing utility or CAS to plot the first 15 terms of the sequence. Determine whether the sequence is monotonic. If so, in what sense?

C **66.** Exercise 65 for the sequence defined recursively by setting

$$a_1 = 100, \qquad a_{n+1} = \sqrt{2 + a_n}, \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots.$$

C **67.** Define a sequence recursively by setting

$$a_1 = 1; \qquad a_{n+1} = 1 + \sqrt{a_n}, \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots.$$

(a) Show by induction that this is an increasing sequence.

(b) Show by induction that the sequence is bounded above.

(c) Use a graphing utility or CAS to calculate $a_2, a_3, a_4, \cdots, a_{15}$.

(d) Use a graphing utility or CAS to plot the first 15 terms of the sequence.

(e) Estimate the least upper bound of the sequence.

C **68.** Define a sequence recursively by setting

$$a_1 = 1; \qquad a_{n+1} = \sqrt{3a_n}, \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots.$$

(a) Show by induction that this is an increasing sequence.

(b) Show by induction that the sequence is bounded above.

(c) Use a graphing utility or CAS to calculate $a_2, a_3, a_4, \cdots, a_{15}$.

(d) Use a graphing utility or CAS to plot the first 15 terms of the sequence.

(e) Estimate the least upper bound of the sequence.

11.3 LIMIT OF A SEQUENCE

You have seen the limit process applied in various settings. The limit process applied to sequences is particularly simple and exactly what you might expect.

DEFINITION 11.3.1 LIMIT OF A SEQUENCE

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L$$

if for each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a positive integer K such that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq K, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |a_n - L| < \epsilon.$$

Example 1 Since

$$\frac{4n-1}{n} = 4 - \frac{1}{n},$$

it is intuitively clear that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{4n-1}{n} = 4.$$

To verify that this statement conforms to the definition of limit of a sequence, we must show that for each $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a positive integer K such that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq K, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left|\frac{4n-1}{n} - 4\right| < \epsilon.$$

To do this, we fix $\epsilon > 0$ and note that

$$\left|\frac{4n-1}{n} - 4\right| = \left|\left(4 - \frac{1}{n}\right) - 4\right| = \frac{1}{n}.$$

We now choose K sufficiently large that $1/K < \epsilon$. If $n \geq K$, then $1/n \leq 1/K < \epsilon$ and consequently

$$\left|\frac{4n-1}{n} - 4\right| = \frac{1}{n} < \epsilon. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Since

$$\frac{2\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n}+1} = \frac{2}{1 + 1/\sqrt{n}},$$

it is intuitively clear that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{2\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n}+1} = 2.$$

To verify that this statement conforms to the definition of limit of a sequence, we must show that for each $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a positive integer K such that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq K, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left|\frac{2\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n}+1} - 2\right| < \epsilon.$$

To do this, we fix $\epsilon > 0$ and note that

$$\left|\frac{2\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n}+1} - 2\right| = \left|\frac{2\sqrt{n} - 2(\sqrt{n}+1)}{\sqrt{n}+1}\right| = \left|\frac{-2}{\sqrt{n}+1}\right| = \frac{2}{\sqrt{n}+1} < \frac{2}{\sqrt{n}}.$$

We now choose K sufficiently large that $2/\sqrt{K} < \epsilon$. If $n \geq K$, then $2/\sqrt{n} \leq 2/\sqrt{K} < \epsilon$ and consequently

$$\left|\frac{2\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n}+1} - 2\right| < \frac{2}{\sqrt{n}} < \epsilon. \quad ❑$$

In Section 11.1 we gave meaning to decimal expansion

$$b = 0.b_1 b_2 b_3 \cdots$$

through the least upper bound axiom. We stated that

$$b = \text{lub}\{0.b_1, 0.b_1b_2, 0.b_1b_2b_3, \cdots\}.$$

We can view b as the limit of a sequence: set $a_n = 0.b_1 b_2 \cdots b_n$ and we have

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = b.$$

Example 3 You are familiar with the assertion

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333\cdots.$$

Here we justify this assertion by showing that the sequence with terms $a_n = 0.\overbrace{333\cdots 3}^{n}$ satisfies the limit condition

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = \frac{1}{3}.$$

To this end, we fix $\epsilon > 0$ and observe that

$$\left|a_n - \frac{1}{3}\right| = \left|0.\overbrace{333\cdots 3}^{n} - \frac{1}{3}\right| = \left|\frac{0.\overbrace{999\cdots 9}^{n} - 1}{3}\right| = \frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{10^n} < \frac{1}{10^n}.$$

We now choose K sufficiently large that $1/10^K < \epsilon$. If $n \geq K$, then $1/10^n \leq 1/10^K < \epsilon$ and therefore

$$\left|a_n - \frac{1}{3}\right| < \frac{1}{10^n} < \epsilon. \quad ❑$$

Limit Theorems

The limit process for sequences is so similar to the limit processes you have already studied that you may find you can prove many of the limit theorems yourself. In any case, try to come up with your own proofs and refer to these only if necessary.

THEOREM 11.3.2 UNIQUENESS OF LIMIT

If $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L$ and $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = M$, then $L = M$.

A proof along the lines of our proof of Theorem 2.3.1 is given in the supplement at the end of this section. Try to construct your own proof.

DEFINITION 11.3.3

A sequence that has a limit is said to be *convergent*. A sequence that has no limit is said to be *divergent*.

Instead of writing

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L,$$

we will often write

$$a_n \to L \qquad \text{(read "}a_n\text{ converges to }L\text{")}$$

or more fully,

$$a_n \to L \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.$$

THEOREM 11.3.4

Every convergent sequence is bounded.

PROOF Assume that $a_n \to L$ and choose any positive number: 1, for instance. Using 1 as ϵ, you can see that there must be a positive integer K such that

$$|a_n - L| < 1 \quad \text{for all} \quad n \geq K.$$

Since $|a_n| - |L| \leq \big||a_n| - |L|\big| \leq |a_n - L|$, we have

$$|a_n| < 1 + |L| \quad \text{for all} \quad n \geq K.$$

It follows that

$$|a_n| \leq \max\{|a_1|, |a_2|, \ldots, |a_{K-1}|, 1 + |L|\} \quad \text{for all } n.$$

This proves that the sequence is bounded. ❑

Since every convergent sequence is bounded, a sequence that is not bounded cannot be convergent; namely:

(11.3.5) $\boxed{\text{Every unbounded sequence is divergent.}}$

The sequences

$$a_n = \tfrac{1}{2}n, \qquad b_n = \frac{n^2}{n+1}, \qquad c_n = n \ln n$$

are all unbounded. Each of these sequences is therefore divergent.

Boundedness does not imply convergence. As a counterexample, consider the "oscillating" sequence

$$\{1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, \cdots\}.$$

This sequence is certainly bounded (above by 1 and below by 0), but it does not converge: the limit would have to be arbitrarily close both to 0 and to 1.

Boundedness together with monotonicity does imply convergence.

THEOREM 11.3.6

A nondecreasing sequence which is bounded above converges to the least upper bound of its range.

A nonincreasing sequence which is bounded below converges to the greatest lower bound of its range.

PROOF Suppose the sequence with terms a_n is bounded above and nondecreasing. If L is the least upper bound of this sequence, then

$$a_n \leq L \qquad \text{for all } n.$$

Now let ϵ be an arbitrary positive number. By Theorem 11.1.2 there exists a_K such that

$$L - \epsilon < a_K.$$

Since the sequence is nondecreasing,

$$a_K \leq a_n \qquad \text{for all} \qquad n \geq K.$$

It follows that

$$L - \epsilon < a_n \leq L \qquad \text{for all} \qquad n \geq K.$$

This shows that

$$|a_n - L| < \epsilon \qquad \text{for all} \qquad n \geq K$$

and proves that

$$a_n \to L.$$

The nonincreasing case can be handled in a similar manner. ❑

Since $b = 0.b_1b_2b_3\cdots$ is the least upper bound of the sequence with terms $a_n = 0.b_1b_2\cdots b_n$, and this sequence is bounded and nondecreasing, the theorem confirms that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = b.$$

Example 4 We shall show that the sequence $a_n = (3^n + 4^n)^{1/n}$ is convergent. Since

$$3 = (3^n)^{1/n} < (3^n + 4^n)^{1/n} < (4^n + 4^n)^{1/n} = (2 \cdot 4^n)^{1/n} = 2^{1/n} \cdot 4 \leq 8,$$

the sequence is bounded. Note that

$$\begin{aligned}(3^n + 4^n)^{(n+1)/n} &= (3^n + 4^n)^{1/n}(3^n + 4^n)\\ &= (3^n + 4^n)^{1/n}3^n + (3^n + 4^n)^{1/n}4^n.\end{aligned}$$

Since

$$(3^n + 4^n)^{1/n} > (3^n)^{1/n} = 3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad (3^n + 4^n)^{1/n} > (4^n)^{1/n} = 4,$$

we have

$$(3^n + 4^n)^{(n+1)/n} > 3 \cdot (3^n) + 4 \cdot (4^n) = 3^{n+1} + 4^{n+1}.$$

Taking the $(n+1)$st root of the left and right sides of this inequality, we obtain

$$(3^n + 4^n)^{1/n} > (3^{n+1} + 4^{n+1})^{1/(n+1)}.$$

The sequence is decreasing. Being also bounded, it must be convergent. (For the limit, see Exercise 43.) ❑

The theorem which follows will help us work with limits of sequences without having to resort so frequently to the ϵ, K details set forth in Definition 11.3.1.

THEOREM 11.3.7

Let α be a real number. If $a_n \to L$ and $b_n \to M$, then

(i) $a_n + b_n \to L + M$, (ii) $\alpha a_n \to \alpha L$, (iii) $a_n b_n \to LM$.

If, in addition, $M \neq 0$ and each $b_n \neq 0$, then

$$\text{(iv)}\ \frac{1}{b_n} \to \frac{1}{M} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{(v)}\ \frac{a_n}{b_n} \to \frac{L}{M}.$$

Proofs of parts (i) and (ii) are left as exercises. For proofs of parts (iii)–(v) see the supplement at the end of this section.

We are now in a position to handle any rational sequence

$$a_n = \frac{\alpha_k n^k + \alpha_{k-1} n^{k-1} + \cdots + \alpha_0}{\beta_j n^j + \beta_{j-1} n^{j-1} + \cdots + \beta_0}.$$

To determine the behavior of such a sequence, we need only divide both numerator and denominator by the highest power of n that occurs.

Example 5

$$\frac{3n^4 - 2n^2 + 1}{n^5 - 3n^3} = \frac{3/n - 2/n^3 + 1/n^5}{1 - 3/n^2} \to \frac{0}{1} = 0. \quad ❑$$

divide by n^5

Example 6

$$\frac{1 - 4n^7}{n^7 + 12n} = \frac{1/n^7 - 4}{1 + 12/n^6} \to \frac{-4}{1} = -4. \quad ❑$$

divide by n^7

Example 7

$$\frac{n^4 - 3n^2 + n + 2}{n^3 + 7n} = \frac{1 - 3/n^2 + 1/n^3 + 2/n^4}{1/n + 7/n^3}.$$

divide by n^4

Since the numerator tends to 1 and the denominator tends to 0, the sequence is unbounded. Therefore, it cannot converge. ❑

THEOREM 11.3.8

$$a_n \to L \qquad \text{iff} \qquad a_n - L \to 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad |a_n - L| \to 0.$$

We leave the proof to you.

THEOREM 11.3.9 THE PINCHING THEOREM FOR SEQUENCES

Suppose that for all n sufficiently large

$$a_n \leq b_n \leq c_n.$$

If $a_n \to L$ and $c_n \to L$, then $b_n \to L$.

Once again the proof is left to you.

The following is an obvious corollary to the pinching theorem.

(11.3.10) Suppose that for all n sufficiently large

$$|b_n| \leq c_n.$$

If $c_n \to 0$, then $b_n \to 0$.

Example 8

$$\frac{\cos n}{n} \to 0 \qquad \text{since} \qquad \left|\frac{\cos n}{n}\right| \leq \frac{1}{n} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{1}{n} \to 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 9

$$\sqrt{4 + (1/n)^2} \to 2$$

since

$$2 \leq \sqrt{4 + (1/n)^2} \leq \sqrt{4 + 4(1/n) + (1/n)^2} = 2 + 1/n \quad \text{and} \quad 2 + 1/n \to 2. \quad ❑$$

Example 10 (*A limit to remember*)

(11.3.11)

$$\boxed{\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = e.}$$

PROOF In Project 7.4 you were asked to show that

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n \leq e \leq \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^{n+1} \qquad \text{for all positive integers } n.$$

Dividing the right inequality by $1 + 1/n$, we have

$$\frac{e}{1+1/n} \le \left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^n.$$

Combining this with the left inequality, we can write

$$\frac{e}{1+1/n} \le \left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^n \le e.$$

Since

$$\frac{e}{1+1/n} \to \frac{e}{1} = e,$$

the pinching theorem guarantees that

$$\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^n \to e. \quad ❑$$

Continuous Functions Applied to Convergent Sequences

The continuous image of a convergent sequence is a convergent sequence. More precisely, we have the following theorem:

THEOREM 11.3.12

Suppose that

$$c_n \to c.$$

If a function f, defined at all the c_n, is continuous at c, then

$$f(c_n) \to f(c).$$

PROOF We assume that f is continuous at c and take $\epsilon > 0$. From the continuity of f at c we know that there exists a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x-c| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - f(c)| < \epsilon.$$

Since $c_n \to c$, we know that there exists a positive integer K such that

$$\text{if} \quad n \ge K, \qquad \text{then} \quad |c_n - c| < \delta.$$

It follows that

$$\text{if} \quad n \ge K, \qquad \text{then} \quad |f(c_n) - f(c)| < \epsilon. \quad ❑$$

Example 11 It is clear that

$$\frac{\pi}{n} \to 0.$$

Since the functions

$$f(x) = \sin x, \qquad f(x) = e^x, \qquad f(x) = \arctan x$$

are defined at all the π/n and are continuous at 0, we can conclude that

$$\sin \pi/n \to \sin 0 = 0, \qquad e^{\pi/n} \to e^0 = 1, \qquad \arctan \pi/n \to \arctan 0 = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 12

$$\frac{2n-1}{n} = 2 - \frac{1}{n} \to 2.$$

Since the functions

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \qquad f(x) = \ln x, \qquad f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$$

are defined at all the terms of the sequence and are continuous at 2, we know that

$$\sqrt{\frac{2n-1}{n}} \to \sqrt{2}, \qquad \ln\left(\frac{2n-1}{n}\right) \to \ln 2, \qquad \frac{n}{2n-1} \to \frac{1}{2}. \quad \square$$

Example 13

$$\frac{\pi^2 n^2 - 8}{16n^2} = \frac{\pi^2 - 8/n^2}{16} \to \frac{\pi^2}{16}.$$

Since $f(x) = \tan\sqrt{x}$ is defined at all the terms of the sequence and is continuous at $\pi^2/16$,

$$\tan\sqrt{\frac{\pi^2 n^2 - 8}{16n^2}} \to \tan\sqrt{\frac{\pi^2}{16}} = \tan\frac{\pi}{4} = 1. \quad \square$$

Example 14 Since the absolute-value function is everywhere defined and everywhere continuous,

$$a_n \to L \qquad \text{implies} \qquad |a_n| \to |L|. \quad \square$$

Stability of Limit

Start with a sequence

$$a_1, a_2, \cdots, a_n, \cdots.$$

Now change a finite number of terms of this sequence, say the first million terms.

We now have a sequence

$$b_1, b_2, \cdots, b_n, \cdots.$$

We know nothing about the b_n from $n = 1$ to $n = 1,000,000$. But we know that

$$b_n = a_n \qquad \text{for} \qquad n > 1,000,000.$$

This is enough to guarantee that

$$\text{if} \qquad \lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \lim_{n\to\infty} b_n = L.$$

PROOF If the positive integer K is such that

$$|a_n - L| < \epsilon \qquad \text{for all} \qquad n \geq K,$$

then the positive integer $K_1 = \max\{K, 1,000,000\}$ is such that

$$|b_n - L| < \epsilon \qquad \text{for all } n \geq K_1. \quad \square$$

Similar reasoning shows that

$$\text{if} \qquad \lim_{n\to\infty} b_n = L, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L.$$

The following should now be clear:

> We cannot deflect a convergent sequence from its limit by changing a finite number of terms; nor can we force a divergent sequence to converge by changing a finite number of terms. (For if we could, the convergence of the second sequence would force the convergence of the first sequence.)

Remark For some time now we have asked you to take on faith two fundamentals of integration: that continuous functions do have definite integrals and that these integrals can be expressed as limits of Riemann sums. We could not give you proofs of these assertions because we did not have the necessary tools. Now we do. Proofs are given in Appendix B. ❑

EXERCISES 11.3

Exercises 1–40. State whether the sequence converges and, if it does, find the limit.

1. 2^n.

2. $\dfrac{2}{n}$.

3. $\dfrac{(-1)^n}{n}$.

4. $\sqrt{n}$.

5. $\dfrac{n-1}{n}$.

6. $\dfrac{n+(-1)^n}{n}$.

7. $\dfrac{n+1}{n^2}$.

8. $\sin\dfrac{\pi}{2n}$.

9. $\dfrac{2^n}{4^n+1}$.

10. $\dfrac{n^2}{n+1}$.

11. $(-1)^n\sqrt{n}$.

12. $\dfrac{4^n}{\sqrt{n^2+1}}$.

13. $(-\frac{1}{2})^n$.

14. $\dfrac{4n}{2^n+10^6}$.

15. $\tan\dfrac{n\pi}{4n+1}$.

16. $\dfrac{10^{10}\sqrt{n}}{n+1}$.

17. $\dfrac{(2n+1)^2}{(3n-1)^2}$.

18. $\ln\left(\dfrac{2n}{n+1}\right)$.

19. $\dfrac{n^2}{\sqrt{2n^4+1}}$.

20. $\dfrac{n^4-1}{n^4+n-6}$.

21. $\cos n\pi$.

22. $\dfrac{n^5}{17n^4+12}$.

23. $e^{1/\sqrt{n}}$.

24. $\sqrt{4-1/n}$.

25. $\ln n - \ln(n+1)$.

26. $\dfrac{2^n-1}{2^n}$.

27. $\dfrac{\sqrt{n+1}}{2\sqrt{n}}$.

28. $\dfrac{1}{n}-\dfrac{1}{n+1}$.

29. $\left(1+\dfrac{1}{n}\right)^{2n}$.

30. $\left(1+\dfrac{1}{n}\right)^{n/2}$.

31. $\dfrac{2^n}{n^2}$.

32. $2\ln 3n - \ln(n^2+1)$.

33. $\dfrac{\sin n}{\sqrt{n}}$.

34. $\arctan\left(\dfrac{n}{n+1}\right)$.

35. $\sqrt{n^2+n}-n$.

36. $\dfrac{\sqrt{4n^2+n}}{n}$.

37. $\arctan n$.

38. $3.\overbrace{444\cdots4}^{n}$.

39. $\arcsin\left(\dfrac{1-n}{n}\right)$.

40. $\dfrac{(n+1)(n+4)}{(n+2)(n+3)}$.

Exercises 41–42. Use a graphing utility or CAS to plot the first 15 terms of the sequence. Determine whether the sequence converges, and if it does, give the limit.

41. (a) $\sqrt[n]{n}$. (b) $\dfrac{3^n}{n!}$.

42. (a) $\dfrac{n}{\sqrt[n]{n!}}$. (b) $n^2\sin(\pi/n)$.

43. Show that if $0<a<b$, then $(a^n+b^n)^{1/n}\to b$.

44. (a) Determine the values of r for which r^n converges.
(b) Determine the values of r for which nr^n converges.

45. Prove that

$$\text{if}\quad a_n\to L\quad\text{and}\quad b_n\to M,\quad\text{then}\quad a_n+b_n\to L+M.$$

46. Let α be a real number. Prove that

$$\text{if}\quad a_n\to L,\quad\text{then}\quad \alpha a_n\to\alpha L.$$

47. Given that

$$\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^n\to e\qquad\text{show that}\qquad\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{n+1}\to e.$$

48. Determine the convergence or divergence of a rational sequence

$$a_n=\frac{\alpha_k n^k+\alpha_{k-1}n^{k-1}+\cdots+\alpha_0}{\beta_j n^j+\beta_{j-1}n^{j-1}+\cdots+\beta_0}$$

given that: (a) $k=j$; (b) $k<j$; (c) $k>j$. Justify your answers. Assume that $\alpha_k\neq 0$ and $\beta_j\neq 0$.

49. Prove that a bounded nonincreasing sequence converges to its greatest lower bound.

50. From a sequence with terms a_n, collect the even-numbered terms $e_n=a_{2n}$ and the odd-numbered terms $o_n=a_{2n-1}$. Show that

$$a_n\to L\qquad\text{iff}\qquad e_n\to L\quad\text{and}\quad o_n\to L.$$

51. Prove the pinching theorem for sequences.

52. Show that if $a_n \to 0$ and the sequence with terms b_n is bounded, then $a_n b_n \to 0$.

53. Suppose that $a_n \to L$. Show that if $a_n \le M$ for all n, then $L \le M$.

54. Earlier you saw that if $a_n \to L$, then $|a_n| \to |L|$. Is the converse true? Namely, if $|a_n| \to |L|$, does it follow that $a_n \to L$? Prove this, or give a counterexample.

55. Prove that $a_n \to 0$ iff $|a_n| \to 0$.

56. Suppose that $a_n \to L$ and $b_n \to L$. Show that the sequence

$$a_1, b_2, a_2, b_2, a_3, b_3, \cdots$$

converges to L.

57. Let f be a function continuous everywhere and let r be a real number. Define a sequence as follows:

$$a_1 = r, \quad a_2 = f(r), \quad a_3 = f[f(r)], \quad a_4 = f\{f[f(r)]\}, \cdots.$$

Prove that if $a_n \to L$, then L is a fixed point of f : $f(L) = L$.

58. Show that

$$\frac{2^n}{n!} \to 0$$

by showing that

$$\frac{2^n}{n!} \le \frac{4}{n}.$$

59. Prove that $(1/n)^{1/p} \to 0$ for all positive integers p.

60. Prove Theorem 11.3.8.

Exercises 61–66. Below are some sequences defined recursively.† Determine in each case whether the sequence converges and, if so, find the limit. Start each sequence with $a_1 = 1$.

61. $a_{n+1} = \dfrac{1}{e}a_n$.

62. $a_{n+1} = 2^{n+1}a_n$.

63. $a_{n+1} = \dfrac{1}{n+1}a_n$.

64. $a_{n+1} = \dfrac{n}{n+1}a_n$.

65. $a_{n+1} = 1 - a_n$.

66. $a_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}a_n + 1$.

†The notion was introduced in Exercises 11.2.

Exercises 67–74. Evaluate numerically the limit of each sequence as $n \to \infty$. Some of these sequences converge more rapidly than others. Determine for each sequence the least value of n for which the nth term differs from the limit by less than 0.001.

67. $\dfrac{1}{n^2}$.

68. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{n}}$.

69. $\dfrac{n}{10^n}$.

70. $\dfrac{n^{10}}{10^n}$.

71. $\dfrac{1}{n!}$.

72. $\dfrac{2^n}{n!}$.

73. $\dfrac{\ln n}{n^2}$.

74. $\dfrac{\ln n}{n}$.

75. (a) Find the limit of the sequence defined in Exercise 67, Section 11.2.
(b) Find the limit of the sequence defined in Exercise 68, Section 11.2.

76. Define a sequence recursively by setting

$$a_1 = 1, \quad a_n = \sqrt{6 + a_{n-1}}, \quad n = 2, 3, 4, \cdots.$$

(a) Estimate a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6, rounding off your answers to four decimal places.
(b) Show by induction that $a_n \le 3$ for all n.
(c) Show that the a_n constitute an increasing sequence. HINT: $a_{n+1}^2 - a_n^2 = (3 - a_n)(2 + a_n)$.
(d) What is the limit of this sequence?

77. Define a sequence recursively by setting

$$a_1 = 1, \quad a_n = \cos a_{n-1}, \quad n = 2, 3, 4, \cdots.$$

(a) Estimate $a_2, a_3, a_4, \cdots, a_{10}$, rounding off your answers to four decimal places.
(b) Assume that the sequence converges and estimate the limit to four decimal places.

78. Define a sequence recursively by setting

$$a_1 = 1, \quad a_n = a_{n-1} + \cos a_{n-1}, \quad n = 2, 3, 4, \cdots.$$

(a) Estimate $a_2, a_3, a_4, \cdots, a_{10}$, rounding off your answers to four decimal places.
(b) Assume that the sequence converges and estimate the limit to four decimal places.

■ PROJECT 11.3 Sequences and the Newton-Raphson Method

Let R be a positive number. The sequence defined recursively by setting

$$(1) \quad a_1 = 1, \quad a_n = \frac{1}{2}\left(a_{n-1} + \frac{R}{a_{n-1}}\right), \quad n = 2, 3, 4, \cdots.$$

can be used to approximate $\sqrt{R}$.

Problem 1. Let $R = 3$.

a. Calculate $a_2, a_3, \cdots, a_8$. Round off your answers to six decimal places.

b. Show that if $a_n \to L$, then $L = \sqrt{3}$.

The Newton-Raphson method (Section 4.12) applied to a differentiable function f generates a sequence which, under certain conditions, converges to a zero of f. The recurrence relation is of the form

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}, \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots.$$

Problem 2. Show that recurrence relation (1) is the recurrence relation generated by the Newton-Raphson method applied to the function $f(x) = x^2 - R$.

Problem 3. Each of the following recurrence relations is based on the Newton-Raphson method. Determine whether the sequence converges and, if so, give the limit.

a. $x_1 = 1, \quad x_{n+1} = x_n - \dfrac{x_n^3 - 8}{3x_n^2}.$

b. $x_1 = 0, \quad x_{n+1} = x_n - \dfrac{\sin x_n - 0.5}{\cos x_n}.$

c. $x_1 = 1, \quad x_{n+1} = x_n - \dfrac{\ln x_n - 1}{1/x_n}.$

Problem 4. For each sequence in Problem 3 find a function f that generates the sequence. Then check each of your answers by evaluating f.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 11.3

PROOF OF THEOREM 11.3.2

If $L \neq M$, then

$$\tfrac{1}{2}|L - M| > 0.$$

The assumption that $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = L$ and $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = M$ gives the existence of K_1 such that

$$\text{if} \quad n \geq K_1, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |a_n - L| < \tfrac{1}{2}|L - M|$$

and the existence of K_2 such that

$$\text{if} \quad n \geq K_2, \quad \text{then} \quad |a_n - M| < \tfrac{1}{2}|L - M|.^\dagger$$

For $n \geq \max\{K_1, K_2\}$, we have

$$|a_n - L| + |a_n - M| < |L - M|.$$

By the triangle inequality we have

$$|L - M| = |(L - a_n) + (a_n - M)| \leq |L - a_n| + |a_n - M| = |a_n - L| + |a_n - M|.$$

Combining the last two statements, we have

$$|L - M| < |L - M|.$$

The hypothesis $L \neq M$ has led to an absurdity. We conclude that $L = M$. ❑

PROOF OF THEOREM 11.3.7 (III)–(V)

To prove (iii), we set $\epsilon > 0$. For each n,

$$\begin{aligned} |a_n b_n - LM| &= |(a_n b_n - a_n M) + (a_n M - LM)| \\ &\leq |a_n||b_n - M| + |M||a_n - L|. \end{aligned}$$

Since convergent sequences are bounded, there exists $Q > 0$ such that

$$|a_n| \leq Q \qquad \text{for all } n.$$

Since $|M| < |M| + 1$, we have

$$(1) \qquad |a_n b_n - LM| \leq Q|b_n - M| + (|M| + 1)|a_n - L|.^{\dagger\dagger}$$

† We can reach these conclusions from Definition 11.3.1 by taking $\frac{1}{2}|L - M|$ as ϵ.

†† Soon we will want to divide by the coefficient of $|a_n - L|$. We have replaced $|M|$ by $|M| + 1$ because $|M|$ can be zero.

Since $b_n \to M$, we know that there exists K_1 such that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq K_1, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |b_n - M| < \frac{\epsilon}{2Q}.$$

Since $a_n \to L$, we know that there exists K_2 such that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq K_2, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |a_n - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{2(|M|+1)}.$$

For $n \geq \max\{K_1, K_2\}$, both conditions hold, and consequently

$$Q|b_n - M| + (|M|+1)|a_n - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \epsilon.$$

In view of (1), we can conclude that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq \max\{K_1, K_2\}, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |a_n b_n - LM| < \epsilon.$$

This proves that

$$a_n b_n \to LM. \quad \square$$

To prove (iv), once again we set $\epsilon > 0$. In the first place

$$\left|\frac{1}{b_n} - \frac{1}{M}\right| = \left|\frac{M - b_n}{b_n M}\right| = \frac{|b_n - M|}{|b_n||M|}.$$

Since $b_n \to M$ and $|M|/2 > 0$, there exists K_1 such that

$$\text{if} \quad n \geq K_1, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |b_n - M| < \frac{|M|}{2}.$$

This tells us that for $n \geq K_1$ we have

$$|b_n| > \frac{|M|}{2} \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \frac{1}{|b_n|} < \frac{2}{|M|}.$$

Thus for $n \geq K_1$ we have

(2)
$$\left|\frac{1}{b_n} - \frac{1}{M}\right| \leq \frac{2}{|M|^2}|b_n - M|.$$

Since $b_n \to M$, there exists K_2 such that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq K_2, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |b_n - M| < \frac{\epsilon|M|^2}{2}.$$

Thus for $n \geq K_2$ we have

$$\frac{2}{|M|^2}|b_n - M| < \epsilon.$$

In view of (2), we can be sure that

$$\text{if} \qquad n \geq \max\{K_1, K_2\}, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left|\frac{1}{b_n} - \frac{1}{M}\right| < \epsilon.$$

This proves that

$$\frac{1}{b_n} \to \frac{1}{M}. \quad \square$$

The proof of (v) is now easy:

$$\frac{a_n}{b_n} = a_n \cdot \frac{1}{b_n} \to L \cdot \frac{1}{M} = \frac{L}{M}. \quad \square$$

■ 11.4 SOME IMPORTANT LIMITS

Our purpose here is to direct your attention to some limits that are particularly important in calculus and to give you more experience with limit arguments. Before looking at the proofs given, try to construct you own proofs.

(11.4.1)

Each limit is taken as $n \to \infty$.

(1) $x^{1/n} \to 1$ for all $x > 0$.

(2) $x^n \to 0$ if $|x| < 1$.

(3) $\dfrac{1}{n^\alpha} \to 0$ for all $\alpha > 0$.

(4) $\dfrac{x^n}{n!} \to 0$ for all real x.

(5) $\dfrac{\ln n}{n} \to 0$.

(6) $n^{1/n} \to 1$.

(7) $\left(1 + \dfrac{x}{n}\right)^n \to e^x$ for all real x.

(1)

If $x > 0$, then

$x^{1/n} \to 1$ as $n \to \infty$.

PROOF Fix any $x > 0$. Since

$$\ln(x^{1/n}) = \frac{1}{n}\ln x,$$

we see that

$$\ln(x^{1/n}) \to 0.$$

We reduce $\ln(x^{1/n})$ to $x^{1/n}$ by applying the exponential function. Since the exponential function is defined at the terms $\ln(x^{1/n})$ and is continuous at 0, it follows from Theorem 11.3.12 that

$$x^{1/n} = e^{\ln(x^{1/n})} \to e^0 = 1. \quad \square$$

(2)

If $|x| < 1$, then

$x^n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$.

PROOF The result clearly holds for $x = 0$. Now fix any $x \neq 0$ with $|x| < 1$ and observe that the sequence $a_n = |x|^n$ is a decreasing sequence:

$$|x|^{n+1} = |x||x|^n < |x|^n.$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. By (11.4.1), $\epsilon^{1/n} \to 1$. Thus there exists an integer $K > 0$ for which

$$|x| < \epsilon^{1/K}. \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

This implies that $|x|^K < \epsilon$. Since the $|x|^n$ form a decreasing sequence, we have

$$|x^n| = |x|^n < \epsilon \qquad \text{for all} \qquad n \geq K. \quad \square$$

(3) For each $\alpha > 0$

$$\frac{1}{n^\alpha} \to 0 \qquad \text{as} \qquad n \to \infty.$$

PROOF Take $\alpha > 0$. There exists an odd positive integer p for which $1/p < \alpha$. Then

$$0 < \frac{1}{n^\alpha} = \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^\alpha \leq \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^{1/p}.$$

Since $1/n \to 0$ and the function $f(x) = x^{1/p}$ is defined at the terms $1/n$ and is continuous at 0, we have

$$\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^{1/p} \to 0, \qquad \text{and thus by the pinching theorem,} \qquad \frac{1}{n^\alpha} \to 0. \quad \square$$

(4) For each real x

$$\frac{x^n}{n!} \to 0 \qquad \text{as} \qquad n \to \infty.$$

PROOF Fix any real number x and choose an integer $k > |x|$. For $n > k + 1$,

$$\frac{k^n}{n!} = \left(\frac{k^k}{k!}\right)\underbrace{\left[\frac{k}{k+1}\frac{k}{k+2}\cdots\frac{k}{n-1}\right]}_{\text{The middle term is less than 1.}}\left(\frac{k}{n}\right) < \left(\frac{k^{k+1}}{k!}\right)\left(\frac{1}{n}\right).$$

Since $k > |x|$, we have

$$0 < \frac{|x|^n}{n!} < \frac{k^n}{n!} < \left(\frac{k^{k+1}}{k!}\right)\left(\frac{1}{n}\right).$$

Since k is fixed and $1/n \to 0$, it follows from the pinching theorem that

$$\frac{|x|^n}{n!} \to 0 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \frac{x^n}{n!} \to 0. \quad \square$$

(5)

$$\frac{\ln n}{n} \to 0 \qquad \text{as} \qquad n \to \infty.$$

PROOF A routine proof can be based on L'Hôpital's rule (Theorem 11.6.1), but that is not available to us yet. We will appeal to the pinching theorem and base our argument on the integral representation of the logarithm:

$$0 \leq \frac{\ln n}{n} = \frac{1}{n}\int_1^n \frac{1}{t}\,dt \leq \frac{1}{n}\int_1^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}\,dt = \frac{2}{n}(\sqrt{n} - 1) = 2\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} - \frac{1}{n}\right) \to 0. \quad \square$$

(6)

$$n^{1/n} \to 1 \qquad \text{as} \qquad n \to \infty.$$

PROOF We know that

$$\ln n^{1/n} = \frac{\ln n}{n} \to 0.$$

Applying the exponential function, we have

$$n^{1/n} \to e^0 = 1. \quad ❑$$

(7) For each real x

$$\left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^n \to e^x \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.$$

PROOF For $x = 0$, the result is obvious. For $x \neq 0$,

$$\ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^n = n \ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right) = x\left[\frac{\ln(1 + x/n) - \ln 1}{x/n}\right].$$

The crux here is to recognize that the bracketed expression is a difference quotient for the logarithm function. Once we see this, we let $h = x/n$ and write

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\left[\frac{\ln(1 + x/n) - \ln 1}{x/n}\right] = \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\frac{\ln(1 + h) - \ln 1}{h}\right] = 1.^{\dagger}$$

It follows that

$$\ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^n \to x.$$

Applying the exponential function, we have

$$\left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^n \to e^x. \quad ❑$$

---

†For each $t > 0$

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\left[\frac{\ln(t + h) - \ln t}{h}\right] = \frac{d}{dt}(\ln t) = \frac{1}{t}.$$

At $t = 1$, $1/t = 1$.

EXERCISES 11.4

Exercises 1–38. State whether the sequence converges as $n \to \infty$; if it does, find the limit.

1. $2^{2/n}$.

2. $e^{-\alpha/n}$.

3. $\left(\frac{2}{n}\right)^n$.

4. $\frac{\log_{10} n}{n}$.

5. $\frac{\ln(n + 1)}{n}$.

6. $\frac{3^n}{4^n}$.

7. $\frac{x^{100n}}{n!}$.

8. $n^{1/(n+2)}$.

9. $n^{\alpha/n}$, $\alpha > 0$.

10. $\ln\left(\frac{n + 1}{n}\right)$.

11. $\frac{3^{n+1}}{4^{n-1}}$.

12. $\int_{-n}^{0} e^{2x}\,dx$.

13. $(n + 2)^{1/n}$.

14. $\left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$.

15. $\int_0^n e^{-x}\,dx$.

16. $\frac{2^{3n-1}}{7^{n+2}}$.

17. $\int_{-n}^{n} \frac{dx}{1 + x^2}$.

18. $\int_0^n e^{-nx}\,dx$.

19. $(n + 2)^{1/(n+2)}$.

20. $n^2 \sin n\pi$.

21. $\frac{\ln n^2}{n}$.

22. $\int_{-1+1/n}^{1+1/n} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$.

23. $n^2 \sin \frac{\pi}{n}$.

24. $\frac{n!}{2n}$.

25. $\frac{5^{n+1}}{4^{2n-1}}$.

26. $\left(1 + \frac{x}{n}\right)^{3n}$.

27. $\left(\frac{n + 1}{n + 2}\right)^n$.

28. $\int_{1/n}^{1} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}}$.

29. $\int_n^{n+1} e^{-x^2}\,dx$.

30. $\left(1+\frac{1}{n^2}\right)^n$.

31. $\frac{n^n}{2n^2}$.

32. $\int_0^{1/n} \cos e^x\,dx$.

33. $\left(1+\frac{x}{2n}\right)^{2n}$.

34. $\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{n^2}$.

35. $\int_{-1/n}^{1/n} \sin x^2\,dx$.

36. $\left(|t|+\frac{x}{n}\right)^n$, $t>0,\ x>0$.

37. $\frac{\sin(6/n)}{\sin(3/n)}$.

38. $\frac{\arctan n}{n}$.

39. Show that $\lim_{n\to\infty}[(n+1)^{1/2}-n^{1/2}]=0$.

40. Show that $\lim_{n\to\infty}[(n^2+n)^{1/2}-n]=\frac{1}{2}$.

41. (a) Show that a regular polygon of n sides inscribed in a circle of radius r has perimeter $p_n = 2rn\sin(\pi/n)$.
(b) Find

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} p_n$$

and give a geometric interpretation to your result.

42. Show that

$$\text{if} \quad 0<c<d, \quad \text{then} \quad (c^n+d^n)^{1/n}\to d.$$

Exercises 43–45. Find the indicated limit.

43. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1+2+\cdots+n}{n^2}$.

HINT: $1+2+\cdots+n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$.

44. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1^2+2^2+\cdots+n^2}{(1+n)(2+n)}$.

HINT: $1^2+2^2+\cdots+n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$.

45. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1^3+2^3+\cdots+n^3}{2n^4+n-1}$.

HINT: $1^3+2^3+\cdots+n^3 = \frac{n^2(n+1)^2}{4}$.

46. A sequence $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ is called a *Cauchy sequence*† if

(11.4.2)

> for each $\epsilon>0$ there exists an index k such that
>
> $|a_n-a_m|<\epsilon \quad$ for all $m, n \geq k$.

Show that

(11.4.3)

> every convergent sequence is a Cauchy sequence.

†After the French baron Augustin Louis Cauchy (1789–1857), one of the most prolific mathematicians of all time.

It is also true that every Cauchy sequence is convergent, but that is more difficult to prove.

47. (*Arithmetic means*) For a sequence $a_1, a_2, \cdots$, set

$$m_n = \frac{1}{n}(a_1+a_2+\cdots+a_n).$$

(a) Prove that if the a_n form an increasing sequence, then the m_n form an increasing sequence.
(b) Prove that if $a_n\to 0$, then $m_n\to 0$.

48. (a) Let $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ be a convergent sequence. Prove that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}(a_n-a_{n-1})=0.$$

(b) What can you say about the converse? That is, suppose that $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ is a sequence for which

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}(a_n-a_{n-1})=0.$$

Does $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ necessarily converge? If so, prove it; if not, give a counterexample.

49. Starting with $0<a<b$, form the arithmetic mean $a_1=\frac{1}{2}(a+b)$ and the geometric mean $b_1=\sqrt{ab}$. For $n=2,3,4,\cdots$ set

$$a_n=\tfrac{1}{2}(a_{n-1}+b_{n-1}) \qquad \text{and} \qquad b_n=\sqrt{a_{n-1}b_{n-1}}.$$

(a) Show by induction on n that

$$a_{n-1}>a_n>b_n>b_{n-1} \qquad \text{for } n=2,3,4,\cdots.$$

(b) Show that the two sequences converge and $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n = \lim_{n\to\infty} b_n$. The common value of this limit is called the *arithmetic-geometric mean of a and b.*

50. You have seen that for all real x

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\left(1+\frac{x}{n}\right)^n = e^x.$$

However, the rate of convergence is different at different x. Verify that with $n=100$, $(1+1/n)^n$ is within 1% of its limit, while $(1+5/n)^n$ is still about 12% from its limit. Give comparable accuracy estimates at $x=1$ and at $x=5$ for $n=1000$.

51. Evaluate

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\sin\tfrac{1}{n}\right)^{1/n}$$

numerically and by graphing. Justify your answer by other means.

52. We have stated that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}[(n^2+n)^{1/2}-n]=\tfrac{1}{2}. \qquad \text{(Exercise 40)}$$

Evaluate

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}[(n^3+n^2)^{1/3}-n]$$

numerically. Then formulate a conjecture about

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}[(n^k+n^{k-1})^{1/k}-n] \qquad \text{for } k=1,2,3,\cdots$$

and prove that your conjecture is valid.

53. The sequence defined recursively by setting

$$a_{n+2} = a_{n+1} + a_n \qquad \text{starting with} \qquad a_1 = a_2 = 1$$

is called the *Fibonacci sequence*.

(a) Calculate $a_3, a_4, \cdots, a_{10}$.

(b) Define

$$r_n = \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}.$$

Calculate $r_1, r_2, \cdots, r_6$.

(c) Assume that $r_n \to L$, and find L. HINT: Relate r_n to r_{n-1}.

54. Set

$$a_n = \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{2}{n^2} + \frac{3}{n^2} + \cdots + \frac{n}{n^2}.$$

Show that a_n is a Riemann sum for $\int_0^1 x\,dx$. Does the sequence $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ converge? If so, to what?

■ 11.5 THE INDETERMINATE FORM (0/0)

For each x-limit process that we have considered,

$$\text{as } x \to c, \qquad \text{as } x \to c^+, \qquad \text{as } x \to c^-, \qquad \text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \text{as } x \to -\infty,$$

if $f(x) \to L$ and $g(x) \to M \neq 0$, then

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \to \frac{L}{M}.$$

The attempt to extend this algebra of limits to the case where $f(x) \to 0$ and $g(x) \to 0$ leads to the nonsensical result

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \to \frac{0}{0}.$$

Knowing only that $f(x) \to 0$ and $g(x) \to 0$, we can conclude nothing about the limit behavior of the quotient $f(x)/g(x)$. The quotient can tend to a finite limit:

$$\text{as} \qquad x \to 0, \qquad \frac{\sin x}{x} \to 1;$$

it can tend to $\pm\infty$:

$$\text{as} \qquad x \to 0, \qquad \frac{|\sin x|}{x^2} = \frac{1}{|x|}\left|\frac{\sin x}{x}\right| = \infty;$$

it can tend to no limit at all:

$$\text{as} \qquad x \to 0, \qquad \frac{|x|}{x} = \begin{cases} 1, & x > 0 \\ -1, & x < 0 \end{cases} \qquad \text{tends to no limit.}$$

For whatever limit process is being used, if $f(x) \to 0$ and $g(x) \to 0$, the quotient $f(x)/g(x)$ is called an *indeterminate of the form* $0/0$.

Such indeterminates can usually be handled by elementary methods. (We have done this right along.) Where elementary methods are difficult to apply, L'Hôpital's rule[†] (explained below) can be decisive. The rule applies equally well to all forms of x-approach:

$$\text{as } x \to c, \qquad \text{as } x \to c^+, \qquad \text{as } x \to c^-, \qquad \text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \text{as } x \to -\infty.$$

As used in the statement of the rule, the symbol γ (the Greek letter gamma) can represent a real number, it can represent ∞, it can represent $-\infty$. By allowing this flexibility to γ, we avoid tiresome repetitions.

[†] Attributed to the Frenchman G. F. A. L'Hôpital (1661–1704). The result was actually discovered by his teacher John Bernoulli (1667–1748).

L'HÔPITAL'S RULE (0/0)

Suppose that

(11.5.1)
$$f(x) \to 0 \quad \text{and} \quad g(x) \to 0$$

and in the approach $g(x)$ and $g'(x)$ are never 0.

$$\text{If} \quad \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \to \gamma, \quad \text{then} \quad \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \to \gamma.$$

We defer consideration of the proof of this rule to the end of the section. First we demonstrate the usefulness of the rule.

Example 1 Find $\lim_{x\to\pi/2} \dfrac{\cos x}{\pi - 2x}$.

SOLUTION As $x \to \pi/2$, both numerator and denominator tend to zero and it is not at all obvious what happens to the quotient

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\cos x}{\pi - 2x}.$$

Therefore we test the quotient of derivatives:

$$\text{as} \quad x \to \frac{\pi}{2}, \qquad \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} = \frac{-\sin x}{-2} = \frac{\sin x}{2} \to \frac{1}{2}.$$

It follows from L'Hôpital's rule that

$$\text{as} \quad x \to \frac{\pi}{2}, \qquad \frac{\cos x}{\pi - 2x} \to \frac{1}{2}.$$

We can express all this on just one line using $*$ to indicate the differentiation of numerator and denominator:

$$\lim_{x\to\pi/2} \frac{\cos x}{\pi - 2x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\pi/2} \frac{-\sin x}{-2} = \lim_{x\to\pi/2} \frac{\sin x}{2} = \frac{1}{2}. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \dfrac{x}{\sin\sqrt{x}}$.

SOLUTION As $x \to 0^+$, both numerator and denominator tend to 0 and

$$\frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} = \frac{1}{(\cos\sqrt{x})(1/2[\sqrt{x}])} = \frac{2\sqrt{x}}{\cos\sqrt{x}} \to \frac{0}{1} = 0.$$

It follows from L'Hôpital's rule that

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{x}{\sin\sqrt{x}} \to 0.$$

For short, we can write

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{x}{\sin\sqrt{x}} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{2\sqrt{x}}{\cos\sqrt{x}} = 0. \quad ❑$$

Remark There is a tendency to abuse this limit-finding technique. L'Hôpital's rule *does not apply* to cases where numerator or denominator has a finite nonzero limit. For

example,

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x}{x+\cos x} = \frac{0}{1} = 0.$$

A blind application of L'Hôpital's rule leads to

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x}{x+\cos x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1}{1-\sin x} = 1.$$

This is nonsense. ❑

Sometimes it is necessary to differentiate numerator and denominator more than once. For two differentiations we require that $g(x)$, $g'(x)$, $g''(x)$ never be zero in the approach. For three differentiations we require that $g(x)$, $g'(x)$, $g''(x)$, $g'''(x)$ never be zero in the approach. And so on.

Example 3 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x - x - 1}{x^2}$.

SOLUTION As $x \to 0$, both numerator and denominator tend to 0. Here

$$\frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} = \frac{e^x - 1}{2x}.$$

Since both numerator and denominator still tend to 0, we differentiate again:

$$\frac{f''(x)}{g''(x)} = \frac{e^x}{2}.$$

Since this last quotient tends to $\frac{1}{2}$, we can conclude that

$$\frac{e^x - 1}{2x} \to \frac{1}{2} \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \frac{e^x - x - 1}{x^2} \to \frac{1}{2}.$$

We abbreviate this argument by writing

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x - x - 1}{x^2} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{2x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x}{2} = \frac{1}{2}. \quad ❑$$

L'Hôpital's rule can be used to find the limit of a sequence.

Example 4 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{n\to \infty} \frac{e^{2/n} - 1}{1/n}$.

SOLUTION The quotient is an indeterminate of the form $0/0$. To apply the methods of this section, we replace the integer variable n by the real variable x and examine the behavior of

$$\frac{e^{2/x} - 1}{1/x} \qquad \text{as} \qquad x \to \infty.$$

Applying L'Hôpital's rule, we have

$$\lim_{x\to \infty} \frac{e^{2/x} - 1}{1/x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to \infty} \frac{e^{2/x}(-2/x^2)}{(-1/x^2)} = 2 \lim_{x\to \infty} e^{2/x} = 2.$$

It follows that

$$\text{as } n \to \infty, \qquad \frac{e^{2/n} - 1}{1/n} \to 2. \quad ❑$$

To derive L'Hôpital's rule, we need a generalization of the mean-value theorem.

THEOREM 11.5.2 THE CAUCHY MEAN-VALUE THEOREM†

Suppose that f and g are differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$. If g' is never 0 in (a, b), then there is a number r in (a, b) for which

$$\frac{f'(r)}{g'(r)} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{g(b) - g(a)}.$$

PROOF We can prove this by applying Rolle's theorem (4.1.3) to the function

$$G(x) = [g(b) - g(a)][f(x) - f(a)] - [g(x) - g(a)][f(b) - f(a)].$$

Since

$$G(a) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad G(b) = 0,$$

there exists (by Rolle's theorem) a number r in (a, b) for which $G'(r) = 0$.

Differentiation gives

$$G'(x) = [g(b) - g(a)]f'(x) - g'(x)[f(b) - f(a)].$$

Setting $x = r$, we have

$$[g(b) - g(a)]f'(r) - g'(r)[f(b) - f(a)] = 0,$$

and thus

$$[g(b) - g(a)]f'(r) = g'(r)[f(b) - f(a)].$$

Since g' is never 0 in (a, b),

$$g'(r) \neq 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \underbrace{g(b) - g(a) \neq 0}_{\text{explain}}.$$

We can therefore divide by these numbers and obtain

$$\frac{f'(r)}{g'(r)} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{g(b) - g(a)}. \quad \square$$

Now we prove L'Hôpital's rule for the case $x \to c^+$. This requires that in the approach $g(x) \neq 0$ and $g'(x) \neq 0$. We assume that, as $x \to c^+$,

$$f(x) \to 0, \qquad g(x) \to 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \to \gamma.$$

We want to show that

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \to \gamma.$$

PROOF By defining $f(c) = 0$ and $g(c) = 0$, we make f and g continuous on an interval $[c, c + h]$. For each $x \in (c, c + h)$

$$\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{g(x) - g(c)} = \frac{f'(r)}{g'(r)}$$

†The same Cauchy who gave us Cauchy sequences.

with r between c and x. (The Cauchy mean-value theorem applied on the interval $[c, x]$.) If, as $x \to c^+$,

$$\frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \to \gamma, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{f'(r)}{g'(r)} \to \gamma. \quad \square$$

The case $x \to c^-$ can be handled in a similar manner. The two cases together prove the rule for the case $x \to c$.

Here is an outline of the proof of L'Hôpital's rule for the case $x \to \infty$.

PROOF The key here is to set $x = 1/t$:

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} = \lim_{t\to 0^+} \frac{[f(1/t)]'}{[g(1/t)]'} = \lim_{t\to 0^+} \frac{-t^{-2} f'(1/t)}{-t^{-2} g'(1/t)}$$

$$= \lim_{t\to 0^+} \frac{f'(1/t)}{g'(1/t)} \underbrace{=}_{\text{by L'Hôpital's rule for the case } t \to 0^+} \lim_{t\to 0^+} \frac{f(1/t)}{g(1/t)} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 11.5

Exercises 1–32. Calculate.

1. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \dfrac{\sin x}{\sqrt{x}}$.

2. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{\ln x}{1-x}$.

3. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{e^x - 1}{\ln(1+x)}$.

4. $\lim_{x\to 4} \dfrac{\sqrt{x}-2}{x-4}$.

5. $\lim_{x\to \pi/2} \dfrac{\cos x}{\sin 2x}$.

6. $\lim_{x\to a} \dfrac{x-a}{x^n - a^n}$.

7. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{2^x - 1}{x}$.

8. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\arctan x}{x}$.

9. $\lim_{x\to 1} \dfrac{x^{1/2} - x^{1/4}}{x-1}$.

10. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{e^x - 1}{x(1+x)}$.

11. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{e^x - e^{-x}}{\sin x}$.

12. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{1-\cos x}{3x}$.

13. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x + \sin \pi x}{x - \sin \pi x}$.

14. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{a^x - (a+1)^x}{x}$.

15. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{e^x + e^{-x} - 2}{1 - \cos 2x}$.

16. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x - \ln(x+1)}{1 - \cos 2x}$.

17. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\tan \pi x}{e^x - 1}$.

18. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\cos x - 1 + x^2/2}{x^4}$.

19. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{1 + x - e^x}{x(e^x - 1)}$.

20. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\ln(\sec x)}{x^2}$.

21. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x - \tan x}{x - \sin x}$.

22. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x e^{nx} - x}{1 - \cos nx}$.

23. $\lim_{x\to 1^-} \dfrac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{\sqrt{1-x^3}}$.

24. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{2x - \sin \pi x}{4x^2 - 1}$.

25. $\lim_{x\to \pi/2} \dfrac{\ln(\sin x)}{(\pi - 2x)^2}$.

26. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x} + \sin \sqrt{x}}$.

27. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\cos x - \cos 3x}{\sin(x^2)}$.

28. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{a+x} - \sqrt{a-x}}{x}$.

29. $\lim_{x\to \pi/4} \dfrac{\sec^2 x - 2\tan x}{1 + \cos 4x}$.

30. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x - \arcsin x}{\sin^3 x}$.

31. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\arctan x}{\arctan 2x}$.

32. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\arcsin x}{x}$.

Exercises 33–36. Find the limit of the sequence.

33. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \dfrac{(\pi/2 - \arctan n)}{1/n}$.

34. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \dfrac{\ln(1 - 1/n)}{\sin(1/n)}$.

35. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{n[\ln(n+1) - \ln n]}$.

36. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \dfrac{\sinh \pi/n - \sin \pi/n}{\sin^3 \pi/n}$.

Exercises 37–42. Use technology (graphing utility or CAS) to calculate the limit.

37. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x^3}{4^x - 1}$.

38. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{4x}{\sin^2 x}$.

39. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x}{\frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos x}$.

40. $\lim_{x\to 2^+} \dfrac{\sqrt{2x} - 2}{\sqrt{x-2}}$.

41. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\tanh x}{x}$.

42. $\lim_{x\to \frac{\pi}{2}} \dfrac{1 + \cos 2x}{1 - \sin x}$.

43. Find the fallacy:

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{2 + x + \sin x}{x^3 + x - \cos x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1 + \cos x}{3x^2 + 1 + \sin x}$$

$$\overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{-\sin x}{6x + \cos x} = \frac{0}{1} = 0.$$

44. Show that, if $a > 0$, then

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} n(a^{1/n} - 1) = \ln a.$$

45. Find values of a and b for which

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\cos ax - b}{2x^2} = -4.$$

46. Find values of a and b for which

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin 2x + ax + bx^3}{x^3} = 0.$$

47. Calculate $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{(1+x)^{1/x} - e}{x}$.

48. Let f be a twice differentiable function and fix a value of x.

(a) Show that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x-h)}{2h} = f'(x).$$

(b) Show that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - 2f(x) + f(x-h)}{h^2} = f''(x).$$

49. Given that f is continuous, use L'Hôpital's rule to determine

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \left(\frac{1}{x} \int_0^x f(t)\,dt \right).$$

50. The integral $Si(x) = \displaystyle\int_0^x \frac{\sin t}{t}\,dt$ plays a role in applied mathematics. Calculate the following limits:

(a) $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{Si(x)}{x}$.

(b) $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{Si(x) - x}{x^3}$.

51. The *Fresnel function* $C(x) = \displaystyle\int_0^x \cos^2 t\,dt$ arises in the study of the diffraction of light. Calculate the following limits:

(a) $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{C(x)}{x}$.

(b) $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{C(x) - x}{x^3}$.

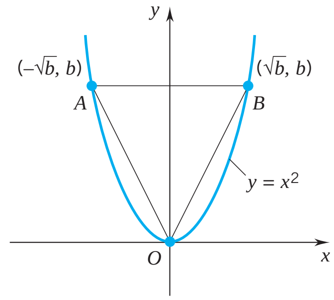
52. (a) Given that the function f is differentiable, $f(a) = 0$ and $f'(a) \neq 0$, determine

$$\lim_{x\to a} \frac{\int_a^x f(t)\,dt}{f(x)}.$$

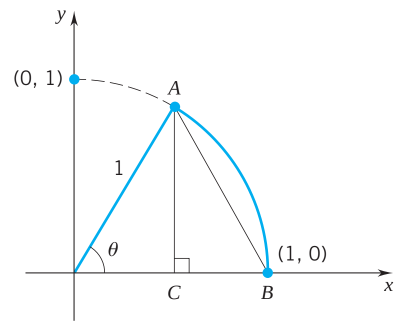
(b) Suppose f is k-times differentiable, $f(a) = f'(a) = \cdots = f^{k-1}(a) = 0$, and $f^k(a) \neq 0$. Calculate.

$$\lim_{x\to a} \frac{\int_a^x f(t)\,dt}{f(x)}.$$

53. Let $A(b)$ be the area of the region bounded by the parabola $y = x^2$ and the horizontal line $y = b\,(b > 0)$, and let $T(b)$ be the area of triangle AOB. (See the figure.) Find $\lim_{b\to 0^+} T(b)/A(b)$.



54. The figure shows an angle θ between 0 and $\pi/2$. Let $T(\theta)$ be the area of triangle ABC, and let $S(\theta)$ be the area of the segment of the circle cut by the chord AB. Find $\lim_{\theta\to 0^+} T(\theta)/S(\theta)$.



55. Set

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 16}{\sqrt{x^2+9} - 5}.$$

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f. What is the behavior of $f(x)$ as $x \to \infty$? as $x \to -\infty$?

(b) What is the behavior of f as $x \to 4$? Confirm your answer by applying L'Hôpital's rule.

56. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{x - \sin x}{x^3}$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f. What is the behavior of $f(x)$ as $x \to \infty$? as $x \to -\infty$?

(b) What is the behavior of f as $x \to 0$? Confirm your answer by applying L'Hôpital's rule.

57. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{2^{\sin x} - 1}{x}$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} f(x).$$

(b) Use L'Hôpital's rule to confirm your estimate.

58. Set $g(x) = \dfrac{3^{\cos x} - 3}{x^2}$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph g. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0} g(x).$$

(b) Use L'Hôpital's rule to confirm your estimate.

■ 11.6 THE INDETERMINATE FORM (∞/∞); OTHER INDETERMINATE FORMS

We come now to limits of quotients where numerator and denominator both tend to ∞. Such quotients are called *indeterminates of the form* ∞/∞ for the limit process used.

As in the case of L'Hôpital's rule (0/0), the result we state applies equally well to all forms of x-approach:

$$\text{as } x \to c, \qquad \text{as } x \to c^+, \qquad \text{as } x \to c^-, \qquad \text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \text{as } x \to -\infty.$$

As before, the symbol γ can represent a real number, it can represent ∞, it can represent $-\infty$.

(11.6.1)

L'HÔPITAL'S RULE (∞/∞)

Suppose that

$$f(x) \to \pm\infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(x) \to \pm\infty$$

and in the approach $g'(x) \neq 0$.

$$\text{If} \quad \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \to \gamma, \qquad \text{then} \quad \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \to \gamma.$$

While the proof of L'Hôpital's rule in this setting is a little more complicated than it was in the (0/0) case,† the application of the rule is much the same.

Example 1 Let α be any positive number. Show that

(11.6.2)
$$\boxed{\text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \frac{\ln x}{x^\alpha} \to 0.}$$

SOLUTION As $x \to \infty$, both numerator and denominator tend to ∞. L'Hôpital's rule gives

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\ln x}{x^\alpha} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1/x}{\alpha x^{\alpha-1}} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{\alpha x^\alpha} = 0. \quad ❑$$

For example, as $x \to \infty$,

$$\frac{\ln x}{x^2}, \qquad \frac{\ln x}{x}, \qquad \frac{\ln x}{x^{0.01}}, \qquad \frac{\ln x}{x^{0.001}}$$

all tend to zero.

Example 2 Let α be any positive number. Show that

(11.6.3)
$$\boxed{\text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \frac{e^x}{x^\alpha} \to \infty.}$$

†We omit the proof.

SOLUTION Choose a positive integer $k > \alpha$. For large $x > 0$

$$\frac{e^x}{x^k} < \frac{e^x}{x^\alpha}.$$

We will prove (11.6.3) by proving that

$$\text{as } x \to \infty, \qquad \frac{e^x}{x^k} \to \infty.$$

We do this by L'Hôpital's rule. We differentiate numerator and denominator k-times:

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{e^x}{x^k} \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{e^x}{kx^{k-1}} \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{e^x}{k(k-1)x^{k-2}} \stackrel{*}{=} \cdots \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{e^x}{k!} = \infty. \quad ❑$$

For example, as $x \to \infty$,

$$\frac{e^x}{x^\pi}, \qquad \frac{e^x}{x^{100}}, \qquad \frac{e^x}{x^{10,000}} \qquad \text{all tend to } \infty.$$

Remark Limit (11.6.2) tells us that $\ln x$ tends to infinity more slowly than any positive power of x. Limit (11.6.3) tells us that e^x tends to infinity more quickly than any positive power of x. ❑

Example 3 Determine the behavior of $a_n = \dfrac{2^n}{n^2}$ as $n \to \infty$.

SOLUTION To use the methods of calculus, we investigate $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{2^x}{x^2}$. Since both numerator and denominator tend to ∞ with x, we try L'Hôpital's rule:

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{2^x}{x^2} \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{2^x \ln 2}{2x} \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{2^x(\ln 2)^2}{2} = \infty.$$

Therefore the sequence must also diverge to ∞. ❑

The Indeterminates $0 \cdot \infty$, $\infty - \infty$

The usual way to deal with such indeterminates is to try to write them as quotients to which we can apply one of L'Hôpital's rules.

Example 4 $(0 \cdot \infty)$ Find $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} \sqrt{x}\ln x$.

SOLUTION As $x \to 0^+$, $\sqrt{x} \to 0$ and $\ln x \to -\infty$. Thus we are dealing with an indeterminate which (up to sign) is of the form $0 \cdot \infty$.

Writing $\sqrt{x}\ln x$ as

$$\frac{\ln x}{1/\sqrt{x}},$$

we can apply L'Hôpital's rule ∞/∞:

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} \sqrt{x}\ln x = \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{\ln x}{1/\sqrt{x}} \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{1/x}{-\frac{1}{2}x^{-3/2}} = \lim_{x\to 0^+} -2\sqrt{x} = 0.$$

We could have chosen to write $\sqrt{x}\ln x$ as

$$\frac{\sqrt{x}}{1/\ln x},$$

but, as you can check, the calculations would not have worked out very well. ❑

Example 5 $(\infty - \infty)$ Find $\lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^-} (\tan x - \sec x)$.

SOLUTION As $x \to (\pi/2)^-$, $\tan x \to \infty$ and $\sec x \to \infty$. Thus we are dealing with an indeterminate of the form $\infty - \infty$.

We proceed to write $\tan x - \sec x$ as a quotient:

$$\tan x - \sec x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} - \frac{1}{\cos x} = \frac{\sin x - 1}{\cos x}.$$

Since the function on the right is an indeterminate of the form 0/0, we can write

$$\lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^-} \frac{\sin x - 1}{\cos x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^-} \frac{\cos x}{-\sin x} = \frac{0}{-1} = 0.$$

This shows that $\lim_{x \to (\pi/2)^-} (\tan x - \sec x) = 0$. ❑

The Indeterminates 0^0, 1^∞, ∞^0

These indeterminates all arise in an obvious manner from consideration of expressions of the form $[f(x)]^{g(x)}$. Here we require that $f(x)$ remain positive. (Arbitrary powers are defined only for positive numbers.) Such indeterminates are usually handled by first applying the logarithm function:

$$y = [f(x)]^{g(x)} \qquad \text{gives} \qquad \ln y = g(x) \ln f(x).$$

Example 6 (0^0) Show that

(11.6.4)
$$\boxed{\lim_{x \to 0^+} x^x = 1.}$$

SOLUTION Here we are dealing with an indeterminate of the form 0^0. Our first step is to take the logarithm of x^x. Then we apply L'Hôpital's rule:

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} \ln(x^x) = \lim_{x \to 0^+} (x \ln x) = \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{\ln x}{1/x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{1/x}{-1/x^2} = \lim_{x \to 0^+} (-x) = 0.$$

Thus, as $x \to 0$, $\quad \ln(x^x) \to 0 \quad$ and $\quad x^x = e^{\ln(x^x)} \to e^0 = 1$. ❑

Example 7 (1^∞) Find $\lim_{x \to 0^+} (1 + x)^{1/x}$.

SOLUTION Here we are dealing with an indeterminate of the form 1^∞: as $x \to 0^+$, $1 + x \to 1$ and $1/x \to \infty$. Taking the logarithm and then applying L'Hôpital's rule, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} \ln(1 + x)^{1/x} = \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{\ln(1 + x)}{x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{1}{1 + x} = 1.$$

As $x \to 0^+$, $\ln(1 + x)^{1/x} \to 1$ and $(1 + x)^{1/x} = e^{\ln(1+x)^{1/x}} \to e^1 = e$. Set $x = 1/n$ and we have the familiar result: as $n \to \infty$, $[1 + (1/n)]^n \to e$. ❑

Example 8 (∞^0) Show that

$$\text{if} \qquad 1 < a < b \qquad \text{then} \qquad \lim_{x \to \infty} (a^x + b^x)^{1/x} = b.$$

SOLUTION Here we are dealing with an indeterminate of the form ∞^0: as $x \to \infty$, $a^x + b^x \to \infty$ and $1/x \to 0$. Taking the logarithm and then applying L'Hôpital's rule, we find that

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \ln (a^x + b^x)^{1/x} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\ln (a^x + b^x)}{x}$$
$$\stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{a^x \ln a + b^x \ln b}{a^x + b^x} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{(a/b)^x \ln a + \ln b}{(a/b)^x + 1} = \ln b.$$

This gives $\lim_{x\to\infty} (a^x + b^x)^{1/x} = b.$ ❑

The Misuse of L'Hôpital's Rules

The calculation of limits by differentiation of numerator and denominator is so compellingly easy that there is a tendency to abuse the method. But note: not all quotients are amenable to L'Hôpital's rules — only those which are indeterminates 0/0 or ∞/∞.

Take, for example, the following (mindless) attempt to find

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} x^{1/x}.$$

Taking the logarithm of $x^{1/x}$ and (mis)applying L'Hôpital's rules, we have

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} \ln x^{1/x} = \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{\ln x}{x} \stackrel{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{1}{x} = \infty.$$

This seems to indicate that as $x \to 0^+$, $\ln x^{1/x} \to \infty$ and therefore $x^{1/x} = e^{\ln x^{1/x}} \to \infty$.

This may look fine, but it's wrong:

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \tfrac{1}{4}, \qquad \left(\tfrac{1}{3}\right)^3 = \tfrac{1}{27}, \qquad \left(\tfrac{1}{4}\right)^4 = \tfrac{1}{256}, \cdots.$$

The limit of $x^{1/x}$ as $x \to 0^+$ is clearly 0, not ∞.

Where did we go wrong? We went wrong in applying L'Hôpital's method to calculate

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{\ln x}{x}.$$

As $x \to 0^+$, $\ln x \to -\infty$ and $x \to 0$. L'Hôpital's rules do not apply.

EXERCISES 11.6

Exercises 1–34. Calculate.

1. $\lim_{x\to -\infty} \dfrac{x^2+1}{1-x}$.

2. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{20x}{x^2+1}$.

3. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{x^3}{1-x^3}$.

4. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{x^3-1}{2-x}$.

5. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(x^2 \sin \dfrac{1}{x}\right)$.

6. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{\ln x^k}{x}$.

7. $\lim_{x\to \pi/2^-} \dfrac{\tan 5x}{\tan x}$.

8. $\lim_{x\to 0} (x \ln |\sin x|)$.

9. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} x^{2x}$.

10. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(x \sin \dfrac{\pi}{x}\right)$.

11. $\lim_{x\to 0} [x(\ln |x|)^2]$.

12. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \dfrac{\ln x}{\cot x}$.

13. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(\dfrac{1}{x}\displaystyle\int_0^x e^{t^2}\,dt\right)$.

14. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{\sqrt{1+x^2}}{x^2}$.

15. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left[\dfrac{1}{\sin^2 x} - \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right]$.

16. $\lim_{x\to 0} |\sin x|^x$.

17. $\lim_{x\to 1} x^{1/(x-1)}$.

18. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} x^{\sin x}$.

19. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(\cos \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^x$.

20. $\lim_{x\to \pi/2} |\sec x|^{\cos x}$.

21. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left[\dfrac{1}{\ln(1+x)} - \dfrac{1}{x}\right]$.

22. $\lim_{x\to\infty} (x^2 + a^2)^{(1/x)^2}$.

23. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left(\dfrac{1}{x} - \cot x\right)$.

24. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \ln \left(\dfrac{x^2-1}{x^2+1}\right)^3$.

25. $\lim_{x\to\infty} (\sqrt{x^2+2x} - x)$.

26. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(1 + \dfrac{a}{x}\right)^{bx}$.

27. $\lim_{x\to\infty} (x^3+1)^{1/\ln x}$.

28. $\lim_{x\to\infty} (e^x+1)^{1/x}$.

29. $\lim_{x\to\infty} (\cosh x)^{1/x}$.

30. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(1+\frac{1}{x}\right)^{3x}$.

31. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left(\frac{1}{\sin x} - \frac{1}{x}\right)$.

32. $\lim_{x\to 0}(e^x + 3x)^{1/x}$.

33. $\lim_{x\to 1} \left(\frac{1}{\ln x} - \frac{x}{x-1}\right)$.

34. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left(\frac{1+2^x}{2}\right)^{1/x}$.

Exercises 35–42. Find the limit of the sequence.

35. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n}\ln\frac{1}{n}\right)$.

36. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{n^k}{2^n}$.

37. $\lim_{n\to\infty} (\ln n)^{1/n}$.

38. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{\ln n}{n^p} (p > 0)$.

39. $\lim_{n\to\infty} (n^2+n)^{1/n}$.

40. $\lim_{n\to\infty} n^{\sin(\pi/n)}$.

41. $\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{n^2 \ln n}{e^n}$.

42. $\lim_{n\to\infty} (\sqrt{n}-1)^{1/\sqrt{n}}$.

Exercises 43–46. Use technology (graphing utility or CAS) to calculate the limit.

43. $\lim_{x\to 0}(\sin x)^x$.

44. $\lim_{x\to(\frac{\pi}{4})^-} (\tan x)^{\tan 2x}$.

45. $\lim_{x\to 0} \left(\frac{1}{\sin x} - \frac{1}{\tan x}\right)$.

46. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} (\sinh x)^{-x}$.

Exercises 47–52. Sketch the curve, specifying all vertical and horizontal asymptotes.

47. $y = x^2 - \frac{1}{x^3}$.

48. $y = \sqrt{\frac{x}{x-1}}$.

49. $y = xe^x$.

50. $y = xe^{-x}$.

51. $y = x^2e^{-x}$.

52. $y = \frac{\ln x}{x}$.

The graphs of two functions $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ are said to be *asymptotic as* $x \to \infty$ if

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} [f(x) - g(x)] = 0;$$

they are said to be *asymptotic as* x to $-\infty$ if

$$\lim_{x\to-\infty} [f(x) - g(x)] = 0.$$

These ideas are implemented in Exercises 53–56.

53. Show that the hyperbolic arc $y = (b/a)\sqrt{x^2-a^2}$ is asymptotic to the line $y = (b/a)x$ as $x \to \infty$.

54. Show that the graphs of $y = \cosh x$ and $y = \sinh x$ are asymptotic as $x \to \infty$.

55. Give an example of a function the graph of which is asymptotic to the parabola $y = x^2$ as $x \to \infty$ and crosses the graph of the parabola exactly twice.

56. Give an example of a function the graph of which is asymptotic to the line $y = x$ as $x \to \infty$ and crosses the graph of the line infinitely often.

57. Find the fallacy:

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{x^2}{\sin x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{2x}{\cos x} \overset{*}{=} \lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{2}{-\sin x} = -\infty.$$

58. (a) Show by induction that, for each positive integer k,

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{(\ln x)^k}{x} = 0.$$

(b) Show that, for each positive number α,

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{(\ln x)^\alpha}{x} = 0.$$

59. The *geometric mean* of two positive numbers a and b is $\sqrt{ab}$. Show that

$$\sqrt{ab} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \left[\tfrac{1}{2}(a^{1/x} + b^{1/x})\right]^x.$$

60. The differential equation satisfied by the velocity of an object of mass m dropped from rest under the influence of gravity with air resistance directly proportional to the velocity can be written

$$(*) \qquad m\frac{dv}{dt} + kv = mg,$$

where $k > 0$ is the constant of proportionality, g is the gravitational constant and $v(0) = 0$. The velocity of the object at time t is given by

$$v(t) = (mg/k)(1 - e^{-(k/m)}t).$$

(a) Fix t and find $\lim_{k\to 0^+} v(t)$.

(b) Set $k = 0$ in $(*)$ and solve the initial-value problem

$$m\frac{dv}{dt} = mg, \qquad v(0) = 0.$$

Does this result fit in with what you found in part (a)?

Exercises 61–62. Set $f(x) = xe^{-x}$. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f on [0, 20]. For what follows, take f on the interval $[0, b]$.

61. (a) Find the area A_b of the region Ω_b that lies between the graph of f and the x-axis.

(b) Find the centroid $(\overline{x_b}, \overline{y_b})$ of Ω_b.

(c) Find the limit of $A_b, \overline{x_b}, \overline{y_b}$ as $b \to \infty$. Interpret your results geometrically.

62. (a) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω_b about the x-axis.

(b) Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving Ω_b about the y-axis.

(c) Find the limit of each of these volumes as $b \to \infty$. Interpret your results geometrically.

63. Let $f(x) = (1+x)^{1/x}$ and $g(x) = (1+x^2)^{1/x}$ on $(0, \infty)$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f and g in the same coordinate system. Estimate

$$\lim_{x\to 0^+} g(x).$$

(b) Use L'Hôpital's rule to obtain the exact value of this limit.

64. Set $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2+3x+1} - x$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph f. Then use your graph to estimate

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x).$$

(b) Use L'Hôpital's rule to obtain the exact value of this limit. HINT: "Rationalize."

65. Set $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 1} - x$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to graph g. Then use your graph to estimate

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} g(x).$$

(b) Use L'Hôpital's rule to obtain the exact value of this limit.

66. The results obtained in Exercises 64 and 65 can be generalized: Let n be a positive integer and let P be the polynomial

$$P(x) = x^n + b_1 x^{n-1} + b_2 x^{n-2} + \cdots + b_{n-1}x + b_n.$$

Show that $\lim_{x\to\infty}([P(x)]^{1/n} - x) = \dfrac{b_1}{n}$.

■ 11.7 IMPROPER INTEGRALS

In the definition of the definite integral

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

it is assumed that $[a,b]$ is a bounded interval and f is a bounded function. In this section we use the limit process to investigate integrals in which either the interval is unbounded or the integrand is an unbounded function. Such integrals are called *improper integrals*.

Integrals over Unbounded Intervals

We begin with a function f which is continuous on an unbounded interval $[a, \infty)$. For each number $b > a$ we can form the definite integral

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

If, as b tends to ∞, this integral tends to a finite limit L,

$$\lim_{b\to\infty}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = L.$$

then we write

$$\int_a^\infty f(x)\,dx = L$$

and say that

$$\textit{the improper integral} \quad \int_a^\infty f(x)\,dx \quad \textit{converges to } L.$$

Otherwise, we say that

$$\textit{the improper integral} \quad \int_a^\infty f(x)\,dx \quad \textit{diverges.}$$

In a similar manner,

improper integrals $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^b f(x)\,dx$ arise as limits of the form $\displaystyle\lim_{a\to-\infty}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.

Example 1

(a) $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty e^{-2x}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}$.

(b) $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x}$ diverges.

(c) $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^2} = 1$.

(d) $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^1 \cos\pi x\,dx$ diverges.

VERIFICATION

(a) $$\int_0^\infty e^{-2x}\,dx = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_0^b e^{-2x}\,dx = \lim_{b\to\infty}\left[-\frac{e^{-2x}}{2}\right]_0^b = \lim_{b\to\infty}\left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2e^{2b}}\right) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

(b) $$\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x} = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_1^b \frac{dx}{x} = \lim_{b\to\infty}\ln b = \infty.$$

(c) $$\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^2} = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_1^b \frac{dx}{x^2} = \lim_{b\to\infty}\left[-\frac{1}{x}\right]_1^b = \lim_{b\to\infty}\left(1-\frac{1}{b}\right) = 1.$$

(d) Note first that

$$\int_a^1 \cos\pi x\,dx = \left[\frac{1}{\pi}\sin\pi x\right]_a^1 = -\frac{1}{\pi}\sin\pi a.$$

As a tends to $-\infty$, $\sin\pi a$ oscillates between -1 and 1. Therefore the integral oscillates between $1/\pi$ and $-1/\pi$ and does not converge. ❑

The usual formulas for area and volume are extended to the unbounded case by the use of improper integrals.

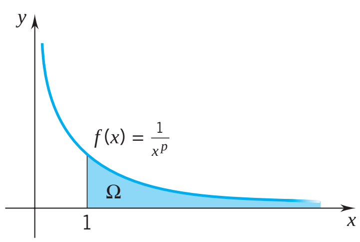


Figure 11.7.1

Example 2 Fix $p > 0$ and let Ω be the region below the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x^p}, \qquad x \geq 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 11.7.1)}$$

As we show below,

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{p-1}, & \text{if } p > 1 \\ \infty, & \text{if } p \leq 1. \end{cases}$$

This comes about from setting

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_1^b \frac{dx}{x^p} = \int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^p}.$$

For $p \neq 1$,

$$\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^p} = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_1^b \frac{dx}{x^p} = \lim_{b\to\infty}\frac{1}{1-p}(b^{1-p}-1) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{p-1}, & \text{if } p > 1 \\ \infty, & \text{if } p < 1. \end{cases}$$

For $p = 1$,

$$\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^p} = \int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x} = \infty,$$

as you have seen already. ❑

For future reference we record the following:

(11.7.1) $$\boxed{\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^p} \quad \text{converges if } p > 1 \text{ and diverges if } 0 < p \leq 1.}$$

Example 3 *A configuration of finite volume with infinite surface area*. You have seen that the region below the graph of $f(x) = 1/x$ with $x \geq 1$ has infinite area. Suppose that

this region of infinite area is revolved about the x-axis. See Figure 11.7.2. What is the volume of the resulting configuration? It may surprise you somewhat, but the volume is not infinite. It is in fact π: using the disk method to calculate volume (Section 6.2), we have

$$V = \int_1^\infty \pi[f(x)]^2 dx = \pi \int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^2} = \pi \lim_{b\to\infty} \int_1^b \frac{dx}{x^2}$$

$$= \pi \lim_{b\to\infty} \left[\frac{-1}{x}\right]_1^b = \pi \cdot 1 = \pi.$$

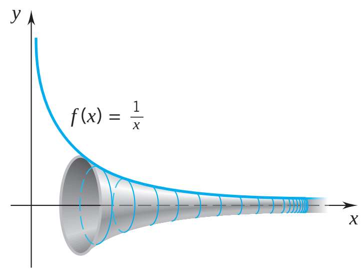


Figure 11.7.2

However, the surface that bounds this configuration does have infinite area (Exercise 41). This surface is known as *Gabriel's horn*. ❑

When it proves difficult to determine the convergence or divergence of an improper integral, we try comparison with improper integrals of known behavior.

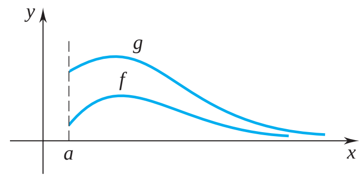


Figure 11.7.3

(11.7.2) (*A comparison test*) Suppose that f and g are continuous and

$$0 \le f(x) \le g(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in [a, \infty). \qquad \text{(Figure 11.7.3)}$$

(i) If $\int_a^\infty g(x)\,dx$ converges, then $\int_a^\infty f(x)\,dx$ converges.

(ii) If $\int_a^\infty f(x)\,dx$ diverges, then $\int_a^\infty g(x)\,dx$ diverges.

A similar result holds for integrals from $-\infty$ to b. The proof of (11.7.2) is left to you as an exercise.

Example 4 The improper integral $\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^3}}$ converges since

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x^3}} < \frac{1}{x^{3/2}} \quad \text{for } x \in [1,\infty) \quad \text{and} \quad \int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^{3/2}} \text{ converges.}$$

To evaluate

$$\lim_{b\to\infty} \int_1^b \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^3}}$$

directly, we would first have to evaluate

$$\int_1^b \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^3}} \quad \text{for each } b > 1,$$

and this we can't do because we have no way of calculating $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^3}}$. ❑

Example 5 The improper integral $\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}$ diverges since

$$\frac{1}{1+x} \le \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \quad \text{for } x \in [1,\infty) \quad \text{and} \quad \int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{1+x} \text{ diverges.}$$

We can obtain this result by evaluating

$$\int_1^b \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}$$

and letting b tend to ∞. Try to carry out the calculation in this manner. ❑

Suppose now that f is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$. The *improper integral*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)\,dx$$

is said to *converge* if

$$\int_{-\infty}^{0} f(x)\,dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_0^{\infty} f(x)\,dx$$

both converge. In this case we set

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) = L + M$$

where

$$\int_{-\infty}^{0} f(x)\,dx = L \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_0^{\infty} f(x)\,dx = M.$$

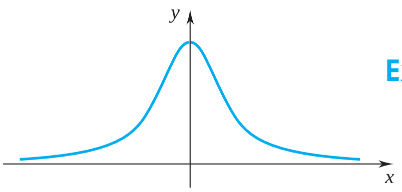


Figure 11.7.4

Example 6 Let $r > 0$. Determine whether the improper integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx \qquad \text{(Figure 11.7.4)}$$

converges or diverges. If it converges, give the value of the integral.

SOLUTION According to the definition, we need to determine the convergence or divergence of both

$$\int_{-\infty}^{0} \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx \quad \text{and} \quad \int_0^{\infty} \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx.$$

For the first integral:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{0} \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx = \lim_{a\to-\infty} \int_a^0 \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx = \lim_{a\to-\infty} \left[\arctan\left(\frac{x}{r}\right)\right]_a^0$$

$$= -\lim_{a\to-\infty} \arctan\left(\frac{a}{r}\right) = -\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

For the second integral:

$$\int_0^{\infty} \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx = \lim_{b\to\infty} \int_0^b \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx = \lim_{b\to\infty} \left[\arctan\left(\frac{x}{r}\right)\right]_0^b$$

$$= \lim_{b\to\infty} \arctan\left(\frac{b}{r}\right) = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

Since both of these integrals converge, the improper integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{r}{r^2+x^2}\,dx$$

converges. The value of the integral is $\frac{1}{2}\pi + \frac{1}{2}\pi = \pi$. ❑

Remark Note that we did not define

(1) $$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)\,dx$$

as

(2) $$\lim_{b\to\infty} \int_{-b}^{b} f(x)\,dx.$$

It is easy to show that if (1) exists, then (2) exists and (1) = (2). However, the existence of (2) does not imply the existence of (1). For example, (2) exists and is 0 for every odd function f, but this is certainly not the case for (1). See Exercises 57 and 58. ❏

Integrals of Unbounded Functions

Improper integrals can arise on bounded intervals. Suppose that f is continuous on the half-open interval $[a, b)$ but is unbounded there. See Figure 11.7.5. For each number $c < b$, we can form the definite integral

$$\int_{a}^{c} f(x)\,dx.$$

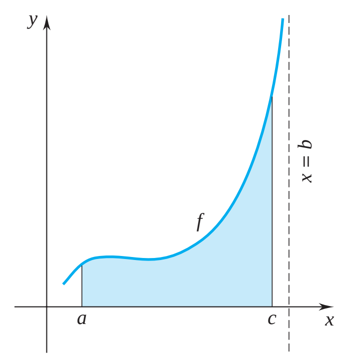


Figure 11.7.5

If, as $c \to b^-$, the integral tends to a finite limit L, namely, if

$$\lim_{c\to b^-} \int_{a}^{c} f(x)\,dx = L,$$

then we write

$$\int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx = L$$

and say that

the improper integral $\displaystyle\int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx$ *converges to* L.

Otherwise, we say that *the improper integral diverges*.

Similarly, functions which are continuous but unbounded on half-open intervals of the form $(a,b]$ lead to consideration of

$$\lim_{c\to a^+} \int_{c}^{b} f(x)\,dx.$$

If this limit exists and is L, then we write

$$\int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx = L$$

and say that

the improper integral $\displaystyle\int_{a}^{b} f(x)\,dx$ *converges to* L.

Otherwise, we say that *the improper integral diverges*.

Example 7

(a) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} (1-x)^{-2/3}dx = 3.$ (b) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} \frac{dx}{x}$ diverges.

VERIFICATION

(a) $$\int_0^1 (1-x)^{-2/3}dx = \lim_{c\to 1^-}\int_0^c (1-x)^{-2/3}dx$$
$$= \lim_{c\to 1^-}\Big[-3(1-x)^{1/3}\Big]_0^c = \lim_{c\to 1^-}[-3(1-c)^{1/3}+3] = 3.$$

(b) $$\int_0^2 \frac{dx}{x} = \lim_{c\to 0^+}\int_c^2 \frac{dx}{x} = \lim_{c\to 0^+}\Big[\ln x\Big]_c^2 = \lim_{c\to 0^+}[\ln 2 - \ln c] = \infty.$$ ❑

Finally, suppose that f is continuous at each point of $[a, b]$ except at some interior point c where f has an infinite discontinuity. We say that the *improper integral*

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

converges if *both*

$$\int_a^c f(x)\,dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_c^b f(x)\,dx$$

converge. If

$$\int_a^c f(x)\,dx = L \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_c^b f(x)\,dx = M,$$

we set

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = L + M.$$

Example 8 Test

(∗) $$\int_1^4 \frac{dx}{(x-2)^2}$$

for convergence.

SOLUTION The integrand has an infinite discontinuity at $x = 2$. See Figure 11.7.6.

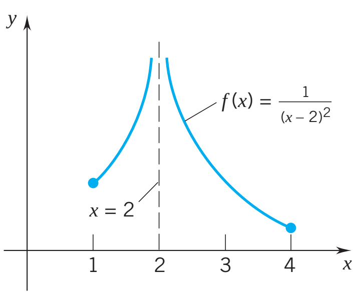


Figure 11.7.6

For integral (∗) to converge both

$$\int_1^2 \frac{dx}{(x-2)^2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_2^4 \frac{dx}{(x-2)^2}$$

must converge. Neither does. For instance, as $c \to 2^-$,

$$\int_1^c \frac{dx}{(x-2)^2} = \left[-\frac{1}{x-2}\right]_1^c = -\frac{1}{c-2} - 1 \to \infty.$$

This tells us that

$$\int_1^2 \frac{dx}{(x-2)^2}$$

diverges and shows that (∗) diverges.

If we overlook the infinite discontinuity at $x = 2$, we can be led to the *incorrect conclusion* that

$$\int_1^4 \frac{dx}{(x-2)^2} = \left[-\frac{1}{x-2}\right]_1^4 = -\frac{3}{2}.$$ ❑

Example 9 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}}$.

SOLUTION Since the integrand has an infinite discontinuity at $x = 0$, the integral is improper. Thus we need to evaluate both

$$\int_{-2}^{0} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}} \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{0}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}}.$$

Note that

$$\int_{-2}^{0} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}} = \lim_{c\to 0^-} \int_{-2}^{c} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}} = \lim_{c\to 0^-} \left[5x^{1/5}\right]_{-2}^{c} = \lim_{c\to 0^-} \left[5c^{1/5} - 5(-2)^{1/5}\right] = 5\left(2^{1/5}\right)$$

and

$$\int_{0}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}} = \lim_{c\to 0^+} \int_{c}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}} = \lim_{c\to 0^+} \left[5x^{1/5}\right]_{c}^{1} = \lim_{c\to 0^+} \left[5 - 5c^{1/5}\right] = 5.$$

It follows that the integral from $x = -2$ to $x = 1$ converges and we have

$$\int_{-2}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^{4/5}} = 5 + 5\left(2^{1/5}\right) \cong 10.74 \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 11.7

Exercises 1–34. Below we list some improper integrals. Determine whether the integral converges and, if so, evaluate the integral.

1. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^2}$.

2. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$.

3. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{4+x^2}$.

4. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-px}\,dx, \quad p > 0.$

5. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{px}\,dx, \quad p > 0.$

6. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}}$.

7. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{8} \frac{dx}{x^{2/3}}$.

8. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^2}$.

9. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

10. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x}}$.

11. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} \frac{x}{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\,dx$.

12. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{a} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$.

13. $\displaystyle\int_{e}^{\infty} \frac{\ln x}{x}\,dx$.

14. $\displaystyle\int_{e}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x\ln x}$.

15. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} x\ln x\,dx$.

16. $\displaystyle\int_{e}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x(\ln x)^2}$.

17. $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$.

18. $\displaystyle\int_{2}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^2-1}$.

19. $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^2}$.

20. $\displaystyle\int_{1/3}^{3} \frac{dx}{\sqrt[3]{3x-1}}$.

21. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x(x+1)}$.

22. $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^{0} x\,e^{x}\,dx$.

23. $\displaystyle\int_{3}^{5} \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2-9}}\,dx$.

24. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{4} \frac{dx}{x^2-4}$.

25. $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{3} \frac{dx}{x(x+1)}$.

26. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{(1+x^2)^2}\,dx$.

27. $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{1} \frac{dx}{x^2-4}$.

28. $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{e^x+e^{-x}}\,dx$.

29. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \cosh x\,dx$.

30. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{4} \frac{dx}{x^2-5x+6}$.

31. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-x}\sin x\,dx$.

32. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \cos^2 x\,dx$.

33. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$.

34. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{\sin x}}\,dx$.

C **Exercise 35–36.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the integrand. Then use a CAS to determine whether the integral converges or diverges.

35. (a) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x}{(16+x^2)^2}\,dx$. (b) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x^2}{(16+x^2)^2}\,dx$.

(c) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x}{16+x^4}\,dx$. (d) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{x}{16+x^2}\,dx$.

36. (a) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} \frac{x^3}{\sqrt[3]{2-x}}\,dx$. (b) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2-x}}\,dx$.

(c) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} \frac{x}{\sqrt{2-x}}\,dx$. (d) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2x-x^2}}\,dx$.

37. Evaluate

$$\int_{0}^{1} \arcsin x\,dx$$

using integration by parts even though the technique leads to an improper integral.

38. (a) For what values of r is

$$\int_0^\infty x^r e^{-x}\,dx$$

convergent?

(b) Show by induction that

$$\int_0^\infty x^n e^{-x}\,dx = n!, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \cdots.$$

39. The integral

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}(1+x)}\,dx$$

is improper in two distinct ways: the interval of integration is unbounded and the integrand is unbounded. If we rewrite the integral as

$$\int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}(1+x)}\,dx + \int_1^\infty \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}(1+x)}\,dx,$$

then we have two improper integrals, the first having an unbounded integrand and the second defined on an unbounded interval. If each of these integrals converges with values L_1 and L_2, then the original integral converges and has value $L_1 + L_2$. Evaluate the original integral.

40. Evaluate

$$\int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}\,dx$$

by the method outlined in Exercise 39.

41. The graph of $f(x) = 1/x$ with $x \geq 1$ is revolved about the x-axis. Show that the resulting surface has infinite area. (We stated this in Example 3.)

42. Sketch the curves $y = \sec x$ and $y = \tan x$ for $0 \leq x < \pi/2$. Calculate the area between the two curves.

43. Let Ω be the region bounded by the coordinate axes, the curve $y = 1/\sqrt{x}$, and the line $x = 1$. (a) Sketch Ω. (b) Show that Ω has finite area and find it. (c) Show that if Ω is revolved about the x-axis, the configuration obtained does not have finite volume.

44. Let Ω be the region between the curve $y = 1/(1+x^2)$ and the x-axis, $x \geq 0$. (a) Sketch Ω. (b) Find the area of Ω. (c) Find the volume obtained by revolving Ω about the x-axis. (d) Find the volume obtained by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

45. Let Ω be the region bounded by the curve $y = e^{-x}$ and the x-axis, $x \geq 0$. (a) Sketch Ω. (b) Find the area of Ω. (c) Find the volume obtained by revolving Ω about the x-axis. (d) Find the volume obtained by revolving Ω about the y-axis. (e) Find the surface area of the configuration in part (c).

46. What point would you call the centroid of the region in Exercise 45? Does Pappus's theorem work in this instance?

47. Let Ω be the region bounded by the curve $y = e^{-x^2}$ and the x-axis, $x \geq 0$. (a) Show that Ω has finite area. (The area is $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\pi}$, as you will see in Chapter 17.) (b) Calculate the volume generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

48. Let Ω be the region bounded below by $y(x^2+1) = x$, above by $xy = 1$, and to the left by $x = 1$. (a) Find the area of Ω. (b) Show that the configuration obtained by revolving Ω about the x-axis has finite volume. (c) Calculate the volume generated by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

49. Let Ω be the region bounded by the curve $y = x^{-1/4}$ and the x-axis, $0 < x \leq 1$. (a) Sketch Ω. (b) Find the area of Ω. (c) Find the volume obtained by revolving Ω about the x-axis. (d) Find the volume obtained by revolving Ω about the y-axis.

50. Prove the validity of comparison test (11.7.2).

Exercises 51–56. Use comparison test (11.7.2) to determine whether the integral converges.

51. $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^5}}\,dx.$ **52.** $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty 2^{-x^2}\,dx.$

53. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty (1+x^5)^{-1/6}\,dx.$ **54.** $\displaystyle\int_\pi^\infty \frac{\sin^2 2x}{x^2}\,dx.$

55. $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{\ln x}{x^2}\,dx.$ **56.** $\displaystyle\int_e^\infty \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x+1}\ln x}.$

57. (a) Show that

$$\int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{2x}{1+x^2}\,dx$$

diverges by showing that

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{2x}{1+x^2}\,dx$$

diverges.

(b) Then show that $\displaystyle\lim_{b\to\infty}\int_{-b}^b \frac{2x}{1+x^2}\,dx = 0.$

58. Show that

(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-\infty}^\infty \sin x\,dx$ diverges

although

(b) $\displaystyle\lim_{b\to\infty}\int_{-b}^b \sin x\,dx = 0.$

59. Calculate the arc distance from the origin to the point $(x(\theta_1), y(\theta_1))$ along the exponential spiral $r = ae^{c\theta}$. (Take $a > 0$, $c > 0$.)

60. The function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-\infty}^x e^{-t^2/2}\,dt$$

is important in statistics. Prove that the integral on the right converges for all real x.

Exercises 61–64: *Laplace transforms*. Let f be continuous on $[0, \infty)$. The *Laplace transform* of f is the function F defined by setting

$$F(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} f(x)\,dx.$$

The domain of F is the set of numbers s for which the improper integral converges. Find the Laplace transform F of each of the following functions specifying the domain of F.

61. $f(x) = 1$.

62. $f(x) = x$.

63. $f(x) = \cos 2x$.

64. $f(x) = e^{ax}$.

Exercises 65–68: *Probability density functions*. A nonnegative function f defined on $(-\infty, \infty)$ is called a *probability density function* if

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)\,dx = 1.$$

65. Show that the function f defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 6x/(1+3x^2)^2, & x \geq 0 \\ 0, & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

is a probability density function.

66. Let $k > 0$. Show that the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} ke^{-kx}, & x \geq 0 \\ 0, & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

is a probability density function. It is called the *exponential density function*.

67. The *mean* of a probability density function f is defined as the number

$$\mu = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x)\,dx.$$

Calculate the mean for the exponential density function.

68. The *standard deviation* of a probability density function f is defined as the number

$$\sigma = \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x-\mu)^2 f(x)\,dx\right]^{1/2}$$

where μ is the mean. Calculate the standard deviation for the exponential density function.

69. (*Useful later*) Let f be a continuous, positive, decreasing function defined on $[1, \infty)$. Show that

$$\int_1^{\infty} f(x)\,dx$$

converges iff the sequence

$$a_n = \int_1^n f(x)\,dx$$

converges.

■ CHAPTER 11. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–6. Find the least upper bound (if it exists) and the greatest lower bound (if it exists).

1. $\{x : |x-2| \leq 3\}$.

2. $\{x : x^2 > 3\}$.

3. $\{x : x^2 - x - 2 \leq 0\}$.

4. $\{x : \cos x \leq 1\}$.

5. $\{x : e^{-x^2} \leq 2\}$.

6. $\{x : \ln x < e\}$.

Exercises 7–12. Determine the boundedness and monotonicity of the sequence with a_n as indicated.

7. $\dfrac{2n}{3n+1}$.

8. $\dfrac{n^2-1}{n}$.

9. $1 + \dfrac{(-1)^n}{n}$.

10. $\dfrac{4^n}{1+4^n}$.

11. $\dfrac{2^n}{n^2}$.

12. $\dfrac{\sin(n\pi/2)}{n^2}$.

Exercises 13–26. State whether the sequence converges and if it does, find the limit.

13. $n\, 2^{1/n}$.

14. $\dfrac{(n+1)(n+2)}{(n+3)(n+4)}$.

15. $\left(\dfrac{n}{1+n}\right)^{1/n}$.

16. $\dfrac{4n^2+5n+1}{n^3+1}$.

17. $\cos(\pi/n)\sin(\pi/n)$.

18. $\left(2 + \dfrac{1}{n}\right)^n$.

19. $\left[\ln\left(1+\dfrac{1}{n}\right)\right]^n$.

20. $3\ln 2n - \ln(n^3+1)$.

21. $\dfrac{3n^2-1}{\sqrt{4n^4+2n^2+3}}$.

22. $\dfrac{\sqrt[3]{n^2+4}}{2n+1}$.

23. $(\pi/n)\cos(\pi/n)$.

24. $(n/\pi)\sin(n\pi)$.

25. $\displaystyle\int_n^{n+1} e^{-x}\,dx$.

26. $\displaystyle\int_1^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$.

27. Show that, if $a_n \to L$, then $a_{n+1} \to L$.

28. Suppose that the sequence a_n converges to L. Define the sequence m_n by

$$m_n = \frac{a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n}{n}.$$

Prove that $m_n \to L$.

29. Choose any real number a and form the sequence

$$\cos a, \cos(\cos a), \cos(\cos(\cos a)), \cdots.$$

Convince yourself numerically that this sequence converges to some number L. Determine L and verify that $\cos L = L$. (This is an effective numerical method for solving the equation $\cos x = x$.)

30. Find a numerical solution to the equation $\sin(\cos x) = x$. HINT: Use the method of Exercise 31.

Exercises 31–40. Calculate.

31. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{5x + 2\ln x}{x + 3\ln x}$.

32. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{\tan 2x}$.

33. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\ln(\cos x)}{x^2}$.

34. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1} x^{1/(x-1)}$.

35. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \left(1 + \frac{4}{x}\right)^{2x}$.

36. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^{2x} - e^{-2x}}{\sin x}$.

37. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} x^2 \ln x$.

38. $\lim_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{(10)^x}{x^{10}}$.

39. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{e^x + e^{-x} - x^2 - 2}{\sin^2 x - x^2}$.

40. $\lim_{x\to 1} \csc(\pi x)\ln x$.

41. Calculate $\lim_{x\to\infty} xe^{-x^2}\displaystyle\int_0^x e^{x^2}\,dx$.

42. Let n be a positive integer. Calculate $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{e^{-1/x^2}}{x^n}$.

Exercises 43–50. Determine whether the integral converges and, if so, evaluate the integral.

43. $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{e^{-\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$.

44. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx$.

45. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \frac{1}{1-x^2}\,dx$.

46. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \sec x\,dx$.

47. $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty \frac{\sin(\pi/x)}{x^2}\,dx$.

48. $\displaystyle\int_0^9 \frac{1}{(x-1)^{2/3}}\,dx$.

49. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{e^x + e^{-x}}\,dx$.

50. $\displaystyle\int_2^\infty \frac{1}{x(\ln x)^k}\,dx$.

51. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^a \ln(1/x)\,dx$ for $a > 0$.

52. Find the length of the curve $y = (a^{2/3} - x^{2/3})^{3/2}$ from $x = 0$ to $x = a$, $a > 0$.

53. Let S and T be nonempty sets of real numbers which are bounded above. Let $S + T$ be the set defined by

$$S + T = \{x + y : x \in S \text{ and } y \in T\}.$$

Prove that $\text{lub}\,(S + T) = \text{lub}\,S + \text{lub}\,T$.

54. Let S be a nonempty set which is bounded below. Let $B = \{b : b$ is a lower bound of $S\}$. Show that (a) B is nonempty; (b) B is bounded above; (c) $\text{lub}\,B = \text{glb}\,S$.

55. Let f be a function continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$ and L a real number.

(a) Show that

$$\text{if} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)\,dx = L \quad \text{then} \quad \lim_{c\to\infty}\int_{-c}^{c} f(x)\,dx = L.$$

(b) Find an example which shows that the converse of (a) is false.

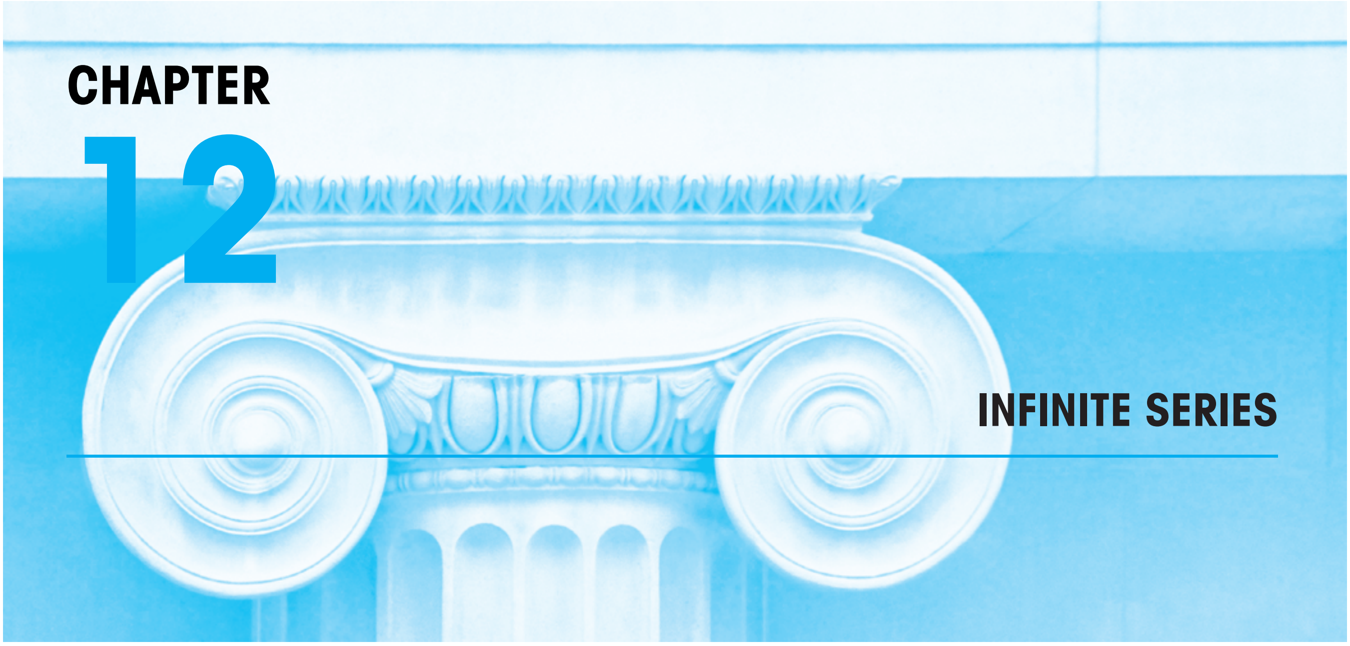
56. Show that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)\,dx = L \quad \text{iff} \quad \lim_{c\to\infty}\int_{-c}^{c} f(x)\,dx = L.$$

in the event that f is (a) nonnegative or (b) even.

57. In general the least upper bound of a set of numbers need not be in the set. Show that the least upper bound of a set of integers must be in the set.

58. Let f be a function continuous on $[a,b]$. As usual, denote by $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ the upper and lower sums that correspond to the partition P. What is the least upper bound of all $L_f(P)$? What is the greatest lower bound of all $U_f(P)$?



CHAPTER 12 INFINITE SERIES

Mathematics was not invented overnight. Some of the most fruitful mathematical ideas have their origin in ancient times.

Some 500 years before the birth of Christ, a self-taught country boy, Zeno of Elea, invented four paradoxes that rocked the intellectual establishment of his day. Here is one of Zeno's paradoxes clothed in modern terminology.

Suppose that a particle moves along a coordinate line at constant speed. Suppose that it starts at $x = 1$ and heads toward the point $x = 0$. If the particle reaches the halfway mark $x = \frac{1}{2}$ in t seconds, then it will reach the point $x = \frac{1}{4}$ in $t + \frac{1}{2}t$ seconds, the point $x = \frac{1}{8}$ in $t + \frac{1}{2}t + \frac{1}{4}t$ seconds, and so on. More generally, it will reach the point $x = \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}$ in

$$t + \tfrac{1}{2}t + \tfrac{1}{4}t + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{2^n}t \qquad \text{seconds.}$$

This line of reasoning suggests that the particle cannot reach $x = 0$ until it has traveled through the sum of an infinite number of little time segments:

$$t + \tfrac{1}{2}t + \tfrac{1}{4}t + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{2^n}t + \cdots \qquad \text{seconds.}$$

But what sense does this make? Even if we were very swift of mind and could add at the rate of one term per nanosecond, we would still never finish. An infinite number of nanoseconds is still an infinity of time, and that is more time than we have.

Mathematicians sidestep paradoxes of this sort by using infinite series. Before we begin the study of infinite series, we introduce some notation.

12.1 SIGMA NOTATION

We can indicate the sequence

$$1, \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{1}{4}, \tfrac{1}{8}, \tfrac{1}{16}, \cdots$$

by setting $a_n = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1}$ and writing

$$a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, \cdots.$$

We can indicate that same sequence beginning with index 0: set $b_n = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n$ and write

$$b_0, b_1, b_2, b_3, b_4, \cdots.$$

More generally, we can set $c_n = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-p}$ and write

$$c_p, c_{p+1}, c_{p+2}, c_{p+3}, c_{p+4}, \cdots.$$

We have the same sequence but have begun with index p. We will often begin with an index other than 1.

The symbol $\sum$ is the capital Greek letter "sigma." We write

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k \tag{1}$$

("the sum of the a_k from k equals 0 to k equals n") to indicate the sum

$$a_0 + a_1 + \cdots + a_n.$$

More generally, for $n \geq m$, we write

$$\sum_{k=m}^{n} a_k \tag{2}$$

to indicate the sum

$$a_m + a_{m+1} + \cdots + a_n.$$

In (1) and (2) the letter "k" is being used as a "dummy" variable; namely, it can be replaced by any other letter not already engaged. For instance,

$$\sum_{i=3}^{7} a_i, \qquad \sum_{j=3}^{7} a_j, \qquad \sum_{k=3}^{7} a_k$$

all mean the same thing:

$$a_3 + a_4 + a_5 + a_6 + a_7.$$

You know that

$$\begin{aligned}
&(a_0 + \cdots + a_n) + (b_0 + \cdots + b_n) = (a_0 + b_0) + \cdots + (a_n + b_n),\\
&\alpha(a_0 + \cdots + a_n) = \alpha a_0 + \cdots + \alpha a_n,\\
&(a_0 + \cdots + a_m) + (a_{m+1} + \cdots + a_n) = a_0 + \cdots + a_n.
\end{aligned}$$

We can make these statements in $\sum$ notation by writing

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k + \sum_{k=0}^{n} b_k = \sum_{k=0}^{n} (a_k + b_k),$$

$$\alpha \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \alpha\, a_k,$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{m} a_k + \sum_{k=m+1}^{n} a_k = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k.$$

At times we'll find it convenient to change indices. Observe that

$$\sum_{k=j}^{n} a_k = \sum_{i=0}^{n-j} a_{i+j}. \qquad \text{(Set } i = k - j.\text{)}$$

You can learn to master this notation by doing the Exercises at the end of the section. First, one more remark. If all the a_k are equal to some fixed number r, then

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k \qquad \text{can be written} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{n} r.$$

Obviously,

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} r = \overbrace{r + r + \cdots + r}^{n+1} = (n+1)r.$$

In particular,

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} 1 = n + 1.$$

EXERCISES 12.1

Exercises 1–10. Evaluate.

1. $\sum_{k=0}^{2}(3k+1)$.

2. $\sum_{k=1}^{4}(3k-1)$.

3. $\sum_{k=0}^{3} 2^k$.

4. $\sum_{k=1}^{4} \dfrac{1}{2^k}$.

5. $\sum_{k=0}^{3}(-1)^k 2^k$.

6. $\sum_{k=0}^{3}(-1)^k 2^{k+1}$.

7. $\sum_{k=2}^{4} \dfrac{1}{3^{k-1}}$.

8. $\sum_{k=3}^{5} \dfrac{(-1)^k}{k!}$.

9. $\sum_{k=0}^{3} \left(\dfrac{1}{2}\right)^{2k}$.

10. $\sum_{k=0}^{3}(-1)^k \left(\dfrac{1}{2}\right)^{2k}$.

Exercises 11–16. Express in sigma notation.

11. $1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + \cdots + 21$.

12. $1 - 3 + 5 - 7 + \cdots - 19$.

13. $1 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 4 + \cdots + 35 \cdot 36$.

14. The lower sum $m_1 \Delta x_1 + m_2 \Delta x_2 + \cdots + m_n \Delta x_n$.

15. The upper sum $M_1 \Delta x_1 + M_2 \Delta x_2 + \cdots + M_n \Delta x_n$.

16. The Riemann sum $f(x_1^*)\Delta x_1 + f(x_2^*)\Delta x_2 + \cdots + f(x_n^*)\Delta x_n$.

Exercises 17–20. Write the given sums as $\sum_{k=3}^{10} a_k$ and as $\sum_{i=0}^{7} a_{i+3}$.

17. $\dfrac{1}{2^3} + \dfrac{1}{2^4} + \cdots + \dfrac{1}{2^{10}}$.

18. $\dfrac{3^3}{3!} + \dfrac{4^4}{4!} + \cdots + \dfrac{10^{10}}{10!}$.

19. $\dfrac{3}{4} - \dfrac{4}{5} + \cdots - \dfrac{10}{11}$.

20. $\dfrac{1}{3} + \dfrac{1}{5} + \dfrac{1}{7} + \cdots + \dfrac{1}{17}$.

Exercises 21–24. Transform the first expression into the second by a change of indices.

21. $\sum_{k=2}^{10} \dfrac{k}{k^2+1}$; $\quad \sum_{n=-1}^{7} \dfrac{n+3}{n^2+6n+10}$.

22. $\sum_{n=2}^{12} \dfrac{(-1)^n}{n-1}$; $\quad \sum_{k=1}^{11} \dfrac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}$.

23. $\sum_{k=4}^{25} \dfrac{1}{k^2-9}$; $\quad \sum_{n=7}^{28} \dfrac{1}{n^2-6n}$.

24. $\sum_{k=0}^{15} \dfrac{3^{2k}}{k!}$; $\quad 81 \sum_{n=-2}^{13} \dfrac{3^{2n}}{(n+2)!}$.

25. Express the decimal fraction $0.a_1a_2 \cdots a_n$ in sigma notation using powers of 1/10.

26. Show that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{k}} \geq \sqrt{n}$.

Exercises 27–30. Use a graphing utility or CAS to evaluate the sum.

27. $\sum_{k=0}^{50} \dfrac{1}{4^k}$.

28. $\sum_{k=1}^{50} \dfrac{1}{k^2}$.

29. $\sum_{k=0}^{50} \dfrac{1}{k!}$.

30. $\sum_{k=0}^{50} \left(\dfrac{2}{3}\right)^k$.

■ 12.2 INFINITE SERIES

While it is possible to add two numbers, three numbers, a hundred numbers, or even a million numbers, it is impossible to add an infinite number of numbers. The theory of *infinite series* arose from attempts to circumvent this impossibility.

Introduction; Definition

To form an infinite series, we begin with an infinite sequence of real numbers: $a_0, a_1, a_2 \cdots$. We can't form the sum of all the a_k (there are an infinite number of them), but we can form the *partial sums*:

$$s_0 = a_0 = \sum_{k=0}^{0} a_k,$$

$$s_1 = a_0 + a_1 = \sum_{k=0}^{1} a_k,$$

$$s_2 = a_0 + a_1 + a_2 = \sum_{k=0}^{2} a_k,$$

$$s_3 = a_0 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 = \sum_{k=0}^{3} a_k,$$

$$s_n = a_0 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \cdots + a_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k,$$

and so on.

DEFINITION 12.2.1

If, as $n \to \infty$, the sequence of partial sums

$$s_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k$$

tends to a finite limit L, we write

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k = L$$

and say that

$$\text{the series} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \qquad \textit{converges to } L.$$

We call L the *sum* of the series. If the sequence of partial sums diverges, we say that

$$\text{the series} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \qquad \textit{diverges.}$$

Remark NOTE: *The sum of a series is not a sum in the ordinary sense. It is a limit.* ❑

Here are some examples.

Example 1 We begin with the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)}.$$

To determine whether this series converges, we examine the partial sums.

Since

$$\frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)} = \frac{1}{k+1} - \frac{1}{k+2},$$

you can see that

$$\begin{aligned} s_n &= \frac{1}{1\cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2\cdot 3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n(n+1)} + \frac{1}{(n+1)(n+2)} \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3}\right) + \cdots + \left(\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{n+2}\right) \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{n+2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since all but the first and last terms occur in pairs with opposite signs, the sum "telescopes" to give

$$s_n = 1 - \frac{1}{n+2}.$$

As $n \to \infty$, $s_n \to 1$. This indicates that the series converges to 1:

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+2)} = 1. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 The series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} 2^k$$

illustrate two forms of divergence: *bounded divergence, unbounded divergence*.

For the first series,

$$s_n = 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + \cdots + (-1)^n.$$

Here

$$s_n = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \\ 0, & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

The sequence of partial sums reduces to $1, 0, 1, 0, \cdots$. Since the sequence diverges, the series diverges. This is an example of bounded divergence.

For the second series,

$$s_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} 2^k = 1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n.$$

Since $s_n > 2^n$, the sum tends to ∞, and the series diverges. This is an example of unbounded divergence. ❑

The Geometric Series

The *geometric progression*

$$1, x, x^2, x^3, \cdots$$

gives rise to the numbers

$$1, \quad 1 + x, \quad 1 + x + x^2, \quad 1 + x + x^2 + x^3, \cdots.$$

These numbers are the partial sums of what is called the *geometric series*:

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k.$$

This series is so important that we will give it special attention.

The following result is fundamental:

(12.2.2)

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{(i)} & \text{If} \quad |x| < 1, & \text{then} & \displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k = \frac{1}{1-x}. \\ \text{(ii)} & \text{If} \quad |x| \geq 1, & \text{then} & \displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k \text{ diverges.} \end{array}$$

PROOF The *n*th partial sum of the geometric series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} x^k$$

takes the form

(1) $$s_n = 1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^n.$$

Multiplication by x gives

$$xs_n = x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{n+1}.$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first, we have

$$(1-x)s_n = 1 - x^{n+1}.$$

For $x \neq 1$, this gives

(2) $$s_n = \frac{1 - x^{n+1}}{1-x}.$$

If $|x| < 1$, then $x^{n+1} \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ and thus [by (2)]

$$s_n \to \frac{1}{1-x}.$$

This proves (i).

Now we prove (ii). If $x = 1$, then [by (1)] $s_n = n + 1 \to \infty$ and the series diverges. If $x = -1$, then [by (1)] s_n alternates between 1 and 0 and the series diverges. If $|x| > 1$, then x^{n+1} diverges and [by (2)] the sequence of partial sums also diverges. Thus the series diverges. ❑

Setting $x = \frac{1}{2}$ in (12.2.2), we have

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{2^k} = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = 2.$$

By beginning the summation at $k = 1$ instead of at $k = 0$, we drop the term $1/2^0 = 1$ and obtain

(12.2.3)

$$\boxed{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^k} = 1.}$$

(This result is so useful that it should be committed to memory.) The partial sums of this series

$$\begin{aligned}
s_1 &= \tfrac{1}{2}\\
s_2 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} = \tfrac{3}{4}\\
s_3 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} = \tfrac{7}{8}\\
s_4 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{16} = \tfrac{15}{16}\\
s_5 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \tfrac{1}{8} + \tfrac{1}{16} + \tfrac{1}{32} = \tfrac{31}{32}
\end{aligned}$$

and so on

are illustrated in Figure 12.2.1. After s_1, each new partial sum lies halfway between the previous partial sum and the number 1.

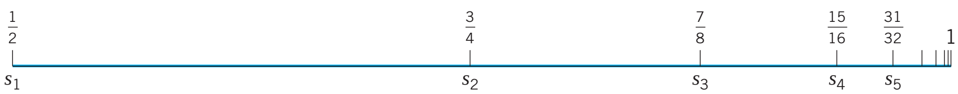


Figure 12.2.1

The convergence of the geometric series at $x = \frac{1}{10}$ gives us one more way to assign precise meaning to infinite decimals. (We have briefly dealt with this matter before.) Begin with the fact that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{10^k} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^k = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{10}} = \frac{10}{9}.$$

This gives

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{10^k} = \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{10^k}\right) - 1 = \frac{1}{9}$$

and shows that the partial sums

$$s_n = \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{10^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{10^n}$$

are all less than $\frac{1}{9}$. Now take a series of the form

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{10^k} \qquad \text{with} \qquad a_k = 0, \text{ or } 1, \cdots, \text{or } 9.$$

Its partial sums

$$t_n = \frac{a_1}{10} + \frac{a_2}{10^2} + \cdots + \frac{a_n}{10^n}$$

are all less than 1:

$$t_n = \frac{a_1}{10} + \frac{a_2}{10^2} + \cdots + \frac{a_n}{10^n} \le 9\left(\frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{10^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{10^n}\right) = 9s_n < 9\left(\frac{1}{9}\right) = 1.$$

Since the sequence of partial sums is nondecreasing and is bounded above, it is convergent. (Theorem 11.2.6.) This tells us that the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{10^k}$$

is convergent. The sum of this series is what we mean by the infinite decimal

$$0.a_1a_2a_3\cdots a_n\cdots.$$

Example 3 A ball dropped from height h hits the floor and rebounds to a height proportional to h, that is, to a height σh with $\sigma < 1$. It then falls from height σh, hits the floor and rebounds to the height $\sigma(\sigma h) = \sigma^2 h$, and so on. Find the length of the path of the ball.

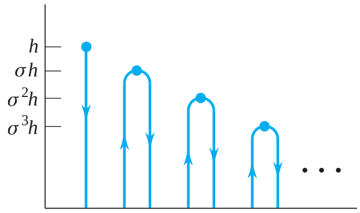


Figure 12.2.2

SOLUTION The motion of the ball is illustrated in Figure 12.2.2. The length of the path, call it s, is the sum of the series

$$\begin{aligned} s &= h + 2\sigma h + 2\sigma^2 h + 2\sigma^3 h + \cdots \\ &= h + 2\sigma h[1 + \sigma + \sigma^2 + \cdots] = h + 2\sigma h \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sigma^k. \end{aligned}$$

The series in σ is a geometric series which, since $|\sigma| < 1$, converges to $1/(1-\sigma)$. Therefore

$$s = h + 2\sigma h \frac{1}{1-\sigma}.$$

If h is 6 feet and $\sigma = \frac{2}{3}$, then

$$s = 6 + 2\left(\tfrac{2}{3}\right)6\frac{1}{1-\frac{2}{3}} = 6 + 24 = 30 \text{ feet.}^{\dagger} \quad ❏$$

We will return to the geometric series later. Right now we turn our attention to series in general.

Some Basic Results

THEOREM 12.2.4

1. If $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ converges and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k$ converges, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (a_k + b_k)$ converges.

   Moreover, if $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k = L$ and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b_k = M$, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (a_k + b_k) = L + M$.

2. If $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ converges, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha\, a_k$ converges for each real number α.

   Moreover, if $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k = L$, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha\, a_k = \alpha\, L$.

PROOF Let

$$s_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k, \qquad t_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} b_k, \qquad u_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} (a_k + b_k), \qquad v_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \alpha\, a_k.$$

Note that

$$u_n = s_n + t_n \qquad \text{and} \qquad v_n = \alpha\, s_n.$$

---

†Of course, this is an idealization of what happens in practice. In the world we live in, balls do not keep bouncing forever. Friction dampens the action.

If $s_n \to L$ and $t_n \to M$, then

$$u_n \to L + M \qquad \text{and} \qquad v_n \to \alpha L. \quad \square$$

THEOREM 12.2.5

The *kth term* of a convergent series tends to 0; namely,

$$\text{if} \quad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{converges,} \quad \text{then} \quad a_k \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad k \to \infty.$$

PROOF Suppose that the series converges. Then the partial sums tend to some number L:

$$s_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k \to L.$$

Only one step behind, the s_{n-1} also tend to L: $s_{n-1} \to L$. Since $a_n = s_n - s_{n-1}$, we have $a_n \to L - L = 0$. A change in notation gives $a_k \to 0$. $\square$

(12.2.6)
$$\boxed{\text{if} \quad a_k \not\to 0 \quad \text{then} \quad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{diverges.}}$$

This is a very useful observation.

Example 4

(a) As $k \to \infty$, $\dfrac{k}{k+1} \to 1$. Since $\dfrac{k}{k+1} \not\to 0$, the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{k}{k+1} = 0 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{3} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{4}{5} + \cdots \qquad \text{diverges.}$$

(b) Since $\sin k \not\to 0$ as $k \to \infty$, the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sin k = \sin 0 + \sin 1 + \sin 2 + \sin 3 + \cdots \qquad \text{diverges.} \quad \square$$

CAUTION Theorem 12.2.5 does *not* say that, if $a_k \to 0$, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ converges. There are divergent series for which $a_k \to 0$. (One such series appears in Example 5.) $\square$

Example 5

The kth term of the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{4}} + \cdots$$

tends to zero:

$$a_k = \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} \to 0 \qquad \text{as} \qquad k \to \infty.$$

However, the series diverges:

$$s_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \geq \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}}_{n \text{ terms}} = \frac{n}{\sqrt{n}} = \sqrt{n} \to \infty. \quad \square$$

Back for a moment to Zeno's paradox. Since the particle moves at constant speed and reaches the halfway point in t seconds, it is expected to reach its destination in $2t$ seconds. The series with partial sums

$$s_n = t + \tfrac{1}{2}t + \tfrac{1}{4}t + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{2^n}t = \left(1 + \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{4} + \cdots + \tfrac{1}{2^n}\right)t$$

does converge to $2t$.

EXERCISES 12.2

Exercises 1–10. Find the sum of the series.

1. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2k(k+1)}$.

2. $\sum_{k=3}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2 - k}$.

3. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k+3)}$.

4. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)(k+3)}$.

5. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{3}{10^k}$.

6. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{5^k}$.

7. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1-2^k}{3^k}$.

8. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{k+3}}$.

9. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^{k+3}}{3^k}$.

10. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{3^{k-1}}{4^{3k+1}}$.

11. Use series to show that every repeating decimal fraction represents a rational number (the quotient of two integers).

12. (a) Let j be a positive integer. Show that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad \sum_{k=j}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{converges.}$$

(b) Show that if $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k = L$, then $\sum_{k=j}^{\infty} a_k = L - \sum_{k=0}^{j-1} a_k$.

(c) Show that if $\sum_{k=j}^{\infty} a_k = M$, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k = M + \sum_{k=0}^{j-1} a_k$.

Exercises 13–14. Derive the indicated result by appealing to the geometric series.

13. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k x^k = \frac{1}{1+x}, \quad |x| < 1.$

14. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k x^{2k} = \frac{1}{1+x^2}, \quad |x| < 1.$

Exercises 15–18. Find a series expansion for the expression.

15. $\frac{x}{1-x}$ for $|x| < 1$.

16. $\frac{x}{1+x}$ for $|x| < 1$.

17. $\frac{x}{x+x^2}$ for $|x| < 1$.

18. $\frac{x}{1+4x^2}$ for $|x| < \frac{1}{2}$.

Exercises 19–22. Show that the series diverges.

19. $1 + \frac{3}{2} + \frac{9}{4} + \frac{27}{8} + \frac{81}{16} + \cdots$.

20. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-5)^k}{4^{k+1}}$.

21. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right)^k$.

22. $\sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{k^{k-2}}{3k}$.

23. Assume that a ball dropped to the floor rebounds to a height proportional to the height from which it was dropped. Find the total length of the path of a ball dropped from a height of 6 feet, given it rebounds initially to a height of 3 feet.

24. In the setting of Exercise 23, to what height does the ball rebound initially if the total length of the path of the ball is 21 feet?

25. How much money must you deposit at r% interest compounded annually to enable your descendants to withdraw n_1 dollars at the end of the first year, n_2 dollars at the end of the second year, n_3 dollars at the end of the third year, and so on in perpetuity? Assume that the set of n_k is bounded above, $n_k \leq N$ for all k, and express your answer as an infinite series.

26. Sum the series you obtained in Exercise 25, setting

(a) $r = 5$, $n_k = 5000\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{k-1}$.

(b) $r = 6$, $n_k = 1000(0.8)^{k+1}$.

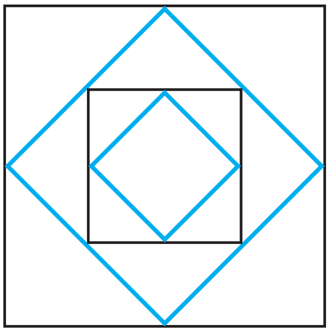
(c) $r = 5$, $n_k = N$.

27. Suppose that only 90% of the outstanding currency is recirculated into the economy: then 90% of that is spent, and so on. Under this hypothesis, what is the long-term economic value of a dollar?

28. Consider the following sequence of steps. First, take the unit interval $[0, 1]$ and delete the open interval $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$. Next, delete the two open intervals $(\frac{1}{9}, \frac{2}{9})$ and $(\frac{7}{9}, \frac{8}{9})$ from the two intervals that remain after the first step. For the third step, delete the middle thirds from the four intervals that remain after the second step. Continue on in this manner. What is the sum of the lengths of the intervals that have been deleted? The set

that remains after all of the "middle thirds" have been deleted is called the *Cantor middle third set*. Give some points that are in the Cantor set.

29. Start with a square that has sides four units long. Join the midpoints of the sides of the square to form a second square inside the first. Then join the midpoints of the sides of the second square to form a third square, and so on. See the figure. Find the sum of the areas of the squares.



30. (a) Show that if the series $\sum a_k$ converges and the series $\sum b_k$ diverges, then the series $\sum(a_k + b_k)$ diverges.
(b) Give examples to show that if $\sum a_k$ and $\sum b_k$ both diverge, then each of the series

$$\sum(a_k + b_k) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum(a_k - b_k)$$

may converge or may diverge.

31. Let $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ be a convergent series and let $R_n = \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} a_k$. Prove that $R_n \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$. Note that if s_n is the nth partial sum of the series, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k = s_n + R_n$; R_n is called the *remainder*.

32. (a) Prove that if $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ is a convergent series with all terms nonzero, then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(1/a_k)$ diverges.
(b) Suppose that $a_k > 0$ for all k and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$ diverges. Show by example that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(1/a_k)$ may converge and it may diverge.

33. Show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \ln\left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right) \quad \text{diverges}$$

although

$$\ln\left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right) \to 0.$$

34. Show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right)^k \quad \text{diverges.}$$

35. (a) Assume that $d_k \to 0$ and show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(d_k - d_{k+1}) = d_1.$$

(b) Sum the following series:

(i) $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sqrt{k+1} - \sqrt{k}}{\sqrt{k(k+1)}}$. (ii) $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2k+1}{2k^2(k+1)^2}$.

36. Show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} kx^{k-1} = \frac{1}{(1-x)^2} \qquad \text{for} \qquad |x| < 1.$$

HINT: Verify that s_n, the nth partial sum of the series, satisfies the identity

$$(1-x)^2 s_n = 1 - (n+1)x^n + nx^{n+1}.$$

C **(Exercises 37–40.** *Speed of convergence*) Find the least integer N for which the nth partial sum of the series differs from the sum of the series by less than 0.0001.

37. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4^k}$.

38. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (0.9)^k$.

39. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k+2)}$.

40. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^k$.

41. Start with the geometric series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k$ with $|x| < 1$ and a positive number ϵ. Determine the least positive integer N for which $|L - s_N| < \epsilon$ given that the sum of the series is L and s_N is the Nth partial sum.

42. Prove that the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(a_{k+1} - a_k)$ converges iff the a_n tend to a finite limit.

■ 12.3 THE INTEGRAL TEST; BASIC COMPARISON, LIMIT COMPARISON

Here we begin our study of *series with nonnegative terms*: $a_k \geq 0$ for all k. For such series the sequence of partial sums is nondecreasing:

$$s_{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} a_k = a_{n+1} + \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k \geq \sum_{k=0}^{n} a_k = s_n.$$

The following simple theorem is fundamental.

THEOREM 12.3.1

A series with nonnegative terms converges iff the sequence of partial sums is bounded.

PROOF Assume that the series converges. Then the sequence of partial sums is convergent and therefore bounded. (Theorem 11.3.4.)

Suppose now that the sequence of partial sums is bounded. Since the terms are nonnegative, the sequence is nondecreasing. By being bounded and nondecreasing, the sequence of partial sums converges. (Theorem 11.3.6.) This means that the series converges. ❑

The convergence or divergence of some series can be deduced from the convergence or divergence of a closely related improper integral.

THEOREM 12.3.2 THE INTEGRAL TEST

If f is continuous, positive, and decreasing on $[1, \infty)$, then

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f(k) \qquad \text{converges} \qquad \text{iff} \qquad \int_1^{\infty} f(x)\,dx \qquad \text{converges.}$$

PROOF In Exercise 69, Section 11.7, you were asked to show that if f is continuous, positive, and decreasing on $[1, \infty)$, then

$$\int_1^{\infty} f(x)\,dx \qquad \text{converges} \qquad \text{iff} \qquad \text{the sequence} \qquad a_n = \int_1^{n} f(x)\,dx \text{ converges.}$$

We assume this result and base our proof on the behavior of the sequence of integrals. To visualize our argument, see Figure 12.3.1.

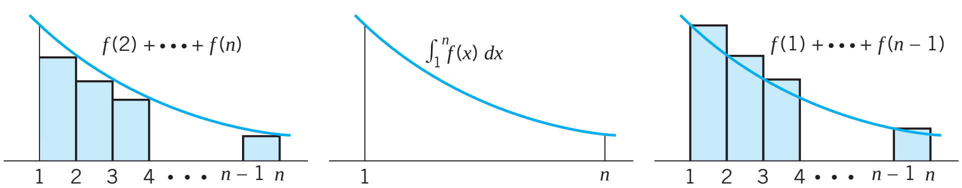


Figure 12.3.1

Let's suppose that f is continuous, positive, and decreasing on $[1, \infty)$. Since f decreases on the interval $[1, n]$,

$$f(2) + \cdots + f(n) \qquad \text{is a lower sum for } f \text{ on } [1, n],$$

and

$$f(1) + \cdots + f(n-1) \qquad \text{is an upper sum for } f \text{ on } [1, n].$$

Consequently,

$$f(2) + \cdots + f(n) \le \int_1^{n} f(x)\,dx \le f(1) + \cdots + f(n-1).$$

If the sequence of integrals converges, it is bounded. Then, by the left inequality, the sequence of partial sums is bounded and the series converges.

Suppose now that the sequence of integrals diverges. Since f is positive, the sequence of integrals increases:

$$\int_1^n f(x)\,dx < \int_1^{n+1} f(x)\,dx.$$

Since this sequence diverges, it must be unbounded. Then, by the right inequality, the sequence of partial sums is unbounded and the series diverges. ❑

Applying the Integral Test

Example 1 (*The harmonic series*)

(12.3.3)
$$\boxed{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots \qquad \text{diverges.}}$$

PROOF The function $f(x) = 1/x$ is continuous, positive, and decreasing on $[1, \infty)$. We know that

$$\int_1^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x} \qquad \text{diverges.} \tag{11.7.1}$$

By the integral test,

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k} \qquad \text{diverges.}$$ ❑

The next example generalizes on this.

Example 2 (*The p-series*)

(12.3.4)
$$\boxed{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^p} = 1 + \frac{1}{2^p} + \frac{1}{3^p} + \frac{1}{4^p} + \cdots \qquad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad p > 1.}$$

PROOF If $p \leq 0$, then the terms of the series are all greater than or equal to 1. Therefore, the terms do not tend to zero and the series cannot converge. We assume therefore that $p > 0$. The function $f(x) = 1/x^p$ is then continuous, positive, and decreasing on $[1, \infty)$. Thus, by the integral test,

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^p} \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad \int_1^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^p} \quad \text{converges.}$$

Earlier you saw that

$$\int_1^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^p} \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad p > 1. \tag{11.7.1}$$

It follows that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^p} \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad p > 1. \quad \square$$

Example 3 Show that the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k \ln(k+1)} = \frac{1}{\ln 2} + \frac{1}{2 \ln 3} + \frac{1}{3 \ln 4} + \cdots \qquad \text{diverges.}$$

SOLUTION We begin by setting $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x \ln(x+1)}$. Since f is continuous, positive, and decreasing on $[1, \infty)$, we can use the integral test. Note first that for all $x \in [1, \infty)$

$$\frac{1}{x \ln(x+1)} > \frac{1}{(x+1) \ln(x+1)}.$$

Therefore

$$\int_1^b \frac{1}{x \ln(x+1)}\,dx > \int_1^b \frac{1}{(x+1)\ln(x+1)}\,dx = \Big[\ln[\ln(x+1)]\Big]_1^b$$
$$= \ln[\ln(b+1)] - \ln[\ln 2].$$

As $b \to \infty$, $\ln[\ln(b+1)] \to \infty$. This shows that

$$\int_1^{\infty} \frac{1}{x \ln(x+1)}\,dx$$

diverges. Therefore the series diverges. $\square$

Remark on Notation You have seen that for each $j \geq 0$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad \sum_{k=j}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{converges.}$$

(Exercise 12, Section 12.2.) This tells us that in deciding whether a series converges, it does not matter where we begin the summation. Where detailed indexing would contribute nothing, we will omit it and write $\sum a_k$ without specifying where the summation begins.

For instance, it makes sense to say that

$$\sum \frac{1}{k^2} \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{and} \quad \sum \frac{1}{k} \quad \text{diverges}$$

without specifying where the summation begins. $\square$

In the absence of detailed indexing, we cannot know definite limits, but we can be sure of the following:

(12.3.5)

(1) if $\sum a_k$ and $\sum b_k$ converge, then $\sum a_k + b_k$ converges;

(2) for each $\alpha \neq 0$

$$\sum \alpha a_k \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad \sum a_k \quad \text{converges}$$

and, equivalently,

$$\sum \alpha a_k \quad \text{diverges} \quad \text{iff} \quad \sum a_k \quad \text{diverges.}$$

The convergence or divergence of a series with nonnegative terms can often be determined by comparison with a series of known behavior.

THEOREM 12.3.6 THE BASIC COMPARISON THEOREM

Suppose that $\sum a_k$ and $\sum b_k$ are series with nonnegative terms and

$$\sum a_k \le \sum b_k \qquad \text{for all } k \text{ sufficiently large.}$$

(i) If $\sum b_k$ converges, then $\sum a_k$ converges

(ii) If $\sum a_k$ diverges, then $\sum b_k$ diverges.

PROOF The proof is just a matter of noting that, in the first case, the partial sums of $\sum a_k$ form a bounded increasing sequence and, in the second case, they form an unbounded increasing sequence. ❑

Applying the Basic Comparison Theorem

Example 4

(a) $\sum \dfrac{1}{2k^3+1}$ converges by comparison with $\sum \dfrac{1}{k^3}$:

$$\frac{1}{2k^3+1} < \frac{1}{k^3} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum \frac{1}{k^3} \qquad \text{converges.}$$

(b) $\sum \dfrac{k^3}{k^5+5k^4+7}$ converges by comparison with $\sum \dfrac{1}{k^2}$:

$$\frac{k^3}{k^5+5k^4+7} < \frac{k^3}{k^5} = \frac{1}{k^2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum \frac{1}{k^2} \qquad \text{converges.}$$ ❑

Example 5 Show that $\sum \dfrac{1}{3k+1}$ diverges.

SOLUTION Since

$$\frac{1}{4k} = \frac{1}{3k+k} < \frac{1}{3k+1},$$

all we have to do is show that

$$\sum \frac{1}{4k} \qquad \text{diverges.}$$

This follows by (12.3.5) from the divergence of

$$\sum \frac{1}{k}.$$ ❑

Example 6 Show that $\sum \dfrac{1}{\ln(k+6)}$ diverges.

SOLUTION Since the graph of $y = \ln x$ stays below the line $y = x$, we know that, for all real x, $\ln x < x$. It follows that, for all k sufficiently large,

$$\ln(k+6) < \ln(2k) < 2k$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2k} < \frac{1}{\ln(k+6)}.$$

Since $\sum 1/k$ diverges, $\sum 1/2k$ diverges. This tells us that the original series diverges. ❑

When direct comparison is difficult to apply, the following test can be useful.

THEOREM 12.3.7 THE LIMIT COMPARISON THEOREM

Let $\sum a_k$ and $\sum b_k$ be series with *positive terms*. If $a_k/b_k \to L$, and L is *positive*, then

$$\sum a_k \quad \text{converges} \quad \text{iff} \quad \sum b_k \quad \text{converges.}$$

PROOF Choose ϵ between 0 and L. Since $a_k/b_k \to L$, we know that for all k sufficiently large (for all k greater than some k_0)

$$\left|\frac{a_k}{b_k} - L\right| < \epsilon.$$

For such k we have

$$L - \epsilon < \frac{a_k}{b_k} < L + \epsilon,$$

and thus

$$(L-\epsilon)b_k < a_k < (L+\epsilon)b_k.$$

This last inequality is what we need:

if $\sum a_k$ converges, then $\sum (L-\epsilon)b_k$ converges, and thus $\sum b_k$ converges;

if $\sum b_k$ converges, then $\sum (L+\epsilon)b_k$ converges, and thus $\sum a_k$ converges. ❑

Applying the Limit Comparison Theorem

To apply the limit comparison theorem to a series $\sum a_k$, we must find a series $\sum b_k$ of known behavior for which a_k/b_k converges to a positive number.

Example 7 Determine whether the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{5^k - 3}$$

converges or diverges.

SOLUTION For large k

$$\frac{1}{5^k - 3} \qquad \text{differs little from} \qquad \frac{1}{5^k}.$$

As $k \to \infty$,

$$\frac{1}{5^k - 3} \div \frac{1}{5^k} = \frac{5^k}{5^k - 3} = \frac{1}{1 - 3/5^k} \to 1.$$

Since

$$\sum \frac{1}{5^k} \qquad \text{converges,}$$

(it is a convergent geometric series), the original series converges. ❑

Example 8 Determine whether the series

$$\sum \frac{3k^2 + 2k + 1}{k^3 + 1}$$

converges or diverges.

SOLUTION For large k the terms with the highest powers of k dominate. Here $3k^2$ dominates the numerator and k^3 dominates the denominator. Thus, for large k,

$$\frac{3k^2 + 2k + 1}{k^3 + 1} \qquad \text{differs little from} \qquad \frac{3k^2}{k^3} = \frac{3}{k}.$$

As $k \to \infty$,

$$\frac{3k^2 + 2k + 1}{k^3 + 1} \div \frac{3}{k} = \frac{3k^3 + 2k^2 + k}{3k^3 + 3} = \frac{1 + 2/(3k) + 1/(3k^2)}{1 + 1/k^3} \to 1.$$

Since

$$\sum \frac{1}{k} \quad \text{diverges,} \qquad \sum \frac{3}{k} \quad \text{diverges.}$$

It follows that the original series diverges. ❑

Example 9 Determine whether the series

$$\sum \frac{2k + 5}{\sqrt{k^6 + 3k^3}}$$

converges or diverges.

SOLUTION For large k, $2k$ dominates the numerator and $\sqrt{k^6} = k^3$ dominates the denominator. Thus, for such k,

$$\frac{2k + 5}{\sqrt{k^6 + 3k^3}} \qquad \text{differs little from} \qquad \frac{2k}{\sqrt{k^6}} = \frac{2k}{k^3} = \frac{2}{k^2}.$$

As $k \to \infty$,

$$\frac{2k + 5}{\sqrt{k^6 + 3k^3}} \div \frac{2}{k^2} = \frac{2k^3 + 5k^2}{2\sqrt{k^6 + 3k^3}} = \frac{2k^3 + 5k^2}{2k^3\sqrt{1 + 3/k^3}} = \frac{1 + 5/2k}{\sqrt{1 + 3/k^3}} \to 1.$$

Since

$$\sum \frac{1}{k^2} \quad \text{converges,} \qquad \sum \frac{2}{k^2} \quad \text{converges.}$$

It follows that the original series converges. ❑

Remark The question of what we can and cannot conclude by limit comparison if $a_k/b_k \to 0$ or if $a_k/b_k \to \infty$ is taken up in Exercises 47 and 48. ❑

EXERCISES 12.3

Exercises 1–36. Determine whether the series converges or diverges.

1. $\sum \frac{k}{k^3+1}$. **2.** $\sum \frac{1}{3k+2}$.

3. $\sum \frac{1}{(2k+1)^2}$. **4.** $\sum \frac{\ln k}{k}$.

5. $\sum \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}}$. **6.** $\sum \frac{1}{k^2+1}$.

7. $\sum \frac{1}{\sqrt{2k^2-k}}$. **8.** $\sum \left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^k$.

9. $\sum \frac{\arctan k}{1+k^2}$. **10.** $\sum \frac{\ln k}{k^3}$.

11. $\sum \frac{1}{k^{2/3}}$. **12.** $\sum \frac{1}{k(k+1)(k+2)}$.

13. $\sum \left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^k$. **14.** $\sum \frac{1}{1+2\ln k}$.

15. $\sum \frac{\ln \sqrt{k}}{k}$. **16.** $\sum \frac{2}{k(\ln k)^2}$.

17. $\sum \frac{1}{2+3^{-k}}$. **18.** $\sum \frac{7k+2}{2k^5+7}$.

19. $\sum \frac{2k+5}{5k^3+3k^2}$. **20.** $\sum \frac{k^4-1}{3k^2+5}$.

21. $\sum \frac{1}{k\ln k}$. **22.** $\sum \frac{1}{2^{k+1}-1}$.

23. $\sum \frac{1+2^k}{1+5^k}$. **24.** $\sum \frac{k^{3/2}}{k^{5/2}+2k-1}$.

25. $\sum \frac{2k+1}{\sqrt{k^4+1}}$. **26.** $\sum \frac{2k+1}{\sqrt{k^3+1}}$.

27. $\sum \frac{2k+1}{\sqrt{k^5+1}}$. **28.** $\sum \frac{1}{\sqrt{2k(k+1)}}$.

29. $\sum ke^{-k^2}$. **30.** $\sum k^2 2^{-k^3}$.

31. $\sum \frac{2+\sin k}{k^2}$. **32.** $\sum \frac{2+\cos k}{\sqrt{k+1}}$.

33. $\sum \frac{1}{1+2+\cdots+k}$. **34.** $\sum \frac{k}{1+2^2+\cdots+k^2}$.

35. $\sum \frac{2k}{(2k)!}$. **36.** $\sum \frac{2k!}{(2k)!}$.

37. Find the values of p for which $\sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(\ln k)^p}$ converges.

38. Find the values of p for which $\sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{\ln k}{k^p}$ converges.

39. (a) Show that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} e^{-\alpha k}$ converges for each $\alpha > 0$.

(b) Show that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} ke^{-\alpha k}$ converges for each $\alpha > 0$.

(c) Show that, more generally, $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k^n e^{-\alpha k}$ converges for each nonnegative integer n and each $\alpha > 0$.

40. Let $p > 1$. Use the integral test to show that

$$\frac{1}{(p-1)(n+1)^{p-1}} < \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^p} - \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{k^p} < \frac{1}{(p-1)n^{p-1}}.$$

This result gives bounds on the *error* (the remainder) R_n that results from using s_n to approximate the sum of the p-series.

Exercises 41–42. (a) Use a CAS or graphing utility. Calculate the sum of the first 100 terms of the series. (b) Use the inequalities given in Exercise 40 to obtain upper and lower bounds for R_{100}. (c) Use parts (a) and (b) to estimate the sum of the series.

41. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^3}$. **42.** $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^4}$.

For Exercises 43–46, use the error bounds given in Exercise 40.

43. (a) If you were to use s_{100} to approximate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2}$, what would be the bounds on your error?

(b) How large would you have to choose n to ensure that R_n is less than 0.0001?

44. (a) If you were to use s_{100} to approximate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^3}$, what would be the bounds on your error?

(b) How large would you have to choose n to ensure that R_n is less than 0.0001?

(c) Use the result of part (b) to estimate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^3}$.

45. (a) How many terms of the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^4}$ must you use to ensure that R_n is less than 0.0001?

(b) How large do you have to choose n to ensure that R_n is less than 0.001?

(c) Use the result of part (b) to estimate $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^4}$.

46. Exercise 45 for the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^5}$.

Exercises 47 and 48 complete the limit comparison test.

47. Let $\sum a_k$ and $\sum b_k$ be series with positive terms. Suppose that $a_k/b_k \to 0$.

(a) Show that if $\sum b_k$ converges, then $\sum a_k$ converges.

(b) Show that if $\sum a_k$ diverges, then $\sum b_k$ diverges.

(c) Show by example that if $\sum a_k$ converges, then $\sum b_k$ may converge or diverge.

(d) Show by example that if $\sum b_k$ diverges, then $\sum a_k$ may converge or diverge.

[Parts (c) and (d) explain why we stipulated $L > 0$ in Theorem 12.3.7.]

48. Let $\sum a_k$ and $\sum b_k$ be series with positive terms. Suppose that $a_k/b_k \to \infty$.
(a) Show that if $\sum b_k$ diverges, then $\sum a_k$ diverges.
(b) Show that if $\sum a_k$ converges, then $\sum b_k$ converges.
(c) Show by example that if $\sum a_k$ diverges, then $\sum b_k$ may converge or diverge.
(d) Show by example that if $\sum b_k$ converges, then $\sum a_k$ may converge or may diverge.

49. Let $\sum a_k$ be a series with nonnegative terms.
(a) Show that if $\sum a_k$ converges, then $\sum a_k^2$ converges.
(b) Give an example where $\sum a_k^2$ converges and $\sum a_k$ converges; give an example where $\sum a_k^2$ converges but $\sum a_k$ diverges.

50. Let $\sum a_k$ be a series with nonnegative terms. Show that if $\sum a_k^2$ converges, then $\sum (a_k/k)$ converges.

51. Let f be a continuous, positive, decreasing function on $[1, \infty)$ for which $\int_1^\infty f(x)\,dx$ converges. Then we know that the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f(k)$ also converges. Show that

$$0 < L - s_n < \int_n^\infty f(x)\,dx$$

where L is the sum of the series and s_n is the nth partial sum.

Exercises 52–53. Use a CAS and the result obtained in Exercise 51 to find the least integer n for which the difference between the sum of the series and the nth partial sum is less than 0.001. Find s_n.

52. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2+1}$.

53. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k\,e^{-k^2}$.

54. Let s_n be the nth partial sum of the harmonic series, a series which you know diverges.
(a) Show that

$$\ln(n+1) < s_n < 1 + \ln n.$$

(b) Find the least integer n for which $s_n > 100$.

55. Show that

$$\sum \frac{\ln k}{k\sqrt{k}} \quad \text{converges by comparison with} \quad \sum \frac{1}{k^{5/4}}.$$

56. Let p and q be polynomials with nonnegative coefficients. Give necessary and sufficient conditions on p and q for the convergence of

$$\sum \frac{p(k)}{q(k)}.$$

■ 12.4 THE ROOT TEST; THE RATIO TEST

We continue our study of series with nonnegative terms. Comparison with the geometric series

$$\sum x^k$$

leads to two important tests for convergence: the root test and the ratio test.

THEOREM 12.4.1 THE ROOT TEST

Let $\sum a_k$ be a series with nonnegative terms, and suppose that

$$(a_k)^{1/k} \to \rho.$$

(i) If $\rho < 1$, then $\sum a_k$ converges.
(ii) If $\rho > 1$, then $\sum a_k$ diverges.
(iii) If $\rho = 1$, then the test is inconclusive. The series may converge; it may diverge.

PROOF We suppose first that $\rho < 1$ and choose μ, so that

$$\rho < \mu < 1.$$

Since $(a_k)^{1/k} \to \rho$,

$$(a_k)^{1/k} < \mu \qquad \text{for all} \qquad k \qquad \text{sufficiently large.}$$

Thus

$$a_k < \mu^k \qquad \text{for all} \qquad k \qquad \text{sufficiently large.}$$

Since $\sum \mu^k$ converges (a geometric series with $0 < \mu < 1$), we know by the basic comparison theorem that $\sum a_k$ converges.

We suppose now that $\rho > 1$ and choose μ so that

$$\rho > \mu > 1.$$

Since $(a_k)^{1/k} \to \rho$,

$$(a_k)^{1/k} > \mu \qquad \text{for all} \qquad k \qquad \text{sufficiently large.}$$

Thus

$$a_k > \mu^k \qquad \text{for all} \qquad k \qquad \text{sufficiently large.}$$

Since $\sum \mu^k$ diverges (a geometric series with $\mu > 1$), we know by the basic comparison theorem that $\sum a_k$ diverges.

To see the inconclusiveness of the root test when $\rho = 1$, consider the series $\sum(1/k)$ and $\sum(1/k^2)$. The first series diverges while the second series converges, but in each case $(a_k)^{1/k} \to 1$:

$$(a_k)^{1/k} = \left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^{1/k} = \frac{1}{k^{1/k}} \to 1,$$

$$(a_k)^{1/k} = \left(\frac{1}{k^2}\right)^{1/k} = \left(\frac{1}{k^{1/k}}\right)^2 \to 1^2 = 1.$$

[Earlier we showed that, as $k \to \infty$, $k^{1/k} \to 1$. (11.4.1)] ❑

Applying the Root Test

Example 1 For the series $\sum \dfrac{1}{(\ln k)^k}$

$$(a_k)^{1/k} = \frac{1}{\ln k} \to 0.$$

The series converges. ❑

Example 2 For the series $\sum \dfrac{2^k}{k^3}$

$$(a_k)^{1/k} = 2\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^{3/k} = 2\left[\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^{1/k}\right]^3 = 2\left[\frac{1}{k^{1/k}}\right]^3 \to 2 \cdot 1^3 = 2.$$

The series diverges. ❑

Example 3 In the case of $\sum \left(1 - \dfrac{1}{k}\right)^k$

$$(a_k)^{1/k} = 1 - \frac{1}{k} \to 1.$$

Here the root test is inconclusive. It is also unnecessary: since $a_k = (1 - 1/k)^k$ tends to $1/e$ and not to 0, the series diverges. ❑

THEOREM 12.4.2 THE RATIO TEST

Let $\sum a_k$ be a series with positive terms and suppose that

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} \to \lambda.$$

(i) If $\lambda < 1$, then $\sum a_k$ converges.

(ii) If $\lambda > 1$, then $\sum a_k$ diverges.

(iii) If $\lambda = 1$, then the test is inconclusive. The series may converge; it may diverge.

PROOF We suppose first that $\lambda < 1$ and choose μ so that $\lambda < \mu < 1$. Since

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} \to \lambda,$$

we know that there exists $k_0 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad k \geq k_0, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} < \mu. \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

This gives

$$a_{k_0+1} < \mu a_{k_0}, \qquad a_{k_0+2} < \mu a_{k_0+1} < \mu^2 a_{k_0},$$

and more generally,

$$a_{k_0+j} < \mu^j a_{k_0}, \qquad j = 1, 2, \cdots.$$

For $k > k_0$ we have

(1) $$a_k < \underbrace{\mu^{k-k_0}}_{\text{Set } j = k - k_0.} a_{k_0} = \frac{a_{k_0}}{\mu^{k_0}} \mu^k.$$

Since $\mu < 1$,

$$\sum \frac{a_{k_0}}{\mu^{k_0}} \mu^k = \frac{a_{k_0}}{\mu^{k_0}} \sum \mu^k \qquad \text{converges.}$$

It follows from (1) and the basic comparison theorem that $\sum a_k$ converges. The proof of the rest of the theorem is left to the Exercises. ❑

Remark Contrary to some people's intuition, the root and ratio tests are *not* equivalent. See Exercise 48. ❑

Applying the Ratio Test

Example 4 The ratio test shows that the series $\sum \frac{1}{k!}$ converges:

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} = \frac{1}{(k+1)!} \cdot \frac{k!}{1} = \frac{1}{k+1} \to 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 For the series $\sum \frac{k}{10^k}$

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} = \frac{k+1}{10^{k+1}} \cdot \frac{10^k}{k} = \frac{1}{10} \frac{k+1}{k} \to \frac{1}{10}.$$

The series converges.† ❑

†You are asked to find the sum of this series in Exercise 41.

Example 6 For the series $\sum \dfrac{k^k}{k!}$

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} = \frac{(k+1)^{k+1}}{(k+1)!} \cdot \frac{k!}{k^k} = \left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right)^k = \left(1 + \frac{1}{k}\right)^k \to e.$$

Since $e > 1$, the series diverges. ❑

Example 7 For the series $\sum \dfrac{1}{2k+1}$, the ratio test is inconclusive:

$$\frac{a_{k+1}}{a_k} = \frac{1}{2(k+1)+1} \cdot \frac{2k+1}{1} = \frac{2k+1}{2k+3} = \frac{2+1/k}{2+3/k} \to 1.$$

Therefore, we have to look further. Comparison with the harmonic series shows that the series diverges:

$$\frac{1}{2k+1} > \frac{1}{3k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum \frac{1}{3k} = \frac{1}{3}\sum \frac{1}{k} \qquad \text{diverges.}$$ ❑

Summary on Convergence Tests

In general, the root test is used only if powers are involved. The ratio test is particularly effective with factorials and with combinations of powers and factorials. If the terms are rational functions of k, the ratio test is inconclusive and the root test is difficult to apply. Series with rational terms are most easily handled by limit comparison with a p-series, a series of the form $\sum 1/k^p$. If the terms have the configuration of a derivative, you may be able to apply the integral test. Finally, keep in mind that, if $a_k \not\to 0$, then there is no reason to try any convergence test; the series diverges. [(12.2.6).]

EXERCISES 12.4

Exercises 1–40. Determine whether the series converges or diverges.

1. $\sum \dfrac{10^k}{k!}$.

2. $\sum \dfrac{1}{k2^k}$.

3. $\sum \dfrac{1}{k^k}$.

4. $\sum \left(\dfrac{k}{2k+1}\right)^k$.

5. $\sum \dfrac{k!}{100^k}$.

6. $\sum \dfrac{(\ln k)^2}{k}$.

7. $\sum \dfrac{k^2+2}{k^3+6k}$.

8. $\sum \dfrac{1}{(\ln k)^k}$.

9. $\sum k\left(\dfrac{2}{3}\right)^k$.

10. $\sum \dfrac{1}{(\ln k)^{10}}$.

11. $\sum \dfrac{1}{1+\sqrt{k}}$.

12. $\sum \dfrac{2k+\sqrt{k}}{k^3+\sqrt{k}}$.

13. $\sum \dfrac{k!}{10^{4k}}$.

14. $\sum \dfrac{k^2}{e^k}$.

15. $\sum \dfrac{\sqrt{k}}{k^2+1}$.

16. $\sum \dfrac{2^k k!}{k^k}$.

17. $\sum \dfrac{k!}{(k+2)!}$.

18. $\sum \dfrac{1}{k}\left(\dfrac{1}{\ln k}\right)^{3/2}$.

19. $\sum \dfrac{1}{k}\left(\dfrac{1}{\ln k}\right)^{1/2}$.

20. $\sum \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{k^3-1}}$.

21. $\sum \left(\dfrac{k}{k+100}\right)^k$.

22. $\sum \dfrac{(k!)^2}{(2k)!}$.

23. $\sum k^{-(1+1/k)}$.

24. $\sum \dfrac{11}{1+100^{-k}}$.

25. $\sum \dfrac{\ln k}{e^k}$.

26. $\sum \dfrac{k!}{k^k}$.

27. $\sum \dfrac{\ln k}{k^2}$.

28. $\sum \dfrac{k!}{1\cdot 3\cdots(2k-1)}$.

29. $\sum \dfrac{2\cdot 4\cdots 2k}{(2k)!}$.

30. $\sum \dfrac{(2k+1)^{2k}}{(5k^2+1)^k}$.

31. $\sum \dfrac{k!(2k)!}{(3k)!}$.

32. $\sum \dfrac{\ln k}{k^{5/4}}$.

33. $\sum \dfrac{k^{k/2}}{k!}$.

34. $\sum \dfrac{k^k}{(3^k)^2}$.

35. $\sum \dfrac{k^k}{3^{k^2}}$.

36. $\sum \left(\sqrt{k}-\sqrt{k-1}\right)^k$.

37. $\dfrac{1}{2} + \dfrac{2}{3^2} + \dfrac{4}{4^3} + \dfrac{8}{5^4} + \cdots$.

38. $1 + \dfrac{1 \cdot 2}{1 \cdot 3} + \dfrac{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5} + \dfrac{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7} + \cdots.$

39. $\dfrac{1}{4} + \dfrac{1 \cdot 3}{4 \cdot 7} + \dfrac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{4 \cdot 7 \cdot 10} + \dfrac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7}{4 \cdot 7 \cdot 10 \cdot 13} + \cdots.$

40. $\dfrac{2}{3} + \dfrac{2 \cdot 4}{3 \cdot 7} + \dfrac{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6}{3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11} + \dfrac{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 8}{3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 15} + \cdots.$

41. Find the sum of the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k}{10^k}.$$

HINT: Exercise 36 of Section 12.2.

42. Complete the proof of the ratio test by proving that
(a) if $\lambda > 1$, then $\sum a_k$ diverges, and
(b) if $\lambda = 1$, the ratio test is inconclusive.

43. Let r be a positive number. Show that $a_k = r^k/k! \to 0$ by considering the series $\sum a_k$.

44. Show that $a_k = k!/k^k \to 0$ by appealing to the series $\sum a_k$ of Exercise 26.

45. Find the integers $p \geq 2$ for which $\sum \dfrac{(k!)^2}{(pk)!}$ converges.

46. Find the positive numbers r for which $\sum \dfrac{r^k}{k^r}$ converges.

47. Take $r > 0$ and let the a_k be positive. Use the root test to show that, if $(a_k)^{1/k} \to \rho$ and $\rho < 1/r$, then $\sum a_k r^k$ converges.

48. Set

$$a_k = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{2^k}, & \text{for odd } k \\[2ex] \dfrac{1}{2^{k-2}}, & \text{for even } k. \end{cases}$$

The resulting series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a^k = \frac{1}{2} + 1 + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots$$

is a rearrangement of the geometric series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^k} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \cdots.$$

(a) Use the root test to show that $\sum a_k$ converges.
(b) Show that the ratio test does not apply.

■ 12.5 ABSOLUTE CONVERGENCE AND CONDITIONAL CONVERGENCE; ALTERNATING SERIES

In this section we consider series that have both positive and negative terms.

Absolute Convergence and Conditional Convergence

Let $\sum a_k$ be a series with positive and negative terms. One way to show that $\sum a_k$ converges is to show that the series of absolute values $\sum |a_k|$ converges.

THEOREM 12.5.1

If $\quad \sum |a_k| \quad$ converges, $\quad$ then $\quad \sum a_k \quad$ converges.

PROOF For each k

$$-|a_k| \leq a_k \leq |a_k| \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad 0 \leq a_k + |a_k| \leq 2|a_k|.$$

If $\sum |a_k|$ converges, then $\sum 2|a_k| = 2\sum |a_k|$ converges, and therefore, by basic comparison, $\sum (a_k + |a_k|)$ converges. Since

$$a_k = (a_k + |a_k|) - |a_k|,$$

we know that $\sum a_k$ converges. ❑

Series $\sum a_k$ for which $\sum |a_k|$ converges are called *absolutely convergent*. The theorem we have just proved says that

(12.5.2) $\quad$ absolutely convergent series are convergent.

As we will show presently, the converse is false. There are convergent series that are not absolutely convergent. Such series are called *conditionally convergent*.

Example 1 Consider the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} - \frac{1}{4^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} - \cdots.$$

If we replace each term by its absolute value, we obtain the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} = 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{4^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \cdots.$$

This is a p-series with $p = 2$. It is therefore convergent. This means that the initial series is absolutely convergent. ❑

Example 2 Consider the series

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{2^3} - \frac{1}{2^4} + \frac{1}{2^5} + \frac{1}{2^6} - \frac{1}{2^7} - \frac{1}{2^8} + \cdots.$$

If we replace each term by its absolute value, we obtain the series

$$1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{2^3} + \frac{1}{2^4} + \frac{1}{2^5} + \frac{1}{2^6} + \frac{1}{2^7} + \frac{1}{2^8} + \cdots.$$

This is a convergent geometric series. The initial series is therefore absolutely convergent. ❑

Example 3 The series

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6} + \cdots$$

is only conditionally convergent.

It is convergent (see the next theorem), but it is not absolutely convergent: if we replace each term by its absolute value, we get the harmonic series

$$1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{6} + \cdots. \quad ❑$$

Alternating Series

A series such as

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6} + \cdots$$

in which consecutive terms have opposite signs is a called an *alternating series*. As in our example, we shall follow custom and begin all alternating series with a positive term. In general, then, an alternating series will look like this:

$$a_0 - a_1 + a_2 - a_3 + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k$$

with all the a_k positive. In this setup the partial sums of even index end with a positive term and the partial sums of odd index end with a negative term.

12.5.3 THE BASIC THEOREM ON ALTERNATING SERIES

Let $a_0, a_1, a_2,$ be a decreasing sequence of positive numbers. The series

$$a_0 - a_1 + a_2 - a_3 + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k \qquad \text{converges} \qquad \text{iff} \qquad a_k \to 0$$

PROOF If the series converges, then its terms must tend to zero. This implies that $a_k \to 0$.

Now we assume that $a_k \to 0$ and show that the series converges. First we look at the partial sums of even index, s_{2m}. Since

$$s_{2m} = (a_0 - a_1) + (a_2 - a_3) + \cdots + (a_{2m-2} - a_{2m-1}) + a_{2m}$$

is a sum of positive numbers, $s_{2m} > 0$. Since

$$s_{2m+2} = s_{2m} - (a_{2m+1} - a_{2m+2}) \qquad \text{and} \qquad a_{2m+1} - a_{2m+2} > 0,$$

it's clear that

$$s_{2m+2} < s_{2m}.$$

This shows that the sequence of partial sums of even index is a decreasing sequence of positive numbers. Being bounded below by 0, the sequence converges. (Theorem 11.3.6.) We call the limit L and write

$$s_{2m} \to L.$$

Now we look at the partial sums of odd index, s_{2m+1}, and note that

$$s_{2m+1} = s_{2m} - a_{2m+1}.$$

Since $s_{2m} \to L$ and $a_{2m+1} \to 0$,

$$s_{2m+1} \to L.$$

Since the partial sums of even index and the partial sums of odd index both tend to L, the sequence of all partial sums tends to L. (Exercise 50, Section 11.3.) ❑

It is clear from the theorem that the following series all converge:

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6} + \cdots, \qquad 1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{4}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} + \cdots,$$

$$1 - \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} - \frac{1}{4!} + \frac{1}{5!} - \frac{1}{6!} + \cdots.$$

The first two series converge only conditionally; the third converges absolutely.

Estimating the Sum of an Alternating Series You have seen that if $a_0, a_1, a_2, \cdots$ is a decreasing sequence of positive numbers that tends to 0, then

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k \qquad \text{converges to some sum} \qquad L.$$

(12.5.4)

> The number L lies between all consecutive partial sums, s_n, s_{n+1}. From this it follows that s_n approximates L to within a_{n+1} :
>
> $$|s_n - L| < a_{n+1}.$$

PROOF We have shown that the partial sums of even index decrease toward L. As you can show, the partial sums of odd index increase toward L. It follows that L lies between all consecutive partial sums s_n and s_{n+1}: one of these is greater than L; the other is less than L. Therefore, for each index n,

$$|s_n - L| < |s_n - s_{n+1}| = a_{n+1}. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Both

$$1-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}-\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{5}-\frac{1}{6}+\cdots \qquad \text{and} \qquad 1-\frac{1}{2^2}+\frac{1}{3^2}-\frac{1}{4^2}+\frac{1}{5^2}-\frac{1}{6^2}+\cdots$$

are convergent alternating series. The nth partial sum of the first series approximates the sum of that series within $1/(n+1)$; the nth partial sum of the second series approximates the sum of that series within $1/(n+1)^2$. The second series converges more rapidly than the first series. ❑

Example 5 Give a numerical estimate for the sum of the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!}=1-\frac{1}{3!}+\frac{1}{5!}-\frac{1}{7!}+\cdots$$

correct to three decimal places.

SOLUTION By Theorem 12.5.3, the series converges to a sum L. For s_n to approximate L to three decimal places, we must have $|s_n-L|<0.0005$. Writing out the first few terms of the series, we have

$$1-\frac{1}{3!}+\frac{1}{5!}-\frac{1}{7!}+\cdots=1-\frac{1}{6}+\frac{1}{120}-\frac{1}{5040}+\cdots.$$

Since $a_3=\dfrac{1}{7!}=\dfrac{1}{5040}<\dfrac{1}{5000}=0.0002<0.0005$,

$$s_2=1-\frac{1}{3!}+\frac{1}{5!}=1-\frac{1}{6}+\frac{1}{120}=\frac{101}{120}$$

approximates L to within 0.0005.

We can obtain a decimal estimate for L by noting that $0.8416<\frac{101}{120}<0.8417$. To three decimal places, L is 0.842. ❑

Rearrangements

A *rearrangement* of a series $\sum a_k$ is a series that has exactly the same terms but in a different order. Thus, for example,

$$1+\frac{1}{3^3}-\frac{1}{2^2}+\frac{1}{5^5}-\frac{1}{4^4}+\frac{1}{7^7}-\frac{1}{6^6}+\cdots$$

and

$$1+\frac{1}{3^3}+\frac{1}{5^5}-\frac{1}{2^2}-\frac{1}{4^4}+\frac{1}{7^7}+\frac{1}{9^9}-\cdots$$

are both rearrangements of

$$1-\frac{1}{2^2}+\frac{1}{3^3}-\frac{1}{4^4}+\frac{1}{5^5}-\frac{1}{6^6}+\frac{1}{7^7}-\cdots.$$

In 1867 Riemann published a theorem on rearrangements of series that underscores the importance of distinguishing between absolute convergence and conditional convergence. According to this theorem, all rearrangements of an absolutely convergent series converge absolutely to the same sum. In sharp contrast, a series that is only conditionally convergent can be rearranged to converge to any number we please. It can be arranged to diverge to $+\infty$, to diverge to $-\infty$, even to oscillate between any two bounds we choose.

EXERCISES 12.5

Exercises 1–31. Test these series for (a) absolute convergence, (b) conditional convergence.

1. $1 + (-1) + 1 + \cdots + (-1)^k + \cdots.$

2. $\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{8} - \frac{1}{10} + \cdots + \frac{(-1)^k}{2k} + \cdots.$

3. $\frac{1}{2} - \frac{2}{3} + \frac{3}{4} - \frac{4}{5} + \cdots + (-1)^{k+1}\frac{k}{(k+1)} + \cdots.$

4. $\frac{1}{2\ln 2} - \frac{1}{3\ln 3} + \frac{1}{4\ln 4} - \frac{1}{5\ln 5} + \cdots + (-1)^k \frac{1}{k\ln k} + \cdots.$

5. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{\ln k}{k}.$

6. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k}{\ln k}.$

7. $\sum \left(\frac{1}{k} - \frac{1}{k!}\right).$

8. $\sum \frac{k^3}{2^k}.$

9. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{1}{2k+1}.$

10. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{(k!)^2}{(2k)!}.$

11. $\sum \frac{k!}{(-2)^k}.$

12. $\sum \sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{4}\right).$

13. $\sum (-1)^k \left(\sqrt{k+1} - \sqrt{k}\right).$

14. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k}{k^2+1}.$

15. $\sum \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4k^2}\right).$

16. $\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{\sqrt{k(k+1)}}.$

17. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k}{2^k}.$

18. $\sum \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}}\right).$

19. $\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k - 2\sqrt{k}}.$

20. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k+2}{k^2+k}.$

21. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{4^{k-2}}{e^k}.$

22. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k^2}{2^k}.$

23. $\sum (-1)^k k \sin(1/k).$

24. $\sum (-1)^{k+1} \frac{k^k}{k!}.$

25. $\sum (-1)^k k e^{-k}.$

26. $\sum \frac{\cos \pi k}{k}.$

27. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{\cos \pi k}{k}.$

28. $\sum \frac{\sin(\pi k/2)}{k\sqrt{k}}.$

29. $\sum \frac{\sin(\pi k/4)}{k^2}.$

30. $\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{3k+2} - \frac{1}{3k+3} - \frac{1}{3k+4} + \cdots.$

31. $\frac{2\cdot 3}{4\cdot 5} - \frac{5\cdot 6}{7\cdot 8} + \cdots + (-1)^k \frac{(3k+2)(3k+3)}{(3k+4)(3k+5)} + \cdots.$

Exercises 32–35. The partial sum indicated is used to estimate the sum of the series. Estimate the error.

32. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k}; \quad s_{20}.$

33. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}}; \quad s_{80}.$

34. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{1}{(10)^k}; \quad s_4.$

35. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k+1} \frac{1}{k^3}; \quad s_9.$

36. Let s_n be the nth partial sum of the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{1}{10^k}.$$

Find the least value of n for which s_n approximates the sum of the series within (a) 0.001, (b) 0.0001.

37. Find the sum of the series of Exercise 36.

Exercises 38–39. Use a CAS to find the least integer n for which s_n approximates the sum of the series to the indicated accuracy. Find s_n.

38. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{(0.9)^k}{k}; \quad 0.001.$

39. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}}; \quad 0.005.$

40. Verify that the series

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots$$

diverges and explain how this does not violate the basic theorem on alternating series.

41. Let L be the sum of the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{1}{k!}$$

and let s_n be the nth partial sum. Find the least value of n for which s_n approximates L to within (a) 0.01, (b) 0.001.

42. Let $a_0, a_1, a_2, \cdots$ be a nonincreasing sequence of positive numbers that converges to 0. Does the alternating series $\sum (-1)^k a_k$ necessarily converge?

43. Can the hypothesis of Theorem 12.5.3 be relaxed to require only that the a_{2k} and the a_{2k+1} form decreasing sequences of positive numbers with limit 0?

44. Show that if $\sum a_k$ is absolutely convergent and $|b_k| \le |a_k|$ for all k, then $\sum b_k$ is absolutely convergent.

45. (a) Show that if $\sum a_k$ is absolutely convergent, then $\sum a_k^2$ is convergent.
(b) Show by means of an example that the converse of the result in part (a) is false.

46. Let $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k$ be an alternating series with the a_k forming a decreasing sequence of positive numbers. Show that the sequence of partial sums of odd index increases and is bounded above.

47. In Section 12.8 we prove that, if $\sum a_k c^k$ converges, then $\sum a_k x^k$ converges absolutely for all x such that $|x| < |c|$. Try to prove this now.

48. Form the series

$$a - \tfrac{1}{2}b + \tfrac{1}{3}a - \tfrac{1}{4}b + \tfrac{1}{5}a - \tfrac{1}{6}b + \cdots.$$

(a) Express this series in $\sum$ notation.
(b) For what positive values of a and b is this series absolutely convergent? conditionally convergent?

■ 12.6 TAYLOR POLYNOMIALS IN x; TAYLOR SERIES IN x

We begin with a function f continuous at 0 and form the constant polynomial $P_0(x) = f(0)$. If f is differentiable at 0, the linear function that best approximates f at points close to 0 is the linear polynomial

$$P_1(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x;$$

P_1 has the same value as f at 0 and also has the same first derivative (the same rate of change):

$$P_1(0) = f(0), \qquad P_1'(0) = f'(0).$$

If f is twice differentiable at 0, then we can get a better approximation to f by using the quadratic polynomial

$$P_2(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2;$$

P_2 has the same value as f at 0 and the same first two derivatives:

$$P_2(0) = f(0), \qquad P_2'(0) = f'(0), \qquad P_2''(0) = f''(0).$$

If f has three derivatives at 0, we can form the cubic polynomial

$$P_3(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{f'''(0)}{3!}x^3;$$

P_3 has the same value as f at 0 and the same first three derivatives:

$$P_3(0) = f(0), \qquad P_3'(0) = f'(0), \qquad P_3''(0) = f''(0), \qquad P_3'''(0) = f'''(0).$$

In general, if f has n derivatives at 0, we can form the polynomial

$$P_n(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n;$$

P_n has the same value as f at 0 and the same first n derivatives:

$$P_n(0) = f(0), \qquad P_n'(0) = f'(0), \qquad P_n''(0) = f''(0), \ldots, \qquad P_n^{(n)}(0) = f^{(n)}(0).$$

These approximating polynomials $P_0(x), P_1(x), P_2(x), \cdots, P_n(x)$ are called *Taylor polynomials* after the English mathematician Brook Taylor (1685–1731). Taylor introduced these polynomials in 1712.

Example 1 The exponential function $f(x) = e^x$ has derivatives

$$f'(x) = e^x, \qquad f''(x) = e^x, \qquad f'''(x) = e^x, \qquad \text{and so on.}$$

Thus

$$f(0) = 1, \qquad f'(0) = 1, \qquad f''(0) = 1, \qquad f'''(0) = 1, \cdots, \qquad f^{(n)}(0) = 1.$$

The nth Taylor polynomial takes the form

$$P_n(x) = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!}.$$

Figure 12.6.1 shows the graph of the exponential function and the graphs of the first four approximating polynomials. ❑

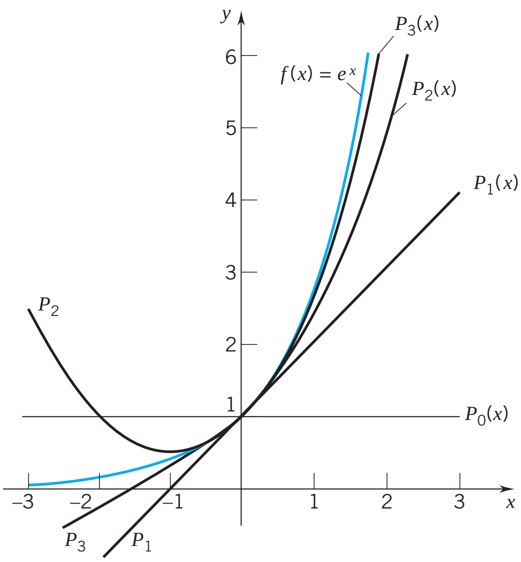


Figure 12.6.1

Example 2 To find the Taylor polynomials that approximate the sine function, we write

$$f(x) = \sin x, \qquad f'(x) = \cos x, \qquad f''(x) = -\sin x, \qquad f'''(x) = -\cos x.$$

The pattern now repeats itself:

$$f^{(4)}(x) = \sin x, \qquad f^{(5)}(x) = \cos x, \qquad f^{(6)}(x) = -\sin x, \qquad f^{(7)}(x) = -\cos x.$$

At $x = 0$, the sine function and all its even derivatives are 0. The odd derivatives are alternately 1 and -1:

$$f'(0) = 1, \qquad f'''(0) = -1, \qquad f^{(5)}(0) = 1, \qquad f^{(7)}(0) = -1, \qquad \text{and so on.}$$

Therefore the Taylor polynomials are as follows:

$$P_0(x) = 0$$

$$P_1(x) = P_2(x) = x$$

$$P_3(x) = P_4(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!}$$

$$P_5(x) = P_6(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!}$$

$$P_7(x) = P_8(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} \qquad \text{and so on.}$$

Only odd powers appear. This is not surprising since the sine function is an odd function. ❑

It is not enough to say that the Taylor polynomials

$$P_n(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n$$

approximate $f(x)$. We must describe the accuracy of the approximation.

Our first step is to prove a result known as Taylor's theorem.

THEOREM 12.6.1 TAYLOR'S THEOREM

If f has $n+1$ continuous derivatives on an open interval I that contains 0, then for each $x \in I$

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\,x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + R_n(x)$$

with $R_n(x) = \dfrac{1}{n!}\displaystyle\int_0^x f^{(n+1)}(t)(x-t)^n\,dt$. We call $R_n(x)$ the *remainder*.

PROOF Fix x in the interval I. Since

$$\int_0^x f'(t)\,dt = f(x) - f(0),$$

we have

$$f(x) = f(0) + \int_0^x f'(t)\,dt.$$

We now integrate by parts. We set

$$u = f'(t) \qquad \text{and} \qquad dv = dt.$$

This forces

$$du = f''(t)\,dt.$$

For v we may choose any function of t with derivative identically 1. To suit our purpose, we choose

$$v = -(x-t).$$

We carry out the integration by parts and get

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^x f'(t) &= \Big[-f'(t)(x-t)\Big]_0^x + \int_0^x f''(t)(x-t)\,dt\\ &= f'(0)\,x + \int_0^x f''(t)(x-t)\,dt,\end{aligned}$$

which with (1) gives

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\,x + \int_0^x f''(t)(x-t)\,dt.$$

This completes the first step toward the proof of the theorem.

Integrating by parts again [set $u = f''(t)$, $dv = (x-t)\,dt$, leading to $du = f'''(t)\,dt$, $v = -\frac{1}{2}(x-t)^2$], we get

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\,x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{1}{2!}\int_0^x f'''(t)(x-t)^2\,dt.$$

Continuing to integrate by parts (see Exercise 61), we get after n steps

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\,x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + \frac{1}{n!}\int_0^x f^{(n+1)}(t)(x-t)^n\,dt,$$

which is what we have been trying to prove. ❑

To see how closely

$$P_n(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n$$

approximates $f(x)$, we need an estimate for the remainder term $R_n(x)$. The following corollary to Taylor's theorem gives a more convenient form of the remainder. It was established by Joseph Lagrange in 1797, and it is known as the Lagrange formula for the remainder. The proof is left to you as an exercise.

COROLLARY 12.6.2 LAGRANGE FORMULA FOR THE REMAINDER

The remainder in Taylor's theorem can be written

$$R_n(x) = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n+1)!}x^{n+1}$$

with c some number between 0 and x.

Remark If we write Taylor's theorem using the Lagrange formula for the remainder, we have

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)\,x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n+1)!}x^{n+1}$$

with c some number between 0 and x. This result is an extension of the mean-value theorem (Theorem 4.1.1), for if we let $n = 0$ and take $x > 0$, we get

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(c)x, \qquad \text{which can be written} \qquad f(x) - f(0) = f'(c)(x - 0)$$

with $c \in (0, x)$. This is the mean-value theorem for f on the interval $[0, x]$. ❑

The following estimate for $R_n(x)$ is an immediate consequence of Corollary 12.6.2:

(12.6.3)
$$\boxed{|R_n(x)| \le \left(\max_{t\in J} |f^{(n+1)}(t)|\right)\frac{|x|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}}$$

where J is the closed interval that joins 0 to x.

Example 3 The Taylor polynomials for the exponential function $f(x) = e^x$ take the form

$$P_n(x) = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!}. \qquad \text{(Example 1)}$$

We will show with our remainder estimate that for each real x

$$R_n(x) \to 0 \qquad \text{as} \qquad n \to \infty,$$

and therefore we can approximate e^x as closely as we wish by Taylor polynomials.

We begin by fixing x and letting M be the maximum value of the exponential function on the closed interval J that joins 0 to x. (If $x > 0$, then $M = e^x$; if $x < 0$, $M = e^0 = 1$.) Since

$$f^{(n+1)}(t) = e^t \qquad \text{for all } n,$$

we have

$$\max_{t\in J} |f^{(n+1)}(t)| = M \qquad \text{for all } n.$$

Thus, by (12.6.3)

$$|R_n(x)| \le M\frac{|x|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}.$$

From (11.4.4), we know that, as $n \to \infty$,

$$\frac{|x|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \to 0.$$

It follows then that $R_n(x) \to 0$ as asserted. ❑

Example 4 We return to the sine function $f(x) = \sin x$ and its Taylor polynomials

$$P_1(x) = P_2(x) = x$$

$$P_3(x) = P_4(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!}$$

$$P_5(x) = P_6(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!}, \qquad \text{and so on.}$$

The pattern of derivatives was established in Example 2; namely, for all k,

$$f^{(4k)}(x) = \sin x, \qquad f^{(4k+1)}(x) = \cos\ x,$$

$$f^{(4k+2)}(x) = -\sin x, \qquad f^{(4k-3)}(x) = -\cos\ x.$$

Thus, for all n and all real t,

$$|f^{(n+1)}(t)| \le 1.$$

It follows from our remainder estimate (12.6.3) that

$$|R_n(x)| \le \frac{|x|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}$$

Since

$$\frac{|x|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \to 0 \qquad \text{for all real } x,$$

we see that $R_n(x) \to 0$ for all real x. Thus the sequence of Taylor polynomials converges to the sine function and therefore can be used to approximate $\sin x$ for any real number x with as much accuracy as we wish. ❑

Taylor Series in x

By definition $0! = 1$. Adopting the convention that $f^{(0)} = f$, we can write Taylor polynomials

$$P_n(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n$$

in $\sum$ notation:

$$P_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}x^k.$$

If f is infinitely differentiable on an open interval I that contains 0, then we have

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}x^k + R_n(x), \qquad x \in I,$$

for all positive integers n. If, as in the case of the exponential function and the sine function, $R_n(x) \to 0$ for each $x \in I$, then for all such x

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}x^k \to f(x).$$

In this case, we say that $f(x)$ can be expanded as a *Taylor series in* x and write

(12.6.4)
$$\boxed{f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}x^k.}$$

Taylor series in x are sometimes called Maclaurin series after Colin Maclaurin, a Scottish mathematician (1698–1746). In some circles the name Maclaurin remains attached to these series, although Taylor considered them some twenty years before Maclaurin.

It follows from Example 3 that

(12.6.5)
$$\boxed{e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots \qquad \text{for all real } x.}$$

From Example 4 we have

(12.6.6)
$$\boxed{\sin x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!}x^{2k+1} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots \qquad \text{for all real } x.}$$

We leave it to you as an exercise to show that

(12.6.7)
$$\boxed{\cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!}x^{2k} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \qquad \text{for all real } x.}$$

We come now to the logarithm function. Since $\ln x$ is not defined at $x = 0$, we cannot expand $\ln x$ in powers of x. We work instead with $\ln(1 + x)$.

(12.6.8)
$$\boxed{\ln(1+x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}x^k = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \cdots \qquad \text{for } -1 < x \le 1.}$$

PROOF[†] The function

$$f(x) = \ln(1 + x)$$

[†]The proof we give here illustrates the methods of this section. A much simpler way of obtaining this series expansion is given in Section 12.9.

is defined on $(-1, \infty)$ and on that interval has derivatives of all orders:

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{1+x}, \qquad f''(x) = -\frac{1}{(1+x)^2}, \qquad f'''(x) = \frac{2}{(1+x)^3},$$

$$f^{(4)}(x) = -\frac{3!}{(1+x)^4}, \qquad f^{(5)}(x) = \frac{4!}{(1+x)^5}, \qquad \text{and so on.}$$

The pattern is now clear: for $k \geq 1$

$$f^{(k)}(x) = (-1)^{k+1}\frac{(k-1)!}{(1+x)^k}.$$

Evaluation at $x = 0$ gives $f^{(k)}(0) = (-1)^{k+1}(k-1)!$ and

$$\frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!} = \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}.$$

Since $f(0) = 0$, the nth Taylor polynomial takes the form

$$P_n(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{k+1}\frac{x^k}{k} = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \cdots + (-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^n}{n}.$$

Therefore, all we have to show is that

$$R_n(x) \to 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad -1 < x \leq 1.$$

Instead of trying to apply our usual remainder estimate [in this case, that estimate is not delicate enough to show that $R_n(x) \to 0$ for x under consideration], we keep the remainder in its integral form. From Taylor's theorem,

$$R_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!}\int_0^x f^{(n+1)}(t)(x-t)^n\,dt.$$

Therefore in this case

$$R_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!}\int_0^x (-1)^{n+2}\frac{n!}{(1+t)^{n+1}}(x-t)^n dt = (-1)^n\int_0^x \frac{(x-t)^n}{(1+t)^{n+1}}\,dt.$$

For $0 \leq x \leq 1$ we have

$$|R_n(x)| = \int_0^x \frac{(x-t)^n}{(1+t)^{n+1}}\,dt \underset{\uparrow\,\text{explain}}{\leq} \int_0^x (x-t)^n\,dt = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \to 0.$$

For $-1 < x < 0$ we have

$$|R_n(x)| = \left|\int_0^x \frac{(x-t)^n}{(1+t)^{n+1}}\,dt\right| = \int_x^0 \left(\frac{t-x}{1+t}\right)^n \frac{1}{1+t}\,dt.$$

By the first mean-value theorem for integrals (Theorem 5.9.1), there exists a number x_n between x and 0 such that

$$\int_x^0 \left(\frac{t-x}{1+t}\right)^n \frac{1}{1+t}\,dt = \left(\frac{x_n - x}{1+x_n}\right)^n\left(\frac{1}{1+x_n}\right)(-x).$$

Since $-x = |x|$ and $0 < 1 + x < 1 + x_n$, we can conclude that

$$|R_n(x)| < \left(\frac{x_n + |x|}{1+x_n}\right)^n\left(\frac{|x|}{1+x}\right).$$

Since $|x| < 1$ and $x_n < 0$, we have

$$x_n < |x|x_n, \qquad x_n + |x| < |x|x_n + |x| = |x|(1+x_n),$$

and thus

$$\frac{x_n + |x|}{1 + x_n} < |x|.$$

It follows that

$$|R_n(x)| < |x|^n \left(\frac{|x|}{1+x}\right).$$

Since $|x| < 1$, $R_n(x) \to 0$. ❑

Remark The series expansion for $\ln(1+x)$ that we have just verified for $-1 < x \le 1$ cannot be extended to other values of x. For $x \le -1$ neither side makes sense: $\ln(1+x)$ is not defined, and the series on the right diverges. For $x > 1$, $\ln(1+x)$ is defined, but the series on the right diverges and hence does not represent the function. At $x = 1$, the series gives the intriguing result

$$\ln 2 = 1 - \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{3} - \tfrac{1}{4} + \cdots. \quad ❑$$

We want to emphasize again the role played by the remainder term $R_n(x)$. We can form a Taylor series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!} x^k$$

for any function f with derivatives of all orders at $x = 0$, but such a series need not converge at any number $x \neq 0$. Even if it does converge, the sum need not be $f(x)$. (See Exercise 63.) *The Taylor series converges to $f(x)$ iff the remainder term $R_n(x)$ tends to 0.*

Some Numerical Calculations

If the Taylor series converges to $f(x)$, we can use the partial sums (the Taylor polynomials) to calculate $f(x)$ as accurately as we wish. In what follows we show some sample calculations. For ready reference we list some values of $k!$ in Table 12.6.1.

■ **Table 12.6.1**

		$k!$
2!	=	2
3!	=	6
4!	=	24
5!	=	120
6!	=	720
7!	=	5,040
8!	=	40,320

Example 5 Determine the maximum possible error we incur by using $P_6(x)$ to estimate $f(x) = e^x$ for x in the interval [0, 1].

SOLUTION For all x,

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \cdots.$$

Now fix any x in the interval [0, 1]. From Example 3 we have

$$P_6(x) = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{x^6}{6!}$$

and

$$|R_6(x)| \le \max_{0\le t\le x} |f^{(7)}(t)| \frac{|x|^7}{7!} = \max_{0\le t\le x} e^t \frac{1}{7!} \le e^x \frac{1}{7!} \underbrace{\le}_{e^x \le e} \frac{e}{7!} \underbrace{<}_{e<3} \frac{3}{7!} = \frac{1}{1680} < 0.0006.$$

The maximum possible error we incur by using $P_6(x)$ to estimate e^x on [0, 1] is less than 0.0006. In particular, we can be sure that

$$P_6(1) = 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \frac{1}{4!} + \frac{1}{5!} + \frac{1}{6!} = \frac{1957}{720}$$

differs from e by less than 0.0006. Our calculator gives $\frac{1957}{720} \cong 2.7180556$ and $e \cong 2.7182818$. This difference is actually less than 0.0003. ❑

Example 6 Give an estimate for $e^{0.2}$ correct to three decimal places (that is, remainder less than 0.0005).

SOLUTION From Example 3 we know that the nth Taylor polynomial for e^x evaluated at $x = 0.2 = \frac{1}{5}$,

$$P_n(0.2) = 1 + 0.2 + \frac{(0.2)^2}{2!} + \frac{(0.2)^3}{3!} + \cdots + \frac{(0.2)^n}{n!},$$

approximates $e^{0.2}$ to within

$$|R_n(0.2)| \le e^{0.2}\frac{|0.2|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} < e\,\frac{(0.2)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} < 3\,\frac{1}{5^{n+1}(n+1)!}.$$

$e < 3$

We require

$$\frac{3}{5^{n+1}(n+1)!} < 0.0005,$$

which is equivalent to requiring

$$5^{n+1}(n+1)! > 6000.$$

The least integer that satisfies this inequality is $n = 3$. [$5^4(4!) = 15,000$.] Thus

$$P_3(0.2) = 1 + 0.2 + \frac{(0.2)^2}{2!} + \frac{(0.2)^3}{3!} = \frac{7.328}{6} \cong 1.22133$$

differs from $e^{0.2}$ by less than 0.0005. Our calculator gives $e^{0.2} \cong 1.2214028$, so in fact our estimate differs by less than 0.00008. ❑

Example 7 Use the sine series to estimate sin 0.5 within 0.001.

SOLUTION At $x = 0.5 = \frac{1}{2}$, the sine series gives

$$\sin 0.5 = 0.5 - \frac{(0.5)^3}{3!} + \frac{(0.5)^5}{5!} - \frac{(0.5)^7}{7!} + \cdots.$$

From Example 4, we know that $P_n(0.5)$ approximates sin 0.5 to within

$$|R_n(0.5)| \le \frac{(0.5)^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} = \frac{1}{2^{n+1}(n+1)!}.$$

Note that

$$\frac{1}{2^{n+1}(n+1)!} < 0.001 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad 2^{(n+1)}(n+1)! > 1000.$$

The least integer that satisfies this inequality is $n = 4$. [$2^5(5!) = 3840$.] Thus

the coefficient of x^4 is 0

$$P_4(0.5) = P_3(0.5) = 0.5 - \frac{(0.5)^3}{3!} = \frac{23}{48}$$

approximates sin 0.5 within 0.001.

Our calculator gives

$$\frac{23}{48} \cong 0.4791667 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sin 0.5 \cong 0.4794255. \qquad ❏$$

Remark We could have solved the last problem without reference to the remainder estimate derived in Example 4. The series for sin 0.5 is a convergent alternating series of the form stipulated in Theorem 12.5.3. By (12.5.4) we can conclude immediately that sin 0.5 lies between every two consecutive partial sums. In particular

$$0.4791667 \cong 0.5 - \frac{(0.5)^3}{3!} < \sin 0.5 < 0.5 - \frac{(0.5)^3}{3!} + \frac{(0.5)^5}{5!} \cong 0.4794271. \qquad ❏$$

Example 8 Use the series for $\ln(1+x)$ to estimate ln 1.4 within 0.01.

SOLUTION By (12.6.8),

$$\ln 1.4 = \ln(1 + 0.4) = 0.4 - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.4)^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}(0.4)^3 - \tfrac{1}{4}(0.4)^4 + \cdots.$$

This is a convergent alternating series of the form stipulated in Theorem 12.5.3. Therefore ln 1.4 lies between every two consecutive partial sums.

The first term less than 0.01 is

$$\tfrac{1}{4}(0.4)^4 = \tfrac{1}{4}(0.0256) = 0.0064.$$

The relation

$$0.4 - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.4)^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}(0.4)^3 - \tfrac{1}{4}(0.4)^4 < \ln 1.4 < 0.4 - \tfrac{1}{2}(0.4)^2 + \tfrac{1}{3}(0.4)^3$$

gives

$$0.335 < \ln 1.4 < 0.341.$$

Within the prescribed limits of accuracy, we can take $\ln 1.4 \cong 0.34$.[†] ❏

[†]A much more effective way of estimating logarithms is given in the Exercises.

EXERCISES 12.6

Exercises 1–4. Find the Taylor polynomial P_4 for the function f.

1. $f(x) = x - \cos x$.
2. $f(x) = \sqrt{1+x}$.
3. $f(x) = \ln \cos x$.
4. $f(x) = \sec x$.

Exercises 5–8. Find the Taylor polynomial P_5 for the given function f.

5. $f(x) = (1+x)^{-1}$.
6. $f(x) = e^x \sin x$.
7. $f(x) = \tan x$.
8. $f(x) = x \cos x^2$.

9. Determine $P_0(x), P_1(x), P_2(x), P_3(x)$ for

$$f(x) = 1 - x + 3x^2 + 5x^3.$$

10. Determine $P_0(x), P_1(x), P_2(x), P_3(x)$ for $f(x) = (x+1)^3$.

Exercises 11–16. Determine the nth Taylor polynomial P_n for the function f.

11. $f(x) = e^{-x}$.
12. $f(x) = \sinh x$.
13. $f(x) = \cosh x$.
14. $f(x) = \ln(1-x)$.
15. $f(x) = e^{rx}$, r a real number.
16. $f(x) = \cos bx$, b a real number.

Exercises 17–20. Assume that f is a function with $|f^{(n)}(x)| \le 1$ for all n and all real x. (The sine and cosine functions have this property.)

17. Estimate the maximum possible error if $P_5(1/2)$ is used to estimate $f(1/2)$.

18. Estimate the maximum possible error if $P_7(-2)$ is used to estimate $f(-2)$.

19. Find the least integer n for which you can be sure that $P_n(2)$ approximates $f(2)$ within 0.001.

20. Find the least integer n for which you can be sure that $P_n(-4)$ approximates $f(-4)$ within 0.001.

Exercises 21–24. Assume that f is a function with $|f^{(n)}(x)| \le 3$ for all n and all real x.

21. Find the least integer n for which you can be sure that $P_n(1/2)$ approximates $f(1/2)$ with four decimal place accuracy.

22. Find the least integer n for which you can be sure that $P_n(2)$ approximates $f(2)$ with three decimal place accuracy.

23. Find the values of x for which you can be sure that $P_5(x)$ approximates $f(x)$ within 0.05.

24. Find the values of x for which you can be sure that $P_9(x)$ approximates $f(x)$ within 0.05.

Exercises 25–32. Use Taylor polynomials to estimate the following within 0.01.

25. $\sqrt{e}$.

26. $\sin 0.3$.

27. $\sin 1$.

28. $\ln 1.2$.

29. $\cos 1$.

30. $e^{0.8}$.

31. $\sin 10^\circ$.

32. $\cos 6^\circ$.

Exercises 33–40. Find the Lagrange form of the remainder $R_n(x)$.

33. $f(x) = e^{2x}; \quad n = 4$.

34. $f(x) = \ln(1 + x); \quad n = 5$.

35. $f(x) = \cos 2x; \quad n = 4$.

36. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 1}; \quad n = 3$.

37. $f(x) = \tan x; \quad n = 2$.

38. $f(x) = \sin x; \quad n = 5$.

39. $f(x) = \arctan x; \quad n = 2$.

40. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 + x}; \quad n = 4$.

Exercises 41–44. Write the remainder $R_n(x)$ in Lagrange form.

41. $f(x) = e^{-x}$.

42. $f(x) = \sin 2x$.

43. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1 - x}$.

44. $f(x) = \ln(1 + x)$.

45. Let P_n be the nth Taylor polynomial for the function

$$f(x) = \ln(1 + x).$$

Find the least integer n for which: (a) $P_n(0.5)$ approximates $\ln 1.5$ within 0.01; (b) $P_n(0.3)$ approximates $\ln 1.3$ within 0.01; (c) $P_n(1)$ approximates $\ln 2$ within 0.001.

46. Let P_n be the nth Taylor polynomial for the function

$$f(x) = \sin x.$$

Find the least integer n for which: (a) $P_n(1)$ approximates $\sin 1$ within 0.001; (b) $P_n(2)$ approximates $\sin 2$ within 0.001. (c) $P_n(3)$ approximate $\sin 3$ within 0.001.

C **47.** Set $f(x) = e^x$.

(a) Find the Taylor polynomial P_n for f of least degree that approximates e^x at $x = \frac{1}{2}$ with four decimal place accuracy. Then use that polynomial to obtain an estimate of $\sqrt{e}$.

(b) Find the Taylor polynomial P_n for f of least degree that approximates e^x at $x = -1$ with four decimal place accuracy. Then use that polynomial to obtain an estimate of $1/e$.

C **48.** Set $f(x) = \cos x$.

(a) Find the Taylor polynomial P_n for f of least degree that approximates $\cos x$ at $x = \pi/30$ with three decimal place accuracy. Then use that polynomial to obtain an estimate of $\cos(\pi/30)$.

(b) Find the Taylor polynomial P_n for f of least degree that approximates $\cos x^\circ$ at $x = 9$ with four decimal place accuracy. Then use that polynomial to obtain an estimate of $\cos 9^\circ$.

49. Show that a polynomial $P(x) = a_0 + a_1 x + \cdots + a_n x^n$ is its own Taylor series.

50. Show that

$$\cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} x^{2k} \quad \text{for all real } x.$$

51. Show that

$$\sinh x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k+1)} x^{2k+1} \quad \text{for all real } x.$$

52. Show that

$$\cosh x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k)!} x^{2k} \quad \text{for all real } x.$$

Exercises 53–57. Derive a series expansion in x for the function and specify the numbers x for which the expansion is valid. Take $a > 0$.

53. $f(x) = e^{ax}$.

54. $f(x) = \sin ax$.

55. $f(x) = \cos ax$.

56. $f(x) = \ln(1 - ax)$.

57. $f(x) = \ln(a + x)$.

58. The series we derived for $\ln(1 + x)$ converges too slowly to be of much practical use. The following series expansion is much more effective:

(12.6.9)
$$\boxed{\ln\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right) = 2\left(x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \cdots\right) \quad \text{for} \quad -1 < x < 1.}$$

Derive this series expansion.

59. Set $x = \frac{1}{3}$ and use the first three nonzero terms of (12.6.9) to estimate $\ln 2$.

60. Use the first two nonzero terms of (12.6.9) to estimate $\ln 1.4$.

61. Verify the identity

$$\frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!} x^k = \frac{1}{(k-1)!} \int_0^x f^{(k)}(t)(x - t)^{k-1}\, dt - \frac{1}{k!} \int_0^x f^{(k+1)}(t)(x - t)^k\, dt$$

by using integration by parts on the second integral.

62. Prove Corollary 12.6.2 and then derive remainder estimate (12.6.3).

C **63.** (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-1/x^2}, & x \neq 0. \\ 0, & x = 0. \end{cases}$$

(b) Use L' Hôpital's rule to show that for every positive integer n,

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{e^{-1/x^2}}{x^n} = 0.$$

(c) Prove by induction that $f^{(n)}(0) = 0$ for all $n \geq 1$.

(d) What is the Taylor series of f?

(e) For what values of x does the Taylor series of f actually converge to $f(x)$?

64. Set $f(x) = \cos x$. Using a graphing utility or a CAS, draw a figure that gives the graph of f and the graphs of the Taylor polynomials P_2, P_4, P_6, P_8.

65. Set $f(x) = \ln(1 + x)$. Using a graphing utility or a CAS, draw a figure that gives the graph of f and the graphs of the Taylor polynomials P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5.

66. Show that e is irrational by taking the following steps.

(1) Begin with the expansion

$$e = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}$$

and show that the qth partial sum

$$s_q = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}$$

satisfies the inequality

$$0 < q!(e - s_q) < \frac{1}{q}.$$

(2) Show that $q!s_q$ is an integer and argue that, if e were of the form p/q, then $q!(e - s_q)$ would be a positive integer less than 1.

■ 12.7 TAYLOR POLYNOMIALS AND TAYLOR SERIES IN $x - a$

So far we have carried out series expansions only in powers of x. Here we generalize to series expansions in powers of $x - a$ where a is an arbitrary real number. We begin with a more general version of Taylor's theorem.

THEOREM 12.7.1 TAYLOR'S THEOREM

If g has $n + 1$ continuous derivatives on an open interval I that contains the point a, then for each $x \in I$

$$g(x) = g(a) + g'(a)(x - a) + \frac{g''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{g^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n + R_n(x)$$

with

$$R_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!}\int_a^x g^{(n+1)}(t)(x - t)^n \, dt.$$

The polynomial

$$P_n(x) = g(a) + g'(a)(x - a) + \frac{g''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{g^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n$$

is called the *nth Taylor polynomial for g in powers of x* $- a$. In this more general setting, the *Lagrange formula for the remainder*, $R_n(x)$, takes the form

(12.7.2)
$$\boxed{R_n(x) = \frac{g^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n+1)!}(x - a)^{n+1}}$$

where c is some number between a and x.

Now let $x \in I$, $x \neq a$, and let J be the closed interval that joins a to x. Then

(12.7.3)
$$\boxed{|R_n(x)| \le \left(\max_{t \in J} |g^{(n+1)}(t)|\right) \frac{|x - a|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}.}$$

If $R_n(x) \to 0$, then we have the series representation

$$g(x) = g(a) + g'(a)(x-a) + \frac{g''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{g^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n + \cdots,$$

which, in sigma notation, takes the form

(12.7.4)
$$\boxed{g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{g^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k.}$$

This is known as the Taylor expansion of $g(x)$ in powers of $x - a$. The series on the right is called a *Taylor series in* $x - a$.

All this differs from what you saw before only by a translation. Define

$$f(x) = g(x+a).$$

Then

$$f^{(k)}(x) = g^{(k)}(x+a) \qquad \text{and} \qquad f^{(k)}(0) = g^{(k)}(a).$$

The results of this section as stated for g can all be derived by applying the results of Section 12.6 to the function f.

Example 1 Expand $g(x) = 4x^3 - 3x^2 + 5x - 1$ in powers of $x - 2$.

SOLUTION We need to evaluate g and its derivatives at $x = 2$:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= 4x^3 - 3x^2 + 5x - 1 \\ g'(x) &= 12x^2 - 6x + 5 \\ g''(x) &= 24x - 6 \\ g'''(x) &= 24. \end{aligned}$$

All higher derivatives are identically 0.

Substitution gives $g(2) = 29,\ g'(2) = 41,\ g''(2) = 42,\ g'''(2) = 24$, and $g^{(k)}(2) = 0$ for all $k \geq 4$. Thus, from (12.7.4),

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= 29 + 41(x-2) + \frac{42}{2!}(x-2)^2 + \frac{24}{3!}(x-2)^3 \\ &= 29 + 41(x-2) + 21(x-2)^2 + 4(x-2)^3. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Expand $g(x) = x^2 \ln x$ in powers of $x - 1$.

SOLUTION We need to evaluate g and its derivatives at $x = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= x^2 \ln x \\ g'(x) &= x + 2x \ln x \\ g''(x) &= 3 + 2 \ln x \\ g'''(x) &= 2x^{-1} \\ g^{(4)}(x) &= -2x^{-2} \\ g^{(5)}(x) &= (2)(2)x^{-3} \\ g^{(6)}(x) &= -(2)(2)(3)x^{-4} = -2(3!)x^{-4} \\ g^{(7)}(x) &= (2)(2)(3)(4)x^{-5} = (2)(4!)x^{-5} \qquad \text{and so on.} \end{aligned}$$

The pattern is now clear: for $k \geq 3$

$$g^{(k)}(x) = (-1)^{k+1} 2(k-3)!\, x^{-k+2}.$$

Evaluation at $x = 1$ gives $g(1) = 0,\ g'(1) = 1,\ g''(1) = 3$ and, for $k \geq 3$,

$$g^{(k)}(1) = (-1)^{k+1}\, 2(k-3)!.$$

The expansion in powers of $x - 1$ can be written

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= (x-1) + \frac{3}{2!}(x-1)^2 + \sum_{k=3}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}(2)(k-3)!}{k!}(x-1)^k \\ &= (x-1) + \frac{3}{2}(x-1)^2 + 2\sum_{k=3}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k(k-1)(k-2)}(x-1)^k. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

Another way to expand $g(x)$ in powers of $x - a$ is to expand $g(t + a)$ in powers of t and then set $t = x - a$. This is the approach we take when the expansion in t is either known to us or is readily available.

Example 3 We can expand $g(x) = e^{x/2}$ in powers of $x - 3$ by expanding

$$g(t+3) = e^{(t+3)/2}$$

in powers of t and then setting $t = x - 3$.

Note that

$$g(t+3) = \underbrace{e^{3/2}e^{t/2} = e^{3/2}\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(t/2)^k}{k!}}_{\text{exponential series}} = e^{3/2}\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2^k k!}t^k.$$

Setting $t = x - 3$, we have

$$g(x) = e^{3/2}\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2^k k!}(x-3)^k.$$

Since the expansion of $g(t + 3)$ is valid for all real t, the expansion of $g(x)$ is valid for all real x. ❑

Now we prove that

(12.7.5)

> the series expansion
>
> $$\ln x = \ln a + \frac{1}{a}(x-a) - \frac{1}{2a^2}(x-a)^2 + \frac{1}{3a^3}(x-a)^3 - \cdots$$
>
> is valid for $0 < x \leq 2a$.

PROOF We expand $\ln(a + t)$ in powers of t and then set $t = x - a$. Note first that

$$\ln(a+t) = \ln\left[a\left(1+\frac{t}{a}\right)\right] = \ln a + \ln\left(1+\frac{t}{a}\right).$$

From (12.6.8) we know that the expansion

$$\ln\left(1+\frac{t}{a}\right) = \frac{t}{a} - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{t}{a}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{t}{a}\right)^3 - \cdots$$

holds for $-1 < t/a \leq 1$; that is, for $-a \leq t \leq a$. Adding $\ln a$ to both sides, we have

$$\ln(a+t) = \ln a + \frac{t}{a} - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{t}{a}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{t}{a}\right)^3 - \cdots \qquad \text{for} \quad -a < t \leq a.$$

Setting $t = x - a$, we find that

$$\ln x = \ln a + \frac{1}{a}(x-a) - \frac{1}{2a^2}(x-a)^2 + \frac{1}{3a^3}(x-a)^3 - \cdots$$

for $-a < x - a \leq a$ and thus for $0 < x \leq 2a$. ❑

EXERCISES 12.7

Exercises 1–6. Find the Taylor polynomial of the function f for the given values of a and n and give the Lagrange form of the remainder.

1. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$; $\quad a = 4, \quad n = 3.$

2. $f(x) = \cos x$; $\quad a = \pi/3, \quad n = 4.$

3. $f(x) = \sin x$; $\quad a = \pi/4, \quad n = 4.$

4. $f(x) = \ln x$; $\quad a = 1, \quad n = 5.$

5. $f(x) = \arctan x$; $\quad a = 1, \quad n = 3.$

6. $f(x) = \cos \pi x$; $\quad a = \frac{1}{2}, \quad n = 4.$

Exercises 7–22. Expand $g(x)$ as indicated and specify the values of x for which the expansion is valid.

7. $g(x) = 3x^3 - 2x^2 + 4x + 1$ in powers of $x - 1$.

8. $g(x) = x^4 - x^3 + x^2 - x + 1$ in powers of $x - 2$.

9. $g(x) = 2x^5 + x^2 - 3x - 5$ in powers of $x + 1$.

10. $g(x) = x^{-1}$ in powers of $x - 1$.

11. $g(x) = (1 + x)^{-1}$ in powers of $x - 1$.

12. $g(x) = (b + x)^{-1}$ in powers of $x - a$, $\quad a \neq -b$.

13. $g(x) = (1 - 2x)^{-1}$ in powers of $x + 2$.

14. $g(x) = e^{-4x}$ in powers of $x + 1$.

15. $g(x) = \sin x$ in powers of $x - \pi$.

16. $g(x) = \sin x$ in powers of $x - \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

17. $g(x) = \cos x$ in powers of $x - \pi$.

18. $g(x) = \cos x$ in powers of $x - \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

19. $g(x) = \sin \frac{1}{2}\pi x$ in powers of $x - 1$.

20. $g(x) = \sin \pi x$ in powers of $x - 1$.

21. $g(x) = \ln(1 + 2x)$ in powers of $x - 1$.

22. $g(x) = \ln(2 + 3x)$ in powers of $x - 4$.

Exercises 23–32. Expand $g(x)$ as indicated.

23. $g(x) = x \ln x$ in powers of $x - 2$.

24. $g(x) = x^2 + e^{3x}$ in powers of $x - 2$.

25. $g(x) = x \sin x$ in powers of x.

26. $g(x) = \ln(x^2)$ in powers of $x - 1$.

27. $g(x) = (1 - 2x)^{-3}$ in powers of $x + 2$.

28. $g(x) = \sin^2 x$ in powers of $x - \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

29. $g(x) = \cos^2 x$ in powers of $x - \pi$.

30. $g(x) = (1 + 2x)^{-4}$ in powers of $x - 2$.

31. $g(x) = x^n$ in powers of $x - 1$.

32. $g(x) = (x - 1)^n$ in powers of x.

33. (a) Expand e^x in powers of $x - a$.

(b) Use the expansion to show that $e^{x_1 + x_2} = e^{x_1}e^{x_2}$.

(c) Expand e^{-x} in powers of $x - a$.

34. (a) Expand $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ in powers of $x - a$.

(b) Show that both series are absolutely convergent for all real x.

(c) As noted earlier (Section 12.5), Riemann proved that the order of the terms of an absolutely convergent series may be changed without altering the sum of the series. Use Riemann's discovery and the Taylor expansions of part (a) to derive the addition formulas

$$\sin(x_1 + x_2) = \sin x_1 \cos x_2 + \cos x_1 \sin x_2,$$

$$\cos(x_1 + x_2) = \cos x_1 \cos x_2 - \sin x_1 \sin x_2.$$

35. Use a CAS to determine the Taylor polynomial P_6 in powers of $(x - 1)$ for $f(x) = \arctan x$.

36. Use a CAS to determine the Taylor polynomial P_8 in powers of $(x - 2)$ for $f(x) = \cosh 2x$.

■ 12.8 POWER SERIES

You have become familiar with Taylor series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}x^k \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k.$$

Here we study series of the form

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-a)^k$$

without regard to how the coefficients a_k have been generated. Such series are called *power series*: the first is a *power series in* x; the second is a *power series in* $x - a$.

Since a simple translation converts

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-a)^k \qquad \text{into} \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k,$$

we can focus our attention on power series of the form

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k.$$

When detailed indexing is unnecessary, we will omit it and write

$$\sum a_k x^k.$$

DEFINITION 12.8.1

A power series $\sum a_k x^k$ is said to converge

(i) at c if $\sum a_k c^k$ converges;

(ii) on the set S if $\sum a_k x^k$ converges at each $x \in S$.

The following result is fundamental.

THEOREM 12.8.2

If $\sum a_k x^k$ converges at $c \neq 0$, it converges absolutely at all x with $|x| < |c|$.

If $\sum a_k x^k$ diverges at d, then it diverges at all x with $|x| > |d|$.

PROOF Suppose that $\sum a_k c^k$ converges. Then $a_k c^k \to 0$, and, for k sufficiently large,

$$|a_k c^k| \le 1.$$

This gives

$$|a_k x^k| = |a_k c^k| \left|\frac{x}{c}\right|^k \le \left|\frac{x}{c}\right|^k.$$

For $|x| < |c|$, we have

$$\left|\frac{x}{c}\right| < 1.$$

The convergence of $\sum |a_k x^k|$ follows by comparison with the geometric series. This proves the first statement.

Suppose now that $\sum a_k d^k$ diverges. There cannot exist x with $|x| > d$ at which $\sum a_k x^k$ converges, for the existence of such an x would imply the absolute convergence of $\sum a_k d^k$. This proves the second statement. ❑

It follows from the theorem we just proved that there are exactly three possibilities for a power series:

Case 1. The series converges only at $x = 0$. This is what happens with

$$\sum k^k x^k.$$

For $x \neq 0$, $k^k x^k \not\to 0$, and so the series cannot converge.

Case 2. The series converges absolutely at all real numbers x. This is what happens with the exponential series

$$\sum \frac{x^k}{k!}.$$

Case 3. There exists a positive number r *such that the series converges absolutely for* $|x| < r$ *and diverges for* $|x| > r$. This is what happens with the geometric series

$$\sum x^k.$$

Here there is absolute convergence for $|x| < 1$ and divergence for $|x| > 1$.

Associated with each case is a *radius of convergence*:

In Case 1, we say that the radius of convergence is 0.
In Case 2, we say that the radius of convergence is ∞.
In Case 3, we say that the radius of convergence is r.

The three cases are pictured in Figure 12.8.1.

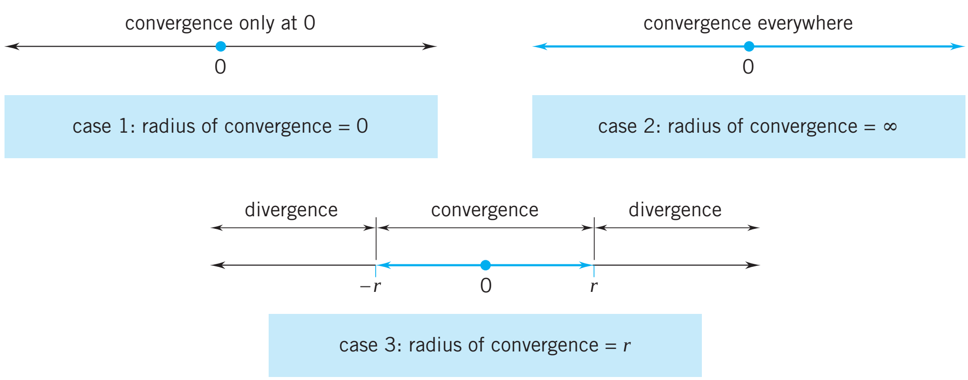


Figure 12.8.1

In general, the behavior of a power series at $-r$ and at r is not predictable. For example, the series

$$\sum x^k, \qquad \sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k} x^k, \qquad \sum \frac{1}{k} x^k, \qquad \sum \frac{1}{k^2} x^k$$

all have radius of convergence 1, but the first series converges only on $(-1, 1)$, the second series converges on $(-1, 1]$, the third on $[-1, 1)$, and the fourth on $[-1, 1]$.

The maximal interval on which a power series converges is called the *interval of convergence*. For a series with infinite radius of convergence, the interval of convergence is $(-\infty, \infty)$. For a series with radius of convergence r, the interval of convergence can be $[-r, r]$, $(-r, r]$, $[-r, r)$, or $(-r, r)$. For a series with radius of convergence 0, the interval of convergence collapses to $\{0\}$.

Example 1 Verify that the series

$$(1) \qquad \sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k} x^k$$

has interval of convergence $(-1, 1]$.

SOLUTION First we show that the radius of convergence is 1 (namely, that the series converges absolutely for $|x| < 1$ and diverges for $|x| > 1$). We do this by forming the series

$$(2) \qquad \sum \left| \frac{(-1)^k}{k} x^k \right| = \sum \frac{1}{k} |x|^k$$

and applying the ratio test.

We set

$$b_k = \frac{1}{k}|x|^k$$

and note that

$$\frac{b_{k+1}}{b_k} = \frac{|x|^{k+1}/(k+1)}{|x|^k/k} = \frac{k}{k+1}\,\frac{|x|^{k+1}}{|x|^k} = \frac{k}{k+1}|x| \to |x|.$$

By the ratio test, series (2) converges for $|x| < 1$ and diverges for $|x| > 1$.[†] It follows that series (1) converges absolutely for $|x| < 1$ and diverges for $|x| > 1$. The radius of convergence is therefore 1.

Now we test the endpoints $x = -1$ and $x = 1$. At $x = -1$,

$$\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k} x^k \qquad \text{becomes} \qquad \sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k}(-1)^k = \sum \frac{1}{k}.$$

This is the harmonic series, which, as you know, diverges. At $x = 1$,

$$\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k} x^k \qquad \text{becomes} \qquad \sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k}.$$

This is a convergent alternating series.

We have shown that series (1) converges absolutely for $|x| < 1$, diverges at -1, and converges at 1. The interval of convergence is $(-1, 1]$. ❑

Example 2 Verify that the series

$$(1) \qquad \sum \frac{1}{k^2} x^k$$

has interval of convergence $[-1, 1]$.

SOLUTION First we examine the series

$$(2) \qquad \sum \left| \frac{1}{k^2} x^k \right| = \sum \frac{1}{k^2} |x|^k.$$

Again we use the ratio test. (The root test also works.) We set

$$b_k = \frac{1}{k^2}|x|^k$$

[†] We could also have used the root test:

$$(b_k)^{1/k} = \left| \frac{1}{k} \right|^{1/k} |x| = \frac{1}{k^{1/k}}|x| \to |x|.$$

and note that

$$\frac{b_{k+1}}{b_k} = \frac{k^2}{(k+1)^2}\frac{|x|^{k+1}}{|x|^k} = \left(\frac{k}{k+1}\right)^2 |x| \to |x|.$$

By the ratio test, (2) converges for $|x| < 1$ and diverges for $|x| > 1$. This shows that (1) converges absolutely for $|x| < 1$ and diverges for $|x| > 1$. The radius of convergence is therefore 1.

Now for the endpoints. At $x = -1$,

$$\sum \frac{1}{k^2}x^k \qquad \text{takes the form} \qquad \sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k^2} = -1 + \tfrac{1}{4} - \tfrac{1}{9} + \tfrac{1}{16} - \cdots.$$

This is a convergent alternating series. At $x = 1$,

$$\sum \frac{1}{k^2}x^k \qquad \text{becomes} \qquad \sum \frac{1}{k^2}.$$

This is a convergent p-series. The interval of convergence is therefore the closed interval $[-1, 1]$. ❑

Example 3 Find the interval of convergence of the series

$$(1) \qquad \sum \frac{k}{6^k}x^k.$$

SOLUTION We begin by examining the series

$$(2) \qquad \sum \left|\frac{k}{6^k}x^k\right| = \sum \frac{k}{6^k}|x|^k.$$

We set

$$b_k = \frac{k}{6^k}|x|^k$$

and apply the root test. (The ratio test also works.) Since

$$(b_k)^{1/k} = \tfrac{1}{6}k^{1/k}|x| \to \tfrac{1}{6}|x|, \qquad \text{(Recall that } k^{1/k} \to 1.)$$

you can see that (2) converges

$$\text{for} \quad \tfrac{1}{6}|x| < 1, \qquad \text{that is, for} \quad |x| < 6,$$

and diverges

$$\text{for} \quad \tfrac{1}{6}|x| > 1, \qquad \text{that is, for} \quad |x| > 6.$$

Testing the endpoints:

$$\text{at} \quad x = 6, \quad \sum \frac{k}{6^k}6^k = \sum k, \qquad \text{which is divergent;}$$

$$\text{at} \quad x = -6 \quad \sum \frac{k}{6^k}(-6)^k = \sum (-1)^k k, \qquad \text{which is also divergent.}$$

The interval of convergence is the open interval $(-6, 6)$. ❑

Example 4 Find the interval of convergence of the series

$$\sum \frac{k!}{(3k)!}x^k. \tag{1}$$

SOLUTION Proceeding as before, we begin by examining the series

$$\sum \left|\frac{k!}{(3k)!}x^k\right| = \sum \frac{k!}{(3k)!}|x|^k. \tag{2}$$

We set

$$b_k = \frac{k!}{(3k)!}|x|^k.$$

Since factorials are involved, we use the ratio test. Note that

$$\frac{b_{k+1}}{b_k} = \frac{(k+1)!}{[3(k+1)]!} \cdot \frac{(3k)!}{k!} \cdot \frac{|x|^{k+1}}{|x|^k} = \frac{k+1}{(3k+3)(3k+2)(3k+1)}|x|$$
$$= \frac{1}{3(3k+2)(3k+1)}|x|.$$

Since

$$\frac{1}{3(3k+2)(3k+1)} \to 0,$$

the ratio b_{k+1}/b_k tends to 0 no matter what x is. By the ratio test, (2) converges at all x and therefore (1) converges absolutely at all x. The radius of convergence is ∞ and the interval of convergence is $(-\infty, \infty)$. ❑

Example 5 Find the interval of convergence of the series $\sum \frac{k^k}{2^k}x^k$.

SOLUTION We set $b_k = \frac{k^k}{2^k}|x|^k$ and apply the root test. Since $(b_k)^{1/k} = \frac{1}{2}k|x| \to \infty$ for every $x \neq 0$, the series diverges for all $x \neq 0$; the series converges only at $x = 0$. ❑

Example 6 Find the interval of convergence of the series

$$\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k^2 3^k}(x+2)^k.$$

SOLUTION We consider the series

$$\sum \left|\frac{(-1)^k}{k^2 3^k}(x+2)^k\right| = \sum \frac{1}{k^2 3^k}|x+2|^k.$$

We set

$$b_k = \frac{1}{k^2 3^k}|x+2|^k$$

and apply the ratio test (the root test will work equally well):

$$\frac{b_{k+1}}{b_k} = \frac{k^2 3^k}{(k+1)^2 3^{k+1}} \cdot \frac{|x+2|^{k+1}}{|x+2|^k} = \frac{k^2}{3(k+1)^2}|x+2| \to \frac{1}{3}|x+2|.$$

The series is absolutely convergent for $-5 < x < 1$:

$$\tfrac{1}{3}|x+2| < 1 \quad \text{iff} \quad |x+2| < 3 \quad \text{iff} \quad -5 < x < 1.$$

We now check the endpoints. At $x = -5$,

$$\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k^2 3^k}(-3)^k = \sum \frac{1}{k^2}.$$

This is a convergent p-series. At $x = 1$,

$$\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k^2 3^k}(3)^k = \sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k^2}.$$

This is a convergent alternating series. The interval of convergence is the closed interval $[-5, 1]$. ❏

EXERCISES 12.8

1. Suppose that the series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ converges at $x = 3$. What can you conclude about the convergence or divergence of the following series?

(a) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k 2^k$.   (b) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (-2)^k$.

(c) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (-3)^k$.   (d) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k 4^k$.

2. Suppose that the series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ converges at $x = -3$ and diverges at $x = 5$. What can you conclude about the convergence or divergence of the following series?

(a) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k 2^k$.   (b) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (-6)^k$.

(c) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k 4^k$.   (d) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k 3^k$.

Exercises 3–40. Find the interval of convergence.

3. $\sum k x^k$.

4. $\sum \frac{1}{k} x^k$.

5. $\sum \frac{1}{(2k)!} x^4$.

6. $\sum \frac{2^k}{k^2} x^k$.

7. $\sum (-k)^{2k} x^{2k}$.

8. $\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{\sqrt{k}} x^k$.

9. $\sum \frac{1}{k 2^k} x^k$.

10. $\sum \frac{1}{k^2 2^k} x^k$.

11. $\sum \left(\frac{k}{100}\right)^k x^k$.

12. $\sum \frac{k^2}{1+k^2} x^k$.

13. $\sum \frac{2^k}{\sqrt{k}} x^k$.

14. $\sum \frac{1}{\ln k} x^k$.

15. $\sum \frac{k-1}{k} x^k$.

16. $\sum k a^k x^k$.

17. $\sum \frac{k}{10^k} x^k$.

18. $\sum \frac{3k^2}{e^k} x^k$.

19. $\sum \frac{x^k}{k^k}$.

20. $\sum \frac{7^k}{k!} x^k$.

21. $\sum \frac{(-)^k}{k^k} (x-2)^k$.

22. $\sum k! x^k$.

23. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{2^k}{3^{k+1}} x^k$.

24. $\sum \frac{2^k}{(2k)!} x^k$.

25. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k!}{k^3} (x-1)^k$.

26. $\sum \frac{(-e)^k}{k^2} x^k$.

27. $\sum \left(\frac{k}{k-1}\right) \frac{(x+2)^k}{2^k}$.

28. $\sum \frac{\ln k}{k} (x+1)^k$.

29. $\sum (-1)^k \frac{k^2}{(k+1)!} (x+3)^k$.

30. $\sum \frac{k^3}{e^k} (x-4)^k$.

31. $\sum \left(1 + \frac{1}{k}\right)^k x^k$.

32. $\sum \frac{(-1)^k a^k}{k^2} (x-a)^k$.

33. $\sum \frac{\ln k}{2^k} (x-2)^k$.

34. $\sum \frac{1}{(\ln k)^k} (x-1)^k$.

35. $\sum (-1)^k (\frac{2}{3})^k (x+1)^k$.

36. $\sum \frac{2^{1/k} \pi^k}{k(k+1)(k+2)} (x-2)^k$.

37. $1 - \frac{x}{2} + \frac{2x^2}{4} - \frac{3x^2}{8} + \frac{4x^4}{16} - \cdots$.

38. $\frac{(x-1)}{5^2} + \frac{4}{5^4}(x-1)^2 + \frac{9}{5^6}(x-1)^3 + \frac{16}{5^8}(x-1)^4 + \cdots$.

39. $\frac{3x^2}{4} + \frac{9x^4}{9} + \frac{27x^6}{16} + \frac{81x^8}{25} + \cdots$.

40. $\frac{1}{16}(x+1) - \frac{2}{25}(x+1)^2 + \frac{3}{36}(x+1)^3 - \frac{4}{49}(x+1)^4 + \cdots$.

41. Suppose that the series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x-1)^k$ converges at $x = 3$. What can you conclude about the convergence or divergence of the following series?

(a) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k$.   (b) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k$.

(c) $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k a_k 2^k$.

42. Suppose that the series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (x+2)^k$ converges at $x = 4$. At what other values of x must the series converge ? Does the series necessarily converge at $x = -8$?

43. Let $\sum a_k x^k$ be a series with radius of convergence $r > 0$.

(a) Show that if the series is absolutely convergent at one endpoint of its interval of convergence, then it is absolutely convergent at the other endpoint.
(b) Show that if the interval of convergence is $(-r, r]$ then the series is only conditionally convergent at r.

44. Let $r > 0$ be arbitrary. Give an example of a power series $\sum a_k x^k$ with radius of convergence r.

45. The power series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ has the property that $a_{k+3} = a_k$ for all $k \geq 0$.
(a) What is the radius of convergence of the series?
(b) What is the sum of the series?

46. Find the interval of convergence of the series $\sum s_k x^k$ where s_k is the kth partial sum of the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}.$$

47. Let $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ be a power series with radius of convergence r, r possibly infinite.
(a) Given that $|a_k|^{1/k} \to \rho$ show that, if $\rho \neq 0$, then $r = 1/\rho$ and, if $\rho = 0$, then $r = \infty$.
(b) Given that $|a_{k+1}/a_k| \to \lambda$ show that, if $\lambda \neq 0$, then $r = 1/\lambda$ and, if $\lambda = 0$, then $r = \infty$.

48. Let $\sum a_k x^k$ be a power series with finite radius of convergence r. Show that the power series $\sum a_k x^{2k}$ has radius of convergence $\sqrt{r}$.

■ 12.9 DIFFERENTIATION AND INTEGRATION OF POWER SERIES

Differentiation of Power Series

We begin with a simple but important result.

THEOREM 12.9.1

If

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \cdots + a_n x^n + \cdots$$

converges on $(-c, c)$, then

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(a_k x^k) = a_1 + 2a_2 x + \cdots + n a_n x^{n-1} + \cdots$$

also converges on $(-c, c)$.

PROOF Assume that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k \qquad \text{converges on } (-c, c).$$

Then it converges absolutely on this interval. (You can reason this out from Theorem 12.8.2.)

Now let x be some number in $(-c, c)$ and choose $\epsilon > 0$ such that

$$|x| < |x| + \epsilon < c.$$

Since $|x| + \epsilon$ lies within the interval of convergence,

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} |a_k(|x| + \epsilon)^k| \qquad \text{converges.}$$

As you are asked to show in Exercise 48, for all k sufficiently large,

$$|k\, x^{k-1}| \leq (|x| + \epsilon)^k.$$

It follows that for all such k,

$$|ka_kx^{k-1}| \le |a_k(|x|+\epsilon)^k|.$$

Since

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} |a_k(|x|+\epsilon)^k| \qquad \text{converges,}$$

we can conclude that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left|\frac{d}{dx}(a_kx^k)\right| = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |ka_kx^{k-1}| \qquad \text{converges}$$

and thus that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(a_kx^k) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} ka_kx^{k-1} \qquad \text{converges.} \quad ❑$$

Repeated application of the theorem shows that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d^2}{dx^2}(a_kx^k), \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d^3}{dx^3}(a_kx^k), \qquad \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d^4}{dx^4}(a_kx^k), \qquad \text{and so on}$$

all converge on $(-c, c)$.

Example 1 Since the geometric series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 + \cdots.$$

converges on $(-1, 1)$, the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(x^k) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} kx^{k-1} = 1 + 2x + 3x^2 + 4x^3 + 5x^4 + 6x^5 + \cdots$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d^2}{dx^2}(x^k) = \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} k(k-1)x^{k-2} = 2 + 6x + 12x^2 + 20x^3 + 30x^4 + \cdots$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d^3}{dx^3}(x^k) = \sum_{k=3}^{\infty} k(k-1)(k-2)x^{k-3} = 6 + 24x + 60x^2 + 120x^3 + \cdots$$

and so on

all converge on $(-1, 1)$. ❑

Remark That $\sum a_kx^k$ and $\sum ka_kx^k$ have the same radius of convergence does not indicate that they converge at exactly the same points. If the series have a finite radius of convergence r, it can happen that the first series converges at r and/or $-r$ and the second series does not. For example

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2}\, x^k$$

converges on $[-1, 1]$, but the derived series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k}\, x^k$$

converges only on $[-1, 1)$. At $x = 1$ this series diverges. ❑

Suppose now that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k \qquad \text{converges on } (-c, c).$$

Then, as we have seen,

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(a_k x^k) \qquad \text{also converges on } (-c, c).$$

Using the first series, we can define a function f on $(-c, c)$ by setting

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k.$$

Using the second series, we can define a function g on $(-c, c)$ by setting

$$g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(a_k x^k).$$

The crucial point is that

$$f'(x) = g(x).$$

THEOREM 12.9.2 THE DIFFERENTIABILITY THEOREM

If

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } (-c, c),$$

then f is differentiable on $(-c, c)$ and

$$f'(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(a_k x^k) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } (-c, c).$$

By applying this theorem to f', you can see that f' is itself differentiable. This in turn implies that f'' is differentiable, and so on. In short, f has derivatives of all orders.

The discussion up to this point can be summarized as follows:

In the interior of its interval of convergence a power series defines an infinitely differentiable function the derivatives of which can be obtained by differentiating term by term:

$$\frac{d^n}{dx^n}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k\right) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d^n}{dx^n}(a_k x^k) \qquad \text{for all } n.$$

For a detailed proof of the differentiability theorem, see the supplement at the end of this section. We go on to examples.

Example 2 You know that $\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x$. You can see this directly by differentiating the exponential series:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!}\right) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^k}{k!}\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^{k-1}}{(k-1)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!} = e^x. \quad ❑$$

set $n = k - 1$

Example 3 You have seen that

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \frac{x^9}{9!} - \cdots, \qquad \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \frac{x^8}{8!} - \cdots.$$

The relations

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x, \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x$$

can be confirmed by differentiating these series term by term:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) &= 1 - \frac{3x^2}{3!} + \frac{5x^4}{5!} - \frac{7x^6}{7!} + \frac{9x^8}{9!} - \cdots \\ &= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \frac{x^8}{8!} - \cdots = \cos x\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) &= -\frac{2x}{2!} + \frac{4x^3}{4!} - \frac{6x^5}{6!} + \frac{8x^7}{8!} - \cdots \\ &= -x + \frac{x^3}{3!} - \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{x^7}{7!} - \cdots \\ &= -\left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots\right) = -\sin x. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 4 We can sum the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k}$ for all x in $(-1, 1)$ by setting

$$g(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k} \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } (-1, 1)$$

and noting that

$$g'(x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{kx^{k-1}}{k} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x^{k-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n = \frac{1}{1-x}.$$

the geometric series

Since

$$g'(x) = \frac{1}{1-x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(0) = 0,$$

we know that

$$g(x) = -\ln(1-x) = \ln\left(\frac{1}{1-x}\right).$$

It follows that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k} = \ln\left(\frac{1}{1-x}\right) \qquad \text{for all } x \text{ in } (-1, 1). \quad ❑$$

Integration of Power Series

Power series can be integrated term by term.

THEOREM 12.9.3 TERM-BY-TERM INTEGRATION

If $f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ converges on $(-c, c)$, then

$F(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k+1} x^{k+1}$ converges on $(-c, c)$ and $\int f(x)\,dx = F(x) + C.$

PROOF Suppose that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ converges on $(-c, c)$. Then $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} |a_k x^k|$ also converges on $(-c, c)$. (Theorem 12.8.2) Since

$$\left|\frac{a_k}{k+1} x^k\right| \le |a_k x^k| \qquad \text{for all } k,$$

we know by basic comparison that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left|\frac{a_k}{k+1} x^k\right| \qquad \text{converges on } (-c, c).$$

It follows that

$$x \sum \frac{a_k}{k+1} x^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k+1} x^{k+1} \qquad \text{converges on } (-c, c).$$

Since

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k \qquad \text{and} \qquad F(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k+1} x^{k+1},$$

we know from the differentiability theorem that

$$F'(x) = f(x) \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \int f(x) = F(x) + C. \quad \square$$

Term-by-term integration can be expressed by writing

(12.9.4)
$$\boxed{\int \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k\right) dx = \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k+1} x^{k+1}\right) + C.}$$

Example 5 You are familiar with the series expansion

$$\frac{1}{1+x} = \frac{1}{1-(-x)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k x^k.$$

It is valid for all x in $(-1, 1)$ and for no other x. Integrating term by term, we have

$$\ln(1+x) = \int \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k x^k\right) dx = \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k+1} x^{k+1}\right) + C$$

for all x in $(-1, 1)$. At $x = 0$ both $\ln(1+x)$ and the series on the right are 0. It follows that $C = 0$ and thus

$$\ln(1+x) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k+1} x^{k+1} = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \cdots$$

for all x in $(-1, 1)$. ❑

In Section 12.6 we asserted that this expansion for $\ln(1+x)$ was valid on the half-closed interval $(-1, 1]$. This gave us an expansion for ln 2. Term-by-term integration gives us only the open interval $(-1, 1)$. Well, you may say, it's easy to see that the logarithm series also converges at $x = 1$.† True enough, but how do we know that it converges to ln 2? The answer lies in a theorem proved by the Norwegian mathematician Niels Henrik Abel (1802–1829).

THEOREM 12.9.5 ABEL'S THEOREM

Suppose that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ converges on $(-c, c)$ and $f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$ on this interval.

If f is left continuous at c and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k c^k$ converges, then

$$f(c) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k c^k.$$

If f is right continuous at $-c$ and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (-c)^k$ converges, then

$$f(-c) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k (-c)^k.$$

From Abel's theorem, it is evident that the series for $\ln(1+x)$ does represent the function at $x = 1$ and therefore

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \cdots = \ln 2.$$

We come now to the arc tangent:

(12.9.6) $$\boxed{\arctan x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots \qquad \text{for } -1 \le x \le 1.}$$

†An alternating series with $a_k \to 0$.

PROOF For all x in $(-1, 1)$

$$\frac{1}{1+x^2} = \frac{1}{1-(-x^2)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^k x^{2k}.$$

Integration gives

$$\arctan x = \int \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^k x^{2k}\right) dx = \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{2k+1}x^{2k+1}\right) + C.$$

The constant C is 0, as we can see by noting that both the series on the right and the arc tangent are 0 at $x = 0$. Thus, for all x in $(-1, 1)$, we have

$$\arctan\ x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{2k+1}x^{2k+1} = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots.$$

That the series also represents the function at $x = -1$, and $x = 1$ follows directly from Abel's theorem: at both points the arc tangent is continuous in the sense required; at both points the series converges. ❑

Since $\arctan 1 = \frac{1}{4}\pi$, we have

$$\frac{1}{4}\pi = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{9} - \cdots.$$

This series, known to the Scottish mathematician James Gregory by 1671, is an elegant formula for π, but it converges too slowly for computational purposes. A much more effective way of calculating π is outlined in Project 12.9.B.

Since term-by-term integration can be used to obtain an antiderivative, it can be used to obtain a definite integral.

Example 6 For all real x

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots.$$

It follows that for all real x

$$e^{-x^2} = 1 - x^2 + \frac{x^4}{2!} - \frac{x^6}{3!} + \frac{x^8}{4!} - \frac{x^{10}}{5!} + \frac{x^{12}}{6!} - \cdots$$

and

$$\int_0^1 e^{-x^2}\,dx = \left[x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5(2!)} - \frac{x^7}{7(3!)} + \frac{x^9}{7(4!)} - \frac{x^{11}}{11(5!)} + \frac{x^{13}}{13(6!)} - \cdots\right]_0^1$$

$$= 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5(2!)} - \frac{1}{7(3!)} + \frac{1}{9(4!)} - \frac{1}{11(5!)} + \frac{1}{13(6!)} - \cdots.$$

The integral on the left is the sum of the series on the right.

To obtain a decimal estimate for the integral, we work with the series on the right. The series is an alternating series with terms that tend to 0 and have decreasing magnitude. Therefore the integral lies between consecutive partial sums. In particular it lies between

$$1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5(2!)} - \frac{1}{7(3!)} + \frac{1}{9(4!)} - \frac{1}{11(5!)}$$

and

$$\left[1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5(2!)} - \frac{1}{7(3!)} + \frac{1}{9(4!)} - \frac{1}{11(5!)}\right] + \frac{1}{13(6!)}.$$

Simple arithmetic shows that the first sum is greater than 0.74672 and the second sum is less than 0.74684. It follows that

$$0.74672 < \int_0^1 e^{-x^2}\,dx < 0.74684.$$

Within 0.0001 the integral is 0.7468. ❑

The integral of Example 6 was easy to estimate numerically because it could be expressed as an alternating series to which we could apply the basic theorem on alternating series. The next example requires more subtlety and illustrates a method more general than that used in Example 6.

Example 7 We want a numerical estimate for $\int_0^1 e^{x^2}\,dx$. Proceeding as we did in Example 6, we find that

$$\int_0^1 e^{x^2}\,dx = 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5(2!)} + \frac{1}{7(3!)} + \frac{1}{9(4!)} + \frac{1}{11(5!)} + \frac{1}{13(6!)} + \cdots.$$

We now have a series expansion for the integral, but that expansion does not take us directly to a numerical estimate for the integral. We know that s_n, the nth partial sum of the series, approximates the integral, but we don't know the accuracy of the approximation. We have no handle on the remainder left by s_n.

We start again, this time keeping track of the remainder. For $x \in [0, 1]$,

$$0 \le e^x - \left(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!}\right) = R_n(x) \le \overset{(12.6.3)}{e\left[\frac{x^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}\right]} < \frac{3}{(n+1)!}.$$

If $x \in [0, 1]$, then $x^2 \in [0, 1]$ and therefore

$$0 \le e^{x^2} - \left(1 + x^2 + \frac{x^4}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^{2n}}{n!}\right) < \frac{3}{(n+1)!}$$

Integrating this inequality from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$, we have

$$0 \le \int_0^1 \left[e^{x^2} - \left(1 + x^2 + \frac{x^4}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^{2n}}{n!}\right)\right] dx < \int_0^1 \frac{3}{(n+1)!}\,dx.$$

Carrying out the integration where possible, we see that

$$0 \le \int_0^1 e^{x^2}\,dx - \left[1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5(2!)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n+1)(n!)}\right] < \frac{3}{(n+1)!}.$$

We can use this inequality to estimate the integral as closely as we wish. Since

$$\frac{3}{7!} = \frac{1}{1680} < 0.0006, \qquad \text{(we took } n = 6\text{)}$$

we see that

$$\alpha = 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5(2!)} + \frac{1}{7(3!)} + \frac{1}{9(4!)} + \frac{1}{11(5!)} + \frac{1}{13(6!)}$$

approximates the integral within 0.0006. Arithmetical computation shows that

$$1.4626 \le \alpha \le 1.4627.$$

It follows that

$$1.4626 \le \int_0^1 e^{x^2}\,dx \le 1.4627 + 0.0006 = 1.4633.$$

The estimate 1.463 approximates the integral within 0.0004. ❑

Power Series; Taylor Series

It is time to relate Taylor series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!} x^k$$

to power series in general. The relationship is very simple.

> On its interval of convergence, a power series is the Taylor series of its sum.

To see this, all you have to do is differentiate

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \cdots + a_k x^k + \cdots$$

term by term. Do this and you will find that $f^{(k)}(0) = k!a_k$, and therefore

$$a_k = \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}.$$

The a_k are the Taylor coefficients of f.

We end this section by carrying out a few simple expansions.

Example 8 Expand $\cosh x$ and $\sinh x$ in powers of x.

SOLUTION There is no need to go through the labor of computing the Taylor coefficients

$$\frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}.$$

By definition,

$$\cosh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x + e^{-x}) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sinh x = \tfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x}). \qquad [(7.8.1)]$$

Since

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \cdots,$$

we have

$$e^{-x} = 1 - x + \frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^5}{5!} + \cdots.$$

Thus

$$\cosh x = \frac{1}{2}\left(2 + 2\frac{x^2}{2!} + 2\frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots\right) = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$$

and

$$\sinh x = \frac{1}{2}\left(2x + 2\frac{x^3}{3!} + 2\frac{x^5}{5!} + \cdots\right) = x + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!}.$$

Both expansions are valid for all real x, since the exponential expansions are valid for all real x. ❏

Example 9 Expand $x^2 \cos x^3$ in powers of x.

SOLUTION

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots.$$

Thus

$$\cos x^3 = 1 - \frac{(x^3)^2}{2!} + \frac{(x^3)^4}{4!} - \frac{(x^3)^6}{6!} + \cdots = 1 - \frac{x^6}{2!} + \frac{x^{12}}{4!} - \frac{x^{18}}{6!} + \cdots$$

and

$$x^2 \cos x^3 = x^2 - \frac{x^8}{2!} + \frac{x^{14}}{4!} - \frac{x^{20}}{6!} + \cdots.$$

This expansion is valid for all real x, since the expansion for $\cos x$ is valid for all real x.

ALTERNATIVE SOLUTION Since

$$x^2 \cos x^3 = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\tfrac{1}{3}\sin x^3\right),$$

we can obtain the expansion for $x^2 \cos x^3$ by expanding $\frac{1}{3}\sin x^3$ and then differentiating term by term. ❏

EXERCISES 12.9

Exercises 1–6. Expand $f(x)$ in powers of x, basing your calculations on the geometric series

$$\frac{1}{1-x} = 1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^n + \cdots.$$

1. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(1-x)^2}$.

2. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(1-x)^3}$.

3. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(1-x)^k}$.

4. $f(x) = \ln(1-x)$.

5. $f(x) = \ln(1-x^2)$.

6. $f(x) = \ln(2-3x)$.

Exercises 7–8. Expand $f(x)$ in powers of x, basing your calculations on the tangent series

$$\tan x = x + \tfrac{1}{3}x^3 + \tfrac{2}{15}x^5 + \tfrac{17}{315}x^7 + \cdots.$$

7. $f(x) = \sec^2 x$.

8. $f(x) = \ln\cos x$.

Exercises 9–10. Find $f^{(9)}(0)$.

9. $f(x) = x^2 \sin x$.

10. $f(x) = x\cos x^2$.

Exercises 11–22. Expand $f(x)$ in powers of x.

11. $f(x) = \sin x^2$.

12. $f(x) = x^2 \arctan x$.

13. $f(x) = e^{3x^3}$.

14. $f(x) = \dfrac{1-x}{1+x}$.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x}{1-x^2}$.

16. $f(x) = x \sinh x^2$.

17. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{1-x} + e^x$.

18. $f(x) = \cosh x \sinh x$.

19. $f(x) = x\ln(1+x^3)$.

20. $f(x) = (x^2+x)\ln(1+x)$.

21. $f(x) = x^3 e^{-x^3}$.

22. $f(x) = x^5(\sin x + \cos 2x)$.

Exercises 23–26. Evaluate the limit (i) by using L'Hôpital's rule, (ii) by using power series.

23. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1-\cos x}{x^2}$.

24. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x - x}{x^2}$.

25. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\cos x - 1}{x\sin x}$.

26. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x - 1 - x}{x\arctan x}$.

Exercises 27–30. Find a power series representation for the improper integral.

27. $\displaystyle\int_0^x \frac{\ln(1+t)}{t}\,dt$.

28. $\displaystyle\int_0^x \frac{1-\cos t}{t^2}\,dt$.

29. $\displaystyle\int_0^x \frac{\arctan t}{t}\,dt$.

30. $\displaystyle\int_0^x \frac{\sinh t}{t}\,dt$.

Exercises 31–36. Estimate to within 0.01 by using series.

31. $\int_0^1 e^{-x^3}\,dx.$ **32.** $\int_0^1 \sin x^2\,dx.$

33. $\int_0^1 \sin\sqrt{x}\,dx.$ **34.** $\int_0^1 x^4 e^{-x^2}\,dx.$

35. $\int_0^1 \arctan x^2\,dx.$ **36.** $\int_1^2 \frac{1-\cos x}{x}\,dx.$

Exercises 37–40. Use a power series to estimate the integral within 0.0001.

37. $\int_0^1 \frac{\sin x}{x}\,dx.$ **38.** $\int_0^{0.5} \frac{1-\cos x}{x^2}\,dx.$

39. $\int_0^{0.5} \frac{\ln(1+x)}{x}\,dx.$ **40.** $\int_0^{0.2} x\sin x\,dx.$

Exercises 41–43. Sum the series.

41. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}x^{3k}.$ **42.** $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}x^{3k+1}.$

43. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{3k}{k!}x^{3k-1}.$

44. Set $f(x) = \dfrac{e^x - 1}{x}.$

(a) Expand $f(x)$ in a power series.
(b) Differentiate the series and show that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{(n+1)!} = 1.$$

45. Set $f(x) = xe^x.$

(a) Expand $f(x)$ in a power series.
(b) Integrate the series and show that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!(n+2)} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

46. Deduce the differentiation formulas

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sinh x) = \cosh x, \quad \frac{d}{dx}(\cosh x) = \sinh x$$

from the expansions of $\sinh x$ and $\cosh x$ in powers of x.

47. Show that, if $\sum a_k x^k$ and $\sum b_k x^k$ both converge to the same sum on some interval, then $a_k = b_k$ for each k.

48. Show that, if $\epsilon > 0$, then

$$|kx^{k-1}| < (|x| + \epsilon)^k \text{ for all } k \text{ sufficiently large.}$$

49. Suppose that the function f has the power series representation $f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$.

(a) Show that if f is an even function, then $a_{2k+1} = 0$ for all k.
(b) Show that if f is an odd function, then $a_{2k} = 0$ for all k.

50. Suppose that the function f is infinitely differentiable on an open interval that contains 0, and suppose that $f'(x) = -2f(x)$ and $f(0) = 1$. Express $f(x)$ as a power series in x. What is the sum of this series?

51. Suppose that the function f is infinitely differentiable on an open interval that contains 0, and suppose that $f''(x) = -2f(x)$ for all x and $f(0) = 0$, $f'(0) = 1$. Express $f(x)$ as a power series in x. What is the sum of this series?

52. Expand $f(x)$, $f'(x)$, and $\int f(x)\,dx$ in power series

(a) $f(x) = x2^{-x^2}.$
(b) $f(x) = x\arctan x.$

Exercises 53–55. Estimate within 0.001 by series expansion and check your result by carrying out the integration directly.

53. $\int_0^{1/2} x\ln(1+x)\,dx.$ **54.** $\int_0^1 x\sin x\,dx.$

55. $\int_0^1 xe^{-x}\,dx.$

56. Show that

$$0 \le \int_0^2 e^{x^2}\,dx - \left[2 + \frac{2^3}{3} + \frac{2^5}{5(2!)} + \cdots + \frac{2^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)n!}\right] < \frac{e^4 2^{2n+3}}{(n+1)!}.$$

■ PROJECT 12.9A The Binomial Series

Starting with the binomial $1 + x$ and raising it to the power α, we obtain the function

$$f(x) = (1+x)^{\alpha}.$$

Here α is an arbitrary real number different from 0. It can be positive or negative. It can be rational or irrational.

Problem 1. Show that the Taylor series of this function can be written

$$1 + \alpha x + \frac{\alpha(\alpha-1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\alpha(\alpha-1)(\alpha-2)}{3!}x^3 + \cdots.$$

This series is called the *binomial series*.

Problem 2. Show that the binomial series converges absolutely on $(-1, 1)$. HINT: Use the ratio test.

Denote the sum of the binomial series by $\varphi(x)$.

Problem 3. Use term-by-term differentiation to show that

$$(1+x)\varphi'(x) = \alpha\varphi(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in (-1, 1).$$

HINT: Compare coefficients.

Problem 4. Form the function

$$g(x) = \frac{\varphi(x)}{(1+x)^{\alpha}}$$

and show that $g'(x) = 0$ for all $x \in (-1, 1)$. HINT: Differentiate by the quotient rule and apply the identity derived in Problem 3.

From Problem 4 you know that g is constant on $(-1, 1)$. Since $g(0) = 1$, $g(x) = 1$ for all $x \in (-1, 1)$. This tells us

$$\varphi(x) = (1+x)^\alpha \qquad \text{for all } x \in (-1, 1)$$

and therefore

(12.9.7)
$$\boxed{(1+x)^\alpha = 1 + \alpha x + \frac{\alpha(\alpha-1)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\alpha(\alpha-1)(\alpha-2)}{3!}x^3 + \cdots.}$$

This is one of the most important series expansions in mathematics. Replacing x by $-x$ and setting $\alpha = -1$, we obtain the geometric series. The binomial series associated with positive integer values of α have only a finite number of nonzero terms (check this out), and these give the binomial expansions of elementary algebra:

$$(1+x)^1 = 1 + x$$
$$(1+x)^2 = 1 + 2x + x^2$$
$$(1+x)^3 = 1 + 3x + 3x^2 + x^3$$
$$(1+x)^4 = 1 + 4x + 6x^2 + 4x^3 + x^4$$

and so on.

Problem 5. Use the binomial series to obtain a power series in x for the function given.

a. $f(x) = \sqrt{1+x}$.
b. $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x}$.
c. $f(x) = \sqrt{1+x^2}$.
d. $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$.
e. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1+x}}$.
f. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt[4]{1+x}}$.

Problem 6.

a. Use the binomial series to obtain a power series in x for the function $f(x) = 1/\sqrt{1-x^2}$.
b. Use the series you found for f to construct a power series for the function $F(x) = \arcsin x$ and give the radius of convergence.

Problem 7.

a. Use the binomial series to obtain a power series in x for the function $f(x) = 1/\sqrt{1+x^2}$.
b. Use the series you found for f to construct a power series for the function $F(x) = \sinh^{-1} x$ and give the radius of convergence. [Use (7.9.3).]

■ PROJECT 12.9B Estimating π

The value of π to twenty decimal places is

$$\pi \cong 3.14159\ 26535\ 89793\ 23846.$$

In Exercises 8.7 you were asked to estimate π by estimating the integral

$$\int_0^1 \frac{4}{1+x^2}\,dx = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

using the trapezoidal rule and Simpson's rule.

In this project we estimate π (much more effectively) by using the arc tangent series

$$\arctan x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots \qquad \text{for } -1 \le x \le 1$$

and the relation

(1) $$\frac{\pi}{4} = 4\arctan\tfrac{1}{5} - \arctan\tfrac{1}{239}.$$

(This relation was discovered in 1706 by John Machin, a Scotsman.)

Problem 1. Verify (1). HINT: Using the addition formula for the tangent function, calculate $\tan(2\arctan\frac{1}{5})$, then $\tan(4\arctan\frac{1}{5})$, and finally $\tan(4\arctan\frac{1}{5} - \arctan\frac{1}{239})$.

The arc tangent series gives

$$\arctan\tfrac{1}{5} = \tfrac{1}{5} - \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{5}\right)^3 + \tfrac{1}{5}\left(\tfrac{1}{5}\right)^5 - \tfrac{1}{7}\left(\tfrac{1}{5}\right)^7 + \cdots$$

and

$$\arctan\tfrac{1}{239} = \tfrac{1}{239} - \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{239}\right)^3 + \tfrac{1}{5}\left(\tfrac{1}{239}\right)^5 - \tfrac{1}{7}\left(\tfrac{1}{239}\right)^7 + \cdots.$$

These are convergent alternating series. (The terms alternate in sign, have decreasing magnitude, and tend to 0.) Thus we know, for example, that

$$\tfrac{1}{5} - \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{5}\right)^3 \le \arctan\tfrac{1}{5} \le \tfrac{1}{5} - \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{5}\right)^3 + \tfrac{1}{5}\left(\tfrac{1}{5}\right)^5$$

and

$$\tfrac{1}{239} - \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\tfrac{1}{239}\right)^3 \le \arctan\tfrac{1}{239} \le \tfrac{1}{239}.$$

Problem 2. Show that $3.1459262 < \pi < 3.14159267$ by using six terms of the series for $\arctan\frac{1}{5}$ and two terms of the series for $\arctan\frac{1}{239}$.

Greater accuracy can be obtained by using more terms. For example, fifteen terms of the series for $\arctan\frac{1}{5}$ and just four terms of the series for $\arctan\frac{1}{239}$ determine π accurately to twenty decimal places.

Problem 3.

a. Use a CAS to obtain the sum of the first fifteen terms of the series for $\arctan \frac{1}{5}$ and the first four terms of the series for $\arctan \frac{1}{239}$.

b. Use the result in part (a) to estimate π. Compare your estimate to the twenty-place estimate given at the beginning of this project.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 12.9

PROOF OF THEOREM 12.9.2

Set $\quad f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k \quad$ and $\quad g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx}(a_k x^k) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k a_k x^{k-1}.$

Select x from $(-c, c)$. We want to show that

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = g(x).$$

For $x + h$ in $(-c, c)$, $h \neq 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left| g(x) - \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \right| &= \left| \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k a_k x^{k-1} - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k (x+h)^k - a_k x^k}{h} \right| \\ &= \left| \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k a_k x^{k-1} - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \left[\frac{(x+h)^k - x^k}{h} \right] \right|. \end{aligned}$$

By the mean-value theorem,

$$\frac{(x+h)^k - x^k}{h} = k(t_k)^{k-1}$$

for some number t_k between x and $x + h$. Thus we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \left| g(x) - \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \right| &= \left| \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k a_k x^{k-1} - \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k a_k (t_k)^{k-1} \right| \\ &= \left| \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k a_k [x^{k-1} - (t_k)^{k-1}] \right| \\ &= \left| \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} k a_k [x^{k-1} - (t_k)^{k-1}] \right|. \end{aligned}$$

By the mean-value theorem,

$$\frac{x^{k-1} - (t_k)^{k-1}}{x - t_k} = (k-1)(p_{k-1})^{k-2}$$

for some number p_{k-1} between x and t_k. It follows that

$$|x^{k-1} - (t_k)^{k-1}| = |x - t_k| |(k-1)(p_{k-1})^{k-2}|.$$

Since $|x - t_k| < |h|$ and $|p_{k-1}| \le |\alpha|$ where $|\alpha| = \max\{|x|, |x+h|\}$,

$$|x^{k-1} - (t_k)^{k-1}| \le |h| |(k-1)\alpha^{k-2}|.$$

Thus

$$\left| g(x) - \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \right| \le |h| \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} |k(k-1) a_k \alpha^{k-2}|.$$

Since this series converges,

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\left(|h|\sum_{k=2}^{\infty}|k(k-1)a_k\alpha^{k-2}|\right)=0.$$

This gives

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\left|g(x)-\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}\right|=0 \quad \text{and thus} \quad f'(x)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}=g(x). \quad \square$$

CHAPTER 12. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–4. Find the sum of the series.

1. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^k$.

2. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^k\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^k$.

3. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(\ln 2)^k}{k!}$.

4. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k(k+1)}$.

Exercises 5–20. Determine convergence or divergence if the series has only nonnegative terms; determine whether the series is absolutely convergent, conditionally convergent, or divergent if it contains both positive and negative terms.

5. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2k+1}$.

6. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{(2k+1)(2k+3)}$.

7. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{(k+1)(k+2)}$.

8. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)}$.

9. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k(100)^k}{k!}$.

10. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{k+1}{3^k}$.

11. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{k!}{k^{k/2}}$.

12. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{k+\cos k}{k^3+1}$.

13. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{\sqrt{(k+1)(k+2)}}$.

14. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}k\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^k$.

15. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{k^e}{e^k}$.

16. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{k-1}\frac{\ln k}{\sqrt{k}}$.

17. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(2k)!}{2^k k!}$.

18. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^k}{\sqrt{k^3+1}}$.

19. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(\arctan k)^2}{1+k^2}$.

20. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{2^k+k^4}{3^k}$.

Exercises 21–28. Find the Taylor series expansion in powers of x.

21. $f(x)=xe^{2x^2}$.

22. $f(x)=\ln(1+x^2)$.

23. $f(x)=\sqrt{x}\arctan\sqrt{x}$.

24. $f(x)=a^x,\ a>0$.

25. $f(x)=x\ln\left(\frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}\right)$.

26. $f(x)=(x+x^2)\sin x^2$.

27. $f(x)=(1-x)^{1/3}$ up to x^3.

28. $f(x)=\arcsin x$ up to x^4.

Exercises 29–36. Find the interval of convergence.

29. $\sum\frac{5^k}{k}x^k$.

30. $\sum\frac{(-1)^k}{3^k}x^{k+1}$.

31. $\sum\frac{2^k}{(2k)!}(x-1)^{2k}$.

32. $\sum\frac{1}{2^k}(x-2)^k$.

33. $\sum\frac{(-1)^k k}{3^{2k}}x^k$.

34. $\sum\frac{k}{2k+1}x^{2k+1}$.

35. $\sum\frac{(-1)^k}{\sqrt{k}}(x+3)^k$.

36. $\sum\frac{k!}{2}(x+1)^k$.

Exercises 37–40. Find the Taylor series expansion of f and give the radius of convergence.

37. $f(x)=e^{-2x}$ in powers of $(x+1)$.

38. $f(x)=\sin 2x$ in powers of $(x-\pi/4)$.

39. $f(x)=\ln x$ in powers of $(x-1)$.

40. $f(x)=\sqrt{x+1}$ in powers of x.

Exercises 41–46. Estimate within the accuracy indicated from a series expansion.

41. $\int_0^{1/2}\frac{dx}{1+x^4}$, 0.01.

42. $e^{2/3}$, 0.01.

43. $\sqrt[3]{68}$, 0.01.

44. $\int_0^1 x\sin x^4\,dx$, 0.01.

45. $\sin 48^\circ$, 0.0001.

46. $\int_0^1 x^2e^{-x^2}\,dx$, 0.001.

47. Use the Lagrange form of the remainder to show that the approximation

$$\sin x\cong x-\tfrac{1}{6}x^3+\tfrac{1}{120}x^5$$

is accurate to four decimal places for $0\le x\le\pi/4$.

48. Use the Lagrange form of the remainder to show that the approximation

$$\cos x\cong 1-\tfrac{1}{2}x^2+\tfrac{1}{24}x^4-\tfrac{1}{720}x^6$$

is accurate to five decimal places for $0\le x\le\pi/4$.

49. Find the sum of the series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \quad \text{given that } a_k = \int_k^{k+1} xe^{-x}\,dx.$$

50. Show that every sequence of real numbers can be covered by a sequence of open intervals of arbitrarily small total length; namely, show that if $x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots$ is a sequence of real numbers and ϵ is positive, then there exists a sequence of open intervals (a_n, b_n) with $a_n < x_n < b_n$ such that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(b_n - a_n) < \epsilon.$$

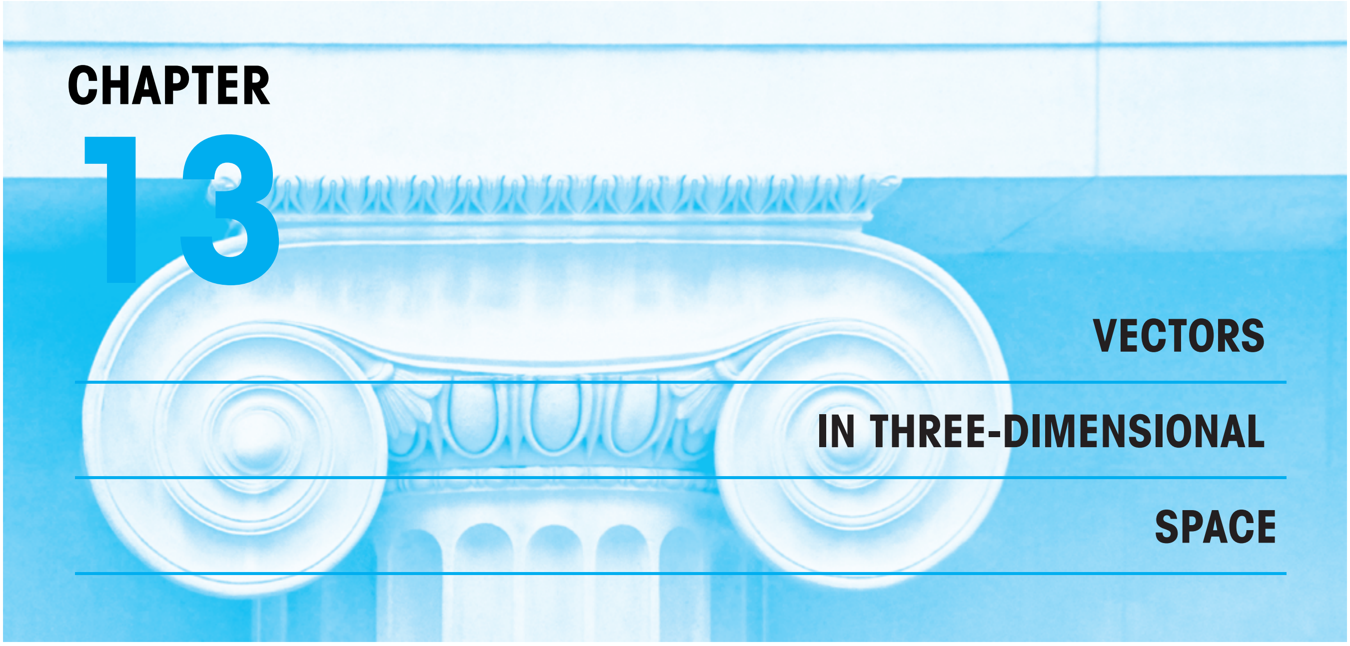
51. Prove that the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(a_{k+1} - a_k)$ converges iff the sequence a_k converges.

52. Determine whether or not the series $\sum_{k=2}^{\infty} a_k$ converges or diverges. If it converges, find the sum.

(a) $a_k = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^n$.

(b) $a_k = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^n$.

(c) $a_k = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^n$.



CHAPTER 13

VECTORS IN THREE-DIMENSIONAL SPACE

13.1 RECTANGULAR SPACE COORDINATES

To introduce rectangular coordinates in three-dimensional space, we begin with a plane on which we have set up a rectangular coordinate system O-xy in the usual manner. Through the point O, which we continue to call the origin, we pass a third line, perpendicular to the other two. This third line we call the z-axis. We assign coordinates to the z-axis using the same scale as used on the x- and y-axes, assigning the z-coordinate 0 to the origin O.

For later convenience we orient the z-axis according to the *right-hand rule*: if the fingers of the right hand are curled from the positive x-axis toward the positive y-axis (the short route), the thumb points along the positive z-axis. (See Figure 13.1.1.)

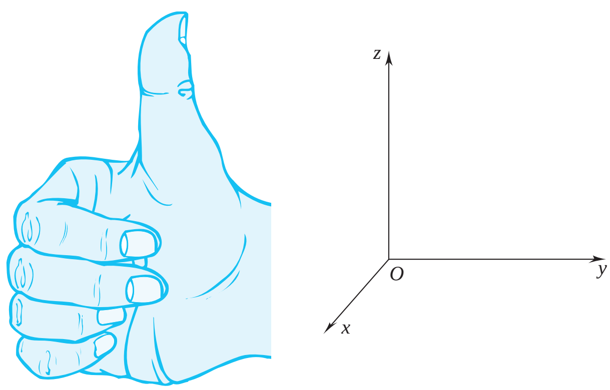


Figure 13.1.1

The point on the x-axis with x-coordinate x_0 is given space coordinates $(x_0, 0, 0)$; the point on the y-axis with y-coordinate y_0 is given space coordinates $(0, y_0, 0)$; the point on the z-axis with z-coordinate z_0 is given space coordinates $(0, 0, z_0)$.

There are now three coordinate planes; the xy-plane, the xz-plane, the yz-plane. A point P in three-dimensional space (see Figure 13.1.2) is assigned coordinates (x_0, y_0, z_0) provided that

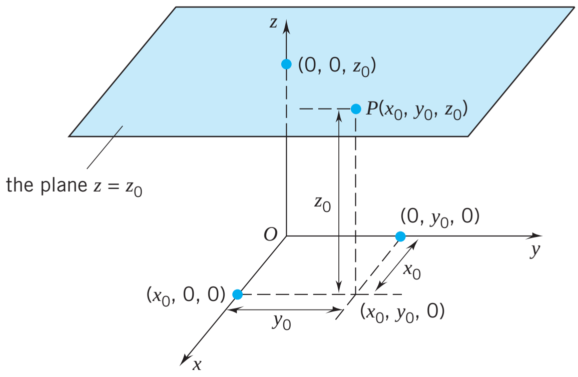


Figure 13.1.2

(1) the plane through P which is parallel to the yz-plane intersects the x-axis at $(x_0, 0, 0)$,
(2) the plane through P which is parallel to the xz-plane intersects the y-axis at $(0, y_0, 0)$,
(3) the plane through P which is parallel to the xy-plane intersects the z-axis at $(0, 0, z_0)$.

The coordinates x_0, y_0, z_0 are called the *rectangular coordinates of* P, or, in honor of Descartes, the *Cartesian coordinates of* P.

The equation $z = 0$ represents the set of all points with z-coordinate 0; this is the xy-plane. The equation $z = z_0$ represents the set of all points with z-coordinate z_0. This is the plane which is parallel to the xy-plane and intersects the z-axis at the point $(0, 0, z_0)$. (This plane with $z_0 > 0$ is pictured in Figure 13.1.2.)

Similarly, equation $y = 0$ represents the xz-plane and equation $y = y_0$ represents the plane which is parallel to the xz-plane and intersects the x-axis at the point $(0, y_0, 0)$.

In like manner, equation $x = 0$ represents the yz-plane and equation $x = x_0$ represents the plane which is parallel to the yz-plane and intersects the x-axis at the point $(x_0, 0, 0)$. (To establish these ideas in your mind, draw some figures.)

In Figure 13.1.3 we have drawn the planes $x = 1$ and $y = 3$. These planes intersect in a line which is parallel to the z-axis. The line intersects the xy-plane at the point $(1, 3, 0)$.

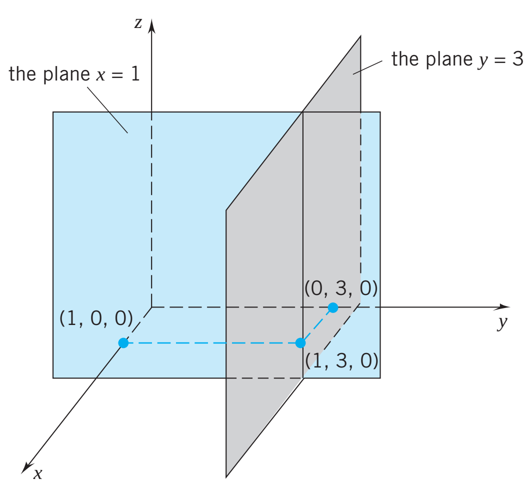


Figure 13.1.3

The Distance Formula

The distance $d(P_1, P_2)$ between two points $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ can be found by applying the Pythagorean theorem twice. With Q and R as in Figure 13.1.4, both P_1P_2R and P_1RQ form right triangles. From the first triangle

$$[d(P_1, P_2)]^2 = [d(P_1, R)]^2 + [d(R, P_2)]^2,$$

and from the second triangle

$$[d(P_1, R)]^2 = [d(Q, R)]^2 + [d(P_1, Q)]^2.$$

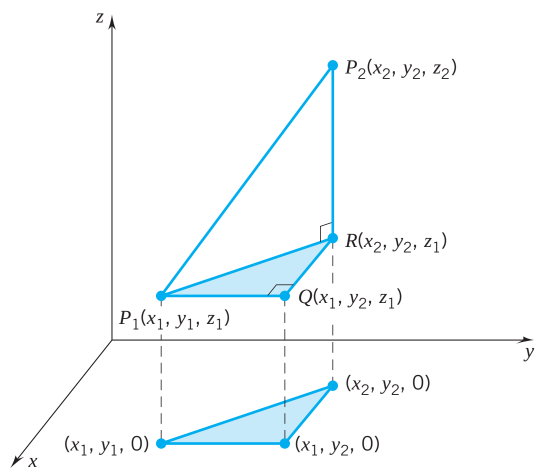


Figure 13.1.4

Combining these equations, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}[d(P_1, P_2)]^2 &= [d(Q, R)]^2 + [d(P_1, Q)]^2 + [d(R, P_2)]^2 \\ &= (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2.\end{aligned}$$

Taking square roots, we have the distance formula:

(13.1.1) $$\boxed{d(P_1, P_2) = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}.}$$

The *sphere* of radius r centered at $P_0(a, b, c)$ is the set of points $P(x, y, z)$ for which $d(P, P_0) = r$. For such points $[d(P, P_0)]^2 = r^2$. Applying the distance formula, we have

(13.1.2) $$\boxed{(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 + (z - c)^2 = r^2.}$$

This is the equation of the sphere of radius r centered at $P_0(a, b, c)$. The equation

(13.1.3) $$\boxed{x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2}$$

represents the sphere of radius r centered at the origin. The two spheres are depicted in Figure 13.1.5.

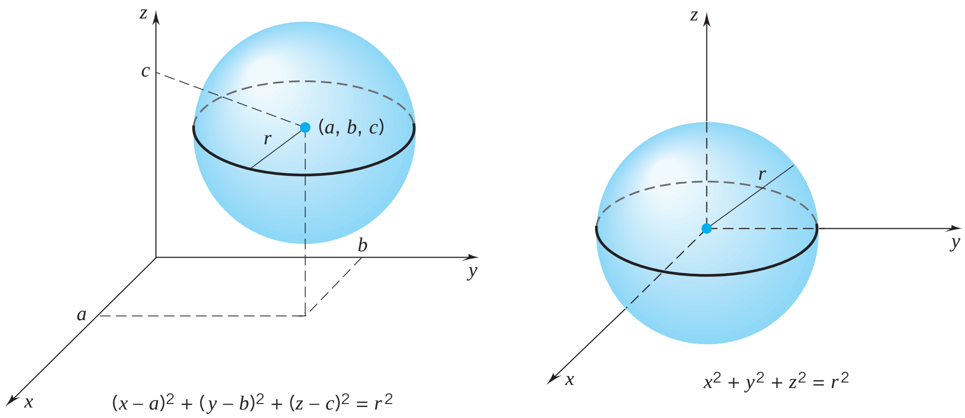


Figure 13.1.5

Example 1 The equation $(x-5)^2+(y+2)^2+z^2=9$ represents the sphere of radius 3 centered at the point $(5, -2, 0)$. ❑

Example 2 Show that the equation $x^2+y^2+z^2+6x+2y-4z=11$ represents a sphere. Find the center of the sphere and the radius.

SOLUTION We write the equation as $(x^2+6x)+(y^2+2y)+(z^2-4z)=11$ and complete the squares. The result,

$$(x^2+6x+9)+(y^2+2y+1)+(z^2-4z+4)=11+9+1+4=25,$$

can be written

$$(x+3)^2+(y+1)^2+(z-2)^2=25.$$

This equation represents the sphere of radius 5 centered at $(-3, -1, 2)$. ❑

Symmetry

You are already familiar with two kinds of symmetry: symmetry about a point and symmetry about a line. In space we can also speak of symmetry about a plane. (Figure 13.1.6.)

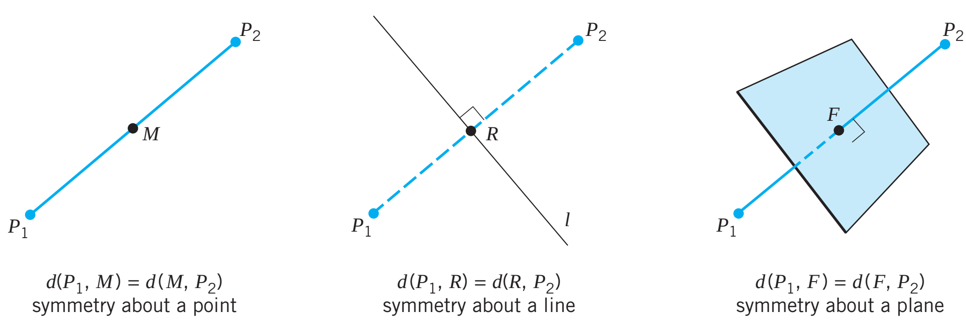
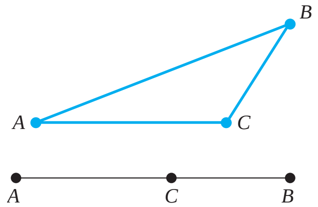


Figure 13.1.6



The Line Determined by Two Points

We can find the coordinates of the points of a line by using the distance formula. In general, for points A, B, C

$$d(A, B) \le d(A, C) + d(C, B).$$

If

$$d(A, B) = d(A, C) + d(C, B),$$

we can conclude that A, B, C all lie on the same line, C between A and B.

THEOREM 13.1.4

The line l that passes through the points $A(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ and $B(b_1, b_2, b_3)$ consists of all points $P(x, y, z)$ with

$$x = a_1 + t(b_1 - a_1), \qquad y = a_2 + t(b_2 - a_2), \qquad z = a_3 + t(b_3 - a_3)$$

t ranging over the set of real numbers.

PROOF At $t = 0$, $P = A$; at $t = 1$, $P = B$. For the rest we rely on the distance formula. A straightforward calculation shows that

$$d(A, P) = |t| d(A, B) \qquad \text{and} \qquad d(P, B) = |1 - t|\, d(A, B).$$

If $0 < t < 1$, $|t| = t$ and $|1 - t| = 1 - t$. Consequently,

$$d(A, P) + d(P, B) = t d(A, B) + (1 - t) d(A, B) = d(A, B).$$

The relation

$$d(A, P) + d(P, B) = d(A, B)$$

places P on l, P between A and B.

If $t > 1$, then $|t| = t$ and $|1 - t| = t - 1$. Consequently,

$$d(A, P) - d(P, B) = t d(A, B) - (t - 1) d(A, B) = d(A, B).$$

The relation

$$d(A, B) + d(P, B) = d(A, P)$$

places P on l, B between A and P.

We leave it to you to show that if $t < 0$, then

$$d(P, A) + d(A, B) = d(P, B).$$

This places P on l, A between P and B. ❑

The argument used to prove Theorem 13.1.4 has some consequences worth recording.

(13.1.5) *The Line Segment* $\overline{AB}$. As t ranges from 0 to 1, the points $P(x, y, z)$ with

$$x = a_1 + t(b_1 - a_1), \qquad y = a_2 + t(b_2 - a_2), \qquad z = a_3 + t(b_3 - a_3)$$

trace out the line segment $\overline{AB}$.

PROOF As we made clear in the proof of Theorem 13.1.4, the values of t between 0 and 1 give the points P between A and B; $t = 0$ gives A and $t = 1$ gives B. ❑

(13.1.6) *The Midpoint Formula* The midpoint of $\overline{AB}$ has coordinates

$$x = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_1 + b_1), \quad y = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_2 + b_2), \quad z = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_3 + b_3).$$

PROOF For $P(x, y, z)$ as in (13.1.5)

$$d(A, P) = t\,d(A, B).$$

For the midpoint $M(x, y, z)$ we have $t = \frac{1}{2}$. Thus

$$x = a_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}(b_1 - a_1) = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_1 + b_1)$$

$$y = a_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}(b_2 - a_2) = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_2 + b_2)$$

$$z = a_3 + \tfrac{1}{2}(b_3 - a_3) = \tfrac{1}{2}(a_3 + b_3). \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 13.1

Exercises 1–4. Plot points A and B on a right-handed coordinate system. Then calculate the length of the line segment $\overline{AB}$ and find the midpoint.

1. $A(2, 0, 0)$, $B(0, 0, -4)$. **2.** $A(0, -2, 0)$, $B(0, 0, 6)$.

3. $A(0, -2, 5)$, $B(4, 1, 0)$. **4.** $A(4, 3, 0)$, $B(-2, 0, 6)$.

Exercises 5–10. Write an equation for the plane which passes through the point $P(3, 1, -2)$ and satisfies the given condition.

5. Parallel to the xy-plane.

6. Parallel to the xz-plane.

7. Perpendicular to the y-axis.

8. Perpendicular to the z-axis.

9. Parallel to the yz-plane.

10. Perpendicular to the x-axis.

Exercises 11–16. Write an equation for the sphere that satisfies the given conditions.

11. Centered at $P(0, 2, -1)$ with radius 3.

12. Centered at $P(1, 0, -2)$ with radius 4.

13. Centered at $P(2, 4, -4)$ and passes through the origin.

14. Centered at the origin and passes through $P(1, -2, 2)$.

15. The line segment that joins $P(0, 4, 2)$ to $Q(6, 0, 2)$ is a diameter.

16. Centered at $P(2, 3, -4)$ and tangent to the xy-plane.

Exercises 17–18. Show that the equation represents a sphere; find the center and radius.

17. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 4x - 8y - 2z + 5 = 0$.

18. $3x^2 + 3y^2 + 3z^2 - 12x - 6z + 3 = 0$.

Exercises 19–30. The points $P(a, b, c)$ and $Q(2, 3, 5)$ are symmetric in the sense given. Find a, b, c.

19. About the xy-plane. **20.** About the xz-plane.

21. About the yz-plane. **22.** About the x-axis.

23. About the y-axis. **24.** About the z-axis.

25. About the origin. **26.** About the plane $x = 1$.

27. About the plane $y = -1$. **28.** About the plane $z = 4$.

29. About the point $R(0, 2, 1)$. **30.** About the point $R(4, 0, 1)$.

31. Show that the points $P(1, 2, 3)$, $Q(4, -5, 2)$, $R(0, 0, 0)$ are the vertices of a right triangle.

32. The points $A(5, -1, 3)$, $B(4, 2, 1)$, $C(2, 1, 0)$ are the midpoints of the sides of a triangle PQR. Find the vertices P, Q, R of the triangle.

Exercises 33–38. Describe the solid T.

33. $T = \{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 4\}$.

34. $T = \{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 + z^2 > 9\}$.

35. $T = \{(x, y, z) : 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 2, 0 \le z \le 3\}$.

36. $T = \{(x, y, z) : |x| \le 2, |y| \le 2, |z| \le 2\}$.

37. $T = \{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 \le 4, 0 \le z \le 4\}$.

38. $T = \{(x, y, z) : 4 < x^2 + y^2 + z^2 < 9\}$.

39. The point $M(1, 2, 3)$ bisects the line segment $\overline{AB}$. Find the coordinates of B given that A has coordinates 2, 3, 4.

40. Sketch a right-handed coordinate system O-xyz, choose an arbitrary point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$, and draw the line determined by O and P. On the line mark the following points:

(a) $Q(-a_1, -a_2, -a_3)$. (b) $R(2a_1, 2a_2, 2a_3)$.

(c) $S\left(-\frac{1}{2}a_1, -\frac{1}{2}a_2, -\frac{1}{2}a_3\right)$. (d) $T\left(\frac{1}{4}a_1, \frac{1}{4}a_2, \frac{1}{4}a_3\right)$.

41. Find the coordinates of the points P_1 and P_2 which trisect the line segment $\overline{AB}$ that joins $A(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ to $B(b_1, b_2, b_3)$.

42. Set $A(1, -2, \sqrt{2})$ and $B(2, 1, 0)$. Find the coordinates of P given that P lies on $\overline{AB}$ at a distance of 3 units from A.

On the xy-plane lines have equations of the form $Ax + By + C = 0$ with A and B not both zero. Later in this chapter we show that planes in space have equations of the form $Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$ with A, B, C not all zero.

43. Write an equation for the plane that passes through the points $(x_0, 0, 0)$, $(0, y_0, 0)$, $(0, 0, z_0)$. Assume that $x_0y_0z_0 \neq 0$.

44. Write an equation for the plane that passes through the xy-plane at the point $(x_0, y_0, 0)$, through the xz-plane at the point $(x_0, 0, z_0)$, through the yz-plane at the point $(0, y_0, z_0)$. Assume that $x_0y_0z_0 \neq 0$.

45. The line that passes through the origin and the point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ intersects the plane $z = z_0$ at the point Q. Find the coordinates of Q

(i) given that $a_3 \neq 0$; (ii) given that $a_3 = 0$.

46. The line that passes through the origin O and the point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ intersects the plane $x = x_0$ at the point Q. Find the coordinates of Q

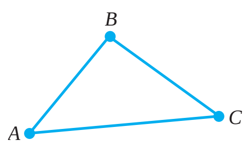
(i) given that $a_1 \neq 0$; (ii) given that $a_1 = 0$.

47. The ray that emanates from the origin and passes through the point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ intersects the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ at one point. What are the coordinates of that point?

48. The line that passes through the origin and the point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ intersects the unit sphere at two points. What are the coordinates of these points?

■ 13.2 VECTORS IN THREE-DIMENSIONAL SPACE

Introduction



What is the area of triangle ABC in the downward direction? This question makes no sense. Area is number given in terms of square units. There is no direction to it.

Volume, temperature, mass are also directionless, and, once units of measurement have been chosen, can be specified in terms of those units by a single number.

Some quantities have direction. A move 2 feet down is not the same as a move 2 feet to the right. Flying south at 300 mph does not take you on the same path as flying east at the same speed. A force of 5 newtons to the left does not have the same effect as a force of 5 newtons to the right.

Directed quantities (such as displacement, velocity, acceleration, force) are called *vector quantities.*

To specify a vector quantity, we need to specify two elements: the magnitude of the quantity and the direction. One way to do this is to draw an arrow. Specify magnitude by the length of the arrow and indicate direction by pointing the arrow.

Arrows are ideal for geometric insight, but they are difficult to use with precision and don't lend themselves well to calculations. We can overcome these difficulties by using number triples. Number triples are easy to use with precision, lend themselves well to computation, and, once a coordinate system has been established, can be interpreted as arrows in three-dimensional space.

This takes us to the notion of vector.

Vectors

By a *vector* **a** we mean an ordered triple of real numbers:

$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3).^\dagger$$

The numbers a_1, a_2, a_3 are called the *components of* **a**.

To say that two vectors are "equal" means that they have the same components;

$$(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (b_1, b_2, b_3) \qquad \text{iff} \qquad a_1 = b_1,\ a_2 = b_2,\ a_3 = b_3.$$

† This is not the most general notion of vector, but it is the most useful one for our purposes. More on this later.

Vectors can be added:

(13.2.1)

for
$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{b} = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$$
we define
$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3).$$

Since the addition of real numbers is commutative and associative, vector addition is commutative and associative:

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}, \qquad (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}).$$

Vectors can be multiplied by *scalars* (real numbers):

(13.2.2)

for
$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \alpha \text{ real}$$
we define
$$\alpha\,\mathbf{a} = (\alpha a_1, \alpha a_2, \alpha a_3).$$

Routine calculation shows that

$$\alpha(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = \alpha\,\mathbf{a} + \alpha\,\mathbf{b} \qquad \text{and} \qquad (\alpha + \beta)\mathbf{a} = \alpha\,\mathbf{a} + \beta\,\mathbf{a}.$$

By the *zero vector* we mean the vector $\mathbf{0} = (0, 0, 0)$. For all vectors $\mathbf{a}$,

$$0\,\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}.$$

By the vector $-\mathbf{b}$ we mean $(-1)\,\mathbf{b}$; that is,

$$-(b_1, b_2, b_3) = (-b_1, -b_2, -b_3).$$

By $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ we mean $\mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{b})$; that is,

$$\begin{aligned}(a_1, a_2, a_3) - (b_1, b_2, b_3) &= (a_1, a_2, a_3) + (-b_1, -b_2, -b_3)\\ &= (a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2, a_3 - b_3).\end{aligned}$$

Example 1 Given that $\mathbf{a} = (1, -1, 2)$, $\mathbf{b} = (2, 3, -1)$, $\mathbf{c} = (8, 7, 1)$, find **(a)** $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$. **(b)** $2\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$. **(c)** $3\mathbf{a} - 7\mathbf{b}$. **(d)** $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c}$.

SOLUTION

(a) $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = (1, -1, 2) - (2, 3, -1) = (1 - 2, -1 - 3, 2 + 1) = (-1, -4, 3)$.

(b) $2\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = 2(1, -1, 2) + (2, 3, -1) = (2, -2, 4) + (2, 3, -1) = (4, 1, 3)$.

(c) $$\begin{aligned}3\mathbf{a} - 7\mathbf{b} &= 3(1, -1, 2) - 7(2, 3, -1)\\ &= (3, -3, 6) - (14, 21, -7) = (-11, -24, 13).\end{aligned}$$

(d) $$\begin{aligned}2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c} &= 2(1, -1, 2) + 3(2, 3, -1) - (8, 7, 1)\\ &= (2, -2, 4) + (6, 9, -3) - (8, 7, 1) = (0, 0, 0) = \mathbf{0}.\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Geometric Interpretation of Vectors

Vectors (as we have defined them) have geometric significance only after a coordinate system has been established. In Figure 13.2.1 we have set up a right-handed coordinate

system O-xyz. Using that coordinate system, we can represent vectors by arrows in three-dimensional space.

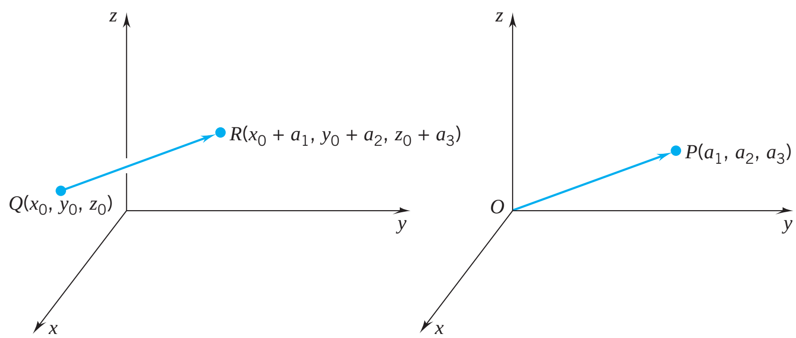


Figure 13.2.1

To represent the vector $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$, we choose a point $Q(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ as our starting point (we can choose *any* point) and draw the arrow $\overrightarrow{QR}$ to the point $R(x_0 + a_1, y_0 + a_2, z_0 + a_3)$. If we start the arrow at the origin, we use the arrow

$$\overrightarrow{OP} \qquad \text{with} \qquad P(a_1, a_2, a_3).$$

One advantage of using $\overrightarrow{OP}$ is that there are fewer coordinates to keep track of.

Arrows $\overrightarrow{QR}$ and $\overrightarrow{OP}$ have different locations, but because they have the same length and the same direction,† they represent the *same* vector: the vector $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$.

The zero vector $\mathbf{0} = (0, 0, 0)$ can be thought of as an arrow of length 0. The zero vector has no direction.

Visualizing a + b

For $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$ and $\mathbf{b} = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$ we defined

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3).$$

What does this mean in terms of arrows? Namely, if we have an arrow for $\mathbf{a}$ and an arrow for $\mathbf{b}$, how do we get an arrow for $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$? By proceeding as in Figure 13.2.2. For if P has coordinates (x_0, y_0, z_0), then

Q has coordinates $(x_0 + a_1, y_0 + a_2, z_0 + a_3)$ and

R has coordinates $(x_0 + a_1 + b_1, y_0 + a_2 + b_2, z_0 + a_3 + b_3)$.

Thus the arrow $\overrightarrow{PR}$ does represent $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$.

One more point. If we view $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ as emanating from the same point (Figure 13.2.3), then $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ acts as the diagonal of the parallelogram generated by $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

†That $\overrightarrow{QR}$ and $\overrightarrow{OP}$ have the same length and the same direction can be seen by noting that R is obtained from Q exactly as P is obtained from O: by adding a_1 to the first coordinate, adding a_2 to the second coordinate, adding a_3 to the third coordinate. Thus R is positioned with respect to Q exactly as P is positioned with respect to O.

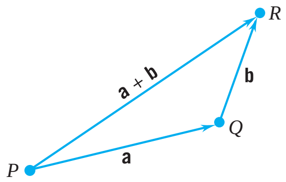


Figure 13.2.2

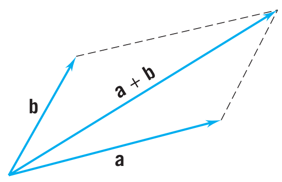


Figure 13.2.3

Norm

The properties of vectors in three dimensions are abstracted from the properties of the arrows used to represent them. Since every arrow $\overrightarrow{QR}$ used to represent the vector $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$ has length $\sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2}$, we can use this number as a measure of $\mathbf{a}$.

By the *norm (magnitude, length)* of the vector $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$ we mean the number

(13.2.3)
$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2}.$$

The norm properties of vectors are similar to the absolute-value properties of real numbers. In particular

(13.2.4)

(1) $\|\mathbf{a}\| \geq 0 \quad$ and $\quad \|\mathbf{a}\| = 0 \quad$ iff $\quad \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$.

(2) $\|\alpha\mathbf{a}\| = |\alpha|\;\|\mathbf{a}\|$.

(3) $\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| \leq \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|$. (the triangle inequality)

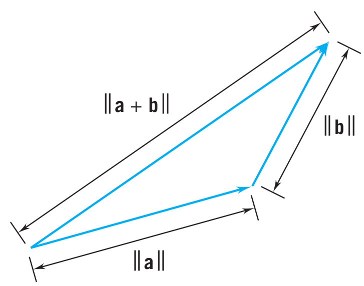


Figure 13.2.4

Property (1) is obvious. Property (2) is easy to verify:

$$\|\alpha\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{(\alpha a_1)^2 + (\alpha a_2)^2 + (\alpha a_3)^2} = |\alpha|\sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2} = |\alpha|\;\|\mathbf{a}\|.$$

Property (3), the triangle inequality, follows from observing that the length of a side of a triangle cannot exceed the sum of the lengths of the other two sides. (Figure 13.2.4.)

Example 2 Given that $\mathbf{a} = (1, -2, 3)$ and $\mathbf{b} = (-4, 1, 0)$, calculate

(a) $\|\mathbf{a}\|$. **(b)** $\|\mathbf{b}\|$. **(c)** $\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|$. **(d)** $\|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|$. **(e)** $\|-7\mathbf{a}\|$.
(f) $\|2\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}\|$.

SOLUTION

(a) $\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{1^2 + (-2)^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{1 + 4 + 9} = \sqrt{14}$.

(b) $\|\mathbf{b}\| = \sqrt{(-4)^2 + 1^2 + 0^2} = \sqrt{16 + 1 + 0} = \sqrt{17}$.

(c) $\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = \|(-3, -1, 3)\| = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-1)^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{9 + 1 + 9} = \sqrt{19}$.

(d) $\|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\| = \|(5, -3, 3)\| = \sqrt{5^2 + (-3)^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{25 + 9 + 9} = \sqrt{43}$.

(e) $\|-7\mathbf{a}\| = |-7|\;\|\mathbf{a}\| = 7\sqrt{14}$.

(f)
$$\begin{aligned}\|2\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}\| &= \|2(1, -2, 3) - 3(-4, 1, 0)\| \\ &= \|(14, -7, 6)\| = \sqrt{14^2 + (-7)^2 + 6^2} \\ &= \sqrt{196 + 49 + 36} = \sqrt{281}.\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Scalar Multiples

Start with numbers α, β both different from 0. The triangle inequality gives

$$|\alpha + \beta| \leq |\alpha| + |\beta|.$$

If $|\alpha + \beta| = |\alpha| + |\beta|$, we can conclude that α and β have the same sign. Now start with vectors **a, b** both different from **0**. The triangle inequality gives

$$\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| \leq \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|.$$

If $\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|$, we can conclude that **a** and **b** have the same direction. To convince yourself of this, examine Figure 13.2.4.

Now start with $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$. If $\alpha > 0$, then, as you can check,

$$\|\mathbf{a} + \alpha\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\alpha\mathbf{a}\|.$$

It follows that, if $\alpha > 0$, the vectors **a** and $\alpha\mathbf{a}$ have the same direction. If $\alpha < 0$, then $-\alpha > 0$. Reasoning as above we see that

$$\| -\mathbf{a} + (-\alpha)(-\mathbf{a})\| = \| -\mathbf{a}\| + \| -\alpha(-\mathbf{a})\|.$$

This tells us that $-\mathbf{a}$ and $(-\alpha)(-\mathbf{a}) = \alpha\mathbf{a}$ have the same direction, and thus **a** and $\alpha\mathbf{a}$ have opposite directions.

We now have a full characterization of $\alpha\mathbf{a}$. (Obviously if $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$, then $\alpha\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$. Thus we can concentrate on $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$.)

(13.2.5) For $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$, the vector $\mathbf{b} = \alpha\mathbf{a}$ is the unique vector of length $|\alpha|\|\mathbf{a}\|$, which has the direction of **a** if $\alpha > 0$ and the opposite direction if $\alpha < 0$.

Figure 13.2.5 gives some examples.

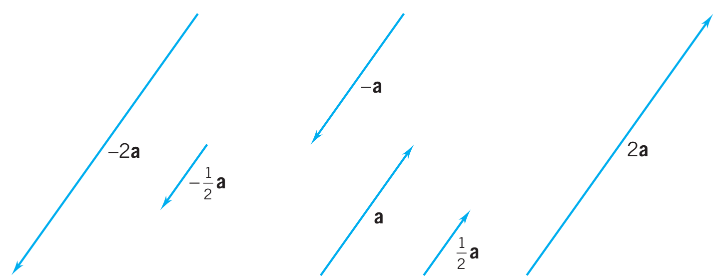


Figure 13.2.5

Since $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{b})$, we can draw the vector $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ by drawing $-\mathbf{b}$ and adding it to the vector **a**. (Figure 13.2.6.)

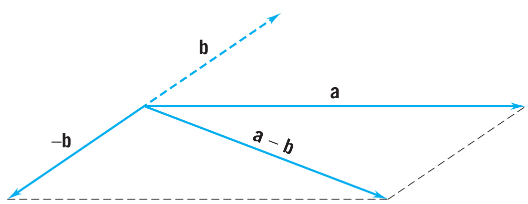


Figure 13.2.6

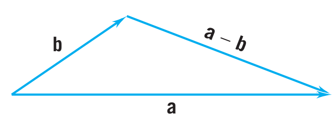


Figure 13.2.7

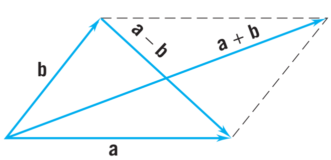


Figure 13.2.8

We can obtain the same result more easily by noting that $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ is the vector that we must add to **b** to obtain **a**. (Figure 13.2.7.)

In Figure 13.2.8 we have drawn the parallelogram generated by **a** and **b**. The vectors $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ are the diagonals of the parallelogram.

Parallel Vectors

(13.2.6) For $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$, the vectors parallel to $\mathbf{a}$ are by definition the scalar multiples $\alpha\mathbf{a}$.

These are the vectors which have the direction of $\mathbf{a}$, the vectors which have the direction $-\mathbf{a}$, and, since $\mathbf{0} = 0 \cdot \mathbf{a}$, the zero vector.

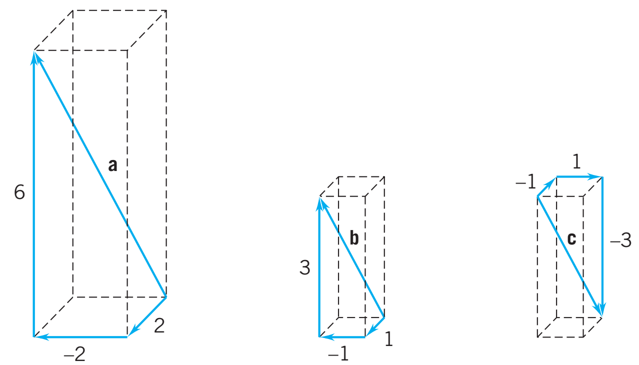
If $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$, the scalar multiples of $\mathbf{a}$ are all $\mathbf{0}$.

(13.2.7) By special convention, all vectors are said to be *parallel* to $\mathbf{0}$.

For $\mathbf{a} = (2, -2, 6)$, $\mathbf{b} = (1, -1, 3)$, $\mathbf{c} = (-1, 1, -3)$ we have

$$\mathbf{b} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{c} = -\tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}.$$

This tells us that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are parallel and have the same direction, whereas $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$, though parallel, have opposite directions. Figure 13.2.9 illustrates these assertions.



a = (2, –2, 6) **b** = (1, –1, 3) **c** = (–1, 1, –3)

some parallel vectors

Figure 13.2.9

It is easy to see that

(13.2.8) if $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are both parallel to $\mathbf{c}$, then every linear combination $\alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$ is also parallel to $\mathbf{c}$.

PROOF Suppose that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are parallel to $\mathbf{c}$. If $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$, then every vector is parallel to $\mathbf{c}$ and there is nothing to prove. If $\mathbf{c} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are scalar multiples of $\mathbf{c}$:

$$\mathbf{a} = \alpha_1\mathbf{c}, \qquad \mathbf{b} = \beta_1\mathbf{c}.$$

Then

$$\alpha\,\mathbf{a} + \beta\,\mathbf{b} = \alpha(\alpha_1\mathbf{c}) + \beta(\beta_1\mathbf{c}) = (\alpha\alpha_1 + \beta\beta_1)\mathbf{c}$$

is also parallel to $\mathbf{c}$. ❑

Unit Vectors

Vectors of norm 1 are called *unit vectors*. For each nonzero vector $\mathbf{a}$ there is a unique unit vector $\mathbf{u_a}$ which has the direction of $\mathbf{a}$. As we show below,

(13.2.9)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{u_a} = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{a}\|}\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|}.}$$

PROOF We know two things about $\mathbf{u_a}$:

$$\|\mathbf{u_a}\| = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{u_a} = \alpha\mathbf{a} \qquad \text{for some } \alpha > 0.$$

These relations give

$$1 = \|\alpha\mathbf{a}\| = |\alpha|\,\|\mathbf{a}\| = \alpha\|\mathbf{a}\|.$$

It follows that

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{a}\|}. \quad \square$$

While

$$\mathbf{u_a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|}$$

is the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{a}$,

$$-\mathbf{u_a} = -\frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|}$$

is the unit vector in the opposite direction.

We single out for attention the vectors

$$\mathbf{i} = (1, 0, 0), \qquad \mathbf{j} = (0, 1, 0), \qquad \mathbf{k} = (0, 0, 1).$$

These unit vectors (they all have norm 1) are particularly useful in calculations because every vector $\mathbf{a}$ can be expressed in a simple unique way as a linear combination of these vectors:

(13.2.10)
$$\boxed{\text{if } \mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3), \qquad \text{then} \qquad \mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}.}$$

PROOF

$$\begin{aligned}(a_1, a_2, a_3) &= (a_1, 0, 0) + (0, a_2, 0) + (0, 0, a_3)\\ &= a_1(1, 0, 0) + a_2(0, 1, 0) + a_3(0, 0, 1)\\ &= a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

The components of $\mathbf{a}$, the numbers a_1, a_2, a_3, can thus be called the $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ *components* of $\mathbf{a}$.

Example 3 Set $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

(a) Express $2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$.

(b) Calculate $\|2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|$.

(c) Find the unit vector $\mathbf{u_c}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{c} = 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$.

SOLUTION

(a) $2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = 2(3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) - (2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$
$= 6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k} - 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} = 4\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}.$

(b) $\|2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\| = \|4\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}\| = \sqrt{16 + 25 + 9} = \sqrt{50} = 5\sqrt{2}.$

(c) $\mathbf{u_c} = \dfrac{2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}}{\|2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|} = \dfrac{1}{5\sqrt{2}}(4\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}).$ ❑

On the Distinction Between Points and Vectors

We make a distinction between the point P with coordinates a_1, a_2, a_3 and the vector $\mathbf{a}$ with components a_1, a_2, a_3. The point P has a definite location, but it has no magnitude and no direction. The vector $\mathbf{a}$ has a definite magnitude and (unless it is the zero vector) a definite direction. However, it has no location. We can represent it by an arrow that starts at any point we choose. The vector operations that we define depend on magnitude and direction, not on location.

Vectors as Used in Plane Geometry

A vector $\mathbf{a}$ in the xy-plane is an ordered triple of the form $(a_1, a_2, 0)$. When working entirely in the xy-plane, we can drop the final zero and write $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2)$. Now

$$\mathbf{0} = (0, 0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2}.$$

Vector addition and multiplication by scalars reduce to

$$(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2), \qquad \alpha(a_1, a_2) = (\alpha a_1, \alpha a_2).$$

In this context, we set

$$\mathbf{i} = (1, 0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{j} = (0, 1). \qquad \text{(There is no } \mathbf{k}.\text{)}$$

Every plane vector $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2)$ can be expressed as a linear combination of these $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$:

$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2) = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j}.$$

All the notions introduced for vectors in 3-space apply (with obvious modification) to vectors restricted to the xy-plane. Just drop the third component.

Remark: On the Use of Boldface to Indicate Vectors In this text we have used boldface to indicate vectors, but that is not easy to do without special equipment. Here are some other ways to indicate vectors

$$\vec{a}, \quad \underset{\rightarrow}{a}, \quad \tilde{a}, \quad \underset{\sim}{a}, \quad \hat{a}.$$ ❑

EXERCISES 13.2

Exercises 1–4. The vector $\mathbf{a}$ is represented by the arrow $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ with P and Q as given. Determine $\mathbf{a}$ and $\|\mathbf{a}\|$.

1. $P(1, -2, 5)$, $Q(4, 2, 3)$.
2. $P(4, -2, 0)$, $Q(2, 4, 0)$.
3. $P(0, 3, 1)$, $Q(0, 1, 0)$.
4. $P(-4, 0, 7)$, $Q(0, 3, -1)$.

Exercises 5–8. Set $\mathbf{a} = (1, -2, 3)$, $\mathbf{b} = (3, 0, -1)$, $\mathbf{c} = (-4, 2, 1)$. Then write each vector below as an ordered triple of real numbers.

5. $2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$.
6. $2\mathbf{b} + 3\mathbf{c}$.
7. $-2\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c}$.
8. $\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{c}$.

Exercises 9–12. Simplify the linear combination.

9. $(2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + (\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k})$.
10. $(6\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) + (3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$.
11. $2(\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) - 3(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$.
12. $2(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) + 6(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$.

Exercises 13–18. Calculate the norm of the vector.

13. $3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$.

14. $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

15. $2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.

16. $6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

17. $\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}) - (\frac{3}{2}\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{k})$.

18. $(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) + 2(\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{i}) + (\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{j})$.

19. Set

$$\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k},$$
$$\mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{d} = -2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}.$$

(a) Which vectors are parallel?
(b) Which vectors have the same direction?
(c) Which vectors have opposite directions?

Exercises 20–23. Points $P(1, 4, -2)$ and $Q(3, -1, 1)$ are given. Find the coordinates of the point R that satisfies the given condition.

20. $\overrightarrow{QR}$ and $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represent the same vector.

21. $\overrightarrow{RQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represent the same vector.

22. $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents the vector $\mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{RQ}$ represents the vector $3\mathbf{a}$.

23. $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents the vector $\mathbf{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{RQ}$ represents the vector $-2\mathbf{a}$.

24. (*Important*) Prove the following version of the triangle inequality:

$$\big|\|\mathbf{a}\| - \|\mathbf{b}\|\big| \le \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|.$$

Assume the triangle inequality as stated in (13.2.4).

Exercises 25–28. Find the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{a}$.

25. $\mathbf{a} = (3, -4, 0)$.

26. $\mathbf{a} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$.

27. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

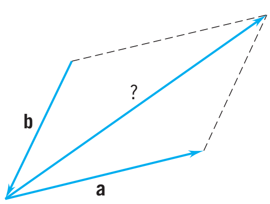
28. $\mathbf{a} = (2, 1, 2)$.

Exercises 29–30. Find the unit vector in the direction opposite to the direction of $\mathbf{a}$.

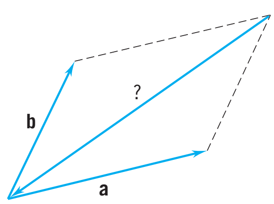
29. $\mathbf{a} = -\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

30. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$.

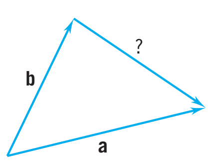
31. Label the vector.



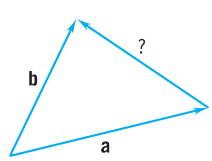
(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)

32. Set $\mathbf{a} = (1, 1, 1)$, $\mathbf{b} = (-1, 3, 2)$, $\mathbf{c} = (-3, 0, 1)$, $\mathbf{d} = (4, -1, 1)$.

(a) Express $\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b} + 3\mathbf{c} + 4\mathbf{d}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$.
(b) Find scalars A, B, C such that $\mathbf{d} = A\mathbf{a} + B\mathbf{b} + C\mathbf{c}$.

33. Set $\mathbf{a} = (2, 0, -1)$, $\mathbf{b} = (1, 3, 5)$, $\mathbf{c} = (-1, 1, 1)$, $\mathbf{d} = (1, 1, 6)$.

(a) Express $\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{c} + 4\mathbf{d}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$.
(b) Find scalars A, B, C such that $\mathbf{d} = A\mathbf{a} + B\mathbf{b} + C\mathbf{c}$.

34. Find α given that $3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and $\alpha\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$ are parallel.

35. Find α given that $3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ and $\alpha\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ have the same length.

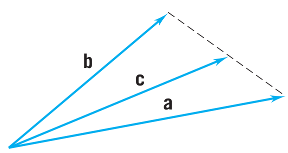
36. Find the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

37. Find α given that $\|\alpha\mathbf{i} + (\alpha - 1)\mathbf{j} + (\alpha + 1)\mathbf{k}\| = 2$.

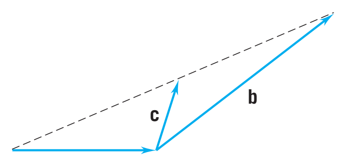
38. Find the vector of norm 2 in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

39. Find the vectors of norm 2 parallel to $3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

40. Express $\mathbf{c}$ in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ given that the tip of $\mathbf{c}$ bisects the line segment shown.



(i)



(ii)

41. Let $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ be nonzero vectors such that

$$\|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|.$$

(a) What can you conclude about the parallelogram generated by $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$?
(b) Show that, if $\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}$, and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j} + b_3\,\mathbf{k}$, then

$$a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3 = 0.$$

42. (a) Show without reference to a figure that, if $\alpha > 0$, then

$$\|\mathbf{a} + \alpha\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\alpha\mathbf{a}\|.$$

(b) Does this equation necessarily hold for $\alpha < 0$?

43. Let P and Q be two points in space and let M be the midpoint of the line segment $\overline{PQ}$. Assume that $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents $\mathbf{p}$, $\overrightarrow{OQ}$ represents $\mathbf{q}$, and $\overrightarrow{OM}$ represents $\mathbf{m}$. Express $\mathbf{m}$ in terms of $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{q}$.

44. Let P and Q be two points in space and let R be the point on $\overline{PQ}$ which is twice as far from P as it is from Q. Assume that $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents $\mathbf{p}$, $\overrightarrow{OQ}$ represents $\mathbf{q}$, and $\overrightarrow{OR}$ represents $\mathbf{r}$. Express $\mathbf{r}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{q}$.

■ 13.3 THE DOT PRODUCT

In this section we introduce the first of two products that we define for vectors.

Introduction

We begin with nonzero vectors

$$\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{b} = b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j} + b_3\,\mathbf{k}$$

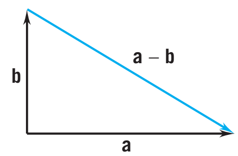


Figure 13.3.1

and view them as emanating from the same point. How can we tell from the components of these vectors whether these vectors meet at right angles? To explore this question, we draw Figure 13.3.1. By the Pythagorean theorem, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ meet at right angles iff

$$\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|^2.$$

In terms of components, this equation reads

$$(a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2) + (b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2) = (a_1 - b_1)^2 + (a_2 - b_2)^2 + (a_3 - b_3)^2,$$

which, as you can readily check, simplifies to

$$a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3 = 0.$$

Definition of the Dot Product

The expression $a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3$ is widely used in geometry and physics. It has a name, the *dot product* of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, and there is a special notation for it, $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$. The notion is so important that it deserves a formal definition.

DEFINITION 13.3.1

For vectors

$$\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{b} = b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j} + b_3\,\mathbf{k},$$

we define the *dot product* $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ by setting

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3.$$

Remark For plane vectors $\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j}$

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2. \quad ❑$$

Example 1 For $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = -3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, we have

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = (2)(-3) + (-1)(1) + (3)(4) = -6 - 1 + 12 = 5,$$

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} = (2)(1) + (-1)(3) + (3)(0) = 2 - 3 = -1,$$

$$\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} = (-3)(1) + (1)(3) + (4)(0) = -3 + 3 = 0.$$

The last equation (see the introduction) tells us that $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$ meet at right angles. (Verify this by drawing a figure.) ❑

Because $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ is not a vector, but a scalar, it is sometimes called the *scalar product* of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. We will continue to call it the dot product and speak of "dotting $\mathbf{a}$ with $\mathbf{b}$."

Properties of the Dot Product

If we dot a vector with itself, we obtain the square of its norm:

(13.3.2)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{a} = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2.}$$

PROOF

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{a} = a_1a_1 + a_2a_2 + a_3a_3 = a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2. \quad ❑$$

The dot product of any vector with the zero vector is zero:

(13.3.3)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{0} = 0, \qquad \mathbf{0}\cdot\mathbf{a} = 0.}$$

PROOF

$$(a_1)(0) + (a_2)(0) + (a_3)(0) = 0, \qquad (0)(a_1) + (0)(a_2) + (0)(a_3) = 0. \quad ❑$$

The dot product is commutative:

(13.3.4)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{a}}$$

and scalars can be factored:

(13.3.5)
$$\boxed{\alpha\mathbf{a}\cdot\beta\mathbf{b} = \alpha\beta(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}).}$$

PROOF

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3 = b_1a_1 + b_2a_2 + b_3a_3 = \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{a}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha\mathbf{a}\cdot\beta\mathbf{b} &= (\alpha a_1)(\beta b_1) + (\alpha a_2)(\beta b_2) + (\alpha a_3)(\beta b_3)\\ &= \alpha\beta(a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3) = \alpha\beta(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}). \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

The dot product satisfies the following distributive laws:

(13.3.6)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}, \qquad (\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}.}$$

PROOF

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c}) &= a_1(b_1+c_1) + a_2(b_2+c_2) + a_3(b_3+c_3)\\ &= a_1b_1 + a_1c_1 + a_2b_2 + a_2c_2 + a_3b_3 + a_3c_3\\ &= (a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3) + (a_1c_1 + a_2c_2 + a_3c_3)\\ &= \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}.\end{aligned}$$

The second distributive law can be verified in a similar manner. ❑

Example 2 Given that

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = 1, \quad \|\mathbf{b}\| = 3, \quad \|\mathbf{c}\| = 4, \quad \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = 0, \quad \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c} = 1, \quad \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c} = -2,$$

find

(a) $3\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+4\mathbf{c})$.
(b) $(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b})\cdot(2\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})$.
(c) $[(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})\,\mathbf{a}-(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{b}]\cdot\mathbf{c}$.

SOLUTION

(a) $3\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+4\mathbf{c}) = (3\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) + (3\mathbf{a}\cdot 4\mathbf{c}) = 3(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) + 12(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}) = 12.$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b})\cdot(2\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}) &= (\mathbf{a}\cdot 2\mathbf{a}) + (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) + (-\mathbf{b}\cdot 2\mathbf{a}) + (-\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{b})\\ &= 2(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{a}) + (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) - 2(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{a}) - (\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{b})\\ &= 2\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) - 2(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) - \|\mathbf{b}\|^2\\ &= 2 + 0 - 2(0) - 9 = -7.\end{aligned}$$

(c)
$$\begin{aligned}[(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{a}-(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{b}]\cdot\mathbf{c} &= [(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}] - [(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}]\\ &= (\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}) - (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}) = 0.\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Geometric Interpretation of the Dot Product

We begin with a triangle with sides a, b, c. (Figure 13.3.2). If θ were $\frac{1}{2}\pi$, the Pythagorean theorem would tell us that $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$. The law of cosines,

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\ \cos\theta,$$

is a generalization of the Pythagorean theorem.

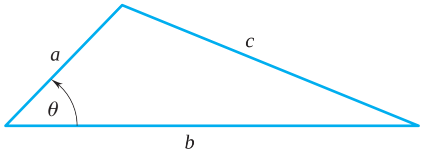


Figure 13.3.2

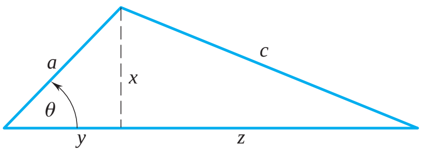


Figure 13.3.3

To derive the law of cosines, we drop a perpendicular to side b. (Figure 13.3.3.) We then have

$$c^2 = z^2 + x^2 = (b-y)^2 + x^2 = b^2 - 2by + y^2 + x^2.$$

From the figure, $y^2 + x^2 = a^2$ and $y = a\cos\theta$. Therefore

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos\theta$$

as asserted. (What if the angle θ is obtuse? We leave that case to you.)

Now back to dot products. If neither **a** nor **b** is zero, we can interpret $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$ from the triangle in Figure 13.4.4. The lengths of the sides are $\|\mathbf{a}\|, \|\mathbf{b}\|, \|\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}\|$. By the law of cosines,

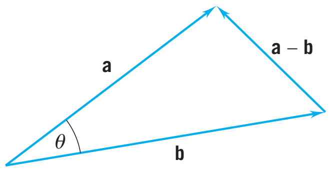


Figure 13.3.4

$$\|\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 - 2\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|\cos\theta.$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned}2\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|\cos\theta &= \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}\|^2\\ &= a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 + b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2 - (a_1-b_1)^2 - (a_2-b_2)^2 - (a_3-b_3)^2\\ &= 2(a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3) = 2(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b})\end{aligned}$$

and thus

(13.3.7) $$\boxed{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|\cos\theta.}$$

By convention, θ, the angle between **a** and **b**, is taken from 0 to π (in degrees from 0 to 180); no negative angles.

From (13.3.7) you can see that the dot product of two vectors depends on the norms of the vectors and on the angle between them. For vectors of a given norm, the dot product measures the extent to which the vectors agree in direction. As the difference in direction increases, the dot product decreases:

If **a** and **b** have the same direction, then $\theta = 0$ and

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|; \qquad (\cos 0 = 1)$$

this is the largest possible value for $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$.

If **a** and **b** meet at right angles, then $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ and

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = 0. \qquad (\cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi = 0)$$

If **a** and **b** have opposite directions, then $\theta = \pi$ and

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = -\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|; \qquad (\cos \pi = -1)$$

this is the least possible value for $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$.

Two vectors are said to be *perpendicular* if they lie at right angles to each other or one of the vectors is the zero vector; thus, two vectors are perpendicular iff their dot product is zero.[†] In symbols

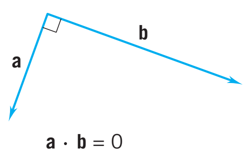


Figure 13.3.5

(13.3.8) $$\boxed{\mathbf{a}\perp\mathbf{b} \quad \text{iff} \quad \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = 0.} \qquad \text{(Figure 13.3.5)}$$

The unit vectors **i**, **j**, **k** are mutually perpendicular:

$$\mathbf{i}\cdot\mathbf{j} = \mathbf{i}\cdot\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{j}\cdot\mathbf{k} = 0.$$

Example 3 Verify that $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ are perpendicular.

SOLUTION

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = (2)(1) + (1)(1) + (1)(-3) = 2 + 1 - 3 = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 Find the value of α for which $(3\mathbf{i} - \alpha\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) \perp (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$.

SOLUTION For the two vectors to be perpendicular, their dot product must be zero. Since

$$(3\mathbf{i} - \alpha\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})\cdot(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) = (3)(1) + (-\alpha)(2) + (1)(0) = 3 - 2\alpha,$$

α must be $\frac{3}{2}$. ❑

With **a** and **b** both different from zero, we can divide the equation

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|\cos\theta$$

[†]This makes the zero vector both parallel and perpendicular to every vector. There is, however, no contradiction since we do not apply the notion of "direction" to the zero vector.

by $\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|$ to obtain

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|}\cdot\frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|}.$$

In terms of the unit vectors

$$\mathbf{u_a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{a}\|} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{u_b} = \frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|},$$

we have

(13.3.9)

$$\boxed{\cos\theta = \mathbf{u_a}\cdot\mathbf{u_b}.}$$

The cosine of the angle between **a** and **b** is the dot product of the corresponding unit vectors.

Example 5 Calculate the angle between $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION

$$\mathbf{u_a} = \frac{2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}}{\|2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{17}}(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$$

$$\mathbf{u_b} = \frac{\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}}{\|\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}).$$

Therefore

$$\cos\theta = \mathbf{u_a}\cdot\mathbf{u_b}\frac{1}{\sqrt{17}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}[(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})\cdot(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})].$$

Since

$$(2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})\cdot(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) = (2)(1) + (3)(2) + (2)(-1) = 6,$$

we see that

$$\cos\theta = \frac{6}{\sqrt{17}\sqrt{6}} = \frac{1}{17}\sqrt{102} \cong \frac{10.1}{17} \cong 0.594.$$

This gives $\theta \cong 0.935$ radians, which is about 54 degrees. ❑

It is easy to see that

(13.3.10)

> if **a** and **b** are both perpendicular to **c**, then every linear combination $\alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\,\mathbf{b}$ is also perpendicular to **c.**

PROOF Suppose that **a** and **b** are both perpendicular to **c.** Then

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c} = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c} = 0.$$

It follows that

$$(\alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c} = \alpha\underbrace{(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})}_{0} + \beta\underbrace{(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})}_{0} = 0$$

and therefore $\alpha\mathbf{a} + \beta\mathbf{b}$ is perpendicular to **c**. ❑

Projections and Components

If $\mathbf{b} \neq 0$, then every vector $\mathbf{a}$ can be written in a unique manner as the sum of a vector $\mathbf{a}_{\parallel}$ parallel to $\mathbf{b}$ and a vector $\mathbf{a}_{\perp}$ perpendicular to $\mathbf{b}$:

$$\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}_{\parallel} + \mathbf{a}_{\perp}. \qquad \text{(Exercise 51)}$$

The idea is illustrated in Figure 13.3.6. If $\mathbf{a}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{b}$, then $\mathbf{a}_{\parallel} = \mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{a}_{\perp} = \mathbf{0}$. If $\mathbf{a}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{b}$, then $\mathbf{a}_{\parallel} = 0$ and $\mathbf{a}_{\perp} = \mathbf{a}$.

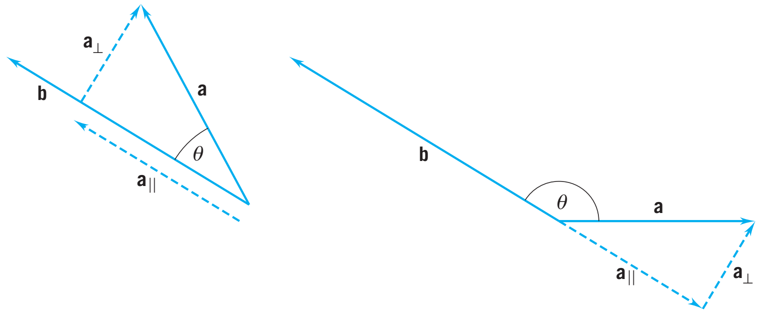


Figure 13.3.6

The vector $\mathbf{a}_{\parallel}$ (go back to Figure 13.3.6) is called the *projection of* $\mathbf{a}$ *on* $\mathbf{b}$:

$$\mathbf{a}_{\parallel} = \mathbf{proj_b}\, \mathbf{a}.$$

Since $\mathbf{proj_b}\, \mathbf{a}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{b}$, it is a scalar multiple of $\mathbf{u_b}$,

$$\mathbf{proj_b a} = \lambda\, \mathbf{u_b}.$$

The scalar λ is called the **b**-*component* of $\mathbf{a}$ and is denoted by $\text{comp}_\mathbf{b}\mathbf{a}$:

(13.3.11) $$\boxed{\mathbf{proj_b a} = (\text{comp}_\mathbf{b}\mathbf{a})\mathbf{u_b}.}$$

The **b**-component of **a** measures the "advance" of **a** in the direction of **b**. In Figure 13.3.6 we used θ to indicate the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. If $0 \le \theta < \frac{1}{2}\pi$, the projection and $\mathbf{b}$ have the same direction. If $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$, the projection is $\mathbf{0}$ and the component is 0. If $\frac{1}{2}\pi < \theta \le \pi$, the projection and $\mathbf{b}$ have opposite directions and, consequently, the component is negative.

Projections and components are readily expressed in terms of the dot product: for $\mathbf{b} \neq 0$

(13.3.12) $$\boxed{\mathbf{proj_b a} = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\mathbf{u_b} \qquad \text{and} \qquad (\text{comp}_\mathbf{b}\mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b}.}$$

PROOF The second assertion follows immediately from the first. We will prove the first. We begin with the identity

$$\mathbf{a} = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\,\mathbf{u_b} + [\mathbf{a} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\,\mathbf{u_b}].$$

Since the first vector $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\,\mathbf{u_b}$ is a scalar multiple of **b.** it is parallel to **b.** All we have to show now is that the second vector is perpendicular to **b.** We do this by showing that its dot product with $\mathbf{u_b}$ is zero:

$$[\mathbf{a} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\,\mathbf{u_b}] \cdot \mathbf{u_b} = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b}) - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\underbrace{(\mathbf{u_b} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})}_{\mathbf{u_b} \cdot \mathbf{u_b} = \|\mathbf{u_b}\|^2 = 1} = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 6 Find $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$ given that

$$\mathbf{a} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}.$$

SOLUTION Since $\|\mathbf{b}\| = \sqrt{4^2 + (-3)^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{26}$,

$$\mathbf{u_b} = \frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{26}}(4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}).$$

Thus

$$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b} = (-2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{26}}(4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{26}}[(-2)(4) + (1)(-3) + (1)(1)] = -\frac{10}{\sqrt{26}} = -\frac{5}{13}\sqrt{26}$$

and

$$\mathbf{proj_b}\,\mathbf{a} = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a})\,\mathbf{u_b} = -\tfrac{5}{13}(4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}). \quad \square$$

The following characterization of $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ is frequently used in physical applications:

(13.3.13) $$\boxed{\text{if } \mathbf{b} \neq \mathbf{0}, \qquad \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a})\|\mathbf{b}\|.}$$

PROOF

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \left(\mathbf{a} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|}\right)\|\mathbf{b}\| = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u_b})\|\mathbf{b}\| = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a})\|\mathbf{b}\|. \quad \square$$

For each vector $\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}$,

$$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{i}}\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{i} = a_1, \qquad \text{comp}_{\mathbf{j}}\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{j} = a_2, \qquad \text{comp}_{\mathbf{k}}\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{k} = a_3.$$

This agrees with our previous use of the term "component" (Section 13.2) and gives the identity

(13.3.14) $$\boxed{\mathbf{a} = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{i})\,\mathbf{i} + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{j})\,\mathbf{j} + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{k})\,\mathbf{k}.}$$

Direction Angles, Direction Cosines

In Figure 13.3.7 we show a nonzero vector $\mathbf{a}$ and the vectors $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ for convenience all started at the origin. The angles α, β, γ marked in the figure are called the *direction angles* of $\mathbf{a}$. The numbers $\cos\alpha, \cos\beta, \cos\gamma$ are called the *direction cosines*. By (13.3.7)

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \|\mathbf{a}\| \cos\alpha, \qquad \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \|\mathbf{a}\| \cos\beta, \qquad \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{k} = \|\mathbf{a}\| \cos\gamma.$$

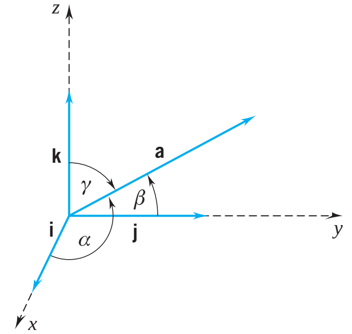


Figure 13.3.7

Thus by (13.3.14)

(13.3.15) $$\boxed{\mathbf{a} = \|\mathbf{a}\|(\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\beta\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\gamma\,\mathbf{k}).}$$

Taking the norm of both sides, we have

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\|\sqrt{\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma}$$

and therefore

(13.3.16)
$$\boxed{\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1.}$$

The sum of the squares of the direction cosines is always 1.

For a unit vector **u**, Equation (13.3.15) takes the form

(13.3.17)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{u} = \cos\alpha\ \mathbf{i} + \cos\beta\ \mathbf{j} + \cos\gamma\ \mathbf{k}.}$$

The **i**, **j**, **k** *components of a unit vector are the direction cosines.*

Example 7 Find the unit vector with direction angles

$$\alpha = \tfrac{1}{4}\pi, \quad \beta = \tfrac{2}{3}\pi, \quad \gamma = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi.$$

What is the vector of norm 4 with these same direction angles?

SOLUTION The unit vector with these direction angles is

$$\cos\tfrac{1}{4}\pi\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\tfrac{2}{3}\pi\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\tfrac{1}{3}\pi\,\mathbf{k} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i} - \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The vector of norm 4 with these direction angles is the vector

$$4(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i} - \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathbf{k}) = 2\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i} - 2\,\mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k}.$$ ❑

Example 8 Find the direction cosines and direction angles of the vector

$$\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}.$$

SOLUTION Since $\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{2^2 + 3^2 + (-6)^2} = 7$,

$$2 = 7\cos\alpha, \qquad 3 = 7\cos\beta, \qquad -6 = 7\cos\gamma$$

and

$$\cos\alpha = \tfrac{2}{7}, \qquad \cos\beta = \tfrac{3}{7}, \qquad \cos\gamma = -\tfrac{6}{7}.$$

Measuring the angles in radians from 0 to π, we have

$$\alpha = \arccos\tfrac{2}{7} \cong 1.28 \text{ radians}, \qquad \beta = \arccos\tfrac{3}{7} \cong 1.13 \text{ radians}$$

$$\gamma = \arccos\left(-\tfrac{6}{7}\right) \cong 2.60 \text{ radians}.$$ ❑

Schwarz's Inequality

You know that

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|\cos\theta,$$

where θ is the angle between **a** and **b**. Taking absolute values and recognizing that $|\cos\theta| \le 1$, we have *Schwarz's inequality*:

(13.3.18)
$$\boxed{|\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}| \le \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|.}$$

Schwarz's inequality enables us to derive the triangle inequality

$$\|\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}\| \le \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|$$

without having to picture $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}$ as the sides of a triangle.

DERIVATION

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}\|^2 &= (\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})\cdot(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}) \\
&= (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{a}) + (\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{a}) + (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{b}) \\
&= \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + 2(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 \\
&\le \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + 2|\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}| + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 \qquad\qquad (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} \le |\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}|) \\
&\le \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + 2\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = (\|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|)^2.
\end{aligned}$$

by Schwarz's inequality

Taking square roots, we have

$$\|\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}\| \le \|\mathbf{a}\| + \|\mathbf{b}\|. \quad \square$$

Remark Schwarz's inequality can be obtained by purely algebraic methods. No consideration of $\cos\theta$ is required. See Exercise 54. □

EXERCISES 13.3

Exercises 1–6. Find $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$.

1. $\mathbf{a} = (2, -3, 1)$, $\mathbf{b} = (-2, 0, 3)$.

2. $\mathbf{a} = (4, 2, -1)$, $\mathbf{b} = (-2, 2, 1)$.

3. $\mathbf{a} = (2, -4, 0)$, $\mathbf{b} = (1, \frac{1}{2}, 0)$.

4. $\mathbf{a} = (-2, 0, 5)$, $\mathbf{b} = (3, 0, 1)$.

5. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k}$.

6. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i}+3\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i}+4\mathbf{j}$.

Exercises 7–10. Simplify.

7. $(3\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) - (\mathbf{a}\cdot 2\mathbf{b})$.

8. $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}) + \mathbf{b}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{a})$.

9. $(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b}\cdot(\mathbf{c}+\mathbf{a})$.

10. $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{a}+2\mathbf{c}) + (2\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a})\cdot(\mathbf{a}+2\mathbf{c}) - 2\mathbf{b}\cdot(\mathbf{a}+2\mathbf{c})$.

11. Taking

$$\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}, \qquad \mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{c} = 4\mathbf{i}+3\mathbf{k},$$

calculate

(a) the three dot products $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}$, $\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}$;

(b) the cosines of the angles between these vectors;

(c) the component of $\mathbf{a}$ (i) in the $\mathbf{b}$ direction, (ii) in the $\mathbf{c}$ direction;

(d) the projection of $\mathbf{a}$ (i) in the $\mathbf{b}$ direction, (ii) in the $\mathbf{c}$ direction.

12. Exercise 11 for

$$\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{j}+3\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{c} = 3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{k}.$$

13. Find the unit vector with direction angles $\frac{1}{3}\pi$, $\frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\frac{2}{3}\pi$.

14. Find the vector of norm 2 with direction angles $\frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\frac{1}{2}\pi$.

15. Find the angle between $3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}-2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{i}+2\mathbf{j}-3\mathbf{k}$.

16. Find the angle between $2\mathbf{i}-3\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$ and $-3\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+9\mathbf{k}$.

17. Find the direction angles of the vector $\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+\sqrt{2}\mathbf{k}$.

18. Find the direction angles of the vector $\mathbf{i}-\sqrt{3}\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 19–22. Estimate the angle between the vectors. Express your answers in radians rounded to the nearest hundredth of a radian, and in degrees to the nearest tenth of a degree.

19. $\mathbf{a} = (3, 1, -1)$, $\mathbf{b} = (-2, 1, 4)$.

20. $\mathbf{a} = (-2, -3, 0)$, $\mathbf{b} = (-6, 0, 4)$.

21. $\mathbf{a} = -\mathbf{i}+2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i}+4\mathbf{j}-5\mathbf{k}$.

22. $\mathbf{a} = -3\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}$.

23. Use a CAS to determine the angles and the perimeter of the triangle with vertices $P(1, 3, -2)$, $Q(3, 1, 2)$, $R(2, -3, 1)$.

Exercises 24–27. Find the direction cosines and direction angles of the vector.

24. $\mathbf{a} = (2, 6, -1)$.

25. $\mathbf{a} = (1, 2, 2)$.

26. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i}+5\mathbf{j}-4\mathbf{k}$.

27. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i}+12\mathbf{j}+4\mathbf{k}$.

28. Use a CAS to find the direction cosines and the direction angles of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ for $P(5, 7, -2)$, $Q(-3, 4, 1)$.

29. Find the numbers x for which

$$2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + 2x\mathbf{k} \perp 6\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j} - x\mathbf{k}.$$

30. Find the numbers x for which

$$(x\mathbf{i} + 11\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}) \perp (2x\mathbf{i} - x\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}).$$

31. Find the numbers x for which the angle between $\mathbf{c} = x\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{i} + x\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ is $\frac{1}{3}\pi$.

32. Set $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + x\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + y\mathbf{k}$. Find x and y given that $\mathbf{a} \perp \mathbf{b}$ and $\|\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{b}\|$.

33. (a) Show that $\frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\frac{1}{6}\pi$, $\frac{2}{3}\pi$ cannot be the direction angles of a vector.
(b) Show that, if $\mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ has direction angles α, $\frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\frac{1}{4}\pi$, then $a_1 = 0$.

34. A vector has direction angles $\alpha = \pi/3$ and $\beta = \pi/4$. What are the possibilities for the third direction angle γ?

35. What are the direction angles of $-\mathbf{a}$ if the direction angles of $\mathbf{a}$ are α, β, γ?

36. Suppose that the direction angles of a vector are equal. What are the angles?

37. Find the unit vectors $\mathbf{u}$ which are perpendicular to both $\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

38. Find two mutually perpendicular unit vectors that are perpendicular to $2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$.

39. Find the angle between the diagonal of a cube and one of the edges.

40. Find the angle between the diagonal of a cube and the diagonal of one of the faces.

41. Show that
(a) $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\alpha\mathbf{a} = \alpha\,\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a}$ for all real α, and
(b) $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{c}$.

42. Show that
(a) $\mathbf{proj}_{\beta\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a}$ for all real $\beta \neq 0$, but

(b) $\text{comp}_{\beta\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a} = \begin{cases} \text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a}, & \text{for } \beta > 0 \\ -\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a}, & \text{for } \beta < 0. \end{cases}$

43. (a) (*Important*) Let $\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{0}$. Show that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ does not necessarily imply that $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$, but only that $\mathbf{a} \perp (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c})$.
(b) Show that if $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ for all unit vectors $\mathbf{u}$, then $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$.

44. What can you conclude about $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ given that
(a) $\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|^2$?
(b) $\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|^2$?
HINT: Draw figures.

45. (a) Show that for all vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$

$$4(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|^2.$$

(b) Use part (a) to verify that

$$\mathbf{a} \perp \mathbf{b} \quad \text{iff} \quad \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|.$$

(c) Show that, if $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are nonzero vectors such that

$$(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \perp (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad \text{and} \quad \|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|,$$

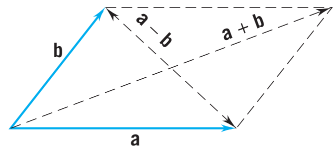
then the parallelogram generated by $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is a square.

46. Under what conditions does $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = \|\mathbf{a}\|\ \|\mathbf{b}\|$?

47. Given two vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, prove the *parallelogram law*:

$$\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|^2 = 2\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 + 2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2.$$

Show that the sum of the squares of the lengths of the diagonals of a parallelogram equals the sum of the squares of the lengths of the four sides. See the figure.



48. A *rhombus* is a parallelogram with sides of equal length. Show that the diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular.

49. Let $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ be nonzero vectors. Show that the vector $\mathbf{c} = \|\mathbf{b}\|\mathbf{a} + \|\mathbf{a}\|\mathbf{b}$ bisects the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ in the sense that the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$ equals the angle between $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$.

50. Let θ be the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, and let β be a negative number. Use the dot product to express the angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\beta\mathbf{b}$ in terms of θ. Draw a figure to verify your answer geometrically.

51. (*Important*) Show that, if $\mathbf{b}$ is a nonzero vector, then every vector $\mathbf{a}$ can be written in a unique manner as the sum of a vector $\mathbf{a}_{\parallel}$ parallel to $\mathbf{b}$ and a vector $\mathbf{a}_{\perp}$ perpendicular to $\mathbf{b}$:

$$\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}_{\parallel} + \mathbf{a}_{\perp}.$$

52. Let $r = f(\theta)$ be the polar equation of a curve in the plane and let

$$\mathbf{u}_r = (\cos\theta)\mathbf{i} + (\sin\theta)\mathbf{j} \qquad \mathbf{u}_\theta = (-\sin\theta)\mathbf{i} + (\cos\theta)\mathbf{j}.$$

(a) Show that $\mathbf{u}_r$ and $\mathbf{u}_\theta$ are unit vectors and that they are perpendicular.
(b) Let $P[r, \theta]$ be a point on the curve. Show that $\mathbf{u}_r$ has the direction of $\overrightarrow{OP}$ and that $\mathbf{u}_\theta$ points 90° counterclockwise from $\mathbf{u}_r$.

53. Two points on a sphere are called *antipodal* if they are opposite endpoints of a diameter. Show that, if P_1 and P_2 are antipodal points on a sphere and Q is any other point on the sphere, then $\overrightarrow{P_1Q} \perp \overrightarrow{P_2Q}$.

54. (*Important*) Give an algebraic proof of Schwarz's inequality $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| \leq \|\mathbf{a}\|\ \|\mathbf{b}\|$. HINT: If $\mathbf{b} = 0$, the inequality is trivial; so assume $\mathbf{b} \neq \mathbf{0}$. Note that for any number λ we have $\|\mathbf{a} - \lambda\mathbf{b}\|^2 \geq 0$. First expand this inequality using the fact that $\|\mathbf{a} - \lambda\mathbf{b}\|^2 = (\mathbf{a} - \lambda\mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \lambda\mathbf{b})$. After collecting terms, make the special choice $\lambda = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})/\|\mathbf{b}\|^2$ and see what happens.

■ PROJECT 13.3 Work

If a constant force **F** is applied to an object that moves in a straight line throughout a displacement **r** (see Figure A), then the work done by **F** is defined by the equation

$$W = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{r}}\ \mathbf{F})\|\mathbf{r}\|.$$

As you'll see, this generalizes (6.5.1).

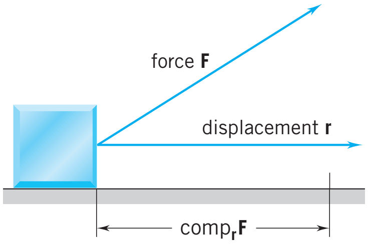


Figure A

Problem 1. A constant force **F** is applied throughout a displacement **r**.

a. Express the work done by **F** as a dot product.
b. What is the work done by **F** if $\mathbf{F} \perp \mathbf{r}$?
c. Show that the work done by $\mathbf{F} = \|\mathbf{F}\|\,\mathbf{i}$ applied throughout the displacement $\mathbf{r} = (b - a)\,\mathbf{i}$ is given by (6.5.1). (Thus we have a generalization of what we had before.)

Problem 2. A sled is pulled along level ground by a force of 15 newtons by a rope that makes an angle θ with the ground. Find the work done by the force in pulling the sled 50 meters if (a) $\theta = 0^\circ$, (b) $\theta = 30^\circ$, (c) $\theta = 45^\circ$. See Figure B.

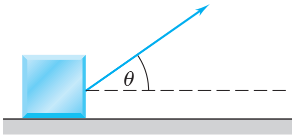


Figure B

Problem 3. Two forces, $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$, are applied throughout a displacement **r** at angles θ_1 and θ_2 respectively. Compare the work done by $\mathbf{F}_1$ to that done by $\mathbf{F}_2$ if (a) $\theta_1 = -\theta_2$. (b) $\theta_1 = \pi/3$ and $\theta_2 = \pi/6$.

Problem 4. What is the total work done by a constant force **F** if the object to which it is applied moves around a triangle? Justify your answer.

■ 13.4 THE CROSS PRODUCT

Everything we have done with vectors so far (other than draw pictures) can be generalized to higher dimensions. The cross product, defined below, is particular to three-dimensional space and cannot be generalized to higher dimensions.

Definition of the Cross Product

While the dot product $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ is a scalar (and as such is sometimes called the *scalar product* of **a** and **b**), the *cross product* $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is a vector (sometimes called the *vector product* of **a** and **b**). What is $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$? We could directly write down a formula that gives the components of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ in terms of the components of **a** and **b**, but at this stage that would reveal little. Instead we will begin geometrically. We will define $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ by giving its direction and its magnitude. For convenience, we represent **a** and **b** by arrows that emanate from the same point.

The Direction of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$

If the vectors **a** and **b** are not parallel, they determine a plane. The vector $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is perpendicular to this plane and, like the *O*-*xyz*-system of coordinate axes, is directed by the right-hand rule: if the fingers of the right hand are curled from **a** toward **b** (through the angle between **a** and **b**), then the thumb points in the direction of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$. (Figure 13.4.1.)

The Magnitude of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$

If **a** and **b** are not parallel, they form the sides of a parallelogram. (See Figure 13.4.2.) The magnitude of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is the area of this parallelogram: $\|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|\sin\theta$.[†]

[†]The advantages that ensue from assigning this magnitude to $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ will become apparent as we go on.

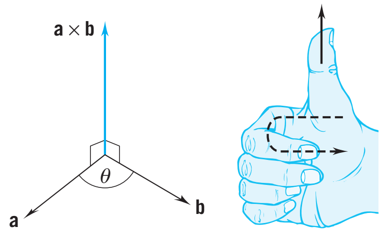


Figure 13.4.1

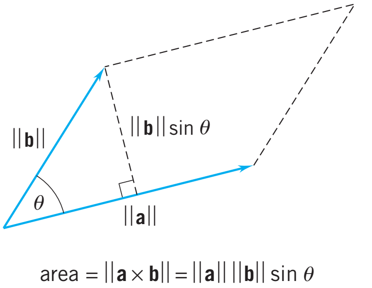


Figure 13.4.2

One more point. What if **a** and **b** are parallel? Then there is no parallelogram and we define **a** × **b** to be 0.

We summarize all this below.

DEFINITION 13.4.1

If **a** and **b** are not parallel, then **a** × **b** is the vector with the following properties:

1. **a** × **b** is prependicular to the plane of **a** and **b**.
2. **a**, **b**, **a** × **b** form a right-handed triple.
3. $\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\| \sin\theta$ where θ is the angle between **a** and **b**.

If **a** and **b** are parallel, then $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = 0$.

Right-Handed Triples

Start with three vectors **a**, **b**, **c** which emanate from the same point. If the vectors **a** and **b** are not parallel, they determine a plane. Points not on this plane fall into two categories: those on one side of the plane, those on the other side of the plane. The vectors **a, b, c** are said to form a *right-handed triple* provided that **c** and **a** × **b** point to the same side of the plane generated by **a** and **b**. As is clear from Figure 13.4.3,

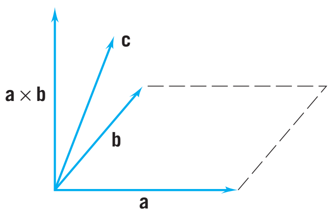


Figure 13.4.3

(13.4.2) $$\boxed{\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c} \quad \text{form a right-handed triple} \quad \text{iff} \quad (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} > 0.}$$

Properties of Right-Handed Triples

I. Since $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = \|(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})\|^2 > 0$, $(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$ is a right-handed triple.

II. If (**a**, **b**, **c**) is a right-handed triple, then (**c**, **a**, **b**) and (**b**, **c**, **a**) are right-handed triples. (Figure 13.4.4.)

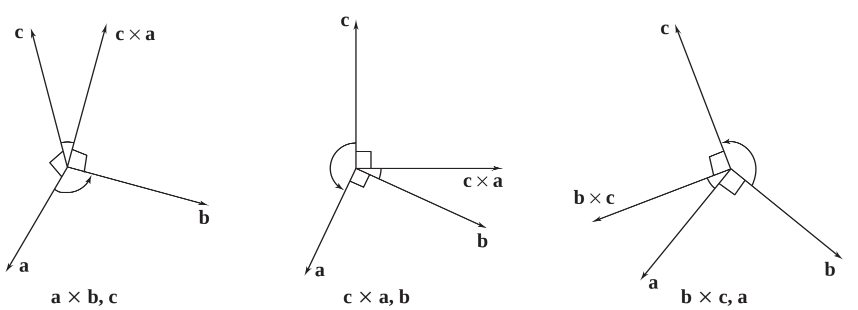


Figure 13.4.4

To maintain right-handedness, we don't have to keep the vectors in the same order, but we do have to keep them in the *same cyclic order*:

$$\mathbf{a} \to \mathbf{b} \to \mathbf{c}$$

Alter the cyclic order and you reverse the orientation

III. Multiply any of the three vectors by a positive scalar and you maintain the orientation: if $(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c})$ is a right-handed triple and $\alpha > 0$, then $(\alpha\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c})$, $(\mathbf{a}, \alpha\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c})$, and $(\mathbf{a}, b, \alpha\mathbf{c})$ are also right-handed triples. (Draw figures.)

Multiply any of the vectors by a negative scalar and you reverse the orientation: if $(\mathbf{a, b, c})$ is a right-handed triple and $\alpha < 0$, then $(\alpha\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c})$, $(\mathbf{a}, \alpha\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c})$, and $(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \alpha\mathbf{c})$ are not right-handed. (Draw figures.)

Properties of the Cross Product

The cross product is *anticommutative*:

(13.4.3)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a} = -(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}).}$$

To see this, note that both vectors have the same norm and they can differ only in direction. Curling the right-hand fingers from **a** to **b** points the thumb in one direction; curling the fingers from **b** to **a** points the thumb in the opposite direction. (Figure 13.4.5.)

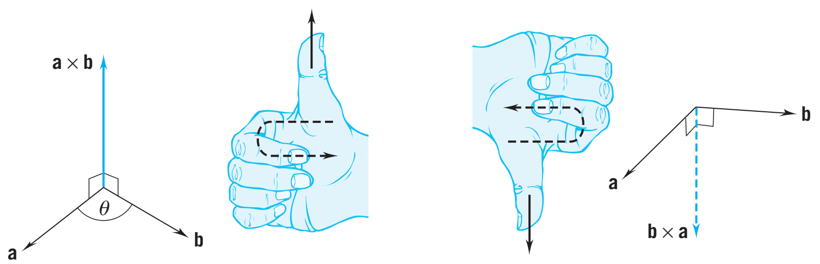


Figure 13.4.5

Scalars can be factored:

(13.4.4)
$$\boxed{\alpha\mathbf{a} \times \beta\mathbf{b} = \alpha\beta(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}).}$$

If α or β is zero, the result is obvious. We will assume that α and β are both nonzero. In this case the two vectors are perpendicular both to **a** and to **b** and (as you are asked to show in Exercise 35) have the same norm. Thus $\alpha\mathbf{a} \times \beta\mathbf{b} = \pm\alpha\beta(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$. That the positive sign holds comes from noting that $\alpha\mathbf{a}$, $\beta\mathbf{b}$, $\alpha\beta(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$ is a right-handed triple. This is obvious if α and β are both positive. If not, two of the three coefficients α, β, $\alpha\beta$ are negative and the other is positive. In this case, the first minus sign reverses the orientation of the triple and the second minus sign restores it.

Finally, there are two distributive laws, the verification of which we postpone for a moment.

(13.4.5)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}), \\ &(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) + (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}). \end{aligned}}$$

The Scalar Triple Product

Earlier we saw that $(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c})$ is a right-handed triple iff $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} > 0$. The expression $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}$ is called a *scalar triple product*. The absolute value of this number (it is a number, not a vector) has geometric significance. To describe it, we refer to Figure 13.4.6. There you see a parallelepiped with edges **a, b, c**. The absolute value of the scalar triple product gives the volume of that parallelepiped:

(13.4.6) $$\boxed{V = |(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}|.}$$

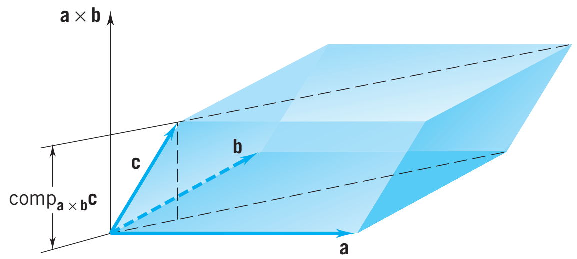


Figure 13.4.6

PROOF The area of the base is $\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|$. ($\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|$ was defined so that this would be the case.) The height of the parallelepiped is $|\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{c}|$. Therefore

$$V = |\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{c}|\,\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \underset{(13.3.13)}{=} |(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}| \quad \square$$

Of course, we could have formed the same parallelepiped using a different base (for example, using the vectors **c** and **a**) with a correspondingly different height $(\text{comp}_{\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{a}}\, \mathbf{b})$. Therefore,

$$|(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}| = |(\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{a}|.$$

Since the **a, b, c** appear in the same cyclic order, the expressions inside the absolute value signs all have the same sign. (Property II of right-handed triples.) Therefore

(13.4.7) $$\boxed{(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{a}.}$$

Verification of the Distributive Laws

We will verify the first distributive law,

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}).$$

The second follows readily from this one. The argument is left to you as an exercise.

Take an arbitrary vector **r** and form the dot product $[\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})] \cdot \mathbf{r}$. We can then write

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})] \cdot \mathbf{r} &= (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) && (13.4.7)\\
&= [(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b}] + [(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{c}]\\
&= [(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{r}] + [(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}) \cdot \mathbf{r}] && (13.4.7)\\
&= [(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c})] \cdot \mathbf{r}.
\end{aligned}$$

Since this holds true for all vectors $\mathbf{r}$, it holds true for $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ and proves that

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}).$$

(Both sides have the same $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ components.) ❑

The Components of $a \times b$

You have learned a lot about cross products, but you still have not seen $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ expressed in terms of the components of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. To derive the formula that does this, we need to observe one more fact, one which follows directly from the definition of cross product and the fact that our O-xyz coordinate system satisfies the right-hand rule.

(13.4.8) $$\boxed{\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i}, \quad \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j}.}$$ (Figure 13.4.7)

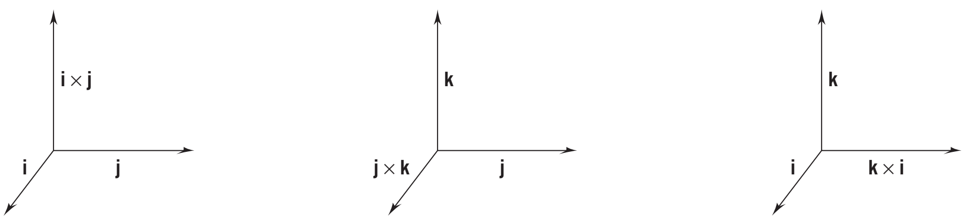


Figure 13.4.7

One way to remember these products is to arrange $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ in cyclic order, $\mathbf{i} \to \mathbf{j} \to \mathbf{k}$, and note that

[each coordinate unit vector] × [the next one] = [the third one].

THEOREM 13.4.9

For vectors $\mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\mathbf{i} + b_2\mathbf{j} + b_3\mathbf{k}$,

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)\mathbf{i} - (a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)\mathbf{j} + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)\mathbf{k}.$$

Those of you who have studied some linear algebra will recognize that the jumble of symbols we have just written down for $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ can be elegantly summarized by the use of determinants. Here is Theorem 13.4.9 stated in terms of determinants. (If you are not familiar with determinants, see Appendix A-2.)

THEOREM 13.4.9′

For vectors $\mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\mathbf{i} + b_2\mathbf{j} + b_3\mathbf{k}$,

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{k}.$$

(The 3×3 determinant with $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ in the top row is there only as a mnemonic device.)

PROOF The hard work has all been done. With what you know about cross products now, the proof is just a matter of algebraic manipulation:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b} &= (a_1\mathbf{i}+a_2\mathbf{j}+a_3\mathbf{k})\times(b_1\mathbf{i}+b_2\mathbf{j}+b_3\mathbf{k})\\
&= a_1b_2(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j})+a_1b_3(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{k})+a_2b_1(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i})+a_2b_3(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{k})+a_3b_1(\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{i})+a_3b_2(\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{j})\\
&\quad \uparrow\ \mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{i}=\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{j}=\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{k}=0\\
&= a_1b_2\mathbf{k}-a_1b_3\mathbf{j}-a_2b_1\mathbf{k}+a_2b_3\mathbf{i}+a_3b_1\mathbf{j}-a_3b_2\mathbf{i}\\
&= (a_2b_3-a_3b_2)\mathbf{i}-(a_1b_3-a_3b_1)\mathbf{j}+(a_1b_2-a_2b_1)\mathbf{k}\qquad\text{(this proves Theorem 13.4.9)}\\
&= \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3\\ b_2 & b_3\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i}-\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3\\ b_1 & b_3\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j}+\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2\\ b_1 & b_2\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}.\quad ❑
\end{aligned}
$$

Example 1 Calculate $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ given that $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}+3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b}=2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b} &= \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k}\\ 1 & -2 & 3\\ 2 & 1 & -1\end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 3\\ 1 & -1\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i}-\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3\\ 2 & -1\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j}+\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2\\ 2 & 1\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}\\
&= -\mathbf{i}+7\mathbf{j}+5\mathbf{k}.\quad ❑
\end{aligned}
$$

Example 2 Calculate $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ given that $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b} &= \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k}\\ 1 & -1 & 0\\ 1 & 0 & 1\end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 0\\ 0 & 1\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i}-\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j}+\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1\\ 1 & 0\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}\\
&= -\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}.\quad ❑
\end{aligned}
$$

In Examples 1 and 2 we calculated some cross products using Theorem 13.4.9′. We can obtain the same results just by applying the distributive laws. For example, for $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}+3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b}=2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b} &= (\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}+3\mathbf{k})\times(2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k})\\
&= (\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j})-(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{k})-4(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i})+2(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{k})+6(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i})+3(\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{j})\\
&= \mathbf{k}+\mathbf{j}+4\mathbf{k}+2\mathbf{i}+6\mathbf{j}-3\mathbf{i}=-\mathbf{i}+7\mathbf{j}+5\mathbf{k}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Example 3 (*Useful*) Show that the triple scalar product can be written as a determinant:

(13.4.10)
$$
\boxed{(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c}=\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3\\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3\\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3\end{vmatrix}.}
$$

SOLUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c} &= \mathbf{c}\cdot(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\\
&= (c_1\mathbf{i}+c_2\mathbf{j}+c_3\mathbf{k})\cdot\left(\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3\\ b_2 & b_3\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i}-\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3\\ b_1 & b_3\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j}+\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2\\ b_1 & b_2\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}\right)\\
&= c_1\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3\\ b_2 & b_3\end{vmatrix}-c_2\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3\\ b_1 & b_3\end{vmatrix}+c_3\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2\\ b_1 & b_2\end{vmatrix}.
\end{aligned}
$$

This is the expansion of

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

by the elements of the third row. ❑

A Suggestion: Vectors were defined as ordered triples, and many of the early proofs were done by "breaking up" vectors into their components. This may give you the impression that the method of "breakup" and working with the components is the first thing to try when confronted with a problem that involves vectors. If it is a *computational* problem, this method may give good results. But if you have to *analyze* a situation involving vectors, particularly one in which geometry plays a role, then the "breakup" strategy is seldom the best. Think instead of using the *operations* we have defined on vectors: addition, subtraction, scalar multiplication, dot product, cross product. Being geometrically motivated, these operations are likely to provide greater understanding than breaking up everything in sight into components. ❑

Example 4 Verify *Lagrange's identity*: $\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|^2 + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2 = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2$.

SOLUTION We could begin by writing

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|^2 &= (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)^2 + (a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)^2 + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)^2 \\ (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2 &= (a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3)^2 \\ \|\mathbf{a}\|^2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2 &= (a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2)(b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2), \end{aligned}$$

but this would take us into a morass of arithmetic. It is much more fruitful to proceed as follows:

$$\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\| \sin\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\| \cos\theta.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|^2 + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2 &= \|\mathbf{a}\|^2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2 \sin^2\theta + \|\mathbf{a}\|^2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2 \cos^2\theta \\ &= \|\mathbf{a}\|^2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2(\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta) = \|\mathbf{a}\|^2\|\mathbf{b}\|^2. \end{aligned}$$ ❑

Remark Lagrange's identity is one more dividend we get from the apparently arbitrary definition of $\|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|$. ❑

Three Additional Identities

You have seen that the cross product is not commutative. It is also not associative: the vectors $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$ and $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c}$ are generally not the same. For example,

$$\mathbf{i} \times (\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j}) = \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{but} \qquad (\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i}) \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{0} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{0}.$$

What is true instead is that

(13.4.11)

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) &= (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}, \\ (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c} &= (\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{b})\mathbf{a}. \end{aligned}}$$

There is one more identity that we want to mention:

(13.4.12) $$\boxed{(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot(\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{d})=(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{d})-(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{d})(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}).}$$

The verification of these three identities is left to you in the Exercises.

Remark Dot products and cross products appear frequently in physics and in engineering. Work is a dot product. So is the power expended by a force. Torque and angular momentum are cross products. Turn on a television set and watch the dots on the screen. How they move is determined by the laws of electromagnetism. It is all based on Maxwell's four equations. Two of them feature dot products; two of them feature cross products. ❑

EXERCISES 13.4

Exercises 1–20. Calculate.

1. $(\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j})\times(\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j})$.
2. $(\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j})\times(\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{i})$.
3. $(\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j})\times\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k})$.
4. $\mathbf{j}\times(2\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{k})$.
5. $(2\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k})\times(\mathbf{i}-3\mathbf{j})$.
6. $\mathbf{i}\cdot(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{k})$.
7. $\mathbf{j}\cdot(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{k})$.
8. $(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i})\cdot(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{k})$.
9. $(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j})\times\mathbf{k}$.
10. $\mathbf{k}\cdot(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i})$.
11. $\mathbf{j}\cdot(\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{i})$.
12. $\mathbf{j}\times(\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{i})$.
13. $(\mathbf{i}+3\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k})\times(\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{k})$.
14. $(3\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})\times(\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})$.
15. $(\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})\times(2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{k})$.
16. $(2\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{k})\times(\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k})$.
17. $[2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}]\cdot[(i-3\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})\times(4\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{k})]$.
18. $[(-2\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-3\mathbf{k})\times\mathbf{i}]\times[\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}]$.
19. $[(\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j})\times(\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k})]\times[\mathbf{i}+5\mathbf{k}]$.
20. $[\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}]\times[(\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k})\times(\mathbf{j}+5\mathbf{k})]$.

21. Find the unit vectors which are perpendicular to both

$$\mathbf{a}=(1,3,-1)\quad\text{and}\quad\mathbf{b}=(2,0,1).$$

22. Exercise 21 for $\mathbf{a}=(1,2,3)$ and $\mathbf{b}=(2,1,1)$.

Exercises 23–26. Find a unit vector $\mathbf{N}$ which is perpendicular to the plane of P, Q, R, and find the area of triangle PQR.

23. $P(0,1,0)$, $Q(-1,1,2)$, $R(2,1,-1)$.

24. $P(1,2,3)$, $Q(-1,3,2)$, $R(3,-1,2)$.

25. $P(1,-1,4)$, $Q(2,0,1)$, $R(0,2,3)$.

26. $P(2,-1,3)$, $Q(4,1,-1)$, $R(-3,0,5)$.

Exercises 27–28. Find the volume of the parallelepiped with the edges given.

27. $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}$, $2\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{k}$, $3\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$.

28. $\mathbf{i}-3\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$, $2\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-2\mathbf{k}$.

29. Given the points $O(0,0,0)$, $P(1,2,3)$, $Q(1,1,2)$, $R(2,1,1)$, find the volume of the parallelepiped with edges $\overrightarrow{OP}$, $\overrightarrow{OQ}$, $\overrightarrow{OR}$.

30. Given the points $P(1,-1,4)$, $Q(2,0,1)$, $R(0,2,3)$, $S(3,5,7)$, find the volume of the parallelepiped with edges $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, $\overrightarrow{PR}$, $\overrightarrow{PS}$.

31. Express $(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b})$ as a scalar multiple of $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$.

32. Earlier we verified that $\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c})=(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})+(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c})$. Show now that

$$(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c}=(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c})+(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c}).$$

33. Suppose that $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{i}=\mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{j}=\mathbf{0}$. What can you conclude about $\mathbf{a}$?

34. Show that if $\mathbf{a}=a_1\mathbf{i}+a_2\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{b}=b_1\mathbf{i}+b_2\mathbf{j}$, then $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{k}$.

35. Show that $\alpha\mathbf{a}\times\beta\mathbf{b}$ and $\alpha\beta(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})$ have the same norm.

36. (a) Let $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{c}$ be distinct nonzero vectors. Show that

$$\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c}\quad\text{iff}\quad\mathbf{a}\text{ and }\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{c}\text{ are parallel.}$$

(b) Sketch a figure depicting all the vectors $\mathbf{c}$ that satisfy the relation $\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c}$.

37. Let $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{c}$ be vectors. Which of the following expressions make sense and which do not? Explain your answer in each case.

(a) $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$. (b) $\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})$.
(c) $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})$. (d) $\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$.

38. For each vector $\mathbf{a}$ determine all vectors $\mathbf{b}$ for which $(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{b}\neq 0$.

39. Given that $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{c}$ are nonzero vectors, find all vectors $\mathbf{d}$ for which

$$\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{c}.$$

40. Given that $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{c}$ are mutually perpendicular, show that

$$\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})=\mathbf{0}.$$

41. Let $\mathbf{a}\neq\mathbf{0}$. Show that if

$$\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c}\quad\text{and}\quad\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c},\quad\text{then}\quad\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{c}.$$

42. (a) Verify the identity

$$\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})=(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{b}-(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}.$$

HINT: Show that both sides have the same **i**, **j**, **k** components.

(b) Verify the identity

$$(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{b})\mathbf{a}.$$

HINT: $(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c} = -[\mathbf{c}\times(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})]$.

(c) Finally, show that

$$(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot(\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{d}) = (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{d}) - (\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{d})(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}).$$

HINT: Set $\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{r}$ and use (13.4.7).

43. Let **a** and **b** be nonzero vectors with $\mathbf{a}\perp\mathbf{b}$, and set $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}$. Express $\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{a}$ as a multiple of **b**.

44. Given that **u** is a unit vector, prove that each vector **a** can be written as the sum of a vector parallel to **u** and a vector perpendicular to **u**:

$$\mathbf{a} = \underbrace{(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{u})\mathbf{u}}_{\text{parallel to } \mathbf{u}} + \underbrace{(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{a})\times\mathbf{u}}_{\text{perpendicular to } \mathbf{u}}$$

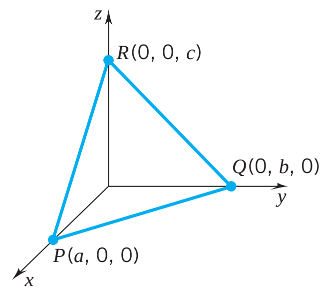
HINT: Use Exercise 42(b).

45. Suppose **a** and **b** are vectors such that

$$\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}.$$

What can you conclude about a and b?

Exercises 46 and 47 relate to the tetrahedron with vertices $O(0, 0, 0)$, $P(a, 0, 0)$, $Q(0, b, 0)$, $R(0, 0, c)$ shown in the figure.



46. Derive a formula for the area D of the face of the tetrahedron with vertices P, Q, R. HINT: Extend the face to a parallelogram.

47. Let A be the area of the face opposite vertex P, let B be the area of the face opposite vertex Q, and let C be the area of the face opposite vertex R. Show that

$$A^2 + B^2 + C^2 = D^2.$$

You can think of this as a three-dimensional version of the Pythagorean theorem.

48. Which of the following dot products are equal?

$\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$, $\quad\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{b})$, $\quad(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c}$, $\quad(\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{a})\cdot\mathbf{b}$,
$(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})\cdot\mathbf{a}$, $\quad\mathbf{c}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{a})$, $\quad(-\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c}$, $\quad(\mathbf{a}\times-\mathbf{c})\cdot\mathbf{b}$.

■ 13.5 LINES

Preliminary Remark In themselves vectors have no definite location, just magnitude and direction. For some applications it is convenient to assign to a vector a particular location, a particular starting point. A vector which has a particular starting point is called a *bound* vector. If **a** is a bound vector, then **a** can be represented by one and only one arrow: the arrow that has the specified magnitude, the specified direction, and the specified starting point. By writing $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ we indicate not only that **a** has the length of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and the direction $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, but that **a** is bound to (attached to) the point P. In effect, then, **a** is $\overrightarrow{PQ}$. ❑

Vector Parametrizations

We begin with the idea that two distinct points determine a line. In Figure 13.5.1 we have marked two points and the line l that they determine. To obtain a vector characterization of l, we choose the vectors $\mathbf{r}_0$ and **d** as in Figure 13.5.2. The vector $\mathbf{r}_0$ is bound to the origin; the vector **d** is bound to the tip of $\mathbf{r}_0$. Since we began with two distinct points, the vector **d** is nonzero.

In Figure 13.5.3, we have drawn an additional vector **r**, bound at the origin. The vector that begins at the tip of $\mathbf{r}_0$ and ends at the tip of **r** will fall on l iff

$$\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{d} \quad \text{are parallel;}$$

this in turn will happen iff

$$\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0 = t\mathbf{d} \qquad \text{for some real number } t,$$

or, equivalently, iff

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d} \qquad \text{for some real number } t.$$

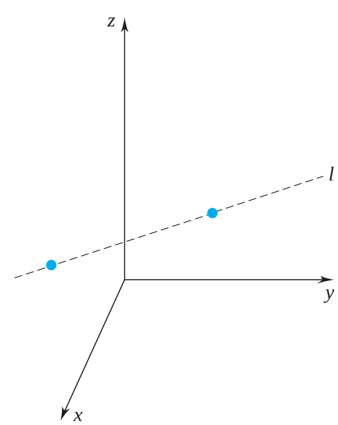


Figure 13.5.1

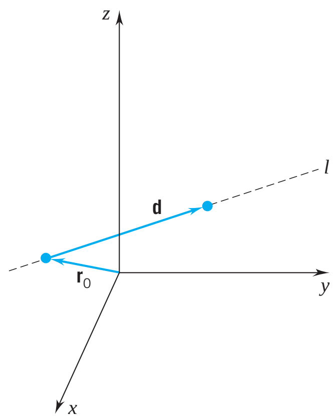


Figure 13.5.2

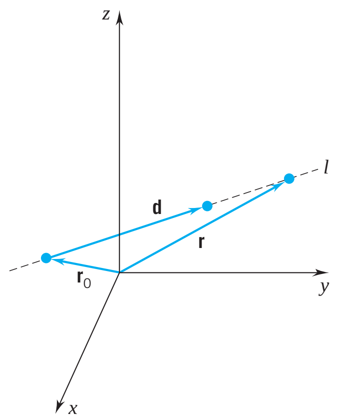


Figure 13.5.3

The vector function

(13.5.1)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}, \qquad t \text{ real}}$$

parametrizes the line l: by varying t we vary the vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$, but the tip of $\mathbf{r}(t)$ remains on l; as t ranges over the set of real numbers, the tip of $\mathbf{r}(t)$ traces out the line l. The vector $\mathbf{d}$ is called a *direction vector* for the line.

The line that passes through the point $P(x_0, y_0, x_0)$ with direction vector $\mathbf{d} = d_1\mathbf{i} + d_2\mathbf{j} + d_3\mathbf{k}$ can be parametrized by setting

(13.5.2)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{r}(t) = (x_0 + td_1)\,\mathbf{i} + (y_0 + td_2)\,\mathbf{j} + (z_0 + td_3)\,\mathbf{k}.}$$

PROOF Set $\mathbf{r}_0 = \overrightarrow{OP}$. Then $\mathbf{r}_0 = x_0\mathbf{i} + y_0\mathbf{j} + z_0\mathbf{k}$. Equation (13.5.2) is equation $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}$ in expanded form:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\,\mathbf{d} &= (x_0\,\mathbf{i} + y_0\,\mathbf{j} + z_0\,\mathbf{k}) + t(d_1\,\mathbf{i} + d_2\,\mathbf{j} + d_3\,\mathbf{k}) \\ &= (x_0 + dt_1)\,\mathbf{i} + (y_0 + td_2)\,\mathbf{j} + (z_0 + td_3)\,\mathbf{k}. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

Example 1 Parametrize the line that passes through the point $P(1, -1, 2)$ and has direction vector $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION We set

$$\mathbf{r}_0 = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{d} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}.$$

Equation $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}$ gives

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) + t(2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}),$$

which we write as

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (1 + 2t)\,\mathbf{i} - (1 + 3t)\,\mathbf{j} + (2 + t)\,\mathbf{k}. \quad \square$$

Direction vectors are not unique. If $\mathbf{d}$ is a direction vector for l, then every nonzero vector parallel to $\mathbf{d}$, every vector of the form $\alpha\mathbf{d}$ with $\alpha \neq 0$, can be used as a direction vector for l: what $\mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}$ produces at t is produced by $\mathbf{r}_0 + t(\alpha\mathbf{d})$ at t/α.

Equations

$$\mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_0 + t(\tfrac{1}{2})\mathbf{d}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_0 - t(3\mathbf{d})$$

all give the same line.

Example 2 The line given by

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}) + t\left(-\tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} - \tfrac{1}{9}\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{2}{9}\mathbf{k}\right)$$

can be defined more simply by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}) + t(6\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}).$$

(We multiplied the initial direction vector by -9.) ❑

If $\mathbf{d} = d_1\mathbf{i} + d_2\mathbf{j} + d_3\mathbf{k}$ is a direction vector for l, the components d_1, d_2, d_3 are called *direction numbers* for l. From what we just stated, if d_1, d_2, d_3 are direction numbers for l, then so are $\alpha d_1, \alpha d_2, \alpha d_3$ provided only that $\alpha \neq 0$.

In Example 2 we replaced the direction numbers $-\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{1}{9}, \frac{2}{9}$ by $6, 1, -2$.

Scalar Parametric Equations

It follows from (13.5.2) that the line that passes through the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ with direction numbers d_1, d_2, d_3 can be parametrized by three scalar equations:

(13.5.3)
$$\boxed{x(t) = x_0 + d_1 t, \qquad y(t) = y_0 + d_2 t, \qquad z(t) = z_0 + d_3 t.}$$

These quantities are the $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ components of the vector $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}$.

Example 3 Write scalar parametric equations for the line that passes through the point $P(-1, 4, 2)$ with direction numbers $1, 2, 3$.

SOLUTION In this case the scalar equations

$$x(t) = x_0 + d_1 t, \qquad y(t) = y_0 + d_2 t, \qquad z(t) = z_0 + d_3 t$$

take the form

$$x(t) = -1 + t, \qquad y(t) = 4 + 2t, \qquad z(t) = 2 + 3t. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 What direction numbers are displayed by the parametric equations

$$x(t) = 3 - t, \qquad y(t) = 2 + 4t, \qquad z(t) = 1 - 5t?$$

What other direction numbers could be used for the same line?

SOLUTION The direction numbers displayed are $-1, 4, -5$. Any triple of the form

$$-\alpha, 4\alpha, -5\alpha, \qquad \text{with } \alpha \neq 0$$

could be used as a set of direction numbers for that same line. ❑

Symmetric Form

If the direction numbers are all nonzero, then each of the scalar parametric equations can be solved for t:

$$t = \frac{x(t) - x_0}{d_1}, \qquad t = \frac{y(t) - y_0}{d_2}, \qquad t = \frac{z(t) - z_0}{d_3}.$$

Eliminating the parameter t, we obtain three equations:

$$\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2}, \qquad \frac{y - y_0}{d_2} = \frac{z - z_0}{d_3}, \qquad \frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{z - z_0}{d_3}.$$

Any two of these equations suffice; the third is redundant and can be discarded. Rather than decide which equation to discard, we simply write

(13.5.4)
$$\boxed{\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2} = \frac{z - z_0}{d_3}.}$$

These are the equations of a line written in *symmetric form*. The equations of a line can be written in this form only if d_1, d_2, d_3 are all different from zero.

Example 5 Write equations in symmetric form for the line that passes through the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1, z_1)$. Under what conditions are the equations valid?

SOLUTION As direction numbers we can take the triple

$$x_1 - x_0, \qquad y_1 - y_0, \qquad z_1 - z_0.$$

We can base our calculations on $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and write

$$\frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} = \frac{y - y_0}{y_1 - y_0} = \frac{z - z_0}{z_1 - z_0},$$

or we can base our calculations on $Q(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and write

$$\frac{x - x_1}{x_1 - x_0} = \frac{y - y_1}{y_1 - y_0} = \frac{z - z_1}{z_1 - z_0}.$$

Both sets of equations are valid provided that $x_1 \neq x_0$, $y_1 \neq y_0$, $z_1 \neq z_0$. ❑

Equations 13.5.4 can be used only if the direction numbers are all different from zero. If one of the direction numbers is zero, then one of the coordinates is constant. As you will see, this simplifies the algebra. Geometrically, it means that the line lies on a plane which is parallel to one of the coordinate planes.

Suppose, for example, that $d_3 = 0$. Then the scalar parametric equations take the form

$$x(t) = x_0 + d_1 t, \qquad y(t) = y_0 + d_2 t, \qquad z(t) = z_0.$$

Eliminating t, we are left with two equations:

$$\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2}, \qquad z = z_0.$$

The line lies on the horizontal plane $z = z_0$ and its projection onto the xy-plane (see Figure 13.5.4) is the line l' with equation

$$\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2}.$$

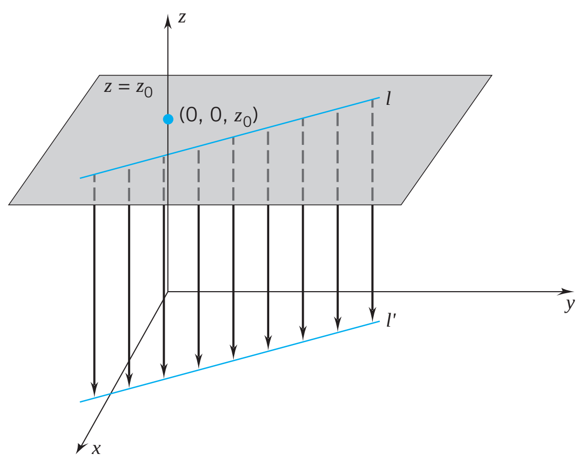


Figure 13.5.4

Intersecting Lines, Parallel Lines

Two distinct lines

$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}, \qquad l_2 : \mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{R}_0 + u\mathbf{D}$$

intersect iff there are numbers t and u at which

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{R}(u).$$

Example 6 Find the point at which the lines

$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}(t) = (\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}), \qquad l_2 : \mathbf{R}(u) = (4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + u(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$$

intersect.

SOLUTION We set $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{R}(u)$ and solve for t and u:

$$(\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) = (4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + u(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$$

gives

$$(1 + t)\,\mathbf{i} + (-6 + 2t)\,\mathbf{j} + (2 + t)\,\mathbf{k} = 2u\mathbf{i} + (4 + u)\,\mathbf{j} + (1 + 2u)\,\mathbf{k}$$

and therefore

$$(1 + t - 2u)\,\mathbf{i} + (-10 + 2t - u)\,\mathbf{j} + (1 + t - 2u)\,\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}.$$

This tells us that

$$1 + t - 2u = 0, \qquad -10 + 2t - u = 0, \qquad 1 + t - 2u = 0.$$

Note that the first and third equations are the same. Solving the first two equations simultaneously, we obtain $t = 7$, $u = 4$. As you can verify,

$$\mathbf{r}(7) = 8\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{R}(4).$$

The two lines intersect at the tip of this vector, the point $P(8, 8, 9)$. ❏

Remark To give a physical interpretation of the result in Example 6, think of the parameters t and u as representing time, and think of particles moving along the lines l_1 and l_2. At time $t = u = 0$, the particle on l_1 is at the point $(1, -6, 2)$ and the particle on l_2 is at the point $(0, 4, 1)$. The particle on l_1 passes through the point $P(8, 8, 9)$ at time $t = 7$, while the particle on l_2 passes through P at time $u = 4$; both particles pass through the same point P, but at different times. ❏

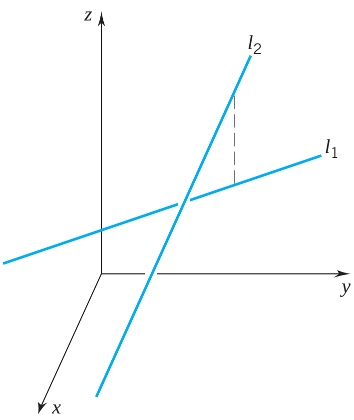


Figure 13.5.5

Lines in space are said to be *parallel* if they have parallel direction vectors. Thus if l_1 is parallel to l_2 there are two possibilities: either $l_1 = l_2$ or l_1 and l_2 lie in the same plane but do not intersect.

Lines which do not lie in the same plane are called *skew* lines. The lines marked in Figure 13.5.5 are skew. Skew lines cannot intersect (because to intersect, they would have to lie on the same plane).

If two lines l_1, l_2 intersect, we can find the angle between them by finding the angle between their direction vectors, $\mathbf{d}$ and $\mathbf{D}$. Depending on our choice of direction vectors, there are two such angles, each the supplement of the other. We choose the smaller of the two angles, the one with nonnegative cosine:

(13.5.5) $$\boxed{\cos\theta = |\mathbf{u_d} \cdot \mathbf{u_D}|.}$$ (Figure 13.5.6)

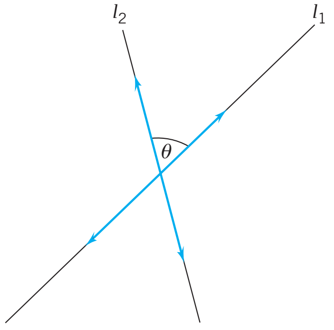


Figure 13.5.6

Example 7 Earlier we verified that the lines

$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}(t) = (\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}), \qquad l_2 : \mathbf{R}(u) = (4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + u(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$$

intersect at $P(8, 8, 9)$. What is the angle between these lines?

SOLUTION As direction vectors we can take

$$\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{D} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}.$$

Then, as you can check,

$$\mathbf{u_d} = \tfrac{1}{6}\sqrt{6}(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{u_D} = \tfrac{1}{3}(2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}).$$

It follows that

$$\cos\theta = |\mathbf{u_d} \cdot \mathbf{u_D}| = \tfrac{1}{3}\sqrt{6} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta \cong 0.615 \text{ radians, about } 35.26^\circ \quad ❑$$

Two intersecting lines are said to be *perpendicular* if their direction vectors are perpendicular.

Example 8 Let l_1 and l_2 be the lines of the last example. These lines intersect at $P(8, 8, 9)$. Find a vector parametrization for the line l_3 that passes through $P(8, 8, 9)$ and is perpendicular to both l_1 and l_2.

SOLUTION We are given that l_3 passes through $P(8, 8, 9)$. All we need to parametrize that line is a direction vector **c**. We require that **c** be perpendicular to the direction vectors of l_1 and l_2; namely, we require that

$$\mathbf{c} \perp \mathbf{d} \text{ and } \mathbf{c} \perp \mathbf{D}, \quad \text{where} \quad \mathbf{d} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{D} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}.$$

Since $\mathbf{d} \times \mathbf{D}$ is perpendicular to both **d** and **D**, we can set

$$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{d} \times \mathbf{D} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k} = 3\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{k}.$$

As a parametrization for l_3 we can write

$$\mathbf{s}(t) = (8\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}) + t(3\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{k}). \quad ❑$$

Example 9

(a) Find a vector parametrization for the line

$$l : y = mx + b \qquad \text{in the } xy\text{–plane.}$$

(b) Show by vector methods that

$$l_1 : y = m_1x + b_1 \perp l_2 : y = m_2x + b_2 \quad \text{iff} \quad m_1m_2 = -1.$$

SOLUTION

(a) We seek a parametrization of the form

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}.$$

Since $P(0, b)$ lies on l, we can set

$$\mathbf{r}_0 = 0\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} = b\mathbf{j}.$$

To find a direction vector, we take $x_1 \neq 0$ and note that the point $Q(x_1, mx_1 + b)$ also lies on l. (See Figure 13.5.7.) As direction numbers we can take

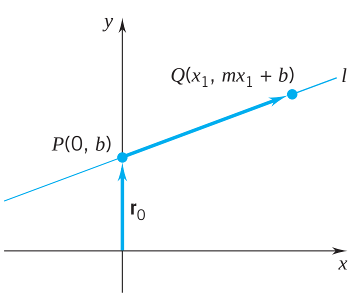


Figure 13.5.7

$$x_1 - 0 = x_1 \quad \text{and} \quad (mx_1 + b) - b = mx_1$$

or, more simply, 1 and m. This choice of direction numbers gives us the direction vector $\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{i} + m\mathbf{j}$. The vector equation

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = b\mathbf{j} + t(\mathbf{i} + m\mathbf{j})$$

parametrizes the line l.

(b) As direction vectors for l_1 and l_2 we take

$$\mathbf{d}_1 = \mathbf{i} + m_1\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{d}_2 = \mathbf{i} + m_2\mathbf{j}.$$

Since

$$\mathbf{d}_1 \cdot \mathbf{d}_2 = (\mathbf{i} + m_1\mathbf{j}) \cdot (\mathbf{i} + m_2\mathbf{j}) = 1 + m_1 m_2,$$

you can see that

$$\mathbf{d}_1 \cdot \mathbf{d}_2 = 0 \qquad \text{iff} \qquad m_1 m_2 = -1. \quad \square$$

Distance from a Point to a Line

In Figure 13.5.8 we have drawn a line l and a point P_1 not on l. We are interested in finding the distance $d(P_1, l)$ between P_1 and l.

Let P_0 be a point on l and let $\mathbf{d}$ be a direction vector for l. With P_0 and Q as shown in the figure, you can see that

$$d(P_1, l) = d(P_1, Q) = \|\overrightarrow{P_0P_1}\| \sin\theta.$$

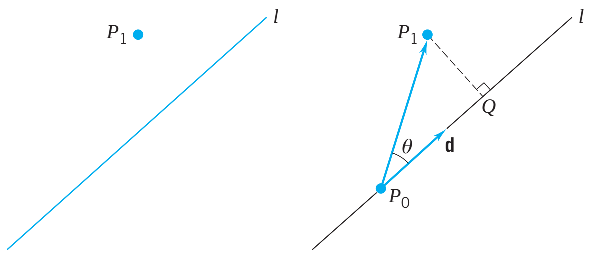


Figure 13.5.8

Since $\|\overrightarrow{P_0P_1} \times \mathbf{d}\| = \|\overrightarrow{P_0P_1}\|\|\mathbf{d}\| \sin\theta$, we have

(13.5.6)
$$\boxed{d(P_1, l) = \frac{\|\overrightarrow{P_0P_1} \times \mathbf{d}\|}{\|\mathbf{d}\|}.}$$

This elegant little formula gives the distance from a point P_1 to any line l in terms of any point P_0 on l and any direction vector $\mathbf{d}$ for l.

Computations based on this formula are left to the Exercises.

EXERCISES 13.5

1. Which of the points $P(1, 2, 0)$, $Q(-5, 1, 5)$, $R(-4, 2, 5)$ lie on the line

$$l : \mathbf{r}(t) = (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) + t(6\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k})?$$

2. Which lines are parallel?

$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}_1(t) = (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}),$$

$$l_2 : \mathbf{r}_2(u) = (\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{k}) + u(\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}),$$

$$l_3 : \mathbf{r}_3(v) = (6\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) - v(2\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}),$$

$$l_4 : \mathbf{r}_4(w) = (\tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2}w)\mathbf{i} - w\mathbf{j} - (1 + \tfrac{2}{3}w)\mathbf{k}.$$

Exercises 3–6. Find a vector parametrization for the line that satisfies the given conditions.

3. Passes through the point $P(3, 1, 0)$ and is parallel to the line $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) + t\mathbf{k}$.

4. Passes through the point $P(1, -1, 2)$ and is parallel to the line $\mathbf{r}(t) = t(3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$.

5. Passes through the origin and $Q(x_1, y_1, z_1)$.

6. Passes through $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1, z_1)$.

Exercises 7–10. Find a set of scalar parametric equations for the line that satisfies the given conditions.

7. Passes through $P(1, 0, 3)$ and $Q(2, -1, 4)$.

8. Passes through $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and $Q(x_1, y_1, z_1)$.

9. Passes through $P(2, -2, 3)$ and is perpendicular to the xz-plane.

10. Passes through $P(1, 4, -3)$ and is perpendicular to the yz-plane.

11. Give a vector parametrization for the line that passes through $P(-1, 2, -3)$ and is parallel to the line $2(x + 1) = 4(y - 3) = z$.

12. Write equations in symmetric form for the line that passes through the origin and the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ with $x_0 \neq 0$, $y_0 \neq 0$, $z_0 \neq 0$.

Exercises 13–20. Determine whether the lines l_1 and l_2 are parallel, skew, or intersecting. If they intersect, find the point of intersection.

13. $l_1 : \mathbf{r}(t) = (3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$,
$l_2 : \mathbf{R}(u) = (\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) + u(\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$.

14. $l_1 : \mathbf{r}(t) = (-\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + t(\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})$,
$l_2 : \mathbf{R}(u) = (2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) + u(-2\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k})$.

15. $l_1 : x_1(t) = 3 + 2t,\ y_1(t) = -1 + 4t,\ z_1(t) = 2 - t$,
$l_2 : x_2(u) = 3 + 2u,\ y_2(u) = 2 + u,\ z_2(u) = -2 + 2u$.

16. $l_1 : x_1(l) = 1 + t,\ y_1(y) = -1 - t,\ z_1(l) = -4 + 2t$,
$l_2 : x_2(u) = 1 - u,\ y_2(u) = 1 + 3u,\ z_2(u) = -2u$.

17. $l_1 : x_1(t) = 1 - 6t,\ y_1(t) = 2 + 9t,\ z_1(t) = -3t$,
$l_2 : x_2(u) = 2 + 2u,\ y_2(u) = 3 - 3u,\ z_2(u) = u$.

18. $l_1 : x - 2 = \dfrac{y + 1}{2} = \dfrac{z - 1}{3}$,
$l_2 : \dfrac{x - 5}{3} = \dfrac{y - 1}{2} = z - 4$.

19. $l_1 : \dfrac{x - 4}{2} = \dfrac{y + 5}{4} = \dfrac{z - 1}{3}$, $\quad l_2 : x - 2 = \dfrac{y + 1}{3} = \dfrac{z}{2}$.

20. $l_1 : x_1(t) = 1 + t,\ \ y_1(t) = 2t,\ z_1(t) = 1 + 3t$,
$l_2 : x_2(u) = 3u,\ y_2(u) = 2u,\ \ z_2(u) = 2 + u$.

Exercises 21–22. Find the point where l_1 and l_2 intersect and find the angle between l_1 and l_2.

21. $l_1 : \mathbf{r}_1(t) = \mathbf{i} + t\mathbf{j}, \quad l_2 : \mathbf{r}_2(u) = \mathbf{j} + u(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$.

22. $l_1 : \mathbf{r}_1(t) = (\mathbf{i} - 4\sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j}) + t(\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j})$,
$l_2 : \mathbf{r}_2(t) = (4\mathbf{i} + 3\sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j}) + u(\mathbf{i} - \sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j})$.

23. Where does the line
$$\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2} = \frac{z - z_0}{d_3}$$
intersect the xy-plane?

24. What can you conclude about the lines
$$\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2} = \frac{z - z_0}{d_3}, \quad \frac{x - x_0}{D_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{D_2} = \frac{z - z_0}{D_3}$$
given that $d_1 D_1 + d_2 D_2 + d_3 D_3 = 0$?

25. What can you conclude about the lines
$$\frac{x - x_0}{d_1} = \frac{y - y_0}{d_2} = \frac{z - z_0}{d_3}, \quad \frac{x - x_1}{D_1} = \frac{y - y_1}{D_2} = \frac{z - z_1}{D_3}$$
given that $d_1/D_1 = d_2/D_2 = d_3/D_3$?

26. Let P_0, P_1 be two distinct points and let
$$\mathbf{r}_0 = \overrightarrow{OP_0}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_1 = \overrightarrow{OP_1}.$$
As t ranges over the set of real numbers, $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t(\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_0)$ traces out the line determined by P_0 and P_1. Restrict t so that $\mathbf{r}(t)$ traces out only the line segment $\overline{P_0 P_1}$.

27. Find a vector parametrization for the line segment that begins at $P(2, 7, -1)$ and ends at $Q(4, 2, 3)$.

28. Restrict t so that the equations
$$x(t) = 7 - 5t, \quad y(t) = -3 + 2t, \quad z(t) = 4 - t$$
parametrize the line segment that begins at $P(12, -5, 5)$ and ends at $Q(-3, 1, 2)$.

29. Determine a unit vector $\mathbf{u}$ and the values of t for which the function
$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (6\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}) + t\mathbf{u}$$
parametrizes the line segment that begins at $P(0, -2, 7)$ and ends at $Q(-4, 0, 11)$.

30. Suppose that the lines
$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}, \qquad l_2 : \mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{R}_0 + u\mathbf{D}$$
intersect at right angles. Show that the point of intersection is the origin iff $\mathbf{r}(t) \perp \mathbf{R}(u)$ for all real numbers t and u.

31. Find scalar parametric equations for all the lines that are perpendicular to the line
$$x(t) = 1 + 2(t), \qquad y(t) = 3 - 4t, \qquad z(t) = 2 + 6t$$
and intersect that line at the point $P(3, -1, 8)$.

32. Suppose that $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}$ and $\mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{R}_0 + u\mathbf{D}$ both parametrize the same line. (a) Show that $\mathbf{R}_0 = \mathbf{r}_0 + t_0\mathbf{d}$ for some real number t_0. (b) Then show that, for some real number α, $\mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{r}_0 + (t_0 + \alpha u)\,\mathbf{d}$ for all real u.

Exercises 33–34. Find the distance from $P(1, 0, 2)$ to the line specified.

33. The line through the origin parallel to $2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

34. The line through $P_0(1, -1, 1)$ parallel to $\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 35–37. Find the distance from the point to the line.

35. $P(1, 2, 3), \quad l : \mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{k} + t(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k})$.

36. $P(0, 0, 0), \quad l : \mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{i} + t\mathbf{j}$.

37. $P(1, 0, 1), \quad l : \mathbf{r}(t) = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + t(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j})$.

38. Find the distance from the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ to the line $y = mx + b$ in the xy-plane.

39. What is the distance from the origin: (a) to the line that joins $P(1, 1, 1)$ and $Q(2, 2, 1)$? (b) to the line segment that joins these same points? [For part (b) find the point of the line segment $\overline{PQ}$ closest to the origin and calculate its distance from the origin.]

40. Let l be the line

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}.$$

(a) Find the scalar t_0 for which $\mathbf{r}(t_0) \perp l$.
(b) Find the parametrizations $\mathbf{R}(t) = \mathbf{R}_0 + t\mathbf{D}$ for l in which $\mathbf{R}_0 \perp l$ and $\|\mathbf{D}\| = 1$. These are called the *standard vector parametrizations* for l.

Exercises 41–42. Find the standard vector parametrizations for the line specified. (See Exercise 40.)

41. The line through $P(0, 1, -2)$ parallel to $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$.

42. The line through $P(\sqrt{3}, 0, 0)$ parallel to $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

43. Let A, B, C be the vertices of a triangle in the xy-plane. Given that $0 < s < 1$, determine the values of t for which the tip of

$$\overrightarrow{OA} + s\overrightarrow{AB} + t\overrightarrow{BC}$$

lies inside the triangle. HINT: Draw a diagram.

44. (*The distance between two skew lines*) Suppose that l_1 and l_2 are skew. Justify the following statement: if l_1 passes through point P with direction vector $\mathbf{d}_1$ and l_2 passes through point Q with direction vector $\mathbf{d}_2$, then the number

$$s = \frac{|\overrightarrow{PQ} \cdot (\mathbf{d}_1 \times \mathbf{d}_2)|}{\|\mathbf{d}_1 \times \mathbf{d}_2\|}$$

gives the distance between l_1 and l_2.

45. Show that the lines

$$l_1 : x_1(t) = 2 + t,\ y_1(t) = -1 + 3t,\ z_1(t) = 1 - 2t,$$

$$l_2 : x_2(u) = -1 + 4u,\ y_2(u) = 2 - u,\ z_2(u) = -3 + 2u.$$

are skew and find the distance between them.

46. Exercise 45 for

$$l_1 : x_1(t) = 1 + t,\ y_1(t) = -2 + 3t,\ z_1(t) = 4 - 2t,$$

$$l_2 : x_2(u) = 2u,\ y_2(u) = 3 + u,\ z_2(u) = -3 + 4u.$$

■ 13.6 PLANES

Ways of Specifying a Plane

How can we specify a plane? There are a number of ways of doing this: by giving three noncollinear points that lie on the plane; by giving two distinct lines that lie on the plane; by giving a line that lies on the plane and a point that lies on the plane, so long as the point does not lie on the line. There is still another way to specify a plane, and that is to give a point on the plane and a nonzero vector perpendicular to the plane.

Scalar Equation of a Plane

Figure 13.6.1 shows a plane. On it we have marked a point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and, starting at that point, a nonzero vector $\mathbf{N} = A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}$ perpendicular to the plane. We call $\mathbf{N}$ a *normal vector*. We can obtain an equation for the plane in terms of the coordinates of P and the components of $\mathbf{N}$.

To find such an equation we take an arbitrary point $Q(x, y, z)$ in space and form the vector

$$\overrightarrow{PQ} = (x - x_0)\mathbf{i} + (y - y_0)\mathbf{j} + (z - z_0)\mathbf{k}.$$

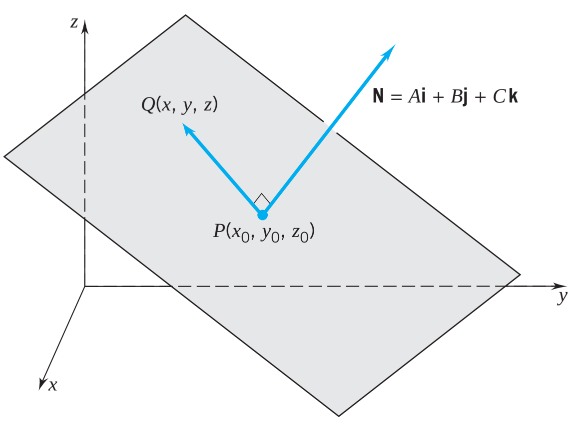


Figure 13.6.1

The point Q will lie on the given plane iff

$$\mathbf{N} \cdot \overrightarrow{PQ} = 0,$$

which is to say, iff

(13.6.1) $$\boxed{A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0) + C(z - z_0) = 0.}$$

This is an equation in x, y, z for the plane that passes through the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and has normal vector $\mathbf{N} = A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}$.

Remark If $\mathbf{N}$ is normal to a given plane, then so is every nonzero scalar multiple of $\mathbf{N}$. If we choose $-2\mathbf{N}$ as our normal, then (13.6.1) reads

$$-2A(x - x_0) - 2B(y - y_0) - 2C(z - z_0) = 0.$$

Canceling the -2, we have the same equation we had before. It does not matter which normal we choose. All normals give equivalent equations. ❑

We can write (13.6.1) in the form

$$Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$$

simply by setting $D = -Ax_0 - By_0 - Cz_0$.

Example 1 Write an equation for the plane that passes through the point $P(1, 0, 2)$ and has normal vector $\mathbf{N} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION The general equation

$$A(x - x_0) + B(y - y_0) + C(z - z_0) = 0$$

becomes

$$3(x - 1) + (-2)(y - 0) + (z - 2) = 0.$$

This simplifies to

$$3x - 2y + z - 5 = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find an equation for the plane p that passes through $P(-2, 3, 5)$ and is perpendicular to the line l with parametric equations $x = -2 + t$, $y = 1 + 2t$, $z = 4$.

SOLUTION As a direction vector for l we can take $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$. Since p and l are perpendicular, $\mathbf{N}$ is a normal vector for p. Thus, as an equation for p, we can write

$$(x + 2) + 2(y - 3) + 0(z - 5) = 0.$$

This simplifies to

$$x + 2y - 4 = 0.$$

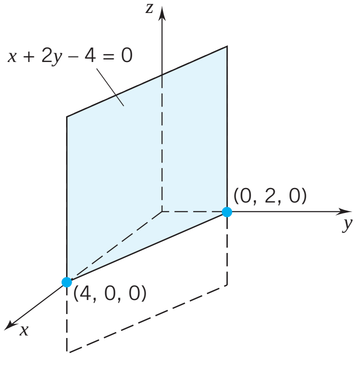


Figure 13.6.2

The last equation looks very much like the equation of a line in the xy-plane. If the context of our discussion were the xy-plane, then the equation $x + 2y - 4 = 0$ would represent a line. In this case, however, our context is three-dimensional space. Hence, the equation $x + 2y - 4 = 0$ represents the set of all points $Q(x, y, z)$ where $x + 2y - 4 = 0$ and z is unrestricted. This set forms a vertical plane that intersects the xy-plane in the line indicated. (Figure 13.6.2.) ❑

Example 3 Show that every equation

$$ax + by + cz + d = 0 \qquad \text{with} \qquad \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2} \neq 0$$

represents a plane in space.

SOLUTION Since $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2} \neq 0$, the numbers a, b, c are not all zero. Therefore there exist numbers x_0, y_0, z_0 such that

$$ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0 + d = 0.^\dagger$$

The equation

$$ax + by + cz + d = 0$$

can now be written

$$(ax + by + cz + d) - (ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0 + d) = 0.$$

After factoring, we have

$$a(x - x_0) + b(y - y_0) + c(z - z_0) = 0.$$

This equation (and hence the initial equation) represents the plane through the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ with normal $\mathbf{N} = a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}$. The initial assumption that $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2} \neq 0$ guarantees that $\mathbf{N} \neq \mathbf{0}$. ❑

Vector Equation of a Plane

We can write the equation of a plane entirely in vector notation. Set

$$\mathbf{N} = A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_0 = \overrightarrow{OP} = (x_0, y_0, z_0), \qquad \mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OQ} = (x, y, z).$$

Since

$$\mathbf{r}_0 = x_0\mathbf{i} + y_0\mathbf{j} + z_0\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k},$$

(13.6.1) can be written

(13.6.2) $$\boxed{\mathbf{N} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) = 0.}$$

This vector equation represents the plane that passes through the tip of $\mathbf{r}_0$ and has normal $\mathbf{N}$. (Figure 13.6.3) A point $Q(x, y, z)$ lies on this plane iff the vector $\mathbf{r} = \overrightarrow{OQ} = (x, y, z)$ satisfies this vector equation.

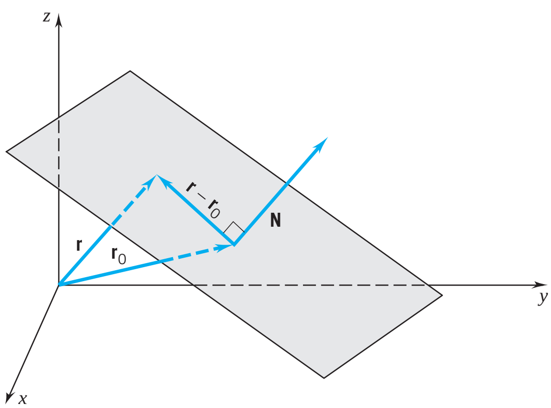


Figure 13.6.3

†Would such numbers necessarily exist if $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$ were zero?

Linear Dependence

Two vectors **a** and **b** are said to be *linearly dependent* if there exist scalars s and t, not both zero, such that

$$s\mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Such vectors are called *collinear* because they are parallel and therefore, viewed as emanating from the same point, fall on the same line.

Three vectors **a, b, c** are said to be *linearly dependent* if there exist scalars s, t, u not all zero such that

$$s\mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b} + u\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Such vectors are called *coplanar* because, viewed as emanating from the same point, they fall on the same plane.

To see this, assume that

$$s\mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b} + u\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$$

s, t, u not all zero. Without loss of generality we can assume that $u \neq 0$ and write

$$\mathbf{c} = -(s/u)\,\mathbf{a} - (t/u)\,\mathbf{b}.$$

Since $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is perpendicular to both **a** and **b**, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c} &= (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot [-(s/u)\,\mathbf{a} - (t/u)\,\mathbf{b}] \\ &= -(s/u)[(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{a}] - (t/u)[(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{b}] \\ &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

But $|(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}|$ gives the volume of the parallelepiped with edges **a**, **b**, **c**. (Figure 13.4.6) This volume can be zero only if **a**, **b**, **c** lie on the same plane. ❑

Unit Normals

If **N** is normal to a given plane, then all other normals to that plane are parallel to **N** and hence scalar multiples of **N**. In particular there are two normals of length 1:

$$\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}} = \frac{\mathbf{N}}{\|\mathbf{N}\|} \qquad \text{and} \qquad -\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}} = \frac{\mathbf{N}}{\|\mathbf{N}\|}.$$

These are called the *unit normals*.

Example 4 Find the unit normals for the plane $3x - 4y + 12z + 8 = 0$.

SOLUTION We can take $\mathbf{N} = 3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 12\mathbf{k}$. Since

$$\|\mathbf{N}\| = \sqrt{3^2 + (-4)^2 + 12^2} = 13,$$

we have

$$\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}} = \tfrac{1}{13}(3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 12\mathbf{k}) \qquad \text{and} \qquad -\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}} = -\tfrac{1}{13}(3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 12\mathbf{k}).$$ ❑

Parallel Planes, Intersecting Planes

As must be evident to you, two planes p_1 and p_2 are parallel iff their normals are parallel. If p_1 is parallel to p_2, there are two possibilities: either $p_1 = p_2$, or p_1 and p_2 do not intersect.

If planes p_1 and p_2 intersect, we can find the angle between them by finding the angle between their normals, $\mathbf{N}_1$, $\mathbf{N}_2$. Depending on our choice of normals, there are two such angles, each the supplement of the other. We will choose the smaller angle, the one with nonnegative cosine:

(13.6.3) $$\boxed{\cos\theta = |\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}_1}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}_2}|.}$$ (Figure 13.6.4)

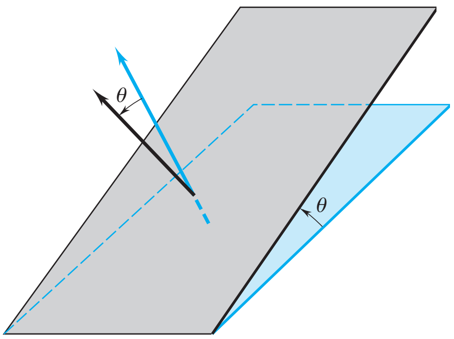


Figure 13.6.4

Example 5 Here are some planes:

$$p_1: 2(x-1) - 3y + 5(z-2) = 0, \qquad p_2: -4x + 6y + 10z + 24 = 0,$$
$$p_3: 4x - 6y - 10z + 1 = 0, \qquad p_4: 2x - 3y + 5z - 12 = 0.$$

(a) Which planes are identical?
(b) Which planes are distinct but parallel?
(c) Find the angle between p_1 and p_2.

SOLUTION

(a) p_1 and p_4 are identical, as you can verify by simplifying the equation of p_1.
(b) p_2 and p_3 are distinct but parallel. The planes are distinct since $P(0, 0, \frac{1}{10})$ lies on p_3 but not on p_2; they are parallel since the normals

$$-4\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} + 10\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad 4\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} - 10\mathbf{k}$$

are parallel.
(c) Taking

$$\mathbf{N}_1 = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{N}_2 = -4\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} + 10\mathbf{k},$$

we have

$$\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}_1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{38}}(2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}_2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{152}}(-4\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} + 10\mathbf{k}).$$

As you can check,

$$\cos\theta = |\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}_1}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{N}_2}| = \frac{6}{19} \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \theta \cong 1.25 \text{ radians, about } 71.59^\circ.$$

If two planes

$$p_1 : A_1x + B_1y + C_1z + D_1 = 0, \qquad p_2 : A_2x + B_2y + C_2z + D_2 = 0$$

intersect, their intersection forms some line l. To construct a vector parametrization for l, we need a point on l and a direction vector for l.

To find a point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ on l, we need a triple x_0, y_0, z_0 that satisfies the equations of both planes. We can find such a triple by solving the two equations simultaneously.

Now the search for a direction vector. Since p_1 and p_2 intersect in a line, the normals

$$\mathbf{N}_1 = A_1\mathbf{i} + B_1\mathbf{j} + C_1\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{N}_2 = A_2\mathbf{i} + B_2\mathbf{j} + C_2\mathbf{k}$$

are not parallel. This guarantees that $\mathbf{N}_1 \times \mathbf{N}_2$ is not $\mathbf{0}$. Since l lies on both p_1 and p_2, the line l, like the vector $\mathbf{N}_1 \times \mathbf{N}_2$, is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{N}_1$ and $\mathbf{N}_2$. This makes l parallel to $\mathbf{N}_1 \times \mathbf{N}_2$. (See Figure 13.6.5.) We can therefore take $\mathbf{N}_1 \times \mathbf{N}_2$ as a direction vector for l and write

$$l : \mathbf{r}(t) = \overrightarrow{OP_0} + t(\mathbf{N}_1 \times \mathbf{N}_2).$$

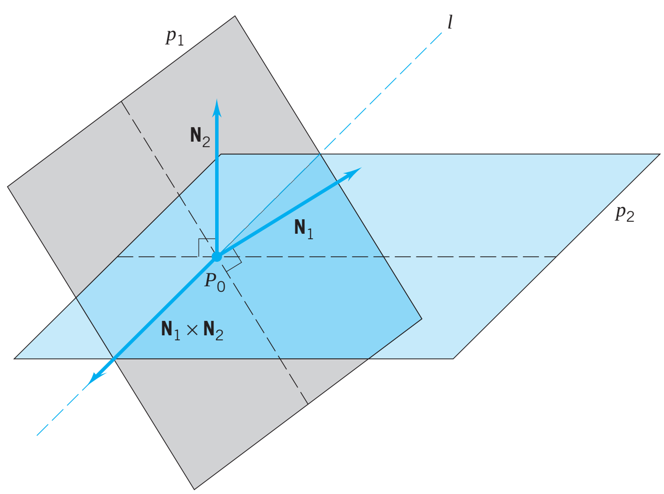


Figure 13.6.5

Example 6 Show that the planes $p_1 : 2x - 3y + 2z = 9$ and $p_2 : x + 2y - z = -4$ are not parallel and therefore intersect. Then find scalar parametric equations for the line formed by the two intersecting planes.

SOLUTION As normal vectors for p_1 and p_2, we can take $\mathbf{N}_1 = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{N}_2 = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$. Since neither vector is a scalar multiple of the other, the vectors are not parallel. Therefore, p_1 and p_2 are not parallel.

As a direction vector for l, we use the vector

$$\mathbf{N}_1 \times \mathbf{N}_2 = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 2 & -3 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 7\mathbf{k}.$$

Now we need a point that lies on l. To find one, we solve the equations for p_1 and p_2 simultaneously. If, for example, we set $x = 0$ in the two equations, we get

$$-3y + 2z = 9$$
$$2y - z = -4.$$

Solving this pair of equations for y and z, we find that $y = 1$ and $z = 6$. Thus, the point $(0, 1, 6)$ is on l. As scalar parametric equations for l, we can write

$$x(t) = -t, \quad y(t) = 1 + 4t, \quad z(t) = 6 + 7t. \quad ❑$$

The Plane Determined by Three Noncollinear Points

Suppose now that we are given three noncollinear points P_1, P_2, P_3. These points determine a plane. How can we find an equation for this plane?

First we form the vectors $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}, \overrightarrow{P_1P_3}$. Since P_1, P_2, P_3 are noncollinear, the vectors are not parallel. Therefore their cross product $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} \times \overrightarrow{P_1P_3}$ can be used as a normal for the plane. We are back in a familiar situation. We have a point of the plane, say P_1, and we have a normal vector, $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} \times \overrightarrow{P_1P_3}$. A point P lies on the plane iff

(13.6.4) $$\boxed{\overrightarrow{P_1P} \cdot (\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} \times \overrightarrow{P_1P_3}) = 0.}$$ (Figure 13.6.6)

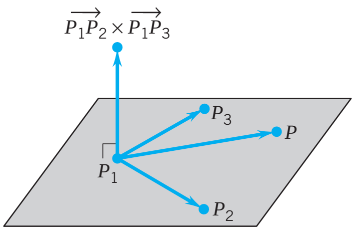


Figure 13.6.6

Example 7 Find an equation in x, y, z for the plane that passes through the points $P_1(0, 1, 1)$, $P_2(1, 0, 1)$, $P_3(1, -3, -1)$.

SOLUTION A point $P = P(x, y, z)$ lies on this plane iff

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P} \cdot (\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} \times \overrightarrow{P_1P_3}) = 0.$$

Here

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P} = x\mathbf{i} + (y-1)\mathbf{j} + (z-1)\mathbf{k}, \qquad \overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}, \qquad \overrightarrow{P_1P_3} = \mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}.$$

As you can check,

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} \times \overrightarrow{P_1P_3} = 2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}.$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\overrightarrow{P_1P} \cdot (\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} \times \overrightarrow{P_1P_3}) &= [x\mathbf{i} + (y-1)\mathbf{j} + (z-1)\mathbf{k}] \cdot [2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}] \\ &= 2x + 2(y-1) - 3(z-1) = 2x + 2y - 3z + 1.\end{aligned}$$

As an equation for the plane, we can use the equation

$$2x + 2y - 3z + 1 = 0. \quad ❑$$

The Distance from a Point to a Plane

In Figure 13.6.7 we have drawn a plane $p : Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$ and a point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ not on p. The distance between the point P_0 and the plane p is given by the formula

(13.6.5) $$\boxed{d(P_0, p) = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + Cz_0 + D|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}}.}$$

PROOF Pick any point $P(x, y, z)$ in the plane. As a normal to p we can take the vector

$$\mathbf{N} = A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}.$$

Then

$$\mathbf{u_N} = \frac{A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}}$$

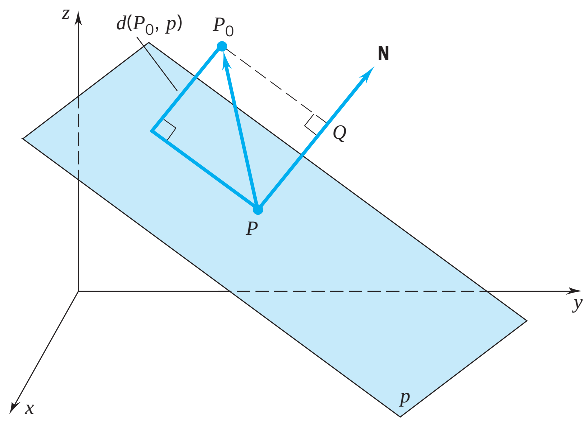


Figure 13.6.7

is the corresponding unit normal. From Figure 13.6.7

$$
\begin{aligned}
d(P_0, p) = d(P, Q) &= |\text{comp}_{\mathbf{N}} \overrightarrow{PP_0}| \\
&= |\overrightarrow{PP_0} \cdot \mathbf{u_N}| \\
&= \frac{|(x_0 - x)A + (y_0 - y)B + (z_0 - z)C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}} \\
&= \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + Cz_0 - (Ax + By + Cz)|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $P(x, y, z)$ lies on p

$$Ax + By + Cz = -D$$

and we have

$$d(P_0, p) = \frac{|Ax_0 + By_0 + Cz_0 + D|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + C^2}}. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 13.6

1. Which of the points $P(3, 2, 1)$, $Q(2, 3, 1)$, $R(1, 4, 1)$ lie on the plane

$$3(x - 1) + 4y - 5(z + 2) = 0?$$

2. Which of the points $P(2, 1, -2)$, $Q(2, 0, 0)$, $R(4, 1, -1)$, $S(0, -1, -3)$ lie on the plane $\mathbf{N} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) = 0$ given that $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{r}_0 = 4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$?

Exercises 3–9. Find an equation for the plane which satisfies the given conditions.

3. Passes through the point $P(2, 3, 4)$ and is perpendicular to $\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$.

4. Passes through the point $P(1, -2, 3)$ and is perpendicular to $\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

5. Passes through the point $P(2, 1, 1)$ and is parallel to the plane $3x - 2y + 5z - 2 = 0$.

6. Passes through the point $P(3, -1, 5)$ and is parallel to the plane $4x + 2y - 7z + 5 = 0$.

7. Passes through the point $P(1, 3, 1)$ and contains the line $l : x = t, y = t, z = -2 + t$.

8. Passes through the point $P(2, 0, 1)$ and contains the line $1 : x = 1 - 2t, y = 1 + 4t, z = 2 + t$.

9. Passes through the point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and is perpendicular to $\overrightarrow{OP}_0$.

Exercises 10–11. Find the unit normals for the plane.

10. $2x - 3y + 7z - 3 = 0$.

11. $2x - y + 5z - 10 = 0$.

12. Show that the equation $x/a + y/b + z/c = 1$ represents the plane that intersects the coordinate axes at $x = a, y = b, z = c$. This is the equation of a plane in written *intercept from.*

Exercises 13–14. Write the equation of the plane in intercept form and find the points where it intersects the coordinate axes.

13. $4x + 5y - 6z = 60$.

14. $3x - y + 4z + 2 = 0$.

Exercises 15–18. Find the angle between the planes.

15. $5(x-1)-3(y+2)+2z=0$,
$x+3(y-1)+2(z+4)=0$.

16. $2x-y+3z=5, \quad 5x+5y-z=1$.

17. $x-y+z-1=0, \quad 2x+y+3z+5=0$.

18. $4x+4y-2z=3, \quad 2x+y+z=-1$.

Exercises 19–22. Determine whether the vectors are coplanar.

19. $4\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}, \quad 3\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{0}$.

20. $\mathbf{i}, \quad \mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}, \quad 3\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$.

21. $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}, \quad 2\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}, \quad 3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}$.

22. $\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}, \quad 3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k}, \quad 3\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}+3\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 23–26. Find the distance from the point to the plane.

23. $P(2,-1,3); \quad 2x+4y-z+1=0$.

24. $P(3,-5,2); \quad 8x-2y+z=5$.

25. $P(1,-3,5); \quad -3x+4z+5=0$.

26. $P(1,3,4); \quad x+y-2z=0$.

Exercises 27–30. Find an equation in x, y, z for the plane that passes through the given points.

27. $P_1(1,0,1), \quad P_2(2,1,0), \quad P_3(1,1,1)$.

28. $P_1(1,1,1), \quad P_2(2,-2,-1), \quad P_3(0,2,1)$.

29. $P_1(3,-4,1), \quad P_2(3,2,1), \quad P_3(1,1,-2)$.

30. $P_1(3,2,-1), \quad P_2(3,-2,4), \quad P_3(1,-1,3)$.

31. Write equations in symmetric form for the line that passes through $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and is perpendicular to the plane $Ax+By+Cz+D=0$.

32. Find the distance between the parallel planes

$$Ax+By+Cz+D_1=0, \qquad Ax+By+Cz+D_2=0.$$

33. Show that the equations of a line in symmetric form

$$\frac{x-x_0}{d_1}=\frac{y-y_0}{d_2}=\frac{z-z_0}{d_3}$$

express the line as an intersection of two planes by finding equations for two such planes.

34. Find scalar parametric equations for the line formed by the two intersecting planes.

(a) $z=z_0, \quad y=y_0$. (b) $x=x_0, \quad z=z_0$.

Exercises 35–36. Find a set of scalar parametric equations for the line formed by the two intersecting planes.

35. $p_1: x+2y+3z=0, \quad p_2: -3x+4y+z=0$.

36. $p_1: x+y+z+1=0, \quad p_2: x-y+z+2=0$.

Exercises 37–38. Let l be the line determined by P_1, P_2, and let p be the plane determined by Q_1, Q_2, Q_3. Where, if anywhere, does l intersect p?

37. $P_1(1,-1,2), \quad P_2(-2,3,1)$;
$Q_1(2,0,-4), \quad Q_2(1,2,3), \quad Q_3(-1,2,1)$.

38. $P_1(4,-3,1), \quad P_2(2,-2,3)$;
$Q_1(2,0,-4), \quad Q_2(1,2,3), \quad Q_3(-1,2,1)$.

39. Let l_1, l_2 be the lines that pass through the origin with direction vectors

$$\mathbf{d}_1=\mathbf{i}+2\mathbf{j}+4\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{d}_2=-\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+3\mathbf{k}.$$

Find an equation for the plane that contains l_1 and l_2.

40. Show that two nonparallel lines $\mathbf{r}(t)=\mathbf{r}_0+t\mathbf{d}$ and $\mathbf{R}(t)=\mathbf{R}_0+t\mathbf{D}$ intersect iff the vectors $\mathbf{r}_0-\mathbf{R}_0$, $\mathbf{d}$, and $\mathbf{D}$ are coplanar.

41. Given that a plane contains the point P and has normal $\mathbf{N}$, describe the set of points Q on the plane for which $(\mathbf{N}+\overrightarrow{PQ})\perp(\mathbf{N}-\overrightarrow{PQ})$. HINT: Draw a figure.

42. Let **a, b, c** be three nonzero vectors which are mutually perpendicular. Prove that the vectors cannot be linearly dependent.

43. The vector $\mathbf{N}=A\mathbf{i}+B\mathbf{j}+C\mathbf{k}$ is normal to the plane $p: Ax+By+Cz+D=0$. Picture $\mathbf{N}$ as emanating from some point of p. (Which point is immaterial.) Let $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ be an arbitrary point of space and set $\alpha = Ax_0+By_0+Cz_0+D$. If $\alpha=0$, P_0 lies on p. What can you conclude about P_0 if $\alpha>0$? if $\alpha<0$?

44. If **a**, **b**, **c** are not linearly dependent, they are called *linearly independent.* For such vectors

$$s\mathbf{a}+t\mathbf{b}+u\mathbf{c}=\mathbf{0}$$

only if s, t, u are all 0.

Show that if **a, b, c** are linearly independent, then every vector **d** can be expressed as a unique linear combination of **a, b, c:**

$$\mathbf{d}=\alpha\mathbf{a}+\beta\mathbf{b}+\gamma\mathbf{c}.$$

Find α, β, γ. HINT: To find α form $\mathbf{d}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$.

Exercises 45–48. (*Sketching planes*) The equation of a plane p is given.

(a) Find the intercepts of p.
(b) Find the *traces* of p. (These are the lines in which p intersects the coordinate planes.)
(c) Find the unit normals.
(d) Sketch the plane.

45. $5x+4y+10z=20$.

46. $x+2y+3z-6=0$.

47. $3x+2z-12=0$.

48. $3x+2y-6=0$.

Exercises 49–51. Find an equation for the plane shown in the figure.

49. Use a CAS to draw the planes $2x+y+3z=4$ and $x+5y-2z=3$ in one figure. Then find the angle between the two planes.

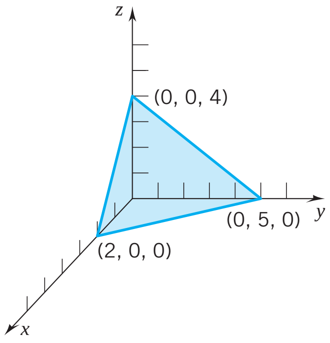
50. Exercise 49 with the planes $-x-2y+4z=5$ and $2x-y-3z=1$.

51. Find an equation for the plane that passes through the point $(2,7,-3)$ and is perpendicular to the line $x=2+3t$, $y=7+t$, $z=-3+4t$. Use a CAS to draw the line and the plane in one figure.

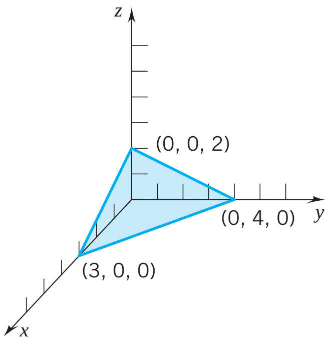
52. Find an equation for the plane which passes through the point $(5,-3,-4)$ and is perpendicular to the line $x=5-t$, $y=-3+2t$, $z=-4-3t$. Use a CAS to draw the line and the plane in one figure.

Exercises 53–56. Find an equation for the plane shown in the figure

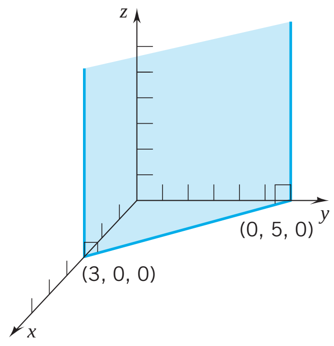
53.



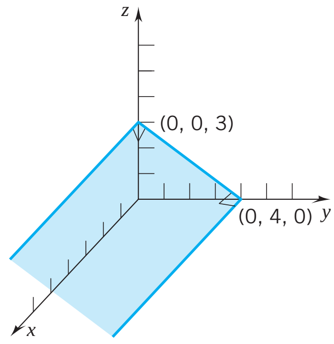
54.



55.



56.



■ PROJECT 13.6 SOME GEOMETRY BY VECTOR METHODS

Try your hand at proving the following theorems by vector methods. Follow the hints if you like, but you may find it more interesting to disregard them and come up with your own proofs.

Theorem 1. The diagonals of a parallelogram are perpendicular iff the parallelogram is a rhombus.

HINT FOR PROOF With $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ as in Figure A, the diagonals are $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$. Show that $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) = 0$ iff $\|\mathbf{a}\| = \|\mathbf{b}\|$.

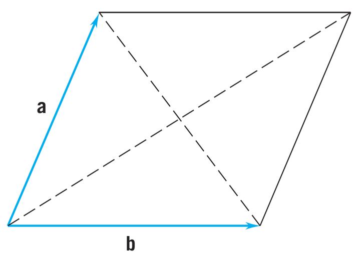


Figure A

Theorem 2. Every angle inscribed in a semicircle is a right angle.

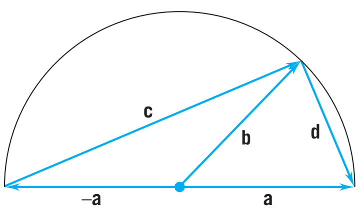


Figure B

HINT FOR PROOF Take $\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ as in Figure B; express $\mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{d}$ in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$; then show that $\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{d} = 0$.

Theorem 3. In a parallelogram the sum of the squares of the lengths of the diagonals equals the sum of the squares of the lengths of the sides.

HINT FOR PROOF With $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ as in Figure A, the diagonals are $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$.

Theorem 4. The three altitudes of a triangle intersect at one point.

HINT FOR PROOF As in Figure C assume that the altitudes from P_1, and P_2 intersect at Q. Use the fact that $\overrightarrow{P_1Q} \perp \overrightarrow{OP_2}$ and $\overrightarrow{P_2Q} \perp \overrightarrow{OP_1}$ to show that $\overrightarrow{OQ} \perp \overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$.

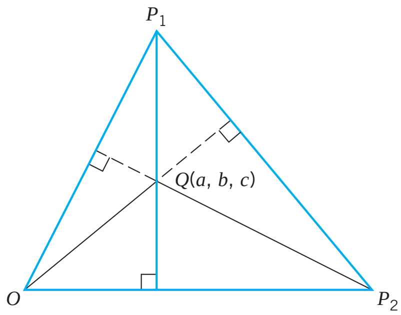


Figure C

Theorem 5. The three medians of a triangle intersect at one point.

HINT FOR PROOF With l_1, l_2, l_3 as in Figure D,

$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}_1(t) = t(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}),$$

$$l_2 : \mathbf{r}_2(u) = \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{b} + u\left(\mathbf{a} - \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{b}\right),$$

$$l_3 : \mathbf{r}_3(v) = \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{a} + v\left(\mathbf{b} - \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}\right).$$

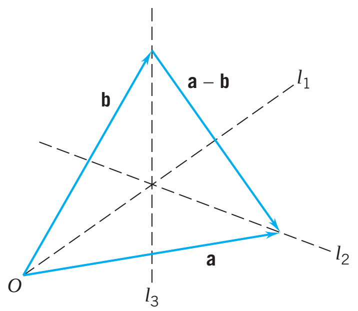


Figure D

Show that l_1 intersects both l_2 and l_3 at the same point.

Theorem 6. (The Law of Sines). If a triangle has sides **a, b, c** and opposite angles A, B, C, then

$$\frac{\sin A}{\|\mathbf{a}\|} = \frac{\sin B}{\|\mathbf{b}\|} = \frac{\sin C}{\|\mathbf{c}\|}.$$

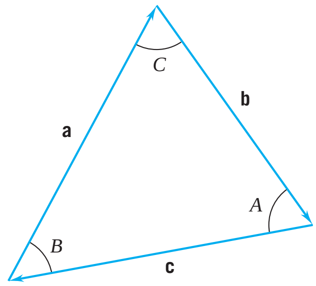


Figure E

HINT FOR PROOF With **a, b, c** as in Figure E, $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$. Observe then that $\mathbf{a} \times [\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}] = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{b} \times [\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}] = \mathbf{0}$. ❑

Theorem 7. If two planes have a point in common, then they have a line in common.

HINT FOR PROOF As equations for the two planes, take $\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0) = 0$ and $\mathbf{N} \cdot (\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{R}_0) = 0$. If the point $P(a_1, a_2, a_3)$ lies on both planes, then the vector $\mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ satisfies both equations. In that case $\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{r}_0) = 0$ and $\mathbf{N} \cdot (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{R}_0) = 0$. Consider the line $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{a} + t(\mathbf{n} \times \mathbf{N})$.

■ 13.7 HIGHER DIMENSIONS

Vectors in three-space are number triples:

$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3).$$

We can form quadruples and quintuples:

$$(a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4), \qquad (a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5).$$

More generally, for each positive integer n we can form n-tuples:

$$(a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n).$$

The vector algebra that we introduced for number triples can be extended to n-tuples.
For

$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{b} = (b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_n)$$

set

$$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \ldots, a_n + b_n)$$

and for each scalar α set

$$\alpha\mathbf{a} = (\alpha a_1, \alpha a_2, \ldots, \alpha a_n).$$

By defining

$$\mathbf{i}_1 = (1, 0, 0, \ldots, 0), \qquad \mathbf{i}_2 = (0, 1, 0, \ldots, 0) \ldots, \qquad \mathbf{i}_n = (0, 0, 0, \ldots, 1)$$

we have

$$\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n) = a_1\mathbf{i}_1 + a_2\mathbf{i}_2 + \cdots + a_n\mathbf{i}_n.$$

By the *norm* of $\mathbf{a}$ we mean the number

$$\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + \cdot s + a_n^2}.$$

The *dot product* now reads

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + \cdots + a_nb_n.$$

After showing that $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| \leq \|\mathbf{a}\|\ \|\mathbf{b}\|$, we can define the angle between n-tuples by setting

$$\cos\theta = \frac{|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}|}{\|\mathbf{a}\|\ \|\mathbf{b}\|}$$

provided that neither $\mathbf{a}$ nor $\mathbf{b}$ is the zero n-tuple

$$\mathbf{0} = (0, 0, \ldots, 0).$$

In going from three dimensions to higher dimensions, we lose the capacity to draw pictures (how can we draw in n-dimensions?) and we lose the notion of cross product (there is no third direction that we can single out). For the rest, all we did with number triples we can do with n-tuples.

The study of n-tuples forms the core of *finite dimensional linear algebra*—a beautiful subject with many useful applications. There are also infinite dimensional "vector spaces." These form the core of a subject called *functional analysis*—again, a beautiful subject with interesting applications. It is very abstract, but well worth studying.

■ CHAPTER 13. REVIEW EXERCISES

1. Throughout this exercise let

$$P(3, 2, -1), \qquad Q(7, -5, 4), \qquad R(5, 6, -3)\ .$$

(a) Find the length of the line segment $\overline{PQ}$.
(b) Find the midpoint of the line segment $\overline{QR}$.
(c) Given that Q is the midpoint of the line segment $\overline{PX}$, what are the coordinates of X?
(d) Find an equation for the sphere which passes through P and is centered at the midpoint of $\overline{PR}$.

2. Exercise 1 for $P(4, 2, -3)$, $Q(-2, 1, 4)$, $R(1, -1, -6)$.

Exercises 3–4. Write an equation for the sphere that satisfies the given conditions.

3. Centered at $(2, -3, 1)$, passes through the origin.

4. The line segment that joins $(-1, 4, 2)$ to $(3, -2, 6)$ is a diameter.

Exercises 5–6. Show that the equation represents a sphere; find the center and the radius.

5. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 2x + 4y - 8z + 17 = 0.$

6. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 6x + 10y - 2z + 2 = 0.$

Exercises 7–24. Set $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{c} = -2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$. Determine the following.

7. $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{a}$.

8. $\mathbf{a} + 4\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{c}$.

9. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$.

10. $\|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\|$.

11. $\|\mathbf{c}\|^2$.

12. $\|\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{b}\|$.

13. $(2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{c}$.

14. $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$.

15. The unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{a}$.

16. The unit vector in the direction opposite to the direction of $\mathbf{c}$.

17. The angle between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$. Express your answer in radians rounded to the nearest hundredth of a radian.

18. The angle between $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$. Express your answer in degrees rounded to the nearest tenth of a degree.

19. The direction cosines and the direction angles of $\mathbf{a}$.

20. $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$.

21. $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})$.

22. The unit vectors perpendicular to **a** and **c.**

23. The volume of the parallelepiped determined by **a, b, c.**

24. The area of the triangle determined by **a**, **b**, $\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}$.

25. The points $P(1, 1, 1)$, $Q(-2, 1, 0)$, $R(4, -2, 3)$ are given.

(a) Find scalar parametric equations for the line that passes through P and is parallel to $\overrightarrow{QR}$.

(b) Find an equation for the plane through P that is perpendicular to $\overrightarrow{PR}$.

(c) Find an equation for the plane that passes through P, Q, R.

26. The points $P(3, 2, -1)$, $Q(7, -5, 4)$, $R(5, 6, -3)$ are given.

(a) Find scalar parametric equations for the line that passes through R and is parallel to the line determined by P and Q.

(b) Find scalar parametric equations for the line that passes through R and is perpendicular to the line determined by P and Q.

(c) The lines in parts (a) and (b) determine a plane. Find an equation in rectangular coordinates for this plane.

Exercises 27–29. Determine whether the lines l_1 and l_2 are parallel, skew, or intersecting. If they intersect, find the point of intersection.

27. $l_1: x = t, y = -t, z = -6 + 2t; \quad l_2: x = 1 - u,$
$y = 1 + 3u, z = 2u.$

28. $l_1: \mathbf{r}(t) = (1 - 2t)\mathbf{i} + (3 + 3t)\mathbf{j} + 5t\mathbf{k};$
$l_2: \mathbf{R}(u) = (3 + 2u)\mathbf{i} + (1 - u)\mathbf{j} + (6 + 3u)\mathbf{k}.$

29. $l_1: \dfrac{x-1}{2} = \dfrac{y+2}{-1}, \dfrac{z-3}{4}; \quad l_2: x + 2 = \dfrac{y-3}{3} = z.$

30. The point $P(3, 1, -2)$ and the line $l: x + 1 = y + 2 = z + 1$ are given. Find The point Q on l for which $\overrightarrow{PQ} \perp l$.

31. (a) Are the points $P(3, 2, -1)$, $Q(7, -5, 4)$, $R(5, -1, 1)$ collinear?

(b) Are the points $P(3, 2, -1)$, $Q(7, -5, 4)$, $R(5, -1, 1)$, $S(1, 2, 0)$ coplanar?

32. Where does the line

$$\frac{x+2}{3} = \frac{y-1}{2} = \frac{z+6}{1}$$

intersect the plane $2x + y - 3z + 6 = 0$?

Exercises 33–38. Write an equation for the plane that satisfies the given conditions.

33. Contains the points $P(1, -2, 1)$, $Q(2, 0, 3)$, $R(0, 1, -1)$.

34. Contains the point $P(2, 1, -3)$ and is perpendicular to the line

$$\frac{x+1}{2} = \frac{y-1}{3} = -\frac{z}{4}$$

35. Contains the point $P(1, -2, -1)$ and is parallel to the plane $3x + 2y - z = 4$.

36. Contains the point $P(3, -1, 2)$ and the line $x = 2 + 2t$, $y = -1 + 3t$, $z = -2t$.

37. Contains the line $x = -1 + 3t$, $y = 1 + 2t$, $z = 2 + 4t$ and is perpendicular to the plane $2x + y - 3z + 4 = 0$.

38. Contains the point $P(2, 1, -3)$ and the line formed by intersecting the planes

$$3x + y - z = 2, \quad 2x + y + 4z = 1.$$

39. Find the distance from the point $P(4, 6, -4)$ to the line which passes through $Q(2, 2, 1)$ and $R(4, 3, -1)$.

40. Find the distance from the point $P(2, 1, -1)$ to the plane $x - 2y + 2z + 5 = 0$.

Exercises 41–42. Find the angle between the planes.

41. $2x + y + z + 3 = 0, \quad 4z + 4y - 2z - 9 = 0.$

42. $2x - 3y + z + 2 = 0, \quad x + 4y - 5z - 6 = 0.$

Exercises 43–44. Find a set of scalar parametric equations for the line formed by intersecting the planes.

43. $3x + 5y + 2z - 4 = 0, \quad x + 2y - z - 2 = 0.$

44. $x - 2y + 2z = 1, \quad 3x - y - z = 2.$

45. Set $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$. Find all vectors of length 4 that are perpendicular to both **a** and **b**.

46. Show that, for all vectors **a**, **b**, **c**, **d**,

$$(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{d}) = [(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{d}]\mathbf{c} - [(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c}]\mathbf{d}.$$

47. Show that, for all vectors **a** and **b**,

$$(\|\mathbf{b}\|\mathbf{a} - \|\mathbf{a}\|\mathbf{b}) \perp (\|\mathbf{b}\|\mathbf{a} + \|\mathbf{a}\|\mathbf{b}).$$

48. Verify that, for all vectors **a** and **b**,

$$\|\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}\|^2 = 4\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}.$$

49. Use Exercise 46 to prove that the diagonals of a parallelogram have equal length iff the parallelogram is a rectangle.

50. Show that the midpoints of the sides of a quadrilateral are the four vertices of a parallelogram.

51. Use vector methods to show that the line segment that joins the midpoints of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side. Show that the length of this line segment is one-half the length of the third side.

52. The setting is the xy-plane.

(a) Verify that the line $l: Ax + By + C = 0$ can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (-C/A)\mathbf{i} + (B\mathbf{i} - A\mathbf{j})t$$

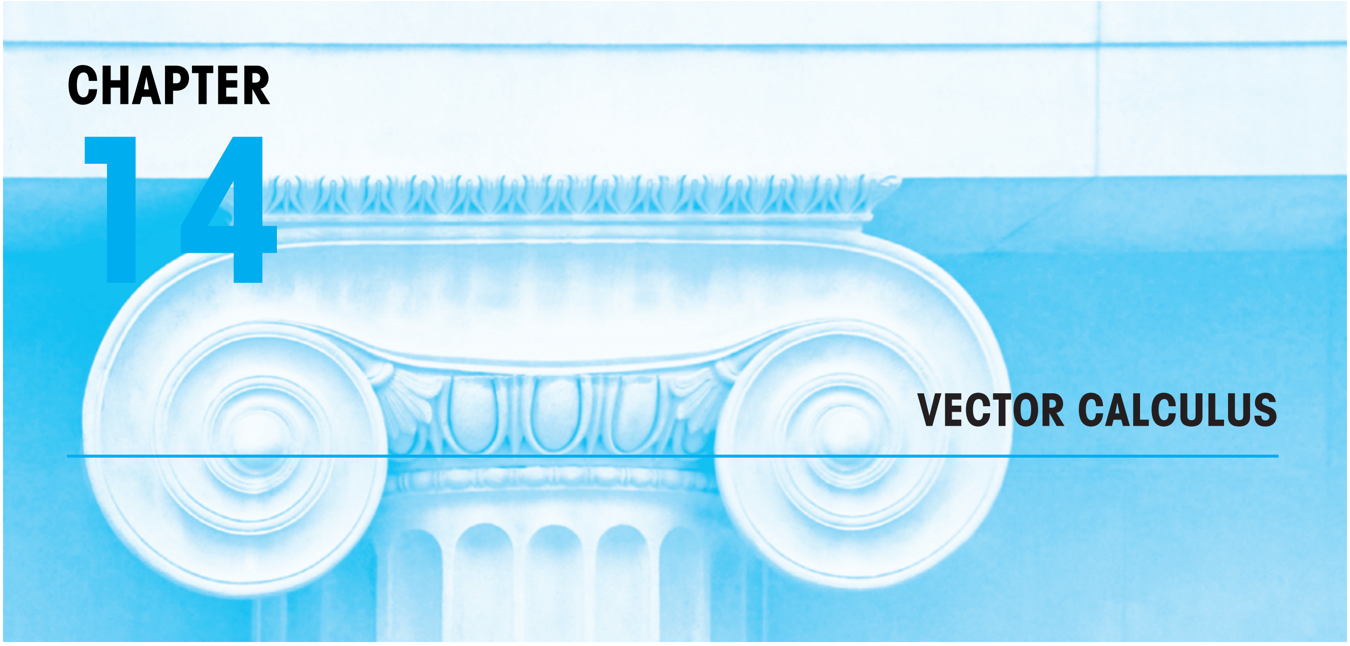
provided that $A \neq 0$.

(b) Show that $A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j}$ is normal to l.

(c) Show that

$$d(O, l) = \frac{|C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}$$

by vector methods.



CHAPTER 14

VECTOR CALCULUS

Functions such as

$$f(t) = 2 + 3t, \qquad f(t) = at^2 + bt + c, \qquad f(t) = \sin 2t$$

assign real numbers to real numbers. They are called *real-valued functions of a real variable*, for short, *scalar functions*. Functions such as

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\,\mathbf{d}, \qquad \mathbf{f}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}, \qquad \mathbf{f}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{a} + \cos t\,\mathbf{b}$$

assign vectors to real numbers. They are called *vector-valued functions of a real variable*, for short, *vector functions*.

Vector functions can be built up from scalar functions in an obvious manner. From scalar functions f_1, f_2, f_3 that share a common domain we can construct the vector function

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The functions f_1, f_2, f_3 are called the *components* of $\mathbf{f}$. A number t is in the domain of $\mathbf{f}$ iff it is in the domain of each of its components.

In the examples that follow we'll define $\mathbf{f}$ by giving its components and view $\mathbf{f}(t)$ as a *radius vector*, a vector attached to the origin. Then the tip of $\mathbf{f}(t)$ has a definite position and, as t varies, traces out a path in space.

Example 1 From the scalar functions

$$f_1(t) = x_0 + d_1 t, \qquad f_2(t) = y_0 + d_2 t, \qquad f_3(t) = z_0 + d_3 t$$

we can form the vector function

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = (x_0 + d_1 t)\,\mathbf{i} + (y_0 + d_2 t)\,\mathbf{j} + (z_0 + d_3 t)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The domain of $\mathbf{f}$ is the set of all real numbers. If d_1, d_2, d_3 are not all zero, then the radius vector $\mathbf{f}(t)$ traces out the line that passes through the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and has the direction numbers d_1, d_2, d_3. If d_1, d_2, d_3 are all 0, then we have the constant function

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = x_0\,\mathbf{i} + y_0\,\mathbf{j} + z_0\,\mathbf{k}.$$

In this case the path traced out by $\mathbf{f}(t)$ has been reduced to a point, the point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$. ❑

Example 2 From the functions

$$f_1(t) = \cos t, \qquad f_2(t) = \sin t, \qquad f_3(t) = 0$$

we can form the vector function

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}.$$

For each t

$$\|\mathbf{f}(t)\| = \sqrt{\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t} = 1.$$

Since the third component is zero, the radius vector $\mathbf{f}(t)$ lies in the xy-plane. As t increases, $\mathbf{f}(t)$ traces out the unit circle in a counterclockwise manner, effecting a complete revolution on every interval of length 2π. (Figure 14.1.1) ❑

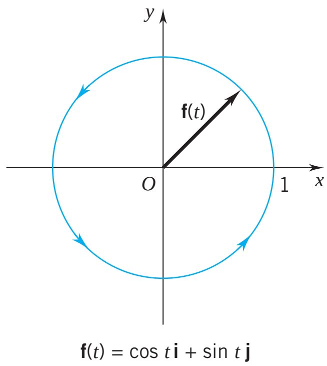


Figure 14.1.1

Example 3 Each real-valued function f defined on an interval $[a, b]$ gives rise to a vector-valued function $\mathbf{f}$ in a natural way. Setting

$$f_1(t) = t, \qquad f_2(t) = f(t), \qquad f_3(t) = 0,$$

we obtain the vector function

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + f(t)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

As t increases from a to b, the radius vector $\mathbf{f}(t)$ traces out the graph of f from left to right. See Figure 14.1.2. ❑

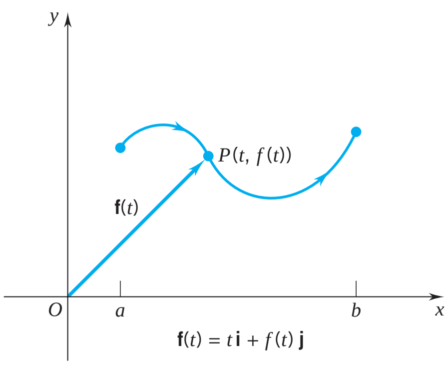


Figure 14.1.2

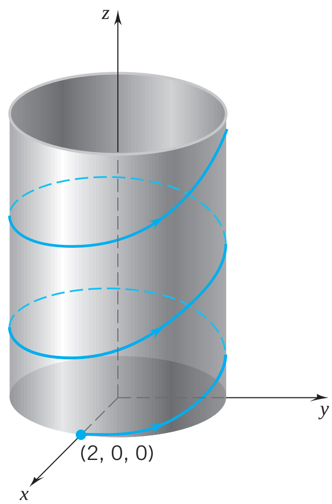


Figure 14.1.3

Example 4 From the functions

$$f_1(t) = 2\cos t, \qquad f_2(t) = 2\sin t, \qquad f_3(t) = t, \qquad t \geq 0$$

we can form the vector function

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \geq 0.$$

At $t = 0$, the tip of the radius vector $\mathbf{f}(0)$ is at the point $(2, 0, 0)$. As t increases, the tip of $\mathbf{f}(t)$ spirals up the circular cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ (z arbitrary), effecting a complete turn on every t-interval of length 2π. Such a spiraling curve is called a *circular helix*. (Figure 14.1.3) ❑

As in the examples given, and under conditions to be spelled out later, as t ranges over the interval I, the radius vector

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

traces out a curve C. We say that $\mathbf{f}$ *parametrizes* C. The equations

$$x = f_1(t), \qquad y = f_2(t), \qquad z = f_3(t)$$

formed from the components of $\mathbf{f}$ serve as parametric equations for C. If one of the components is identically 0 on I, for example, if $\mathbf{f}$ has the form $\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j}$, then C is a *plane curve*; otherwise C is a space curve.

In this chapter we study the geometry of curves and then apply this geometry to obtain a useful description of curvilinear motion. But first we have to extend the limit process to vector functions, establish the notion of vector-function continuity, define vector derivative, and spell out the rules of differentiation.

■ 14.1 LIMIT, CONTINUITY, VECTOR DERIVATIVE

The Limit Process

The limit process for vector functions does not require that $\mathbf{f}(t)$ be attached to any particular point. It can be applied to any vector-valued function.

DEFINITION 14.1.1 LIMIT OF A VECTOR FUNCTION

$$\lim_{t\to t_0} \mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{L} \qquad \text{provided that} \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} \|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\| = 0.$$

Note that for each t in the domain of $\mathbf{f}$, $\|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\|$ is a real number, and therefore the limit on the right is the limit of a real-valued function. Thus we are still in familiar territory.

The first thing we show is that

(14.1.2)

$$\boxed{\text{if} \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} \mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{L}, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} \|\mathbf{f}(t)\| = \|\mathbf{L}\|.}$$

PROOF We know that

$$0 \le \big|\, \|\mathbf{f}(t)\| - \|\mathbf{L}\| \,\big| \le \|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\|. \qquad \text{(Exercise 24, Section 13.2)}$$

It follows from the pinching theorem that

$$\text{if} \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} \|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\| = 0, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} \big|\, \|\mathbf{f}(t)\| - \|\mathbf{L}\| \,\big| = 0.$$

Remark The converse of (14.1.2) is false. You can see this by setting $\mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{k}$ and taking $\mathbf{L} = -\mathbf{k}$. ❑

We can indicate that $\lim_{t\to t_0} \mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{L}$ by writing

$$\text{as} \quad t \to t_0, \qquad \mathbf{f}(t) \to \mathbf{L}.$$

We will state the limit rules in this form. As you will see below, there are no surprises.

THEOREM 14.1.3 LIMIT RULES

Let $\mathbf{f}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ be vector functions and let u be a real-valued function. Suppose that, as $t \to t_0$,

$$\mathbf{f}(t) \to \mathbf{L}, \qquad \mathbf{g}(t) \to \mathbf{M}, \qquad u(t) \to A.$$

Then

$$\mathbf{f}(t) + \mathbf{g}(t) \to \mathbf{L} + \mathbf{M}, \qquad \alpha\mathbf{f}(t) + \beta\mathbf{g}(t) \to \alpha\mathbf{L} + \beta\mathbf{M},$$

$$u(t)\mathbf{f}(t) \to A\mathbf{L}, \qquad \mathbf{f}(t)\cdot\mathbf{g}(t) \to \mathbf{L}\cdot\mathbf{M}, \qquad \mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t) \to \mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{M}.$$

Each of these limit rules is easy to verify. We will verify the last one. To do this, we have to show that

$$\text{as } t \to t_0, \qquad \|[\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)] - [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{M}]\| \to 0.$$

We do this as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|[(\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)] - [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{M}]\| &= \|[\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)] - [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{g}(t)] + [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{g}(t)] - [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{M}]\| \\
&= \|[(\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}) \times \mathbf{g}(t)] + [\mathbf{L} \times (\mathbf{g}(t) - \mathbf{M})]\| \qquad (13.4.5) \\
&\underset{\text{triangle inequality}}{\leq} \|(\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}) \times \mathbf{g}(t)\| + \|\mathbf{L} \times (\mathbf{g}(t) - \mathbf{M})\| \\
&\underset{\text{explain}}{\leq} \|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\|\ \|\mathbf{g}(t)\| + \|\mathbf{L}\|\ \|\mathbf{g}(t) - \mathbf{M}\|.
\end{aligned}$$

As $t \to t_0$, $\|\mathbf{g}(t)\| \to \|\mathbf{M}\|$. [This follows from (14.1.2).] Therefore, as $t \to t_0$,

$$\|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\|\ \|\mathbf{g}(t)\| + \|\mathbf{L}\|\ \|\mathbf{g}(t) - \mathbf{M}\| \to (0)\|\mathbf{M}\| + \|\mathbf{L}\|(0) = 0.$$

Since $0 \leq \|\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)] - [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{M}]\|$, it follows from the pinching theorem that $\|[\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)] - [\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{M}]\| \to 0.$ ❑

The limit process can be carried out component by component: let $\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}$ and let $\mathbf{L} = L_1\,\mathbf{i} + L_2\,\mathbf{j} + L_3\,\mathbf{k}$; then

(14.1.4)
$$\lim_{t\to t_0} \mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{L} \quad \text{iff}$$
$$\lim_{t\to t_0} f_1(t) = L_1, \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} f_2(t) = L_2, \qquad \lim_{t\to t_0} f_3(t) = L_3.$$

PROOF

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{t\to t_0} \mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{L} \quad &\text{iff} \quad \lim_{t\to t_0} \|\mathbf{f}(t) - \mathbf{L}\| = 0 \\
&\text{iff} \quad \lim_{t\to t_0} \sqrt{[f_1(t) - L_1]^2 + [f_2(t) - L_2]^2 + [f_3(t) - L_3]^2} = 0 \\
&\text{iff} \quad \lim_{t\to t_0} f_1(t) = L_1, \quad \lim_{t\to t_0} f_2(t) = L_2, \quad \lim_{t\to t_0} f_3(t) = L_3.
\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Example 1 Find $\lim_{t\to 0} \mathbf{f}(t)$ given that

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = \cos(t + \pi)\,\mathbf{i} + \sin(t + \pi)\,\mathbf{j} + e^{-t^2}\mathbf{k}.$$

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{t\to 0}\mathbf{f}(t) &= \lim_{t\to 0}[\cos(t+\pi)\,\mathbf{i}+\sin(t+\pi)\,\mathbf{j}+e^{-t^2}\,\mathbf{k}]\\ &= \left[\lim_{t\to 0}\cos(t+\pi)\right]\mathbf{i}+\left[\lim_{t\to 0}\sin(t+\pi)\right]\mathbf{j}+\left[\lim_{t\to 0}e^{-t^2}\right]\mathbf{k}\\ &= (-1)\,\mathbf{i}+(0)\,\mathbf{j}+(1)\,\mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{k}.\quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Continuity and Differentiability

As you would expect, $\mathbf{f}$ is said to be *continuous* at t_0 provided that

$$\lim_{t\to t_0}\mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{f}(t_0).$$

Thus, by (14.1.4), $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous at t_0 iff each component of $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous at t_0.

To differentiate $\mathbf{f}$, we form the vector $(1/h)[\mathbf{f}(t+h)-\mathbf{f}(t)]$ and write it as

$$\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h)-\mathbf{f}(t)}{h}.$$

DEFINITION 14.1.5 DERIVATIVE OF A VECTOR FUNCTION

The vector function $\mathbf{f}$ is said to be *differentiable* at t provided that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h)-\mathbf{f}(t)}{h}\qquad \text{exists.}$$

If this limit exists, it is called the *derivative of* $\mathbf{f}$ *at* t and is denoted by $\mathbf{f}'(t)$.

Observe first that

(14.1.6) constant functions have derivative $\mathbf{0}$.

PROOF If $\mathbf{f}(t)$ is constantly $\mathbf{c}$, then

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h)-\mathbf{f}(t)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}.\quad ❑$$

Next we come to variable multiples of a constant vector.

(14.1.7) Functions of the form

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = u(t)\,\mathbf{c}\qquad (u\ \text{differentiable})$$

have derivative

$$\mathbf{f}'(t) = u'(t)\,\mathbf{c}.$$

PROOF Note that

$$\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h)-\mathbf{f}(t)}{h} = \frac{u(t+h)\,\mathbf{c}-u(t)\,\mathbf{c}}{\mathbf{h}} = \frac{u(t+h)-u(t)}{h}\mathbf{c}$$

and take the limit of both sides as $h\to 0$. ❑

Thus

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = t^2\mathbf{a} \qquad \text{has derivative} \qquad \mathbf{f}'(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{a}$$

and

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = \sin \pi t(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) \qquad \text{has derivative} \qquad \mathbf{f}'(t) = \pi \cos \pi t(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}).$$ ❑

Differentiation can be carried out component by component; which is to say, if $\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}$ is differentiable at t, then

$$\mathbf{f}'(t) = f_1'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2'(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3'(t)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

PROOF

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{f}'(t) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h) - \mathbf{f}(t)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \left[\frac{f_1(t+h) - f_1(t)}{h}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{f_2(t+h) - f_2(t)}{h}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{f_3(t+h) - f_3(t)}{h}\,\mathbf{k}\right] \\
&= \left[\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f_1(1+h) - f_1(t)}{h}\right]\mathbf{i} + \left[\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f_2(t+h) - f_2(t)}{h}\right]\mathbf{j} + \\
&\qquad\qquad \left[\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f_3(t+h) - f_3(t)}{h}\right]\mathbf{k} \\
&= f_1'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2'(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3'(t)\,\mathbf{k}.
\end{aligned}$$ ❑

As with real-valued functions, if $\mathbf{f}$ is differentiable at t, then $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous at t. (Exercise 53)

Interpretations of the vector derivative and applications of vector differentiation are introduced later in the chapter. Here we limit ourselves to sample computations.

Example 2 Given that $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{j} - e^t\mathbf{k}$, find:

(a) the domain of $\mathbf{f}$ **(b)** $\mathbf{f}(0)$
(c) $\mathbf{f}'(t)$ **(d)** $\mathbf{f}'(0)$
(e) $\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|$ **(f)** $\mathbf{f}(t)\cdot\mathbf{f}'(t)$.

SOLUTION

(a) For a number to be in the domain of $\mathbf{f}$, it is necessary only that it be in the domain of each of the components. The domain of $\mathbf{f}$ is $[0, \infty)$.

(b) $\mathbf{f}(0) = 0\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{0}\,\mathbf{j} - e^0\,\mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{k}$.

(c) $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \mathbf{i} + \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{t}}\mathbf{j} - e^t\mathbf{k}$, but only for $t > 0$. (explain)

(d) $\mathbf{f}'(0)$ does not exist.

(e) $\|\mathbf{f}(t)\| = \sqrt{t^2 + (\sqrt{t})^2 + (-e^t)^2} = \sqrt{t^2 + t + e^{2t}}, \quad t \ge 0$

(f) $\mathbf{f}(t)\cdot\mathbf{f}'(t) = (t\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{j} - e^t\,\mathbf{k})\cdot\left(\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{t}}\,\mathbf{j} - e^t\,\mathbf{k}\right)$

$$= t + \frac{1}{2} + e^{2t}, \qquad \text{but only for } t > 0.$$ ❑

If $\mathbf{f}'$ is itself differentiable, we can calculate the second derivative $\mathbf{f}''$ and so on.

Example 3 Find $\mathbf{f}''(t)$ for $\mathbf{f}(t) = t \sin t\, \mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\, \mathbf{j} + t\, \mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION

$$\mathbf{f}'(t) = (t \cos t + \sin t)\, \mathbf{i} - e^{-t} \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{f}''(t) = (-t \sin t + \cos t + \cos t)\, \mathbf{i} + e^{-t} \mathbf{j} = (2 \cos t - t \sin t)\, \mathbf{i} + e^{-t} \mathbf{j}. \quad ❑$$

Integration

Just as we can differentiate component by component, we can integrate component by component. For $\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\, \mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\, \mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\, \mathbf{k}$ continuous on $[a, b]$, we set

(14.1.8)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\, dt = \left(\int_a^b f_1(t)\, dt\right) \mathbf{i} + \left(\int_a^b f_2(t)\, dt\right) \mathbf{j} + \left(\int_a^b f_3(t)\, dt\right) \mathbf{k}.}$$

Example 4 Find $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \mathbf{f}(t)\, dt$ for $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\, \mathbf{i} + \sqrt{t+1}\, \mathbf{j} - e^t\, \mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 \mathbf{f}(t)\, dt &= \left(\int_0^1 t\, dt\right) \mathbf{i} + \left(\int_0^1 \sqrt{t+1}\, dt\right) \mathbf{j} + \left(\int_0^1 (-e^t)\, dt\right) \mathbf{k} \\ &= \left[\tfrac{1}{2} t^2\right]_0^1 \mathbf{i} + \left[\tfrac{2}{3}(t+1)^{3/2}\right]_0^1 \mathbf{j} + \left[-e^t\right]_0^1 \mathbf{k} \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\, \mathbf{i} + \tfrac{2}{3}(2\sqrt{2} - 1)\, \mathbf{j} + (1 - e)\, \mathbf{k}. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

We can calculate indefinite integrals.

Example 5 Find $\mathbf{f}(t)$ given that

$$\mathbf{f}'(t) = 2 \cos t\, \mathbf{i} - t \sin t^2\, \mathbf{j} + 2t\, \mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{k}.$$

SOLUTION By integrating $\mathbf{f}'(t)$, we find that

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = (2 \sin t + C_1)\, \mathbf{i} + (\tfrac{1}{2} \cos t^2 + C_2)\, \mathbf{j} + (t^2 + C_3)\, \mathbf{k}$$

where C_1, C_2, C_3 are constants to be determined. Since

$$\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{f}(0) = C_1 \mathbf{i} + \left(\tfrac{1}{2} + C_2\right) \mathbf{j} + C_3 \mathbf{k},$$

you can see that

$$C_1 = 1, \qquad C_2 = -\tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad C_3 = 3.$$

Thus

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = (2 \sin t + 1)\, \mathbf{i} + \left(\tfrac{1}{2} \cos t^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}\right) \mathbf{j} + (t^2 + 3)\, \mathbf{k}. \quad ❑$$

(Integration can also be carried out without direct reference to components. See Exercise 54.)

Properties of the Integral

It is clear that

(14.1.9)
$$\boxed{\int_a^b [\mathbf{f}(t) + \mathbf{g}(t)]\, dt = \int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\, dt + \int_a^b \mathbf{g}(t)\, dt}$$

and

(14.1.10) $$\int_a^b [\alpha \mathbf{f}(t)]\,dt = \alpha \int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt \qquad \text{for every constant scalar } \alpha.$$

It is also true that

(14.1.11) $$\int_a^b [\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{f}(t)]\,dt = \mathbf{c}\cdot\left(\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt\right) \qquad \text{for every constant vector } \mathbf{c}$$

and

(14.1.12) $$\left\|\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt\right\| \le \int_a^b \|\mathbf{f}(t)\|\,dt.$$

The proof of (14.1.11) is left as an exercise. (Exercise 56) Here we prove (14.1.12). It is an important inequality.

PROOF Set $\mathbf{c} = \int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt$ and note that

$$\|\mathbf{c}\|^2 = \mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}\cdot\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt$$

$$= \underbrace{\int_a^b [\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{f}(t)]\,dt}_{\text{by (14.1.11)}} \underbrace{\le}_{\text{by Schwarz's inequality (13.3.18)}} \int_a^b \|\mathbf{c}\|\,\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|\,dt = \|\mathbf{c}\|\int_a^b \|\mathbf{f}(t)\|\,dt.$$

If $\mathbf{c} \neq \mathbf{0}$, we can divide by $\|\mathbf{c}\|$ and conclude that

$$\|\mathbf{c}\| \le \int_a^b \|\mathbf{f}(t)\|\,dt.$$

If $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$, the result is obvious in the first place. ❑

EXERCISES 14.1

Exercises 1–8. Calculate the derivative.

1. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (1+2t)\,\mathbf{i} + (3-t)\,\mathbf{j} + (2+3t)\,\mathbf{k}.$

2. $\mathbf{f}(t) = 2\mathbf{i} - \cos t\,\mathbf{k}.$

3. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \sqrt{1-t}\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{1+t}\,\mathbf{j} + (1-t)^{-1}\,\mathbf{k}.$

4. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \arctan t(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}).$

5. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + \tan t\,\mathbf{k}.$

6. $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^t(\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}).$

7. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \ln(1-t)\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}.$

8. $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^t(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}) + e^{-2t}(\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}).$

Exercises 9–12. Calculate the second derivative

9. $\mathbf{f}(t) = 4t\,\mathbf{i} + 2t^3\,\mathbf{j} + (t^2+2t)\,\mathbf{k}.$

10. $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + t\cos t\,\mathbf{k}.$

11. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \cos 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin 2t\,\mathbf{j} + 4t\,\mathbf{k}.$

12. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{i} + t\sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{j} + \ln t\,\mathbf{k}.$

13. (a) $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^{-t^2}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad t_0 = 0.$

(b) $\mathbf{r}(t) = \ln(\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + \ln(\cos t)\,\mathbf{j} + (2\sin t - 3\cot t)\,\mathbf{k},$ $t_0 = \pi/4.$

14. Find $\mathbf{r}''(t_0)$.

(a) $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^2e^{-t}\,\mathbf{i} + te^{-t}\,\mathbf{j}, \quad t_0 = \mathbf{0}.$

(b) $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\ln t\,\mathbf{i} + \ln^2 t\,\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{\ln t}\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t_0 = e.$

Exercises 15–20. Carry out the integration.

15. $\int_1^2 (\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j})\,dt.$

16. $\int_0^\pi (\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k})\,dt.$

17. $\int_0^1 (e^t\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j})\,dt$.

18. $\int_0^1 e^{-t}(t\,\mathbf{i} + 4e^{3t}\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})\,dt$.

19. $\int_0^1 \left(\dfrac{1}{1+t^2}\,\mathbf{i} + \sec^2 t\,\mathbf{j}\right)dt$.

20. $\int_1^3 \left(\dfrac{1}{t}\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{\ln t}{t}\,\mathbf{j} + e^{-2t}\,\mathbf{k}\right)dt$.

Exercises 21–24. Find $\lim_{t\to 0} \mathbf{f}(t)$ if it exists.

21. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \dfrac{\sin t}{2t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{2t}\,\mathbf{j} + \dfrac{t^2}{e^t}\,\mathbf{k}$.

22. $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3(t^2-1)\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + \dfrac{t}{|t|}\,\mathbf{k}$.

23. $\mathbf{f}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{1-\cos t}{3t}\,\mathbf{j} + \dfrac{t}{t+1}\,\mathbf{k}$.

24. $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3t\,\mathbf{i} + (t^2+1)\,\mathbf{j} + e^{2t}\,\mathbf{k}$.

25. Evaluate using a CAS.

(a) $\int_0^1 \left(te^t\,\mathbf{i} + te^{t^2}\mathbf{j}\right)dt$.

(b) $\int_3^8 \left(\dfrac{t}{t+1}\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{t}{(t+1)^2}\,\mathbf{j} + \dfrac{t}{(t+1)^3}\,\mathbf{k}\right)dt$.

26. Find the limit.

(a) $\lim_{t\to\pi/6} (\cos^2 t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin^2 t\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$.

(b) $\lim_{t\to e^2} \left(t\ln t\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{\ln t}{t^2}\,\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{\ln t^2}\,\mathbf{k}\right)$.

Exercises 27–34. Sketch the curve traced out by the tip of the radius vector and indicate the direction in which the curve is traversed as t increases.

27. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t \ge 0$. **28.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^3\,\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t \ge 0$.

29. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\sinh t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\cosh t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t \ge 0$.

30. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 3\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad 0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

31. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad 0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

32. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + (5-2t)\,\mathbf{j} + 3t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad t \ge 0$.

33. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t^2+1)\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + 4k$, $\quad -2 \le t \le 2$.

34. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + (2\pi - t)\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad 0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

Exercises 35–38. Use a graphing utility to draw the curve and indicate the direction in which the curve is traversed as t increases.

35. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos(t^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (2-\sqrt{t})\,\mathbf{j}$.

36. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^{\cos 2t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-\sin t}\,\mathbf{j}$.

37. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (2-\sin 2t)\,\mathbf{i} + (3 + 2\cos t)\,\mathbf{j}$.

38. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t - \sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + (1-\cos t)\,\mathbf{j}$. $\quad$ (a cycloid)

Exercises 39–44. Find a vector-valued function $\mathbf{f}$ that parametrizes the curve in the direction indicated.

39. $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$ $\quad$ (a) Counterclockwise. $\quad$ (b) Clockwise.

40. $(x-1)^2 + y^2 = 1$ $\quad$ (a) Counterclockwise. $\quad$ (b) Clockwise.

41. $y = x^2$ $\quad$ (a) From left to right. $\quad$ (b) From right to left.

42. $y = x^3$ $\quad$ (a) From left to right. $\quad$ (b) From right to left.

43. The directed line segment from $(1, 4, -2)$ to $(3, 9, 6)$.

44. The directed line segment from $(3, 2, -5)$ to $(7, 2, 9)$.

45. Set $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + f(t)\,\mathbf{j}$ and calculate

$$\mathbf{f}'(t_0), \qquad \int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt, \qquad \int_a^b \mathbf{f}'(t)\,dt$$

given that

$$f'(t_0) = m, \quad f(a) = c, \quad f(b) = d, \quad \int_c^b f(t)\,dt = A.$$

Exercises 46–49. Find $\mathbf{f}(t)$ from the information given.

46. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t(1+t^2)^{-1/2}\mathbf{j} + te^t\,\mathbf{k}$ $\quad$ and $\quad$ $\mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} + 3\,\mathbf{k}$.

47. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = 1 + t^2\mathbf{j}$ $\quad$ and $\quad$ $\mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

48. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = 2\mathbf{f}(t)$ $\quad$ and $\quad$ $\mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$.

49. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \alpha\mathbf{f}(t)$ with α a real number and $\mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{c}$.

50. No ϵ, δ's have surfaced so far, but they are still there at the heart of the limit process. Give an ϵ, δ characterization of

$$\lim_{t\to t_0} \mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{L}.$$

51. (a) Show that, if $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \mathbf{0}$ for all t in an interval I, then $\mathbf{f}$ is a constant vector on I.

(b) Show that, if $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \mathbf{g}'(t)$ for all t in an interval I, then $\mathbf{f}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ differ by a constant vector on I.

52. Assume that, as $t \to t_0$, $\mathbf{f}(t) \to \mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{g}(t) \to \mathbf{M}$. Show that

$$\mathbf{f}(t)\cdot\mathbf{g}(t) \to \mathbf{L}\cdot\mathbf{M}.$$

53. Show that, if $\mathbf{f}$ is differentiable at t, then $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous at t.

54. A vector-valued function $\mathbf{G}$ is called an *antiderivative* for $\mathbf{f}$ on $[a, b]$ provided that (i) $\mathbf{G}$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and (ii) $\mathbf{G}'(t) = \mathbf{f}(t)$ for all $t \in (a, b)$. Show that:

(a) If $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $\mathbf{G}$ is an antiderivative for $\mathbf{f}$ on $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt = \mathbf{G}(b) - \mathbf{G}(a).$$

(b) If $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous on an interval I and $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{G}$ are antiderivatives for $\mathbf{f}$, then

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{G} + \mathbf{C}$$

for some constant vector $\mathbf{C}$.

55. Is it necessarily true that

$$\int_a^b [\mathbf{f}(t)\cdot\mathbf{g}(t)]\,dt = \left[\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt\right]\cdot\left[\int_a^b \mathbf{g}(t)\,dt\right]?$$

56. Prove that, if $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous on $[a, b]$, then for each constant vector $\mathbf{c}$,

$$\int_a^b [\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{f}(t)]\,dt = \mathbf{c}\cdot\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt$$

$$\int_a^b [\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{f}(t)]\,dt = \mathbf{c}\times\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt.$$

57. Let $\mathbf{f}$ be a differentiable vector-valued function. Show that if $\|\mathbf{f}(t)\| \neq 0$, then

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|) = \frac{\mathbf{f}(t) \cdot \mathbf{f}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|}.$$

58. Let $\mathbf{f}$ be a differentiable vector-valued function. Show that where $\|\mathbf{f}(t)\| \neq 0$,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{f}(t)}{\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|}\right) = \frac{\mathbf{f}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|} - \frac{\mathbf{f}(t) \cdot \mathbf{f}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{f}(t)\|^3}\mathbf{f}(t).$$

■ 14.2 THE RULES OF DIFFERENTIATION

Vector functions with a common domain can be combined in many ways to form new functions. From $\mathbf{f}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ we can form the sum $\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g}$:

$$(\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g})(t) = \mathbf{f}(t) + \mathbf{g}(t).$$

We can form scalar multiples $\alpha\mathbf{f}$ and thus linear combinations $\alpha\mathbf{f} + \beta\mathbf{g}$:

$$(\alpha\mathbf{f})(t) = \alpha\mathbf{f}(t), \qquad (\alpha\mathbf{f} + \beta\mathbf{g})(t) = \alpha\mathbf{f}(t) + \beta\mathbf{g}(t).$$

We can form the dot product $\mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{g}$:

$$(\mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{g})(t) = \mathbf{f}(t) \cdot \mathbf{g}(t).$$

We can also form the cross product $\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{g}$:

$$(\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{g})(t) = \mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t).$$

These operations on vector functions are simply the pointwise application of the algebraic operations on vectors that we introduced in Chapter 13.

There are two ways of bringing *scalar functions* (real-valued functions) into this mix. If a scalar function u shares a common domain with $\mathbf{f}$, we can form the product $u\mathbf{f}$:

$$(u\mathbf{f})(t) = u(t)\mathbf{f}(t).$$

If $u(t)$ is in the domain of $\mathbf{f}$ for each t in some interval, then we can form the composition $\mathbf{f} \circ u$:

$$(\mathbf{f} \circ u)(t) = \mathbf{f}(u(t)).$$

For example, with $u(t) = t^2$ and $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^t\mathbf{i} + \sin 2t\,\mathbf{j}$,

$$(u\mathbf{f})(t) = u(t)\mathbf{f}(t) = t^2e^t\mathbf{i} + t^2\sin 2t\,\mathbf{j} \quad \text{and} \quad (\mathbf{f} \circ u)(t) = \mathbf{f}(u(t)) = e^{t^2}\mathbf{i} + \sin 2t^2\mathbf{j}.$$

It follows from Theorem 14.1.3 that if $\mathbf{f}$, $\mathbf{g}$ and u are continuous on a common domain, then $\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g}$, $\alpha\mathbf{f}$, $\mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{g}$, $\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{g}$, and $u\mathbf{f}$ are all continuous on that same set. We have yet to show the continuity of $\mathbf{f} \circ u$. The verification of that is left to you. (Exercise 36) What interests us here is that, if $\mathbf{f}$, $\mathbf{g}$ and u are differentiable, then the newly constructed functions are also differentiable and their derivatives satisfy the rules below. Here α is a scalar and $\mathbf{c}$ is a constant vector.

(14.2.1)

(1) $(\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g})'(t) = \mathbf{f}'(t) + \mathbf{g}'(t)$.

(2) $(\alpha\mathbf{f})'(t) = \alpha\mathbf{f}'(t), \qquad (u\mathbf{c})'(t) = u'(t)\,\mathbf{c}$

(3) $(u\mathbf{f})'(t) = u(t)\mathbf{f}'(t) + u'(t)\mathbf{f}(t)$

(4) $(\mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{g})'(t) = [\mathbf{f}(t) \cdot \mathbf{g}'(t)] + [\mathbf{f}'(t) \cdot \mathbf{g}(t)]$

(5) $(\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{g})'(t) = [\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}'(t)] + [\mathbf{f}'(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)]$

(6) $(\mathbf{f} \circ u)'(t) = \mathbf{f}'(u(t))u'(t) = u'(t)\mathbf{f}'(u(t))$. (chain rule)

Rules (3), (4), (5) are all "product' rules and should remind you of the rule for differentiating the product of ordinary functions. Keep in mind, however, that the cross product is not commutative and therefore the order in Rule (5) is important.

In Rule (6) we first wrote the scalar part $u'(t)$ on the right so that the formula would look like the chain rule for ordinary functions. In general, $\mathbf{a}\alpha$ has the same meaning as $\alpha\mathbf{a}$.

Example 1 For $\mathbf{f}(t) = 2t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$, $\quad g(t) = \mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad u(t) = \frac{1}{3}t^3$

$$\mathbf{f}'(t) = 4t\,\mathbf{i}, \qquad \mathbf{g}'(t) = \mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u'(t) = t^2.$$

Therefore

(a) $(\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g})'(t) = \mathbf{f}'(t) + \mathbf{g}'(t) = 4t\,\mathbf{i} + (\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}) = 4t\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}$;

(b) $(2\mathbf{f})'(t) = 2\mathbf{f}'(t) = 2(4t\,\mathbf{i}) = 8t\,\mathbf{i}$;

(c) $(u\mathbf{f})'(t) = u(t)\mathbf{f}'(t) + u'(t)\mathbf{f}(t) = \frac{1}{3}t^3(4t\,\mathbf{i}) + t^2(2t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}) = \frac{10}{3}t^4\mathbf{i} - 3t^2\,\mathbf{j}$;

(d)
$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{f} \cdot \mathbf{g})'(t) &= [\mathbf{f}(t) \cdot \mathbf{g}'(t)] + [\mathbf{f}'(t) \cdot \mathbf{g}(t)]\\ &= [(2t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}) \cdot (\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k})] + [4t\,\mathbf{i} \cdot (\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k})] = -3 + 4t;\end{aligned}$$

(e)
$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{g})'(t) &= [\mathbf{f}(t) \times \mathbf{g}'(t)] + [\mathbf{f}'(t) \times \mathbf{g}(t)]\\ &= [(2t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}) \times (\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k})] + [4t\,\mathbf{i} \times (\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k})]\\ &= (2t^2\mathbf{k} - 4t^3\mathbf{j} - 6t\,\mathbf{i}) + (4t^2\,\mathbf{k} - 4t^3\mathbf{j}) = -6t\,\mathbf{i} - 8t^3\,\mathbf{j} + 6t^2\,\mathbf{k};\end{aligned}$$

while

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{g} \times \mathbf{f})'(t) &= [\mathbf{g}(t) \times \mathbf{f}'(t)] + [\mathbf{g}'(t) \times \mathbf{f}(t)]\\ &= [(\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}) \times 4t\,\mathbf{i}] + [(\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}) \times (2t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})]\\ &= (-4t^2\,\mathbf{k} + 4t^3\,\mathbf{j}) + (-2t^2\,\mathbf{k} + 4t^3\,\mathbf{j} + 6t\,\mathbf{i})\\ &= 6t\,\mathbf{i} + 8t^3\,\mathbf{j} - 6t^2\,\mathbf{k} = -(\mathbf{f} \times \mathbf{g})'(t);\end{aligned}$$

(f)
$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{f} \circ u)'(t) &= \mathbf{f}'(u(t))u'(t)\\ &= [4u(t)\,\mathbf{i}]u'(t) = \left[4\left(\tfrac{1}{3}t^3\right)\mathbf{i}\right]t^2 = \tfrac{4}{3}t^5\,\mathbf{i}. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

Derivatives are limits and as such can be calculated component by component, and they can be calculated in a component-free manner. It follows that the rules of differentiation can be derived component by component, and they can be derived in a component-free manner. Take, for example, the differentiation rule

$$(u\mathbf{f})'(t) = u(t)\,\mathbf{f}'(t) + u'(t)\,\mathbf{f}(t).$$

COMPONENT-BY-COMPONENT DERIVATION Set

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Then

$$(u\,\mathbf{f})(t) = u(t)\,\mathbf{f}(t) = u(t)\,f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + u(t)\,f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + u(t)\,f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}(u\,\mathbf{f})'(t) &= [u(t)\,f_1'(t) + u'(t)\,f_1(t)]\,\mathbf{i} + [u(t)\,f_2'(t) + u'(t)\,f_2(t)]\,\mathbf{j} +\\ &\quad [u(t)\,f_3'(t) + u'(t)\,f_3(t)]\,\mathbf{k}\\ &= u(t)[\,f_1'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2'(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3'(t)\,\mathbf{k}] + u'(t)[\,f_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + f_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + f_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}]\\ &= u(t)\,\mathbf{f}'(t) + u'(t)\,\mathbf{f}(t). \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

COMPONENT-FREE DERIVATION We find $(u\mathbf{f})'(t)$ by taking the limit as $h \to 0$ of the difference quotient

$$\frac{u(t+h)\mathbf{f}(t+h) - u(t)\mathbf{f}(t)}{h}.$$

By adding and subtracting $u(t+h)\mathbf{f}(t)$, we can rewrite this quotient as

$$\frac{u(t+h)\mathbf{f}(t+h) - u(t+h)\mathbf{f}(t) + u(t+h)\mathbf{f}(t) - u(t)\mathbf{f}(t)}{h}.$$

This equals

$$u(t+h)\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h) - \mathbf{f}(t)}{h} + \frac{u(t+h) - u(t)}{h}\mathbf{f}(t).$$

As $h \to 0$,

$$u(t+h) \to u(t), \qquad \text{(differentiable functions are continuous)}$$

$$\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h) - \mathbf{f}(t)}{h} \to \mathbf{f}'(t), \qquad \text{(definition of derivative for vector functions)}$$

$$\frac{u(t+h) - u(t)}{h} \to u'(t). \qquad \text{(definition of derivative for scalar functions)}$$

It follows from the limit rules (Theorem 14.1.3) that

$$u(t+h)\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h) - \mathbf{f}(t)}{h} \to u(t)\mathbf{f}'(t), \qquad \frac{u(t+h) - u(t)}{h}\mathbf{f}(t) \to u'(t)\mathbf{f}(t)$$

and therefore

$$u(t+h)\frac{\mathbf{f}(t+h) - \mathbf{f}(t)}{h} + \frac{u(t+h) - u(t)}{h}\mathbf{f}(t) \to u(t)\mathbf{f}'(t) + u'(t)\mathbf{f}(t). \quad \square$$

In Leibniz's notation the rules of differentiation take the following form:

(14.2.2)

(1) $\dfrac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{f}+\mathbf{g}) = \dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt} + \dfrac{d\mathbf{g}}{dt}$

(2) $\dfrac{d}{dt}(\alpha\mathbf{f}) = \alpha\dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt}, \qquad \dfrac{d}{dt}(u\mathbf{c}) = \dfrac{du}{dt}\mathbf{c}$

(3) $\dfrac{d}{dt}(u\mathbf{f}) = u\dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt} + \dfrac{du}{dt}\mathbf{f}.$

(4) $\dfrac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{f}\cdot\mathbf{g}) = \left(\mathbf{f}\cdot\dfrac{d\mathbf{g}}{dt}\right) + \left(\dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt}\cdot\mathbf{g}\right)$

(5) $\dfrac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{f}\times\mathbf{g}) = \left(\mathbf{f}\times\dfrac{d\mathbf{g}}{dt}\right) + \left(\dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt}\times\mathbf{g}\right)$

(6) $\dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt} = \dfrac{d\mathbf{f}}{du}\dfrac{du}{dt}.$ (chain rule)

We conclude this section with two results that will prove useful as we go on.

(14.2.3)

If $\mathbf{r}$ is a differentiable vector function of t, then the function $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$ is differentiable where it is not zero and

$$\mathbf{r}\cdot\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = r\frac{dr}{dt}.$$

PROOF If $\mathbf{r}$ is differentiable, then $\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{r} = \|\mathbf{r}\|^2 = r^2$ is differentiable. Let's assume now that $r \neq 0$. Since the square-root function is differentiable at all positive numbers and r^2 is positive, we can apply the square-root function to r^2 and conclude by the chain rule that r is itself differentiable.

To obtain the formula, we differentiate the identity $\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{r} = r^2$:

$$\mathbf{r}\cdot\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\cdot\mathbf{r} = 2r\frac{dr}{dt}$$

$$2\mathbf{r}\cdot\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = 2r\frac{dr}{dt}$$

$$\mathbf{r}\cdot\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = r\frac{dr}{dt}. \quad ❑$$

(14.2.4) If $\mathbf{r}$ is a differentiable vector function of t, then where $r = \|\mathbf{r}\| \neq 0$

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right) = \frac{1}{r^3}\left[\left(\mathbf{r}\times\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\right)\times\mathbf{r}\right].$$

PROOF The argument is somewhat delicate.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right) &= \frac{1}{r}\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} - \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{dr}{dt}\mathbf{r}\\ &= \frac{1}{r^3}\left[r^2\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} - r\frac{dr}{dt}\mathbf{r}\right]\\ &= \frac{1}{r^3}\left[(\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{r})\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} - \left(\mathbf{r}\cdot\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\right)\mathbf{r}\right] = \frac{1}{r^3}\left[\left(\mathbf{r}\times\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\right)\times\mathbf{r}\right]. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

$(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c} = (\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{c}\cdot\mathbf{b})\mathbf{a}$

EXERCISES 14.2

Exercises 1–12. Calculate $\mathbf{f}'(t)$ and $\mathbf{f}''(t)$.

1. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b}$.

2. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b} + t^2\mathbf{c}$.

3. $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^{2t}\mathbf{i} - \sin t\,\mathbf{j}$.

4. $\mathbf{f}(t) = [(t^2\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j})\cdot(\mathbf{i} - t^2\,\mathbf{j})]\,\mathbf{i}$.

5. $\mathbf{f}(t) = [(t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 2t\,\mathbf{j})\cdot(t\,i + t^3\,\mathbf{j})]\,\mathbf{j}$.

6. $\mathbf{f}(t) = [(3t\,\mathbf{i} - t^2\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})\cdot(\mathbf{i} + t^3\,\mathbf{j} - 2t\,\mathbf{k})]\,\mathbf{k}$.

7. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (e^t\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{k})\times(t\,\mathbf{j} + e^{-t}\,\mathbf{k})$.

8. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (\mathbf{a}\times t\,\mathbf{b}) + (\mathbf{a} + t^2\,\mathbf{b})$.

9. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (\mathbf{a}\times t\,\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{a} + t^2\,\mathbf{b})$.

10. $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\mathbf{g}(t^2)$.

11. $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\mathbf{g}(\sqrt{t})$.

12. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (e^{2t}\mathbf{i} + e^{-2t}\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})\times(e^{2t}\mathbf{i} - e^{-2t}\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$.

Exercises 13–20. Calculate.

13. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[e^{\cos t}\mathbf{i} + e^{\sin t}\mathbf{j}]$.

14. $\dfrac{d^2}{dt^2}[e^t\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + e^t\sin t\,\mathbf{j}]$.

15. $\dfrac{d^2}{dt^2}[(e^t\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\mathbf{j})\cdot(e^t\,\mathbf{i} - e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j})]$.

16. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[(\ln t\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j})\times(t^2\,\mathbf{j} - t\,\mathbf{k})]$.

17. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[(\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{c} + t\,\mathbf{d})]$.

18. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[(\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b} + t^2\,\mathbf{c})]$.

19. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[(\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b})\cdot(\mathbf{c} + t\,\mathbf{d})]$.

20. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[(\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b})\cdot(\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b} + t^2\mathbf{c})]$.

Exercises 21–24. Find $\mathbf{r}(t)$ given the following information.

21. $\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{b}$ for all real t, $\quad \mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{a}$.

22. $\mathbf{r}''(t) = \mathbf{c}$ for all real t, $\quad \mathbf{r}'(0) = \mathbf{b}$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{a}$.

23. $\mathbf{r}''(t) = \mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b}$ for all real t, $\quad \mathbf{r}'(0) = \mathbf{c}$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{d}$.

24. $\mathbf{r}''(t) = \cos 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin 2t\,\mathbf{j}$ for all real t,
$\mathbf{r}'(0) = 2\mathbf{i} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{j}$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(0) = \frac{3}{4}\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

25. Show that, if $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j}$, then $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}''(t)$ are parallel. Is there a value of t for which $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}''(t)$ have the same direction?

26. Show that, if $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^{kt}\mathbf{i} + e^{-kt}\mathbf{j}$, then $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}''(t)$ have the same direction.

27. Calculate $\mathbf{r}(t)\cdot\mathbf{r}'(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}(t)\times\mathbf{r}'(t)$ for $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}$.

Exercises 28–30. Assume the rule for differentiating a cross product and show the following.

28. $(\mathbf{g}\times\mathbf{f})'(t) = -(\mathbf{f}\times\mathbf{g})'(t)$.

29. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[\mathbf{f}(t)\times\mathbf{f}'(t)] = \mathbf{f}(t)\times\mathbf{f}''(t)$.

30. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[u_1(t)\mathbf{r}_1(t)\times u_2(t)\mathbf{r}_2(t)] = u_1(t)u_2(t)\dfrac{d}{dt}[\mathbf{r}_1(t)\times\mathbf{r}_2(t)] + [\mathbf{r}_1(t)\times\mathbf{r}_2(t)]\dfrac{d}{dt}[u_1(t)u_2(t)]$.

31. Set $\mathbf{E}(t) = \mathbf{f}(t)\cdot[\mathbf{g}(t)\times\mathbf{h}(t)]$ and show that $\mathbf{E}'(t) = \mathbf{f}'(t)\cdot[\mathbf{g}(t)\times\mathbf{h}(t)] + \mathbf{f}(t)\cdot[\mathbf{g}'(t)\times\mathbf{h}(t)] + \mathbf{f}(t)\cdot[\mathbf{g}(t)\times\mathbf{h}'(t)]$.

32. Prove that, if $\mathbf{f}(t)$ is parallel to $\mathbf{f}''(t)$ for all t in some interval, then $\mathbf{f}\times\mathbf{f}'$ is constant on that interval. HINT: See Exercise 29.

33. Show that $\|\mathbf{r}(t)\|$ is constant iff $\mathbf{r}(t)\cdot\mathbf{r}'(t) = 0$ identically.

34. Derive the formula

$$(\mathbf{f}\cdot\mathbf{g})'(t) = [\mathbf{f}(t)\cdot\mathbf{g}'(t)] + [\mathbf{f}'(t)\cdot\mathbf{g}(t)]$$

(a) by appealing to components;
(b) without appealing to components.

35. Derive the formula

$$(\mathbf{f}\times\mathbf{g})'(t) = [\mathbf{f}(t)\times\mathbf{g}'(t)] + [\mathbf{f}'(t)\times\mathbf{g}(t)]$$

without appealing to components.

36. (a) Show that, if u is continuous at t_0 and $\mathbf{f}$ is continuous at $u(t_0)$, then the composition $\mathbf{f}\circ u$ is continuous at t_0.
(b) Derive the following chain rule for vector functions:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{f}}{dt} = \frac{d\mathbf{f}}{du}\frac{du}{dt}.$$

■ 14.3 CURVES

Introduction

A linear function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\,\mathbf{d}, \qquad \mathbf{d} \neq \mathbf{0}$$

traces out a line, and it does so in a particular direction, the direction imparted to it by increasing t.

More generally, a differentiable vector function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{(Figure 14.3.1)}$$

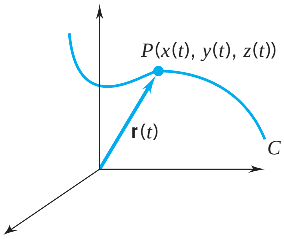


Figure 14.3.1

traces out a curved path, and it does so in a particular direction, the direction imparted to it by increasing t. The *directed path C* (called by some the *oriented path*) traced out by a differentiable vector function is called a *differentiable parametrized curve*.

We draw a distinction between the parametrized curve

$$C_1: \qquad \mathbf{r}_1(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

and the parametrized curve

$$C_2: \qquad \mathbf{r}_2(u) = \cos(2\pi - u)\,\mathbf{i} + \sin(2\pi - u)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi].$$

The first curve is the unit circle traversed counterclockwise; the second curve is the unit circle traversed clockwise. (Figure 14.3.2.)

For an example in space we refer to Figure 14.3.3. There you see the curve parametrized by the function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \geq 0.$$

The direction imparted to the curve by the parametrization is indicated by the little arrows.

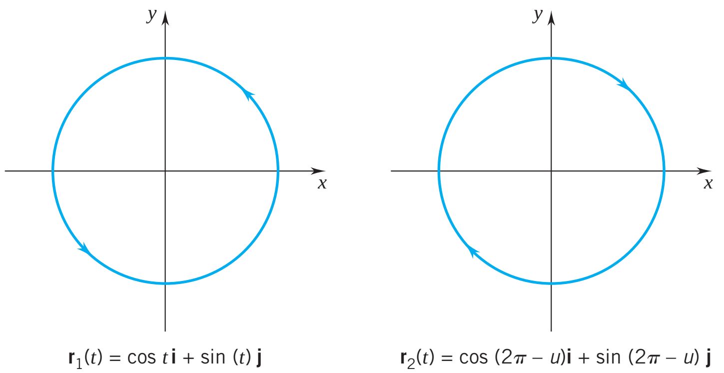


Figure 14.3.2

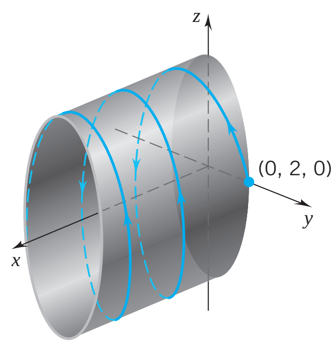


Figure 14.3.3

Tangent Vector, Tangent Line

Let's view the derivative

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = x'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y'(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z'(t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

geometrically. First of all,

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h}.$$

If $\mathbf{r}'(t) \neq \mathbf{0}$, then we can be sure that, for $t+h$ close enough to t, the vector

$$\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$$

will not be $\mathbf{0}$. (Explain.) Consequently, we can think of the vector $\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$ as pictured in Figure 14.3.4.

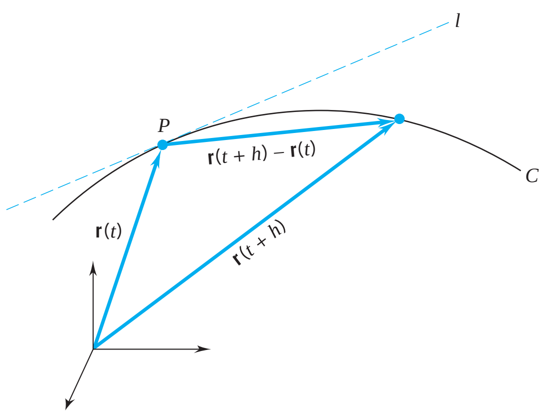


Figure 14.3.4

Let's agree that the line marked l in the figure corresponds to our intuitive notion of the tangent line at the point P. As h tends to zero, the vector

$$\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$$

comes increasingly closer to serving as a direction vector for that tangent line. It may be tempting therefore to take the limiting case

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\,[\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)]$$

and call that a direction vector for the tangent line. The trouble is that this limit vector is $\mathbf{0}$, and $\mathbf{0}$ has no direction.

We can circumvent this difficulty by replacing $\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$ by a vector which, for small h, has greater length: the difference quotient

$$\frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h}.$$

For each real number $h \neq 0$, the vector $[\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)]/h$ is parallel to $\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$, and therefore its limit,

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h},$$

which by assumption is not $\mathbf{0}$, can be taken as a direction vector for the tangent line. Hence the following definition.

DEFINITION 14.3.1 TANGENT VECTOR

Let

$$C: \qquad \mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

be a differentiable curve. The vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$, if not $\mathbf{0}$, is said to be *tangent* to the curve C at the point $P(x(t), y(t), z(t))$.

Remark In all this we view $\mathbf{r}(t)$ as a vector bound to the origin and $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ as a vector attached to the curve at the tip of $\mathbf{r}(t)$. ❑

If $\mathbf{r}'(t) \neq \mathbf{0}$, the following question arises: what is the direction of $\mathbf{r}'(t)$? Does it point in the direction imparted by increasing t or does it point in the direction imparted by decreasing t?

Figure 14.3.5 shows a parametrized curve C and the vector $\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$ with $h > 0$. In this case

$$\frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h}$$

points in the direction of $\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$, the direction imparted by increasing t.

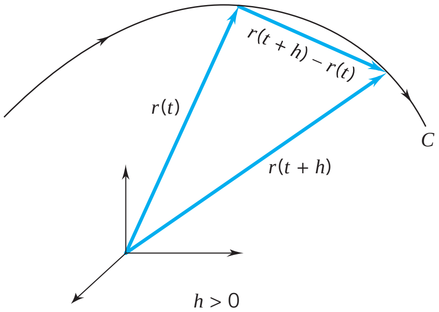


Figure 14.3.5

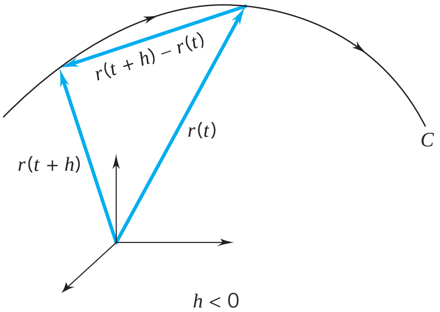


Figure 14.3.6

Figure 14.3.6 shows the vector $\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)$ for $h < 0$. In this case, dividing by h to form the difference quotient *reverses* the direction of the vector. Thus

$$\frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h}$$

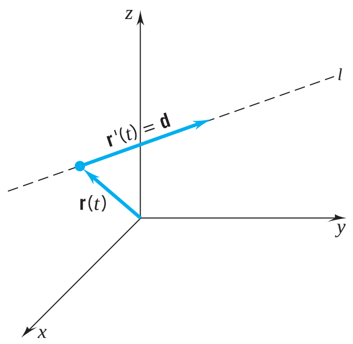


Figure 14.3.7

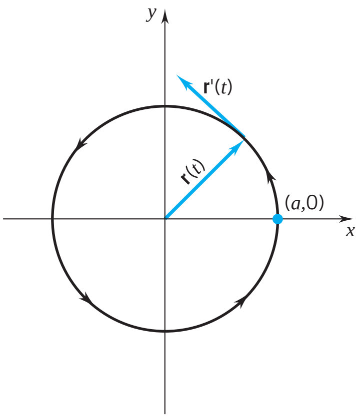
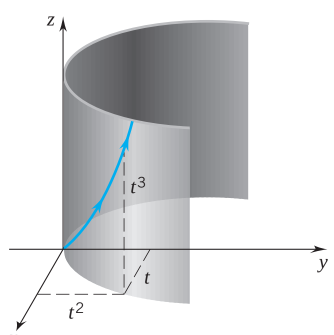


Figure 14.3.8



the twisted cubic, $t > 0$

Figure 14.3.9

also points in the direction imparted by increasing t. We conclude that in each case

(14.3.2) $$\boxed{\mathbf{r}'(t) \text{ points in the direction imparted by increasing } t.}$$

For a line $y = mx + b$, the derivative $y'(x)$ is the slope of the line: $y'(x) = m$. For a parametrized line

$$l: \qquad \mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\,\mathbf{d}, \qquad \text{(Figure 14.3.7)}$$

the derivative $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is the direction vector used to parametrize the line: $\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{d}$.

For a circle parametrized counterclockwise,

$$C: \qquad \mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{with } a > 0,$$

the tangent vector

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = -a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + a\cos t\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{(Figure 14.3.8)}$$

points in the counterclockwise direction and is perpendicular to the radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$.

Example 1 Find a point P on the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (1-2t)\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + 2e^{2(t-1)}\,\mathbf{k}$$

at which the tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is parallel to the radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$.

SOLUTION $\mathbf{r}'(t) = -2\,\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + 4e^{2(t-1)}\,\mathbf{k}$.

For $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ to be parallel to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ there must exist a scalar α such that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \alpha\mathbf{r}'(t).$$

This vector equation holds iff

$$1 - 2t = -2\alpha, \qquad t^2 = 2\alpha t, \qquad 2e^{2(t-1)} = 4\alpha e^{2(t-1)}.$$

The last scalar equation requires that $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$. The only value of t that satisfies all three equations with $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ is $t = 1$. Therefore the only point at which $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is parallel to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ is the tip of $\mathbf{r}(1)$. This is the point $P(-1, 1, 2)$. ❑

If $\mathbf{r}'(t_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$, then $\mathbf{r}'(t_0)$ is tangent to the curve at the tip of $\mathbf{r}(t_0)$. The *tangent line* at this point can be parametrized by setting

(14.3.3) $$\boxed{\mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{r}(t_0) + u\,\mathbf{r}'(t_0).}$$

Example 2 Find a vector tangent to the *twisted cubic*

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{(Figure 14.3.9)}$$

at the point $P(2, 4, 8)$, and then parametrize the tangent line at that point.

SOLUTION Here $\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + 3t^2\,\mathbf{k}$. Since $P(2, 4, 8)$ is the tip of $\mathbf{r}(2)$, the vector

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 12\,\mathbf{k}$$

is tangent to the curve at the point $P(2, 4, 8)$. The vector function

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = (2\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j} + 8\,\mathbf{k}) + u(\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j} + 12\,\mathbf{k})$$

parametrizes the tangent line. ❑

Intersecting Curves

Two curves

$$C_1: \quad \mathbf{r}_1(t) = x_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y_1(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z_1(t)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad C_2: \quad \mathbf{r}_2(u) = x_2(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y_2(u)\,\mathbf{j} + z_2(u)\,\mathbf{k}$$

intersect iff there are numbers t and u for which

$$\mathbf{r}_1(t) = \mathbf{r}_2(u).$$

The angle between C_1 and C_2 at a point where $\mathbf{r}_1(t) = \mathbf{r}_2(u)$ is by definition the angle between the corresponding tangent vectors $\mathbf{r}_1'(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}_2'(u)$.

Example 3 Show that the circles

$$C_1: \quad \mathbf{r}_1(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad C_2: \quad \mathbf{r}_2(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{j} + \sin u\,\mathbf{k}$$

intersect at right angles at $P(0, 1, 0)$ and $Q(0, -1, 0)$.

SOLUTION Since $\mathbf{r}_1(\pi/2) = \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{r}_2(0)$, the curves meet at the tip of $\mathbf{j}$, which is the point $P(0, 1, 0)$. Also, since $\mathbf{r}_1(3\pi/2) = -\mathbf{j} = \mathbf{r}_2(\pi)$, the curves meet at the tip of $-\mathbf{j}$, which is the point $Q(0, -1, 0)$. Differentiation gives

$$\mathbf{r}_1'(t) = -\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{r}_2'(u) = -\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + \cos u\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Since $\mathbf{r}_1'(\pi/2) = -\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{r}_2'(0) = \mathbf{k}$, we have

$$\mathbf{r}_1'(\pi/2) \cdot \mathbf{r}_2'(0) = 0.$$

This tells us that the curves are perpendicular at $P(0, 1, 0)$. Since $\mathbf{r}_1'(3\pi/2) = \mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{r}_2'(\pi) = -\mathbf{k}$, we have

$$\mathbf{r}_1'(3\pi/2) \cdot \mathbf{r}_2'(\pi) = 0.$$

This tells us that the curves are perpendicular at $Q(0, -1, 0)$. The curves are shown in Figure 14.3.10. ❑

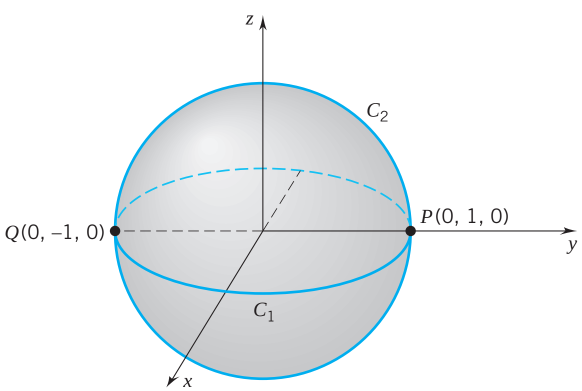


Figure 14.3.10

The Unit Tangent, the Principal Normal, the Osculating Plane

Suppose now that the curve

$$C: \quad \mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

is twice differentiable and $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is never zero. Then at each point $P(x(t), y(t), z(t))$ of the curve, there is a *unit tangent vector*:

(14.3.4)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{T}(t) = \frac{\mathbf{r}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|}.}$$

Since $\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| > 0$, $\mathbf{T}(t)$ points in the direction of $\mathbf{r}'(t)$; that is, in the direction of increasing t. Since $\|\mathbf{T}(t)\| = 1$, we have $\mathbf{T}(t) \cdot \mathbf{T}(t) = 1$. Differentiation gives

$$\mathbf{T}(t) \cdot \mathbf{T}'(t) + \mathbf{T}'(t) \cdot \mathbf{T}(t) = 0.$$

Since the dot product is commutative, we have

$$2[\mathbf{T}'(t) \cdot \mathbf{T}(t)] = 0 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \mathbf{T}'(t) \cdot \mathbf{T}(t) = 0.$$

At each point of the curve *the vector* $\mathbf{T}'(t)$ is *perpendicular to* $\mathbf{T}(t)$.

The vector $\mathbf{T}'(t)$ measures the rate of change of $\mathbf{T}(t)$ with respect to t. Since the norm of $\mathbf{T}(t)$ is constantly 1, $\mathbf{T}(t)$ can change only in direction. The vector $\mathbf{T}'(t)$ measures this change in direction.

If the unit tangent vector is not changing in direction (as in the case of a straight line), then $\mathbf{T}'(t) = \mathbf{0}$. If $\mathbf{T}'(t) \neq 0$, then we can form what is called the *principal normal vector*:

(14.3.5)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{N}(t) = \frac{\mathbf{T}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{T}'(t)\|}.}$$

This is the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{T}'(t)$. The *normal line* at P is the line through P parallel to the principal normal.

Figure 14.3.11 shows a curve on which we have marked several points. At each of these points we have drawn the unit tangent and the principal normal. The plane determined by these two vectors is called the *osculating plane* (literally, the "kissing plane"). This is the plane of greatest contact with the curve at the point in question. The principal normal points in the direction in which the curve is curving, that is, on the concave side of the curve.

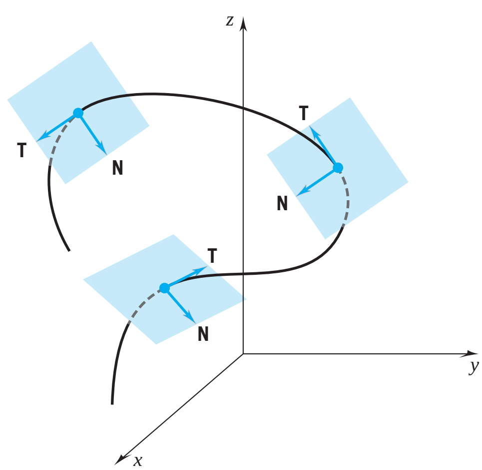


Figure 14.3.11

If a curve is a plane curve but not a straight line, then the osculating plane is simply the plane of the curve. A straight line does not have an osculating plane. There is no principal normal vector $[\mathbf{T}'(t) = \mathbf{0}]$, and there is no single plane of greatest contact. Each straight line lies on an infinite number of planes.

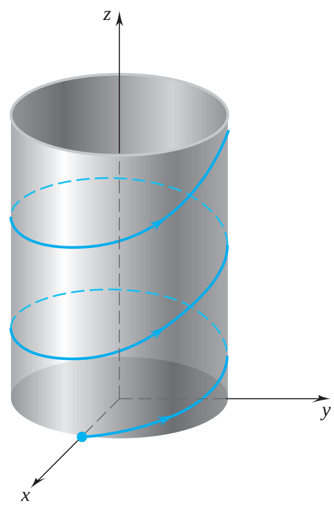


Figure 14.3.12

Example 4 In Figure 14.3.12 you can see a curve spiraling up a circular cylinder with a constant rate of climb. The curve is called a *circular helix*. The simplest parametrization for a circular helix takes the form

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + bt\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{with} \quad a > 0,\ b > 0.$$

The first two components produce the rotational effect; the third component gives the rate of climb.

We will find the unit tangent, the principal normal, and then an equation for the osculating plane. Since

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = -a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + a\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + b\,\mathbf{k},$$

we have

$$\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| = \sqrt{a^2\sin^2 t + a^2\cos^2 t + b^2} = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

and therefore

$$\mathbf{T}(t) = \frac{\mathbf{r}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}(-a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + a\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + b\,\mathbf{k}).$$

This is the unit tangent vector.

The principal normal vector is the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{T}'(t)$. Since

$$\frac{d}{dt}(-a\ \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + a\ \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + b\mathbf{k}) = -a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{and} \qquad a > 0,$$

you can see that

$$\mathbf{N}(t) = -\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - \sin t\,\mathbf{j} = -(\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}).$$

The principal normal is horizontal and points directly toward the z-axis.

Now let's find an equation for the osculating plane p at an arbitrary point of the curve: $P(a\cos t, a\sin t, bt)$. The cross product $\mathbf{T}(t) \times \mathbf{N}(t)$ is perpendicular to p. Therefore, as a normal for p, we can take a nonzero scalar multiple of $\mathbf{T}(t) \times \mathbf{N}(t)$. In particular, we can take

$$(a\ \sin t\,\mathbf{i} - a\ \cos t\,\mathbf{j} - b\,\mathbf{k}) \times (\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}).$$

As you can check, this simplifies to

$$b\sin t\,\mathbf{i} - b\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + a\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The equation for the osculating plane at the point $P(a\cos t, a\sin t, bt)$ thus takes the form

$$b\sin t(x - a\cos t) - b\cos t(y - a\sin t) + a(z - bt) = 0. \tag{13.7.1}$$

This simplifies to

$$(b\sin t)x - (b\cos t)y + az = abt.$$

To visualize how this osculating plane changes from point to point, think of a playground spiral slide or the threaded surface on a bolt. ❑

Remark At this stage some of you may think of the unit tangent, the principal normal, and the osculating plane merely as somewhat obscure geometric niceties. They

are much more than that. One of the most important notions in science is the notion of acceleration. (You can't feel velocity, but you can feel acceleration.) In curvilinear motion acceleration is a vector, a vector best understood in terms of the unit tangent **T**, the principal normal **N**, and the osculating plane p. How this is so is explained in Section 14.5. ❏

Reversing the Direction of a Curve

We make a distinction between the curve

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [a, b]$$

and the curve

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{r}(a + b - u), \qquad u \in [a, b].$$

Both vector functions trace out the same set of points (check that out), but the order has been reversed. Whereas the first curve starts at $\mathbf{r}(a)$ and ends at $\mathbf{r}(b)$, the second curve starts at $\mathbf{r}(b)$ and ends at $\mathbf{r}(a)$:

$$\mathbf{R}(a) = \mathbf{r}(a + b - a) = \mathbf{r}(b), \qquad \mathbf{R}(b) = \mathbf{r}(a + b - b) = \mathbf{r}(a).$$

The vector function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

gives the unit circle traversed counterclockwise, while

$$R(u) = \cos(2\pi - u)\,\mathbf{i} + \sin(2\pi - u)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi]$$

gives the unit circle traversed clockwise. You have seen this before.

The function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + bt\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

traces out one turn of a spiraling helix (Figure 14.3.13), the direction of transversal indicated by the little arrows. The function

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = a\cos(2 - u)\pi\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin(2 - u)\pi\,\mathbf{j} + b(2 - u)\pi\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [0, 2]$$

produces the same path but in the opposite direction. (Figure 14.3.14)

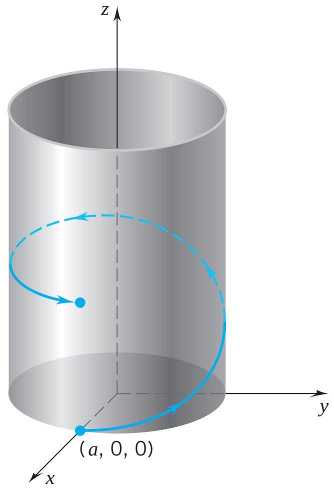


Figure 14.3.13

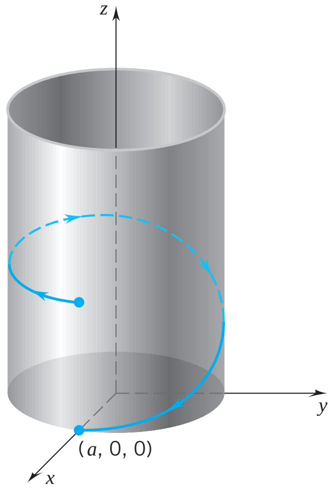


Figure 14.3.14

What happens to the unit tangent $\mathbf{T}$, the principal normal $\mathbf{N}$, and the osculating plane when we reverse the direction of the curve? As you are asked to show in Exercise 43, $\mathbf{T}$ is replaced by $-\mathbf{T}$, but $\mathbf{N}$ remains the same. The osculating plane also remains the same.

EXERCISES 14.3

Exercises 1–8. Find the tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ at the indicated point and parametrize the tangent line at that point.

1. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos\pi t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\pi t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$ at $t = 2$.

2. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j} - \ln t\,\mathbf{k}$ at $t = 1$.

3. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b} + t^2\,\mathbf{c}$ at $t = -1$.

4. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t+1)\,\mathbf{i} + (t^2+1)\,\mathbf{j} + (t^3+1)\,\mathbf{k}$ at $P(1, 1, 1)$.

5. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t^2\,\mathbf{i} + (1-t)\,\mathbf{j} + (3+2t^2)\,\mathbf{k}$ at $P(2, 0, 5)$.

6. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 3t\,\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} - t^2\,\mathbf{c}$ at $t = 2$.

7. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$; $t = \pi/4$.

8. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + t\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}$; $t = \pi/2$.

9. Show that $\mathbf{r}(t) = at\,\mathbf{i} + bt^2\,\mathbf{j}$ parametrizes a parabola. Find an equation in x and y for this parabola.

10. Show that $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{1}{2}a(e^{\omega t} + e^{-\omega t})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{2}a(e^{\omega t} - t^{-\omega t})\,\mathbf{j}$ parametrizes the right branch $(x > 0)$ of the hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$.

11. Find (a) the points on the curve $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + (1+t^2)\,\mathbf{j}$ at which $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ are perpendicular; (b) the points at which they have the same direction; (c) the points at which they have opposite directions.

12. Find the curve given that $\mathbf{r}'(t) = \alpha\mathbf{r}(t)$ for all real t and $\mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$. (Here α is a constant.)

13. Suppose that $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}(t)$ are parallel for all t. Show that, if $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is never $\mathbf{0}$, then the tangent line at each point passes through the origin.

Exercises 14–16. The curves intersect at the point given. Find the angle of intersection. Express your answer in radians.

14. $\mathbf{r}_1(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k}$,
$\mathbf{r}_2(u) = \sin 2u\,\mathbf{i} + u\cos u\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$; $P(0, 0, 0)$.

15. $\mathbf{r}_1(t) = (e^t - 1)\,\mathbf{i} + 2\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \ln(t+1)\,\mathbf{k}$,
$\mathbf{r}_2(u) = (u+1)\,\mathbf{i} + (u^2-1)\,\mathbf{j} + (u^3+1)\,\mathbf{k}$; $P(0, 0, 0)$.

16. $\mathbf{r}_1(t) = e^{-t}\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + (t^2+4)\,\mathbf{k}$,
$\mathbf{r}_2(u) = (2+u)\,\mathbf{i} + u^4\,\mathbf{j} + 4u^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $P(1, 1, 4)$.

17. Find the point at which the curves

$$\mathbf{r}_1(t) = e^t\mathbf{i} + 2\sin(t + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi)\,\mathbf{j} + (t^2 - 2)\,\mathbf{k},$$
$$\mathbf{r}_2(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} = (u^2 - 3)\,\mathbf{k}$$

intersect and find the angle of intersection.

18. Consider the vector function $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + f(t)\,\mathbf{j}$ formed from a differentiable real-valued function f. The vector function $\mathbf{f}$ parametrizes the graph of f.

(a) Parametrize the tangent line at $P(t_0, f(t_0))$.

(b) Show that the parametrization obtained in part (a) can be reduced to the usual equation for the tangent line:

$$y - f(t_0) = f'(t_0)(x - t_0) \quad \text{if} \quad f'(t_0) \neq 0;$$
$$y = f(t_0) \quad \text{if} \quad f'(t_0) = 0.$$

19. Define a vector function $\mathbf{r}$ on the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ that satisfies the initial condition $\mathbf{r}(0) = a\mathbf{i}$ and, as t increases to 2π, traces out the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$;

(a) Once in a counterclockwise manner.

(b) Once in a clockwise manner.

(c) Twice in a counterclockwise manner.

(d) Three times in a clockwise manner.

20. Exercise 19 given that $\mathbf{r}(0) = b\,\mathbf{j}$.

Exercises 21–26. Sketch the curve, show the direction of the curve, and display both $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ for the given value of t.

21. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{1}{4}t^4\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = 2$.

22. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + (t^2+1)\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = 4$.

23. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^{2t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-4t}\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = 0$.

24. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} - 2\cos t\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = \pi/3$.

25. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = \pi/6$.

26. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sec t\,\mathbf{i} + \tan t\,\mathbf{j}$, $|t| < \pi/2$; $t = \pi/4$.

Exercises 27–30. Find a vector parametrization for the curve.

27. $y^2 = x - 1$, $y \geq 1$.

28. $r = 1 - \cos\theta$, $\theta \in [0, 2\pi]$. (polar coordinates)

29. $r = \sin 3\theta$, $\theta \in [0, \pi]$. (polar coordinates)

30. $y^4 = x^3$, $y \leq 0$.

31. Find an equation in x and y for the curve $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^3\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$. Draw the curve. Does the curve have a tangent vector at the origin? If so, what is the unit tangent vector?

32. (a) Show that the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (t^2 - t + 1)\,\mathbf{i} + (t^3 - t + 2)\,\mathbf{j} + (\sin\pi t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

intersects itself at $P(1, 2, 0)$ by finding numbers $t_1 < t_2$ for which P is the tip of both $\mathbf{r}(t_1)$ and $\mathbf{r}(t_2)$.

(b) Find the unit tangents at $P(1, 2, 0)$, first taking $t = t_1$, then taking $t = t_2$.

33. Find the point(s) at which the twisted cubic

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k}$$

intersects the plane $4x + 2y + z = 24$. What is the angle of intersection between the curve and the normal to this plane?

34. (a) Find the unit tangent and the principal normal at an arbitrary point of the ellipse

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin t\,\mathbf{j}.$$

(b) Write vector equations for the tangent line and the normal line at the tip of $\mathbf{r}(\frac{1}{4}\pi)$.

Exercises 35–42. Find the unit tangent, the principal normal, and write an equation in x, y, z for the osculating plane at the point on the curve that corresponds to the indicated value of t.

35. $\mathbf{r}(t) = i + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $\quad t = 1$.

36. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + 2t^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $\quad t = 1$.

37. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin 2t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$ $\quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

38. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}$ $\quad$ at $t = 2$.

39. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sinh t\,\mathbf{i} + \cosh t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$; $\quad$ at $t = 0$.

40. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos 3t\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} - \sin 3t\,\mathbf{k}$ $\quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{3}\pi$.

41. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + e^t \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + e^t\,\mathbf{k}$; $\quad t = 0$.

42. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\cos t + t \sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + (\sin t - t \cos t)\,\mathbf{j} + 2k$; $\quad t = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

43. Let $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$, $t \in [a, b]$ be a differentiable curve with nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$. We know that the vector function

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{r}(a + b - u), \qquad u \in [a, b]$$

traces out the same curve but in the opposite direction. Verify that this change of parameter changes the sign of the unit tangent but does not alter the principal normal.

44. Let $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sqrt{2}\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{2}\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad 0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

(a) Find scalar parametric equations for the line tangent to the curve at the point $(1, 1, \frac{1}{4}\pi)$.

(b) Use a CAS to draw the curve and attach to it the tangent line found in part (a).

(c) Are there points on the curve where the tangent line is parallel to the xy-plane? If so, find them.

45. Let $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sqrt{2}\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{2}\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \sin 5t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad 0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

(a) Find scalar parametric equations for the line tangent to the curve at the point $(1, 1, -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2})$.

(b) Use a CAS to draw the curve and attach to it the tangent line found in part (a).

(c) Are there points on the curve where the tangent line is parallel to the xy-plane? If so, find them.

46. Let $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sqrt{2}\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{2}\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \ln t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad 0 \le t \le 2\pi$.

(a) Find scalar parametric equations for the line tangent to the curve at the point $(1, 1, \ln \frac{1}{4}\pi)$.

(b) Use a CAS to draw the curve and attach to it the tangent line found in part (a)

■ 14.4 ARC LENGTH

In Section 10.7 we took up the notion of arc length and concluded on intuitive grounds that the length of the path C traced out by a pair of continuously differentiable functions

$$x = x(t), \qquad y = y(t), \qquad t \in [a, b]$$

is given by the formula

$$L(C) = \int_a^b \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2}\,dt.$$

Applied to a path C in space traced out by

$$x = x(t), \qquad y = y(t), \qquad z = z(t), \qquad t \in [a, b]$$

the formula becomes

$$L(C) = \int_a^b \sqrt{[x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2 + [z'(t)]^2}\,dt.$$

In vector notation, both formulas can be written

$$L(C) = \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\,dt.$$

We will prove the result in this form, but first we must give a precise definition of arc length.

In Figure 14.4.1 we sketched the path C traced out by a continuously differentiable vector function

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [a, b].$$

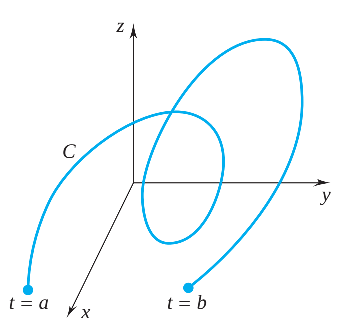


Figure 14.4.1

To decide what should be meant by the length of C, we approximate C by the union of a finite number of line segments.

Choosing a finite number of points in $[a, b]$,

$$a = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_{i-1} < t_i < \cdots < t_{n-1} < t_n = b,$$

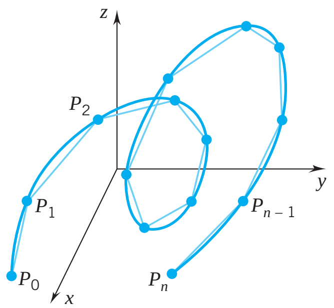


Figure 14.4.2

we obtain a finite number of points $P_0, P_1, \ldots, P_{i-1}, P_i, \ldots, P_{n-1}, P_n$, on C, where for each index k, P_k denotes the point $P(x(t_k), y(t_k), z(t_k))$. We join these points consecutively by line segments and call the resulting path,

$$\gamma = \overline{P_0 P_1} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{P_{i-1}, P_i} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{P_{n-1} P_n},$$

a *polygonal path* inscribed in C. (Figure 14.4.2)

The length of this polygonal path is the sum of the distances between consecutive vertices:

$$L(\gamma) = d(P_0, P_1) + \cdots + d(P_{i-1}, P_i) + \cdots + d(P_{n-1}, P_n).$$

The path γ serves as an approximation to the path C. Better approximations can be obtained by adding more vertices to γ. We now ask ourselves exactly what we should require of the number that we shall call the length of C. Certainly we require that

$$L(\gamma) \leq L(C) \qquad \text{for each } \gamma \text{ inscribed in } C.$$

But that is not enough. There is another requirement that seems reasonable. If we can choose γ to approximate C as closely as we wish, then we should be able to choose γ so that $L(\gamma)$ approximates the length of C as closely as we wish; namely, for each positive number ε there should exist a polygonal path γ such that

$$L(C) - \epsilon < L(\gamma) \leq L(C).$$

In Section 11.1, we introduced the concept of least upper bound of a set of real numbers. Theorem 11.1.2 tells us that we can achieve the result we want by defining the length of C as the least upper bound of the set of all $L(\gamma)$. This is in fact what we do.

DEFINITION 14.4.1 ARC LENGTH

$$L(C) = \begin{cases} \text{the least upper bound of the set of all} \\ \text{lengths of polygonal paths inscribed in } C. \end{cases}$$

We are now ready to establish the arc length formula.

THEOREM 14.4.2 ARC LENGTH FORMULA

Let C be the path traced out by a continuously differentiable vector function

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [a, b].$$

The length of C is given by the formula

$$L(C) = \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt.$$

PROOF First we show that

$$L(C) \leq \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt.$$

To do this, we begin with an arbitrary partition P of $[a, b]$:

$$P = \{a = t_0, \ldots, t_{i-1}, t_i, \ldots, t_n = b\}.$$

Such a partition gives rise to a finite number of points of C:

$$\mathbf{r}(a) = \mathbf{r}(t_0), \ldots, \mathbf{r}(t_{i-1}), \mathbf{r}(t_i), \ldots, \mathbf{r}(t_n) = \mathbf{r}(b)$$

and thus to an inscribed polygonal path of total length

$$L_P = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \|\mathbf{r}(t_i) - \mathbf{r}(t_{i-1})\|. \qquad \text{(Figure 14.4.3)}$$

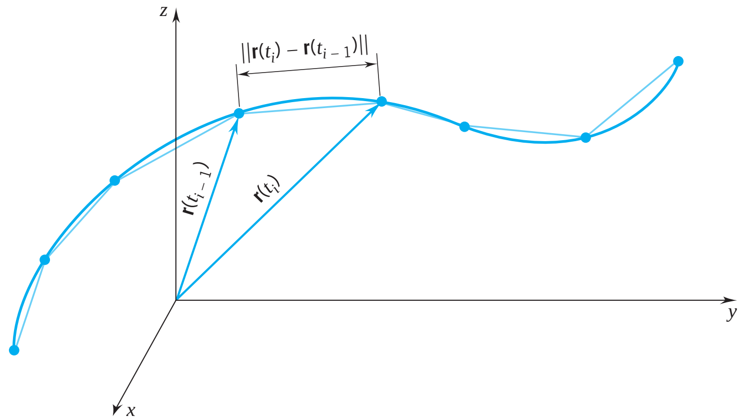


Figure 14.4.3

For each i,

$$\mathbf{r}(t_i) - \mathbf{r}(t_{i-1}) = \int_{t_{i-1}}^{t_i} \mathbf{r}'(t)dt.$$

This gives

$$\|\mathbf{r}(t_i) - \mathbf{r}(t_{i-1})\| = \left\| \int_{t_{i-1}}^{t_i} \mathbf{r}'(t)dt \right\| \overset{\text{by (14.1.10)}}{\leq} \int_{t_{i-1}}^{t_i} \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt$$

and thus

$$L_P = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \|\mathbf{r}(t_i) - \mathbf{r}(t_{i-1})\| \leq \sum_{i=1}^{n} \int_{t_{i-1}}^{t_i} \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt = \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt.$$

Since the partition P is arbitrary, we know that the inequality

$$L_P \leq \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt$$

must hold for all the L_P. This makes the integral on the right an upper bound for all the L_P. Since $L(C)$ is the *least* upper bound of all the L_P, we can conclude right now that

$$L(C) \leq \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt.$$

The next step is to show that this inequality is actually an equality. To do this we need to know that arc length, *as we have defined it*, is additive. That is, with P, Q, R as in Figure 14.4.4, we need to know that the arc length from P to Q plus the arc length from Q to R equals the arc length from P to R. It is clear arc length should have this property. We must prove that it does. A proof has been placed in a supplement to this section. For the moment we shall assume that arc length is additive and continue with the proof of the arc length formula.

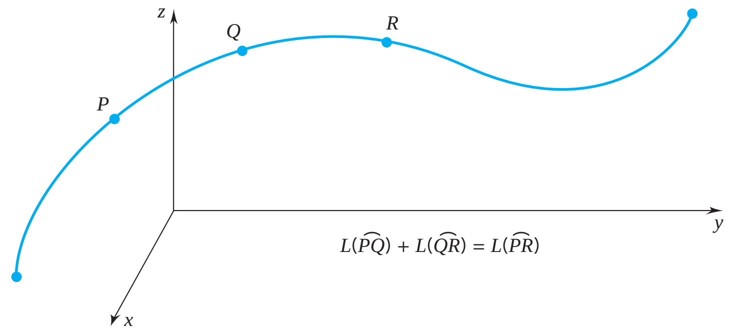


Figure 14.4.4

In Figure 14.4.5, we display the initial vector $\mathbf{r}(a)$, a general radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$, and a nearby vector $\mathbf{r}(t+h)$. Set

$$s(t) = \text{length of the path from } \mathbf{r}(a) \text{ to } \mathbf{r}(t).$$

Then

$$s(a) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad s(t+h) = \text{length of the path from } \mathbf{r}(a) \text{ to } \mathbf{r}(t+h).$$

By the additivity of arc length (remember, we are assuming this for the moment),

$$s(t+h) - s(t) = \text{length of the curve from } \mathbf{r}(t) \text{ to } \mathbf{r}(t+h).$$

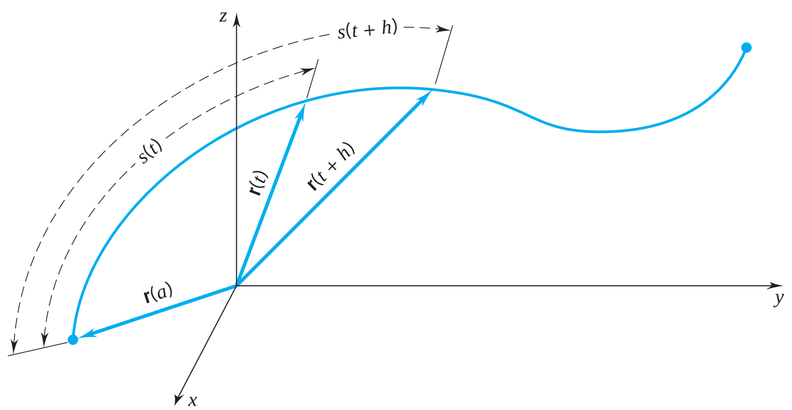


Figure 14.4.5

From what we have shown already, you can see that

$$\|\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)\| \le s(t+h) - s(t) \le \int_t^{t+h} \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du.$$

Dividing this inequality by h (which we are taking as positive), we get

$$\left\| \frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h} \right\| \le \frac{s(t+h) - s(t)}{h} \le \frac{1}{h} \int_t^{t+h} \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du.$$

As $h \to 0^+$, the left-hand side tends to $\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|$ and, by the first mean-value theorem for integrals (Theorem 5.9.1), so does the right-hand side:

$$\frac{1}{h} \int_t^{t+h} \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du = \underbrace{\frac{1}{h}}_{c_h \in (t,\, t+h)} \|\mathbf{r}'(c_h)\|(t+h-t) = \|\mathbf{r}'(c_h)\| \to \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|.$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{s(t+h) - s(t)}{h} = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|.$$

By taking $h < 0$ and proceeding in a similar manner, one can show that

$$\lim_{h \to 0^-} \frac{s(t+h) - s(t)}{h} = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|.$$

Therefore, we can conclude that

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{s(t+h) - s(t)}{h} = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|$$

and so $s'(t) = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|$. Integrating this equation from a to t, we get

$$s(t) - s(a) = \int_a^t s'(u)du = \int_a^t \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du.$$

Since $s(a) = 0$, it follows that

$$s(t) = \int_a^t \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du.$$

The total length of C is therefore

$$s(b) = \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du = \int_a^b \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt. \quad ❏$$

Example 1 Find the length of the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t^{3/2}\,\mathbf{i} + 4t\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{from} \qquad t = 0 \quad \text{to} \quad t = 1.$$

SOLUTION

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = 3t^{1/2}\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j}.$$

$$\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| = \sqrt{(3t^{1/2})^2 + 4^2} = \sqrt{9t + 16}.$$

$$L(C) = \int_0^1 \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|\, dt = \int_0^1 \sqrt{9t+16}\, dt$$

$$= \left[\frac{1}{9}\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)(9t+16)^{3/2}\right]_0^1 = \frac{250}{27} - \frac{128}{27} = \frac{122}{27}. \quad ❏$$

Example 2 Find the length of the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{from } t = 0 \text{ to } t = \pi/2$$

and compare it to the straight-line distance between the endpoints of the curve. (See Figure 14.4.6.)

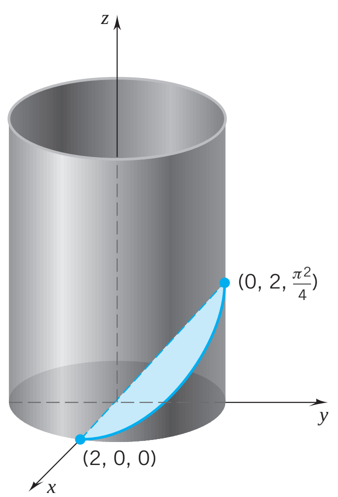


Figure 14.4.6

SOLUTION

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = -2\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}.$$

$$\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| = \sqrt{4\sin^2 t + 4\cos^2 t + 4t^2} = 2\sqrt{\sin^2 t + \cos^2 t + t^2} = 2\sqrt{1+t^2}.$$

$$L(C) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| dt = \int_0^{\pi/2} 2\sqrt{1+t^2}\, dt$$

$$= \left[t\sqrt{1+t^2} + \ln\left(t + \sqrt{1+t^2}\right)\right]_0^{\pi/2} \qquad \text{(Formula 78)}$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{1 + \frac{\pi^2}{4}} + \ln\left[\frac{\pi}{2} + \sqrt{1 + \frac{\pi^2}{4}}\right] \cong 4.158.$$

The curve begins at $\mathbf{r}(0) = 2\,\mathbf{i}$ and ends at $\mathbf{r}(\pi/2) = 2\,\mathbf{j} + (\pi^2/4)\,\mathbf{k}$. The straight-line distance between these two points is

$$\|\mathbf{r}(\pi/2) - \mathbf{r}(0)\| = \sqrt{2^2 + 2^2 + \frac{\pi^4}{16}} \cong 3.753.$$

The curve is about 11% longer than the straight-line distance between the endpoints of the curve. ❑

Parametrizing a Curve by Arc Length

Suppose that

$$C : \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [a, b]$$

is a continuously differentiable curve of length L with nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$. The length of C from $\mathbf{r}(a)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ is

$$s(t) = \int_a^t \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du.$$

Since $ds/dt = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| > 0$, the function $s = s(t)$ is a one-to-one increasing function. Thus, no two points of C can lie at the same arc distance from $\mathbf{r}(a)$. It follows that for each $s \in [0, L]$, there is a unique point $\mathbf{R}(s)$ on C at arc distance s from $\mathbf{r}(a)$.

(14.4.3)

> *The function*
>
> $$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}(s), \qquad s \in [0, L]$$
>
> *parametrizes C by arc length.*

Since

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\right\| > 0$$

the function $s = s(t)$ has a differentiable inverse $t = t(s)$ and we can write

$$\frac{dt}{ds} = \frac{1}{\|d\mathbf{r}/dt\|}.$$

Since both $\mathbf{R}(s(t))$ and $\mathbf{r}(t)$ lie at arc distance $s(t)$ from $\mathbf{r}(a)$, $\mathbf{R}(s(t)) = \mathbf{r}(t)$. Therefore

$$\mathbf{R}(s) = \mathbf{r}(t(s)).$$

Differentiation gives

$$\frac{d\mathbf{R}}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\frac{dt}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\frac{1}{\|d\mathbf{r}/dt\|}.$$

Taking the norm of both sides, we have

$$\left\|\frac{d\mathbf{R}}{ds}\right\| = 1.$$

(14.4.4)

> Thus, for a curve parametrized by arc length, the tangent vector can change in direction but not in length: the tangent vector maintains length 1.

Example 3 Parametrize the circular helix

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = 3\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + 4t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \geq 0$$

by arc length.

SOLUTION The length of the curve from $\mathbf{r}(0)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ is the number

$$s = \int_0^t \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\,du = \int_0^t \sqrt{(-3\sin u)^2 + (3\cos u)^2 + 4^2}\,du$$

$$= \int_0^t \sqrt{9+16}\,du = \int_0^t 5\,du = 5t.$$

In this case, $t = \frac{1}{5}s$. Since $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}(\frac{1}{5}s)$ lies at arc distance s from $\mathbf{r}(0)$, the vector function

$$\mathbf{R}(s) = \mathbf{r}(\tfrac{1}{5}s) = 3\cos\tfrac{1}{5}s\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin\tfrac{1}{5}s\,\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{4}{5}s\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad s \geq 0$$

parametrizes the curve by arc length. As you can check $\|d\mathbf{R}/ds\| = 1$. ❑

You have seen that for a curve parametrized by arc length, the tangent vector has constant length 1. There is a partial converse to this.

(14.4.5) If the curve

$$C : \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [0, b]$$

has tangent vector of constant length 1, then the parametrization is by arc length and the length of the curve is b.

(We called this a partial converse because for the statement to be true, we must start the parametrization at $t = 0$.)

PROOF The arc distance from $\mathbf{r}(0)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ is the number

$$s = \int_0^t \left\| \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{du} \right\| du.$$

Since $\|d\mathbf{r}/dt\|$ is constantly 1,

$$s = \int_0^t 1\,du = t.$$

The parameter t is thus the arc length parameter s.

The total length of C is

$$\int_0^b 1\,du = b. \quad ❑$$

Remark More general changes of parameter are introduced in Project 14.4. ❑

EXERCISES 14.4

Exercises 1–16. Find the length of the curve.

1. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}t^{3/2}\,\mathbf{j}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 8$.

2. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\frac{1}{3}t^3 - t)\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$.

3. $\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + bt\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2\pi$.

4. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2}\,t^{3/2}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}t^2\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$.

5. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \ln(\sec t)\,\mathbf{j} + 3\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \frac{1}{4}\pi$.

6. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \arctan t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{2}\ln(1 + t^2)\,\mathbf{j}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$.

7. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^3\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$.

8. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + (\frac{1}{6}t^3 + \frac{1}{2}t^{-1})\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 1$ to $t = 3$.

9. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t[\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}]$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \pi$.

10. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + (t^2 - 2)\,\mathbf{j} + (1 - t^2)\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$.

11. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\ln t)\,\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 1$ to $t = e$.

12. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t\sin t + \cos t)\,\mathbf{i} + (t\cos t - \sin t)\,\mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$.

13. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\cos t + t\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + (\sin t - t\cos t)\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}\,t^2\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2\pi$.

14. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{2}{3}(1+t)^{3/2}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}(1-t)^{3/2}\,\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{2}t\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = -\frac{1}{2}$ to $t = \frac{1}{2}$.

15. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\mathbf{i} + (t^2 - 2)\,\mathbf{j} + (1 - t^2)\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$.

16. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 3t\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3t\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + 4t\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 4$.

17. (*Important*) Let $\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$, $t \in [a, b]$, be a continuously differentiable curve. Show that, if s is the length of the curve from $\mathbf{r}(a)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t)$, then

(14.4.6)
$$\boxed{\frac{ds}{dt} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dz}{dt}\right)^2}.}$$

18. Use vector methods to show that, if $y = f(x)$ has a continuous first derivative, then the length of the graph from $x = a$ to $x = b$ is given by the integral

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\,dx.$$

19. (*Important*) Let $y = f(x)$, $x \in [a, b]$, be a continuously differentiable function. Show that, if s is the length of the graph from $(a, f(a))$ to $(x, f(x))$, then

(14.4.7)
$$\boxed{\frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}.}$$

20. Let C_1 be the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (t - \ln t)\,\mathbf{i} + (t + \ln t)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad 1 \le t \le e$$

and let C_2 be the graph of

$$y = e^x, \qquad 0 \le x \le 1.$$

Find a relation between the length of C_1, and the length of C_2.

21. Show that the usual parametrization of the unit circle

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad t \in [0, 2\pi]$$

is already a parametrization by arc length.

22. Find the length of the directed line segment

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (1 - t)\,\mathbf{a} + t\,\mathbf{b}, \qquad t \in [0, 1].$$

Then parametrize the line segment by arc length.

23. Parametrize the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (\sin t - t\cos t)\,\mathbf{i} + (\cos t + t\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + \tfrac{1}{2}t^2\,\mathbf{k}, \quad t \ge 0$$

by arc length.

24. If you carried out Exercise 9, you found out that the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t[\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}], \qquad t \in [0, \pi]$$

has length $\sqrt{2}\,(e^\pi - 1)$. Parametrize this curve by arc length.

Exercise 25–28. Use a CAS to estimate the length of the curve.

25. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{2}{5}t^{5/2}\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \frac{1}{2}$.

26. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{3}t^3\,\mathbf{j}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$.

27. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 3\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 4\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 2\pi$.

28. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + (\ln t)\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 1$ to $t = 4$.

29. Let $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \sin 4t\,\mathbf{k}$, $0 \le t \le 2\pi$.
(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curve.
(b) Use a CAS to estimate the length of the curve.

30. Let $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \ln(1 + t)\,\mathbf{j} + \sin t\,\mathbf{k}$, $0 \le t \le 2\pi$
(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curve.
(b) Use a CAS to estimate the length of the curve.

■ PROJECT 14.4 MORE GENERAL CHANGES OF PARAMETER

(Although this material is cast as a project, the ideas introduced here, if not the details, constitute an integral part of the text.)

Begin with a differentiable curve

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in I \qquad (I \text{ some interval})$$

with nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$. Change from parameter t to parameter u by expressing t in terms of u by a continuously differentiable function $t = \varphi(u)$ which maps some u-interval J onto the t-interval I in a one-to-one manner. Make sure that $\varphi'(u)$ does not take on the value 0: either it remains positive or it remains negative. Now form the composition

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = \mathbf{r}(\varphi(u)), \qquad u \in J.$$

Problem 1. Show that

(14.4.8) $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$, $t \in I$ and $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}(u)$, $u \in J$ trace out exactly the same path, in the same direction if $\varphi'(u) > 0$, but in the opposite direction if $\varphi'(u) < 0$.

Because of what you just proved

(14.4.9) we say that

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \quad t \in I \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}(u), \quad u \in J.$$

differ by a *sense-preserving* change of parameter if $\varphi'(u) > 0$, by a *sense-reversing* change of parameter if $\varphi'(u) < 0$.

For example, let

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} - \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + \sin t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \in [0, \pi].$$

The curve

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = \sqrt{u}\,\mathbf{i} - \cos\sqrt{u}\,\mathbf{j} + \sin\sqrt{u}\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [0, \pi^2]$$

differs from $\mathbf{r}$ only by a sense-preserving change of parameter: $\varphi(u) = \sqrt{u}$ maps $[0, \pi^2]$ in a one-to-one manner onto $[0, \pi]$ with $\varphi'(u) = 1/(2\sqrt{u}) > 0$. (check all this)

The curve

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = (4 - \sqrt{u})\mathbf{i} - \cos(4 - \sqrt{u})\mathbf{j} + \sin(4 - \sqrt{u})\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [(4 - \pi)^2, 16]$$

differs from $\mathbf{r}$ by a sense-reversing change of parameter: $\varphi(u) = 4 - \sqrt{u}$ maps $[(4 - \pi)^2, 16]$ onto $[0, \pi]$ with $\varphi'(u) = -1/(2\sqrt{u}) < 0$. (check all this)

Problem 2. Show that the unit tangent, the principal normal, and the osculating plane are left invariant (left unchanged) by a sense-preserving change of parameter.

Problem 3. What happens to the unit tangent, the principal normal, and the osculating plane if we apply a sense-reversing change of parameter?

Problem 4. Review the process by which we obtained the arc length parametrization $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}(s)$. What was the function φ in that case?

Problem 5. Let

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \quad t \in I \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}(u), \quad u \in J.$$

be continuously differentiable curves with nonzero tangent vectors. Show that if $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{R}$ differ only by a sense-preserving (or a sense-reversing) change of parameter, then both curves have the same arc length.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 14.4

The Additivity of Arc Length We wish to show that with P, Q, R as in Figure 14.4.4,

$$L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR}) = L(\widehat{PR}).$$

Let γ_1 be an arbitrary polygonal path inscribed in $\widehat{PQ}$ and γ_2 an arbitrary polygonal path inscribed in $\widehat{QR}$. Then $\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2$ is a polygonal path inscribed in $\widehat{PR}$. Since

$$L(\gamma_1) + L(\gamma_2) = L(\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2) \qquad \text{and} \qquad L(\gamma_1 \cup \gamma_2) \le L(\widehat{PR}),$$

we have

$$L(\gamma_1) + L(\gamma_2) \le L(\widehat{PR}) \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad L(\gamma_1) \le L(\widehat{PR}) - L(\gamma_2).$$

Since γ_1 is arbitrary, we can conclude that $L(\widehat{PR}) - L(\gamma_2)$ is an upper bound for the set of all lengths of polygonal paths inscribed in $\widehat{PQ}$. Since $L(\widehat{PQ})$ is the *least* upper bound of this set, we have

$$L(\widehat{PQ}) \le L(\widehat{PR}) - L(\gamma_2).$$

It follows that

$$L(\gamma_2) \le L(\widehat{PR}) - L(\widehat{PQ}).$$

Arguing as we did with γ_1, we can conclude that

$$L(\widehat{QR}) \le L(\widehat{PR}) - L(\widehat{PQ}).$$

This gives

$$L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR}) \le L(\widehat{PR}).$$

We now set out to prove that $L(\widehat{PR}) \le L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR})$. To do this, we need only take $\gamma = \overline{T_0T_1} \cup \ldots \cup \overline{T_{n-1}T_n}$ as an arbitrary polygonal path inscribed in $\widehat{PR}$ and show that

$$L(\gamma) \le L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR}).$$

If Q is one of the T_i, say $Q = T_k$, then

$$\gamma_1 = \overline{T_0T_1} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{T_{k-1}T_k} \qquad \text{is inscribed in } \widehat{PQ}$$

and

$$\gamma_2 = \overline{T_kT_{k+1}} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{T_{n-1}T_n} \qquad \text{is inscribed in } \widehat{QR}.$$

Moreover, $L(\gamma) = L(\gamma_1) + L(\gamma_2)$, so that

$$L(\gamma) \leq L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR}).$$

If Q is none of the T_i, then Q lies between two consecutive points T_k and T_{k+1}. Set

$$\gamma' = \overline{T_0T_1} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{T_kQ} \cup \overline{QT_{k+1}} \cup \cdots \cup \overline{T_{n-1}T_n}.$$

Since

$$d(T_k, T_{k+1}) \leq d(T_k, Q) + d(Q, T_{k+1}),$$

we have

$$L(\gamma) \leq L(\gamma').$$

Proceed as before and you will see that

$$L(\gamma') \leq L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR}),$$

and once again

$$L(\gamma) \leq L(\widehat{PQ}) + L(\widehat{QR}). \quad \square$$

■ 14.5 CURVILINEAR MOTION; CURVATURE

Curvilinear Motion from a Vector Viewpoint

Here we use the theory we have developed for vector-valued functions to study the motion of an object moving in space. We can describe the position of a moving object at time t by a radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$. As t ranges over a time interval I, the object traces out some path

$$C: \qquad \mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \in I. \qquad \text{(Figure 14.5.1)}$$

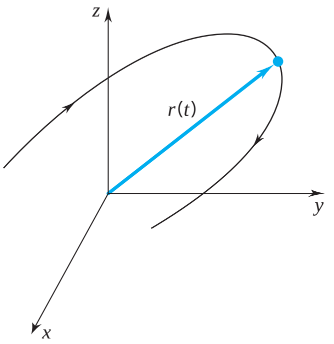


Figure 14.5.1

If $\mathbf{r}$ is twice differentiable, we can form $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}''(t)$. In this context these vectors have special names and special significance: $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is called the *velocity* of the object at time t, and $\mathbf{r}''(t)$ is called the *acceleration*. In symbols, we have

(14.5.1) $$\boxed{\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{v}(t) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{r}''(t) = \mathbf{v}'(t) = \mathbf{a}(t).}$$

There should be nothing surprising about this. As before, velocity is the time rate of change of position and acceleration the time rate of change of velocity.

Since $\mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{r}'(t)$, the velocity vector, when not $\mathbf{0}$, is tangent to the path of the motion at the tip of $\mathbf{r}(t)$. (Section 14.3) The direction of the velocity vector at time t gives the direction of the motion at time t. (Figure 14.5.2.)

The magnitude of the velocity vector is called the *speed* of the object:

(14.5.2) $$\boxed{\|\mathbf{v}(t)\| = \text{the speed at time } t.}$$

The reasoning is as follows: during a time interval $[t_0, t]$ the object moves along its path from $\mathbf{r}(t_0)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ for a total distance

$$s(t) = \int_{t_0}^{t} \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\|\, du. \qquad \text{(Section 14.4)}$$

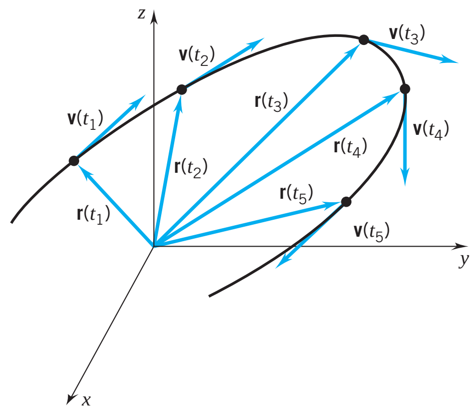


Figure 14.5.2

Differentiating with respect to t, we have

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|.$$

The magnitude of the velocity vector is thus *the rate of change of arc distance with respect to time*. This is why we call it the speed of the object.

Motion Along a Straight Line

The position at time t is given by a function of the form

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + f(t)\mathbf{d}, \qquad \mathbf{d} \neq 0.$$

The velocity and acceleration vectors are both directed along the line of the motion:

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = f'(t)\mathbf{d} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{a}(t) = f''(t)\mathbf{d}.$$

If $\mathbf{d}$ is a unit vector, the speed is $|f'(t)|$:

$$\|\mathbf{v}(t)\| = \|f'(t)\mathbf{d}\| = |f'(t)|\,\|\mathbf{d}\| = |f'(t)|$$

and the magnitude of the acceleration is $|f''(t)|$:

$$\|\mathbf{a}(t)\| = \|f''(t)\mathbf{d}\| = |f''(t)|\,\|\mathbf{d}\| = |f''(t)|.$$

Circular Motion About the Origin

The position function can be written

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a[\cos\theta(t)\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\theta(t)\,\mathbf{j}], \qquad a > 0 \text{ constant}.$$

Here $\theta'(t)$ gives the time rate of change of the central angle θ. If $\theta'(t) > 0$, the motion is counterclockwise; if $\theta'(t) < 0$, the motion is clockwise. We call $\theta'(t)$ the *angular velocity* and $|\theta'(t)|$ the *angular speed.*

Uniform circular motion is circular motion with constant angular speed $\omega > 0$. The position function for uniform circular motion in the counterclockwise direction can be written

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a(\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + \sin\omega t\ \mathbf{j}).$$

Differentiation gives

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = a\omega(-\sin\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + \cos\omega t\ \mathbf{j}),$$

$$\mathbf{a}(t) = -a\omega^2(\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + \sin\omega t\ \mathbf{j}) = -\omega^2\mathbf{r}(t).$$

The acceleration is directed along the line of the radius vector toward the center of the circle and is therefore perpendicular to the velocity vector, which, as always, is tangential. As you can verify, the speed is $a\omega$ and the magnitude of acceleration is $a\omega^2$.

Motion along a circular helix is a combination of circular motion and motion along a straight line.

Example 1 An object moves along a circular helix (Figure 14.3.12) with position at time t given by the function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + a\sin\omega t\ \mathbf{j} + b\omega t\ \mathbf{k}. \qquad (a>0,\ b>0,\ \omega>0)$$

For each time t, find

(a) the velocity of the particle; **(b)** the speed; **(c)** the acceleration;
(d) the magnitude of the acceleration;
(e) the angle between the velocity vector and the acceleration vector.

SOLUTION

(a) Velocity: $\mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{r}'(t) = -a\omega\sin\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + a\omega\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{j} + b\omega\ \mathbf{k}$.

(b) Speed : $\|\mathbf{v}(t)\| = \sqrt{a^2\omega^2\sin^2\omega t + a^2\omega^2\cos^2\omega t + b^2\omega^2}$

$$= \sqrt{a^2\omega^2 + b^2\omega^2} = \omega\sqrt{a^2+b^2}.$$

(Thus the speed is constant.)

(c) Acceleration : $\mathbf{a}(t) = \mathbf{v}'(t) = -a\omega^2\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{i} - a\omega^2\sin\omega t\ \mathbf{j}$

$$= -a\omega^2(\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + \sin\omega t\ \mathbf{j}).$$

(Since the speed is constant, the acceleration comes entirely from the change in direction.)

(d) Magnitude of the acceleration: $\|\mathbf{a}(t)\| = a\omega^2$.

(e) Angle between $\mathbf{v}(t)$ and $\mathbf{a}(t)$:

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{v}(t)}{\|\mathbf{v}(t)\|}\cdot\frac{\mathbf{a}(t)}{\|\mathbf{a}(t)\|}$$

$$= \left[\frac{-a\omega\sin\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + a\omega\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{j} + b\omega\ \mathbf{k}}{\omega\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}\right]\cdot\left[\frac{-a\omega^2(\cos\omega t\ \mathbf{i} + \sin\omega t\ \mathbf{j})}{a\omega^2}\right]$$

$$= \frac{a(\sin\omega t\cos\omega t - \cos\omega t\sin\omega t)}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}} = 0.$$

Therefore $\theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$. (At each point the acceleration is perpendicular to the velocity.) ❑

Curvature

Let

$$C: \qquad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in I$$

be a twice differentiable curve with nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$. At each point the curve has a unit tangent vector $\mathbf{T}$. While $\mathbf{T}$ cannot change in length, it can change in direction. At each point of the curve the change in direction of $\mathbf{T}$ per unit of arc length is given by the derivative $d\mathbf{T}/ds$. The magnitude of this change in direction per unit of arc length, the number

$$\kappa = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\right\|,$$

is called the *curvature* of the curve.†

†The symbol κ is the Greek letter "kappa."

As you would expect,

> along a straight line the curvature is constantly zero.

PROOF At each point of a line

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\,\mathbf{d}$$

the unit tangent vector $\mathbf{T}$ is the vector $\mathbf{d}/\|\mathbf{d}\|$. Since $\mathbf{T}$ is constant

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds} = \mathbf{0} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \kappa = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\right\| = 0. \quad ❑$$

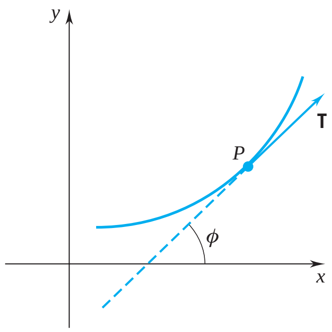


Figure 14.5.3

The Curvature of a Plane Curve

Figure 14.5.3 shows a plane curve. At a point P we have attached the unit tangent vector $\mathbf{T}$ and drawn the tangent line. The angle marked ϕ is the inclination of the tangent line measured in radians. As P moves along the curve, angle ϕ changes. *The curvature at P can be interpreted as the magnitude of the change in ϕ per unit of arc length.*

PROOF Since $\mathbf{T}$ has length 1, we can write

$$\mathbf{T} = \cos\phi\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\phi\,\mathbf{j}.^{\dagger}$$

Differentiation with respect to s gives

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds} = -\sin\phi\frac{d\phi}{ds}\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\phi\frac{d\phi}{ds}\,\mathbf{j} = \frac{d\phi}{ds}(-\sin\phi\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\phi\,\mathbf{j}).$$

Taking norms we have

$$\kappa = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\right\| = \left|\frac{d\phi}{ds}\right|\sqrt{\sin^2\phi + \cos^2\phi} = \left|\frac{d\phi}{ds}\right|. \quad ❑$$

We will express the curvature κ of a plane curve

$$C: \qquad \mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j}$$

in terms of the components $x(t)$ and $y(t)$.

Suppose that C is twice differentiable. If C has nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t) = x'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y'(t)\,\mathbf{j}$, then

(14.5.3)
$$\boxed{\kappa = \frac{|x'(t)y''(t) - y'(t)x''(t)|}{([x'(t)]^2 + [y'(t)]^2)^{3/2}}.}$$

PROOF We'll outline the argument and leave some details to you. We know that

$$\mathbf{T} = \frac{\mathbf{r}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|}.$$

Therefore

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|}\right).$$

† The direction angles are ϕ and $\frac{1}{2}\pi - \phi$. This expression for $\mathbf{T}$ follows from observing that $\cos(\frac{1}{2}\pi - \phi) = \sin\phi$.

It follows from (14.2.4) applied to $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|^3}[(\mathbf{r}'(t) \times \mathbf{r}''(t)) \times \mathbf{r}'(t)].$$

The relations

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt} = \frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\frac{ds}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{ds}{dt} = \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|$$

give

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds} = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|^4}[(\mathbf{r}'(t) \times \mathbf{r}''(t)) \times \mathbf{r}'(t)]$$

and

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|^4}\|(\mathbf{r}'(t) \times \mathbf{r}''(t)) \times \mathbf{r}'(t)\|.$$

Substitute

$$x'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y'(t)\,\mathbf{j} \quad \text{for} \quad \mathbf{r}'(t) \qquad \text{and} \qquad x''(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y''(t)\,\mathbf{j} \quad \text{for} \quad \mathbf{r}''(t)$$

and you'll find out that this expression for κ gives (14.5.3). ❑

For the graph of a twice differentiable function $y = f(x)$,

(14.5.4)
$$\boxed{\kappa = \frac{|y''(x)|}{(1 + [y'(x)]^2)^{3/2}}.}$$

PROOF Parametrize the graph by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Here $x'(t) = 1$ and $x''(t) = 0$. Then (14.5.3) gives

$$\kappa = \frac{|y''(t)|}{(1 + [y'(t)]^2)^{3/2}}.$$

Now replace t by x. ❑

Example 2 In the case of a circle of radius r,

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = r(\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}),$$

we have

$$x(t) = r\cos t \qquad \text{and} \qquad y(t) = r\sin t.$$

Differentiation gives

$$x'(t) = -r\sin t, \qquad x''(t) = -r\cos t, \qquad y'(t) = r\cos t, \qquad y''(t) = -r\sin t.$$

It follows that

$$\kappa = \frac{|(-r\sin t)(-r\sin t) - (r\cos t)(-r\cos t)|}{[(-r\sin t)^2 + (r\cos t)^2]^{3/2}} = \frac{r^2}{r^3} = \frac{1}{r}. \quad ❑$$

We have just proved that

> along a circle of radius r the curvature is constantly $1/r$.

Hardly surprising. It is geometrically evident that along a circular path the change in direction takes place at a constant rate. Since a complete revolution entails a change of direction of 2π radians and this change is effected on a path of length $2\pi r$, the change in direction per unit of arc length is $2\pi/2\pi r = 1/r$.

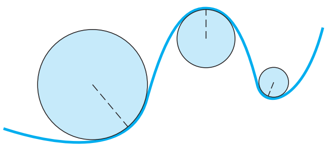


Figure 14.5.4

To say that a curve $y = f(x)$ has slope m at a point P is to say that at the point P the curve is rising or falling at the rate of a line of slope m. To say that a plane curve C has curvature $1/a$ at a point P is to say that at the point P the curve is turning at the rate of a circle of radius a. (Figure 14.5.4.) The smaller the circle, the tighter the turn and, thus, the greater the curvature.

Example 3 Calculate the curvature at each point (x, y) of the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

SOLUTION We parametrize the ellipse by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$$

and use (14.5.3). Here

$$x = a\cos t, \qquad y = b\sin t.$$

Therefore

$$x' = -a\sin t, \qquad x'' = -a\cos t, \qquad y' = b\cos t, \qquad y'' = -b\sin t$$

and

$$\kappa = \frac{|(-a\sin t)(-b\sin t) - (b\cos t)(-a\cos t)|}{[(-a\sin t)^2 + (b\cos t)^2]^{3/2}} = \frac{ab}{[a^2\sin^2 t + b^2\cos^2 t]^{3/2}}.$$

As you can check, the curvature at each point $P(x, y)$ can be written

$$\kappa = \frac{a^4b^4}{(b^4x^2 + a^4y^2)^{3/2}}. \quad \square$$

Calculating the Curvature of a Space Curve

The generalization of (14.5.3) to space curves

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$$

leads to a complicated formula that is burdensome to state and burdensome to apply. Instead we go back to the definition

$$\kappa = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\right\|.$$

Since

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt} = \frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\frac{ds}{dt},$$

we have

$$\left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt}\right\| = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds}\right\|\frac{ds}{dt} = \kappa\frac{ds}{dt}$$

and therefore

(14.5.5)

$$\boxed{\kappa = \frac{\|d\mathbf{T}/dt\|}{ds/dt}.}$$

Example 4 Calculate the curvature of the circular helix

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + a\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}. \qquad (a > 0)$$

SOLUTION We will use the Leibniz notation. Here

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}, \qquad \frac{ds}{dt} = \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}\right\| = \sqrt{a^2+1}$$

$$\mathbf{T} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}/dt}{\|d\mathbf{r}/dt\|} = \frac{a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{a^2+1}}$$

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt} = \frac{-a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} - a\cos t\,\mathbf{j}}{\sqrt{a^2+1}} \quad \text{and} \quad \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt}\right\| = \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2+1}}.$$

Therefore

$$\kappa = \frac{\|d\mathbf{T}/dt\|}{ds/dt} = \frac{a/\sqrt{a^2+1}}{\sqrt{a^2+1}} = \frac{a}{a^2+1}.$$

The circular helix is a curve of constant curvature. ❑

Components of Acceleration

In straight-line motion, acceleration is purely tangential; that is, the acceleration vector points along the line of the motion. In uniform circular motion, the acceleration is normal; the acceleration vector is perpendicular to the tangent vector and points along the line of the normal vector toward the center of the circle.

In general, acceleration has two components, a tangential component and a normal component. To see this, let's suppose that the position of an object at time t is given by the vector function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Since

$$\mathbf{T} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}/dt}{\|d\mathbf{r}/dt\|} = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{ds/dt},$$

we have

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{ds}{dt}\mathbf{T}.$$

Differentiation gives

$$\mathbf{a} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}\mathbf{T} + \frac{ds}{dt}\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt}.$$

Observe now that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt} \underset{(14.3.5)}{=} \left\|\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{dt}\right\|\mathbf{N} \underset{(14.5.5)}{=} \kappa\frac{ds}{dt}\mathbf{N}.$$

Substitution in the previous display gives

(14.5.6)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{a} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}\mathbf{T} + \kappa\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^2\mathbf{N}.}$$

The acceleration vector lies in the osculating plane, the plane of **T** and **N**. The tangential component of acceleration,

$$a_{\mathbf{T}} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2},$$

depends only on the change of speed of the object; if the speed is constant, the tangential component of acceleration is zero and the acceleration is directed entirely toward the center of curvature of the path. On the other hand, the normal component of acceleration,

$$a_{\mathbf{N}} = \kappa\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^2,$$

depends on both the speed of the object and the curvature of the path. At a point where the curvature is zero, the normal component of acceleration is zero and the acceleration is directed entirely along the path of motion. If the curvature is not zero, then the normal component of acceleration is a multiple of the *square* of the speed. This means, for example, that if you are in a car going around a curve at 50 miles per hour, you will feel *four times* the normal component of acceleration that you would feel going around the same curve at 25 miles per hour.

We can use (14.5.6) to obtain alternative formulas for $a_{\mathbf{T}}$, $a_{\mathbf{N}}$, and the curvature κ.

If we take the dot product of **T** with **a**, we get

$$\mathbf{T}\cdot\mathbf{a} = a_{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{T}\cdot\mathbf{T}) + a_{\mathbf{N}}(\mathbf{T}\cdot\mathbf{N}) = a_{\mathbf{T}}.$$

Therefore,

(14.5.7)
$$\boxed{a_{\mathbf{T}} = \mathbf{T}\cdot\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{a}}{\|\mathbf{v}\|} = \frac{\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{a}}{(ds/dt)}.}$$

Crossing **T** with **a**, we get

$$\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{a} = a_{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{T}) + a_{\mathbf{N}}(\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{N}) = a_{\mathbf{N}}(\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{N})$$

and so

$$\|\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{a}\| = a_{\mathbf{N}}\|\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{N}\| = a_{\mathbf{N}}\|\mathbf{T}\|\,\|\mathbf{N}\|\sin(\pi/2) = a_{\mathbf{N}}.$$

Therefore

(14.5.8)
$$\boxed{a_{\mathbf{N}} = \|\mathbf{T}\times\mathbf{a}\| = \frac{\|\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{a}\|}{\|\mathbf{v}\|} = \frac{\|\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{a}\|}{(ds/dt)}.}$$

Since $a_{\mathbf{N}} = \kappa(ds/dt)^2$, it follows that

(14.5.9)
$$\boxed{\kappa = \frac{\|\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{a}\|}{(ds/dt)^3}.}$$

Example 5 The position of a moving object at time t is given by

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \ln t\,\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t > 0.$$

Find the tangential and normal components of acceleration and the curvature of the path of the object at time $t = 1$.

SOLUTION $\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{v}(t) = \dfrac{1}{t}\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{r}''(t) = -\dfrac{1}{t^2}\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{k}$.

At $t = 1$

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \|\mathbf{v}\| = ds/dt = \sqrt{9} = 3 \qquad \mathbf{a} = -\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{k}$$

$$a_{\mathbf{T}} = \frac{\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{a}}{(ds/dt)} = \frac{-1+4}{3} = 1$$

$$a_{\mathbf{N}} = \frac{\|\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{a}\|}{(ds/dt)} = \frac{1}{3}\left\|\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 2 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\right\| = \tfrac{1}{3}\|4\,\mathbf{i} - 4\,\mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k}\| = \frac{\sqrt{36}}{3} = 2$$

$$\kappa = \frac{\|\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{a}\|}{(ds/dt)^3} = \frac{\sqrt{36}}{27} = \frac{2}{9}. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 14.5

1. A particle moves in a circle of radius a at constant speed v. Find the angular speed and the magnitude of the acceleration.
2. A particle moves so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (a\cos\pi t + bt^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (a\sin\pi t - bt^2)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Find the velocity, speed, acceleration, and the magnitude of the acceleration all at time $t = 1$.

3. A particle moves so that $\mathbf{r}(t) = at\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin at\,\mathbf{j}$. Show that the magnitude of the acceleration of the particle is proportional to its distance from the x-axis.
4. A particle moves so that $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + (t-1)^2\,\mathbf{k}$. At what time is the speed a minimum?

Exercises 5–8. View the curve as the path of a moving object. Sketch the curve. Then calculate and draw in the acceleration vector at the points indicated.

5. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t/\pi)\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t \in [0, 2\pi]$; $\quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi, \pi$.
6. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^3\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t$ treal; $\quad$ at $t = -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, 1$.
7. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sec t\,\mathbf{i} + \tan t\,\mathbf{j}$, $t \in [-\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi)$; at $t = -\frac{1}{6}\pi, 0, \frac{1}{3}\pi$.
8. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sin\pi t\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t \in [0, 2]$; $\quad$ at $t = \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{5}{4}$.
9. An object moves so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x_0\,\mathbf{i} + [y_0 + (\alpha\cos\theta)t]\,\mathbf{j} + [z_0 + (\alpha\sin\theta)t - 16t^2]\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \geq 0.$$

Find (a) the initial position, (b) the initial velocity, (c) the initial speed, (d) the acceleration throughout the motion. Finally, (e) identify the curve.

10. A particle moves so that $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos 2t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\cos t\,\mathbf{j}$. (a) Show that the particle oscillates on an arc of the parabola $4y^2 - 9x = 18$. (b) Draw the path. (c) What are the acceleration vectors at the points of zero velocity? (d) Draw these vectors at the points in question.
11. Let $\mathbf{r}(t)$ be the position vector of a moving particle. Show that $\|\mathbf{r}(t)\|$ is constant iff $\mathbf{r}(t) \perp \mathbf{r}'(t)$.
12. Let $\mathbf{r}(t)$ be the position vector of a moving particle. Show that if the speed of the particle is constant, then the velocity vector is perpendicular to the acceleration vector.

Exercises 13–20. Calculate the curvature from (14.5.4).

13. $y = e^{-x}$.
14. $y = x^3$.
15. $y = \sqrt{x}$.
16. $y = x - x^2$.
17. $y = \ln\sec x$.
18. $y = \tan x$.
19. $y = \sin x$.
20. $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$.

Exercises 21–26. Calculate the curvature at the point indicated.

21. $6y = x^3$; $\quad (2, \frac{4}{3})$.
22. $2y = x^2$; $\quad (0, 0)$.
23. $y^2 = 2x$; $\quad (2, 2)$.
24. $y = 2\sin 2x$; $\quad (\frac{1}{2}\pi, 2)$.
25. $y = \ln(x+1)$; $\quad (2, \ln 3)$.
26. $y = \sec x$; $\quad (\frac{1}{4}\pi, \sqrt{2})$.

27. Find the point of maximal curvature on the curve $y = \ln x$.

28. Find the curvature of the graph of $y = 3x - x^3$ at the point where the function takes on a local maximum.

Exercises 29–36. Express the curvature in terms of t.

29. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{2}t^2\,\mathbf{j}$.

30. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j}$.

31. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + t^3\,\mathbf{j}$.

32. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + t^3\,\mathbf{j}$.

33. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t(\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j})$.

34. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$.

35. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t\cos t)\,\mathbf{i} + (t\sin t)\,\mathbf{j}$.

36. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\cos t + t\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + (\sin t - t\cos t)\,\mathbf{j},\ t > 0$.

37. Find the curvature of the hyperbola $xy = 1$ at the points $(1, 1)$ and $(-1, -1)$.

38. Find the curvature at the vertices of the hyperbola $x^2 - y^2 = 1$.

39. Find the curvature at each point (x, y) on the hyperbola $b^2x^2 - a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$. HINT: The vector function $\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cosh t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sinh t\,\mathbf{j}$ parametrizes the curve.

40. Find the curvature at the highest point of an arch of the cycloid

$$x(t) = r(t - \sin)\,t, \quad y(t) = r(1 - \cos t).$$

Exercises 41–47. Interpret $\mathbf{r}(t)$ as the position of a moving object at time t. Find the curvature of the path and determine the tangential and normal components of acceleration.

41. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + e^t\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + e^t\mathbf{k}$.

42. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sinh t\,\mathbf{i} + \cosh t\,\mathbf{j} + t\mathbf{k}$.

43. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin 2t\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

44. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + \ln t\,\mathbf{k}$.

45. $\cos 3t\,\mathbf{i} + 4t\,\mathbf{j} - \sin 3t\,\mathbf{k}$.

46. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (\cos t + t\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + (\sin t - t\cos t)\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}t^2\,\mathbf{k}$, from $t = 0$ to $t = 2\pi$.

47. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{2}{3}(1+t)^{3/2}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}(1-t)^{3/2}\,\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{2}\,t\,\mathbf{k}$.

C For Exercises 48–49, interpret $\mathbf{r}(t) = 6t\,\mathbf{i} + 3t^2\,\mathbf{j} + 2t^3\,\mathbf{k}$ as the position of a moving object at time t.

48. (a) Use a graphing utility to draw the curve of motion. (b) Use a CAS to find the maximum curvature of the curve.

49. Use a CAS to find the tangential and normal components of the acceleration of the object.

50. Show that the curvature of a polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ is given by

$$\kappa = \frac{|[f(\theta)]^2 + 2[f'(\theta)]^2 - f(\theta)f''(\theta)|}{([f(\theta)]^2 + [f'(\theta)]^2)^{3/2}}.$$

51. Find the curvature of the logarithmic spiral $r = e^{a\theta}$. Take $a > 0$.

52. Find the curvature of the spiral of Archimedes $r = a\theta$. Take $a > 0$.

53. Express the curvature of the cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$ in terms of r.

54. Find the curvature of the petal curve $r = a\sin 2\theta$, $a > 0$.

■ PROJECT 14.5A Transition Curves

In the design of an automobile fender, engineers face the problem of connecting curved pieces in a smooth and elegant manner. In this context problems of the following sort arise.

The total curve of a fender is to be made up of two pieces, each bounded by the graph of a cubic polynomial. The first piece p is to begin at the point $(1, 3)$ and end at the point $(3, 7)$. This requires that $p(1) = 3$ and $p(3) = 7$. The second piece q is to meet the first piece at the point $(3, 7)$ and end at the point $(9, -2)$. This requires that $q(3) = 7$ and $q(9) = -2$. The two pieces must meet smoothly. This requires that $p'(3) = q'(3)$ and $p''(3) = q''(3)$. Finally, the fender must be straight at the ends. This requires that $p''(1) = 0$ and $q''(9) = 0$. A curve that meets such requirements is called a *cubic spline*.

Problem 1. Let

$$p(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \quad \text{and}$$
$$q(x) = \alpha x^3 + \beta x^2 + \gamma x + \delta.$$

Write the system of equations generated by the conditions specified above and use a CAS to find a solution to the system.

Problem 2. Set

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} p(x), & 1 \le x \le 3 \\ q(x), & 3 \le x \le 9. \end{cases}$$

Show that F, F', and F'' are continuous on $[1, 9]$. Does F have continuous curvature? Sketch the graph of F using a graphing utility.

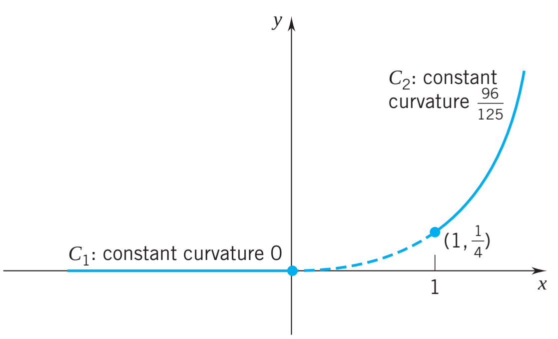
Problem 3. You are given the data in the table:

x	3	4	6
y	10	15	35

a. Define a cubic polynomial p on $[3, 4]$ and a cubic polynomial q on $[4, 6]$ that satisfy the data in the table.

b. Write the 8×8 system of equations as in Problem 1.

c. Use a CAS to solve the system.



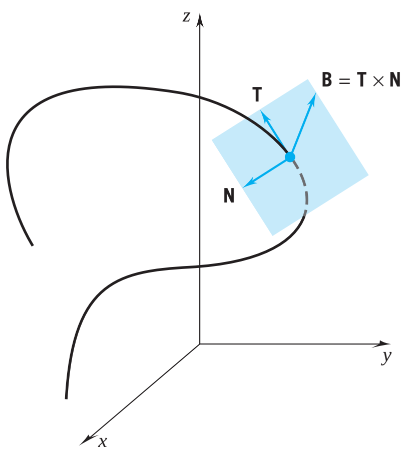
When engineers lay railroad track, they cannot allow any abrupt changes in curvature. To join a straight away that ends at a point P to a curved track that begins at a point Q, they need to lay some *transitional track* that has zero curvature at P and the curvature of the second piece at Q.

Problem 4. Find an arc of the form $y = Cx^n$, $x \in [0, 1]$ that joins the arcs C_1 and C_2 in the figure without any discontinuities in curvature.

■ PROJECT 14.5B The Frenet Formulas

A space curve bends in two ways. It bends in the osculating plane (the plane of the unit tangent **T** and the principal normal **N**) and it bends away from that plane. The first form of bending is measured by the change in **T** per unit of arc length. The magnitude of this change is the curvature κ. The second form of bending is measured by the change in $\mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{N}$ per unit of arc length. Here we examine both forms of bending.

The figure shows a space curve. At a point of the curve we have drawn the unit tangent, **T**, the principal normal, **N**, and the unit vector $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{N}$, which, being normal to both **T** and **N**, is called the *binormal*. At each point of the curve, the vectors **T, N, B** form what is called the *Frenet frame*, a set of mutually perpendicular vectors that, in the order given, form a right-handed coordinate system.



Problem 1. Show that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{T}}{ds} = \kappa\mathbf{N}.$$

Problem 2. Show that $d\mathbf{B}/ds$ is parallel to **N**, and therefore there is a scalar τ[†] for which

$$\frac{d\mathbf{B}}{ds} = \tau\mathbf{N}.$$

HINT: Since **B** has constant length one, $d\mathbf{B}/ds \perp \mathbf{B}$. Show that $d\mathbf{B}/ds \perp \mathbf{T}$ by carrying out the differentiation

$$\frac{d\mathbf{B}}{ds} = \frac{d}{ds}(\mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{N}).$$

Problem 3. Now show that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{N}}{ds} = -\kappa\mathbf{T} - \tau\mathbf{B}.$$

HINT: Since **T, N, B** form a right handed system of mutually perpendicular unit vectors, we can show that

$$\mathbf{N} \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{T} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{T} = \mathbf{N}.$$

You can assume these relations.

Problem 4. The scalar τ is called the *torsion* of the curve. Give a geometric interpretation to $|\tau|$.

[†] τ is the Greek letter "tau."

■ 14.6 VECTOR CALCULUS IN MECHANICS

The tools we have developed in the preceding sections have their premier application in Newtonian mechanics, the study of bodies in motion subject to Newton's laws. The heart of Newton's mechanics is his second law of motion:

$$\text{force} = \text{mass} \times \text{acceleration}.$$

We have worked with Newton's second law, but only in a very restricted context: motion along a coordinate line under the influence of a force directed along that same line. In that special setting, Newton's law was written as a scalar equation: $F = ma$. In general, objects do not move along straight lines (they move along curved paths) and the forces on them vary in direction. What happens to Newton's second law then? It

becomes the vector equation

$$\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}.$$

This is Newton's second law in its full glory.

An Introduction to Vector Mechanics

We are now ready to work with Newton's second law of motion in its vector form: $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. Since at each time t we have $\mathbf{a}(t) = \mathbf{r}''(t)$, Newton's law can be written

(14.6.1)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{F}(t) = m\,\mathbf{a}(t) = m\,\mathbf{r}''(t).}$$

This is a second-order differential equation.

When objects are moving, certain quantities (positions, velocities, and so on) are continually changing. This can make a situation difficult to grasp. In these circumstances it is particularly satisfying to find quantities that do not change. Such quantities are said to be *conserved*. (These conserved quantities are called the *constants of the motion*.) Mathematically we can determine whether a quantity is conserved by looking at its derivative with respect to time (the time derivative): *The quantity is conserved (is constant) iff its time derivative remains zero*. A *conservation law* is the assertion that in a given context a certain quantity does not change.

Momentum

We start with the idea of momentum. The *momentum* $\mathbf{p}$ of an object is the mass of the object times the velocity of the object:

$$\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}.$$

To indicate the time dependence we write

(14.6.2)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{p}(t) = m\mathbf{v}(t) = m\mathbf{r}'(t).}$$

Assume that the mass of the object is constant. Then differentiation gives

$$\mathbf{p}'(t) = m\mathbf{r}''(t) = \mathbf{F}(t).$$

Thus, *the time derivative of the momentum of an object is the net force on the object*. If the net force on an object is continually zero, the momentum $\mathbf{p}(t)$ is constant. This is the law of *conservation of momentum*:

(14.6.3)

If the net force on an object is continually zero, then the momentum of the object is conserved.

Angular Momentum

The angular momentum of an object about any given point is a vector quantity that is intended to measure the extent to which the object is circling about that point. If the position of the object at time t is given by the radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$, then the object's

angular momentum about the origin is defined by the formula

(14.6.4) $$\boxed{\mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times \mathbf{p}(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}(t).}$$

At each time t of a motion, $\mathbf{L}(t)$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{r}(t)$, perpendicular to $\mathbf{v}(t)$, and directed so that $\mathbf{r}(t), \mathbf{v}(t), \mathbf{L}(t)$ form a right-handed triple. The magnitude of $\mathbf{L}(t)$ is given by the relation

$$\|\mathbf{L}(t)\| = \|\mathbf{r}(t)\| \, \|m\mathbf{v}(t)\| \sin\theta(t)$$

where $\theta(t)$ is the angle between $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$. (All this, of course, comes from the definition of the cross product.)

If $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are not zero, then we can express $\mathbf{v}(t)$ as a vector parallel to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ plus a vector perpendicular to $\mathbf{r}(t)$:

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{v}_{\|}(t) + \mathbf{v}_{\perp}(t).$$ (See Figure 14.6.1.)

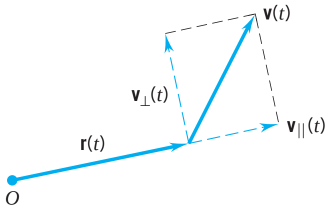


Figure 14.6.1

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{L}(t) &= \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}(t)\\ &= \mathbf{r}(t) \times m[\mathbf{v}_{\|}(t) + \mathbf{v}_{\perp}(t)]\\ &= \underbrace{[\mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}_{\|}(t)]}_{0} + [\mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}_{\perp}(t)]\\ &= \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}_{\perp}(t).\end{aligned}$$

The component of velocity that is parallel to the radius vector contributes nothing to angular momentum. *The angular momentum comes entirely from the component of velocity that is perpendicular to the radius vector*.

Example 1 In uniform circular motion about the origin,

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a(\cos\omega t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\omega t\,\mathbf{j}),$$

the velocity vector $\mathbf{v}(t)$ is always perpendicular to the radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$. In this case all of $\mathbf{v}(t)$ contributes to the angular momentum.

We can calculate $\mathbf{L}(t)$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{L}(t) &= \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}(t)\\ &= [a(\cos\omega t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\omega t\,\mathbf{j})] \times [ma(-\omega\sin\omega t\,\mathbf{i} + \omega\cos\omega t\,\mathbf{j})]\\ &= ma^2\omega(\cos^2\omega t + \sin^2\omega t)\,\mathbf{k} = ma^2\,\omega\,\mathbf{k}.\end{aligned}$$

The angular momentum is constant and is perpendicular to the xy-plane. If the motion is counterclockwise (if $\omega > 0$), then the angular momentum points up from the xy-plane. If the motion is clockwise (if $\omega < 0$), then the angular momentum points down from the xy-plane. (This is the right-handedness of the cross product coming in.) ❏

Example 2 In uniform straight-line motion with constant velocity $\mathbf{d}$,

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d},$$

we have

$$\mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}(t) = (\mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{d}) \times m\mathbf{d} = m(\mathbf{r}_0 \times \mathbf{d}).$$

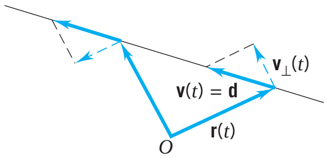


Figure 14.6.2

Here again the angular momentum is constant, but all is not quite so simple as it seems. In Figure 14.6.2 you can see the radius vector $\mathbf{r}(t)$, the velocity vector $\mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{d}$, and the part of the velocity vector that gives rise to angular momentum, the part perpendicular to $\mathbf{r}(t)$. As before, we have called this $\mathbf{v}_\perp(t)$. While $\mathbf{v}(t)$ is constant, $\mathbf{v}_\perp(t)$ is not constant. What happens here is that $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}_\perp(t)$ vary in such a way that the cross product

$$\mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}_\perp(t)$$

remains constant. If the line of motion passes through the origin, then $\mathbf{v}(t)$ is parallel to $\mathbf{r}(t)$, $\mathbf{v}_\perp(t)$ is zero, and the angular momentum is zero. ❏

Torque

How the angular momentum of an object changes in time depends on the force acting on the object and on the position of the object relative to the origin that we are using. Since $\mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{r}'(t)$,

$$\mathbf{L}'(t) = [\mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{r}''(t)] + \underbrace{[\mathbf{r}'(t) \times m\mathbf{r}'(t)]}_{0} = \mathbf{r}(t) \times \mathbf{F}(t).$$

The cross product

(14.6.5) $$\boxed{\tau(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times \mathbf{F}(t)}$$

is called the *torque* about the origin†

Since $\mathbf{L}'(t) = \tau(t)$, we have the following conservation law:

(14.6.6)

If the net torque on an object is continually zero, then the angular momentum of the object is conserved.

A force $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}(t)$ is called a *central force (radial force)* if $\mathbf{F}(t)$ is always parallel to $\mathbf{r}(t)$. (Gravitational force, for example, is a central force.) For a central force, the cross product $\mathbf{r}(t) \times \mathbf{F}(t)$ is always zero. Thus a central force produces no torque about the origin. As you will see, this places severe restrictions on the kind of motion possible under a central force.

THEOREM 14.6.7

If an object moves under a central force and has constant angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ different from zero, then:

1. The object is confined to the plane that passes through the origin and is perpendicular to $\mathbf{L}$.
2. The radius vector of the object sweeps out equal areas in equal times.

(This theorem plays an important role in astronomy and is embodied in Kepler's three celebrated laws of planetary motion. We will study Kepler's laws in Section *14.7.)

†The symbol τ is the Greek letter "tau". The word *torque* comes from the Latin word *torquere*, "to twist."

PROOF OF THEOREM 14.6.7 The first assertion is easy to verify: all the radius vectors pass through the origin, and (by the very definition of angular momentum) they are all perpendicular to the constant vector $\mathbf{L}$.

To verify the second assertion, we introduce a right-handed coordinate system O-xyz setting the xy-plane as the plane of the motion, the positive z-axis pointing along $\mathbf{L}$. On the xy-plane we introduce polar coordinates r, θ. Thus, at time t, the object has some position $[r(t), \theta(t)]$.

Let's denote by $A(t)$ the area swept out by the radius vector from some fixed time t_0 up to time t. Our task is to show that $A'(t)$ is constant.

The area swept out during the time interval $[t, t+h]$ is simply

$$A(t+h) - A(t).$$

Assuming that the motion takes place in the direction of increasing polar angle θ (see Figure 14.6.3), we have with obvious notation,

$$\underbrace{\tfrac{1}{2}\min\,[r(t)]^2 \cdot [\theta(t+h) - \theta(t)]}_{\text{area of inner sector}} \le A(t+h) - A(t) \le \underbrace{\tfrac{1}{2}\max\,[r(t)]^2 \cdot [\theta(t+h) - \theta(t)]}_{\text{area of outer sector}}.$$

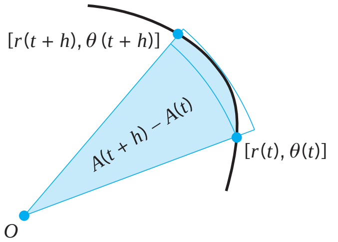


Figure 14.6.3

Divide through by h, take the limit as h tends to 0, and you will see that

$$(*) \qquad A'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}[r(t)]^2\theta'(t).$$

Note that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = r(t)[\cos\theta(t)\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\theta(t)\,\mathbf{j}]$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}(t) &= r'(t)[\cos\theta(t)\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\theta(t)\,\mathbf{j}] + r(t)\theta'(t)[-\sin\theta(t)\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\theta(t)\,\mathbf{j}]\\ &= [r'(t)\cos\theta(t) - r(t)\theta'(t)\sin\theta(t)]\,\mathbf{i} + [r'(t)\sin\theta(t) + r(t)\theta'(t)\cos\theta(t)]\,\mathbf{j}\end{aligned}$$

A calculation that you can carry out yourself shows that

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}(t) = mr^2(t)\theta'(t)\mathbf{k}.$$

Since $\mathbf{L}$ is constant, $r^2(t)\theta'(t)$ is constant. Thus, by $(*)$, $A'(t)$ is constant:

$$A'(t) = L/2m \qquad \text{where} \qquad L = \|\mathbf{L}\|. \quad \square$$

Initial-Value Problems

In physics one tries to make predictions about the future on the basis of current information and a knowledge of the forces at work. In the case of an object in motion, the task can be to determine $\mathbf{r}(t)$ for all t given the force and some "initial conditions." Frequently the initial conditions give the position and velocity of the object at some time t_0. The problem then is to solve the differential equation

$$\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{r}''$$

subject to conditions of the form

$$\mathbf{r}(t_0) = \mathbf{r}_0, \qquad \mathbf{v}(t_0) = \mathbf{v}_0.$$

Such problems are known as initial-value problems. (You saw initial-value problems in several contexts earlier in the text.)

By far the simplest problem of this sort concerns a *free particle*, an object on which there is no net force.

Example 3 At time t_0 a free particle has position $\mathbf{r}(t_0) = \mathbf{r}_0$ and velocity $\mathbf{v}(t_0) = \mathbf{v}_0$. Find $\mathbf{r}(t)$ for all t.

SOLUTION Since there is no net force on the object, the acceleration is zero and the velocity is constant. Since $\mathbf{v}(t_0) = \mathbf{v}_0$,

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = \mathbf{v}_0 \qquad \text{for all } t.$$

Integration with respect to t gives

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\mathbf{v}_0 + \mathbf{c},$$

where $\mathbf{c}$, the constant of integration, is a vector that we can determine from the initial position. The initial position $\mathbf{r}(t_0) = \mathbf{r}_0$ gives

$$\mathbf{r}_0 = t_0\mathbf{v}_0 + \mathbf{c} \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{r}_0 - t_0\mathbf{v}_0.$$

Using this value for $\mathbf{c}$ in our equation for $\mathbf{r}(t)$, we have

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\mathbf{v}_0 + (\mathbf{r}_0 - t_0\mathbf{v}_0),$$

which we write as

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + (t - t_0)\mathbf{v}_0.$$

This is the equation of a straight line with direction vector $\mathbf{v}_0$. Free particles travel in straight lines with constant velocity. (We have tacitly assumed that $\mathbf{v}_0 \neq \mathbf{0}$. If $\mathbf{v}_0 = \mathbf{0}$, the particle remains at rest at $\mathbf{r}_0$.) ❑

Example 4 An object of mass m is subject to a force of the form

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = -m\omega^2\mathbf{r}(t) \qquad \text{with} \qquad \omega > 0.$$

Find $\mathbf{r}(t)$ for all t given that

$$\mathbf{r}(0) = a\,\mathbf{i} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{v}(0) = \omega a\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{with} \qquad a > 0.$$

SOLUTION The force is a vector version of the restoring force exerted by a linear spring (Hooke's law). Since the force is central, the angular momentum of the object, $\mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{r}(t) \times m\mathbf{v}(t)$, is conserved. So $\mathbf{L}(t)$ is constantly equal to the value it had at time $t = 0$; for all t;

$$\mathbf{L}(t) = \mathbf{L}(0) = \mathbf{r}(0) \times m\mathbf{v}(0) = a\,\mathbf{i} \times m\omega a\,\mathbf{j} = ma^2\omega\,\mathbf{k}.$$

From our earlier discussion (Theorem 14.6.7) we can conclude that the motion takes place in the plane that passes through the origin and is perpendicular to $\mathbf{k}$. This is the xy-plane. Thus we can write

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Since $\mathbf{F}(t) = m\mathbf{r}''(t)$, the force equation can be written $\mathbf{r}''(t) = -\omega^2\mathbf{r}(t)$. In terms of components we have

$$x''(t) = -\omega^2 x(t), \qquad y''(t) = -\omega^2 y(t).$$

These are the equations of simple harmonic motion. As you saw in Chapter 9, the general solutions of these equations can be written

$$x(t) = A_1 \sin(\omega t + \phi_1), \qquad y(t) = A_2 \sin(\omega t + \phi_2).$$

To evaluate the constants, we use the initial conditions. The condition $\mathbf{r}(0) = a\,\mathbf{i}$ indicates that $x(0) = a$ and $y(0) = 0$. Therefore

$$(*) \qquad A_1 \sin\phi_1 = a \qquad A_2 \sin\phi_2 = 0.$$

The condition $\mathbf{v}(0) = \omega a\mathbf{j}$ indicates that $x'(0) = 0$ and $y'(0) = \omega a$. Since

$$x'(t) = \omega A_1 \cos(\omega t + \phi_1) \qquad \text{and} \qquad y'(t) = \omega A_2 \cos(\omega t + \phi_2),$$

we have

$$(**) \qquad \omega A_1 \cos\phi_1 = 0, \qquad \omega A_2 \cos\phi_2 = \omega a.$$

Conditions $(*)$ and $(**)$ are met by setting $A_1 = a$, $A_2 = a$, $\phi_1 = \frac{1}{2}\pi$, $\phi_2 = 0$. Thus

$$x(t) = a\sin(\omega t + \tfrac{1}{2}\pi) = a\cos\omega t, \qquad y(t) = a\sin\omega t.$$

The vector equation reads

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos\omega t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin\omega t\,\mathbf{j}.$$

The object moves about the origin in a circle of radius a with constant angular velocity ω. ❑

Example 5 A particle of charge q in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ is subject to the force

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = \frac{q}{c}[\mathbf{v}(t)\times\mathbf{B}(t)]$$

where c is the speed of light and $\mathbf{v}$ is the velocity of the particle. Given that $\mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{r}_0$ and $\mathbf{v}(0) = \mathbf{v}_0$, find the path of the particle in the constant magnetic field $\mathbf{B}(t) = B_0\mathbf{k}$, $B_0 \neq 0$.

SOLUTION There is no conservation law that we can conveniently appeal to here. Neither momentum nor angular momentum is conserved: the force is not zero and it is not central. We start directly from Newton's law $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{r}''$.

Since $\mathbf{r}'' = \mathbf{v}'$, we have

$$m\mathbf{v}'(t) = \frac{q}{c}[\mathbf{v}(t)\times B_0\mathbf{k}],$$

which we can write as

$$\mathbf{v}'(t) = \frac{qB_0}{mc}[\mathbf{v}(t)\times\mathbf{k}].$$

To simplify notation, we set $qB_0/mc = \omega$. We then have

$$\mathbf{v}'(t) = \omega[\mathbf{v}(t)\times\mathbf{k}].$$

Placing $\mathbf{v}(t) = v_1(t)\,\mathbf{i} + v_2(t)\,\mathbf{j} + v_3(t)\,\mathbf{k}$ in this last equation and working out the cross product, we find that

$$v_1'(t)\,\mathbf{i} + v_2'(t)\,\mathbf{j} + v_3'(t)\,\mathbf{k} = \omega[v_2(t)\,\mathbf{i} - v_1(t)\,\mathbf{j}].$$

This gives the scalar equations

$$v_1'(t) = \omega v_2(t), \qquad v_2'(t) = -\omega v_1(t), \qquad v_3'(t) = 0.$$

The last equation is trivial. It says that v_3 is constant:

$$v_3(t) = C.$$

The equations for v_1 and v_2 are linked together. We can get an equation that involves only v_1 by differentiating the first equation:

$$v_1''(t) = \omega v_2'(t) = -\omega^2 v_1(t).$$

As we know from our earlier work, this gives

$$v_1(t) = A_1\sin(\omega t + \phi_1).$$

Since $v_1'(t) = \omega v_2(t)$, we have

$$v_2(t) = \frac{v_1'(t)}{\omega} = \frac{A_1\omega}{\omega}\cos(\omega t + \phi_1) = A_1\cos(\omega t + \phi_1).$$

Therefore

$$\mathbf{v}(t) = A_1 \sin(\omega t + \phi_1)\,\mathbf{i} + A_1 \cos(\omega t + \phi_1)\,\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}.$$

A final integration with respect to t gives

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \left[-\frac{A_1}{\omega}\cos(\omega t + \phi_1) + D_1\right]\mathbf{i} + \left[\frac{A_1}{\omega}\sin(\omega t + \phi_1) + D_2\right]\mathbf{j} + [Ct + D_3]\mathbf{k}$$

where D_1, D_2, D_3 are constants of integration. All six constants of integration—$A_1, \phi_1, C, D_1, D_2, D_3$—can be evaluated from the initial conditions. We will not pursue this. What is important here is that the path of the particle is a circular helix with axis parallel to $\mathbf{B}$, in this case parallel to $\mathbf{k}$. You should be able to see this from the equation for $\mathbf{r}(t)$: the z-component of $\mathbf{r}$ varies linearly with t from the value D_3, while the x- and y-components represent uniform motion with angular velocity ω in a circle of radius $|A_1/\omega|$ around the center (D_1, D_2). ❑

(Physicists express the behavior just found by saying that charged particles *spiral around* the magnetic field lines. Qualitatively, this behavior still holds even if the magnetic field lines are "bent," as is the case with the earth's magnetic field. Many charged particles become trapped by the earth's magnetic field. They keep spiraling around the magnetic field lines that run from pole to pole.)

EXERCISES 14.6

1. An object of mass m moves so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}a(e^{\omega t} + e^{-\omega t})\,\mathbf{i} + \tfrac{1}{2}b(e^{\omega t} - e^{-\omega t})\,\mathbf{j}.$$

(a) What is the velocity at $t = 0$? (b) Show that the acceleration vector is a constant positive multiple of the radius vector. (This shows that the force is central and repelling.) (c) What does (b) imply about the angular momentum and the torque? Verify your answers by direct calculation.

2. (a) An object moves so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a_1 e^{bt}\mathbf{i} + a_2 e^{bt}\mathbf{j} + a_3 e^{bt}\mathbf{k}.$$

Show that, if $b > 0$, the object experiences a repelling central force.

(b) An object moves so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + (\sin t + \cos t)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Show that the object experiences an attracting central force.

(c) Calculate the angular momentum $\mathbf{L}(t)$ for the motion in part (b).

3. A constant force of magnitude α directed upward from the xy-plane is continually applied to an object of mass m. Given that the object starts at time 0 at the point $P(0, y_0, z_0)$ with initial velocity $2\mathbf{j}$, find: (a) the velocity of the object t seconds later; (b) the speed of the object t seconds later; (c) the momentum of the object t seconds later; (d) the path followed by the object, both in vector form and in Cartesian coordinates.

4. Show that, if the force on an object is always perpendicular to the velocity of the object, then the *speed* of the object is constant. (This tells us that the speed of a charged particle in a magnetic field is constant.)

5. Find the force required to propel a particle of mass m so that $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{j} + t^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

6. Show that for an object of constant velocity, the angular momentum is constant.

7. At each point $P(x(t), y(t), z(t))$ of its motion, an object of mass m is subject to a force

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = m\pi^2[a\cos\pi t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin\pi t\,\mathbf{j}]. \qquad (a > 0, b > 0).$$

Given that $\mathbf{v}(0) = -\pi b\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{r}(0) = b\,\mathbf{j}$, find the following at time $t = 1$:

(a) The velocity. (b) The speed.
(c) The acceleration. (d) The momentum.
(e) The angular momentum. (f) The torque.

8. If an object of mass m moves with velocity $\mathbf{v}(t)$ subject to a force $\mathbf{F}(t)$, the scalar product

$$\boxed{\mathbf{F}(t)\cdot\mathbf{v}(t)} \qquad \textbf{(14.6.8)}$$

is called the *power* (expended by the force) and the number

$$\boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}m[v(t)]^2} \qquad \textbf{(14.6.9)}$$

is called the *kinetic energy* of the object. Show that the time rate of change of the kinetic energy of an object is the power expended on it:

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dt}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}m[v(t)]^2\right) = \mathbf{F}(t)\cdot\mathbf{v}(t).} \qquad \textbf{(14.6.10)}$$

9. Two particles of equal mass m, one with constant velocity $\mathbf{v}$ and the other at rest, collide elastically (i.e., the kinetic energy of the system is conserved) and go off in different directions. Show that the two particles go off at right angles.

10. (*Elliptic harmonic motion*) Show that if the force on a particle of mass m is of the form

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = -m\omega^2\mathbf{r}(t),$$

then the path of the particle may be written

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos\omega t\,\mathbf{A} + \sin\omega t\,\mathbf{B}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are constant vectors. Give the physical significance of $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ and specify conditions on $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ that restrict the particle to a circular path.
HINT: The solutions of the differential equation

$$x''(t) = -\omega^2 x(t)$$

can all be written in the form

$$x(t) = A\cos\omega t + B\sin\omega t. \qquad \text{(Chapter 9)}$$

11. A particle moves with constant acceleration $\mathbf{a}$. Show that the path of the particle lies entirely in some plane. Find a vector equation for this plane.

12. In Example 5 we stated that the path

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \left[-\frac{A_1}{\omega}\cos(\omega t + \phi_1) + D_1\right]\mathbf{i} + \left[\frac{A_1}{\omega}\sin(\omega t + \phi_1) + D_2\right]\mathbf{j} + [Ct + D_3]\mathbf{k}$$

was a circular helix. Set $\omega = -1$ and show that, if $\mathbf{r}(0) = a\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{v}(0) = a\mathbf{j} + b\mathbf{k}$, then the path takes the form

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + bt\,\mathbf{k},$$

the circular helix of Example 4, Section 14.3.

13. A charged particle in a time-independent electric field $\mathbf{E}$ experiences the force $q\mathbf{E}$, where q is the charge of the particle. Assume that the field has the constant value $\mathbf{E} = E_0\mathbf{k}$ and find the path of the particle given that $\mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{v}(0) = \mathbf{j}$.

14. (*Important*) A wheel is rotating about an axle with angular speed ω. Let $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ be the *angular velocity vector*, the vector of length ω that points along the axis of the wheel in such a direction that, observed from the tip of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, the wheel rotates counterclockwise. Take the origin as the center of the wheel and let $\mathbf{r}$ be the vector from the origin to a point P on the rim of the wheel. Express the velocity $\mathbf{v}$ of P in terms of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\mathbf{r}$.

15. Solve the initial-value problem

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = m\mathbf{r}''(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_0 = \mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{i}\,,$$
$$\mathbf{v}_0 = \mathbf{v}(0) = \mathbf{k}.$$

16. Solve the initial-value problem

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = m\mathbf{r}''(t) = -m\beta^2 z(t)\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_0 = \mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{k},$$
$$\mathbf{v}_0 = \mathbf{v}(0) = 0.$$

[Here $z(t)$ is the z-component of $\mathbf{r}(t)$.]

17. An object of mass m moves subject to the force

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = 4r^2\mathbf{r}$$

where $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ is the position of the object. Suppose $\mathbf{r}(0) = 0$ and $\mathbf{v}(0) = 2\mathbf{u}$, where $\mathbf{u}$ is a unit vector. Show that at each time t the speed v of the object satisfies the relation

$$v = \sqrt{4 + \frac{2}{m}r^4}.$$

HINT: Examine the quantity $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 - r^4$ (This is the *energy* of the object, a notion we will take up in Chapter 18.)

■ *14.7 PLANETARY MOTION

Tycho Brahe, Johannes Kepler

In the middle of the sixteenth century the arguments on planetary motion persisted. Was Copernicus right? Did the planets move in circles about the sun? Perhaps not. But wasn't the earth the center of the universe?

In 1576, with the generous support of his king, the Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe built an elaborate astronomical observatory on the isle of Hveen and began his painstaking observations. For more than twenty years he looked through his telescopes and recorded what he saw. He was a meticulous observer, but he could draw no definite conclusions.

In 1599 the German astronomer-mathematician Johannes Kepler began his study of Brahe's voluminous tables. For a year and a half Brahe and Kepler worked together. Then Brahe died and Kepler went on wrestling with the data. His persistence paid off. By 1619 Kepler had made three stupendous discoveries, known today as *Kepler's laws of planetary motion*:

> **I.** Each planet moves in a plane, not in a circle, but in an elliptical orbit with the sun at one focus.
> **II.** The radius vector from the sun to the planet sweeps out equal areas in equal times.
> **III.** The square of the period of the motion varies directly as the cube of the major semiaxis, and the constant of proportionality is the same for all the planets.

What Kepler formulated empirically, Newton was able to explain. Each of these laws, Newton showed, was deducible from his laws of motion and his law of gravitation.

Newton's Second Law of Motion for Extended Three-Dimensional Objects

Imagine an object that consists of n particles with masses $m_1, m_2, \ldots, m_n$ located at $\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \ldots \mathbf{r}_n$.[†] The total mass M of the object is the sum of the masses of the constituent particles:

$$M = m_1 + \cdots + m_n.$$

The center of mass of the object is the point $\mathbf{R}_M$ where

$$M\,\mathbf{R}_M = m_1\mathbf{r}_1 + \cdots + m_n\mathbf{r}_n.$$

The total force $\mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}}$ on the object is the sum of all the forces that act on the particles that constitute the object:

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}} = \mathbf{F}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{F}_n.$$

Since $\mathbf{F}_1 = m_1\mathbf{r}_1'', \cdots, \mathbf{F}_n = m_n\mathbf{r}_n''$, we have

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}} = m_1\mathbf{r}_1'' + \cdots + m_n\mathbf{r}_n'',$$

which we can write as

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}} = M\,\mathbf{R}_M''.$$

The total force on an extended object is thus the total mass of the object times the acceleration of the center of mass.

We can simplify this still further. The forces that act between the constituent particles, the so-called internal forces, cancel in pairs: if particle 23 tugs at particle 71 in a certain direction with a certain strength, then particle 71 tugs at particle 23 in the opposite direction with the same strength. (Newton's third law: To every action there is an equal and opposite reaction.) Therefore, in calculating the total force on our object, we can disregard the internal forces and simply add up the external forces. $\mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}} = \mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}}^{(\text{Ext})}$ and Newton's second law takes the form

(*14.7.1) $$\boxed{\mathbf{F}_{\text{TOT}}^{(\text{Ext})} = M\,\mathbf{R}_M''.}$$

The total external force on an extended three-dimensional object is thus the total mass of the object times the acceleration of the center of mass.

[†]The case of a continuously distributed mass is taken up in Chapter 17.

When an external force is applied to an extended object, we cannot predict the reaction of all the constituent particles, but we can predict the reaction of the center of mass. The center of mass will react to the force as if it were a particle with all the mass concentrated there. Suppose, for example, that a bomb is dropped from an airplane. The center of mass, "feeling" only the force of gravity (we are neglecting air resistance), falls in a parabolic arc toward the ground even if the bomb explodes at a thousand meters and individual pieces fly every which way. The forces of explosion are internal and do not affect the motion of the center of mass.

Some Preliminary Comments about the Planets

Roughly speaking, a planet is a massive object in the form of a ball with the center of mass at the center. In what follows, when we refer to the position of a planet, you are to understand that we really mean the position of the center of mass of the planet. Two other points require comment. First, we will write our equations as if the sun affected the motion of the planet, but not vice versa: we will assume that the sun stays put and that the planet moves. Really, each affects the other. Our viewpoint is justified by the immense difference in mass between the planets and the sun. In the case of the earth and the sun, for example, a reasonable analogy is to imagine a tug of war in space between someone who weighs three pounds and someone who weighs a million pounds: to a good approximation, the million-pound person does not move. The second point is that the planet is affected not only by the pull from the sun, but also by the gravitational pulls from the other planets and all the other celestial bodies. But these forces are much smaller, and they tend to cancel. We will ignore them. (Our results are only approximations, but they prove to be very good approximations.)

A Derivation of Kepler's Laws from Newton's Laws of Motion and His Law of Gravitation

The gravitational force exerted by the sun on a planet can be written in vector form as

$$(*) \qquad \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -G\frac{mM}{r^3}\mathbf{r}.$$

Here m is the mass of the planet, M is the mass of the sun, G is the universal gravitational constant, $\mathbf{r}$ is the vector from the center of the sun to the center of the planet, and r is the magnitude of $\mathbf{r}$. (Thus we are placing the sun at the origin of our coordinate system; namely, we are using what is known as a *heliocentric* coordinate system, from *hēlios*, the Greek word for "sun".)

Let's make sure that $(*)$ conforms to our earlier characterization of gravitational force. First of all, because of the minus sign, the direction is toward the origin, where the sun is located. Taking norms we have

$$\|\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r})\| = \frac{GmM}{r^3}\|\mathbf{r}\| \underbrace{=}_{\|\mathbf{r}\| = r} \frac{GmM}{r^2}.$$

Thus the magnitude of the force is as expected: it does vary directly as the product of the masses and inversely as the square of the distance between them. So we are back in familiar territory.

We will derive Kepler's laws in a somewhat piecemeal manner. Since the force on the planet is a central force, $\mathbf{L}$, the angular momentum of the planet, is conserved. (Section 14.6.) If $\mathbf{L}$ were zero, we would have

$$\|\mathbf{L}\| = L = m\|\mathbf{r}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|\sin\theta = 0.$$

This would mean that either $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{0}$, $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$, or $\sin\theta = 0$. The first equation would place the planet at the center of the sun. The second equation could hold only if the planet stopped. The third equation could hold only if the planet moved directly toward the sun or directly away from the sun. We can be thankful that none of those things happen.

Since the planet moves under a central force and $\mathbf{L}$ is not zero, *the planet stays on the plane that passes through the center of the sun and is perpendicular to* $\mathbf{L}$, and the radius vector does sweep out equal areas in equal times. (We know all this from Theorem 14.6.7.)

Now we go on to show that the path is an ellipse with the sun at one focus.† The equation of motion of a planet of mass m can be written

$$m\,\mathbf{a}(t) = -GmM\frac{\mathbf{r}(t)}{[r(t)]^3}.$$

Clearly m drops out of the equation. Setting $GM = \rho$ and suppressing the explicit dependence on t, we have

$$\mathbf{a} = -\rho\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3},$$

which gives

$$(**)\qquad \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\mathbf{a} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt}.$$

From (14.2.4) we know that in general

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right) = (\mathbf{r}\times\mathbf{v})\times\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}.$$

Since $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r}\times m\mathbf{v}$, we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right) = \frac{\mathbf{L}}{m}\times\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}.$$

Inserting $(**)$, we see that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right) = \frac{\mathbf{L}}{m}\times\left(-\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt}\right) = \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt}\times\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\mathbf{v}\times\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\right)$$

$\mathbf{L}$, m, ρ are all constant

and therefore

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left[\left(\mathbf{v}\times\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\right) - \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right] = \mathbf{0}.$$

Integration with respect to t gives

$$(***)\qquad \left(\mathbf{v}\times\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\right) - \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} = \mathbf{e}$$

where $\mathbf{e}$ is a constant vector that depends on the initial conditions. Dotting both sides with $\mathbf{r}$, we have

$$\mathbf{r}\cdot\left(\mathbf{v}\times\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\right) - \frac{\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{r}}{r} = \mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{e}.$$

†If some of the steps seem unanticipated to you, you should realize that we are discussing one of the most celebrated physical problems in history and there have been three hundred years to think of ingenious ways to deal with it. The argument we give here follows the lines of the excellent discussion that appears in Harry Pollard's *Celestial Mechanics*, Mathematical Association of America (1976).

Since

$$\mathbf{r}\cdot\left(\mathbf{v}\times\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\right)=\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\cdot(\mathbf{r}\times\mathbf{v})=\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m\rho}\cdot\frac{\mathbf{L}}{m}=\frac{L^2}{m^2\rho}\qquad\text{and}\qquad\frac{\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{r}}{r}=\frac{r^2}{r}=r,$$

we find that

$$\frac{L^2}{m^2\rho}-r=\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{e},$$

which we write as

$$r+(\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{e})=\frac{L^2}{m^2\rho}.\qquad\text{(orbit equation)}$$

If $\mathbf{e}=0$, the orbit is a circle:

$$r=\frac{L^2}{m^2\rho}.$$

This is a possibility that requires very special initial conditions, conditions not met by any of the planets in our solar system. In our solar system at least, $\mathbf{e}\neq\mathbf{0}$.

Given that $\mathbf{e}\neq\mathbf{0}$, we can write the orbit equation as

(*14.7.2)

$$\boxed{r(1+e\cos\theta)=\frac{L^2}{m^2\rho}}$$

where $e=\|\mathbf{e}\|$ and θ is the angle between $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{e}$. We are almost through. Since $\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{r}$ are both perpendicular to $\mathbf{L}$, we know from $(***)$ that $\mathbf{e}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{L}$. Therefore, in the plane of $\mathbf{e}$ and $\mathbf{r}$ (see Figure 14.7.1) we can interpret r and θ as the usual polar coordinates. The orbit equation [(14.7.2)] is then a polar equation. We refer you to Project 10.3, where it is shown that an equation of the form (14.7.2) represents a conic section with focus at the origin, which is to say *focus at the sun*. Accordingly, the conic section can be a parabola, a hyperbola, or an ellipse. The repetitiveness of planetary motion rules out the parabola and the hyperbola. *The orbit is an ellipse*.

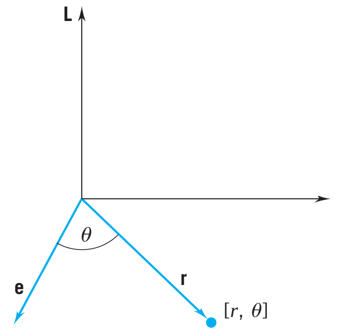


Figure 14.7.1

Finally, we will verify Kepler's third law: The square of the period of the motion varies directly as the cube of the major semiaxis, and the constant of proportionality is the same for all planets.

The elliptic orbit has an equation of the form

$$r(1+e\cos\theta)=ed\qquad\text{with}\qquad 0<e<1,\qquad d>0.$$

Rewriting this equation in rectangular coordinates ($x=r\cos\theta$, $y=r\sin\theta$), we get

$$\frac{(x+c)^2}{a^2}+\frac{y^2}{a^2-c^2}=1,\qquad\text{where}\qquad a=\frac{ed}{1-e^2}\qquad\text{and}\qquad c=\frac{e^2d}{1-e^2}.$$

The lengths of the major and minor semiaxes are as follows:

$$a=\frac{ed}{1-e^2}\qquad\text{and}\qquad b=\sqrt{a^2-c^2}=a\sqrt{1-e^2}.$$

Denote the period of revolution by T. Since the radius vector sweeps out area at the constant rate of $L/2m$ (we know this from the proof of Theorem 14.6.7)

$$\left(\frac{L}{2m}\right)T=\text{area of the ellipse}=\pi ab=\pi a^2\sqrt{1-e^2}.$$

Thus

$$T=\frac{2\pi ma^2\sqrt{1-e^2}}{L}\qquad\text{and}\qquad T^2=\frac{4\pi^2m^2a^4(1-e^2)}{L^2}.$$

From (14.7.2) we know that

$$ed = \frac{L^2}{m^2\rho} = \frac{L^2}{m^2GM} \quad \text{and therefore} \quad \frac{m^2}{L^2} = \frac{1}{edGM}.$$

It follows that

$$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2a^4(1-e^2)}{edGM} = \frac{4\pi^2a^4(1-e^2)}{\underset{\uparrow\, ed = a(1-e^2)}{a(1-e^2)GM}} = \frac{4\pi^2}{GM}a^3.$$

T^2 does vary directly with a^3, and the constant of proportionality $4\pi^2/GM$ is the same for all planets.

EXERCISES 14.7

1. Kepler's third law can be stated as follows: For each planet the square of the period of revolution varies directly as the cube of the planet's average distance from the sun, and the constant of proportionality is the same for all planets. A *year* on a given planet is the time taken by the planet to make one circuit around the sun. Thus, a year on a planet is the period of revolution of that planet. Given that on average Venus is 0.72 times as far from the sun as the earth, how does the length of a "Venus year" compare with the length of an "earth year"?

2. Verify by differentiation with respect to time t that if the acceleration of a planet is given by

$$\mathbf{a} = -\rho\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3},$$

then the energy $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \dfrac{m\rho}{r}$ is constant.

3. Given that a planet moves in a plane, its motion can be described by rectangular coordinates (x, y) or polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$, with the origin at the sun. The kinetic energy of a planet is

$$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}m\left[\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2\right].$$

Show that in polar coordinates

$$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}m\left[\left(\frac{dr}{dt}\right)^2 + r^2\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right].$$

4. We have seen that the energy of a planet

$$E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{m\rho}{r}$$

is constant (Exercise 2). Setting $dr/dt = \dot{r}$, $d\theta/dt = \dot{\theta}$, and using Exercise 3, we have

$$E = \frac{1}{2}m(\dot{r}^2 + r^2\dot{\theta}^2) - \frac{m\rho}{r}.$$

We also know that the angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ is constant and that $L = mr^2\dot{\theta}$. Use this fact to verify that

$$E = \frac{L^2}{2m}\left\{\frac{1}{r^2} + \frac{1}{r^4}\left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2\right\} - \frac{m\rho}{r}.$$

Since E is a constant, this is a differential equation for r as a function of θ.

5. Show that the function

$$r = \frac{a}{1 + e\cos\theta} \quad \text{with} \quad a = \frac{L^2}{m^2\rho} \quad \text{and} \quad e^2 = \frac{2Ea}{m\rho} + 1$$

satisfies the equation derived in Exercise 4.

CHAPTER 14. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–4. Calculate the first and second derivatives.

1. $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3t^2\,\mathbf{i} - 5t^3\,\mathbf{j}$.

2. $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^{2t}\,\mathbf{i} + \ln(t^2+1)\,\mathbf{j}$.

3. $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^t\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - \cos 2t\,\mathbf{j} + 3\,\mathbf{k}$.

4. $\mathbf{f}(t) = \sinh t\,\mathbf{i} - t^2e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j} + \cosh t\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 5–6. Evaluate.

5. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 [2t\,\mathbf{i} + (t^2-1)\,\mathbf{j}]\,dt$.

6. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi} [\sin 2t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{k}]\,dt$.

Exercises 7–10. Sketch the curve traced out by the tip of the radius vector and indicate the direction in which the curve is traversed as t increases.

7. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t^2\,\mathbf{i} - t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t \geq 0$.

8. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^{-t}\,\mathbf{i} + 2e^{2t}\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t$ real.

9. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + 4\cos t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$.

10. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j} + \sin t\,\mathbf{k}$, $\quad t \geq 0$.

11. Define a vector function $\mathbf{r}$ on the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ that traces out the ellipse $16x^2 + 4y^2 = 64$ in the manner indicated.

(a) Once in the counterclockwise direction starting at the point (0, 4).
(b) Twice in the clockwise direction starting at the point (−2, 0).

12. Define a vector function $\mathbf{r}$ that traces out the directed line segment from (1, 1, −2) to (3, 5, 4).

13. Find $\mathbf{f}(t)$ given that $\mathbf{f}'(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + (e^{2t} + 1)\,\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{1+2t}\,\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j} + 3\,\mathbf{k}$.

14. Find $\mathbf{f}(t)$ given that $\mathbf{f}'(t) = -\mathbf{f}(t)$ for all t and $\mathbf{f}(0) = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 15–18. Calculate $\mathbf{f}'(t)$.

15. $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3(2t\,\mathbf{i} + t^4\,\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) + 4(t^2\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 3t\,\mathbf{k})$.

16. $\mathbf{f}(t) = [(e^{2t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-2t}\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot (e^{-t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{2t}\,\mathbf{j})]\,\mathbf{j}$.

17. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} - (1/t)\,\mathbf{k}) \times ([1/t]\,\mathbf{i} + t^3\,\mathbf{j} + 2t\,\mathbf{k})$.

18. $\mathbf{f}(t) = [(t^3\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot (\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j} + 3\cos t\,\mathbf{k})]\,\mathbf{k}$.

19. An object moves along a curve C in such a manner that the tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ is always $2\mathbf{r}(t)$. Find parametric equations for C given that $\mathbf{r}(0) = (1, 2, 1)$. Sketch the curve.

20. Set $\mathbf{F}(t) = e^{2t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-2t}\,\mathbf{j}$. Show that $\mathbf{F}(t)$ and $\mathbf{F}''(t)$ are parallel for all t. Is there a value of t for which $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{F}'$ have the same direction?

Exercises 21–22. Find the tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ at the indicated point and parametrize the tangent line at that point.

21. $\mathbf{r}(t) = (t^2 + 2t + 1)\,\mathbf{i} + (3t + 1)\,\mathbf{j} + (t^3 + t + 1)\,\mathbf{k}$ at $P(1, 1, 1)$.

22. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sin 2t\;\mathbf{i} + \cos 2t\;\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$ at $t = \pi/3$.

23. Show that the curves

$$\mathbf{r}_1(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{r}_2(u) = (1-u)\mathbf{i} + (2-u^2)\,\mathbf{j} + u^2\,\mathbf{k}$$

intersect at the point (2, 1, 1) and find the angle of intersection. Express your answer in radians.

24. Find the points, if any, on the curve $\mathbf{r}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + (1-t^2)\,\mathbf{j} - t^2\,\mathbf{k}$ at which $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and the line tangent to the curve meet at right angles.

Exercises 25–26. Sketch the curve showing the direction of the curve and displaying both $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ at the value of t indicated.

25. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + e^{2t}\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = 0$.

26. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2\sin t\,\mathbf{i} - 3\cos t\,\mathbf{j}$; $t = \pi/6$.

27. Find the unit tangent and principal normal for the elliptical helix

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (\cos t + t\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + (\sin t - t\cos t)\,\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}\,t^2\,\mathbf{k}.$$

28. Show that along the circular helix $\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + bt\,\mathbf{k}$. the angle between $\mathbf{k}$ and the tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$ remains constant.

Exercises 29–30. Find the unit tangent, the principal normal, and write an equation in x, y, z for the osculating plane at the point on the curve that corresponds to the indicated value of t.

29. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \ln t\,\mathbf{j} - t^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $t = 1$.

30. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} - \sqrt{2}\sin t\,\mathbf{k}$; $t = \pi/4$.

Exercises 31–34. Find the length of the curve.

31. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}t^{3/2}\,\mathbf{j}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 5$.

32. $\mathbf{r}(t) = e^t\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\mathbf{j} - t\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \ln 3$.

33. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \sinh t\,\mathbf{i} + \cosh t\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$.

34. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \cosh t\,\mathbf{k}$ from $t = 0$ to $t = \ln 2$.

35. Set $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{2}{3}t^{3/2}\mathbf{k}$.

(a) Determine the arc length s from $\mathbf{r}(0)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ by evaluating the integral

$$s = \int_0^t \sqrt{(dx/du)^2 + (dy/du)^2 + (dz/du)^2}\,du.$$

(b) Use the relation found in part (a) to express t as a function of s, $t = \varphi(s)$, and find $\mathbf{R}(s) = \mathbf{r}(\varphi(s))$.
(c) Show that $\|\mathbf{R}'(s)\| = 1$.

36. A particle moves so that $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j} - \cos 2t\,\mathbf{k}$. Find the velocity, speed, acceleration, and the magnitude of the acceleration at time t.

37. Find the position, velocity, and speed of an object with initial velocity $\mathbf{v}_0 = \mathbf{k}$, initial position $\mathbf{r}_0 = \mathbf{i}$, and acceleration $\mathbf{a}(t) = -\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - \sin t\,\mathbf{j}$.

38. A particle moves along a path of the form $\mathbf{r}(t) = f(t)\mathbf{i} + f^2(t)\mathbf{j}$ where f is a twice differentiable function. What condition on f ensures that the acceleration vector remains perpendicular to the path of the motion?

Exercises 39–44. Calculate the curvature.

39. $y = x^{3/2}$.

40. $y = \cos 2x$.

41. $x(t) = 2e^{-t}$, $y(t) = e^{-2t}$.

42. $x(t) = \frac{1}{3}t^3$, $y(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2$.

43. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos 3t\,\mathbf{i} - 4t\,\mathbf{j} + \sin 3t\,\mathbf{k}$.

44. $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{2}\,t^{3/2}\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}t^2\mathbf{k}$.

45. Show that the curvature at each point (x, y) of the catenary $y = a\cosh(x/a)$ the curvature is a/y^2.

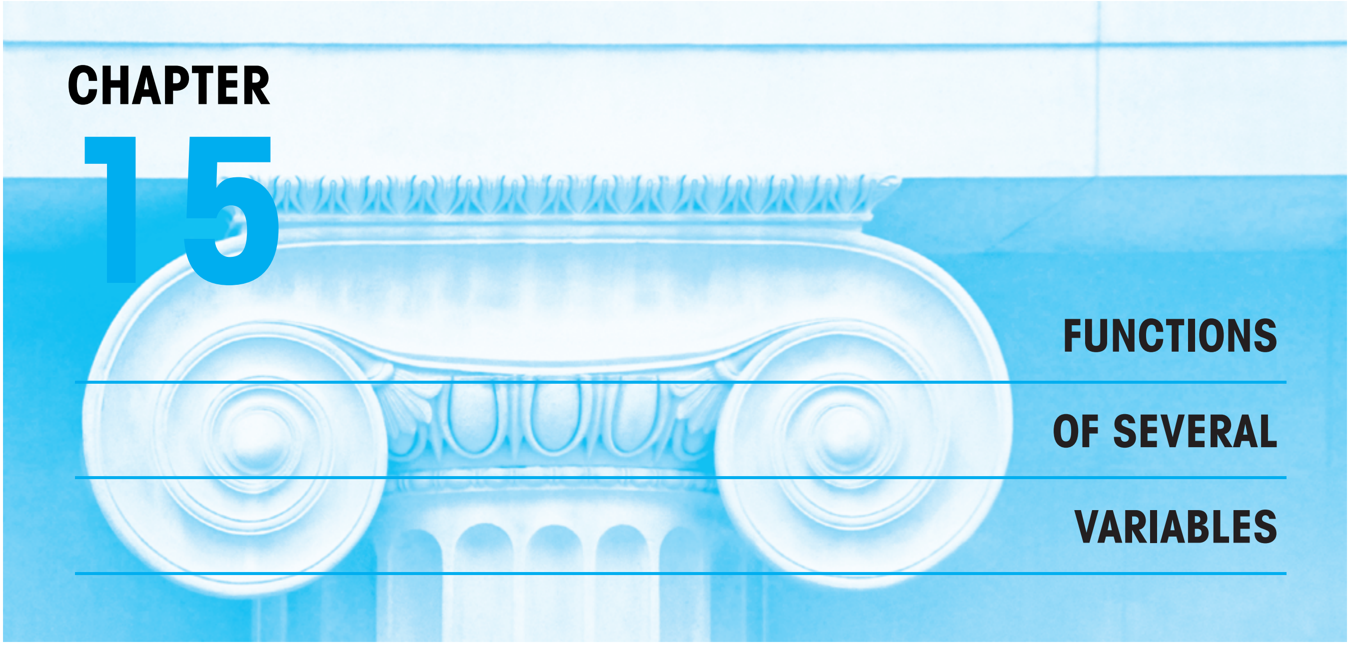
46. An object moves at constant speed.

(a) Show that the acceleration vector $\mathbf{a}$ remains perpendicular to the velocity vector $\mathbf{v}$.
(b) Express the curvature of the path of the motion in terms of $\|\mathbf{v}\|$ and $\|\mathbf{a}\|$.

Exercises 47–48. Interpret $\mathbf{r}(t)$ as the position of a moving object at time t. Find the curvature of the path and determine the tangential and normal components of acceleration.

47. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{4}{5}\cos t\,\mathbf{i} - \frac{3}{5}\cos t\,\mathbf{j} + (1 + \sin t)\,\mathbf{k}$.

48. $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{3}t^3\mathbf{k}$.



CHAPTER 15
FUNCTIONS OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

15.1 ELEMENTARY EXAMPLES

First a remark on notation. Points $P(x, y)$ of the xy-plane will be written (x, y) and points $P(x, y, z)$ of three-space will be written (x, y, z).

Let D be a nonempty subset of the xy-plane. A function f that assigns a real number $f(x, y)$ to each point in D is called a *real-valued function of two variables*. The set D is called the *domain of* f, and the set of all values $f(x, y)$ is called the *range of* f.

Example 1 Take D as the entire xy-plane and to each point (x, y) assign the number

$$f(x, y) = xy. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Take D as the set of all points (x, y) with $y \neq 0$. To each such point assign the number

$$f(x, y) = \arctan\left(\frac{x}{y}\right). \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Take D as the *open unit disk*: $D = \{(x, y) : x^2 + y^2 < 1\}$. The set consists of all points which lie inside the *unit circle* $x^2 + y^2 < 1$; the circle itself is not part of the set.[†] To each point (x, y) in D assign the number

$$f(x, y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (x^2 + y^2)}}. \quad ❑$$

Now let D be a nonempty subset of three-space. A function f that assigns a real number $f(x, y, z)$ to each point (x, y, z) in D is called a *real-valued function of three variables*. The set D is called the *domain of* f, and the set of all values $f(x, y, z)$ is called the *range of* f.

[†]The *closed unit disk* $D = \{x^2 + y^2 \leq 1\}$ consists of all points which lie on or inside the unit circle; the circle is part of the set.

Example 4 Take D as all of three-space and to each point (x, y, z) assign the number

$$f(x, y, z) = xyz\,. \quad \square$$

Example 5 Take D as the set of all points (x, y, z) with $z \neq x + y$. (Thus D consists of all points not on the plane $x + y - z = 0$.) To each point of D assign the number

$$f(x, y, z) = \cos\left(\frac{1}{x + y - z}\right). \quad \square$$

Example 6 Take D as the *open unit ball*: $D = \{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 + z^2 < 1\}$. This set consists of all points which lie inside the *unit sphere* $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 < 1$; the sphere itself is not part of the set.† To each point (x, y, z) in D assign the number

$$f(x, y, z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)}}. \quad \square$$

Functions of several variables arise naturally in very elementary settings.

$f(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ gives the distance between (x, y) and the origin;
$f(x, y) = xy$ gives the area of a rectangle of dimensions x, y; and
$f(x, y) = 2(x + y)$ gives the perimeter.
$f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$ gives the distance between (x, y, z) and the origin;
$f(x, y, z) = xyz$ gives the volume of a rectangular solid of dimensions x, y, z; and
$f(x, y, z) = 2(xy + xz + yz)$ gives the total surface area.

Many notions in the physical sciences and the social sciences are conveniently expressed by functions of several variables. Some examples follow.

A mass M exerts a gravitational force on a mass m. According to the *law of universal gravitation*, if M is located at the origin of our coordinate system and m is located at (x, y, z), then the magnitude of the gravitational force is given by the function

$$F(x, y, z) = \frac{GmM}{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} \qquad \text{(3 variables: } x, y, z\text{)}$$

where G is the universal gravitational constant.

According to the *ideal gas law*, the pressure P of a gas enclosed in a container varies directly with the temperature T of the gas and varies inversely with the volume V of the container. Thus P is given by a function of the form

$$P(T, V) = k\,\frac{T}{V}. \qquad \text{(2 variables: } T, V\text{)}$$

An investment A_0 is made at continuous compounding at interest rate r. Over time t the investment grows to have value

$$A(t, r) = A_0 e^{rt}. \qquad \text{(2 variables: } r, t\text{)}$$

You saw this in Section 7.6.

†The *closed unit ball* $D = \{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \leq 1\}$ consists of all points which lie on or inside the unit sphere; the sphere is part of the set.

Remark The notion of function does not stop at three variables. As you heat a metal slab, its overall temperature increases. The function f that gives the temperature T at $P(x, y, z)$ at time t is a function of four variables:

$$T = f(x, y, z, t).$$

In Section 13.7 we introduced the algebra of n-tuples. By assigning a real number $f(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ to each n-tuple $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ we create a real-valued function of n variables.

In this text we'll concentrate on the basics: functions of one variable, two variables, three variables. Once you have a firm grasp of this material, you can readily go on to more complicated settings. ❑

If the domain of a function of several variables is not explicitly given, it is to be understood that the domain is the maximal set of points for which the definition generates a real number. Thus, in the case of

$$f(x, y) = \frac{1}{x - y},$$

the domain is understood to be all points (x, y) with $y \neq x$; that is, all points of the plane not on the line $y = x$. In the case of

$$g(x, y, z) = \arcsin(x + y + z),$$

the domain is understood to be all points (x, y, z) with $-1 \leq x + y + z \leq 1$. This set is the slab bounded by the parallel planes

$$x + y + z = -1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x + y + z = 1.$$

To say that a function is *bounded* is to say that its range is bounded. Since the function

$$f(x, y) = \frac{1}{x - y}$$

takes on all values other than 0, its range is $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$. The function is unbounded. In the case of

$$g(x, y, z) = \arcsin(x + y + z),$$

the range is the closed interval $[-\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi]$. This function is bounded, below by $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and above by $\frac{1}{2}\pi$.

Example 7 Find the domain and range of the function $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{4x^2 - y^2}}$.

SOLUTION A point (x, y) is in the domain of f iff $4x^2 - y^2 > 0$. This occurs iff

$$y^2 < 4x^2 \qquad \text{and thus iff} \qquad -2|x| < y < 2|x|.$$

The domain of f is the region shaded in Figure 15.1.1. It consists of all points of the xy-plane that lie between the graph of $y = -2|x|$ and the graph of $y = 2|x|$. On this set $\sqrt{4x^2 - y^2}$ takes on all positive values, and so does its reciprocal $f(x, y)$. The range of f is $(0, \infty)$. ❑

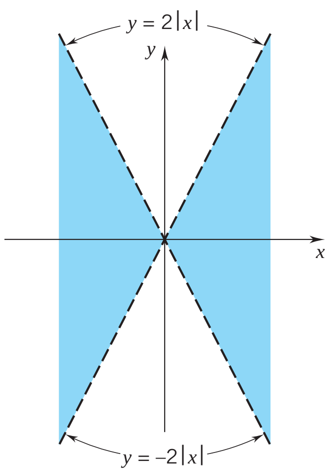


Figure 15.1.1

EXERCISES 15.1

Exercises 1–22. Find the domain and range of the function.

1. $f(x, y) = \sqrt{xy}$.

2. $f(x, y) = \sqrt{1 - xy}$.

3. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{x + y}$.

4. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 + y^2}$.

5. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{e^x - e^y}{e^x + e^y}$.

6. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2 + y^2}$.

7. $f(x, y) = \ln xy$.

8. $f(x, y) = \ln(1 - xy)$.

9. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{y - x^2}}$.

10. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{\sqrt{9 - x^2}}{1 + \sqrt{1 - y^2}}$.

11. $f(x, y) = \sqrt{9 - x^2} - \sqrt{4 - y^2}$.

12. $f(x, y, z) = \cos x + \cos y + \cos z$.

13. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{x + y + z}{|x + y + z|}$.

14. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{z^2}{x^2 - y^2}$.

15. $f(x, y, z) = -\dfrac{z^2}{\sqrt{x^2 - y^2}}$.

16. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{z}{x - y}$.

17. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{9 - (x^2 + y^2)}}$.

18. $f(x, y, z) = \ln(|x + 2y + 3z| + 1)$.

19. $f(x, y, z) = \ln(x + 2y + 3z)$.

20. $f(x, y, z) = e^{\sqrt{4-(x^2+y^2+z^2)}}$.

21. $f(x, y, z) = e^{-(x^2+y^2+z^2)}$.

22. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{\sqrt{1 - x^2} + \sqrt{4 - y^2}}{1 + \sqrt{9 - z^2}}$.

23. Let $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, $g(x, y) = \sqrt{x}$, $h(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x}$. Determine the domain and range of each function and compare the results.

24. Determine the domain and range of each of the functions and compare the results.
(a) $f(x, y) = \cos \pi x \sin \pi y$ (b) $g(x, y, z) = \cos \pi x \sin \pi y$

Exercises 25–30. Take $h \neq 0$ and form the difference quotients

$$\frac{f(x + h, y) - f(x, y)}{h} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{f(x, y + h) - f(x, y)}{y}.$$

Fix x and y and calculate the limits of these quotients as $h \to 0$.

25. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 - y$.

26. $f(x, y) = xy + 2y$.

27. $f(x, y) = 3x - xy + 2y^2$

28. $f(x, y) = x \sin y$.

29. $f(x, y) = \cos(xy)$.

30. $f(x, y) = x^2 e^y$.

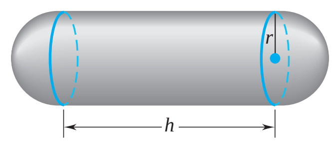
31. Express as a function of two variables.
(a) The volume of a box of base area A and height y.
(b) The volume of a right circular cylinder of base radius x and height y.
(c) The area of a parallelogram formed by the vectors $2\,\mathbf{i}$ and $x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$.

32. Express as a function of three variables.
(a) The surface area of a box with no top and with sides of lengths x, y, z.
(b) The angle between the vectors $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.
(c) The volume of the parallelepiped formed by the vectors $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

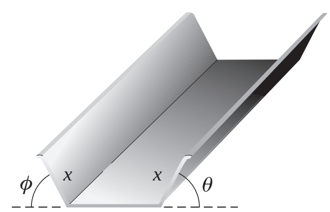
33. A closed box is to have a total surface area of 20 square feet. Express the volume V of the box as a function of the length l and the height h.

34. An open box is to contain a volume of 12 cubic meters. Given that the material for the sides of the box costs \$2 per square meter and the material for the bottom costs \$4 per square meter, express the total cost C of the box as a function of the length l and width w.

35. A petrochemical company is designing a cylindrical tank with hemispherical ends to be used in the transportation of its products. (See the figure.) Express the volume of the tank as a function of the radius r and the length h of the cylindrical portion.



36. A 10-foot section of gutter is to be made from a 12-inch-wide strip of metal by folding up strips of length x on each side so that they make an angle θ with the bottom of the gutter. (See the figure.) Express the area of the trapezoidal cross section as a function of x and θ.



■ 15.2 A BRIEF CATALOGUE OF THE QUADRIC SURFACES; PROJECTIONS

The curves in the xy-plane defined by equations in x and y of the second degree are the conic sections: circle, ellipse, parabola, hyperbola. The surfaces in three-dimensional space defined by equations in x, y, z of the second degree,

$$(*) \qquad Ax^2 + By^2 + Cz^2 + Dxy + Exz + Fyz + Hx + Iy + Jz + K = 0,$$

are called the *quadric surfaces*. Equation ($*$) contains terms in xy, xz, yz. These terms can be eliminated by a suitable change of coordinates. Thus, for our purposes, the quadric surfaces are given by equations of the form

$$Ax^2 + By^2 + Cz^2 + Dx + Ey + Fz + H = 0$$

with A, B, C not all zero. (If A, B, C are all zero, we don't have an equation of the second degree.)

The quadric surfaces can be viewed as the three-space analogs of the conic sections. They fall into nine distinct types.†

1. The ellipsoid.
2. The hyperboloid of one sheet.
3. The hyperboloid of two sheets.
4. The elliptic cone.
5. The elliptic paraboloid.
6. The hyperbolic paraboloid.
7. The parabolic cylinder.
8. The elliptic cylinder.
9. The hyperbolic cylinder.

As you go on with calculus in three-space, you will encounter these surfaces time and time again. Here we give you a picture of each one, together with its equation in standard form and some information about its special properties. These are some of the things to look for:

(a) The *intercepts* (the points at which the surface intersects the coordinate axes).
(b) The *traces* (the intersections with the coordinate planes).
(c) The *sections* (the intersections with planes in general).
(d) The *center* (some quadrics have a center; some do not).
(e) *Symmetry*.
(f) *Boundedness, unboundedness.*

Throughout this section you can take a, b, c as positive constants.

The Ellipsoid

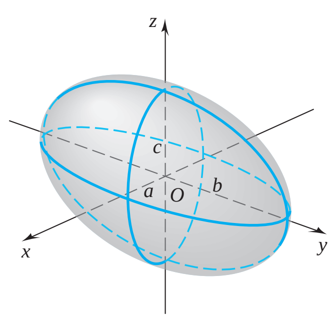


Figure 15.2.1

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.1)}$$

The ellipsoid is centered at the origin and is symmetric about the three coordinate axes. It intersects the coordinate axes at six points: $(\pm a, 0, 0)$, $(0, \pm b, 0)$, $(0, 0, \pm c)$. These points are called the *vertices*. The surface is bounded, being contained in the ball $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le a^2 + b^2 + c^2$. All three traces are ellipses; thus, for example, the trace in the xy-plane (the set $z = 0$) is the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

†There is no reason to commit these surfaces to memory. We are creating a catalogue to which you can refer as needed. You'll become familiar with these surfaces by working with them.

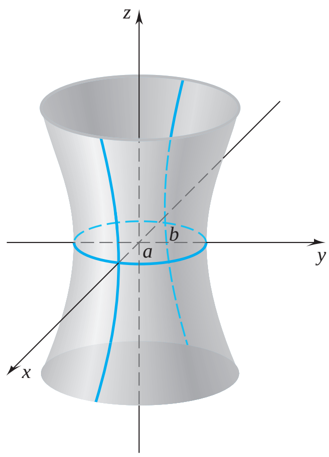
Sections parallel to the coordinate planes are also ellipses; for example, taking $y = y_0$, we have

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1 - \frac{y_0^2}{b^2}.$$

This ellipse is the intersection of the ellipsoid with the plane $y = y_0$. The numbers a, b, c are called the *semiaxes* of the ellipsoid. If two of the semiaxes are equal, then we have an *ellipsoid of revolution*. (If, for example, $a = c$, then all sections parallel to the xz-plane are circles and the surface can be obtained by revolving the trace in the xy-plane about the y-axis.) If all three semiaxes are equal, the surface is a *sphere*.

The Hyperboloid of One Sheet

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.2)}$$



hyperboloid of one sheet

Figure 15.2.2

The surface is unbounded. It is centered at the origin and is symmetric about the three coordinate planes. The surface intersects the coordinate axes at four points: $(\pm a, 0, 0)$, $(0, \pm b, 0)$. The trace in the xy-plane (set $z = 0$) is the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Sections parallel to the xy-plane are ellipses. The trace in the xz-plane (set $y = 0$) is the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1,$$

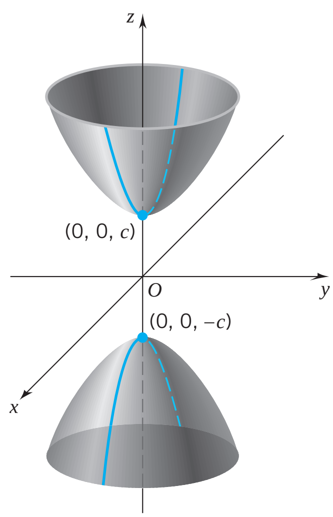
and the trace in the yz-plane (set $x = 0$) is the hyperbola

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

Sections parallel to the xz-plane and the yz-plane are hyperbolas. If $a = b$, sections parallel to the xy-plane are circles and we have a *hyperboloid of revolution*.

The Hyperboloid of Two Sheets

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = -1. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.3)}$$



hyperboloid of two sheets

Figure 15.2.3

The surface intersects the coordinate axes only at the two vertices $(0, 0, \pm c)$. The surface consists of two parts: one for which $z \geq c$, another for which $z \leq -c$. We can see this by rewriting the equation as

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{z^2}{c^2} - 1.$$

The equation requires

$$\frac{z^2}{c^2} - 1 \geq 0, \qquad z^2 \geq c^2, \qquad |z| \geq c.$$

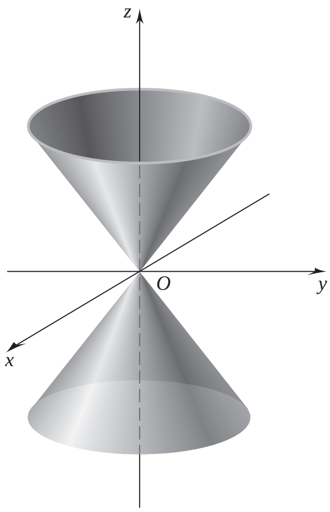
Each of the two parts is unbounded. Sections parallel to the xy-plane are ellipses: setting $z = z_0$ with $|z_0| \geq c$, we have

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{z_0^2}{c^2} - 1.$$

If $a = b$, then all sections parallel to the xy-plane are circles and we have a hyperboloid of revolution. Sections parallel to the other coordinate planes are hyperbolas; for example, setting $y = y_0$, we have

$$\frac{z^2}{c^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1 + \frac{y_0^2}{b^2}.$$

The entire surface is symmetric about the three coordinate planes and is centered at the origin.



elliptic cone

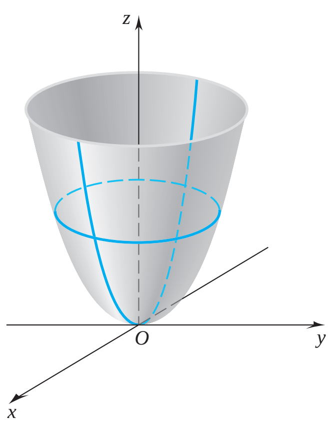
Figure 15.2.4

The Elliptic Cone

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = z^2. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.4)}$$

The surface intersects the coordinate axes only at the origin. The surface is unbounded. Once again there is symmetry about the three coordinate planes. The trace in the xz-plane is a pair of intersecting lines: $z = \pm x/a$. The trace in the yz-plane is also a pair of intersecting lines: $z = \pm y/b$. The trace in the xy-plane is just the origin. Sections parallel to the xy-plane are ellipses. If $a = b$, these sections are circles and we have a surface of revolution, what is commonly called a *double circular cone* or simply a *cone*. The upper and lower portions of the cone are called *nappes*.

We come now to the *paraboloids*. The equations in standard form will involve x^2 and y^2, but then z instead of z^2.



elliptic paraboloid

Figure 15.2.5

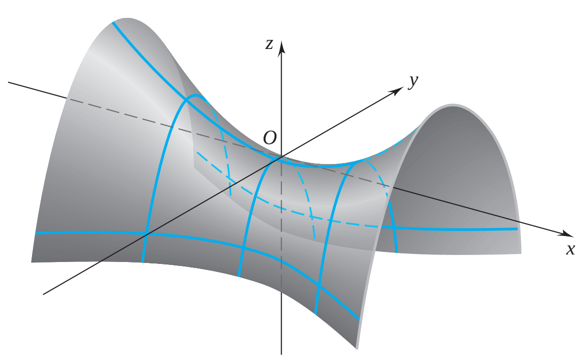
The Elliptic Paraboloid

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = z. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.5)}$$

The surface does not extend below the xy-plane; it is unbounded above. The origin is called the *vertex*. Sections parallel to the xy-plane are ellipses; sections parallel to the other coordinate planes are parabolas. Hence the term “elliptic paraboloid.” The surface is symmetric about the xz-plane and about the yz-plane. It is also symmetric about the z-axis. If $a = b$, then the surface is a *paraboloid of revolution*.

The Hyperbolic Paraboloid

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = z. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.6)}$$



hyperbolic paraboloid

Figure 15.2.6

Here there is symmetry about the xz-plane and yz-plane. Sections parallel to the xy-plane are hyperbolas; sections parallel to the other coordinate planes are parabolas. Hence the term "hyperbolic paraboloid." The origin is a minimum point for the trace in the xz-plane but a maximum point for the trace in the yz-plane. The origin is called a *minimax* or *saddle point* of the surface.

The rest of the quadric surfaces are *cylinders*. The term deserves definition. Take any plane curve C. All the lines through C that are perpendicular to the plane of C form a surface. Such a surface is called a *cylinder*, the cylinder with *base curve* C. The perpendicular lines are known as the *generators* of the cylinder.

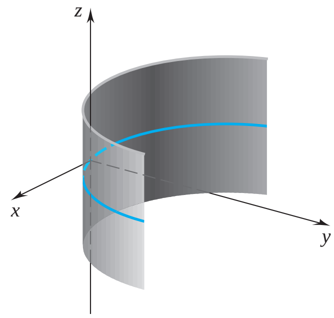
If the base curve lies in the xy-plane (or in a plane parallel to the xy-plane), then the generators of the cylinder are parallel to the z-axis. In such a case the equation of the cylinder involves only x and y. The z-coordinate is left unrestricted; it can take on all values.

There are three basic types of quadric cylinders. We give you their equations in standard form: base curve in the xy-plane, generators parallel to the z-axis.

The Parabolic Cylinder

$$x^2 = 4cy. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.7)}$$

This surface is formed by all lines that pass through the parabola $x^2 = 4cy$ and are perpendicular to the xy-plane.



parabolic cylinder

Figure 15.2.7

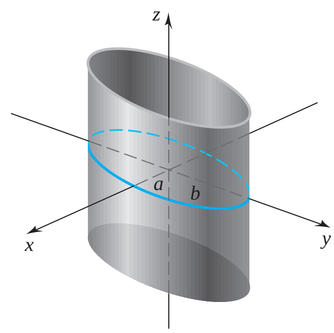
The Elliptic Cylinder

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.8)}$$

The surface is formed by all lines that pass through the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

and are perpendicular to the xy-plane. If $a = b$, we have the common *right circular cylinder*.

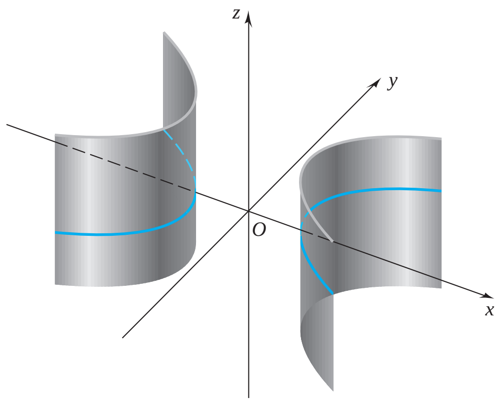


elliptic cylinder

Figure 15.2.8

The Hyperbolic Cylinder

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.2.9)}$$



hyperbolic cylinder

Figure 15.2.9

The surface has two parts, each generated by a branch of the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Projections

Suppose that $S_1 : z = f(x, y)$ and $S_2 : z = g(x, y)$ are surfaces in three-space that intersect in a space curve C. (See Figure 15.2.10.)

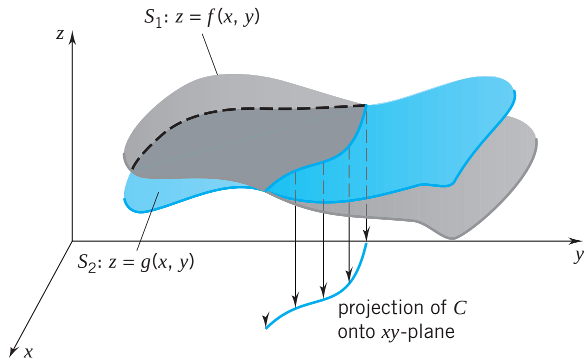


Figure 15.2.10

The curve C is the set of all points (x, y, z) with

$$z = f(x, y) \qquad \text{and} \qquad z = g(x, y).$$

The set of all points (x, y, z) with

$$f(x, y) = g(x, y) \qquad \text{(Here } z \text{ is unrestricted.)}$$

is the vertical cylinder that passes through C.

The set of all points $(x, y, 0)$ with

$$f(x, y) = g(x, y) \qquad \text{(Here } z = 0.\text{)}$$

is called the *projection of C onto the xy-plane*. In Figure 15.2.10 it appears as the curve in the xy-plane that lies directly below C.

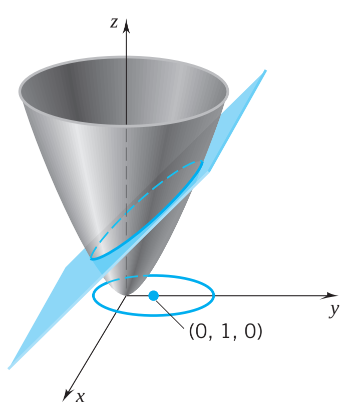


Figure 15.2.11

Example 1 The paraboloid of revolution $z = x^2 + y^2$ and the plane

$$z = 2y + 3$$

intersect in a curve C. See Figure 15.2.11. The projection of this curve onto the xy-plane is the set of all points $(x, y, 0)$ with

$$x^2 + y^2 = 2y + 3.$$

This equation can be written

$$x^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 4.$$

The projection of C onto the xy-plane is the circle of radius 2 centered at $(0, 1, 0)$. ❑

EXERCISES 15.2

Exercises 1–12. Identify the surface.

1. $x^2 + 4y^2 - 16z^2 = 0$.

2. $x^2 + 4y^2 + 16z^2 - 12 = 0$.

3. $x - 4y^2 = 0$.

4. $x^2 - 4y^2 - 2z = 0$.

5. $5x^2 + 2y^2 - 6z^2 - 10 = 0$.

6. $2x^2 + 4y^2 - 1 = 0$.

7. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 4 = 0$.

8. $5x^2 + 2y^2 - 6z^2 + 10 = 0$.

9. $x^2 + 2y^2 - 4z = 0$.

10. $2x^2 - 3y^2 - 6 = 0$.

11. $x - y^2 + 2z^2 = 0$.

12. $x - y^2 - 6z^2 = 0$.

Exercises 13–24. Sketch the cylinder.

13. $25y^2 + 4z^2 - 100 = 0$.

14. $25x^2 + 4y^2 - 100 = 0$.

15. $y^2 - z = 0$.

16. $x^2 - y + 1 = 0$.

17. $y^2 + z = 0$.

18. $25x^2 - 9y^2 - 225 = 0$.

19. $x^2 + y^2 = 9$.

20. $\dfrac{x^2}{4} + \dfrac{y^2}{9} = 1$.

21. $y^2 - 4x^2 = 4$.

22. $z = x^2$.

23. $y = x^2 + 1$.

24. $(x-1)^2 + (y-1)^2 = 1$.

Exercises 25–38. Identify the surface and find the traces. Then sketch the surface.

25. $9x^2 + 4y^2 - 36z = 0$.

26. $9x^2 + 4y^2 + 36z^2 - 36 = 0$.

27. $9x^2 + 4y^2 - 36z^2 = 0$.

28. $9x^2 + 4y^2 - 36z^2 - 36 = 0$.

29. $9x^2 + 4y^2 - 36z^2 + 36 = 0$.

30. $9x^2 - 4y^2 - 36z = 0$.

31. $9x^2 - 4y^2 - 36z^2 = 36$.

32. $4x^2 + 4z^2 - 36y^2 - 36 = 0$.

33. $4x^2 + 9z^2 - 36y = 0$.

34. $9x^2 + 4z^2 - 36y^2 = 0$.

35. $9y^2 - 4x^2 - 36z^2 - 36 = 0$.

36. $9y^2 + 4z^2 - 36x = 0$.

37. $x^2 + y^2 - 4z = 0$.

38. $36x^2 + 9y^2 + 4z^2 - 36 = 0$.

39. Identify all possibilities for the surface

$$z = Ax^2 + By^2$$

taking (a) $AB > 0$. (b) $AB < 0$. (c) $AB = 0$.

40. Find the planes of symmetry for the cylinder $x - 4y^2 = 0$.

41. Write an equation for the surface obtained by revolving the parabola $4z - y^2 = 0$ about the z-axis.

42. The hyperbola $c^2y^2 - b^2z^2 - b^2c^2 = 0$ is revolved about the z-axis. Find an equation for the resulting surface.

43. (a) The equation

$$\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = kz \qquad \text{with } k > 0$$

represents the upper nappe of a cone, vertex at the origin. The positive z-axis is the axis of symmetry. Describe the section in the plane $z = z_0$, $z_0 > 0$.

(b) Let S be a nappe of a cone, vertex at the origin. Write an equation for S given that

(i) the negative z-axis is the axis of symmetry and the section in the plane $z = -2$ is a circle of radius 6;

(ii) the positive y-axis is the axis of symmetry and the section in the plane $y = 3$ is a circle of radius 1.

44. Form the elliptic paraboloid

$$x^2 + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = z.$$

(a) Describe the section in the plane $z = 1$.

(b) What happens to this section as b tends to infinity?

(c) What happens to the paraboloid as b tends to infinity?

Exercises 45–52. The surfaces intersect in a space curve C. Determine the projection of C onto the xy-plane.

45. The planes $x + 2y + 3z = 6$ and $x + y - 2z = 6$.

46. The planes $x - 2y + z = 4$ and $3x + y - 2z = 1$.

47. The sphere $x^2 + y^2 + (z-1)^2 = \frac{3}{2}$ and the hyperboloid $x^2 + y^2 - z^2 = 1$.

48. The sphere $x^2 + y^2 + (z-2)^2 = 2$ and the cone $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$.

49. The paraboloids $x^2 + y^2 + z = 4$ and $x^2 + 3y^2 = z$.

50. The cylinder $y^2 + z - 4 = 0$ and the paraboloid $x^2 + 3y^2 = z$.

51. The cone $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$ and the plane $y + z = 2$.

52. The cone $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$ and the plane $y + 2z = 2$.

53. The ellipsoid $\dfrac{x^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{y^2}{b^2} + \dfrac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$ can be parametrized by the vector function of two variables

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + b\cos u\sin v\,\mathbf{j} + c\sin u\,\mathbf{k}.$$

(a) Verify that $\mathbf{r}$ parametrizes the ellipsoid given.

(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the ellipsoid with $a = 3$, $b = 4$, $c = 2$.

(c) Experiment with other values of a, b, c to see how the ellipsoid changes shape. How would you choose a, b, c to obtain a sphere?

54. The hyperboloid of one sheet $\dfrac{x^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{y^2}{b^2} - \dfrac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$ can be parametrized by the vector function of two variables

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\sec u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + b\sec u\sin v\,\mathbf{j} + c\tan u\,\mathbf{k}.$$

(a) Verify that $\mathbf{r}$ parametrizes the hyperboloid given.

(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the hyperboloid with $a = 2$, $b = 3$, $c = 4$.

(c) Experiment with other values of a, b, c to see how the hyperboloid changes shape.

55. The elliptic cone $\dfrac{x^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{y^2}{b^2} = \dfrac{z^2}{c^2}$ can be parametrized by the vector function of two variables

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = av\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + bv\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + cv\,\mathbf{k}.$$

(a) Verify that $\mathbf{r}$ parametrizes the elliptic cone given.

(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the elliptic cone with $a = 1, b = 2, c = 3$.

(c) Experiment with other values of a, b, c to see how the cone changes shape. In particular, what effect does c have on the cone?

■ 15.3 GRAPHS; LEVEL CURVES AND LEVEL SURFACES

We begin with a function f of two variables defined on a subset D of the xy-plane. By the *graph of f,* we mean the set of all points (x, y, z) with

$$z = f(x, y), \qquad (x, y) \in D.$$

Example 1 In the case of $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$, the domain is the entire plane. The graph of f is the paraboloid of revolution

$$z = x^2 + y^2.$$

This surface can be generated by revolving the parabola

$$z = x^2 \qquad \text{(which lies in the } xz\text{-plane)}$$

about the z-axis. See Figure 15.3.1. ❏

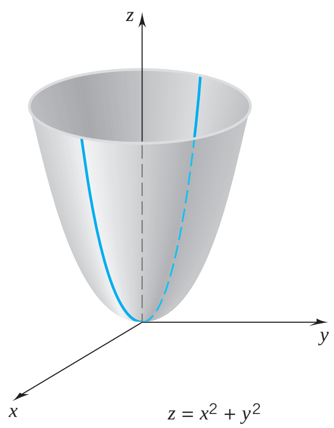


Figure 15.3.1

Example 2 Let a, b, c be positive constants. The domain of the function

$$g(x, y) = c - ax - by$$

is the entire xy-plane. The graph of g is the plane

$$z = c - ax - by. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.3.2)}$$

The intercepts of this plane are $x = c/a$, $y = c/b$, $z = c$. ❏

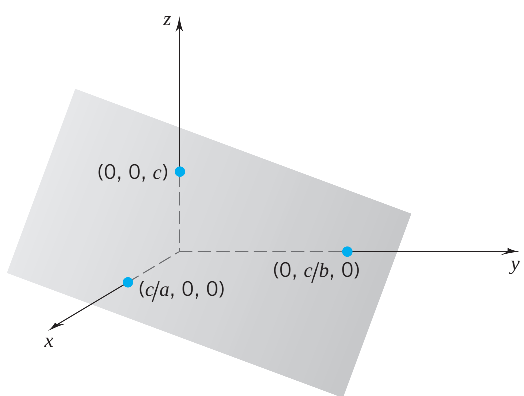


Figure 15.3.2

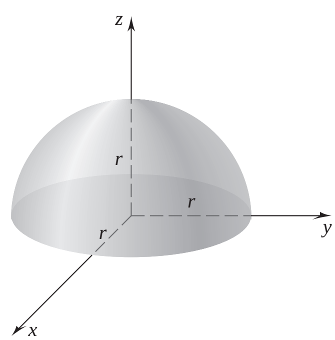


Figure 15.3.3

Example 3 The function $f(x, y) = \sqrt{r^2 - (x^2 + y^2)}$, $r > 0$ is defined only on the closed disk $x^2 + y^2 \le r^2$. The graph of this function is the surface

$$z = \sqrt{r^2 - (x^2 + y^2)}. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.3.3)}$$

This is the upper half of the sphere

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2. \quad ❏$$

Example 4 The function $f(xy) = xy$ is simple enough, but its graph, the surface $z = xy$, is quite difficult to draw. It is a "saddle-shaped" surface, the hyperbolic paraboloid

$$z = \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{y^2}{2}\,^{\dagger}$$

rotated $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ radians in the counterclockwise direction. ❏

Level Curves

In practice, the graph of a function of two variables is difficult to visualize and difficult to draw. Moreover, if drawn, the drawing is often difficult to interpret. Computer-generated graphics can be useful in resolving these matters. We will provide some illustration of this later in the section.

Here we discuss an approach which we take from the mapmaker. In mapping mountainous terrain, it is common practice to sketch curves that join points of constant elevation. A collection of such curves, called a topographic map, gives a good idea of the altitude variations in a region and suggests the shape of mountains and valleys. (See Figure 15.3.4.)

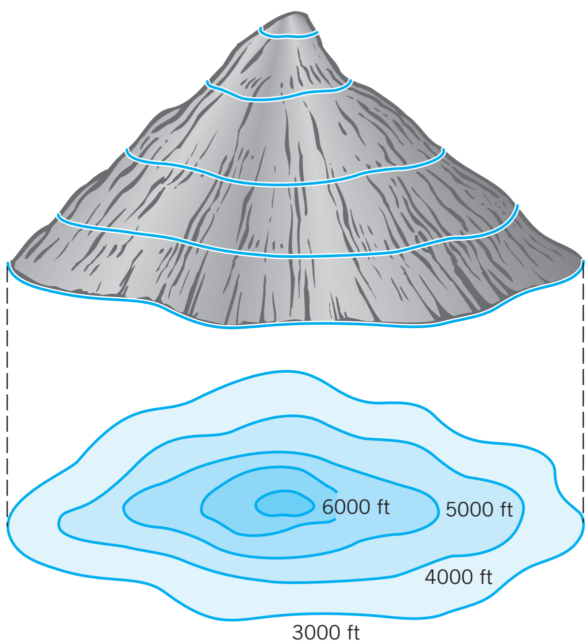


Figure 15.3.4

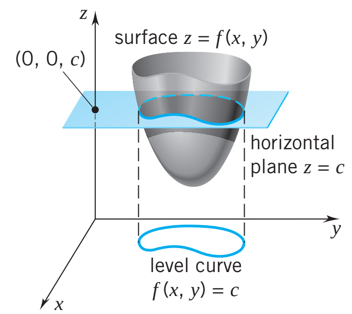


Figure 15.3.5

We can apply this technique to functions of two variables. Suppose that f is a nonconstant function defined on some portion of the xy-plane. If c is a value in the range of f, then we can sketch the curve $f(x, y) = c$. Such a curve is called a *level curve* for f. It can be obtained by intersecting the graph of f with the horizontal plane $z = c$ and then projecting that intersection onto the xy-plane. (See Figure 15.3.5.)

†For rotations, see Appendix A-1.

The level curve $f(x, y) = c$ lies entirely in the domain of f, and on this curve f is constantly c. A collection of level curves, well drawn and labeled, can lead to a good view of the overall behavior of a function.

Example 5 We return to the function $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$. (See Figure 15.3.1.) The level curves are circles centered at the origin:

$$x^2 + y^2 = c, \qquad c \geq 0. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.3.6)}$$

The function has the value c on the circle of radius $\sqrt{c}$ centered at the origin. At the origin, the function has the value 0. ❑

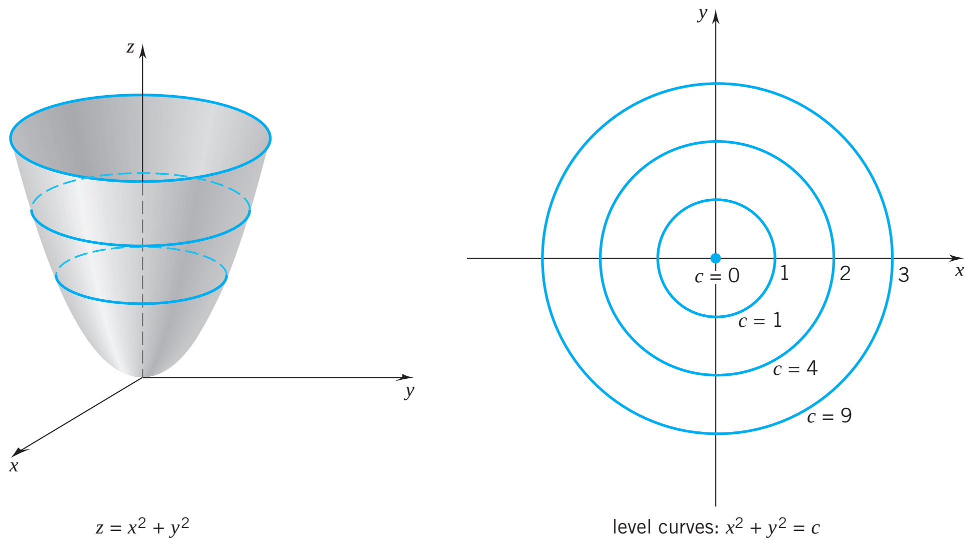


Figure 15.3.6

Example 6 The graph of the function $g(x, y) = 4 - x - y$ is a plane. The level curves are parallel lines of the form $4 - x - y = c$.

The surface and the level curves are indicated in Figure 15.3.7. ❑

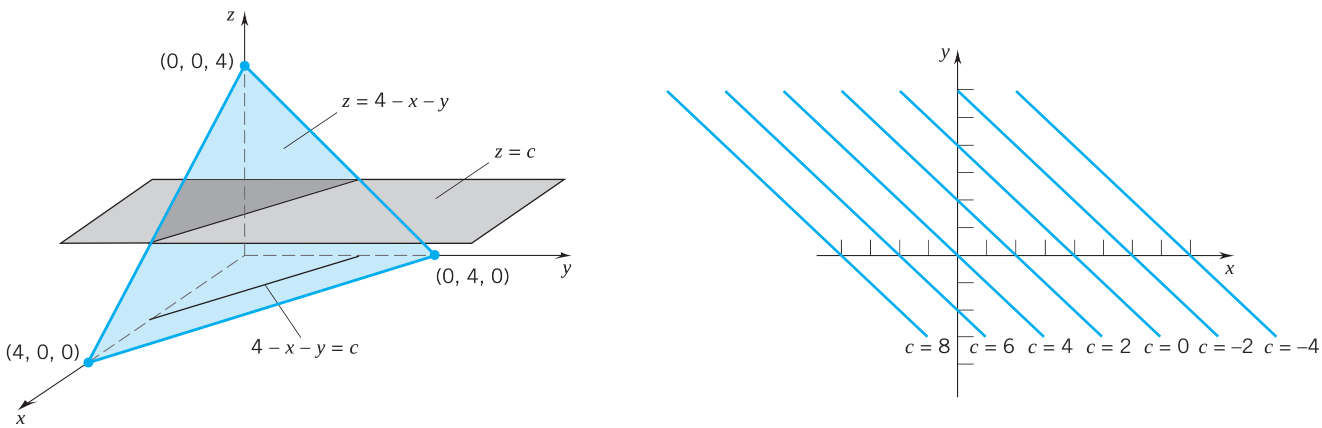


Figure 15.3.7

Example 7 Set

$$h(x, y) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, & x \geq 0 \\ |y|, & x < 0. \end{cases}$$

For $x \geq 0$, $h(x, y)$ is the distance from (x, y) to the origin. For $x < 0$, $h(x, y)$ is the distance from (x, y) to the x-axis. The level curves are indicated in Figure 15.3.8. The 0-level curve is the nonpositive x-axis. The other level curves are horseshoe-shaped: pairs of horizontal rays capped on the right by semicircles. ❑

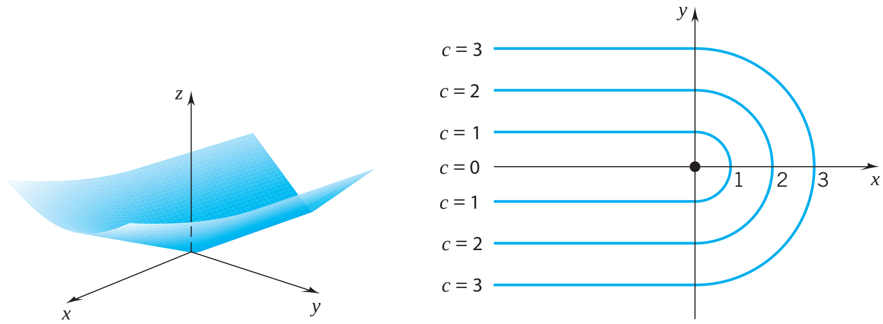


Figure 15.3.8

Example 8 Let's return to the function $f(x, y) = xy$. Earlier we noted that the graph is a saddled-shaped surface. You can visualize the surface from the few level curves sketched in Figure 15.3.9. The 0-level curve, $xy = 0$, consists of the two coordinate axes. The other level curves, $xy = c$ with $c \neq 0$, are hyperbolas. ❑

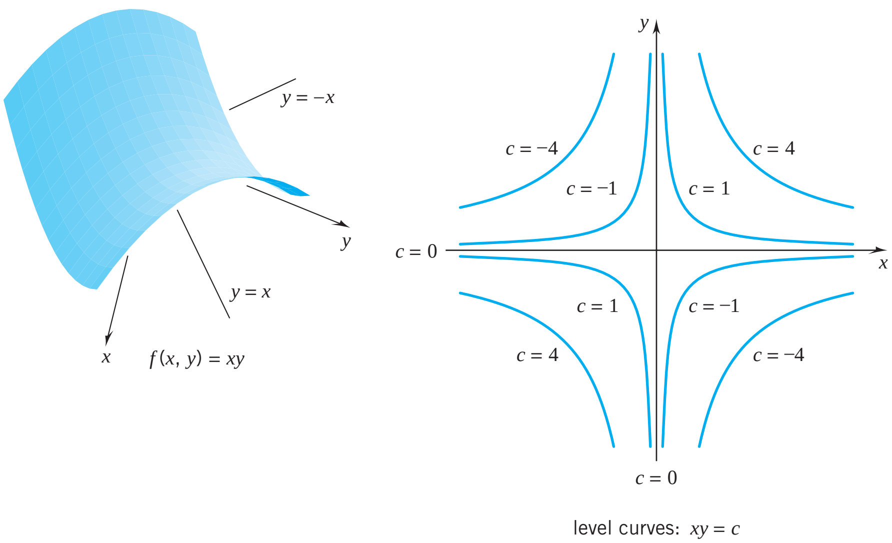


Figure 15.3.9

Computer-Generated Graphs

The preceding examples illustrate how difficult it is to sketch an accurate graph of a function of two variables. But powerful help is at hand. Three-dimensional graphing programs for modern computers make it possible to visualize even quite complicated surfaces. These programs allow the user to view a surface from different perspectives, and they show level curves and sections in various planes. Examples of computer-generated graphs are shown in Figure 15.3.10 and in the Exercises.

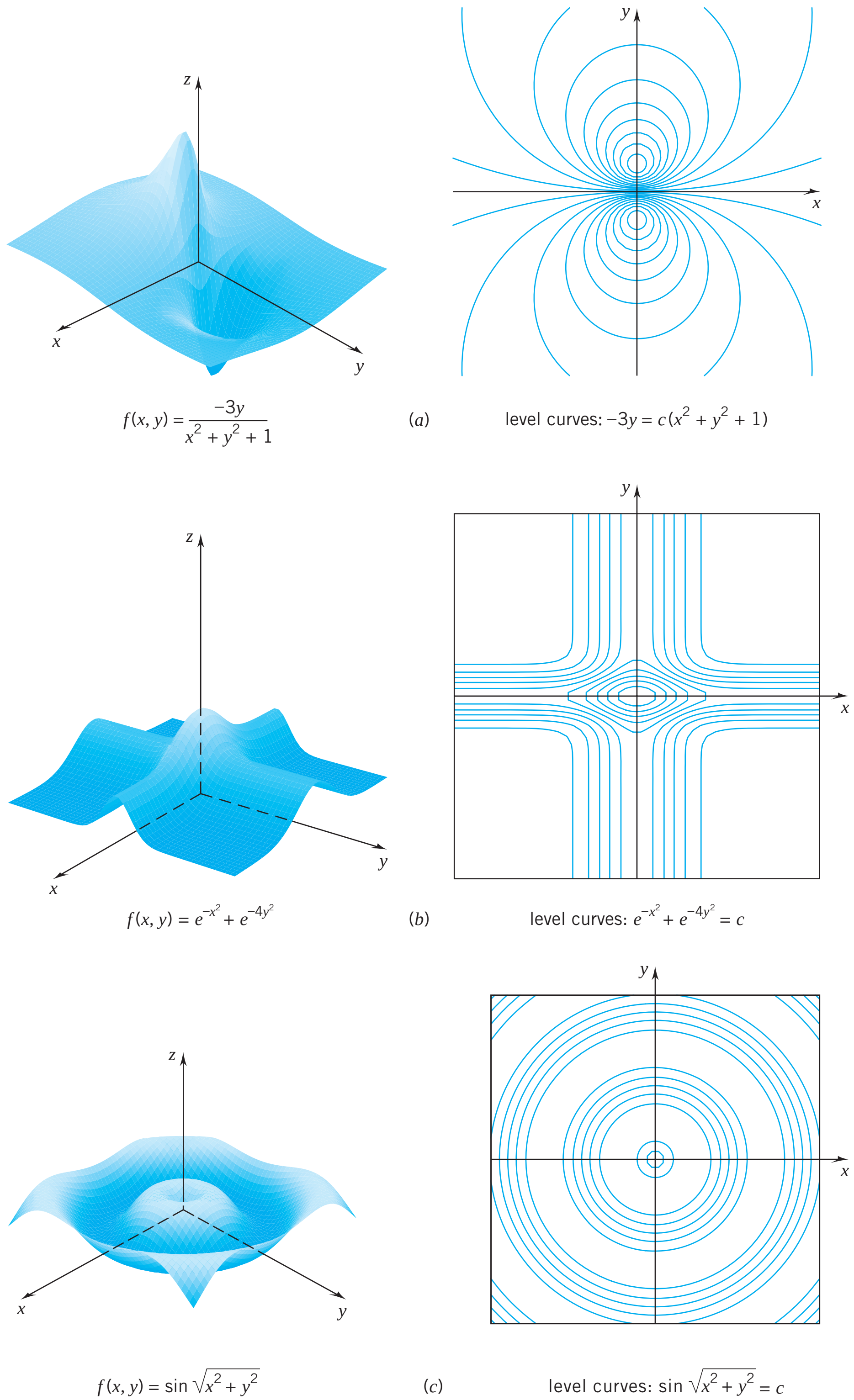
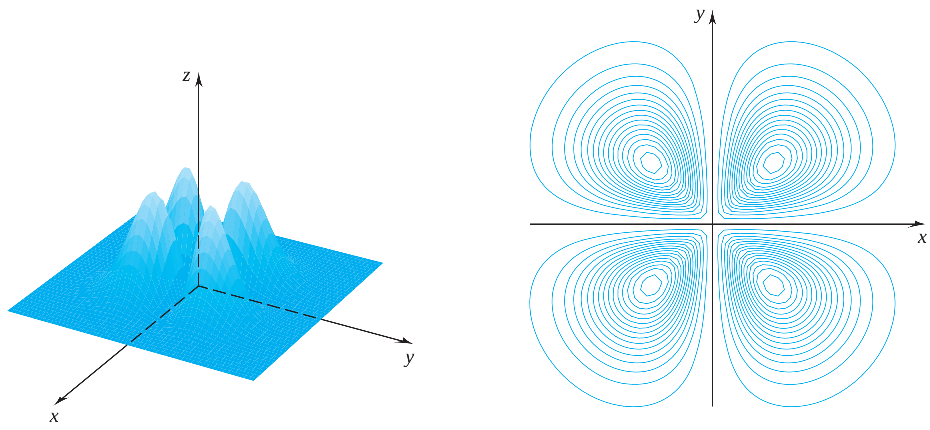


Figure 15.3.10

Level Surfaces

While drawing graphs for functions of two variables is quite difficult, drawing graphs for functions of three variables is actually impossible. To draw such figures we would need four dimensions at our disposal; the domain itself takes up three dimensions.



$f(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2 y^2 e^{-x^2-y^2}}{x^2+y^2}$ (d) level curves: $x^2y^2e^{-x^2-y^2} = c(x^2+y^2)$

Figure 15.3.10 ***Continued***

One can try to visualize the behavior of a function of three variables, $w = f(x, y, z)$, by examining the *level surfaces* of f. These are the subsets of the domain of f with equations of the form

$$f(x, y, z) = c$$

where c is a value in the range of f.

Level surfaces are usually difficult to draw. Nevertheless, a knowledge of what they are can be helpful. Here we restrict ourselves to a few simple examples.

Example 9 For the function $f(x, y, z) = Ax + By + Cz$, the level surfaces are parallel planes

$$Ax + By + Cz = c. \quad ❏$$

Example 10 For the function $g(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$, the level surfaces are concentric spheres

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = c^2. \quad ❏$$

Example 11 As our final example we take the function

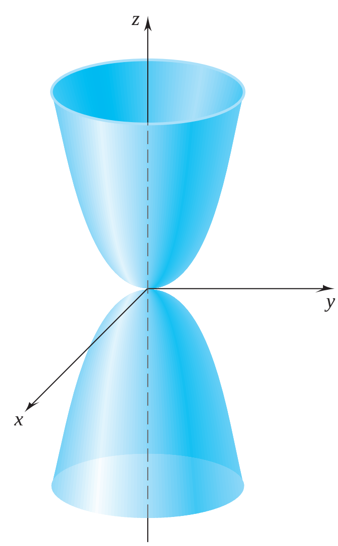
$$f(x, y, z) = \frac{|z|}{x^2 + y^2}.$$

We extend this function to the origin by defining it to be zero there. At other points of the z-axis we leave f undefined. ❏

In the first place note that f takes on only nonnegative values. Since f is zero only at $z = 0$, the 0-level surface is the xy-plane. To find the other level surfaces, we take $c > 0$ and set $f(x, y, z) = c$. This gives

$$\frac{|z|}{x^2 + y^2} = c \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad |z| = c(x^2 + y^2).$$

(See Figure 15.3.11.) Each level surface is a double paraboloid of revolution.[†]



level surface: $|z| = c(x^2 + y^2)$, $(c > 0)$

Figure 15.3.11

[†] A paraboloid (Figure 15.2.5) together with its reflection in the xy-plane.

EXERCISES 15.3

Exercises 1–18. Identify the level curves $f(x, y) = c$ and sketch the curves corresponding to the indicated values of c.

1. $f(x, y) = x - y; \quad c = -2, 0, 2.$

2. $f(x, y) = 2x - y; \quad c = -2, 0, 2.$

3. $f(x, y) = x^2 - y; \quad c = -1, 0, 1, 2.$

4. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{x - y^2}; \quad c = -2, -1, 1, 2.$

5. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x + y}; \quad c = -1, 0, 1, 2.$

6. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{y}{x^2}; \quad c = -1, 0, 1, 2.$

7. $f(x, y) = x^3 - y; \quad c = -1, 0, 1, 2.$

8. $f(x, y) = e^{xy}; \quad c = \frac{1}{2}, 1, 2, 3.$

9. $f(x, y) = x^2 - y^2; \quad c = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2.$

10. $f(x, y) = x^2; \quad c = 0, 1, 4, 9.$

11. $f(x, y) = y^2; \quad c = 0, 1, 4, 9.$

12. $f(x, y) = x(y - 1); \quad c = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2.$

13. $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^2); \quad c = -1, 0, 1.$

14. $f(x, y) = \ln\left(\dfrac{y}{x^2}\right); \quad c = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2.$

15. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{\ln y}{x^2}; \quad c = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2.$

16. $f(x, y) = x^2y^2; \quad c = -4, -1, 0, 1, 4.$

17. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2 + y^2}; \quad c = 0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}.$

18. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{\ln y}{x}; \quad c = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2.$

Exercises 19–24. Identify the c-level surface and sketch it.

19. $f(x, y, z) = x + 2y + 3z, \quad c = 0.$

20. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2, \quad c = 4.$

21. $f(x, y, z) = z(x^2 + y^2)^{-1/2}, \quad c = 1.$

22. $f(x, y, z) = x^2/4 + y^2/6 + z^2/9, \quad c = 1.$

23. $f(x, y, z) = 4x^2 + 9y^2 - 72z, \quad c = 0.$

24. $f(x, y, z) = z^2 - 36x^2 - 9y^2, \quad c = 1.$

25. Identify the c-level surfaces of

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 - z^2$$

taking (i) $c < 0$, (ii) $c = 0$, (iii) $c > 0$.

26. Identify the c-level surfaces of

$$f(x, y, z) = 9x^2 - 4y^2 + 36z^2$$

taking (i) $c < 0$, (ii) $c = 0$, (iii) $c > 0$.

Exercises 27–30. Find an equation for the level curve that contains the point P.

27. $f(x, y) = 1 - 4x^2 - y^2; \quad P(0, 1).$

28. $f(x, y) = (x^2 + y^2)e^{xy}; \quad P(1, 0).$

29. $f(x, y) = y^2 \arctan x; \quad P(1, 2).$

30. $f(x, y) = (x^2 + y)\ln[2 - x + e^y]; \quad P(2, 1).$

Exercises 31–32. Find an equation for the level surface of f that contains the point P.

31. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 2y^2 - 2xyz; \quad P(-1, 2, 1).$

32. $f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} - \ln z; \quad P(3, 4, e).$

C **33.** Use a graphing utility to draw (i) the surface and (ii) some level curves.

(a) $f(x, y) = 3x + y^3.$ [b] $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{y^2 + 4}.$

C **34.** Use a graphing utility to draw the c-level surfaces for the indicated values of c.

(a) $f(x, y, z) = x + 2y + 4z; \quad c = 0, 4, 8.$

(b) $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{x + y}{1 + z^2}; \quad c = -2, 0, 2.$

C **35.** Use a CAS to find the level curve/surface at the point P.

(a) $f(x, y) = \dfrac{3x + 2y + 1}{4x^2 + 9}; \quad P(2, 4).$

(b) $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 2y^2 - z^2; \quad P(2, -3, 1).$

C **36.** Use a CAS to draw the surface and some level curves.

(a) $f(x, y) = (x^2 - y^2)e^{(-x^2 - y^2)}; \quad -2 \le x \le 2, \ -2 \le y \le 2.$

(b) $f(x, y) = xy^3 - yx^3; \quad -5 \le x \le 5, \quad -5 \le y \le 5.$

37. The magnitude of the gravitational force exerted by a body of mass M situated at the origin on a body of mass m located at the point (x, y, z) is given by the function

$$F(x, y, z) = \frac{GmM}{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$$

where G is the universal gravitational constant. What are the level surfaces? What is the physical significance of these surfaces?

38. The strength E of an electric field at a point (x, y, z) due to an infinitely long charged wire lying along the y-axis is given by the function

$$E(x, y, z) = \frac{k}{\sqrt{x^2 + z^2}}$$

where k is a positive constant. Describe the level surfaces of E.

39. A metal solid occupies a region in three-space. The temperature T (in °C) at the point (x, y, z) in the solid is inversely proportional to its distance from the origin.

(a) Express T as a function of x, y, z.

(b) Describe the level surfaces and sketch a few of them. NOTE: The level surfaces of T are known as *isothermals*; at all points of an isothermal the temperature is the same.

(c) Suppose the temperature at the point $(1, 2, 1)$ is 50°. What is the temperature at the point $(4, 0, 3)$?

40. The function

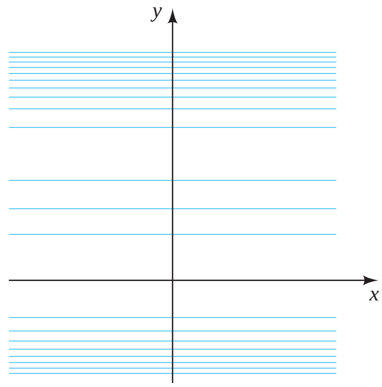
$$V(x, y) = \frac{k}{\sqrt{r^2 - x^2 - y^2}},$$

where k and r are positive constants, gives the electric potential (in volts) at a point (x, y) in the xy-plane. Describe

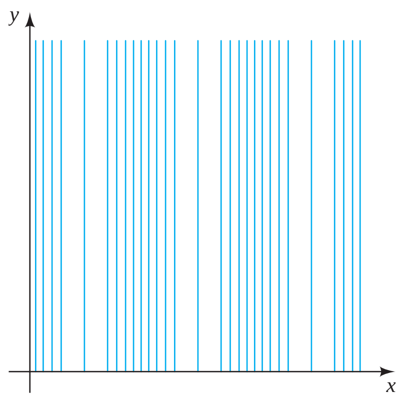
the level curves of V and sketch a representative set. NOTE: The level curves of V are called the *equipotential curves*; all points on an equipotential curve have the same electric potential.

Exercises 41–46. A function is given and a set of level curves is shown. Surfaces **A–F** are the graphs of these functions in some order. Match the surface to the function.

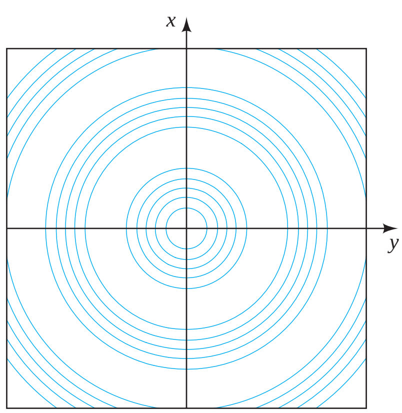
41. $f(x, y) = y^2 - y^3$.



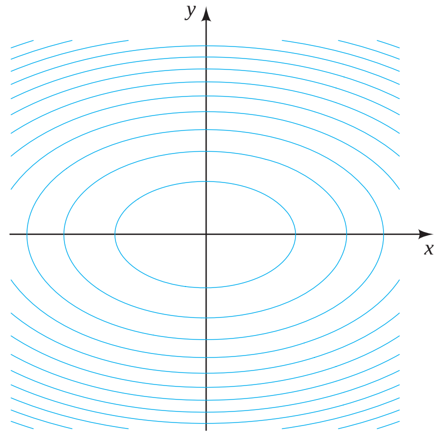
42. $f(x, y) = \sin x,\ 0 \le x \le 2\pi$.



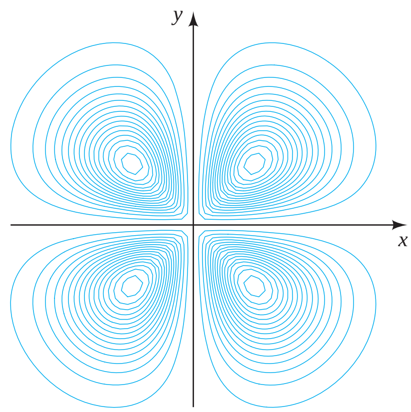
43. $f(x, y) = \cos\sqrt{x^2 + y^2},\ -10 \le x \le 10,\ -10 \le y \le 10$.



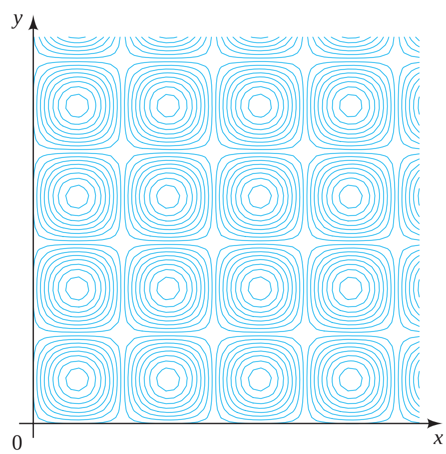
44. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 + 4y^2$.

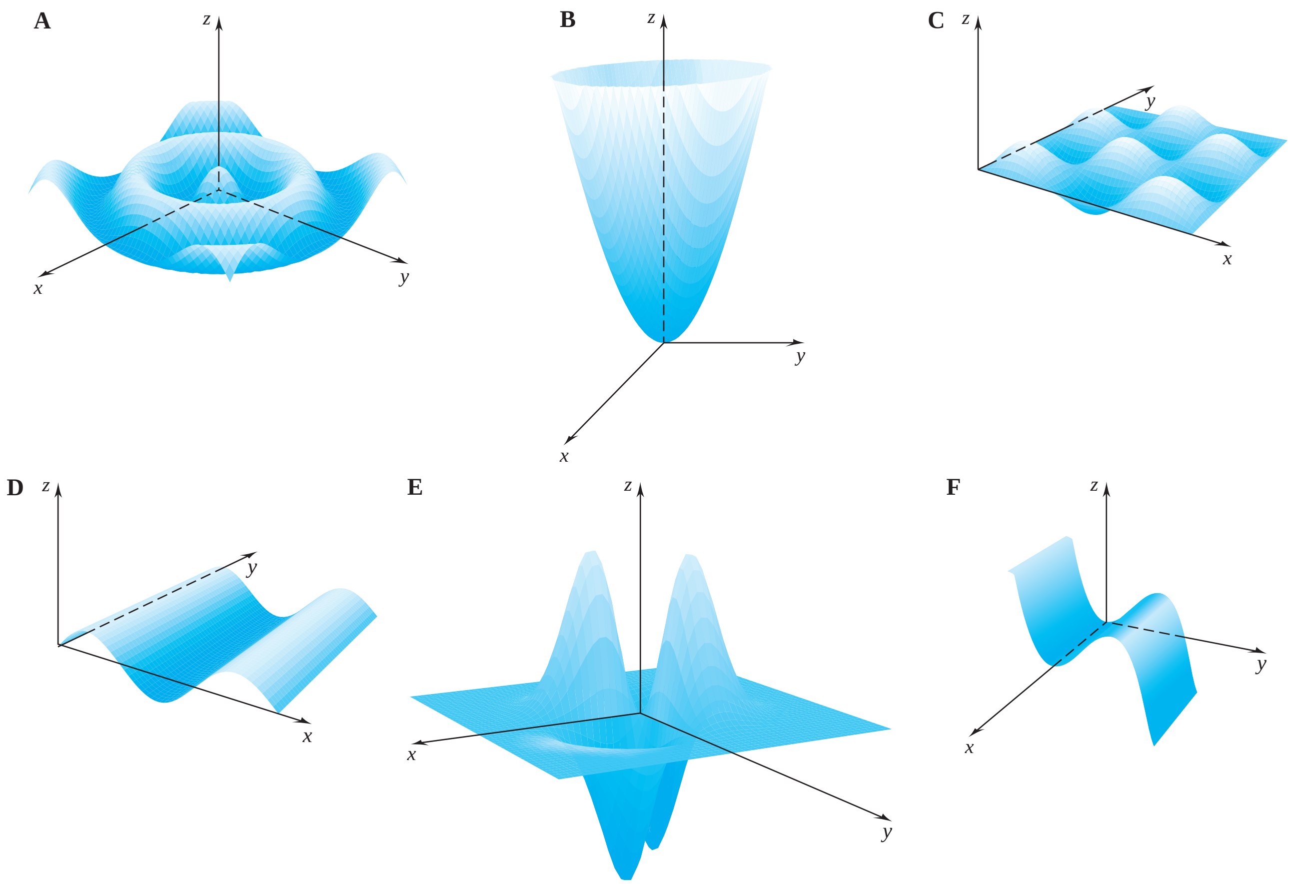


45. $f(x, y) = xye^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}$.



46. $f(x, y) = \sin x \sin y$.



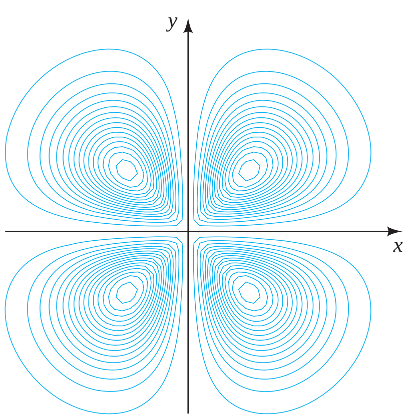


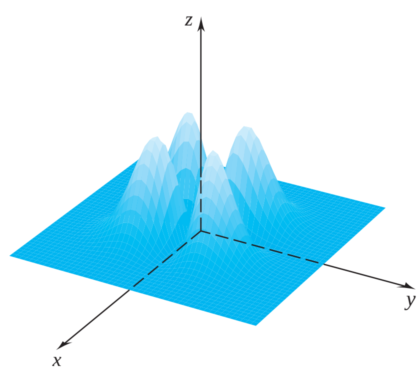
■ PROJECT 15.3 Level Curves and Surfaces

Computer systems such as Derive, Maple, and Mathematica can be used to map the level curves of a function $f = f(x, y)$. In this project you are asked to map the level curves of a function given over a rectangle and then you are asked to "visualize" the surface $z = f(x, y)$. For example, the level curves of

$$f(x, y) = x^2y^2e^{-(x^2+y^2)}$$

on the rectangle $-3 \leq x \leq 3, -3 \leq y \leq 3$ look like this.





This map of the level curves suggests that the surface $z = f(x, y)$ has either "peaks" or "pits" symmetrically placed in the four quadrants. The computer-generated graph confirms this conjecture.

Problem 1. Map the level curves of $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 + y^2}$ over the rectangle $-3 \leq x \leq 3, -3 \leq y \leq 3$. Try to visualize the

graph of f from your map of the level curves. Then sketch the surface $z = f(x, y)$ to confirm your visualization.

Problem 2. Problem 1 for the $f(x, y) = \dfrac{2y}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$ over the rectangle $-5 \leq x \leq 5, -5 \leq y \leq 5$.

Problem 3. Problem 1 for $f(x, y) = \cos x \cos y e^{-\frac{1}{4}(x^2+y^2)^{1/2}}$ over the rectangle $-2\pi \leq x \leq 2\pi, -2\pi \leq y \leq 2\pi$.

Problem 4. Problem 1 for $f(x, y) = -\dfrac{xy}{e^{x^2+y^2}}$ over the rectangle $-2 \leq x \leq 2, -2 \leq y \leq 2$.

■ 15.4 PARTIAL DERIVATIVES

Functions of Two Variables

Let f be a function of x and y; take for example

$$f(x, y) = 3x^2 y - 5x \cos \pi y.$$

The *partial derivative of f with respect to x* is the function f_x obtained by differentiating f with respect to x, keeping y fixed. In this case

$$f_x(x, y) = 6xy - 5 \cos \pi y.$$

The *partial derivative of f with respect to y* is the function f_y obtained by differentiating f with respect to y, keeping x fixed. In this case

$$f_y(x, y) = 3x^2 + 5\pi x \sin \pi y.$$

These partial derivatives are limits:

DEFINITION 15.4.1 PARTIAL DERIVATIVES (*two variables*)

Let f be a function of two variables x, y. The partial derivatives of f with respect to x and with respect to y are the functions f_x and f_y defined by setting

$$f_x(x, y) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x + h, y) - f(x, y)}{h}$$

$$f_y(x, y) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x, y + h) - f(x, y)}{h}$$

provided these limits exist.

Example 1 For the function $f(x, y) = x \arctan xy$

$$f_x(x, y) = x \frac{y}{1 + (xy)^2} + \arctan xy = \frac{xy}{1 + x^2 y^2} + \arctan xy$$

$$f_y(x, y) = x \frac{x}{1 + (xy)^2} = \frac{x^2}{1 + x^2 y^2}. \quad ❑$$

In the one-variable case, $f'(x_0)$ gives the rate of change of $f(x)$ with respect to x at $x = x_0$. In the two-variable case, *$f_x(x_0, y_0)$ gives the rate of change of $f(x, y_0)$ with respect to x at $x = x_0$, and $f_y(x_0, y_0)$ gives the rate of change of $f(x_0, y)$ with respect to y at $y = y_0$.*

Example 2 For the function $f(x, y) = e^{xy} + \ln(x^2 + y)$,

$$f_x(x, y) = ye^{xy} + \frac{2x}{x^2 + y} \qquad \text{and} \qquad f_y(x, y) = xe^{xy} + \frac{1}{x^2 + y}.$$

The number

$$f_x(2, 1) = e^2 + \frac{4}{4+1} = e^2 + \frac{4}{5}$$

gives the rate of change with respect to x of the function

$$f(x, 1) = e^x + \ln(x^2 + 1) \qquad \text{at } x = 2;$$

the number

$$f_y(2, 1) = 2\,e^2 + \frac{1}{4+1} = 2\,e^2 + \frac{1}{5}$$

gives the rate of change with respect to y of the function

$$f(2, y) = e^{2y} + \ln(4 + y) \qquad \text{at } y = 1. \quad \square$$

A Geometric Interpretation

In Figure 15.4.1 we have sketched a surface $z = f(x, y)$ which you can take as everywhere defined. Through the surface we have passed a plane $y = y_0$ parallel to the xz-plane. The plane $y = y_0$ intersects the surface in a curve, the y_0-section of the surface.

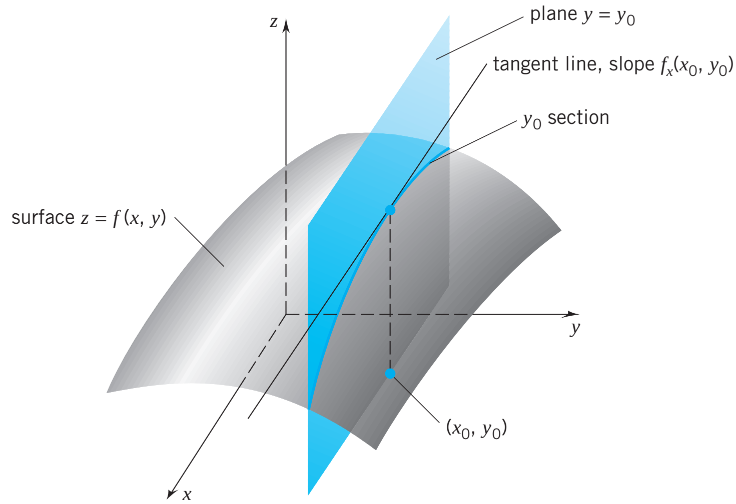


Figure 15.4.1

The y_0-section of the surface is the graph of the function

$$g(x) = f(x, y_0).$$

Differentiating with respect to x, we have

$$g'(x) = f_x(x, y_0)$$

and, in particular,

$$g'(x_0) = f_x(x_0, y_0).$$

The number $f_x(x_0, y_0)$ *is thus the slope of the* y_0*-section of the surface* $z = f(x, y)$ *at the point* $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$.

The other partial derivative f_y can be given a similar interpretation. In Figure 15.4.2 you can see the same surface $z = f(x, y)$, this time sliced by a plane $x = x_0$ parallel to the yz-plane. The plane $x = x_0$ intersects the surface in a curve, the x_0-section of the surface.

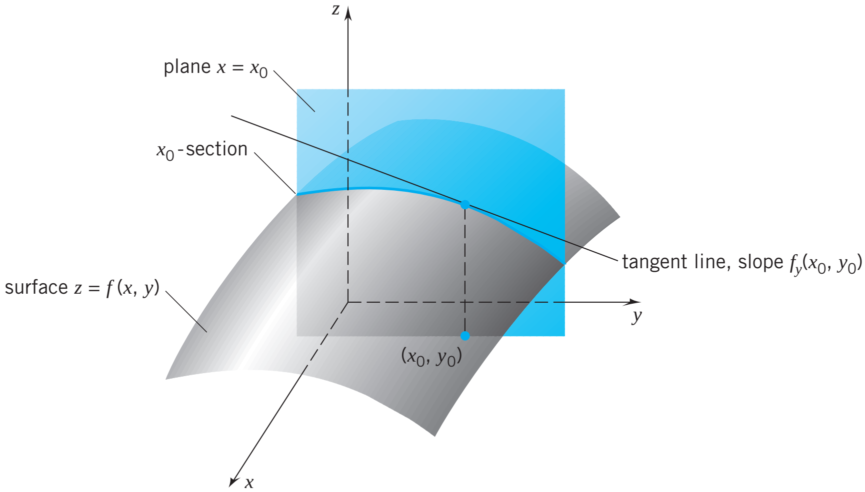


Figure 15.4.2

The x_0-section of the surface is the graph of the function

$$h(y) = f(x_0, y).$$

Differentiating, this time with respect to y, we have

$$h'(y) = f_y(x_0, y)$$

and thus

$$h'(y_0) = f_y(x_0, y_0).$$

The number $f_y(x_0, y_0)$ *is the slope of the* x_0*-section of the surface* $z = f(x, y)$ *at the point* $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$.

Functions of Three Variables

In the case of a function of three variables, you can look for three partial derivatives: the partial with respect to x, the partial with respect to y, and the partial with respect to z. These partials,

$$f_x(x, y, z), \qquad f_y(x, y, z), \qquad f_z(x, y, z),$$

are defined as follows.

DEFINITION 15.4.2 PARTIAL DERIVATIVES (*three variables*)

Let f be a function of three variables x, y, z. The partial derivatives of f with respect to x, with respect to y, and with respect to z are the functions f_x, f_y, f_z defined by setting

$$f_x(x, y, z) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h, y, z) - f(x, y, z)}{h}$$

$$f_y(x, y, z) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x, y+h, z) - f(x, y, z)}{h}$$

$$f_z(x, y, z) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x, y, z+h) - f(x, y, z)}{h}$$

provided these limits exist.

Each partial can be found by differentiating with respect to the subscript variable, keeping the other two variables fixed.

Example 3 For the function $f(x, y, z) = xy^2z^3$

$$f_x(x, y, z) = y^2z^3, \quad f_y(x, y, z) = 2xyz^3, \quad f_z(x, y, z) = 3xy^2z^2.$$

In particular,

$$f_x(1, -2, -1) = -4, \quad f_y(1, -2, -1) = 4, \quad f_z(1, -2, -1) = 12. \quad ❑$$

Example 4 For $g(x, y, z) = x^2e^{y/z}$

$$g_x(x, y, z) = 2x\,e^{y/z}, \quad g_y(x, y, z) = \frac{x^2}{z}e^{y/z}, \quad g_z(x, y, z) = -\frac{x^2y}{z^2}e^{y/z}. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 For a function of the form $f(x, y, z) = F(x, y)G(y, z)$

$$f_x(x, y, z) = F_x(x, y)G(y, z),$$

$$f_y(x, y, z) = F(x, y)G_y(y, z) + F_y(x, y)G(y, z),$$

$$f_z(x, y, z) = F(x, y)G_z(y, z). \quad ❑$$

The number $f_x(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *gives the rate of change of* $f(x, y_0, z_0)$ *with respect to* x *at* $x = x_0$; $f_y(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *gives the rate of change of* $f(x_0, y, z_0)$ *with respect to* y *at* $y = y_0$; $f_z(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *gives the rate of change of* $f(x_0, y_0, z)$ *with respect to* z *at* $z = z_0$.

Example 6 The function $f(x, y, z) = xy^2 - yz^2$ has partial derivatives

$$f_x(x, y, z) = y^2, \quad f_y(x, y, z) = 2xy - z^2, \quad f_z(x, y, z) = -2yz.$$

The number $f_x(1, 2, 3) = 4$ gives the rate of change with respect to x of the function

$$f(x, 2, 3) = 4x - 18 \qquad \text{at } x = 1;$$

$f_y(1, 2, 3) = -5$ gives the rate of change with respect to y of the function

$$f(1, y, 3) = y^2 - 9y \qquad \text{at } y = 2.$$

$f_z(1, 2, 3) = -12$ gives the rate of change with respect to z of the function

$$f(1, 2, z) = 4 - 2z^2 \qquad \text{at } z = 3. \quad ❑$$

Remark Partial differentiation is easily extended to functions of more than three variables. For a function f of n variables, $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$, we define the partial derivative of f with respect to the k^{th} variable x_k by setting

$$f_{x_k}(x_1, x_2, \cdots, x_n)$$
$$= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x_1, \cdots, x_{k-1}, x_k + h, x_{k+1}, \cdots, x_n) - f(x_1, \cdots, x_k, \cdots, x_n)}{h}. \quad ❑$$

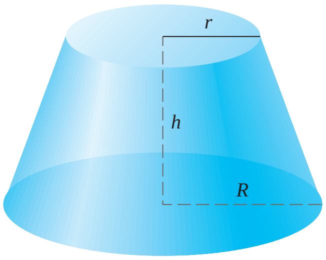
Other Notations

There is no need to restrict ourselves to variables x, y, z. Where more convenient, we use other letters.

Example 7 The volume of the frustum of a cone (Figure 15.4.3) is given by the function

$$V(R, r, h) = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi h(R^2 + Rr + r^2).$$

Given that the volume is changing, find the rate of change of the volume with respect to each of its dimensions if the other dimensions are held constant. Determine these rates of change when $R = 8$, $r = 4$, and $h = 6$.



frustum of a cone

Figure 15.4.3

SOLUTION The partial derivatives of V with respect to R, with respect to r, and with respect to h are as follows:

$$V_R(R, r, h) = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi h(2R + r),$$
$$V_r(R, r, h) = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi h(R + 2r),$$
$$V_h(R, r, h) = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi(R^2 + Rr + r^2).$$

When $R = 8$, $r = 4$, and $h = 6$,

the rate of change of V with respect to R is $V_R(8, 4, 6) = 40\pi$,
the rate of change of V with respect to r is $V_r(8, 4, 6) = 32\pi$,
the rate of change of V with respect to h is $V_h(8, 4, 6) = \frac{112}{3}\pi$. ❑

The subscript notation is not the only one used in partial differentiation. A variant of Leibniz's double-*d* notation is also commonly used. In this notation the partials f_x, f_y, f_z are denoted by

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}, \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}.$$

Thus, for

$$f(x, y, z) = x^3y^2z + \sin xy$$

we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y, z) = 3x^2y^2z + y\cos xy, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y, z) = 2x^2yz + x\cos xy,$$
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(x, y, z) = x^3y^2,$$

or more simply,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 3x^2y^2z + y\cos xy, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2x^3yz + x\cos xy, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = x^3y^2.$$

We can also write

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x^3y^2z + \sin xy) = 3x^2y^2z + y\ \cos xy,$$
$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(x^3y^2z + \sin xy) = 2x^3yz + x\ \cos xy, \qquad \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(x^3y^2z + \sin xy) = x^3y^2.$$

Of course, this notation is not restricted to the letters x, y, z. For instance, we can write

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r}(r^2\cos\theta + e^{\theta r}) = 2r\cos\theta + \theta e^{\theta r}, \qquad \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta}(r^2\cos\theta + e^{\theta r}) = -r^2\sin\theta + re^{\theta r}.$$

For the function $\rho = \sin 2\theta \cos 3\phi$,

$$\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial\theta} = 2\cos 2\theta \cos 3\phi \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial\rho}{\partial\phi} = -3\sin 2\theta \sin 3\phi.$$

EXERCISES 15.4

Exercises 1–28. Calculate the partial derivatives.

1. $f(x, y) = 3x^2 - xy + y$. **2.** $g(x, y) = x^2e^{-y}$.

3. $\rho = \sin\phi\cos\theta$. **4.** $\rho = \sin^2(\theta - \phi)$.

5. $f(x, y) = e^{x-y} - e^{y-x}$. **6.** $z = \sqrt{x^2 - 3y}$.

7. $g(x, y) = \dfrac{Ax + By}{Cx + Dy}$. **8.** $u = \dfrac{e^z}{xy^2}$.

9. $u = xy + yz + zx$. **10.** $z = Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2$.

11. $f(x, y, z) = z\sin(x - y)$.

12. $g(u, v, w) = \ln(u^2 + vw - w^2)$.

13. $\rho = e^{\theta+\phi}\cos(\theta - \phi)$.

14. $f(x, y) = (x + y)\sin(x - y)$.

15. $f(x, y) = x^2y\sec xy$.

16. $g(x, y) = \arctan(2x + y)$.

17. $h(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + y^2}$. **18.** $z = \ln\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

19. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x\sin y}{y\cos x}$. **20.** $f(x, y, z) = e^{xy}\sin xz$.

21. $h(x, y) = [f(x)]^2g(y)$. **22.** $h(x, y) = e^{f(x)g(y)}$.

23. $f(x, y, z) = z^{xy^2}$.

24. $h(x, y, z) = [f(x, y)]^3[g(x, z)]^2$.

25. $h(r, \theta, t) = r^2e^{2t}\cos(\theta - t)$.

26. $u = \ln(x/y) - ye^{xz}$.

27. $f(x, y, z) = z\arctan(y/x)$.

28. $w = xy\sin z - yz\sin x$.

29. Find $f_x(0, e)$ and $f_y(0, e)$ given that $f(x, y) = e^x\ln y$.

30. Find $g_x(0, \frac{1}{4}\pi)$ and $g_y(0, \frac{1}{4}\pi)$ given that

$$g(x, y) = e^{-x}\sin(x + 2y).$$

31. Find $f_x(1, 2)$ and $f_y(1, 2)$ given that $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x + y}$.

32. Find $g_x(1, 2)$ and $g_y(1, 2)$ given that $g(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x + y^2}$.

Exercises 33–38. Find $f_x(x, y)$ and $f_y(x, y)$ by forming the appropriate difference quotient and taking the limit as h tends to zero.

33. $f(x, y) = x^2y$. **34.** $f(x, y) = y^2$.

35. $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2y)$. **36.** $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{x + 4y}$.

37. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{x - y}$. **38.** $f(x, y) = e^{2x+3y}$.

Exercises 39–40. Find $f_x(x, y, z)$, $f_y(x, y, z)$, $f_z(x, y, z)$ by forming the appropriate difference quotient and taking the limit as h tends to zero.

39. $f(x, y, z) = xy^2z$. **40.** $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{x^2y}{z}$.

41. The intersection of a surface $z = f(x, y)$ with a plane $y = y_0$ is a curve C in space. The slope of the tangent line to C at the point $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$ is $f_x(x_0, y_0)$. (Figure 15.4.1.)

(a) Show that the tangent line can be specified by the following two equations:

$$y = y_0, \qquad z - z_0 = f_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0).$$

(b) Now let C be the curve formed by intersecting the surface $z = f(x, y)$ with the plane $x = x_0$. Derive equations that specify the line tangent to C at the point $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$. (Figure 15.4.2.)

Exercises 42–43. Set $z = x^2 + y^2$ and let C be the curve in which the surface intersects the given plane. Find equations that specify the line tangent to C at the point P.

42. Plane $y = 3$; $P(1, 3, 10)$.

43. Plane $x = 2$; $P(2, 1, 5)$.

Exercises 44–45. Set

$$z = \frac{x^2}{y^2 - 3}$$

and let C be the curve in which the surface intersects the given plane. Find equations that specify the line tangent to C at the point P.

44. Plane $x = 3$; $P(3, 2, 9)$. **45.** Plane $y = 2$; $P(3, 2, 9)$.

46. The surface $x = \sqrt{4 - x^2 - y^2}$ is a hemisphere of radius 2 centered at the origin.

(a) The line l_1 is tangent at the point $(1, 1, \sqrt{2})$ to the curve in which the hemisphere intersects the plane $x = 1$. Find equations that specify l_1.

(b) The line l_2 is tangent at the point $(1, 1, \sqrt{2})$ to the curve in which the hemisphere intersects the plane $y = 1$. Find equations that specify l_2.

(c) The tangent lines l_1 and l_2 determine a plane. Find an equation for this plane. [This plane can be viewed as tangent to the surface at the point $(1, 1, \sqrt{2})$.]

C **47.** Set $f(x, y) = 3x^2 - 6xy + 2y^3$. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f near the point $P(1, 2)$.

(a) Use a CAS to find $m_x = \partial f/\partial x$ at P. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of $z = f(x, 2)$ showing the line through P with slope m_x.

(b) Use a CAS to find $m_y = \partial f/\partial y$ at P. Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of $z = f(1, y)$ showing the line through P with slope m_y.

C **48.** Exercise 47 with $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x - y}{x^2 + y^2}$ and $P(1, 2)$.

Exercises 49–52. Show that the functions u and v satisfy the *Cauchy-Riemann equations*

$$u_x(x, y) = v_y(x, y) \qquad \text{and} \qquad u_y(x, y) = -v_x(x, y).$$

These equations arise in the study of functions of a complex variable and are of fundamental importance in that setting.

49. $u(x, y) = x^2 - y^2; \quad v(x, y) = 2xy.$

50. $u(x, y) = e^x \cos y; \quad v(x, y) = e^x \sin y.$

51. $u(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2 + y^2); \quad v(x, y) = \arctan \dfrac{y}{x}.$

52. $u(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + y^2}; \quad v(x, y) = \dfrac{-y}{x^2 + y^2}.$

53. Assume that f is a function defined on a set D in the xy-plane, and assume that the partial derivatives exist throughout D.

(a) Suppose that $f_x(x, y) = 0$ for all $(x, y) \in D$. What can you conclude about f?

(b) Suppose that $f_y(x, y) = 0$ for all $(x, y) \in D$. What can you conclude about f?

54. The law of cosines for a triangle can be written

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos\theta.$$

At time t_0, $b_0 = 10$ inches, $c_0 = 15$ inches, $\theta_0 = \frac{1}{3}\pi$ radians.

(a) Find a_0 (the length a at time t_0).

(b) Find the rate of change of a with respect to b at time t_0 given that c and θ remain constant.

(c) Use the rate you found in part (b) to estimate by a differential the change in a that results from a 1-inch decrease in b.

(d) Find the rate of change of a with respect to θ at time t_0 given that b and c remain constant.

(e) Find the rate of change of c with respect to θ at time t_0 given that a and b remain constant.

55. The area of a triangle is given by the formula

$$A = \tfrac{1}{2}bc\sin\theta.$$

At time t_0, $b_0 = 10$ inches, $c_0 = 15$ inches, $\theta_0 = \frac{1}{3}\pi$ radians.

(a) Find the area of the triangle at time t_0.

(b) Find the rate of change of the area with respect to b at time t_0 given that c and θ remain constant.

(c) Find the rate of change of the area with respect to θ at time t_0 given that b and c remain constant.

(d) Use the rate you found in part (c) to estimate by a differential the change in area that results from a 1° increase in θ.

(e) Find the rate of change of c with respect to b at time t_0 given that the area and θ remain constant.

56. Let f be a function of x and y that satisfies a relation of the form

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = kf, \qquad k \quad \text{a constant.}$$

Show that

$$f(x, y) = g(y)e^{kx},$$

where g is some function of y.

57. Let $z = f(x, y)$ be a function everywhere defined.

(a) Find a vector function that parametrizes the y_0-section of the graph. (Figure 15.4.1.) Find a vector function that parametrizes the line tangent to the y_0-section at the point $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$. See Exercise 41.

(b) Find a vector function that parametrizes the x_0-section of the graph. (See Figure 14.5.2.) Find a vector function that parametrizes the line tangent to the x_0-section at the point $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$.

(c) Show that the equation of the plane determined by the tangent lines found in parts (a) and (b) can be written

$$z - f(x_0, y_0) = (x - x_0)\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0) + (y - y_0)\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0).$$

58. (*A chain rule*) Let f be a function of x and y with partial derivatives f_x and f_y, and let g be a differentiable function of a single variable defined on the range of f. Form the composition $h(x, y) = g(f(x, y))$ and show that

$$h_x(x, y) = g'(f(x, y))f_x(x, y) \qquad \text{and}$$
$$h_y(x, y) = g'(f(x, y))f_y(x, y).$$

Setting $u = f(x, y)$, we have in Leibniz's notation

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \frac{dg}{du}\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} = \frac{dg}{du}\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}.$$

59. Let g be a differentiable function of a single variable everywhere defined. Use Exercise 58 to verify the following results.

(a) If a and b are constants and $w = g(ax + by)$, then

$$b\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = a\frac{\partial w}{\partial y}.$$

(b) If m and n are nonzero integers and $w = g(x^m y^n)$, then

$$nx\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = my\frac{\partial w}{\partial y}.$$

60. Given that $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$, find

$$\frac{\partial x}{\partial r}\frac{\partial y}{\partial \theta} - \frac{\partial x}{\partial \theta}\frac{\partial y}{\partial r}.$$

61. For a gas confined in a container, the ideal gas law states that the pressure P is related to the volume V and the temperature T by an equation of the form

$$P = k\frac{T}{V}$$

where k is a positive constant. Show that

$$V\frac{\partial P}{\partial V} = -P \qquad \text{and} \qquad V\frac{\partial P}{\partial V} + T\frac{\partial P}{\partial T} = 0.$$

62. Three resistances R_1, R_2, R_3 connected in parallel in an electrical circuit produce a resistance R that is given by the formula

$$\frac{1}{R} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}.$$

Find $\partial R/\partial R_1$.

15.5 OPEN AND CLOSED SETS

A *neighborhood* of a real number x_0 is by definition a set of the form $\{x : |x - x_0| < \delta\}$ where δ is a positive number. This is just an open interval centered at x_0:

$$(x_0 - \delta, x_0 + \delta).$$

If we remove x_0 from the set, we obtain the set

$$(x_0 - \delta, x_0) \cup (x_0, x_0 + \delta).$$

Such a set is called a *deleted neighborhood* of x_0.

From your study of one-variable calculus you know that for a function to have a limit at x_0 it must be defined at least on a deleted neighborhood of x_0, and for it to be continuous or differentiable at x_0 it must be defined at least on a full neighborhood of x_0.

To pave the way for the calculus of functions of several variables, we will extend the notions of neighborhood and deleted neighborhood to higher dimensions and, in so doing, obtain access to other fruitful ideas.

Points in the domain of a function of several variables can be written in vector notation. In the two-variable case, set

$$\mathbf{x} = (x, y),$$

and, in the three-variable case, set

$$\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z).$$

The vector notation enables us to treat the two cases together.

In this section we introduce five important notions:

(1) Neighborhood of a point.

(2) Interior of a set.

(3) Boundary of a set.

(4) Open set.

(5) Closed set.

For our purposes, the fundamental notion here is "neighborhood of a point." The other four notions can be derived from it.

DEFINITION 15.5.1 NEIGHBORHOOD OF A POINT

A *neighborhood* of a point $\mathbf{x}_0$ is a set of the form

$$\{\mathbf{x} : \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0\| < \delta\}$$

where δ is some number greater than zero.

In the plane, a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0)$ consists of all the points inside a disk centered at (x_0, y_0). In three-space, a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, z_0, z_0)$ consists of all the points inside a ball centered at (x_0, y_0, z_0). See Figure 15.5.1.

DEFINITION 15.5.2 THE INTERIOR OF A SET

A point $\mathbf{x}_0$ is said to be an *interior point* of the set S if the set S contains some neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$. The set of all interior points of S is called the *interior* of S.

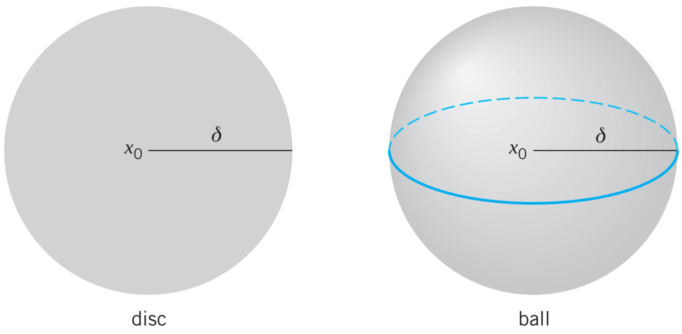


Figure 15.5.1

Example 1 Let Ω be the plane set shown in Figure 15.5.2. The point marked $\mathbf{x}_1$ is an interior point of Ω because Ω contains a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_1$. The point $\mathbf{x}_2$ is not an interior point of Ω because *no* neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_2$ is completely contained in Ω. (Every neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_2$ has points that do not lie in Ω.) ❑

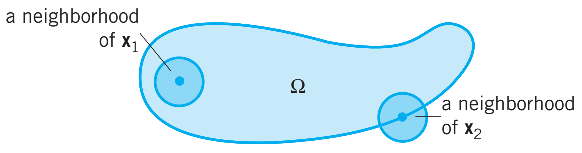


Figure 15.5.2

> **DEFINITION 15.5.3 THE BOUNDARY OF A SET**
>
> A point $\mathbf{x}_0$ is said to be a *boundary point* of the set S if every neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$ contains points that are in S and points that are not in S. The set of all boundary points of S is called the *boundary* of S.

Example 2 The point marked $\mathbf{x}_2$ in Figure 15.5.2 is a boundary point of Ω: each neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_2$ contains points in Ω and points not in Ω. ❑

> **DEFINITION 15.5.4 OPEN SET**
>
> A set S is said to be *open* if it contains a neighborhood of each of its points.

Thus

(1) A set S is open provided that each of its points is an interior point.

(2) A set S is open provided that it contains no boundary points.

> **DEFINITION 15.5.5 CLOSED SET**
>
> A set S is said to be *closed* if it contains its boundary.

Here are some examples of sets that are open, sets that are closed, and sets that are neither open nor closed:

Two-Dimensional Examples

The sets

$$S_1 = \{(x, y) : 1 < x < 2, 1 < y < 2\},$$
$$S_2 = \{(x, y) : 3 \le x \le 4, 1 \le y \le 2\},$$
$$S_3 = \{(x, y) : 5 \le x \le 6, 1 < y < 2\}$$

are displayed in Figure 15.5.3. S_1 is the inside of the first square. S_1 is open because it contains a neighborhood of each of its points. S_2 is the inside of the second square together with the four bounding line segments. S_2 is closed because it contains its entire boundary. S_3 is the inside of the last square together with the two vertical bounding line segments. S_3 is not open because it contains part of its boundary, and it is not closed because it does not contain all of its boundary.

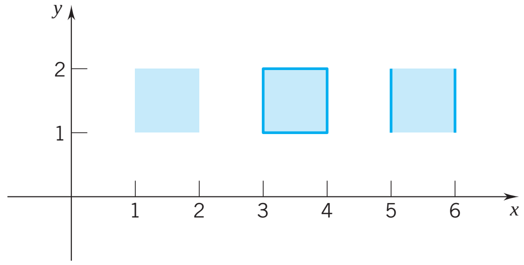


Figure 15.5.3

Three-Dimensional Examples

We now examine some three-dimensional sets:

$$S_1 = \{(x, y, z) : z > x^2 + y^2\},$$
$$S_2 = \{(x, y, z) : z \ge x^2 + y^2\},$$
$$S_3 = \left\{(x, y, z) : 1 \ge \frac{x^2 + y^2}{z}\right\}.$$

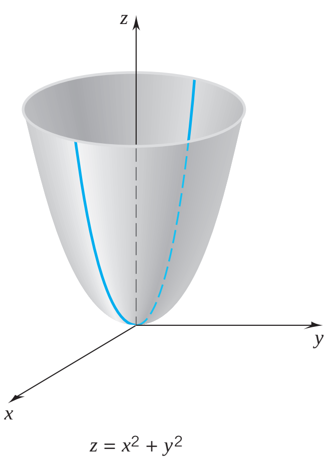


Figure 15.5.4

The boundary of each of these sets is the paraboloid of revolution

$$z = x^2 + y^2. \qquad \text{(Figure 15.5.4)}$$

The first set consists of all points above this surface. This set is open because, if a point is above this surface, then all points sufficiently close to it are also above this surface. Thus the set contains a neighborhood of each of its points. The second set is closed because it contains all of its boundary. The third set is neither open nor closed. It is not open because it contains some boundary points; for example, it contains the point (1, 1, 2). It is not closed because it fails to contain the boundary point (0, 0, 0).

A Final Remark A neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$ is a set of the form

$$\{\mathbf{x} : \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0\| < \delta\}.$$

If we remove $\mathbf{x}_0$ from the set, we have the set

$$\{\mathbf{x} : 0 < \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0\| < \delta\}.$$

Such a set is called a *deleted neighborhood* of $\mathbf{x}_0$. (We will use deleted neighborhoods in the next section to support the definition of limit.) ❑

EXERCISES 15.5

Exercises 1–10. Specify the interior and the boundary of the set. State whether the set is open, closed, or neither. Then sketch the set.

1. $\{(x, y) : 2 \le x \le 4, 1 \le y \le 3\}$.

2. $\{(x, y) : 2 < x < 4, 1 < y < 3\}$.

3. $\{(x, y) : 1 < x^2 + y^2 < 4\}$.

4. $\{(x, y) : 1 \le x^2 \le 4\}$.

5. $\{(x, y) : 1 < x^2 \le 4\}$. **6.** $\{(x, y) : y < x^2\}$.

7. $\{(x, y) : y \le x^2\}$.

8. $\{(x, y, z) : 1 \le x \le 2, 1 \le y \le 2, 1 \le z < 2\}$.

9. $\{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 \le 1, 0 \le z \le 4\}$.

10. $\{(x, y, z) : (x-1)^2 + (y-1)^2 + (z-1)^2 < \frac{1}{4}\}$.

11. Let $S = \{\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n\}$ be a nonempty, finite set of points. (a) What is the interior of S? (b) What is the boundary of S? (c) Is S open, closed, or neither?

All the notions introduced in this section can be applied to sets of real numbers: write x for $\mathbf{x}$ and $|x|$ for $\|\mathbf{x}\|$. As indicated earlier, a *neighborhood* of a number x_0, a set of the form

$$\{x : |x - x_0| < \delta\} \qquad \text{with } \delta > 0,$$

is just the open interval $(x_0 - \delta, x_0 + \delta)$.

Exercises 12–19. Specify the interior and boundary of the set. State whether the set is open, closed, or neither.

12. $\{x : 1 < x < 3\}$. **13.** $\{x : 1 \le x \le 3\}$.

14. $\{x : 1 \le x < 3\}$. **15.** $\{x : x > 1\}$.

16. $\{x : x \le -1\}$. **17.** $\{x : x < -1 \text{ or } x \ge 1\}$.

18. The set of positive integers: $\{1, 2, 3, \ldots, n, \ldots\}$.

19. The set of reciprocals: $\{1, 1/2, 1/3, \ldots, 1/n \ldots\}$.

20. Let $\emptyset$ be the empty set. Let X be the real line, the entire plane, or, in the three-dimensional case, all of three-space. For each subset A of X, let $X - A$ be the set of all points $\mathbf{x} \in X$ such that $\mathbf{x} \notin A$.

(a) Show that $\emptyset$ is both open and closed.

(b) Show that X is both open and closed. (It can be shown that $\emptyset$ and X are the only subsets of X that are both open and closed.)

(c) Let U be a subset of X. Show that U is open iff $X - U$ is closed.

(d) Let F be a subset of X. Show that F is closed iff $X - F$ is open.

■ 15.6 LIMITS AND CONTINUITY; EQUALITY OF MIXED PARTIALS

The Basic Notions

The limit process used in taking partial derivatives involved nothing new because in each instance all but one of the variables remained fixed. In this section we take up limits of the form

$$\lim_{(x,y)\to(x_0,y_0)} f(x, y) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{(x,y,z)\to(x_0,y_0,z_0)} f(x, y, z).$$

To avoid having to treat the two- and three-variable cases separately, we will write instead

$$\lim_{\mathbf{x}\to\mathbf{x}_0} f(\mathbf{x}).$$

This gives us both the two-variable case [set $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)$ and $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0)$] and the three-variable case [set $\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z)$ and $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$].

To take the limit of $f(\mathbf{x})$ as $\mathbf{x}$ tends to $\mathbf{x}_0$, we do not need f to be defined at $\mathbf{x}_0$ itself, but we do need f to be defined at points $\mathbf{x}$ close to $\mathbf{x}_0$. At this stage, we will assume that f is defined at all points $\mathbf{x}$ in some deleted neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$ (f may or may not be defined at $\mathbf{x}_0$). This will guarantee that we can form $f(\mathbf{x})$ for all $\mathbf{x} \ne \mathbf{x}_0$ that are "sufficiently close" to $\mathbf{x}_0$. This approach is consistent with our approach to limits of functions of one variable in Chapter 2.

To say that

$$\lim_{\mathbf{x}\to\mathbf{x}_0} f(\mathbf{x}) = L$$

is to say that for $\mathbf{x}$ sufficiently close to $\mathbf{x}_0$ but different from $\mathbf{x}_0$, the number $f(\mathbf{x})$ is close to L; or, to put it another way, as $\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0\|$ tends to zero but remains different

from zero, $|f(\mathbf{x}) - L|$ tends to zero. The ϵ, δ definition is a direct generalization of the ϵ, δ definition in the single-variable case.

DEFINITION 15.6.1 THE LIMIT OF A FUNCTION OF SEVERAL VARIABLES

Let f be a function defined at least on some deleted neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$.

$$\lim_{\mathbf{x}\to\mathbf{x}_0} f(x) = L$$

provided that for each $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(\mathbf{x}) - L| < \epsilon.$$

Example 1 We will show that the function $f(x, y) = \dfrac{xy + y^3}{x^2 + y^2}$ does not have a limit at $(0, 0)$. Note that f is not defined at $(0, 0)$ but is defined for all $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$.

Along the obvious paths to $(0, 0)$, the coordinate axes, the limiting value is 0: Along the x-axis, $y = 0$; thus, $f(x, y) = f(x, 0) = 0$ and $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x, 0) = \lim_{x\to 0} 0 = 0$. Along the y-axis, $x = 0$; thus, $f(x, y) = f(0, y) = y$ and $\lim_{y\to 0} f(0, y) = \lim_{y\to 0} y = 0$. Along the line $y = 2x$, however, the limiting value is $\frac{2}{5}$:

$$f(x, y) = f(x, 2x) = \frac{2x^2 + 8x^3}{x^2 + 4x^2} = \frac{2 + 8x}{5} \to \frac{2}{5} \qquad \text{as} \quad x \to 0.$$

There is nothing special about the line $y = 2x$ here. For example, as you can verify, $f(x, y) \to -\frac{1}{2}$ as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the line $y = -x$. These different modes of approach are illustrated in Figure 15.6.1.

We have shown that not all paths to $(0, 0)$ yield the same limiting value. It follows that f does not have a limit at $(0, 0)$. ❑

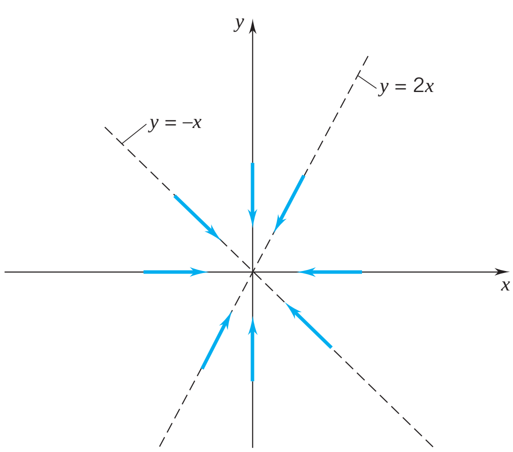


Figure 15.6.1

Example 2 Show that the function $g(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2 y}{x^4 + y^2}$ has limiting value 0 as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along *any* line through the origin, but

$$\lim_{(x,y)\to(0,0)} g(x, y)$$

still does not exist. Note that the domain of g is all $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$.

SOLUTION As in Example 1, it is easy to verify that $g(x, y) \to 0$ as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the coordinate axes. If we let $y = mx$, then

$$g(x, y) = g(x, mx) = \frac{mx^3}{x^4 + m^2x^2} = \frac{mx}{x^2 + m^2} \qquad (x \neq 0)$$

and

$$\lim_{x \to 0} g(x, mx) = \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{mx}{x^2 + m^2} = 0.$$

Therefore, $g(x, y) \to 0$ as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along any line through the origin.

Now suppose that $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the parabola $y = x^2$. Then we have

$$g(x, y) = g(x, x^2) = \frac{x^4}{x^4 + x^4} = \frac{1}{2}$$

and

$$\lim_{x \to 0} g(x, x^2) = \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Thus, $g(x, y) \to \frac{1}{2}$ as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the parabola $y = x^2$. (Figure 15.6.2.)

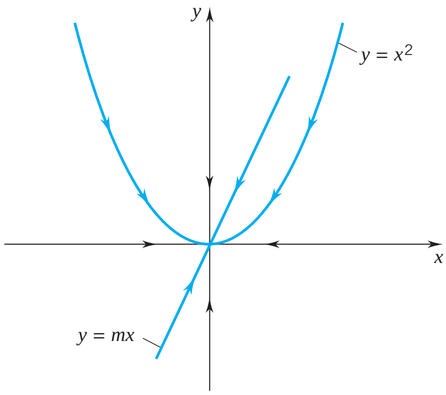


Figure 15.6.2

Since not all paths to (0, 0) yield the same limiting value, we conclude that g does not have a limit at (0, 0). ❑

As in the one-variable case, the limit (if it exists) is unique. Moreover, if

$$\lim_{\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{x}_0} f(\mathbf{x}) = L \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{x}_0} g(\mathbf{x}) = M,$$

then

$$\lim_{\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{x}_0} [f(\mathbf{x}) + g(\mathbf{x})] = L + M, \qquad \lim_{\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{x}_0} [f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x})] = LM,$$

and if $M \neq 0$

$$\lim_{\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{x}_0} [f(\mathbf{x})/g(\mathbf{x})] = L/M.$$

These results are not hard to derive. You can do it simply by imitating the corresponding arguments in the one-variable case.

Suppose now that $\mathbf{x}_0$ is an interior point of the domain of f. To say that f is *continuous* at $\mathbf{x}_0$ is to say that

(15.6.2)
$$\boxed{\lim_{\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{x}_0} f(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x}_0).}$$

For the two-variable case we can write

$$\lim_{(x,y)\to(x_0,y_0)} f(x, y) = f(x_0, y_0)$$

and for three variables,

$$\lim_{(x,y,z)\to(x_0,y_0,z_0)} f(x, y, z) = f(x_0, y_0, z_0).$$

Another way to indicate that f is continuous at $\mathbf{x}_0$ is to write

(15.6.3) $$\boxed{\lim_{\mathbf{h}\to 0} f(\mathbf{x}_0 + \mathbf{h}) = f(\mathbf{x}_0).}$$

To say that f is *continuous on an open set S* is to say that f is continuous at all points of S.

Some Examples of Continuous Functions

Polynomials in several variables, for example,

$$P(x, y) = x^2y + 3x^3y^4 - x + 2y \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(x, y, z) = 6x^3z - yz^3 + 2xyz$$

are everywhere continuous. In the two-variable case, that means continuity at each point of the *xy*-plane, and in the three-variable case, continuity at each point of three-space.

Rational functions (quotients of polynomials) are continuous everywhere except where the denominator is zero. Thus

$$f(x, y) = \frac{2x - y}{x^2 + y^2}$$

is continuous at each point of the *xy*-plane other than the origin (0, 0);

$$g(x, y) = \frac{x^4}{x - y}$$

is continuous except on the line $y = x$;

$$h(x, y) = \frac{1}{x^2 - y}$$

is continuous except on the parabola $y = x^2$;

$$F(x, y, z) = \frac{2x}{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$$

is continuous at each point of three-space other than the origin (0, 0, 0);

$$G(x, y, z) = \frac{x^5 - y}{ax + by + cz},$$

where a, b, c are constants, is continuous except on the plane $ax + by + cz = 0$.

You can construct more elaborate continuous functions by forming composites: take, for example,

$$f(x, y, z) = \arctan\left(\frac{xz^2}{x + y}\right), \quad g(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^4 + z^6}, \quad h(x, y, z) = \sin xyz.$$

The first function is continuous except along the vertical plane $x + y = 0$. The other two functions are continuous at each point of space. The continuity of such composites

follows from a simple theorem that we now state and prove. In the theorem, g is a function of several variables, but f is a function of a single variable.

THEOREM 15.6.4 THE CONTINUITY OF COMPOSITE FUNCTIONS

If g is continuous at the point $\mathbf{x}_0$ and f is continuous at the number $g(\mathbf{x}_0)$, then the composition $f \circ g$ is continuous at the point $\mathbf{x}_0$.

PROOF We begin with $\epsilon > 0$. We must show that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x_0}\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \quad |f(g(\mathbf{x})) - f(g(\mathbf{x}_0))| < \epsilon.$$

From the continuity of f at $g(\mathbf{x}_0)$, we know that there exists a $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |u - g(\mathbf{x_0})| < \delta_1, \qquad \text{then} \quad |f(u) - f(g(\mathbf{x}_0))| < \epsilon.$$

From the continuity of g at $\mathbf{x}_0$, we know that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x_0}\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \quad |g(\mathbf{x}) - g(\mathbf{x}_0)| < \delta_1.$$

This last δ obviously works; namely,

$$\text{if} \quad \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x_0}\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - g(\mathbf{x}_0)| < \delta_1,$$

and therefore

$$|f(g(\mathbf{x})) - f(g(\mathbf{x}_0))| < \epsilon. \quad \square$$

Continuity in Each Variable Separately

A *continuous function of several variables is continuous in each of its variables separately*. In the two-variable case, this means that, if

$$\lim_{(x,y)\to(x_0,y_0)} f(x, y) = f(x_0, y_0),$$

then

$$\lim_{x\to x_0} f(x, y_0) = f(x_0, y_0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{y\to y_0} f(x_0, y) = f(x_0, y_0).$$

(This is not hard to prove.) The converse is false. *It is possible for a function to be continuous in each variable separately and yet fail to be continuous as a function of several variables*. You can see this is in the next example.

Example 3 We set

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2xy}{x^2 + y^2}, & (x, y) \neq (0, 0) \\ \quad 0, & (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

Since $f(x, 0) = 0$ for all x and $f(0, y) = 0$ for all y,

$$\lim_{x\to 0} f(x, 0) = 0 = f(0, 0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{y\to 0} f(0, y) = 0 = f(0, 0).$$

Thus, at the point (0,0), f is continuous in x and continuous in y. As a function of two variables, however, f is not continuous at (0, 0). One way to see this is to note that we can approach (0, 0) as closely as we wish by points of the form (t, t) with $t \neq 0$ (that

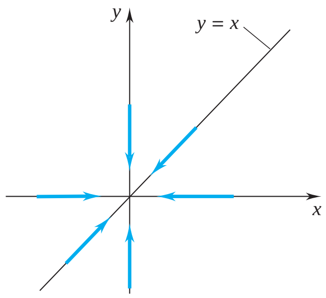


Figure 15.6.3

is, along the line $y = x$). (See Figure 15.6.3.) At such points f takes on the value 1:

$$f(t, t) = \frac{2t^2}{t^2 + t^2} = 1.$$

Hence, f cannot tend to $f(0, 0) = 0$ as required. ❑

Continuity and Partial Differentiability

For functions of a single variable the existence of the derivative guarantees continuity. (Theorem 3.1.3.). *For functions of several variables the existence of partial derivatives does not guarantee continuity.*[†]

To show this, we can use the same function

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2xy}{x^2 + y^2}, & (x, y) \neq (0, 0) \\ 0, & (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

Since both $f(x, 0)$ and $f(0, y)$ are constantly zero, both partials exist (and are zero) at $(0, 0)$, and yet, as you saw, the function is discontinuous at $(0, 0)$.

It is not hard to understand how a function can have partial derivatives and yet fail to be continuous. The existence of $\partial f/\partial x$ at (x_0, y_0) depends on the behavior of f only at points of the form $(x_0 + h, y_0)$. Similarly, the existence of $\partial f/\partial y$ at (x_0, y_0) depends on the behavior of f only at points of the form $(x_0, y_0 + k)$. On the other hand, continuity at (x_0, y_0) depends on the behavior of f at points of the more general form $(x_0 + h, y_0 + k)$. More briefly, we can put it this way: *the existence of a partial derivative depends on the behavior of the function along a line segment parallel to one of the axes, whereas continuity depends on the behavior of the function in all directions.*

Derivatives of Higher Order; Equality of Mixed Partials

Suppose that f is a function of x and y with first partials f_x and f_y. These are again functions of x and y and may themselves possess partial derivatives: $(f_x)_x,\ (f_x)_y,\ (f_y)_x,\ (f_y)_y$. These functions are called the *second-order partials*. If $z = f(x, y)$, we use the following notations for second-order partials

$$f_{xx} = (f_x)_x = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2},$$

$$f_{xy} = (f_x)_y = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y \partial x},$$

$$f_{yx} = (f_y)_x = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y},$$

$$f_{yy} = (f_y)_y = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2}.$$

Note that there are two "mixed" partials: $f_{xy}(\partial^2 f/\partial y \partial x)$ and $f_{yx}(\partial^2 f/\partial x \partial y)$. The first of these is obtained by differentiating first with respect to x and then with respect to y. The second is obtained by differentiating first with respect to y and then with respect to x.

[†]See, however, Exercise 32.

Example 4 The function $f(x, y) = \sin x^2 y$ has first partials

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 2xy\cos x^2 y \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x^2\cos x^2 y.$$

The second-order partials are

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = -4x^2y^2\sin x^2y + 2y\cos x^2y, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\partial x} = -2x^3y\sin x^2y + 2x\cos x^2y,$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\partial y} = -2x^3y\sin x^2y + 2x\cos x^2y, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = -x^4\sin x^2y. \quad \square$$

Example 5 Setting $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^3)$, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{2x}{x^2 + y^3} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{3y^2}{x^2 + y^3}.$$

The second-order partials are

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = \frac{(x^2 + y^3)2 - 2x(2x)}{(x^2 + y^3)^2} = \frac{2(y^3 - x^2)}{(x^2 + y^3)^2},$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\partial x} = \frac{-2x(3y^2)}{(x^2 + y^3)^2} = -\frac{6xy^2}{(x^2 + y^3)^2},$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\partial y} = \frac{-3y^2(2x)}{(x^2 + y^3)^2} = -\frac{6xy^2}{(x^2 + y^3)^2},$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = \frac{(x^2 + y^3)6y - 3y^2(3y^2)}{(x^2 + y^3)^2} = \frac{3y(2x^2 - y^3)}{(x^2 + y^3)^2}. \quad \square$$

Perhaps you noticed that in both examples

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\partial y}.$$

Since in neither case is f symmetric in x and y, this inequality of the mixed partials is not due to symmetry. Actually it is due to continuity. It can be proved that

(15.6.5)

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\partial y}$$

on every open set on which f and the partials

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}, \quad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\partial y}$$

are continuous.†

In the case of a function of three variables, you can look for three first partials

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}, \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}$$

†For a proof, consult a text on advanced calculus.

and nine second partials

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial^2 x}, \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z}, \quad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial^2 y}, \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z}, \quad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x}, \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial^2 z}.$$

Here again, there is equality of mixed partials

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z}, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y}$$

on every open set on which f, its first partials, and its mixed partials are continuous.

Example 6 Set $f(x, y, z) = xe^y \sin \pi z$. Here

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = e^y \sin \pi z \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = xe^y \sin \pi z \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = \pi x e^y \cos \pi z$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 0 \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = xe^y \sin \pi z \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} = -\pi^2 xe^y \sin \pi z$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = e^y \sin \pi z = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x} = \pi e^y \cos \pi z = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z} = \pi x e^y \cos \pi z = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y}. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 15.6

Exercises 1–20. Calculate the second-order partial derivatives. (Treat A, B, C, D as constants.)

1. $f(x, y) = Ax^2 + 2Bxy + Cy^2$.

2. $f(x, y) = Ax^3 + Bx^2 y + Cxy^2$.

3. $f(x, y) = Ax + By + Ce^{xy}$.

4. $f(x, y) = x^2 \cos y + y^2 \sin x$.

5. $f(x, y, z) = (x + y^2 + z^3)^2$.

6. $f(x, y) = \sqrt{x + y^2}$.

7. $f(x, y) = \ln\left(\dfrac{x}{x + y}\right)$.

8. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{Ax + By}{Cx + Dy}$.

9. $f(x, y, z) = (x + y)(y + z)(z + x)$.

10. $f(x, y, z) = \arctan xyz$.

11. $f(x, y) = x^y$.

12. $f(x, y, z) = \sin(x + z^y)$.

13. $f(x, y) = xe^y + ye^x$.

14. $f(x, y) = \arctan(y/x)$.

15. $f(x, y) = \ln\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

16. $f(x, y) = \sin x^3 y^2$.

17. $f(x, y) = \cos^2 xy$.

18. $f(x, y) = e^{xy^2}$.

19. $f(x, y, z) = xy \sin z - xz \sin y$.

20. $f(x, y, z) = xe^y + ye^z + ze^x$.

21. Show that

$$\text{for } u = \frac{xy}{x + y}, \qquad x^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + 2xy \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + y^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0.$$

22. Show that for f of the form specified below,

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}.$$

(a) $f(x, y) = g(x) + h(y)$ with g and h differentiable.

(b) $f(x, y) = g(x)h(y)$ with g and h differentiable.

(c) $f(x, y)$ a polynomial in x and y.

HINT for part (c): Check each term $x^m y^n$ separately.

23. Let f be a function of x and y with everywhere continuous second partials. Is it possible that

(a) $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x} = x + y$ and $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y} = y - x$?

(b) $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x} = xy$ and $\dfrac{\partial y}{\partial y} = xy$?

24. Let g be a twice-differentiable function of one variable and set

$$h(x, y) = g(x + y) + g(x - y).$$

Show that

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2}.$$

HINT: Use the chain rule of Exercise 58, Section 15.4.

25. Let f be a function of x and y with third-order partials

$$\frac{\partial^3 f}{\partial x^2 \partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^3 f}{\partial y \partial x^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}\right).$$

Show that, if all the partials are continuous, then

$$\frac{\partial^3 f}{\partial x^2 \partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x^2}.$$

26. Show that the following functions do not have a limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$.

(a) $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2}$. (b) $f(x, y) = \dfrac{y^2}{x^2 + y^2}$.

Exercises 27–28. Evaluate the limit of the function as (x, y) approaches the origin along the path indicated.

(a) The x-axis. (b) The y-axis.
(c) The line $y = mx$. (d) The spiral $r = \theta, \theta > 0$.
(e) The differentiable curve $y = f(x)$ with $f(0) = 0$.
(f) The arc $r = \sin 3\theta$, $\frac{1}{6}\pi < \theta < \frac{1}{3}\pi$.
(g) The path $\mathbf{r}(t) = \dfrac{1}{t}\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{\sin t}{t}\mathbf{j}$, $t > 0$.

27. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{xy}{x^2 + y^2}$.

28. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{xy^2}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}$.

29. Set

$$g(x, y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2y^2}{x^4 + y^4}, & (x, y) \neq (0, 0) \\ 0, & (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

(a) Show that $\partial g/\partial x$ and $\partial g/\partial y$ both exist at $(0, 0)$. What are their values at $(0, 0)$?
(b) Show that $\lim_{(x,y)\to(0,0)} g(x, y)$ does not exist.

30. Set

$$f(x, y) = \frac{x - y^4}{x^3 - y^4}.$$

Determine whether or not f has a limit at $(1, 1)$.
HINT: Let (x, y) tend to $(1, 1)$ along the line $x = 1$ and along the line $y = 1$.

31. Set

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{xy(y^2 - x^2)}{x^2 + y^2}, & (x, y) \neq (0, 0) \\ 0, & (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

It can be shown that some of the second partials are discontinuous at $(0, 0)$. Show that

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(0, 0) \neq \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(0, 0).$$

32. If a function of several variables has all its first partials at a point, then it is continuous in each variable separately at that point. Show, for example, that if f_x exists at (x_0, y_0), then f is continuous in x at (x_0, y_0).

33. Let f be a function of x and y which has continuous first and second partial derivatives throughout some open set D in the plane. Suppose that $f_{xy}(x, y) = 0$ for all $(x, y) \in D$. What can you conclude about f?

C **34.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the function of Exercise 26(a) on the square $-2 \leq x \leq 2, -2 \leq y \leq 2$. The figure should show that the limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the y-axis is 1 and the limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the y-axis is -1.

C **35.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the function of Exercise 26(b) on the square $-2 \leq x \leq 2, -2 \leq y \leq 2$. The figure should show that the limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the x-axis is 0 and the limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the y-axis is 1.

C **36.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of the function of Exercise 27 on the square $-2 \leq x \leq 2, -2 \leq y \leq 2$. The figure should show that the limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the coordinate axes is 0 and the limit as $(x, y) \to (0, 0)$ along the line $y = x$ is $\frac{1}{2}$.

■ PROJECT 15.6 Partial Differential Equations

The differential equations that we have studied so far are *ordinary differential equations*. They involve only ordinary derivatives, derivatives of functions of one variable. Here we examine some *partial differential equations*, the most prominent of which are equations that relate two or more of the partial derivatives of an unknown function of several variables.

Partial differential equations play an enormous role in science because the description of most natural phenomena is based on models that involve functions of several variables. For example, the partial differential equation known as the Schrödinger[†] equation is viewed by many physicists as the cornerstone of quantum mechanics. Below we introduce two equations of classical physics which have found broad applications in science and engineering.

[†]Introduced in 1926 by the Austrian theoretical physicist Erwin Schrödinger (1881–1961).

Problem 1. Show that the given function satisfies the corresponding differential equation.

a. $u = \dfrac{x^2y^2}{x + y}$; $\quad x\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + y\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 3u$.

b. $u = x^2y + y^2z + z^2x$; $\quad \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y} + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial z} = (x + y + z)^2$.

Laplace's Equation.[††] The partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

[††]Named after the French mathematician Pierre-Simon Laplace (1749–1827). Laplace wrote two monumental works: one on celestial mechanics, the other on probability theory. He also made major contributions to the theory of differential equations.

is known as *Laplace's equation in two dimensions.* It is used to describe potentials and steady-state temperature distributions in the plane. In three dimensions Laplace's equation reads

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} = 0.$$

This equation is satisfied by gravitational and electrostatic potentials and by steady-state temperature distributions in space. Functions that satisfy Laplace's equation are called *harmonic* functions.

Problem 2.

a. Show that the functions below satisfy Laplace's equation in two dimensions.

(i) $f(x, y) = x^3 - 3xy^2$.

(ii) $f(x, y) = \cos x \sinh y + \sin x \cosh y$.

(iii) $f(x, y) = \ln \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

b. Show that the functions below satisfy Laplace's equation in three dimensions.

(i) $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}$.

(ii) $f(x, y, z) = e^{x+y} \cos \sqrt{2}\, z$.

The Wave Equation The partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t^2} - c^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 0$$

where c is a positive constant is known as the *wave equation.* It arises in the study of phenomena that involve the propagation of waves in a continuous medium. Studies of water waves, sound waves, and light waves are all based on this equation. The wave equation is also used in the study of mechanical vibrations.

Problem 3. Show that the functions below satisfy the wave equation.

a. $f(x, t) = (Ax + B)(Ct + D)$.

b. $f(x, t) = \sin(x + ct) \cos(2x + 2ct)$.

c. $f(x, t) = \ln(x + ct)$.

d. $f(x, t) = (Ae^{kx} + Be^{-kx})(Ce^{ckt} + De^{-ckt})$.

Problem 4. Let $f(x, t) = g(x + ct) + h(x - ct)$ where g and h are any two twice differentiable functions. Show that f is a solution of the wave equation. (This is the most general form of solution for the wave equation.)

CHAPTER 15. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–4. Find the domain and range of the function.

1. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{y - x^2}}$. **2.** $f(x, y) = e^{-(x^2+y^2)}$.

3. $f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{z - x^2 - y^2}$.

4. $f(x, y, z) = \ln(x + 2y + z)$.

5. Express as a function of two variables x and y.
- (a) The volume of a circular cone of radius x and height y.
- (b) The volume of a box of length x height y given that the box is twice as long as it is wide.
- (c) The angle between the vectors $\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j}$ and $x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$.

6. A rectangular box is inscribed in the ellipsoid $(x^2/a^2) + (y^2/b^2) + (z^2/c^2) = 1$. The sides of the box are parallel to the coordinate planes and the vertices of the box are on the ellipsoid. Express the volume of the box as a function of x and y.

Exercises 7–12. Identify the surface and find the traces. Then sketch the surface.

7. $4x^2 + 9y^2 + 36z^2 = 36$. **8.** $4z^2 - x^2 - y^2 = 4$.

9. $z = y^2 - x^2$. **10.** $4x^2 + 9z^2 = y$.

11. $x^2 = y^2 + z^2$. **12.** $z^2 = 9x^2 + 4y^2 - 36$.

Exercises 13–16. Sketch the cylinder.

13. $x^2 + z^2 = 4$. **14.** $y - x^2 = 1$.

15. $4y^2 + 9z^2 - 36 = 0$. **16.** $(y - 1)^2 + (z - 1)^2 = 1$.

Exercises 17–20. Identify the level curves $f(x, y) = c$ and sketch the curves corresponding to the indicated values of c.

17. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 + 3y^2$; $c = 0, 6, 12$.

18. $f(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 - 4}$; $c = 0, 1, 2, \sqrt{5}$.

19. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{y^2}$; $c = -4, -1, 1, 4$.

20. $f(x, y) = e^{x^2+y^2}$; $c = e, e^4, e^9$.

Exercises 21–22. Identify the c-level surface and sketch it.

21. $f(x, y, z) = 2x + y + 3z$; $c = 6$.

22. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + 4z^2$; $c = 16$.

23. Set $f(x, y) = (y^2 + 1)\,e^x$. Find an equation for the level curve that passes through the point indicated

(a) $P(0, 0)$. (b) $P(\ln 2, 1)$. (c) $P(1, -1)$.

24. Set $f(x, y, z) = x^2 \cos yz$. Find an equation for the level surface that passes through the point indicated.

(a) $P(2, 0, 1)$. (b) $P(1, \pi, -1)$. (c) $P(4, \pi, \frac{1}{2})$.

Exercises 25–26. Find $f_x(x, y)$ and $f_y(x, y)$ by forming the appropriate difference quotient and taking the limit as h tends to 0.

25. $f(x, y) = x^2 + 2xy$. **26.** $f(x, y) = y^2 \cos 2x$.

Exercises 27–36. Calculate the first-order partial derivatives.

27. $f(x, y) = x^2 y - 2xy^3$. **28.** $g(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}$.

29. $z = x^2 \sin xy^2$. **30.** $f(x, y) = e^{xy} \ln(y/x)$.

31. $h(x, y) = e^{-x} \cos(2x - y)$.

32. $u = y^2 \sec x + x^2 \tan y$.

33. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{2xy}{x + y + z}$. **34.** $w = x \arctan(y - z)$.

35. $g(x, y, z) = \ln \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$.

36. $h(u, v, w) = e^{uv} \sin uw$.

Exercises 37–42. Calculate the second-order partial derivatives.

37. $f(x, y) = x^3y^2 - 4xy^3 + 2x - y$.

38. $g(x, y) = x^2 \ln(y - x)$.

39. $g(x, y) = xy \sin(xy)$. **40.** $f(x, y) = x^2 e^{x/y}$.

41. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 e^{2y} \cos(2z + 1)$.

42. $g(x, y, z) = 2x^2yz^3 + e^{xyz}$.

Exercises 43–44. The surface $z = 2x^2 + 3xy$ intersects the plane in a curve C. Give parametric equations for the line tangent to C at the point indicated.

43. Plane $y = 2$; $P(1, 2, 8)$. **44.** Plane $x = 2$; $P(2, -1, 2)$.

45. The surface $z = \sqrt{20 - 2x^2 - 3y^2}$ is the top half of an ellipsoid centered at the origin.

(a) The surface intersects the plane $x = 2$ in a curve C_1. Write scalar parametric equations for the line tangent to C_1 at the point $(2, 1, 3)$.

(b) The surface intersects the plane $y = 1$ in a curve C_2. Write scalar parametric equations for the line tangent to C_2 at the point $(2, 1, 3)$.

(c) The lines found in (a) and (b) determine a plane. Write an equation in (x, y, z) for this plane.

Exercises 46–50. Specify the interior and the boundary of the set. State whether the set is open, closed, or neither. Then sketch the set.

46. $\{(x, y) : \quad 0 \le x \le 3, 2 < y \le 5\}$.

47. $\{(x, y) : \quad 0 < x^2 + y^2 < 4\}$.

48. $\{(x, y) : \quad x + y \ge 4\}$.

49. $\{(x, y, z) : \quad y^2 + z^2 \le 4, \; 0 \le x \le 2, \; y \ge 0, z \ge 0\}$.

50. $\{(x, y, z) : \quad 0 \le x^2 + y^2 \le z < 4\}$.

51. Let g be a twice differentiable function of one variable and set $f(x, y) = g(xy)$.

(a) Show that

$$x\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} - y\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 0.$$

(b) Show that

$$x^2\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} - y^2\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 0.$$

52. Show that $f(x, y) = \arctan(y/x)$ satisfies Laplace's equation $f_{xx} + f_{yy} = 0$.

53. Is there a function f of x and y with everywhere continuous second partials such that

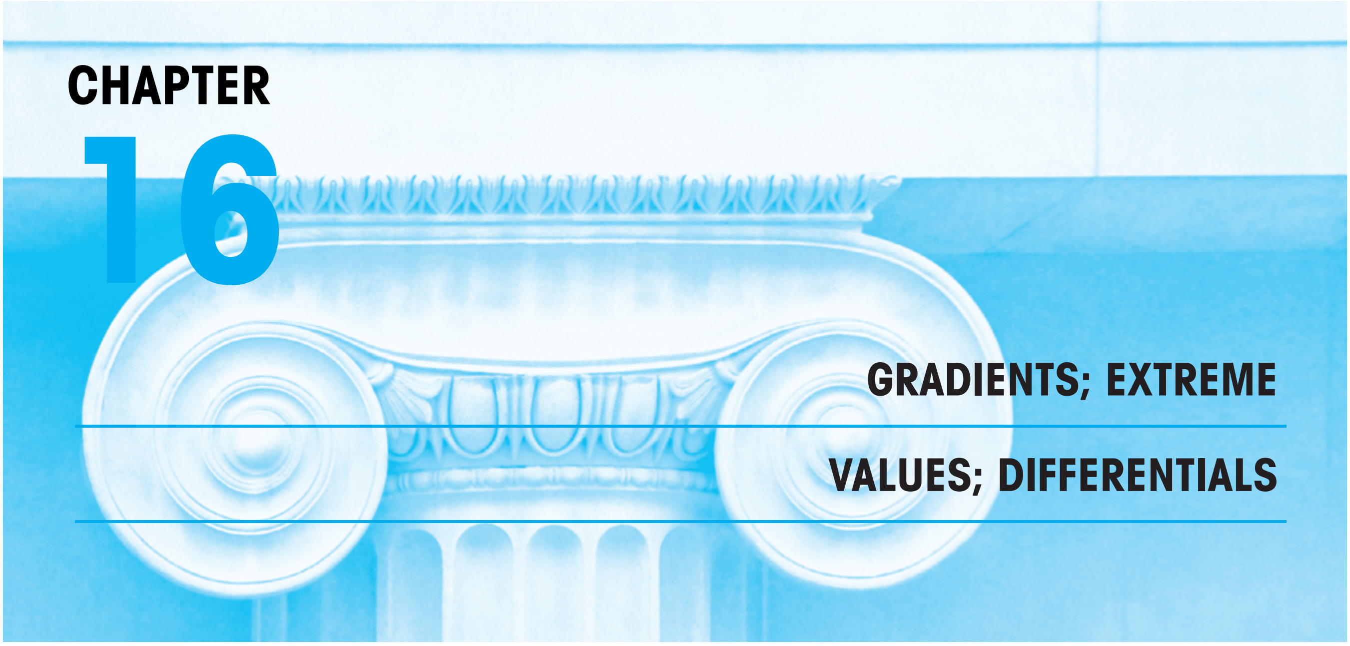
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = xe^{xy} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = ye^{xy}?$$

54. Set $f(x, y) = \dfrac{2x^2y}{x^4 + y^2}$. Evaluate the limit of $f(x, y)$ as (x, y) approaches the origin along

(a) the x-axis; (b) the y-axis;

(c) the line $y = mx$; (d) the parabola $y = ax^2$.

Does $\displaystyle\lim_{(x,y)\to(0,0)} f(x, y)$ exist?



CHAPTER 16

GRADIENTS; EXTREME VALUES; DIFFERENTIALS

16.1 DIFFERENTIABILITY AND GRADIENT

The Notion of Differentiability

Our object here is to extend the notion of differentiability from real-valued functions of one variable to real-valued functions of several variables. Partial derivatives alone do not fulfill this role because they reflect behavior only along paths parallel to the coordinate axes.

In the one-variable case we formed the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}$$

and called f differentiable at x provided that this quotient had a limit as h tended to zero. In the multivariable case we can still form the difference

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x}),$$

but the "quotient"

$$\frac{f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x})}{\mathbf{h}}$$

is not defined because it makes no sense to divide by a vector **h**.

We can get around this difficulty by going back to an idea introduced in the Exercises for Section 4.11. We review the idea here.

Let g be a real-valued function of a single variable defined at least on some open interval that contains the number 0. We say that $g(h)$ is *little*-$o(h)$ (read "little oh of h") and write $g(h)=o(h)$ to indicate that $g(h)$ is so small compared to h that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(h)}{h}=0 \qquad \text{or equivalently that} \qquad \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(h)}{|h|}=0.$$

We will use the second formulation, the one with $|h|$ in the denominator.

For a function of one variable, the following statements are equivalent:

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h} = f'(x)$$

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{[f(x+h)-f(x)]-f'(x)h}{h} = 0$$

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{[f(x+h)-f(x)]-f'(x)h}{|h|} = 0$$

$$[f(x+h)-f(x)]-f'(x)h = o(h)$$

$$[f(x+h)-f(x)] = f'(x)h + o(h).$$

Thus, for a function of one variable, the derivative of f at x is the unique number $f'(x)$ such that

$$f(x+h)-f(x) = f'(x)h + o(h).$$

It is this view of the derivative that inspires the notion of differentiability in the multivariable case.

Let g be a function of several variables defined at least in some neighborhood of $\mathbf{0}$. We say that $g(\mathbf{h})$ is $o(\mathbf{h})$ and write $g(\mathbf{h}) = o(\mathbf{h})$ to indicate that

$$\lim_{\mathbf{h}\to\mathbf{0}} \frac{g(\mathbf{h})}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} = 0.$$

Now let f be a function of several variables *defined at least in some neighborhood of* $\mathbf{x}$. [In the three-variable case, $\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z)$; in the two-variable case, $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)$.]

DEFINITION 16.1.1 DIFFERENTIABILITY

We say that f is *differentiable at* $\mathbf{x}$ provided that there exists a vector $\mathbf{y}$ such that

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{y}\cdot\mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h}).$$

It is not hard to show that, if such a vector $\mathbf{y}$ exists, it is unique. (Exercise 41) We call this unique vector *the gradient of* f *at* $\mathbf{x}$ and denote it by $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$.†

DEFINITION 16.1.2 GRADIENT

Let f be differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$. The *gradient of* f *at* $\mathbf{x}$ is the unique vector $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ such that

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h}).$$

The similarities between the one-variable case,

$$f(x+h)-f(x) = f'(x)h + o(h),$$

†The symbol ∇, an inverted capital delta, is called a *nabla* and is read "del." The gradient of f is sometimes written grad f.

and the multivariable case,

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h}),$$

are obvious. We point to the differences. There are essentially two of them:

(1) While the derivative $f'(x)$ is a number, the gradient $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ is a vector.

(2) While $f'(x)h$ is the ordinary product of two real numbers, $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h}$ is the dot product of two vectors.

Calculating Gradients

First we calculate some gradients by applying the definition directly. In the two-variable case we write

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(x, y) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{h} = (h_1, h_2)$$

and in the three-variable case,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(x, y, z) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{h} = (h_1, h_2, h_3).$$

Example 1 For the function $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$.

$$\begin{aligned} f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) &= f(x+h_1, y+h_2) - f(x, y) \\ &= \left[(x+h_1)^2 + (y+h_2)^2\right] - \left[x^2 + y^2\right] \\ &= [2xh_1 + 2yh_2] + \left[h_1^2 + h_2^2\right] \\ &= [2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j}] \cdot \mathbf{h} + \|\mathbf{h}\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

The remainder $g(\mathbf{h}) = \|\mathbf{h}\|^2$ is $o(\mathbf{h})$:

$$\text{as } \mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}, \qquad \frac{\|\mathbf{h}\|^2}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} = \|\mathbf{h}\| \to \mathbf{0}.$$

Thus,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(x, y) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j}. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 For the function $f(x, y, z) = 2xy - 3z^2$.

$$\begin{aligned} f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) &= f(x+h_1, y+h_2, z+h_3) - f(x, y, z) \\ &= 2(x+h_1)(y+h_2) - 3(z+h_3)^2 - [2xy - 3z^2] \\ &= 2xh_2 + 2yh_1 + 2h_1h_2 - 6zh_3 - 3h_3^2 \\ &= (2y\,\mathbf{i} + 2x\,\mathbf{j} - 6z\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot (h_1\,\mathbf{i} + h_2\,\mathbf{j} + h_3\,\mathbf{k}) + 2h_1h_2 - 3h_3^2 \\ &= (2y\,\mathbf{i} + 2x\,\mathbf{j} - 6z\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{h} + 2h_1h_2 - 3h_3^2. \end{aligned}$$

Now we show that the remainder $g(\mathbf{h}) = 2h_1h_2 - 3h_3^2$ is $o(\mathbf{h})$. Note that

$$g(\mathbf{h}) = (2h_2\,\mathbf{i} - 3h_3\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot (h_1\,\mathbf{i} + h_2\,\mathbf{j} + h_3\,\mathbf{k}) = (2h_2\,\mathbf{i} - 3h_3\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{h}.$$

By Schwarz's inequality (13.3.18),

$$g(\mathbf{h}) \le \|(2h_2\,\mathbf{i} - 3h_3\,\mathbf{k})\|\,\|\mathbf{h}\|.$$

Dividing by $\|\mathbf{h}\|$ we have

$$\frac{g(\mathbf{h})}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} \leq \|(2h_2\,\mathbf{i} - 3h_3\,\mathbf{k})\| \leq \|2h_2\,\mathbf{i}\| + \|3h_3\,\mathbf{k}\| = 2|h_2| + 3|h_3|.$$

As $\mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}$,

$$h_2 \to 0,\ h_3 \to 0, \qquad 2|h_2| + 3|h_3| \to 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{g(\mathbf{h})}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} \to 0.$$

Since $g(\mathbf{h}) = o(\mathbf{h})$,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = 2y\,\mathbf{i} + 2x\,\mathbf{j} - 6z\,\mathbf{k}. \quad ❑$$

As you just saw, the calculation of a gradient by direct application of the definition is a rather laborious process. The following theorem relates the gradient of a function to its partial derivatives and enables us to calculate gradients with much less effort.

THEOREM 16.1.3

If f has continuous first partials in a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}$, then f is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$ and

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{k}.$$

For two variables

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{j}.$$

The proof of this theorem is somewhat difficult. A proof in the two-variable case is given in a supplement to this section.

We return to the functions of Examples 1 and 2 and this time calculate the gradients by using the partial derivatives. For $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$, $\partial f/\partial x = 2x$ and $\partial f/\partial y = 2y$. Since these partials are continuous,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j}.$$

For $f(x, y, z) = 2xy - 3z^2$, $\partial f/\partial x = 2y$, $\partial f/\partial y = 2x$, and $\partial f/\partial z = -6z$. Since these partials are continuous,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = 2y\,\mathbf{i} + 2x\,\mathbf{j} - 6z\,\mathbf{k}.$$

These are the results we obtained before.

Example 3 For $f(x, y) = x\,e^y - y\,e^x$, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) = e^y - y\,e^x, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = x\,e^y - e^x$$

and therefore

$$\nabla f(x, y) = (e^y - y\,e^x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x\,e^y - e^x)\,\mathbf{j}. \quad ❑$$

When there is no reason to emphasize the point of evaluation, we don't write

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \qquad \text{or} \qquad \nabla f(x, y) \qquad \text{or} \qquad \nabla f(x, y, z)$$

but simply ∇f. Thus for the function

$$f(x, y) = x\,e^y - y\,e^x$$

we write

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = e^y - y\,e^x, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = x\,e^y - e^x$$

and

$$\nabla f = (e^y - y\,e^x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x\,e^y - e^x)\,\mathbf{j}. \quad \square$$

Example 4 For $f(x, y, z) = \sin xy^2z^3$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = y^2z^3 \cos xy^2z^3, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2xyz^3 \cos xy^2z^3, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = 3xy^2z^2 \cos xy^2z^3$$

and

$$\nabla f = yz^2 \cos xy^2z^3[yz\,\mathbf{i} + 2xz\,\mathbf{j} + 3xy\,\mathbf{k}]. \quad \square$$

Example 5 Set

$$f(x, y, z) = x \sin \pi y + y \cos \pi z.$$

Evaluate ∇f at $(0, 1, 2)$.

SOLUTION Here

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \sin \pi y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \pi x \cos \pi y + \cos \pi z, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = -\pi y \sin \pi z.$$

At $(0, 1, 2)$,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 0, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 1, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = 0. \qquad \text{Therefore} \qquad \nabla f(0, 1, 2) = \mathbf{j}. \quad \square$$

Of special interest for later work are the powers of r where, as usual,

$$r = \|\mathbf{r}\| \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}.$$

We begin by showing that, for $r \neq 0$,

(16.1.4)
$$\boxed{\nabla r = \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \nabla\left(\frac{1}{r}\right) = -\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}.}$$

PROOF

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla r &= \nabla(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2} \\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{k} \\
&= \frac{x}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{y}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{z}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}}\,\mathbf{k} \\
&= \frac{1}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{1/2}}(x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}) = \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla\left(\frac{1}{r}\right) &= \nabla(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{-1/2}\\
&= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{-1/2}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{-1/2}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{-1/2}\,\mathbf{k}\\
&= -\frac{x}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{3/2}}\,\mathbf{i} - \frac{y}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{3/2}}\,\mathbf{j} - \frac{z}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{3/2}}\,\mathbf{k}\\
&= -\frac{1}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{3/2}}(x\,\mathbf{i}+y\,\mathbf{j}+z\,\mathbf{k}) = -\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

The formulas we just derived can be generalized. As you are asked to show in the Exercises, for each integer n and all $\mathbf{r} \neq \mathbf{0}$,

(16.1.5) $$\boxed{\nabla r^n = n r^{n-2}\,\mathbf{r}.}$$

(If n is positive and even, the result also holds at $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{0}$.)

Differentiability Implies Continuity

As in the one-variable case, differentiability implies continuity:

(16.1.6) $\boxed{\text{if } f \text{ is differentiable at } \mathbf{x}, \text{ then } f \text{ is continuous at } \mathbf{x}.}$

To see this, write

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h})$$

and note that

$$|f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x})| = |\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h})| \le |\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}| + |o(\mathbf{h})|. \qquad \text{(triangle inequality)}$$

As $\mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}$,

$$\underbrace{|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}| \le \|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\|\,\|\mathbf{h}\|}_{\text{Schwarz's inequality}} \to 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \underbrace{|o(\mathbf{h})|}_{\text{Exercise 42}} \to 0.$$

It follows that

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) \to 0 \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) \to f(\mathbf{x}). \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 16.1

Exercises 1–16. Find the gradient.

1. $f(x, y) = 3x^2 - xy + y$.

2. $f(x, y) = Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2$.

3. $f(x, y) = xe^{xy}$.

4. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x-y}{x^2+y^2}$.

5. $f(x, y) = 2xy^2 \sin(x^2+1)$.

6. $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2+y^2)$.

7. $f(x, y) = e^{x-y} - e^{y-x}$.

8. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{Ax+By}{Cx+Dy}$.

9. $f(x, y, z) = x^2y + y^2z + z^2x$.

10. $f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}$.

11. $f(x, y, z) = x^2ye^{-z}$.

12. $f(x, y, z) = xyz\ln(x+y+z)$.

13. $f(x, y, z) = e^{x+2y}\cos(z^2+1)$.

14. $f(x, y, z) = e^{yz^2/x^3}$.

15. $f(x, y, z) = \sin(2xy) + \ln(x^2z)$.

16. $f(x, y, z) = x^2y/z - 3xz^4$.

Exercises 17–26. Find the gradient at P.

17. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 - 3xy + 4y^2$; $\quad P(2, 3)$.

18. $f(x, y) = 2x(x - y)^{-1}$; $P(3, 1)$.

19. $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^2)$; $P(2, 1)$.

20. $f(x, y) = x \arctan(y/x)$; $P(1, 1)$.

21. $f(x, y) = x \sin(xy)$; $P(1, \pi/2)$.

22. $f(x, y) = xye^{-(x^2+y^2)}$; $P(1, -1)$.

23. $f(x, y, z) = e^{-x} \sin(z + 2y)$; $P(0, \frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{4}\pi)$.

24. $f(x, y, z) = (x - y) \cos \pi z$; $P(1, 0, \frac{1}{2})$.

25. $f(x, y, z) = x - \sqrt{y^2 + z^2}$; $P(2, -3, 4)$.

26. $f(x, y, z) = \cos(xyz^2)$; $P(\pi, \frac{1}{4}, -1)$.

Exercises 27–28. Use a CAS to find the gradient at P.

27. (a) $f(x, y) = xy^2e^{-xy}$; $P(0, 2)$.

(b) $f(x, y) = \sin(2x + y) - \cos(x - 2y)$; $P(\pi/4, \pi/6)$.

(c) $f(x, y) = x - y \ln(x^2 y)$; $P(1, e)$.

28. (a) $f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x + y^2 - z^3}$; $P(1, 2, -3)$.

(b) $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{xy}{x - y + z}$; $P(1, -2, 3)$.

(c) $f(x, y, z) = x \sin(z \ln y)$; $P(1, e^2, \pi/6)$.

Exercises 29–32. Obtain the gradient directly from Definition 16.1.2.

29. $f(x, y) = 3x^2 - xy + y$. **30.** $f(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}x^2 + 2xy + y^2$.

31. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 y + y^2 z + z^2 x$.

32. $f(x, y, z) = 2x^2 y - \dfrac{1}{z}$.

Exercises 33–36. Find the functions with gradient **F**.

33. $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = 2xy\,\mathbf{i} + (1 + x^2)\,\mathbf{j}$.

34. $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = (2xy + x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 + y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

35. $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = (x + \sin y)\,\mathbf{i} + (x \cos y - 2y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

36. $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = yz\,\mathbf{i} + (xz + 2yz)\,\mathbf{j} + (xy + y^2)\,\mathbf{k}$.

37. Find (a) $\nabla(\ln r)$, (b) $\nabla(\sin r)$, (c) $\nabla(e^r)$ taking $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$.

38. Derive (16.1.5).

39. Set $f(x, y) = 1 + x^2 + y^2$.

(a) Find the points (x, y) (if any) at which $\nabla f(x, y) = \mathbf{0}$.

(b) Sketch the graph of the surface $z = f(x, y)$.

(c) What can you say about the surface at the point(s) found in part (a)?

40. Exercise 39 for $f(x, y) = \sqrt{4 - x^2 - y^2}$.

41. (a) Show that, if $\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{h}$ is $o(\mathbf{h})$, then $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$. HINT: First set $\mathbf{h} = h\,\mathbf{i}$, then set $\mathbf{h} = h\,\mathbf{j}$, then $\mathbf{h} = h\,\mathbf{k}$.

(b) Show that, if

$$f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{y} \cdot \mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h})$$

and

$$f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h}),$$

then

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{z}.$$

42. Show that if $g(\mathbf{h})$ is $o(\mathbf{h})$, then

$$\lim_{\mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}} g(\mathbf{h}) = 0.$$

43. Set

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2xy}{x^2 + y^2}, & (x, y) \neq (0, 0) \\ 0, & (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

(a) Show that f is not differentiable at $(0, 0)$.

(b) In Section 15.6 you saw that the first partials $\partial f/\partial x$ and $\partial f/\partial y$ exist at $(0, 0)$. Since these partials obviously exist at every other point of the plane, we can conclude from Theorem 16.1.3 that at least one of these partials is not continuous in a neighborhood of $(0, 0)$. Show that $\partial f/\partial x$ is discontinuous at $(0, 0)$.

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 16.1

PROOF OF THEOREM 16.1.3

We prove the theorem in the two-variable case. A similar argument yields a proof in the three-variable case, but there the details are more burdensome.

In the two-variable case

$$f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = f(x + h_1, y + h_2) - f(x, y).$$

Adding and subtracting $f(x, y + h_2)$, we have

$$(1) \quad f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = [f(x + h_1, y + h_2) - f(x, y + h_2)] + [f(x, y + h_2) - f(x, y)].$$

By the mean-value theorem for functions of one variable, we know that there are numbers θ_1 and θ_2 between 0 and 1 for which

$$f(x + h_1, y + h_2) - f(x, y + h_2) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x + \theta_1 h_1, y + h_2)\,h_1$$

and

$$f(x, y+h_2) - f(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y+\theta_2 h_2)\,h_2. \qquad \text{(Exercise 42, Section 4.1)}$$

By the continuity of $\partial f/\partial x$,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x+\theta_1 h_1, y+h_2) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) + \epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})$$

where

$$\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h}) \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad \mathbf{h} \to 0.^{\dagger}$$

By the continuity of $\partial f/\partial y$,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y+\theta_2 h_2) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})$$

where

$$\epsilon_2(\mathbf{h}) \to 0 \qquad \text{as} \qquad \mathbf{h} \to 0.$$

Substituting these expressions into (1), we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) &= \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) + \epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\right] h_1 + \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\right] h_2 \\
&= \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) + \epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\right] (\mathbf{i}\cdot\mathbf{h}) + \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\right] (\mathbf{j}\cdot\mathbf{h}) \\
&= \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i}\right] \cdot \mathbf{h} + \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y)\,\mathbf{j} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}\right] \cdot \mathbf{h} \\
&= \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}\right] \cdot \mathbf{h} + [\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}] \cdot \mathbf{h}.
\end{aligned}$$

To complete the proof of the theorem, we need only show that

(2) $$[\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}]\cdot\mathbf{h} = o(\mathbf{h}).$$

From Schwarz's inequality, $|\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}| \le \|\mathbf{a}\|\,\|\mathbf{b}\|$, we know that

$$|[\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}]\cdot\mathbf{h}| \le \|\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}\|\;\|\mathbf{h}\|.$$

It follows that

$$\frac{|[\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}]\cdot\mathbf{h}|}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} \le \|\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i} + \epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}\| \underbrace{\le}_{\text{by the triangle inequality}} \|\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{i}\| + \|\epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})\,\mathbf{j}\| = |\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h})| + |\epsilon_2(\mathbf{h})|.$$

As $\mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}$, the expression on the right tends to 0. This shows that (2) holds and completes the proof of the theorem. ❑

---

† $$\epsilon_1(\mathbf{h}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x+\theta_1 h_1, y+h_2) - \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) \to 0$$
since, by the continuity of $\partial f/\partial x$,
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x+\theta_1 h_1, y+h_2) \to \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y).$$

■ 16.2 GRADIENTS AND DIRECTIONAL DERIVATIVES

Some Elementary Formulas

In many respects gradients behave just as derivatives do in the one-variable case. In particular, if $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ and $\nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ exist, then $\nabla[f(\mathbf{x})+g(\mathbf{x})]$, $\nabla[\alpha f(\mathbf{x})]$, and $\nabla[f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x})]$ all exist, and

(16.2.1)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\nabla[f(\mathbf{x})+g(\mathbf{x})] &= \nabla f(\mathbf{x})+\nabla g(\mathbf{x}),\\ \nabla[\alpha f(\mathbf{x})] &= \alpha\nabla f(\mathbf{x}),\\ \nabla[f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x})] &= f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x})+g(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x}).\end{aligned}}$$

The first two formulas are easy to derive. To derive the third formula, let's assume that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ and $\nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ both exist. Our task is to show that

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x})=[f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x})+g(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x})]\cdot\mathbf{h}+o(\mathbf{h}).$$

We now sketch how this can be done. We leave it to you to justify each step. The key to proving a product rule is to add and subtract an appropriate expression. (See, for instance, the proof of product rule, Theorem 3.2.6.) Starting from

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x}),$$

we add and subtract the term $f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})$. This gives

$$\begin{aligned}&[f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})]+[f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x})]\\ &=[f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-f(\mathbf{x})]g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})+f(\mathbf{x})[g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-g(\mathbf{x})]\\ &=[\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+o(\mathbf{h})]g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})+f(\mathbf{x})[\nabla g(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+o(\mathbf{h})]\\ &=g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+o(\mathbf{h}) \qquad \text{(Exercise 30)}\\ &=g(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+[g(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})-g(\mathbf{x})]\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{h}+o(\mathbf{h})\\ &=[g(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x})+f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x})]\cdot\mathbf{h}+o(\mathbf{h}). \qquad \text{(Exercise 30)} \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

In Exercise 43, you are asked to derive this formula from Theorem 16.1.3.

Directional Derivatives

Here we take up an idea that generalizes the notion of partial derivative. Its connection with gradients will be made clear as we go on. We begin by recalling the definitions of the first partial derivatives:

(two variables)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x,y)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h,y)-f(x,y)}{h}$$
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x,y)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x,y+h)-f(x,y)}{h}.$$

(three variables)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x,y,z)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h,y,z)-f(x,y,z)}{h}$$
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x,y,z)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x,y+h,z)-f(x,y,z)}{h}$$
$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(x,y,z)=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x,y,z+h)-f(x,y,z)}{h}.$$

Expressed in vector notation, these definitions take the form

$$(\mathbf{x} = (x, y))$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\,\mathbf{i}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\,\mathbf{j}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}.$$

$$(\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z))$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\,\mathbf{i}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\,\mathbf{j}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\,\mathbf{k}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}.$$

Each partial is thus the limit of a quotient

$$\frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{u}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}$$

where $\mathbf{u}$ is one of the unit vectors $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$. There is no reason to be so restrictive on $\mathbf{u}$. If f is defined in a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}$, then, for small h, the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{u}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h}$$

is defined for every unit vector $\mathbf{u}$.

DEFINITION 16.2.2 DIRECTIONAL DERIVATIVE

For each unit vector $\mathbf{u}$, the limit

$$f_u'(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{u}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h},$$

if it exists, is called the *directional derivative of f at $\mathbf{x}$ in the direction* $\mathbf{u}$.

Note that each partial derivative $\partial f/\partial x, \partial f/\partial y, \partial f/\partial z$ is itself a directional derivative.

(16.2.3)
$$\boxed{\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x}) = f_{\mathbf{i}}'(\mathbf{x}), \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x}) = f_{\mathbf{j}}'(\mathbf{x}), \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\mathbf{x}) = f_{\mathbf{k}}'(\mathbf{x}).}$$

As you know, the partials of f give the rates of change of f in the **i, j, k** directions. The directional derivative f_u' gives *the rate of change of f in the direction* $\mathbf{u}$.

A geometric interpretation of the directional derivative for a function of two variables can be obtained from Figure 16.2.1. Fix a point (x, y) in the domain of f and let $\mathbf{u}$ be a unit vector in the xy-plane with initial point (x, y). The plane p which contains $\mathbf{u}$ and is perpendicular to the xy-plane intersects the surface $z = f(x, y)$ in a curve C. The directional derivative $f_{\mathbf{u}}'(\mathbf{x})$ is the slope of the line tangent to C at the point $(x, y, f(x, y))$.

Remark So far we have defined directional derivatives only for unit vectors $\mathbf{u}$. Now let $\mathbf{a}$ be any nonzero vector. By directional derivative in the direction $\mathbf{a}$ we mean the directional derivative f_u' where $\mathbf{u}$ is the unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{a}$. ❑

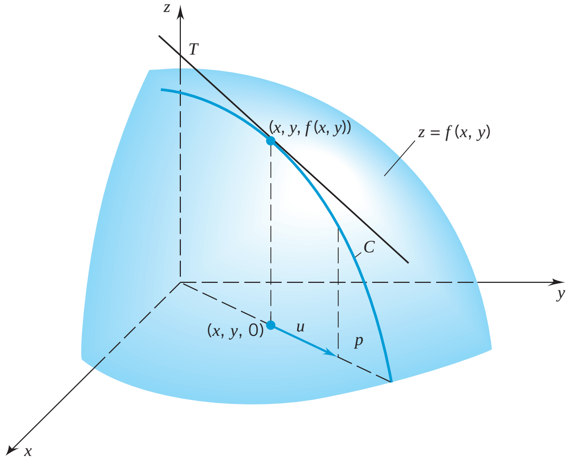


Figure 16.2.1

There is an important connection between the gradient at $\mathbf{x}$ and the directional derivatives at $\mathbf{x}$.

THEOREM 16.2.4

If f is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$, then f has a directional derivative at $\mathbf{x}$ in every direction, and for each unit vector $\mathbf{u}$

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{u}.$$

PROOF Assume that f is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$ and let $\mathbf{u}$ be any unit vector. The differentiability at $\mathbf{x}$ tells us that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ exists and

$$f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{u}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot h\,\mathbf{u} + o(h\mathbf{u}).$$

Division by h gives

$$\frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{u}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h} = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{u} + \frac{o(h\mathbf{u})}{h}.$$

We leave it to you to show that

$$\frac{o(h\mathbf{u})}{h} \to 0$$

and therefore

$$\frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{u}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h} \to \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{u}. \quad \square$$

In Theorem 16.1.3 we stated that, *if f has continuous first partials in a neighborhood of* $\mathbf{x}$, *then f is differentiable at* $\mathbf{x}$ *and*

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{k}.$$

For two variables

$$\nabla f(x) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{j}.$$

The next theorem shows that these formulas for $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ hold wherever f is differentiable.

THEOREM 16.2.5

If f is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$, then all the first partial derivatives of f exist at $\mathbf{x}$ and

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{k}.$$

For two variables

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\,\mathbf{j}.$$

PROOF It is sufficient to prove the theorem for the case $\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z)$. Assume that f is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$. Then $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ exists and we can write

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = [\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{i}]\,\mathbf{i} + [\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{j}]\,\mathbf{j} + [\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{k}]\,\mathbf{k}. \tag{13.3.14}$$

The result follows from observing that

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{i} &\overset{(16.2.4)}{=} f'_{\mathbf{i}}(\mathbf{x}) \overset{(16.2.3)}{=} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(\mathbf{x})\\
\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{j} &= f'_{\mathbf{j}}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(\mathbf{x})\\
\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{k} &= f'_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\mathbf{x}). \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Example 1 Find the directional derivative of the function $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ at the point (1, 2) in the direction of the vector $2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}$.

SOLUTION Note that $2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}$ is not a unit vector; its norm is $\sqrt{13}$. The unit vector in the direction of $2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}$ is the vector

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{13}}(2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}).$$

Since $\nabla f = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j}$, $\nabla f(1, 2) = 2\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j}$. By Theorem 16.2.4,

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(1, 2) = \nabla f(1, 2)\cdot\mathbf{u} = (2\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j})\cdot\frac{1}{\sqrt{13}}(2\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}) = \frac{-8}{\sqrt{13}} \cong -2.219. \quad \square$$

Example 2 Find the directional derivative of the function

$$f(x, y, z) = 2xz^2 \cos \pi y$$

at the point $P(1, 2, -1)$ toward the point $Q(2, 1, 3)$.

SOLUTION The vector from P to Q is the vector $\overrightarrow{PQ} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k}$. The unit vector in this direction is the vector

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{3\sqrt{2}}(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k}).$$

In this case

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 2z^2 \cos\ \pi y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = -2\pi x z^2 \sin \pi y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = 4xz \cos \pi y$$

so that

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(1, 2, -1) = 2, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(1, 2, -1) = 0, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(1, 2, -1) = -4.$$

Therefore $\nabla f(1, 2, -1) = 2\,\mathbf{i} - 4\,\mathbf{k}$ and

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(1, 2, -1) = \nabla f(1, 2, -1) \cdot \mathbf{u} = (2\,\mathbf{i} - 4\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot \frac{1}{3\sqrt{2}}(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k})$$

$$= -\frac{14}{3\sqrt{2}} \cong -3.30. \quad \square$$

You know that for each unit vector $\mathbf{u}$

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{u}.$$

By (13.3.13),

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{u} = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{u}} \nabla f(\mathbf{x}))\underbrace{\|\mathbf{u}\|}_{\|\mathbf{u}\| = 1} = \text{comp}_{\mathbf{u}} \nabla f(\mathbf{x}).$$

Therefore

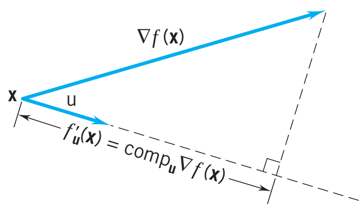


Figure 16.2.2

(16.2.6) $$\boxed{f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) = \text{comp}_{\mathbf{u}} \nabla f(\mathbf{x}).}$$

This tells us that *the directional derivative in a direction* $\mathbf{u}$ *is the component of the gradient vector in that direction.* (Figure 16.2.2.)

If $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \neq 0$, then

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{u} \underset{(13.3.7)}{=} \|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\| \|\mathbf{u}\| \cos\theta \underset{\|\mathbf{u}\| = 1}{=} \|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\| \cos\theta$$

where θ is the angle between $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ and $\mathbf{u}$. Since $-1 \leq \cos\theta \leq 1$ we have

$$-\|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\| \leq f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) \leq \|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\| \qquad \text{for all directions } \mathbf{u}.$$

If $\mathbf{u}$ points in the direction of $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$, then

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) = \|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\|; \qquad (\theta = 0, \cos\theta = 1)$$

if $\mathbf{u}$ points in the direction of $-\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$, then

$$f'_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{x}) = -\|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\|. \qquad (\theta = \pi, \cos\theta = -1)$$

Since the directional derivative gives the rate of change of the function in that direction, it is clear that

(16.2.7)

> from each point $\mathbf{x}$ of the domain, a differentiable function f increases most rapidly in the direction of the gradient (the rate of change at $\mathbf{x}$ being $\|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\|$); the function decreases most rapidly in the opposite direction (the rate of change at $\mathbf{x}$ being $-\|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\|$).

Example 3 The graph of the function $f(x, y) = \sqrt{1-(x^2+y^2)}$ is the upper half of the unit sphere $x^2+y^2+z^2=1$. The function is defined on the closed unit disk $x^2+y^2 \le 1$ but differentiable only on the open unit disk.

In Figure 16.2.3 we have marked a point (x, y) and drawn the corresponding radius vector $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$. The gradient

$$\nabla f(x, y) = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{1-(x^2+y^2)}}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{-y}{\sqrt{1-(x^2+y^2)}}\,\mathbf{j}$$

is a negative multiple of $\mathbf{r}$:

$$\nabla f(x, y) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(x^2+y^2)}}(x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-(x^2+y^2)}}\,\mathbf{r}.$$

Since $\mathbf{r}$ points from the origin to (x, y), the gradient points from (x, y) to the origin. This means that f increases most rapidly toward the origin. This is borne out by the observation that along the hemispherical surface the path of steepest ascent from the point $P(x, y, f(x, y))$ is the "great circle route to the North Pole." ❑

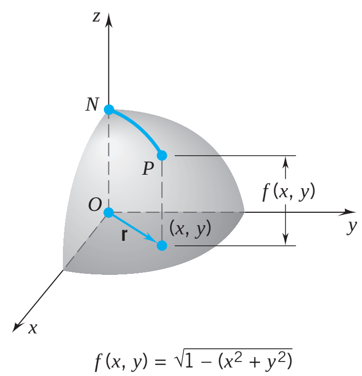


Figure 16.2.3

Example 4 Suppose that the temperature at each point of a metal plate is given by the function

$$T(x, y) = e^x \cos y + e^y \cos x.$$

(a) In what direction does the temperature increase most rapidly at the point $(0, 0)$? What is this rate of increase?

(b) In what direction does the temperature decrease most rapidly at $(0, 0)$?

SOLUTION

$$\nabla T(x, y) = \frac{\partial T}{\partial x}(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial y}(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$$
$$= (e^x \cos y - e^y \sin x)\,\mathbf{i} + (e^y \cos x - e^x \sin y)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

(a) At $(0, 0)$ the temperature increases most rapidly in the direction of the gradient

$$\nabla T(0, 0) = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}.$$

This rate of increase is

$$\|\nabla T(0, 0)\| = \|\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}\| = \sqrt{2}.$$

(b) The temperature decreases most rapidly in the direction of

$$-\nabla T(0, 0) = -\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Suppose that the mass density (mass per unit volume) of a metal ball centered at the origin is given by the function

$$\lambda(x, y, z) = ke^{-(x^2+y^2+z^2)}, \qquad k \text{ a positive constant.}$$

(a) In what direction does the density increase most rapidly at the point (x, y, z)? What is this rate of density increase?

(b) In what direction does the density decrease most rapidly?

(c) What are the rates of density change at (x, y, z) in the $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ directions?

SOLUTION

$$\nabla\lambda(x, y, z) = \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial x}(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial y}(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial\lambda}{\partial z}(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{k}$$

$$= -2ke^{-(x^2+y^2+z^2)}[x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}].$$

Since $\lambda(x, y, z) = ke^{-(x^2+y^2+z^2)}$, we have

$$\nabla\lambda(x, y, z) = -2\lambda(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{r}.$$

From this, we see that the gradient points from (x, y, z) in the direction opposite to that of the radius vector.

(a) The density increases most rapidly directly toward the origin. The rate of increase is

$$\|\nabla\lambda(x, y, z)\| = 2\lambda(x, y, z)\|\mathbf{r}\| = 2\lambda(x, y, z)\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}.$$

(b) The density decreases most rapidly directly away from the origin.

(c) The rates of density change in the $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ directions are given by the directional derivatives

$$\lambda'_{\mathbf{i}}(x, y, z) = \nabla\lambda(x, y, z)\cdot\mathbf{i} = -2x\lambda(x, y, z),$$

$$\lambda'_{\mathbf{j}}(x, y, z) = \nabla\lambda(x, y, z)\cdot\mathbf{j} = -2y\lambda(x, y, z),$$

$$\lambda'_{\mathbf{k}}(x, y, z) = \nabla\lambda(x, y, z)\cdot\mathbf{k} = -2z\lambda(x, y, z).$$

These are just the first partials of λ. ❑

Example 6 Suppose that the temperature at each point of a metal plate is given by the function

$$T(x, y) = 1 + x^2 - y^2.$$

Find the path followed by a heat-seeking particle that originates at $(-2, 1)$.

SOLUTION The particle moves in the direction of the gradient vector

$$\nabla T = 2x\,\mathbf{i} - 2y\,\mathbf{j}.$$

We want the curve

$$C : \mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\mathbf{i} + y(t)\mathbf{j},$$

which begins at $(-2, 1)$ and at each point has tangent vector in the direction of ∇T. We can satisfy the first condition by setting

$$x(0) = -2, \qquad y(0) = 1.$$

We can satisfy the second condition by setting

$$x'(t) = 2x(t), \qquad y'(t) = -2y(t). \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

These differential equations, together with initial conditions at $t = 0$, imply that

$$x(t) = -2e^{2t}, \qquad y(t) = e^{-2t}. \qquad \text{(Section 7.6)}$$

We can eliminate the parameter t by noting that

$$x(t)y(t) = (-2e^{2t})(e^{-2t}) = -2.$$

In terms of just x and y we have

$$xy = -2.$$

The particle moves from the point $(-2, 1)$ along the left branch of the hyperbola $xy = -2$ in the direction of decreasing x. (Figure 16.2.4.)

The level curves, *isothermals* of the temperature distribution T, are also hyperbolas. As you can verify, the path of the object is perpendicular to each of the isothermals $x^2 - y^2 = c - 1$. ❏

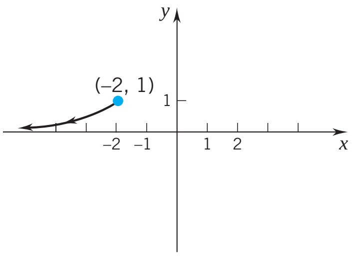


Figure 16.2.4

Remark The pair of differential equations

$$x'(t) = 2x(t), \qquad y'(t) = -2y(t)$$

can be set as a single differential equation in x and y: the relation

$$\frac{y'(t)}{x'(t)} = -\frac{y(t)}{x(t)} \qquad \text{gives} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{y}{x}.$$

This equation is readily solved directly:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{y}\frac{dy}{dx} &= -\frac{1}{x} \\ \ln|y| &= -\ln|x| + C \\ \ln|x| + \ln|y| &= C \\ \ln|xy| &= C. \end{aligned}$$

Thus xy is constant:

$$xy = k.$$

Since the curve passes through the point $(-2, 1)$, $k = -2$ and once again we have the curve

$$xy = -2.$$

You will be called on to use this method of solution in some of the Exercises. ❏

EXERCISES 16.2

Exercises 1–14. Find the directional derivative at the point P in the direction indicated.

1. $f(x, y) = x^2 + 3y^2$ at $P(1, 1)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

2. $f(x, y) = x + \sin(x + y)$ at $P(0, 0)$ in the direction of $2\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

3. $f(x, y) = x\,e^y - y\,e^x$ at $P(1, 0)$ in the direction of $3\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j}$.

4. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{2x}{x - y}$ at $P(1, 0)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} - \sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j}$.

5. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{ax + by}{x + y}$ at $P(1, 1)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$.

6. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x + y}{cx + dy}$ at $P(1, 1)$ in the direction of $c\,\mathbf{i} - d\,\mathbf{j}$.

7. $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^2)$ at $P(0, 1)$ in the direction of $8\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

8. $f(x, y) = x^2y + \tan y$ at $P(-1, \pi/4)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} - 2\,\mathbf{j}$.

9. $f(x, y, z) = xy + yz + zx$ at $P(1, -1, 1)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

10. $f(x, y, z) = x^2y + y^2z + z^2x$ at $P(1, 0, 1)$ in the direction of $3\,\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

11. $f(x, y, z) = (x + y^2 + z^3)^2$ at $P(1, -1, 1)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

12. $f(x, y, z) = Ax^2 + Bxyz + Cy^2$ at $P(1, 2, 1)$ in the direction of $A\mathbf{i} + B\,\mathbf{j} + C\,\mathbf{k}$.

13. $f(x, y, z) = x\arctan(y + z)$ at $P(1, 0, 1)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$.

14. $f(x, y, z) = xy^2\cos z - 2yz^2\sin\pi x + 3zx^2$ at $P(0, -1, \pi)$ in the direction of $2\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k}$.

15. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y) = \ln\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ at $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$ toward the origin.

16. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y) = (x-1)y^2e^{xy}$ at $(0, 1)$ toward the point $(-1, 3)$.

17. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y) = Ax^2 + 2Bxy + Cy^2$ at (a, b) toward (b, a) (a) if $a > b$; (b) if $a < b$.

18. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y, z) = z\ln(x/y)$ at $(1, 1, 2)$ toward the point $(2, 2, 1)$.

19. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y, z) = xe^{y^2-z^2}$ at $(1, 2, -2)$ in the direction of increasing t along the path

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + 2\cos(t-1)\,\mathbf{j} - 2e^{t-1}\,\mathbf{k}.$$

20. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + yz$ at $(1, -3, 2)$ in the direction of increasing t along the path

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + 3t\,\mathbf{j} + (1-t^3)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

21. Find the directional derivatives of $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 2xyz - yz^2$ at $(1, 1, 2)$ in the directions parallel to the line

$$\frac{x-1}{2} = y - 1 = \frac{z-2}{-3}.$$

22. Find the directional derivatives of $f(x, y, z) - e^x\cos\pi yz$ at $(0, 1, \frac{1}{2})$ in the directions parallel to the line in which the planes $x + y - z = 5$ and $4x - y - z = 2$ intersect.

Exercises 23–26. Find the unit vector in the direction in which f increases most rapidly at P and give the rate of change of f in that direction; find the unit vector in the direction in which f decreases most rapidly at P and give the rate of change of f in that direction.

23. $f(x, y) = y^2e^{2x}$; $P(0, 1)$.

24. $f(x, y) = x + \sin(x + 2y)$; $P(0, 0)$.

25. $f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$; $P(1, -2, 1)$.

26. $f(x, y, z) = x^2z\,e^y + xz^2$; $P(1, \ln 2, 2)$.

27. Let $f = f(x)$ be a differentiable function of one variable. What is the gradient of f at x_0? What is the geometric significance of the direction of this gradient?

28. Suppose that f is differentiable at (x_0, y_0) and $\nabla f(x_0, y_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$. Calculate the rate of change of f in the direction of

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{i} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Give a geometric interpretation to your answer.

29. Let

$$f(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}.$$

(a) Show that $\partial f/\partial x$ is not defined at $(0, 0)$.
(b) Is f differentiable at $(0, 0)$?

30. Verify that, if g is continuous at $\mathbf{x}$, then
(a) $g(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h})\,o(\mathbf{h}) = o(\mathbf{h})$ and
(b) $[g(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}) - g(\mathbf{x})]\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h} = o(\mathbf{h})$.

31. Given the density function $\lambda(x, y) = 48 - \frac{4}{3}x^2 - 3y^2$, find the rate of density change (a) at $(1, -1)$ in the direction of the most rapid density decrease; (b) at $(1, 2)$ in the $\mathbf{i}$ direction; (c) at (2,2) in the direction away from the origin.

32. The intensity of light in a neighborhood of the point $(-2, 1)$ is given by a function of the form $I(x, y) = A - 2x^2 - y^2$. Find the path followed by a light-seeking particle that originates at the center of the neighborhood.

33. Determine the path of steepest descent along the surface $z = x^2 + 3y^2$ from each of the following points: (a) $(1, 1, 4)$; (b) $(1, -2, 13)$.

34. Determine the path of steepest ascent along hyperbolic paraboloid $z = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - y^2$ from each of the following points: (a) $(-1, 1, -\frac{1}{2})$; (b) $(1, 0, \frac{1}{2})$.

35. Determine the path of steepest descent along the surface $z = a^2x^2 + b^2y^2$ from the point $(a, b, a^4 + b^4)$.

36. The temperature in a neighborhood of the origin is given by a function of the form

$$T(x, y) = T_0 + e^y\sin x.$$

Find the path followed by a heat-fleeing particle that originates at the origin.

37. The temperature in a neighborhood of the point $(\frac{1}{4}\pi, 0)$ is given by the function

$$T(x, y) = \sqrt{2}e^{-y}\cos x.$$

Find the path followed by a heat-seeking particle that originates at the center of the neighborhood.

38. Determine the path of steepest descent along the surface $z = A + x + 2y - x^2 - 3y^2$ from the point $(0, 0, A)$.

39. Set $f(x, y) = 3x^2 + y$.

(a) Find

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x(2+h), y(2+h)) - f(2, 4)}{h}$$

given that $x(t) = t$ and $y(t) = t^2$. (These functions parametrize the parabola $y = x^2$.)

(b) Find

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x(4+h), y(4+h)) - f(2, 4)}{h}$$

given that $x(t) = \frac{1}{4}(t + 4)$ and $y(t) = t$. (These functions parametrize the line $y = 4x - 4$.)

(c) Calculate the directional derivative of f at $(2, 4)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$.

(d) Observe that $\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ is a direction vector for the line $y = 4x - 4$ and that this line is tangent to the parabola $y = x^2$ at $(2, 4)$. Explain then why the computations in (a), (b), (c) yield different values.

40. According to Newton's law of gravitation, the force exerted on a particle of mass m located at the point (x, y, z) by a particle of mass M located at the origin is given by

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = -\frac{GMm}{r^3}\mathbf{r}$$

where $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$, $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$, and G is the universal gravitational constant. Show that $\mathbf{F}$ is the gradient of the function

$$f(x, y, z) = \frac{GMm}{r}.$$

41. Let $\mathbf{u}$ be a unit vector in the plane attached to the origin, and let θ be the angle measured counterclockwise from the

positive x-axis to $\mathbf{u}$. Let f be a differentiable function of two variables.

(a) Show that $f'_{\mathbf{u}}(x, y) = \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}\cos\theta + \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}\sin\theta$.

(b) Set $f(x, y) = x^3 + 2xy - xy^2$, $\theta = 2\pi/3$. Find $f'_{\mathbf{u}}(-1, 2)$.

42. Refer to Exercise 41. Let $f(x, y) = x^2 e^{2y}$ and $\theta = 5\pi/4$. Find $f'_u(x, y)$ and $f'_u(2, \ln 2)$.

43. Assume that both f and g have continuous first partials in a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}$. Derive the product rule

$$\nabla[f(\mathbf{x})g(\mathbf{x})] = f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x}) + g(\mathbf{x}) + g(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$$

from Theorem 16.1.3.

44. Assume that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ and $\nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ both exist, and that $g(\mathbf{x}) \neq 0$. Derive the quotient rule

$$\nabla\left[\frac{f(\mathbf{x})}{g(\mathbf{x})}\right] = \frac{g(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) - f(\mathbf{x})\nabla g(\mathbf{x})}{g^2(\mathbf{x})}.$$

45. Assume that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$ exists. Prove that, for each integer n,

$$\nabla f^n(\mathbf{x}) = n f^{n-1}(\mathbf{x})\nabla f(\mathbf{x}).$$

Does this result hold if n is replaced by an arbitrary real number?

■ 16.3 THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM; THE CHAIN RULE

The Mean-Value Theorem

You have seen the important role played by the mean-value theorem in the calculus of functions of one variable. Here we take up the analogous result for functions of several variables. Let $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ be points (either in the plane or in three-space); by $\overline{\mathbf{ab}}$ we mean the line segment that joins point $\mathbf{a}$ to point $\mathbf{b}$.

THEOREM 16.3.1 THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM (SEVERAL VARIABLES)

If f is differentiable at each point of the line segment $\overline{\mathbf{ab}}$, then there exists on that line segment a point $\mathbf{c}$ between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ such that

$$f(\mathbf{b}) - f(\mathbf{a}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{c}) \cdot (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}).$$

PROOF As t ranges from 0 to 1, $\mathbf{a} + t(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})$ traces out the line segment $\overline{\mathbf{ab}}$. The idea of the proof is to apply the one-variable mean-value theorem to the function

$$g(t) = f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]), \qquad t \in [0, 1].$$

To show that g is differentiable on the open interval $(0, 1)$, we take $t \in (0, 1)$ and form

$$\begin{aligned} g(t+h) - g(t) &= f(\mathbf{a} + (t+h)[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) - f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) \\ &= f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}] + h[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) - f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) \\ &= \nabla f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) \cdot h[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}] + o(h[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]). \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}]) \cdot h(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) = [\nabla f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) \cdot (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})]h$$

and the $o(h[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}])$ term is obviously $o(h)$, we can write

$$g(t+h) - g(t) = [\nabla f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) \cdot (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})]h + o(h).$$

Dividing both sides by h, we see that g is differentiable and

$$g'(t) = \nabla f(\mathbf{a} + t[\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}]) \cdot (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}).$$

The function g is clearly continuous at 0 and at 1. Applying the one-variable mean-value theorem to g, we can conclude that there exists a number t_0 between 0 and

1 such that

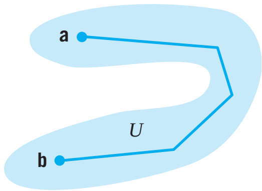
$$(*)\qquad g(1)-g(0)=g'(t_0)(1-0).$$

Since $g(1)=f(\mathbf{b})$, $g(0)=f(\mathbf{a})$, and $g'(t_0)=\nabla f(\mathbf{a}+t_0[\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}])\cdot(\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a})$, condition $(*)$ gives

$$f(\mathbf{b})-f(\mathbf{a})=\nabla f(\mathbf{a}+t_0[\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}])\cdot(\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}).$$

Setting $\mathbf{c}=\mathbf{a}+t_0[\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}]$, we have

$$f(\mathbf{b})-f(\mathbf{a})=\nabla f(\mathbf{c})\cdot(\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}).\quad ❑$$

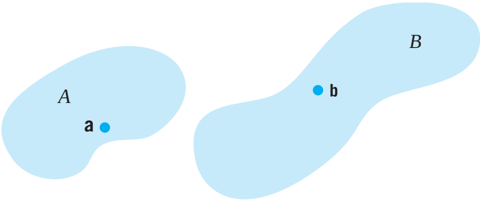


U is connected

Figure 16.3.1

A nonempty open set U (in the plane or in three-space) is said to be *connected* if any two points of U can be joined by a polygonal path that lies entirely in U. You can see such a set pictured in Figure 16.3.1.

The set shown in Figure 16.3.2 is the union of two disjoint open sets. The set is open but not connected: it is impossible to join **a** and **b** by a polygonal path that lies within the set.



$U = A \cup B$ is not connected

Figure 16.3.2

In Chapter 4 you saw that, if $f'(x)=0$ for all x in an open interval I, then f is constant on I. We have a similar result for functions of several variables.

THEOREM 16.3.2

Let U be an open connected set and let f be a differentiable function on U.

$$\text{If } \nabla f(\mathbf{x})=\mathbf{0} \text{ for all } \mathbf{x} \text{ in } U, \text{ then } f \text{ is constant on } U.$$

PROOF Let **a** and **b** be any two points in U. Since U is connected, we can join these points by a polygonal path with vertices $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{c}_0, \mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{c}_{n-1}, \mathbf{c}_n=\mathbf{b}$. (Figure 16.3.3.) By the mean-value theorem (Theorem 16.3.1) there exist points

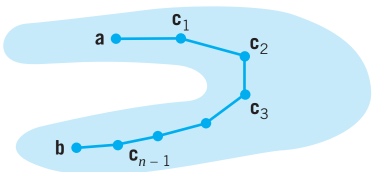


Figure 16.3.3

$$\begin{array}{lll}
\mathbf{c}_1^* \text{ between } \mathbf{c}_0 \text{ and } \mathbf{c}_1 & \text{such that} & f(\mathbf{c}_1)-f(\mathbf{c}_0)=\nabla f(\mathbf{c}_1^*)\cdot(\mathbf{c}_1-\mathbf{c}_0),\\
\mathbf{c}_2^* \text{ between } \mathbf{c}_1 \text{ and } \mathbf{c}_2 & \text{such that} & f(\mathbf{c}_2)-f(\mathbf{c}_1)=\nabla f(\mathbf{c}_2^*)\cdot(\mathbf{c}_2-\mathbf{c}_1),\\
\quad\vdots & & \qquad\vdots\\
\mathbf{c}_n^* \text{ between } \mathbf{c}_{n-1} \text{ and } \mathbf{c}_n & \text{such that} & f(\mathbf{c}_n)-f(\mathbf{c}_{n-1})=\nabla f(\mathbf{c}_n^*)\cdot(\mathbf{c}_n-\mathbf{c}_{n-1}).
\end{array}$$

If $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in U, then

$$f(\mathbf{c}_1) - f(\mathbf{c}_0) = 0, \qquad f(\mathbf{c}_2) - f(\mathbf{c}_1) = 0, \; \cdots, \qquad f(\mathbf{c}_n) - f(\mathbf{c}_{n-1}) = 0.$$

This shows that

$$f(\mathbf{a}) = f(\mathbf{c}_0) = f(\mathbf{c}_1) = f(\mathbf{c}_2) = \cdots = f(\mathbf{c}_{n-1}) = f(\mathbf{c}_n) = f(\mathbf{b}).$$

Since $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are arbitrary points of U, f must be constant on U. ❑

THEOREM 16.3.3

Let U be an open connected set and let f and g be functions differentiable on U.

If $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in U, then f and g differ by a constant on U.

PROOF If $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in U, then

$$\nabla[f(\mathbf{x}) - g(\mathbf{x})] = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) - \nabla g(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \text{ in } U.$$

By Theorem 16.3.2, $f - g$ must be constant on U. ❑

The Chain Rule

You are by now thoroughly familiar with the chain rule for functions of a single variable (Theorem 3.5.6): If g is differentiable at x and f is differentiable at $g(x)$, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(f[g(x)]) = f'[g(x)]g'(x).$$

Here we obtain generalizations of the chain rule for functions of several variables.

A vector-valued function is said to be *continuous* provided that its components are continuous. If $f = f(x, y, z)$ is a scalar-valued function (a real-valued function), then its gradient ∇f is a vector-valued function. We say that f is *continuously differentiable* on an *open set* U if f is differentiable on U and ∇f is continuous on U.

If a curve $\mathbf{r}$ lies in the domain of f, then we can form the composition

$$(f \circ \mathbf{r})(t) = f(\mathbf{r}(t)).$$

The composition $f \circ \mathbf{r}$ is a real-valued function of the real variable t. The numbers $f(\mathbf{r}(t))$ are the values taken on by f *along the curve* $\mathbf{r}$. For example, let

$$f(x, y) = \tfrac{1}{3}(x^3 + y^3) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin t\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Then, with $x(t) = a\cos t$ and $y(t) = b\sin t$, we have

$$f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = \tfrac{1}{3}(a^3\cos^3 t + b^3\sin^3 t).$$

The chain rule gives a formula for calculating the derivative of the composition $f \circ \mathbf{r}$.

THEOREM 16.3.4 THE CHAIN RULE

If f is continuously differentiable on an open set U and $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ is a differentiable curve that lies in U, then the composition $f \circ \mathbf{r}$ is differentiable and

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t).$$

PROOF We will show that

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{r}(t+h)) - f(\mathbf{r}(t))}{h} = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t).$$

For $h \neq 0$ and sufficiently small, the line segment that joins $\mathbf{r}(t)$ to $\mathbf{r}(t+h)$ lies entirely in U. This we know because U is open and $\mathbf{r}$ is continuous. (See Figure 16.3.4.) For such h, the mean-value theorem assures us that there exists a point $\mathbf{c}(h)$ between $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}(t+h)$ such that

$$f(\mathbf{r}(t+h)) - f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = \nabla f(\mathbf{c}(h)) \cdot [\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)].$$

Dividing both sides by h, we have

$$\frac{f(\mathbf{r}(t+h)) - f(\mathbf{r}(t))}{h} = \nabla f(\mathbf{c}(h)) \cdot \left[\frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h}\right].$$

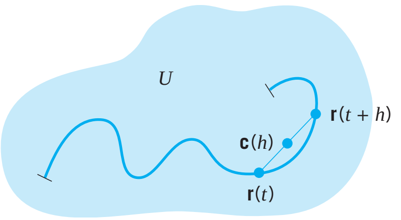


Figure 16.3.4

As h tends to zero, $\mathbf{c}(h)$ tends to $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and, by the continuity of ∇f,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{c}(h)) \to \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)).$$

Since

$$\frac{\mathbf{r}(t+h) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{h} \to \mathbf{r}'(t),$$

the result follows. ❑

Example 1 Use the chain rule to find the rate of change of

$$f(x, y) = \tfrac{1}{3}(x^3 + y^3)$$

with respect to t along the ellipse $\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$.

SOLUTION The rate of change of f with respect to t along the curve $\mathbf{r}$ is the derivative

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))].$$

By the chain rule (Theorem 16.3.4),

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t).$$

Here

$$\nabla f = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j}.$$

With $x(t) = a\cos t$ and $y(t) = b\sin t$, we have

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = a^2\cos^2 t\,\mathbf{i} + b^2\sin^2 t\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Since $\mathbf{r}'(t) = -a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + b\cos t\,\mathbf{j}$,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] &= \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)\\ &= (a^2\cos^2 t\,\mathbf{i} + b^2\sin^2 t\,\mathbf{j}) \cdot (-a\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + b\cos t\,\mathbf{j})\\ &= -a^3\sin t\cos^2 t + b^3\sin^2 t\cos t\\ &= \sin t\cos t(b^3\sin t - a^3\cos t).\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Remark Note that we could have obtained the same result without invoking Theorem 16.3.4 by first forming $f(\mathbf{r}(t))$ and then differentiating with respect to t. As you saw in the calculations carried out before the statement of the theorem,

$$f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = \tfrac{1}{3}(a^3\cos^3 t + b^3\sin^3 t).$$

Differentiation gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] &= \tfrac{1}{3}[3a^3(\cos^2 t)(-\sin t) + 3b^3\sin^2 t\cos t]\\ &= \sin t\cos t(b^3\sin t - a^3\cos t).\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Example 2 Use the chain rule to find the rate of change of

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 y + z\cos x$$

with respect to t along the twisted cubic $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k}$.

SOLUTION Once again we use the relation

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t).$$

This time

$$\nabla f = (2xy - z\sin x)\,\mathbf{i} + x^2\,\mathbf{j} + \cos x\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Since $x(t) = t$, $y(t) = t^2$, $z(t) = t^3$,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = (2t^3 - t^3\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + \cos t\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Since $\mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + 3t^2\,\mathbf{k}$,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt}[(\mathbf{r}(t))] &= \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)\\ &= [(2t^3 - t^3\sin t)\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + \cos t\,\mathbf{k}] \cdot [\mathbf{i} + 2t\,\mathbf{j} + 3t^2\,\mathbf{k}]\\ &= 2t^3 - t^3\sin t + 2t^3 + 3t^2\cos t\\ &= 4t^3 - t^3\sin t + 3t^2\cos t.\end{aligned}$$

You can check this answer by first forming $f(\mathbf{r}(t))$ and then differentiating. ❑

Another Formulation of Theorem 16.3.4

The chain rule for functions of one variable,

$$\frac{d}{dt}[u(x(t))] = u'(x(t))x'(t),$$

can be written

$$\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{du}{dx}\frac{dx}{dt}.$$

In a similar manner, the relation

$$\frac{d}{dt}[u(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla u(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)$$

can be written

(1) $$\frac{du}{dt} = \nabla u \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}.$$

Since

$$\nabla u = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt}\mathbf{i} + \frac{dy}{dt}\mathbf{j} + \frac{dz}{dt}\mathbf{k},$$

(1) gives

(16.3.5) $$\boxed{\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{dz}{dt}.}$$

In the two-variable case, the z-term drops out and we have

(16.3.6) $$\boxed{\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dt}.}$$

Example 3 Find du/dt given that $u = x^2 - y^2$ and $x = t^2 - 1$, $y = 3\sin \pi t$.

SOLUTION Here we are in the two-variable case

$$\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dt}.$$

Since

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 2x, \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -2y \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{dx}{dt} = 2t, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = 3\pi \cos \pi t,$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{du}{dt} &= (2x)(2t) + (-2y)(3\pi \cos \pi t)\\ &= 2(t^2 - 1)(2t) + (-2)(3\sin \pi t)(3\pi \cos \pi t)\\ &= 4t^3 - 4t - 18\pi \sin \pi t \cos \pi t.\end{aligned}$$

You can obtain this same result by first writing u directly as a function of t and then differentiating:

$$u = x^2 - y^2 = (t^2 - 1)^2 - (3\sin \pi t)^2$$

so that

$$\frac{du}{dt} = 2(t^2 - 1)2t - 2(3\sin \pi t)3\pi \cos \pi t = 4t^3 - 4t - 18\pi \sin \pi t \cos \pi t. \quad \square$$

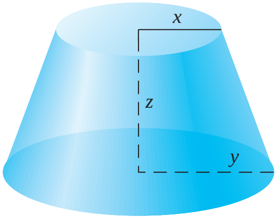


Figure 16.3.5

Example 4 A solid is in the shape of a frustum of a right circular cone. (Figure 16.3.5.) Given that the upper radius x decreases at the rate of 2 inches per minute, the lower radius y increases at the rate of 3 inches per minute, and the height z decreases at the rate of 4 inches per minute, at what rate is the volume V changing at the instant the upper radius is 10 inches, the lower radius is 12 inches, and the height is 18 inches?

SOLUTION With x, y, z as given,

$$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi z(x^2 + xy + y^2). \qquad \text{(Exercise 39, Section 6.2)}$$

Here

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{3}\pi z(2x + y), \qquad \frac{\partial V}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{3}\pi z(x + 2y), \qquad \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} = \frac{1}{3}\pi(x^2 + xy + y^2).$$

Since

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{\partial V}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial z}\frac{dz}{dt},$$

we have

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{1}{3}\pi z(2x + y)\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{1}{3}\pi z(x + 2y)\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{1}{3}\pi(x^2 + xy + y^2)\frac{dz}{dt}.$$

Set

$$x = 10, \qquad y = 12, \qquad z = 18, \qquad \frac{dx}{dt} = -2, \qquad \frac{dy}{dt} = 3, \qquad \frac{dz}{dt} = -4,$$

and you will find that

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = -\frac{772}{3}\pi \cong -808.4.$$

The volume decreases at the rate of approximately 808 cubic inches per minute. $\square$

Differentiating Other Composites

The chain rule (Theorem 16.3.4) spawns many rules of differentiation. Two are stated in (16.3.5) and (16.3.6). More are stated here; more in the Exercises.

First of all, if

$$u = u(x, y) \qquad \text{where} \qquad x = x(s, t) \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = y(s, t),$$

then

(16.3.7)
$$\boxed{\frac{\partial u}{\partial s} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial s} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}.}$$

To obtain the first equation, keep t fixed and differentiate u with respect to s according to (16.3.6); to obtain the second equation, keep s fixed and differentiate u with respect to t.

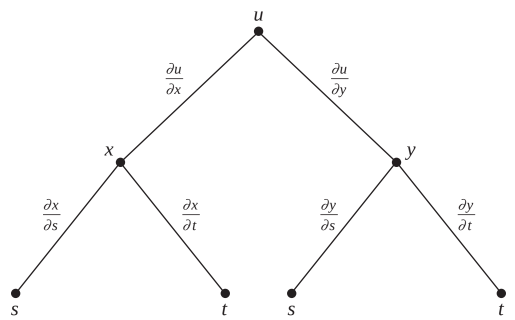


Figure 16.3.6

In Figure 16.3.6 we have drawn a *tree diagram* for (16.3.7). We construct such a tree by branching at each stage from a function to all the variables that directly determine it. Each path starting at u and ending at a variable determines a product of (partial) derivatives. The partial derivative of u with respect to each variable is the sum of the products generated by all the direct paths to that variable.

Example 5 Let $u = x^2 - 2xy + 2y^3$ where $x = s^2 \ln t$ and $y = 2st^3$. Determine $\partial u/\partial s$ and $\partial u/\partial t$.

SOLUTION Here u is a function of two variables, x and y, each of which is itself a function of two variables, s and t. Thus (16.3.7) applies:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial u}{\partial s} &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial s}\\ &= (2x - 2y)(2s\ln t) + (-2x + 6y^2)2t^3.\end{aligned}$$

The result can be expressed entirely in terms of s and t by using the fact that $x = s^2 \ln t$ and $y = 2st^3$. This substitution gives

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial s} = (2s^2\ln t - 4st^3)(2s\ln t) + (-2s^2\ln t + 24s^2t^6)\,2t^3.$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial t}\\ &= (2s^2\ln t - 4st^3)\left(\frac{s^2}{t}\right) + (-2s^2\ln t + 24s^2t^6)\,6st^2.\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Suppose now that u is a function of three variables:

$$u = u(x, y, z) \qquad \text{where} \qquad x = x(s, t), \qquad y = y(s, t), \qquad z = z(s, t).$$

A tree diagram for the partials of u appears in Figure 16.3.7. The partials of u with respect to s and t can be read from the diagram:

(16.3.8)
$$\boxed{\frac{\partial u}{\partial s} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial s}, \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial t}.}$$

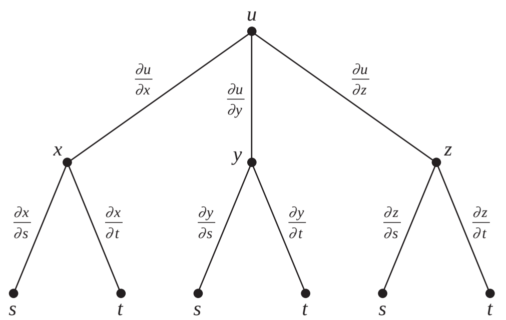


Figure 16.3.7

Example 6 Let $u = x^2y^3e^{xz}$ where $x = s^2 + t^2$, $y = 2st$, $z = s\ln t$. Determine $\partial u/\partial s$.

SOLUTION In this case u is a function of three variables, x, y, z, each of which is a function of two variables, s and t. Thus (16.3.8) applies. Therefore

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial s} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial s}$$

$$= (2xy^3e^{xz} + x^2y^3ze^{xz})\,2s + (3x^2y^2e^{xz})\,2t + (x^3y^3e^{xz})\ln t.$$

The result can be expressed entirely in terms of s and t by using the fact that $x = s^2 + t^2$, $y = 2st$, $z = s\ln t$. ❑

Implicit Differentiation

We return to implicit differentiation, a technique we introduced in Section 3.7.

Suppose that $u = u(x, y)$ is a continuously differentiable function. If y is a differentiable function of x that satisfies $u(x, y) = 0$, then we can find the derivative of y with respect to x without first having to express y *explicitly* in terms of x. The process by which we do this is called *implicit differentiation*.

The process is based on (16.3.6). To be able to apply that formula, we introduce a new variable t by setting $x = t$. We then have

$$u = u(x, y) \qquad \text{with} \qquad x = t \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = y(t).$$

Formula (16.3.6) states that

$$\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dt}.$$

Since $u(x(t), y(t)) = 0$ for all t under consideration, $du/dt = 0$ for such t. Since $x = t$, we have $dx/dt = 1$ and $dy/dt = dy/dx$. Therefore,

$$0 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

For points (x, y) where $\partial u/\partial y \neq 0$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{\partial u/\partial x}{\partial u/\partial y}.$$

The result can be summarized as follows:

(16.3.9) If $u = u(x, y)$ is continuously differentiable, and y is a differentiable function of x that satisfies the equation $u(x, y) = 0$, then at all points (x, y) where $\partial u/\partial y \neq 0$,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{\partial u/\partial x}{\partial u/\partial y}.$$

Example 7 Suppose that y is a differentiable function of x that satisfies the equation

$$u(x, y) = 2x^2y - y^3 + 1 - x - 2y = 0.$$

Since

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 4xy - 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = 2x^2 - 3y^2 - 2,$$

we know that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{4xy - 1}{2x^2 - 3y^2 - 2}.$$

We obtained this result without involving partial derivatives in Chapter 3. (Section 3.7, Example 2) ❑

We can use implicit differentiation to obtain the partial derivatives of functions of more than one variable.

(16.3.10) If $u = u(x, y, z)$ is continuously differentiable, and $z = z(x, y)$ is a differentiable function that satisfies the equation $u(x, y, z) = 0$, then at all points (x, y, z) where $\partial u/\partial z \neq 0$,

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial u/\partial x}{\partial u/\partial z} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial u/\partial y}{\partial u/\partial z}.$$

PROOF We write

$$u = u(x, y, z) \qquad \text{with} \qquad x = s, \qquad y = t, \qquad z = z(s, t)$$

and note that

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial s} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial y}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial s}.$$

Since $u(s, t, z(s, t)) = 0$, $\partial u/\partial s = 0$. Since $\partial x/\partial s = 1$ and $\partial y/\partial s = 0$, we have

$$0 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}(1) + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}(0) + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial s} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial s} \underset{x = s}{=} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}.$$

At those points (x, y, z) where $\partial u/\partial z \neq 0$,

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = -\frac{\partial u/\partial x}{\partial u/\partial z}.$$

The formula for $\partial z/\partial y$ can be obtained in a similar manner. ❑

EXERCISES 16.3

1. Let $f(x, y) = x^3 - xy$. Set $\mathbf{a} = (0, 1)$ and $\mathbf{b} = (1, 3)$. Find a point $\mathbf{c}$ on the line segment $\overline{\mathbf{ab}}$ for which

$$f(\mathbf{b}) - f(\mathbf{a}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{c}) \cdot (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}).$$

2. Let $f(x, y, z) = 4xz - y^2 + z^2$. Set $\mathbf{a} = (0, 1, 1)$ and $\mathbf{b} = (1, 3, 2)$. Find a point $\mathbf{c}$ on the line segment $\overline{\mathbf{ab}}$ for which

$$f(\mathbf{b}) - f(\mathbf{a}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{c}) \cdot (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}).$$

3. (a) Find f if $\nabla f(x, y, z) = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ for all (x, y, z).
(b) What can you conclude about f and g if $\nabla f(x, y, z) - \nabla g(x, y, z) = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ for all (x, y, z)?

4. *(Rolle's theorem for functions of several variables)* Show that, if f is differentiable at each point of the line segment $\overline{\mathbf{ab}}$ and $f(\mathbf{a}) = f(\mathbf{b})$, then there exists a point $\mathbf{c}$ between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ for which $\nabla f(\mathbf{c}) \perp (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})$.

5. Let $U = \{\mathbf{x} : \|\mathbf{x}\| \neq 1\}$. Define f on U by setting

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{cases} 0, & \|\mathbf{x}\| < 1 \\ 1, & \|\mathbf{x}\| > 1. \end{cases}$$

(a) Note that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in U, but f is not constant on U. Explain how this does not contradict Theorem 16.3.2.
(b) Define a function g on U different from f such that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in U and $f - g$ is (i) constant on U, (ii) not constant on U.

6. A set of points is said to be *convex* provided that every pair of points in the set can be joined by a line segment that lies entirely within the set. Show that, if $\|\nabla f(\mathbf{x})\| \leq M$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in some convex set Ω then

$$|f(\mathbf{x}_1) - f(\mathbf{x}_2)| \leq M\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x}_1 \text{ and } \mathbf{x}_2 \text{ in } \Omega.$$

Exercises 7–16. Find the rate of change of f with respect to t along the curve.

7. $f(x, y) = x^2y$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = e^t\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-t}\,\mathbf{j}$.

8. $f(x, y) = x - y$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = at\,\mathbf{i} + b\cos at\,\mathbf{j}$.

9. $f(x, y) = \arctan(y^2 - x^2)$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j}$.

10. $f(x, y) = \ln(2x^2 + y^3)$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = e^{2t}\,\mathbf{i} + t^{1/3}\,\mathbf{j}$.

11. $f(x, y) = x\,e^y + y\,e^{-x}$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = (\ln t)\,\mathbf{i} + t(\ln t)\,\mathbf{j}$.

12. $f(x, y, z) = \ln(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)$,
$\mathbf{r}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + e^{2t}\,\mathbf{k}$.

13. $f(x, y, z) = xy - yz$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k}$.

14. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2$,
$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos\omega t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin\omega t\,\mathbf{j} + b\omega t\,\mathbf{k}$.

15. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z$,
$\mathbf{r}(t) = a\cos\omega t\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin\omega t\,\mathbf{j} + b\omega t\,\mathbf{k}$.

16. $f(x, y, z) = y^2\sin(x + z)$, $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 17–24. Find du/dt by applying (16.3.5) or (16.3.6).

17. $u = x^2 - 3xy + 2y^2$; $\quad x = \cos t,\ y = \sin t$.

18. $u = x + 4\sqrt{xy} - 3y$; $\quad x = t^3,\ y = t^{-1} \quad (t > 0)$.

19. $u = e^x\sin y + e^y\sin x$; $\quad x = \frac{1}{2}t,\ y = 2t$.

20. $u = 2x^2 - xy + y^2$; $\quad x = \cos 2t,\ y = \sin t$.

21. $u = e^x\sin y$; $\quad x = t^2,\ y = \pi t$.

22. $u = z\ln\left(\dfrac{y}{x}\right)$; $\quad x = t^2 + 1,\ y = \sqrt{t},\ z = te^t$.

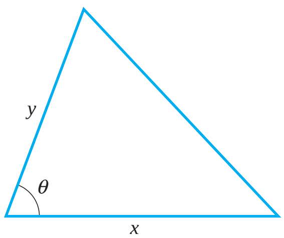
23. $u = xy + yz + zx$; $\quad x = t^2,\ y = t(1 - t),\ z = (1 - t)^2$.

24. $u = x\sin\pi y - z\cos\pi x$; $\quad x = t^2,\ y = 1 - t,\ z = 1 - t^2$.

25. The radius of a right circular cone is increasing at the rate of 3 inches per second and the height is decreasing at the rate of 2 inches per second. At what rate is the volume of the cone changing at the instant the height is 20 inches and the radius is 14 inches?

26. The radius of a right circular cylinder is decreasing at the rate of 2 centimeters per second and the height is increasing at the rate of 3 centimeters per second. At what rate is the volume of the cylinder changing at the instant the radius is 13 centimeters and the height is 18 centimeters?

27. If the lengths of two sides of a triangle are x and y, and θ is the angle between the two sides, then the area A of the triangle is given by $A = \frac{1}{2}xy\sin\theta$. See the figure. If the sides are each increasing at the rate of 3 inches per second and θ is decreasing at the rate of 0.10 radians per second, how fast is the area changing at the instant $x = 1.5$ feet, $y = 2$ feet, $\theta = 1$ radian?



28. An object is moving along the curve in which the paraboloid $z = x^2 + \frac{1}{4}y^2$ intersects the circular cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 13$. If the x-coordinate is increasing at the rate of 5 centimeters per second, how fast is the z-coordinate changing at the instant $x = 2$ centimeters and $y = 3$ centimeters?

Exercises 29–34. Find $\partial u/\partial s$ and $\partial u/\partial t$.

29. $u = x^2 - xy$; $\quad x = s\cos t,\ y = t\sin s$.

30. $u = \sin(x - y) + \cos(x + y)$; $\quad x = st,\ y = s^2 - t^2$.

31. $u = x^2\tan y$; $\quad x = s^2t,\ y = s + t^2$.

32. $u = z^2\sec xy$; $\quad x = 2st,\ y = s - t^2,\ z = s^2t$.

33. $u = x^2 - xy + z^2$; $\quad x = s\cos t,\ y = \sin(t - s)$,
$z = t\sin s$.

34. $u = x\,e^{yz^2}$; $\quad x = \ln st,\ y = t^3,\ z = s^2 + t^2$.

35. An object moves so that at time t it has position $\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$. Show that

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))]$$

is the directional derivative of f in the direction of the motion times the speed of the object.

36. *(Important)* Set $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$ where $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$. If f is a continuously differentiable function of r, then

$$\textbf{(16.3.11)} \qquad \boxed{\nabla[f(r)] = f'(r)\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \qquad \text{where } r \neq 0.}$$

Exercises 37–39. Calculate the following gradients taking $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$.

37. (a) $\nabla(\sin r)$. (b) $\nabla(r \sin r)$.

38. (a) $\nabla(r \ln r)$. (b) $\nabla(e^{1-r^2})$.

39. (a) $\nabla\left(\dfrac{\sin r}{r}\right)$. (b) $\nabla\left(\dfrac{r}{\sin r}\right)$.

40. (a) Draw a tree diagram for du/dt given that $u = u(x, y)$ where $x = x(s)$, $y = y(s)$, and $s = s(t)$.

(b) Calculate du/dt.

41. Set $u = u(x, y, z)$ where

$$x = x(w, t), \quad y = y(w, t), \quad z = z(w, t),$$
$$w = w(r, s), \quad t = t(r, s).$$

(a) Draw a tree diagram for the partials of u.

(b) Calculate $\partial u/\partial r$ *and* $\partial u/\partial s$.

42. Set $u = u(x, y, z, w)$ where

$$x = x(r, s, t), \quad y = y(s, t, v), \quad z = z(r, t),$$
$$w = w(r, s, t, v).$$

(a) Draw a tree diagram for the partials of u.

(b) Calculate $\partial u/\partial r$ *and* $\partial u/\partial v$.

Higher Derivatives

43. Let $u = u(x, y)$, where $x = x(t)$ and $y = y(t)$, and assume that these functions have continuous second derivatives. Show that

$$\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + 2\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\frac{dx}{dt}\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2 + \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{d^2y}{dt^2}.$$

44. Let $u = u(x, y)$, where $x = x(s, t)$ and $y = y(s, t)$, and assume that all these functions have continuous second partials. Show that

$$\frac{d^2u}{ds^2} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial s}\right)^2 + 2\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y}\frac{\partial x}{\partial s}\frac{\partial y}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial s}\right)^2 + \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\frac{\partial^2 x}{\partial s^2} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial s^2}.$$

Polar Coordinates

45. Assume that $u = u(x, y)$ is differentiable.

(a) Show that the change of variables to polar coordinates $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$ gives

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial r} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\cos\theta + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\sin\theta,$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta} = -\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}r\sin\theta + \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}r\cos\theta.$$

(b) Express

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{r^2}\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta}\right)^2$$

entirely in terms of $\partial u/\partial x$ and $\partial u/\partial y$.

46. Let w be a function of polar coordinates r and θ. Then w can be expressed in rectangular coordinates by using

$$x = r\cos\theta \quad \text{and} \quad y = r\sin\theta.$$

(a) Using the first part of Exercise 45, verify that

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial w}{\partial r}\cos\theta - \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial w}{\partial \theta}\sin\theta,$$
$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial w}{\partial r}\sin\theta + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial w}{\partial \theta}\cos\theta.$$

(b) Deduce from part (a) that

$$\frac{\partial r}{\partial x} = \cos\theta, \qquad \frac{\partial r}{\partial y}\sin\theta;$$
$$\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial x} = -\frac{1}{r}\sin\theta, \qquad \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial y} = \frac{1}{r}\cos\theta.$$

(c) Find the fallacy in the following argument:

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad r = \frac{x}{\cos\theta}, \qquad \frac{\partial r}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{\cos\theta}.$$

47. *(The gradient in polar coordinates)* Let $u = u(x, y)$ be differentiable. Show that if u is written in terms of polar coordinates, then

$$\nabla u = \frac{\partial u}{\partial r}\,\mathbf{e}_r + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial \theta}\,\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

where

$$\mathbf{e}_r = \cos\theta\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\theta\,\mathbf{j} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{e}_\theta = -\sin\theta\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\theta\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Exercises 48–49. Use the formula given in Exercise 47 to express the gradient of u in polar coordinates.

48. $u(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$. **49.** $u(x, y) = x^2 - xy + y^2$.

50. Let $u = u(x, y)$, where $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$, and assume that u has continuous second partials. Derive a formula for $\partial^2 u/\partial r\partial\theta$.

51. *(The Laplace operator in polar coordinates).* Assume that $u = u(x, y)$ has continuous second partials. Show that

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial r^2} + \frac{1}{r^2}\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial u}{\partial r}.$$

Exercises 52–55. Assume that y is a differentiable function of x which satisfies the equation. Obtain dy/dx by implicit differentiation.

52. $x^2 - 2xy + y^4 = 4$.

53. $x\,e^y + y\,e^x - 2x^2y = 0$.

54. $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$. ($a$ a constant)

55. $x\cos xy + y\cos x = 2$.

Exercises 56–57. Assume that z is a differentiable function of (x, y) which satisfies the given equation. Obtain $\partial z/\partial x$ and $\partial x/\partial y$ by implicit differentiation.

56. $z^4 + x^2z^3 + y^2 + xy = 2.$

57. $\cos xyz + \ln(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) = 0.$

58. *(A chain rule for vector-valued functions)* Suppose that

$$\mathbf{u}(x, y) = u_1(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + u_2(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}; \quad x = x(t), \; y = y(t).$$

(a) Show that

(16.3.12) $$\boxed{\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial x}\frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dt}}$$

where

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial u_1}{\partial x}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial u_2}{\partial x}\,\mathbf{j} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial u_1}{\partial y}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial u_2}{\partial y}\,\mathbf{j}.$$

(b) Let

$$\mathbf{u} = e^x \cos y\,\mathbf{i} + e^x \sin y\,\mathbf{j}; \quad x = \tfrac{1}{2}t^2, \quad y = \pi t.$$

Calculate $d\mathbf{u}/dt$ (i) by applying (16.3.12), (ii) by forming $\mathbf{u}(t)$ directly.

59. Set

$$\mathbf{u}(x, y) = u_1(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + u_2(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}; \quad x = x(s, t), \; y = y(s, t).$$

Find $\partial \mathbf{u}/\partial s$ and $\partial \mathbf{u}/\partial t$.

60. Set

$$\mathbf{u}(x, y, z) = u_1(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{i} + u_2(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{j} + u_3(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{k}$$

with

$$x = x(t), \quad y = y(t), \quad z = z(t).$$

Derive a formula for $d\mathbf{u}/dt$ analogous to (16.3.12).

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 16.3

THE INTERMEDIATE-VALUE THEOREM

You have seen that a function of a single variable which is continuous on an interval skips no values. (The intermediate-value theorem, Theorem 2.6.1.) There is an analogous result for functions of several variables.

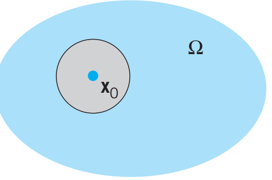


Figure 16.3.8

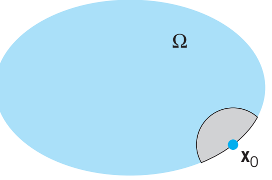


Figure 16.3.9

Suppose that f is continuous on a set S. If $\mathbf{x}_0$ is an interior point of S, then all points $\mathbf{x}$ sufficiently close to $\mathbf{x}_0$ are in S and, by definition, f is continuous at $\mathbf{x}_0$ provided that

$$\text{as } \mathbf{x} \text{ approaches } \mathbf{x}_0, \qquad f(\mathbf{x}) \text{ approaches } f(\mathbf{x}_0). \qquad \text{(Figure 16.3.8)}$$

If $\mathbf{x}_0$ is a boundary point of S, then we have to modify the definition and say: f is continuous at $\mathbf{x}_0$ provided that

$$\text{as } \mathbf{x} \text{ approaches } \mathbf{x}_0 \text{ from } \textit{within } S, \qquad f(\mathbf{x}) \text{ approaches } f(\mathbf{x}_0). \qquad \text{(Figure 16.3.9)}$$

THEOREM 16.3.13 THE INTERMEDIATE-VALUE THEOREM

Let S be an open connected set or an open connected set to which are adjoined some or all of its boundary points. Suppose that f is continuous on S and A, B, C are real numbers with $A < C < B$. If, somewhere in S, f takes on the value A and, somewhere in S, f takes on the value B, then, somewhere in S, f takes on the value C.

PROOF Let $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ be points in S for which

$$f(\mathbf{a}) = A \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(\mathbf{b}) = B.$$

We must show that there exists a point $\mathbf{c}$ in S for which $f(\mathbf{c}) = C$.

Let U be the interior of S and assume first that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are in U. Since U is an open connected set, there is polygonal path γ in U that joins $\mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{b}$. Let $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$, $a \le t \le b$, be a continuous parametrization of the path γ with $\mathbf{r}(a) = \mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{r}(b) = \mathbf{b}$. Since $\mathbf{r}$ is continuous, the composition

$$g(t) = f(\mathbf{r}(t))$$

is also continuous on $[a, b]$. Since

$$g(a) = f(\mathbf{r}(a)) = A \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(b) = f(\mathbf{r}(b)) = B,$$

we know from Theorem 2.6.1 that there is a number c in $[a, b]$ for which $g(c) = C$. Setting $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{r}(c)$ we have $f(\mathbf{c}) = C$.

Now let **a** and **b** be *any* two points in S for which

$$f(\mathbf{a}) = A \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(\mathbf{b}) = B.$$

Since **a** and/or **b** may be boundary points, we proceed as follows. We take ϵ small enough that

$$A + \epsilon < C < B - \epsilon.$$

Since boundary points can be approached as closely as we wish by interior points, we know from the continuity of f that there exist interior points $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2$ for which

$$f(\mathbf{x}_1) < A + \epsilon \qquad \text{and} \qquad B - \epsilon < f(\mathbf{x}_2).$$

Then $f(\mathbf{x}_1) < C < f(\mathbf{x}_2)$ and the result follows by the argument used above, this time applied to $\mathbf{x}_1$ and $\mathbf{x}_2$. ❑

■ 16.4 THE GRADIENT AS A NORMAL; TANGENT LINES AND TANGENT PLANES

Functions of Two Variables

We begin with a nonconstant function $f = f(x, y)$ that is continuously differentiable. (*Remember:* That means f is differentiable and its gradient ∇f is continuous.) You have seen that at each point of the domain, the gradient vector, if not **0**, points in the direction of the most rapid increase of f. Here we show that

(16.4.1) at each point of the domain, the gradient vector ∇f, if not **0**, is perpendicular to the level curve of f that passes through that point.

PROOF We choose a point (x_0, y_0) in the domain and assume that $\nabla f(x_0, y_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$. The level curve through this point has equation

$$f(x, y) = c \qquad \text{where} \qquad c = f(x_0, y_0).$$

Under our assumptions on f, this curve can be parametrized in a neighborhood of (x_0, y_0) by a continuously differentiable vector function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} \qquad t \in I$$

with nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$.[†]

Now take t_0 such that

$$\mathbf{r}(t_0) = x_0\,\mathbf{i} + y_0\,\mathbf{j} = (x_0, y_0).$$

We will show that

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t_0)) \perp \mathbf{r}'(t_0).$$

[†]This follows from a result of advanced calculus known as the *implicit function theorem*.

Since f is constantly c on the curve, we have

$$f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = c \qquad \text{for all } t \in I.$$

For such t

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \underbrace{\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)}_{\text{(Theorem 16.3.4)}} = 0.$$

In particular,

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t_0)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t_0) = 0,$$

and thus

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t_0)) \perp \mathbf{r}'(t_0). \quad ❑$$

Figure 16.4.1 illustrates the result.

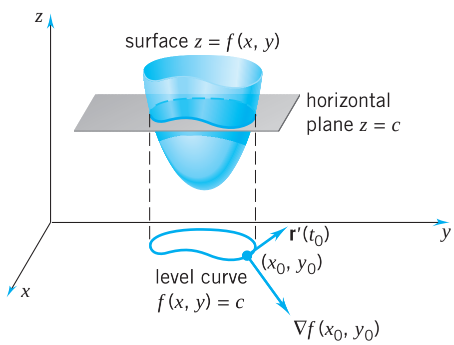


Figure 16.4.1

Example 1 For the function $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ the level curves are concentric circles:

$$x^2 + y^2 = c.$$

At each point $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$ the gradient vector

$$\Delta f(x, y) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j} = 2\,\mathbf{r}$$

points away from the origin along the line of the radius vector and is thus perpendicular to the circle in question. At the origin the level curve is reduced to a point and the gradient is simply $\mathbf{0}$. See Figure 16.4.2. ❑

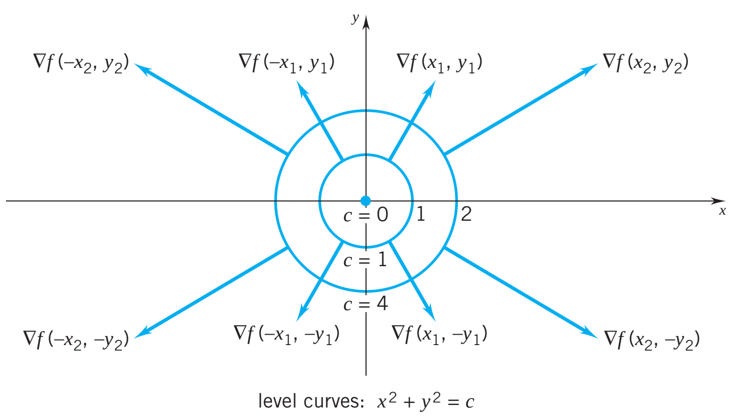


Figure 16.4.2

Consider now a curve in the xy-plane

$$C: \; f(x, y) = c.$$

As before, we assume that f is nonconstant and continuously differentiable. Let's suppose that (x_0, y_0) lies on the curve and $\nabla f(x_0, y_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$.

We can view C as the c-level curve of f and conclude from (16.4.1) that the gradient

(16.4.2)
$$\boxed{\nabla f(x_0, y_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{j}}$$

is perpendicular to C at (x_0, y_0). We call it a *normal vector*.

The vector

(16.4.3)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{t}(x_0, y_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{i} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{j}}$$

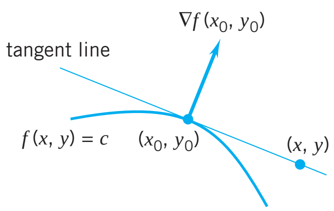


Figure 16.4.3

is perpendicular to the gradient:

$$\nabla f(x_0, y_0) \cdot \mathbf{t}(x_0, y_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0) - \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0) = 0.$$

It is therefore a *tangent vector*.

The line through (x_0, y_0) perpendicular to the gradient is the tangent line. To obtain an equation for the tangent line, we refer to Figure 16.4.3. A point (x, y) will lie on the tangent line iff

$$[(x - x_0)\,\mathbf{i} + (y - y_0)\,\mathbf{j}] \cdot \nabla f(x_0, y_0) = 0;$$

that is, iff

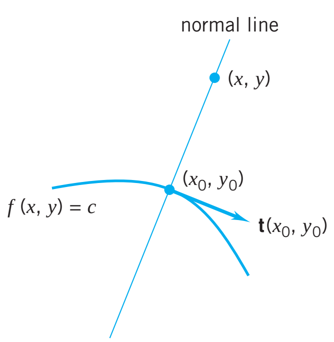


Figure 16.4.4

(16.4.4)
$$\boxed{\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) = 0.}$$

This is an equation for the *tangent line*.

The line through (x_0, y_0) perpendicular to the tangent vector $\mathbf{t}(x_0, y_0)$ is the normal line. (Figure 16.4.4.) A point (x, y) will lie on the normal line iff

$$[(x - x_0)\,\mathbf{i} + (y - y_0)\,\mathbf{j}] \cdot \mathbf{t}(x_0, y_0) = 0;$$

that is, iff

(16.4.5)
$$\boxed{\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) - \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) = 0.}$$

This is an equation for the *normal line*.

Example 2 Let C be the plane curve

$$x^2 + 2y^3 = xy + 4.$$

Find a tangent vector and a normal vector at the point (2, 1). Then write equations for the tangent line and normal line at that point.

SOLUTION Set $f(x, y) = x^2 + 2y^3 - xy$. Note that C is the level curve $f(x, y) = 4$.

$$\nabla f = (2x - y)\,\mathbf{i} + (6y^2 - x)\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \nabla f(2, 1) = 3\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Therefore, we have

normal vector	$\nabla f(2, 1) = 3\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j}$,	tangent vector	$\mathbf{t}(2, 1) = 4\,\mathbf{i} - 3\,\mathbf{j}$
equation of tangent line	$3(x - 2) + 4(y - 1) = 0$,		$(y = -\frac{3}{4}x + \frac{5}{2})$
equation of normal line	$4(x - 2) - 3(y - 1) = 0$.		$(y = \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{5}{3})$ ❑

Functions of Three Variables

Here, instead of level curves, we have level surfaces, but the results are similar. If $f = f(x, y, z)$ is nonconstant and continuously differentiable, then

(16.4.6) at each point of the domain, the gradient vector, if not $\mathbf{0}$, is perpendicular to the level surface that passes through that point.

PROOF We choose a point $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ in the domain and assume that $\nabla f(x_0, y_0, z_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$. The level surface through this point has equation

$$f(x, y, z) = c \qquad \text{where} \qquad c = f(x_0, y_0, z_0).$$

We suppose now that

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad t \in I$$

is a differentiable curve that lies on this surface and passes through the point $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$. We choose t_0 so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t_0) = \mathbf{x_0} = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$$

and suppose that $\mathbf{r}'(t_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$.

Since the curve lies on the given surface, we have

$$f(\mathbf{r}(t)) = c \qquad \text{for all } t \in I.$$

For such t

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t) = 0.$$

In particular,

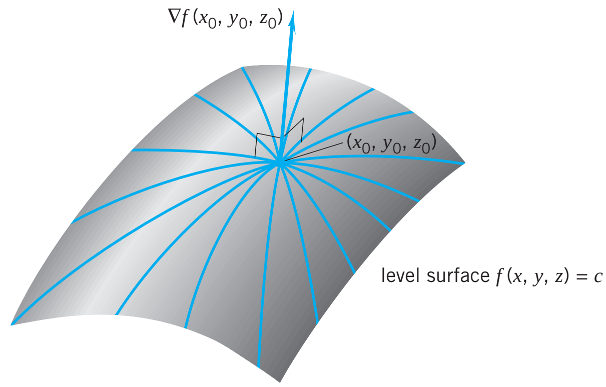
$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t_0)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t_0) = 0.$$

The gradient vector

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t_0)) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) = \nabla f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$$

is thus perpendicular to the curve in question.

This same argument applies to *every* differentiable curve that lies on this level surface and passes through the point $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ with nonzero tangent vector. (See Figure 16.4.5.) Consequently, $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$ must be perpendicular to the surface itself. ❑



The gradient vector $\nabla f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ is perpendicular to the level surface at (x_0, y_0, z_0)

Figure 16.4.5

Example 3 For the function $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$ the level surfaces are concentric spheres:

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = c.$$

At each point $(x, y, z) \neq (0, 0, 0)$, the gradient vector

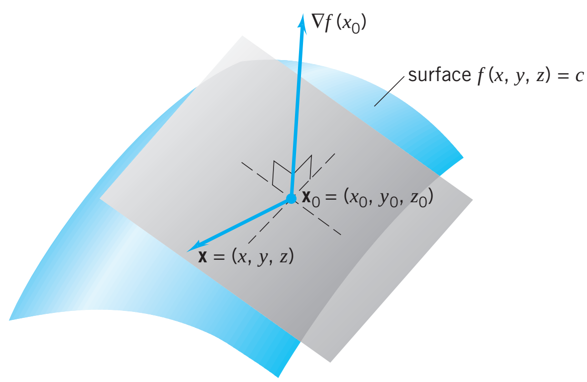
$$\nabla f(x, y, z) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j} + 2z\,\mathbf{k} = 2\,\mathbf{r}$$

points away from the origin along the line of the radius vector and is thus perpendicular to the sphere in question. At the origin the level surface is reduced to a point and the gradient is $\mathbf{0}$. ❑

The *tangent plane* for a surface

$$f(x, y, z) = c$$

at a point $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ is the plane through $\mathbf{x}_0$ with normal $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$. See Figure 16.4.6.



tangent plane to a surface $f(x, y, z) = c$

Figure 16.4.6

The tangent plane at a point $\mathbf{x}_0$ is the plane through $\mathbf{x}_0$ that best approximates the surface in a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$. (We return to this later.)

A point $\mathbf{x}$ lies on the tangent plane through $\mathbf{x}_0$ iff

(16.4.7) $$\boxed{\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)\cdot(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}_0)=0.}$$ (Figure 16.4.6)

This is an equation for the tangent plane in vector notation. In Cartesian coordinates the equation takes the form

(16.4.8) $$\boxed{\begin{aligned}&\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0,y_0,z_0)(x-x_0)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0,y_0,z_0)(y-y_0)\\&\qquad+\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(x_0,y_0,z_0)(z-z_0)=0.\end{aligned}}$$

The *normal line* to the surface $f(x,y,z)=c$ at a point $\mathbf{x}_0=(x_0,y_0,z_0)$ on the surface is the line which passes through (x_0,y_0,z_0) parallel to $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$. Thus, $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$ is a direction vector for the normal line and

(16.4.9) $$\boxed{\mathbf{r}(t)=\mathbf{r}_0+\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)\,t\qquad(\mathbf{r}_0=x_0\,\mathbf{i}+y_0\,\mathbf{j}+z_0\,\mathbf{k})}$$

is a vector equation for the line. In scalar parametric form, equations for the normal line can be written

(16.4.10) $$\boxed{\begin{aligned}x&=x_0+\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0,y_0,z_0)\,t,\\y&=y_0+\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0,y_0,z_0)\,t,\\z&=z_0+\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(x_0,y_0,z_0)\,t.\end{aligned}}$$

Example 4 Find an equation for the plane tangent to the surface

$$xy+yz+zx=11\qquad\text{at the point }(1,2,3).$$

SOLUTION The surface is of the form

$$f(x,y,z)=c\qquad\text{with}\qquad f(x,y,z)=xy+yz+zx\qquad\text{and}\qquad c=11.$$

Observe that

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=y+z,\qquad\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}=x+z,\qquad\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}=x+y.$$

At the point (1, 2, 3)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=5,\qquad\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}=4,\qquad\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}=3.$$

The equation for the tangent plane can therefore be written

$$5(x-1)+4(y-2)+3(z-3)=0.$$

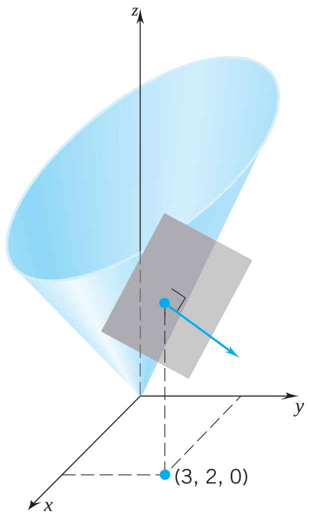


Figure 16.4.7

This simplifies to

$$5x + 4y + 3z - 22 = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 5 Find an equation for the plane tangent to the elliptic cone

$$x^2 + 4y^2 = z^2 \qquad \text{(Figure 16.4.7)}$$

at the point (3, 2, 5) and give scalar parametric equations for the normal line.

SOLUTION The surface is of the form $f(x, y, z) = c$ with

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 4y^2 - z^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad c = 0.$$

The partial derivatives of f are

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 2x, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 8y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} = -2z$$

and

$$\nabla f = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 8y\,\mathbf{j} - 2z\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The vector $\nabla f(3, 2, 5) = 6\,\mathbf{i} + 16\,\mathbf{j} - 10\,\mathbf{k}$ is normal to the cone at the point (3, 2, 5). Note that $\frac{1}{2}\nabla f(3, 2, 5) = 3\,\mathbf{i} + 8\,\mathbf{j} - 5\,\mathbf{k}$ is also normal to the cone and is a little easier to work with.

The equation for the tangent plane can be written

$$3(x - 3) + 8(y - 2) - 5(z - 5) = 0.$$

The equation simplifies to

$$3x + 8y - 5z = 0.$$

Note that this plane passes through the origin. The following are scalar parametric equations for the normal line:

$$x = 3 + 3t, \qquad y = 2 + 8t, \qquad z = 5 - 5t. \quad ❑$$

Example 6 The curve $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2\,\mathbf{i} + 4t^{-1}\,\mathbf{j} + (\frac{1}{2}t - t^2)\,\mathbf{k}$ intersects the hyperbolic paraboloid $x^2 - 4y^2 - 4z = 0$ at the point $(2, 2, -3)$. What is the angle of intersection?

SOLUTION We want the angle ϕ between the tangent vector of the curve and the tangent plane of the surface at the point of intersection. (Figure 16.4.8)

A simple calculation shows that the curve passes through the point $(2, 2, -3)$ at $t = 2$. Since $\mathbf{r}'(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} - 4t^{-2}\,\mathbf{j} + (\frac{1}{2} - 2t)\,\mathbf{k}$, we have

$$\mathbf{r}'(2) = 2\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - \tfrac{7}{2}\,\mathbf{k}.$$

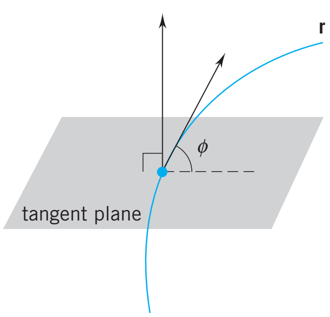


Figure 16.4.8

Now set

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 - 4y^2 - 4z.$$

This function has gradient $2x\,\mathbf{i} - 8y\,\mathbf{j} - 4\,\mathbf{k}$. At the point $(2, 2 - 3)$,

$$\nabla f = 4\,\mathbf{i} - 16\,\mathbf{j} - 4\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Now let θ be the angle between $\mathbf{r}'(2)$ and this gradient. By (13.4.9),

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{r}'(2)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(2)\|} \cdot \frac{\nabla f}{\|\nabla f\|} = \frac{19}{414}\sqrt{138} \cong 0.539$$

so that θ is approximately 1 radian. Since the gradient is normal to the tangent plane,

$$\phi = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi - \theta \cong 1.57 - 1.00 = 0.57 \text{ radians.} \quad ❏$$

A surface of the form $z = g(x, y)$ can be written in the form

$$f(x, y, z) = 0$$

by setting

$$f(x, y, z) = g(x, y) - z.$$

If g is differentiable, so is f. Moreover,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y, z) = \frac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x, y), \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y, z) = \frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x, y), \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(x, y, z) = -1.$$

By (16.4.8) the tangent plane at (x_0, y_0, z_0) has equation

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + \frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0) + (-1)(z - z_0) = 0,$$

which we can rewrite as

(16.4.11) $$\boxed{z - z_0 = \frac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + \frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0).}$$

If $\nabla g(x_0, y_0) = \mathbf{0}$, then both partials of g are zero at (x_0, y_0) and the equation reduces to

$$\boxed{z = z_0.}$$

In this case the tangent plane is *horizontal*.

Scalar parametric equations for the line normal to the surface $z = g(x, y)$ at the point (x_0, y_0, z_0) can be written

(16.4.12) $$\boxed{x = x_0 + \frac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\,t, \qquad y = y_0 + \frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\,t, \qquad z = z_0 + (-1)\,t.}$$

Example 7 Find an equation for the tangent plane and symmetric equations for the line normal to the surface.

$$z = \ln(x^2 + y^2)$$

at the point $(-2, 1, \ln 5)$.

SOLUTION Set $g(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^2)$. The partial derivatives of g are

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x, y) = \frac{2x}{x^2 + y^2}, \qquad \frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{2y}{x^2 + y^2}.$$

Where $x = -2$ and $y = 1$,

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial x} = -\frac{4}{5}, \qquad \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} = \frac{2}{5}.$$

Therefore, at the point $(-2, 1, \ln 5)$, the tangent plane has equation

$$z - \ln 5 = -\frac{4}{5}(x+2) + \frac{2}{5}(y-1).$$

The symmetric equations for the normal line can be written

$$\frac{x+2}{-\frac{4}{5}} = \frac{y-1}{\frac{2}{5}} = \frac{z - \ln 5}{-1}. \quad ❑$$

Example 8 At what points of the surface $z = 3xy - x^3 - y^3$ is the tangent plane horizontal?

SOLUTION The function $g(x, y) = 3xy - x^3 - y^3$ has first partials

$$\frac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x, y) = 3y - 3x^2, \qquad \frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x, y) = 3x - 3y^2.$$

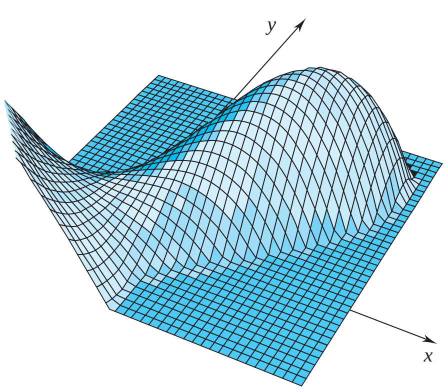
We set these partial derivatives equal to 0 and solve the resulting system of equations for x and y:

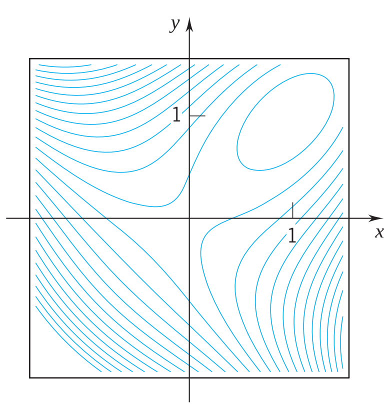
$$\begin{aligned} 3y - 3x^2 &= 0 \qquad \text{simplifies to} \qquad y - x^2 = 0 \\ 3x - 3y^2 &= 0 \qquad \text{simplifies to} \qquad x - y^2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

From the first equation, we get $y = x^2$. Substituting this into the second equation, we have $x - x^4 = 0$ and thus

$$x(1 - x^3) = 0.$$

Therefore, $x = 0$ (which implies that $y = 0$), or $x = 1$ (which implies that $y = 1$). Thus, the partials are both zero only at $(0, 0)$ and $(1, 1)$. The surface has a horizontal tangent plane only at the points $(0, 0, 0)$ and $(1, 1, 1)$. The surface and some level curves have been sketched in Figure 16.4.9. ❑





level curves

Figure 16.4.9

EXERCISES 16.4

Exercises 1–8. Find a normal vector and a tangent vector at the point P. Write an equation for the tangent line and an equation for the normal line.

1. $x^2 + xy + y^2 = 3$; $P(-1, -1)$.

2. $(y - x)^2 = 2x$; $P(2, 4)$.

3. $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 9(x^2 - y^2)$; $P(\sqrt{2}, 1)$.

4. $x^3 + y^3 = 9$; $P(1, 2)$.

5. $xy^2 - 2x^2 + y + 5x = 6$; $P(4, 2)$.

6. $x^5 + y^5 = 2x^3$; $P(1, 1)$.

7. $2x^3 - x^2y^2 = 3x - y - 7$; $P(1, -2)$.

8. $x^3 + y^2 + 2x = 6$; $P(-1, 3)$.

9. Find the slope of the curve $x^2y = a^2(a - y)$ at the point $(0, a)$.

Exercises 10–18. Find an equation for the tangent plane at the point P and scalar parametric equations for the normal line.

10. $z = (x^2 + y^2)^2$; $P(1, 1, 4)$.

11. $x^3 + y^3 = 3xyz$; $P(1, 2, \frac{3}{2})$.

12. $xy^2 + 2z^2 = 12$; $P(1, 2, 2)$.

13. $z = axy$; $P(1, 1/a, 1)$.

14. $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} + \sqrt{z} = 4$; $P(1, 4, 1)$.

15. $z = \sin x + \sin y + \sin(x + y)$; $P(0, 0, 0)$.

16. $z = x^2 + xy + y^2 - 6x + 2$; $P(4, -2, -10)$.

17. $b^2c^2x^2 - a^2c^2y^2 - a^2b^2z^2 = a^2b^2c^2$; $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$.

18. $z = \sin(x \cos y)$; $P(1, \frac{1}{2}\pi, 0)$.

Exercises 19–23. Find the point(s) on the surface at which the tangent plane is horizontal.

19. $xy + a^3x^{-1} + b^3y^{-1} - z = 0$.

20. $z = 4x + 2y - x^2 + xy - y^2$.

21. $z = xy$.

22. $x + y + z + xy - x^2 - y^2 = 0$.

23. $z - 2x^2 - 2xy + y^2 + 5x - 3y + 2 = 0$.

24. (a) Find the *upper unit normal* (the unit normal with positive $\mathbf{k}$ component) for the surface $z = xy$ at the point $(1, 1, 1)$.
(b) Find the *lower unit normal* (the unit normal with negative $\mathbf{k}$ component) for the surface $z = 1/x - 1/y$ at the point $(1, 1, 0)$.

25. Let $f = f(x, y, z)$ be continuously differentiable. Write equations in symmetric form for the line normal to the surface $f(x, y, z) = c$ at the point (x_0, y_0, z_0).

26. Show that in the case of a surface of the form $z = xf(x/y)$ with f continuously differentiable, all the tangent planes have a point in common.

27. Given that the surfaces $F(x, y, z) = 0$ and $G(x, y, z) = 0$ intersect at right angles in a curve γ, what condition must be satisfied by the partial derivatives of F and G on γ?

28. Show that, for all planes tangent to the surface $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} + \sqrt{z} = \sqrt{a}$, the sum of the intercepts is the same.

29. Show that all pyramids formed by the coordinate planes and a plane tangent to the surface $xyz = a^3$ have the same volume. What is this volume?

30. Show that, for all planes tangent to the surface $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} + z^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$, the sum of the squares of the intercepts is the same.

31. The curve $\mathbf{r}(t) = 2t\,\mathbf{i} + 3t^{-1}\,\mathbf{j} - 2t^2\,\mathbf{k}$ and the ellipsoid $x^2 + y^2 + 3z^2 = 25$ intersect at $(2, 3, -2)$. What is the angle of intersection?

32. Show that the curve $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{3}{2}(t^2 + 1)\,\mathbf{i} + (t^4 + 1)\,\mathbf{j} + t^3\,\mathbf{k}$ is perpendicular to the ellipsoid $x^2 + 2y^2 + 3z^2 = 20$ at the point $(3, 2, 1)$.

33. The surfaces $x^2y^2 + 2x + z^3 = 16$ and $3x^2 + y^2 - 2z = 9$ intersect in a curve that passes through the point $(2, 1, 2)$. What are the equations of the respective tangent planes for the two surfaces at this point?

34. Show that the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 8x - 8y - 6z + 24 = 0$ is tangent to the ellipsoid $x^2 + 3y^3 + 2z^2 = 9$ at the point $(2, 1, 1)$.

35. Show that the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 4y - 2z + 2 = 0$ is perpendicular to the paraboloid $3x^2 + 2y^2 - 2z = 1$ at the point $(1, 1, 2)$.

36. Show that the following surfaces are mutually perpendicular:

$$xy = az^2, \quad x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = b, \quad z^2 + 2x^2 = c(z^2 + 2y^2).$$

37. The surface $S : z = x^2 + 3y^2 + 2$ intersects the vertical plane $p : 3x + 4y + 6 = 0$ in a space curve C.
(a) Let C_1 be the projection of C onto the xy-plane. Find an equation for C_1.
(b) Find a parametrization $\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$ for C setting $x(t) = 4t - 2$.
(c) Find a parametrization $\mathbf{R}(s) = \mathbf{R}_0 + s\mathbf{d}$ for the line l tangent to C at the point $(2, -3, 33)$.
(d) Find an equation for the plane p_1 tangent to S at the point $(2, -3, 33)$.
(e) Find a parametrization $\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\,\mathbf{i} + y(t)\,\mathbf{j} + z(t)\,\mathbf{k}$ for the line l' formed by the intersection of p with p_1 taking $x(t) = t$. What is the relation between l and l'?

C **38.** Set $f(x, y) = \dfrac{x^2 - 2y}{x^2 + y^2}$. The level curve $f(x, y) = \frac{2}{5}$ passes through the point $P(2, 1)$.
(a) Find a normal vector at P and scalar parametric equations for the normal line at P.
(b) Find scalar parametric equations for the tangent line at P.
(c) Use a graphing utility to display the level curve, the normal line, and the tangent line all in one figure.

C **39.** Set $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + (y - 1)^2 + z^2$. The level surface $f(x, y, z) = 6$ passes through the point $P(1, 2, 2)$.

(a) Find a normal vector at P and scalar parametric equations for the normal line at P.

(b) Find an equation for the tangent plane at P.

(c) Use a graphing utility to display the level surface, the normal line, and the tangent plane all in one figure.

40. Set $f(x, y) = \frac{3}{2}x - \frac{1}{2}x^3 - xy^2 + 1$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the surface $z = f(x, y)$.

(b) Draw the level curves of the surface and use these to estimate the points where the surface has a horizontal tangent plane.

(c) Calculate ∇f and find the points where $\nabla f(x, y) = \mathbf{0}$. Compare your answers here with your estimates in part (b).

41. Exercise 40 for $f(x, y) = x^4 - y^4 - 2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2$.

42. Exercise 40 for $f(x, y) = 8xye^{-(x^2+y^2)}$.

16.5 LOCAL EXTREME VALUES

In Chapter 4 we discussed local extreme values for a function of one variable. Here we take up the same subject for functions of several variables. The ideas are similar.

DEFINITION 16.5.1 LOCAL EXTREME VALUES

Suppose that f is a function of several variables and $\mathbf{x}_0$ is an interior point of the domain.

The function f is said to have a *local maximum at* $\mathbf{x}_0$ provided that

$$f(\mathbf{x}_0) \geq f(\mathbf{x}) \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \text{ in some neighborhood of } \mathbf{x}_0.$$

The function f is said to have a *local minimum at* $\mathbf{x}_0$ provided that

$$f(\mathbf{x}_0) \leq f(\mathbf{x}) \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \text{ in some neighborhood of } \mathbf{x}_0.$$

The local maxima and minima of f comprise the *local extreme values* of f.

In the one-variable case we know that if f has local extreme value at x_0, then

$$f'(x_0) = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad f'(x_0) \text{ does not exist.}$$

We have a similar result for functions of several variables.

THEOREM 16.5.2

If f has a local extreme value at $\mathbf{x}_0$, then

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) \text{ does not exist.}$$

PROOF We assume that f has a local extreme value at $\mathbf{x}_0$ and that f is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}_0$ [namely, that $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$ exists]. We need to show that $\nabla f_0(\mathbf{x}_0) = \mathbf{0}$. For simplicity we set $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0)$. The three-variable case is similar.

Since f has a local extreme value at (x_0, y_0), the function $g(x) = f(x, y_0)$ has a local extreme value at x_0. Since f is differentiable at (x_0, y_0), g is differentiable at x_0. Therefore

$$g'(x_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0) = 0.$$

Similarly, the function $h(y) = f(x_0, y)$ has a local extreme value at y_0 and, being differentiable there, satisfies the relation

$$h'(y_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0) = 0.$$

The gradient is **0** since both partials are 0. ❑

The interior points of the domain at which the gradient is zero or the gradient does not exist constitute the *critical points*. By Theorem 16.5.2 these are the only points that can give rise to local extreme values.

Although the ideas introduced so far are completely general, their application to functions of more than two variables is generally laborious. We restrict ourselves mostly to functions of two variables. Not only are the computations less formidable, but also we can make use of our geometric intuition.

Two Variables

We suppose for the moment that $f = f(x, y)$ is defined on an open connected set and is continuously differentiable there. The graph of f is a surface

$$z = f(x, y).$$

Where f has a local maximum, the surface has a local high point. Where f has a local minimum, the surface has a local low point. Where f has either a local maximum or a local minimum, the gradient is **0** and therefore the tangent plane is horizontal. See Figure 16.5.1.

A zero gradient signals the possibility of a local extreme value; it does not guarantee it. For example, in the case of the saddle-shaped surface of Figure 16.5.2, there is a horizontal tangent plane at the origin and therefore the gradient is zero there, yet the origin gives neither a local maximum nor a local minimum.

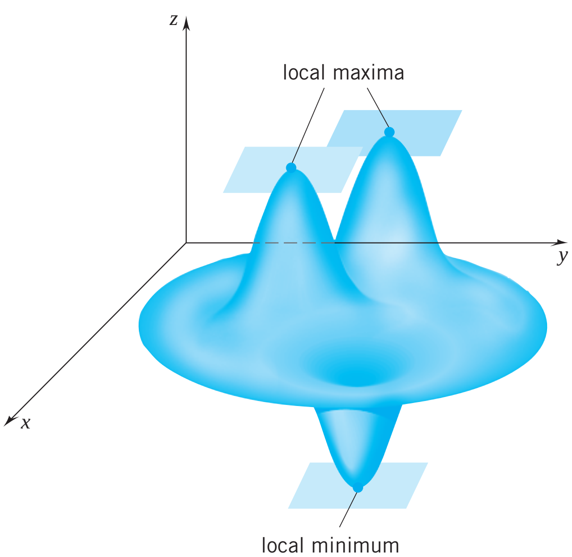


Figure 16.5.1

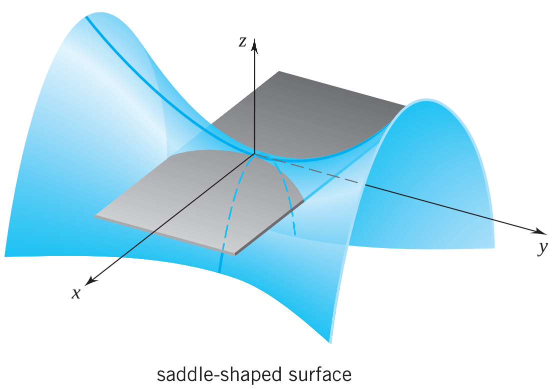


Figure 16.5.2

Critical points at which the gradient is zero are called *stationary points*. The stationary points that do not give rise to local extreme values are called *saddle points*.

Remark *Critical points, stationary points,* and *saddle points* are terms to be kept firmly in mind. ❑

In Examples 1 and 2 we test some differentiable functions for local extreme values. The functions being differentiable, the only critical points are stationary points.

Example 1 The function $f(x, y) = 2x^2 + y^2 - xy - 7y$ has gradient

$$\nabla f(x, y) = (4x - y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2y - x - 7)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

To find the stationary points, we set $\nabla f(x, y) = \mathbf{0}$. This gives

$$4x - y = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad 2y - x - 7 = 0.$$

The only simultaneous solution to these equations is $x = 1$, $y = 4$. The point $(1, 4)$ is therefore the only stationary point.

Now we compare the value of f at $(1, 4)$ with the values of f at nearby points $(1 + h, 4 + k)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(1, 4) &= 2 + 16 - 4 - 28 = -14, \\ f(1 + h, 4 + k) &= 2(1 + h)^2 + (4 + k)^2 - (1 + h)(4 + k) - 7(4 + k) \\ &= 2 + 4h + 2h^2 + 16 + 8k + k^2 - 4 - 4h - k - hk - 28 - 7k \\ &= 2h^2 + k^2 - hk - 14. \end{aligned}$$

The difference

$$\begin{aligned} f(1 + h, 4 + k) - f(1, 4) &= 2h^2 + k^2 - hk \\ &= h^2 + (h^2 - hk + k^2) \\ &\geq h^2 + (h^2 - 2|h||k| + k^2) \\ &= h^2 + (|h| - |k|)^2 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, $f(1 + h, 4 + k) \geq f(1, 4)$ for all small h and k (in fact, for all real h and k).[†] It follows that f has a local minimum at $(1, 4)$. This local minimum is -14. ❑

Example 2 The function $f(x, y) = y^2 - xy + 2x + y + 1$ has gradient

$$\nabla f(x, y) = (2 - y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2y - x + 1)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

The gradient is $\mathbf{0}$ where

$$2 - y = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad 2y - x + 1 = 0.$$

The only simultaneous solution to these equations is $x = 5$, $y = 2$. The point $(5, 2)$ is the only stationary point.

We now compare the value of f at $(5, 2)$ with the values of f at nearby points $(5 + h, 2 + k)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(5, 2) &= 4 - 10 + 10 + 2 + 1 = 7, \\ f(5 + h, 2 + k) &= (2 + k)^2 - (5 + h)(2 + k) + 2(5 + h) + (2 + k) + 1 \\ &= 4 + 4k + k^2 - 10 - 2h - 5k - hk + 10 + 2h + 2 + k + 1 \\ &= k^2 - hk + 7. \end{aligned}$$

[†] Another way to see that $2h^2 + k^2 - hk$ is nonnegative is to complete the square:

$$2h^2 + k^2 - hk = \tfrac{1}{4}h^2 - hk + k^2 + \tfrac{7}{4}h^2 = (\tfrac{1}{2}h - k)^2 + \tfrac{7}{4}h^2 \geq 0.$$

The difference

$$d = f(5+h, 2+k) - f(5,2) = k^2 - hk = k(k-h)$$

does not keep a constant sign for small h and k. (See Figure 16.5.3.) Therefore the point (5, 2) is a saddle point. ❑

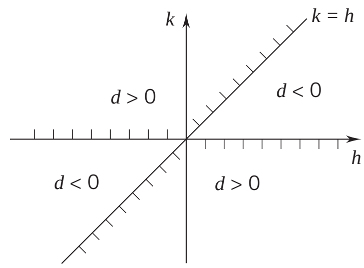


Figure 16.5.3

Example 3 The function $f(x, y) = 1 + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ is everywhere defined and everywhere continuous. The graph is the upper nappe of a right circular cone. (See Figure 16.5.4.) The number $f(0,0) = 1$ is obviously a local minimum.

Since the partials

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}$$

are not defined at (0, 0), the gradient is not defined at (0, 0). (Theorem 16.2.5) The point (0, 0) is thus a critical point, but not a stationary point. At (0, 0, 1) the surface comes to a sharp point and there is no tangent plane. ❑

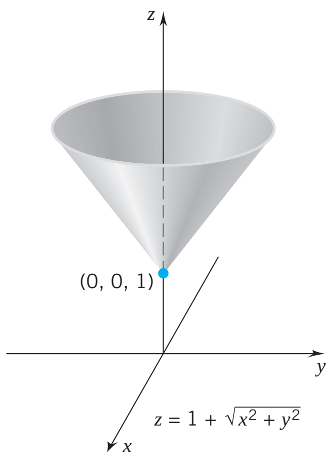


Figure 16.5.4

Second-Partials Test

Suppose that g is a function of one variable and $g'(x_0) = 0$. Then, according to the second-derivative test (Theorem 4.3.5), g has

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{a local minimum at } x_0 & \text{if} & g''(x_0) > 0, \\ \text{a local maximum at } x_0 & \text{if} & g''(x_0) < 0. \end{array}$$

We have a similar test for functions of two variables. Not surprisingly, the test is somewhat more complicated to state and definitely more difficult to prove. We will omit the proof.†

THEOREM 16.5.3 THE SECOND-PARTIALS TEST

Suppose that f has continuous second-order partial derivatives in a neighborhood of (x_0, y_0) and $\nabla f(x_0, y_0) = 0$. Set

$$A = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}(x_0, y_0) \qquad B = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(x_0, y_0), \qquad C = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2}(x_0, y_0)$$

and form the *discriminant* $D = AC - B^2$.

1. If $D < 0$, then (x_0, y_0) is a saddle point.
2. If $D > 0$, then f has

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{a local minimum at } (x_0, y_0) \text{ if } A > 0, \\ \text{a local maximum at } (x_0, y_0) \text{ if } A < 0. \end{array}$$

The test is geometrically evident for functions of the form

$$f(x, y) = \tfrac{1}{2}ax^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}cy^2. \qquad (a \neq 0, c \neq 0)$$

†You can find a proof in most texts on advanced calculus.

The graph of such a function is a paraboloid:

$$z = \tfrac{1}{2}ax^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}cy^2. \qquad \text{(Section 15.2)}$$

The gradient is **0** at the origin (0, 0):

$$A = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}(0,0) = a, \qquad B = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(0,0) = 0, \qquad C = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2}(0,0) = c.$$

Thus $D = AC - B^2 = ac$. If $D < 0$, then a and c have opposite signs and (0, 0) is a saddle point. (Figure 16.5.5)

Suppose now that $D > 0$. If $a > 0$, then $c > 0$ and the surface has a low point; if $a < 0$, then $c < 0$ and the surface has a high point.

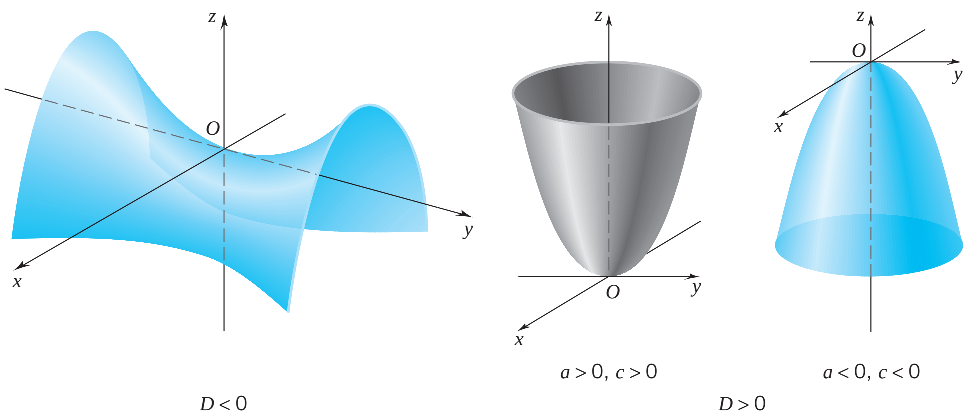


Figure 16.5.5

Below we apply the second-partials test to a variety of functions.

Example 4 In Example 1 we saw that the point (1, 4) is the only stationary point of the function

$$f(x, y) = 2x^2 + y^2 - xy - 7y.$$

The first partials of f are

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 4x - y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2y - x - 7.$$

The second partials are constant:

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 4, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = -1, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 2.$$

Thus, $A = 4$, $B = -1$, $C = 2$, and $D = AC - B^2 = 7 > 0$. Since $A > 0$, it follows from the second-partials test that

$$f(1, 4) = 2 + 16 - 4 - 28 = -14$$

is a local minimum. ❑

Example 5 The function $f(x, y) = -\frac{1}{4}x^4 + \frac{2}{3}x^3 + 4xy - y^2$ has partial derivatives

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = -x^3 + 2x^2 + 4y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 4x - 2y.$$

Setting both partials equal to zero, we have

$$-x^3 + 2x^2 + 4y = 0, \qquad 4x - 2y = 0.$$

From the second equation we get $y = 2x$. Substituting $y = 2x$ into the first equation, we have

$$-x^3 + 2x^2 + 8x = -x(x^2 - 2x - 8) = -x(x-4)(x+2) = 0.$$

The solutions to this equation are $x = 0$, $x = 4$, $x = -2$. The stationary points are $(0, 0)$, $(4, 8)$, $(-2, -4)$.

The second partials are

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = -3x^2 + 4x, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = 4, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = -2.$$

The application of the second-partials test is outlined below.

Point	A	B	C	D	Result
(0, 0)	0	4	−2	−16	Saddle point
(4, 8)	−32	4	−2	48	Local maximum
(−2, −4)	−20	4	−2	24	Local maximum

The surface and its level curves are sketched in Figure 16.5.6. ❑

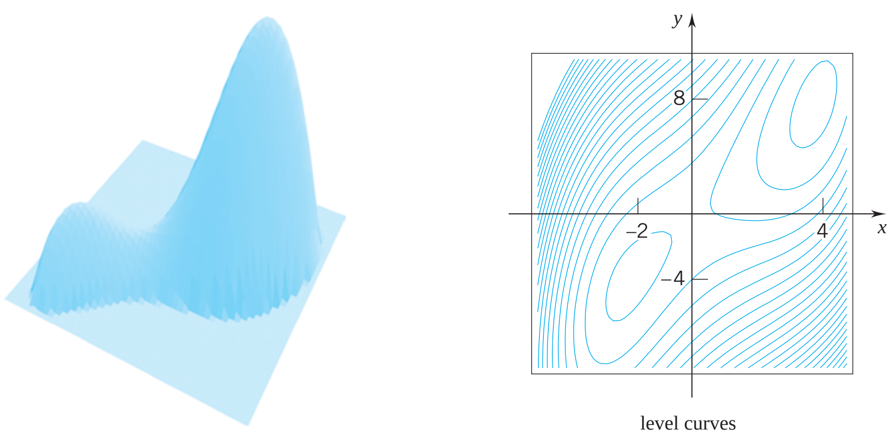


Figure 16.5.6

Example 6 For the function $f(x, y) = -xye^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = -y\,e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2} + x^2y\,e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2} = y(x^2 - 1)\,e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = -x\,e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2} + xy^2e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2} = x(y^2 - 1)e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}$$

$$\nabla f(x, y) = e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}\,[y(x^2 - 1)\,\mathbf{i} + x(y^2 - 1)\,\mathbf{j}].$$

Since $e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2} \neq 0$, $\nabla f(x, y) = \mathbf{0}$ iff

$$y(x^2 - 1) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x(y^2 - 1) = 0.$$

The simultaneous solutions to these equations are $x = 0$, $y = 0$; $x = \pm 1$, $y = \pm 1$. Thus, $(0, 0)$, $(1, 1)$, $(1, -1)$, $(-1, 1)$, $(-1, -1)$ are the only stationary points.

As you can check, the second-partial derivatives are

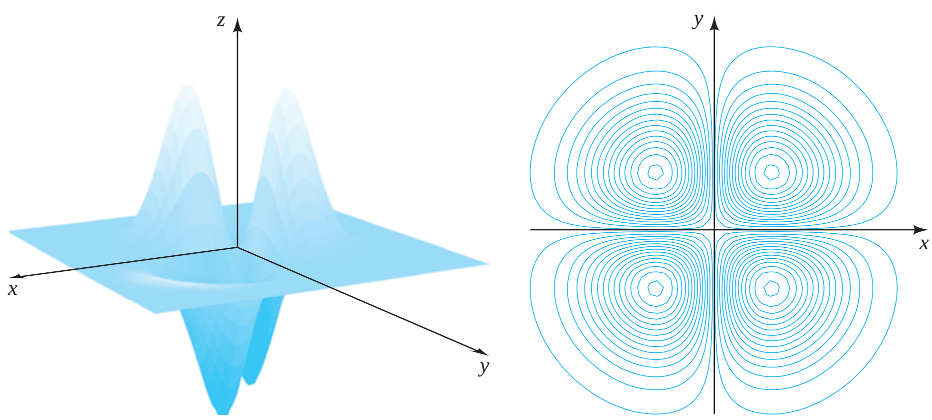
$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = xy(3 - x^2)\, e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = xy(3 - y^2)\, e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2},$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = (x^2 - 1)(1 - y^2)\, e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}.$$

The data needed for the second-partials test are recorded in the following table.

Point	A	B	C	D	Result
$(0, 0)$	0	-1	0	-1	Saddle point
$(1, 1)$	$2\,e^{-1}$	0	$2\,e^{-1}$	$4\,e^{-2}$	Local minimum
$(1, -1)$	$-2\,e^{-1}$	0	$-2\,e{-1}$	$4\,e^{-2}$	Local maximum
$(-1, 1)$	$-2\,e^{-1}$	0	$-2\,e^{-1}$	$4\,e^{-2}$	Local maximum
$(-1, -1)$	$2\,e^{-1}$	0	$2\,e^{-1}$	$4\,e^{-2}$	Local minimum

A computer-generated graph of the function is shown in Figure 16.5.7. ❑



level curves of $f(x, y) = -xye^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}$

Figure 16.5.7

The second-derivative test for a function of one variable applies to points x_0 where $g'(x_0) = 0$ but $g''(x_0) \neq 0$, If $g''(x_0) = 0$, the second-derivative test provides no information. The second-partials test suffers from a similar limitation. It applies to points (x_0, y_0) where $\nabla f(x_0, y_0) = \mathbf{0}$ and $D \neq 0$. If $D = 0$, the second-partials test provides no information.

Consider, for example, the functions

$$f(x, y) = x^4 + y^4, \qquad g(x, y) = -(x^4 + y^4), \qquad h(x, y) = x^4 - y^4.$$

Each of these functions has zero gradient at the origin, and, as you can check, in each case $D = 0$. Yet,

(1) for f, $(0, 0)$ gives a local minimum;
(2) for g, $(0, 0)$ gives a local maximum;
(3) for h, $(0, 0)$ is a saddle point.

Statements (1) and (2) are obvious. To confirm (3), note that $h(0,0) = 0$, but in every neighborhood of (0,0) the function h takes on both positive and negative values:

$$h(x,0) > 0 \quad \text{for } x \neq 0, \qquad \text{while} \qquad h(0,y) < 0 \quad \text{for } y \neq 0. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 16.5

Exercises 1–4. Find the stationary points and use the method illustrated in Examples 1 and 2 to determine the local extreme values.

1. $f(x,y) = 2x - x^2 - y^2$.

2. $f(x,y) = 2x + 2y - x^2 + y^2 + 5$.

3. $f(x,y) = x^2 + xy + y^2 + 3x + 1$.

4. $f(x,y) = x^3 - 3x + y$.

Exercises 5–24. Find the stationary points and the local extreme values.

5. $f(x,y) = x^2 + xy + y^2 - 6x + 2$.

6. $f(x,y) = x^2 + 2xy + 3y^2 + 2x + 10y + 1$.

7. $f(x,y) = x^3 - 6xy + y^3$.

8. $f(x,y) = 3x^2 + xy - y^2 + 5x - 5y + 4$.

9. $f(x,y) = x^3 + y^2 - 6xy + 6x + 3y - 2$.

10. $f(x,y) = x^2 - 2xy + 2y^2 - 3x + 5y$.

11. $f(x,y) = x \sin y$.

12. $f(x,y) = y + x \sin y$.

13. $f(x,y) = (x+y)(xy+1)$.

14. $f(x,y) = xy^{-1} - yx^{-1}$.

15. $f(x,y) = xy + x^{-1} + 8y^{-1}$.

16. $f(x,y) = x^2 - 2xy - y^2 + 1$.

17. $f(x,y) = xy + x^{-1} + y^{-1}$.

18. $f(x,y) = (x-y)(xy-1)$.

19. $f(x,y) = \dfrac{-2x}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$.

20. $f(x,y) = (x-3)\ln xy$.

21. $f(x,y) = x^4 - 2x^2 + y^2 - 2$.

22. $f(x,y) = (x^2 + y^2)\, e^{x^2 - y^2}$.

23. $f(x,y) = \sin x \sin y, \quad 0 < x < 2\pi, \quad 0 < y < 2\pi$.

24. $f(x,y) = \cos x \cosh y, \quad -2\pi < x < 2\pi$.

25. Let $f(x,y) = x^2 + kxy + y^2, \quad k$ a constant.

(a) Show that f has a stationary point at (0, 0) no matter what value is assigned to k.

(b) For what values of k will f have a saddle point at (0, 0)?

(c) For what values of k will f have a local minimum at (0, 0)?

(d) For what values of k is the second-partials test inconclusive?

26. Exercise 25 for the function

$$f(x,y) = x^2 + kxy + 4y^2, \qquad k \text{ a constant}.$$

27. Find the point in the plane $2x - y + 2z = 16$ that is closest to the origin and calculate the distance from the origin to this point. Check your answer by using (13.6.5).

28. Find the point in the plane $3x - 4y + 2z + 32 = 0$ that is closest to the point $P(-1,2,4)$ and calculate the distance from P to this point. Check your answer by using (13.6.5).

29. What point on the elliptic cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + 2y^2}$ is closest to the point (1, 2, 0)?

30. Find the maximum volume for a rectangular solid inscribed in the sphere

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2.$$

Exercises 31–32. Suppose that f is a differentiable function of one variable defined on an interval. If f takes on a local maximum at two points, then f takes on a local minimum somewhere in between. If f takes on a local minimum at two points, then somewhere in between it takes on a local maximum. These results do not extend to functions of several variables.

C **31.** Set $f(x,y) = 4xy - x^4 - y^4 + 1$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and some level curves.

(b) Your drawings should show that f has a local maximum at (1, 1) and at $(-1,-1)$, a saddle point at (0, 0), but no local minima.

(c) Verify the results suggested in part (b) by applying the methods of this section.

C **32.** Set $f(x,y) = x^4 - 2x^2 + y^2 + 1$.

(a) Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and some level curves.

(b) Your drawings should show that f has a local maximum at (1, 0) and at $(-1,0)$, a saddle point at (0, 0), but no local maxima.

(c) Verify the results suggested in part (b) by applying the methods of this section.

C **Exercises 33–36.** Use a graphing utility to draw the graph of f and some level curves. Locate the stationary points, if any, and at each stationary point state whether f has a local maximum, a local minimum, or a stationary point.

33. $f(x,y) = 3xy - x^3 - y^3 + 2$.

34. $f(x,y) = (x^2 + 2y^2)e^{-(x^2+y^2)}$.

35. $f(x,y) = \dfrac{-2x}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$.

36. $f(x,y) = \sin x + \sin y - \cos(x+y); \quad x, y \in [0, 3\pi]$.

16.6 ABSOLUTE EXTREME VALUES

Whether or not a function of several variables has a local extreme value at some point $\mathbf{x}_0$ depends on the behavior of the function on only a neighborhood of $\mathbf{x}_0$. Absolute extreme values, which we define below, depend on the behavior of the function on its entire domain.

DEFINITION 16.6.1 ABSOLUTE EXTREME VALUES

Suppose that f is a function of several variables.

f is said to have an *absolute maximum at* $\mathbf{x}_0$ provided that

$$f(\mathbf{x}_0) \geq f(\mathbf{x}) \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \text{ in the domain of } f;$$

f is said to have an *absolute minimum at* $\mathbf{x}_0$ provided that

$$f(\mathbf{x}_0) \leq f(\mathbf{x}) \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \text{ in the domain of } f.$$

In Chapter 2 we stated that a function of one variable that is continuous on a bounded closed interval takes on both an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum. (Theorem 2.6.2) In a moment we'll generalize on this, but first we need to extend the notion of boundedness from sets of real numbers to sets of higher dimensions.

DEFINITION 16.6.2

A subset S of the plane or three-space is said to be *bounded* provided there exists a positive number R such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}\| \leq R \qquad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \in S.$$

Thus a set on the plane or in three-space is bounded iff it is contained in some ball of finite radius.

THEOREM 16.6.3 THE EXTREME-VALUE THEOREM

If f is continuous on a closed and bounded set D, then on that set f takes on an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum.

Two Variables

To find the local extreme values, we need to test only the interior points. To find the absolute extreme values, we also have to test the boundary points. This usually requires special methods. One approach is to try to parametrize the boundary by some vector function $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ and then work with the function of one variable $f(\mathbf{r}(t))$. This is the approach we take in this section. Another approach is introduced in Section 16.7.

The procedure we use for finding the absolute extreme values can be outlined as follows:

1. Determine the critical points. These are the interior points at which the gradient is zero (the stationary points) and the interior points at which the gradient does not exist.

2. Determine the points on the boundary that can possibly give rise to extreme values. At this stage this is a one-variable process.
3. Evaluate f at the points found in Steps 1 and 2.
4. The greatest of the numbers found in Step 3 is the absolute maximum; the least is the absolute minimum.

Example 1 Find the absolute extreme values taken on by the function

$$f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 2y + 4$$

on the closed disk $D = \{(x, y) : x^2 + y^2 \leq 9\}$. (Figure 16.6.1)

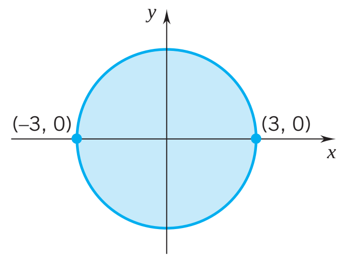


Figure 16.6.1

SOLUTION The region D is a bounded closed set and the function f, being continuous everywhere, is continuous on D. Therefore, we know that f takes on an absolute maximum on D and an absolute minimum.

First we find the critical points. The gradient of f,

$$\nabla f(x, y) = (2x - 2)\,\mathbf{i} + (2y - 2)\,\mathbf{j},$$

is defined throughout the open disk. The gradient is $\mathbf{0}$ only where

$$2x - 2 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad 2y - 2 = 0.$$

These equations give $x = 1$, $y = 1$. The point $(1, 1)$ is the only stationary point.

Now we look for extreme values on the boundary of D. The boundary can be parametrized by the equations

$$x = 3\cos t, \quad y = 3\sin t, \quad (\text{or } \mathbf{r}(t) = 3\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + 3\sin t\,\mathbf{j}),\ 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

The values of f on the boundary are given by the function

$$\begin{aligned} F(t) = f(\mathbf{r}(t)) &= 9\cos^2 t + 9\sin^2 t - 6\cos t - 6\sin t + 4 \\ &= 13 - 6\cos t - 6\sin t, \qquad 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi. \end{aligned}$$

Since F is a real-valued function continuous on a bounded closed interval, it has an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum. (Theorem 2.6.2) To find the critical numbers for F, we differentiate:

$$F'(t) = 6\sin t - 6\cos t.$$

Setting $F'(t) = 0$, we get

$$\sin t = \cos t.$$

The solutions of this equation within the open interval $(0, 2\pi)$ are $t = \pi/4$ and $t = 5\pi/4$. We must also check the endpoints of the interval: $t = 0$ and $t = 2\pi$.

The only values of t that can possibly give rise to an extreme value are $t = 0$, $t = \pi/4$, $t = 5\pi/4$, $t = 2\pi$. At these values of t we have

$$\begin{aligned} F(0) = F(2\pi) &= f(3, 0) = 7, \\ F(\pi/4) &= f\left(\tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{2}, \tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{2}\right) = 13 - 6\sqrt{2} \cong 4.51, \\ F(5\pi/4) &= f\left(-\tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{2}, -\tfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{2}\right) = 13 + 6\sqrt{2} \cong 21.49. \end{aligned}$$

At the only stationary point, the point $(1, 1)$, the function takes on the value 2: $f(1, 1) = 2$.

Thus, the absolute maximum is $13 + 6\sqrt{2}$ and the absolute minimum is 2. ❑

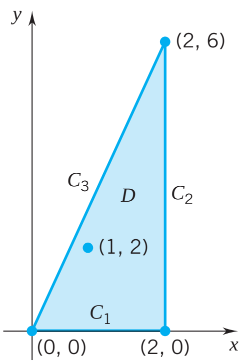


Figure 16.6.2

Example 2 Find the absolute extreme values of the function

$$f(x,y) = 4xy - x^2 - y^2 - 6x$$

on the triangular region $D = \{(x,y) : 0 \le x \le 2, 0 \le y \le 3x\}$. (Figure 16.6.2)

SOLUTION Since f is continuous and D is a bounded closed set, we know that f takes on an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum.

First we find the critical points of f. The gradient of f,

$$\nabla f = (4y - 2x - 6)\,\mathbf{i} + (4x - 2y)\,\mathbf{j},$$

is defined everywhere. The gradient is $\mathbf{0}$ where

$$4y - 2x - 6 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 4x - 2y = 0.$$

Solving these equations simultaneously, we get $x = 1$, $y = 2$. The only stationary point in D is the point $(1, 2)$.

Now we look for extreme values on the boundary. We write each side of the triangle in the form $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ and then analyze $f(\mathbf{r}(t))$. With C_1, C_2, C_3 as in the figure, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &C_1 : \mathbf{r}_1(t) = t\,\mathbf{i}, && t \in [0,2]; \\ &C_2 : \mathbf{r}_2(t) = 2\,\mathbf{i} + t\,\mathbf{j}, && t \in [0,6]; \\ &C_3 : \mathbf{r}_3(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + 3t\,\mathbf{j}, && t \in [0,2]. \end{aligned}$$

The values of f on these line segments are given by the functions

$$\begin{aligned} f_1(t) &= f(\mathbf{r}_1(t)) = -t^2 - 6t, && t \in [0,2]; \\ f_2(t) &= f(\mathbf{r}_2(t)) = -(t-4)^2, && t \in [0,6]; \\ f_3(t) &= f(\mathbf{r}_3(t)) = 2t^2 - 6t, && t \in [0,2]. \end{aligned}$$

As you can check, f_1 has no critical points in $(0, 2)$, f_2 has a critical point at $t = 4$, and f_3 has a critical point at $t = \frac{3}{2}$. Evaluating these functions at the endpoints of their domains and at the critical points for f_2 and f_3, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} &f_1(0) = f_3(0) = f(0,0) = 0 \\ &f_1(2) = f_2(0) = f(2,0) = -16 \\ &f_2(6) = f_3(3) = f(2,6) = -4 \\ &f_2(4) = f(2,4) = 0 \\ &f_3(\tfrac{3}{2}) = f(\tfrac{3}{2}, \tfrac{9}{2}) = -\tfrac{9}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

At the only stationary point, the point $(1, 2)$, f takes on the value -3: $f(1,2) = -3$.

Thus the absolute maximum is 0, and the absolute minimum is -16. ❑

Whether or not a function takes on an absolute extreme value on a set which is not bounded or not closed has to be decided on a case-by-case basis.

Example 3 The rectangle $\{(x,y) : 0 \le x \le a, -b \le y \le b\}$ is a bounded closed subset of the plane. The function

$$f(x,y) = 1 + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2},$$

being everywhere continuous, is continuous on this rectangle. Thus we can be sure that f takes on both an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum on this set. The absolute maximum is taken on at the points $(a, -b)$ and (a, b), the points of the rectangle farthest away from the origin. The value of f at these points is $1 + \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. The absolute minimum is taken on at the origin $(0, 0)$. The value there is 1.

Now let's continue with the same function but apply it instead to the rectangle

$$\{(x, y) : 0 < x \leq a, -b \leq y \leq b\}.$$

This rectangle is bounded but not closed. On this set f takes on an absolute maximum (the same maximum as before and at the same points), but it takes on no absolute minimum (the origin is not in the set).

Finally, on the entire plane (which is closed but not bounded), f takes on an absolute minimum (1 at the origin) but no maximum. ❑

Example 4 Here we work with the function

$$f(x, y) = xy + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{y}; \qquad x > 0, y > 0.$$

The domain of f is the first quadrant, a set which is open and unbounded. Differentiation shows that the gradient is $\mathbf{0}$ only at the point (1, 1). Thus (1, 1) is the only stationary point. The second-partials test reveals that $f(1, 1) = 3$ is a local minimum. (You can check these assertions by making the calculations yourself.)

Question: Does f take on values less than 3?

To answer this question, we break up the first quadrant into two parts: a closed and bounded part Ω that contains the point (1, 1) and an unbounded part on which $f(x, y)$ is clearly greater than 3. Such a break up is indicated in Figure 16.6.3.

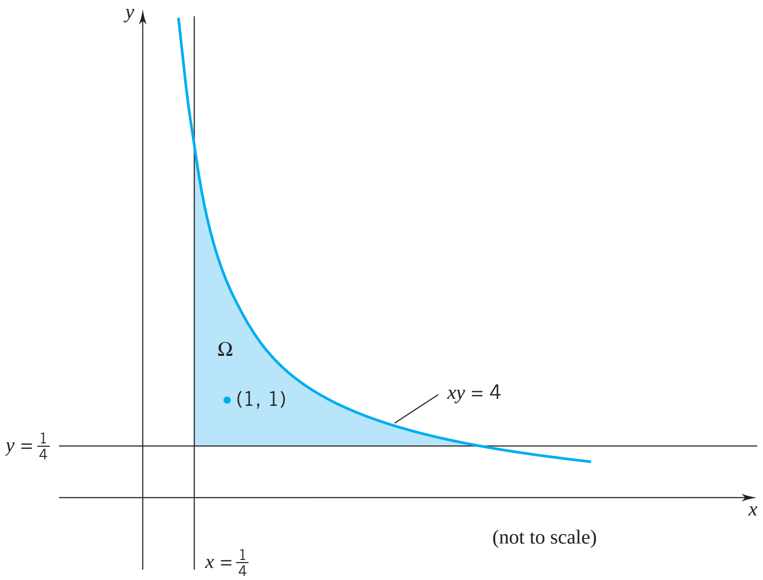


Figure 16.6.3

At points outside Ω

$$xy > 4, \qquad x < \tfrac{1}{4}, \qquad \text{or} \quad y < \tfrac{1}{4}.$$

Thus outside Ω

$$f(x, y) = xy + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{y}$$

is greater than 4. If f takes on values less than 3, it doesn't do it outside Ω.

Now let's look at what happens on Ω. Since Ω is closed and bounded, and f is continuous, the function does take on an absolute minimum on Ω. It can't do so on the boundary because on the boundary $f(x, y)$ is at least 4 and $f(1, 1) = 3$. Thus the minimum value of f is taken on in the interior of Ω. This minimum value is therefore a local minimum, and as such must be taken on at a stationary point. Since (1, 1) is the only stationary point, the absolute minimum on Ω must be 3. Since outside of Ω, $f(x, y) > 4$, $f(1, 1)$ is the absolute minimum of f on its entire domain. The question has been answered: f does not take on values less than 3. ❑

EXERCISES 16.6

Exercises 1–18. Find the absolute extreme values taken on by f on the set indicated.

1. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 2y + 2$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 2$, $0 \le y \le 2x$.

2. $f(x, y) = 2 - 3x + 2y$; the closed region enclosed by the triangle with vertices (0, 0), (4, 0), (0, 6).

3. $f(x, y) = x^2 + xy + y^2 - 6x - 1$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 5$, $-3 \le y \le 0$.

4. $f(x, y) = x^2 + 2xy + 3y^2$; $\quad |x| \le 2, |y| \le 2$.

5. $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 + 3xy + 2$; $\quad x^2 + y^2 \le 4$.

6. $f(x, y) = y(x - 3)$; $\quad x^2 + y^2 \le 9$.

7. $f(x, y) = (x - 1)^2 + (y - 1)^2$; $\quad x^2 + y^2 \le 4$.

8. $f(x, y) = 3 + x - y + xy$; the closed region enclosed by $y = x^2$ and $y = 4$.

9. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{-2x}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$; $\quad |x| \le 2, |y| \le 2$.

10. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{-2x}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 2, -x \le y \le x$.

11. $f(x, y) = (4x - 2x^2)\cos y$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 2$, $-\pi/4 \le y \le \pi/4$.

12. $f(x, y) = (x - 3)^2 + y^2$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 4, x^2 \le y \le 4x$.

13. $f(x, y) = x^3 - 3xy - y^3$; $\quad 2 \le x \le 2, x \le y \le 1$.

14. $f(x, y) = (x - 4)^2 + y^2$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 2, x^3 \le y \le 4x$.

15. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{-2y}{x^2 + y^2 + 1}$; $\quad x^2 + y^2 \le 4$.

16. $f(x, y) = x^2 + 4y^2 + x - 2y$; the closed region enclosed by the ellipse $\frac{1}{4}x^2 + y = 1$.

17. $f(x, y) = x^2 - 2xy + y^2$; $\quad 0 \le x \le 6, 0 \le y \le 12 - 2x$.

18. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}$; $\quad 1 \le x \le 3, 1 \le y \le 4$.

19. Find positive numbers x, y, z such that $x + y + z = 18$ and xyz is a maximum. HINT: Maximize $f(x, y) = xy(18 - x - y)$ on the triangular region bounded by the positive x- and y-axes and the line $x + y = 18$.

20. Find positive numbers x, y, z such that $x + y + z = 30$ and xyz^2 is a maximum. HINT: Maximize $f(y, z) = (30 - y - z)yz^2$ on the triangular region bounded by the positive y- and z-axes and the line $y + z = 30$.

21. Find the maximum volume for a rectangular solid in the first octant ($x \ge 0, y \ge 0, z \ge 0$) with one vertex at the origin and opposite vertex on the plane $x + y + z = 1$.

22. Find the maximum volume for a rectangular solid in the first octant with one vertex at the origin and the opposite vertex on the plane

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} + \frac{z}{c} = 1.$$

23. Define $f(x, y) = \frac{1}{4}x^2 - \frac{1}{9}y^2$ on the closed unit disk. Find

(a) the stationary points,

(b) the local extreme values,

(c) the absolute extreme values.

24. Let n be an integer greater than 2 and set

$$f(x, y) = ax^n + cy^n, \quad \text{taking } ac \ne 0.$$

(a) Find the stationary points.

(b) Find the discriminant at each stationary point.

(c) Find the local and absolute extreme values given that

(i) $a > 0, c > 0$.

(ii) $a < 0, c < 0$.

(iii) $a > 0, c < 0$.

25. Show that a closed rectangular box of maximum volume having prescribed surface area S is a cube.

26. If an open rectangular box has a prescribed surface area S, what dimensions yield the maximum volume?

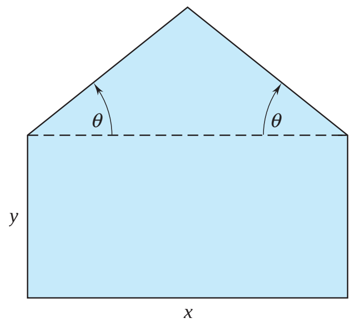
27. Find the point with the property that the sum of the squares of its distances from $P_1(x_1, y_1)$, $P_2(x_2, y_2)$, $P_3(x_3, y_3)$ is an absolute minimum.

28. A bakery produces two types of bread, one at a cost of 50 cents per loaf, the other at a cost of 60 cents per loaf. Assume that if the first bread is sold at x cents a loaf and the second at y cents a loaf, then the number of loaves that can be sold each week is given by the formulas

$$N_1 = 250(y - x), \qquad N_2 = 32,000 + 250(x - 2y).$$

Determine x and y for maximum profit.

29. A pentagon is composed of a rectangle surmounted by an isosceles triangle (see the figure). Given that the perimeter of the pentagon has a fixed value P, find the dimensions for maximum area.



30. Let $f(x, y) = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$ taking $abc \neq 0$.

(a) Find the discriminant D.

(b) Find the stationary points and local extreme values if $D \neq 0$.

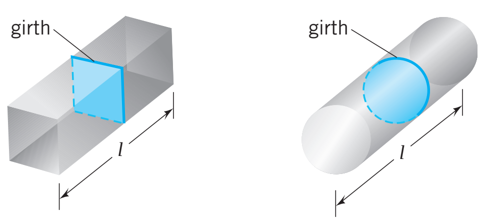
(c) Suppose that $D = 0$. Find the stationary points and the local and absolute extreme values given that

(i) $a > 0, c > 0$.
(ii) $a < 0, c < 0$.

31. Find the distance between the lines $x = \frac{1}{2}y = \frac{1}{3}z$ and $x = y - 2 = z$.

32. A petrochemical company is designing a cylindrical tank with hemispherical ends to be used in transporting its products. If the volume of the tank is to be 10,000 cubic meters, what dimensions should be used to minimize the amount of metal required?

33. According to U.S. Postal Service regulations, the length plus the girth (the perimeter of a cross section) of a package cannot exceed 108 inches. (See the figure.)



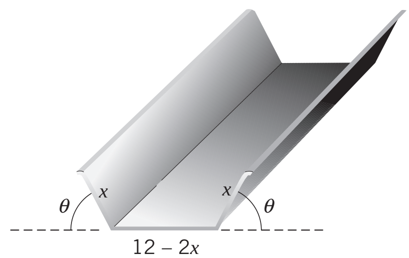
(a) Find the dimensions of the rectangular box of maximum volume that is acceptable for mailing.

(b) Find the dimensions of the cylindrical tube of maximum volume that is acceptable for mailing.

34. Find the volume of the largest rectangular box with edges parallel to the coordinate axes that can be inscribed in the ellipsoid

$$4x^2 + 9y^2 + 36z^2 = 36.$$

35. A 10-foot section of gutter is to be made from a 12-inch-wide strip of metal by folding up strips of length x on each side so that they make an angle θ with the bottom of the gutter. (See the figure.) Determine values for x and θ that will maximize the cross-sectional area of the gutter.



36. Find the dimensions of the most economical open-top rectangular crate 96 cubic meters in volume given that the base costs 30 cents per square meter and the sides cost 10 cents per square meter.

37. (*The method of least squares*) In this exercise we illustrate an important method of fitting a curve to a collection of points. Consider three points

$$(x_1, y_1) = (0, 2), \quad (x_2, y_2) = (1, -5), \quad (x_3, y_3) = (2, 4).$$

(a) Find the line $y = mx + b$ that minimizes the sum of the squares of the vertical distances $d_i = |y_i - (mx_i + b)|$ from these points to the line.

(b) Find the parabola $y = \alpha x^2 + \beta$ that minimizes the sum of the squares of the vertical distances $d_i = |y_i - (\alpha x_i^2 + \beta)|$ from the points to the parabola.

38. Exercise 37 taking

$$(x_1, y_1) = (-1, 2), (x_2, y_2) = (0, -1), (x_3, y_3) = (1, 1).$$

■ 16.7 MAXIMA AND MINIMA WITH SIDE CONDITIONS

(What we call *side conditions* are often called *constraints*.)

When we ask for the distance from a point $P(x_0, y_0)$ to a line $l : Ax + By + C = 0$, we are asking for the minimum value of

$$f(x, y) = \sqrt{(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2}$$

with (x, y) subject to the side condition $Ax + By + C = 0$. When we ask for the distance from a point $P(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ to a plane p: $Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$, we are asking for a minimum value of

$$f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 + (z - z_0)^2}$$

with (x, y, z) subject to the side condition $Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$.

We have already treated these particular problems by special techniques. Our interest here is to present techniques for handling problems of this sort in general. In the two-variable case, the problems will take the form of maximizing (or minimizing) some expression $f(x, y)$ subject to a side condition $g(x, y) = 0$. In the three-variable case, we will seek to maximize (or minimize) some expression $f(x, y, z)$ subject to a side condition $g(x, y, z) = 0$. We begin with two simple examples.

Example 1 Maximize the product xy subject to the side condition $x + y - 1 = 0$.

SOLUTION The condition $x + y - 1 = 0$ gives $y = 1 - x$. The original problem can therefore be solved simply by maximizing the product $h(x) = x(1 - x)$. The derivative $h'(x) = 1 - 2x$ is 0 only at $x = \frac{1}{2}$. Since $h''(x) = -2 < 0$, we know from the second-derivative test that $h(\frac{1}{2}) = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \frac{1}{2}) = \frac{1}{4}$ is the desired maximum. ❑

Example 2 Find the maximum volume of a rectangular solid given that the sum of the lengths of its edges is $12a$.

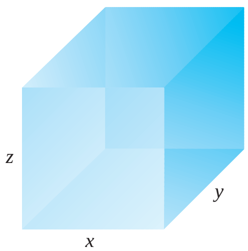


Figure 16.7.1

SOLUTION We denote the dimensions of the solid by x, y, z. (Figure 16.7.1.) The volume is given by

$$V = xyz.$$

The stipulation on the edges requires that

$$4(x + y + z) = 12a.$$

Solving this last equation for z, we find that

$$z = 3a - (x + y).$$

Substituting this expression for z in the volume formula, we have

$$V = xy[3a - (x + y)].$$

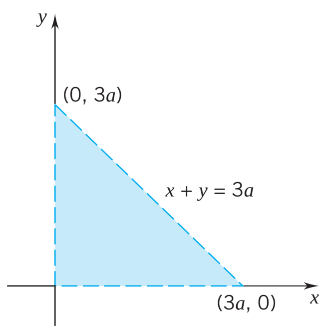


Figure 16.7.2

Since x, y, V cannot be negative, the function V is defined only on the triangular region shown in Figure 16.7.2. Since $V = 0$ on the boundary of the region, the maximum value of V is taken on somewhere inside the triangle.

Differentiation gives

$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial x} = xy(-1) + y[3a - (x + y)] = 3ay - 2xy - y^2,$$
$$\frac{\partial V}{\partial y} = xy(-1) + x[3a - (x + y)] = 3ax - x^2 - 2xy.$$

Setting both partials equal to zero, we have

$$(3a - 2x - y)y = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad (3a - x - 2y)x = 0.$$

Since x and y are assumed positive, we can divide by x and y and get

$$3a - 2x - y = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad 3a - x - 2y = 0.$$

Solving these equations simultaneously, we find that $x = y = a$. The point (a, a), which does lie within the triangle, is the only stationary point. The value of V at that point is a^3. The conditions of the problem make it clear that this is a maximum. (If you are skeptical, you can confirm this by appealing to the second-partials test.) ❑

The last two problems were easy. They were easy *in part* because the side conditions were such that we could solve for one of the variables in terms of the other(s). In general this is not possible and a more sophisticated approach is required.

The Method of Lagrange

We begin with what looks like a detour. To avoid having to make separate statements for the two- and three-variable cases, we will use vector notation.

Throughout the discussion f will be a function of two or three variables which is continuously differentiable on some open set U. We take

$$C : \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in I$$

to be a curve that lies entirely in U and has at each point a nonzero tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'(t)$. The basic result is this:

(16.7.1) if $\mathbf{x}_0$ maximizes (or minimizes) $f(\mathbf{x})$ on C, then $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$ is perpendicular to C at $\mathbf{x}_0$.

PROOF Assume that $\mathbf{x}_0$ maximizes (or minimizes) $f(\mathbf{x})$ on C. Choose t_0, so that

$$\mathbf{r}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0.$$

The composition $f(\mathbf{r}(t))$ has a maximum (or minimum) at t_0. Consequently, its derivative,

$$\frac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t),$$

must be zero at t_0:

$$0 = \nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t_0)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t_0) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t_0).$$

This shows that

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) \perp \mathbf{r}'(t_0).$$

Since $\mathbf{r}'(t_0)$ is tangent to C at $\mathbf{x}_0$, $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$ is perpendicular to C at $\mathbf{x}_0$. ❑

We are now ready for side-condition problems. Suppose that g is a continuously differentiable function of two or three variables defined on a subset of the domain of f. Lagrange made the following observation:†

(16.7.2) if $\mathbf{x}_0$ maximizes (or minimizes) $f(\mathbf{x})$ subject to the side condition $g(\mathbf{x}) = 0$, then $\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0)$ and $\nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0)$ are parallel. Thus, if $\nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$, then there exists a scalar λ such that

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) = \lambda \nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0).$$

Such a scalar λ has come to be called a *Lagrange multiplier*.

PROOF OF (16.7.2) Let's suppose that $\mathbf{x}_0$ maximizes (or minimizes) $f(\mathbf{x})$ subject to the side condition $g(\mathbf{x}) = 0$. If $\nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0) = \mathbf{0}$, the result is trivially true: every vector is parallel to the zero vector. We suppose therefore that $\nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0) \neq \mathbf{0}$.

In the two-variable case we have

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{the side condition} \qquad g(x, y) = 0.$$

†Another contribution of the French mathematician Joseph Louis Lagrange.

The side condition defines a curve C that has a nonzero tangent vector at (x_0, y_0).† Since (x_0, y_0) maximizes (or minimizes) $f(x, y)$ on C, we know from (16.7.1) that $\nabla f(x_0, y_0)$ is perpendicular to C at (x_0, y_0). By (16.4.2), $\nabla g(x_0, y_0)$ is also perpendicular to C at (x_0, y_0). The two gradients are therefore parallel. See Figure 16.7.3.

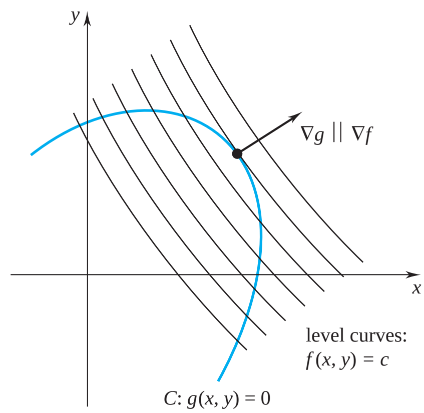


Figure 16.7.3

In the three-variable case we have

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \text{the side condition} \qquad g(x, y, z) = 0.$$

The side condition defines a surface Γ that lies in the domain of f. Now let C be a curve that lies on Γ and passes through (x_0, y_0, z_0) with nonzero tangent vector. We know that (x_0, y_0, z_0) maximizes (or minimizes) $f(x, y, z)$ on C. Consequently, $\nabla f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ is perpendicular to C at (x_0, y_0, z_0). Since this is true for each such curve C, $\nabla f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ must be perpendicular to Γ itself. But since Γ is a level surface for g and (x_0, y_0, z_0) lies on Γ, $\nabla g(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ is also perpendicular to Γ. [(16.4.6)] It follows that $\nabla f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ and $\nabla g(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ are parallel. ❑

We come now to some problems that are susceptible to Lagrange's method. In each case ∇g is not $\mathbf{0}$ where g is 0 and therefore we can focus entirely on those points $\mathbf{x}$ that satisfy the Lagrange condition

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) = \lambda \nabla g(\mathbf{x}). \tag{16.7.2}$$

Example 3 Maximize and minimize

$$f(x, y) = xy \qquad \text{on the unit circle} \qquad x^2 + y^2 = 1.$$

SOLUTION Since f is continuous and the unit circle is closed and bounded, it is clear that both a maximum and a minimum exist. (Section 16.6)

To apply Lagrange's method, we set

$$g(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 1.$$

We want to maximize and minimize

$$f(x, y) = xy \qquad \text{subject to the side condition } g(x, y) = 0.$$

---

† $\mathbf{t}(x_0, y_0) = \dfrac{\partial g}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{i} - \dfrac{\partial g}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\,\mathbf{j} \neq \mathbf{0}$. (16.4.3)

The gradients are

$$\nabla f(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad \nabla g(x, y) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Setting $\nabla f(x, y) = \lambda \nabla g(x, y)$, we have

$$y = 2\lambda x, \qquad x = 2\lambda y.$$

Multiplying the first equation by y and the second equation by x, we find that

$$y^2 = 2\lambda xy, \qquad x^2 = 2\lambda xy$$

and therefore

$$y^2 = x^2.$$

The side condition $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ implies that $2x^2 = 1$ and therefore $x = \pm\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$. The only points that can give rise to an extreme value are

$$(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}), \qquad (\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}), \qquad (-\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}), \qquad (-\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}).$$

At the first and fourth points f takes on the value $\frac{1}{2}$. At the second and third points f takes on the value $-\frac{1}{2}$. Clearly then, $\frac{1}{2}$ is the maximum value and $-\frac{1}{2}$ the minimum value. ❑

Example 4 Find the minimum value taken on by the function

$$f(x, y) = x^2 + (y - 2)^2 \qquad \text{on the hyperbola} \qquad x^2 - y^2 = 1.$$

SOLUTION Note that the expression $f(x, y) = x^2 + (y - 2)^2$ gives the square of the distance between the points $(0, 2)$ and (x, y). Therefore, the problem asks us to minimize the square of the distance from the point $(0, 2)$ to the hyperbola, and this minimum value clearly exists. Note, also, that there is no maximum value. See Figure 16.7.4.

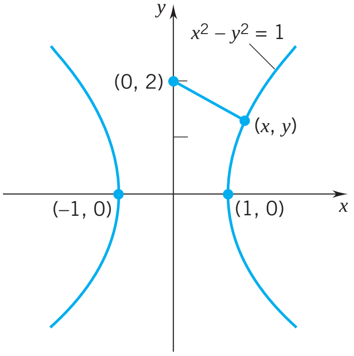


Figure 16.7.4

Now set

$$g(x, y) = x^2 - y^2 - 1.$$

We want to minimize

$$f(x, y) = x^2 + (y - 2)^2 \qquad \text{subject to the side condition} \qquad g(x, y) = 0.$$

Here

$$\nabla f(x, y) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2(y - 2)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad \nabla g(x, y) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} - 2y\,\mathbf{j}.$$

The Lagrange condition $\nabla f(x, y) = \lambda \nabla g(x, y)$ gives

$$2x = 2\lambda x, \qquad 2(y - 2) = -2\lambda y,$$

which we can simplify to

$$x = \lambda x, \qquad y - 2 = -\lambda y.$$

The side condition $x^2 - y^2 = 1$ shows that x cannot be zero. Dividing $x = \lambda x$ by x, we get $\lambda = 1$. This means that $y - 2 = -y$ and therefore $y = 1$. With $y = 1$, the side condition gives $x = \pm\sqrt{2}$. The points to be checked are therefore $(-\sqrt{2}, 1)$ and $(\sqrt{2}, 1)$. At each of these points f takes on the value 3. This is the desired minimum. ❑

Remark The last problem could have been solved more simply by rewriting the side condition as $x^2 = 1 + y^2$ and eliminating x from $f(x, y)$ by substitution. Then it would have been simply a matter of minimizing the function $h(y) = 1 + y^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 2y^2 - 4y + 5$. ❑

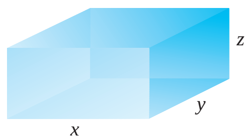


Figure 16.7.5

Example 5 A rectangular box without a top is to have a volume of 12 cubic feet. Find the dimensions of the box that will have minimum surface area.

SOLUTION With the dimensions indicated in Figure 16.7.5, the surface area is given by the expression

$$S = xy + 2xz + 2yz.$$

We want to minimize S subject to the side condition $xyz = 12$ with $x > 0$, $y > 0$, $z > 0$.

We begin by setting

$$g(x, y, z) = xyz - 12$$

so that the side condition becomes $g(x, y, z) = 0$. We seek those triples (x, y, z) that simultaneously satisfy the Lagrange condition

$$\nabla f(x, y, z) = \lambda \nabla g(x, y, z) \qquad \text{and the side condition} \qquad g(x, y, z) = 0.$$

The gradients are

$$\nabla f = (y + 2z)\,\mathbf{i} + (x + 2z)\,\mathbf{j} + (2x + 2y)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad \nabla g = yz\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + xy\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The Lagrange condition gives

$$y + 2z = \lambda yz, \qquad x + 2z = \lambda xz, \qquad 2x + 2y = \lambda xy.$$

Multiplying the first equation by x, the second by $-y$, and adding the resulting equations, we get

$$2z(x - y) = 0.$$

Since $z \neq 0$, it follows that $y = x$. Replacing y by x in the third equation yields the equation

$$4x = \lambda x^2.$$

Since $x \neq 0$, we conclude that $x = 4/\lambda$, and since $y = x$, $y = 4/\lambda$. We can now solve either the first or second equation for z in terms of λ. The result is $z = 2/\lambda$.

Finally, substituting $x = y = 4/\lambda$ and $z = 2/\lambda$ into the side condition, we get

$$\left(\frac{4}{\lambda}\right)\left(\frac{4}{\lambda}\right)\left(\frac{2}{\lambda}\right) = 12 \qquad \text{which implies} \qquad \lambda^3 = \frac{8}{3} \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \lambda = \frac{2}{\sqrt[3]{3}}.$$

With $\lambda = 2/\sqrt[3]{3}$, we find that $x = y = 2\sqrt[3]{3}$ and $z = \sqrt[3]{3}$. The dimensions that minimize the surface area are

$$\text{length} = 2\sqrt[3]{3}, \qquad \text{width} = 2\sqrt[3]{3}, \qquad \text{height} = \sqrt[3]{3}. \quad \square$$

Example 6 Show that, of all the triangles inscribed in a circle of radius R, the equilateral triangle has the largest perimeter.

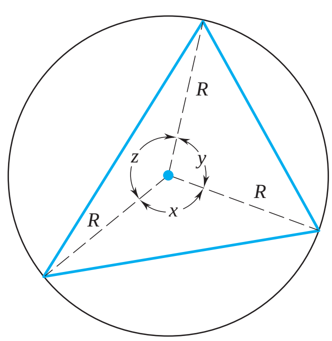


Figure 16.7.6

SOLUTION It is intuitively clear that this maximum exists and geometrically clear that the triangle that offers this maximum contains the center of the circle in its interior or on its boundary. As in Figure 16.7.6, we denote by x, y, z the central angles that subtend the three sides. As you can verify by trigonometry, the perimeter of the triangle is given by the function.

$$f(x, y, z) = 2R(\sin \tfrac{1}{2}x + \sin \tfrac{1}{2}y + \sin \tfrac{1}{2}z).$$

As a side condition we have

$$g(x, y, z) = x + y + z - 2\pi = 0.$$

To maximize the perimeter, we form the gradients

$$\nabla f(x, y, z) = R(\cos \tfrac{1}{2}x\,\mathbf{i} + \cos \tfrac{1}{2}y\,\mathbf{j} + \cos \tfrac{1}{2}z\,\mathbf{k}), \qquad \nabla g(x, y, z) = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}.$$

The Lagrange condition $\nabla f(x, y, z) = \lambda \nabla g(x, y, z)$ gives

$$\lambda = R \cos \tfrac{1}{2}x, \qquad \lambda = R \cos \tfrac{1}{2}y, \qquad \lambda = R \cos \tfrac{1}{2}z,$$

and therefore

$$\cos \tfrac{1}{2}x = \cos \tfrac{1}{2}y = \cos \tfrac{1}{2}z.$$

With x, y, z all in $(0, \pi]$, we can conclude that $x = y = z$. Since the central angles are equal, the sides are equal. The triangle is therefore equilateral. ❑

An Application of the Cross Product

The Lagrange condition can be replaced by a cross-product equation. Points that satisfy the equation $\nabla f = \lambda \nabla g$ satisfy the equation

(16.7.3)
$$\boxed{\nabla f \times \nabla g = \mathbf{0}.}$$

If f and g are functions of two variables,

$$\nabla f \times \nabla g = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ f_x & f_y & 0 \\ g_x & g_y & 0 \end{vmatrix} = (f_x g_y - f_y g_x)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Thus, in two variables, the condition $\nabla f \times \nabla g = \mathbf{0}$ gives

(16.7.4)
$$\boxed{\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\frac{\partial g}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\frac{\partial g}{\partial x} = 0.}$$

Example 7 Maximize and minimize $f(x, y) = xy$ on the unit circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

SOLUTION This problem was solved earlier by the method of Lagrange. (Example 3) This time we will use (16.7.4) instead.

As before, we set

$$g(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 1,$$

so that the side condition takes the form $g(x, y) = 0$. Since

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial g}{\partial x} = 2x, \qquad \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} = 2y,$$

(16.7.4) gives

$$y(2y) - x(2x) = 0 \qquad \text{which simplifies to} \qquad x^2 = y^2.$$

As before, the side condition $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ implies that $2x^2 = 1$ and therefore $x = \pm\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$. The points under consideration are

$$(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}), \qquad (\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}), \qquad (-\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}), \qquad (-\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}).$$

As you saw in Example 3, f takes on its maximum value $\frac{1}{2}$ at the first and fourth points, and its minimum value $-\frac{1}{2}$ at the second and third points. ❑

In three variables the computations demanded by the cross-product equation are often quite complicated, and it is usually easier to follow the method of Lagrange.

EXERCISES 16.7

1. Minimize $x^2 + y^2$ on the hyperbola $xy = 1$.

2. Maximize xy on the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$.

3. Minimize xy on the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$.

4. Minimize xy^2 on the unit circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

5. Maximize xy^2 on the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$.

6. Maximize $x + y$ on the curve $x^4 + y^4 = 1$.

7. Maximize $x^2 + y^2$ on the curve $x^4 + 7x^2y^2 + y^4 = 1$.

8. Minimize xyz on the unit sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

9. Maximize xyz on the ellipsoid $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 + z^2/c^2 = 1$.

10. Minimize $x + 2y + 4z$ on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 7$.

11. Maximize $2x + 3y + 5z$ on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 19$.

12. Minimize $x^4 + y^4 + z^4$ on the plane $x + y + z = 1$.

13. Maximize the volume of a rectangular solid in the first octant with one vertex at the origin and opposite vertex on the plane $x/a + y/b + z/c = 1$. (Take $a > 0, b > 0, c > 0$.)

14. Show that the square has the largest area of all the rectangles with a given perimeter.

15. Find the distance from the point $(0, 1)$ to the parabola $x^2 = 4y$.

16. Find the distance from the point $(p, 4p)$ to the parabola $y^2 = 2px$.

17. Find the points on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ that are closest to and farthest from the point $(2, 1, 2)$.

18. Let x, y, z be the angles of a triangle. Determine the maximum value of $f(x, y, z) = \sin x \sin y \sin z$.

19. Maximize $f(x, y, z) = 3x - 2y + z$ on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 14$.

20. A rectangular box has three of its faces on the coordinate planes and one vertex in the first octant on the paraboloid $z = 4 - x^2 - y^2$. Determine the maximum volume of the box.

21. Use the method of Lagrange to find the distance from the origin to the plane with equation $Ax + By + Cz + D = 0$.

22. Maximize the volume of a rectangular solid given that the sum of the areas of the six faces is $6a^2$.

23. Within a triangle there is a point P such that the sum of the squares of the distances from P to the sides of the triangle is a minimum. Find this minimum.

24. Show that of all the triangles inscribed in a fixed circle, the equilateral one has the largest: (a) product of the lengths of the sides; (b) sum of the squares of the lengths of the sides.

25. The curve $x^3 - y^3 = 1$ is asymptotic to the line $y = x$. Find the point(s) on the curve $x^3 - y^3 = 1$ farthest from the line $y = x$.

26. A plane passes through the point (a, b, c). Find its intercepts with the coordinate axes if the volume of the solid bounded by the plane and the coordinate planes is to be a minimum.

27. Show that, of all the triangles with a given perimeter, the equilateral triangle has the largest area. HINT: Area $= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$, where s represents the semiperimeter $s = \frac{1}{2}(a + b + c)$.

28. Show that the rectangular box of maximum volume that can be inscribed in the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ is a cube.

29. Determine the maximum value of $f(x, y) = (xy)^{1/2}$ given that x and y are nonnegative numbers and $x + y = k$, k a constant. Then show that if x and y are nonnegative numbers,

$$(xy)^{1/2} \le \tfrac{1}{2}(x + y).$$

30. (a) Determine the maximum value of $f(x, y, z) = (xyz)^{1/3}$ given that x, y, and z are nonnegative numbers and $x + y + z = k$, k a constant.

(b) Use the result in part (a) to show that if x, y, and z are nonnegative numbers, then

$$(xyz)^{1/3} \le \tfrac{1}{3}(x + y + z).$$

31. Let $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ be nonnegative numbers such that $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = k$, k a constant. Prove that

$$(x_1x_2\cdots x_n)^{1/n} \le \tfrac{1}{n}(x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n).$$

Thus, for n nonnegative numbers, the *geometric mean is less than or equal to the arithmetic mean.*

32. (a) Maximize and (b) minimize xy^2z on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

33. A soft-drink manufacturer wants to design an aluminum can in the shape of a right circular cylinder to hold a given volume V (measured in cubic inches). If the objective is to minimize the amount of aluminum needed (top, sides, and bottom), what dimensions should be used?

Exercises 34–42. Use the Lagrange method to give alternative solutions to following exercises of Section 16.6.

34. Exercise 19.

35. Exercise 22.

36. Exercise 20.

37. Exercise 25.

38. Exercise 26.

39. Exercise 32.

40. Exercise 33.

41. Exercise 34.

42. Exercise 36.

43. A manufacturer can produce three distinct products in quantities Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 and thereby derive a profit $p(Q_1, Q_2, Q_3) = 2Q_1 + 8Q_2 + 24Q_3$. Find the values of Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 that maximize profit given that production is subject to the constraint $Q_1^2 + 2Q_2^2 + 4Q_3^2 = 4.5 \times 10^9$.

44. Find the volume of the largest rectangular box that can be inscribed in the ellipsoid

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1$$

if the edges of the box are parallel to the coordinate planes.

■ PROJECT 16.7 Maxima and Minima with Two Side Conditions

The Lagrange method can be extended to problems with two side conditions. If $\mathbf{x}_0$ gives rise to a maximum (or minimum) of $f(\mathbf{x})$ subject to the two side conditions $g(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$ and $h(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$, and if $\nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0)$, $\nabla h(\mathbf{x}_0)$ are nonzero and nonparallel, then there exist scalars λ and μ such that

$$\nabla f(\mathbf{x}_0) = \lambda \nabla g(\mathbf{x}_0) + \mu \nabla h(\mathbf{x}_0).$$

Assume this result and solve the following problems.

Problem 1. Find the extreme values of

$$f(x, y, z) = xy + z^2$$

subject to the side conditions:

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y - x = 0.$$

Problem 2. The planes $x + 2y + 3z = 0$ and $2x + 3y + z = 4$ intersect in a straight line. Find the point on that line that is closest to the origin.

Problem 3. The plane $x + y - z + 1 = 0$ intersects the upper nappe of the cone $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$ in an ellipse. Find the points on this ellipse that are closest to and farthest from the origin.

■ 16.8 DIFFERENTIALS

We begin by reviewing the one-variable case. If f is differentiable at x, then for small h, the increment

$$\Delta f = f(x + h) - f(x)$$

can be approximated by the differential

$$df = f'(x)h.$$

For a geometric view of Δf and df, see Figure 16.8.1. We write

$$\Delta f \cong df.$$

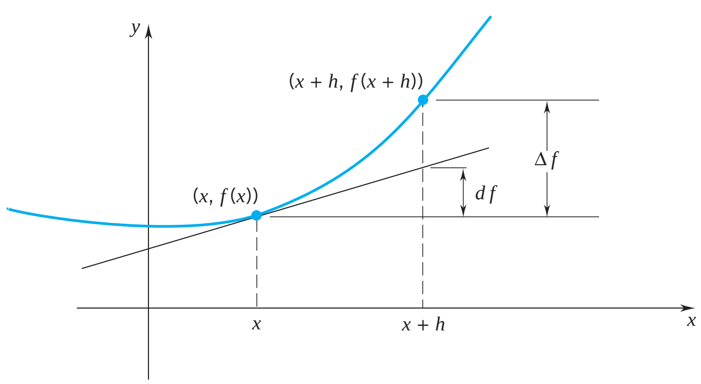


Figure 16.8.1

How good is this approximation? It is good enough that the ratio

$$\frac{\Delta f - df}{|h|}$$

tends to 0 as h tends to 0.

The differential of a function of several variables, defined in an analogous manner, plays a similar approximating role. Let's suppose that f, now a function of several variables, is differentiable at $\mathbf{x}$. The difference

(16.8.1)
$$\boxed{\Delta f = f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x})}$$

is called the *increment* of f, and the dot product

(16.8.2)
$$\boxed{df = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h}}$$

is called the *differential* (more formally, the *total differential*). As in the one-variable case, for small $\mathbf{h}$, the differential and the increment are approximately equal:

(16.8.3)
$$\boxed{\Delta f \cong df.}$$

How approximately equal are they? Enough so that the ratio

$$\frac{\Delta f - df}{\|\mathbf{h}\|}$$

tends to 0 as $\mathbf{h}$ tends to $\mathbf{0}$. How do we know this? We know that

$$f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h} + o(\mathbf{h})$$

and therefore

$$[f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h})] - f(\mathbf{x})] - \nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h} = o(\mathbf{h}).$$

This tells us that

$$\frac{\overbrace{[f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x})]}^{\Delta f} - \overbrace{\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h}}^{df}}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} \to 0 \text{ as } \mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}. \qquad \text{(Section 16.1)}$$

In the two-variable case we set $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)$ and $\mathbf{h} = (\Delta x, \Delta y)$. The increment $\Delta f = f(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - f(\mathbf{x})$ then takes the form

$$\Delta f = f(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y) - f(x, y),$$

and the differential $df = \Delta f(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h}$ takes the form

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y)\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y)\Delta y.$$

By suppressing the point of evaluation, we can write

(16.8.4)
$$\boxed{df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\Delta y.}$$

The approximation $\Delta f \cong df$ is illustrated in Figure 16.8.2. There we have represented f as a surface $z = f(x, y)$. Through a point $P(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$ we have drawn the tangent plane. *The difference $df - \Delta f$ is the vertical separation between this tangent plane and the surface as measured at the point* $(x_0 + \Delta x, y_0 + \Delta y)$.

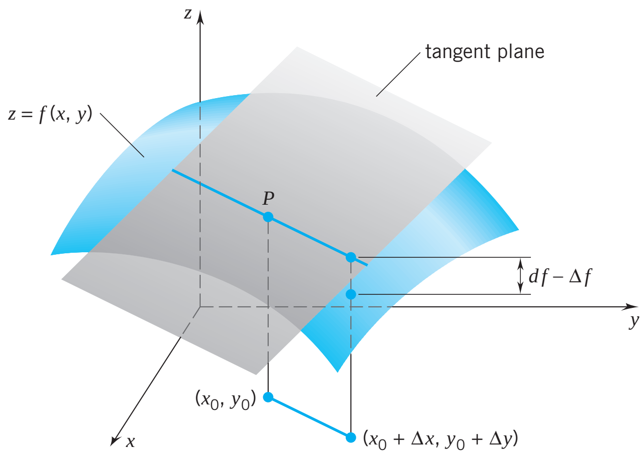


Figure 16.8.2

PROOF The tangent plane at P has equation

$$z - f(x_0, y_0) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0).$$

On this plane the z-coordinate of the point above $(x_0 + \Delta x, y_0 + \Delta y)$ is

$$f(x_0, y_0) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\Delta y. \qquad \text{(Check this.)}$$

On the surface the z-coordinate of the point above $(x_0 + \Delta x, y_0 + \Delta y)$ is

$$f(x_0 + \Delta x, y_0 + \Delta y).$$

The difference between these two,

$$\left[f(x_0, y_0) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\Delta y \right] - [f(x_0 + \Delta x, y_0 + \Delta y)],$$

can be written as

$$\left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)\Delta y \right] - [f(x_0 + \Delta x, y_0 + \Delta y) - f(x_0, y_0)].$$

This is just $df - \Delta f$.

The quantity $df - \Delta f$ is positive if, as in Figure 16.8.2, the tangent plane lies above the surface. It is negative if the tangent plane lies below the surface. ❑

For the three-variable case we set $\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z)$ and $\mathbf{h} = (\Delta x, \Delta y, \Delta z)$. The increment becomes

$$\Delta f = f(x + \Delta x, y + \Delta y, z + \Delta z) - f(x, y, z),$$

and the approximating differential becomes

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y, z)\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y, z)\Delta y + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(x, y, z)\Delta z.$$

Suppressing the point of evaluation, we have

(16.8.5)
$$\boxed{df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\Delta y + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}\Delta z.}$$

To illustrate the use of differentials, we begin with a rectangle of sides x and y. The area is given by

$$A(x, y) = xy.$$

An increase in the dimensions of the rectangle to $x + \Delta x$ and $y + \Delta y$ produces a change in area

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta A &= (x + \Delta x)(y + \Delta y) - xy \\ &= (xy + x\,\Delta y + y\,\Delta x + \Delta x\,\Delta y) - xy \\ &= x\,\Delta y + y\,\Delta x + \Delta x\,\Delta y. \end{aligned}$$

The differential estimate for this change in area is

$$dA = \frac{\partial A}{\partial x}\Delta x + \frac{\partial A}{\partial y}\Delta y = y\,\Delta x + x\,\Delta y. \qquad \text{(Figure 16.8.3)}$$

The error of our estimate, the difference between the actual change and the estimated change, is the difference $\Delta A - dA = \Delta x \Delta y$.

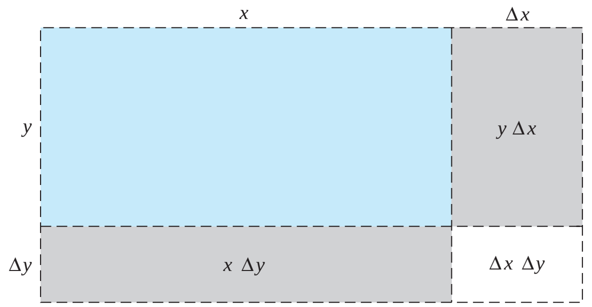


Figure 16.8.3

Example 1 Given that $f(x, y) = yx^{2/5} + x\sqrt{y}$, estimate by a differential the change in the value of f from (32, 16) to (32.1, 16.3).

SOLUTION Since

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{2y}{5}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^{3/5} + \sqrt{y} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = x^{2/5} + \frac{x}{2\sqrt{y}},$$

we have

$$df = \left[\frac{2y}{5}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^{3/5} + \sqrt{y}\right]\Delta x + \left[x^{2/5} + \frac{x}{2\sqrt{y}}\right]\Delta y.$$

At $x = 32$, $y = 16$, $\Delta x = 0.1$, $\Delta y = 0.3$,

$$df = \left[\frac{32}{5}\left(\frac{1}{32}\right)^{3/5} + \sqrt{16}\right](0.1) + \left[32^{2/5} + \frac{32}{2\sqrt{16}}\right](0.3) = 2.88.$$

The change increases the value of f by approximately 2.88. ❑

Example 2 Use a differential to estimate $\sqrt{27}\,\sqrt[3]{1021}$.

SOLUTION We know $\sqrt{25}$ and $\sqrt[3]{1000}$. We need an estimate for the increase of

$$f(x, y) = \sqrt{x}\,\sqrt[3]{y} = x^{1/2}y^{1/3}$$

from $x = 25$, $y = 1000$ to $x = 27$, $y = 1021$. The differential is

$$df = \tfrac{1}{2}x^{-1/2}y^{1/3}\Delta x + \tfrac{1}{3}x^{1/2}y^{-2/3}\Delta y.$$

With $x = 25$, $y = 1000$, $\Delta x = 2$, $\Delta y = 21$, df becomes

$$(\tfrac{1}{2}\cdot 25^{-1/2}\cdot 1000^{1/3})\,2 + (\tfrac{1}{3}\cdot 25^{1/2}\cdot 1000^{-2/3})\,21 = 2.35.$$

The change increases the value of the function by about 2.35. It follows that

$$\sqrt{27}\sqrt[3]{1021} \cong \sqrt{25}\sqrt[3]{1000} + 2.35 = 52.35.$$

(Our calculator gives $\sqrt{27}\sqrt[3]{1021} \cong 52.323$.) ❑

Example 3 Estimate by a differential the change in the volume of the frustum of a right circular cone if the upper radius r is decreased from 3 to 2.7 centimeters, the base radius R is increased from 8 to 8.1 centimeters, and the height h is increased from 6 to 6.3 centimeters.

SOLUTION Since $V(r, R, h) = \frac{1}{3}\pi h(R^2 + Rr + r^2)$, we have

$$dV = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi h(R + 2r)\Delta r + \tfrac{1}{3}\pi h(2R + r)\Delta R + \tfrac{1}{3}\pi(R^2 + Rr + r^2)\Delta h.$$

At $r = 3$, $R = 8$, $h = 6$, $\Delta r = -0.3$, $\Delta R = 0.1$, and $\Delta h = 0.3$,

$$dV = (28\pi)(-0.3) + (38\pi)(0.1) + \tfrac{1}{3}(97\pi)(0.3) = 5.1\pi \cong 16.02.$$

According to our differential estimate, the volume increases by about 16 cubic centimeters. ❑

EXERCISES 16.8

Exercises 1–12. Find the differential df.

1. $f(x, y) = x^3y - x^2y^2$.

2. $f(x, y, z) = xy + yz + xz$.

3. $f(x, y) = x\cos y - y\cos x$.

4. $f(x, y, z) = x^2y\,e^{2z}$.

5. $f(x, y, z) = x - y\tan z$.

6. $f(x, y) = (x - y)\ln(x + y)$.

7. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{xy}{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$.

8. $f(x, y) = \ln(x^2 + y^2) + x\,e^{xy}$.

9. $f(x, y) = \sin(x + y) + \sin(x - y)$.

10. $f(x, y) = x\ln\left[\dfrac{1 + y}{1 - y}\right]$.

11. $f(x, y, z) = y^2e^{xz} + x\ln z$.

12. $f(x, y) = xy\,e^{-(x^2+y^2)}$.

13. Calculate Δu and du for $u = x^2 - 3xy + 2y^2$ at $x = 2$, $y = -3$, $\Delta x = -0.3$, $\Delta y = 0.2$.

14. Calculate du for $u = (x + y)\sqrt{x - y}$ at $x = 6$, $y = 2$, $\Delta x = \frac{1}{4}$, $\Delta y = -\frac{1}{2}$.

15. Calculate Δu and du for $u = x^2z - 2yz^2 + 3xyz$ at $x = 2$, $y = 1$, $z = 3$, $\Delta x = 0.1$, $\Delta y = 0.3$, $\Delta z = -0.2$.

16. Calculate du for

$$u = \frac{xy}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}}$$

at $x = 1, y = 3, z = -2, \Delta x = \frac{1}{2}, \Delta y = \frac{1}{4}, \Delta z = -\frac{1}{4}$.

Exercises 17–20. Use differentials to find the approximate value.

17. $\sqrt{125}\sqrt[4]{17}$.

18. $(1-\sqrt{10})(1+\sqrt{24})$.

19. $\sin\frac{6}{7}\pi\cos\frac{1}{5}\pi$.

20. $\sqrt{8}\tan\frac{5}{16}\pi$.

Exercises 21–24. Use differentials to approximate the value of f at the point P.

21. $f(x, y) = x^2e^{xy}$; $P(2.9, 0.01)$.

22. $f(x, y, z) = x^2y\cos\pi z$; $P(2.12, 2.29, 3.02)$.

23. $f(x, y, z) = x\arctan yz$; $P(2.94, 1.1, 0.92)$.

24. $f(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2+y^2}$; $P(3.06, 3.88)$.

25. Given that $z = (x-y)(x+y)^{-1}$, use dz to find the approximate change in z if x is increased from 4 to $4\frac{1}{10}$ and y is increased from 2 to $2\frac{1}{10}$. What is the exact change?

26. Estimate by a differential the change in the volume of a right circular cylinder if the height is increased from 12 to 12.2 inches and the radius is decreased from 8 to 7.7 inches.

27. Estimate the change in the total surface area for the cylinder of Exercise 26.

28. Use a differential to estimate the change in $T = x^2\cos\pi z - y^2\sin\pi z$ from $x = 2, y = 2, z = 2$ to $x = 2.1, y = 1.9, z = 2.2$.

29. Estimate the surface area of a closed rectangular box of the following dimensions: length 9.98 inches, width 5.88 inches, height 4.08 inches.

30. Estimate the volume of a right circular cone of base radius 7.2 centimeters and height 10.15 centimeters.

31. The dimensions of a closed rectangular box change from length 12, width 8, height 6 to length 12.02, width 7.95, height 6.03.

(a) Use a differential to approximate the change in volume.

(b) Calculate the exact change in volume.

32. Use the dimensions of the rectangular box of Exercise 31.

(a) Approximate the change in the surface area using a differential.

(b) Calculate the exact change in the surface area.

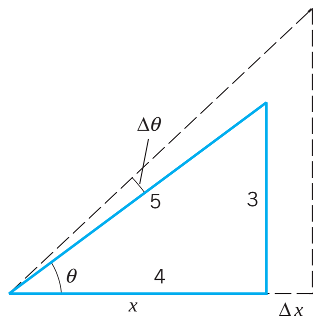
33. The function $T(x, y, z) = 100 - x^2 - y^2 - z^2 + 2xyz$ is defined at all points in space. Use a differential to approximate the difference between $T(1, 3, 4)$ and $T(1.15, 2.90, 4.10)$.

34. A closed rectangular box 4 feet long, 2 feet wide, 3 feet high is covered by a coat of paint $\frac{1}{16}$ inch thick. Estimate by a differential the amount of paint on the box.

35. The radius of a right circular cylinder of height h is increased from r to $r + \Delta r$.

(a) Determine the exact change in h that will keep the volume constant. Then estimate this change in h by using a differential.

(b) Determine the exact change in h that will keep the total surface area constant. Then estimate this change in h by using a differential.



36. The figure shows a right triangle.

(a) Estimate by a differential the change in the area of the triangle if x is increased to $x + \Delta x$ and θ is increased to $\theta + \Delta\theta$.

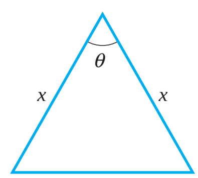
(b) What is the actual change?

(c) Suppose that x and θ change by the same amount; that is, suppose $\Delta x = \Delta\theta$. Is the area more sensitive to the change in x or the change in θ?

37. The figure shows an isosceles triangle of area $A = \frac{1}{2}x^2\sin\theta$.

(a) Estimate by a differential the change in the area of the triangle if x is increased to $x + \Delta x$ and θ is increased to $\theta + \Delta\theta$.

(b) Suppose that x and θ change by the same amount: $\Delta x = \Delta\theta$. Is the area more affected by the change in x or the change in θ?



38. A closed rectangular box is measured to be 5 feet long, 3 feet wide, 3.5 feet high. Assume that each measurement is accurate within $\frac{1}{12}$ inch. Estimate by a differential the largest possible error in the calculated value (a) of the volume of the box, (b) of the surface area of the box.

39. The specific gravity s of a solid is given by the formula $s = A(A-W)^{-1}$ where A is the weight of the solid in air and W is the weight of the object in water. Given that A is measured to be 9 pounds (within a tolerance of 0.01 pounds) and W is measured to be 5 pounds (within a tolerance of 0.02 pounds), estimate by a differential the largest possible error in the calculated value of s.

40. We return to the notion of specific gravity as introduced in Exercise 39. Suppose that A and W are measured within the same tolerance; that is, suppose that $\Delta A = \Delta W$. Is s more sensitive to an error in the measurement of A or to an error in the measurement of W?

■ 16.9 RECONSTRUCTING A FUNCTION FROM ITS GRADIENT

This section has three parts. In Part 1 we show how to find $f(x, y)$ given its gradient

$$\nabla f(x, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

In Part 2 we show that, although all gradients $\nabla f(x, y)$ are expressions of the form

$$P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$$

(set $P = \partial f/\partial x$ and $Q = \partial f/\partial y$), not all such expressions are gradients. In Part 3 we tackle the problem of recognizing which expressions $P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$ are actually gradients.

Part 1

Example 1 Find f given that $\nabla f(x, y) = (4x^3y^3 - 3x^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (3x^4y^2 + \cos 2y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

SOLUTION The first partial derivatives of f are

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) = 4x^3y^3 - 3x^2, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = 3x^4y^2 + \cos 2y.$$

Integrating $\partial f/\partial x$ with respect to x, treating y as a constant, we find that

$$(*) \qquad f(x, y) = x^4y^3 - x^3 + \phi(y)$$

where ϕ is an unknown function of y. Here $\phi(y)$, being independent of x, acts as the constant of integration. Differentiation with respect to y gives

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = 3x^4y^2 + \phi'(y).$$

Equating the two expressions for $\partial f/\partial y$, we have

$$3x^4y^2 + \phi'(y) = 3x^4y^2 + \cos 2y.$$

This implies that

$$\phi'(y) = \cos 2y \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \phi(y) = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2y + C. \quad (C \text{ an arbitrary constant})$$

By $(*)$,

$$f(x, y) = x^4y^3 - x^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2y + C$$

where C is an arbitrary constant. ❑

Remark In Example 1 we began by integrating $\partial f/\partial x$ with respect to x. We can begin by integrating $\partial f/\partial y$ with respect to y.

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = 3x^4y^2 + \cos 2y \qquad \text{gives} \qquad f(x, y) = x^4y^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2y + \psi(x)$$

where ψ is an unknown function of x. Differentiating with respect to x, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) = 4x^3y^3 + \psi'(x).$$

Equating the two expressions for $\partial f/\partial x$, we see that

$$4x^3y^3 + \psi'(x) = 4x^3y^3 - 3x^2$$
$$\psi'(x) = -3x^2$$
$$\psi(x) = -x^3 + C$$

and consequently

$$f(x, y) = x^4y^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2y - x^3 + C.$$

Changing the order of two terms, we have

$$f(x, y) = x^4y^3 - x^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2y + C,$$

the answer we had before. ❑

You can regard the function

$$f(x, y) = x^4y^3 - x^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2y + C$$

as the *general solution* of the vector differential equation

$$\nabla f(x, y) = (4x^3y^2 - 3x^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (3x^4y^2 + \cos 2y)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Each *particular solution* can be obtained by assigning a particular value to the constant C.

Example 2 Find f given that

$$\nabla f(x, y) = \left(\sqrt{y} - \frac{y}{2\sqrt{x}} + 2x\right)\mathbf{i} + \left(\frac{x}{2\sqrt{y}} - \sqrt{x} + 1\right)\mathbf{j}.$$

SOLUTION Here

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) = \sqrt{y} - \frac{y}{2\sqrt{x}} + 2x, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{x}{2\sqrt{y}} - \sqrt{x} + 1.$$

Integrating $\partial f/\partial x$ with respect to x, we have

$$f(x, y) = x\sqrt{y} - y\sqrt{x} + x^2 + \phi(y)$$

with $\phi(y)$ independent of x. Differentiation with respect to y gives

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{x}{2\sqrt{y}} - \sqrt{x} + \phi'(y).$$

The two equations for $\partial f/\partial y$ can be reconciled only by having

$$\phi'(y) = 1 \quad \text{and thus} \quad \phi(y) = y + C.$$

This means that

$$f(x, y) = x\sqrt{y} - y\sqrt{x} + x^2 + y + C. \quad ❑$$

Part 2

The next example shows that not all linear combinations $P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$ are gradients.

Example 3 We show that $y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$ is not a gradient.

SOLUTION Suppose on the contrary that it is a gradient. Then there exists a function f such that

$$\nabla f(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}.$$

This implies that

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) = y, \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = -x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\,\partial x}(x, y) = 1, \qquad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\,\partial y}(x, y) = -1.$$

Since the four partials are continuous, we can conclude from (15.6.5) that

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(x, y) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(x, y).$$

But by looking at our results, we see that in this case

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(x, y) \neq \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(x, y).$$

The assumption that $y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$ is a gradient has led to a contradiction. We can conclude that $y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$ is not a gradient. ❑

Part 3

We come now to the problem of recognizing which linear combinations

$$P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$$

are actually gradients. But first we need to review some ideas and establish some terminology.

As indicated earlier (Section 16.3), an open set (in the plane or in three-space) is said to be *connected* if each pair of points of the set can be joined by a polygonal path that lies entirely within the set. An open connected set will be called an *open region*. A curve

$$C: \ \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [a, b]$$

is said to be *closed* if it begins and ends at the same point:

$$\mathbf{r}(a) = \mathbf{r}(b).$$

It is said to be *simple* if it does not intersect itself:

$$a < t_1 < t_2 < b \qquad \text{implies} \qquad \mathbf{r}(t_1) \neq \mathbf{r}(t_2).$$

These notions are illustrated in Figure 16.9.1.

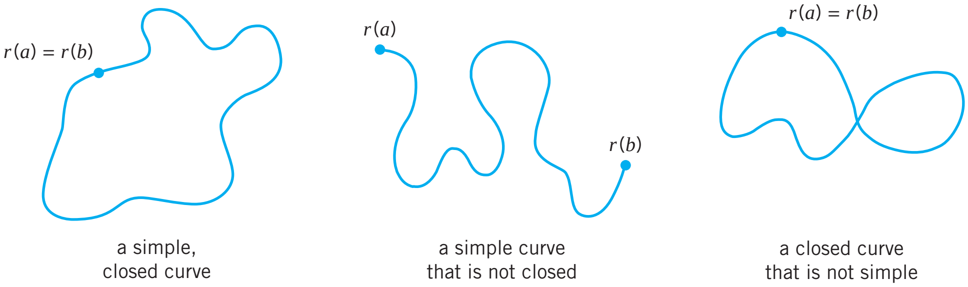


Figure 16.9.1

As is intuitively clear (Figure 16.9.2), a simple closed curve in the plane separates the plane into two disjoint open connected sets: a bounded inner region consisting of all points surrounded by the curve and an unbounded outer region consisting of all points not surrounded by the curve.

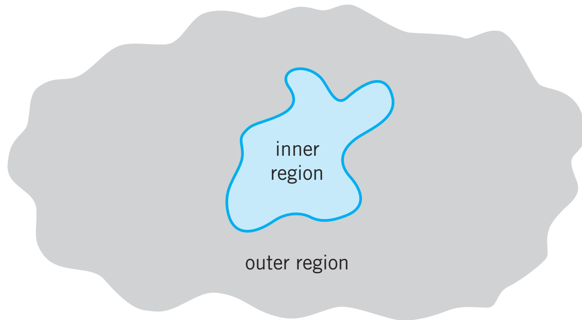


Figure 16.9.2

Finally, we come to a notion we will need in our work with gradients:

(16.9.1) Let Ω be an open region of the plane. Ω is said to be *simply connected* if, for every simple closed curve C in Ω, the inner region of C is contained in Ω.

The first two regions in Figure 16.9.3 are simply connected. The annular region is not simply connected; the annular region contains the simple closed curve drawn there, but it does not contain all of the inner region of that curve.

Figure 16.9.3

THEOREM 16.9.2

Let P and Q be functions of two variables, each continuously differentiable on a simply connected open region Ω. The linear combination $P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$ is a gradient on Ω iff

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y) \qquad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \Omega.$$

A complete proof of this theorem for a general region Ω is complicated. We will prove the result under the additional assumption that Ω has the form of an open rectangle with sides parallel to the coordinate axes.

Suppose that $P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$ is a gradient on this open rectangle Ω, say,

$$\nabla f(x, y) = P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

Since

$$\nabla f(x,y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x,y)\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x,y)\,\mathbf{j},$$

we have

$$P = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}.$$

Since P and Q have continuous first partials, f has continuous second partials. Thus, according to (15.6.5), the mixed partials are equal and we have

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}.$$

Conversely, suppose that

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x,y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x,y) \qquad \text{for all} \qquad (x,y) \in \Omega.$$

We must show that $P(x,y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x,y)\,\mathbf{j}$ is a gradient on Ω. To do this, we choose a point (x_0, y_0) in Ω and form the function

$$f(x,y) = \int_{x_0}^{x} P(u, y_0)\,du + \int_{y_0}^{y} Q(x, v)\,dv, \quad (x,y) \in \Omega.$$

[If you want to visualize f, you can refer to Figure 16.9.4. The function P is being integrated along the horizontal line segment that joins (x_0, y_0) to (x, y_0), and Q is being integrated along the vertical line segment that joins (x, y_0) to (x, y). Our assumptions on Ω guarantee that these line segments remain in Ω.]

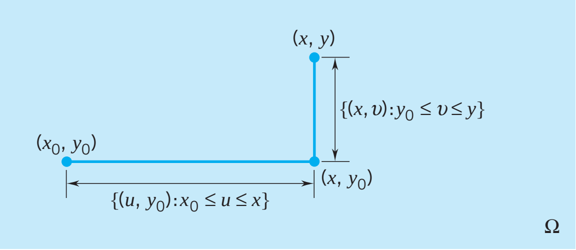


Figure 16.9.4

The first integral is independent of y. Hence

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x,y) = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\int_{y_0}^{y} Q(x,v)\,dv\right) = Q(x,y).$$

The last equality holds because we are differentiating an integral with respect to its upper limit. (Theorem 5.3.5) Differentiating f with respect to x we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x,y) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\int_{x_0}^{x} P(u, y_0)\,du\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\int_{y_0}^{y} Q(x,v)\,dv\right).$$

The first term is $P(x, y_0)$, since once again we are differentiating with respect to the upper limit. In the second term the variable x appears in the integrand. It can be shown

that, since Q and $\partial Q/\partial x$ are continuous,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\int_{y_0}^{y} Q(x,v)\,dv\right) = \int_{y_0}^{y} \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x,v)\,dv.^{\dagger}$$

Anticipating this result, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x,y) = P(x,y_0) + \int_{y_0}^{y} \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x,v)\,dv \underset{\text{explain}}{=} P(x,y_0) + \int_{y_0}^{y} \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x,v)\,dv$$

$$= P(x,y_0) + P(x,y) - P(x,y_0) = P(x,y).$$

We have now shown that

$$P(x,y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x,y) \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(x,y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x,y) \qquad \text{for all } (x,y) \in \Omega.$$

It follows that $P(x,y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x,y)\,\mathbf{j}$ is the gradient of f on Ω. ❑

Example 4 The vector functions

$$\mathbf{F}(x,y) = 2x\sin y\,\mathbf{i} + x^2\cos y\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{G}(x,y) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + \tfrac{1}{2}(x+1)^2y^2\,\mathbf{j}$$

are both defined everywhere. The first vector function is the gradient of a function that is defined everywhere: for $P(x,y) = 2x\sin y$ and $Q(x,y) = x^2\cos y$,

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x,y) = 2x\cos y = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} \qquad \text{for all } (x,y).$$

As you can check, $F(x,y) = \nabla f(x,y)$ where $f(x,y) = x^2\sin y + C$.

The vector function $\mathbf{G}$ is not a gradient: for $P(x,y) = xy$ and $Q(x,y) = \frac{1}{2}(x+1)^2y^2$

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x,y) = x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x,y) = (x+1)y^2.$$

Thus,

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x,y) \neq \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x,y). \quad ❑$$

Example 5 The vector function $\mathbf{F}$ defined on the *punctured disk* $0 < x^2 + y^2 < 1$ by setting

$$\mathbf{F}(x,y) = \frac{y}{x^2+y^2}\,\mathbf{i} - \frac{x}{x^2+y^2}\,\mathbf{j}$$

satisfies the relation

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x,y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x,y) \qquad \text{on the punctured disk.}$$

(Check this out.) Nevertheless, as you will see in Chapter 18,[††] $\mathbf{F}$ is not a gradient on that set. The punctured disk is not simply connected and therefore Theorem 16.9.2 does not apply. ❑

[†]The validity of this equality is the subject of Exercise 58, Section 17.3.

[††]Section 18.2, Exercise 28.

EXERCISES 16.9

Exercises 1–16. Determine whether or not the vector function is a gradient. If so, find all the functions with that gradient.

1. $xy^2\,\mathbf{i} + x^2y\,\mathbf{j}$.

2. $x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$.

3. $y\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j}$.

4. $(x^2 + y)\,\mathbf{i} + (y^3 + x)\,\mathbf{j}$.

5. $(y^3 + x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 + y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

6. $(y^2e^x - y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2y\,e^x - x)\,\mathbf{j}$.

7. $(\cos x - y\sin x)\,\mathbf{i} + \cos x\,\mathbf{j}$.

8. $(1 + e^y)\,\mathbf{i} + (x\,e^y + y^2)\,\mathbf{j}$.

9. $e^x\cos y^2\,\mathbf{i} - 2y\,e^x\sin y^2\,\mathbf{j}$.

10. $e^x\cos y\,\mathbf{i} + e^x\sin y\,\mathbf{j}$.

11. $ye^x(1 + x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x\,e^x - e^{-y})\,\mathbf{j}$.

12. $(e^x + 2xy)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 + \sin y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

13. $(x\,e^{xy} + x^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (y\,e^{xy} - 2y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

14. $(y\sin x + xy\cos x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x\sin x + 2y + 1)\,\mathbf{j}$.

15. $(1 + y^2 + xy^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2y + y + 2xy + 1)\,\mathbf{j}$.

16. $\left[2\ln(3y) + \dfrac{1}{x}\right]\mathbf{i} + \left[\dfrac{2x}{y} + y^2\right]\mathbf{j}$.

Exercises 17–20. Find all functions with this gradient.

17. $\dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{y}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}\,\mathbf{j}$.

18. $(x\tan y + \sec^2 x)\,\mathbf{i} + (\tfrac{1}{2}x^2\sec^2 y + \pi y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

19. $(x^2\arcsin y)\,\mathbf{i} + \left(\dfrac{x^3}{3\sqrt{1-y^2}} - \ln y\right)\mathbf{j}$.

20. $\left(\dfrac{\arctan y}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} + \dfrac{x}{y}\right)\mathbf{i} + \left(\dfrac{\arcsin x}{1+y^2} - \dfrac{x^2}{2y^2} + 1\right)\mathbf{j}$.

21. Use a CAS to determine whether $\mathbf{F}$ is a gradient.

(a) $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = (y - 2xy + y^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (x - x^2 + 2xy)\,\mathbf{j}$.

(b) $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = [2xy^2\cos(x^2 - y)]\,\mathbf{i} + [-y^2\cos(x^2 - y) + 2y\sin(x^2 - y)]\,\mathbf{j}$.

(c) $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = 2xy(y - x)e^{-x^2y}\,\mathbf{i} + x^2(x - y)e^{-x^2y}\,\mathbf{j}$.

22. (a) Use a CAS to find f up to an additive constant.

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla f &= [(1 - 2xy[x - y])e^{-x^2y}]\,\mathbf{i}\\ &\quad + [-(1 + x^2[x - y])e^{-x^2y}]\,\mathbf{j}.\end{aligned}$$

(b) Use a CAS to find f given that $f\left(\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 6$ and

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla f &= [\cos(x + y) + \sin(x - y)]\,\mathbf{i}\\ &\quad + [\cos(x + y) - \sin(x - y)]\,\mathbf{j}.\end{aligned}$$

23. Find the general solution of the differential equation $\nabla f(x, y) = f(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + f(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$.

24. Given that g and its first and second partials are everywhere continuous, find the general solution of the differential equation $\nabla f(x, y) = e^{g(x,y)}[g_x(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + g_y(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}]$.

Theorem 16.9.2 has a three-dimensional analog. In particular we can show that, if P, Q, R are continuously differentiable on an open rectangular box S, then the vector function

$$P(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{j} + R(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{k}$$

is a gradient on S iff

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial R}{\partial x}, \quad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial R}{\partial y} \qquad \text{throughout } S.$$

25. (a) Verify that $2x\,\mathbf{i} + z\,\mathbf{j} + y\,\mathbf{k}$ is the gradient of a function f that is everywhere defined.

(b) Deduce from the relation $\partial f/\partial x = 2x$ that $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + g(y, z)$.

(c) Verify then that $\partial f/\partial y = z$ gives $g(y, z) = zy + h(z)$ and finally that $\partial f/\partial z = y$ gives $h(z) = C$.

(d) What is $f(x, y, z)$?

Exercises 26–30. Determine whether the vector function is a gradient and, if so, find all functions f with that gradient.

26. $yz\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + xy\,\mathbf{k}$.

27. $(2x + y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2y + x + z)\,\mathbf{j} + (y - 2z)\,\mathbf{k}$.

28. $(2x\sin 2y\cos z)\,\mathbf{i} + (2x^2\cos 2y\cos z)\,\mathbf{j} - (x^2\sin 2y\sin z)\,\mathbf{k}$.

29. $(y^2z^3 + 1)\,\mathbf{i} + (2xyz^3 + y)\,\mathbf{j} + (3xy^2z^2 + 1)\,\mathbf{k}$.

30. $\left[\dfrac{y}{z} - e^z\right]\mathbf{i} + \left[\dfrac{x}{z} + 1\right]\mathbf{j} - \left[xe^z + \dfrac{xy}{z^2}\right]\mathbf{k}$.

31. Show that the gravitational force function

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -G\frac{mM}{r^3}\mathbf{r} \qquad (\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k})$$

is a gradient.

32. Verify that every vector function of the form

$$\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) = kr^n\,\mathbf{r} \qquad (k \text{ constant}, \; n \text{ an integer})$$

is a gradient.

■ CHAPTER 16 REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–6. Find the gradient.

1. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 - 4xy + y^3$.

2. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{xy}{x^2 + y^2}$.

3. $f(x, y) = e^{xy}\tan 2x$.

4. $f(x, y, z) = \ln\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$.

5. $f(x, y, z) = x^2e^{-yz}\sec z$.

6. $f(x, y, z) = e^{-3z}(\sin xy - \cos y)$.

Exercises 7–10. Find the directional derivative at the point P in the direction indicated.

7. $f(x, y) = x^2 - 2xy$ at $P(1, -2)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j}$.

8. $f(x, y) = xe^{xy}$ at $P(2, 0)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j}$.

9. $f(x, y, z) = xy^2 + 2yz + 3zx^2$ at $P(1, -2, 3)$ in the direction of $\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{i} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} + \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{k}$.

10. $f(x, y, z) = \ln(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)$ at $P(1, 2, 3)$ in the direction of $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

11. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y) = 3x^2 - 2xy^2 + 1$ at $(3, -2)$ toward the origin.

12. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y, z) = xy^2z - 3xyz$ at $(1, -1, 2)$ in the direction of increasing t along the path $\mathbf{r}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos \pi t\,\mathbf{j} + 2e^{t-1}\,\mathbf{k}$.

13. Find the directional derivatives of $f(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$ at $(3, -1, 4)$ in the directions parallel to the line

$$\frac{x-3}{4} = \frac{y+1}{-3} = z - 4.$$

14. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y) = e^{2x}(\cos y - \sin y)$ at the point $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\pi)$ in the direction in which f increases most rapidly.

15. Find the directional derivative of $f(x, y, z) = \sin xyz$ at the point $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \pi)$ in the direction in which f decreases most rapidly.

16. The intensity of light in a neighborhood of the point $(4, 3)$ is given by the function

$$I(x, y) = 10 - x^2 - 3y^2.$$

Find the path of a light-seeking particle that originates at the center of the neighborhood.

17. The temperature in a neighborhood of the origin is given by the function

$$T(x, y) = 100 + e^{-x} \cos y.$$

Find the path of a heat-fleeing particle that originates at the origin.

18. Determine the path of steepest descent along the surface $z = 4x^2 + y^2$ from each of the following points: (a) $(1, 1, 5)$; (b) $(1, -2, 8)$.

Exercises 19–20. Find the unit vector in the direction in which f increases most rapidly at P and give the rate of the change of f in that direction.

19. $f(x, y) = e^x \arctan y$; $\quad P(0, 1)$.

20. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{x - z}{y + z}$; $\quad P(-1, 1, 3)$.

Exercises 21–23. Find the rate of change of f with respect to t along the curve.

21. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 - 3y^3$; $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = \sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{2t}\,\mathbf{j}$.

22. $f(x, y) = \sin x + \cos xy$; $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = t^2\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$.

23. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{x}{y} - \dfrac{z}{x}$; $\quad \mathbf{r}(t) = \sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j} + \tan t\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 24–26. Find du/dt.

24. $u(x, y) = \arctan xy$; $\quad x = \tan t,\ y = e^{2t}$.

25. $u(x, y) = 3xy^2 - x^2$; $\quad x = t^2 + 2t,\ y = 3t$.

26. $u(x, y, z) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}$; $\quad x = \cos t,\ y = \sin t,\ z = t$.

27. A triangle has sides x and y, and included angle θ. Given that x and y increase at the rate of 2 inches per second but the area of the triangle is kept constant, at what rate is θ changing when $x = 4$ inches, $y = 5$ inches, and $\theta = \pi/3$ radians?

28. View the trunk of a tree as a right circular cylinder. Suppose that a certain tree grows in such a manner that the radius increases at the rate of 4 centimeters per year and the height increases at the rate of 1.5 meters per year. At what rate is the volume of the trunk changing when the radius is 12 centimeters and the height is 10 meters?

29. Assume that $u = u(x, y)$ is differentiable, and set $x = s + t$, $y = s - t$. Show that

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)^2 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial s}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}.$$

30. Assume that $u = u(x, y)$ has continuous second partials. Show that if $x = e^s \cos t$ and $y = e^s \sin t$, then

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = e^{-2s}\left[\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial s^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}\right].$$

Exercises 31–32. Find a normal vector and a tangent vector at the point P. Write scalar parametric equations for the tangent line and the normal line.

31. $x^3 - 3x^2y + y^2 = 5$; $\quad P(1, -1)$.

32. $\cos \pi xy = -\frac{1}{2}$; $\quad P(\frac{1}{3}, 2)$.

Exercises 33–36. Write an equation for the tangent plane and scalar parametric equations for the normal line at the point P.

33. $z = x^{1/2} + y^{1/2}$; $\quad P(1, 1, 2)$.

34. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 9$; $\quad P(1, 2, -2)$.

35. $z^3 + xyz - 2 = 0$; $\quad P(1, 1, 1)$.

36. $z = e^{3x} \sin 3y$; $\quad P(0, \pi/6, 1)$.

37. Show that the hyperboloids $x^2 + 2y^2 - 4z^2 = 8$ and $4x^2 - y^2 + 2z^2 = 14$ are mutually perpendicular at the point $(2, 2, 1)$.

38. Show that every line normal to the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ passes through the origin.

Exercises 39–44. Find the stationary points and the local extreme values.

39. $f(x, y) = x^2y - 2xy + 2y^2 - 15y - 2$.

40. $f(x, y) = 3x^2 - 3xy^2 + y^3 + 3y^2$.

41. $f(x, y) = x^3 + y^3 - 18xy$.

42. $f(x, y) = x^3 + y^2 - 6x^2 + y - 4$.

43. $f(x, y) = (x - y)(1 - xy)$.

44. $f(x, y) = xy^2e^{-(x^2+y^2)/2}$.

Exercises 45–48. Find the absolute extreme values taken on by f on the set indicated.

45. $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 2y + 2; \qquad x^2 + y^2 \leq 4.$

46. $f(x, y) = 2x^2 - 4x + y^2 - 4y + 3;$ the closed triangular region bounded by the lines $x = 0$, $y = 2$, $y = 2x$.

47. $f(x, y) = 4x^2 - xy + y^2 + y; \qquad x^2 + \frac{1}{4}y^2 \leq 1.$

48. $f(x, y) = x^4 + 2y^3; \qquad x^2 + y^2 \leq 1.$

49. Find the point of the plane $3x + 2y - z = 5$ that is closest to the point $P(1, -2, 3)$. What is the distance from the point P to the plane?

50. Maximize $3x - 2y + z$ on the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 14$.

51. Find the maximum and minimum values of $f(x, y, z) = x + y - z$ on the ellipsoid

$$\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{4} + z^2 = 1.$$

52. Closed rectangular boxes 16 cubic feet in volume are to be constructed from three types of metal. The cost of the metal for the bottom of the box is \$0.50 per square foot, for the sides of the box \$0.25 per square foot, for the top \$0.10 per square foot. Find the dimensions that minimize cost of material.

Exercises 53–56. Find the differential df.

53. $f(x, y) = 3x^3 - 5x^2y^2 + 2x - y.$

54. $f(x, y) = y \tan x^2 - 2xy^2 + 3.$

55. $f(x, y, z) = \dfrac{xyz}{x + y + z}.$

56. $f(x, y, z) = e^{yz} - \ln(y^2 + xz).$

Exercises 57–58. Use differentials to find the approximate value.

57. $e^{0.02}\sqrt{15.2 + (1.01)^3}.$ **58.** $\sqrt[3]{64.5}\cos^2(28^\circ).$

59. A silo is in the shape of a right circular cylinder 22 feet high and 10 feet in diameter. The top and lateral surface are to be given a coat of paint 0.01 inches thick. Estimate by a differential the amount of paint required. Express your answer in gallons. (There are 231 cubic inches in a gallon.)

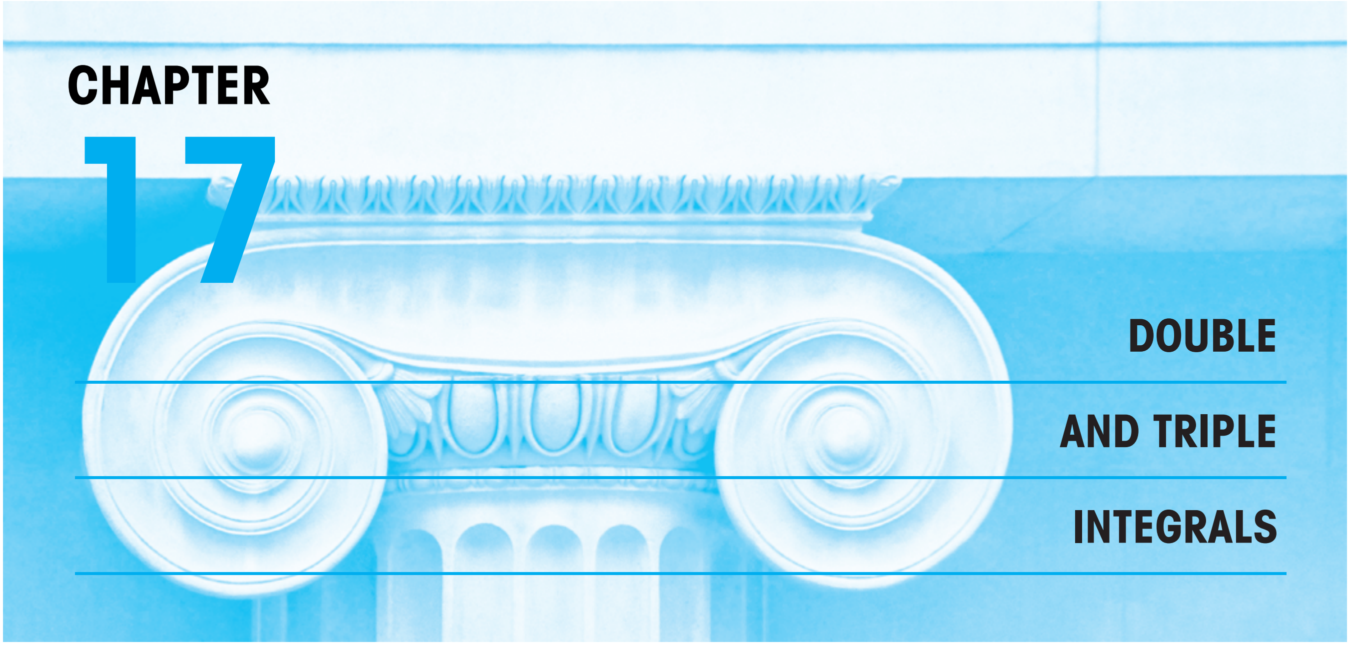
Exercises 60–63. Determine whether or not the vector function is a gradient. If so, find all the functions with that gradient.

60. $(6x^2y^2 - 8xy + 2x)\,\mathbf{i} + (4x^3y - 4x^2 - 8)\,\mathbf{j}.$

61. $(2xy + 3 - y\sin x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 + 2y + 1 + \cos x)\,\mathbf{j}.$

62. $(xy^2 + 2y^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (2y^3 - x^2y + 2x)\,\mathbf{j}.$

63. $(e^y \sin z + 2x)\,\mathbf{i} + (xe^y \sin z - y^2)\,\mathbf{j} + xe^y \cos z\,\mathbf{k}.$



CHAPTER 17

DOUBLE AND TRIPLE INTEGRALS

We began with ordinary integrals

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx,$$

which, with $b > a$, we can write as

$$\int_{[a,b]} f(x)\,dx.$$

Here we will study double integrals

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy$$

where Ω is a region in the xy-plane and, a little later, triple integrals

$$\iiint_{T} f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz$$

where T is a solid in three-dimensional space. Our first step is to introduce some new notation.

17.1 MULTIPLE-SIGMA NOTATION

In an ordinary sequence $a_1, a_2, \ldots,$ each term a_i is indexed by a single integer. The sum of all the a_i from $i = 1$ to $i = m$ is then denoted by

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m} a_i.$$

When two indices are involved, say,

$$a_{ij} = 2^i 5^j, \qquad a_{ij} = \frac{2i}{5+j}, \qquad a_{ij} = (1+i)^j,$$

we use double-sigma notation. By

(17.1.1)
$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}}$$

we mean *the sum of all the* a_{ij} *where* i *ranges from* 1 *to* m *and* j *ranges from* 1 *to* n. For example,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{3}\sum_{j=1}^{2} 2^i 5^j = 2\cdot 5 + 2\cdot 5^2 + 2^2\cdot 5 + 2^2\cdot 5^2 + 2^3\cdot 5 + 2^3\cdot 5^2 = 420.$$

Since addition is associative and commutative, we can add the terms of (17.1.1) in any order we choose. Usually we set

(17.1.2)
$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}\right).}$$

We can expand the expression on the right by expanding first with respect to i and then with respect to j:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}\right) &= \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{1j} + \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{2j} + \cdots + \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{mj}\\ &= (a_{11} + a_{12} + \cdots + a_{1n}) + (a_{21} + a_{22} + \cdots + a_{2n}) +\\ &\quad \cdots + (a_{m1} + a_{m2} + \cdots + a_{mn}),\end{aligned}$$

or we can expand first with respect to j and then with respect to i:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}\right) &= \sum_{i=1}^{m}(a_{i1} + a_{i2} + \cdots + a_{in})\\ &= (a_{11} + a_{12} + \cdots + a_{1n}) + (a_{21} + a_{22} + \cdots + a_{2n}) +\\ &\quad \cdots + (a_{m1} + a_{m2} + \cdots + a_{mn}).\end{aligned}$$

The result is the same.

For example, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^{3}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{2} a_{ij}\right) &= \sum_{j=1}^{2} a_{1j} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} a_{2j} + \sum_{j=1}^{2} a_{3j}\\ &= (a_{11} + a_{12}) + (a_{21} + a_{22}) + (a_{31} + a_{32}),\end{aligned}$$

or we can write

$$\sum_{i=1}^{3}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{2} a_{ij}\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{3}(a_{i1} + a_{i2}) = (a_{11} + a_{12}) + (a_{21} + a_{22}) + (a_{31} + a_{32}).$$

Since constants can be factored through single sums, they can also be factored through double sums:

(17.1.3)
$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} \alpha a_{ij} = \alpha \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}.}$$

Also,

(17.1.4)
$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(a_{ij}+b_{ij})=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}a_{ij}+\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}b_{ij}.}$$

Double sums in which each term a_{ij} appears as a product $b_i c_j$ can be expressed as the product of two single sums:

(17.1.5)
$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}b_i c_j=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m}b_i\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}c_j\right).}$$

PROOF Set

$$B=\sum_{i=1}^{m}b_i,\qquad C\sum_{j=1}^{n}c_j.$$

and note that

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}b_i c_i=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}b_i c_j\right)\overset{\dagger}{=}\sum_{i=1}^{m}b_i\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}c_j\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{m}b_i C$$
$$=C\sum_{i=1}^{m}b_i=CB=BC.\quad\square$$

For example,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{3}\sum_{j=1}^{2}2^i5^j=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{3}2^i\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{2}5^j\right)=(2+2^2+2^3)(5+5^2)=(14)(30)=420.$$

Triple-sigma notation is used when three indices are involved. The sum of all the a_{ijk} where i ranges from 1 to m, j from 1 to n, and k from 1 to q can be written

(17.1.6)
$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q}a_{ijk}.}$$

Multiple sums appear in the following sections. We introduced them here so as to avoid lengthy asides later.

---

† Since b_i is independent of j, it can be factored through the j-summation.

EXERCISES 17.1

Exercises 1–4. Evaluate the sum.

1. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{3}\sum_{j=1}^{3}2^{i-1}3^{j+1}.$

2. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{4}\sum_{j=1}^{2}(1+i)^{j}.$

3. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{4}\sum_{j=1}^{3}(i^2+3i)(j-2).$

4. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{3}\sum_{j=1}^{2}\sum_{k=1}^{3}\frac{2i}{k+j^2}.$

For Exercises 5–16, let

$P_1=\{x_0,x_1,\ldots,x_m\}$ be a partition of $[a_1,a_2]$,
$P_2=\{y_0,y_1,\ldots,y_n\}$ be a partition of $[b_1,b_2]$,
$P_3=\{z_0,z_1,\ldots,z_q\}$ be a partition of $[c_1,c_2]$,

and let

$$\Delta x_i=x_i-x_{i-1},\qquad\Delta y_j=y_j-y_{j-1},\qquad\Delta z_k=z_k-z_{k-1}.$$

Exercises 5–16. Evaluate the sum.

5. $\sum_{i=1}^{m} \Delta x_i.$

6. $\sum_{j=1}^{n} \Delta y_j.$

7. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} \Delta x_i \Delta y_j.$

8. $\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q} \Delta y_j \Delta z_k.$

9. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}(x_i + x_{i-1})\Delta x_i.$

10. $\sum_{j=1}^{n} \frac{1}{2}(y_j^2 + y_j y_{j-1} + y_{j-1}^2)\Delta y_j.$

11. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(x_i + x_{i-1})\Delta x_i \Delta y_j.$

12. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(y_j + y_{j-1})\Delta x_i \Delta y_j.$

13. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(2\Delta x_i - 3\Delta y_j).$

14. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(3\Delta x_i - 2\Delta y_j).$

15. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q} \Delta x_i \Delta y_j \Delta z_k.$

16. $\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q}(x_i + x_{i-1})\Delta x_i \Delta y_j \Delta z_k.$

17. Evaluate

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n} \delta_{ijk}\, a_{ijk} \quad \text{where} \quad \delta_{ijk} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j = k \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

18. Show that any sum written in double-sigma notation can be expressed in single-sigma notation.

■ 17.2 DOUBLE INTEGRALS

The Double Integral over a Rectangle

We start with a function f continuous on a rectangle

$$R : a \le x \le b, \quad c \le y \le d. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.2.1)}$$

We want to define the double integral of f over R:

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dx\, dy.$$

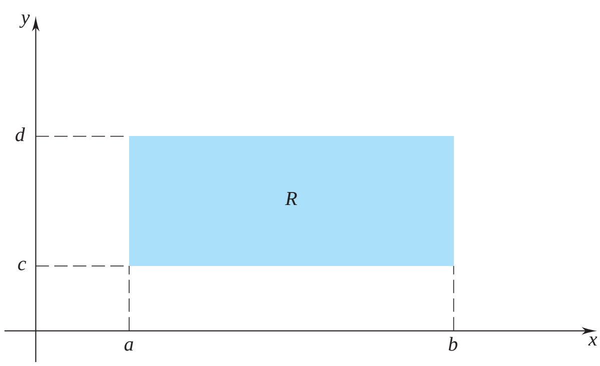


Figure 17.2.1

To define the integral

$$\int_a^b f(x)\, dx,$$

we introduced some auxiliary notions: partition P of $[a, b]$, upper sum $U_f(P)$, and lower sum $L_f(P)$. We then defined

$$\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$$

as the unique number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \le I \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } [a, b].$$

We will follow exactly the same procedure to define the double integral

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dx\, dy.$$

First we explain what we mean by a partition of the rectangle R. We begin with a partition

$$P_1 = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_m\} \qquad \text{of} \qquad [a, b].$$

and a partition

$$P_2 = \{y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n\} \qquad \text{of} \qquad [c, d].$$

The set

$$P = P_1 \times P_2 = \{(x_i, y_j) : x_i \in P_1, y_j \in P_2\}^{\dagger}$$

is called a *partition of R*. (See Figure 17.2.2.) The set P consists of all the grid points (x_i, y_j).

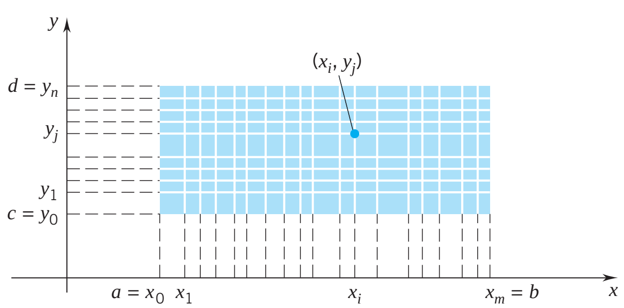


Figure 17.2.2

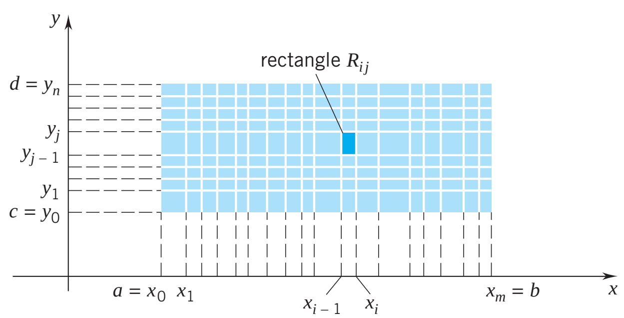


Figure 17.2.3

Using the partition P, we break up R into $m \times n$ nonoverlapping rectangles

$$R_{ij} : \quad x_{i-1} \le x \le x_i, y_{j-1} \le y \le y_j, \qquad \text{(Figure 17.2.3)}$$

where $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$. On each rectangle R_{ij}, the function f takes on a maximum value M_{ij} and a minimum value m_{ij}. We know this because f is continuous and R_{ij} is closed and bounded. (Section 16.6) The sum of all the products

$$M_{ij}(\text{area of } R_{ij}) = M_{ij}(x_i - x_{i-1})(y_j - y_{j-1}) = M_{ij}\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j$$

is called the P *upper sum* for f:

(17.2.1)
$$\boxed{U_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{n} M_{ij}(\text{area of } R_{ij}) = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{n} M_{ij}\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j.}$$

The sum of all the products

$$m_{ij}(\text{area of } R_{ij}) = m_{ij}(x_i - x_{i-1})(y_j - y_{j-1}) = m_{ij}\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j$$

† $P_1 \times P_2$ is called the *Cartesian product* of P_1 and P_2. More generally, for arbitrary sets A and B, $A \times B$ is, by definition, the set of all ordered pairs (a, b) with $a \in A$ and $b \in B$.

is called the P *lower sum* for f:

(17.2.2)
$$L_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} m_{ij}(\text{area of } R_{ij}) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} m_{ij}\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j.$$

Example 1 Set $f(x, y) = x + y - 2$ on the rectangle

$$R: \quad 1 \le x \le 4, \; 1 \le y \le 3.$$

As a partition of [1, 4], take

$$P_1 = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

and as a partition of [1, 3], take

$$P_2 = \{1, \tfrac{3}{2}, 3\}.$$

The partition $P = P_1 \times P_2$ breaks up the initial rectangle into the six rectangles marked in Figure 17.2.4. On each rectangle R_{ij}, the function f takes on its maximum value M_{ij} at the point (x_i, y_j), the corner farthest from the origin:

$$M_{ij} = f(x_i, y_j) = x_i + y_j - 2.$$

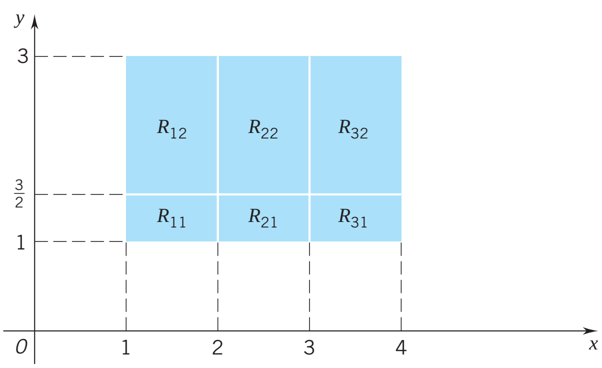


Figure 17.2.4

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} U_f(P) &= M_{11}(\text{area of } R_{11}) + M_{12}(\text{area of } R_{12}) + M_{21}(\text{area of } R_{21}) \\ &\quad + M_{22}(\text{area of } R_{22}) + M_{31}(\text{area of } R_{31}) + M_{32}(\text{area of } R_{32}) \\ &= \tfrac{3}{2}(\tfrac{1}{2}) + 3(\tfrac{3}{2}) + \tfrac{5}{2}(\tfrac{1}{2}) + 4(\tfrac{3}{2}) + \tfrac{7}{2}(\tfrac{1}{2}) + 5(\tfrac{3}{2}) = \tfrac{87}{4}. \end{aligned}$$

On each rectangle R_{ij}, f takes on its minimum value m_{ij} at the point (x_{i-1}, y_{j-1}), the corner closest to the origin:

$$m_{ij} = f(x_{i-1}, y_{j-1}) = x_{i-1} + y_{j-1} - 2.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} L_f(P) &= m_{11}(\text{area of } R_{11}) + m_{12}(\text{area of } R_{12}) + m_{21}(\text{area of } R_{21}) \\ &\quad + m_{22}(\text{area of } R_{22}) + m_{31}(\text{area of } R_{31}) + m_{32}(\text{area of } R_{32}) \\ &= 0(\tfrac{1}{2}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(\tfrac{3}{2}) + 1(\tfrac{1}{2}) + \tfrac{3}{2}(\tfrac{3}{2}) + 2(\tfrac{1}{2}) + \tfrac{5}{2}(\tfrac{3}{2}) = \tfrac{33}{4}. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

We return to the general situation. As in the one-variable case, it can be shown that if f is continuous, then there exists one and only one number I that satisfies the

inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq I \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } R.$$

DEFINITION 17.2.3 THE DOUBLE INTEGRAL OVER A RECTANGLE *R*

Let f be continuous on a closed rectangle R. The unique number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq I \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } R$$

is called the *double integral* of f over R, and is denoted by

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dx\, dy.^{\dagger}$$

The Double Integral as a Volume

If f is continuous and nonnegative on the rectangle R, the equation

$$z = f(x, y)$$

represents a surface that lies above R. (See Figure 17.2.5.) In this case the double integral

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dx\, dy$$

gives the volume of the solid that is bounded below by R and bounded above by the surface $z = f(x, y)$.

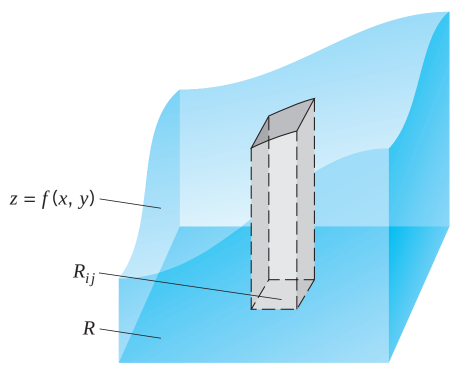


Figure 17.2.5

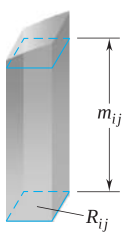


Figure 17.2.6

To see this, consider a partition P of R. P breaks up R into subrectangles R_{ij} and thus the entire solid T into parts T_{ij}. Since T_{ij} contains a rectangular solid with base R_{ij} and height m_{ij} (Figure 17.2.6), we must have

$$m_{ij} \text{ (area of } R_{ij}) \leq \text{ volume of } T_{ij}.$$

[†]The double integral $\iint_R f(x, y)\, dx\, dy$ can be written $\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA$.

Since T_{ij} is contained in a rectangular solid with base R_{ij} and height M_{ij} (Figure 17.2.7), we must have

$$\text{volume of } T_{ij} \leq M_{ij}\,(\text{area of } R_{ij}).$$

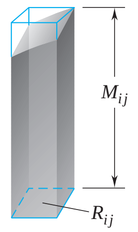


Figure 17.2.7

In short, for each pair of indices i and j, we must have

$$m_{ij}(\text{area of } R_{ij}) \leq \text{ volume of } T_{ij} \leq M_{ij}\,(\text{area of } R_{ij}).$$

Adding up these inequalities, we can conclude that

$$L_f\,(P) \leq \text{ volume of } T \leq U_f\,(P).$$

Since P is arbitrary, the volume of T must be the double integral:

(17.2.4)
$$\boxed{\text{volume of } T = \iint_R f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.}$$

The double integral

$$\iint_R 1\,dx\,dy = \iint_R dx\,dy$$

gives the volume of a solid of constant height 1 erected over R. In square units this is just the area of R:

(17.2.5)
$$\boxed{\text{area of } R = \iint_R dx\,dy.}$$

Some Calculations

Double integrals are generally calculated by techniques that we will take up later. It is possible, however, to evaluate simple double integrals directly from the definition.

Example 2 Evaluate

$$\iint_R \alpha\,dx\,dy$$

where α is a constant and R is the rectangle

$$R: \qquad a \leq x \leq b,\ c \leq y \leq d.$$

SOLUTION Here $f(x, y) = \alpha$ for all $(x, y) \in R$.

We begin with $P_1 = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_m\}$ as an arbitrary partition of the interval $[a, b]$ and $P_2 = \{y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$ as an arbitrary partition of $[c, d]$. This gives

$$P = P_1 \times P_2 = \{(x_i, y_j) : x_i \in P_1, y_j \in P_2\}$$

as an arbitrary partition of R. On each rectangle R_{ij}, f has constant value α. Therefore we have $M_{ij} = \alpha$ and $m_{ij} = \alpha$ throughout. Thus

$$U_f\,(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} \alpha\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j = \alpha\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m}\Delta x_i\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}\Delta y_j\right) = \alpha(b-a)(d-c).$$

Similarly,

$$L_f(P) = \alpha(b-a)(d-c).$$

The inequality

$$L_f(P) \le I \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all } P$$

forces

$$\alpha(b-a)(d-c) \le I \le \alpha(b-a)(d-c).$$

The only number I that can satisfy this inequality is

$$I = \alpha(b-a)(d-c).$$

Therefore

$$\iint_R f(x,y)\,dx\,dy = \alpha(b-a)(d-c). \quad ❑$$

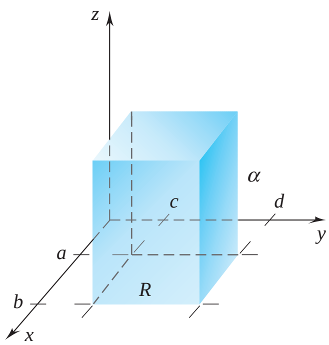


Figure 17.2.8

Remark If $\alpha > 0$.

$$\iint_R \alpha\,dx\,dy = \alpha(b-a)(d-c)$$

gives the volume of the rectangular solid of constant height α erected over the rectangle R. (Figure 17.2.8.) ❑

Example 3 Evaluate

$$\iint_R (x+y-2)\,dx\,dy,$$

where R is the rectangle: $1 \le x \le 4$, $1 \le y \le 3$.

SOLUTION With $P_1 = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_m\}$ as an arbitrary partition of the interval $[1,4]$ and $P_2 = \{y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$ as an arbitrary partition of $[1,3]$, we have

$$P_1 \times P_2 = \{(x_i, y_j) : x_i \in P_1, y_j \in P_2\}$$

as an arbitrary partition of R. On each rectangle $R_{ij} : x_{i-1} \le x \le x_i, y_{j-1} \le y \le y_j$, the function

$$f(x,y) = x + y - 2$$

has a maximum $M_{ij} = x_i + y_j - 2$ and a minimum $m_{ij} = x_{i-1} + y_{j-1} - 2$. Thus

$$L_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(x_{i-1} + y_{j-1} - 2)\Delta x_i \Delta y_i$$

$$U_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(x_i + y_j - 2)\Delta x_i \Delta y_j.$$

For each pair of indices i and j

$$x_{i-1} + y_{j-1} - 2 \le \tfrac{1}{2}(x_i + x_{i-1}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(y_j + y_{j-1}) - 2 \le x_i + y_j - 2. \qquad \text{(explain)}$$

Adding up these inequalities, we have

$$L_f(P) \le \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}[\tfrac{1}{2}(x_i + x_{i-1}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(y_j + y_{j-1}) - 2]\Delta x_i \Delta y_j \le U_f(P).$$

The double sum in the middle can be written

$$\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\tfrac{1}{2}(x_i + x_{i-1})\Delta x_i \Delta y_j + \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\tfrac{1}{2}(y_j + y_{j-1})\Delta x_i \Delta y_j - \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} 2\Delta x_i \Delta y_j.$$

Since $\Delta x_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$, the first of these double sums reduces to

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\tfrac{1}{2}(x_i^2 - x_{i-1}^2)\Delta y_j &= \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m}(x_i^2 - x_{i-1}^2)\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}\Delta y_j\right)\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(16-1)(3-1) = 15.\end{aligned}$$

The second double sum reduces to

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\tfrac{1}{2}\Delta x_i(y_j^2 - y_{j-1}^2) &= \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m}\Delta x_i\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}(y_j^2 - y_{j-1}^2)\right)\\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(4-1)(9-1)(9-1) = 12.\end{aligned}$$

The third double sum reduces to

$$-\sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} 2\Delta x_i \Delta y_j = -2\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m}\Delta x_i\right)\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n}\Delta y_j\right) = -2(4-1)(3-1) = -12.$$

The sum of these three numbers, $15 + 12 - 12 = 15$, satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \le 15 \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for arbitrary } P.$$

Therefore

$$\iint_R (x + y - 2)\, dx\, dy = 15. \quad ❑$$

Remark Since $f(x, y) = x + y - 2$ is nonnegative on the rectangle R, the double integral gives the volume of the prism bounded above by the plane $z = x + y - 2$ and below by the rectangle R. See Figure 17.2.9. ❑

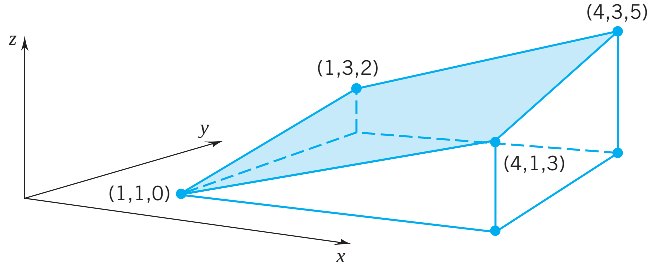


Figure 17.2.9

The Double Integral over a Region

We start with a closed and bounded set Ω in the xy-plane such as that depicted in Figure 17.2.10. We assume that Ω is a *basic region*; that is, we assume that Ω is a connected set

(see Section 16.3) the total boundary of which consists of a finite number of continuous arcs of the form $y = \phi(x)$, $x = \psi(y)$. See, for example, Figure 17.2.11.

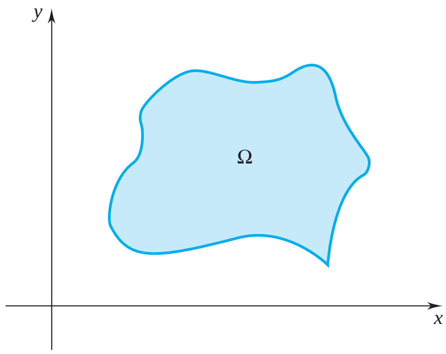


Figure 17.2.10

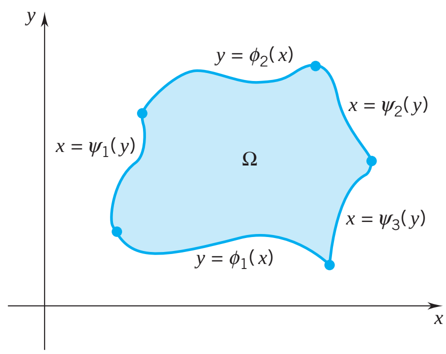


Figure 17.2.11

Now let f be a function continuous on Ω. We want to define the double integral

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

To do this, we enclose Ω by a rectangle R with sides parallel to the coordinate axes as in Figure 17.2.12. We extend f to all of R by setting f equal to 0 outside Ω. This extended function, which we continue to call f, is bounded on R, and it is continuous on all of R except possibly at the boundary of Ω. In spite of these possible discontinuities, it can be shown that f is still integrable on R; that is, there still exists a unique number I such that

$$L_f(P) \le I \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } R.$$

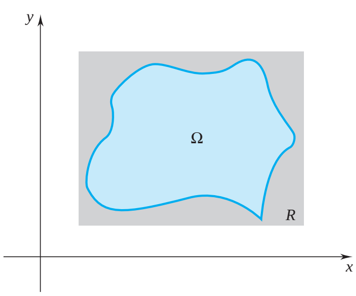


Figure 17.2.12

(We will not attempt to prove this.) This number I is by definition the double integral

$$\iint_{R} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

As you have probably guessed by now, we define the double integral over Ω by setting

(17.2.6) $$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \iint_{R} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.}$$

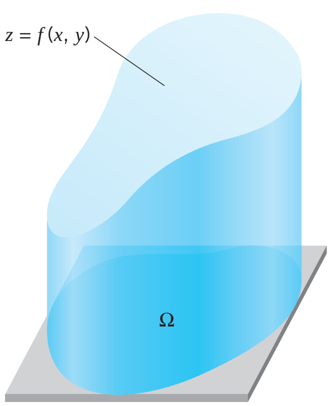


Figure 17.2.13

If f is continuous and nonnegative over Ω, the extended f is nonnegative on all of R. (Figure 17.2.13.) The double integral gives the volume of the solid bounded above by the surface $z = f(x, y)$ and bounded below by the rectangle R. But since the surface has height 0 outside of Ω, the volume outside Ω is 0. It follows that

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy$$

gives the volume of the solid T bounded above by $z = f(x, y)$ and bounded below by Ω:

(17.2.7)

$$\boxed{\text{volume of } T = \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.}$$

The double integral

$$\iint_{\Omega} 1\,dx\,dy = \iint_{\Omega} dx\,dy$$

gives the volume of a solid of constant height 1 erected over Ω. In square units this is the area of Ω:

(17.2.8)

$$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = \iint_{\Omega} dx\,dy.}$$

Below we list four elementary properties of the double integral. They are all analogous to what you saw in the one-variable case. As specified above, the Ω referred to is a basic region. The functions f and g are assumed to be continuous on Ω.

I. *Linearity*: The double integral of a linear combination is the linear combination of the double integrals:

$$\iint_{\Omega} [\alpha f(x, y) + \beta g(x, y)]\,dx\,dy = \alpha \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy + \beta \iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

II. *Order*: The double integral preserves order:

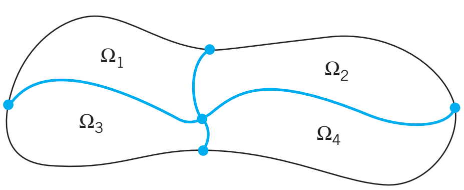
$$\text{if } f \geq 0 \text{ on } \Omega, \text{ then } \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy \geq 0;$$

$$\text{if } f \leq g \text{ on } \Omega, \text{ then } \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy \leq \iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

III. *Additivity*: If Ω is broken up into a finite number of nonoverlapping basic regions $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$, then

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \iint_{\Omega_1} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy + \cdots + \iint_{\Omega_n} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

See, for example, Figure 17.2.14.



$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dxdy = \iint_{\Omega_1} f(x, y)\,dxdy + \iint_{\Omega_2} f(x, y)\,dxdy + \iint_{\Omega_3} f(x, y)\,dxdy + \iint_{\Omega_4} f(x, y)\,dxdy$$

Figure 17.2.14

IV. *Mean-value condition*: There is a point (x_0, y_0) in Ω for which

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = f(x_0, y_0) \cdot (\text{area of } \Omega).$$

We call $f(x_0, y_0)$ *the average value of f on Ω.*

The notion of average introduced in Property IV enables us to write

(17.2.9)
$$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \begin{pmatrix}\text{the average value}\\ \text{of } f \text{ on } \Omega\end{pmatrix} \cdot (\text{area of } \Omega).}$$

This is a powerful, intuitive way of viewing the double integral. We will capitalize on it as we go on.

THEOREM 17.2.10 THE MEAN-VALUE THEOREM FOR DOUBLE INTEGRALS

Let f and g be functions continuous on a basic region Ω. If g is nonnegative on Ω, then there exists a point (x_0, y_0) in Ω for which

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)g(x, y)\,dx\,dy = f(x_0, y_0) \iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy.^{\dagger}$$

We call $f(x_0, y_0)$ the *g-weighted average of f on Ω.*

PROOF Since f is continuous on Ω, and Ω is closed and bounded, we know that f takes on a minimum value m and a maximum value M. Since g is nonnegative on Ω,

$$mg(x, y) \le f(x, y)\,g(x, y) \le Mg(x, y) \qquad \text{for all } (x, y) \text{ in } \Omega.$$

Therefore (by Property II)

$$\iint_{\Omega} m\,g(x, y)\,dx\,dy \le \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,g(x, y)\,dx\,dy \le \iint_{\Omega} M\,g(x, y)\,dx\,dy,$$

and (by Property I)

$$(*) \qquad m \iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy \le \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,g(x, y)\,dx\,dy \le M \iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

We know that $\iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy \ge 0$ (again, by Property II). If $\iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 0$, then by $(*)$ we have $\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)g(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 0$ and the theorem holds for all choices of (x_0, y_0) in Ω. If $\iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy > 0$, then

$$m \le \frac{\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,g(x, y)\,dx\,dy}{\iint_{\Omega} g(x, y)\,dx\,dy} \le M,$$

†Property IV is this equation with g constantly 1.

and, by the intermediate-value theorem (given in the supplement to Section 16.3), there exists a point (x_0, y_0) in Ω for which

$$f(x_0, y_0) = \frac{\iint_\Omega f(x, y)\, g(x, y)\, dx\, dy}{\iint_\Omega g(x, y)\, dx\, dy}.$$

Obviously then,

$$f(x_0, y_0) \iint_\Omega g(x, y)\, dx\, dy = \iint_\Omega f(x, y)\, g(x, y)\, dx\, dy. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 17.2

For Exercises 1–3, take

$$f(x, y) = x + 2y \qquad \text{on} \qquad R: 0 \le x \le 2,\ 0 \le y \le 1.$$

and let P be the partition $P = P_1 \times P_2$.

1. Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that $P_1 = \{0, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\}$ and $P_2 = \{0, \frac{1}{2}, 1\}$.

2. Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that $P_1 = \{0, \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2\}$ and $P_2 = \{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\}$.

3. (a) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that

$$P_1 = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_m\}$$

is an arbitrary partition of [0, 2], and

$$P_2 = \{y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$$

is an arbitary partition of [0, 1].

(b) Use your answer to part (a) to evaluate the double integral

$$\iint_R (x + 2y)\, dx\, dy$$

and give a geometric interpretation to your answer.

For Exercises 4–6, take

$$f(x, y) = x - y \qquad \text{on} \qquad R: 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 1.$$

and let P be the partition $P = P_1 \times P_2$.

4. Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that $P_1 = \{0, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\}$ and that $P_2 = \{0, \frac{1}{2}, 1\}$.

5. Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that $P_1 = \{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\}$ and $P_2 = \{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\}$.

6. (a) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that

$$P_1 = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_m\} \qquad \text{and} \qquad P_2 = \{y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$$

are arbitrary partitions of [0, 1].

(b) Use your answers in part (a) to evaluate the double integral

$$\iint_R (x - y)\, dx\, dy.$$

For Exercises 7–9, take $R: 0 \le x \le b, 0 \le y \le d$ and let $P = P_1 \times P_2$ where

$P_1 = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_m\}$ is an arbitrary partition of $[0, b]$,
$P_2 = \{y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$ is an arbitrary partition of $[0, d]$.

7. (a) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ for $f(x, y) = 4xy$.

(b) Calculate

$$\iint_R 4xy\, dx\, dy.$$

HINT: $4x_{i-1}y_{j-1} \le (x_i + x_{i-1})(y_j + y_{j-1}) \le 4x_i y_j$.

8. (a) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ for $f(x, y) = 3(x^2 + y^2)$.

(b) Calculate

$$\iint_R 3(x^2 + y^2)\, dx\, dy.$$

HINT: If $0 \le s \le t$, then $3s^2 \le t^2 + ts + s^2 \le 3t^2$.

9. (a) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ for $f(x, y) = 3(x^2 - y^2)$.

(b) Calculate

$$\iint_R 3(x^2 - y^2)\, dx\, dy.$$

10. Let $f = f(x, y)$ be continuous on the rectangle R: $a \le x \le b, c \le y \le d$. Suppose that $L_f(P) = U_f(P)$ for some partition P of R. What can you conclude about f? What is

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dx\, dy?$$

11. Let $\phi = \phi(x)$ be continuous and nonnegative on the interval $[a, b]$ and set

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) : a \le x \le b, 0 \le y \le \phi(x)\}.$$

Compare

$$\iint_\Omega dx\, dy \qquad \text{to} \qquad \int_a^b \phi(x)\, dx.$$

12. Begin with a function f that is continuous on a closed bounded region Ω. Now surround Ω by a rectangle R as

in Figure 17.2.12 and extend f to all of R by defining f to be 0 outside of Ω. Explain how the extended f can fail to be continuous on the boundary of Ω although the original function f, being continuous on all of Ω, was continuous on the boundary of Ω.

13. Suppose that f is continuous on a disk Ω centered at (x_0, y_0) and assume that

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 0$$

for every rectangle R contained in Ω. Show that $f(x_0, y_0) = 0$.

14. Calculate the average value of $f(x, y) = x + 2y$ on the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le 2,\ 0 \le y \le 1$. HINT: See Exercise 3.

15. Calculate the average value of $f(x, y) = 4xy$ on the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le 2,\ 0 \le y \le 3$. HINT: See Exercise 7.

16. Calculate the average value of $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ on the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le b, 0 \le y \le d$. HINT: See Exercise 8.

17. Let f be continuous on a closed bounded region Ω and let (x_0, y_0) be a point in the interior of Ω. Let D_r be the closed disk with center (x_0, y_0) and radius r. Show that

$$\lim_{r\to 0} \frac{1}{\pi r^2} \iint_{D_r} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = f(x_0, y_0).$$

18. Let $f(x, y) = \sin(x + y)$ on $R: 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 1$. Show that

$$0 \le \iint_R \sin(x + y)\,dx\,dy \le 1.$$

Exercises 19–21. These integrals represent the volumes of recognizable solids. Evaluate these integrals.

19. $\iint_\Omega \sqrt{4 - x^2 - y^2}\,dx\,dy$ where Ω is the quarter disk $x^2 + y^2 \le 4, x \ge 0, y \ge 0$.

20. $\iint_\Omega 8 - 4\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\,dx\,dy$ where Ω is the disk $x^2 + y^2 \le 4$.

21. $\iint_\Omega (6 - 2x - 3y)\,dx\,dy$ where Ω is the triangular region bounded by the coordinate axes and the line $2x + 3y = 6$.

C **22.** Set $f(x, y) = 3y^2 - 2x$ on the rectangle $R: 2 \le x \le 5$, $1 \le y \le 3$. Let P_1 be a regular partition of [2, 5] with $n = 100$ subintervals, let P_2 be a regular partition of [1, 3] with $m = 200$ subintervals, and let $P = P_1 \times P_2$.

(a) Use a CAS to find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$.

(b) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ for several values of $n > 100, m > 200$.

(c) Estimate $\iint_R f(x, y)\,dx\,dy$.

■ 17.3 THE EVALUATION OF DOUBLE INTEGRALS BY REPEATED INTEGRALS

The Reduction Formulas

If an integral

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

proves difficult to evaluate, it is not because of the interval $[a, b]$ but because of the integrand f. Difficulty in evaluating a double integral

$$\iint_\Omega f(x, y)\,dx\,dy$$

can come from two sources: from the integrand f or from the base region Ω. Even such a simple-looking integral as $\iint_\Omega 1\,dx\,dy$ is difficult to evaluate if Ω has a complicated structure.

In this section we introduce a technique for evaluating double integrals of continuous functions over regions of Type I or Type II as depicted in Figure 17.3.1. In each case the region Ω is a basic region and so we know that the double integral exists. The fundamental idea of this section is that double integrals over such regions can each be reduced to a pair of ordinary integrals.

Type I Region The *projection* of Ω onto the x-axis is a closed interval $[a, b]$ and Ω consists of all points (x, y) with

$$a \le x \le b \qquad \text{and} \qquad \phi_1(x) \le y \le \phi_2(x).$$

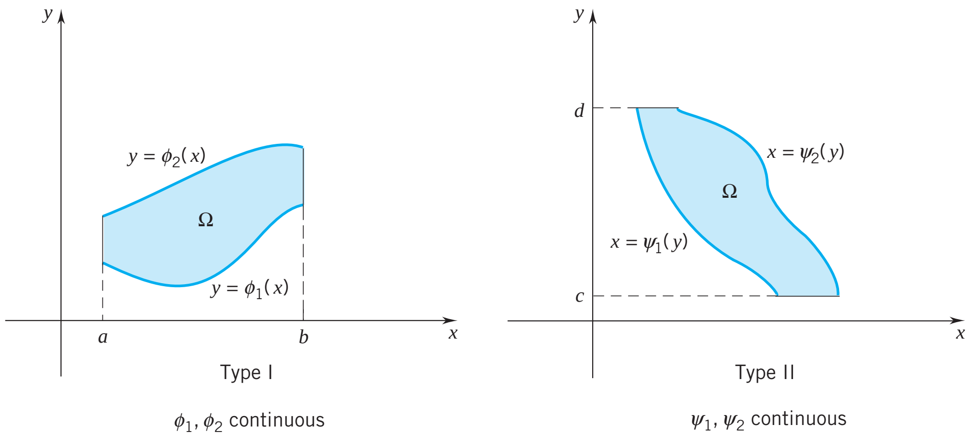


Figure 17.3.1

In this case

(17.3.1)
$$\boxed{\iint\limits_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy = \int_a^b \left(\int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\, dy \right) dx.}$$

Here we first calculate

$$\int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\, dy$$

by integrating $f(x, y)$ with respect to y from $y = \phi_1(x)$ to $y = \phi_2(x)$. The resulting expression is a function of x alone, which we then integrate with respect to x from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

Type II Region The *projection* of Ω onto the y-axis is a closed interval $[c, d]$ and Ω consists of all points (x, y) with

$$c \le y \le d \qquad \text{and} \qquad \psi_1(y) \le x \le \psi_2(y).$$

In this case

(17.3.2)
$$\boxed{\iint\limits_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy = \int_c^d \left(\int_{\psi_1(y)}^{\psi_2(y)} f(x, y)\, dy \right) dy.}$$

This time we first calculate

$$\int_{\psi_1(y)}^{\psi_2(y)} f(x, y)\, dx$$

by integrating $f(x, y)$ with respect to x from $x = \psi_1(y)$ to $x = \psi_2(y)$. The resulting expression is a function of y alone, which we can then integrate with respect to y from $y = c$ to $y = d$.

The integrals on the right-hand sides of (17.3.1) and (17.3.2) are called *repeated integrals*.

The Reduction Formulas Viewed Geometrically

Suppose that f is nonnegative and Ω is a region of Type I. The double integral over Ω gives the volume of the solid T bounded above by the surface $z = f(x, y)$ and bounded below by the region Ω:

$$(1) \qquad \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \text{volume of } T. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.3.2)}$$

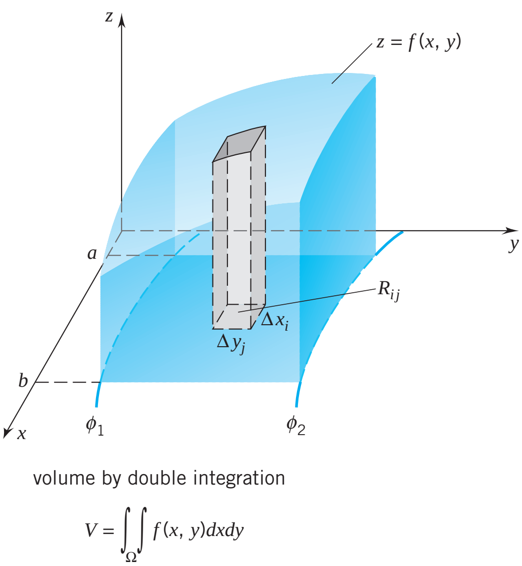


Figure 17.3.2

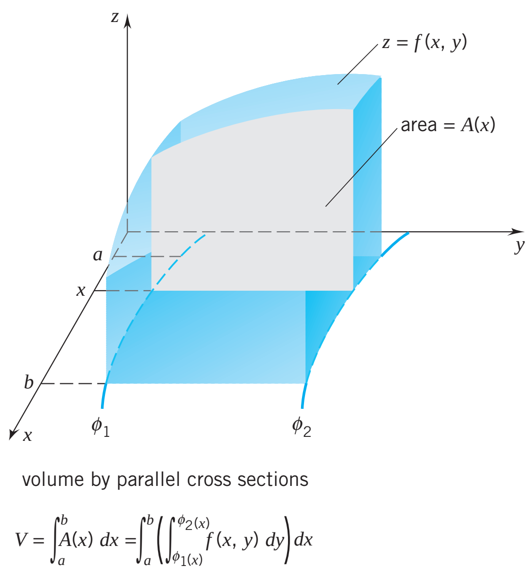


Figure 17.3.3

We can also calculate the volume of T by the method of parallel cross sections. (Section 6.2) As in Figure 17.3.3, let $A(x)$ be the area of the cross section which consists of all points of T which have first coordinate x. Then by (6.2.1),

$$\int_a^b A(x)\,dx = \text{volume of } T.$$

Since

$$A(x) = \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy,$$

we have

$$(2) \qquad \int_a^b \left(\int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy \right) dx = \text{volume of } T.$$

Combining (1) with (2), we have the first reduction formula

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \int_a^b \left(\int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy \right) dx.$$

The other reduction formula can be obtained in a similar manner.

Remark Note that our argument was a very loose one and certainly not a proof. How do we know, for example, that the "volume" obtained by double integration is the same as the "volume" obtained by the method of parallel cross sections? Intuitively it seems

evident, but actually it is quite difficult to prove. The result follows from what is known as Fubini's theorem.† ❑

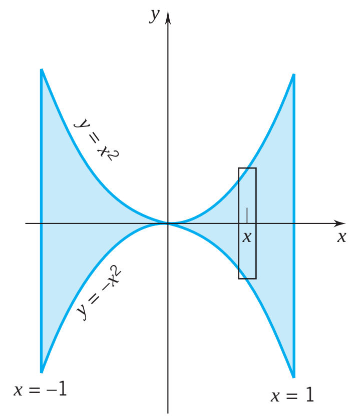


Figure 17.3.4

Computations

Example 1 Evaluate $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (x^4 - 2y)\,dx\,dy$ with Ω as in Figure 17.3.4.

SOLUTION By projecting Ω onto the x-axis, we obtain the interval $[-1, 1]$. The region Ω consists of all points (x, y) with

$$-1 \leq x \leq 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -x^2 \leq y \leq x^2.$$

This is a region of Type I. By (17.3.1),

$$\begin{aligned}\iint_{\Omega} (x^4 - 2y)\,dx\,dy &= \int_{-1}^{1} \left(\int_{-x^2}^{x^2} [x^4 - 2y]\,dy\right) dx \\ &= \int_{-1}^{1} \left[x^4 y - y^2\right]_{-x^2}^{x^2} dx \\ &= \int_{-1}^{1} \left[(x^6 - x^4) - (-x^6 - x^4)\right] dx \\ &= \int_{-1}^{1} 2x^6\,dx = \left[\tfrac{2}{7}x^7\right]_{-1}^{1} = \tfrac{4}{7}. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Evaluate $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (xy - y^3)\,dx\,dy$ with Ω as in Figure 17.3.5.

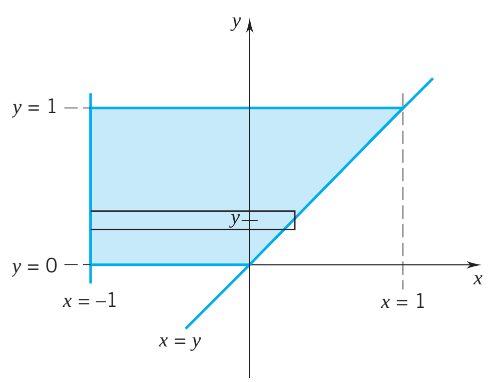


Figure 17.3.5

SOLUTION By projecting Ω onto the y-axis, we obtain the interval $[0, 1]$. The region Ω consists of all points (x, y) with

$$0 \leq y \leq 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -1 \leq x \leq y.$$

†After the Italian mathematician Guido Fubini (1879–1943).

This is a region of Type II. By (17.3.2),

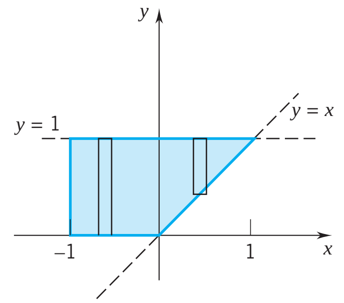
$$\iint_\Omega (xy - y^3)\,dx\,dy = \int_0^1 \left(\int_{-1}^{y} (xy - y^3)\,dx \right) dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left[\tfrac{1}{2}x^2 y - xy^3 \right]_{-1}^{y} dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left[\left(\tfrac{1}{2}y^3 - y^4\right) - \left(\tfrac{1}{2}y + y^3\right) \right] dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}y^3 - y^4 - \tfrac{1}{2}y\right) dy$$

$$= \left[-\tfrac{1}{8}y^4 - \tfrac{1}{5}y^5 - \tfrac{1}{4}y^2 \right]_0^1 = -\tfrac{23}{40}.$$



We can also project Ω onto the x-axis and express Ω as a region of Type I, but then the lower boundary is defined piecewise (see the figure) and the calculations are somewhat more complicated: setting

$$\phi(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & -1 \le x \le 0 \\ x, & 0 \le x \le 1, \end{cases}$$

we have Ω as the set of all points (x, y) with

$$-1 \le x \le 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \phi(x) \le y \le 1;$$

thus

$$\iint_\Omega (xy - y^3)\,dx\,dy = \int_{-1}^1 \left(\int_{\phi(x)}^1 (xy - y^3)\,dy \right) dx$$

$$= \int_{-1}^0 \left(\int_{\phi(x)}^1 (xy - y^3)\,dy \right) dx + \int_0^1 \left(\int_{\phi(x)}^1 (xy - y^3)\,dy \right) dx$$

$$= \int_{-1}^0 \left(\int_0^1 (xy - y^3)\,dy \right) dx + \int_0^1 \left(\int_x^1 (xy - y^3)\,dy \right) dx$$

as you can check

$$= \left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\right) + \left(-\tfrac{3}{40}\right) = -\tfrac{23}{40}.$$

Repeated integrals

$$\int_a^b \left(\int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy \right) dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_c^d \left(\int_{\psi_1(y)}^{\psi_2(y)} f(x, y)\,dx \right) dy$$

can be written in more compact form by omitting the large parentheses. From now on we will simply write

$$\int_a^b \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad \int_c^d \int_{\psi_1(y)}^{\psi_2(y)} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

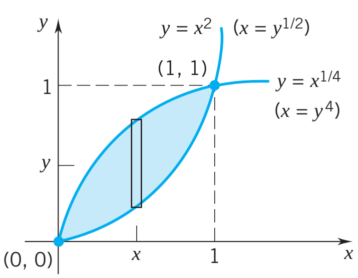


Figure 17.3.6

Example 3 Evaluate $\iint_\Omega (x^{1/2} - y^2)\,dx\,dy$ with Ω as in Figure 17.3.6.

SOLUTION The projection of Ω onto the x-axis is the closed interval $[0, 1]$, and Ω can be characterized as the set of all (x, y) with

$$0 \le x \le 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x^2 \le y \le x^{1/4}.$$

Therefore

$$\iint_\Omega (x^{1/2} - y^2)\,dx\,dy = \int_0^1 \int_{x^2}^{x^{1/4}} (x^{1/2} - y^2)\,dy\,dx$$

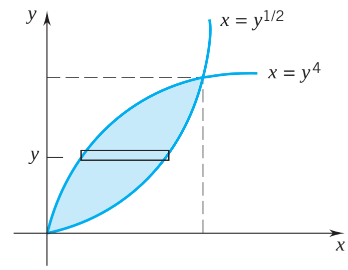
$$= \int_0^1 \left[x^{1/2}y - \tfrac{1}{3}y^3\right]_{x^2}^{x^{1/4}} dx$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left(\tfrac{2}{3}x^{3/4} - x^{5/2} + \tfrac{1}{3}x^6\right) dx$$

$$= \left[\tfrac{8}{21}x^{7/4} - \tfrac{2}{7}x^{7/2} + \tfrac{1}{21}x^7\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{8}{21} - \tfrac{2}{7} + \tfrac{1}{21} = \tfrac{1}{7}.$$

We can also integrate in the other order. The projection of Ω onto the y-axis is the closed interval $[0, 1]$, and Ω can be characterized as the set of all (x, y) with

$$0 \le y \le 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^4 \le x \le y^{1/2}.$$



This gives the same result:

$$\iint_\Omega (x^{1/2} - y^2)\,dx\,dy = \int_0^1 \int_{y^4}^{y^{1/2}} (x^{1/2} - y^2)\,dx\,dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left[\tfrac{2}{3}x^{3/2} - y^2 x\right]_{y^4}^{y^{1/2}} dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left(\tfrac{2}{3}y^{3/4} - y^{5/2} + \tfrac{1}{3}y^6\right) dy$$

$$= \left[\tfrac{8}{21}y^{7/4} - \tfrac{2}{7}y^{7/2} + \tfrac{1}{21}y^7\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{8}{21} - \tfrac{2}{7} + \tfrac{1}{21} = \tfrac{1}{7}. \quad \square$$

Example 4 Use double integration to calculate the area of the region Ω encolsed by

$$y = x^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad x + y = 2.$$

SOLUTION The region Ω is pictured in Figure 17.3.7. Its area is given by the double integral

$$\iint_\Omega dx\,dy.$$

We project Ω onto the x-axis and write the boundaries as functions of x:

$$y = x^2, \quad y = 2 - x.$$

Ω is the set of all (x, y) with $-2 \le x \le 1$ and $x^2 \le y \le 2 - x$. Therefore

$$\iint_\Omega dx\,dy = \int_{-2}^1 \int_{x^2}^{2-x} dy\,dx = \int_{-2}^1 (2 - x - x^2)\,dx = \left[2x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2 - \tfrac{1}{3}x^3\right]_{-2}^1$$

$$= \left(2 - \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{3}\right) - \left(-4 - 2 + \tfrac{8}{3}\right) = \tfrac{9}{2}.$$

We can also project Ω onto the y-axis and write the boundaries as functions of y, but then the calculations become more complicated. As illustrated in Figure 17.3.8, Ω is the set of all (x, y) with

$$0 \le y \le 4 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -\sqrt{y} \le x \le \psi(y)$$

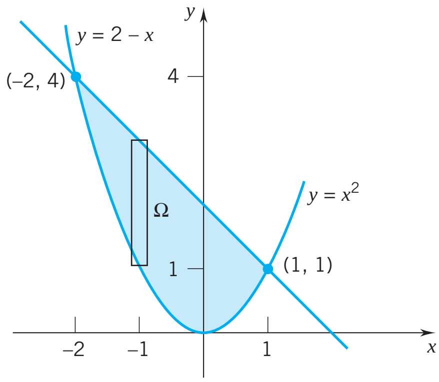


Figure 17.3.7

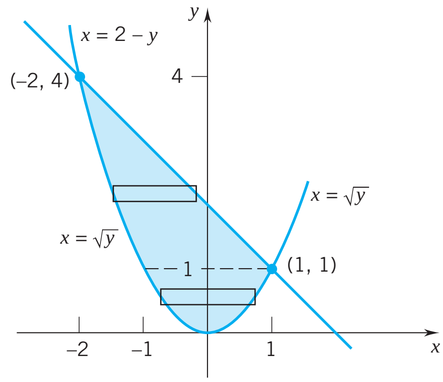


Figure 17.3.8

where

$$\psi(y) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{y}, & 0 \le y \le 1 \\ 2 - y, & 1 \le y \le 4. \end{cases}$$

Therefore

$$\iint_{\Omega} dx\,dy = \int_0^1 \int_{-\sqrt{y}}^{\sqrt{y}} dx\,dy + \int_1^4 \int_{-\sqrt{y}}^{2-y} dx\,dy.$$

As you can check, the sum of the integrals is $\frac{9}{2}$.

Symmetry in Double Integration

First we go back to the one-variable case. (Section 5.8) Let's suppose that g is continuous on an interval which is symmetric about the origin, say $[-a, a]$.

$$\text{If } g \text{ is odd,} \qquad \text{then} \qquad \int_{-a}^{a} g(x)\,dx = 0.$$

$$\text{If } g \text{ is even,} \qquad \text{then} \qquad \int_{-a}^{a} g(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^a g(x)\,dx.$$

We have similar results for double integrals.

Suppose that Ω is symmetric about the y-axis.

If f is odd in x $[f(-x, y) = -f(x, y)]$, then $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 0.$

If f is even in x $[f(-x, y) = -f(x, y)]$, then $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 2\iint_{\substack{\text{right half}\\ \text{of }\Omega}} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$

Suppose that Ω is symmetric about the x-axis.

If f is odd in y $[f(x, -y) = -f(x, y)]$, then $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 0.$

If f is even in y $[f(x, -y) = -f(x, y)]$, then $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = 2\iint_{\substack{\text{upper half}\\ \text{of }\Omega}} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$

By way of example, we integrate $f(x, y) = 2x - \sin x^2 y$ over the region Ω depicted in Figure 17.3.9. First of all

$$\iint_\Omega (2x - \sin x^2 y)\,dx\,dy = \iint_\Omega 2x\,dx\,dy - \iint_\Omega \sin x^2 y\;dx\,dy.$$

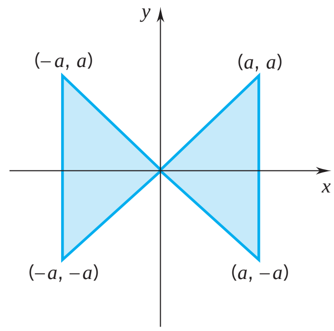


Figure 17.3.9

The symmetry of Ω about the y-axis gives

$$\iint_\Omega 2x\,dx\,dy = 0. \qquad \text{(the integrand is odd in } x\text{)}$$

The symmetry of Ω about the x-axis gives

$$\iint_\Omega \sin x^2 y\,dx\,dy = 0. \qquad \text{(the integrand is odd in } y\text{)}$$

Therefore

$$\iint_\Omega (2x - \sin x^2 y)\,dx\,dy = 0.$$

Let's go back to Example 1 and reevaluate

$$\iint_\Omega (x^4 - 2y)\,dx\,dy,$$

this time capitalizing on the symmetry of the base region Ω. Note that

$$\overbrace{\iint_\Omega 2y\,dx\,dy = 0}^{\text{symmetry about } x\text{-axis}} \quad \text{and} \quad \iint_\Omega x^4\,dx\,dy \overset{\text{symmetry about } y\text{-axis}}{=} 2\iint_{\substack{\text{right half}\\ \text{of } \Omega}} x^4\,dx\,dy \overset{\text{symmetry about } x\text{-axis}}{=} 4\iint_{\substack{\text{upper part of}\\ \text{right half of } \Omega}} x^4\,dx\,dy.$$

Therefore

$$\iint_\Omega (x^4 - 2y)\,dx\,dy = 4\int_0^1 \int_0^{x^2} x^4\,dy\,dx = 4\int_0^1 x^6\,dx = \tfrac{4}{7}.$$

Example 5 Calculate the volume within the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$ between the planes $y + z = a$ and $z = 0$ given that $a \geq b > 0$.

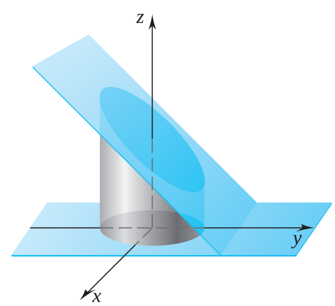


Figure 17.3.10

SOLUTION See Figure 17.3.10. The solid in question is bounded below by the disk

$$\Omega: \quad 0 \leq x^2 + y^2 \leq b^2$$

and above by the plane

$$z = a - y.$$

The volume is given by the double integral

$$\iint_\Omega (a - y)\,dx\,dy.$$

Since Ω is symmetric about the x-axis,

$$\iint_\Omega y\,dx\,dy = 0.$$

Thus

$$\iint_\Omega (a - y)\,dx\,dy = \iint_\Omega a\,dx\,dy = a \iint_\Omega dx\,dy = a(\text{area of }\Omega) = \pi ab^2. \quad ❑$$

Concluding Remarks

When two orders of integration are possible, one order may be easy to carry out, while the other may present serious difficulties. Take as an example the double integral

$$\iint_\Omega \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dx\,dy$$

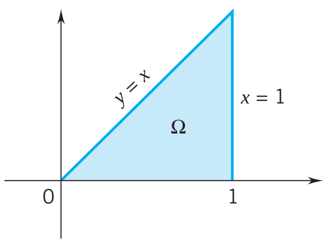


Figure 17.3.11

with Ω an in Figure 17.3.11. Projection onto the x-axis leads to

$$\int_0^1 \int_0^x \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dy\,dx.$$

Projection onto the y-axis leads to

$$\int_0^1 \int_y^1 \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dx\,dy.$$

The first expression is easy to evaluate:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 \int_0^x \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dy\,dx &= \int_0^1 \left(\int_0^x \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dy\right) dx\\ &= \int_0^1 \left[y \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\right]_0^x dx = \int_0^1 x \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dx\\ &= \left[\frac{1}{\pi} \sin \frac{1}{2}\pi x^2\right]_0^1 = \frac{1}{\pi}.\end{aligned}$$

The second expression is not as easy to evaluate:

$$\int_0^1 \int_y^1 \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dx\,dy = \int_0^1 \left(\int_y^1 \cos \tfrac{1}{2}\pi x^2\,dx\right) dy,$$

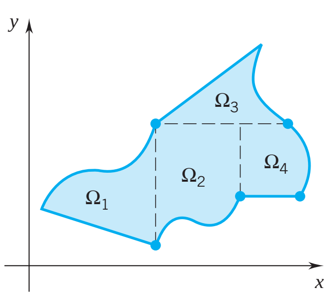


Figure 17.3.12

and $\cos \frac{1}{2}\pi x^2$ does not have an elementary antiderivative.

Finally, if Ω, the region of integration, is neither of Type I nor of Type II, it may be possible to break it up into a finite number of regions $\Omega_1, \dots, \Omega_n$, each of which is of Type I or Type II. (See Figure 17.3.12.) Since the double integral is additive,

$$\iint_{\Omega_1} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy + \cdots + \iint_{\Omega_4} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \iint_\Omega f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

Each of the integrals on the left can be evaluated by the methods of this section.

EXERCISES 17.3

Exercises 1–3. Evaluate for $\Omega : 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 3$.

1. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} x^2\,dx\,dy.$ **2.** $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} e^{x+y}\,dx\,dy.$

3. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} xy^2\,dx\,dy.$

Exercises 4–6. Evaluate for $\Omega : 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le x$.

4. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} x^3y\,dx\,dy.$ **5.** $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} xy^3\,dx\,dy.$

6. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} x^2y^2\,dx\,dy.$

Exercises 7–9. Evaluate the integral taking $\Omega : 0 \le x \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$, $0 \le y \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

7. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} \sin(x+y)\,dx\,dy.$ **8.** $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} \cos(x+y)\,dx\,dy.$

9. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (1+xy)\,dx\,dy.$

Exercises 10–18. Evaluate the double integral.

10. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (x+3y^3)\,dx\,dy,\quad \Omega : 0 \le x^2+y^2 \le 1.$

11. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{xy}\,dx\,dy,\quad \Omega : 0 \le y \le 1, y^2 \le x \le y.$

12. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} ye^x\,dx\,dy,\quad \Omega : 0 \le y \le 1, 0 \le x \le y^2.$

13. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (4-y^2)\,dx\,dy,$ Ω the bounded region between $y^2 = 2x$ and $y^2 = 8-2x$.

14. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (x^4+y^2)\,dx\,dy,$ Ω the bounded region between $y = x^3$ and $y = x^2$.

15. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (3xy^3-y)\,dx\,dy,$ Ω the region between $y = |x|$ and $y = -|x|, x \in [-1, 1]$.

16. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} e^{-y^2/2}\,dx\,dy,$ Ω the triangular region bounded by the y-axis, $2y = x$, $y = 1$.

17. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} e^{x^2}\,dx\,dy,$ Ω the triangular region bounded by the x-axis, $2y = x$, $x = 2$.

18. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} (x+y)\,dx\,dy,$ Ω the region between $y = x^3$ and $y = x^4, x \in [-1, 1]$.

Exercises 19–24. Sketch the region Ω that gives rise to the repeated integral and change the order of integration.

19. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_{x^4}^{x^2} f(x,y)\,dy\,dx.$ **20.** $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_0^{y^2} f(x,y)\,dx\,dy.$

21. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_{-y}^{y} f(x,y)\,dx\,dy.$ **22.** $\displaystyle\int_{1/2}^1 \int_{x^3}^{x} f(x,y)\,dy\,dx.$

23. $\displaystyle\int_1^4 \int_x^{2x} f(x,y)\,dy\,dx.$ **24.** $\displaystyle\int_1^3 \int_{-x}^{x^2} f(x,y)\,dy\,dx.$

Exercises 25–28. Calculate by double integration the area of the bounded region determined by the curves.

25. $x^2 = 4y,\quad 2y - x - 4 = 0.$

26. $y = x,\quad x = 4y - y^2.$ **27.** $y = x,\quad 4y^3 = x^2.$

28. $x + y = 5,\quad xy = 6.$

Exercises 29–32. Sketch the region Ω that gives rise to the repeated integral, change the order of integration, and then evaluate.

29. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_{\sqrt{x}}^1 \sin\left(\frac{y^3+1}{2}\right)dy\,dx.$

30. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^0 \int_{-\sqrt{y+1}}^{\sqrt{y+1}} x^2\,dx\,dy.$ **31.** $\displaystyle\int_1^2 \int_0^{\ln y} e^{-x}\,dx\,dy.$

32. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_{x^2}^1 \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{x^4+y^2}}\,dy\,dx.$

33. Find the area of the first quadrant region bounded by $xy = 2, y = 1, y = x + 1$.

34. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by $z = x + y$ and below by the triangular region with vertices (0, 0), (0, 1), (1, 0).

35. Find the volume of the solid bounded by $\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{3}y + \frac{1}{4}z = 1$ and the coordinate planes.

36. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the plane $z = 2x + 3y$ and below by the unit square

$$0 \le x \le 1, \qquad 0 \le y \le 1.$$

37. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by $z = x^3y$ and below by the triangular region with vertices (0, 0), (2, 0), (0, 1).

38. Find the volume under the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ within the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 \le 1, z \ge 0$.

39. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the plane $z = 2x + 1$ and below by the disk $(x-1)^2 + y^2 \le 1$.

40. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by $z = 4 - y^2 - \frac{1}{4}x^2$ and below by the disk $(y-1)^2 + x^2 \le 1$.

41. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant ($x \ge 0$, $y \ge 0, z \ge 0$) bounded by $z = x^2 + y^2$, the plane $x + y = 1$, and the coordinate planes.

42. Find the volume of the solid bounded by the circular cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, the plane $z = 0$, and the plane $x + z = 1$.

43. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant bounded above by $z = x^2 + 3y^2$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the cylinder $y = x^2$ and the plane $y = x$.

44. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the surface $z = 1 + xy$ and below by the triangular region with vertices (1, 1), (4, 1), (3, 2).

45. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant bounded by the cylinders $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$, $x^2 + z^2 = a^2$.

46. Find the volume of the tetrahedron bounded by the coordinate planes and the plane

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} + \frac{z}{c} = 1, \qquad a,b,c > 0.$$

Exercises 47–50. Evaluate.

47. $\int_0^1 \int_y^1 e^{y/x}\,dx\,dy.$ **48.** $\int_0^1 \int_0^{\arccos y} e^{\sin x}\,dx\,dy.$

49. $\int_0^1 \int_x^1 x^2 e^{y^4}\,dy\,dx.$ **50.** $\int_0^1 \int_x^1 e^{y^2}\,dy\,dx.$

Exercises 51–54. Calculate the average value of f over Ω.

51. $f(x, y) = x^2 y$; $\Omega: -1 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le 4.$

52. $f(x, y) = xy$; $\Omega: 0 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le \sqrt{1 - x^2}.$

53. $f(x, y) = \dfrac{1}{xy}$; $\Omega: \ln 2 \le x \le 2\ln 2,$ $\ln 2 \le y \le 2\ln 2.$

54. $f(x, y) = e^{x+y}$; $\Omega: 0 \le x \le 1,\ x - 1 \le y \le x + 1.$

55. (*Separated variables over a rectangle*) Let R be the rectangle $a \le x \le b$, $c \le y \le d$. Show that, if f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and g is continuous on $[c, d]$, then

(17.3.3)
$$\boxed{\iint_R f(x)g(y)\,dx\,dy = \left[\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\right] \cdot \left[\int_c^b g(y)\,dy\right].}$$

56. Given that $f(-x, -y) = -f(x, y)$ for all (x, y) in Ω, what form of symmetry in Ω will ensure that the double integral of f over Ω is zero?

57. Let Ω be the triangular region with vertices (0, 0), (0, 1), (1, 1). Show that

$$\text{if} \quad \int_0^1 f(x)\,dx = 0, \quad \text{then} \quad \iint_\Omega f(x)f(y)\,dx\,dy = 0.$$

58. (*Differentiation under the integral sign*) If f and $\partial f/\partial x$ are continuous, then the function

$$H(t) = \int_a^b \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, y)\,dy$$

can be shown to be continuous. Use the identity

$$\int_0^x \int_a^b \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, y)\,dy\,dt = \int_a^b \int_0^x \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, y)\,dt\,dy$$

to verify that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\int_a^b f(x, y)\,dy\right] = \int_a^b \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y)\,dy.$$

59. We integrate over regions of Type I by setting

$$\iint_\Omega f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \int_a^b \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx.$$

Here f is assumed to be continuous on Ω and ϕ_1, ϕ_2 are assumed to be continuous on $[a, b]$. Show that the function

$$F(x) = \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy$$

is continuous on $[a, b]$.

60. Use a CAS to evaluate the expression.

(a) $\int_{-1}^3 \int_2^5 xe^{-xy}\,dy\,dx.$ (b) $\int_3^7 \int_1^4 \dfrac{xy}{x^2 + y^2}\,dy\,dx.$

61. Sketch the region Ω bounded by $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$ and $y = 1 + \sqrt{x - 1}$. Find the area of Ω by integrating

(a) first with respect to y and then with respect to x;

(b) first with respect to x and then with respect to y.

62. Sketch the region Ω bounded by $x - 2y = 0$, $x + y = 3$, $y = 0$. Use a CAS to calculate

$$\iint_\Omega \sqrt{2x + y}\,dx\,dy$$

by integrating

(a) first with respect to x and then with respect to y;

(b) first with respect to y and then with respect to x.

■ 17.4 THE DOUBLE INTEGRAL AS THE LIMIT OF RIEMANN SUMS; POLAR COORDINATES

In the one-variable case we can write the integral as the limit of Riemann sums:

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \lim_{\max \Delta x \to 0} \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i^*)\Delta x_i.$$

The same approach works with double integrals. To explain it, we need to explain what we mean by the *diameter of a set*.

Suppose that S is a bounded closed set (on the line, in the plane, or in three-space). For any two points P and Q of S, we can measure their separation, $d(P, Q)$. The maximal separation between points of S is called the *diameter of S:*

$$\text{diam } S = \max_{P,Q\in S} d(P, Q).^{\dagger}$$

For a circle, a circular disk, a sphere, or a ball, this sense of diameter agrees with the usual one. Figure 17.4.1 gives some other examples.

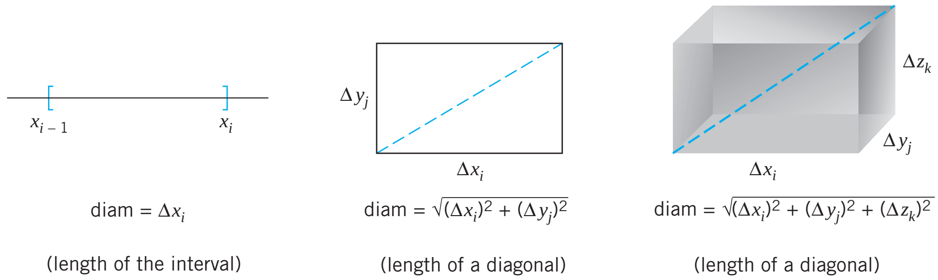


Figure 17.4.1

We start with a basic plane region Ω and decompose it into a finite number of basic subregions $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$. (See Figure 17.4.2.) If f is continuous on Ω, then f is continuous on each Ω_i. Now from each Ω_i we pick an arbitrary point (x_i^*, y_i^*) and form the *Riemann sum*

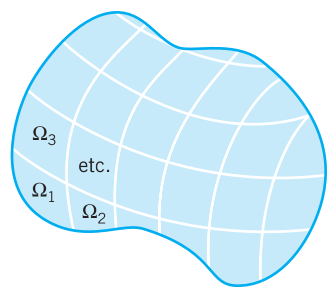


Figure 17.4.2

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i).$$

As you would expect, the double integral over Ω can be obtained as the limit of such sums; namely, given any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that, if the diameters of the Ω_i are all less than δ, then

$$\left| \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i) - \iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy \right| < \epsilon$$

no matter how the (x_i^*, y_i^*) are chosen within the Ω_i. We express this by writing

(17.4.1)
$$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy = \lim_{\text{diam } \Omega_i \to 0} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i).}$$

[†] If a set S is bounded, it is contained in some ball, which in turn has some finite diameter D. The set of all distances between points of S, being bounded above by D, has a least upper bound. This least upper bound is called the *diameter* of S:

$$\text{diam } S = \operatorname*{lub}_{P,Q\in S} d(P, Q).$$

It can be shown that, if S is bounded and closed (which is the case we are dealing with), then this least upper bound is attained, and therefore we can set

$$\text{diam } S = \max_{P,Q\in S} d(P, Q).$$

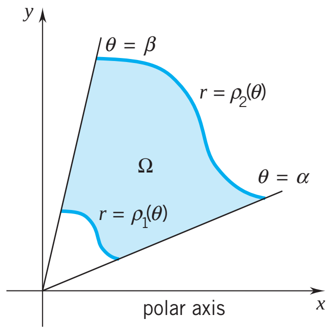


Figure 17.4.3

Evaluating Double Integrals Using Polar Coordinates

Here we explain how to calculate double integrals

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy$$

using polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$. Throughout we take $r \geq 0$.

We will work with the type of region shown in Figure 17.4.3. The region Ω is then the set of all points (x, y) which have polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$ in the set

$$\Gamma: \quad \alpha \leq \theta \leq \beta, \qquad \rho_1(\theta) \leq r \leq \rho_2(\theta).$$

Here $0 \leq \alpha < \beta \leq 2\pi$.

You already know how to calculate the area of Ω. By (10.4.2),

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \tfrac{1}{2}\left([\rho_2(\theta)]^2 - [\rho_1(\theta)]^2\right)\, d\theta.$$

We can write this as a double integral over Γ:

(17.4.2)
$$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = \iint_{\Gamma} r\, dr\, d\theta.}$$

PROOF Simply note that

$$\tfrac{1}{2}([\rho_2(\theta)]^2 - [\rho_1(\theta)]^2) = \int_{\rho_1(\theta)}^{\rho_2(\theta)} r\, dr$$

and therefore

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \int_{\rho_1(\theta)}^{\rho_2(\theta)} r\, dr\, d\theta = \iint_{\Gamma} r\, dr\, d\theta. \quad \square$$

Now let's suppose that f is some function continuous at each point (x, y) of Ω. Then the composition

$$F(r, \theta) = f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)$$

is continuous at each point $[r, \theta]$ of Γ. We will show that

(17.4.3)
$$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy \iint_{\Gamma} f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)\, r\, dr\, d\theta.}$$
(note the extra r)

PROOF Our first step is to place a grid on Ω by using a finite number of rays $\theta = \theta_j$ and a finite number of continuous curves $r = \rho_k(\theta)$ in the manner of Figure 17.4.4. This grid decomposes Ω into a finite number of regions

$$\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$$

with polar coordinates in sets $\Gamma_1, \ldots, \Gamma_n$. Note that by (17.4.2)

$$\text{area of each } \Omega_i = \iint_{\Gamma_i} r\, dr\, d\theta.$$

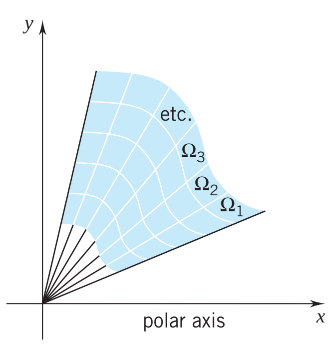


Figure 17.4.4

Writing $F(r,\theta)$ for $f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\iint_{\Gamma} F(r,\theta)\,r\,dr\,d\theta &\underset{\text{additivity}}{=} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \iint_{\Gamma_i} F(r,\theta)\,r\,dr\,d\theta \\
&\underset{\substack{\text{for some } [r_i^*,\theta_i^*]\in\Gamma_i \\ \text{(Theorem 17.2.10)}}}{=} \sum_{i=1}^{n} F(r_i^*,\theta_i^*) \iint_{\Gamma_i} r\,dr\,d\theta \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} F(r_i^*,\theta_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i) \\
&\underset{\text{with } x_i^* = r_i^*\cos\theta_i^*,\ y_i^* = r_i^*\sin\theta_i^*}{=} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*,y_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i).
\end{aligned}$$

This last expression is a Riemann sum for the double integral

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x,y)\,dx\,dy.$$

As such, by (17.4.1), it differs from that integral by less than any preassigned positive ϵ provided only that the diameters of all the Ω_i are sufficiently small. This we can guarantee by making our grid sufficiently fine. ❑

Example 1 Use polar coordinates to evaluate $\iint_{\Omega} xy\,dx\,dy$ where Ω is the portion of the unit disk that lies in the first quadrant.

SOLUTION Ω is the set of all points (x,y) which have polar coordinates $[r,\theta]$ in the set

$$\Gamma: \quad 0 \le \theta \le \tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \qquad 0 \le r \le 1.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\iint_{\Omega} xy\,dx\,dy &= \iint_{\Gamma} (r\cos\theta)(r\sin\theta)\,r\,dr\,d\theta \\
&= \int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^1 r^3\cos\theta\sin\theta\,dr\,d\theta \underset{\text{check this}}{=} \tfrac{1}{8}. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Use polar coordinates to calculate the volume of a sphere of radius R.

SOLUTION In rectangular coordinates,

$$V = 2\iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{R^2-(x^2+y^2)}\;dx\,dy$$

where Ω is the disk of radius R centered at the origin. (Verify this.) Ω is the set of all points which have polar coordinates in the set

$$\Gamma: \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \qquad 0 \le r \le R.$$

Therefore

$$V = 2\iint_{\Gamma} \sqrt{R^2 - r^2}\, r\, dr d\theta = 2\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^R \sqrt{R^2 - r^2}\, r\, dr\, d\theta = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi R^3. \quad \square$$

check this

Example 3 Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the cone $z = 2 - \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and below by the disk $\Omega : (x-1)^2 + y^2 \le 1$. (See Figure 17.4.5.)

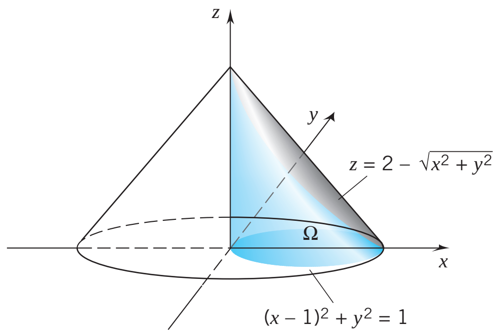


Figure 17.4.5

SOLUTION

$$V = \iint_{\Omega} (2 - \sqrt{x^2 + y^2})\, dx\, dy = 2\iint_{\Omega} dx\, dy - \iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dx\, dy.$$

The first integral is $2\times$ (area of Ω) $= 2\pi$. We evaluate the second integral by changing to polar coordinates.

The equation $(x-1)^2 + y^2 = 1$ simplifies to $x^2 + y^2 = 2x$. In polar coordinates this becomes $r^2 = 2r\cos\theta$, which simplifies to $r = 2\cos\theta$. The disk Ω is the set of all points with polar coordinates in the set

$$\Gamma : -\tfrac{1}{2}\pi \le \theta \le \tfrac{1}{2}\pi,\ 0 \le r \le 2\cos\theta.$$

Therefore

$$\iint_{\Omega} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dx\, dy = \iint_{\Gamma} r^2 dr d\theta = \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\int_0^{2\cos\theta} r^2\, dr\, d\theta = \tfrac{32}{9}.$$

Check this.

It follows that

$$V = 2\pi - \tfrac{32}{9} \cong 2.73. \quad \square$$

Example 4 Evaluate $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} \frac{1}{(1 + x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}\, dx\, dy$ where Ω is the triangular region shown in Figure 17.4.6.

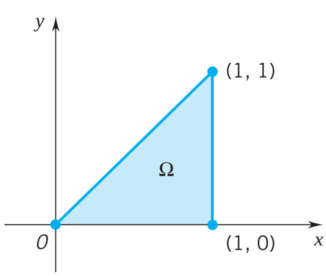


Figure 17.4.6

SOLUTION The vertical side of the triangle is part of the line $x = 1$. In polar coordinates this is $r\cos\theta = 1$, which can be written $r = \sec\theta$. Therefore

$$\iint_{\Omega} \frac{1}{(1 + x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}\, dx\, dy = \iint_{\Gamma} \frac{r}{(1 + r^2)^{3/2}}\, dr d\theta$$

where

$$\Gamma: \quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi/4, \qquad 0 \le r \le \sec\,\theta. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.4.7)}$$

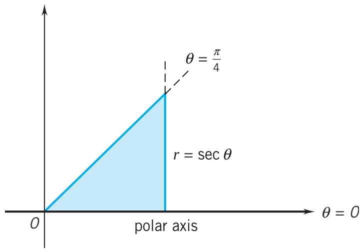


Figure 17.4.7

The double integral over Γ reduces to

$$\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{\sec\theta} \frac{r}{(1+r^2)^{3/2}}\,dr\,d\theta = \int_0^{\pi/4}\left[\frac{-1}{\sqrt{1+r^2}}\right]_0^{\sec\,\theta} d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{\pi/4}\left(1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\sec^2\theta}}\right)d\theta.$$

For $\theta \in [0, \pi/4]$

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\sec^2\theta}} = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sqrt{\cos^2\theta+1}} = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sqrt{2-\sin^2\theta}}.$$

Therefore the integral can be written

$$\int_0^{\pi/4}\left(1 - \frac{\cos\theta}{\sqrt{2-\sin^2\theta}}\right)d\theta = \underbrace{\left[\theta - \arcsin\left(\frac{\sin\theta}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\right]_0^{\pi/4}}_{(7.7.4)} = \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{\pi}{12}. \quad ❑$$

The function $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$ has no elementary antiderivative. Nevertheless, by taking a circuitous route and then using polar coordinates, we can show that

(17.4.4)
$$\boxed{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2}\,dx = \sqrt{\pi}.}^{\dagger}$$

PROOF The circular disk $D_b: x^2+y^2 \le b^2$ is the set of all (x, y) with polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$ in the set $\Gamma: 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, 0 \le r \le b$. Therefore

$$\iint_{D_b} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\,dx\,dy = \iint_{\Gamma} e^{-r^2}\,r\,dr\,d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^b e^{-r^2}r\,dr\,d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \tfrac{1}{2}(1-e^{-b^2})\,d\theta = \pi(1-e^{-b^2}).$$

Let S_a be the square $-a \le x \le a, -a \le y \le a$. Since $D_a \subseteq S_a \subseteq D_{2a}$ and $e^{-(x^2+y^2)}$ is positive,

$$\iint_{D_a} e^{-x^2+y^2}\,dx\,dy \le \iint_{S_a} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\,dx\,dy \le \iint_{D_{2a}} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\,dx\,dy.$$

It follows that

$$\pi(1-e^{-a^2}) \le \iint_{S_a} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\,dx\,dy \le \pi(1-e^{-4a^2}).$$

†This integral comes up frequently in probability theory and plays an important role in the branch of physics called "statistical mechanics." Since this is a well-known integral, we know that it exists. We can therefore calculate it by integrating from $-a$ to a and taking the limit as $a \to \infty$. In a roundabout way this is what we do.

As $a \to \infty$, $\pi(1 - e^{-a^2}) \to \pi$ and $\pi(1 - e^{-4a^2}) \to \pi$. Therefore

$$\lim_{a\to\infty} \iint_{S_a} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\, dx\, dy = \pi.$$

But

$$\begin{aligned}\iint_{S_a} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\, dx\, dy &= \int_{-a}^{a}\int_{-a}^{a} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\, dx\, dy\\ &= \int_{-a}^{a}\int_{-a}^{a} e^{-x^2}\cdot e^{-y^2}\, dx\, dy\\ &= \left(\int_{-a}^{a} e^{-x^2}\, dx\right)\left(\int_{-a}^{a} e^{-y^2}\, dy\right) = \left(\int_{-a}^{a} e^{-x^2}\, dx\right)^2.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{a\to\infty}\int_{-a}^{a} e^{-x^2}\, dx = \lim_{a\to\infty}\left(\iint_{S_a} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\, dx\, dy\right)^{1/2} = \sqrt{\pi}. \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 17.4

Exercises 1–4. Calculate.

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^{\sin\theta} r\cos\theta\, dr\, d\theta.$

2. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{\cos 2\theta} r\, dr\, d\theta.$

3. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^{3\sin\theta} r^2 dr\, d\theta.$

4. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/3}^{2\pi/3}\int_0^{2\cos\theta} r\sin\theta\, dr\, d\theta.$

5. Integrate $f(x, y) = \cos(x^2 + y^2)$

(a) over the closed unit disk;

(b) over the annular region $1 \le x^2 + y^2 \le 4$.

6. Integrate $f(x, y) = \sin(\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})$

(a) over the closed unit disk;

(b) over the annular region $1 \le x^2 + y^2 \le 4$.

7. Integrate $f(x, y) = x + y$

(a) over the region $0 \le x^2 + y^2 \le 1$, $\quad x \ge 0, y \ge 0$;

(b) over the region $1 \le x^2 + y^2 \le 4$, $\quad x \ge 0, y \ge 0$.

8. Integrate $f(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ over the triangular region with vertices $(0, 0)$, $(1, 0)$, $(1, \sqrt{3})$.

Exercises 9–16. Calculate using polar coordinates.

9. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{1}\int_0^{\sqrt{1-y^2}} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dx\, dy.$

10. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2}\int_0^{\sqrt{4-x^2}} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dy\, dx.$

11. $\displaystyle\int_{1/2}^{1}\int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dy\, dx.$

12. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1/2}\int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} xy\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dy\, dx.$

13. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \sin\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dy\, dx.$

14. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{1}\int_{-\sqrt{1-y^2}}^{\sqrt{1-y^2}} e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\, dx\, dy.$

15. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2}\int_0^{\sqrt{2x-x^2}} x\, dy\, dx.$

16. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_{-\sqrt{x-x^2}}^{\sqrt{x-x^2}} (x^2 + y^2)\, dy\, dx.$

Exercises 17–22. Find the area of the region by double integration.

17. One leaf of the petal curve $r = 3\sin 3\theta$.

18. The region enclosed by the cardioid $r = 2(1 - \cos\theta)$.

19. The region inside the circle $r = 4\cos\theta$ but outside the circle $r = 2$.

20. The region inside the large loop but outside the small loop of the limaçon $r = 1 + 2\cos\theta$.

21. The region enclosed by the lemniscate $r^2 = 4\cos 2\theta$.

22. The region inside the circle $r = 3\cos\theta$ but outside the cardioid $r = 1 + \cos\theta$.

23. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the plane $z = y + b$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the circular cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$.

24. Find the volume of the solid bounded below by the xy-plane and above by the paraboloid $z = 1 - (x^2 + y^2)$.

25. Find the volume of the ellipsoid

$$x^2/4 + y^2/4 + z^2/3 = 1.$$

26. Find the volume of the solid bounded below by the xy-plane and above by the surface $x^2 + y^2 + z^6 = 5$.

27. Find the volume of the solid bounded below by the xy-plane, above by the spherical surface $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

28. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the surface $z = 1 - (x^2 + y^2)$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 - x = 0$.

29. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the plane $z = 2x$ and below by the disk $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 \leq 1$.

30. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the cone $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$ and below by the region Ω which lies inside the curve $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$. Take $a > 0$.

31. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the ellipsoid of revolution $b^2x^2 + b^2y^2 + a^2z^2 = a^2b^2$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 - ay = 0$.

32. A cylindrical hole of radius r is drilled through the center of a sphere of radius R.

(a) Determine the volume of the material that has been removed from the sphere.

(b) Determine the volume of the ring-shaped solid that remains.

33. Sketch the petal curve $r = 2\cos 2\theta$. Find the area of a petal.

34. Let $I = \displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} e^{x^2+y^2}\,dx\,dy$ where Ω is the annular region between the circles $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and $x^2 + y^2 = 16$. Evaluate this integral by changing to polar coordinates.

■ 17.5 FURTHER APPLICATIONS OF THE DOUBLE INTEGRAL

A thin plane distribution of matter (we call it a *plate*) is laid out in the xy-plane in the form of a basic region Ω. If the mass density of the plate (the mass per unit area) is a constant λ, then the total mass M of the plate is simply the density λ times the area of the plate:

$$M = \lambda \times \text{ the area of } \Omega.$$

If the density varies continuously from point to point, say $\lambda = \lambda(x, y)$, then the mass of the plate is the average density of the plate times the area of the plate:

$$M = \text{average density } \times \text{ the area of } \Omega.$$

This is a double integral:

(17.5.1)
$$\boxed{M = \iint_{\Omega} \lambda(x, y)\,dx\,dy.}$$

The Center of Mass of a Plate

The center of mass x_M of a rod is a density-weighted average of position taken over the interval occupied by the rod:

$$x_M M = \int_a^b x\,\lambda(x)\,dx. \qquad \text{[This you have seen: (5.9.5).]}$$

The coordinates of the center of mass of a plate (x_M, y_M) are determined by two density-weighted averages of position, each taken over the region occupied by the plate:

(17.5.2)
$$\boxed{x_M M = \iint_{\Omega} x\,\lambda(x, y)\,dx\,dy, \qquad y_M M = \iint_{\Omega} y\,\lambda(x, y)\,dx\,dy.}$$

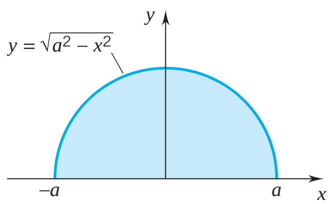


Figure 17.5.1

Example 1 A plate is in the form of a half-disk of radius a. Find the mass of the plate and the center of mass given that the mass density of the plate is directly proportional to the distance from the midpoint of the straight edge of the plate.

SOLUTION Place the plate over the region $\Omega : -a \le x \le a, 0 \le y\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$. (Figure 17.5.1.) The mass density can then be written $\lambda(x, y) = k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ where $k > 0$ is the constant of proportionality. Now

$$M = \iint_\Omega k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\, dx\, dy = \int_0^\pi \int_0^a (kr) r\; dr\; d\theta = k\left(\int_0^\pi 1\, d\theta\right)\left(\int_0^a r^2 dr\right)$$

change to polar coordinates

$$= k(\pi)(\tfrac{1}{3}a^3) = \tfrac{1}{3}ka^3\pi.$$

$$x_M M = \iint_\Omega x(k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})\, dx\, dy \qquad y_M M = \iint_\Omega y(k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})\, dx\, dy.$$

Note that $x_M M = 0$ since Ω is symmetric about the y-axis and the integrand is odd in x. Thus, $x_M = 0$. Now let's find y_M.

$$y_M M = \iint_\Omega y(k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2})\, dx\, dy = \int_0^\pi \int_0^a (r \sin\theta)(kr) r\; dr\; d\theta$$

$$= k\left(\int_0^\pi \sin\theta\; d\theta\right)\left(\int_0^a r^3\; dr\right)$$

$$= k(2)(\tfrac{1}{4}a^4) = \tfrac{1}{2}ka^4.$$

Since $M = \frac{1}{3}ka^3\pi$, $y_M = (\frac{1}{2}ka^4)/(\frac{1}{3}ka^3\pi) = 3a/2\pi$. The center of mass of the plate is at the point $(0, 3a/2\pi) \cong (0, 0.48a)$. ❑

Centroids

If the plate is homogeneous, then the mass density λ is constantly M/A where A is the area of the base region Ω. In this case the center of mass of the plate falls on the *centroid* of the base region (a notion with which you are already familiar). The centroid $(\overline{x}, \overline{y})$ depends only on the geometry of Ω:

$$\overline{x}M = \iint_\Omega x(M/A)\, dx\, dy = (M/A)\iint_\Omega x\, dx\, dy,$$

$$\overline{y}M = \iint_\Omega y(M/A)\, dx\, dy = (M/A)\iint_\Omega y\, dx\, dy.$$

Dividing by M and multiplying through by A, we have

(17.5.3) $$\boxed{\overline{x}A = \iint_\Omega x\, dx\, dy, \quad \overline{y}A = \iint_\Omega y\, dx\, dy.}$$

Thus, in the sense of (17.2.9), $\overline{x}$ is the average x-coordinate on Ω and $\overline{y}$ is the average y-coordinate. The mass of the plate does not enter into this at all.

Example 2 Find the centroid of the region

$$\Omega : a \leq x \leq b, \phi_1(x) \leq y \leq \phi_2(x). \qquad \text{(Figure 17.5.2)}$$

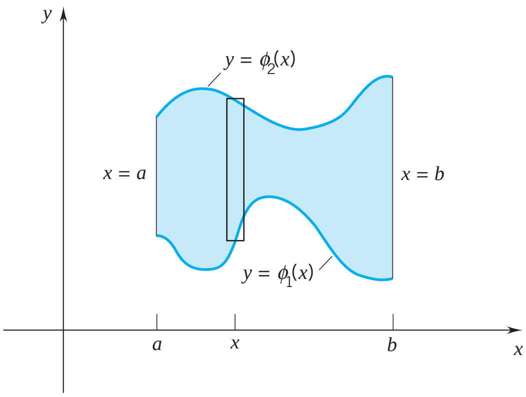


Figure 17.5.2

SOLUTION

$$\overline{x}A = \iint_{\Omega} x\,dx\,dy = \int_a^b \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} x\,dy\,dx = \int_a^b x[\phi_2(x) - \phi_1(x)]\,dx;$$

$$\overline{y}A = \iint_{\Omega} y\,dx\,dy = \int_a^b \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} y\,dy\,dx = \int_a^b \tfrac{1}{2}([\phi_2(x)]^2 - [\phi_1(x)]^2)\,dx.$$

These are the formulas for the centroid that we developed in Section 6.4. Having calculated many centroids there, we won't do so here. ❑

Kinetic Energy and Moment of Inertia

A particle of mass m at a distance r from a given line rotates about that line (called the *axis of rotation*) with angular speed ω. The speed v of the particle is then $r\omega$, and the kinetic energy is given by the formula

$$\text{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}mr^2\omega^2.$$

Imagine now a rigid body composed of a finite number of point masses m_i located at distances r_i from some fixed line. If the rigid body rotates about that line with angular speed ω, then all the point masses rotate about that same line with that same angular speed ω. The kinetic energy of the body can be obtained by adding up the kinetic energies of all the individual particles:

$$\text{KE} = \sum_i \tfrac{1}{2}m_i r_i^2 \omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\sum_i m_i r_i^2\right)\omega^2.$$

The expression in parentheses is called the *moment of inertia* (or *rotational inertia*) of the body and is denoted by the letter I:

(17.5.4)
$$\boxed{I = \sum_i m_i r_i^2.}$$

In straight-line motion all parts of a rigid body move at the same speed, and we have

$$\mathrm{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}Mv^2 \qquad \text{where } M = \text{ total mass and } v = \text{speed.}$$

In pure rotation all parts of a rigid body move at the same angular speed and we have

$$\mathrm{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 \qquad \text{where } I = \text{total moment of inertia and } \omega = \text{angular speed.}$$

The Moment of Inertia of a Plate

Suppose that a plate in the shape of a basic region Ω rotates about a line. The moment of inertia of the plate about that axis of rotation is given by the formula

(17.5.5)
$$\boxed{I = \iint_{\Omega} \lambda(x, y)[r(x, y)]^2\, dx\, dy}$$

where $\lambda = \lambda(x, y)$ is the mass density function and $r(x, y)$ is the distance from the axis to the point (x, y).

DERIVATION OF (17.5.5) Decompose the plate into n pieces in the form of basic regions $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$. From each Ω_i choose a point (x_i^*, y_i^*) and view all the mass of the ith piece as concentrated there. The moment of inertia of this piece is then approximately

$$\underbrace{[\lambda(x_i^*, y_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i)]}_{\text{approx. mass of piece}}\ \underbrace{[r(x_i^*, y_i^*)]^2}_{(\text{approx. distance})^2} = \lambda(x_i^*, y_i^*)[r(x_i^*, y_i^*)]^2(\text{area of } \Omega_i).$$

The sum of these approximations,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda(x_i^*, y_i^*)[r(x_i^*, y_i^*)]^2(\text{area of } \Omega_i),$$

is a Riemann sum for the double integral

$$\iint_{\Omega} \lambda(x, y)[r(x, y)]^2\, dx\, dy.$$

As the maximum diameter of the Ω_i tends to zero, the Riemann sum tends to this integral. ❑

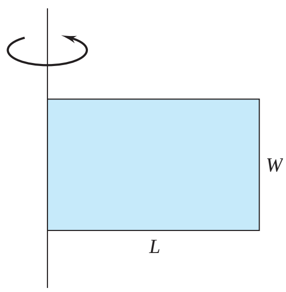


Figure 17.5.3

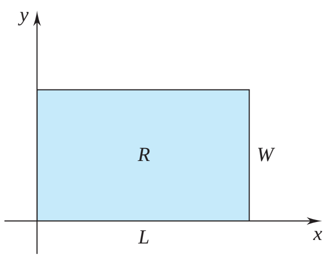


Figure 17.5.4

Example 3 A rectangular plate of mass M, length L, width W rotates about the line shown in Figure 17.5.3. Find the moment of inertia of the plate about that line: **(a)** given that the plate has uniform mass density; **(b)** given that the mass density of the plate varies directly as the square of the distance from the rightmost side.

SOLUTION Coordinatize the plate as in Figure 17.5.4 and call the base region R.

(a) Here $\lambda(x, y) = M/LW$ and $r(x, y) = x$. Thus

$$I = \iint_R \frac{M}{LW}x^2\, dx\, dy = \frac{M}{LW}\int_0^W \int_0^L x^2\, dx\, dy$$

$$= \frac{M}{LW}W\int_0^L x^2\, dx = \frac{M}{L}(\tfrac{1}{3}L^3) = \tfrac{1}{3}ML^2.$$

(b) In this case $\lambda(x, y) = k(L - x)^2$, but we still have $r(x, y) = x$. Therefore

$$I = \iint_R k(L-x)^2 x^2\, dx\, dy = k \int_0^W \int_0^L (L-x)^2 x^2\, dx\, dy$$

$$= kW \int_0^L (L^2x^2 - 2Lx^3 + x^4)\, dx = \tfrac{1}{30} kL^5 W.$$

We can eliminate the constant of proportionality k by noting that

$$M = \iint_R k(L-x)^2\, dx\, dy = k \int_0^W \int_0^L (L-x)^2\, dx\, dy$$

$$= kW\Big[-\tfrac{1}{3}(L-x)^3\Big]_0^L = \tfrac{1}{3} kWL^3.$$

Therefore

$$k = \frac{3M}{WL^3} \qquad \text{and} \qquad I = \frac{1}{30}\left(\frac{3M}{WL^3}\right) L^5 W = \frac{1}{10} ML^2. \quad ❑$$

Radius of Gyration

If the mass M of an object is all concentrated at a distance r from a given line, then the moment of inertia about that line is given by the product Mr^2.

Suppose now that we have a plate of mass M (actually any object of mass M will do here), and suppose that l is some line. The object has some moment of inertia I about l. Its *radius of gyration* about l is the distance K for which

$$I = MK^2.$$

Namely, the radius of gyration about l is the distance from l at which all the mass of the object would have to be concentrated to effect the same moment of inertia. The formula for radius of gyration K is usually written

(17.5.6) $$\boxed{K = \sqrt{I/M}.}$$

Example 4 A homogeneous circular plate of mass M and radius R rotates about an axle that passes through the center of the plate and is perpendicular to the plate. Calculate the moment of inertia and the radius of gyration.

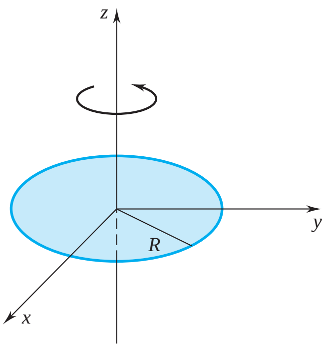


Figure 17.5.5

SOLUTION Take the axle as the z-axis and let the plate rest on the circular region $\Omega : x^2 + y^2 \leq R^2$. (Figure 17.5.5) The density of the plate is $M/A = M/\pi R^2$ and $r(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$. Hence

$$I = \iint_\Omega \frac{M}{\pi R^2}(x^2 + y^2)\, dx\, dy = \frac{M}{\pi R^2} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^R r^3\, dr\, d\theta = \tfrac{1}{2} MR^2.$$

In this case the radius of gyration $K = \sqrt{I/M}$ is $R/\sqrt{2}$.

The circular plate of radius R has the same moment of inertia about the central axle as a circular wire of the same mass with radius $R/\sqrt{2}$. ❑

The Parallel Axis Theorem

Suppose we have an object of mass M and a line l_M that passes through the center of mass (x_M, y_M). The object has moment of inertia about that line; call it I_M. If l is a line parallel to l_M, then the object has moment of inertia about l; call that I. The parallel axis theorem states that

(17.5.7)
$$\boxed{I = I_M + d^2 M}$$

where d is the distance between the axes.

We prove the theorem under somewhat restrictive assumptions. We assume that the object is a plate of mass M in the shape of a basic region Ω, and assume that l_M is perpendicular to the plate. We call l the z-axis and place the plate on the xy-plane. (See Figure 17.5.6.) Denoting the points of Ω by (x, y), we have

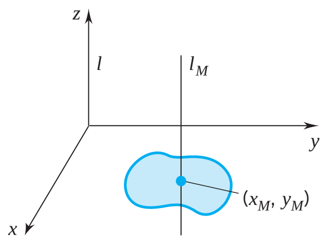


Figure 17.5.6

$$\begin{aligned}
I - I_M &= \iint_\Omega \lambda(x,y)(x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy - \iint_\Omega \lambda(x,y)[(x-x_M)^2+(y-y_M)^2]\,dx\,dy \\
&= \iint_\Omega \lambda(x,y)[2x_M x + 2y_M y - (x_M^2 + y_M^2)]\,dx\,dy \\
&= 2x_M \iint_\Omega x\lambda(x,y)\,dx\,dy + 2y_M \iint_\Omega y\lambda(x,y)\,dx\,dy \\
&\qquad -(x_M^2+y_M^2)\iint_\Omega \lambda(x,y)\,dx\,dy \\
&= 2x_M^2 + 2y_M^2 M - (x_M^2+y_M^2)M = (x_M^2+y_M^2)M = d^2 M. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

An obvious consequence of the parallel axis theorem is that $I_M \le I$ for all lines l parallel to l_M. To minimize the moment of inertia, we must pass the axis of rotation through the center of mass.

EXERCISES 17.5

Exercises 1–10. Find the mass and center of mass of the plate that occupies the region and has mass density λ.

1. $\Omega : -1 \le x \le 1, \quad 0 \le y \le 1, \quad \lambda(x,y) = x^2.$

2. $\Omega : 0 \le x \le 1, \quad 0 \le y \le \sqrt{x}, \quad \lambda(x,y) = x + y.$

3. $\Omega : 0 \le x \le 1, \quad x^2 \le y \le 1, \quad \lambda(x,y) = xy.$

4. $\Omega : 0 \le x \le \pi, \quad 0 \le y \le \sin x, \quad \lambda(x,y) = y.$

5. $\Omega : 0 \le x \le 8, \quad 0 \le y \le \sqrt[3]{x}, \quad \lambda(x,y) = y^2.$

6. $\Omega : 0 \le x \le a, \quad 0 \le y \le \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}, \quad \lambda(x,y) = xy.$

7. Ω : the triangular region with vertices $(0,0), (1,2), (1,3)$; $\lambda(x,y) = xy$.

8. Ω: the triangular region in the first quadrant bounded by $x = 0, y = 0, 3x + 2y = 6$; $\quad \lambda(x,y) = x + y$.

9. Ω: the region bounded by the cardioid $r = 1 + \cos\theta$; λ is the distance to the pole.

10. Ω: the region inside the circle $r = 2\sin\theta$ but outside the circle $r = 1$; $\quad \lambda(x,y) = y$.

In the exercises that follow, I_x, I_y, I_z denote the moments of inertia about the x, y, z axes.

11. A rectangular plate of mass M, length L, and width W is placed on the xy-plane with center at the origin, long sides parallel to the x-axis. (We assume here that $L \ge W$.) Find I_x, I_y, I_z if the plate is homogeneous. Determine the corresponding radii of gyration K_x, K_y, K_z.

12. Verify that I_x, I_y, I_z are unchanged if the mass density of the plate of Exercise 11 varies directly as the distance from the leftmost side.

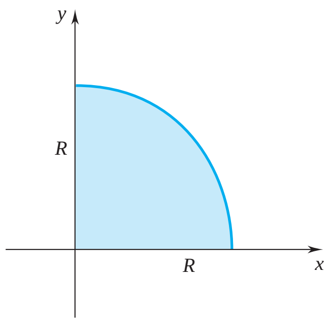
13. Determine the center of mass of the plate of Exercise 11 if the mass density varies as in Exercise 12.

14. Show that for any plate in the xy-plane

$$I_z = I_x + I_y.$$

How are the corresponding radii of gyration K_x, K_y, K_z related?

15. A homogeneous plate of mass M in the form of a quarter-disk of radius R is placed in the xy-plane as in the figure. Find I_x, I_y, I_z and the corresponding radii of gyration.



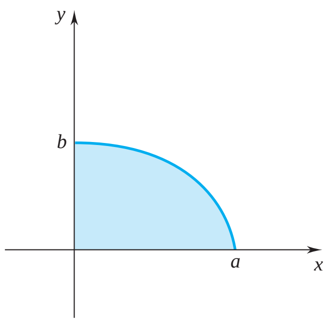
16. A plate in the xy-plane undergoes a rotation in that plane about its center of mass. Show that I_z remains unchanged.

17. A homogeneous disk of mass M and radius R is to be placed on the xy-plane so that it has moment of inertia I_0 about the z-axis. Where should the disk be placed?

18. A homogeneous plate of mass density λ occupies the region under the curve $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$. Show that

$$I_x = \tfrac{1}{3}\lambda \int_a^b [f(x)]^3\,dx \qquad \text{and} \qquad I_y = \lambda \int_a^b x^2 f(x)\,dx.$$

19. A homogeneous plate of mass M in the form of an elliptical quadrant is placed on the xy-plane. (See the figure.) Find I_x, I_y, I_z.



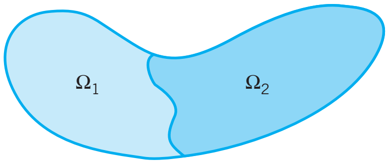
20. Find I_x, I_y, I_z for the plate in Exercise 2.

21. Find I_x, I_y, I_z for the plate in Exercise 3.

22. Find I_x, I_y, I_z for the plate in Exercise 5.

23. Find I_x, I_y, I_z for the plate in Exercise 9.

24. A plate of varying density occupies the region $\Omega = \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_2$ shown in the figure. Find the center of mass of the plate given that the Ω_1 piece has mass M_1 and center of mass (x_1, y_1), and the Ω_2 piece has mass M_2 and center of mass (x_2, y_2).

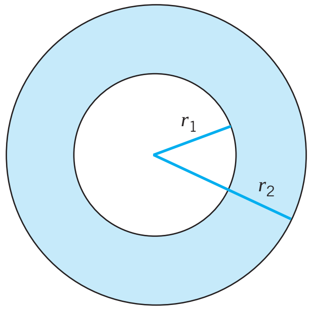


25. A homogeneous plate of mass M is in the form of a ring. (See the figure.) Calculate the moment of inertia of the plate:

(a) about a diameter;

(b) about a tangent to the inner circle;

(c) about a tangent to the outer circle.



26. Find the moment of inertia of a homogeneous circular wire of mass M and radius r:

(a) about a diameter;

(b) about a tangent. HINT: Use the previous exercise.

27. The plate of Exercise 25 rotates about the axis that is perpendicular to the plate and passes through the center. Find the moment of inertia.

28. Prove the parallel axis theorem for the case where the line through the center of mass lies in the plane of the plate.

29. A plate of mass M has the form of a half-disk Ω, $-R \le x \le R, 0 \le y \le \sqrt{R^2 - x^2}$. Find the center of mass given that the mass density varies directly as the distance from the curved boundary.

30. Find I_x, I_y, I_z for the plate of Exercise 29.

31. A plate of mass M is in the form of a disk of radius R. Given that the mass density of the plate varies directly as the distance from a point P on the boundary of the plate, locate the center of mass.

32. The edges of a plate of mass M form a right triangle of base b, height h. Given that the mass density of the plate varies directly as the square of the distance from the vertex of the right angle, locate the center of mass of the plate.

33. Use double integrals to justify the additivity assumption we made about centroids in Chapter 6, (6.4.1).

34. A plate occupies the triangular region with vertices (0, 0), (0, 1), (2, 1). The mass density is given by the function $\lambda(x, y) = x + y$. Calculate (a) the center of mass of the plate, and (b) the moments of inertia I_x and I_y.

■ 17.6 TRIPLE INTEGRALS

Now that you are familiar with double integrals

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy,$$

you will find it easy to understand triple integrals

$$\iiint_{T} f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.$$

Basically the only difference is that, instead of working with functions of two variables continuous on a plane region Ω, we will be working with functions of three variables continuous on some portion T of three-space.

The Triple Integral over a Box

For double integration we began with a rectangle

$$R: \quad a_1 \le x \le a_2, \ b_1 \le y \le b_2.$$

For triple integration we begin with a *box* (a rectangular solid)

$$\Pi: \quad a_1 \le x \le a_2, \ b_1 \le y \le b_2, \ c_1 \le z \le c_2. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.6.1)}$$

To partition this box, we first partition the edges. Taking

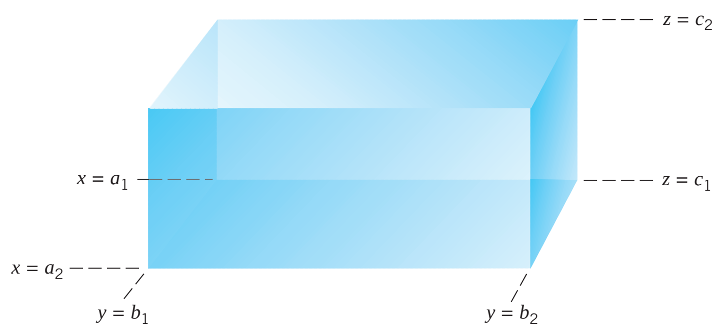


Figure 17.6.1

$$\begin{aligned} P_1 &= \{x_0, \ldots, x_m\} && \text{as a partition of } [a_1, a_2], \\ P_2 &= \{y_0, \ldots, y_n\} && \text{as a partition of } [b_1, b_2], \\ P_3 &= \{z_0, \ldots, z_q\} && \text{as a partition of } [c_1, c_2], \end{aligned}$$

we form the set

$$P = P_1 \times P_2 \times P_3 = \{(x_i, y_j, z_k) : x_i \in P_1, y_j \in P_2, z_k \in P_3\}.^{\dagger}$$

We call this a *partition of* Π. The partition P breaks up Π into $m \times n \times q$ nonoverlapping boxes

$$\Pi_{ijk}: \quad x_{i-1} \le x \le x_i, \qquad y_{j-1} \le y \le y_j, \qquad z_{k-1} \le z \le z_k.$$

† $P_1 \times P_2 \times P_3$ is called the *Cartesian product* of P_1, P_2, P_3.

A typical such box is pictured in Figured 17.6.2.

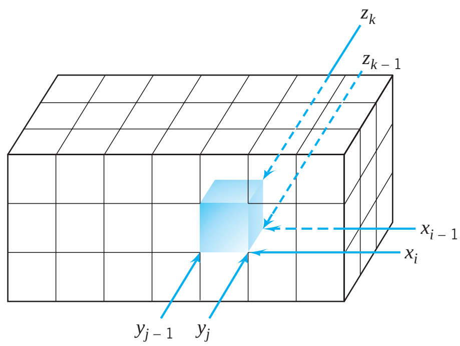


Figure 17.6.2

Assume that f is a function continuous on Π. Taking

$$M_{ijk} \text{ as the maximum value of } f \text{ on } \Pi_{ijk}$$

and

$$m_{ijk} \text{ as the minimum value of } f \text{ on } \Pi_{ijk},$$

we form the *upper sum*

$$U_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q} M_{ijk}\,(\text{volume of } \Pi_{ijk}) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q} M_{ijk}\Delta_{x_i}\Delta_{y_j}\Delta_{z_k}$$

and the *lower sum*

$$L_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q} m_{ijk}\,(\text{volume of } \Pi_{ijk}) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{k=1}^{q} m_{ijk}\Delta_{x_i}\Delta_{y_j}\Delta_{z_k}.$$

As in the case of functions of one and two variables, it turns out that, with f continuous on Π, there is one and only one number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \le I \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } \Pi.$$

DEFINITION 17.6.1 THE TRIPLE INTEGRAL OVER A BOX Π

Let f be continuous on a closed box Π. The unique number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \le I \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } \Pi$$

is called the *triple integral* of f over Π and is denoted by

$$\iiint\limits_{\Pi} f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz^{\dagger}$$

[†]The triple integral can be written $\iiint\limits_{\Pi} f(x, y, z)\,dV$.

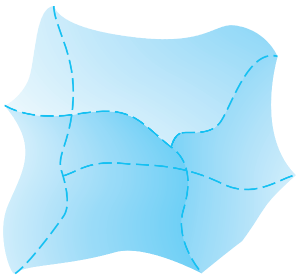


Figure 17.6.3

The Triple Integral over a More General Solid

We start with a three-dimensional, bounded, closed, connected set T. We assume that T is a *basic solid*; that is, we assume that the boundary of T consists of a finite number of continuous surfaces $z = \alpha(x, y),\ y = \beta(x, z),\ x = \gamma(y, z)$. See, for example, Figure 17.6.3.

Now let's suppose that f is some function continuous on T. To define the triple integral of f over T, we first encase T in a rectangular box Π with sides parallel to the coordinate planes. (Figure 17.6.4.) We then extend f to all of Π by defining f to be zero outside of T. This extended function f is bounded on Π, and it is continuous on all of Π except possibly at the boundary of T. In spite of these possible discontinuities, f is still integrable over Π; that is, there still exists a unique number I such that

$$L_f(P) \le I \le U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } \Pi.$$

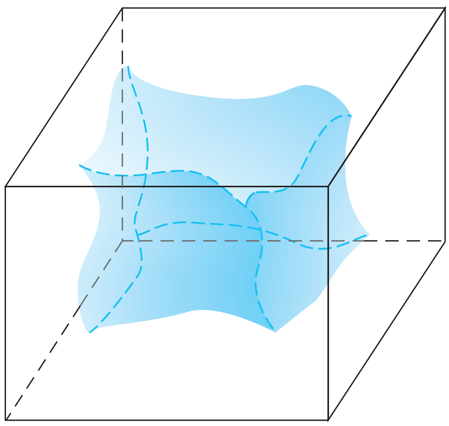


Figure 17.6.4

(We will not attempt to prove this.) The number I is by definition the triple integral

$$\iiint_{\Pi} f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz.$$

We define the triple integral over T by setting

(17.6.2) $$\boxed{\iiint_{T} f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_{\Pi} f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz.}$$

Volume as a Triple Integral

The simplest triple integral of interest is the triple integral of the function that is constantly 1 on T. This gives the volume of T:

(17.6.3) $$\boxed{\text{volume of } T = \iiint_{T} dx\,dy\,dz.}$$

PROOF Set $f(x, y, z) = 1$ for all (x, y, z) in T. Encase T in a box Π. Define f to be zero outside of T. An arbitrary partition P of Π breaks up T into little boxes Π_{ijk}. Note that

$$L_f(P) = \text{ the sum of the volumes of all the } \Pi_{ijk} \text{ that are contained in } T$$

$$U_f(P) = \text{ the sum of the volumes of all the } \Pi_{ijk} \text{ that intersect } T.$$

It follows that

$$L_f(P) \leq \text{ the volume of } T \leq U_f(P).$$

The arbitrariness of P gives the formula. ❑

Some Properties of the Triple Integral

Below we give without proof the elementary properties of triple integrals analogous to what you saw in the one- and two-variable cases. Assume throughout that T is a basic solid. The functions f and g are assumed to be continuous on T.

I. *Linearity:*

$$\iiint_T [\alpha f(x, y, z) + \beta g(x, y, z)]\, dx\, dy\, dz$$
$$= \alpha \iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz + \beta \iiint_T g(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.$$

II. *Order:*

if $f \geq 0$ on T, then $\displaystyle\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz \geq 0;$

if $f \leq g$ on T, then $\displaystyle\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz \leq \iiint_T g(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.$

III. *Additivity*: If T is broken up into a finite number of basic solids $T_1, \ldots, T_n$, then

$$\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \iiint_{T_1} f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz + \cdots + \iiint_{T_n} f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.$$

IV. *Mean-value condition*: There is a point (x_0, y_0, z_0) in T for which

$$\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = f(x_0, y_0, z_0) \cdot (\text{volume of } T).$$

We call $f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *the average value of f on T.*

This notion of average enables us to write

(17.6.4) $$\boxed{\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \begin{pmatrix} \text{the average value} \\ \text{of } f \text{ on } T \end{pmatrix} \cdot (\text{volume of } T).}$$

We can also take weighted averages: if f and g are continuous and g is nonnegative on T, then there is a point (x_0, y_0, z_0) in T for which

(17.6.5)
$$\boxed{\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, g(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = f(x_0, y_0, z_0) \iiint_T g(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.}$$

As you would expect, we call $f(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *the g-weighted average of f on T.*

The formulas for mass, center of mass, and moments of inertia derived in the previous section for two-dimensional plates are easily extended to three-dimensional objects.

Suppose that T is an object in the form of a basic solid. If T has constant mass density λ (here density is mass per unit volume), then the mass of T is the density λ times the volume of T:

$$M = \lambda V.$$

If the mass density varies continuously over T, say, $\lambda = \lambda(x, y, z)$, then *the mass of T is the average density of T times the volume of T*. This is a triple integral

(17.6.6)
$$\boxed{M = \iiint_T \lambda(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.}$$

The coordinates of the center of mass (x_M, y_M, z_M) are density-weighted averages of position, each taken over the portion of space occupied by the solid.

(17.6.7)
$$\boxed{x_M M = \iiint_T x\lambda(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz, \qquad \text{etc.}}$$

If the object T is homogeneous (constant mass density M/V), then the center of mass of T depends only on the geometry of T and falls on the centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{z})$ of the space occupied by T. The density is irrelevant. The coordinates of the centroid are simple averages over T:

(17.6.8)
$$\boxed{\bar{x}V = \iiint_T x\, dx\, dy\, dz, \qquad \text{etc.}}$$

The moment of inertia of T about a line is given by the formula

(17.6.9)
$$\boxed{I = \iiint_T \lambda(x, y, z)[r(x, y, z)]^2\, dx\, dy\, dz.}$$

Here $\lambda(x, y, z)$ is the mass density of T at (x, y, z) and $r(x, y, z)$ is the distance of (x, y, z) from the line in question. The moments of inertia about the x, y, z axes are again denoted by I_x, I_y, I_z.

All of this should be readily understandable. Techniques for evaluating triple integrals are introduced in the next three sections.

EXERCISES 17.6

1. Let $f(x, y)$ be a function continuous and nonnegative on a basic region Ω and set

$$T = \{(x, y, z) : (x, y) \in \Omega, \quad 0 \le z \le f(x, y)\}.$$

Compare

$$\iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz \qquad \text{to} \qquad \iint_\Omega f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

2. Set $f(x, y, z) = xyz$ on $\Pi: \quad 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 1, 0 \le z \le 1$ and take P as the partition $P_1 \times P_2 \times P_3$.

(a) Find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ given that

$$P_1 = \{x_0, \ldots, x_m\}, \qquad P_2 = \{y_0, \ldots, y_n\},$$
$$P_3 = \{z_0, \ldots, z_q\}$$

are arbitrary partitions of [0, 1].

(b) Use your answer to part (a) to calculate

$$\iiint_\Pi xyz\,dx\,dy\,dz.$$

3. Set $\Pi : a_1 \le x \le a_2, b_1 \le y \le b_2, c_1 \le z \le c_2$. Show that

$$\iiint_\Pi \alpha\,dx\,dy\,dz = \alpha(a_2 - a_1)(b_2 - b_1)(c_2 - c_1).$$

4. Find the average value of $f(x, y, z) = xyz$ over the box defined in Exercise 2.

5. Set $\Pi : 0 \le x \le a, 0 \le y \le b, 0 \le z \le c$. Calculate

$$\iiint_\Pi xy\,dx\,dy\,dz.$$

6. Let T be a basic solid of varying mass density $\lambda = \lambda(x, y, z)$. The moment of inertia of T about the xy-plane is defined by setting

$$I_{xy} = \iiint_T \lambda(x, y, z)\,z^2\,dx\,dy\,dz.$$

The other moments of inertia, I_{xz} and I_{yz}, are defined in a similar manner. Express I_x, I_y, I_z in terms of the plane moments of inertia.

7. A box $\Pi_1: \quad 0 \le x \le 2a, 0 \le y \le 2b, 0 \le z \le 2c$ is cut away from a larger box $\Pi_0 : 0 \le x \le 2A, 0 \le y \le 2B, 0 \le z \le 2C$. Locate the centroid of the remaining solid.

8. Show that, if f is continuous and nonnegative on a basic solid T, then the triple integral of f over T is nonnegative.

9. The box $\Pi: \quad 0 \le x \le a, 0 \le y \le a, 0 \le z \le a$ is a cube. Find the mass of the cube if the density varies directly as the distance from the face on the xy-plane.

10. Locate the center of mass of the cube of Exercise 9.

11. Find the moment of inertia I_z of the cube of Exercise 9.

C **12.** Let $f(x, y, z) = 3y^2 - 2x + z$ on the box $B : 2 \le x \le 5, 1 \le y \le 3, 3 \le z \le 4$. Let P_1 be a regular partition of [2, 5] with $k = 10$ subintervals, let P_2 be a regular partition of [1, 3] with $m = 20$ subintervals, let P_3 be a regular partition of [3, 4] with $n = 15$ subintervals, and let $P = P_1 \times P_2 \times P_3$.

(a) Use a CAS to find $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$.

(b) Investigate $L_f(P)$ and $U_f(P)$ for values of $k > 100$, $m > 200$ and $n > 150$.

(c) Estimate $\iiint_B f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz$.

■ 17.7 REDUCTION TO REPEATED INTEGRALS

In this section we give no proofs. You can assume that all the solids that appear are basic solids and all the functions that you encounter are continuous.

In Figure 17.7.1 we have sketched a solid T. The projection of T onto the xy-plane has been labeled Ω_{xy}. The solid T is then the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$(x, y) \in \Omega_{xy} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \psi_1(x, y) \le z \le \psi_2(x, y).$$

The triple integral over T can be evaluated by setting

$$(*) \qquad \iiint_T f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \left(\int_{\psi_2(x,y)}^{\psi_2(x,y)} f(x, y, z)\,dz \right) dx\,dy.$$

Moving to Figure 17.7.2, we see that in this case Ω_{xy} is the region

$$a_1 \le x \le a_2, \qquad \phi_1(x) \le y \le \phi_2(x)$$

and T itself is the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$a_1 \le x \le a_2, \qquad \phi_1(x) \le y \le \phi_2(x), \qquad \psi_1(x, y) \le z \le \psi_2(x, y).$$

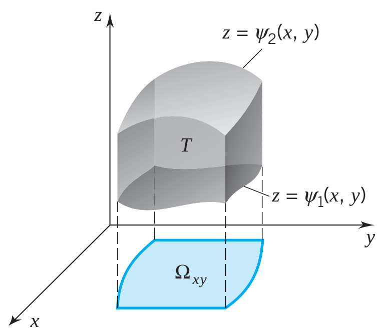


Figure 17.7.1

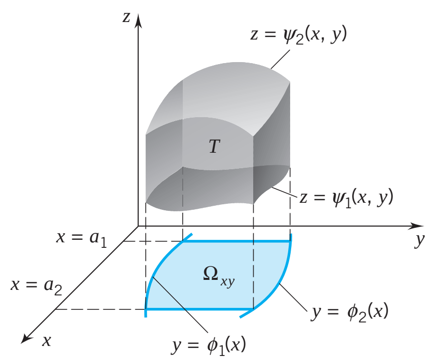


Figure 17.7.2

The triple integral over T can then be expressed by three ordinary integrals:

$$\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \int_{a_1}^{a_2} \left[\int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} \left(\int_{\psi_1(x,y)}^{\psi_2(x,y)} f(x, y, z)\, dz \right) dy \right] dx.$$

It is customary to omit the brackets and parentheses and write

(17.7.1) $$\boxed{\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \int_{a_1}^{a_2} \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} \int_{\psi_1(x,y)}^{\psi_2(x,y)} f(x, y, z)\, dz\, dy\, dx.}$$ †

Here we first integrate with respect to z [from $z = \psi_1(x, y)$ to $z = \psi_2(x, y)$], then with respect to y [from $y = \phi_1(x)$ to $y = \phi_2(x)$], and finally with respect to x [from $x = a_1$ to $x = a_2$].

There is nothing special about this order of integration. Other orders of integration are possible and in some cases more convenient. Suppose, for example, that the projection of T onto the xz-plane is a region of the form

$$\Omega_{xz}: \quad a_1 \le z \le a_2, \ \phi_1(z) \le x \le \phi_2(z).$$

If T is the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$a_1 \le z \le a_2, \qquad \phi_1(z) \le x \le \phi_2(z), \qquad \psi_1(x, z) \le y \le \psi_2(x, z),$$

then

$$\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \int_{a_1}^{a_2} \int_{\phi_1(z)}^{\phi_2(z)} \int_{\psi_1(x,z)}^{\psi_2(x,z)} f(x, y, z)\, dy\, dx\, dz.$$

† This formula is (∗) taken one step further. Usually we skip the double-integral stage and go directly to three integrals.

In this case we integrate first with respect to y, then with respect to x, and finally with respect to z. Still four other orders of integration are possible.

Example 1 Evaluate the expression $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \int_0^x \int_0^{4-x^2} xyz\,dz\,dy\,dx.$

SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^2 \int_0^x \int_0^{4-x^2} xyz\,dz\,dy\,dx &= \int_0^2 \int_0^x \left(\int_0^{4-x^2} xyz\,dz\right) dy\,dx \\
&= \int_0^2 \int_0^x \left(\left[\tfrac{1}{2}xyz^2\right]_0^{4-x^2}\right) dy\,dx \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^2 \int_0^x x(4-x^2)^2 y\,dy\,dx \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^2 \left(\int_0^x x(4-x^2)^2 y\,dy\right) dx \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^2 \left(\left[\tfrac{1}{2}x(4-x^2)^2 y^2\right]_0^x\right) dx \\
&= \tfrac{1}{4}\int_0^2 x^3(4-x^2)^2\,dx = \tfrac{1}{4}\int_0^2 x^3(16-8x^2+x^4)\,dx \\
&= \tfrac{1}{4}\left[4x^4 - \tfrac{8}{6}x^6 + \tfrac{1}{8}x^8\right]_0^2 = \tfrac{8}{3}. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Remark The solid determined by the limits of integration in Example 1 is the solid T in the first octant bounded by the parabolic cylinder $z = 4 - x^2$, the plane $z = 0$, the plane $y = x$, and the plane $y = 0$. This solid is shown in Figure 17.7.3. ❑

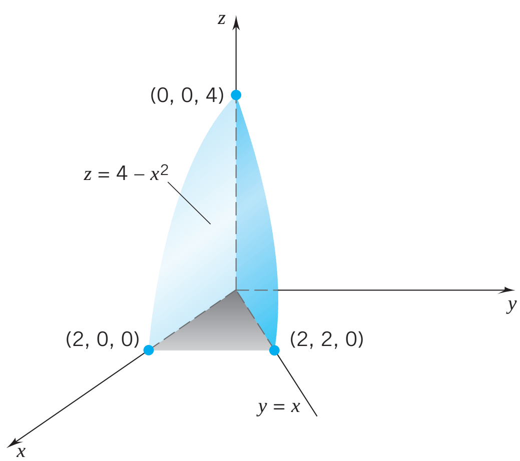


Figure 17.7.3

Example 2 Use triple integration to find the volume of the tetrahedron T shown in Figure 17.7.4. Then find the coordinates of the centroid.

SOLUTION The volume of T is given by the triple integral

$$V = \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz.$$

To evaluate this triple integral, we can project T onto any one of the three coordinate planes. We will project onto the xy-plane. The base region is then the triangular region

$$\Omega_{xy} : 0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 1 - x. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.7.5)}$$

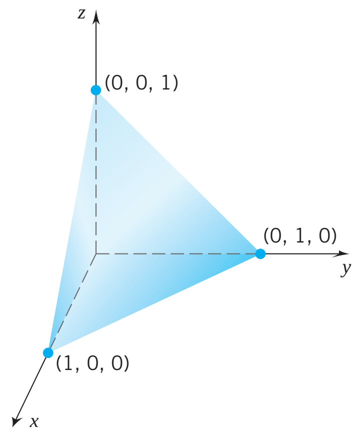


Figure 17.7.4

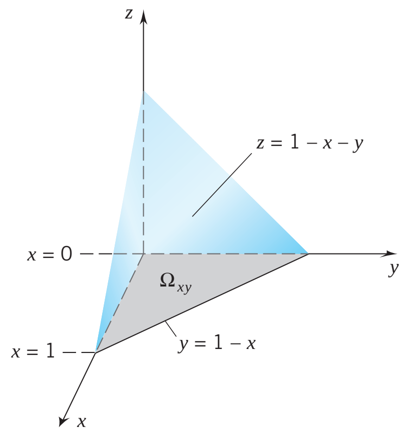


Figure 17.7.5

Since the inclined face is part of the plane $z = 1 - x - y$, we have T as the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$0 \leq x \leq 1, \qquad 0 \leq y \leq 1 - x, \qquad 0 \leq z \leq 1 - x - y.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} V = \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz &= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} \int_0^{1-x-y} dz\,dy\,dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} (1 - x - y)\,dy\,dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left[(1-x)y - \tfrac{1}{2}y^2\right]_0^{1-x} dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \tfrac{1}{2}(1-x)^2\,dx = \left[-\tfrac{1}{6}(1-x)^3\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{1}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

By symmetry, $\bar{x} = \bar{y} = \bar{z}$. We can calculate $\bar{x}$ as follows:

$$\bar{x}\,V = \iiint_T x\,dx\,dy\,dz = \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} \int_0^{1-x-y} x\,dz\,dy\,dx = \underbrace{\tfrac{1}{24}}_{}.$$

check this

Since $V = \frac{1}{6}$, we have $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{4}$. The centroid is the point $\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}\right)$. ❑

Example 3 Find the mass of a solid right circular cylinder of radius r and height h given that the mass density varies directly with distance from the lower base.

SOLUTION Call the solid T. In the setup of Figure 17.7.6, we can characterize T by the following inequalities:

$$-r \le x \le r, \qquad -\sqrt{r^2 - x^2} \le y \le \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}, \qquad 0 \le z \le h.$$

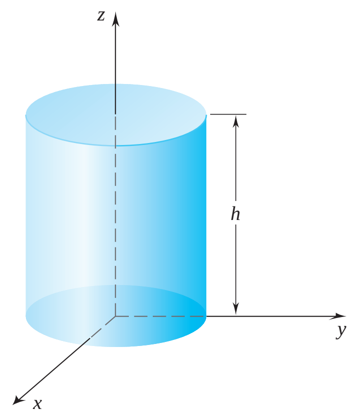


Figure 17.7.6

The first two inequalities define the base region Ω_{xy}. Since the density varies directly with the distance from the lower base, we have $\lambda(x, y, z) = kz$ where $k > 0$ is the constant of proportionality. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
M &= \iiint_T kz\,dx\,dy\,dz \\
&= \int_{-r}^{r} \int_{-\sqrt{r^2-x^2}}^{\sqrt{r^2-x^2}} \int_0^h kz\,dz\,dy\,dx \\
&= \int_{-r}^{r} \int_{-\sqrt{r^2-x^2}}^{\sqrt{r^2-x^2}} \tfrac{1}{2}kh^2\,dy\,dx \\
&= 4\int_0^r \int_0^{\sqrt{r^2-x^2}} \tfrac{1}{2}\,kh^2\,dy\,dx \qquad \text{(by the symmetry)} \\
&= 2kh^2 \int_0^r \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}\,dx. \\
&= 2kh^2 \underbrace{\int_0^r \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}\,dx}_{\text{area of quarter disk}} = 2kh^2\left(\tfrac{1}{4}\pi r^2\right) = \tfrac{1}{2}kh^2r^2\pi. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Remark In Example 3 we would have profited by not skipping the double-integral stage; namely, we could have written

$$\begin{aligned}
M &= \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \left(\int_0^h kz\,dz\right) dx\,dy = \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \tfrac{1}{2}kh^2 dx\,dy \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}kh^2(\text{area of } \Omega_{xy}) = \tfrac{1}{2}kh^2r^2\pi. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Example 4 Integrate $f(x, y, z) = yz$ over the first-octant solid bounded by the coordinate planes and the ellipsoid

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

SOLUTION Call the solid T. The upper boundary of T has equation

$$z = \psi(x, y) = \frac{c}{ab}\sqrt{a^2b^2 - b^2x^2 - a^2y^2}.$$

This surface intersects the xy-plane in the curve

$$y = \phi(x) = \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}.$$

We take

$$\Omega_{xy}: \quad 0 \le x \le a, \qquad 0 \le y \le \phi(x)$$

as the base region (see Figure 17.7.7) and characterize T as the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$0 \le x \le a, \qquad 0 \le y \le \phi(x), \qquad 0 \le z \le \psi(x, y).$$

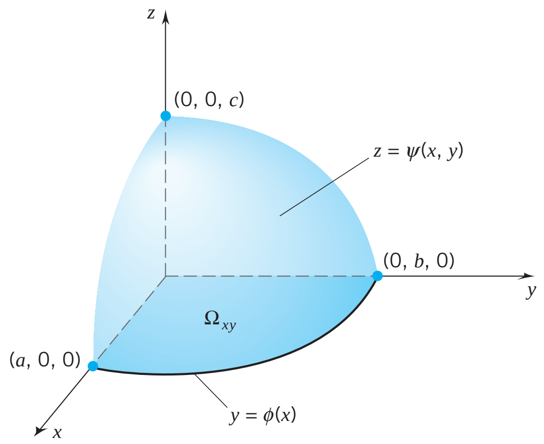


Figure 17.7.7

We can calculate the triple integral by evaluating

$$\int_0^a \int_0^{\phi(x)} \int_0^{\psi(x,y)} yz\ dz\,dy\,dx.$$

A straightforward (but somewhat lengthy) computation that you can carry out gives the answer of $\frac{1}{15}ab^2c^2$.

ANOTHER SOLUTION This time we carry out the integration in a different order. In Figure 17.7.8 you can see the same solid projected this time onto the yz-plane. In terms of y and z, the curved surface has equation

$$x = \Psi(y, z) = \frac{a}{bc}\sqrt{b^2c^2 - c^2y^2 - b^2z^2}.$$

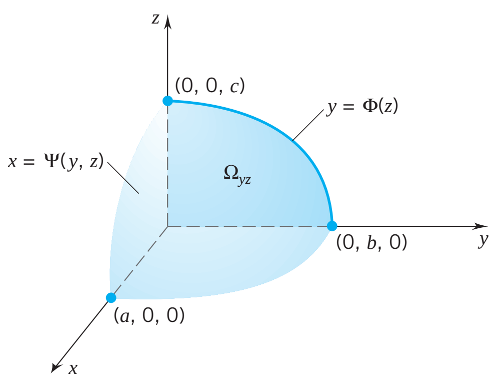


Figure 17.7.8

This surface intersects the yz-plane in the curve

$$y = \Phi(z) = \frac{b}{c}\sqrt{c^2 - z^2}.$$

We can take

$$\Omega_{yz}: \quad 0 \le z \le c, \quad 0 \le y \le \Phi(z)$$

as the base region and characterize T as the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$0 \le z \le c, \quad 0 \le y \le \Phi(z), \quad 0 \le x \le \Psi(y, z).$$

This leads to the repeated integral

$$\int_0^c \int_0^{\Phi(z)} \int_0^{\Psi(y,z)} yz \; dx\, dy\, dz,$$

which, as you can check, also gives $\frac{1}{15}ab^2c^2$. ❑

Example 5 Use triple integration to find the volume of the solid T bounded above by the parabolic cylinder $z = 4 - y^2$ and bounded below by the elliptic paraboloid $z = x^2 + 3y^2$.

SOLUTION Solving the two equations simultaneously, we have

$$4 - y^2 = x^2 + 3y^2 \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad x^2 + 4y^2 = 4.$$

This tells us that the two surfaces intersect in a space curve that lies on the elliptic cylinder $x^2 + 4y^2 = 4$. The projection of this intersection onto the xy-plane is the ellipse $x^2 + 4y^2 = 4$. (See Figure 17.7.9.)

The projection of T onto the xy-plane is the region

$$\Omega_{xy}: \quad -2 \le x \le 2, -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{4 - x^2} \le y \le \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{4 - x^2}.$$

The solid T is then the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$-2 \le x \le 2, \quad -\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{4 - x^2} \le y \le \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{4 - x^2}, \quad x^2 + 3y^2 \le z \le 4 - y^2.$$

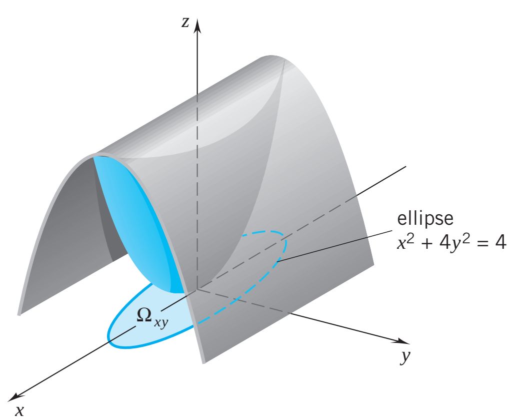


Figure 17.7.9

The volume of T is now easily obtained:

$$V = \int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4-x^2}}^{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4-x^2}} \int_{x^2+3y^2}^{4-y^2} dz\, dy\, dx$$

$$= 4 \int_0^2 \int_0^{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4-x^2}} \int_{x^2+3y^2}^{4-y^2} dz\, dy\, dx = 4\pi. \;❑$$

explain ↑   ↑ check this

EXERCISES 17.7

Exercises 1–10. Evaluate.

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^a \int_0^b \int_0^c dx\,dy\,dz.$ **2.** $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_0^x \int_0^y y\;dz\,dy\,dx.$

3. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_1^{2y} \int_0^x (x+2z)\,dz\,dx\,dy.$

4. $\displaystyle\int_0^1 \int_{1-x}^{1+x} \int_0^{xy} 4z\,dz\,dy\,dx.$

5. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \int_{-1}^1 \int_1^3 (z-xy)\,dz\,dy\,dx.$

6. $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \int_{-1}^1 \int_1^3 (z-xz)\,dy\,dx\,dz.$

7. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^1 \int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} x\cos z\;dy\,dx\,dz.$

8. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^2 \int_1^{y-2} \int_e^{e^2} \frac{x+y}{z}\,dz\,dx\,dy.$

9. $\displaystyle\int_1^2 \int_y^{y^2} \int_0^{\ln x} y\,e^z\,dz\,dx\,dy.$

10. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^1 e^z\cos x\sin y\;dz\,dy\,dx.$

11. (*Separated variables over a box*) Set $\Pi : a_1 \le x \le a_2$, $b_1 \le y \le b_2$, $c_1 \le z \le c_2$. Show that, if f is continuous on $[a_1, a_2]$, g is continuous on $[b_1, b_2]$, and h is continuous on $[c_1, c_2]$, then

(17.7.2)
$$\boxed{\iiint_\Pi f(x)g(y)h(z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = \left(\int_{a_1}^{a_2} f(x)\,dx\right)\left(\int_{b_1}^{b_2} g(y)\,dy\right)\left(\int_{c_1}^{c_2} h(z)\,dz\right).}$$

Exercises 12–13. Evaluate the triple integral, taking $\Pi : 0 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le 2,\ 0 \le z \le 3.$

12. $\displaystyle\iiint_\Pi x^3y^2z\,dx\,dy\,dz.$ **13.** $\displaystyle\iiint_\Pi x^2y^2z^2\,dx\,dy\,dz.$

Exercises 14–16. The mass density of the box $\Pi : 0 \le x \le a$, $0 \le y \le b,\ 0 \le z \le c$ varies directly as the product xyz.

14. Calculate the mass of Π.

15. Locate the center of mass.

16. Determine the moment of inertia of Π about: (a) the vertical line that passes through the point (a,b,c); (b) the vertical line that passes through the center of mass.

Exercises 17–20. A homogeneous solid T of mass M consists of all points (x,y,z) with $0 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le 1, 0 \le z \le 1-y$.

17. Sketch T. **18.** Find the volume of T.

19. Locate the center of mass.

20. Find the moments of inertia of T about the coordinate axes.

Exercises 21–26. Express by repeated integrals. Do not evaluate.

21. The mass of a ball $x^2+y^2+z^2 \le r^2$ given that the density varies directly with the distance from the outer shell.

22. The mass of the solid bounded above by $z=1$ and bounded below by $z=\sqrt{x^2+y^2}$ given that the density varies directly with the distance from the origin. Identify the solid.

23. The volume of the solid bounded above by the parabolic cylinder $z=1-y^2$, below by the plane $2x+3y+z+10=0$, and on the sides by the circular cylinder $x^2+y^2-x=0$.

24. The volume of the solid bounded above by the paraboloid $z=4-x^2-y^2$ and bounded below by the parabolic cylinder $z=2+y^2$.

25. The mass of the solid bounded by the elliptic paraboloids $z=4-x^2-\frac{1}{4}y^2$ and $z=3x^2+\frac{1}{4}y^2$ given that the density varies directly with the vertical distance from the lower surface.

26. The mass of the solid bounded by the paraboloid $x=z^2+2y^2$ and the parabolic cylinder $x=4-z^2$ given that the density varies directly with the distance from the z-axis.

Exercises 27–32. Evaluate the triple integral.

27. $\displaystyle\iiint_T (x^2z+y)\,dx\,dy\,dz$ where T is the solid bounded by the planes $x=0, x=1, y=1, y=3, z=0, z=2$.

28. $\displaystyle\iiint_T 2ye^x\,dx\,dy\,dz.$ where T is the solid given by $0 \le y \le 1,\ 0 \le x \le y,\ 0 \le z \le x+y.$

29. $\displaystyle\iiint_T x^2y^2z^2\,dx\,dy\,dz$, where T is the solid bounded by the planes $z=y+1,\ y+z=1,\ x=0, x=1,\ z=0.$

30. $\displaystyle\iiint_T xy\,dx\,dy\,dz$ where T is the first-octant solid bounded by the coordinate planes and the upper half of the sphere $x^2+y^2+z^2=4$.

31. $\displaystyle\iiint_T y^2\,dx\,dy\,dz$ where T is the tetrahedron in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the plane $2x+3y+z=6$.

32. $\displaystyle\iiint_T y^2\,dx\,dy\,dz$ where T is the solid in the first octant bounded by the cylinders $x^2+y=1,\ z^2+y=1.$

33. Find the volume of the first-octant solid bounded by the planes $z=x,\ y-x=2$, and the cylinder $y=x^2$. Where is the centroid?

34. Find the mass of a block in the shape of a unit cube given that the density varies directly (a) with the distance from one

of the faces; (b) with the square of the distance from one of the vertices.

35. Find the volume and the centroid of the solid bounded above by the cylindrical surface $x^2 + z = 4$, below by plane $x + z = 2$, and on the sides by the planes $y = 0$ and $y = 3$.

36. Show that, if $(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{z})$ is the centroid of a solid T, then

$$\iiint_T (x - \bar{x})\,dx\,dy\,dz = 0,$$

$$\iiint_T (y - \bar{y})\,dx\,dy\,dz = 0,$$

$$\iiint_T (z - \bar{z})\,dx\,dy\,dz = 0.$$

37. Taking a, b, c as positive, find the volume of the tetrahedron with vertices $(0, 0, 0)$, $(a, 0, 0)$, $(0, b, 0)$, $(0, 0, c)$. Where is the centroid?

38. A homogeneous solid of mass M in the form and position of the tetrahedron of Figure 17.7.4 rotates about the z-axis. Find the moment of inertia I_z.

39. A homogeneous box of mass M occupies the set of all points (x, y, z) where

$$0 \le x \le a, \qquad 0 \le y \le b, \qquad 0 \le z \le c.$$

Calculate the moment of inertia of the box

(a) about the z-axis;

(b) about the line that passes through the center of the box and is parallel to the z-axis;

(c) about the line that passes through the center of the $x = 0$ face and is parallel to the z-axis.

40. Where is the centroid of the solid bounded above by the plane $z = 1 + x + y$, below by the plane $z = -2$, and on the sides by the planes $x = 1$, $x = 2$, $y = 1$, $y = 2$?

41. Let T be the solid bounded above by the plane $z = y$, below by the xy-plane, on the sides by the planes $x = 0$, $x = 1$, $y = 1$. Find the mass of T given that the density varies directly with the square of the distance from the origin. Where is the center of mass?

42. What can you conclude about T given that

$$\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = 0$$

(a) for every continuous function f that is odd in x?

(b) for every continuous function f that is odd in y?

(c) for every continuous function f that is odd in z?

(d) for every continuous function f that satisfies the relation $f(-x, -y, -z) = -f(x, y, z)$?

43. (a) Integrate $f(x, y, z) = x + y^3 + z$ over the unit ball centered at the origin.

(b) Integrate $f(x, y, z) = a_1x + a_2y + a_3z + a_4$ over the unit ball centered at the origin.

44. Integrate $f(x, y, z) = x^2y^2$ over the solid bounded above by the cylinder $y^2 + z = 4$, below by the plane $y + z = 2$, and on the sides by the planes $x = 0$ and $x = 2$.

45. Use triple integrals to find the volume enclosed by the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$.

46. Use triple integrals to find the volume enclosed by the ellipsoid

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

47. Find the mass of the solid in Example 5 given that the density varies directly with $|x|$.

48. Find the volume of the solid bounded by the paraboloids $z = 2 - x^2 - y^2$ and $z = x^2 + y^2$.

49. Find the mass and the center of mass of the solid of Exercise 35 given that the density varies directly with $1 + y$.

50. Let T be a solid with volume

$$V = \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz = \int_0^2 \int_0^{9-x^2} \int_0^{2-x} dz\,dy\,dx.$$

Sketch T and fill in the blanks.

(a) $V = \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dy\,dx\,dz.$

(b) $V = \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dy\,dz\,dx.$

(c) $V = \int_0^5 \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dz\,dx\,dy + \int_5^9 \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dz\,dx\,dy.$

51. Let T be a solid with volume

$$V = \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz = \int_0^3 \int_0^{6-x} \int_0^{2x} dz\,dy\,dx.$$

Sketch T and fill in the blanks.

(a) $V = \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dy\,dx\,dz.$

(b) $V = \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dy\,dz\,dx.$

(c) $V = \int_0^6 \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dx\,dy\,dz + \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square \int_\square^\square dx\,dy\,dz.$

Exercises 52–54. Let V be the volume of the solid T enclosed by the parabolic cylinder $y = 4 - z^2$ and the cylinder $y = |x|$. Let Ω_{xy}, Ω_{yz}, Ω_{xz} be the projections of T onto the xy-, yz-, and xz-planes, respectively. Fill in the blanks.

52. (a) $V = \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \square\,dx\,dy.$

(b) $V = \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \left(\int_\square^\square dz\right) dx\,dy.$

(c) $V = \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dz\, dy\, dx.$

(d) $V = \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dz\, dx\, dy.$

53. (a) $V = \iint\limits_{\Omega_{yz}} \square\, dy\, dz.$

(b) $V = \iint\limits_{\Omega_{yz}} \left(\int_{\square}^{\square} dx \right) dy\, dz.$

(c) $V = \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dx\, dz\, dy.$

(d) $V = \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dx\, dy\, dz.$

54. (a) $V = \iint\limits_{\Omega_{xz}} \square\, dx\, dz.$

(b) $V = \iint\limits_{\Omega_{xz}} \left(\int_{\square}^{\square} dy \right) dx\, dz.$

(c) $V = \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dy\, dx\, dz.$

(d) $V = \int_{-2}^{0} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dy\, dz\, dx + \int_{0}^{2} \int_{\square}^{\square} \int_{\square}^{\square} dy\, dz\, dx.$

55. Use a CAS to evaluate the triple integrals.

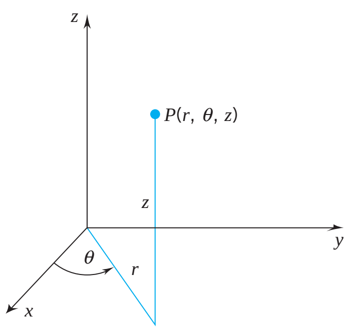
(a) $\int_{2}^{4} \int_{3}^{5} \int_{1}^{2} \frac{\ln xy}{z}\, dz\, dy\, dx.$

(b) $\int_{0}^{4} \int_{1}^{2} \int_{0}^{3} x\sqrt{yz}\, dz\, dy\, dx.$

56. Use a CAS to find the volume of the solid bounded by the *xy*-plane, the *yz*-plane, the plane $3x + 6y - 2z = 6$, and the elliptic paraboloid $y = 36 - 9x^2 - 4z^2$.

■ 17.8 CYLINDRICAL COORDINATES

Introduction to Cylindrical Coordinates



cylindrical coordinates (r, θ, z): $r \geq 0$, $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$, z real

Figure 17.8.1

The cylindrical coordinates (r, θ, z) of a point P in xyz-space are shown geometrically in Figure 17.8.1. The first two coordinates, r and θ, are the usual plane polar coordinates except that r is taken to be nonnegative and θ is restricted to the interval $[0, 2\pi]$.† The third coordinate is the third rectangular coordinate z.

In rectangular coordinates, the coordinate surfaces

$$x = x_0, \qquad y = y_0, \qquad z = z_0$$

are three mutually perpendicular planes. In cylindrical coordinates, the coordinate surfaces take the form

$$r = r_0, \qquad \theta = \theta_0, \qquad z = z_0. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.8.2)}$$

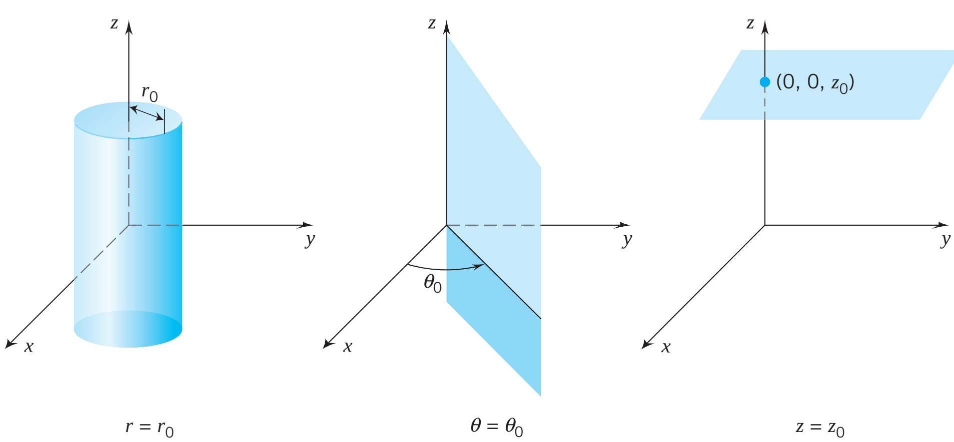


Figure 17.8.2

†By allowing θ to take on both 0 and 2π, we lose uniqueness but we gain flexibility and convenience.

The surface $r = r_0$ is a right circular cylinder of radius r_0. The central axis of the cylinder is the z-axis. The surface $\theta = \theta_0$ is a vertical half-plane hinged at the z-axis. The plane stands at an angle of θ_0 radians from the positive x-axis. The last coordinate surface is the plane $z = z_0$.

The point P with rectangular coordinates (x_0, y_0, z_0) lies on the plane $x = x_0$, on the plane $y = y_0$, and on the plane $z = z_0$. P is at the intersection of these three planes.

The point P with cylindrical coordinates (r_0, θ_0, z_0) lies on the cylinder $r = r_0$, on the vertical half-plane $\theta = \theta_0$, and on the horizontal plane $z = z_0$. P is at the intersection of these three surfaces.

Changing from cylindrical coordinates to rectangular coordinates is easy:

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta, \qquad z = z.$$

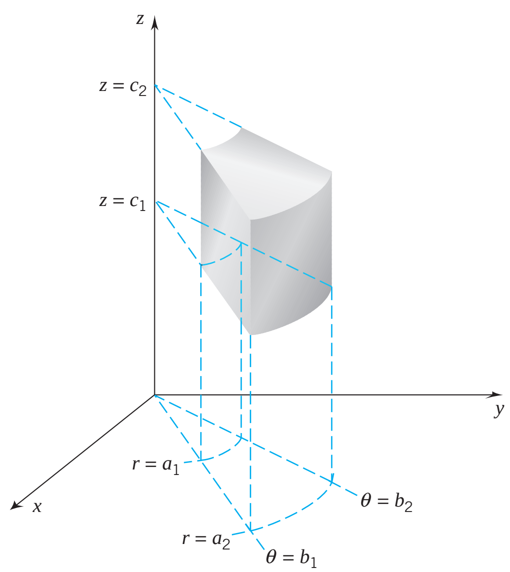
Changing from rectangular coordinates to cylindrical coordinates requires more care:

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \qquad \tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}, \qquad z = z$$

except for cases where $x = 0$. Points where $x = 0$ require case-by-case attention. (Exercises 17–20.)

The solids in xyz-space easiest to describe in cylindrical coordinates are the *cylindrical wedges*. Such a wedge is pictured in Figure 17.8.3. The wedge consists of all points (x, y, z) with cylindrical coordinates (r, θ, z) in the box

$$\Pi: \quad a_1 \le r \le a_2, \qquad b_1 \le \theta \le b_2, \qquad c_1 \le z \le c_2.$$



a cylindrical wedge

Figure 17.8.3

Evaluating Triple Integrals Using Cylindrical Coordinates

Suppose that T is some basic solid in xyz-space, not necessarily a wedge. If T is the set of all (x, y, z) with cylindrical coordinates in some basic solid S in

$r\theta z$-space, then

(17.8.1) $$\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_S f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta, z)\,r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz.$$

DERIVATION OF (17.8.1) We will carry out the argument on the assumption that T is projectable onto some basic region Ω_{xy} of the xy-plane. (It is for such solids that the formula is most useful.) T has some lower boundary $z = \psi_1(x, y)$ and some upper boundary $z = \psi_2(x, y)$. T is then the set of all (x, y, z) with

$$(x, y) \in \Omega_{xy} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \psi_1(x, y) \leq z \leq \psi_2(x, y).$$

The region Ω_{xy} has polar coordinates in some set $\Omega_{r\theta}$ (which we assume is a basic region). Then S is the set of all (r, θ, z) with

$$[r, \theta] \in \Omega_{r\theta} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \psi_1(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta) \leq z \leq \psi_2(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta).$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz &= \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \left(\int_{\psi_1(x,y)}^{\psi_2(x,y)} f(x, y, z)\,dz\right) dx\,dy \\
&\underset{(17.4.3)}{=} \iint_{\Omega_{r\theta}} \left(\int_{\psi_1(r\cos\theta,\, r\sin\theta)}^{\psi_2(r\cos\theta,\, r\sin\theta)} f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta, z)\,dz\right) r\,dr\,d\theta \\
&= \iiint_S f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta, z)\,r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Volume Formula

If $f(x, y, z) = 1$ for all (x, y, z) in T, then (17.8.1) reduces to

$$\iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_S r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz.$$

The triple integral on the left is the volume of T. In summary, if T is a basic solid in xyz-space and the cylindrical coordinates of T constitute a basic solid S in $r\theta z$-space, then the volume of T is given by the formula

(17.8.2) $$V = \iiint_S r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz.$$

Calculations

Cylindrical coordinates are particularly useful in cases where there is an axis of symmetry. The axis of symmetry is then taken as the z-axis.

Example 1 Use cylindrical coordinates to calculate

$$\iiint_T (x^2 + y^2)\, dx\, dy\, dz$$

for

$$T: \quad -2 \le x \le 2, \; -\sqrt{4 - x^2} \le y \le \sqrt{4 - x^2}, \; 0 \le z \le 4 - x^2 - y^2.$$

SOLUTION The solid is bounded above by the paraboloid of revolution $z = 4 - x^2 - y^2$ and below by the xy-plane. (See Figure 17.8.4.) Since the solid is symmetric about the z-axis, the solid has a simpler representation in cylindrical coordinates:

$$S: \quad 0 \le r \le 2, \; 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \; 0 \le z \le 4 - r^2.$$

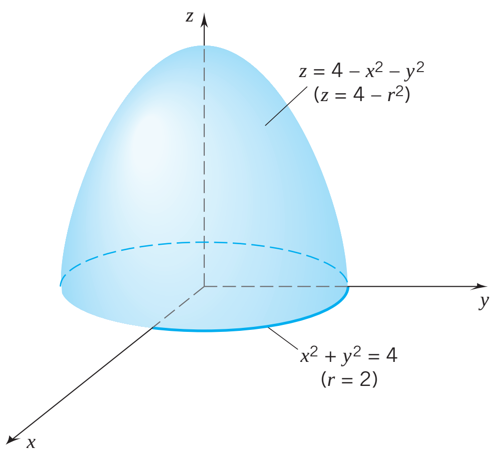


Figure 17.8.4

Now we can replace the integral over T by an integral over S:

$$\iiint_T (x^2 + y^2)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \iiint_S r^2\, r\, dr\, d\theta\, dz = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^2 \int_0^{4-r^2} r^3\, dz\, dr\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^2 \left[r^3 z \right]_0^{4-r^2} dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^2 (4r^3 - r^5)\, dr\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \left[r^4 - \tfrac{1}{6} r^6 \right]_0^2 d\theta$$

$$= \tfrac{16}{3} \int_0^{2\pi} d\theta = \tfrac{32}{3}\pi. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Find the mass of a solid right circular cylinder T of radius R and height h given that the density varies directly with the distance from the axis of the cylinder.

SOLUTION Place the cylinder T on the xy-plane so that the axis of T coincides with the z-axis. The density function then takes the form $\lambda(x, y, z) = k\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, and T consists of all points (x, y, z) with cylindrical coordinates (r, θ, z) in the set

$$S: \quad 0 \le r \le R, \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \quad 0 \le z \le h.$$

Therefore

$$M = \iiint_T k\sqrt{x^2+y^2}\,dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_S (kr)\,r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz$$

$$= k\int_0^R \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^h r^2\,dz\,d\theta\,dr = \tfrac{2}{3}k\pi R^3 h. \quad ❑$$

check this

Example 3 Use cylindrical coordinates to find the volume of the solid T bounded above by the plane $z = y$ and below by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$.

SOLUTION In cylindrical coordinates the plane has equation $z = r\sin\theta$ and the paraboloid has equation $z = r^2$. Solving these two equations simultaneously, we have $r = \sin\theta$. This tells us that the two surfaces intersect in a space curve that lies along the circular cylinder $r = \sin\theta$. The projection of this intersection onto the xy-plane is the circle with polar equation $r = \sin\theta$. (See Figure 17.8.5.) The base region Ω_{xy} is thus the set of all (x, y) with polar coordinates in the set

$$0 \le \theta \le \pi, \qquad 0 \le r \le \sin\theta.$$

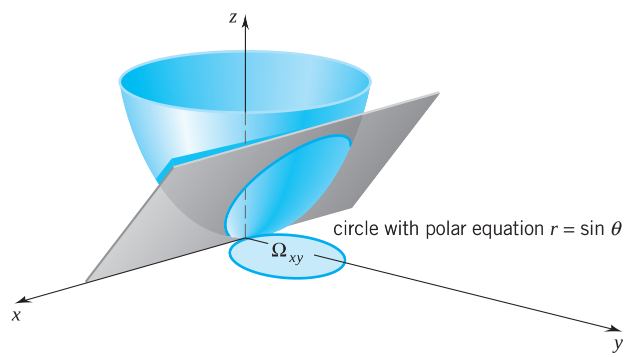


Figure 17.8.5

T itself is the set of all (x, y, z) with cylindrical coordinates in the set

$$S:\quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi, \quad 0 \le r \le \sin\theta, \quad r^2 \le z \le r\sin\theta. \qquad \text{(check this)}$$

Therefore,

$$V = \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_S r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz$$

$$= \int_0^\pi \int_0^{\sin\theta} \int_{r^2}^{r\sin\theta} r\,dz\,dr\,d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^\pi \int_0^{\sin\theta} (r^2\sin\theta - r^3)\,dr\,d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^\pi \left[\tfrac{1}{3}r^3\sin\theta - \tfrac{1}{4}r^4\right]_0^{\sin\theta} d\theta$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{12}\int_0^\pi \sin^4\theta\,d\theta = \tfrac{1}{12}(\tfrac{3}{8}\pi) = \tfrac{1}{32}\pi. \quad ❑$$

(Section 8.3)

Example 4 Locate the centroid of the solid in Example 3.

SOLUTION Since T is symmetric about the yz-plane, we see that $\bar{x} = 0$. To get $\bar{y}$ we begin as usual:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{y}V = \iiint_T y\,dx\,dy\,dz &= \iiint_S (r\sin\theta)\,r\;dr\,d\theta\,dz \\
&= \int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{\sin\theta}\int_{r^2}^{r\sin\theta} r^2\sin\theta\,dz\,dr\;d\theta \\
&= \int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{\sin\theta} (r^3\sin^2\theta - r^4\sin\theta)\,dr\;d\theta \\
&= \int_0^{\pi}\left[\tfrac{1}{4}r^4\sin^2\theta - \tfrac{1}{5}r^5\sin\theta\right]_0^{\sin\theta} d\theta \\
&= \tfrac{1}{20}\int_0^{\pi}\sin^6\theta\,d\theta = \tfrac{1}{20}\left(\tfrac{5}{16}\pi\right) = \tfrac{1}{64}\pi.
\end{aligned}
$$

(Section 8.3)

Since $V = \frac{1}{32}\pi$, we have $\bar{y} = \frac{1}{2}$. Now for $\bar{z}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{z}V &= \iiint_T z\,dx\,dy\,dz \\
&= \iiint_S zr\;dr\,d\theta\,dz \\
&= \int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{\sin\theta}\int_{r^2}^{r\sin\theta} zr\,dz\,dr\;d\theta = \cdots = \tfrac{1}{24}\int_0^{\pi}\sin^6\theta\,d\theta = \tfrac{1}{24}\left(\tfrac{5}{16}\pi\right) = \tfrac{5}{384}\pi.
\end{aligned}
$$

Details are left to you

Division by $V = \frac{1}{32}\pi$ gives $\bar{z} = \frac{5}{12}$. The centroid is thus the point $(0, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{12})$. ❑

EXERCISES 17.8

Exercises 1–6. Express in cylindrical coordinates and sketch the surface.

1. $x^2 + y^2 = z^2 = 9$.

2. $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

3. $z = 2\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

4. $x = 4z$.

5. $4x^2 + 4y^2 - z^2 = 0$.

6. $y^2 + z^2 = 8$.

Exercises 7–10. The volume of a solid T is given in cylindrical coordinates. Sketch T and evaluate the repeated integral.

7. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{4-r^2} r\,dz\,dr\;d\theta.$

8. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{1}\int_0^{\sqrt{1-r^2}} r\,dz\,dr\;d\theta.$

9. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{r^2} r\,dz\,dr\;d\theta.$

10. $\displaystyle\int_0^{3}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_r^{3} r\;dz\,d\theta\,dr.$

Exercises 11–16. Evaluate using cylindrical coordinates.

11. $\displaystyle\iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz;\quad T: 0 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2},$ $0 \le z \le \sqrt{4 - (x^2 + y^2)}$.

12. $\displaystyle\iiint_T z^3\,dx\,dy\,dz;\quad T: -1 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2},$ $\sqrt{x^2+y^2} \le z \le 1$.

13. $\displaystyle\iiint_T \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}\,dx\,dy\,dz;\quad T: 0 \le x \le \sqrt{9-y^2},$ $0 \le y \le 3,\ 0 \le z \le \sqrt{9-(x^2-y^2)}$.

14. $\iiint_T z\,dx\,dy\,dz$; $\quad T: 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2}$,
$0 \le z \le \sqrt{1-x^2-y^2}$.

15. $\iiint_T \sin(x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy\,dz$; $\quad T: 0 \le x \le 1$,
$0 \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2}, 0 \le z \le 2$.

16. $\iiint_T \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\,dx\,dy\,dz$; $\quad T: -1 \le x \le 1$,
$-\sqrt{1-x^2} \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2}, x^2+y^2 \le z \le 2-(x^2+y^2)$.

Exercises 17–20. Equations

$$r = \sqrt{x^2+y^2}, \qquad \tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}, \qquad z = z$$

do not assign cylindrical coordinates to the points (x, y, z) where $x = 0$. Find cylindrical coordinates for the point with the given rectangular coordinates.

17. $x = 0, y = 1, z = 2$. **18.** $x = 0, y = 1, z = -2$.

19. $x = 0, y = -1, z = 2$. **20.** $x = 0, y = 0, z = 0$.

21. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the cone $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$. Take $a > 0$.

22. Find the volume of the solid bounded by the paraboloid of revolution $x^2 + y^2 = az$, the xy-plane, and the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$. Take $a > 0$.

23. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the surface $z = a - \sqrt{x^2+y^2}$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = ax$. Take $a > 0$.

24. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the plane $2z = 4 + x$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 2x$.

25. Find the volume of the solid bounded by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ and the plane $z = x$.

26. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 25$ and below by $z = \sqrt{x^2+y^2} + 1$.

27. Find the volume of the "ice cream cone" bounded below by the half-cone $z = \sqrt{3(x^2+y^2)}$ and above by the unit sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

28. Find the volume of the solid bounded by the hyperboloid $z^2 = a^2 + x^2 + y^2$ and by the upper nappe of the cone $z^2 = 2(x^2 + y^2)$.

29. Find the volume of the solid that is bounded below by the xy-plane and lies inside the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 9$ but outside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

30. Find the volume of the solid that lies between the cylinders $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and $x^2 + y^2 = 4$, and is bounded above by the ellipsoid $x^2 + y^2 + 4z^2 = 36$ and below by the xy-plane.

For Exercises 31–33 let T be a solid right circular cylinder of base radius R and height h. Assume that the mass density varies directly with the distance from one of the bases.

31. Use cylindrical coordinates to find the mass M of T.

32. Locate the center of mass of T.

33. Find the moment of inertia of T about the axis of the cylinder.

34. Let T be a homogeneous right circular cylinder of mass M, base radius R, and height h. Find the moment of inertia of the cylinder about: (a) the central axis; (b) a line that lies in the plane of one of the bases and passes through the center of that base; (c) a line that passes through the center of the cylinder and is parallel to the bases.

For Exercises 35–38 let T be a homogeneous solid right circular cone of mass M, base radius R, and height h.

35. Use cylindrical coordinates to verify that the volume of the cone is given by the formula $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi R^2 h$.

36. Locate the center of mass.

37. Find the moment of inertia about the axis of the cone.

38. Find the moment of inertia about a line that passes through the vertex and is parallel to the base.

For Exercises 39–41 let T be the solid bounded above by the paraboloid $z = 1 - (x^2 + y^2)$ and bounded below by the xy-plane.

39. Use cylindrical coordinates to find the volume of T.

40. Find the mass of T if the density varies directly with the distance from the xy-plane.

41. Find the mass of T if the density varies directly with the square of the distance from the origin.

17.9 THE TRIPLE INTEGRAL AS THE LIMIT OF RIEMANN SUMS; SPHERICAL COORDINATES

The Triple Integral as the Limit of Riemann Sums

You have seen that single integrals and double integrals can be obtained as limits of Riemann sums. The same holds true for triple integrals.

Start with a basic solid T in xyz-space and decompose it into a finite number of basic solids $T_1 \ldots, T_n$. If f is continuous on T, then f is continuous on each T_i. From each T_i pick an arbitrary point (x_i^*, y_i^*, z_i^*) and form the *Riemann sum*

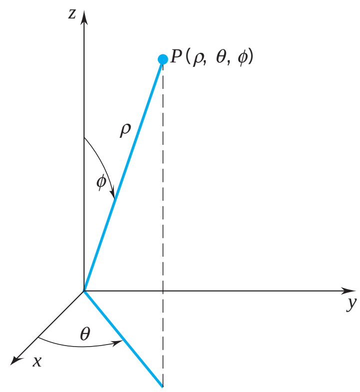
$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*, z_i^*)(\text{volume of } T_i).$$

As you would expect, the triple integral over T is the limit of such sums; namely, given any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that, if the diameters of the T_i are all less than δ, then

$$\left| \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*, z_i^*)(\text{volume of } T_i) - \iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz \right| < \epsilon$$

no matter how the (x_i^*, y_i^*, z_i^*) are chosen within the T_i. We express this by writing

(17.9.1) $$\boxed{\iiint_T f(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz = \lim_{\text{diam} T_i \to 0} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*, z_i^*)(\text{volume of } T_i).}$$



spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ):
$\rho \geq 0,\ 0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi,\ 0 \leq \phi \leq \pi$

Figure 17.9.1

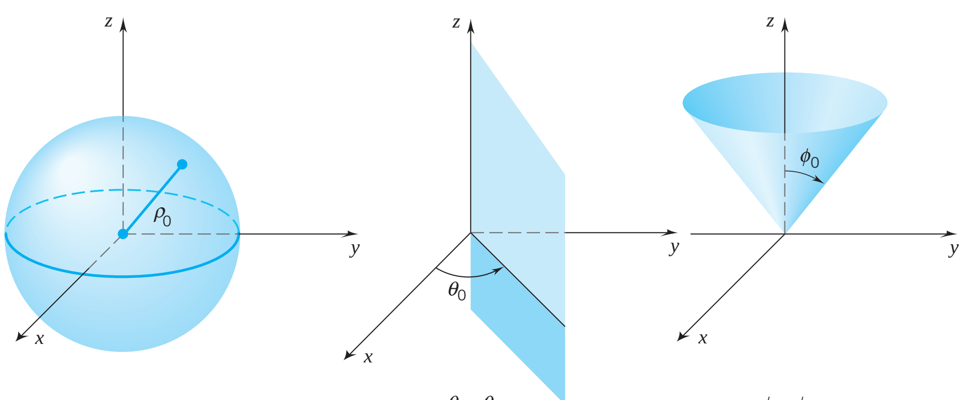
Introduction to Spherical Coordinates

The spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ) of a point P in xyz-space are shown geometrically in Figure 17.9.1. The first coordinate ρ is the distance from P to the origin; thus $\rho \geq 0$. The second coordinate, the angle marked θ, is the second coordinate of cylindrical coordinates; θ ranges from 0 to 2π. We call θ the *longitude*. The third coordinate, the angle marked ϕ, ranges only from 0 to π. We call ϕ the *colatitude*, or more simply the *polar angle*. (The complement of ϕ would be the *latitude* on a globe.)

The coordinate surfaces

$$\rho = \rho_0, \qquad \theta = \theta_0, \qquad \phi = \phi_0$$

are shown in Figure 17.9.2. The surface $\rho = \rho_0$ is a sphere; the radius is ρ_0 and the center is the origin. The second surface, $\theta = \theta_0$, is the same as in cylindrical coordinates: the vertical half-plane hinged at the z-axis and standing at an angle of θ_0 radians from the positive x-axis. The surface $\phi = \phi_0$ requires detailed explanation. If $0 < \phi_0 < \frac{1}{2}\pi$ or $\frac{1}{2}\pi < \phi_0 < \pi$, the surface is the nappe of a cone; it is generated by revolving about the z-axis any ray that emerges from the origin at an angle of ϕ_0 radians from the positive z-axis. The surface $\phi = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ is the xy-plane. (The nappe of the cone has opened up



$\rho = \rho_0$ constant distance from the origin

$\theta = \theta_0$ constant longitude

$\phi = \phi_0$ constant polar angle

Figure 17.9.2

completely.) The equation $\phi = 0$ gives the nonnegative z-axis, and the equation $\phi = \pi$ gives the nonpositive z-axis. (When $\phi = 0$ or $\phi = \pi$, the nappe of the cone has closed up completely.)

The point P with spherical coordinates $(\rho_0, \theta_0, \phi_0)$ is located at the intersection of the three surfaces $\rho = \rho_0$, $\theta = \theta_0$, $\phi = \phi_0$.

Rectangular coordinates (x, y, z) are related to spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ) by the following equations:

$$x = \rho \sin\phi \cos\theta, \qquad y = \rho \sin\phi \sin\theta, \qquad z = \rho \cos\phi.$$

You can verify these relations by referring to Figure 17.9.3. (Note that the factor $\rho \sin\phi$ appearing in the first two equations is the r of cylindrical coordinates: $r = \rho \sin\phi$.) Conversely, excluding the points where $x = 0$, we have

$$\rho = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}, \qquad \tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}, \qquad \cos\phi = \frac{z}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}.$$

The Volume of a Spherical Wedge

Figure 17.9.4 shows a *spherical wedge* W in xyz-space. The wedge W consists of all points (x, y, z) which have spherical coordinates in the box

$$\Pi: \quad a_1 \le \rho \le a_2, \qquad b_1 \le \theta \le b_2, \qquad c_1 \le \phi \le c_2.$$

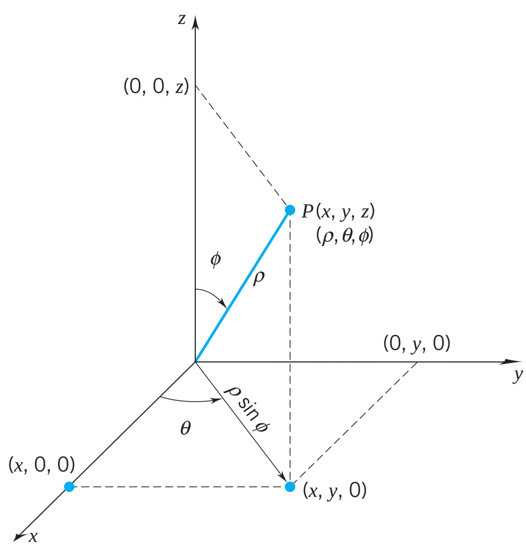
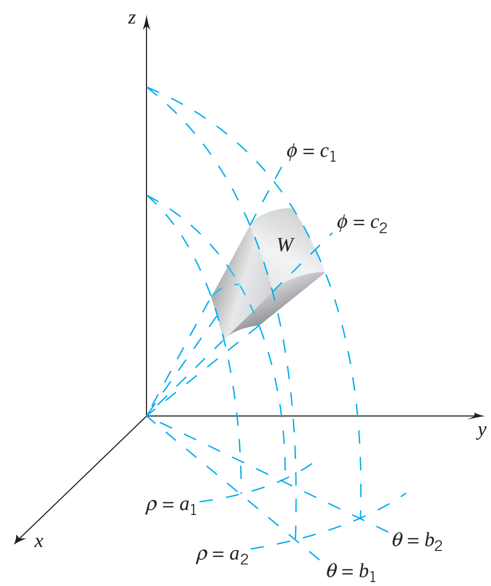


Figure 17.9.3



a spherical wedge

Figure 17.9.4

The volume of this wedge is given by the formula

(17.9.2) $$\boxed{V = \iiint_{\Pi} \rho^2 \sin\phi \; d\rho \, d\theta \, d\phi.}$$

PROOF Note first that W is part of a solid of revolution. One way to obtain W is to rotate the $\theta = b_1$ face of W, call it Ω, about the z-axis for $b_2 - b_1$ radians. (See Figure 17.9.4.) On that face ρ and $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\pi - \phi$ play the role of polar coordinates. (See Figure 17.9.5.) In the setup of Figure 17.9.5 the face Ω is the set of all (X, z) with polar coordinates $[\rho, \alpha]$ in the set $\Gamma : a_1 \le \rho \le a_2,\ \frac{1}{2}\pi - c_2 \le \alpha \le \frac{1}{2}\pi - c_1$. The centroid of Ω is at a distance $\overline{X}$ from the z-axis where

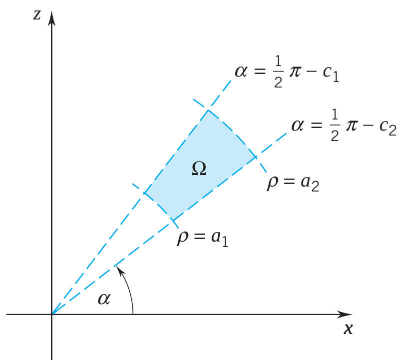


Figure 17.9.5

$$\overline{X}(\text{area of } \Omega) \iint_{\Omega} X\, dX dz = \iint_{\Gamma} \rho^2 \cos\alpha \, d\rho d\alpha$$

This follow from (17.4.3) together with the fact that here $[\rho, \alpha]$ play the role of polar coordinates.

$$= \left(\int_{a_1}^{a_2} \rho^2 d\rho\right)\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}\pi - c_2}^{\frac{1}{2}\pi - c_1} \cos\alpha \, d\alpha\right)$$

$$= \left(\int_{a_1}^{a_2} \rho^2 d\rho\right)\left(\int_{c_1}^{c_2} \sin\phi \, d\phi\right).$$

$\phi = \frac{1}{2}\pi - \alpha$

As the face Ω is rotated from $\theta = b_1$ to $\theta = b_2$, the centroid travels through a circular arc of length

$$s = (b_2 - b_1)\overline{X} = (b_2 - b_1)\frac{1}{\text{area of } \Omega}\left(\int_{a_1}^{a_2} \rho^2 d\rho\right)\left(\int_{c_1}^{c_2} \sin\phi \, d\phi\right).$$

From Pappus's theorem on volumes, we know that

$$\text{the volume of } W = s(\text{area of } \Omega) = (b_2 - b_1)\left(\int_{a_1}^{a_2} \rho^2 d\rho\right)(\sin\phi \, d\phi)$$

$$= \left(\int_{b_1}^{b_2} d\theta\right)\left(\int_{a_1}^{a_2} \rho^2 d\rho\right)\left(\int_{c_1}^{c_2} \sin\phi \, d\phi\right)$$

$$= \int_{a_1}^{a_2} \int_{b_1}^{b_2} \int_{c_1}^{c_2} \rho^2 \sin\phi \, d\phi \, d\theta \, d\rho$$

$$= \iiint_{\Pi} \rho^2 \sin\phi \, d\rho d\theta d\phi. \quad \square$$

Evaluating Triple Integrals Using Spherical Coordinates

Suppose that T is a basic solid in xyz-space with spherical coordinates in some basic solid S of $\rho\theta\phi$-space. Then

(17.9.3)
$$\boxed{\begin{gathered}\iiint\limits_T f(x,y,z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = \\ \iiint\limits_S f(\rho\sin\phi\cos\theta,\ \rho\sin\phi\sin\theta,\ \rho\cos\phi)\,\rho^2\sin\phi\ d\rho d\theta d\phi.\end{gathered}}$$

DERIVATION OF (17.9.3) Assume first that T is a spherical wedge W. The solid S is then a box Π. Now decompose Π into n boxes $\Pi_1, \ldots, \Pi_n$. This induces a subdivision of W into n spherical wedges $W_1, \ldots, W_n$.

Writing $F(\rho,\theta,\phi)$ for $f(\rho\sin\phi\cos\theta,\ \rho\sin\phi\sin\theta,\ \rho\cos\phi)$ to save space, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\iiint\limits_\Pi F(\rho,\theta,\phi)\,\rho^2\sin\phi\ d\rho d\theta d\phi &= \sum_{i=1}^n \iiint\limits_{\Pi_i} F(\rho,\theta,\phi)\,\rho^2\sin\phi\ d\rho d\theta d\phi \\
\text{additivity} \qquad & \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n F(\rho_i^*,\theta_i^*,\phi_i^*) \iiint\limits_{\Pi_i} \rho^2\sin\phi\ d\rho d\theta d\phi \\
\text{for some } (\rho_i^*,\theta_i^*,\phi_i^*) \in \Pi_i \text{ (by 17.6.5)} \qquad & \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n F(\rho_i^*,\theta_i^*,\phi_i^*)\,(\text{volume of } W_i) \\
\text{(17.9.2) applied to} \Pi_i \qquad & \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i^*,y_i^*,z_i^*)\,(\text{volume of } W_i). \\
x_i^* = \rho_i^*\sin\phi_i^*\cos_i^*,\ y_i^* = \rho_i^*,\sin\phi_i^*\sin\theta_i^*,\ z_i^* = \rho_i^*\cos\phi_i^* \qquad &
\end{aligned}$$

This last expression is a Riemann sum for

$$\iiint\limits_W f(x,y,z)\,dx\,dy\,dz$$

and, as such, by (17.9.1), will differ from that integral by less than any preassigned positive number ϵ provided only that the diameters of all the W_i are sufficiently small. This we can guarantee by making the diameters of all the Π_i sufficiently small.

This verifies the formula for the case where T is a spherical wedge. The more general case is left to you. HINT: Encase T in a wedge W and define f to be zero outside of T. ❑

Volume Formula

If $f(x,y,z) = 1$ for all (x,y,z) in T, then the change-of-variables formula reduces to

$$\iiint\limits_T dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint\limits_S \rho^2\sin\phi\ d\rho d\theta d\phi.$$

The integral on the left is the volume of T. It follows that the volume of T is given by the formula

(17.9.4)
$$\boxed{V = \iiint\limits_S \rho^2 \sin\phi \, d\rho \, d\theta \, d\phi.}$$

Calculations

Spherical coordinates are commonly used in applications where there is a center of symmetry. The center of symmetry is then taken as the origin.

Example 1 Calculate the mass M of a solid ball of radius 1 given that the density varies directly with the square of the distance from the center of the ball.

SOLUTION Center the ball at the origin. The ball, call it T, is now the set of all (x, y, z) with spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ) in the box

$$S: \quad 0 \le \rho \le 1, \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \quad 0 \le \phi \le \pi. \qquad \text{(Figure 17.9.6)}$$

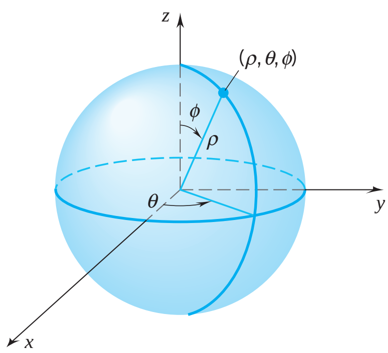


Figure 17.9.6

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \iiint\limits_T k(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\, dx\, dy\, dz \\ &= \iiint\limits_S (k\rho^2)\,\rho^2 \sin\phi \, d\rho\, d\theta\, d\phi = k\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^1 \rho^4 \sin\phi \, d\rho\, d\theta\, d\phi \\ &= k\left(\int_0^{\pi} \sin\phi \, d\phi\right)\left(\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\right)\left(\int_0^1 \rho^4 d\rho\right) = k(2)(2\pi)(\tfrac{1}{5}) = \tfrac{4}{5}k\pi. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the cone $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$, below by the xy-plane, and on the sides by the hemisphere $z = \sqrt{4 - x^2 - y^2}$. (See Figure 17.9.7.)

SOLUTION Call the solid T. In terms of spherical coordinates, the hemisphere is given by $\rho = 2$, $0 \le \phi \le \pi/2$. As you can verify, the hemisphere and the cone intersect in a circle which lies on the plane $z = \sqrt{2}$ and is centered on the z-axis. For points on

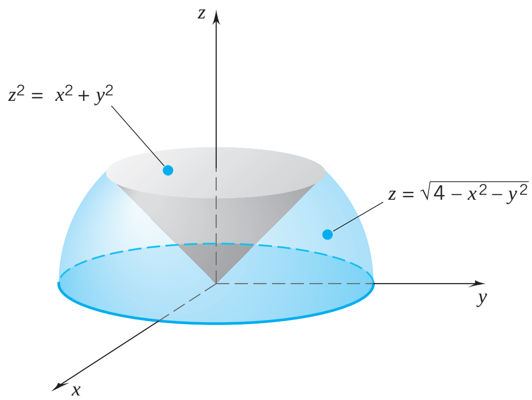


Figure 17.9.7

this circle, the angle ϕ is $\pi/4$. (Verify this.) It follows that the solid T is the set of all (x, y, z) with spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ) in the set

$$S: \quad 0 \le \rho \le 2, \qquad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \qquad \pi/4 \le \phi \le \pi/2.$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_S \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta \\ &= \int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^2 \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\theta\, d\phi = \left(\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \sin\phi\, d\phi\right)\left(\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\right)\left(\int_0^2 \rho^2 d\rho\right) \\ &= (\sqrt{2}/2)(2\pi)(\tfrac{8}{3}) = \frac{8\pi\sqrt{2}}{3} \cong 11.85. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

Example 3 Find the volume of the solid T enclosed by the surface

$$(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^2 = 2z(x^2 + y^2).$$

SOLUTION In spherical coordinates the bounding surface takes the form

$$\rho = 2\sin^2\phi\cos\phi. \qquad \text{(check this out)}$$

This equation places no restriction on θ; thus θ can range from 0 to 2π. Since ρ remains nonnegative, ϕ can range only from 0 to $\frac{1}{2}\phi$. Thus the solid T is the set of all (x, y, z) with spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ) in the set

$$S: \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \qquad 0 \le \phi \le \tfrac{1}{2}\pi, \qquad 0 \le \rho \le 2\sin^2\phi\cos\phi.$$

The rest is straightforward:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_S \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\theta\, d\phi \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{2\sin^2\phi\cos\phi} \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} \tfrac{8}{3}\sin^7\phi\cos^3\phi\, d\phi\, d\theta \\ &= \tfrac{8}{3}\left(\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\right)\left(\int_0^{\pi/2} (\sin^7\phi\cos\phi - \sin^9\phi\cos\phi)\, d\phi\right) \\ &= \tfrac{8}{3}(2\pi)(\tfrac{1}{40}) = \tfrac{2}{15}\pi \cong 0.42. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

EXERCISES 17.9

1. Find the spherical coordinates (ρ, θ, ϕ) of the point with rectangular coordinates (1, 1, 1).

2. Find the rectangular coordinates of the point with spherical coordinates $\left(2, \frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{1}{4}\pi\right)$.

3. Find the rectangular coordinates of the point with spherical coordinates $\left(3, \frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{1}{6}\pi\right)$.

4. Find the spherical coordinates of the point with cylindrical coordinates $\left(2, \frac{2}{3}\pi, 6\right)$.

5. Find the spherical coordinates of the point with rectangular coordinates $\left(2, 2, \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{6}\right)$.

6. Find the spherical coordinates of the point with rectangular coordinates $(2\sqrt{2}, -2\sqrt{2}, -4\sqrt{3})$.

7. Find the rectangular coordinates of the point with spherical coordinates $(3, \pi/2, 0)$.

8. Find the spherical coordinates of the point with rectangular coordinates (a) (0, 3, 4), (b) (0, − 3, 4).

Exercises 9–14. Equations are given in spherical coordinates. Interpret each one geometrically.

9. $\rho \sin\phi = 1$.

10. $\sin\phi = 1$.

11. $\cos\phi = -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$.

12. $\tan\theta = 1$.

13. $\rho\cos\phi = 1$.

14. $\rho = \cos\phi$.

Exercises 15–18. Each expression represents the volume of a solid as calculated in spherical coordinates. Sketch the solid and carry out the integration.

15. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{2} \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta.$

16. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^{1} \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta.$

17. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2}\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^{3} \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\theta\, d\phi.$

18. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\sec\varphi} \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\theta\, d\phi.$

Exercises 19–22. Evaluate using spherical coordinates.

19. $\displaystyle\iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz;\quad T: 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2},$

$\sqrt{x^2+y^2} \le z \le \sqrt{2-(x^2+y^2)}.$

20. $\displaystyle\iiint_T (x^2+y^2+z^2)\,dx\,dy\,dz;$

$T: 0 \le x \le \sqrt{4-y^2}, 0 \le y \le 2,$

$\sqrt{x^2+y^2} \le z \le \sqrt{4-x^2-y^2}.$

21. $\displaystyle\iiint_T z\sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}\,dx\,dy\,dz;$

$T: 0 \le x \le \sqrt{9-y^2}, 0 \le y \le 3,$

$0 \le z \le \sqrt{9-(x^2+y^2)}.$

22. $\displaystyle\iiint_T \frac{1}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)}\,dx\,dy\,dz;$

$T: 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le \sqrt{1-x^2},$

$0 \le z \le \sqrt{1-x^2-y^2}.$

23. Derive the formula for the volume of a sphere of radius R using spherical coordinates.

24. Express cylindrical coordinates in terms of spherical coordinates.

25. A wedge is cut from a ball of radius R by two planes that meet in a diameter. Find the volume of the wedge if the angle between the planes is α radians.

26. Find the mass of a ball of radius R given that the density varies directly with the distance from the boundary.

27. Find the mass of a right circular cone of base radius r and height h given that the density varies directly with the distance from the vertex.

28. Use spherical coordinates to dervie the formula for the volume of a right circular cone of base radius r and height h.

For Exercises 29 and 30 let T be a homogeneous ball of mass M and radius R.

29. Calculate the moment of inertia (a) about a diameter; (b) about a tangent line.

30. Locate the center of mass of the upper half given that the center of the ball is at the origin.

For Exercises 31 and 32, let T be a homogeneous solid bounded by two concentric spherical shells, an outer shell of radius R_2, and an inner shell of radius R_1.

31. (a) Calculate the moment of inertia about a diameter.
(b) Use your result in part (a) to determine the moment of inertia of a spherical shell of radius R and mass M about a diameter.
(c) What is the moment of inertia of that same shell about a tangent line?

32. (a) Locate the center of mass of the upper half of T given that the center of T is at the origin.
(b) Use your result in part (a) to locate the center of mass of a homogeneous hemispherical shell of radius R.

33. Find the volume of the solid common to the sphere $\rho = a$ and the cone $\phi = \alpha$. Take $\alpha \in \left(0, \frac{1}{2}\pi\right)$.

34. Let T be the solid bounded below by the half-cone $z = \sqrt{x^2+y^2}$ and above by the spherical surface

$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$. Use spherical coordinates to evaluate

$$\iiint_T e^{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{3/2}}\,dx\,dy\,dz.$$

35. (a) Find an equation in spherical coordinates for the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + (z - R)^2 = R^2$.
(b) Express the upper half of the ball $x^2 + y^2 + (z - R)^2 \le R^2$ by inequalities in spherical coordinates.

36. Find the mass of the ball $\rho \le 2R\cos\phi$ given that the density varies directly (a) with ρ; (b) with $\rho\sin\phi$; (c) with $\rho\cos^2\theta\sin\phi$.

37. Find the volume of the solid common to the spheres $\rho = 2\sqrt{2}\cos\phi$ and $\rho = 2$.

38. Find the volume of the solid enclosed by the surface $\rho = 1 - \cos\phi$.

39. Finish the derivation begun for (17.9.3).

40. (*Gravitational attraction*) Let T be a basic solid and let (a, b, c) be a point not in T. Show that, if T has continuously varying mass density $\lambda = \lambda(x, y, z)$, then T attracts a point mass m at (a, b, c) with a force

$$\mathbf{F} = \iiint_T Gm\lambda\,(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{f}\,(x, y, z)\,dx\,dy\,dz, \text{ where}$$

$$\mathbf{f}\,(x, y, z) = \frac{[(x-a)\,\mathbf{i} + (y-b)\,\mathbf{j} + (z-c)\,\mathbf{k}]}{[(x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 + (z-c)^2]^{3/2}}.$$

[Assume that a point mass m_1 at P_1 attracts a point mass m_2 at P_2 with a force $\mathbf{F} = -(Gm_1m_2/r^3)\mathbf{r}$, where $\mathbf{r}$ is the vector $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$. Interpret the triple integral component by component.]

41. Let T be the upper half of the ball $x^2 + y^2 + (z - R)^2 \le R^2$. Given that T is homogeneous and has mass M, find the gravitational force exerted by T on a point mass m located at the origin. (Note Exercise 40.)

42. A point mass m is placed on the axis of a homogeneous solid right circular cylinder at a distance α from the nearest base of the cylinder. Find the gravitational force exerted by the cylinder on the point mass given that the cylinder has base radius R, height h, and mass M. (Note Exercise 40.)

■ 17.10 JACOBIANS; CHANGING VARIABLES IN MULTIPLE INTEGRATION

During the course of the last few sections you have met several formulas for changing variables in multiple integration: to polar coordinates, to cylindrical coordinates, to spherical coordinates. The purpose of this section is to bring some unity into that material and provide an overall view of the change-of-variables process.

We begin with a consideration of area. Figure 17.10.1 shows a basic region Γ in a plane that we are calling the uv-plane. (In this plane we denote the abscissa of a point by u and the ordinate by v.) Suppose that

$$x = x(u, v), \qquad y = y(u, v)$$

are continuously differentiable functions on the region Γ. As (u, v) ranges over Γ, the point (x, y), $(x(u, v), y(u, v))$ generates a region Ω in the xy-plane. If the mapping

$$(u, v) \to (x, y)$$

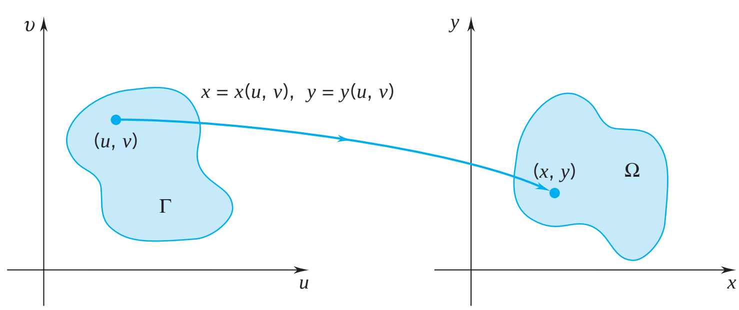


Figure 17.10.1

is one-to-one on the interior of Γ, and the *Jacobian*

$$J(u,v) = \begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial u} \\[2mm] \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial v} \end{vmatrix} = \frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\frac{\partial y}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial x}{\partial v}\frac{\partial y}{\partial u},$$

is never zero on the interior of Γ, then

(17.10.1)
$$\boxed{\text{area of } \Omega = \iint_{\Gamma} |J(u,v)|\, du dv.}$$

It is very difficult to prove this assertion without making additional assumptions. A proof valid for all cases of practical interest is given in the supplement to Section 18.5. At this point we simply assume this area formula and go on from there.

Suppose now that we want to integrate some continuous function $f = f(x, y)$ over Ω. If this proves difficult to do directly, then we can change variables to u, v and try to integrate over Γ instead. It follows from (17.10.1) that

(17.10.2)
$$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} f(x,y)\, dx\, dy = \iint_{\Gamma} f(x(u,v), y(u,v)\, |J(u,v)|\, du dv.}$$

The derivation of this formula from (17.10.1) follows the usual lines. Break up Γ into n little basic regions $\Gamma_1, \ldots, \Gamma_n$. These induce a decomposition of Ω into n little basic regions $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$. We can then write

$$\begin{aligned}
\iint_{\Gamma} f(x(u,v), y(u,v))|J(u,v)|du dv &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \iint_{\Gamma_i} f(x(u,v), y(u,v))\, |J(u,v)|\, du dv \\
&\uparrow \text{additivity} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x(u_i^*, v_i^*), y(u_i^*, v_i^*)) \iint_{\Gamma_i} |J(u,v)|\, du dv \\
&\uparrow \text{Theorem 17.2.10 applied to } \Gamma_i \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*) \iint_{\Gamma_i} |J(u,v)| du dv \\
&\uparrow \text{set } x_i^* = x(u_i^*, v_i^*),\ y_i^* = y(u_i^*, v_i^*) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i^*, y_i^*)(\text{area of } \Omega_i). \\
&\uparrow \text{(17.10.1) applied to } \Gamma_i
\end{aligned}$$

This last expression is a Riemann sum for

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x,y)\, dx\, dy$$

and tends to that integral as the maximum diameter of the Ω_i tends to zero. We can ensure this by letting the maximum diameter of the Γ_i tend to zero. ❑

Example 1 Evaluate

$$\iint_{\Omega} (x+y)^2\,dx\,dy$$

where Ω is the parallelogram bounded by the lines

$$x+y=0, \qquad x+y=1, \qquad 2x-y=0, \qquad 2x-y=3.$$

SOLUTION The parallelogram is shown in Figure 17.10.2. The boundaries suggest that we set

$$u=x+y, \qquad v=2x-y.$$

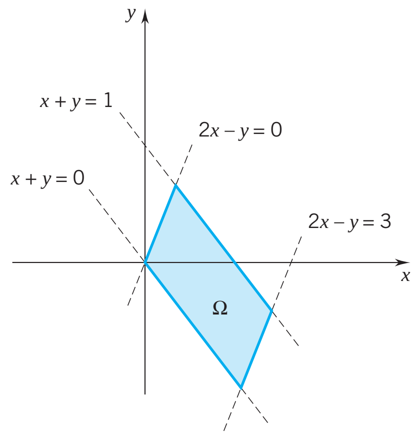


Figure 17.10.2

We want x and y in terms of u and v. Since

$$u+v=(x+y)+(2x-y)=3x \quad \text{and} \quad 2u-v=(2x+2y)-(2x-y)=3y,$$

we have

$$x=\frac{u+v}{3}, \qquad y=\frac{2u-v}{3}.$$

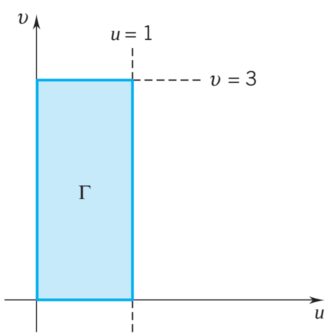


Figure 17.10.3

This transformation maps the rectangle Γ of Figure 17.10.3 onto Ω with Jacobian

$$J(u,v)=\begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial}{\partial u}\left(\dfrac{u+v}{3}\right) & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial u}\left(\dfrac{2u-v}{3}\right) \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial v}\left(\dfrac{u+v}{3}\right) & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial v}\left(\dfrac{2u-v}{3}\right) \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{vmatrix} = -\tfrac{1}{3}.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\iint_{\Omega} (x+y)^2\,dx\,dy &= \iint_{\Omega} u^2|J(u,v)|\,du\,dv \\ &= \tfrac{1}{3}\int_0^3\int_0^1 u^2\,du\,dv \\ &= \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\int_0^3 dv\right)\left(\int_0^1 u^2\,du\right) = \tfrac{1}{3}(3)\tfrac{1}{3} = \tfrac{1}{3}. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Evaluate

$$\iint_{\Omega} xy\,dx\,dy$$

where Ω is the first-quadrant region bounded by the curves

$$x^2 + y^2 = 4, \qquad x^2 + y^2 = 9, \qquad x^2 - y^2 = 1, \qquad x^2 - y^2 = 4.$$

SOLUTION The region is shown in Figure 17.10.4. The boundaries suggest that we set

$$u = x^2 + y^2, \qquad v = x^2 - y^2.$$

We want x and y in terms of u and v. Since

$$u + v = 2x^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad u - v = 2y^2,$$

we have

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{u+v}{2}}, \qquad y = \sqrt{\frac{u-v}{2}}.$$

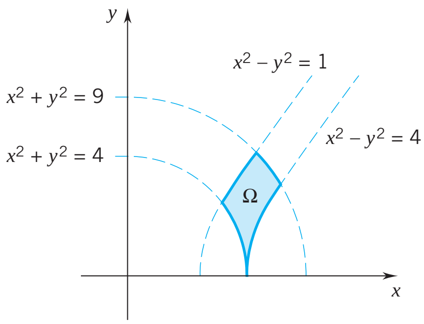


Figure 17.10.4

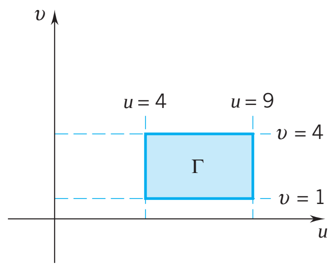


Figure 17.10.5

The transformation maps the rectangle Γ of Figure 17.10.5 onto Ω with Jacobian

$$J(u, v) = \begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial}{\partial u}\left(\sqrt{\dfrac{u+v}{2}}\right) & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial u}\left(\sqrt{\dfrac{u-v}{2}}\right) \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial v}\left(\sqrt{\dfrac{u+v}{2}}\right) & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial v}\left(\sqrt{\dfrac{u-v}{2}}\right) \end{vmatrix} \overset{\text{check this}}{=} -\frac{1}{4\sqrt{u^2 - v^2}}.$$

Therefore

$$\iint_{\Omega} xy\,dx\,dy = \iint_{\Gamma} \left(\sqrt{\frac{u+v}{2}}\right)\left(\sqrt{\frac{u-v}{2}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{u^2 - v^2}}\right) du\,dv$$

$$= \iint_{\Gamma} \frac{1}{8}\,du\,dv = \frac{1}{8}(\text{area of } \Gamma) = \frac{15}{8}. \quad ❑$$

In Section 17.4 you saw the formula for changing variables from rectangular coordinates (x, y) to polar coordinates $[r, \theta]$. The formula reads

$$\iint_{\Omega} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy = \iint_{\Gamma} f(r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)\,r\,dr\,d\theta. \qquad (17.4.3)$$

The factor r in the double integral over Γ is the Jacobian of the transformation $x = r\cos\theta$, $y = r\sin\theta$:

$$J(r,\theta) = \begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial}{\partial r}(r\cos\theta) & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial r}(r\sin\theta) \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial\theta}(r\cos\theta) & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial\theta}(r\sin\theta) \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ -r\sin\theta & r\cos\theta \end{vmatrix} = r(\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta) = r.$$

As you can see, (17.4.3) is a special case of (17.10.2).

When changing variables in a triple integral, we make three coordinate changes:

$$x = x(u,v,w), \qquad y = y(u,v,w) \qquad z = z(u,v,w).$$

If these functions carry a basic solid Γ onto a solid T, then, under conditions analogous to those in the two-dimensional case,

$$\text{volume of } T = \iiint_{\Gamma} |J(u,v,w)|\,du\,dv\,dw$$

where now the Jacobian† is a three-by-three determinant:

$$J(u,v,w) = \begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial u} \\ \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial v} \\ \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial w} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial w} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial w} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial v} \\ \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial w} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial w} \end{vmatrix} - \frac{\partial x}{\partial v}\begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial u} \\ \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial w} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial w} \end{vmatrix} + \frac{\partial x}{\partial w}\begin{vmatrix} \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial u} \\ \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial v} \end{vmatrix}$$

In this case the change of variables formula reads

$$\iiint_{T} f(x,y,z)\,dx\,dy\,dz = \iiint_{\Gamma} f(x(u,v,w), y(u,v,w), z(u,v,w))\,|J(u,v,w)|\,du\,dv\,dw.$$

†The study of these functional determinants goes back to a memoir by the German mathematician C.G. Jacobi, 1804–1851.

EXERCISES 17.10

Exercises 1–9. Find the Jacobian of the transformation.

1. $x = au + bv, \quad y = cu + dv$. (linear transformation)

2. $x = u\cos\theta - v\sin\theta$, $y = u\sin\theta + v\cos\theta$. (rotation by θ)

3. $x = uv, \quad y = u^2 + v^2$.

4. $x = u\ln v, \quad y = uv$.

5. $x = uv^2, \quad y = u^2v$.

6. $x = u - \ln v, \quad y = \ln u + v$.

7. $x = au$, $y = bv, \quad z = cw$.

8. $x = v + w, \quad y = u + w, \quad z = u + v$.

9. $x = (1 + w\cos v)\cos u, \quad y = (1 + w\cos v)\sin u$, $z = w\sin v$.

10. To change a triple integral in rectangular coordinates to a triple integral in cylindrical coordinates, we introduce the magnification factor r. (Formula 17.8.1.) Verify that

$$r = |J(r,\theta,z)|$$

where $J(r,\theta,z)$ is the Jacobian of the transformation

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta, \qquad z = z.$$

11. To change a triple integral in rectangular coordinates to a triple integral in spherical coordinates, we introduce the magnification factor $\rho^2 \sin\phi$. (Formula 17.9.3.) Verify that

$$\rho^2 \sin\phi = |J(\rho, \theta, \phi)|$$

where $J(\rho, \theta, \phi)$ is the Jacobian of the transformation

$$x = \rho \sin\phi \cos\theta, \qquad y = \rho \sin\phi \sin\theta, \qquad z = \rho \cos\phi.$$

12. Every linear transformation

$$x = au + bv, \qquad y = cu + dv \qquad \text{with} \qquad ad - bc \neq 0$$

maps lines of the uv-plane onto lines of the xy-plane. Find the image (a) of a vertical line $u = u_0$; (b) of a horizontal line $v = v_0$.

For Exercises 13–15, take Ω as the parallelogram bounded by

$$x + y = 0,\ x + y = 1,\ x - y = 0,\ x - y = 2.$$

Evaluate.

13. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega (x^2 - y^2)\, dx\, dy.$ **14.** $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega 4xy\, dx\, dy.$

15. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega (x - y) \cos\,[\pi(x - y)]\, dx\, dy.$

For Exercises 16–18 take Ω as the parallelogram bounded by

$$x - y = 0, \qquad x - y = \pi, \qquad x + 2y = 0, \qquad x + 2y = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi.$$

Evaluate.

16. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega (x + y)\, dx\, dy.$

17. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega \sin(x - y) \cos\,(x + 2y)\, dx\, dy.$

18. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega \sin 3x\, dx\, dy.$

19. Let Ω be the first-quadrant region bounded by the curves $xy = 1, xy = 4, y = x, y = 4x$. (a) Determine the area of Ω and (b) locate the centroid.

20. Show that the ellipse $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$ has area πab by setting $x = ar \cos\theta, y = br \sin\theta$.

21. A homogeneous plate in the xy-plane is in the form of a parallelogram. The parallelogram is bounded by the lines $x + y = 0, x + y = 1, 3x - 2y = 0, 3x - 2y = 2$. Calculate the moments of inertia of the plate about the three coordinate axes. Express your answers in terms of the mass of the plate.

22. Calculate the area of the region Ω bounded by the curves

$$x^2 - 2xy + y^2 + x + y = 0, \qquad x + y + 4 = 0.$$

HINT: Set $u = x - y, v = x + y$.

23. Calculate the area of the region Ω bounded by the curves

$$x^2 - 4xy + 4y^2 - 2x - y - 1 = 0, \qquad y = \tfrac{2}{5}.$$

24. Locate the centroid of the region of Exercise 22.

25. Calculate the area of the region Ω enclosed by the curve

$$11x^2 + 4\sqrt{3}xy + 7y^2 - 1 = 0.$$

HINT: Use a rotation $x = u \cos\theta - v \sin\theta$, $y = u \sin\theta + v \cos\theta$ such that the resulting uv-equation has no uv-term.

26. Evaluate

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-(x-y)^2}}{1 + (x + y)^2}\, dx\, dy$$

by integrating over the square $S_a : -a \leq x \leq a$, $-a \leq y \leq a$ and taking the limit as $a \to \infty$.
HINT: Set $u = x - y, v = x + y$ and see (17.4.4).

For Exercises 27–30 let T be the solid ellipsoid

$$x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 + z^2/c^2 \leq 1.$$

27. Calculate the volume of T by setting

$$x = a\rho \sin\phi \cos\theta,\ y = b\rho \sin\phi \sin\theta,\ z = c\rho \cos\phi.$$

28. Locate the centroid of the upper half of T.

29. View the upper half of T as a homogeneous solid of mass M. Find the moments of inertia of this solid about the coordinate axes.

30. Evaluate

$$\iiint_T \left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2}\right) dx\, dy\, dz.$$

■ PROJECT 17.10 Generalized Polar Coordinates

Recall the equations that transform polar coordinates to rectangular coordinates:

$$x = r \cos\theta, \qquad y = r \sin\theta.$$

In this project, we investigate a generalization of these equations, and we apply the generalized polar coordinates to the problem of finding the area of regions enclosed by curves given in rectangular coordinates.

Let a, b, and α be fixed positive numbers, and let (x, y) be related to (r, θ) by the equations

$$x = ar\ (\cos\theta)^\alpha, \qquad y = br\ (\sin\theta)^\alpha. \tag{1}$$

Problem 1.

a. Show that the mapping defined by (1) carries the polar region $\Gamma : 0 \leq r < \infty, 0 \leq \phi = \pi/2$ onto the first quadrant in the xy-plane. HINT: Find a point $[r, \theta]$ that maps onto (x, y) given that $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$.

b. Show that the mapping is one-to-one on the interior of Γ.

Problem 2. Determine the Jacobian of the mapping defined by (1).

Problem 3. The curve $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$, $a > 0$, is called an *astroid*.

a. Use a graphing utility to draw the astroid for several values of a.
b. Calculate the area enclosed by the astroid in the first quadrant by setting $x = ar\cos^3\theta$, $y = ar\sin^3\theta$.
c. What is the entire area enclosed by the astroid?

Problem 4. Consider the curve

$$\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^{1/4} + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{1/4} = 1.$$

a. Use a graphing utility to draw this curve in the cases $a = 3, b = 2$ and $a = 2, b = 3$.
b. Calculate the area enclosed by the curve in the first quadrant by setting $x = ar\cos^8\theta$, $y = br\sin^8\theta$.

CHAPTER 17. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–10. Evaluate.

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_y^{\sqrt{y}} xy^2\,dx\,dy.$ **2.** $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_{-y}^{y} e^{x+y}\,dx\,dy.$

3. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_x^{3x} 2ye^{x^3}\,dy\,dx.$ **4.** $\displaystyle\int_1^2\int_0^{\ln x} xe^y\,dy\,dx.$

5. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{2\sin\theta} r\cos\theta\,dr\,d\theta.$ **6.** $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^2\int_0^4\int_0^1 xyz\,dx\,dy\,dz.$

7. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_0^{2-3x}\int_0^{x+y} x\,dz\,dy\,dx.$

8. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_z^{\pi/2}\int_0^{\sin z} 3x^2\sin y\,dx\,dy\,dz.$

9. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/2}^0\int_0^{2\sin\theta}\int_0^{r^2} r^2\cos\theta\,dz\,dr\,d\theta.$

10. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/6}^{\pi/2}\int_0^{\pi/2}\int_0^1 \rho^3\sin\varphi\cos\varphi\,d\rho\,d\theta\,d\varphi.$

Exercises 11–14. Sketch the region that gives rise to the repeated integral, change the order of integration, and then evaluate.

11. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_y^1 e^{x^2}\,dx\,dy.$ **12.** $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_{\frac{1}{2}x}^1 \cos y^2\,dy\,dx.$

13. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-y^2}}\,dy\,dx.$

14. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{1-x} y\cos(x+y)\,dy\,dx.$

Exercises 15–22. Evaluate.

15. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega xy\,dx\,dy;\ \Omega: 0 \le x^2 + y^2 \le 1, \qquad x, y \ge 0.$

16. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega (x - y)\,dx\,dy$; Ω the region between the curves $y^2 = 3x$ and $y^2 = 4 - x$.

17. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega (x^2 - xy)\,dx\,dy$; Ω the region between the curves $y = x$ and $y = 3x - x^2$.

18. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega x(x - 1)e^{xy}\,dx\,dy$; Ω the triangular region in the first quadrant bounded by $x = 0$, $y = 0$, and $x + y = 2$.

19. $\displaystyle\iiint_T xyz\,dx\,dy\,dz$; T the solid bounded by the cylinder $z = 2 - y^2$ and the planes $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $y = x$.

20. $\displaystyle\iiint_T z\,dx\,dy\,dz$; T the solid bounded by the planes $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $z = 0$, $y + z = 1$, $x + z = 1$.

21. $\displaystyle\iiint_T xy\,dx\,dy\,dz$; T the solid in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the hemisphere $z = \sqrt{4 - x^2 - y^2}$.

22. $\displaystyle\iiint_T (x^2 + 2z)\,dx\,dy\,dz$; T the solid bounded by the planes $z = 0$ and $y + z = 4$, and the cylinder $y = x^2$.

Exercises 23–24. Use polar coordinates to evaluate the integral.

23. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_0^{\sqrt{4-y^2}} e^{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}\,dx\,dy.$

24. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^1\int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \arctan(y/x)\,dy\,dx.$

25. Find the volume of the solid bounded by the paraboloid $z = 9 - x^2 - y^2$ and the xy-plane.

26. Find the volume of the solid bounded above by the paraboloid $z = 2 - x^2 - y^2$ and below by the region between the curves $y = x^2$ and $x = y^2$ in the xy-plane.

27. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant bounded by $z = x^2 + y^2$, $x + y = 1$, and the coordinate planes.

28. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant bounded by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 9$ and the planes $z = y$ and $z = 0$.

Exercises 29–32. Find the mass and center of mass of the plate that occupies the region Ω and has mass density λ.

29. $\Omega: -\pi/2 \le x \le \pi/2,\ 0 \le y \le \cos x;\ \lambda(x, y) = y.$

30. Ω : the region between the curves $y = x$ and $y = \sqrt{x}$; $\lambda(x, y) = 2x$.

31. Ω: the region in the first quadrant between the circles $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ and $x^2 + y^2 = R^2$, $0 < r < R$; $\lambda(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$

32. Ω: the upper half of the cardioid $r = 2(1 + \cos\theta)$; λ is the distance to the pole.

33. A homogeneous plate is in the shape of an isosceles triangle of base b and height h.

(a) Find the centroid of the plate.

(b) Find the moment of inertia about the base.

(c) Find the moment of inertia about the axis of symmetry of the triangle.

34. A plate is in the shape of the upper half of the annular region between $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ and $x^2 + y^2 = R^2$, $0 < r < R$. The mass density is inversely proportional to the distance from the origin.

(a) Find the mass and center of mass of the plate.

(b) Find the moment of inertia about the x-axis.

(c) Find the moment of inertia about the y-axis.

Exercises 35–42. Use triple integrals to find the volume of the solid. Use rectangular, cylindrical, or spherical coordinates, whichever seems appropriate.

35. The solid bounded above by the plane $2x + 2y - z + 1 = 0$, on the sides by the planes $y = x$, $x = 2$, $y = 0$, and below by $z = 0$.

36. The solid bounded above by the paraboloid $z = 4x^2 + 4y^2$, below by the plane $z = -1$, and on the sides by the cylinders $y = x^2$ and $y = x$.

37. The solid bounded above by the elliptic paraboloid $z = 12 - x^2 - 2y^2$ and below by the elliptic paraboloid $z = 2x^2 + y^2$.

38. The solid in the first octant inside the cylinder $y^2 + z^2 = 1$ and bounded by the plane $2x + y + z = 2$.

39. The solid bounded above by the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ and below by the plane $z = 1$.

40. The solid in the first octant bounded by the cylinder $x^2 + z = 16$, the coordinate planes, and the plane $3x + 4y = 12$.

41. The solid that lies outside the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and inside the hemisphere $z = \sqrt{1 - x^2 - y^2}$.

42. The solid that lies above the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and below the hemisphere $z = \sqrt{1 - x^2 - y^2}$.

43. A homogeneous solid in the first octant is bounded by the cylinders $x^2 + z^2 = 1$ and $y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

(a) Find the centroid of the solid.

(b) Find I_z.

44. A homogeneous solid is bounded above by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and below by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$.

(a) Find the centroid of the solid.

(b) Find I_z.

45. A solid is in the shape of a right circular cylinder of height h and radius r. The mass density at each point P of the solid is equal to the square of the distance from P to the axis of the cylinder.

(a) Find the mass of the solid.

(b) Find the center of mass.

46. A solid is in the shape of a hemisphere of radius r. The mass density at each point P of the solid varies directly as the distance from P to the axis of the hemisphere.

(a) Find the mass of the solid.

(b) Find the center of mass.

47. A solid is bounded below by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and above by the plane $z = 1$. The mass density at each point P of the solid varies directly as the distance from P to the z-axis.

(a) Find the mass of the solid.

(b) Find the center of mass.

(c) Find I_z.

Exercises 48–50. Find the Jacobian of the transformation.

48. $x = u^2 - v^2$, $y = 2uv$.

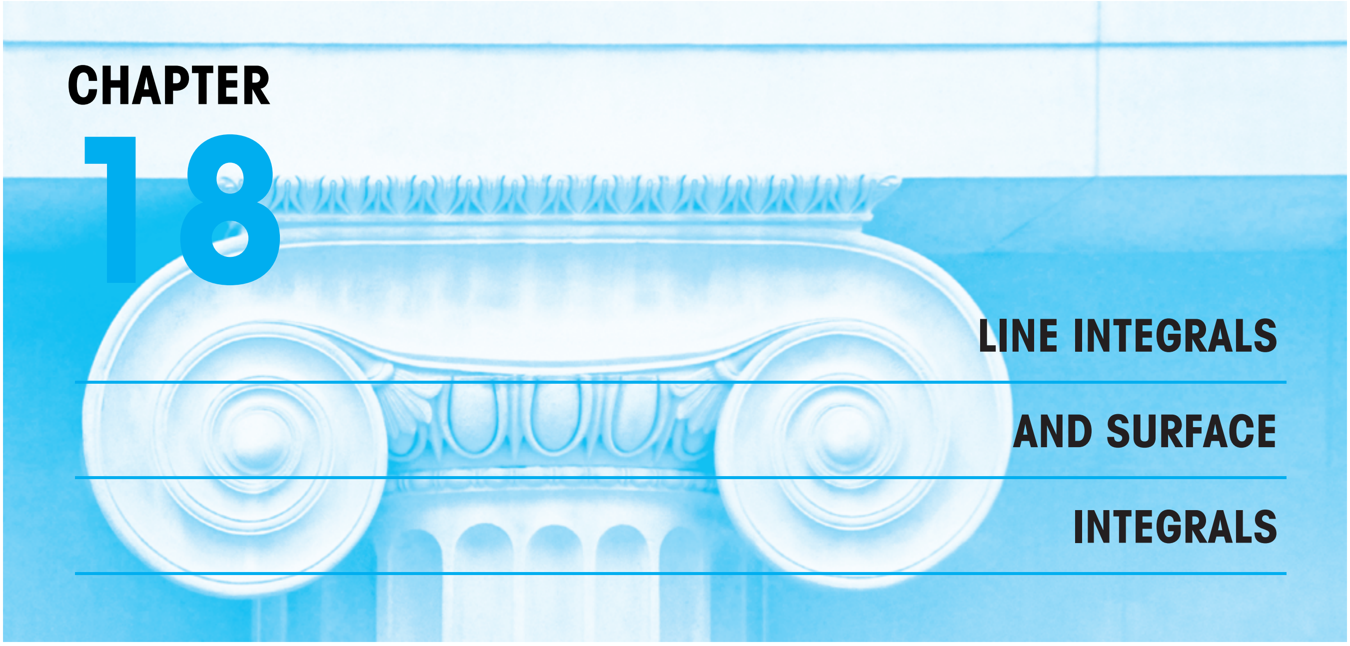
49. $x = e^u \cos v$, $y = e^u \sin v$.

50. $x = u^2 + 2vw$, $y = v^2 + 2uw$, $z = uvw$.

Exercises 51–52. Evaluate.

51. $\displaystyle\iint_\Omega \sin\left(\frac{y - x}{y + x}\right) dx\,dy$; Ω the region in the first quadrant bounded by the lines $x + y = 1$ and $x + y = 2$.
[Set $x = \frac{1}{2}(v - u)$, $y = \frac{1}{2}(v + u)$.]

52. $\displaystyle\iiint_T dx\,dy\,dz$; T the solid that lies between the paraboloids $z = x^2 + y^2$ and $z = 4x^2 + 4y^2$, and between the planes $z = 1$ and $z = 4$.
[Set $x = (r/u)\cos\theta$, $y = (r/u)\sin\theta$, $z = r^2$.]



CHAPTER 18

LINE INTEGRALS AND SURFACE INTEGRALS

In this chapter we will study integration over curves and integration over surfaces. At the heart of this subject lie three great integration theorems: *Green's theorem*, *Gauss's theorem* (commonly known as the *divergence theorem*), and *Stokes's theorem*.

All three theorems are ultimately based on *The Fundamental Theorem of Integral Calculus*, and all can be cast in the same general form:

$$\text{an integral over a set } S = \text{a related integral over the boundary of } S.$$

A word about terminology. Suppose that S is some subset of the plane or of three-dimensional space. A function that assigns a scalar to each point of S (say, the temperature at that point or the mass density at that point) is known in science as a *scalar field*. A function that assigns a vector to each point of S (say, the wind velocity at that point or the gradient of a function f at that point) is called a *vector field*. We will be using this "field" language throughout.

18.1 LINE INTEGRALS

We are led to the definition of *line integral* by the notion of work.

The Work Done by a Varying Force over a Curved Path

The work done by a constant force **F** on an object that moves along a straight line is, by definition, the component of **F** in the direction of the displacement multiplied by the length of the displacement vector **r** (Project 13.3):

$$W = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{d}}\, \mathbf{F})\|\mathbf{r}\|.$$

We can write this more briefly as a dot product:

(18.1.1) $$\boxed{W = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{r}}$$

This elementary notion of work is useful, but it is not sufficient. Consider, for example, an object that moves through a magnetic field or a gravitational field. The path of the motion is usually not a straight line but a curve, and the force, rather than remaining constant, tends to vary from point to point. What we want now is a notion of work that applies to this more general situation.

Let's suppose that an object moves along a curve

$$C : \mathbf{r}(u) = x(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [a, b]$$

subject to continuous force $\mathbf{F}$. (The vector field $\mathbf{F}$ may vary from point to point, not only in magnitude but also in direction.) We will suppose that the curve is *smooth*; namely, we will suppose that the tangent vector $\mathbf{r}'$ is continuous and never zero. What we want to do here is define the total work done by $\mathbf{F}$ along the curve C.

To decide how to do this, we begin by focusing on what happens over a short parameter interval $[u, u + h]$. As an estimate for the work done over this interval we can use the dot product

$$\mathbf{F}\,(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot [\mathbf{r}\,(u + h) - \mathbf{r}\,(u)].$$

In making this estimate, we are evaluating the force vector $\mathbf{F}$ at $\mathbf{r}\,(u)$ and we are replacing the curved path from $\mathbf{r}(u)$ to $\mathbf{r}(u + h)$ by the line segment from $\mathbf{r}\,(u)$ to $\mathbf{r}\,(u + h)$. (See Figure 18.1.1.) If we set

$$W(u) = \text{total work done by } \mathbf{F} \text{ from } \mathbf{r}\,(a) \text{ to } \mathbf{r}\,(u), \text{ and}$$

$$W(u + h) = \text{total work done by } \mathbf{F} \text{ from } \mathbf{r}\,(a) \text{ to } \mathbf{r}\,(u + h),$$

then the work done by $\mathbf{F}$ from $\mathbf{r}(u)$ to $\mathbf{r}\,(u + h)$ must be the difference

$$W(u + h) - W(u).$$

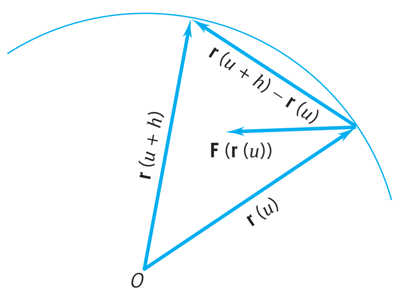


Figure 18.1.1

Bringing our estimate into play, we are led to the approximate equation

$$W(u + h) - W(u) \cong \mathbf{F}\,(\mathbf{r}\,(u)) \cdot [\mathbf{r}\,(u + h) - \mathbf{r}\,(u)],$$

which, upon division by h, becomes

$$\frac{W(u + h) - W(u)}{h} \cong \mathbf{F}\,(\mathbf{r}\,(u)) \cdot \frac{[\mathbf{r}\,(u + h) - \mathbf{r}\,(u)]}{h}.$$

The quotients here are average rates of change, and the equation is only an approximate one. The notion of work is made precise by requiring that both sides have exactly the same limit as h tends to zero; in other words, by requiring that

$$W'(u) = \mathbf{F}\,(\mathbf{r}\,(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u).$$

The rest is now determined. Since

$$W(a) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad W(b) = \text{total work done by } \mathbf{F} \text{ on } C,$$

we have:

$$\text{total work done by } \mathbf{F} \text{ on } C = W(b) - W(a) = \int_a^b W'(u)\,du = \int_a^b [\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du.$$

In short, we have arrived at the following notion of work:

(18.1.2) $$\boxed{W = \int_a^b [\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du.}$$

Example 1 Determine the work done by the force

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} + 4z\,\mathbf{k}$$

along the circular helix $C: \mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$, from $u = 0$ to $u = 2\pi$.

SOLUTION Here $x(u) = \cos u,\ \ y(u) = \sin u,\ \ z(u) = u$.

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(u)) = \cos u \sin u\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} + 4u\,\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{r}'(u) = -\sin u\,\mathbf{i} + \cos u\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u) = -\sin^2 u \cos u + 2\cos u + 4u.$$

Therefore

$$W = \int_0^{2\pi} (-\sin^2 u \cos u + 2\cos u + 4u)\,du$$

$$= \left[-\tfrac{1}{3}\sin^3 u + 2\sin u + 2u^2\right]_0^{2\pi} = 8\pi^2. \quad \square$$

Line Integrals

The integral on the right of (18.1.2) can be calculated not only for a force function **F** but for any vector field **h** continuous on C.

DEFINITION 18.1.3 LINE INTEGRAL

Let $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = h_1(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{i} + h_2(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{j} + h_3(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{k}$ be a vector field that is continuous on a smooth curve

$$C: \mathbf{r}(u) = x(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [a, b].$$

The *line integral* of **h** over C is the number

$$\int_C (\mathbf{h})(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_a^b [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du.$$

Note that, while we speak of integrating over C, we actually carry out the calculations over the parameter set $[a, b]$. If our definition of line integral is to make sense, the line integral as defined must be independent of the particular parametrization chosen for C. Within the limitations spelled out as follows, this is indeed the case:

THEOREM 18.1.4

Let **h** be a vector field that is continuous on a smooth curve C. The line integral

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_a^b [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du$$

is left invariant by every *direction-preserving* change of parameter.†

PROOF Suppose that ϕ maps $[c, d]$ onto $[a, b]$ and that ϕ' is positive and continuous on $[c, d]$. We must show that the line integral over C as parametrized by

$$\mathbf{R}(w) = \mathbf{r}(\phi(w)), \qquad w \in [c, d]$$

equals the line integral over C as parametrized by **r**. The argument is straightforward:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_c \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{R}) \cdot \mathbf{dR} &= \int_c^d [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{R}(w)) \cdot \mathbf{R}'(w)]\,dw \\
&= \int_c^d [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(\phi(w))) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(\phi(w))\phi'(w)]\,dw \\
&= \int_c^d [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(\phi(w))) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(\phi(w))]\phi'(w)\,dw \\
&= \int_a^b [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du = \int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

Set $u = \phi(w)$, $du = \phi'(w)\,dw$.
At $w = c$, $u = a$; at $w = d$, $u = b$.

Example 2 Calculate $\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$ given that

$$\mathbf{h}(x, y) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{and} \qquad C: \quad \mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j},\ u \in [0, 1].$$

SOLUTION Here $x(u) = u$, $y(u) = u^2$ and

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u) &= [x(u)y(u)\,\mathbf{i} + [y(u)]^2\,\mathbf{j}] \cdot [x'(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y'(u)\,\mathbf{j}] \\
&= x(u)y(u)x'(u) + [y(u)]^2 y'(u) \\
&= u(u^2)(1) + u^4(2u) = u^3 + 2u^5.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_0^1 (u^3 + 2u^5)\,du = \left[\tfrac{1}{4}u^4 + \tfrac{1}{3}u^6\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{7}{12}. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Integrate the vector field $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + yz\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$ over the twisted cubic $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k}$ from $(-1, 1, -1)$ to $(1, 1, 1)$.

SOLUTION The path of integration begins at $u = -1$ and ends at $u = 1$. In this case

$$x(u) = u, \qquad y(u) = u^2, \qquad z(u) = u^3.$$

† Changes of parameter were explained in Project 14.4.

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u))\cdot\mathbf{r}'(u) &= [x(u)y(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u)z(u)\,\mathbf{j} + x(u)z(u)\,\mathbf{k}]\cdot[x'(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y'(u)\,\mathbf{j} + z'(u)\,\mathbf{k}]\\ &= x(u)y(u)x'(u) + y(u)z(u)y'(u) + x(u)z(u)z'(u)\\ &= u(u^2)(1) + u^2(u^3)2u + u(u^3)3u^2\\ &= u^3 + 5u^6.\end{aligned}$$

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r})\cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_{-1}^{1}(u^3+5u^6)\,du = \left[\tfrac{1}{4}u^4 + \tfrac{5}{7}u^7\right]_{-1}^{1} = \tfrac{10}{7}. \quad \square$$

If a curve C is not smooth but is made up of a finite number of adjoining smooth pieces $C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_n$, then we define the integral over C as the sum of the integrals over the C_i:

(18.1.5)
$$\boxed{\int_C = \int_{C_1} + \int_{C_2} + \cdots + \int_{C_n}.}$$

Such a curve is said to be *piecewise smooth*. Figure 18.1.2 gives some examples.

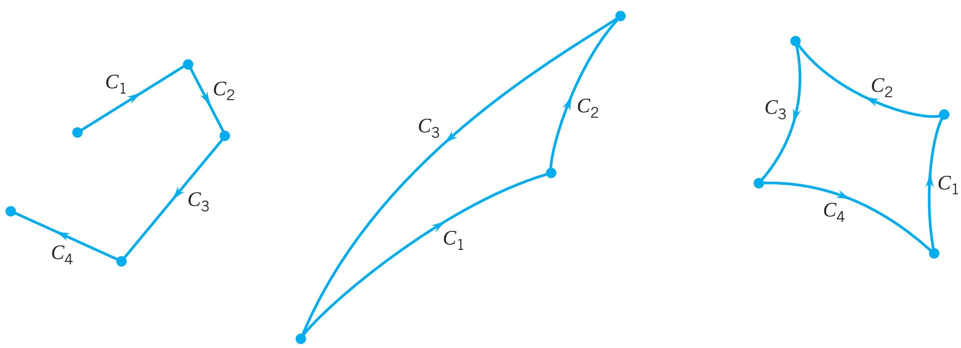


Figure 18.1.2

All polygonal paths are piecewise-smooth curves. In the next example we integrate over a triangle. We do this by integrating over each of the sides and then adding up the results. Observe that the directed line segment that begins at $\mathbf{a}$ and ends at $\mathbf{b}$ can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)\,\mathbf{a} + u\,\mathbf{b}, \qquad u \in [0,1].$$

Example 4 Evaluate the line integral $\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r})\cdot d\mathbf{r}$ if $\mathbf{h}(x,y) = e^y\,\mathbf{i} - \sin\pi x\,\mathbf{j}$ and C is the triangle with vertices $(1,0)$, $(0,1)$, $(-1,0)$ traversed counterclockwise.

SOLUTION The path C is made up of the three directed line segments:

$$\begin{aligned}C_1:&\quad \mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)\,\mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j},\ u\in[0,1],\\ C_2:&\quad \mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)\,\mathbf{j} + u\,(-\mathbf{i}) = -u\,\mathbf{i} + (1-u)\,\mathbf{j},\ u\in[0,1],\\ C_3:&\quad \mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)(-\mathbf{i}) + u\,\mathbf{i} = (2u-1)\,\mathbf{i},\ u\in[0,1].\end{aligned}$$

C_1 joins $(1, 0)$ to $(0, 1)$; C_2 joins $(0, 1)$ to $(-1, 0)$; C_3 joins $(-1, 0)$ to $(1, 0)$. See Figure 18.1.3.

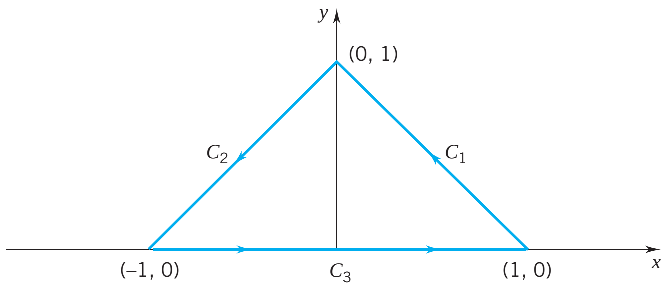


Figure 18.1.3

As you can verify,

$$\int_{C_1} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_0^1 \left[e^{y(u)} x'(u) - \sin[\pi x(u)] y'(u) \right] du$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left[-e^u - \sin[\pi(1-u)] \right] du = 1 - e - \frac{2}{\pi};$$

$$\int_{C_2} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_0^1 \left[e^{y(u)} x'(u) - \sin[\pi x(u)] y'(u) \right] du$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left[-e^{1-u} + \sin(-\pi u) \right] du = 1 - e - \frac{2}{\pi};$$

$$\int_{C_3} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_0^1 \left[e^{y(u)} x'(u) - \sin[\pi x(u)] y'(u) \right] du = \int_0^1 2\, du = 2.$$

The integral over the triangle is the sum of these integrals:

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \left(1 - e - \frac{2}{\pi}\right) + \left(1 - e - \frac{2}{\pi}\right) + 2 = 4 - 2e - \frac{4}{\pi} \cong -2.71. \quad \square$$

When we integrate over a parametrized curve, we integrate in the direction determined by the parametrization. If we integrate in the opposite direction, our answer is altered by a factor of -1. To be precise, let C be a piecewise-smooth curve and let $-C$ denote the same path traversed in the *opposite direction*. (See Figure 18.1.4.) If C is parametrized by a vector function $\mathbf{r}$ defined on $[a, b]$, then $-C$ can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{R}(w) = \mathbf{r}(a + b - w), \qquad w \in [a, b]. \qquad \text{(Section 14.3)}$$

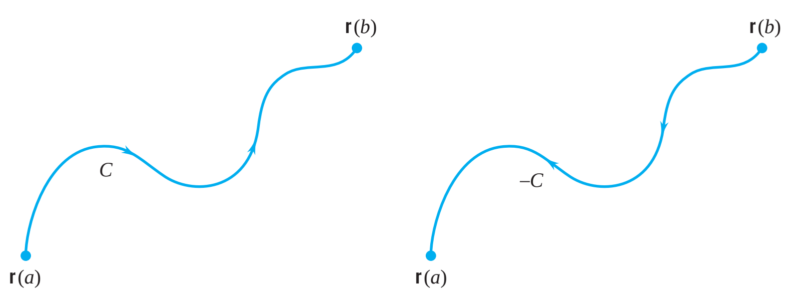


Figure 18.1.4

Our assertion is that

(18.1.6)
$$\boxed{\int_{-C} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{R}) \cdot d\mathbf{R} = -\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r},}$$

or, more briefly, that

(18.1.7)
$$\boxed{\int_{-C} = -\int_C .}$$

We leave the proof of this to you.

We were led to the definition of line integral by the notion of work. It follows from (18.1.2) that if a force $\mathbf{F}$ is continually applied to an object that moves over a piecewise-smooth curve C, then the work done by $\mathbf{F}$ is the line integral of $\mathbf{F}$ over C:

(18.1.8)
$$\boxed{W = \int_C \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r}.}$$

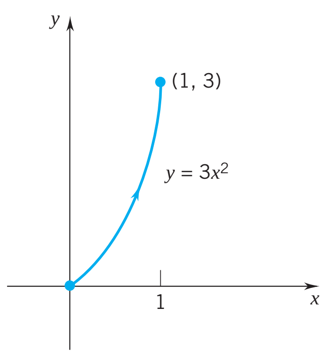


Figure 18.1.5

Example 5 An object, acted on by various forces, moves along the parabola $y = 3x^2$ from the origin to the point (1, 3). (Figure 18.1.5.) One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = x^3\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

SOLUTION We can parametrize the path by setting

$$C : \mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + 3u^2\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, 1].$$

Here $x(u) = u$, $y(u) = 3u^2$ and

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u) = [x(u)]^3 x'(u) + y(u)y'(u) = u^3(1) + 3u^2(6u) = 19u^3.$$

It follows that

$$W = \int_C \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_0^1 19u^3 = \tfrac{19}{4}. \quad \square$$

If an object of mass m moves so that at time t it has position $\mathbf{r}(t)$, then, from Newton's second law, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, we can conclude that the total force on the object at time t is given by the equation

$$\mathbf{F} = m\,\mathbf{a} = m\,\mathbf{r}''(t).$$

Example 6 An object of mass m moves from time $t = 0$ to $t = 1$ so that its position at time t is given by the vector function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \alpha t^2\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\beta t\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\beta t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad \alpha, \beta \text{ constant.}$$

Find the total force acting on the object at time t and calculate the total work done by this force.

SOLUTION Differentiation gives

$$\mathbf{r}'(t) = 2\alpha t\,\mathbf{i} + \beta\cos\beta t\,\mathbf{j} - \beta\sin\beta t\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad \mathbf{r}''(t) = 2\alpha\,\mathbf{i} - \beta^2\sin\beta t\,\mathbf{j} - \beta^2\cos\beta t\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The total force $\mathbf{F}(t)$ on the object at time t is therefore

$$\mathbf{F}(t) = m\,\mathbf{r}''(t) = m(2\alpha\,\mathbf{i} - \beta^2 \sin\beta t\,\mathbf{j} - \beta^2 \cos\beta t\,\mathbf{k}).$$

We can calculate the total work done by this force by integrating the force over the curve

$$C : \mathbf{r}(t) = \alpha t^2\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\beta t\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\beta t\,\mathbf{k},\ t \in [0, 1].$$

We leave it to you to verify that

$$W = \int_0^1 [m\mathbf{r}''(t)\cdot\mathbf{r}'(t)]\,dt = m\int_0^1 4\alpha^2 t\,dt = 2\alpha^2 m. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 18.1

1. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j}, \quad u \in [0, 1]$.
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = u^3\,\mathbf{i} - 2u\,\mathbf{j}, \quad u \in [0, 1]$.

2. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$ over the paths of Exercise 1.

3. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j}$ over the unit circle traversed clockwise.

4. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = xy^2\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) $\mathbf{r}(u) = e^u\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-u}\,\mathbf{j}, \quad u \in [0, 1]$.
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = (1 - u)\,\mathbf{i}, \quad u \in [0, 2]$.

5. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (x - y)\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) the line segment from (2, 3) to (1, 2).
(b) the line segment from (1, 2) to (2, 3).

6. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = x^{-1}y^{-2}\,\mathbf{i} + x^{-2}y^{-1}\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) $\mathbf{r}(u) = \sqrt{u}\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{1 + u}\,\mathbf{j}, \quad u \in [1, 4]$.
(b) the line segment from (1, 1) to (2, 2).

7. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$ over the triangle with vertices $(-2, 0)$, (2, 0), (0, 2) traversed counterclockwise.

8. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = e^{x-y}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{x+y}\,\mathbf{j}$ over the line segment from $(-1, 1)$ to (1, 2).

9. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (x + y)\,\mathbf{i} + (y^2 - x)\,\mathbf{j}$ over the closed curve that begins at $(-1, 0)$, goes along the x-axis to (1, 0), and returns to $(-1, 0)$ by the upper part of the unit circle.

10. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = 3x^2y\,\mathbf{i} + (x^3 + 2y)\,\mathbf{j}$ over the square with vertices (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1), (0, 1) traversed counterclockwise.

11. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = yz\,\mathbf{i} + x^2\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$ over the indicated path:
(a) the line segment from (0, 0, 0) to (1, 1, 1).
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k}, \quad u \in [0, 1]$.

12. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = e^x\,\mathbf{i} + e^y\,\mathbf{j} + e^z\,\mathbf{k}$ over the paths of Exercise 11.

13. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = \cos x\,\mathbf{i} + \sin y\,\mathbf{j} + yz\,\mathbf{k}$ over the indicated path:
(a) the line segment from (0, 0, 0) to $(2, 3, -1)$.
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = u^2\,\mathbf{i} - u^3\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}, \quad u \in [0, 1]$.

14. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + x^2z\,\mathbf{j} + xyz\,\mathbf{k}$ over the indicated path:
(a) the line segment from (0, 0, 0) to $(2, -1, 1)$.
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = e^u\,\mathbf{i} + e^{-u}\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}, \quad u \in [0, 1]$.

15. An object moves along the parabola $y = x^2$ from (0, 0) to (2, 4). One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = (x + 2y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2x + y)\,\mathbf{j}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

16. An object moves along the polygonal path that connects (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1), (0, 1) in the order indicated. One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = x\cos y\,\mathbf{i} - y\sin x\,\mathbf{j}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

17. An object moves along the straight line from (0, 1, 4) to $(1, 0, -4)$. One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} + xyz\,\mathbf{k}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

18. An object moves along the polygonal path that connects (0, 0, 0), (1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, 1) in the order indicated. One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = yz\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + xy\,\mathbf{k}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

19. An object moves along the circular helix $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$ from (1, 0, 0) to $(1, 0, 2\pi)$. One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

20. A mass m, moving in a force field, traces out a circular arc at constant speed. Show that the force field does no work. Give a physical explanation for this.

21. Let $C : \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u),\ u \in [a, b]$ be a smooth curve and $\mathbf{q}$ a fixed vector. Show that

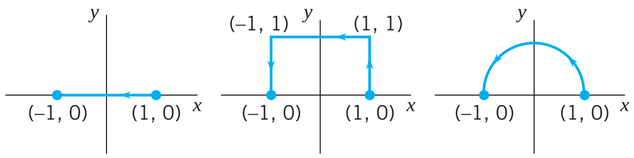
$$\int_C \mathbf{q}\cdot d\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{q}\cdot[\mathbf{r}(b) - \mathbf{r}(a)]$$

$$\int_C \mathbf{r}\cdot d\mathbf{r} = \frac{\|\mathbf{r}(b)\|^2 - \|\mathbf{r}(a)\|^2}{2}.$$

22. The accompanying figure shows three paths from (1, 0) to $(-1, 0)$. Calculate the line integral of

$$\mathbf{h}(x, y) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$$

(a) over the straight-line path; (b) over the rectangular path; (c) over the semicircular path.



C_1: straight-line path C_2: rectangular path C_3: semicircular path

23. Let f be a continuous real-valued function of a real variable. Show that, if

$$\mathbf{f}(x, y, z) = f(x)\,\mathbf{i} \quad \text{and} \quad C : \mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i},\, u \in [1, b],$$

then

$$\int_C \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_a^b f(u)\,du.$$

24. (*Linearity*) Show that, if $\mathbf{f}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ are continuous vector fields and C is piecewise smooth, then

(18.1.9)
$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}&\int_C [\alpha\,\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{r}) + \beta\,\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{r})] \cdot \mathbf{dr}\\ &= \alpha \int_C \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} + \beta \int_C \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}\end{aligned}}$$

for all real α, β.

25. The force $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = -\frac{1}{2}[y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}]$ is continually applied to an object that orbits an ellipse in standard position. Find a relation between the work done during each orbit and the area of the ellipse.

26. An object of mass m moves from time $t = 0$ to $t = 1$ so that its position at time t is given by the vector function

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \alpha t\,\mathbf{i} + \beta t^2\,\mathbf{j}, \;\; \alpha, \beta \text{ constant}.$$

Find the total force acting on the object at time t and calculate the work done by that force during the time interval $[0, 1]$.

27. Exercise 26 for $\mathbf{r}(t) = \alpha t\,\mathbf{i} + \beta t^2\,\mathbf{j} + \gamma t^3\,\mathbf{k}$.

28. (*Important*) The *circulation* of a vector field $\mathbf{v}$ around a directed closed curve C is by definition the line integral

$$\int_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

Let $\mathbf{v}$ be the velocity field of a fluid in counterclockwise circular motion about the z-axis with constant angular speed ω.

(a) Verify that $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) = \omega\,\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{r}$.

(b) Show that the circulation of $\mathbf{v}$ around any circle C in the xy -plane with center at the origin is $\pm 2\omega$ times the area of the circle.

29. Let $\mathbf{v}$ be the velocity field of a fluid that moves radially from the origin; $\mathbf{v} = f(x, y)\mathbf{r}$. What is the circulation of $\mathbf{v}$ around a circle C centered at the origin?

30. A long uniformly-charged wire positioned along the z-axis creates a force field. A charged particle at the point $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$ of the xy-plane is subjected to a force of the form

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y) = k\frac{x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}}{x^2 + y^2}, \qquad k \text{ a constant}$$

Find the work done by $\mathbf{F}$ given that the particle traverses the indicated path

(a) The line segment from $(1, 0)$ to $(1, 2)$.

(b) The line segment from $(0, 1)$ to $(1, 1)$.

31. An object is subject to a force $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = k\,\mathbf{r}/r^3$, k a constant, where as usual $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ and $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$. Find the work done by $\mathbf{F}$ given that the object tranverses the path described.

(a) The line segment from $(1, 0, 2)$ to $(1, 3, 2)$.

(b) Some arc from $(3, 4, 0)$ to $(0, 4, 3)$ on the sphere $r = 5$.

32. An object moves from $\mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{b}$ in a force field $\mathbf{F} = k\,\mathbf{r}/r^3$, k a constant. What is the work done by $\mathbf{F}$?

33. An object traverses the curve $y = \alpha x(1 - x)$ from $(0, 0)$ to $(1, 0)$ subject to the force $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = (y^2 + 1)\,\mathbf{i} + (x + y)\,\mathbf{j}$. What value of α minimizes the work done by $\mathbf{F}$?

34. Suppose that f is a scalar field with a gradient ∇f which is everywhere continuous. In anticipation of Section 18.2 show that $\int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = f(\mathbf{r}(b)) - f(\mathbf{r}(a))$ where C is the curve $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u)$, $a \leq u \leq b$.

■ 18.2 THE FUNDAMENTAL THEOREM FOR LINE INTEGRALS

In general, if we integrate a vector field $\mathbf{h}$ from one point to another, the value of the line integral depends on the path chosen. There is, however, an important exception. If the vector field is a *gradient field*,

$$\mathbf{h} = \nabla f,$$

then the value of the line integral depends only on the endpoints of the path, not on the path itself. The details are spelled out in the following theorem.

THEOREM 18.2.1 THE FUNDAMENTAL THEOREM FOR LINE INTEGRALS

Let $C: \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u),\ u \in [a, b]$, be a piecewise-smooth curve that begins at $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{r}(a)$ and ends at $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{r}(b)$. If the scalar field f is continuously differentiable on an open set that contains the curve C, then

$$\int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = f(\mathbf{b}) - f(\mathbf{a}).$$

PROOF If C is smooth,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} &= \int_a^b [\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\, du \\ &\underset{\text{chain rule (16.3.4)}}{=} \int_a^b \frac{d}{du}[f(\mathbf{r}(u))]\, du \\ &= f(\mathbf{r}(b)) - f(\mathbf{r}(a)) = f(\mathbf{b}) - f(\mathbf{a}). \end{aligned}$$

If C is not smooth but only piecewise smooth, then we break up C into smooth pieces

$$C = C_1 \cup C_2 \cup \cdots \cup C_n.$$

With obvious notation,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} &= \int_{C_1} \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} + \int_{C_2} \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} + \cdots + \int_{C_n} \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} \\ &= [f(\mathbf{a}_1) - f(\mathbf{a}_0)] + [f(\mathbf{a}_2) - f(\mathbf{a}_1)] + \cdots + [f(\mathbf{a}_n) - f(\mathbf{a}_{n-1})] \\ &= f(\mathbf{a}_n) - f(\mathbf{a}_0) = f(\mathbf{b}) - f(\mathbf{a}). \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

The theorem we just proved has an important corollary:

(18.2.2) If the curve C is closed [that is, if $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a}$], then

$$\int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = 0.$$

Example 1 Integrate the vector field $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = y^2\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j}$ over the circular arc

$$C: \quad \mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}, \quad u \in [0, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi].$$

SOLUTION First we try to determine whether $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient. We do this by applying Theorem 16.9.2.

Note that $\mathbf{h}(x, y)$ has the form $P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$ with

$$P(x, y) = y^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(x, y) = 2xy - e^{2y}.$$

Since P and Q are continuously differentiable everywhere and

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 2y = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x},$$

we can conclude that $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient. Therefore, since the integral depends only on the endpoints of C, not on C itself, we can simplify the computations by integrating over the line segment C_1 that joins these same endpoints. (See Figure 18.2.1.)

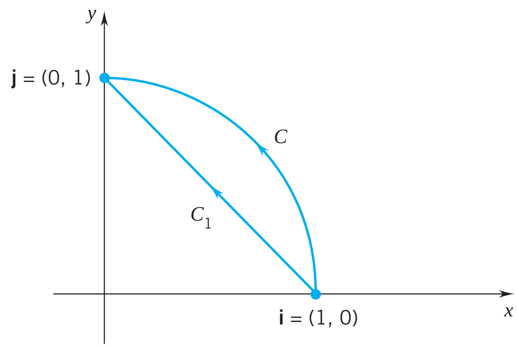


Figure 18.2.1

We parametrize C_1 by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)\,\mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, 1].$$

We then have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} &= \int_{C_1} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} \\
&= \int_0^1 [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du \\
&= \int_0^1 \Big[[y(u)]^2 x'(u) + [2x(u)y(u) - e^{2y(u)}]y'(u)\Big]du \\
&= \int_0^1 \Big[u^2(-1) + [2(1-u)u - e^{2u}](1)\Big]du \\
&= \int_0^1 \Big[2u - 3u^2 - e^{2u}\Big]\,du = \Big[u^2 - u^3 - \tfrac{1}{2}e^{2u}\Big]_0^1 \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}e^2.
\end{aligned}$$

ALTERNATIVE SOLUTION Once we recognize that $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = y^2\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j}$ is a gradient ∇f, we can try to determine $f(x, y)$ by the methods of Section 16.9. Since

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = y^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2xy - e^{2y},$$

we have

$$f(x, y) = xy^2 + \phi(y) \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 2xy + \phi'(y).$$

The two expressions for $\partial f/\partial y$ can be reconciled only if

$$\phi'(y) = -e^{2y} \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \phi(y) = -\tfrac{1}{2}e^{2y} + K. \qquad (K \text{ an arbitrary constant})$$

Each function

$$f(x, y) = xy^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}e^{2y} + K$$

has gradient $\mathbf{h}$. No matter what value we assign to K,

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = f(0, 1) - f(1, 0) = (-\tfrac{1}{2}e^2) - (-\tfrac{1}{2}) = \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}e^2. \quad ❑$$

Example 2 Evaluate the line integral $\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$ where C is the square with vertices (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1), (0, 1) traversed counterclockwise (Figure 18.2.2) and

$$\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (3x^2y + xy^2 - 1)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^3 + x^2y + 4y^3)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

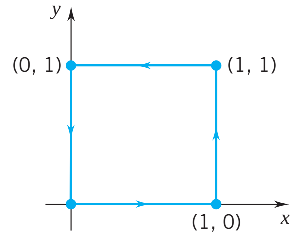


Figure 18.2.2

SOLUTION First we try to determine whether $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient. The functions

$$P(x, y) = 3x^2y + xy^2 - 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(x, y) = x^3 + x^2y + 4y^3$$

are continuously differentiable everywhere, and

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 3x^2 + 2xy = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}.$$

Therefore $\mathbf{h}$ is the gradient of a function f. By (18.2.2),

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = 0. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Evaluate the line integral $\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$, where C is the unit circle

$$C : \mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi]$$

and

$$\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (y^2 + y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j}.$$

SOLUTION Although $(y^2 + y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j}$ is not a gradient $[\partial P/\partial y \neq \partial Q/\partial x]$, part of it,

$$y^2\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j},$$

is a gradient. (Example 1.) Therefore, we can write $\mathbf{h}$ as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (y^2 + y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j} &= [y^2\,\mathbf{i} + (2xy - e^{2y})\,\mathbf{j}] + y\,\mathbf{i} \\ &= \nabla f(x, y) + \mathbf{g}(x, y)\end{aligned}$$

where $g(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i}$. Now

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_C \nabla f(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} + \int_C \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

Since we are integrating over a closed curve, the contribution of the gradient part is 0. The contribution of the remaining part is

$$\int_C \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_0^{2\pi} [\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du = \int_0^{2\pi} y(u)x'(u)\,du = \int_0^{2\pi} -\sin^2 u\,du = -\pi.$$

Therefore $\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = -\pi$. ❑

EXERCISES 18.2

Exercises 1–11. Determine whether $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient and then calculate the line integral of $\mathbf{h}$ over the indicated curve.

1. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$; $\quad \mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin u\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 2\pi]$.

2. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (x + y)\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$; $\quad$ the curve of Exercise 1.

3. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = \cos \pi y\,\mathbf{i} - \pi x \sin \pi y\,\mathbf{j}$; $\quad \mathbf{r}(u) = u^2\,\mathbf{i} - u^3\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

4. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (x^2 - y)\,\mathbf{i} + (y^2 - x)\,\mathbf{j}$; $\quad$ the curve of Exercise 1.

5. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = xy^2\,\mathbf{i} + x^2y\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = u \sin \pi u\,\mathbf{i} + \cos \pi u^2\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

6. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (1 + e^y)\,\mathbf{i} + (x\,e^y - x)\,\mathbf{j}$; the square with vertices $(-1, -1), (1, -1), (1, 1), (-1, 1)$ traversed counterclockwise.

7. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (2xy - y^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 - 2xy)\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, \pi]$.

8. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = 3x(x^2 + y^4)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{i} + 6y^3(x^2 + y^4)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{j}$; the circular arc $y = (1 - x^2)^{1/2}$ from $(1, 0)$ to $(-1, 0)$.

9. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = 3x(x^2 + y^4)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{i} + 6y^3(x^2 + y^4)^{1/2}\,\mathbf{j}$; the arc $y = -(1 - x^2)^{1/2}$ from $(-1, 0)$ to $(1, 0)$.

10. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = 2xy\ \sinh x^2y\,\mathbf{i} + x^2 \sinh x^2y\,\mathbf{j}$; the curve of Exercise 1.

11. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (2x \cosh y - y)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 \sinh\ y - y)\,\mathbf{j}$; the square of Exercise 6.

Exercises 12–15. Verify that **h** is a gradient. Then evaluate the line integral of **h** over the indicated curve C in two ways: (a) by carrying out the integration; (b) by finding f such that $\nabla f = \mathbf{h}$ and evaluating f at the endpoints of C.

12. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = xy^2\,\mathbf{i} + yx^2\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 2]$.

13. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (3x^2y^3 + 2x)\,\mathbf{i} + (3x^3y^2 - 4y)\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + e^u\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

14. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (2x \sin y - e^x)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 \cos y)\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos\ u\,\mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, \pi]$.

15. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (e^{2y} - 2xy)\,\mathbf{i} + (2xe^{2y} - x^2 + 1)\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = ue^u\,\mathbf{i} + (1 + u)\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

Exercises 16–20. Use the three-dimensional analog of Theorem 16.9.2 given in Exercises 16.9 to show that the vector function **h** is a gradient. Then evaluate the line integral of **h** over the indicated curve.

16. $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = y^2z^3\,\mathbf{i} + 2xyz^3\,\mathbf{j} + 3xy^2z^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = u^2\,\mathbf{i} + u^4\,\mathbf{j} + u^6\,\mathbf{k}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

17. $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = (2xz + \sin y)\,\mathbf{i} + x \cos y\,\mathbf{j} + x^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$, $u \in [0, 2\pi]$.

18. $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = \pi yz \cos \pi x\,\mathbf{i} + z \sin \pi x\,\mathbf{j} + y \sin \pi x\,\mathbf{k}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$, $u \in [0, \pi/3]$.

19. $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = (2xy + z^2)\,\mathbf{i} + x^2\,\mathbf{j} + 2xz\,\mathbf{k}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = 2u\,\mathbf{i} + (u^2 + 2)\,\mathbf{j} - u\,\mathbf{k}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

20. $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = e^{-x} \ln y\,\mathbf{i} - e^{-x}/y\,\mathbf{j} + 3z^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $\mathbf{r}(u) = (u + 1)\,\mathbf{i} + e^{2u}\,\mathbf{j} + (u^2 + 1)\,\mathbf{k}$, $u \in [0, 1]$.

21. Calculate the work done by the force $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = (x + e^{2y})\,\mathbf{i} + (2y + 2xe^{2y})\,\mathbf{j}$ applied to an object that traverses the curve $\mathbf{r}(u) = 3 \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + 4 \sin u\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 2\pi]$.

22. Calculate the work done by the force $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = (2x \ln y - yz)\,\mathbf{i} + [(x^2/y) - xz]\,\mathbf{j} - xy\,\mathbf{k}$ applied to an object that moves in a straight path from $(1, 2, 1)$ to $(3, 2, 2)$.

23. If g is a continuously differentiable real-valued function defined on $[a, b]$, then by the fundamental theorem of integral calculus

$$\int_a^b g'(u)\,du = g(b) - g(a).$$

Show that this result is included in Theorem 18.2.1.

24. Let $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ and set $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$. The central force field

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = k\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^n}, \qquad n \text{ a positive integer}$$

is a gradient field ∇f. Find f given that (a) $n = 2$, (b) $n \neq 2$.

25. Let $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ and set $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$. The vector field

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = k\,r\,\mathbf{r}, \qquad k \text{ a positive constant}$$

is directed away from the origin, and as you can check, the magnitude of **F** at **r** is proportional to r^2. Show that **F** is a gradient field by finding a scalar field f such that $\nabla f = \mathbf{F}$.

26. Let $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ and set $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$. Suppose that $\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = g(r^2)\,\mathbf{r}$ where g is a continuous real-valued function defined on $[0, \infty)$. Show that **F** is a gradient field by finding a scalar field f such that $\nabla f = \mathbf{F}$.

27. Let $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ and set $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$. The function

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{mG}{r^3}\,\mathbf{r} \quad \text{where } G \text{ is the gravitational constant}$$

gives the gravitational force exerted by a unit mass at the origin on a mass m located at **r**. What is the work done by **F** if m moves from $\mathbf{r}_1$ to $\mathbf{r}_2$?

28. Set

$$P(x, y) = \frac{y}{x^2 + y^2} \quad \text{and} \quad Q(x, y) = -\frac{x}{x^2 + y^2}$$

on *the punctured unit disk* $\Omega : 0 < x^2 + y^2 < 1$.

(a) Verify that P and Q are continuously differentiable on Ω and that

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y) \quad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \Omega.$$

(b) Verify that, in spite of (a), the vector field $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$ is not a gradient on Ω. HINT: Integrate **h** over a circle of radius less than 1 centered at the origin.

(c) Show that part (b) does not contradict Theorem 16.9.2.

29. The gravitational force acting on an object of mass m at a height z above the surface of the earth is given by

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = -\frac{mGr_0^2}{(r_0 + z)^2}\,\mathbf{k}$$

where G is the gravitational constant and r_0 is the radius of the earth. Show that **F** is a gradient field and find f such that $\nabla f = \mathbf{F}$.

30. A rocket of mass m falls to the earth from a height of 300 miles. How much work is done by the gravitational force? Use Exercise 29 and assume that the radius of the earth is 4000 miles.

■ 18.3 WORK-ENERGY FORMULA; CONSERVATION OF MECHANICAL ENERGY

Suppose that a continuous force field $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r})$ accelerates a mass m from $\mathbf{r}(\alpha) = \mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{r}(\beta) = \mathbf{b}$ along some smooth curve C. The object undergoes a change in kinetic energy:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m[\nu(\beta)]^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}m[\nu(\alpha)]^2.$$

The force does a certain amount of work W. How are these quantities related? They are equal:

(18.3.1)
$$\boxed{W = \tfrac{1}{2}m[\nu(\beta)]^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}m[\nu(\alpha)]^2.}$$

This relation is called the *work–energy formula.*

DERIVATION OF THE WORK–ENERGY FORMULA We parametrize the path of the motion by the time parameter t:

$$C: \quad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t), \qquad t \in [\alpha, \beta]$$

where $\mathbf{r}(\alpha) = \mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{r}(\beta) = \mathbf{b}$. The work done by $\mathbf{F}$ is given by the formula

$$W = \int_C \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_\alpha^\beta [\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)]\, dt.$$

From Newton's second law of motion, we know that at time t,

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(t)) = m\mathbf{a}(t) = m\mathbf{r}''(t).$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t) &= m\mathbf{r}''(t) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)\\ &= \frac{d}{dt}\left[\frac{1}{2}m[\mathbf{r}'(t) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t)]\right] = \frac{d}{dt}\left[\frac{1}{2}m\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|^2\right] = \frac{d}{dt}\left[\frac{1}{2}m[\nu(t)]^2\right].\end{aligned}$$

Substituting this last expression into the work integral, we see that

$$W = \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{1}{2}m[\nu(\beta)]^2\right) dt = \frac{1}{2}m[\nu(\beta)]^2 - \frac{1}{2}m[\nu(\alpha)]^2$$

as asserted. ❑

Conservative Force Fields

In general, if an object moves from one point to another, the work done (and hence the change in kinetic energy) depends on the path of the motion. There is, however, an important exception: if the force field is a gradient field,

$$\mathbf{F} = \nabla f,$$

then the work done (and hence the change in kinetic energy) depends only on the endpoints of the path, not on the path itself. (This follows directly from the fundamental theorem for line integrals.) A force field that is a gradient field is called a *conservative field.*

Since the line integral over a closed path is zero, *the work done by a conservative field over a closed path is always zero. An object that passes through a given point with a certain kinetic energy returns to that same point with exactly the same kinetic energy.*

Potential Energy Functions

Suppose that $\mathbf{F}$ is a conservative force field. It is then a gradient field. Then $-\mathbf{F}$ is also a gradient field. The functions U for which $\nabla U = -\mathbf{F}$ are called *potential energy functions* for $\mathbf{F}$.

The Conservation of Mechanical Energy

Suppose that $\mathbf{F}$ is a conservative force field: $\mathbf{F} = -\nabla U$. In our derivation of the work–energy formula we showed that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}m[v(t)]^2\right) = \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t).$$

Since

$$\frac{d}{dt}[U(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \nabla U(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t) = -\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}(t)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t),$$

we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left[\tfrac{1}{2}m[v(t)]^2 + U(\mathbf{r}(t))\right] = 0,$$

and therefore

$$\boxed{\underbrace{\tfrac{1}{2}m[v(t)]^2}_{\text{KE}} + \underbrace{U(\mathbf{r}(t))}_{\text{PE}} = \text{a constant.}}$$

As an object moves in a conservative force field, its kinetic energy can vary and its potential energy can vary, but the sum of these two quantities remains constant. We call this constant *the total mechanical energy*.

The total mechanical energy is usually denoted by the letter E. The law of conservation of mechanical energy can then be written

(18.3.2)
$$\boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + U = E.}$$

The conservation of energy is one of the cornerstones of physics. Here we have been talking about mechanical energy. There are other forms of energy and other energy conservation laws.

Differences in Potential Energy

Potential energy at a particular point has no physical significance. Only differences in potential energy are significant:

$$U(\mathbf{b}) - U(\mathbf{a}) = \int_C -\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r}$$

is the work required to move from $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{b}$ *against* the force field $\mathbf{F}$.

Example 1 A planet moves in the gravitational field of the sun,

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -\rho m \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}$$

where ρ is a positive constant and m is the mass of the planet. Show that the force field is conservative, find a potential energy function, and determine the total energy of the planet. How does the planet's speed vary with the planet's distance from the sun?

SOLUTION The field is conservative since

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -\rho m \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3} = \nabla\left(\frac{\rho m}{r}\right). \qquad \text{(check this out)}$$

As a potential energy function we can use

$$U(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{\rho m}{r}.$$

The total energy of the planet is the constant

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{\rho m}{r}.$$

(You met this quantity before: Exercises 2 and 4 of Section 14.7.)

Solving the energy equation for v, we have

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2E}{m} + \frac{2\rho}{r}}.$$

As r decreases, $2\rho/r$ increases, and v increases; as r increases, $2\rho/r$ decreases, and v decreases. Thus every planet speeds up as it comes near the sun and slows down as it moves away. The same holds true for Halley's comet. The fact that it slows down as it gets farther away helps explain why it comes back. The simplicity of all this is a testimony of the power of the principle of energy conservation. ❑

EXERCISES 18.3

1. Let f be a continuous real-valued function of the real variable x. Show that the force field $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = f(x)\,\mathbf{i}$ is conservative and the potential functions for $\mathbf{F}$ are (except for notation) the antiderivatives of $-f$.

2. A particle with electric charge e and velocity $\mathbf{v}$ moves in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ experiencing the force

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{e}{c}[\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}]. \qquad (c \text{ is the velocity of light})$$

$\mathbf{F}$ is not a gradient — it can't be, depending as it does on the *velocity* of the particle. Still, we can find a conserved quantity; the *kinetic energy* $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. Show by differentiation with respect to t that this quantity is constant. (Assume Newton's second law.)

3. An object is subject to a constant force in the direction of $-\mathbf{k}$: $\mathbf{F} = -\alpha\,\mathbf{k}$ with $\alpha > 0$. Find a potential energy function for $\mathbf{F}$, and use energy conservation to show that the speed of the object at time t_2 is related to that at time t_1 by the equation

$$v(t_2) = \sqrt{[v(t_1)]^2 + \frac{2\alpha}{m}[z(t_1) - z(t_2)]}$$

where $z(t_1)$ and $z(t_2)$ are the z-coordinates of the object at times t_1 and t_2. (This analysis is sometimes used to model the behavior of an object in the gravitational field near the surface of the earth.)

4. (*Escape velocity*) An object is to be fired straight up from the surface of the earth. Assume that the only force acting on the object is the gravitational pull of the earth and determine the initial speed v_0 necessary to send the object off to infinity.

HINT: Appeal to conservation of energy and use the idea that the object is to arrive at infinity with zero speed.

5. (a) Justify the statement that a conservative force field $\mathbf{F}$ always acts so as to encourage motion toward regions of lower potential energy U.

(b) Evaluate $\mathbf{F}$ at a point where U has a minimum.

6. A harmonic oscillator has a restoring force $\mathbf{F} = -\lambda x\mathbf{i}$. The associated potential is $U(x, y, z) = -\frac{1}{2}\lambda x^2$, and the constant total energy is

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + U(x, y, z) = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\lambda x^2.$$

Given that $x(0) = 2$ and $x'(0) = 1$, calculate the maximum speed of the oscillator and the maximum value of x.

7. The *equipotential surfaces* of a conservative field $\mathbf{F}$ are the surfaces where the potential energy is constant. Show that: (a) the speed of an object in such a field is constant on every equipotential surface; and (b) at each point of such a surface the force field is perpendicular to the surface.

8. Suppose a force field $\mathbf{F}$ is directed away from the origin with a magnitude that is inversely proportional to the distance from the origin. Show that $\mathbf{F}$ is a conservative field.

9. Let **F** be the inverse-square force field:

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = k\frac{x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{3/2}}$$

and let C be any curve on the unit sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$. Show that the work done by **F** in moving an object along C is 0. Explain this result.

■ 18.4 ANOTHER NOTATION FOR LINE INTEGRALS; LINE INTEGRALS WITH RESPECT TO ARC LENGTH

If $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = P(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{j} + R(x, y, z)\,\mathbf{k}$, the line integral

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} \qquad \text{can be written} \qquad \int_C P(x, y, z)\,dx + Q(x, y, z)\,dy + R(x, y, z)\,dz.$$

The notation arises as follows. With

$$C: \quad \mathbf{r}(u) = x(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [a, b]$$

the line integral

$$\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_a^b [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\,du$$

expands to

$$\int_a^b \{P[x(u), y(u), z(u)]x'(u) + Q[x(u), y(u), z(u)]y'(u) + R[x(u), y(u), z(u)]z'(u)\}\,du.$$

Now set

$$\int_C P(x, y, z)\,dx = \int_a^b P[x(u), y(u), z(u)]\,x'(u)\,du,$$

$$\int_C Q(x, y, z)\,dy = \int_a^b Q[x(u), y(u), z(u)]\,y'(u)\,du,$$

$$\int_C R(x, y, z)\,dz = \int_a^b R[x(u), y(u), z(u)]\,z'(u)\,du.$$

Writing the sum of these integrals as

$$\int_C P(x, y, z)\,dx + Q(x, y, z)\,dy + R(x, y, z)\,dz,$$

we have

$$\int_C P(x, y, z)\,dx + Q(x, y, z)\,dy + R(x, y, z)\,dz = \int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

If C lies in the xy-plane and $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$, then the line integral reduces to

$$\int_C P(x, y)\,dx + Q(x, y)\,dy.$$

Example 1 Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_C x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy$ where C is

(a) the straight-line path from (1, 0) to (0, 1),
(b) the circular path $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ from (1, 0) to (0, 1),
(c) the polygonal path from (1, 0) to (1, 1) to (0, 1).

(As you'll see, the results are different.)

SOLUTION

(a) The straight-line path from (1, 0) to (0, 1) can be parametrized by

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)\,\mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad 0 \le u \le 1.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\int_C x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy &= \int_0^1 [x^2(u)y(u)x'(u) + x(u)y(u)y'(u)]\,du\\ &= \int_0^1 [(1-u)^2u(-1) + (1-u)u]\,du\\ &= \int_0^1 (u^2-u^3)\,du = \left[\tfrac{1}{3}u^3 - \tfrac{1}{4}u^4\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{1}{12}.\end{aligned}$$

(b) We parametrize the path $y = \sqrt{1-x^2}$ from (1, 0) to (0, 1) by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad 0 \le u \le \pi/2.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\int_C x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy &= \int_0^{\pi/2} [x^2(u)y(u)x'(u) + x(u)y(u)y'(u)]\,du\\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} [\cos^2 u \sin u(-\sin u) + \cos u \sin u(\cos u)]\,du\\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} [-\cos^2 u \sin^2 u + \cos^2 u \sin u]\,du\\ &= -\int_0^{\pi/2} \tfrac{1}{4}\sin^2 2u\,du + \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^2 u \sin u\,du\\ &= -\tfrac{1}{8}\int_0^{\pi/2} (1-\cos 4u)\,du + \left[-\tfrac{1}{3}\cos^3 u\right]_0^{\pi/2}\\ &= -\tfrac{1}{8}\left[u - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 4u\right]_0^{\pi/2} + \tfrac{1}{3} = \tfrac{1}{3} - \tfrac{\pi}{16}.\end{aligned}$$

(c) The polygonal path (1, 0), (1, 1), (0, 1) is made up of the two line segments

$C_1 : \mathbf{r}(u) = \mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j}, 0 \le u \le 1$ and $C_2 : \mathbf{r}(u) = (1-u)\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}, 0 \le u \le 1.$

$$\int_{C_1} x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy = \int_{C_1} xy\,dy = \int_0^1 x(u)y(u)y'(u)\,du = \int_0^1 u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{C_2} x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy = \int_{C_2} x^2y\,dx &= \int_0^1 x^2(u)y(u)x'(u)\,du\\ &= \int_0^1 -(1-u)^2du = -\tfrac{1}{3}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\int_C x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy = \int_{C_1} x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy + \int_{C_2} x^2y\,dx + xy\,dy = \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{3} = \tfrac{1}{6}. \quad \square$$

Line Integrals with Respect to Arc Length

Suppose that f is a scalar field continuous on a piecewise-smooth curve

$$C: \mathbf{r}(u) = x(u)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [a, b].$$

If $s(u)$ is the length of the curve from the tip of $\mathbf{r}(a)$ to the tip of $\mathbf{r}(u)$, then, as you have seen,

$$s'(u) = \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\| = \sqrt{[x'(u)]^2 + [y'(u)]^2 + [z'(u)]^2}.$$

The line integral of f over C *with respect to arc length s* is defined by setting

(18.4.1)
$$\boxed{\int_C f(\mathbf{r})\,ds = \int_a^b f(\mathbf{r}(u))\,s'(u)\,du.}$$

In xyz-notation we have

$$\int_C f(x, y, z)\,ds = \int_a^b f(x(u), y(u), z(u))\,s'(u)\,du,$$

which, in the two-dimensional case, becomes

$$\int_C f(x, y)\,ds = \int_a^b f(x(u), y(u))\,s'(u)\,du.$$

Suppose now that C represents a thin wire (a material curve) of varying mass density $\lambda = \lambda(\mathbf{r})$. (Here mass density is mass per unit length.) The *length* of the wire can be written

(18.4.2)
$$\boxed{L = \int_C ds.}$$

The *mass* of the wire is given by

(18.4.3)
$$\boxed{M = \int_C \lambda(\mathbf{r})\,ds,}$$

and the *center of mass* $\mathbf{r}_M$ can be obtained from the vector equation

(18.4.4)
$$\boxed{\mathbf{r}_M M = \int_C \mathbf{r}\,\lambda(\mathbf{r})\,ds.}$$

The equivalent scalar equations read

$$x_M M = \int_C x\lambda(\mathbf{r})\,ds, \qquad y_M M = \int_C y\lambda(\mathbf{r})\,ds, \qquad z_M M = \int_C z\lambda(\mathbf{r})\,ds.$$

Finally, the *moment of inertia* about an axis is given by the formula

(18.4.5)
$$\boxed{I = \int_C \lambda(\mathbf{r})[R(\mathbf{r})]^2 ds}$$

where $R(\mathbf{r})$ is the distance from the axis to the tip of $\mathbf{r}$.

Example 2 The mass density of a semicircular wire of radius a varies directly as the distance from the diameter that joins the two endpoints of the wire. **(a)** Find the mass of the wire. (**b**) Locate the center of mass. (**c**) Determine the moment of inertia of the wire about the diameter.

SOLUTION **(a)** Placed as in Figure 18.4.1, the wire can be parametrized by

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, \pi]$$

and the mass density function can be written $\lambda(x, y) = ky$.

$$\mathbf{r}'(u) = -a\sin u\,\mathbf{i} + a\cos u\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{gives} \qquad s'(u) = \|\mathbf{r}'(u)\| = a.$$

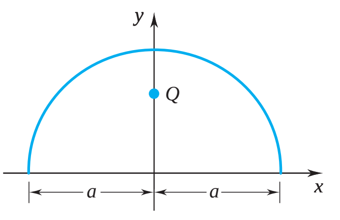


Figure 18.4.1

Therefore

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} M = \int_C \lambda(x, y)\,ds &= \int_C ky\,ds \\ &= \int_0^\pi ky(u)s'(u)\,du \\ &= \int_0^\pi k(a\sin u)\,a\,du = ka^2\int_0^\pi \sin u\,du = 2ka^2. \end{aligned}$$

(b) By the symmetry of the configuration, $x_M = 0$. To find y_M we have to integrate:

$$\begin{aligned} y_M M = \int_C y\lambda(x, y)\,ds &= \int_C ky^2 ds \\ &= \int_0^\pi k[y(u)]^2 s'(u)\,du \\ &= \int_0^\pi k(a\sin u)^2 a\,du = ka^3\int_0^\pi \sin^2 u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}ka^3\pi. \end{aligned}$$

Since $M = 2ka^2$, we have $y_M = (\frac{1}{2}ka^3\pi)/(2ka^2) = \frac{1}{4}a\pi$. The center of mass Q lies on the perpendicular bisector of the wire at a distance $\frac{1}{4}a\pi$ from the diameter. (See Figure 18.4.1.) The center of mass does not lie on the wire.

(c) Now let's find the moment of inertia about the diameter:

$$\begin{aligned} I = \int_C \lambda(x, y)[R(x, y)]^2 ds &= \int_C (ky)y^2 ds \\ &= \int_C k[y(u)]^3 s'(u)\,du \\ &= \int_0^\pi k(a\sin u)^3 a du \\ &= ka^4\int_0^\pi \sin^3 u du = \tfrac{4}{3}ka^4. \end{aligned}$$

It is customary to express I in terms of M. With $M = 2ka^2$, we have

$$I = \tfrac{2}{3}(2ka^2)a^2 = \tfrac{2}{3}Ma^2. \quad \square$$

EXERCISES 18.4

Exercises 1–4. Evaluate

$$\int_C (x - 2y)dx + 2x\,dy$$

over the given path C from (0, 0) to (1, 2).

1. The straight-line path.

2. The parabolic path $y = 2x^2$.

3. The polygonal path (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 2).

4. The polygonal path (0, 0), (0, 2), (1, 2).

Exercises 5–8. Evaluate

$$\int_C y\,dx + xy\,dy$$

over the given path C from (0, 0) to (2, 1).

5. The parabolic path $x = 2y^2$.

6. The straight-line path.

7. The polygonal path (0, 0), (0, 1), (2, 1).

8. The cubic path $x = 2y^3$.

Exercises 9–12. Evaluate

$$\int_C y^2\,dx + (xy - x^2)\,dy$$

where C is the path given from (0, 0) to (2, 4).

9. The straight-line path.

10. The parabolic path $y = x^2$.

11. The parabolic path $y^2 = 8x$.

12. The polygonal path (0, 0), (2, 0), (2, 4).

Exercises 13–16. Evaluate

$$\int_C (y^2 + 2x + 1)\,dx + (2xy + 4y - 1)\,dy$$

where C is the path given from (0, 0) to (1, 1).

13. The straight-line path.

14. The parabolic path $y = x^2$.

15. The cubic path $y = x^3$.

16. The polygonal path (0, 0), (4, 0), (4, 2), (1, 1).

Exercises 17–20. Evaluate

$$\int_C y\,dx + 2z\,dy + x\,dz$$

where C is the path given from (0, 0, 0) to (1, 1, 1).

17. The straight-line path.

18. $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k}$.

19. The polygonal path (0, 0, 0), (0, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1), (1, 1, 1).

20. The polygonal path (0, 0, 0), (1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, 1).

Exercises 21–24. Evaluate

$$\int_C xy\,dx + 2z\,dy + (y + z)\,dz$$

where C is the path given from (0, 0, 0) to (2, 2, 8).

21. The straight-line path.

22. The polygonal path (0, 0, 0), (2, 0, 0), (2, 2, 0), (2, 2, 8).

23. The parabolic path $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j} + 2u^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

24. The polygonal path (0, 0, 0), (2, 2, 2), (2, 2, 8).

25. Evaluate $\int_C x^2y\,dx + y\,dy + xz\,dz$ where C is the intersection of the cylinder $y - 2z^2 = 1$ with the plane $z = x + 1$ traversed from (0, 3, 1) to (1, 9, 2).

26. Evaluate $\int_C y\,dx + yz\,dy + z(x - 1)\,dz$ where C is the intersection of the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ with the cylinder $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 1$ traversed from (2, 0, 0) to (0, 0, 2).

27. Let $\mathbf{h}$ be the vector field

$$\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (x^2 + 6xy - 2y^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (3x^2 - 4xy + 2y)\,\mathbf{j}.$$

(a) Show that $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient field.

(b) What is the value of

$$\int_C (x^2 + 6xy - 2y^2)\,dx + (3x^2 - 4xy + 2y)\,dy$$

for every piecewise-smooth C (i) from (3, 0) to (0, 4)? (ii) from (4, 0) to (0, 3)?

28. Let $\mathbf{h}$ be the vector field

$$\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = (2xy + z^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (x^2 - 2yz)\,\mathbf{j} + (2xz - y^2)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

(a) Show that $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient field.

(b) What is the value of

$$\int_C (2xy + z^2)\,dx + (x^2 - 2yz)\,dy + (2xz - y^2)\,dz$$

for every piecewise-smooth curve C (i) from (1, 0, 1) to (3, 2, −1)? (ii) from (3, 2, −1) to (1, 0, 1)?

29. A wire in the shape of the quarter-circle

$$C : \mathbf{r}(u) = a(\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}), \quad u \in [0, \tfrac{1}{2}\pi]$$

has varying mass density $\lambda(x, y) = k(x + y)$ where k is a positive constant.

(a) Find the total mass of the wire and locate the center of mass.

(b) What is the moment of inertia of the wire about the x-axis?

30. Find the moment of inertia of a homogeneous circular wire of radius a and mass M (a) about a diameter; (b) about the axis that passes through the center of the circle and is perpendicular to the plane of the wire.

31. Find the moment of inertia of the wire of Exercise 29
(a) about the z-axis; (b) about the line $y = x$.

32. A wire of constant mass density k has the form

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = (1 - \cos u)\,\mathbf{i} + (u - \sin u)\,\mathbf{j}, \quad u \in [0, 2\pi].$$

(a) Determine the mass of the wire.
(b) Locate the center of mass.

33. A homogeneous wire of mass M winds around the z-axis as

$$C: \quad \mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + bu\,\mathbf{k}, \quad u \in [0, 2\pi].$$

(a) Find the length of the wire.
(b) Locate the center of mass.
(c) Determine the moments of inertia of the wire about the coordinate axes.

34. A homogeneous wire of mass M is of the form

$$C: \quad \mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{2}{3}u^3\,\mathbf{k}, \quad u \in [0, a].$$

(a) Find the length of the wire.
(b) Locate the center of mass.
(c) Determine the moment of inertia of the wire about the z-axis.

35. Calculate the mass of the wire of Exercise 33 given that the mass density varies directly as the square of the distance from the origin.

36. Show that

(18.4.6) $$\boxed{\int_C \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_C [\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{T}(\mathbf{r})]\, ds}$$

where $\mathbf{T}$ is the unit tangent vector.

■ 18.5 GREEN'S THEOREM

Green's theorem is the first of the three integration theorems heralded at the beginning of this chapter.

A *Jordan curve* (named after the French mathematician Camille Jordan) is a plane curve which is both closed and simple. Thus circles, ellipses, and triangles are Jordan curves; figure eights are not.

Figure 18.5.1 depicts a closed region Ω, the total boundary of which is a Jordan curve C. Such a region is called a *Jordan region*. We know how to integrate over Ω, and if the boundary C is piecewise smooth, we know how to integrate over C. Green's theorem expresses a double integral over Ω as a line integral over C.

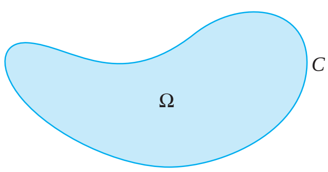


Figure 18.5.1

THEOREM 18.5.1 GREEN'S THEOREM†

Let Ω be a Jordan region with a piecewise-smooth boundary C. If P and Q are scalar fields continuously differentiable on an open set that contains Ω, then

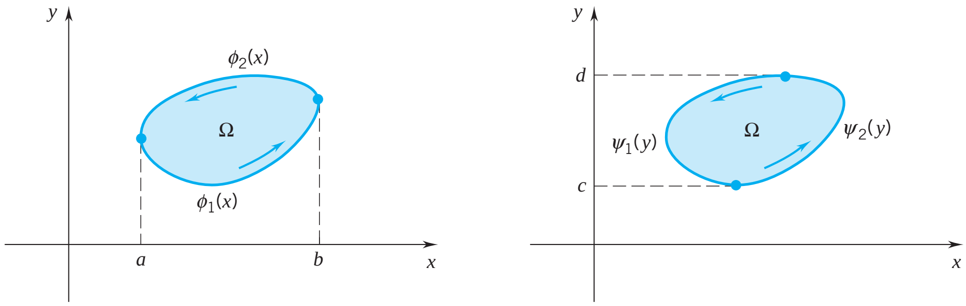
$$\iint_\Omega \left[\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y)\right] dx\,dy = \oint_C P(x, y)\,dx + Q(x, y)\,dy$$

where the integral on the right is the line integral taken over C in the counterclockwise direction.‡

We will prove the theorem only for special cases. First of all we assume that Ω is an *elementary region*, a region that is both of Type I and Type II as defined in Section 17.3. For simplicity we take Ω as in Figure 18.5.2.

†The result was established in 1828 by the English mathematician George Green (1793–1841).

‡Counterclockwise as viewed from $z > 0$ in a right-handed coordinate system. The integral over C in the clockwise direction is written $\oint_C$.



Type I

Type II

Ω is an elementary region: it is both of Type I and Type II

Figure 18.5.2

Ω being of Type I, we can show that

(1) $$\oint_C P(x, y)\, dx = \iint_\Omega -\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y)\, dxdy.$$

In the first place

$$\iint_\Omega -\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y)\, dxdy = -\int_a^b \int_{\phi_1(x)}^{\phi_2(x)} \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y)\, dy\, dx$$

by the fundamental theorem of integral calculus

$$= -\int_a^b \{P[x, \phi_2(x)] - P[x, \phi_1(x)]\}\, dx$$

(∗) $$= \int_a^b P[x, \phi_1(x)]\, dx - \int_a^b P[x, \phi_2(x)]\, dx.$$

The graph of ϕ_1 parametrized from left to right is the curve

$$C_1: \quad \mathbf{r}_1(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + \phi_1(u)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [a, b];$$

the graph of ϕ_2, also parametrized from left to right, is the curve

$$C_2: \quad \mathbf{r}_2(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + \phi_2(u)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [a, b].$$

Since C traversed counterclockwise consists of C_1 followed by $-C_2$ (C_2 traversed from right to left), you can see that

$$\oint_C P(x, y)\, dx = \int_{C_1} P(x, y)\, dx - \int_{C_2} P(x, y)\, dx$$

$$= \int_a^b P[u, \phi_1(u)]\, du - \int_a^b P[u, \phi_2(u)]\, du.$$

Since u is a dummy variable, it can be replaced by x. Comparison with (∗) proves (1).

We leave it to you to verify that

$$\oint_C Q(x, y)\, dy = \iint_\Omega \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y)\, dxdy$$

by using the fact that Ω is of Type II. This completes the proof of the theorem for Ω as in Figure 18.5.2.

A slight modification of this argument applies to elementary regions which are bordered entirely or in part by line segments parallel to the coordinate axes.

Figure 18.5.3 shows a Jordan region that is not elementary but can be broken up into two elementary regions. (See Figure 18.5.4.) Green's theorem applied to the elementary parts tells us that

$$\iint_{\Omega_1} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_{\text{bdry of } \Omega_1} Pdx + Qdy,$$

$$\iint_{\Omega_2} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_{\text{bdry of } \Omega_2} Pdx + Qdy.$$

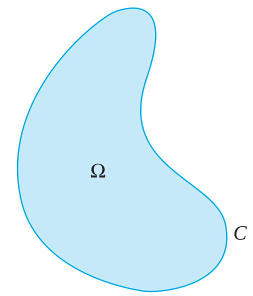


Figure 18.5.3

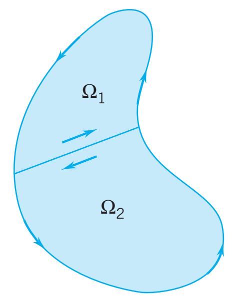


Figure 18.5.4

We now add these equations. The sum of the double integrals is, by additivity, the double integral over Ω. The sum of the line integrals is the integral over C (see the figure) plus the integrals over the crosscut. Since the crosscut is traversed twice and in opposite directions, the total contribution of the crosscut is zero and therefore Green's theorem holds:

$$\iint_{\Omega} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_C Pdx + Qdy.$$

This same argument can be extended to a Jordan region Ω that breaks up into n elementary regions $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$. (Figure 18.5.5 gives an example with $n = 4$.) The double integrals over the Ω_i add up to the double integral over Ω, and, since the line integrals over the crosscuts cancel, the line integrals over the boundaries of the Ω_i add up to the line integral over C. (This is as far as we will carry the proof of Green's theorem. It is far enough to cover all the Jordan regions we encounter in practice.) ❑

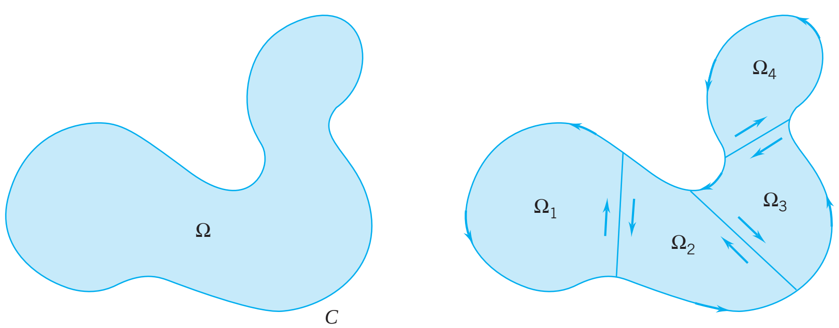


Figure 18.5.5

Example 1 Use Green's theorem to evaluate

$$\oint_C (3x^2 + y)\, dx + (2x + y^3)\, dy \qquad \text{(Figure 18.5.6)}$$

where C is the circle $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$.

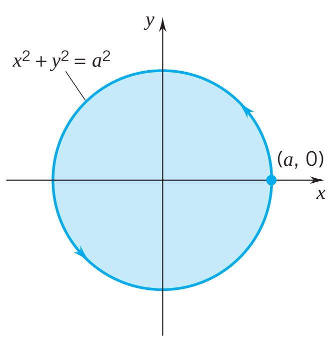


Figure 18.5.6

SOLUTION Let Ω be the closed disk $0 \leq x^2 + y^2 \leq a^2$. With

$$P(x, y) = 3x^2 + y \quad \text{and} \quad Q(x, y) = 2x + y^3,$$

we have

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 1, \quad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 2, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 2 - 1 = 1.$$

By Green's theorem

$$\oint_C (3x^2 + y)\,dx + (2x + y^3)\,dy = \iint_\Omega 1\,dxdy = \text{area of } \Omega = \pi a^2. \quad ❏$$

Remark The line integral in Example 1 could have been calculated directly as follows: The circle $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ can be parametrized counterclockwise by setting

$$x = a\cos u, \qquad y = a\sin u, \qquad 0 \le u \le 2\pi.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\oint_C &(3x^2 + y)\,dx + (2x + y^3)\,dy\\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} [(3a^2\cos^2 u + a\sin u)(-a\sin u) + (2a\cos u + a^3\sin^3 u)(a\cos u)]\,du\\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} [-3a^3\cos^2 u\sin u - a^2\sin^2 u + 2a^2\cos^2 u + a^4\sin^3 u\cos u]\,du,\end{aligned}$$

which, as you can verify, also yields πa^2. In this case, at least, Green's theorem gives us a more direct route to the answer. ❏

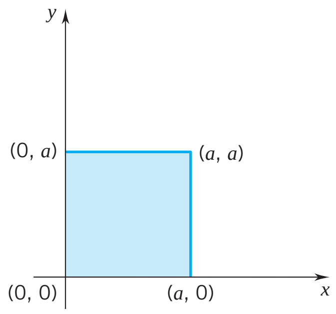


Figure 18.5.7

Example 2 Use Green's theorem to evaluate

$$\oint_C (1 + 10xy + y^2)\,dx + (6xy + 5x^2)\,dy \qquad \text{(Figure 18.5.7)}$$

where C is the square with vertices $(0, 0)$, $(a, 0)$, (a, a), $(0, a)$.

SOLUTION Let Ω be the square region enclosed by C. With

$$P(x, y) = 1 + 10xy + y^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(x, y) = 6xy + 5x^2,$$

we have

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 10x + 2y, \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 6y + 10x, \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 4y.$$

By Green's theorem,

$$\begin{aligned}\oint_C (1 + 10xy + y^2)\,dx + (6xy + 5x^2)\,dy &= \iint_\Omega 4y\,dxdy\\ &= \int_0^a \int_0^a 4y\,dx\,dy\\ &= \left(\int_0^a dx\right)\left(\int_0^a 4y\,dy\right)\\ &= (a)(2a^2) = 2a^3.\end{aligned}$$

ALTERNATIVE SOLUTION By (17.5.3),

$$\iint_\Omega y\,dxdy = \bar{y}(\text{area of } \Omega)$$

where $\overline{y}$ is the y-coordinate of the centroid of Ω. Since $\overline{y} = \frac{1}{2}a$, it is evident that

$$\iint_{\Omega} 4y\, dxdy = 4\overline{y}\,(\text{area of }\Omega) = 4(\tfrac{1}{2}a)a^2 = 2a^3. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 Use Green's theorem to evaluate

$$\oint_C e^x \sin y\, dx + e^x \cos y\, dy$$

where C is the closed curve consisting of the semicircle $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ and the interval $[-1, 1]$. (See Figure 18.5.8.)

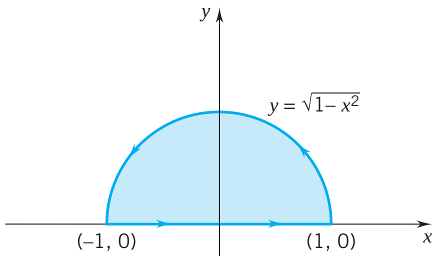


Figure 18.5.8

SOLUTION The curve bounds the closed semicircular disk $\Omega : x^2 + y^2 \leq 1, y \geq 0$.

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = e^x \cos y, \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = e^x \cos y. \qquad \text{Therefore} \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 0.$$

By Green's theorem,

$$\oint_C e^x \sin y\, dx + e^x \cos y\, dy = \iint_{\Omega} 0\, dxdy = 0.$$

To see the power of Green's theorem, try to evaluate this line integral directly. ❑

Green's theorem enables us to calculate the area of a Jordan region by integrating over the boundary of the region.

(18.5.2)

> The area of a Jordan region with boundary C is given by each of the following integrals:
>
> $$\oint_C -y\, dx, \qquad \oint_C x\, dy, \qquad \tfrac{1}{2}\oint_C -y\, dx + x\, dy.$$

PROOF Let Ω be the region enclosed by C. In the first integral

$$P(x, y) = -y, \qquad Q(x, y) = 0.$$

Therefore

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = -1, \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 0, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 1.$$

Thus by Green's theorem

$$\oint_C -y\,dx = \iint_\Omega 1\,dxdy = \text{area of } \Omega.$$

That the second integral also gives the area of Ω can be verified in a similar manner.

You can see the validity of the third formula by observing that

$$\oint_C -y\,dx + \oint_C x\,dy = \text{twice the area of } \Omega. \quad ❑$$

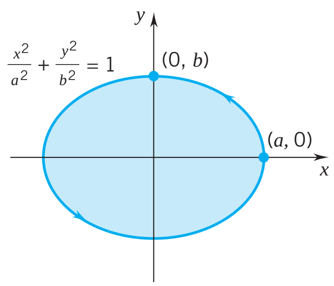


Figure 18.5.9

Example 4 Show that the area of the region Ω enclosed by the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \qquad \text{(Figure 18.5.9)}$$

is πab.

SOLUTION The ellipse is directed counterclockwise by the parametrization

$$x = a\,\cos u,\;\; y = b\sin u, \qquad 0 \le u \le 2\pi.$$

Although the third integral in (18.5.2) appears to be the most complicated of the three, it is in this case the simplest to use.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{area of } \Omega &= \tfrac{1}{2}\oint_C -y\,dx + xdy \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} [-(b\sin u)(-a\sin u) + (a\cos u)(b\cos u)]\,du \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}ab\int_0^{2\pi} du = \pi ab. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 5 Let Ω be a Jordan region of area A with a piecewise-smooth boundary C. Show that the coordinates of the centroid of Ω are given by the formulas

$$\overline{x}A = \tfrac{1}{2}\oint_C x^2dy, \qquad \overline{y}A = -\tfrac{1}{2}\oint_C y^2dx.$$

SOLUTION

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\oint_C x^2dy = \tfrac{1}{2}\iint_\Omega 2x\,dxdy = \iint_\Omega x\,dxdy = \overline{x}A,$$

$$-\tfrac{1}{2}\oint_C y^2dx \underset{\text{by Green's theorem}}{=} -\tfrac{1}{2}\iint_\Omega (-2y)\,dxdy = \iint_\Omega y\,dxdy = \overline{y}A. \quad ❑$$

Regions Bounded by Two or More Jordan Curves

(All the curves that appear here are assumed to be piecewise smooth.)

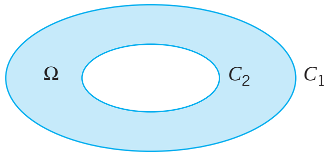


Figure 18.5.10

Figure 18.5.10 shows an annular region Ω. The region is not a Jordan region: the boundary consists of two Jordan curves C_1 and C_2. We cannot apply Green's theorem to Ω directly, but we can break up Ω into two Jordan regions as in Figure 18.5.11 and

then apply Green's theorem to each piece. With Ω_1 and Ω_2 as in Figure 18.5.11,

$$\iint_{\Omega_1} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_{\text{bdry of } \Omega_1} P\,dx + Q\,dy,$$

$$\iint_{\Omega_2} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_{\text{bdry of } \Omega_2} P dx + Q\,dy.$$

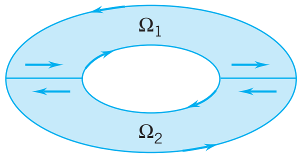


Figure 18.5.11

When we add the double integrals, we get the double integral over Ω. When we add the line integrals, the integrals over the crosscuts cancel and we are left with the *counter-clockwise integral* over C_1 and the *clockwise integral* over C_2. (See the figure.) Thus, for the annular region,

(18.5.3)
$$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_{C_1} P\,dx + Q\,dy + \oint_{C_2} P\,dx + Q\,dy.}$$

If $\partial Q/\partial x = \partial P/\partial y$ throughout Ω, then the double integral on the left is 0, and the sum of the integrals on the right is also 0. Therefore

(18.5.4)
$$\boxed{\begin{gathered}\text{if } \partial Q/\partial x = \partial P/\partial y \text{ throughout } \Omega, \text{ then} \\ \oint_{C_1} P\,dx + Q\,dy = \oint_{C_2} P\,dx + Q\,dy.\end{gathered}}$$

Example 6 Let C_1 be a Jordan curve that does not pass through the origin $(0, 0)$. Show that

$$\oint_{C_1} -\frac{y}{x^2+y^2}dx + \frac{x}{x^2+y^2}dy = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } C_1 \text{ does not enclose the origin} \\ 2\pi & \text{if } C_1 \text{ does enclose the origin.}\end{cases}$$

SOLUTION In this case

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(-\frac{y}{x^2+y^2}\right) = -\left[\frac{(x^2+y^2)1-2y^2}{(x^2+y^2)^2}\right] = \frac{y^2-x^2}{(x^2+y^2)^2},$$

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{x}{x^2+y^2}\right) = \frac{(x^2+x^2)1-2x^2}{(x^2+y^2)^2} = \frac{y^2-x^2}{(x^2+y^2)^2}.$$

Thus

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} \qquad \text{except at the origin.}$$

If C_1 does not enclose the origin, then $\partial Q/\partial x - \partial P/\partial y = 0$ throughout the region enclosed by C_1, and, by Green's theorem, the line integral is 0.

If C_1 does enclose the origin, we draw within the inner region of C_1 a small circle centered at the origin

$$C_2: \quad x^2 + y^2 = a^2. \qquad \text{(Figure 18.5.12)}$$

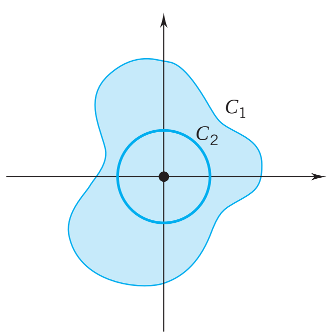


Figure 18.5.12

Since $\partial Q/\partial x - \partial P/\partial y = 0$ on the annular region bounded by C_1 and C_2, we know from (18.5.4) that the line integral over C_1 equals the line integral over C_2. All we have

to show now is that the line integral over C_2 is 2π. This is straightforward. Parametrizing the circle by

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\,\mathbf{j} \qquad \text{with} \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi],$$

we have

$$\oint_{C_2} -\frac{y}{x^2+y^2}\,dx + \frac{x}{x^2+y^2}\,dy = \underbrace{\int_0^{2\pi} (\sin^2 u + \cos^2 u)\,du}_{\text{check this}} = \int_0^{2\pi} du = 2\pi. \quad ❑$$

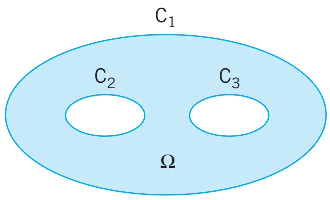


Figure 18.5.13

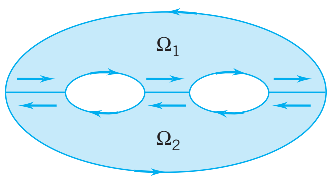


Figure 18.5.14

Figure 18.5.13 shows a region bounded by three Jordan curves: C_2 and C_3, each exterior to the other, both within C_1. For such a region Green's theorem gives

$$\iint_\Omega \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_{C_1} P\,dx + Q\,dy + \oint_{C_2} P\,dx + Q\,dy + \oint_{C_3} P\,dx + Q\,dy.$$

To see this, break up Ω into two regions by making the crosscuts shown in Figure 18.5.14.

The general formula for configurations of this type reads

$$\iint_\Omega \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial x}\right) dx\,dy = \oint_{C_1} P\,dx + Q\,dy + \sum_{i=2}^{n} \oint_{C_i} P\,dx + Q\,dy.$$

EXERCISES 18.5

Exercises 1–4. Evaluate the line integral (a) directly; and (b) by applying Green's theorem.

1. $\oint_C xy\,dx + x^2\,dy$; where C is the triangle with vertices (0, 0), (0, 1), (1, 1).

2. $\oint_C x^2y\,dx + 2y^2\,dy$; where C is the square with vertices (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1), (0, 1).

3. $\oint_C (3x^2 + y)\,dx + (2x + y^3)\,dy; \quad C: 9x^2 + 4y^2 = 36.$

4. $\oint_C y^2dx + x^2\,dy$; where C is the boundary of the region that lies between the curves $y = x$ and $y = x^2$.

Exercises 5–16. Evaluate by Green's theorem.

5. $\oint_C 3y\,dx + 5x\,dy; \quad C: x^2 + y^2 = 1.$

6. $\oint_C 5x\,dx + 3y\,dy; \quad C: (x-1)^2 + (y+1)^2 = 1.$

7. $\oint_C x^2\,dy$; where C is the rectangle with vertices (0, 0), $(a, 0)$, (a, b), $(0, b)$.

8. $\oint_C y^2\,dx$; where C is the rectangle of Exercise 7.

9. $\oint_C (3xy + y^2)\,dx + (2xy + 5x^2)\,dy;$
$C: (x-1)^2 + (y+2)^2 = 1.$

10. $\oint_C (xy + 3y^2)\,dx + (5xy + 2x^2)\,dy;$
$C: (x-1)^2 + (y+2)^2 = 1.$

11. $\oint_C (2x^2 + xy - y^2)\,dx + (3x^2 - xy + 2y^2)\,dy;$
$C: (x-a)^2 + y^2 = r^2.$

12. $\oint_C (x^2 - 2xy + 3y^2)\,dx + (5x + 1)\,dy;$
$C: x^2 + (y-b)^2 = r^2.$

13. $\oint_C e^x \sin y\,dx + e^x \cos y\,dy;$
$C: (x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 = r^2.$

14. $\oint_C e^x \cos y\,dx + e^x \sin y\,dy$ where C is the rectangle with vertices (0, 0), (1, 0), $(1, \pi)$, $(0, \pi)$.

15. $\oint_C 2xy\,dx + x^2\,dy$ where C is the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta, \theta \in [0, 2\pi]$.

16. $\oint_C y^2\,dx + 2xy\,dy$ where C is the first quadrant loop of the petal curve $r = 2\sin 2\theta$.

Exercises 17–18. Find the area enclosed by the curve by integrating over the curve.

17. The circle $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$.

18. The astroid $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$.

19. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves $xy = 4$ and $x + y = 5$. Then use Green's theorem to find the area of Ω.

20. Sketch the region Ω bounded by the curves $y^2 - x^2 = 5$ and $y = 3$. Then use Green's theorem to find the area of Ω.

21. Let C be a piecewise-smooth Jordan curve. Calculate

$$\oint_C (ay + b)\,dx + (cx + d)\,dy$$

given that the area enclosed by C is A.

22. Calculate

$$\oint_C \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$$

given that $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = 2y\,\mathbf{i} - 3x\,\mathbf{j}$ and C is the astroid $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$.

23. Use Green's theorem to find the area under one arch of the cycloid

$$x(\theta) = R(\theta - \sin\theta), \qquad y(\theta) = R(1 - \cos\theta).$$

24. Find the Jordan curve C that maximizes the line integral

$$\oint_C y^3 dx + (3x - x^3)\,dy.$$

25. Complete the proof of Green's theorem for the elementary region of Figure 18.5.2 by showing that

$$\oint_C Q(x, y)\,dy = \iint_\Omega \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y)\,dxdy.$$

26. Suppose that f and g have continuous first-partial derivatives on a simply connected open region Ω. Show that if C is any piecewise-smooth simple closed curve in Ω, then

$$\oint_C [f(\mathbf{r})\nabla g(\mathbf{r}) + g(\mathbf{r})\nabla f(\mathbf{r})] \cdot \mathbf{dr} = 0.$$

27. Suppose that Ω is a simply connected open region on which f is *harmonic*:

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 0.$$

Show that if C is any piecewise-smooth simple closed curve in Ω, then

$$\int_C \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\,dx - \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\,dy = 0.$$

28. Let Ω be a plate of constant mass density λ in the form of a Jordan region with a piecewise-smooth boundary C. Show that the moments of inertia of the plate about the coordinate axes are given by the formulas

(18.5.5) $$\boxed{I_x = -\frac{\lambda}{3}\oint_C y^3 dx, \qquad I_y = \frac{\lambda}{3}\oint_C x^3 dy.}$$

29. Let P and Q be continuously differentiable functions on the region Ω of Figure 18.5.13. Given that $\partial P/\partial y = \partial Q/\partial x$ on Ω, find a relation between the line integrals

$$\oint_{C_1} P\,dx + Q\,dy, \qquad \oint_{C_2} P\,dx + Q\,dy,$$
$$\oint_{C_3} P\,dx + Q\,dy.$$

30. Show that, if $f = f(x)$ and $g = g(y)$ are everywhere continuously differentiable, then

$$\oint_C f(x)\,dx + g(y)\,dy = 0$$

for all piecewise-smooth Jordan curves C.

31. Let C be a piecewise-smooth Jordan curve that does not pass through the origin. Evaluate

$$\oint_C \frac{x}{x^2 + y^2}\,dx + \frac{y}{x^2 + y^2}\,dy$$

(a) if C does not enclose the origin.
(b) if C does enclose the origin.

32. Let C be a piecewise-smooth Jordan curve that does not pass through the origin. Evaluate

$$\oint_C -\frac{y^3}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}\,dx + \frac{xy^2}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}\,dy$$

(a) if C does not enclose the origin.
(b) if C does enclose the origin.

33. Let $\mathbf{v}$ be a vector field continuously differentiable on the entire plane. Use Green's theorem to verify that if $\mathbf{v}$ is a gradient field [$\mathbf{v} = \nabla\phi$], then

$$\oint_C \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{dr} = 0$$

for every piecewise-smooth Jordan curve C.

34. Let C be the line segment from the point (x_1, y_1) to the point (x_2, y_2). Show that

$$\int_C -y\,dx + x\,dy = x_1y_2 - x_2y_1.$$

35. Let $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \ldots, (x_n, y_n)$ be the vertices of a polygon in counterclockwise order. Show that the area of the polygon is given by the sum

$$A = \tfrac{1}{2}[(x_1y_2 - x_2y_1) + (x_2y_3 - x_3y_2) + \ldots$$
$$+ (x_{n-1}y_n - x_ny_{n-1}) + (x_ny_n - x_1y_n)].$$

36. Use the formula of Exercise 35 to find the area of:
(a) the triangle with vertices (0, 0), (2, 1), (1, 4).
(b) the pentagon with vertices (0 ,0), (3, 1), (2, 4), (0, 6), (−1, 2).

*SUPPLEMENT TO SECTION 18.5

A JUSTIFICATION OF THE JACOBIAN AREA FORMULA

We based the change of variables for double integrals on the Jacobian area formula [(17.10.1)]. Green's theorem enables us to derive this formula under the conditions spelled out as follows:

> Let Γ be a Jordan region in the uv-plane with a piecewise-smooth boundary C_Γ. A vector function $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = x(u, v)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u, v)\,\mathbf{j}$ with continuous second partials maps Γ onto a region Ω of the xy-plane. If $\mathbf{r}$ is one-to-one on the interior of Γ and the Jacobian J of the components of $\mathbf{r}$ is different from zero on the interior of Γ, then
>
> $$\text{area of } \Omega = \iint_\Gamma |J(u, v)|\, du\, dv.$$

PROOF Suppose that C_Γ is parametrized by $u = u(t)$, $v = v(t)$ with $t \in [a, b]$. Then the boundary of Ω is a piecewise-smooth curve C given by

$$\mathbf{r}[u(t), v(t)] = x[u(t), v(t)]\,\mathbf{i} + y[u(t), v(t)]\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad t \in [a, b].$$

By Green's theorem

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{area of } \Omega = \oint_C x\,dy &= \left| \int_a^b x[u(t), v(t)] \frac{d}{dt}(y[u(t), v(t)])dt \right| \\
&= \left| \int_a^b x[u(t), v(t)] \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial u}[u(t), v(t)]u'(t) + \frac{\partial y}{\partial v}[u(t), v(t)]v'(t) \right) dt \right| \\
&= \left| \int_a^b \left(x[u(t), v(t)] \frac{\partial y}{\partial u}[u(t), v(t)]u'(t) + x[u(t), v(t)] \frac{\partial y}{\partial v}[u(t), v(t)]v'(t) \right) dt \right| \\
&= \left| \int_{C_\Gamma} x\frac{\partial y}{\partial u}du + x\frac{\partial y}{\partial v}dv \right| \\
&\overset{\text{again by Green's theorem}}{=} \left| \iint_\Gamma \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial u}\left(x\frac{\partial y}{\partial v} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial v}\left(x\frac{\partial y}{\partial u} \right) \right] du\,dv \right|.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial u}\left(x\frac{\partial y}{\partial v} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial v}\left(x\frac{\partial y}{\partial u} \right) &= \frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\frac{\partial y}{\partial v} + x\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial u \partial v} - \frac{\partial x}{\partial v}\frac{\partial y}{\partial u} - x\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial v \partial u} \\
&= \frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\frac{\partial y}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial x}{\partial v}\frac{\partial y}{\partial u} = J(u, v).
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\text{area of } \Omega = \left| \iint_\Gamma J(u, v) du\,dv \right| = \iint_\Gamma |J(u, v)| du\,dv,$$

the final equality holding because $J(u, v)$ cannot change sign on Γ. ❑

■ 18.6 PARAMETRIZED SURFACES; SURFACE AREA

You have seen that a space curve can be parametrized by a vector function $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u)$ where u ranges over some interval I of the u-axis. (Figure 18.6.1.) In an analogous manner, we can parametrize a surface S in space by a vector function $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u, v)$ where (u, v) ranges over some region Ω of the uv-plane. (Figure 18.6.2.)

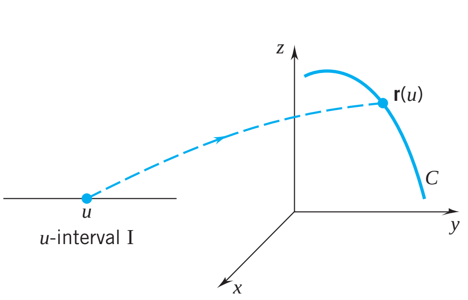


Figure 18.6.1

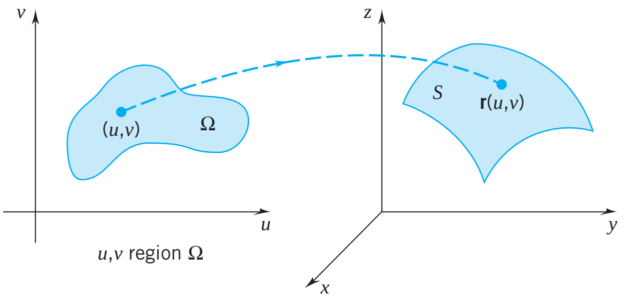


Figure 18.6.2

Example 1 (*The graph of a function*) Just as the graph of a function

$$y = f(x), \qquad x \in [a, b]$$

can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + f(u)\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [a, b],$$

the graph of a function

$$z = f(x, y), \qquad (x, y) \in \Omega$$

can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{i} + v\,\mathbf{j} + f(u, v)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad (u, v) \in \Omega.$$

As (u, v) ranges over Ω, the tip of $\mathbf{r}(u, v)$ traces out a surface. This surface is the graph of f. ❑

Example 2 (*A plane*) If two vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are not parallel, then the set of all linear combinations $u\mathbf{a} + v\mathbf{b}$ generate a plane p_0 that passes through the origin. We can parametrize this plane by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b}, \qquad u, v \text{ real}.$$

The plane p that is parallel to p_0 and passes through the tip of $\mathbf{c}$ can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}, \qquad u, v \text{ real}.$$

Note that the plane contains the lines

$$l_1 : \mathbf{r}(u, 0) = u\,\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} \quad \text{and} \quad l_2 : \mathbf{r}(0, v) = v\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}. \quad ❑$$

Example 3 (*A sphere*) The sphere of radius a centered at the origin can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}$$

with (u, v) ranging over the rectangle $R : 0 \le u \le 2\pi,\ -\frac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

To derive this parametrization, we refer to Figure 18.6.3. The points of latitude v (see the figure) form a circle of radius $a\cos v$ on the horizontal plane $z = a\sin v$.

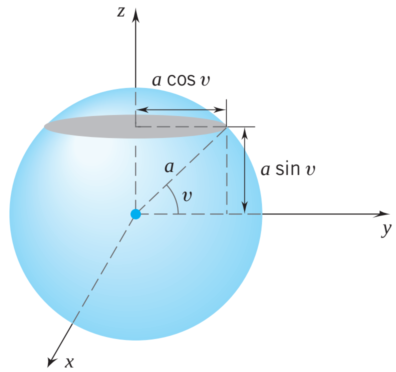


Figure 18.6.3

This circle can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = a\cos v(\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}) + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi].$$

This expands to give

$$\mathbf{R}(u) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi].$$

Letting v range from $-\frac{1}{2}\pi$ to $\frac{1}{2}\pi$, we obtain the entire sphere.

The xyz-equation for this same sphere is $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$. It is easy to verify that the parametrization satisfies this equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 + z^2 &= a^2\cos^2 u\cos^2 v + a^2\sin^2 u\cos^2 v + a^2\sin^2 v \\ &= a^2(\cos^2 u + \sin^2 u)\cos^2 v + a^2\sin^2 v \\ &= a^2(\cos^2 v + \sin^2 v) = a^2. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

Example 4 (*A cone*) Figure 18.6.4 shows a right circular cone with vertex semiangle α and slant height s. The points of slant height v (see the figure) form a circle of radius

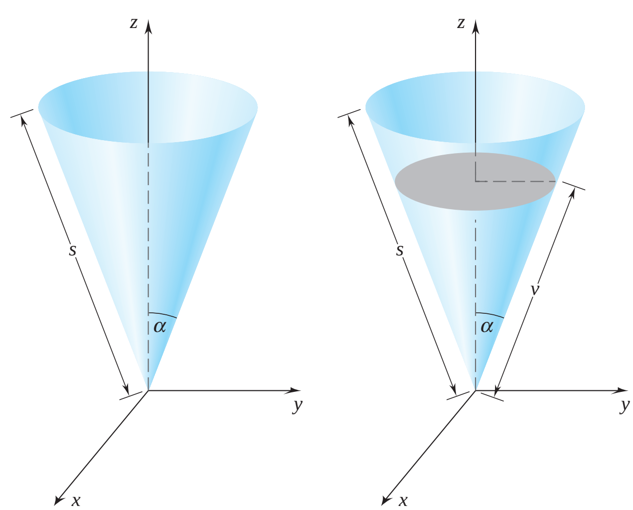


Figure 18.6.4

$v \sin\alpha$ on the horizontal plane $z = v\cos\alpha$. This circle can be parametrized by setting

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{R}(u) &= v\sin\alpha(\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}) + v\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{k}\\ &= v\cos u\sin\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + v\sin u\sin\alpha\,\mathbf{j} + v\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi].\end{aligned}$$

Since we can obtain the entire cone by letting v range from 0 to s, the cone is parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = v\cos u\sin\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + v\sin u\sin\alpha\,\mathbf{j} + v\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{k},$$

with $0 \le u \le 2\pi$, $0 \le v \le s$. ❑

Example 5 (*A spiral ramp*) A rod of length l initially resting on the x-axis and attached at one end to the z-axis sweeps out a surface by rotating about the z-axis at constant rate ω while climbing at a constant rate b. The surface is pictured in Figure 18.6.5.

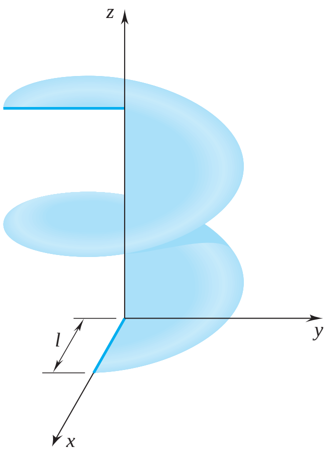


Figure 18.6.5

To parametrize this surface, we mark the point of the rod at a distance u from the z-axis ($0 \le u \le l$) and ask for the position of this point at time v. At time v the rod will have climbed a distance bv and rotated through an angle ωv. Thus the point will be found at the tip of the vector

$$u(\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\omega v\,\mathbf{j}) + bv\,\mathbf{k} = u\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + u\sin\omega v\,\mathbf{j} + bv\,\mathbf{k}.$$

The entire surface can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + u\sin\omega v\,\mathbf{j} + bv\,\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{with } 0 \le u \le l,\ v \ge 0. \quad ❑$$

The Fundamental Vector Product

Let S be a surface parametrized by a differentiable vector function

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u, v) = x(u, v)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u, v)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u, v)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

For simplicity, let us suppose that (u, v) varies over the open rectangle $R : a < u < b$, $c < v < d$. Since $\mathbf{r}$ is a function of u and v, we can form the partial with respect to u,

$$\mathbf{r}'_u = \frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial y}{\partial u}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial u}\,\mathbf{k},$$

and we can form the partial with respect to v,

$$\mathbf{r}'_v = \frac{\partial x}{\partial v}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial y}{\partial v}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial v}\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Now let (u_0, v_0) be a point of R for which

$$\mathbf{r}'_u(u_0, v_0) \times \mathbf{r}'_v(u_0, v_0) \ne \mathbf{0}.$$

(The reason for this condition will be apparent as we go on.) The vector function

$$\mathbf{r}_1(u) = \mathbf{r}(u, v_0), \qquad u \in (a, b)$$

(here we are keeping v fixed at v_0) traces out a differentiable curve C_1 that lies on S. (Figure 18.6.6.) The vector function

$$\mathbf{r}_2(v) = \mathbf{r}(u_0, v), \qquad v \in (c, d)$$

(this time we are keeping u fixed at u_0) traces out a differentiable curve C_2 that also lies on S. Both curves pass through the tip of $\mathbf{r}(u_0, v_0)$:

$$\begin{aligned}&C_1 \text{ with tangent vector } \mathbf{r}'_1(u_0) = \mathbf{r}'_u(u_0, v_0),\\ &C_2 \text{ with tangent vector } \mathbf{r}'_2(v_0) = \mathbf{r}'_v(u_0, v_0).\end{aligned}$$

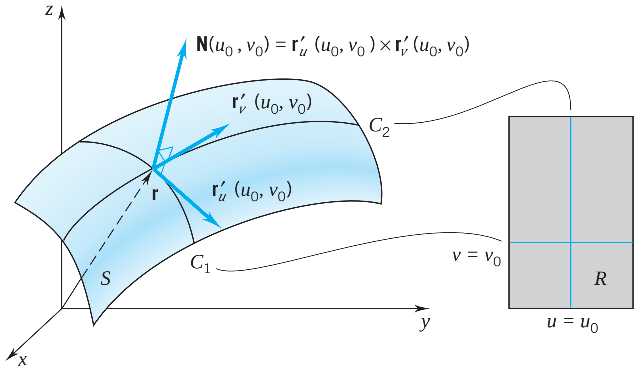


Figure 18.6.6

The cross product $\mathbf{N}(u_0, v_0) = \mathbf{r}'_u(u_0, v_0) \times \mathbf{r}'_v(u_0, v_0)$, which we have assumed to be different from zero, is perpendicular to both curves at the tip of $\mathbf{r}\,(u_0, v_0)$ and can be taken as a normal to the surface at that point. We record the result as follows:

(18.6.1) If S is the surface given by a differentiable function $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}\,(u, v)$, then the vector $\mathbf{N}\,(u, v) = \mathbf{r}'_u(u, v) \times \mathbf{r}'_v(u, v)$ is perpendicular to the surface at the tip of $\mathbf{r}\,(u, v)$ and, if different from zero, can be taken as a normal to the surface at this point.

The cross product

$$\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{r}'_u \times \mathbf{r}'_v = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial u} \\ \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial v} & \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial v} \end{vmatrix}$$

is called the *fundamental vector product* of the surface.

Example 6 For the plane $\mathbf{r}\,(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$ we have

$$\mathbf{r}'_u(u, v) = \mathbf{a}, \quad \mathbf{r}'_v(u, v) = \mathbf{b} \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad \mathbf{N}\,(u, v) = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}.$$

The vector $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is normal to the plane. ❑

Example 7 We parametrized the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ by setting

$$\mathbf{r}\,(u, v) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}$$

with $0 \le u \le 2\pi$, $-\frac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$. In this case

$$\mathbf{r}'_u(u, v) = -a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{j}$$

and

$$\mathbf{r}'_v(u, v) = -a\cos u\sin v\,\mathbf{i} - a\sin u\sin v\,\mathbf{j} + a\cos v\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Thus

$$\mathbf{N}(u,v) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ -a\sin u\cos v & a\cos u\cos v & 0 \\ -a\cos u\sin v & -a\sin u\sin v & a\cos v \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= a\cos v(a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}).$$

check this

$$= a\cos v\,\mathbf{r}(u,v).$$

The fundamental vector product of a sphere, being perpendicular to the sphere, is parallel to the radius vector $\mathbf{r}(u,v)$. ❏

The Area of a Parametrized Surface

A linear function

$$\mathbf{r}(u,v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} \qquad (\mathbf{a} \text{ and } \mathbf{b} \text{ not parallel})$$

parametrizes a plane p. Horizontal lines from the uv-plane, lines with equations of the form $v = v_0$, are mapped onto lines parallel to $\mathbf{a}$, and vertical lines, $u = u_0$, are mapped onto lines parallel to $\mathbf{b}$:

$$\mathbf{r}(u,v_0) = u\,\underset{\text{direction vector}}{\mathbf{a}} + \underbrace{v_0\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}}_{\text{constant}}, \qquad \mathbf{r}(u_0,v) = v\,\underset{\text{direction vector}}{\mathbf{b}} + \underbrace{u_0\,\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c}}_{\text{constant}}.$$

Thus a rectangle R in the uv-plane with sides parallel to the u and v axes,

$$R: u_1 \le u \le u_2, \qquad v_1 \le v \le v_2, \qquad \text{(see Figure 18.6.7)}$$

is mapped onto a parallelogram on p with sides parallel to $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. What is important to us here is that, as shown below,

$$\text{the area of the parallelogram} = \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \cdot (\text{the area of } R).$$

The sides of the parallelogram are given by the vectors

$$\mathbf{r}(u_2,v_1) - \mathbf{r}(u_1,v_1) = (u_2\,\mathbf{a} + v_1\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) - (u_1\,\mathbf{a} + v_1\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (u_2 - u_1)\,\mathbf{a},$$
$$\mathbf{r}(u_1,v_2) - \mathbf{r}(u_1,v_1) = (u_1\,\mathbf{a} + v_2\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) - (u_1\,\mathbf{a} + v_1\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = (v_2 - v_1)\,\mathbf{b}.$$

The area of the parallelogram is

$$\|(u_2 - u_1)\mathbf{a} \times (v_2 - v_1)\mathbf{b}\| = \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|(u_2 - u_1)(v_2 - v_1)$$
$$= \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \cdot (\text{area of } R).$$

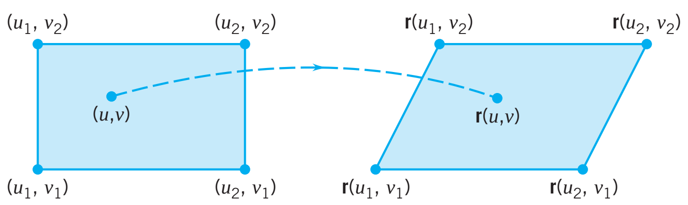


Figure 18.6.7

We summarize as follows:

(18.6.2)

Let R be a rectangle in the uv-plane with sides parallel to the coordinate axes. If $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are not parallel, the linear function

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}, \qquad (u, v) \in R$$

parametrizes a parallelogram with sides parallel to $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, and

$$\text{the area of the parallelogram} = \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \cdot (\text{the area of } R.)$$

More generally, let's suppose that we have a surface S parametrized by a continuously differentiable function

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u, v), \qquad (u, v) \in \Omega.$$

We assume that Ω is a basic region in the uv-plane and that r is one-to-one on the interior of Ω. (We don't want $\mathbf{r}$ to cover parts of S more than once.) Also we assume that the fundamental vector product $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{r}'_u \times \mathbf{r}'_v$ is never zero on the interior of Ω. (We can then use it as a normal.) Under these conditions we call S a *smooth surface* and define

(18.6.3)

$$\text{area of } S = \iint_{\Omega} \|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, du\, dv.$$

We show the reasoning behind this definition in the case where Ω is a rectangle R with sides parallel to the coordinate axes. We begin by breaking up R into n little rectangles $R_1, \ldots, R_n$. This induces a decomposition of S into little pieces $S_1, \ldots S_n$. Taking (u_i^*, v_i^*) as the center of R_i, we have the tip of $\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)$ in S_i. Since the vector $\mathbf{r}'_u(u_i^*, v_i^*) \times \mathbf{r}'_v(u_i^*, v_i^*)$ is normal to the surface at the tip of $\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)$, we can parametrize the tangent plane at this point by the linear function

$$\mathbf{f}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{r}'_u(u_i^*, v_i^*) + v\,\mathbf{r}'_v(u_i^*, v_i^*) + [\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*) - u_i^*\,\mathbf{r}'_u(u_i^*, v_i^*) - v_i^*\,\mathbf{r}'_v(u_i^*, v_i^*)].$$

(Check that this linear function gives the right plane.) S_i is the portion of S that corresponds to R_i. The portion of the tangent plane that corresponds to this same R_i is a parallelogram with area

$$\|\mathbf{r}'_u(u_i^*, v_i^*) \times \mathbf{r}'_v(u_i^*, v_i^*)\| \cdot (\text{area of } R_i) = \|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\| \cdot (\text{area of } R_i). \qquad \text{[by (18.6.2)]}$$

Taking this as our estimate for the area of S_i, we have

$$\text{area of } S = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \text{area of } S_i \cong \sum_{i=1}^{n} \|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\| \cdot (\text{area of } R_i).$$

This is a Riemann sum for

$$\iint_{R} \|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, du\, dv$$

and tends to this integral as the maximal diameter of the R_i tends to zero.

To make sure that (18.6.3) does not violate our previously established notion of area, we must verify that it gives the expected result both for plane regions and for surfaces of revolution. This is done in Examples 9 and 10. By way of introduction we begin with the sphere.

Example 8 (*The surface area of a sphere*) The function

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k},$$

with (u, v) ranging over the set Ω: $0 \le u \le 2\pi$, $-\frac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$, parametrizes a sphere of radius a. For this parametrization

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{N}(u, v) = a\cos v\,\mathbf{r}(u, v)}_{\text{Example 7}} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \underbrace{\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = a^2|\cos v| = a^2\cos v}_{-\frac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \frac{1}{2}\pi}.$$

According to the new formula,

$$\text{area of the sphere} = \iint_\Omega a^2\cos v\,du\,dv$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_{-\frac{1}{2}\pi}^{\frac{1}{2}\pi} a^2\cos v\,dv\right)du = 2\pi a^2\int_{-\frac{1}{2}\pi}^{\frac{1}{2}\pi}\cos v\,dv = 4\pi a^2,$$

which, as you know, is correct. ❑

Example 9 (*The area of a plane region*) If S is a plane region Ω, then S can be parametrized by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{i} + v\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad (u, v) \in \Omega.$$

Here $\mathbf{N}(u, v) = \mathbf{r}'_u(u, v) \times \mathbf{r}'_v(u, v) = \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k}$ and $\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = 1$. In this case (18.6.3) reduces to the familiar formulas

$$A = \iint_\Omega du\,dv. \quad ❑$$

Example 10 (*The area of a surface of revolution*) Let S be the surface generated by revolving about the x-axis the graph of the function

$$y = f(x), \qquad x \in [a, b]. \qquad \text{(Figure 18.6.8)}$$

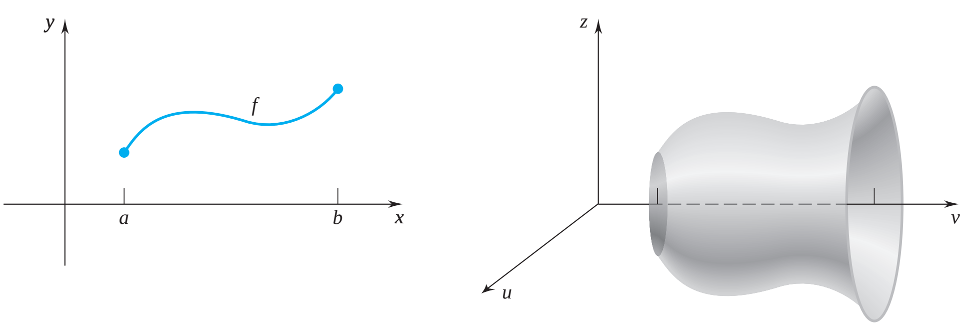


Figure 18.6.8

We assume that f is positive and continuously differentiable. We can parametrize S by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = v\,\mathbf{i} + f(v)\cos u\,\mathbf{j} + f(v)\sin u\,\mathbf{k}$$

with (u, v) ranging over the set Ω: $0 \le u \le 2\pi$, $a \le v \le b$. (We leave it to you to verify that this is right.) In this case

$$\mathbf{N}(u, v) = \mathbf{r}_u'(u, v) \times \mathbf{r}_v'(u, v) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 0 & -f(v)\sin u & f(v)\cos u \\ 1 & f'(v)\cos u & f'(v)\sin u \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -f(v)f'(v)\,\mathbf{i} + f(v)\cos u\,\mathbf{j} + f(v)\sin u\,\mathbf{k}.$$

$$\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = f(v)\sqrt{[f'(v)]^2 + 1}.$$

$$\text{area of } S = \iint_\Omega f(v)\sqrt{[f'(v)]^2 + 1}\,du\,dv$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \left(\int_a^b f(v)\sqrt{[f'(v)]^2 + 1}\,dv \right) du = \int_a^b 2\pi f(v)\sqrt{[f'(v)]^2 + 1}\,dv.$$

This is in agreement with (10.9.3) ❑

Example 11 (*Spiral ramp*) One turn of the spiral ramp of Example 5 is the surface

$$S: \quad \mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + u\sin\omega v\,\mathbf{j} + bv\,\mathbf{k}$$

with (u, v) ranging over the set Ω: $0 \le u \le l$, $0 \le v \le 2\pi/\omega$. In this case

$$\mathbf{r}_u'(u, v) = \cos\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + \sin\omega v\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad \mathbf{r}_v'(u, v) = -\omega u\sin\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + \omega u\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{j} + b\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Therefore

$$\mathbf{N}(u, v) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \cos\omega v & \sin\omega v & 0 \\ -\omega u\sin\omega v & \omega u\cos\omega v & b \end{vmatrix} = b\sin\omega v\,\mathbf{i} - b\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{j} + \omega u\,\mathbf{k},$$

$$\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = \sqrt{b^2 + \omega^2 u^2},$$

$$\text{area of } S = \iint_\Omega \sqrt{b^2 + \omega^2 u^2}\,du\,dv$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi/\omega} \left(\int_0^1 \sqrt{b^2 + \omega^2 u^2}\,du \right) dv = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \int_0^1 \sqrt{b^2 + \omega^2 u^2}\,du.$$

The integral can be evaluated by setting $u = (b/\omega)\tan x$. ❑

The Area of a Surface $z = f(x, y)$

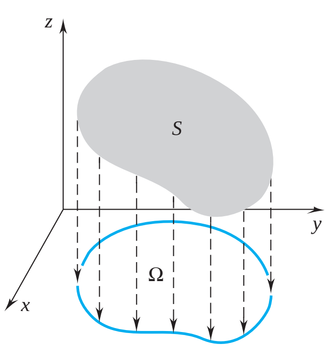


Figure 18.6.9

Figure 18.6.9 shows a surface that projects onto a basic region Ω of the xy-plane. Above each point (x, y) of Ω there is one and only one point of S. The surface S is then the graph of a function

$$z = f(x, y), \qquad (x, y) \in \Omega.$$

As we show, if f is continuously differentiable, then

(18.6.4)
$$\boxed{\text{area of } S = \iint_\Omega \sqrt{[f_x(x, y)]^2 + [f_y(x, y)]^2 + 1}\,dx\,dy.}$$

DERIVATION OF (18.6.4) We can parametrize S by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\,\mathbf{i} + v\,\mathbf{j} + f(u, v)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad (u, v) \in \Omega.$$

We may just as well use x and y and write

$$\mathbf{r}(x, y) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + f(x, y)\,\mathbf{k}, \quad (x, y) \in \Omega.$$

$$\mathbf{r}'_x(x, y) = \mathbf{i} + f_x(x, y)\,\mathbf{k} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{r}'_y(x, y) = \mathbf{j} + f_y(x, y)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

$$\mathbf{N}(x, y) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 0 & f_x(x, y) \\ 0 & 1 & f_y(x, y) \end{vmatrix} = -f_x(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} - f_y(x, y)\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}.$$

Therefore $\|\mathbf{N}(x, y)\| = \sqrt{[f_x(x, y)]^2 + [f_y(x, y)]^2 + 1}$ and the formula is verified. ❑

Example 12 Find the surface area of that part of the parabolic cylinder $z = y^2$ that lies over the triangle with vertices (0, 0), (0, 1), (1, 1) in the xy-plane.

SOLUTION Here $f(x, y) = y^2$ so that

$$f_x(x, y) = 0, \qquad f_y(x, y) = 2y.$$

The base triangle can be expressed by writing

$$\Omega\colon 0 \le y \le 1, \qquad 0 \le x \le y.$$

The surface has area

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \iint_\Omega \sqrt{[f_x(x, y)]^2 + [f_y(x, y)]^2 + 1}\,dx\,dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \int_0^y \sqrt{4y^2 + 1}\,dx\,dy \\ &= \int_0^1 y\sqrt{4y^2 + 1}\,dy = \left[\tfrac{1}{12}(4y^2 + 1)^{3/2}\right]_0^1 = \tfrac{1}{12}(5\sqrt{5} - 1). \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

Example 13 Find the surface area of that part of the hyperbolic paraboloid $z = xy$ that lies inside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$. See Figure 18.6.10.

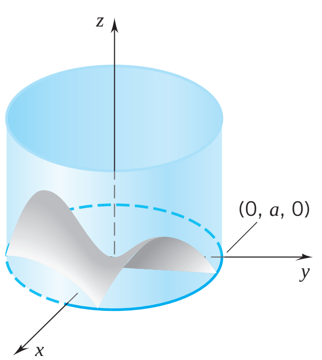


Figure 18.6.10

SOLUTION Here $f(x, y) = xy$, so that $f_x(x, y) = y, \quad f_y(x, y) = x$. The formula gives

$$A = \iint_\Omega \sqrt{y^2 + x^2 + 1}\,dx\,dy.$$

In polar coordinates the base region takes the form

$$\Gamma\colon 0 \le r \le a, \qquad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi.$$

Thus we have

$$A = \iint_\Gamma \sqrt{r^2 + 1}\;r\,dr\,d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^a \sqrt{r^2 + 1}\;r\;dr\;d\theta = \tfrac{2}{3}\pi[(a^2 + 1)^{3/2} - 1]. \quad ❑$$

There is an elegant version of this last area formula [(18.6.4)] that is geometrically vivid. We know that the vector

$$\mathbf{r}'_x(x, y) \times \mathbf{r}'_y(x, y) = -f_x(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} - f_y(x, y)\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$$

is normal to the surface at the point $(x, y, f(x, y))$. The unit vector in that direction, the vector

$$\mathbf{n}(x, y) = \frac{-f_x(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} - f_y(x, y)\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{[f_x(x, y)]^2 + [f_y(x, y)]^2 + 1}},$$

is called the *upper unit normal*. (It is the unit normal with positive **k**-component.)

Now let $\gamma(x, y)$ be the angle between $\mathbf{n}(x, y)$ and $\mathbf{k}$. (Figure 18.6.11.) Since $\mathbf{n}(x, y)$ and $\mathbf{k}$ are both unit vectors,

$$\cos[\gamma(x, y)] = \mathbf{n}(x, y) \cdot \mathbf{k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{[f_x(x, y)]^2 + [f_y(x, y)]^2 + 1}}.$$

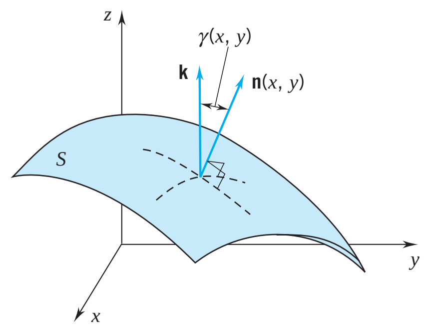


Figure 18.6.11

Taking reciprocals, we have

$$\sec[\gamma(x, y)] = \sqrt{[f_x(x, y)]^2 + [f_y(x, y)]^2 + 1}.$$

Area formula (18.6.4) can therefore be written

(18.6.5)
$$\boxed{A = \iint_{\Omega} \sec[\gamma(x, y)]\, dx\,dy.}$$

EXERCISES 18.6

Exercises 1–4. Calculate the fundamental vector product.

1. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = (u^2 - v^2)\,\mathbf{i} + (u^2 + v^2)\,\mathbf{j} + 2uv\,\mathbf{k}$.

2. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + u\sin v\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

3. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = (u + v)\,\mathbf{i} + (u + v)\,\mathbf{j} + (u - v)\,\mathbf{k}$.

4. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = \cos u \sin v\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u \cos v\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 5–10. Find a parametric representation for the surface.

5. The upper half of the ellipsoid $4x^2 + 9y^2 + z^2 = 36$.

6. The part of the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ that lies between the planes $z = 1$ and $z = 4$.

7. The part of the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ that lies above the plane $z = \sqrt{2}$.

8. The part of the plane $z = x + 2$ that lies inside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

9. $y = g(x, z)$, $(x, z) \in \Omega$. **10.** $x = h(y, z)$, $(y, z) \in \Gamma$.

Exercises 11–13. Find an equation in *x,y,z* for the surface and identify the surface.

11. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u \cos v\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin u \cos v\,\mathbf{j} + c\sin v\,\mathbf{k}$; $0 \le u \le 2\pi,\ -\frac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \frac{1}{2}\pi$.

12. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = au\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + bu\sin v\,\mathbf{j} + u^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $0 \le u,\ 0 \le v \le 2\pi$.

13. $\mathbf{r}(u, v) = au\cosh v\,\mathbf{i} + bu\sinh v\,\mathbf{j} + u^2\,\mathbf{k}$; u real, v real.

C **14.** Use a graphing utility to draw the surface of

(a) Exercise 11 with $a = 4$, $b = 3$, $c = 2$; experiment with other values of a, b, c.

(b) Exercise 12 with $a = 3$, $b = 2$; experiment with other values of a and b.

(c) Exercise 13 with $a = 3$, $b = 2$; experiment with viewpoints to obtain a good view of the surface and try other values of a and b.

15. The graph of a continuously differentiable function $y = f(x)$, $x \in [a, b]$ is revolved about the y-axis. Parametrize the surface given that $a \geq 0$.

16. Show that the area of the surface of Exercise 15 is given by the formula

$$A = \int_a^b 2\pi x \sqrt{1 + [f'(x)]^2}\, dx.$$

17. A plane p intersects the xy-plane at an angle γ. (Draw a figure.) Find the area of the region Γ on p given that the projection of Γ onto the xy-plane is a region Ω of area A_Ω.

18. Determine the area of the portion of the plane $x + y + z = a$ that lies within the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$.

19. Find the area of the part of the plane $bcx + acy + abz = abc$ that lies within the first octant.

20. Find the area of the surface $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$ from $z = 0$ to $z = 1$.

21. Find the area of the surface $z = x^2 + y^2$ from $z = 0$ to $z = 4$.

Exercises 22–28. Calculate the area of the surface

22. $z^2 = 2xy$ with $0 \leq x \leq a, 0 \leq y \leq b, z \geq 0$.

23. $z = a^2 - (x^2 + y^2)$ with $\frac{1}{4}a^2 \leq x^2 + y^2 \leq a^2$.

24. $3z^2 = (x + y)^3$ with $x + y \leq 2, x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

25. $3z = x^{3/2} + y^{3/2}$ with $0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq x$.

26. $z = y^2$ with $0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 1$.

27. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 4z = 0$ with $0 \leq 3(x^2 + y^2) \leq z^2$, $z \geq 2$.

28. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 2az = 0$ with $0 \leq x^2 + y^2 \leq bz$. Assume $a > b > 0$.

29. (a) Find a formula for the area of a surface that is projectable onto a region Ω of the yz-plane; say,

$$S\colon x = g(y, z), \quad (y, z) \in \Omega.$$

Assume that g is continuously differentiable.

(b) Find a formula for the area of a surface that is projectable onto a region Ω of the xz-plane; say,

$$S\colon y = h(x, z), \quad (x, z) \in \Omega.$$

Assume that h is continuously differentiable.

30. (a) Determine the fundamental vector product for the cylindrical surface

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + v\,\mathbf{k};$$
$$0 \leq u \leq 2\pi, \ 0 \leq v \leq l.$$

(b) Use your answer to part (a) to find the area of the surface.

31. (a) Determine the fundamental vector product for the cone of Example 4:

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = v\cos u \sin\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + v\sin u\sin\alpha\,\mathbf{j} + v\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{k};$$

$$0 \leq u \leq 2\pi, \ 0 \leq v \leq s.$$

(b) Use your answer to part (a) to calculate the area of the cone.

32. (a) Show that $\mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\sin v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\sin v\,\mathbf{j} + b\cos v\,\mathbf{k}$, $0 \leq u \leq 2\pi$, $0 \leq v \leq \pi$, parametrizes the ellipsoid of revolution

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} + \frac{z^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the surface with $a = 3$, $b = 4$; experiment with other values of a and b.

(c) Show that the surface area of the ellipsoid is given by the formula

$$A = 2\pi a \int_0^\pi \sin v \sqrt{b^2\sin^2 v + a^2\cos^2 v}\, dv.$$

33. (a) Show that $\mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\cosh v\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin u\cosh v\,\mathbf{j} + c\sinh v\,\mathbf{k}$, $0 \leq u \leq 2\pi$, v, real, parametrizes the hyperboloid of one sheet

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$

(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the surface with $a = 3$, $b = 2$, $c = 4$; experiment with other values of a, b, c.

(c) Set up a double integral for the surface area of the part of the hyperboloid that lies between the planes $z = -3$ and $z = 3$. Take $a = 3, b = 2, c = 4$.

34. (a) Show that $\mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\sinh v\,\mathbf{i} + b\sin u\sinh v\,\mathbf{j} + c\cosh v\,\mathbf{k}$, with $0 \leq u \leq 2\pi$, v, real, parametrizes the hyperboloid of two sheets

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{z^2}{c^2} = -1.$$

(b) Use a graphing utility to draw the surface with $a = 3, b = 2, c = 4$; experiment with other values of a, b, c.

(c) Explain why your graph shows only the upper surface of the hyperboloid. Change the parametrization so that your graph displays the lower half of the surface.

35. Let Ω be a plane region in space and let A_1, A_2, A_3 be the areas of the projections of Ω onto the three coordinate planes. Express the area of Ω in terms of A_1, A_2, A_3.

36. Let S be a surface given in cylindrical coordinates by an equation of the form $z = f(r, \theta)$, $(r, \theta) \in \Omega$. Show that if f is continuously differentiable, then

$$\text{area of } S = \iint_\Omega \sqrt{r^2[f_r(r,\theta)]^2 + [(f_\theta(r,\theta))]^2 + r^2}\, dr\, d\theta$$

provided the integrand is never zero on the interior of Ω.

37. The following surfaces are given in cylindrical coordinates. Find the surface area.

(a) $z = r + \theta$; $0 \leq r \leq 1$, $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$.

(b) $z = r\,e^\theta$; $0 \leq r \leq a$, $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$.

38. Show that, for a flat surface S that is part of the xy-plane, (18.6.3) gives

$$\text{area of } S = \iint_\Omega |J(u, v)|\, du\, dv$$

where J is the Jacobian of the components of a vector function which is defined on some region Ω and parametrizes S. Except for notation this is (17.10.1).

18.7 SURFACE INTEGRALS

The Mass of a Material Surface

Imagine a thin distribution of matter spread out over a surface S. We call this a *material surface.*

If the mass density (the mass per unit area) is a constant λ throughout, then the total mass of the material surface is the density λ times the area of S:

$$M = \lambda(\text{area of } S).$$

If, however, the mass density varies continuously from point to point, $\lambda = \lambda(x, y, z)$, then the total mass must be calculated by integration.

To develop the appropriate integral, we suppose that

$$S: \ \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u, v) = x(u, v)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u, v)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u, v)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad (u, v) \in \Omega$$

is a smooth surface, a surface that meets the conditions for area formula (18.6.3).† Our first step is to break up Ω into n little basic regions $\Omega_1, \ldots, \Omega_n$. This decomposes the surface into n little pieces $S_1, \ldots, S_n$. The area of S_i is given by the integral

$$\iint_{\Omega_i} \|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, du\,dv. \qquad [(18.6.3)]$$

By the mean-value therorem for double integrals, there exists a point (u_i^*, v_i^*) in Ω_i for which

$$\iint_{\Omega_i} \|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, du\,dv = \|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\|(\text{area of } \Omega_i).$$

It follows that

$$\text{area of } S_i = \|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\|(\text{area of } \Omega_i).$$

Since the point (u_i^*, v_i^*) is in Ω_i, the tip of $\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)$ is on S_i. The mass density at this point is $\lambda[\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)]$. If S_i is small (which we can guarantee by choosing Ω_i small), then the mass density on S_i is approximately the same throughout. Thus we can estimate M_i, the mass contribution of S_i, by writing

$$M_i \cong \lambda[\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)](\text{area of } S_i) = \lambda[\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)]\, \|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\|(\text{area of } \Omega_i).$$

Adding up these estimates, we have an estimate for the total mass of the surface:

$$\begin{aligned} M &\cong \sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda[\mathbf{r}(u_i^*, v_i^*)]\, \|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\|(\text{area of } \Omega_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda[x(u_i^*, v_i^*), y(u_i^*, v_i^*), z(u_i^*, v_i^*)\|\mathbf{N}(u_i^*, v_i^*)\|(\text{area of } \Omega_i)]. \end{aligned}$$

This last expression is a Riemann sum for

$$\iint_{\Omega} \lambda[x(u, v), y(u, v), z(u, v)]\, \|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, du\,dv.$$

†We repeat the conditions here: $\mathbf{r}$ is continuously differentiable; Ω is a basic region in the uv-plane; $\mathbf{r}$ is one-to-one on the interior of Ω; $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{r}'_u \times \mathbf{r}'_v$ is never zero on the interior of Ω.

and tends to this integral as the maximal diameter of the Ω_i tends to zero. We can conclude that

(18.7.1) $$\boxed{M = \iint_{\Omega} \lambda[x(u,v), y(u,v), z(u,v)]\, \|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\|\, du\,dv.}$$

Surface Integrals

The double integral in (18.7.1) can be calculated not only for a mass density function λ but for any scalar field H continuous over S. We call this integral *the surface integral of H over S* and write

(18.7.2) $$\boxed{\iint_S H(x,y,z)\,d\sigma = \iint_{\Omega} H[x(u,v), y(u,v), z(u,v)]\, \|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\|\, du\,dv.}$$

Note that, if $H(x,y,z)$ is identically 1, then the right-hand side of (18.7.2) gives the area of S. Thus

(18.7.3) $$\boxed{\iint_S d\sigma = \text{area of } S.}$$

Example 1 Let $\mathbf{a} = a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j} + b_3\,\mathbf{k}$ be nonzero vectors. Calculate

$$\iint_S xy\,d\sigma \qquad \text{where} \qquad S: \quad \mathbf{r}(u,v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b}; \quad 0 \le u \le 1, \quad 0 \le v \le 1.$$

SOLUTION Call the parameter set Ω. Then

$$\iint_S xy\,d\sigma = \iint_{\Omega} x(u,v)y(u,v)\|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\|\,du\,dv.$$

A simple calculation shows that $\|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\| = \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\|$. Thus

$$\iint_S xy\,d\sigma = \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \iint_{\Omega} x(u,v)y(u,v)\,du\,dv.$$

To find $x(u,v)$ and $y(u,v)$, we need the $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$ components of $\mathbf{r}(u,v)$. We can get these as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{r}(u,v) = u\,\mathbf{a} + v\,\mathbf{b} &= u(a_1\,\mathbf{i} + a_2\,\mathbf{j} + a_3\,\mathbf{k}) + v(b_1\,\mathbf{i} + b_2\,\mathbf{j} + b_3\,\mathbf{k}) \\ &= (a_1u + b_1v)\,\mathbf{i} + (a_2u + b_2v)\,\mathbf{j} + (a_3u + b_3v)\,\mathbf{k}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore $x(u,v) = a_1u + b_1v$ and $y(u,v) = a_2u + b_2v$. We can now write

$$\begin{aligned}\iint_S xy\,d\sigma &= \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \iint_{\Omega} (a_1u + b_1v)(a_2u + b_2v)\,du\,dv \\ &= \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \int_0^1 \left(\int_0^1 \left[a_1a_2u^2 + (a_1b_2 + b_1a_2)uv + b_1b_2v^2\right] du \right) dv \\ &= \|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}\| \left[\tfrac{1}{3}a_1a_2 + \tfrac{1}{4}(a_1b_2 + b_1a_2) + \tfrac{1}{3}b_1b_2\right]. \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

check this

Example 2 Calculate

$$\iint_S \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\, d\sigma$$

where S is the spiral ramp of Example 11, Section 18.6:

$$S: \qquad \mathbf{r}(u,v) = u\cos\omega v\,\mathbf{i} + u\sin\omega v\,\mathbf{j} + bv\,\mathbf{k}; \quad 0 \le u \le l, \quad 0 \le v \le 2\pi/\omega.$$

SOLUTION Call the parameter set Ω. As you saw in Example 11 of Section 18.6,

$$\|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\| = \sqrt{b^2+\omega^2u^2}.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\iint_S \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\, d\sigma &= \iint_\Omega \sqrt{[x(u,v)]^2+[y(u,v)]^2}\,\|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\|\,du\,dv\\
&= \iint_\Omega \sqrt{u^2\cos^2\omega v + u^2\sin^2\omega v}\,\sqrt{b^2+\omega^2u^2}\,du\,dv\\
&\underset{u \ge 0 \text{ on } \Omega}{=} \iint_\Omega u\sqrt{b^2+\omega^2u^2}\,du\,dv\\
&= \int_0^{2\pi/\omega}\left(\int_0^l u\sqrt{b^2+\omega^2u^2}\,du\right)dv\\
&= \frac{2\pi}{\omega}\int_0^l u\sqrt{b^2+\omega^2u^2}\,du = \frac{2\pi}{3\omega^3}\left[(b^2+\omega^2l^2)^{3/2} - b^3\right]. \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Like the other integrals you have studied, the surface integral satisfies a mean-value condition; namely, if the scalar field H is continuous, then there is a point (x_0, y_0, z_0) on S for which

$$\iint_S H(x,y,z)\,d\sigma = H(x_0,y_0,z_0)(\text{area of } S).$$

We call $H(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *the average value of H on S*. Thus we can write

(18.7.4)
$$\boxed{\iint_S H(x,y,z)\,d\sigma = \begin{pmatrix}\text{average value}\\ \text{of } H \text{ on } S\end{pmatrix}\cdot(\text{area of } S).}$$

We can also take weighted averages: if H and G are continuous on S and G is nonnegative on S, then there is a point (x_0, y_0, z_0) on S for which

(18.7.5)
$$\boxed{\iint_S H(x,y,z)G(x,y,z)\,d\sigma = H(x_0,y_0,z_0)\iint_S G(x,y,z)\,d\sigma.}$$

As you would expect, we call $H(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ *the G-weighted average of H on S*.

The coordinates of the centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{z})$ of a surface are simply averages taken over the surface: for a surface S of area A,

$$\bar{x}A = \iint_S x\,d\sigma, \qquad \bar{y}A = \iint_S y\,d\sigma, \qquad \bar{z}A = \iint_S z\,d\sigma.$$

In the case of a material surface of mass density $\lambda = \lambda(x, y, z)$, the coordinates of the center of mass (x_M, y_M, z_M) are density-weighted averages: for a surface S of total mass M,

$$x_M M = \iint_S x\lambda(x, y, z)\, d\sigma, \quad y_M M = \iint_S y\lambda(x, y, z)\, d\sigma, \quad z_M M = \iint_S z\lambda(x, y, z)\, d\sigma.$$

Example 3 Locate the center of mass of a material surface in the form of a hemispherical shell $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ with $z \geq 0$ given that the mass density is directly proportional to the distance from the xy-plane. See Figure 18.7.1.

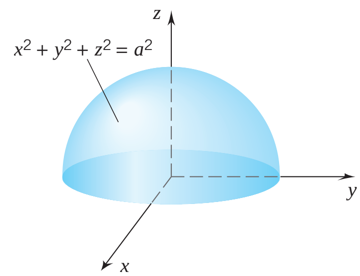


Figure 18.7.1

SOLUTION The surface S can be parametrized by the function

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u \cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}; \qquad 0 \leq u \leq 2\pi,\ 0 \leq v \leq \tfrac{1}{2}\pi.$$

Call the parameter set Ω and recall that $\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = a^2 \cos v$. (Example 8, Section 18.6.) The density function can be written $\lambda(x, y, z) = kz$ where k is the constant of proportionality. We can calculate the mass as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} M = \iint_S \lambda(x, y, z)\, d\sigma = k\iint_S z\, d\sigma &= k\iint_\Omega z(u, v)\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, du dv \\ &= k\int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_0^{\pi/2}(a\sin v)(a^2\cos v)\, dv\right) du \\ &= 2\pi k a^3 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin v\, \cos v\, dv = \pi k a^3. \end{aligned}$$

By symmetry $x_M = 0$ and $y_M = 0$. To find z_M we write

$$\begin{aligned} z_M M = \iint_S z\lambda(x, y, z)\, d\sigma &= k\iint_S z^2 d\sigma \\ &= k\iint_\Omega [z(u, v)]^2 \|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\, dudv \\ &= k\int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_0^{\pi/2}(a^2\sin^2 v)(a^2\cos v)\, dv\right) du \\ &= 2\pi k a^4 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 v\cos v\, dv = \tfrac{2}{3}\pi k a^4. \end{aligned}$$

Since $M = \pi k a^3$, we see that $z_M = \frac{2}{3}\pi k a^4/M = \frac{2}{3}a$. The center of mass is the point $(0, 0, \frac{2}{3}a)$. ❑

Suppose that a material surface S rotates about an axis. The moment of inertia of the surface about that axis is given by the formula

(18.7.6)
$$\boxed{I = \iint_S \lambda(x, y, z)[R(x, y, z)]^2\, d\sigma}$$

where $\lambda = \lambda(x, y, z)$ is the mass density function and $R(x, y, z)$ is the distance from the axis to the point (x, y, z). (As usual, the moments of inertia about the x, y, z axes are denoted by I_x, I_y, I_z.)

Example 4 A homogeneous material surface of mass density 1 has the shape and position of the spherical shell

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2. \qquad \text{(Figure 18.7.2)}$$

Calculate the moment of inertia of this material surface about the z-axis.

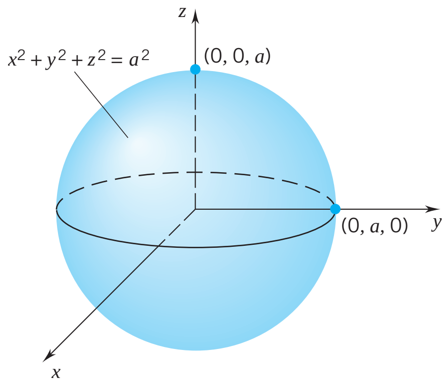


Figure 18.7.2

SOLUTION We parametrize S by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}; \quad 0 \le u \le 2\pi,\ -\tfrac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \tfrac{1}{2}\pi.$$

Call the parameter set Ω and recall that $\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = a^2\cos v$. We can calculate the moment of inertia as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} I_z = \iint_S (1)(x^2 + y^2)\,d\sigma &= \iint_\Omega \left([x(u, v)]^2 + [y(u, v)]^2\right)\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\,d\sigma \\ &= \iint_\Omega (a^2\cos^2 v)(a^2\cos v)\,du\,dv \\ &= a^4\int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\cos^3 v\,dv\right)du \\ &= 2\pi a^4\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\cos^3 v\,dv = \underbrace{\tfrac{8}{3}}_{\text{check this}}\pi a^4. \end{aligned}$$

Since the surface has mass $M = A = 4\pi a^2$, it follows that $I_z = \frac{2}{3}Ma^2$. ❑

A surface

$$S: \quad z = f(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega$$

can be parametrized by the function

$$\mathbf{r}(x, y) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + f(x, y)\,\mathbf{k}, \qquad (x, y) \in \Omega.$$

As you saw in Section 18.6, $\|\mathbf{N}(x, y)\| = \sec[\gamma(x, y)]$ where $\gamma(x, y)$ is the angle between $\mathbf{k}$ and the upper unit normal. Therefore, for any scalar field H continuous on S,

(18.7.7) $$\boxed{\iint_S H(x, y, z)\,d\sigma = \iint_\Omega H(x, y, z)\sec[\gamma(x, y)]\,dx\,dy.}$$

To evaluate this last integral, we use the fact that

$$\sec[\gamma(x,y)] = \sqrt{[f_x(x,y)]^2 + [f_y(x,y)]^2 + 1}. \qquad \text{(Section 18.6)}$$

Example 5 Calculate

$$\iint_S \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\,d\sigma \qquad \text{with} \qquad S: z = xy,\ 0 \le x^2+y^2 \le 1.$$

SOLUTION The base region Ω is the unit disk. The function $z = f(x,y) = xy$ has partial derivatives $f_x(x,y) = y,\ f_y(x,y) = x$. Therefore

$$\sec[\gamma(x,y)] = \sqrt{y^2+x^2+1} = \sqrt{x^2+y^2+1}$$

and

$$\iint_S \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\,d\sigma = \iint_\Omega \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\sqrt{x^2+y^2+1}\,dxdy.$$

We evaluate this last integral by changing to polar coordinates. The region Ω is the set of all (x,y) with polar coordinates $[r,\theta]$ in the set

$$\Gamma: \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi, \quad 0 \le r \le 1.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\iint_S \sqrt{x^2+y^2}\,d\sigma = \iint_\Gamma r\sqrt{r^2+1}\ r\,drd\theta &= \int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_0^1 r^2\sqrt{r^2+1}\,dr\right)d\theta \\
&= 2\pi\int_0^1 r^2\sqrt{r^2+1}\,dr \\
&\underset{r=\tan\phi}{=} 2\pi\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^2\phi\sec^3\phi\,d\phi \\
&= 2\pi\int_0^{\pi/4}[\sec^5\phi - \sec^3\phi]\,d\phi \\
&= \tfrac{1}{4}\pi[3\sqrt{2} - \ln(\sqrt{2}+1)].
\end{aligned}$$ ❑

The Flux of a Vector Field

Suppose that

$$S: \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(u,v), \qquad (u,v) \in \Omega$$

is a smooth surface with a unit normal $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(x,y,z)$ that is continuous on all of S. Such a surface is called an *oriented surface*. Note that an oriented surface has two sides: the side with normal $\mathbf{n}$ and the side with normal $-\mathbf{n}$.† If $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x,y,z)$ is a vector field continuous on S, then we can form the surface integral

(18.7.8)
$$\boxed{\iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma = \iint_S [\mathbf{v}(x,y,z)\cdot\mathbf{n}(x,y,z)]\,d\sigma.}$$

This surface integral is called *the flux of* **v** *across S in the direction of* **n**.

†Not all surfaces have two sides. In Exercise 41 we exhibit a surface (the Möbius band) which has only one side.

Note that the flux across a surface depends on the choice of unit normal. If $-\mathbf{n}$ is chosen instead of $\mathbf{n}$, the sign of the flux is reversed:

$$\iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot[-\mathbf{n}])\,d\sigma = \iint_S -(\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma = -\iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma.$$

Example 6 Calculate the flux of the vector field $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$ across the sphere $S: x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ in the outward direction. (Figure 18.7.3.)

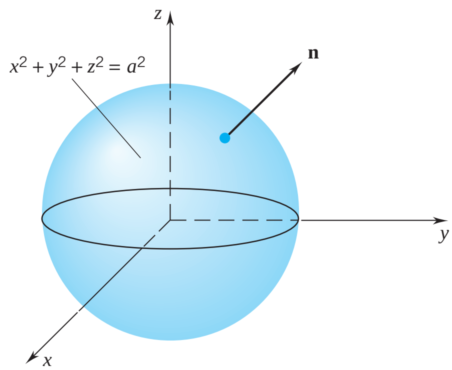


Figure 18.7.3

SOLUTION The outward unit normal is the vector

$$\mathbf{n}(x, y, z) = \frac{1}{a}(x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}).$$

Here

$$\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n} = (x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j})\cdot\frac{1}{a}(x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}) = \frac{1}{a}(x^2 + y^2).$$

Therefore

$$\text{flux out of } S = \frac{1}{a}\iint_S (x^2 + y^2)\,d\sigma.$$

To evaluate this integral we use the usual parametrization

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = a\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j} + a\sin v\,\mathbf{k}; \qquad 0 \le u \le 2\pi,\ -\tfrac{1}{2}\pi \le v \le \tfrac{1}{2}\pi.$$

Recall that $\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\| = a^2\cos v$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{flux out of } S &= \frac{1}{a}\iint_\Omega ([x(u, v)]^2 + [y(u, v)]^2)\,\|\mathbf{N}(u, v)\|\,du\,dv \\
&= \frac{1}{a}\iint_\Omega (a^2\cos^2 u\cos^2 v + a^2\sin^2 u\cos^2 v)(a^2\cos v)\,du\,dv \\
&= a^3\iint_\Omega \cos^3 v\,du\,dv \\
&= a^3\int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\cos^3 v\,dv\right)du = 2\pi a^3\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\cos^3 v\,dv = \tfrac{8}{3}\pi a^3. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

If S is the graph of a function $z = f(x, y)$, $(x, y) \in \Omega$ and $\mathbf{n}$ is the upper unit normal, then the flux of the vector field $\mathbf{v} = v_1\,\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\,\mathbf{k}$ across S in the direction

of **n** is

(18.7.9)
$$\boxed{\iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma = \iint_\Omega (-v_1 f_x - v_2 f_y + v_3)\,dx\,dy.}$$

PROOF From Section 18.6 we know that

$$\mathbf{n} = \frac{-f_x\,\mathbf{i} - f_y\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{(f_x)^2 + (f_y)^2 + 1}} = (-f_x\,\mathbf{i} - f_y\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})\cos\gamma$$

where γ is the angle between **n** and **k.** Thus $\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n} = (-v_1 f_x - v_2 f_y + v_3)\cos\gamma$ and

$$\iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma = \iint_\Omega (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\sec\gamma\,dx\,dy = \iint_\Omega (-v_1 f_x - v_2 f_y + v_3)\,dx\,dy. \quad ❑$$

Example 7 Let S be the part of the paraboloid $z = 1 - (x^2 + y^2)$ that lies above the unit disk Ω. Calculate the flux of $\mathbf{v} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ across this surface in the direction of the upper unit normal. (See Figure 18.7.4.)

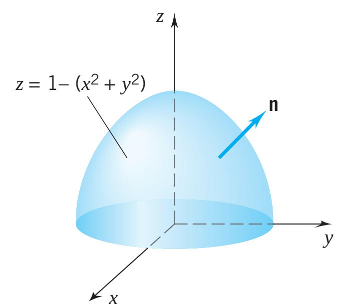


Figure 18.7.4

SOLUTION

$$f(x, y) = 1 - (x^2 + y^2); \qquad f_x = -2x, \qquad f_y = -2y.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{flux} &= \iint_\Omega (-v_1 f_x - v_2 f_y + v_3)\,dx\,dy \\
&= \iint_\Omega [(-x)(-2x) - y(-2y) + 1 - (x^2 + y^2)]\,dx\,dy \\
&= \iint_\Omega (1 + x^2 + y^2)\,dx\,dy = \underbrace{\int_0^{2\pi}\left(\int_0^1 (1 + r^2)\,r\,dr\right)d\theta}_{\text{in polar coordinates}} = \tfrac{3}{2}\pi. \quad ❑
\end{aligned}$$

The flux out of (or into) a *closed piecewise-smooth oriented surface* (a closed surface that consists of a finite number of smooth pieces joined together at the boundaries and oriented in a consistent manner) can be evaluated by integrating over each smooth piece and adding up the results.

Example 8 Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + 4yz^2\,\mathbf{j} + yz\,\mathbf{k}$ out of the unit cube: $0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 1$, $0 \le z \le 1$. (Figure 18.7.5.)

SOLUTION The total flux is the sum of the fluxes across the faces of the cube:

Face	**n**	$\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n}$	Flux
$x = 0$	$-\mathbf{i}$	$-xy = 0$	0
$x = 1$	$\mathbf{i}$	$xy = y$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$y = 0$	$-\mathbf{j}$	$-4yz^2 = 0$	0
$y = 1$	$\mathbf{j}$	$yz^2 = 4z^2$	$\frac{4}{3}$
$z = 0$	$-\mathbf{k}$	$-yz = 0$	0
$z = 1$	$\mathbf{k}$	$yz = y$	$\frac{1}{2}$

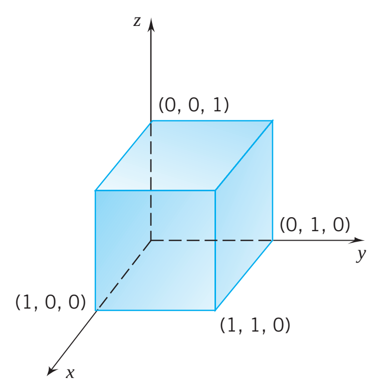


Figure 18.7.5

The total flux is $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{4}{3} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{7}{3}$. ❑

Flux plays an important role in the study of fluid motion. Imagine a surface S within a fluid and choose a unit normal $\mathbf{n}$. Take $\mathbf{v}$ as the velocity of the fluid that passes through S. You can expect $\mathbf{v}$ to vary from point to point, but, for simplicity, let's assume that $\mathbf{v}$ does not change with time. (Such a time-independent flow is said to be *steady state.*) The flux of $\mathbf{v}$ across S is the average component of $\mathbf{v}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{n}$ times the area of the surface S. This is just the volume of fluid that passes through S in unit time, from the $-\mathbf{n}$ side of S to the $\mathbf{n}$ side of S. If S is a closed surface (such as a cube, a sphere, or an ellipsoid) and $\mathbf{n}$ is chosen as the *outer unit normal*, then the flux across S gives the volume of fluid that flows *out* through S in unit time; if $\mathbf{n}$ is chosen as the *inner unit normal*, then the flux gives the volume of liquid that flows *in* through S in unit time.

EXERCISES 18.7

Exercises 1–6. Evaluate taking $S: z = \frac{1}{2}y^2; 0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 1$.

1. $\iint_S d\sigma$.

2. $\iint_S x^2\, d\sigma$.

3. $\iint_S 3y\, d\sigma$.

4. $\iint_S (x-y)\, d\sigma$.

5. $\iint_S \sqrt{2z}\, d\sigma$.

6. $\iint_S \sqrt{1+y^2}\, d\sigma$.

Exercises 7–12. Evaluate.

7. $\iint_S xy\, d\sigma$; S the first-octant part of the plane $x+2y+3z=6$.

8. $\iint_S xyz\, d\sigma$; S the first-octant part of the plane $x+y+z=1$.

9. $\iint_S x^2z\, d\sigma$; S that part of the cylinder $x^2+z^2=1$ which lies between the planes $y=0$ and $y=2$, and is above the xy-plane.

10. $\iint_S (x^2+y^2+z^2)\, d\sigma$; S that part of the plane $z=x+2$ which lies inside the cylinder $x^2+y^2=1$.

11. $\iint_S (x^2+y^2)\, d\sigma$; S the hemisphere $z=\sqrt{1-(x^2+y^2)}$.

12. $\iint_S (x^2+y^2)\, d\sigma$; S that part of the paraboloid $z = 1-x^2-y^2$ which lies above the xy-plane.

Exercises 13–15. Find the mass of a triangular material surface with vertices $(a,0,0)$, $(0,a,0)$, $(0,0,a)$ given that the mass density varies as indicated. Take $a>0$.

13. $\lambda(x,y,z)=k$.

14. $\lambda(x,y,z)=k(x+y)$.

15. $\lambda(x,y,z)=kx^2$.

16. Locate the centroid of the triangular region of Exercises 13–15.

17. Locate the centroid of the hemisphere $x^2+y^2+z^2=a^2$, $z\ge 0$.

For Exercises 18–19, let S be the parallelogram given by

$$\mathbf{r}(u,v) = (u+v)\,\mathbf{i} + (u-v)\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}; \quad 0\le u\le 1, 0\le v\le 1.$$

18. Find the area of S.

19. Determine the flux of $\mathbf{v} = x\,\mathbf{i} - y\,\mathbf{j}$ across S in the direction of the fundamental vector product.

20. Find the mass of the material surface $S: z = 1-\frac{1}{2}(x^2+y^2)$ with $0\le x\le 1, 0\le y\le 1$ given that the density at each point (x,y,z) is proportional to xy.

Exercises 21–23. Calculate the flux out of the sphere

$$x^2+y^2+z^2=a^2.$$

21. $\mathbf{v} = z\,\mathbf{k}$.

22. $\mathbf{v} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

23. $\mathbf{v} = y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$.

24. A homogeneous plate of mass density 1 is in the form of the parallelogram of Exercises 18–19. Determine the moments of inertia about the coordinate axes: I_x, I_y, I_z.

Exercises 25–27. Determine the flux across the triangular region with vertices $(a,0,0)$, $(0,a,0)$, $(0,0,a)$ in the direction of the upper unit normal. (Take $a>0$.)

25. $\mathbf{v} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

26. $\mathbf{v} = (x+z)\,\mathbf{k}$.

27. $\mathbf{v} = x^2\,\mathbf{i} - y^2\,\mathbf{j}$.

Exercises 28–30. Determine the flux across $S: z=xy$ with $0\le x\le 1, 0\le y\le 2$ in the direction of the upper unit normal.

28. $\mathbf{v} = -xy^2\,\mathbf{i} + z\,\mathbf{j}$.

29. $\mathbf{v} = xz\,\mathbf{j} - xy\,\mathbf{k}$.

30. $\mathbf{v} = x^2y\,\mathbf{i} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

31. Calculate the flux of $\mathbf{v} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k}$ out of the cylindrical surface

$$S: \mathbf{r}(u,v) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + v\,\mathbf{k}; \quad 0\le u\le 2\pi, 0\le v\le l.$$

32. (*The gravitational field*) A mass M located at the origin exerts an attractive force

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -G\frac{mM}{r^3}\,\mathbf{r}$$

on a mass m located at the tip of the radius vector $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$. Find the flux of $\mathbf{F}$ into the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$.

Exercises 33–36. Find the flux across $S : z = \frac{2}{3}(x^{3/2} + y^{3/2})$ with $0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 1 - x$ in the direction of the upper unit normal.

33. $\mathbf{v} = x\,\mathbf{i} - y\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{3}{2}z\,\mathbf{k}$.

34. $\mathbf{v} = x^2\,\mathbf{i}$.

35. $\mathbf{v} = y^2\,\mathbf{j}$.

36. $\mathbf{v} = y\,\mathbf{i} - \sqrt{xy}\,\mathbf{j}$.

37. The cone

$$\mathbf{r}(u, v) = v\cos u \sin\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + v\sin u\sin\alpha\,\mathbf{j} + v\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{k},$$
$$0 \le u \le 2\pi, \quad 0 \le v \le s,$$

has surface area $A = \pi s^2 \sin\alpha$. Locate the centroid.

Exercises 38–40. The mass density of a material conical surface $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ with $0 \le z \le 1$ varies directly as the distance from the z-axis.

38. Find the mass of the surface.

39. Locate the center of mass.

40. Determine the moments of inertia about the coordinate axes: (*a*) I_x. (*b*) I_y. (*c*) I_z.

41. You have seen that, if S is a smooth oriented surface immersed in a fluid of velocity $\mathbf{v}$, then the flux

$$\iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma$$

is the volume of fluid that passes through S in unit time from the **-n** side of S to the **n** side of S. This requires that S be a two-sided surface. There are, however, one-sided surfaces; for example, the Möbius band. To construct a material Möbius band, start with a piece of paper in the form of the rectangle in the figure. Now give the piece of paper a single twist and join the two far edges together so that C coincides with A and D coincides with B. (a) Convince yourself that this surface is one-sided and therefore the notion of flux cannot be applied to it. (b) The surface is not smooth because it is impossible to erect a unit normal **n** that varies continuously over the entire surface. Convince yourself of this as follows: Erect a unit normal **n** at some point P and make a circuit of the surface with **n.** Note that, as **n** returns to P, the direction of **n** has been reversed.

Exercises 42–44. Assume that the parallelogram of Exercises 18 and 19 is a material surface with a mass density that varies directly as the square of the distance from the x-axis.

42. Determine the mass.

43. Find the x-coordinate of the center of mass.

44. Find the moment of inertia about the z-axis.

45. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$ out of the solid bounded on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and above and below by the planes $z = 1$ and $z = 0$. HINT: Draw a figure.

46. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j}$ out of the solid bounded above by $z = 4$ and below by $z = x^2 + y^2$.

47. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{i} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ out of the solid bounded above by $z = \sqrt{2 - (x^2 + y^2)}$ and below by $z = x^2 + y^2$.

48. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xz\,\mathbf{i} + 4xyz^2\,\mathbf{j} + 2z\,\mathbf{k}$ out of the unit cube: $0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 1$, $0 \le z \le 1$.

■ 18.8 THE VECTOR DIFFERENTIAL OPERATOR ∇

Divergence $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}$, Curl $\nabla\times\mathbf{v}$

The *vector differential operator* ∇ is defined formally by setting

(18.8.1)
$$\boxed{\nabla = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\mathbf{k}.}$$

By “formally,” we mean that this is not an ordinary vector. Its “components” are differentiation symbols. As the term “operator” suggests, ∇ is to be thought of as something that “operates” on things. What sorts of things? Scalar fields and vector fields.

Suppose that f is a differentiable scalar field. Then ∇ operates on f as follows:

$$\nabla f = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\mathbf{k}\right) f = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}\mathbf{k}.$$

This is just the *gradient* of f, with which you are already familiar.

How does ∇ operate on vector fields? In two ways. If $\mathbf{v} = v_1\,\mathbf{i} + v_2\,\mathbf{j} + v_3\,\mathbf{k}$ is a differentiable vector field, then, by definition,

(18.8.2)
$$\boxed{\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{\partial v_1}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v_2}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial z}}$$

and

(18.8.3)
$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= \left(\frac{\partial v_3}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial v_2}{\partial z}\right)\mathbf{i} + \left(\frac{\partial v_1}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial x}\right)\mathbf{j} + \left(\frac{\partial v_2}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial v_1}{\partial y}\right)\mathbf{k}.$$

The first "product," $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$, defined in imitation of the ordinary dot product, is called the *divergence* of $\mathbf{v}$:

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = \text{div}\,\mathbf{v}.$$

The second "product," $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$, defined in imitation of the ordinary cross product, is called the *curl* of $\mathbf{v}$:

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \text{curl}\,\mathbf{v}.$$

Interpretation of Divergence and Curl

Suppose we know the divergence of a field and also the curl. What does that tell us? For definitive answers we must wait for the divergence theorem and Stokes's theorem, but, in a preliminary way, we can give you some rough answers right now.

View $\mathbf{v}$ as the velocity field of some fluid. The divergence of $\mathbf{v}$ at a point P gives us an indication of whether the fluid tends to accumulate near P (negative divergence) or tends to move away from P (positive divergence). In the first case, P is sometimes called a *sink*, and in the second case, it is called a *source*. The curl at P measures the rotational tendency of the fluid.

Example 1 Set

$$\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = \alpha\,\mathbf{r} = \alpha x\,\mathbf{i} + \alpha y\,\mathbf{j} + \alpha z\,\mathbf{k}. \qquad (\alpha \text{ a constant})$$

The divergence is

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = \alpha\frac{\partial x}{\partial x} + \alpha\frac{\partial y}{\partial y} + \alpha\frac{\partial z}{\partial z} = 3\alpha.$$

The curl is

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ \alpha x & \alpha y & \alpha z \end{vmatrix} = \alpha \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ x & y & z \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

because the partial derivatives that appear in the expanded determinant

$$\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}, \qquad \frac{\partial x}{\partial y}, \qquad \text{etc.},$$

are all zero. ❑

The field of Example 1

$$\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = \alpha(x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}) = \alpha\,\mathbf{r}$$

can be viewed as the velocity field of a fluid in radial motion—toward the origin if $\alpha < 0$, away from the origin if $\alpha > 0$. Figure 18.8.1 shows a point (x, y, z), a spherical neighborhood of that point, and a cone emanating from the origin that is tangent to the boundary of the neighborhood.

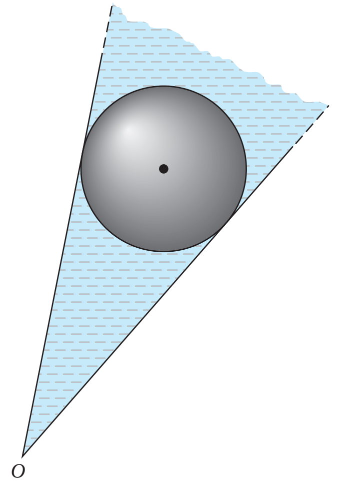


Figure 18.8.1

Note two things: all the fluid in the cone stays in the cone, and the speed of the fluid is proportional to its distance from the origin. Therefore, if the divergence 3α is negative, then α is negative, the motion is toward the origin, and the neighborhood *gains fluid* because the fluid coming in is moving more quickly than the fluid going out. (Also, the entry area is larger than the exit area.) If, however, the divergence 3α is positive, then α is positive, the motion is away from the origin, and the neighborhood *loses fluid* because the fluid coming in is moving more slowly than the fluid going out. (Also, the entry area is smaller than the exit area.)

Since the motion is radial, the fluid has no rotational tendency whatsoever, and we would expect the curl to be identically zero. It is.

Example 2 Set

$$\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = -\omega y\,\mathbf{i} + \omega x\,\mathbf{j}. \qquad (\omega \text{ a positive constant})$$

The divergence is

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\omega\frac{\partial y}{\partial x} + \omega\frac{\partial x}{\partial y} = 0 + 0 = 0.$$

The curl is

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ -\omega y & \omega x & 0 \end{vmatrix} = \left(\omega\frac{\partial x}{\partial x} + \omega\frac{\partial y}{\partial y}\right)\mathbf{k} = 2\omega\,\mathbf{k}. \quad ❑$$

The field of Example 2,

$$\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = -\omega y\,\mathbf{i} + \omega x\,\mathbf{j},$$

is the velocity field of uniform counterclockwise rotation about the z-axis with angular speed ω. You can see this by noting that $\mathbf{v}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$:

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{r} = (-\omega y\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j}) \cdot (x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}) = -\omega yx + \omega xy = 0$$

and the speed at each point is ωR where R is the radius of rotation:

$$v = \sqrt{\omega^2 y^2 + \omega^2 x^2} = \omega\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \omega R.$$

How is the curl, $2\omega\,\mathbf{k}$, related to the rotation? The angular velocity vector (see Exercise 14, Section 14.6) is the vector $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega\,\mathbf{k}$. In this case, then, the curl of $\mathbf{v}$ is twice the angular velocity vector.

With this rotation no neighborhood gains any fluid and no neighborhood loses any fluid. As we saw, the divergence is identically zero.

Basic Identities

THEOREM 18.8.4 THE CURL OF A GRADIENT IS ZERO

If f is a scalar field with continuous second partials, then

$$\nabla \times (\nabla f) = \mathbf{0}.$$

PROOF

$$\nabla \times (\nabla f) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial z} \end{vmatrix} =$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z} - \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y}\right)\mathbf{i} + \left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x} - \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z}\right)\mathbf{j} + \left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} - \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}\right)\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}. \quad ❑$$

THEOREM 18.8.5 THE DIVERGENCE OF A CURL IS ZERO

If the components of the vector field $\mathbf{v} = v_1\,\mathbf{i} + v_2\,\mathbf{j} + v_3\,\mathbf{k}$ have continuous second partials, then

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) = 0.$$

PROOF Again the key is the equality of the mixed partials:

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial v_3}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial v_2}{\partial z}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{\partial v_1}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(\frac{\partial v_2}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial v_1}{\partial y}\right) = 0,$$

since for each component v_i the mixed partials cancel. Try it for v_1. ❑

The next two identities are product rules. Here f is a scalar field and $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector field.

(18.8.6) $$\nabla \cdot (f\mathbf{v}) = (\nabla f) \cdot \mathbf{v} + f(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}). \qquad [\text{div}(f\mathbf{v}) = (\text{grad } f) \cdot \mathbf{v} + f(\text{div } \mathbf{v})]$$

(18.8.7) $$\nabla \times (f\mathbf{v}) = (\nabla f) \times \mathbf{v} + f(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}). \qquad [\text{curl}(f\mathbf{v}) = (\text{grad } f) \times \mathbf{v} + f(\text{curl } \mathbf{v})]$$

The verification of these identities is left to you in the Exercises.

As usual, set $\mathbf{r} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ and $r = \|\mathbf{r}\|$. From Example 1 we know that $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{r} = 3$ and $\nabla \times \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{0}$ at all points of space. Now we can show that if n is an integer,

then, for all $\mathbf{r} \neq \mathbf{0}$,

(18.8.8)
$$\boxed{\nabla \cdot (r^n\,\mathbf{r}) = (n+3)r^n \qquad \text{and} \qquad \nabla \times (r^n\,\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{0}.}$$ †

PROOF Earlier we showed that $\nabla r^n = nr^{n-2}\,\mathbf{r}$. [(16.1.5)] Applying (18.8.6), we have

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \cdot (r^n\mathbf{r}) &= \nabla r^n \cdot \mathbf{r} + r^n(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{r})\\ &= (nr^{n-2}\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{r} + r^n(3)\\ &= nr^{n-2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r}) + 3r^n = nr^n + 3r^n = (n+3)r^n.\end{aligned}$$

That $\nabla \times (r^n\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{0}$ follows from the fact that $r^n\mathbf{r}$ is a gradient:

$$\nabla\left(\frac{r^{n+2}}{n+2}\right) = r^n\mathbf{r}.$$

We know that gradients have $\mathbf{0}$ curl. ❑

The Laplacian

From the operator ∇ we can construct other operators, the most important of which is the Laplacian $\nabla^2 = \nabla \cdot \nabla$. The Laplacian (named after the French mathematician Pierre-Simon Laplace) operates on scalar fields according to the following rule:

(18.8.9)
$$\boxed{\nabla^2 f = \nabla \cdot (\nabla f) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2}.}$$ ‡

Example 3 If $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$, then

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla^2 f &= \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}(x^2 + y^2 + z^2) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\\ &= 2 + 2 + 2 = 6.\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Example 4 If $f(x, y, z) = e^{xyz}$, then

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla^2 f &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x^2}(e^{xyz}) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}(e^{xyz}) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}(e^{xyz})\\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(yz\,e^{xyz}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(xz\,e^{xyz}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}(xy\,e^{xyz})\\ &= y^2z^2\,e^{xyz} + x^2z^2e^{xyz} + x^2y^2e^{xyz}\\ &= (y^2z^2 + x^2z^2 + x^2y^2)e^{xyz}.\end{aligned}$$ ❑

Example 5 To calculate $\nabla^2(\sin r) = \nabla^2(\sin\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2})$, we could write

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}(\sin\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2}(\sin\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2}(\sin\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2})$$

† If n is positive and even, these formulas also hold at $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{0}$.

‡ In some texts you will see the Laplacian of f written Δf. Unfortunately this can be misread as the increment of f.

and proceed from there. The calculations are straightforward but lengthy. We will proceed in a different way.

Recall that

$$\nabla^2 f = \nabla \cdot \nabla f \quad (18.8.9) \qquad \nabla \cdot (f\mathbf{v}) = (\nabla f) \cdot \mathbf{v} + f(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) \quad (18.8.6)$$

$$\nabla f(r) = f'(r)r^{-1}\mathbf{r} \quad (16.3.11) \qquad \nabla \cdot (r^n \mathbf{r}) = (n+3)r^n. \quad (18.8.8)$$

Using these relations, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla^2(\sin r) = \nabla \cdot (\nabla \sin r) &= \nabla \cdot [(\cos r)r^{-1}\mathbf{r}] \\ &= [(\nabla \cos r) \cdot r^{-1}\mathbf{r}] + \cos r\,(\nabla \cdot r^{-1}\mathbf{r}) \\ &= \{(-\sin r)r^{-1}\mathbf{r}] \cdot r^{-1}\mathbf{r}\} + (\cos r)(2r^{-1}) \\ &= -\sin r + 2r^{-1}\cos r.\end{aligned}$$

We leave it to you to verify each step. It takes practice to become familiar with these operations. ❑

EXERCISES 18.8

Exercises 1–12. Calculate the divergence $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$ and the curl $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$.

1. $\mathbf{v}(x, y) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j}$.

2. $\mathbf{v}(x, y) = y\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j}$.

3. $\mathbf{v}(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x^2+y^2}\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{y}{x^2+y^2}\mathbf{j}$.

4. $\mathbf{v}(x, y) = \dfrac{y}{x^2+y^2}\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{x}{x^2+y^2}\mathbf{j}$.

5. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j} + 3z\,\mathbf{k}$.

6. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = yz\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + xy\,\mathbf{k}$.

7. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xyz\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

8. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x^2y\,\mathbf{i} + y^2z\,\mathbf{j} + xy^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

9. $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) = r^{-2}\mathbf{r}$.

10. $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) = e^x\mathbf{r}$.

11. $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{r^2}(\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$.

12. $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) = e^{y^2}\,\mathbf{i} + e^{z^2}\,\mathbf{j} + e^{x^2}\,\mathbf{k}$.

13. Suppose that f is a differentiable function of one variable and $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = f(x)\,\mathbf{i}$. Determine $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$ and $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$.

14. Show that, if $\mathbf{v}$ is a differentiable vector field of the form $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) = f(x)\,\mathbf{i} + g(y)\,\mathbf{j} + h(z)\,\mathbf{k}$, then $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

15. Show that divergence and curl are *linear* operators:

$$\nabla \cdot (\alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta\mathbf{v}) = \alpha(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}) + \beta(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) \quad \text{and}$$
$$\nabla \times (\alpha\mathbf{u} + \beta\mathbf{v}) = \alpha(\nabla \times \mathbf{u}) + \beta(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}).$$

16. (*Important*) Show that the gravitational field

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{GmM}{r^3}\mathbf{r}$$

has zero divergence and zero curl at each $\mathbf{r} \neq \mathbf{0}$.

A vector field with zero divergence ($\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$) is said to be *solenoidal*, from the Greek word for "tubular." Exercise 16 shows that the gravitational field is solenoidal. If $\mathbf{v}$ is the velocity field of some fluid and $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$ in a solid T in three-dimensional space, then $\mathbf{v}$ has no sources or sinks within T.

17. Show that the vector field $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = (2x + y + 2z)\,\mathbf{i} + (x + 4y - 3z)\,\mathbf{j} + (2x - 3y - 6z)\,\mathbf{k}$ is solenoidal.

18. Show that $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = 3x^2\,\mathbf{i} - y^2\,\mathbf{j} + (2yz - 6xz)\,\mathbf{k}$ is solenoidal.

A vector field with zero curl ($\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = 0$) is said to be *irrotational*. Exercise 16 shows that the gravitational field is irrotational. If $\mathbf{v}$ is the velocity field of some fluid, then $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$ measures the tendency of the fluid to "curl" or rotate about an axis. That $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ can be taken to mean that the fluid tends to move in a straight line.

19. Show that the vector field $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} - 2z\,\mathbf{k}$ is irrotational.

20. Show that the vector field of Exercise 17 is irrotational.

Exercises 21–26. Calculate the Laplacian $\nabla^2 f$.

21. $f(x, y, z) = x^4 + y^4 + z^4$.

22. $f(x, y, z) = xyz$.

23. $f(x, y, z) = x^2y^3z^4$.

24. $f(\mathbf{r}) = \cos r$.

25. $f(\mathbf{r}) = e^r$.

26. $f(\mathbf{r}) = \ln r$.

27. Given a vector field $\mathbf{u}$, the operator $\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla$ is defined by setting

$$(\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla)f = \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla f = u_1\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + u_2\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} + u_3\frac{\partial f}{\partial z}.$$

Calculate $(\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla)f$: (a) for $f(\mathbf{r}) = r^2$, (b) for $f(\mathbf{r}) = 1/r$.

28. (Based on Exercise 27) We can also apply $\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla$ to a vector field $\mathbf{v}$ by applying it to each component. By definition

$$(\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla v_1)\,\mathbf{i} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla v_2)\,\mathbf{j} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla v_3)\,\mathbf{k}.$$

(a) Calculate $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla)\,\mathbf{r}$ for an arbitrary vector field $\mathbf{u}$.

(b) Calculate $(\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla)\,\mathbf{u}$ given that $\mathbf{u} = yz\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + xy\,\mathbf{k}$.

29. Show that, if $f(\mathbf{r}) = g(r)$ and g is twice differentiable, then
$$\nabla^2 f = g''(r) + 2r^{-1}g'(r).$$

30. Verify the following identities.
(a) $\nabla \cdot (f\mathbf{v}) = (\nabla f) \cdot \mathbf{v} + f(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})$.
(b) $\nabla \times (f\mathbf{v}) = (\nabla f) \times \mathbf{v} + f(\nabla \times \mathbf{v})$.
(c) $\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) - \nabla^2\mathbf{v}$, where
$$\nabla^2\mathbf{v} = (\nabla^2 v_1)\,\mathbf{i} + (\nabla^2 v_2)\,\mathbf{j} + (\nabla^2 v_3)\,\mathbf{k}.$$
HINT: Begin part (c) by writing out the ith component of each side.

Exercises 31–32. Equation
$$\nabla^2 f = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} = 0$$
is called *Laplace's equation in three dimensions*. A scalar field $f = f(x, y, z)$ which has continuous second partials and satisfies Laplace's equation on some solid T is said to be *harmonic* on T.

31. Show that the scalar field
$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 2y^2 - 3z^2 + xy + 2xz - 3yz$$
is everywhere harmonic.

32. Show that the scalar field
$$f(x, y, z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}$$
is harmonic on every solid T that excludes the origin. Up to a constant factor, f is a potential function for the gravitational field.

33. For what nonzero integers n is $f(\mathbf{r}) = r^n$ harmonic on every solid T that excludes the origin?

34. Show that if $f = f(x, y, z)$ satisfies Laplace's equation, then its gradient field is both solenoidal and irrotational.

■ 18.9 THE DIVERGENCE THEOREM

Let Ω be a Jordan region with a piecewise-smooth boundary C, and let P and Q be continuously differentiable scalar fields on an open set that contains Ω. Green's theorem allows us to express a double integral over Ω as a line integral over C:
$$\iint_{\Omega} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy = \oint_C P\,dx + Q\,dy.$$

In vector terms Green's theorem can be written:

(18.9.1)
$$\boxed{\iint_{\Omega} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\,dxdy = \oint_C (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n})\,ds.}$$

Here $\mathbf{n}$ is the outer unit normal and the integral on the right is taken with respect to arc length. (Section 18.4.)

PROOF Set $\mathbf{v} = Q\,\mathbf{i} - P\,\mathbf{j}$. Then
$$\iint_{\Omega} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\,dxdy = \iint_{\Omega} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}\right) dxdy.$$

All we have to show then is that
$$\oint_C (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n})\,ds = \oint_C P dx + Q\,dy.$$

For C traversed counterclockwise, $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{k}$ where $\mathbf{T}$ is the unit tangent vector. (Draw a figure.) Thus
$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{k}) = (-\mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{T}) \underset{\uparrow\ \mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c}}{=} (-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{T}$$

Since $-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{k} = (P\,\mathbf{j} - Q\,\mathbf{i}) \times \mathbf{k} = P\,\mathbf{i} + Q\,\mathbf{j}$, we have $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} = (P\,\mathbf{i} + Q\,\mathbf{j}) \cdot \mathbf{T}$.

Therefore

$$\oint_C (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,ds = \oint_C [(P\,\mathbf{i} + Q\,\mathbf{j})\cdot\mathbf{T}]\,ds \underset{(18.4.6)}{=} \oint_C (P\,\mathbf{i} + Q\,\mathbf{j})\cdot\mathbf{dr} = \oint_C P\,dx + Q\,dy. \qquad \square$$

Green's theorem expressed as (18.9.1) has a higher dimensional analog that is known as the divergence theorem.[†]

THEOREM 18.9.2 THE DIVERGENCE THEOREM

Let T be a solid bounded by a closed oriented surface S which, if not smooth, is piecewise smooth. If the vector field $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ is continuously differentiable throughout T, then

$$\iiint_T (\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v})\,dxdydz = \iint_S (\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n})\,d\sigma$$

where $\mathbf{n}$ is the outer unit normal.

PROOF We will carry out the proof under the assumption that S is smooth and that any line parallel to a coordinate axis intersects S at most twice.

Our first step is to express the outer unit normal $\mathbf{n}$ in terms of its direction cosines.

$$\mathbf{n} = \cos\alpha_1\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\alpha_2\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\alpha_3\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Then, for $\mathbf{v} = v_1\,\mathbf{i} + v_2\,\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$,

$$\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n} = v_1\cos\alpha_1 + v_2\cos\alpha_2 + v_3\cos\alpha_3.$$

The idea of the proof is to show that

(1) $$\iint_S v_1\cos\alpha_1\,d\sigma = \iiint_T \frac{\partial v_1}{\partial x}\,dxdydz,$$

(2) $$\iint_S v_2\cos\alpha_2\,d\sigma = \iiint_T \frac{\partial v_2}{\partial y}\,dxdydz,$$

(3) $$\iint_S v_3\cos\alpha_3\,d\sigma = \iiint_T \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial z}\,dxdydz.$$

All three equations can be verified in much the same manner. We will carry out the details only for the third equation.

Let Ω_{xy} be the projection of T onto the xy-plane. (See Figure 18.9.1.) If $(x, y) \in \Omega_{xy}$, then, by assumption, the vertical line through (x, y) intersects S in at most two points, an upper point P^+ and a lower point P^-. (If the vertical line intersects S at only one point P, we set $P = P^+ = P^-$.) As (x, y) ranges over Ω_{xy}, the upper point P^+ describes a surface

$$S^+: \quad z = f^+(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega_{xy} \qquad \text{(See the figure.)}$$

[†]This is also called Gauss's theorem after the German mathematician Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855). Often referred to as "The Prince of Mathematicians," Gauss is regarded by many as one of the greatest geniuses of all time.

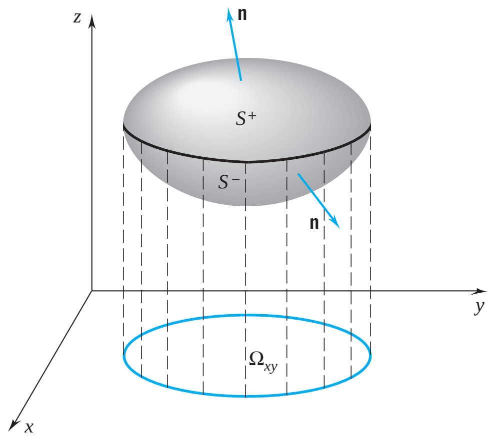


Figure 18.9.1

and the lower point describes a surface

$$S^- : \quad z = f^-(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega_{xy}.$$

By our assumptions, f^+ and f^- are continuously differentiable, $S = S^+ \cup S^-$, and the solid T is the set of all points (x, y, z) with

$$f^-(x, y) \le z \le f^+(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega_{xy}.$$

Now let λ be the angle between the positive z-axis and the upper unit normal. On S^+ the outer unit normal $\mathbf{n}$ is the upper unit normal. Thus on S^+,

$$\lambda = \alpha_3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \cos\alpha_3 \sec\gamma = 1.$$

On S^- the outer unit normal $\mathbf{n}$ is the lower unit normal. In this case,

$$\lambda = \pi - \alpha_3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \cos\alpha_3 \sec\gamma = -1.$$

Thus,

$$\iint_{S^+} v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \, d\sigma \underset{\uparrow\,(18.7.7)}{=} \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \sec\gamma \, dx dy = \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} v_3[x, y, f^+(x, y)] \, dx dy$$

and

$$\iint_{S^-} v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \, d\sigma = \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \sec\gamma \, dx dy = -\iint_{\Omega_{xy}} v_3[x, y, f^-(x, y)] \, dx dy.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
\iint_S v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \, d\sigma &= \iint_{S^+} v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \, d\sigma + \iint_{S^-} v_3 \cos\alpha_3 \, d\sigma \\
&= \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} (v_3[x, y, f^+(x, y)] - v_3[x, y, f^-(x, y)]) \, dx dy \\
&= \iint_{\Omega_{xy}} \left(\int_{f^-(xy)}^{f^+(x,y)} \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial z}(x, y, z) \, dz \right) dx dy \\
&= \iiint_T \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial z}(x, y, z) \, dx dy dz.
\end{aligned}$$

This confirms (3). Equation (2) can be confirmed by projection onto the xz-plane; (1) can be confirmed by projection onto the yz-plane. ❑

Divergence as Outward Flux per Unit Volume

Choose a point P and surround it by a closed ball N_ϵ of radius ϵ. According to the divergence theorem,

$$\iiint_{N_\epsilon} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\, dx\,dy\,dz = \text{flux of } \mathbf{v} \text{ out of } N_\epsilon.$$

Thus

$$(\text{average divergence of } \mathbf{v} \text{ on } N_\epsilon)\,(\text{volume of } N_\epsilon) = \text{flux of } \mathbf{v} \text{ out of } N_\epsilon$$

and

$$\text{average divergence of } \mathbf{v} \text{ on } N_\epsilon = \frac{\text{flux of } \mathbf{v} \text{ out of } N_\epsilon}{\text{volume of } N_\epsilon}.$$

Taking the limit of both sides as ϵ shrinks to 0, we have

$$\text{divergence of } \mathbf{v} \text{ at } P = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0^+} \frac{\text{flux of } \mathbf{v} \text{ out of } N_\epsilon}{\text{volume of } N_\epsilon}.$$

In this sense *divergence is outward flux per unit volume.*

Think of $\mathbf{v}$ as the velocity of a fluid. As suggested in Section 18.8, negative divergence at P signals an accumulation of fluid near P:

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} < 0 \text{ at } P \implies \text{flux out of } N_\epsilon < 0 \implies \text{net flow into } N_\epsilon.$$

Positive divergence at P signals a flow of liquid away from P:

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} > 0 \text{ at } P \implies \text{flux out of } N_\epsilon > 0 \implies \text{net flow out of } N_\epsilon.$$

Points at which the divergence is negative are called *sinks*; points at which the divergence is positive are called *sources*. If the divergence of $\mathbf{v}$ is 0 throughout, then the flow has no sinks and no sources and $\mathbf{v}$ is called *solenoidal*. (Exercises 18.8.)

Solids Bounded by Two or More Closed Surfaces

The divergence theorem, stated for solids bounded by a single closed oriented surface, can be extended to solids bounded by several closed surfaces. Suppose, for example, that we start with a solid bounded by a closed oriented surface S_1 and extract from the interior of that solid a solid bounded by a closed oriented surface S_2. The remaining solid T has a boundary S which consists of two pieces: an outer piece S_1 and an inner piece S_2. See Figure 18.9.2. The key here is to note that the *outer* normal for T points *out* of S_1 but *into* S_2. The divergence theorem can be proved for T by slicing T into two pieces T_1 and T_2 as in Figure 18.9.3 and applying the divergence theorem to each piece:

$$\iiint_{T_1} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\, dx\,dy\,dz = \iint_{\text{bdry of } T_1} (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n})\, d\sigma,$$

$$\iiint_{T_2} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\, dx\,dy\,dz = \iint_{\text{bdry of } T_2} (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n})\, d\sigma.$$

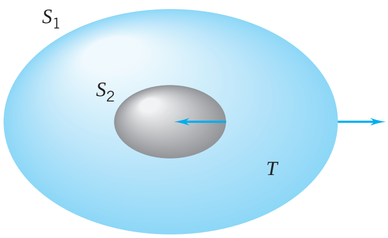


Figure 18.9.2

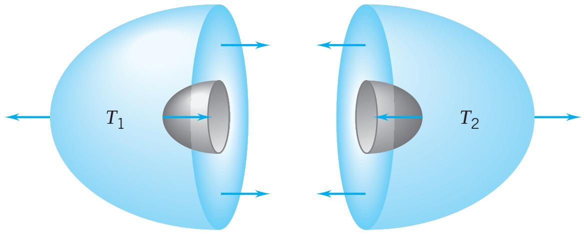


Figure 18.9.3

The triple integrals over T_1 and T_2 add up to the triple integral over T. When the surface integrals are added together, the integrals along the common cut cancel (because the normals are in opposite directions), and therefore only the integrals over S_1 and S_2 remain. Thus the surface integrals add up to the surface integral over $S = S_1 \cup S_2$ and the divergence theorem still holds:

$$\iiint_T (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\, dx\,dy\,dz = \iint_S (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n})\, d\sigma.$$

EXERCISES 18.9

Exercises 1–4. Apply the divergence theorem to calculate the flux of $\mathbf{v}$ out of the unit ball $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

1. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

2. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = (1 - x)\,\mathbf{i} + (2 - y)\,\mathbf{j} + (3 - z)\,\mathbf{k}$.

3. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

4. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = (1 - x^2)\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 5–8. Verify the divergence theorem on the unit cube $0 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le 1,\ 0 \le z \le 1$ for the given $\mathbf{v}$.

5. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

6. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + yz\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$.

7. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} - xz\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

8. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} + xyz\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 9–14. Use the divergence theorem to find the total flux out of the given solid.

9. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y^2\,\mathbf{j} + 3z^2\,\mathbf{k}$; $x^2 + y^2 \le 9,\ 0 \le z \le 1$.

10. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + yz\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$; $0 \le x \le 1,$ $0 \le y \le 1 - x,$ $0 \le z \le 1 - x - y$.

11. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} - 2xz\,\mathbf{k}$; $0 \le x \le 1,$ $0 \le y \le 1 - x,$ $0 \le z \le 1 - x - y$.

12. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = (2xy + 2z)\,\mathbf{i} + (y^2 + 1)\,\mathbf{j} - (x + y)\,\mathbf{k}$; $0 \le x \le 4,$ $0 \le y \le 4 - x,$ $0 \le z \le 4 - x - y$.

13. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$; the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 \le 4,$ $0 \le z \le 4$, including the top and base.

14. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$; the ball $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 4$.

Exercises 15–16. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = 2xy\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j} + 3yz\,\mathbf{k}$ out of the given solid.

15. The ball: $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le a^2$.

16. The cube: $0 \le x \le a,\quad 0 \le y \le a,\quad 0 \le z \le a$.

17. What is the flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = Ax\,\mathbf{i} + By\,\mathbf{j} + Cz\,\mathbf{k}$ out of a solid of volume V?

18. Let T be a basic solid with a piecewise-smooth boundary. Show that if f is harmonic on T (defined in Exercises 18.8), then the flux of ∇f out of T is zero.

19. Let S be a closed smooth surface with continuous unit normal $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(x, y, z)$. Show that

$$\iint_S \mathbf{n}\, d\sigma = \left(\iint_S n_1\, d\sigma\right)\mathbf{i} + \left(\iint_S n_2\, d\sigma\right)\mathbf{j} + \left(\iint_S n_3\, d\sigma\right)\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}.$$

20. Let T be a solid with a piecewise-smooth boundary S and let $\mathbf{n}$ be the outer unit normal.

(a) Verify the identity $\nabla \cdot (f\,\nabla f) = \|\nabla f\|^2 + f(\nabla^2 f)$ and show that, if f is harmonic on T, then

$$\iint_S (f f'_{\mathbf{n}})\, d\sigma = \iiint_T \|\nabla f\|^2\, dx\,dy\,dz$$

where $f'_{\mathbf{n}}$ is the directional derivative $\nabla f \cdot \mathbf{n}$.

(b) Show that, if g is continuously differentiable on T, then

$$\iint_S (g f'_{\mathbf{n}})\, d\sigma = \iiint_T [(\nabla g \cdot \nabla f) + g(\nabla^2 f)]\, dx\,dy\,dz.$$

21. Let T be a solid with a piecewise-smooth boundary. Show that if f and g have continuous second partials, then the flux of $\nabla f \times \nabla g$ out of T is zero.

22. Let T be a solid with a piecewise-smooth boundary S. Express the volume of T as a surface integral over S.

23. Suppose that a solid T (boundary S, outer unit normal $\mathbf{n}$) is immersed in a fluid. The fluid exerts a pressure $p = p(x, y, z)$ at each point of S, and therefore the solid T experiences a force. The total force on the solid due to the pressure distribution is given by the surface integral

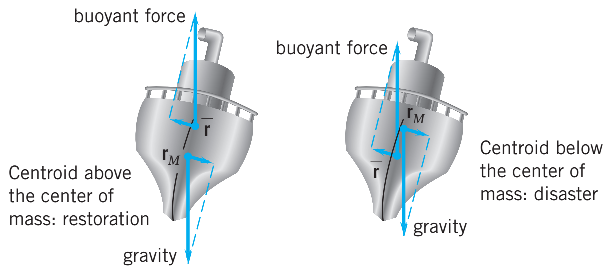
$$\mathbf{F} = -\iint_S p\,\mathbf{n}\,d\sigma.$$

(The formula says that the force on the solid is the average pressure against S times the area of S.) Now choose a coordinate system with the z-axis vertical and assume that the fluid fills a region of space to the level $z = c$. The depth of a point (x, y, z) is then $c - z$ and we have $p(x, y, z) = \rho(c - z)$, where ρ is the weight density of the fluid (the weight per unit volume). Apply the divergence theorem to each component of $\mathbf{F}$ to show that $\mathbf{F} = W\,\mathbf{k}$ where W is the weight of the fluid displaced by the solid. We call this the *buoyant force* on the solid. (This shows that the object is not pushed from side to side by the pressure and verifies the *principle of Archimedes:* that the buoyant force on an object at rest in a fluid equals the weight of the fluid displaced.)

24. If $\mathbf{F}$ is a force applied at the tip of a radius vector $\mathbf{r}$, then the *torque*, or twisting strength, of $\mathbf{F}$ about the origin is given by the cross product $\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$. From physics we learn that the total torque on the solid T of Exercise 23 is given by the formula

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{Tot}} = -\iint_S [\mathbf{r} \times \rho(c - z)\,\mathbf{n}]\,d\sigma.$$

Use the divergence theorem to find the components of $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{Tot}}$ and show that $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{Tot}} = \bar{\mathbf{r}} \times \mathbf{F}$ where $\mathbf{F}$ is the buoyant force $W\,\mathbf{k}$ and $\bar{\mathbf{r}}$ is the centroid of T. (This indicates that for calculating the twisting effect of the buoyant force we can view this force as being applied at the centroid. This is very important in ship design. Imagine, for example, a totally submerged submarine. While the buoyant force acts upward through the centroid of the submarine, gravity acts downward through the center of mass. Suppose the submarine should tilt a bit to one side as depicted in the figure. If the centroid lies above the center of mass, then the buoyant force acts to restore the submarine to an upright position. If, however, the centroid lies below the center of mass, then disaster. Once the submarine has tilted a bit, the buoyant force will make it tilt further. This kind of analysis also applies to surface ships,



but in this case the buoyant force acts upward through *the centroid of the portion of the ship that is submerged.* This point is called the *center of flotation.* One must design and load a ship to keep the center of flotation above the center of mass. Putting a lot of heavy cargo on the deck, for instance, tends to raise the center of mass and destabilize the ship.)

■ PROJECT 18.9 Static Charges

Consider a point charge q somewhere in space. This charge creates around itself an *electric field* $\mathbf{E}$, which in turn exerts an electric force on every other nearby charge. If we center our coordinate system at q, then the electric field at the point $\mathbf{r}$ can be written

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) = q\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}.$$

This result is found experimentally. Note that this field has the same form as a gravitational field.

Problem 1. Show that $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$ for all $\mathbf{r} \neq 0$.

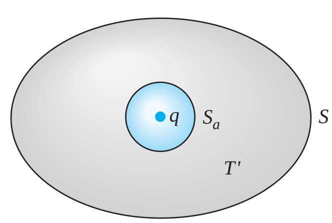
We are interested in the flux of $\mathbf{E}$ out of a closed surface S. We assume that S does not pass through q.

Problem 2. Suppose that the charge q is outside S. Then $\mathbf{E}$ is continuously differentiable on the region T bounded by S. Use the divergence theorem to show that

$$\text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S = 0.$$

If q is inside S, then the divergence theorem does not apply to T directly because $\mathbf{E}$ is not differentiable on all of T. We can circumvent this difficulty by surrounding q by a small sphere S_a of radius a and applying the divergence theorem to the region T' bounded on the outside by S and on the inside by S_a. See the figure.

Since $\mathbf{E}$ is continuously differentiable on T',



$$\iiint_T (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E})\,dx\,dy\,dz = \text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S + \text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ into } S_a$$
$$= \text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S - \text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S_a.$$

Since $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$ on T', it follows that

$$\text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S = \text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S_a.$$

Problem 3. Show that: flux out of $S_a = 4\pi q$.

Thus, if $\mathbf{E}$ is the electric field of a point charge q and S is a closed surface that does not pass through q, then

$$\text{flux of } \mathbf{E} \text{ out of } S = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } q \text{ is outside } S \\ 4\pi q & \text{if } q \text{ is inside } S. \end{cases}$$

■ 18.10 STOKES'S THEOREM

We return to Green's theorem

$$\iint_{\Omega} \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} \right) dxdy = \oint_C P\, dx + Q\, dy.$$

Setting $\mathbf{v} = P\,\mathbf{i} + Q\,\mathbf{j} + R\,\mathbf{k}$, we have

$$(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{k} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ P & Q & R \end{vmatrix} \cdot \mathbf{k} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}.$$

Thus in terms of $\mathbf{v}$, Green's theorem can be written

$$\iint_{\Omega} [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{k}]\, dxdy = \oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

Since any plane can be coordinatized as the xy-plane, this result can be phrased as follows: Let S be a flat surface in space bounded by a Jordan curve C. If $\mathbf{v}$ is continuously differentiable on S, then

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

where $\mathbf{n}$ is a unit normal for S and the line integral is taken in the *positive sense*, meaning in the direction of the unit tangent $\mathbf{T}$ for which $\mathbf{T} \times \mathbf{n}$ points away from the surface. See Figure 18.10.1. (An observer marching along C with the same orientation as $\mathbf{n}$ keeps the surface to his left.) The symbol $\oint_C$ denotes this line integral.

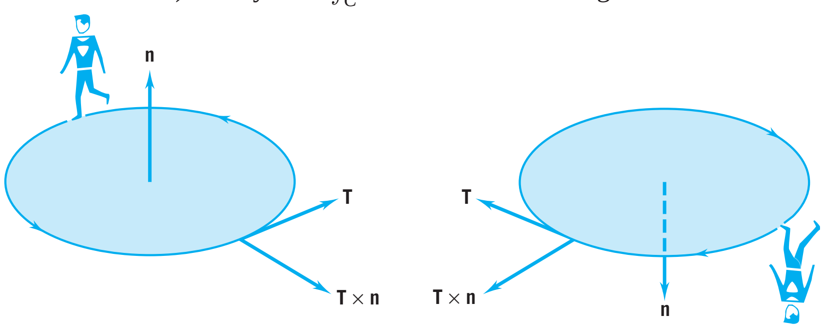


Figure 18.10.1

Figure 18.10.2 shows a *polyhedral surface S* bounded by a closed polygonal path C. The surface S consists of a finite number of flat faces $S_1, \ldots, S_n$ with polygonal boundaries $C_1, \ldots, C_n$ and unit normals $\mathbf{n}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{n}_n$. We choose these unit normals in a consistent manner; that is, they emanate from the same side of the surface. Now let $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(x, y, z)$ be a vector function of norm 1 which is $\mathbf{n}_1$ on S_1, $\mathbf{n}_2$ on S_2, $\mathbf{n}_3$ on S_3, etc. It is immaterial how $\mathbf{n}$ is defined on the line segments that join the different faces. Suppose now that $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ is a vector function continuously differentiable on an open set that contains S. Then

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \iint_{S_i} [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \oint_{C_i} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr},$$

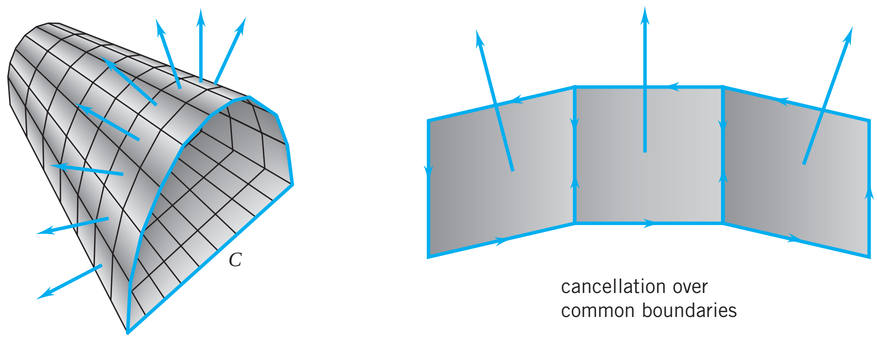


Figure 18.10.2

the integral over C_i being taken in the positive sense with respect to $\mathbf{n}_i$. Now when we add these line integrals, we find that all the line segments that make up the C_i but are not part of C are traversed twice and in opposite directions. (See the figure.) Thus these line segments contribute nothing to the sum of the line integrals and we are left with the integral around C. It follows that for a polyhedral surface S with boundary C

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

This result can be extended to smooth oriented surfaces with smooth bounding curves (see Figure 18.10.3) by approximating these configurations by polyhedral configurations of the type considered and using a limit process. In an admittedly informal way we have arrived at Stokes's theorem.

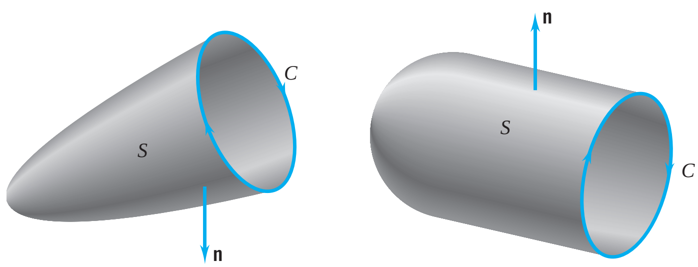


Figure 18.10.3

THEOREM 18.10.1 STOKES'S THEOREM†

Let S be a smooth oriented surface with a smooth bounding curve C. If $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ is a continuously differentiable vector field on an open set that contains S, then

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$$

where $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(x, y, z)$ is a unit normal that varies continuously on S and the line integral is taken in the positive sense with respect to $\mathbf{n}$.

†The result was announced publicly for the first time by George Gabriel Stokes (1819–1903), an Irish mathematician and physicist who, like Green, was a Cambridge professor.

Example 1 Verify Stokes's theorem for

$$\mathbf{v} = -3y\,\mathbf{i} + 3x\,\mathbf{j} + z^4\,\mathbf{k},$$

taking S as the portion of the ellipsoid $2x^2 + 2y^2 + z^2 = 1$ that lies above the plane $z = 1/\sqrt{2}$. (Figure 18.10.4.)

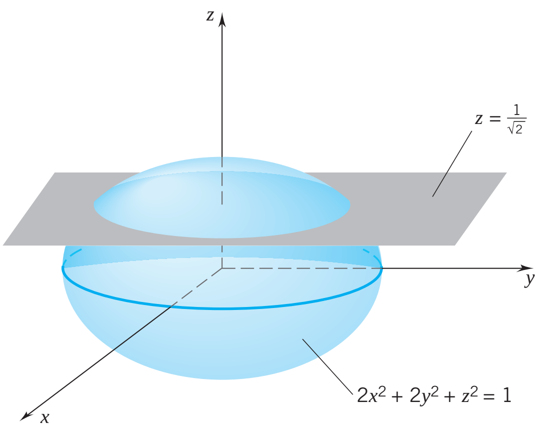


Figure 18.10.4

SOLUTION A little algebra shows that S is the graph of the function

$$f(x, y) = \sqrt{1 - 2(x^2 + y^2)}$$

with (x, y) restricted to the disk $\Omega : x^2 + y^2 \le \frac{1}{4}$.

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ -3y & 3x & z^4 \end{vmatrix} = \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(3x) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(3y)\right]\mathbf{k} = 6\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Taking $\mathbf{n}$ as the upper unit normal, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\,d\sigma &= \iint_S (6\,\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{n})\,d\sigma \\ &= \iint_\Omega (-(0)\,f_x - (0)\,f_y + 6)\,dx\,dy \\ \underset{(18.7.9)}{\uparrow}\quad &= \iint_\Omega 6\,dx\,dy = 6\,(\text{area of }\Omega) = 6(\tfrac{1}{4}\pi) = \tfrac{3}{2}\pi. \end{aligned}$$

The bounding curve C is the set of all (x, y, z) with $x^2 + y^2 = \frac{1}{4}$ and $z = 1/\sqrt{2}$. We can parametrize C by setting

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{k}, \qquad u \in [0, 2\pi].$$

Since $\mathbf{n}$ is the upper unit normal, this parametrization gives C in the positive sense.

Thus

$$\oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_0^{2\pi} (-\tfrac{3}{2} \sin u \,\mathbf{i} + \tfrac{3}{2} \cos u \,\mathbf{j} + \tfrac{1}{4}\mathbf{k}) \cdot (-\tfrac{1}{2} \sin u \,\mathbf{i} + \tfrac{1}{2} \cos u \,\mathbf{j})\, du$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} (\tfrac{3}{4} \sin^2 u + \tfrac{3}{4} \cos^2 u)\, du = \int_0^{2\pi} \tfrac{3}{4}\, du = \tfrac{3}{2}\pi.$$

This is the value we obtained for the surface integral. ❑

Example 2 Verify Stokes's theorem for

$$\mathbf{v} = z^2\,\mathbf{i} - 2x\,\mathbf{j} + y^3\,\mathbf{k},$$

taking S as the upper half of the unit sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

SOLUTION We use the upper unit normal $\mathbf{n} = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$:

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ \dfrac{\partial}{\partial x} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial y} & \dfrac{\partial}{\partial z} \\ z^2 & -2x & y^3 \end{vmatrix} = 3y^2\,\mathbf{i} + 2z\,\mathbf{j} - 2\,\mathbf{k}.$$

Therefore

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \iint_S [(3y^2\,\mathbf{i} + 2z\,\mathbf{j} - 2\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot (x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k})]\, d\sigma$$

$$= \iint_S (3xy^2 + 2yz - 2z)\, d\sigma$$

$$= \iint_S 3xy^2\, d\sigma + \iint_S 2yz\, d\sigma - \iint_S 2z\, d\sigma.$$

The first integral is zero because S is symmetric about the yz-plane and the integrand is odd with respect to x. The second integral is zero because S is symmetric about the xz-plane and the integrand is odd with respect to y. Thus

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = -\iint_S 2z\, d\sigma = -2\bar{z}(\text{area of } S) = \underbrace{-2(\tfrac{1}{2})}_{\text{Exercise 17, Section 18.7}}2\pi = -2\pi.$$

This is also the value of the integral along the bounding base circle taken in the positive sense: $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}$, $u \in [0, 2\pi]$, and

$$\oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \oint_C z^2 dx - 2x\, dy = -2\oint_C x\, dy$$

$$= -2\int_0^{2\pi} \cos^2 u\, du = -2\pi. \quad ❑$$

Earlier you saw that the curl of a gradient is zero. Using Stokes's theorem, we can prove a partial converse.

(18.10.2) If a vector field $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ is continuously differentiable on an open convex† set U and $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ on all of U, then $\mathbf{v}$ is the gradient of some scalar field ϕ defined on U.

† A set U is said to be *convex* 0 if, for each pair of points $p, q \in U$, the line segment $\overline{pq}$ lies entirely in U.

PROOF Choose a point $\mathbf{a}$ in U, and for each point x in U, define

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) = \int_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mathbf{x}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

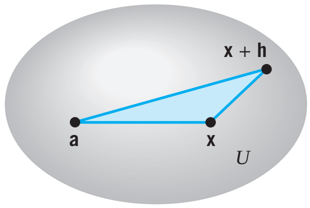


Figure 18.10.5

(This is the line integral from $\mathbf{a}$ to $\mathbf{x}$ taken along the line segment that joins these two points. We know that this line segment lies in U because U is convex.)

Since U is open, $\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}$ is in U for all $\mathbf{h}$ sufficiently small. Assume then that $\mathbf{h}$ is sufficiently small for $\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}$ to be in U. Since U is convex, the triangular region with vertices at $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{x}$, $\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}$ lies in U. (See Figure 18.10.5.) Since $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ on U, we can conclude from Stokes's theorem that

$$\int_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mathbf{x}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} + \int_{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} + \int_{\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}}^{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = 0.$$

Therefore

$$\int_{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = -\int_{\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}}^{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} - \int_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mathbf{x}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} - \int_{\mathbf{a}}^{\mathbf{x}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

By our definition of ϕ, we have

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - \phi(\mathbf{x}) = \int_{\mathbf{x}}^{\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

We can parametrize the line segment from $\mathbf{x}$ to $\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}$ by $\mathbf{r}(u) = \mathbf{x} + u\,\mathbf{h}$ with $u \in [0, 1]$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{h}) - \phi(\mathbf{x}) &= \int_0^1 [\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(u)]\, du \\ &= \int_0^1 [\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}(u)) \cdot \mathbf{h}]\, du \\ \text{Theorem 5.9.1} \longrightarrow &= \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}(u_0)) \cdot \mathbf{h} \qquad \text{for some } u_0 \text{ in } [0, 1] \\ &= \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x} + u_0\mathbf{h}) \cdot \mathbf{h} = \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{h} + [\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x} + u_0\mathbf{h}) - \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})] \cdot \mathbf{h}. \end{aligned}$$

The fact that $\mathbf{v} = \nabla\phi$ follows from observing that $[\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x} + u_0\mathbf{h}) - \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})] \cdot \mathbf{h}$ is $o(\mathbf{h})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{|[\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x} + u_0\mathbf{h}) - \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})] \cdot \mathbf{h}|}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} &\le \frac{\|\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x} + u_0\mathbf{h}) - \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})\|\ \|\mathbf{h}\|}{\|\mathbf{h}\|} \\ &= |\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x} + u_0\mathbf{h}) - \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})\| \to 0 \end{aligned}$$

as $\mathbf{h} \to \mathbf{0}$. ❑

The Normal Component of $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$ as Circulation per Unit Area; Irrotational Flow

Interpret $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ as the velocity of a fluid flow. In Section 18.8 we stated that $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$ measures the rotational tendency of the fluid. Now we can be more precise.

Take a point P within the flow and choose a unit vector $\mathbf{n}$. Let D_ϵ be the ϵ-disk that is centered at P and is perpendicular to $\mathbf{n}$. Let C_ϵ be the circular boundary of D_ϵ directed in the positive sense with respect to $\mathbf{n}$. (See Figure 18.10.6.) By Stokes's theorem,

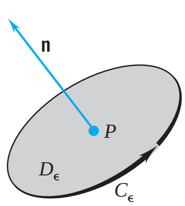


Figure 18.10.6

$$\iint_{D_\epsilon} [(\nabla \times \mathbf{n}) \cdot n]\, d\sigma = \oint_{C_\epsilon} \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}.$$

The line integral on the right is called *the circulation* of $\mathbf{v}$ around C_ϵ. Thus we can say that

$$\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{the average } \mathbf{n}\text{-component of}\\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v} \text{ on } D_\epsilon\end{array}\right)(\text{the area of } D_\epsilon) = \text{the circulation of } \mathbf{v} \text{ around } C_\epsilon.$$

It follows that

$$\text{the average } \mathbf{n}\text{-component of } \nabla\times\mathbf{v} \text{ on } D_\epsilon = \frac{\text{the circulation of } \mathbf{v} \text{ around } C_\epsilon}{\text{the area of } D_\epsilon}.$$

Taking the limit as ϵ shrinks to 0, you can see that

$$\text{the } \mathbf{n}\text{-component of } \nabla\times\mathbf{v} \text{ at } P = \lim_{\epsilon\to 0^+}\frac{\text{the circulation of } \mathbf{v} \text{ around } C_\epsilon}{\text{the area of } D_\epsilon}.$$

At each point P the component of $\nabla\times\mathbf{v}$ in any direction $\mathbf{n}$ is the circulation of $\mathbf{v}$ per unit area in the plane normal to $\mathbf{n}$. If $\nabla\times\mathbf{v} = 0$ identically, the fluid has no rotational tendency, and the flow is called irrotational.

Remark Flux and circulation apply to vector fields where no material substance is flowing. Electromagnetic phenomena result from the action and interaction of two vector fields: the electric field E and the magnetic field B. The four fundamental laws of electromagnetism can be stated as equations that give the flux and circulation of these two fields. ❑

EXERCISES 18.10

Exercises 1–4. Let S be the upper half of the unit sphere $x^2+y^2+z^2=1$ and take $\mathbf{n}$ as the upper unit normal. Find

$$\iint_S [(\nabla\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{n}]\,d\sigma$$

(a) by direct calculation; (b) by Stokes's theorem.

1. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} = z\,\mathbf{k}$.

2. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = y\,\mathbf{i} - x\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$.

3. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = z^2\,\mathbf{i} + 2x\,\mathbf{j} - y^3\,\mathbf{k}$.

4. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = 6xz\,\mathbf{i} - x^2\,\mathbf{j} - 3y^2\,\mathbf{k}$.

Exercises 5–7. Let S be the triangular surface with vertices $(2,0,0)$, $(0,2,0)$, $(0,0,2)$ and take $\mathbf{n}$ as the upper unit normal. Find

$$\iint_S [(\nabla\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{n}]\,d\sigma$$

(a) by direct calculation; (b) by Stokes's theorem.

5. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = 2z\,\mathbf{i} - y\,\mathbf{j} + x\,\mathbf{k}$.

6. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = (x^2+y^2)\,\mathbf{i} + y^2\,\mathbf{j} + (x^2+z^2)\,\mathbf{k}$.

7. $\mathbf{v}(x,y,z) = x^4\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} + z^4\,\mathbf{k}$.

8. Show that if $\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{v}(x,y,z)$ is continuously differentiable everywhere and its curl is identically zero, then

$$\int_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r})\cdot d\mathbf{r} = 0 \text{ for every smooth closed curve } C.$$

9. Let $\mathbf{v} = y\,\mathbf{i} + z\,\mathbf{j} + x^2y^2\,\mathbf{k}$ and let S be the surface $z = x^2+y^2$ from $z=0$ to $z=4$. Calculate the flux of $\nabla\times\mathbf{v}$ in the direction of the lower unit normal $\mathbf{n}$.

10. Let $\mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{2}y\,\mathbf{i} + 2xz\,\mathbf{j} - 3x\,\mathbf{k}$ and let S be the surface $y = 1-(x^2+z^2)$ from $y=-8$ to $y=1$. Calculate the flux of $\nabla\times\mathbf{v}$ in the direction of the unit normal $\mathbf{n}$ with positive $\mathbf{j}$-component.

11. Let $\mathbf{v} = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + 2y\,\mathbf{j} + x^2y^2z^2\,\mathbf{k}$ and let S be the lower half of the ellipsoid.

$$\frac{x^2}{4}+\frac{y^2}{9}+\frac{z^2}{27}=1.$$

Calculate the flux of $\nabla\times\mathbf{v}$ in the direction of the upper unit normal $\mathbf{n}$.

12. Let S be a smooth closed surface and let $\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{v}(x,y,z)$ be a vector field with second partials continuous on an open convex set that contains S. Show that

$$\iint_S [(\nabla\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{n}]\,d\sigma = 0$$

where $\mathbf{n}=\mathbf{n}(x,y,z)$ is the outer unit normal.

13. The upper half of the ellipsoid $\frac{1}{2}x^2+\frac{1}{2}y^2+z^2=1$ intersects the cylinder $x^2+y^2-y=0$ in a curve C. Calculate the circulation of $\mathbf{v} = y^3\,\mathbf{i} + (xy+3xy^2)\,\mathbf{j} + z^4\,\mathbf{k}$ around C by using Stokes's theorem.

14. The sphere $x^2+y^2+z^2=a^2$ intersects the plane $x+2y+z=0$ in a curve C. Calculate the circulation of $\mathbf{v} = 2y\,\mathbf{i} - z\,\mathbf{j} + 2x\,\mathbf{k}$ about C by using Stokes's theorem.

15. The paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ intersects the plane $z = y$ in a curve C. Calculate the circulation of $\mathbf{v} = 2z\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j} + y\,\mathbf{k}$ about C using Stokes's theorem.

16. The cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$ intersects the plane $y + z = a^2$ in a curve C. Assume $a^2 \geq b > 0$. Calculate the circulation of $\mathbf{v} = xy\,\mathbf{i} + yz\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$ about C using Stokes's theorem.

17. Let S be a smooth oriented surface with a smooth bounding curve C and let a be a fixed vector. Show that

$$\iint_S (2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n})\, d\sigma = \oint_C (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$$

where $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(x, y, z)$ is a unit normal vector that varies continuously over S and the line integral is taken in the positive sense with respect to **n.**

18. Let S be a smooth oriented surface with smooth bounding curve C. Show that, if ϕ and ψ are sufficiently differentiable scalar fields, then

$$\iint_S [(\nabla\phi \times \nabla\psi) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \oint_C (\phi\nabla\psi) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$$

where $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}(x, y, z)$ is a unit normal that varies continuously on S and the line integral is taken in the positive sense with respect to **n.**

19. Let S be a smooth oriented surface with a smooth plane bounding curve C and let $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ be a vector field with second partials continuous on an open convex set that contains S. If S does not cross the plane of C, then Stokes's theorem for S follows readily from the divergence theorem and Green's theorem. Carry out the argument.

20. Our derivation of Stokes's theorem was admittedly nonrigorous. The following version (18.10.3) of Stokes's theorem lends itself more readily to rigorous proof.
Give a detailed proof of the theorem. HINT: Set $\mathbf{v} = v_1\,\mathbf{i} + v_2\,\mathbf{j} + v_3\,\mathbf{k}$. Then

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \iint_S [(\nabla \times v_1\,\mathbf{i}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma + \iint_S [(\nabla \times v_2\,\mathbf{j}) \cdot n]\, d\sigma + \iint_S [(\nabla \times v_3\,\mathbf{k}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma$$

and

$$\oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr} = \int_C v_1\, dx + \int_C v_2\, dy + \int_C v_3\, dz.$$

Show that

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times v_1\,\mathbf{i}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \int_C v_1\, dx$$

by showing that both integrals can be written

$$\iint_\Gamma \left[\frac{\partial v_1}{\partial u}\frac{\partial x}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial v_1}{\partial v}\frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\right] du dv.$$

A similar argument (no need to carry it out) equates the integrals for v_2 and v_3 and proves the theorem.

THEOREM 18.10.3

Let Γ be a Jordan region in the uv-plane with a piecewise-smooth boundary, C_Γ given in a counterclockwise sense by a pair of functions $u = u(t)$, $v = v(t)$ with $t \in [a, b]$. Let $\mathbf{R}(u, v) = x(u, v)\,\mathbf{i} + y(u, v)\,\mathbf{j} + z(u, v)\,\mathbf{k}$ be a vector function with continuous second partials on Γ. Assume that $\mathbf{R}$ is one-to-one on Γ and that the fundamental vector product $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{R'}_u \times \mathbf{R'}_v$, is never zero. The surface S: $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}(u, v)$, $(u, v) \in \Gamma$ is a smooth oriented surface bounded by the oriented space curve $C : \mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{R}(u(t), v(t))$, $t \in [a, b]$. If $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(x, y, z)$ is a vector field continuously differentiable on S, then

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{dr}$$

where **n** is the unit normal in the direction of the fundamental vector product.

■ CHAPTER 18. REVIEW EXERCISES

1. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = x^2y\,\mathbf{i} - xy\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) the line segment from (0,0) to (1,1).
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = u^2\,\mathbf{i} + u^3\,\mathbf{j}$, $0 \leq u \leq 1$.

2. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = x^3\,\mathbf{i} + y^3\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad 0 \leq u \leq \pi/2$.
(b) $\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos^3 u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin^3 u\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad 0 \leq u \leq \pi/2$.

3. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (2xy^2 + x)\,\mathbf{i} + (2x^2y - 1)\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:
(a) the line segment from $(-1, 2)$ to (2,4).
(b) the polygonal path from $(-1, 2)$ to (0,0) to (2,4).
(c) the line segment from $(-1, 2)$ to (0,0), followed by the parabolic path $y = x^2$ from (0,0) to (2,4).

4. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = \dfrac{-y}{x^2 + y^2}\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{x}{x^2 + y^2}\,\mathbf{j}$ over the indicated path:

(a) the arc of the semicircle $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ from (2,0) to $(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$.

(b) the line segment from (2, 0) to $(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$.

(c) the polygonal path that connects $(2, 0), (2, \sqrt{2}), (-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$ in that order.

5. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = \sin y\,\mathbf{i} + xe^{xy}\,\mathbf{j} + \sin z\,\mathbf{k}$ over the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = u^2\,\mathbf{i} + u\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k},\ 0 \le u \le 3.$$

6. Integrate $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + xy\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$ over the curve

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j} + u^2\,\mathbf{k},\ 0 \le u \le \pi/2.$$

7. An object moves along the twisted cubic $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k}$ from $(-1, 1, -1)$ to (2,4,8). One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = xy\,\mathbf{i} + yz\,\mathbf{j} + xz\,\mathbf{k}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

8. An object moves along the cycloid $\mathbf{r}(u) = (u - \sin u)\,\mathbf{i} + (1 - \cos u)\,\mathbf{j}$ from (0,0) to $(2\pi, 0)$. One of the forces acting on the object is $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = x\,\mathbf{i} + (y - 2)\,\mathbf{j}$. Calculate the work done by $\mathbf{F}$.

9. The force exerted by a charged particle at the origin on a charged particle at a point (x, y, z) can be written

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y, z) = C\frac{(x\,\mathbf{i} + y\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k})}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}, \qquad C \text{ a constant.}$$

Find the work done by $\mathbf{F}$ applied to a particle that moves in a straight line from (1,0,0) to (3,0,4).

10. An object moves through a force field $\mathbf{F}$ in such a way that the velocity vector at each point (x, y, z) is orthogonal to $\mathbf{F}(x, y, z)$. Show that the work done by $\mathbf{F}$ is 0.

Exercises 11–13. Verify that $\mathbf{h}$ is a gradient. Then evaluate the line integral of $\mathbf{h}$ over the indicated curve C in two ways: (a) by carrying out the integration; (b) by applying the fundamental theorem for line integrals.

11. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (ye^{xy} + 2x)\,\mathbf{i} + (xe^{xy} - 2y)\,\mathbf{j}$;
$C: \mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j},\ \ 0 \le u \le 2.$

12. $\mathbf{h}(x, y) = (2xy^2 + 2y)\,\mathbf{i} + (2x^2y + 2x)\,\mathbf{j}$;
$C:\ \mathbf{r}(u) = 3u\,\mathbf{i} + (1 + 4u)\,\mathbf{j},\ 0 \le u \le 1.$

13. $\mathbf{h}(x, y, z) = 4x^3y^3z^2\,\mathbf{i} + 3x^4y^2z^2\,\mathbf{j} + 2x^4y^3z\,\mathbf{k}$.
$C:\ \mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k},\ 0 \le u \le 1.$

14. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_C y^2 dx + (x^2 - xy)\,dy$ where C is the path given from (0, 0) to (2, 8):

(a) the straight-line path.

(b) the polygonal path (0,0) to (2, 0) to (2, 8).

(c) the cubic path $y = x^3$.

15. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_C 2xy^{1/2}\,dx + yx^{1/2}\,dy$ where C is the path given from (1, 0) to (0, 1):

(a) the straight-line path.

(b) the polygonal path (1, 0) (1, 1), (0, 1).

(c) the quarter-circle $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$.

16. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_C z\,dx + x\,dy + y\,dz$ where C is the circular helix $\mathbf{r}(u) = a\cos u\,\mathbf{i} + a\sin u\,\mathbf{j} + u\,\mathbf{k}$, from $u = 0$ to $u = 2\pi$.

17. Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_C ye^{xy}dx + \cos x\,dy + (xy/z)\,dz$ where C is the twisted cubic $\mathbf{r}(u) = u\,\mathbf{i} + u^2\,\mathbf{j} + u^3\,\mathbf{k}$, from $u = 0$ to $u = 2$.

18. A wire in the shape of the semicircle

$$\mathbf{r}(u) = \cos u\,\mathbf{i} + \sin u\,\mathbf{j}, \qquad u \in [0, \pi]$$

has constant mass density k.

(a) Find the total mass of the wire and locate the center of mass.

(b) Find the moment of inertia of the wire about the y-axis.

Exercises 19–20. Evaluate the line integral (a) directly; (b) by applying Green's theorem.

19. $\displaystyle\oint_C xy^2\,dx - x^2y\,dy$ where C is the boundary of the region that lies between the curves $y = x^2$ and $y^2 = x$.

20. $\displaystyle\oint_C (x^2 + y^2)\,dx + (x^2 - y^2)\,dy$ where C is the unit circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

Exercises 21–26. Evaluate the line integral using Green's theorem.

21. $\displaystyle\oint_C (x - 2y^2)\,dx + 2xy\,dy$ where C is the rectangle with vertices (0, 0), (2, 0), (2, 1), (0, 1).

22. $\displaystyle\oint_C xy\,dx + (\tfrac{1}{2}x^2 + xy)\,dy$ where C is the upper half of the ellipse $x^2 + 4y^2 = 1$ together with the interval $[-1, 1]$.

23. $\displaystyle\oint_C \ln(x^2 + y^2)\,dx + \ln(x^2 + y^2)\,dy$ where C is the boundary of the upper half of the annular region bounded by the circles $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

24. $\displaystyle\oint_C (1/y)\,dx + (1/x)\,dy$ where C is the boundary of the region enclosed by the x-axis, the line $x = 4$, and the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$.

25. $\displaystyle\oint_C y^2dx$ where C is the cardioid $r = 1 + \sin\theta,\ \theta \in [0, 2\pi]$.

26. $\displaystyle\oint_C e^y\cos x\,dx - e^y\sin x\,dy$ where C is the rectangle with vertices (0, 0), $(\pi/2, 0)$, $(\pi/2, 1)$, (0, 1).

Exercises 27–28. Use Green's theorem to find the area of the region bounded by the curves.

27. $y = 4 - x^2$ and $y = 0$.

28. $xy = 3$ and $x + y = 4$.

Exercises 29–32. Calculate the area of the surface.

29. The part of the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ that lies inside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 2x$.

30. The part of the plane $x + y + 2z = 4$ that lies inside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

31. The part of the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ that lies between the planes $z = 0$ and $z = 3$.

32. The part of the hyperbolic paraboloid $z = 2xy$ that lies inside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 9$.

Exercises 33–36. Evaluate.

33. $\iint_S yz\, d\sigma$; S that part of the plane $z = y + 4$ which lies inside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

34. $\iint_S xz\, d\sigma$; S the first-octant part of the plane $x + y + z = 1$.

35. $\iint_S (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\, d\sigma$; S the cylindrical surface $y^2 + z^2 = 4$, from $x = 0$ to $x = 2$, together with capping circular disks.

36. $\iint_S xz\, d\sigma$; S that part of the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ which lies between the planes $z = 0$ and $z = 1$.

Exercises 37–40. Calculate the divergence $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$ and the curl $\nabla \times \mathbf{v}$.

37. $\mathbf{v}(x, y) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} + 2xy\,\mathbf{j}$.

38. $\mathbf{v}(x, y) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + y^2}\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{y}{x^2 + y^2}\,\mathbf{j}$.

39. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + xyz\,\mathbf{k}$.

40. $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xyz\,\mathbf{i} - \cos xy\,\mathbf{j} + \sin xy\,\mathbf{k}$

41. Verify the divergence theorem on the unit cube: $0 \le x \le 1, 0 \le y \le 1, 0 \le z \le 1$ for the vector field $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = xz\,\mathbf{i} - xy\,\mathbf{j} + yz\,\mathbf{k}$.

42. Verify the divergence theorem on the surface $S : y^2 + z^2 = 1, 0 \le x \le 4$ for the vector field $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = (x + z)\,\mathbf{i} + (y + z)\,\mathbf{j} + (x + z)\,\mathbf{k}$.

43. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = 2x\,\mathbf{i} + xz\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$ out of the solid bounded by the paraboloid $z = 9 - x^2 - y^2$ and the xy-plane.

44. Calculate the total flux of $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = x^2\,\mathbf{i} - xz\,\mathbf{j} + z^2\,\mathbf{k}$ out of the cube $0 \le x \le a,\ 0 \le y \le a, 0 \le z \le a$.

45. Let S be the hemisphere $z = \sqrt{4 - x^2 - y^2}$ and take $\mathbf{n}$ as the upper unit normal. Set $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = z\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j} + y\,\mathbf{k}$ and find

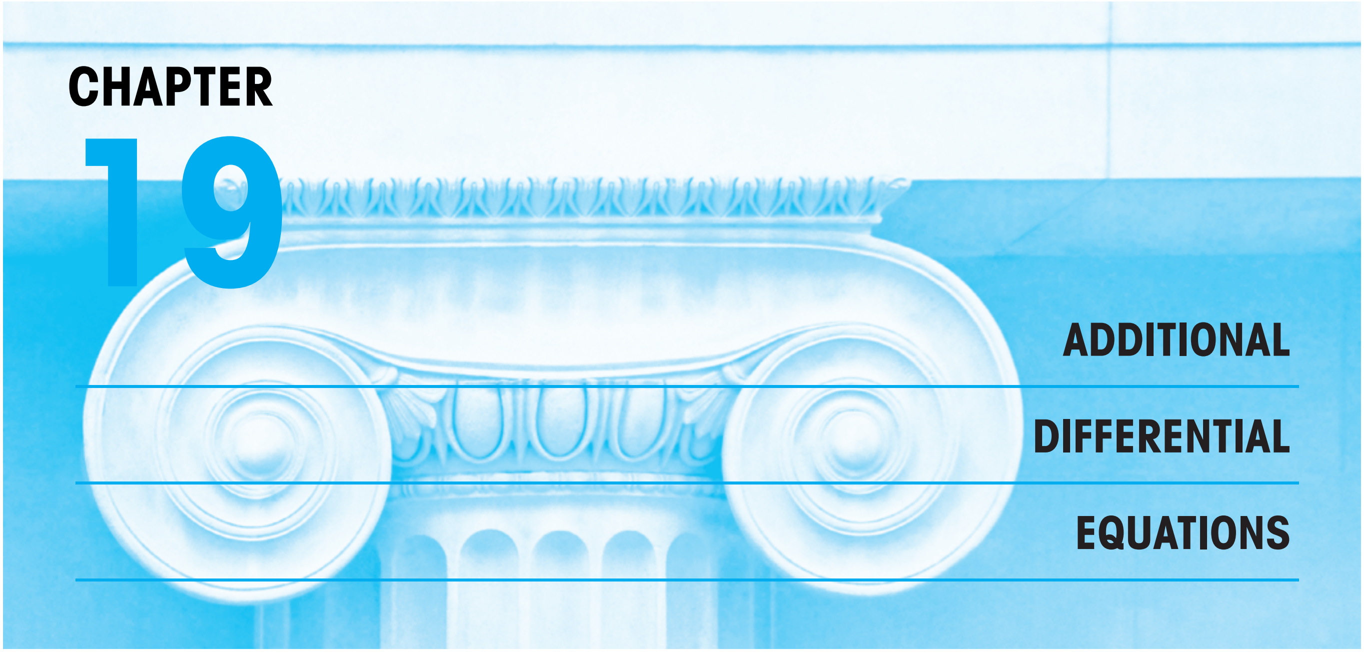
$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma$$

(a) by direct calculation; (b) by Stokes's theorem.

46. Let S be that part of the paraboloid $z = 9 - x^2 - y^2$ for which $z \ge 0$ and take $\mathbf{n}$ as the upper unit normal. Let $\mathbf{v}(x, y, z) = z^3\,\mathbf{i} + x\,\mathbf{j} + y^2\,\mathbf{k}$ and find

$$\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma$$

(a) by direct calculation; (b) by Stokes's theorem.



CHAPTER 19

ADDITIONAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

We continue the study of differential equations begun in Chapter 9. We assume that you are familiar with that material.

19.1 BERNOULLI EQUATIONS; HOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS

Bernoulli Equations

A first-order equation of the form

(19.1.1) $$\boxed{y' + p(x)\,y = q(x)\,y^r}$$

where p and q are functions defined and continuous on some interval I, and r is a real number different from 0 and 1, is called a *Bernoulli equation*.† We exclude 0 and 1 because in those cases the equation is simply a linear equation.

METHOD OF SOLUTION To solve (19.1.1), we multiply the equation by y^{-r} and obtain

$$y^{-r}y' + p(x)\,y^{1-r} = q(x).$$

We can transform this equation into a linear equation by setting $v = y^{1-r}$. For then

$$v' = (1-r)\,y^{-r}y'$$

and our differential equation becomes

$$\frac{1}{1-r}\,v' + p(x)\,v = q(x),$$

which we can write as

$$v' + (1-r)\,p(x)\,v = (1-r)\,q(x).$$

†These equations were introduced by Jacob Bernoulli (1654–1705), who, along with his brother Johann, made many contributions to the development of calculus and its applications.

This equation is linear in v, and we can solve for v in terms of x by the method introduced in Section 9.1. Replacing v by y^{1-r}, we have an equation in x and y which defines a family of integral curves for the Bernoulli equation. ❑

Example 1 Solve the equation $y' + 4y = 3e^{2x}y^2$.

SOLUTION The equation is a Bernoulli equation with $p(x) = 4$, $q(x) = 3e^{2x}$, $r = 2$. We will apply the method just outlined. Our first step is to multiply the equation by y^{-2} (thereby excluding, at least for the moment, $y = 0$):

$$y^{-2}y' + 4y^{-1} = 3e^{2x}.$$

We set $v = y^{-1}$. Differentiation gives $v' = -y^{-2}y'$ and transforms the equation into

$$-v' + 4v = 3e^{2x},$$

which we write as

$$v' - 4v = -3e^{2x}.$$

We solve this last equation by setting $H(x) = \int(-4)\,dx = -4x$ and multiplying through by $e^{H(x)} = e^{-4x}$. This gives

$$e^{-4x}v' - 4e^{-4x}v = -3e^{-2x},$$

which we recognize as stating that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^{-4x}v) = -3e^{-2x}.$$

Integration gives

$$e^{-4x}v = \tfrac{3}{2}e^{-2x} + C,$$

which we write as

$$v = \tfrac{3}{2}e^{2x} + Ce^{4x}.$$

Replacing v by y^{-1}, we have

$$\frac{1}{y} = \frac{3}{2}e^{2x} + Ce^{4x} \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad y = \frac{2}{3e^{2x} + 2Ce^{4x}}.$$

Writing $2C$ as K, we have

$$y = \frac{2}{3e^{2x} + Ke^{4x}}.$$

These are the integral curves given by our method of solution.

Are these the only integral curves? Clearly not: A look at the differential equation shows that $y = 0$ is also an integral curve. Our method of solution excluded it when we multiplied by y^{-2}. ❑

Homogeneous Equations

A first-order differential equation

(19.1.2) $$\boxed{y' = f(x, y) \qquad (f \text{ continuous})}$$

is said to be *homogeneous* provided that

$$f(tx, ty) = f(x, y) \qquad \text{for all } t \neq 0.$$

METHOD OF SOLUTION The first step is to note that under our assumption on f

$$f(x, y) = f\left(x, x\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right) = f\left(1, \frac{y}{x}\right).$$

This equality is valid for all $x \neq 0$. Setting $g(y/x) = f(1, y/x)$, we write (19.1.2) as

$$(1) \qquad y' = g(y/x),$$

where g is a continuous function of only one variable.

We now set $y/x = v$ and transform (1) into an equation in v and x:

$$y = vx \quad \text{gives} \quad y' = v + v'x, \quad g(y/x) \quad \text{becomes} \quad g(v),$$

and (1) becomes

$$v + v'x = g(v).$$

This equation can be rearranged to give

$$\frac{1}{x} + \left[\frac{1}{v - g(v)}\right] v' = 0.$$

This last equation is separable. We can solve it by the method introduced in Section 9.2 and write the resulting integral curves in terms of x and y by substituting y/x for v. ❑

Example 2 Show that the differential equation

$$y' = \frac{3x^2 + y^2}{xy}$$

is homogeneous and find the integral curves.

SOLUTION The equation is homogeneous: for $t \neq 0$

$$f(tx, ty) = \frac{3(tx)^2 + (ty)^2}{(tx)(ty)} = \frac{t^2(3x^2 + y^2)}{t^2(xy)} = \frac{3x^2 + y^2}{xy} = f(x, y).$$

Setting $y/x = v$, we have

$$\frac{3x^2 + y^2}{xy} = \frac{3 + (y/x)^2}{y/x} = \frac{3 + v^2}{v},$$

and, since $y = vx$,

$$y' = v + v'x.$$

Our differential equation now reads

$$v + v'x = \frac{3 + v^2}{v}.$$

Multiplying both sides by v and simplifying, we get

$$v'xv = 3,$$

which we write as

$$-\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3}vv' = 0.$$

This is a separable equation which we can readily solve:

$$\begin{aligned}\int -\frac{1}{x}\,dx + \frac{1}{3}\int vv'\,dx &= 0\\ -\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx + \frac{1}{3}\int v\,dv &= 0\\ -\ln|x| + \tfrac{1}{6}v^2 &= C.\end{aligned}$$

This gives

$$v^2 = 6(\ln|x| + C).$$

Substituting y/x back in for v, we have

$$\frac{y^2}{x^2} = 6(\ln|x| + C).$$

The integral curves take the form

$$y^2 = 6x^2(\ln|x| + C). \quad ❑$$

EXERCISES 19.1

Exercises 1–6. Find the integral curves.

1. $y' + xy = xy^3$.

2. $y' + y^2(x^2 + x + 1) = y$.

3. $y' = 4y + 2e^x\sqrt{y}$.

4. $2xy\,y' = 1 + y^2$.

5. $(x-2)\,y' + y = 5(x-2)^2 y^{1/2}$.

6. $y\,y' - xy^2 + x = 0$.

Exercises 7–10. Find a solution to the initial value problem.

7. $y' + xy - y^3e^{x^2} = 0; \quad y(0) = \frac{1}{2}$.

8. $xy' + y - y^2\ln x = 0; \quad y(1) = 1$.

9. $2x^3y' = y(y^2 + 3x^2); \quad y(1) = 1$.

10. $y' + y\tan x - y^2\sec^3 x = 0; \quad y(0) = 3$.

11. Show that the change of variable $u = \ln y$ transforms the equation

$$y' - (y/x)\ln y = xy$$

into a linear equation. Find the integral curves.

12. (a) Show that the change of variable indicated in Exercise 11 transforms every equation of the form

$$y' + yf(x)\ln y = g(x)y$$

into a first-order linear equation.

(b) Find a change of variable which transforms the equation

$$y'\cos y + g(x)\sin y = f(x)$$

into a linear equation:

Exercises 13–20. Verify that the equation is homogeneous and find the integral curves.

13. $y' = \dfrac{x^2 + y^2}{2xy}$.

14. $y' = \dfrac{y^2}{xy + x^2}$.

15. $y' = \dfrac{x - y}{x + y}$.

16. $y' = \dfrac{x + y}{x - y}$.

17. $y' = \dfrac{x^2(e^y)^{1/x} + y^2}{xy}$.

18. $y' = \dfrac{x^2 + 3y^2}{4xy}$.

19. $y' = y/x + \sin(y/x)$.

20. $x\,dy = y[1 + \ln(y/x)]\,dx$.

Exercises 21–22. Find the integral curve that satisfies the initial condition.

21. $y' = \dfrac{y^3 - x^3}{xy^2}, \qquad y(1) = 2$.

22. $x\sin(y/x)\,dy = [x + y\sin(y/x)]\,dx, \quad y(1) = 0$.

■ 19.2 EXACT DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS; INTEGRATING FACTORS

We begin with two functions $P = P(x, y)$ and $Q = Q(x, y)$, each continuously differentiable on a simply connected region Ω. The differential equation

(19.2.1) $$\boxed{P(x, y) + Q(x, y)y' = 0}$$

is said to be *exact* on Ω provided that

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y) \qquad \text{for all } (x, y) \in \Omega.$$

The reason for this terminology is as follows. If the equation

$$P(x, y) + Q(x, y)y' = 0$$

is exact, then (by Theorem 16.9.2) the vector-valued function

$$P(x, y)\,\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\,\mathbf{j}$$

is "exactly" in the form of a gradient and there is a function F defined on Ω such that

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} = P \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial F}{\partial y} = Q.$$

Therefore, we can write (19.2.1) as

$$\text{(1)} \qquad \frac{\partial F}{\partial x}(x, y) + \frac{\partial F}{\partial y}(x, y)\,y' = 0.$$

By the chain rule as expressed in (16.3.6),

$$\frac{d}{dx}[F(x, y)] = \frac{\partial F}{\partial x}(x, y) + \frac{\partial F}{\partial y}(x, y)y'.$$

Thus equation (1) can be written

$$\frac{d}{dx}[F(x, y)] = 0.$$

Integrating with respect to x, we have

$$F(x, y) = C.$$

The integral curves of (19.2.1) are the level curves of F.

How F can be obtained from P and Q is shown in the following example. The process was explained in Section 16.9.

Example 1 The differential equation $(xy^2 - x^3) + (x^2y - y)\,y' = 0$ is everywhere exact: the coefficients

$$P(x, y) = xy^2 - x^3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad Q(x, y) = x^2y - y$$

are everywhere continuously differentiable, and at all points

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 2xy = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}.$$

To find the integral curves

$$F(x, y) = C,$$

we set

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}(x, y) = xy^2 - x^3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial F}{\partial y}(x, y) = x^2y - y.$$

Integrating $\partial F/\partial x$ with respect to x, we have

$$F(x, y) = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2y^2 - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 + \phi(y)$$

where $\phi(y)$ is independent of x but may depend on y. Differentiation with respect to y gives

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} = x^2 y + \phi'(y).$$

The two equations for $\partial F/\partial y$ can be reconciled by having $\phi'(y) = -y$ and setting

$$\phi(y) = -\tfrac{1}{2}y^2.$$

The integral curves of the differential equation can be written

$$\tfrac{1}{2}x^2y^2 - \tfrac{1}{4}x^4 - \tfrac{1}{2}y^2 = C.$$

Checking: Differentiation with respect to x gives

$$\begin{aligned} \tfrac{1}{2}x^2(2yy') + xy^2 - x^3 - yy' &= 0 \\ (xy^2 - x^3) + (x^2y - y)y' &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

This is the original equation. ❑

If the equation

$$P(x, y) + Q(x, y)\, y' = 0, \qquad (x, y) \in \Omega$$

is not exact on Ω, it may be possible to find a function $\mu = \mu(x, y)$ not identically zero such that the equation

$$\mu(x, y)\, P(x, y) + \mu(x, y)\, Q(x, y)\, y' = 0$$

is exact. If μ is never zero on Ω, then any solution of this second equation gives a solution of the first equation. We call $\mu(x, y)$ an *integrating factor*.

Example 2 Consider the differential equation

$$(*) \qquad \left(2y^2 + 3x + \frac{2}{x^2}\right) + \left(2xy - \frac{y}{x}\right) y' = 0$$

on the right half-plane $\Omega = \{(x, y) : x > 0\}$.

The coefficients are continuously differentiable on Ω, but the equation is not exact there:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(2y^2 + 3x + \frac{2}{x^2}\right) = 4y \qquad \text{but} \qquad \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(2xy - \frac{y}{x}\right) = 2y + \frac{y}{x^2}.$$

However, multiplication by x gives

$$(**) \qquad (2xy^2 + 3x^2 + 2x^{-1}) + (2x^2y - y)\, y' = 0,$$

and this equation is exact:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(2xy^2 + 3x^2 + 2x^{-1}) = 4xy = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(2x^2y - y).$$

Thus we can solve (*) by solving (**). As you can check, the integral curves on Ω (where x remains positive) are of the form

$$x^2y^2 + x^3 + 2\ln x - \tfrac{1}{2}y^2 = C. \quad ❑$$

Let's return to the general situation and write our equation in the form

$$(2) \qquad P + Qy' = 0.$$

If this equation is not exact, how can we find an integrating factor?

Observe first of all that the equation

$$\mu P + \mu Q y' = 0$$

is exact iff

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(\mu P) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\mu Q),$$

and this occurs iff

$$\mu\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} + P\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial y} = \mu\frac{\partial}{\partial x}Q + Q\frac{\partial \mu}{\partial x}. \tag{3}$$

Thus μ is an integrating factor for (2) iff it satisfies (3).

In theory all we have to do now to find an integrating factor for (2) is solve (3) for μ. Unfortunately, (3) is a partial differential equation that is usually more difficult to solve than (2). To get anywhere, we have to make assumptions on the nature of μ.

The assumption that μ depends not on both x and y, but only on one of these variables simplifies matters considerably. We will *assume* that μ is independent of y. Then (3) reduces to

$$\mu\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \mu\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} + \frac{d\mu}{dx}Q$$

and gives

$$\frac{1}{\mu}\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \frac{1}{Q}\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right). \tag{4}$$

Since the left side of (4) is independent of y, the right side is independent of y. As you can check, this equation is satisfied by setting

$$\mu = e^{\int r(x)\,dx} \qquad \text{where} \qquad r(x) = \frac{1}{Q}\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right).$$

What does all this mean? It means that

(19.2.2)

if

$$r = \frac{1}{Q}\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right)$$

is independent of y, then the function

$$\mu = e^{\int r(x)\,dx}$$

is an integrating factor for the equation

$$P + Qy' = 0.$$

PROOF We assume that $r = \dfrac{1}{Q}\left(\dfrac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \dfrac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right)$ is independent of y and write

$$P\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx} + Q\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx}y' = 0.$$

All we have to show is that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(P\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(Q\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\right).$$

This can be seen as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(Q\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\right) &= Qr(x)\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx} + \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\\ &= \left[Qr(x) + \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right]e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\\ &= \left[\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right]e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\\ &= \frac{\partial P}{\partial y}e^{\int r(x)\,dx} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left[P\,e^{\int r(x)\,dx}\right]. \quad ❑\end{aligned}$$

Example 3 Earlier we considered the equation

$$\left(2y^2 + 3x + \frac{2}{x^2}\right) + \left(2xy - \frac{y}{x}\right)y' = 0$$

on the right half-plane and found that the equation was not exact there. We made it exact by multiplying through by x. We can obtain this integrating factor by using (19.2.2). In this case

$$r(x) = \frac{1}{Q}\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{1}{2xy - (y/x)}\left[4y - \left(2y + \frac{y}{x^2}\right)\right] = \frac{2y - (y/x^2)}{2xy - (y/x)} = \frac{1}{x}$$

so that

$$e^{\int r(x)\,dx} = e^{\int (1/x)\,dx} = e^{\ln x} = x. \quad ❑$$

In the Exercises you are asked to show that

(19.2.3)

> if
> $$R = \frac{1}{P}\left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}\right)$$
> is independent of x, then the function
> $$\mu = e^{-\int R(y)\,dy}$$
> is an integrating factor for the equation
> $$P + Qy' = 0.$$

One final remark. We have been working with equations

$$P(x, y) + Q(x, y)\,y' = 0.$$

Such equations are often written

$$P(x, y)\,dx + Q(x, y)\,dy = 0.$$

To accustom you to this notation, we will use it in some of the Exercises.

EXERCISES 19.2

Exercises 1–10. Find the maximal simply connected region on which the equation is exact (in each of these cases there is one) and find the integral curves.

1. $(xy^2 - y) + (x^2y - x)\,y' = 0.$

2. $e^x \sin y + (e^x \cos y)\,y' = 0.$

3. $(e^y - y\,e^x) + (x\,e^y - e^x)\,y' = 0.$

4. $\sin y + (x \cos y + 1)\,y' = 0.$

5. $\ln y + 2xy + (x/y + x^2)\,y' = 0.$

6. $2x \arctan y + \left(\dfrac{x^2}{1+y^2}\right) y' = 0.$

7. $(y/x + 6x)\,dx + (\ln x - 2)\,dy = 0.$

8. $e^x + \ln y + y/x + (x/y + \ln x + \sin y)\,y' = 0.$

9. $(y^3 - y^2\ \sin\ x - x)\,dx + (3xy^2 + 2y \cos x + e^{2y})\,dy = 0.$

10. $(e^{2y} - y \cos xy) + (2x\,e^{2y} - x \cos xy + 2y)y' = 0.$

11. Let p and q be functions of one variable everywhere continuously differentiable.

(a) Is the equation $p(x) + q(y)y' = 0$ necessarily exact?

(b) Show that the equation $p(y) + q(x)y' = 0$ is not necessarily exact. Then find an integrating factor.

12. Prove (19.2.3).

Exercises 13–18. Solve the equation using an integrating factor if necessary.

13. $(e^{y-x} - y) + (x\,e^{y-x} - 1)\,y' = 0.$

14. $(x + e^y) - \frac{1}{2}x^2y' = 0.$

15. $(3x^2y^2 + x + e^y) + (2x^3y + y + x\,e^y)\,y' = 0.$

16. $\sin 2x \cos y - (\sin^2 x \sin y)\,y' = 0.$

17. $(y^3 + x + 1) + (3y^2)\,y' = 0.$

18. $(e^{2x+y} - 2y) + (x\,e^{2x+y} + 1)\,y' = 0.$

Exercises 19–25. Find an integral curve that passes through the point (x_0, y_0). Use an integrating factor if necessary.

19. $(x^2 + y) + (x + e^y)\,y' = 0; \qquad (x_0, y_0) = (1, 0).$

20. $(3x^2 - 2xy + y^3) + (3xy^2 - x^2)\,y' = 0;$ $(x_0, y_0) = (1, -1).$

21. $(2y^2 + x^2 + 2) + (2xy)\,y' = 0; \qquad (x_0, y_0) = (1, 0).$

22. $(x^2 + y) + (3x^2y^2 - x)\,y' = 0; \qquad (x_0, y_0) = (1, 1).$

23. $y^3 + (1 + xy^2)\,y' = 0; \qquad (x_0, y_0) = (-2, -1).$

24. $(x + y)^2 + (2xy + x^2 - 1)\,y' = 0; \qquad (x_0, y_0) = (1, 1).$

25. $[\cosh(x - y^2) + e^{2x}]\,dx + y[1 - 2\cosh(x - y^2)]\,dy = 0;$ $(x_0, y_0) = (2, \sqrt{2}).$

26. In Section 9.1 we solved the linear differential equation

$$y' + p(x)\,y = q(x)$$

by using the integrating factor

$$e^{\int p(x)\,dx}.$$

Show that this integrating factor is obtainable by the methods of this section.

27. (a) For what values of k is the equation

$$(xy^2 + kx^2y + x^3)\,dx + (x^3 + x^2y + y^2)\,dy = 0$$

everywhere exact?

(b) For what values of k is the equation

$$ye^{2xy} + 2x + (kxe^{2xy} - 2y)\,y' = 0$$

everywhere exact?

28. (a) Find functions f and g, not both identically zero, such that the differential equation

$$g(y) \sin x\ dx + y^2 f(x)\,dy = 0$$

is everywhere exact.

(b) Find all functions g such that the differential equation $g(y)e^y + xy\,y' = 0$ is everywhere exact.

Exercises 29–34. Solve the differential equation by any means at your disposal.

29. $y' = y^2x^3.$

30. $yy' = 4x\,e^{2x+y}.$

31. $y' + 4y/x = x^4.$

32. $y' + 2xy - 2x^3 = 0.$

33. $(ye^{xy} - 2x)\,dx + (2/y + xe^{xy})\,dy = 0.$

34. $y\,dx + (2xy - e^{-2y})\,dy = 0.$

■ 19.3 NUMERICAL METHODS

Some of the differential equations that arise in the study of physical phenomena cannot be solved exactly. We know that a solution exists, but we cannot state it explicitly. Here we outline two numerical methods by which we can estimate the value of a solution at a particular point. We will apply these methods to first-order initial-value problems: problems in which we are given a first-order differential equation and some point on the solution curve from which we can start the process of approximation.

So that you can keep track of the accuracy (or inaccuracy) of the approximations, we will work with an initial-value problem for which you can obtain an exact solution. As you can check, the initial-value problem

$$y' = x + 2y, \qquad y(0) = 1$$

has the exact solution

$$y = \tfrac{1}{4}(5\,e^{2x} - 2x - 1).$$

We will use our numerical methods to estimate $y(1)$; the actual value is

$$y(1) = \tfrac{1}{4}(5e^2 - 3) \cong 8.4863.$$

The first method we consider is called the *Euler method*. Figure 19.3.1 shows the graph of a differentiable function f. Given $f(x_0)$, we can estimate $f(x_0 + h)$ by proceeding along the tangent line, the line with slope $f'(x_0)$:

$$f(x_0 + h) \cong f(x_0) + hf'(x_0).$$

Using this estimate for $f(x_0 + h)$, we can go on to estimate $f(x_0 + 2h)$ by proceeding along the line with slope $f'(x_0 + h)$. We can go on to estimate $f(x_0 + 3h)$, $f(x_0 + 4h)$, etc. We illustrate this process in Figure 19.3.2. Presumably, if h is taken small enough, the path of line segments stays fairly close to the graph of f.

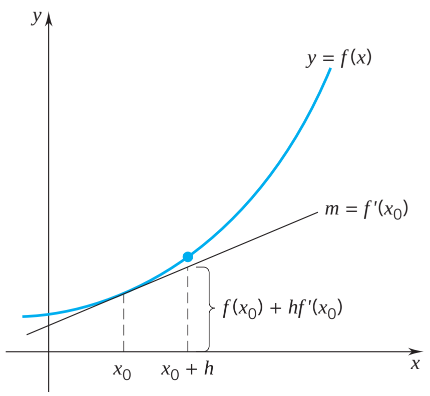


Figure 19.3.1

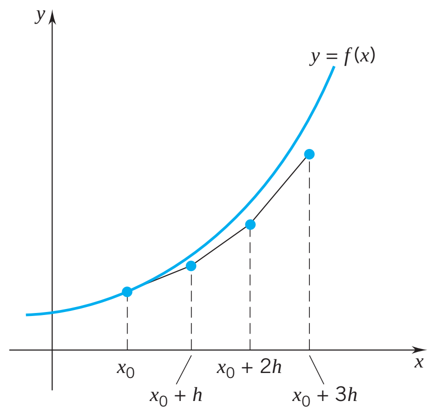


Figure 19.3.2

In general, for the initial-value problem

(19.3.1) $$\boxed{y' = f(x, y), \qquad y(x_0) = y_0}$$ (f continuous)

the Euler method runs as follows. The point (x_0, y_0) lies on the solution curve. The point on the curve with x-coordinate $x_1 = x_0 + h$ has approximate y-coordinate

$$y_1 = y_0 + hy'(x_0) = y_0 + hf(x_0, y_0).$$

The point on the curve with x-coordinate $x_2 = x_0 + 2h$ has approximate y-coordinate

$$y_2 = y_1 + hy'(x_1) = y_1 + hf(x_1, y_1).$$

Successive steps of h units (to the right if $h > 0$ and to the left if $h < 0$) produce a succession of points near the solution curve:

(19.3.2) $$\boxed{(x_n, y_n): \quad x_n = x_0 + nh, \quad y_n = y_{n-1} + hf(x_{n-1}, y_{n-1}), \quad (n \geq 1).}$$

Example 1 Now let's turn to the initial-value problem

$$y' = x + 2y, \qquad y(0) = 1.$$

This is initial-value problem (19.3.1) with

$$f(x, y) = x + 2y, \qquad x_0 = 0, \qquad y_0 = 1.$$

We want to estimate $y(1)$. Setting $h = 0.1$, we will need 10 iterations.

The approximating points (x_n, y_n) have coordinates

$$x_n = (0.1)n \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_n = y_{n-1} + 0.1(x_{n-1} + 2y_{n-1}), \qquad 1 \leq n \leq 10.$$

We carry out the computations and record the results in the chart below. The numbers in the last column represent the actual values (rounded off to four decimal places) as obtained from the exact solution.

n	x_n	y_n	$y\,(x_n)$
0	0	1	1.0000
1	0.1	1.2000	1.2268
2	0.2	1.4500	1.5148
3	0.3	1.7600	1.8776
4	0.4	2.1420	2.3319
5	0.5	2.6104	2.8979
6	0.6	3.1825	3.6001
7	0.7	3.8790	4.4690
8	0.8	4.7248	5.5413
9	0.9	5.7497	6.8621
10	1.0	6.9897	8.4863

The error in this estimate for $y(1)$ is about 17.6%. In this case the Euler method has not given us a very accurate estimate. Presumably we could improve on the accuracy of the estimate by using a smaller h, but as explained below, that's not necessarily the case. ❑

Computational errors arise in several ways. With each iteration of the procedure we introduce the error inherent in the approximation method, and this error is compounded by the errors introduced in the previous steps. To reduce this contribution to the error, we can use smaller values of h. However, this improvement is made at the expense of increased round-off error. Each calculation produces an error in the last decimal place carried. Increasing the number of times the procedure is iterated by using smaller h increases the number of times a round-off error is made and thus tends to increase the total error. Numerical approximations require considerable sophistication. Much has been written about the subject.

The second numerical method that we describe is called the *Runge-Kutta method*. This is one of the oldest methods for generating numerical solutions of differential equations. Yet it remains one of the most accurate methods known. In the Euler method we estimated $y\,(x_n)$ from our estimate for $y\,(x_{n-1})$ by using the slope of y at x_{n-1}. The idea behind the Runge-Kutta method is to select a slope more representative of the derivative of y on the interval $[x_{n-1}, x_n]$. This is done by selecting intermediate points in the interval and then forming a weighted average of the slopes at these points. Details of the development of the formulas used below can be found in any text on numerical analysis or differential equations.

In the Runge-Kutta method successive points of approximations for the initial-value problem

(1) $$y' = f(x, y), \qquad y(x_0) = y_0$$

are chosen as follows:

(2) $\qquad (x_n, y_n) \qquad$ with $\qquad x_n = x_0 + nh, \qquad y_n = y_{n-1} + hK$

where $K = \frac{1}{6}(K_1 + 2K_2 + 2K_3 + K_4)$ with

$$\begin{aligned}
K_1 &= f(x_{n-1}, y_{n-1})\\
K_2 &= f(x_{n-1} + \tfrac{1}{2}h, y_{n-1} + \tfrac{1}{2}hK_1)\\
K_3 &= f(x_{n-1} + \tfrac{1}{2}h, y_{n-1} + \tfrac{1}{2}hK_2)\\
K_4 &= f(x_{n-1} + h, y_{n-1} + hK_3).
\end{aligned}$$

Note that as a consequence of (1), the numbers K_1, K_2, K_3, K_4 give slopes, and K is a weighted average of these slopes. As you can check from (2), K gives the slope of the line segment that joins the approximation (x_{n-1}, y_{n-1}) to the approximation (x_n, y_n).

Example 2 We reconsider the initial-value problem

$$y' = x + 2y, \qquad y(0) = 1,$$

but this time we estimate $y(1)$ by the Runge-Kutta method. Again $f(x, y) = x + 2y$ and again we take $h = 0.1$.

The results (these can be verified rather quickly on a computer or programmable calculator) are tabulated below. As before, the numbers in the last column represent the actual values (rounded off to four decimal places) as obtained from the exact solution.

n	x_n	y_n	$y(x_n)$
0	0	1	1.0000
1	0.1	1.2267	1.2268
2	0.2	1.5148	1.5148
3	0.3	1.8776	1.8776
4	0.4	2.3319	2.3319
5	0.5	2.8978	2.8979
6	0.6	3.6001	3.6001
7	0.7	4.4689	4.4690
8	0.8	5.5412	5.5413
9	0.9	6.8618	6.8621
10	1.0	8.4861	8.4863

The error in this approximation of $y(1)$ is about 0.002%. Runge-Kutta has given us a much better approximation than we obtained by the Euler method. ❑

EXERCISES 19.3

Exercises 1–10. Carry out the estimate (a) by the Euler method and (b) by the Runge-Kutta method. Solve the initial-value problem and obtain the actual value of the quantity you have estimated. Indicate the accuracy of each of your estimates by giving

$$\text{the relative percentage error} = \frac{y_{\text{actual}} - y_{\text{estimated}}}{y_{\text{actual}}} \times 100\%.$$

1. Estimate $y(1)$ if $y' = y$ and $y(0) = 1$, setting $h = 0.2$.

2. Estimate $y(1)$ if $y' = x + y$ and $y(0) = 2$, setting $h = 0.2$.

3. Exercise 1 setting $h = 0.1$.

4. Exercise 2 setting $h = 0.1$.

5. Estimate $y(1)$ if $y' = 2x$ and $y(2) = 5$, setting $h = 0.1$.

6. Estimate $y(0)$ if $y' = 3x^2$ and $y(1) = 2$, setting $h = 0.1$.

7. Estimate $y(2)$ if $y' = \frac{1}{2}y^{-1}$ and $y(1) = 1$, setting $h = 0.1$.

8. Estimate $y(2)$ if $y' = \frac{1}{3}y^{-2}$ and $y(1) = 1$, setting $h = 0.1$.

9. Exercise 1 setting $h = 0.05$.

10. Exercise 2 setting $h = 0.05$.

■ PROJECT 19.3 Direction Fields

Here we introduce a geometric approach to differential equations of the form $y' = f(x, y)$ that enables us to produce sketches of solution curves without requiring us to calculate any integrals. The approach does not produce equations in x and y; it produces pictures, pictures from which we can gather useful information. Do the curves slant up or do they slant down? Are there any maxima or minima? What is the concavity of the curves? We usually do not get precise answers to such questions, but we can get a good qualitative sense of what the curves look like.

The geometric approach to which we have been alluding is based on the construction of what is called a *direction field* (a *slope field*) for the differential equation. What this means is described below.

If a solution curve for the equation $y' = f(x, y)$ passes through the point (x, y), then it does so with slope $f(x, y)$. We construct a direction field for the differential equation by selecting a grid of points (x_i, y_i), $i = 1, 2 \ldots, n$ and drawing at each point a short line segment with slope $f(x_i, y_i)$. We can then use these little line segments to sketch the solution curve for the initial-value problem

$$y' = f(x, y), \qquad y(a) = b$$

by starting at the point (a, b) and following the line segments in both directions. Figure A shows a direction field for the differential equation

$$y' = x - y$$

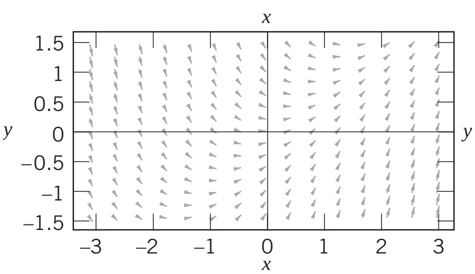


Figure A

drawn within the rectangle $R: -3 \leq x \leq 3, -1.5 \leq y \leq 1.5$. A sketch of the solution curve that satisfies the initial condition $y(0) = 0$ is shown in Figure B.

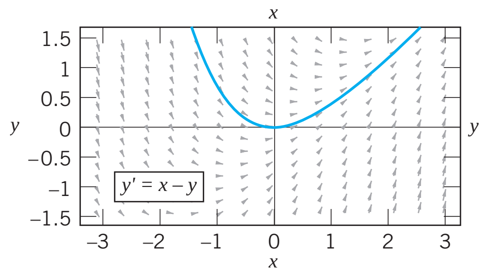


Figure B

Remark Computer algebra systems usually include a feature for sketching direction fields.

Problem 1. Here we consider the initial value problem

$$y' = y, \qquad y(0) = 1.$$

a. Use a CAS to draw a direction field in the rectangle

$$R: -3 \leq x \leq 1.5, -1 \leq y \leq 3.$$

b. Use this direction field to sketch the solution curve that satisfies the initial condition.

c. Find the exact solution to the initial-value problem by other means. Compare the curve you obtained in part (b) to the graph of the exact solution.

Problem 2. Problem 1 with $y' = x + 2y$, $y(0) = 1$ and

$$R: -1 \leq x \leq 2, \quad -1 \leq y \leq 9.$$

Problem 3. Problem 1 with $y' = 2xy$, $y(0) = 1$ and

$$R: -1.5 \leq x \leq 3, \quad -1 \leq y \leq 8.$$

Problem 4. Problem 1 with $y' = -4x/y$, $y(1) = 1$ and

$$R: -2 \leq x \leq 2, \quad -3 \leq y \leq 3.$$

■ 19.4 THE EQUATION $y'' + ay' + by = \phi(x)$

In this section we study second-order linear differential equations of the form

$$\boxed{y'' + ay' + by = \phi(x).} \qquad \textbf{(19.4.1)}$$

Here a and b are constants, and $\phi = \phi(x)$ is a function continuous on some interval I. By a *solution* of the equation, we mean a function that satisfies the equation on the interval I.

Because of the role played by ϕ in the study of vibrations, we call ϕ the *forcing function*. If the forcing function is identically zero, we are back in the homogeneous case

(19.4.2) $$\boxed{y'' + ay' + by = 0.}$$

Because the solutions of (19.4.1) are intimately connected to the solutions of (19.4.2), it is absolutely essential at this stage that you be thoroughly familiar with the homogeneous case. (Section 9.3)

In what follows we will refer to (19.4.1) as the *complete equation* and call (19.4.2) the *reduced equation*.

We begin by proving two simple but important results.

(19.4.3) If both y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the complete equation, then their difference $u = y_1 - y_2$ is a solution of the reduced equation.

PROOF If $y_1'' + ay_1' + by_1 = \phi(x)$ and $y_2'' + ay_2' + by_2 = \phi(x)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} u'' + au' + bu &= (y_1'' - y_2'') + a(y_1' - y_2') + b(y_1 - y_2) \\ &= (y_1'' + ay_1' + by_1) - (y_2'' + ay_2' + by_2) \\ &= \phi(x) - \phi(x) = 0. \quad ❑ \end{aligned}$$

(19.4.4) If y_p is a particular solution of the complete equation, then every solution of the complete equation can be written as a solution of the reduced equation plus y_p.

PROOF Let y_p be a solution of the complete equation. If y is another solution of the complete equation, then, by (19.4.3), $y - y_p$ is a solution of the reduced equation. Obviously

$$y = (y - y_p) + y_p. \quad ❑$$

It follows from (19.4.4) that we can obtain the *general solution* of the complete equation by starting with the general solution of the reduced equation and then adding to it a particular solution of the complete equation. The general solution of the complete equation can thus be written

(19.4.5) $$\boxed{y = C_1u_1 + C_2u_2 + y_p}$$

where u_1, u_2 are any two solutions of the reduced equation with nonzero Wronskian and y_p is any particular solution of the complete equation.

The main task before us is the search for functions which can serve as y_p. In this search the following result can sometimes be used to advantage. It is called the *superposition principle*.

(19.4.6)

> If y_1 is a solution of
> $$y'' + ay' + by = \phi_1(x)$$
> and y_2 is a solution of
> $$y'' + ay' + by = \phi_2(x),$$
> then $y_1 + y_2$ is a solution of
> $$y'' + ay' + by = \phi_1(x) + \phi_2(x).$$

Using the superposition principle, we can find solutions to an equation in which the forcing function has several terms by finding solutions to equations in which the forcing function has only one term and then adding up the results. Verification of the superposition principle is left to you as an exercise.

We are now ready to describe two methods by which we can find some solution of the complete equation, some function that can play the role of y_p.

Variation of Parameters

The method that we outline here gives particular solutions to all complete equations.

$$(1) \qquad y'' + ay' + by = \phi(x).$$

The general solution of the reduced equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

can be written

$$y = C_1u_1 + C_2u_2$$

where u_1, u_2 are any two solutions with nonzero Wronskian and the coefficients C_1, C_2 are arbitrary constants. In the method called *variation of parameters*, we let the coefficients vary. That is, we replace the constants C_1, C_2 by functions

$$z_1 = z_1(x), \qquad z_2 = z_2(x)$$

and seek solutions of the form

$$(2) \qquad y_p = z_1u_1 + z_2u_2.$$

Differentiating (2), we have

$$y_p = z_1u_1' + z_1'u_1 + z_2u_2' + z_2'u_2 = (z_1u_1' + z_2u_2') + (z_1'u_1 + z_2'u_2).$$

We now impose a restriction on z_1, z_2: we require that

$$(3) \qquad z_1'u_1 + z_2'u_2 = 0.$$

Having imposed this restriction, we have

$$y_p' = z_1u_1' + z_2u_2'$$

and, differentiating once more,

$$y_p'' = z_1u_1'' + z_1'u_1' + z_2u_2'' + z_2'u_2'.$$

A straightforward calculation that we leave to you shows that y_p satisfies the complete equation (1) iff

(4) $$z_1' u_1' + z_2' u_2' = \phi(x).$$

Equations (3) and (4) can now be solved simultaneously for z_1' and z_2'. As you can verify yourself, the unique solutions are

(5) $$z_1' = -\frac{u_2 \phi}{W} \qquad \text{and} \qquad z_2' = \frac{u_1 \phi}{W}$$

where the denominator $W = u_1 u_2' - u_2 u_1'$ is the Wronskian of u_1 and u_2. The functions z_1, z_2 are now found by integration:

$$z_1 = -\int \frac{u_2 \phi}{W}\, dx, \qquad z_2 = \int \frac{u_1 \phi}{W}\, dx.$$

The function

(19.4.7) $$\boxed{y_p = \left(-\int \frac{u_2(x)\phi(x)}{W}\, dx\right) u_1(x) + \left(\int \frac{u_1(x)\phi(x)}{W}\, dx\right) u_2(x)}$$

is a particular solution of the equation

$$y'' + ay' + by = \phi(x).$$

Example 1 Use variation of parameters to find a solution of the equation

$$y'' + y = \tan x, \qquad -\tfrac{1}{2}\pi < x < \tfrac{1}{2}\pi.$$

Then give the general solution.

SOLUTION The reduced equation $y'' + y = 0$ has solutions

$$u_1 = \cos x, \qquad u_2 = \sin x.$$

The Wronskian of these solutions is identically 1:

$$W = u_1 u_2' - u_2 u_1' = (\cos x)(\cos x) - (-\sin x)\sin x = \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1.$$

Since $\phi(x) = \tan x$, we can set

$$\begin{aligned} z_1 &= -\int \frac{u_2 \phi}{W}\, dx \\ &= -\int \frac{\sin x \tan x}{1}\, dx \\ &= -\int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos x}\, dx \\ &= \int \frac{\cos^2 x - 1}{\cos x}\, dx = \int (\cos x - \sec x)\, dx = \sin x - \ln|\sec x + \tan x| \end{aligned}$$

and

$$z_2 = \int \frac{u_1 \phi}{W}\, dx = \int \frac{\cos x \tan x}{1}\, dx = \int \sin x\, dx = -\cos x.$$

We didn't include any arbitrary constants here. At this stage we are looking for only one solution of the complete equation, not a family of solutions.

By (19.4.7), the function

$$\begin{aligned} y_p &= (\sin x - \ln|\sec x + \tan x|)\cos x + (-\cos x)\sin x \\ &= -(\ln|\sec x + \tan x|)\cos x \end{aligned}$$

is a solution of the complete equation.

The general solution can be written

$$y = C_1 \cos x + C_2 \sin x - (\ln|\sec x + \tan x|)\cos x.$$ ❑

Example 2 Find the general solution of $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 4\,e^{2x}$.

SOLUTION The equation $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 0$ has characteristic equation

$$r^2 - 5r + 6 = (r-2)(r-3) = 0.$$

Thus, $u_1(x) = e^{2x}$, $u_2(x) = e^{3x}$ are solutions. Their Wronskian W is e^{5x}:

$$W = u_1u_2' - u_2u_1' = e^{2x}3\,e^{3x} - e^{3x}\,2e^{2x} = e^{5x}.$$

Since $\phi(x) = 4\,e^{2x}$, we have

$$z_1 = -\int \frac{u_2\phi}{W}\,dx = -\int \frac{e^{3x}\,4e^{2x}}{e^{5x}}dx = -\int 4\,dx = -4x$$

and

$$z_2 = \int \frac{u_1\phi}{W}\,dx = \int \frac{e^{2x}\,4e^{2x}}{e^{5x}}\,dx = \int 4e^{-x}dx = -4e^{-x}.$$

Therefore, by (19.4.7),

$$y_p = -4xe^{2x} - 4e^{-x}\,e^{3x} = -4xe^{2x} - 4e^{2x}$$

is a solution of the complete equation.

The general solution can be written

$$\begin{aligned} y &= A_1u_1 + A_2u_2 + y_p = A_1e^{2x} + A_2e^{3x} - 4xe^{2x} - 4e^{2x} \\ &= (A_1 - 4)\,e^{2x} + A_2e^{3x} - 4xe^{2x} \\ &= C_1e^{2x} + C_2e^{3x} - 4xe^{2x}. \qquad (C_1 = A_1 - 4,\ C_2 = A_2) \end{aligned}$$ ❑

Undetermined Coefficients

In equations

$$y'' + ay' + by = \phi(x)$$

that arise in the study of physical phenomena, the forcing function is often a polynomial, a sine, a cosine, an exponential, or a simple combination thereof. Particular solutions of such equations can usually be found by what is formally called the method of *undetermined coefficients* but is probably just as aptly called the method of "informed guessing."

Instead of trying to lay out formal rules of procedure, we take a practical approach and proceed directly to examples. In the first few examples we won't be looking for the general solution of the equation. We will be looking for any solution that we can get hold of, any function that can act as y_p.

Example 3 Suppose that we are faced with the equation

$$(*) \qquad y'' + 2y' + 5y = 10e^{-2x}.$$

From what we know about exponentials, it seems reasonable to guess a solution of the form $y = Ae^{-2x}$. Proceeding with our guess, we have

$$y = Ae^{-2x}, \qquad y' = -2Ae^{-2x}, \qquad y'' = 4Ae^{-2x}.$$

This gives

$$y'' + 2y' + 5y = 4Ae^{-2x} + 2(-2Ae^{-2x}) + 5Ae^{-2x} = 5Ae^{-2x}.$$

Our exponential function satisfies $(*)$ provided

$$5Ae^{-2x} = 10e^{-2x}.$$

It follows from this equation that $5A = 10$ and so $A = 2$. The function $y_p = 2e^{-2x}$ is a particular solution of $(*)$. ❑

Example 4 This time we seek a solution to the equation

$$(*) \qquad y'' + 2y' + y = 10\cos 3x.$$

Following the lead of Example 3, we may be tempted to try a solution of the form $y = A\cos 3x$. For this function

$$y'' + 2y' + y = -8A\cos 3x - 6A\sin 3x.$$

Verify this. Let us see what happens with $y = B\sin 3x$. For this function

$$y'' + 2y' + y = 6B\cos 3x - 8B\sin 3x.$$

Verify this. Combining these two calculations, we find that the function

$$y = A\cos 3x + B\sin 3x$$

satisfies the equation

$$y'' + 2y' + y = (-8A + 6B)\cos 3x + (-6A - 8B)\sin 3x.$$

We can satisfy $(*)$ by having

$$-8A + 6B = 10 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -6A - 8B = 0.$$

As you can check, these relations lead to $A = -\frac{4}{5}$, $B = \frac{3}{5}$. The function

$$y_p = -\tfrac{4}{5}\cos 3x + \tfrac{3}{5}\sin 3x$$

is a particular solution of $(*)$. ❑

Example 5 For the equation

$$(*) \qquad y'' - 5y' + 6y = 4e^{2x}$$

you may be tempted to try to find a solution of the form $y = Ae^{2x}$. This won't work. The characteristic equation of the reduced equation reads $r^2 - 5r + 6 = 0$, which factors into $(r-2)(r-3) = 0$. This tells us that all functions of the form $y = Ae^{2x}$ are solutions of the reduced equation. For such functions the left side of $(*)$ is zero and cannot be $4e^{2x}$. What can we do? We need an e^{2x} and we don't want any sines, cosines, or any other exponentials around. We try a function of the form $y = Axe^{2x}$. Perhaps the left side of the equation, $y'' - 5y' + 6y$, will eliminate the x and leave us with a constant multiple of e^{2x}, which is what we want. Substituting y and its derivatives

$$y' = Ae^{2x} + 2Axe^{2x}, \qquad y'' = 4Ae^{2x} + 4Axe^{2x}$$

into (∗), we get

$$(4Ae^{2x} + 4Axe^{2x}) - 5(Ae^{2x} + 2Axe^{2x}) + 6(Axe^{2x}) = 4e^{2x},$$

which simplifies to

$$-Ae^{2x} = 4e^{2x}.$$

Thus, $y = Axe^{2x}$ satisfies (∗) provided that $A = -4$. The function

$$y_p = -4xe^{2x}$$

is a particular solution of (∗). (Obtainable from the general solution as given in Example 2 by setting $C_1 = 0$, $C_2 = 0$.) ❑

In the next example we will use the superposition principle: the fact that if y_1 is a solution of

$$y'' + ay' + by = \phi_1(x)$$

and y_2 is a solution of

$$y'' + ay' + by = \phi_2(x),$$

then $y_1 + y_2$ is a solution of

$$y'' + ay' + by = \phi_1(x) + \phi_2(x).$$

Example 6 We consider the equation $y'' - 2y' + y = e^x + e^{-x}\sin x$. This time we want the general solution.

First we calculate the general solution of the reduced equation

$$y'' - 2y' + y = 0.$$

Since the characteristic equation $r^2 - 2r + 1 = 0$ has the factored form $(r - 1)^2 = 0$, the general solution takes the form

$$y_g = C_1e^x + C_2xe^x.$$

Now we look for some solution of

$$(*) \qquad y'' - 2y' + y = e^x.$$

Functions of the form $y = Ae^x$ or $y = Axe^x$ won't work because they are solutions of the reduced equation. So we go one step further and try $y = Ax^2e^x$. As you can check, substituting this guess into (∗) leads to the conclusion that this y is a solution provided $A = \frac{1}{2}$. The function

$$y_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}x^2e^x$$

is a particular solution of (∗).

Next we look for a solution of

$$(**) \qquad y'' - 2y' + y = e^{-x}\sin x.$$

The result in Example 4 suggests that we try to find solution of the form

$$y = Ae^{-x}\sin x + Be^{-x}\cos x.$$

For this function, you can verify that

$$y'' - 2y' + y = (3A + 4B)e^{-x}\sin x + (-4A + 3B)e^{-x}\cos x.$$

We can satisfy $(**)$ by having

$$3A + 4B = 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad -4A + 3B = 0.$$

These relations lead to $A = \frac{3}{25}$, $B = \frac{4}{25}$. The function

$$y_2 = \tfrac{3}{25}e^{-x}\sin x + \tfrac{4}{25}e^{-x}\cos x$$

is a particular solution of $(**)$.

The general solution of the equation

$$y'' - 2y' + y = e^x + e^{-x}\sin x$$

can be written

$$y = y_g + y_1 + y_2 = C_1e^x + C_2xe^x + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2e^x + \tfrac{3}{25}e^{-x}\sin x + \tfrac{4}{25}e^{-x}\cos x. \quad ❑$$

We have approached these problems as tests of ingenuity. There are detailed recipes that give suggested trial solutions for a multitude of forcing functions ϕ. We won't attempt to give them here.

EXERCISES 19.4

Exercises 1–16. Find a particular solution.

1. $y'' + 5y' + 6y = 3x + 4$.
2. $y'' - 3y' - 10y = 5$.
3. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = x^2 - 1$.
4. $y'' + y' - 2y = x^3 + x$.
5. $y'' + 6y' + 9y = e^{3x}$.
6. $y'' + 6y' + 9y = e^{-3x}$.
7. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = e^x$.
8. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = x\,e^{-x}$.
9. $y'' - y' - 12y = \cos x$.
10. $y'' - y' - 12y = \sin x$.
11. $y'' + 7y' + 6y = 3\cos 2x$.
12. $y'' + y' + 3y = \sin 3x$.
13. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = e^{-x}\sin 2x$.
14. $y'' + 4y' + 5y = e^{2x}\cos x$.
15. $y'' + 6y' + 8y = 3\,e^{-2x}$.
16. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = e^x\sin x$.

Exercises 17–24. Find the general solution.

17. $y'' + y = e^x$.
18. $y'' - 2y' + y = -25\sin 2x$.
19. $y'' - 3y' - 10y = -x - 1$.
20. $y'' + 4y = x\cos 2x$.
21. $y'' + 3y' - 4y = e^{-4x}$.
22. $y'' + 2y' = 4\sin 2x$.
23. $y'' + y' - 2y = 3x\,e^x$.
24. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = x\,e^{-2x}$.
25. Verify the superposition principle (19.4.6).
26. Find a particular solution.
(a) $y'' + 2y' - 15y = x + e^{2x}$.
(b) $y'' - 7y' - 12y = e^{-x} + \sin 2x$.
27. Find the general solution of the equation

$$y'' - 4y' + 3y = \cosh x.$$

Exercises 28–35. Find a particular solution by variation of parameters.

28. $y'' + y = 3\sin x\sin 2x$.
29. $y'' - 2y' + y = x\,e^x\cos x$.
30. $y'' + y = \csc x, \quad 0 < x < \pi$.
31. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = \frac{1}{3}x^{-1}e^{2x}, \quad x > 0$.
32. $y'' + 4y = \sec^2 2x$.
33. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = \dfrac{e^{-2x}}{x^2}$.
34. $y'' + 2y' + y = e^{-x}\ln x$.
35. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = e^x\sec x$.
36. What differential equation is obtained from

$$y'' + ay' + by = (c_nx^n + \cdots + c_1x + c_0)\,e^{kx}$$

by making the substitution $y = ve^{kx}$?
37. In Exercise 30 of Section 9.3 we introduced a differential equation satisfied by the electrical current in a simple circuit. In the presence of an external electromotive force $F(t)$, the equation takes the form

$$L\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + R\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}i = F(t).$$

Find the current i given that $F(t) = F_0$, $i(0) = 0$, and $i'(0) = F_0/L$: (a) if $CR^2 = 4L$; (b) if $CR^2 < 4L$.
38. (a) Show that $y_1 = x$, $y_2 = x\ln x$ are solutions of the Euler equation

$$x^2y'' - xy' + y = 0$$

and that their Wronskian is nonzero on $(0, \infty)$.
(b) Find a particular solution of the equation

$$x^2y'' - xy' + y = 4x\ln x$$

by variation of parameters.
39. (a) Show that $y_1 = \sin(\ln x^2)$ and $y_2 = \cos(\ln x^2)$ are solutions of the Euler equation

$$x^2y'' + xy' + 4y = 0.$$

Verify that their Wronskian is nonzero on $(0, \infty)$.
(b) Find a particular solution of the equation

$$x^2y'' + xy' + 4y = \sin(\ln x)$$

by variation of parameters.

■ 19.5 MECHANICAL VIBRATIONS

Simple Harmonic Motion

An object moves along a straight line. Instead of continuing in one direction, it moves back and forth, oscillating about a central point. Call the central point $x = 0$ and denote by $x(t)$ the displacement of the object at time t. If the acceleration is a constant negative multiple of the displacement,

$$a(t) = -kx(t) \qquad \text{with } k > 0,$$

then the object is said to be in *simple harmonic motion.*

Since, by definition,

$$a(t) = x''(t),$$

we have $x''(t) = -kx(t)$, and therefore

$$x''(t) + kx(t) = 0.$$

To emphasize that k is positive, we set $k = \omega^2$ where $\omega = \sqrt{k} > 0$. The equation of motion then takes the form

(19.5.1)
$$\boxed{x''(t) + \omega^2 x(t) = 0.}$$

This is a homogeneous second-order linear differential equation with constant coefficients. The characteristic equation reads

$$r^2 + \omega^2 = 0,$$

and the roots are $\pm\omega i$. Therefore, the general solution of (19.5.1) is of the form

$$x(t) = C_1 \cos \omega t + C_2 \sin \omega t.$$

A routine calculation shows that the general solution can be written

(19.5.2)
$$\boxed{x(t) = A \sin(\omega t + \phi_0)}$$

where A and ϕ_0 are constants with $A > 0$ and $\phi_0 \in [0, 2\pi)$. (Exercise 28, Section 9.3.)

Now let's analyze the motion measuring t in seconds. By adding $2\pi/\omega$ to t, we increase $\omega t + \phi_0$ by 2π:

$$\omega\left(t + \frac{2\pi}{\omega}\right) + \phi_0 = \omega t + \phi_0 + 2\pi.$$

Therefore the motion is *periodic* with *period*

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}.$$

A complete oscillation takes $2\pi/\omega$ seconds. The reciprocal of the period gives the number of complete oscillations per second. This is called the *frequency*:

$$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi}.$$

The number ω is called the *angular frequency*. Since $\sin(\omega t + \phi_0)$ oscillates between -1 and 1,

$$x(t) = A\sin(\omega t + \phi_0)$$

oscillates between $-A$ and A. The number A is called the *amplitude* of the motion.

In Figure 19.5.1 we have plotted x against t. The oscillations along the x-axis are now waves in the tx-plane. The period of the motion, $2\pi/\omega$, is the t distance (the time separation) between consecutive wave crests. The amplitude of the motion, A, is the height of the waves measured in x units from $x = 0$. The number ϕ_0 is known as the *phase constant*, or *phase shift*. The phase constant determines the initial displacement (the height of the wave at time $t = 0$). If $\phi_0 = 0$, the object starts at the center of the interval of motion (the wave starts at the origin of the tx-plane).

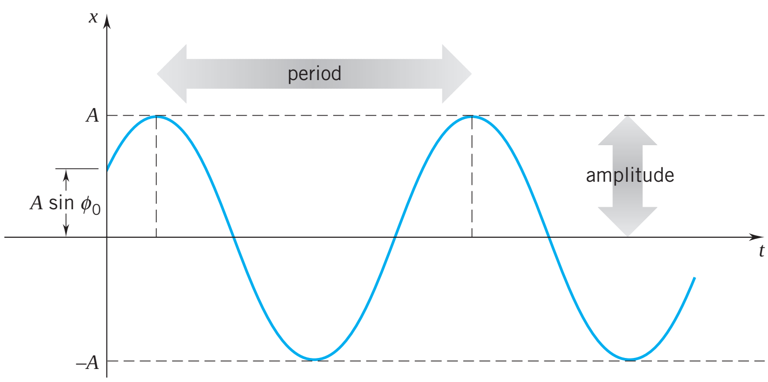


Figure 19.5.1

Example 1 Find an equation for the oscillatory motion of an object, given that the period is $2\pi/3$ and, at time $t = 0$, $x = 1$ and $x' = 3$.

SOLUTION We begin by setting $x(t) = A\sin(\omega t + \phi_0)$. In general the period is $2\pi/\omega$, so that here

$$\frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{2\pi}{3} \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad \omega = 3.$$

The equation of motion takes the form

$$x(t) = A\sin(3t + \phi_0).$$

By differentiation

$$x'(t) = 3A\cos(3t + \phi_0).$$

The conditions at $t = 0$ give

$$1 = x(0) = A\sin\phi_0, \qquad 3 = x'(0) = 3A\cos\phi_0$$

and therefore

$$1 = A\sin\phi_0, \qquad 1 = A\cos\phi_0.$$

Adding the squares of these equations, we have

$$2 = A^2\sin^2\phi_0 + A^2\cos^2\phi_0 = A^2.$$

Since $A > 0$, $A = \sqrt{2}$.

To find ϕ_0 we note that

$$1 = \sqrt{2}\sin\phi_0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad 1 = \sqrt{2}\cos\phi_0.$$

These equations are satisfied by setting $\phi_0 = \frac{1}{4}\pi$. The equation of motion can be written

$$x(t) = \sqrt{2}\sin\left(3t + \tfrac{1}{4}\pi\right). \quad \square$$

Undamped Vibrations

A coil spring hangs naturally to a length l_0. When a bob of mass m is attached to it, the spring stretches l_1 inches. The bob is later pulled down an additional x_0 inches and then released. What is the resulting motion? We refer to Figure 19.5.2, taking the downward direction as positive.

We begin by analyzing the forces acting on the bob at general position x. (Stage IV.) First there is the weight of the bob:

$$F_1 = mg.$$

This is a downward force and, by our choice of coordinate system, positive. Then there is the restoring force of the spring. This force, by Hooke's law, is proportional to the total displacement $l_1 + x$ and acts in the opposite direction:

$$F_2 = -k(l_1 + x) \qquad \text{with } k > 0.$$

If we neglect resistance, these are the only forces acting on the bob. Under these conditions the total force is

$$F = F_1 + F_2 = mg - k(l_1 + x),$$

which we write as

$$F = (mg - kl_1) - kx.$$

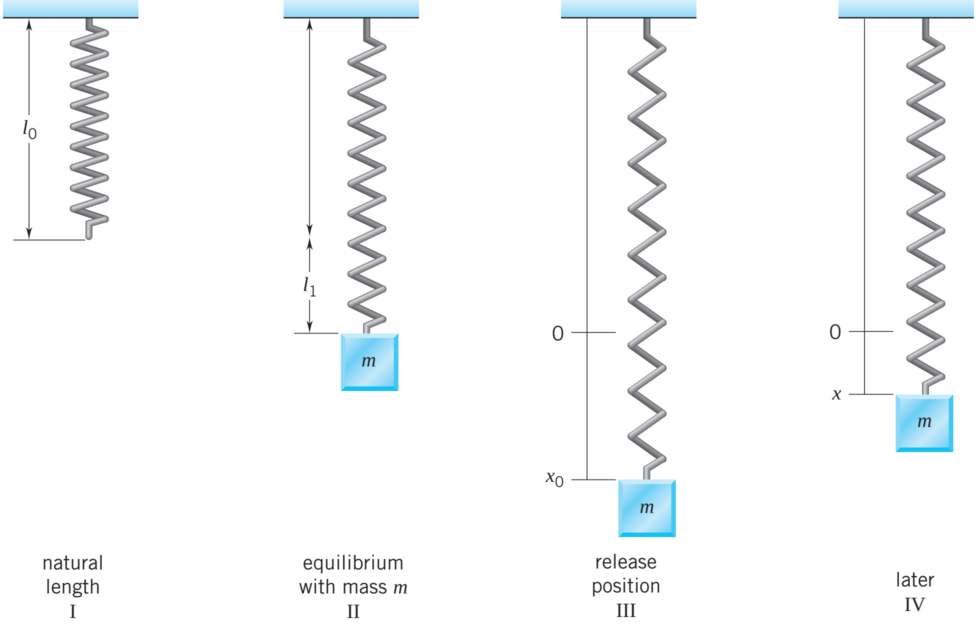


Figure 19.5.2

At stage II (Figure 19.5.2) there was equilibrium. The force of gravity, mg, plus the force of the spring, $-kl_1$, must have been 0:

$$mg - kl_1 = 0.$$

Equation (1) can therefore be simplified to read

$$F = -kx.$$

Using Newton's second law,

$$F = ma, \qquad \text{(force = mass × acceleration)}$$

we have

$$ma = -kx \qquad \text{and thus} \qquad a = -\frac{k}{m}x.$$

At each time t we have

$$x''(t) = -\frac{k}{m}x(t) \qquad \text{and therefore} \qquad x''(t) + \frac{k}{m}x(t) = 0.$$

Since $k/m > 0$, we can set $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$ and write

$$x''(t) + \omega^2 x(t) = 0.$$

The motion of the bob is simple harmonic motion with period $T = 2\pi/\omega$. ❑

There is something remarkable about simple harmonic motion that we have not yet specifically pointed out; namely, that the frequency $f = \omega/2\pi$ is completely independent of the amplitude of the motion. The oscillations of the bob occur with frequency

$$f = \frac{\sqrt{k/m}}{2\pi}. \qquad \text{(here } \omega = \sqrt{k/m}\text{)}$$

By adjusting the spring constant k and the mass of the bob m, we can calibrate the spring-bob system so that the oscillations take place exactly once a second (at least almost exactly). We then have a primitive timepiece (a first cousin of the windup clock). With the passing of time, friction and air resistance reduce the amplitude of the oscillations but not their frequency. This will be shown below. By giving the bob a little push or pull once in a while (by rewinding our clock), we can restore the amplitude of the oscillations and thus maintain the "steady ticking."

Damped Vibrations

We derived the equation of motion

$$x'' + \frac{k}{m}x = 0$$

from the force equation

$$F = -kx.$$

Unless the spring is frictionless and the motion takes place in a vacuum, there is a resistance to the motion that tends to dampen the vibrations. Experiment shows that the resistance force R is approximately proportional to the velocity x':

$$R = -cx'. \qquad (c > 0)$$

Taking this resistance term into account, the force equation reads

$$F = -kx - cx'.$$

Newton's law $F = ma = mx''$ then gives

$$mx'' = -cx' - kx,$$

which we can write as

(19.5.3)
$$\boxed{x'' + \frac{c}{m}x' + \frac{k}{m}x = 0.}$$

This is the equation of motion in the presence of a *damping factor.* To study the motion, we analyze this equation.

The characteristic equation

$$r^2 + \frac{c}{m}r + \frac{k}{m} = 0$$

has roots

$$r = \frac{-c \pm \sqrt{c^2 - 4km}}{2m}.$$

There are three possibilities:

$$c^2 - 4km < 0, \quad c^2 - 4km > 0, \quad c^2 - 4km = 0.$$

Case 1. $c^2 - 4km < 0$. In this case the characteristic equation has two complex roots:

$$r_1 = -\frac{c}{2m} + i\omega, \quad r_2 = -\frac{c}{2m} - i\omega \quad \text{where} \quad \omega = \frac{\sqrt{4km - c^2}}{2m}.$$

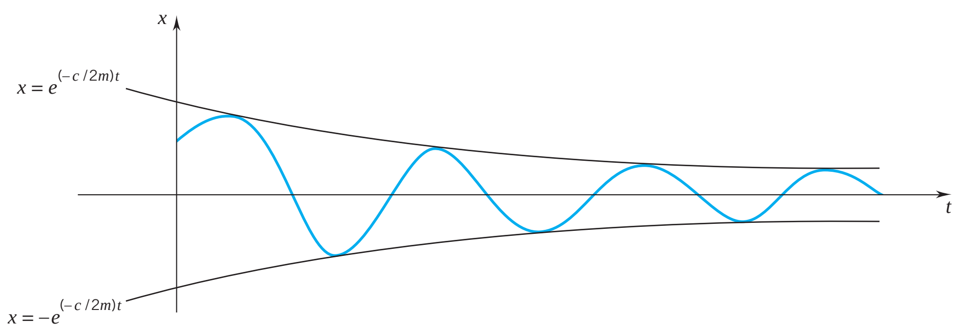
The general solution of (19.5.3) takes the form

$$x = e^{-(c/2m)t}(C_1 \cos \omega t + C_2 \sin \omega t).$$

This can be written

(19.5.4)
$$\boxed{x = A\, e^{-(c/2m)t} \sin(\omega t + \phi_0)}$$

where, as before, A and ϕ_0 are constants, $A > 0$, $\phi_0 \in [0, 2\pi)$. This is called the *underdamped case*. The motion is similar to simple harmonic motion, except that the damping term $e^{(-c/2m)t}$ ensures that as $t \to \infty$, $x \to 0$. The vibrations continue indefinitely with constant frequency $2\pi/\omega$ but with diminishing amplitude $A\, e^{(-c/2m)t}$. As $t \to \infty$, the amplitude of the vibrations tends to zero; the vibrations die down. The motion is illustrated in Figure 19.5.3. ❑



damped harmonic motion

Figure 19.5.3

Case 2. $c^2 - 4km > 0$. In this case the characteristic equation has two distinct real roots:

$$r_1 = \frac{-c + \sqrt{c^2 - 4km}}{2m}, \quad r_2 = \frac{-c - \sqrt{c^2 - 4km}}{2m}.$$

The general solution takes the form

(19.5.5) $$\boxed{x = C_1 e^{r_1 t} + C_2 e^{r_2 t}.}$$

This is called the *overdamped case*. The motion is nonoscillatory. Since $\sqrt{c^2 - 4km} < \sqrt{c^2} = c$, both r_1 and r_2 are negative. As $t \to \infty$, $x \to 0$. ❑

Case 3. $c^2 - 4km = 0$. In this case the characteristic equation has only one root

$$r_1 = -\frac{c}{2m},$$

and the general solution takes the form

(19.5.6) $$\boxed{x = C_1 e^{-(c/2m)t} + C_2 te^{-(c/2m)t}.}$$

This is called the *critically damped case*. Once again the motion is nonoscillatory. Moreover, as $t \to \infty$, $x \to 0$. ❑

In both the overdamped and critically damped cases, the mass moves slowly back to its equilibrium position: as $t \to \infty$, $x \to 0$. Depending on the initial conditions, the mass may move through the equilibrium once, but only once; there is no oscillatory motion. Two typical examples of the motion are shown in Figure 19.5.4.

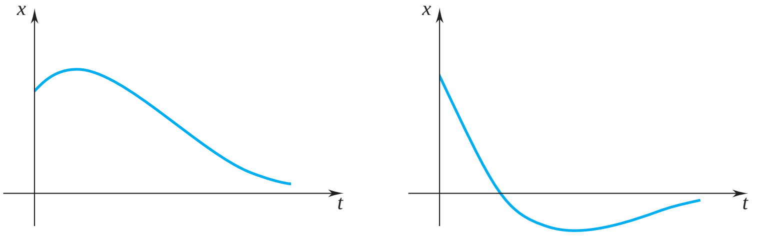


Figure 19.5.4

Forced Vibrations

The vibrations that we have been considering result from the interplay of three forces: the force of gravity, the elastic force of the spring, and the retarding force of the surrounding medium. Such vibrations are called *free vibrations*.

The application of an external force to a freely vibrating system modifies the vibrations and results in what are called *forced vibrations*. In what follows we examine the effect of a pulsating force $F_0 \cos \gamma t$. Without loss of generality, we can take both F_0 and γ as positive.

In an undamped system the force equation reads

$$F = -kx + F_0 \cos \gamma t,$$

and the equation of motion takes the form

(19.5.7) $$\boxed{x'' + \frac{k}{m}x = \frac{F_0}{m}\cos \gamma t.}$$

We set $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$ and write

(19.5.8)
$$\boxed{x'' + \omega^2 x = \frac{F_0}{m}\cos\gamma t.}$$

As you'll see, the nature of the vibrations depends on the relation between the *applied frequency*, $\gamma/2\pi$, and the *natural frequency* of the system, $\omega/2\pi$.

Case 1. $\gamma \neq \omega$. In this case the method of undetermined coefficients gives the particular solution

$$x_p = \frac{F_0/m}{\omega^2 - \gamma^2}\cos\gamma\, t.$$

The general equation of motion can thus be written

(19.5.9)
$$\boxed{x = A\sin(\omega t + \phi_0) + \frac{F_0/m}{\omega^2 - \gamma^2}\cos\gamma t.}$$

If ω/γ is rational, the vibrations are periodic. If, on the other hand, ω/γ is not rational, then the vibrations are not periodic and the motion, though bounded by

$$|A| + \left|\frac{F_0/m}{\omega^2 - \gamma^2}\right|,$$

can be highly irregular. The figures below show some vibrations associated with the initial-value problem

$$x'' + 4x = 3\cos\gamma t, \qquad x(0) = 0, \qquad x'(0) = 1.$$

No matter how we choose γ, ω is 2. The vibrations that result if $\gamma = 3$ are shown in Figure 19.5.5. In this case ω/γ is rational, and the vibrations are periodic. The vibrations that result if $\gamma = \pi/2$ are shown in Figure 19.5.6. In this case ω/γ is not rational, and the vibrations are not periodic. ❑

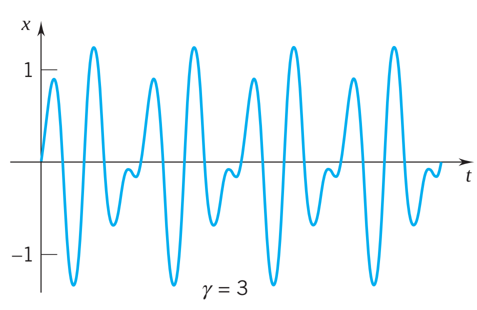


Figure 19.5.5

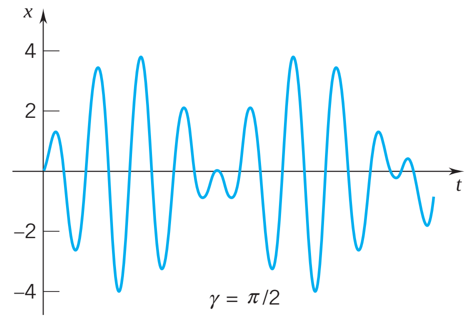


Figure 19.5.6

Case 2. $\gamma = \omega$. In this case the method of undetermined coefficients gives

$$x_p = \frac{F_0}{2\omega m} t\sin\omega t,$$

and the general solution takes the form

$$\boxed{x = A\sin(\omega t + \phi_0) + \frac{F_0}{2\omega m}\, t\sin\omega t.} \tag{19.5.10}$$

The undamped system is said to be in *resonance*. The motion is oscillatory but, because of the extra t present in the second term, it is far from periodic. As $t \to \infty$, the amplitude of vibration increases without bound. The motion is illustrated in Figure 19.5.7. The curve represents the solution of the initial-value problem

$$x'' + 4x = 3\cos 2t, \qquad x(0) = 0,\ x'(0) = 1. \quad ❑$$

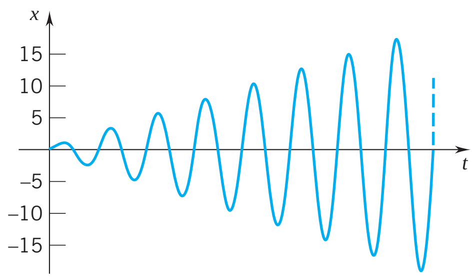


Figure 19.5.7

Undamped systems and unbounded vibrations are mathematical fictions. No real mechanical system is totally undamped, and unbounded vibrations do not occur in nature. Nevertheless, a form of resonance can occur in a real mechanical system. (See Exercises 24–28.) A periodic external force applied to a mechanical system that is insufficiently damped can set up vibrations of very large amplitude. Such vibrations have caused the destruction of some formidable man-made structures. In 1850 the suspension bridge at Angers, France, was destroyed by vibrations set up by the unified step of a column of marching soldiers. More than two hundred French soldiers were killed in that catastrophe. (Soldiers today are told to break ranks before crossing a bridge.) The collapse of the bridge at Tacoma, Washington, is a more recent event. Slender in construction and graceful in design, the Tacoma bridge was opened to traffic on July 1, 1940. The third longest suspension bridge in the world, with a main span of 2800 feet, the bridge attracted many admirers. On November 1 of that same year, after less than five months of service, the main span of the bridge broke loose from its cables and crashed into the water below. (Luckily only one person was on the bridge at the time, and he was able to crawl to safety.) A driving wind had set up vibrations in resonance with the natural vibrations of the roadway, and the stiffening girders of the bridge had not provided sufficient damping to keep the vibrations from reaching destructive magnitude.

EXERCISES 19.5

1. An object is in simple harmonic motion. Find an equation for the motion given that the period T is $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ and at time $t = 0$, $x = 1$ and $x' = 0$. What is the amplitude? What is the frequency?

2. An object is in simple harmonic motion. Find an equation for the motion given that the frequency is $1/\pi$ and, at time $t = 0$, $x = 0$ and $x' = -2$. What is the amplitude? What is the period?

3. An object is in simple harmonic motion with period T and amplitude A. What is the velocity at the central point $x = 0$?

4. An object is in simple harmonic motion with period T. Find the amplitude given that $x' = \pm v_0$ at $x = x_0$.

5. An object in simple harmonic motion passes through the central point $x = 0$ at time $t = 0$ and every 3 seconds thereafter. Find the equation of motion given that $x'(0) = 5$.

6. Show that simple harmonic motion $x(t) = A \sin(\omega t + \phi_0)$ can just as well be written: (a) $x(t) = A \cos(\omega t + \phi_1)$; (b) $x(t) = B \sin \omega t + C \cos \omega t$.

Exercises 7–12 relate to the motion of the bob depicted in Figure 19.5.2.

7. Express $x(t)$, the position of the bob, in terms of the initial position x_0, the time elapsed t, the spring constant k, and the mass of the bob m.

8. Find the positions of the bob where it attains: (a) maximum speed; (b) zero speed; (c) maximum acceleration; (d) zero acceleration.

9. Where does the bob take on half of its maximum speed?

10. Find the maximal kinetic energy of the bob. (*Remember:* $\text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, where m is the mass of the object and v is the speed.)

11. Find the time average of the kinetic energy of the bob during a complete oscillation.

12. Express the velocity of the bob in terms of k, m, x_0, and $x(t)$.

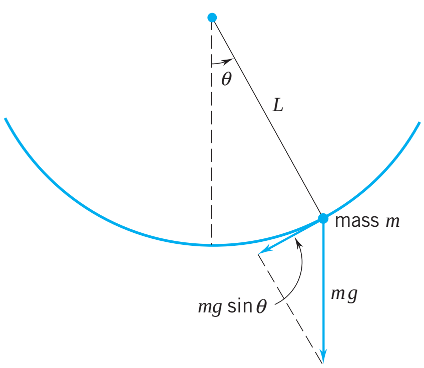
13. Given that $x''(t) = 8 - 4x(t)$ with $x(0) = 0$ and $x'(0) = 0$, show that the motion is simple harmonic motion centered at $x = 2$. Find the amplitude and the period.

14. The figure shows a pendulum of mass m swinging on an arm of length L. The angle θ is measured counterclockwise. Neglecting friction and the weight of the arm, we can describe the motion by the equation

$$mL\theta''(t) = -mg \sin \theta(t),$$

which reduces to

$$\theta''(t) = -\frac{g}{L} \sin \theta(t).$$



(a) For small angles we replace $\sin \theta$ by θ and write

$$\theta''(t) \cong -\frac{g}{L}\theta(t).$$

Justify this step.

(b) Solve the approximate equation in part (a) given that the pendulum

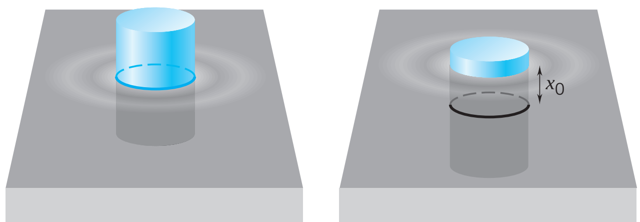
$$x''2\alpha x' + \omega^2 x = 0.$$

(i) is held at an angle $\theta_0 > 0$ and released at time $t = 0$.

(ii) passes through the vertical position at time $t = 0$ and $\theta'(0) = -\sqrt{g/L}\,\theta_1$.

(c) Find L given that the motion repeats itself every 2 seconds.

15. A cylindrical buoy of mass m and radius r centimeters floats with its axis vertical in a liquid of density ρ kilograms per cubic centimeter. Suppose that the buoy is pushed x_0 centimeters down into the liquid. See the figure.



(a) Neglecting friction and given that the buoyancy force is equal to the weight of the liquid displaced, show that the buoy bobs up and down in simple harmonic motion by finding the equation of motion.

(b) Solve the equation obtained in part (a). Specify the amplitude and the period.

16. Explain in detail the connection between uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion.

17. What is the effect of an increase in the resistance constant c on the amplitude and frequency of the vibrations given by (19.5.4)?

18. Prove that the motion given by (19.5.5) can pass through the equilibrium point at most once. How many times can the motion change directions?

19. Prove that the motion given by (19.5.6) can pass through the equilibrium point at most once. How many times can the motion change directions?

20. Show that, if $\gamma \neq \omega$, then the method of undetermined coefficients applied to (19.5.8) gives

$$x_p = \frac{F_0/m}{\omega^2 - \gamma^2} \cos \gamma t.$$

21. Show that if ω/γ is rational, then the vibrations given by (19.5.9) are periodic.

22. Show that, if $\gamma = \omega$, then the method of undetermined coefficients applied to (19.5.8) gives

$$x_p = \frac{F_0}{2\omega m} t \sin \omega t.$$

Forced Vibrations in a Damped System

Write equation

$$x'' + \frac{c}{m}x' + \frac{k}{m}x = \frac{F_0}{m} \cos \gamma t$$

as

$$(*) \qquad x'' + 2\alpha x' + \omega^2 x = \frac{F_0}{m}\cos\gamma t.$$

We will assume throughout that $0 < \alpha < \omega$. (For large α the resistance is large and the motion is not as interesting.)

23. Find the general solution of the reduced equation

$$x'' + 2\alpha x' + \omega^2 x = 0.$$

24. Verify that the function

$$x_\rho = \frac{F_0/m}{(\omega^2-\gamma^2)^2 + 4\alpha^2\gamma^2}[(\omega^2-\gamma^2)\cos\gamma t + 2\alpha\gamma\sin\gamma t]$$

is a particular solution of $(*)$.

25. Determine x_ρ if $\omega = \gamma$. Show that the amplitude of the vibrations is very large if the resistance constant c is very small.

26. Show that the solution x_ρ in Exercise 24 can be written

$$x_\rho = \frac{F_0/m}{\sqrt{(\omega^2-\gamma^2)^2 + 4\alpha^2\gamma^2}}\sin(\gamma t + \phi).$$

27. Show that, if $2\alpha^2 \geq \omega^2$, then the amplitude of vibration of the solution x_ρ in Exercise 26 decreases as γ increases.

28. Suppose now that $2\alpha^2 \leq \omega^2$.

(a) Find the value of γ that maximizes the amplitude of the solution x_ρ in Exercise 26.

(b) Determine the frequency that corresponds to this value of γ. (This is called the *resonant frequency* of the damped system).

(c) What is the *resonant amplitude* of the system? (In other words, what is the amplitude of the vibrations if the applied force is at resonant frequency?)

(d) Show that, if c, the constant of resistance, is very small, then the resonant amplitude is very large.

CHAPTER 19. REVIEW EXERCISES

Exercises 1–12. Solve the differential equation by any means at your disposal.

1. $y' + y = 2e^{-2x}$.

2. $3x^2y^2 + (2x^3y + 4y^3)\,y' = 0$.

3. $y^2 + 1 = yy'\cos^2 x$.

4. $\dfrac{y}{x}y' = \dfrac{e^x}{\ln y}$.

5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{y^2 + 2xy}{x^2}$.

6. $xy' + 2y = \dfrac{\cos x}{x}$.

7. $(y\sin x + xy\cos x)\,dx + (x\sin x + y^2)\,dy = 0$.

8. $(x^2 + y^2 + x)\,dx + xy\,dy = 0$.

9. $y' = \dfrac{x^2y - y}{y+1}$.

10. $y' = \dfrac{3}{x}y + x^4y^{1/3}$.

11. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^3 - 2y}{x}$.

12. $(3y^2 + 2xy)\,dx - (2xy + x^2)\,dy = 0$.

Exercises 13–18. Solve the initial-value problem.

13. $y' = \dfrac{x^2+y^2}{2xy}$; $\quad y(1) = 2$.

14. $xy' + 2y = x^2$; $\quad y(1) = 0$.

15. $(x+y)^2 + (2xy + x^2 - 1)\,y' = 0$; $\quad y(1) = 1$.

16. $yy' = 4x\sqrt{y^2+1}$; $\quad y(0) = 1$.

17. $y' + xy = xy^2$; $\ y(0) = 2$.

18. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = y - y^2$; $\quad y(0) = 2$.

Exercises 19–28. Find the general solution.

19. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0$.

20. $y'' + y' + \frac{1}{4}y = 0$.

21. $y'' - y' - 2y = \sin 2x$.

22. $y'' - 4y' = 0$.

23. $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 3e^{3x}$.

24. $y'' + y = \sec^3 x$.

25. $y'' - 2y' + y = \dfrac{e^x}{x}$.

26. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 2\sin x + 4$.

27. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 2e^{2x} + 4e^{-2x}$.

28. $y'' + 4y = \tan 2x$.

Exercises 29–32. Solve the initial-value problem.

29. $y'' + y' = x$; $\qquad y(0) = 1,\ y'(0) = 0$.

30. $y'' + y = 4\cos 2x - 4\sin x$; $\quad y(\pi/2) = -1,\ y'(\pi/2) = 0$.

31. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 10\,e^{2x}$; $\quad y(0) = 1,\ y'(0) = 1$.

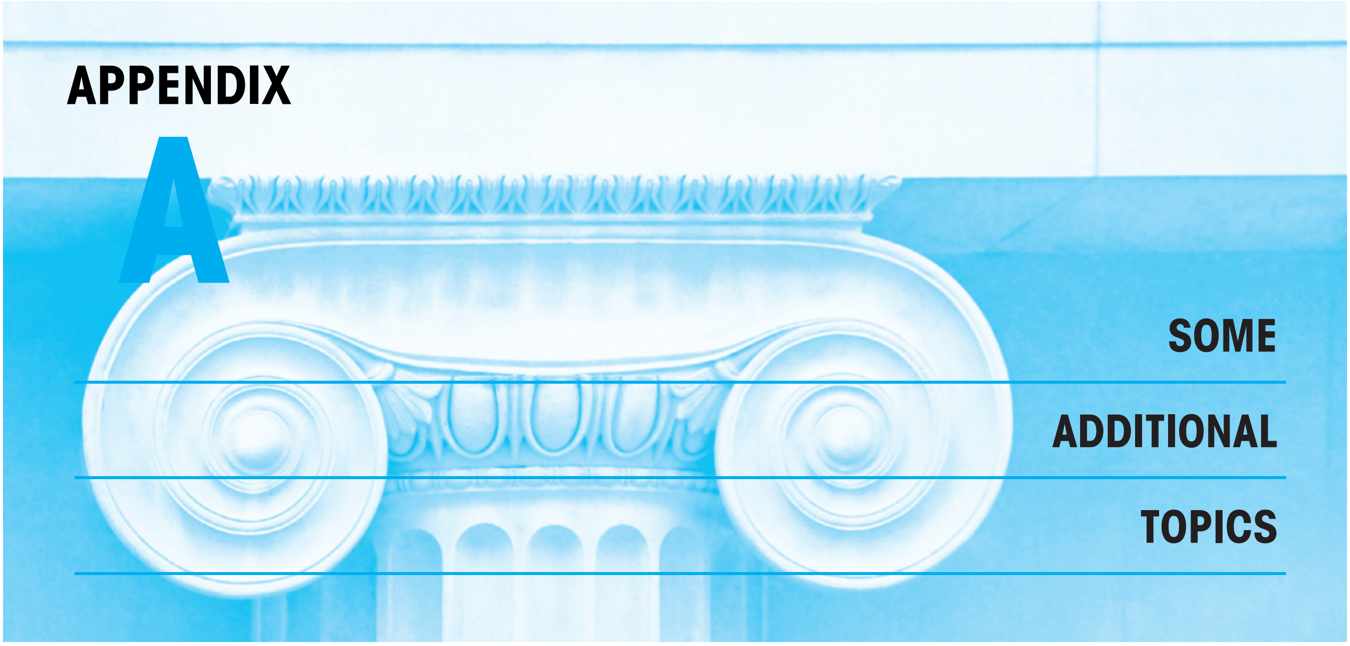
32. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0$; $\quad y(-1) = 2,\ y'(-1) = 1$.

33. An object is in simple harmonic motion. Find an equation for the motion given that the period T is $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ and at time $t = 0$, $x = 2$ and $x' = 0$. What is the amplitude? What is the frequency?

34. An object in simple harmonic motion passes through the central point $x = 0$ at time $t = 0$ and every 4 seconds thereafter. Find the equation of motion given that $x'(0) = 8$.

35. A 128 pound weight is attached to a spring that has a spring constant of 64 pounds per foot. The weight is started in motion by displacing it 6 inches above the central point, releasing it with no initial velocity, and by applying an external force $F(t) = 8\sin 4t$. Given that there is no resistance to the motion, find the equation of motion.

36. A 10 kilogram bob is attached to a spring that has a spring constant of 60 newtons per meter. The bob is started in motion from the central point with an initial velocity of 1 meter per second in the upward (negative) direction and with an applied external force $F(t) = 4\sin t$. Find the equation of motion of the bob given that the force due to air resistance is $-50x'(t)$.



APPENDIX A
SOME ADDITIONAL TOPICS

■ A.1 ROTATION OF AXES; ELIMINATING THE xy-TERM

Rotation of Axes

We begin with a rectangular coordinate system O-xy. By rotating this system about the origin counterclockwise through an angle of α radians, we obtain a new coordinate system O-XY. See Figure A.1.1.

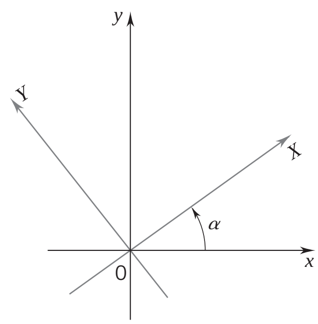


Figure A.1.1

A point P now has two pairs of rectangular coordinates:

$$(x, y) \text{ in the } O\text{-}xy \text{ system} \qquad \text{and} \qquad (X, Y) \text{ in the } O\text{-}XY \text{ system.}$$

Here we investigate the relation between (x, y) and (X, Y). With P as in Figure A.1.2,

$$x = r\cos(\alpha + \beta), \qquad y = r\sin(\alpha + \beta) \qquad \text{and} \qquad X = r\cos\beta, \quad Y = r\sin\beta.$$

(This follows from 10.2.5.) The addition formulas

$$\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta, \qquad \sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

give

$$x = r\cos(\alpha + \beta) = (\cos\alpha)r\cos\beta - (\sin\alpha)r\sin\beta,$$
$$y = r\sin(\alpha + \beta) = (\sin\alpha)r\cos\beta + (\cos\alpha)r\sin\beta,$$

and therefore

(A.1.1) $$\boxed{x = (\cos\alpha)X - (\sin\alpha)Y, \qquad y = (\sin\alpha)X + (\cos\alpha)Y.}$$

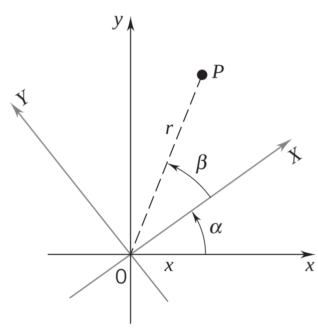


Figure A.1.2

These formulas give the algebraic consequences of a counterclockwise rotation of α radians.

Equations of Second Degree

As you know, the graph of an equation of the form

$$ax^2 + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0 \qquad \text{with } a, c \text{ not both } 0$$

is a conic section except in degenerate cases, a circle, an ellipse, a parabola, or a hyperbola.

The *general equation of second degree in x and y* is an equation of the form

(A.1.2) $$\boxed{ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0 \qquad \text{with } a, b, c \text{ not all } 0.}$$

The graph is still a conic section, but, in the presence of an xy-term, more difficult to visualize.

Eliminating the *xy*-Term

A rotation of the coordinate system enables us to eliminate the xy-term. As we'll show, if in an O-xy coordinate system a curve γ has an equation of the form

(1) $$ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0 \qquad \text{with } b \neq 0,$$

then there exists a coordinate system O-XY obtainable from the O-xy system by a counterclockwise rotation α of less than $\pi/2$ radians such that in the O-XY system γ has an equation of the form

(2) $$AX^2 + CY^2 + DX + EY + F = 0 \qquad \text{with } A, C \text{ not both } 0.$$

To see this, substitute

$$x = (\cos\alpha)X - (\sin\alpha)Y, \qquad y = (\sin\alpha)X + (\cos\alpha)Y$$

into equation (1). This will give you a second-degree equation in X and Y in which the coefficient of XY is

$$-2a\cos\alpha\sin\alpha + b(\cos^2\alpha - \sin^2\alpha) + 2c\cos\alpha\sin\alpha.$$

This can be simplified to read

$$(c - a)\sin 2\alpha + b\cos 2\alpha.$$

To eliminate the XY-term, we must have this coefficient equal to zero; that is, we must have

$$b\cos 2\alpha = (a - c)\sin 2\alpha.$$

Since we are assuming that $b \neq 0$, we can divide by b and obtain

$$\cos 2\alpha = \left(\frac{a - c}{b}\right)\sin 2\alpha.$$

We know that $\sin 2\alpha \neq 0$ because, if it were 0, then $\cos 2\alpha$ would be 0 and we know that can't be because sine and cosine are never simultaneously 0. Thus we can divide by $\sin 2\alpha$ and obtain

$$\cot 2\alpha = \frac{a - c}{b}.$$

We can find a rotation α that eliminates the xy-term by applying the arc cotangent function:

$$2\alpha = \operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{a - c}{b}\right) \qquad \text{which gives} \qquad \alpha = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{a - c}{b}\right).$$

In summary, we have shown that every equation of form (1) can be transformed into an equation of form (2) by rotating axes through the angle

(A.1.3)
$$\boxed{\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{a-c}{b}\right).}$$

Note that, as promised, $\alpha \in (0, \pi/2)$. We leave it to you to show that A and C in (2) are not both zero.

Example 1 In the case of $xy - 2 = 0$, $a = c = 0$, $b = 1$. Setting $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{arccot} 0 = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}\pi\right) = \frac{1}{4}\pi$, we have

$$x = (\cos\tfrac{1}{4}\pi)X - (\sin\tfrac{1}{4}\pi)Y = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}(X - Y),$$
$$y = (\sin\tfrac{1}{4}\pi)X + (\cos\tfrac{1}{4}\pi)Y = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}(X + Y).$$

Equation $xy - 2 = 0$ becomes

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(X^2 - Y^2) - 2 = 0,$$

which can be written

$$\frac{X^2}{2^2} - \frac{Y^2}{2^2} = 1.$$

This is the equation of a hyperbola in standard position in the O-XY system. The hyperbola is sketched in Figure A.1.3. ❑

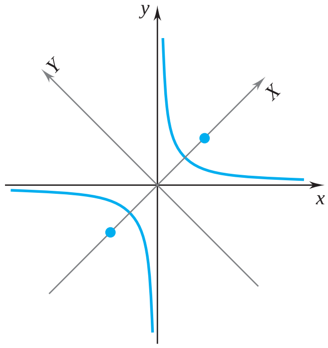


Figure A.1.3

Example 2 In the case of $11x^2 + 4\sqrt{3}xy + 7y^2 - 1 = 0$, we have $a = 11$, $b = 4\sqrt{3}$, $c = 7$. Thus we set

$$\alpha = \tfrac{1}{2}\operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{11-4}{4\sqrt{3}}\right) = \tfrac{1}{2}\operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right) = \tfrac{1}{6}\pi.$$

As you can verify, equations

$$x = (\cos\tfrac{1}{6}\pi)X - (\sin\tfrac{1}{6}\pi)Y = \tfrac{1}{2}(\sqrt{3}X - Y),$$
$$y = (\sin\tfrac{1}{6}\pi)X + (\cos\tfrac{1}{6}\pi)Y = \tfrac{1}{2}(X + \sqrt{3}Y)$$

transform the initial equation into $13X^2 + 5Y^2 - 1 = 0$. This we write as

$$\frac{X^2}{(1/\sqrt{13})^2} + \frac{Y^2}{(1/\sqrt{5})^2} = 1.$$

This is the equation of an ellipse in standard position in the O-XY system. The ellipse is sketched in Figure A.1.4. ❑

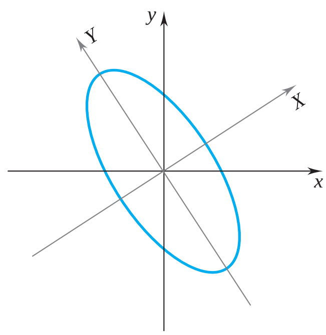


Figure A.1.4

■ A.2 DETERMINANTS

By a *matrix* we mean a rectangular arrangement of numbers enclosed in parentheses. For example,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 5 & 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 4 & 7 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

are all matrices. The numbers that appear in a matrix are called the *entries*.

Each matrix has a certain number of rows and a certain number of columns. A matrix with m rows and n columns is called an $m \times n$ *matrix*. Thus the first matrix above is a 2×2 matrix, the second a 2×3 matrix, the third a 3×3 matrix. The first and third matrices are called *square*; they have the same number of rows as columns. Here we will be working with square matrices as these are the only ones that have determinants.

We could give a definition of determinant that is applicable to all square matrices, but the definition is complicated and would serve little purpose at this point. Our interest here is in the 2×2 case and in the 3×3 case. We begin with the 2×2 case.

(A.2.1)

> The *determinant* of the matrix
>
> $$\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{pmatrix}$$
>
> is the number $a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1$.

We have a special notation for the determinant. We change the parentheses of the matrix to vertical bars:

$$\text{determinant of } \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1.$$

Thus, for example,

$$\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 8 \\ 4 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = (5 \cdot 2) - (8 \cdot 4) = 10 - 32 = -22,$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4} \end{vmatrix} = \left(4 \cdot \frac{1}{4}\right) - (0 \cdot 0) = 1.$$

We remark on three properties of 2×2 determinants:

1. If the rows or columns of a 2×2 determinant are interchanged, the determinant changes sign:

$$\begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ a_1 & a_2 \end{vmatrix} = -\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}, \qquad \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_1 \\ b_2 & b_1 \end{vmatrix} = -\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}.$$

PROOF Just note that

$$b_1 a_2 - b_2 a_1 = -(a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1) \qquad \text{and} \qquad a_2 b_1 - a_1 b_2 = -(a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1). \quad \square$$

2. A common factor can be removed from any row or column and placed as a factor in front of the determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda a_1 & \lambda a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = \lambda \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}, \qquad \begin{vmatrix} \lambda a_1 & a_2 \\ \lambda b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = \lambda \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}.$$

PROOF Just note that

$$(\lambda a_1)b_2 - (\lambda a_2)b_1 = \lambda(a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1)$$

and

$$(\lambda a_1)b_2 - a_2(\lambda b_1) = \lambda(a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1). \quad \square$$

3. If the rows or columns of a 2×2 determinant are the same, the determinant is 0.

PROOF

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ a_1 & a_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 a_2 - a_2 a_1 = 0, \qquad \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_1 \\ b_1 & b_1 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_1 - a_1 b_1 = 0. \quad \square$$

The determinant of a 3×3 matrix is harder to define. One definition is this:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 c_3 - a_1 b_3 c_2 + a_2 b_3 c_1 - a_2 b_1 c_3 + a_3 b_1 c_2 - a_3 b_2 c_1.$$

The problem with this definition is that it is hard to remember. What saves us is that the expansion on the right can be conveniently written in terms of 2×2 determinants; namely, the expression on the right can be written

$$a_1(b_2 c_3 - b_3 c_2) - a_2(b_1 c_3 - b_3 c_1) + a_3(b_1 c_2 - b_2 c_1),$$

which turns into

$$a_1 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}.$$

We then have

(A.2.2)
$$\boxed{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}.}$$

We will take this as our definition. It is called the *expansion of the determinant by elements of the first row.* Note that the coefficients are the entries a_1, a_2, a_3 of the first row, that they occur alternately with $+$ and $-$ signs, and that each is multiplied by a determinant. You can remember which determinant goes with which entry a_i as follows: in the original matrix, mentally cross out the row and column in which the entry a_i is found, and take the determinant of the remaining 2×2 matrix. For example, the determinant that goes with a_3 is

$$\begin{vmatrix} \cancel{a_1} & \cancel{a_2} & \cancel{a_3} \\ b_1 & b_2 & \cancel{b_3} \\ c_1 & c_2 & \cancel{c_3} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}.$$

When first starting to work with specific 3×3 determinants, it is a good idea to set up the formula with blank 2×2 determinants:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1\begin{vmatrix} & \\ & \end{vmatrix} - a_2\begin{vmatrix} & \\ & \end{vmatrix} + a_3\begin{vmatrix} & \\ & \end{vmatrix}$$

and then fill in the 2×2 determinants by using the "crossing out" rule explained above.

Example 1

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & 4 \\ 6 & 2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} &= 1\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} - 2\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 4 \\ 6 & 5 \end{vmatrix} + 1\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 6 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 1(15-8) - 2(0-24) + 1(0-18) \\ &= 7 + 48 - 18 = 37. \end{aligned}$$

❑

A straightforward (but somewhat laborious) calculation shows that 3×3 determinants have the three properties we proved earlier for 2×2 determinants.

1. If two rows or columns are interchanged, the determinant changes sign.
2. A common factor can be removed from any row or column and placed as a factor in front of the determinant.
3. If two rows or columns are the same, the determinant is 0.

EXERCISES A.2

Exercises 1–8. Evaluate the following determinants.

1. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{vmatrix}$

2. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$.

3. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ a & a \end{vmatrix}$.

4. $\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ b & d \end{vmatrix}$.

5. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$.

6. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$.

7. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$.

8. $\begin{vmatrix} a & 0 & 0 \\ b & c & 0 \\ d & e & f \end{vmatrix}$.

9. If A is a matrix, its *transpose* A^T is obtained by interchanging the rows and columns. Thus

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show that the determinant of a matrix equals the determinant of its transpose: (a) for the 2×2 case; (b) for the 3×3 case.

Exercises 10–14. Justify the assertions by invoking the relevant properties of determinants.

10. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$

11. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}.$

12. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix}.$

13. $\frac{1}{2}\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}.$

14. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ x & 2x & 3x \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$

15. (a) Verify that the equations

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 4y &= 6 \\ 2x - 3y &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

can be solved by the prescription

$$x = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 6 & 4 \\ 7 & -3 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & -3 \end{vmatrix}}, \qquad y = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 2 & 7 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & -3 \end{vmatrix}}.$$

(b) More generally, verify that the equations

$$a_1 x + a_2 y = d$$
$$b_1 x + b_2 y = e$$

can be solved by the prescription

$$x = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} d & a_2 \\ e & b_2 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}}, \qquad y = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & d \\ b_1 & e \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}}$$

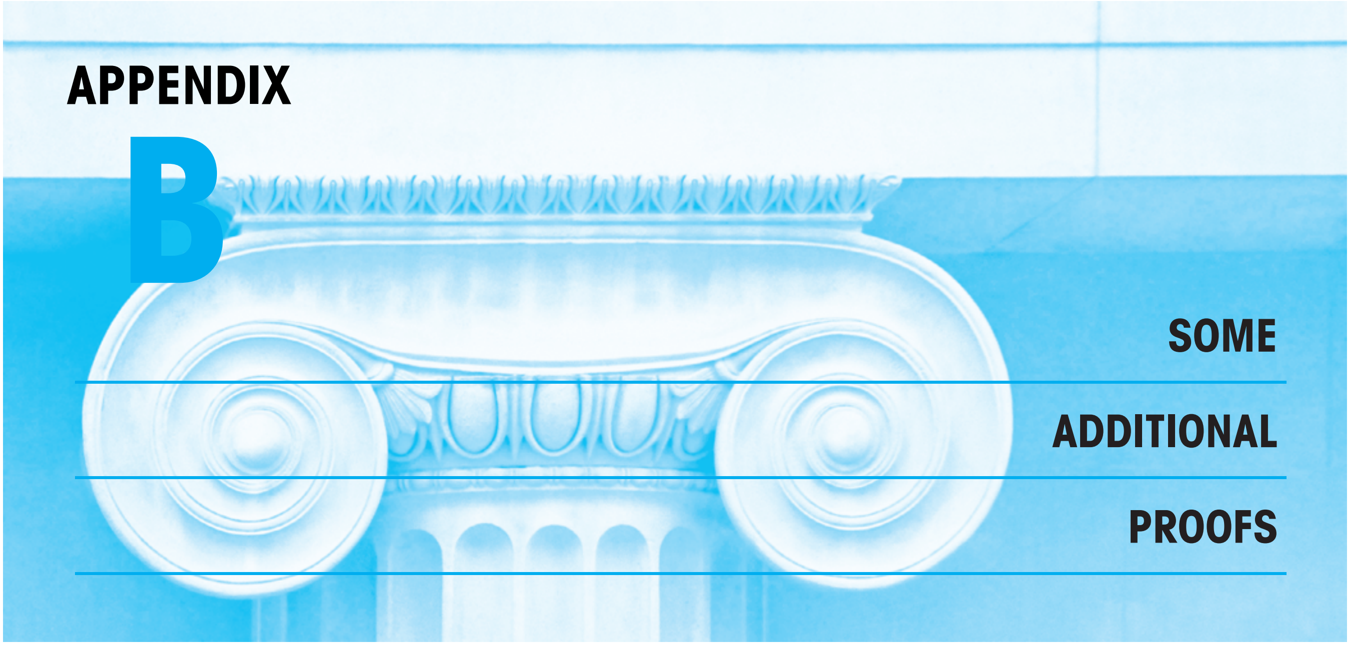
provided that the determinant in the denominator is different from 0.

(c) Devise an analogous rule for solving three linear equations in three unknowns.

16. Show that a 3×3 determinant can be "expanded by the elements of the bottom row" as follows:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = c_1 \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} - c_2 \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} + c_3 \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}.$$

HINT: You can check this directly by writing out the values of the determinants on the right, or you can interchange rows twice to bring the bottom row to the top and then expand by the elements of the top row.



APPENDIX B

SOME ADDITIONAL PROOFS

In this appendix we give some proofs that many would consider too advanced for the main body of the text. Some details are omitted. These are left to you.

The arguments presented in Sections B.1, B.2, and B.4 require some familiarity with the *least upper bound axiom*. This is discussed in Section 11.1. In addition, Section B.4 requires some understanding of *sequences*, for which we refer you to Sections 11.2 and 11.3.

B.1 THE INTERMEDIATE-VALUE THEOREM

LEMMA B.1.1

Let f be continuous on [a, b]. If $f(a) < 0 < f(b)$ or $f(b) < 0 < f(a)$, then there is a number c between a and b for which $f(c) = 0$.

PROOF Suppose that $f(a) < 0 < f(b)$. (The other case can be treated in a similar manner.) Since $f(a) < 0$, we know from the continuity of f that there exists a number ξ such that f is negative on $[a, \xi)$. Let

$$c = \text{lub}\,\{\xi : f \text{ is negative on } [a, \xi)\}.$$

Clearly, $c \leq b$. We cannot have $f(c) > 0$, for then f would be positive on some interval extending to the left of c, and we know that, to the left of c, f is negative. Incidentally, this argument excludes the possibility that $c = b$ and means that $c < b$. We cannot have $f(c) < 0$, for then there would be an interval $[a, t)$, with $t > c$, on which f is negative, and this would contradict the definition of c. It follows that $f(c) = 0$. ❑

THEOREM B.1.2 THE INTERMEDIATE-VALUE THEOREM

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$ and K is a number between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$, then there is at least one number c between a and b for which $f(c) = K$.

PROOF Suppose, for example, that

$$f(a) < K < f(b).$$

(The other possibility can be handled in a similar manner.) The function

$$g(x) = f(x) - K$$

is continuous on $[a, b]$. Since

$$g(a) = f(a) - K < 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad g(b) = f(b) - K > 0,$$

we know from the lemma that there is a number c between a and b for which $g(c) = 0$. Obviously, then, $f(c) = K$. ❏

■ B.2 BOUNDEDNESS; EXTREME-VALUE THEOREM

LEMMA B.2.1

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then f is bounded on $[a, b]$.

PROOF Consider

$$\{x : x \in [a, b] \text{ and } f \text{ is bounded on } [a, x]\}.$$

It is easy to see that this set is nonempty and bounded above by b. Thus we can set

$$c = \text{lub}\,\{x : f \text{ is bounded on } [a, x]\}.$$

Now we argue that $c = b$. To do so, we suppose that $c < b$. From the continuity of f at c, it is easy to see that f is bounded on $[c - \epsilon, c + \epsilon]$ for some $\epsilon > 0$. Being bounded on $[a, c - \epsilon]$ and on $[c - \epsilon, c + \epsilon]$, it is obviously bounded on $[a, c + \epsilon]$. This contradicts our choice of c. We can therefore conclude that $c = b$. This tells us that f is bounded on $[a, x]$ for all $x < b$. We are now almost through. From the continuity of f, we know that f is bounded on some interval of the form $[b - \epsilon, b]$. Since $b - \epsilon < b$, we know from what we have just proved that f is bounded on $[a, b - \epsilon]$. Being bounded on $[a, b - \epsilon]$ and bounded on $[b - \epsilon, b]$, it is bounded on $[a, b]$. ❏

THEOREM B.2.2 THE EXTREME-VALUE THEOREM

If f is continuous on a bounded closed interval $[a, b]$, then on that interval f takes on both a maximum value M and a minimum value m.

PROOF By the lemma, f is bounded on $[a, b]$. Set

$$M = \text{lub}\,\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}.$$

We must show that there exists c in $[a, b]$ such that $f(c) = M$. To do this, we set

$$g(x) = \frac{1}{M - f(x)}.$$

If f does not take on the value M, then g is continuous on $[a, b]$ and thus, by the lemma, bounded on $[a, b]$. A look at the definition of g makes it clear that g cannot be bounded on $[a, b]$. The assumption that f does not take on the value M has led to a contradiction. (That f takes a minimum value m can be proved in a similar manner.) ❏

B.3 INVERSES

THEOREM B.3.1 CONTINUITY OF THE INVERSE

Let f be a one-to-one function defined on an interval (a, b). If f is continuous, then its inverse f^{-1} is also continuous.

PROOF If f is continuous, then, being one-to-one, f either increases throughout (a, b) or it decreases throughout (a, b). The proof of this assertion we leave to you.

Suppose now that f increases throughout (a, b). Let's take c in the domain of f^{-1} and show that f^{-1} is continuous at c.

We first observe that $f^{-1}(c)$ lies in (a, b) and choose $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small so that $f^{-1}(c) - \epsilon$ and $f^{-1}(c) + \epsilon$ also lie in (a, b). We seek a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if } c - \delta < x < c + \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad f^{-1}(c) - \epsilon < f^{-1}(x) < f^{-1}(c) + \epsilon.$$

This condition can be met by choosing δ to satisfy

$$f(f^{-1}(c) - \epsilon) < c - \delta \qquad \text{and} \qquad c + \delta < f(f^{-1}(c) + \epsilon),$$

for then, if $c - \delta < x < c + \delta$,

$$f(f^{-1}(c) - \epsilon) < x < f(f^{-1}(c) + \epsilon),$$

and, since f^{-1} also increases,

$$f^{-1}(c) - \epsilon < f^{-1}(x) < f^{-1}(c) + \epsilon.$$

The case where f decreases throughout (a, b) can be handled in a similar manner. ❑

THEOREM B.3.2 DIFFERENTIABILITY OF THE INVERSE

Let f be a one-to-one function differentiable on an open interval I. Let a be a point of I and let $f(a) = b$. If $f'(a) \neq 0$, then f^{-1} is differentiable at b and

$$(f^{-1})'(b) = \frac{1}{f'(a)}.$$

PROOF (Here we use the characterization of derivative spelled out in Theorem 3.5.7.) We take $\epsilon > 0$ and show that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |t - b| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{f^{-1}(t) - f^{-1}(b)}{t - b} - \frac{1}{f'(a)} \right| < \epsilon.$$

Since f is differentiable at a, there exists a $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_1, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{1}{\dfrac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}} - \frac{1}{f'(a)} \right| < \epsilon,$$

and therefore

$$\left| \frac{x - a}{f(x) - f(a)} - \frac{1}{f'(a)} \right| < \epsilon.$$

By the previous theorem, f^{-1} is continuous at b. Hence there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0 < |t - b| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad 0 < |f^{-1}(t) - f^{-1}(b)| < \delta_1,$$

and therefore

$$\left| \frac{f^{-1}(t) - f^{-1}(b)}{t - b} - \frac{1}{f'(a)} \right| < \epsilon. \quad ❑$$

■ B.4 THE INTEGRABILITY OF CONTINUOUS FUNCTIONS

The aim here is to prove that, if f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then there is one and only one number I that satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq I \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } [a, b].$$

DEFINITION B.4.1

A function f is said to be *uniformly continuous* on $[a, b]$ if, for each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad x, y \in [a, b] \qquad \text{and} \qquad |x - y| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

For convenience, let's agree to say that *the interval* $[a, b]$ *has the property* P_ϵ if there exist sequences $x_1, x_2, x_3, \cdots$ and $y_1, y_2, y_3, \cdots$ with

$$x_n, y_n \in [a, b], \qquad |x_n - y_n| < 1/n, \qquad |f(x_n) - f(y_n)| > \epsilon$$

for all indices n.

LEMMA B.4.2

If f is not uniformly continuous on $[a, b]$, then $[a, b]$ has the property P_ϵ for some $\epsilon > 0$.

PROOF If f is not uniformly continuous on $[a, b]$, then there is at least one $\epsilon > 0$ for which there is no $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad x, y \in [a, b] \qquad \text{and} \qquad |x - y| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

The interval $[a, b]$ has the property P_ϵ for that choice of ϵ. The details of the argument are left to you. ❑

LEMMA B.4.3

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$. If $[a, b]$ has the property P_ϵ, then at least one of the subintervals $[a, \frac{1}{2}(a + b)]$, $[\frac{1}{2}(a + b), b]$ has the property P_ϵ.

PROOF Let's suppose that the lemma is false. For convenience, we let $c = \frac{1}{2}(a+b)$, so that the halves become $[a, c]$ and $[c, b]$. Since $[a, c]$ fails to have the property P_ϵ, there exists an integer p such that

$$\text{if} \qquad x, y \in [a, c] \qquad \text{and} \qquad |x-y| < 1/p, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

Since $[c, b]$ fails to have the property P_ϵ, there exists an integer q such that

$$\text{if} \qquad x, y \in [c, b] \qquad \text{and} \qquad |x-y| < 1/q, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

Since f is continuous at c, there exists an integer r such that, if $|x-c| < 1/r$, then $|f(x) - f(c)| < \frac{1}{2}\epsilon$. Set $s = \max[p, q, r]$ and suppose that

$$x, y \in [a, b], \qquad |x-y| < 1/s.$$

If x, y are both in $[a, c]$ or both in $[c, b]$, then

$$|f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

The only other possibility is that $x \in [a, c]$ and $y \in [c, b]$. In this case we have

$$|x-c| < 1/r, \qquad |y-c| < 1/r,$$

and thus

$$|f(x) - f(c)| < \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon, \qquad |f(y) - f(c)| < \tfrac{1}{2}\epsilon.$$

By the triangle inequality, we again have

$$|f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

In summary, we have obtained the existence of an integer s with the property that

$$x, y \in [a, b], \qquad |x-y| < 1/s \qquad \text{implies} \qquad |f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon.$$

Hence $[a, b]$ does not have property P_ϵ. This is a contradiction and proves the lemma. ❑

THEOREM B.4.4

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then f is uniformly continuous on $[a, b]$.

PROOF We suppose that f is not uniformly continuous on $[a, b]$ and base our argument on a mathematical version of the classical maxim "Divide and conquer."

By the first lemma of this section, we know that $[a, b]$ has property P_ϵ for some $\epsilon > 0$. We bisect $[a, b]$ and note by the second lemma that one of the halves, say $[a_1, b_1]$, has property P_ϵ. We then bisect $[a_1, b_1]$ and note that one of the halves, say $[a_2, b_2]$, has property P_ϵ. Continuing in this manner, we obtain a sequence of intervals $[a_n, b_n]$, each with property P_ϵ. Then for each n we can choose $x_n, y_n \in [a_n, b_n]$ such that

$$|x_n - y_n| < 1/n \qquad \text{and} \qquad |f(x_n) - f(y_n)| \geq \epsilon.$$

Since

$$a \leq a_n \leq a_{n+1} < b_{n+1} \leq b_n \leq b,$$

we see that sequences $a_1, a_2, \cdots$ and $b_1, b_2, \cdots$ are both bounded and monotonic. Thus they are convergent. Since $b_n - a_n \to 0$, we see that both sequences converge to the

same limit, say L. From the inequality

$$a_n \leq x_n \leq y_n \leq b_n,$$

we conclude that

$$x_n \to L \qquad \text{and} \qquad y_n \to L.$$

This tells us that

$$|f(x_n) - f(y_n)| \to |f(L) - f(L)| = 0.$$

and contradicts the statement that $|f(x_n) - f(y_n)| \geq \epsilon$ for all n. ❑

LEMMA B.4.5

If P and Q are partitions of $[a, b]$, then $L_f(P) \leq U_f(Q)$.

PROOF $P \cup Q$ is a partition of $[a, b]$ that contains both P and Q. It is obvious then that

$$L_f(P) \leq L_f(P \cup Q) \leq U_f(P \cup Q) \leq U_f(Q). \quad ❑$$

From this lemma it follows that the set of all lower sums is bounded above and has a least upper bound L. The number L satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq L \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P$$

and is clearly the least of such numbers. Similarly, we find that the set of all upper sums is bounded below and has a greatest lower bound U. The number U satisfies the inequality

$$L_f(P) \leq U \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all partitions } P$$

and is clearly the largest of such numbers.

We are now ready to prove the basic theorem.

THEOREM B.4.6 THE INTEGRABILITY THEOREM

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then there exists one and only one number I that satisfies the inequality.

$$L_f(P) \leq I \leq U_f(P), \qquad \text{for all partitions } P \text{ of } [a, b].$$

PROOF We know that

$$L_f(P) \leq L \leq U \leq U_f(P) \qquad \text{for all } P,$$

so that existence is no problem. We will have uniqueness if we can prove that

$$L = U.$$

To do this, we take $\epsilon > 0$ and note that f, being continuous on $[a, b]$, is uniformly continuous on $[a, b]$. Thus there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that, if

$$x, y \in [a, b] \qquad \text{and} \qquad |x - y| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - f(y)| < \frac{\epsilon}{b - a}.$$

We now choose a partition $P = \{x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ for which max $\Delta x_i < \delta$. For this partition P, we have

$$\begin{aligned} U_f(P) - L_f(P) &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i \Delta x_i - \sum_{i=1}^{n} m_i \Delta x_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} (M_i - m_i)\Delta x_i \\ &< \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\epsilon}{b-a}\Delta x_i = \frac{\epsilon}{b-a}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\Delta x_i = \frac{\epsilon}{b-a}(b-a) = \epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$U_f(P) - L_f(P) < \epsilon \qquad \text{and} \qquad 0 \le U - L \le U_f(P) - L_f(P),$$

you can see that

$$0 \le U - L < \epsilon.$$

Since ϵ was chosen arbitrarily, we must have $U - L = 0$ and $L = U$. ❑

■ B.5 THE INTEGRAL AS THE LIMIT OF RIEMANN SUMS

For the notation we refer to Section 5.2.

THEOREM B.5.1

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx = \lim_{\|P\| \to 0} S^*(P).$$

PROOF Let $\epsilon > 0$. We must show that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad \|P\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| S^*(P) - \int_a^b f(x)dx \right| < \epsilon.$$

From the proof of Theorem B.4.6 we know that there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \qquad \|P\| < \delta, \qquad \text{then} \qquad U_f(P) - L_f(P) < \epsilon.$$

For such P we have

$$U_f(P) - \epsilon < L_f(P) \le S^*(P) \le U_f(P) < L_f(P) + \epsilon.$$

This gives

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx - \epsilon < S^*(P) < \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \epsilon,$$

and therefore

$$\left| S^*(P) - \int_a^b f(x)dx \right| < \epsilon. \quad ❑$$

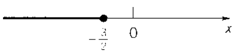
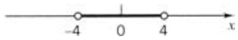
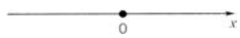
ANSWERS TO ODD-NUMBERED EXERCISES

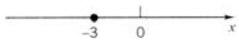
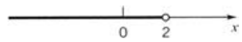
CHAPTER 1

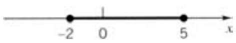
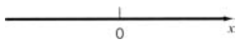
SECTION 1.2

1. rational **3.** rational **5.** rational **7.** rational **9.** rational **11.** $=$

13. $>$ **15.** $<$ **17.** 6 **19.** 10 **21.** 13 **23.** $5-\sqrt{5}$

25. 
27. 
29. 

31. 
33. 
35. 

37. 
39. 

41. bounded; lower bound 0, upper bound 4 **43.** not bounded **45.** not bounded **47.** bounded above; $\sqrt{2}$ is an upper bound

49. $x_0=2$, $x_1 \cong 2.75$, $x_2 \cong 2.58264$, $x_3 \cong 2.57133$, $x_4 \cong 2.57128$, $x_5 \cong 2.57128$; bounded; lower bound 2, upper bound 3 (the smallest upper bound $\cong 2.57128\ldots$); $x_n \cong 2.5712815907$ (10 decimal places).

51. $(x-5)^2$ **53.** $8(x^2+2)(x^4-2x^2+4)$ **55.** $(2x+3)^2$

57. $2, -1$ **59.** 3 **61.** none **63.** no real zeros **65.** 120 **67.** 56 **69.** 1

71. If r and $r+s$ are rational, then $s=(r+s)-r$ is rational.

73. The product could be either rational or irrational; $0\cdot\sqrt{2}=0$ is rational, $1\cdot\sqrt{2}=\sqrt{2}$ is irrational. **79.** $b-a=0$; division by 0

SECTION 1.3

1. $(-\infty, 1)$ **3.** $(-\infty, -3)$ **5.** $(-\infty, -\frac{1}{5})$ **7.** $(-1, 1)$ **9.** $(-\infty, -2]\cup[3, \infty)$ **11.** $[-1, \frac{1}{2}]$

13. $(0, 1)\cup(2, \infty)$ **15.** $[0, \infty)$ **17.** $(0, 2)$ **19.** $(-\infty, -6)\cup(2, \infty)$ **21.** $(-2, 2)$ **23.** $(-\infty, -3)\cup(3, \infty)$

25. $(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2})$ **27.** $(-1, 0)\cup(0, 1)$ **29.** $(\frac{3}{2}, 2)\cup(2, \frac{5}{2})$ **31.** $(-5, 3)\cup(3, 11)$ **33.** $(-\frac{5}{8}, -\frac{3}{8})$

35. $(-\infty, -4)\cup(-1, \infty)$ **37.** $|x|<3$ **39.** $|x-2|<5$ **41.** $|x+2|<5$

43. $A \geq 2$ **45.** $A \leq \frac{4}{3}$ **47.** (a) $\dfrac{1}{x} < \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}} < 1 < \sqrt{x} < x$ (b) $x < \sqrt{x} < 1 < \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}} < \dfrac{1}{x}$

SECTION 1.4

1. 10 **3.** $4\sqrt{5}$ **5.** $(4, 6)$ **7.** $(\frac{9}{2}, -3)$ **9.** $-\frac{2}{3}$ **11.** -1 **13.** $-y_0/x_0$

15. slope 2, y-intercept -4 **17.** slope $\frac{1}{3}$, y-intercept 2 **19.** slope $\frac{7}{3}$, y-intercept $\frac{4}{3}$ **21.** $y=5x+2$ **23.** $y=-5x+2$ **25.** $y=3$

27. $x=-3$ **29.** $y=7$ **31.** $3y-2x-17=0$ **33.** $2y+3x-20=0$ **35.** $\left(\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\right), \left(-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\right)$ **37.** $(3, 4), (\frac{117}{25}, \frac{44}{25})$

39. $(1, 1)$ **41.** $(-\frac{2}{23}, \frac{38}{23})$ **43.** $\frac{17}{2}$ **45.** $-\frac{5}{12}$ **47.** $x-2y-3=0$ **49.** $(2.36, -0.21)$ **51.** $(0.61, 2.94), (2.64, 1.42)$

53. $3x+13y-40=0$ **55.** isosceles right triangle **61.** $(1, \frac{10}{3})$ **65.** $F=\frac{9}{5}C+32$; $-40°$

SECTION 1.5

1. $f(0)=2,\ f(1)=1,\ f(-2)=16,\ f\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)=2$ **3.** $f(0)=0,\ f(1)=\sqrt{3},\ f(-2)=0,\ f\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)=\dfrac{\sqrt{21}}{2}$

5. $f(0)=0,\ f(1)=\frac{1}{2},\ f(-2)=-1,\ f\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)=\frac{12}{23}$ **7.** $f(-x)=x^2+2x,\ f\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)=\dfrac{1-2x}{x^2},\ f(a+b)=a^2+2ab+b^2-2a-2b$

9. $f(-x)=\sqrt{1+x^2},\ f\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)=\dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+1}}{|x|},\ f(a+b)=\sqrt{a^2+2ab+b^2+1}$ **11.** $2a^2+4ah+2h^2-3a-3h;\ 4a-3+2h$

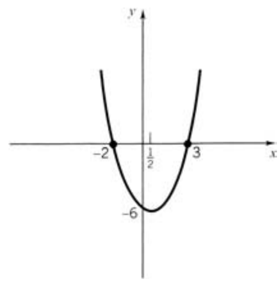
13. 1, 3 **15.** -2 **17.** $3, -3$ **19.** $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,\infty)$; $\text{range}(f)=(0,\infty)$ **21.** $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,\infty)$; $\text{range}(f)=(-\infty,\infty)$

23. $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,0)\cup(0,\infty)$; $\text{range}(f)=(0,\infty)$ **25.** $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,1]$; $\text{range}(f)=[0,\infty)$

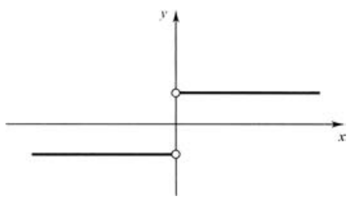
27. $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,7]$; $\text{range}(f)=[-1,\infty)$ **29.** $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,2)$; $\text{range}(f)=(0,\infty)$

31. horizontal line one unit above x-axis **33.** line through the origin with slope 2 **35.** line through (0, 2) with slope $\frac{1}{2}$

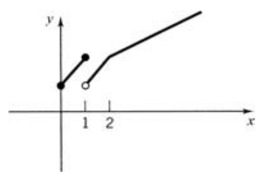
37. upper semicircle of radius 2 centered at the origin **39.**



41. $\text{dom}(f)=(-\infty,0)\cup(0,\infty)$; $\text{range}(f)=[-1,1]$

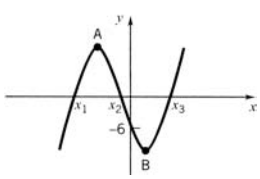


43. $\text{dom}(f)=[0,\infty)$; $\text{range}(f)=[1,\infty)$



45. yes, $\text{dom}(f)=[-2,2]$; $\text{range}(f)=[-2,2]$ **47.** no **49.** odd **51.** neither **53.** even **55.** odd

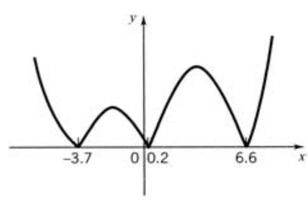
57. (a)



(b) $x_1=-6.566,\ x_2=-0.493,\ x_3=5.559$

(c) $A(-4, 28.667),\ B(3, -28.500)$

59.



$-5\le x\le 8,\ 0\le y\le 100$

61. range: $[-9,\infty)$ **63.** $A=\dfrac{C^2}{4\pi}$, where C is the circumference; $\text{dom}(A)=[0,\infty)$

65. $V=s^{3/2}$, where s is the area of a face; $\text{dom}\,V=[0,\infty)$ **67.** $S=3d^2$, where d is the diagonal of a face; $\text{dom}(S)=[0,\infty)$

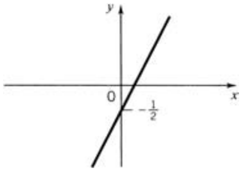
69. $A=\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{4}x^2$, where x is the length of a side; $\text{dom}(A)=[0,\infty)$ **71.** $A=\dfrac{15x}{2}-\dfrac{x^2}{2}-\dfrac{\pi x^4}{8},\ 0\le x\le\dfrac{30}{\pi+2}$

73. $A=bx-\dfrac{b}{a}x^2,\ 0\le x\le a$ **75.** $A=\dfrac{P^2}{16}+\dfrac{(28-P)^2}{4x},\ 0\le P\le 28$ **77.** $V=\pi r^2(108-2\pi r)$

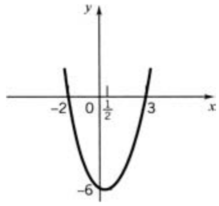
SECTION 1.6

1. polynomial, degree 0 **3.** rational function **5.** rational function **7.** neither **9.** neither

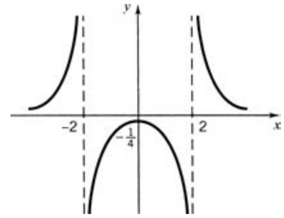
11. dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$



13. dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$



15. dom $(f) = (-\infty, -2) \cup (-2, 2) \cup (2, \infty)$



17. $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ **19.** $-\frac{5\pi}{3}$ **21.** $\frac{\pi}{12}$ **23.** $-270°$ **25.** $300°$ **27.** $114.59°$ **31.** $\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$ **33.** $\frac{\pi}{2}$ **35.** $\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$

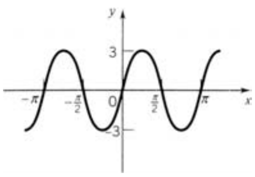
37. $\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$ **39.** 0.7771 **41.** 0.7101 **43.** 3.1524 **45.** 0.5505, $\pi - 0.5505$

47. 1.4231, $\pi + 1.4231$ **49.** 1.7997, $2\pi - 1.7997$ **51.** $x \cong 1.31, 1.83, 3.40, 3.93, 5.50, 6.02$

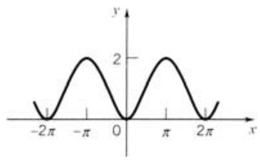
53. dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$; range $(f) = [0, 1]$ **55.** dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$; range $(f) = [-2, 2]$

57. dom $(f) = \left(k\pi - \frac{\pi}{2}, k\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$, $k = 0 \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$; range $(f) = [1, \infty)$ **59.** 2 **61.** 6π

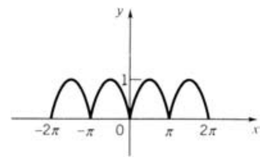
63.



65.

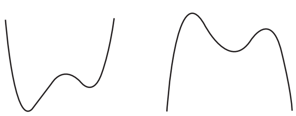


67.



69. odd **71.** even **73.** odd **77.** $\left(\frac{23}{37}, \frac{116}{37}\right)$; approx 73° **79.** $\left(\frac{-17}{73}, \frac{-2}{73}\right)$; approx 82°

91.



93. (c) *A* changes the amplitude; *B* stretches or compresses the graph horizontally.

SECTION 1.7

1. $\frac{15}{2}$ **3.** $\frac{105}{2}$ **5.** $\frac{-27}{4}$ **7.** 3

9. $(f + g)(x) = x - 1$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$

$(f - g)(x) = 3x - 5$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$

$(f \cdot g)(x) = -2x^2 + 7x - 6$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$

$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{2x - 3}{2 - x}$; domain: all real numbers except $x = 2$

11. $(f + g)(x) = x + \sqrt{x - 1} - \sqrt{x + 1}$; domain $[1, \infty)$

$(f - g)(x) = \sqrt{x - 1} + \sqrt{x + 1} - x$; domain $[1, \infty)$

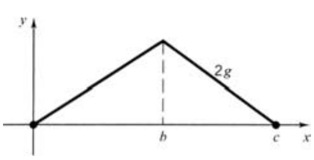
$(f \cdot g)(x) = \sqrt{x - 1}(x - \sqrt{x + 1}) = x\sqrt{x - 1} - \sqrt{x^2 - 1}$;

domain $(1, \infty]$

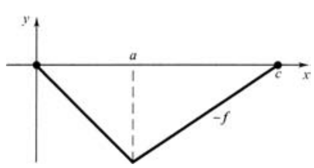
$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{\sqrt{x-1}}{x - \sqrt{x+1}}$; domain $\left[1, \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \cup \left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}, \infty\right)$

13. (a) $(6f + 3g)(x) = 6x + 3\sqrt{x}$, $x > 0$ (b) $(f - g)(x) = x + \frac{3}{\sqrt{x}} - \sqrt{x}$, $x > 0$ (c) $(f/g)(x) = \frac{x\sqrt{x} + 1}{x - 2}$, $x > 0$, $x \neq 2$

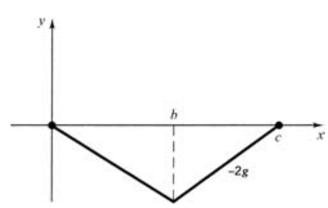
15.



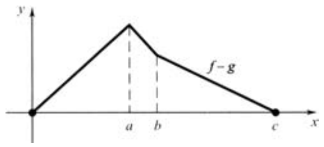
17.



19.



21.



23. $(f \circ g)(x) = 2x^2 + 5$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$ **25.** $(f \circ g)(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 5}$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$

27. $(f \circ g)(x) = \dfrac{x}{x-2}$; domain: all real numbers except $x = 0$, $x = 2$ **29.** $(f \circ g)(x) = |\sin 2x|$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$

31. $(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = 4(x^2 - 1)$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$ **33.** $(f \circ g \circ h)(x) = 2x^2 + 1$; domain $(-\infty, \infty)$ **35.** $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$ **37.** $f(x) = 2\sin x$

39. $g(x) = \left(1 - \dfrac{1}{x^4}\right)^{2/3}$ **41.** $g(x) = 2x^3 - 1$ **43.** $(f \circ g)(x) = |x|$; $(g \circ f)(x) = x$ **45.** $(f \circ g)(x) = \cos^2 x$; $(g \circ f)(x) = \sin(1 - x^2)$

47. $g(x) = c$ **49.** $g(x) = c$

51. (a) dom $g = [3, a + 3]$; range $g = [0, b]$
(b) dom $g = [-4, a - 4]$; range $g = [0, 3b]$
(c) dom $g = [0, \frac{1}{2}a]$; range $g = [0, b]$
(d) dom $g = [0, 2a]$; range $g = [0, b]$

53. fg is an even function since $(fg)(-x) = f(-x)g(-x) = f(x)g(x) = (fg)(x)$

55. (a) $f(x) = \begin{cases} -x, & -1 \le y < 0 \\ 1, & x < -1 \end{cases}$ (b) $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & -1 \le x < 0 \\ -1, & x < -1 \end{cases}$ **57.** $g(-x) = f(-x) + f(x) = f(x) + f(-x) = g(x)$

59. $f(x) = \dfrac{f(x) + f(-x)}{2} + \dfrac{f(x) - f(-x)}{2}$ **61.** (a) $(f \circ g)(x) = \dfrac{5x^2 + 16x - 16}{(2 - x)^2}$ (b) $(g \circ k)(x) = x$ (c) $(f \circ k \circ g)(x) = x^2 - 4$

63. (a) For fixed a, varying b varies the y-coordinate of the vertex of the parabola.
(b) For fixed b, varying a varies the x-coordinate of the vertex of the parabola.
(c) The graph of $-F$ is the reflection of the graph of F in the x-axis.

65. (a) For $c > 0$, the graph of cf is the graph of f scaled vertically by the factor c.
For $c < 0$, the graph of cf is the graph of f scaled vertically by the factor $|c|$ and then reflected in the x-axis.
(b) For $c > 1$, the graph of g is the graph of f compressed horizontally;
For $0 < c < 1$, the graph of g is the graph of f stretched horizontally;
For $-1 < c < 0$, the graph of g is the graph of f stretched horizontally and reflected in the y-axis;
For $c < -1$, the graph of g is the graph of f compressed horizontally and reflected in the y-axis

SECTION 1.8

11. all positive integers n **13.** $\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) = \frac{1}{n}$ **19.** $n = 41$

Chapter 1 Review Exercises

1. rational **3.** irrational **5.** bounded below; 1 is a lower bound **7.** bounded; 1 is an upper bound, -5 is a lower bound

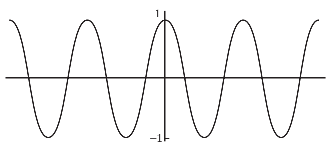
9. $-1, \frac{1}{2}$ **11.** 5 **13.** $(-\infty, 2/5)$ **15.** $(-\infty, -2] \cup [3, \infty)$ **17.** $(-2, -1) \cup (2, \infty)$ **19.** $(1, 3)$

21. $(-5, -4) \cup (-4, -3)$ **23.** (a) $5\sqrt{2}$ (b) $\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ **25.** $x = 2$ **27.** $y = -\frac{3}{2}x$ **29.** $(-1, 3/2)$ **31.** $(1, 2), (3, 18)$

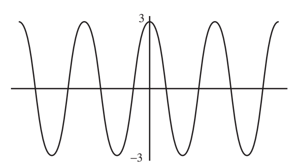
33. dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$; range $(f) = (-\infty, 4]$ **35.** dom $(f) = [4, \infty)$; range $(f) = [0, \infty)$

37. dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$; range $(f) = [1, \infty)$ **39.** dom $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$; range $(f) = [0, \infty)$ **41.** $\frac{7}{6}\pi, \frac{11}{6}\pi$ **43.** $\frac{3}{2}\pi$

45.



47.



49. $(f+g)(x)=x^2+3x+1$; domain $(-\infty,\infty)$
$(f-g)(x)=3+3x-x^2$; domain $(-\infty,\infty)$
$(fg)(x)=3x^3+2x^2-3x-2$; domain $(-\infty,\infty)$
$(f/g)(x)=\dfrac{3x+2}{x^2-1}$; domain $x\neq -1, 1$

51. $(f+g)(x)=\cos^2 x+\sin 2x$; domain $[0, 2\pi]$
$(f-g)(x)=\cos^2 x-\sin 2x$; domain $[0, 2\pi]$
$(fg)(x)=\sin 2x\cos^2 x$; domain $(-\infty,\infty)$
$(f/g)(x)=\dfrac{\cos^2 x}{\sin 2x}$; domain $x\in(0, 2\pi)$, $x\neq \pi/2, \pi, 3\pi/2$

53. $(f\circ g)(x)=\sqrt{x^2-4}$; domain $(-\infty,-2]\cup[2,\infty)$
$(g\circ f)(x)=x-4$; domain $[-1,\infty)$

55. (a) $y=kx$ (c) if $\alpha>0$, (a,b) and $(\alpha a,\alpha b)$ are on the same side of the origin; if $\alpha<0$, (a,b) and $(\alpha a,\alpha b)$ are on opposite sides of the origin.

CHAPTER 2

SECTION 2.1

1. (a) 2 (b) -1 (c) does not exist (d) -3 **3.** (a) does not exist (b) -3 (c) does not exist (d) -3

5. (a) does not exist (b) does not exist (c) does not exist (d) 1 **7.** (a) 2 (b) 2 (c) 2 (d) -1 **9.** (a) 0 (b) 0 (c) 0 (d) 0

11. $c=0, 6$ **13.** -1 **15.** 12 **17.** 1 **19.** $\frac{3}{2}$ **21.** does not exist **23.** 2 **25.** does not exist **27.** 1

29. does not exist **31.** 2 **33.** 2 **35.** 0 **37.** 1 **39.** 16 **41.** does not exist **43.** 4 **45.** does not exist

47. $1/\sqrt{2}$ **49.** 4 **51.** 2 **53.** $\frac{3}{2}$ **55.** (a) (i) 5 (ii) does not exist **57.** (a) (i) $-5/4$ (ii) 0 **59.** $c=-1$ **61.** $c=-2$

SECTION 2.2

1. $\frac{1}{2}$ **3.** does not exist **5.** 4 **7.** does not exist **9.** -1 **11.** does not exist **13.** 0 **15.** 2 **17.** 1 **19.** 1

21. δ_1 **23.** 0.05 **25.** 0.02 **27.** $\delta=1.75$ **29.** for $\epsilon=0.5$, take $\delta=0.24$; for $\epsilon=0.25$, take $\delta=0.1$

31. for $\epsilon=0.5$, take $\delta=0.75$; for $\epsilon=0.25$, take $\delta=0.43$ **33.** for $\epsilon=0.25$, take $\delta=0.23$; for $\epsilon=0.1$, take $\delta=0.14$

35. Take $\delta=\frac{1}{2}\epsilon$. If $0<|x-4|<\frac{1}{2}\epsilon$, then $|(2x-5)-3|=2|x-4|<\epsilon$.

37. Take $\delta=\frac{1}{6}\epsilon$. If $0<|x-3|<\frac{1}{6}\epsilon$, then $|(6x-7)-11|=6|x-3|<\epsilon$.

39. Take $\delta=\frac{1}{3}\epsilon$. If $0<|x-2|<\frac{1}{3}\epsilon$, then $||1-3x|-5|\le 3|x-2|<\epsilon$. **41.** Statements (b), (e), (g), and (i) are necessarily true.

43. (i) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{1}{x-1}=\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{(3+h)-1}=\frac{1}{2}$ (iii) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3}\left(\frac{1}{x-1}-\frac{1}{2}\right)=0$ (iv) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3}\left|\frac{1}{x-1}-\frac{1}{2}\right|=0$

45. (i) and (iv) of (2.2.6) with $L=0$

61. (b) No. Consider $f(x)=1-x^2$ and $g(x)=1+x^2$ on $(-1,1)$ and let $c=0$

SECTION 2.3

1. (a) 3 (b) 4 (c) -2 (d) 0 (e) does not exist (f) $\frac{1}{3}$

3. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 4}\left[\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{x-4}\right)\right]=\lim_{x\to 4}\left[\left(\frac{4-x}{4x}\right)\left(\frac{1}{x-4}\right)\right]=\lim_{x\to 4}\frac{-1}{4x}=-\frac{1}{16}$; Theorem 2.3.2 does not apply since $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 4}\frac{1}{x-4}$ does not exist.

5. 3 **7.** -3 **9.** 5 **11.** does not exist **13.** -1 **15.** does not exist **17.** 1 **19.** 4 **21.** $\frac{1}{4}$ **23.** $-\frac{2}{3}$

25. does not exist **27.** -1 **29.** 4 **31.** a/b **33.** $5/4$ **35.** does not exist **37.** 2

39. (a) 0 (b) $-\frac{1}{16}$ (c) 0 (d) does not exist **41.** (a) 4 (b) -2 (c) 2 (d) does not exist **43.** $f(x)=1/x$, $g(x)=-1/x$, $c=0$

45. True. **47.** True. **49.** False. **51.** False. **57.** 5 **59.** $\frac{1}{4}$ **61.** (a) 1 (b) $2x$ (c) $3x^2$ (d) $4x^3$ (e) nx^{n-1}

SECTION 2.4

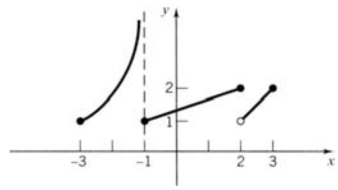
1. (a) $x=-3$, $x=0$, $x=2$, $x=6$ (b) At -3, neither; at 0, continuous from the right; at 2, neither; at 6, neither
(c) removable discontinuity at $x=2$; jump discontinuity at $x=0$

3. continuous **5.** continuous **7.** continuous **9.** removable discontinuity **11.** jump discontinuity

13. continuous **15.** infinite discontinuity **17.** no discontinuities **19.** no discontinuities

21. infinite discontinuity at $x=3$ **23.** no discontinuities **25.** jump discontinuities at 0 and 2

27. removable discontinuity at -2; jump discontinuity at 3 **29.**



31. $f(1)=2$ **33.** impossible **35.** 4 **37.** $A-B=3$ with $B\neq 3$ **39.** $c=-3$ **41.** $f(5)=\frac{1}{6}$ **43.** $f(5)=\frac{1}{3}$

45. nowhere **47.** $x=0$, $x=2$, and all nonintegral values of x

57. $k=5/2$ **59.** $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x)=-1,\ \lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x)=1$; f is discontinuous at 0 for all k.

SECTION 2.5

1. 3 **3.** $\frac{3}{5}$ **5.** 2 **7.** 0 **9.** does not exist **11.** $\frac{9}{5}$ **13.** $\frac{2}{3}$ **15.** 1 **17.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **19.** -4 **21.** 1

23. $\frac{3}{5}$ **25.** 0 **27.** $\frac{2}{\pi}\sqrt{2}$ **29.** -1 **31.** 0 **35.** 0 **37.** 1 **39.** $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; **41.** $-\sqrt{3}$; **51.** 10 **53.** 1/3

SECTION 2.6

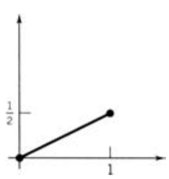
1. $f(1)=-1<0,\ f(2)=6>0$ **3.** $f(0)=2>0,\ f(\pi/2)=1-\pi^2/4<0$ **5.** $f\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)=\frac{1}{16}>0,\ f(1)=-\frac{1}{2}<0$

7. Let $f(x)=x^3-\sqrt{x+2}$; $f(1)=1-\sqrt{3}<0,\ f(2)=6>0$

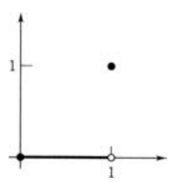
9. Let $F(x)=x^5-2x^2+5x-1$; $F(0)=-1<0$, $F(1)=3>0$. Therefore there is a number $c\in(0,1)$ such that $F(c)=0$ which implies $f(c)=1$.

11. $f(-3)=-13<0,\ f(-2)=2>0$; $f(0)=2>0,\ f(1)=-1<0,\ f(2)=2>0$; f has a root in $(-3,-2)$, $(0,1)$, and $(1,2)$

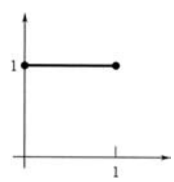
13.



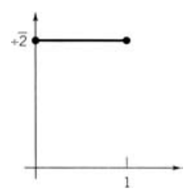
15.



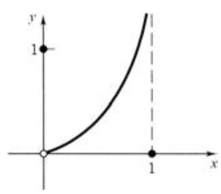
17.



19.



21. impossible by the intermediate-value theorem **23.**



37. f has a zero on $(-3,-2)$, $(0,1)$, $(1,2)$; the zeros of f are $r_1=-2.4909$, $r_2=0.6566$, $r_3=1.8343$

39. f has a zero on $(-2,-1)$, $(0,1)$, $(1,2)$; the zeros of f are $r_1=-1.3482$, $r_2=0.2620$, $r_3=1.0816$

41. f is not continuous at $x=1$. Therefore f does not satisfy the hypothesis of the intermediate-value theorem.

43. f satisfies the hypothesis of the intermediate-value theorem.

$$\frac{f(\pi/2)+f(2\pi)}{2}=\frac{1}{2}=f(c)\text{ for }c\cong 2.38,\,4.16,\,5.25.$$

45. f is bounded; the maximum value of f is 1, the minimum value is -1

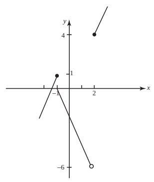
47. f is bounded; no maximum value, the minimum value is approximately 0.3540

Chapter 2 Review Exercises

1. 1 **3.** 0 **5.** 1 **7.** 1 **9.** 0 **11.** $1/2$ **13.** does not exist **15.** $3/5$ **17.** $4/3$ **19.** -3

21. $-3/4$ **23.** -1 **25.** $-1/4$ **27.** 0 **29.** 2 **31.** (c), (e)

33.



(b) (i) 1 (ii) 0 (iii) does not exist (iv) -6 (v) 4 (vi) does not exist

(c) (i) yes; no (ii) no; yes

35. $A=7,\ B=1/4$ **37.** $f(-3)=-8$ **39.** $f(0)=\pi$ **41.** (b)

43. $f(x)=2\cos x-x+1;\quad f(1)=2\cos 1>0,\quad f(2)=2\cos 2-1<0$ **49.** (a) yes; $f(x)=\begin{cases}\dfrac{\sin\pi x}{x}, & x>0\\ \pi, & x=0\end{cases}$ (b) no

CHAPTER 3

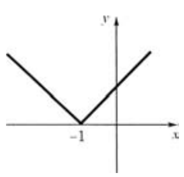
SECTION 3.1

1. -3 **3.** $5-2x$ **5.** $4x^3$ **7.** $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{x-1}}$ **9.** $-2x^{-3}$ **11.** 2 **13.** 6 **15.** -2

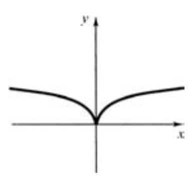
17. $y+3x-16=0$ **19.** $x-4y+3=0$

21. (a) Removable discontinuity at $c=-1$; jump discontinuity at $c=1$ (b) f is continuous but not differentiable at $c=0$ and $c=3$

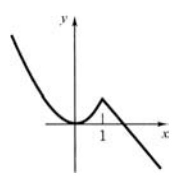
23. $x=-1$



25. $x=0$

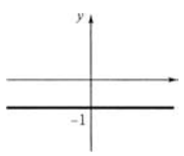


27. $x=1$

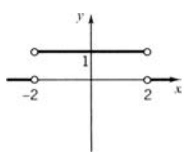


29. 4 **31.** does not exist

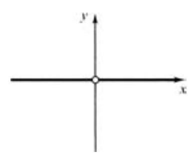
33.



35.



37.

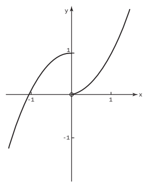


39. f is not continuous at 1 **41.** $A=3,\ B=-2$

In 43–48, there are many possible answers. Here are some.

43. $f(x)=c$, c any constant **45.** $f(x)=|x+1|$; $f(x)=\begin{cases}0, & x\neq -1\\ 1, & x=-1\end{cases}$ **47.** $f(x)=2x+5$

49. (b) f is not differentiable at 2 **51.** (a) no (b)



53. (a) $x = c$; (b) $y - f(c) = \dfrac{-1}{f'(c)}(x - c)$; (c) $y = f(c)$ **55.** $y - 2 = -4(x - 4)$ **57.** $\frac{111}{2}$

59. (c) $g'(0) = 0$ **61.** $f'(1) = -1$ **63.** $f'(-1) = \frac{1}{3}$ **65.** $f'(2) \cong 7.071$

67. (a) $f'(x) = \dfrac{5}{2\sqrt{5x-4}}$; $f'(3) = \dfrac{5}{2\sqrt{11}}$

(b) $f'(x) = -2x + 16x^3 - 6x^5$; $f'(-2) = 68$

(c) $f'(x) = -\dfrac{3(3-2x)}{(2+3x)^2} - \dfrac{2}{(2+3x)}$; $f'(-1) = -13$

69. (c) $f'(x) = 10x - 21x^2$

(d) $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 0, 10/21$

71. (a) tangent: $y - \frac{21}{8} = -\frac{11}{4}(x - \frac{3}{2})$; normal: $y - \frac{21}{8} = \frac{4}{11}(x - \frac{3}{2})$

(c) (1.453, 1.547)

SECTION 3.2

1. -1 **3.** $55x^4 - 18x^2$ **5.** $2ax + b$ **7.** $\dfrac{2}{x^3}$ **9.** $3x^2 - 6x - 1$ **11.** $\dfrac{3x^2 - 2x^3}{(1-x)^2}$ **13.** $\dfrac{2(x^2 + 3x + 1)}{(2x+3)^2}$

15. $8x^3 + 15x^2 - 8x - 10$ **17.** $-\dfrac{2(3x^2 - x + 1)}{x^2(x-2)^2}$ **19.** $-80x^9 + 81x^8 - 64x^7 + 63x^6$ **21.** $f'(0) = -\frac{1}{4}$; $f'(1) = -1$

23. $f'(0) = 0$; $f'(1) = -1$ **25.** $f'(0) = \dfrac{ad - bc}{d^2}$; $f'(1) = \dfrac{ad - bc}{(c+d)^2}$ **27.** $f'(0) = 3$ **29.** $f'(0) = \frac{20}{9}$ **31.** $2y - x - 8 = 0$

33. $y - 4x + 12 = 0$ **35.** $(-1, 27), (3, -5)$ **37.** $(-1, -\frac{5}{2}), (1, \frac{5}{2})$

39. (a) $-2, 0, 2$

(b) $(-2, 0) \cup (2, \infty)$

(c) $(-\infty, -2) \cup (0, 2)$

41. (a) 2

(b) $(-\infty, 0) \cup (2, \infty)$

(c) $(0, 2)$

43. $(-2, -10)$ **45.** $f(x) = x^3 + x^2 + x + C$, C any constant **47.** $f(x) = \frac{2}{3}x^3 - \frac{3}{2}x^2 + 1/x + C$, C any constant **49.** $A = -2$, $B = -8$

51. $\frac{425}{8}$ **53.** $A = -1$, $B = 0$, $C = 4$ **55.** $x = -\dfrac{b}{2a}$ **57.** $c = -1, 1$ **61.** $y = -x$, $y + 24 = 26(x + 3)$

63. $f(x) = |x|$ and $g(x) = -|x|$ are not differentiable at 0; their sum $h(x) = 0$ is differentiable everywhere.

67. $F'(x) = 2x\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)(2x^3 - x + 1) + (x^2 + 1)\left(-\dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)(2x^3 - x + 1) + (x^2 + 1)\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)(6x^2 - 1)$

71. (a) $0, -2$

(b) $(-\infty, -2) \cup (0, \infty)$

(c) $(-2, -1) \cup (-1, 0)$

73. (a) $f'(x) \neq 0$ for all $x \neq 0$

(b) $(0, \infty)$

(c) $(-\infty, 0)$

75. (a) Let $D(h) = \dfrac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h}$.

At $x = 0$, $D(0.001) \cong 0.99999$, $D(-0.001) \cong 0.99999$; at $x = \pi/6$, $D(0.001) \cong 0.86578$, $D(-0.001) \cong 0.86628$; at $x = \pi/4$, $D(0.001) \cong 0.70675$, $D(-0.001) \cong 0.70746$; at $x = \pi/3$, $D(0.001) \cong 0.49957$, $D(-0.001) \cong 0.50043$; at $x = \pi/2$, $D(0.001) \cong -0.0005$, $D(-0.001) \cong 0.0005$

(b) $\cos(0) = 1$, $\cos(\pi/6) \cong 0.866025$, $\cos(\pi/4) \cong 0.707107$, $\cos(\pi/3) = 0.5$, $\cos(\pi/2) = 0$ (c) $f'(x) = \cos x$.

SECTION 3.3

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 12x^3 - 2x$ **3.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 1 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}$ **5.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1-x^2}{(1+x^2)^2}$ **7.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2x - x^2}{(1-x)^2}$ **9.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{-6x^2}{(x^3-1)^2}$ **11.** 2

13. $18x^2 + 30x + 5x^{-2}$ **15.** $\dfrac{2t^3(t^3-2)}{(2t^3-1)^2}$ **17.** $\dfrac{2}{(1-2u)^2}$ **19.** $-\left[\dfrac{1}{(u-1)^2} + \dfrac{1}{(u+1)^2}\right] = -2\left[\dfrac{u^2+1}{(u^2-1)^2}\right]$

21. $\dfrac{-2}{(x-1)^2}$ **23.** 47 **25.** $\frac{1}{4}$ **27.** $42x - 120x^3$ **29.** $-6x^{-3}$ **31.** $4 - 12x^{-4}$ **33.** 2 **35.** 0 **37.** $6 + 60x^{-6}$

39. $1 - 4x$ **41.** -24 **43.** -24 **45.** $y = x^4 - \frac{1}{3}x^3 + 2x^2 + C$, C any constant **47.** $y = x^5 - x^{-4} + C$, C any constant

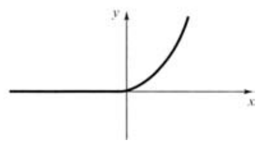
49. $p(x) = 2x^2 - 6x + 7$ **51.** (a) $n!$ (b) 0 (c) $f^{(k)}(x) = n(n-1)\cdots(n-k+1)x^{n-k}$

53. (a) $f'(0) = 0$.

(b) $f'(x) = \begin{cases} 2x, & x \geq 0 \\ 0, & x < 0 \end{cases}$

(c) $f''(x) = \begin{cases} 2, & x > 0 \\ 0, & x < 0 \end{cases}$

(d)



57. (a) $x = 0$ (b) $x > 0$ (c) $x < 0$ **59.** (a) $x = -2, x = 1$ (b) $x < -2, x > 1$ (c) $-2 < x < 1$

63. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(uvw) = vw\dfrac{du}{dx} + uw\dfrac{dv}{dx} + uv\dfrac{dw}{dx}$ **65.** $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}[f(x)] = n!(1-x)^{-n-1} = \dfrac{n!}{(1-x)^{n+1}}$ **67.** (b) $\left(-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right), \left(\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, -\dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)$

69. (a) $f'(x) = 3x^2 + 2x - 4$ (c) The graph is "falling" when $f'(x) < 0$; the graph is rising when $f'(x) > 0$.

71. (a) $f'(x) = \frac{3}{2}x^2 - 6x + 3$ (c) the tangent line is horizontal. (d) $x_1 \cong 0.586$, $x_2 \cong 3.414$

SECTION 3.4

1. $\dfrac{dA}{dr} = 2\pi r,\ 4\pi$ **3.** $\dfrac{dA}{dz} = z,\ 4$ **5.** $-\frac{5}{36}$ **7.** $\dfrac{dV}{dr} = 4\pi r^2$ **9.** $x_0 = \frac{3}{4}$ **11.** (a) $\dfrac{3\sqrt{2}}{4}w^2$ (b) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{3}z^2$.

13. (a) $\frac{1}{2}r^2$ (b) $r\theta$ (c) $-4Ar^{-3} = -2\theta/r$ **15.** $x = \frac{1}{2}$

SECTION 3.5

1. $y = x^4 + 2x^2 + 1;\ y' = 4x^3 + 4x = 4x(x^2+1)$
$y = (x^2+1)^2;\ y' = 2(x^2+1)(2x) = 4x(x^2+1)$

3. $y = 8x^3 + 12x^2 + 6x + 1;\ y' = 24x^2 + 24x + 6 = 6(2x+1)^2$
$y = (2x+1)^3;\ y' = 3(2x+1)^2(2) = 6(2x+1)^2$

5. $f(x) = x^2 + 2 + x^{-2};\ f'(x) = 2x - 2x^{-3} = 2x(1 - x^{-4})$
$f(x) = (x + x^{-1})^2;\ f'(x) = 2(x + x^{-1})(1 - x^{-2}) = 2x(1 + x^{-2})(1 - x^{-2}) = 2x(1 - x^{-4})$

7. $2(1-2x)^{-2}$ **9.** $20(x^5 - x^{10})^{19}(5x^4 - 10x^9)$ **11.** $4\left(x - \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^3\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)$ **13.** $4(x - x^3 - x^5)^3(1 - 3x^2 - 5x^4)$

15. $-4(t^{-1} + t^{-2})^3(t^{-2} + 2t^{-3})$ **17.** $324x^3\left[\dfrac{1-x^2}{(x^2+1)^5}\right]$ **19.** $-\left(\dfrac{x^3}{3} + \dfrac{x^2}{2} + \dfrac{x}{1}\right)^{-2}(x^2 + x + 1)$

21. -1 **23.** 0 **25.** $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = \dfrac{dy}{du}\dfrac{du}{dx}\dfrac{dx}{dt} = \dfrac{7(2t-5)^4 + 12(2t+5)^2 - 2}{[(2t-5)^4 + 2(2t-5)^2 + 2]^2}[4(2t-5)]$ **27.** 16 **29.** 1 **31.** 1 **33.** 1 **35.** 2

37. 0 **39.** $12(x^3+x)^2[(3x^2+1)^2 + 2x(x^3+x)]$ **41.** $\dfrac{6x(1+x)}{(1-x)^5}$ **43.** $2xf'(x^2+1)$ **45.** $2f(x)f'(x)$

47. (a) $x = 0$ (b) $x < 0$ (c) $x > 0$ **49.** (a) $x = -1, x = 1$ (b) $-1 < x < 1$ (c) $x < -1, x > 1$

51. $y^{(n)} = \dfrac{n!}{(1-x)^{n+1}}$ **53.** $y^{(n)} = n!b^n$ **55.** $y = (x^2+1)^3 + C$, C any constant **57.** $y = (x^3-2)^2 + C$, C any constant

59. $L'(x^2+1) = \dfrac{2x}{x^2+1}$ **61.** $T'(x) = 0$

65. Let $p(x)$ be a polynomial function of degree n. The number a is a zero of multiplicity k for p, $k < n$, iff $p(a) = p'(a) = \cdots = p^{(k-1)}(a) = 0$ and $p^{(k)}(a) \neq 0$.

67. $800\,\pi$ cm^3/sec **69.** (a) $\dfrac{dF}{dt} = -\dfrac{2k}{r^3}(49 - 9.8t)$

71. (a) $f'(1) = -\frac{1}{2}$; $x + 2y - 2 = 0$
(c) (0.797, 1.202)

73. (a) $-\dfrac{f'(1/x)}{x^2}$
(b) $\dfrac{4x f'[(x^2-1)/(x^2+1)]}{(1+x^2)^2}$
(c) $\dfrac{f'(x)}{[1+f(x)]^2}$

75. $[g'(x)]^2 f''[g(x)] + f'[g(x)]g''(x)$

SECTION 3.6

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -3\sin x - 4\sec x\tan x$ **3.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2\csc x - x^3\csc x\cot x$ **5.** $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = -2\cos t\sin t$ **7.** $\dfrac{dy}{du} = 2u^{1/2}\sin^3\sqrt{u}\cos\sqrt{u}$

9. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2x\sec^2 x^2$ **11.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4(1 - \pi\csc^2\pi x)(x + \cot\pi x)^3$ **13.** $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\sin x$ **15.** $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\cos x(1+\sin x)^{-2}$

17. $\dfrac{d^2y}{du^2} = 12\cos 2u(2\sin^2 2u - \cos^2 2u)$ **19.** $\dfrac{d^2y}{dt^2} = 8\sec^2 2t\tan 2t$ **21.** $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = (2 - 9x^2)\sin 3x + 12x\cos 3x$

23. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$ **25.** $\sin x$ **27.** $(27t^3 - 12t)\sin 3t - 45t^2\cos 3t$ **29.** $3\cos 3x\, f'(\sin 3x)$ **31.** $y = x$ **33.** $y - \sqrt{3} = -4(x - \frac{1}{6}\pi)$

35. $y - \sqrt{2} = \sqrt{2}(x - \frac{1}{4}\pi)$ **37.** at π **39.** at $\frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{7}{6}\pi$ **41.** at $\frac{1}{2}\pi, \pi, \frac{3}{2}\pi$ **43.** at $\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{3}{4}\pi, \frac{5}{4}\pi, \frac{7}{4}\pi$ **45.** at $\frac{7}{6}\pi, \frac{11}{6}\pi$

47. (a) $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = \frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{5}{6}\pi$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$ on $\left(0, \frac{1}{6}\pi\right) \cup \left(\frac{5}{6}\pi, 2\pi\right)$ (c) $f'(x) < 0$ on $\left(\frac{1}{6}\pi, \frac{5}{6}\pi\right)$

49. (a) $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = \frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{5}{4}\pi$; (b) $f'(x) > 0$ on $\left(0, \frac{1}{4}\pi\right) \cup \left(\frac{5}{4}\pi, 2\pi\right)$ (c) $f'(x) < 0$ on $\left(\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{5}{4}\pi\right)$

51. (a) $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = \dfrac{dy}{du}\dfrac{du}{dx}\dfrac{dx}{dt} = (2u)(\sec x\tan x)(\pi) = 2\pi\sec^2\pi t\,\tan\pi t$ (b) $y = \sec^2\pi t - 1$; $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 2\sec\pi t(\sec\pi t\tan\pi t)\pi = 2\pi\sec^2\pi t\,\tan\pi t$

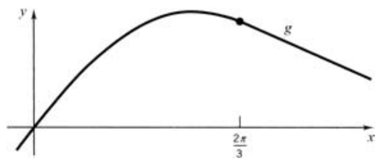
53. (a) $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = \dfrac{dy}{du}\dfrac{du}{dx}\dfrac{dx}{dt} = 4[\frac{1}{2}(1-u)]^3(-\frac{1}{2}) \cdot (-\sin x) \cdot 2 = 4[\frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos 2t)]^3\sin 2t = (4\sin^6 t)(2\sin t\cos t) = 8\sin^7 t\cos t$
(b) $y = [\frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos 2t)]^4 = \sin^8 t$; $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 8\sin^7 t\cos t$

55. $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}(\cos x) = \begin{cases} (-1)^{(n+1)/2}\sin x, & n \text{ odd} \\ (-1)^{n/2}\cos x, & n \text{ even} \end{cases}$ **61.** $f(x) = 2\sin x + 3\cos x + C$, C any constant

63. $f(x) = \sin 2x + \sec x + C$, C any constant **65.** $f(x) = \sin(x^2) + \cos 2x + C$, C any constant

67. (a) $f'(x) = \sin\dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{1}{x}\cos\dfrac{1}{x}$; $g'(x) = 2x\sin\dfrac{1}{x} - \cos\dfrac{1}{x}$ (b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} g'(x) = \lim\limits_{x\to 0}\left(2x\sin\dfrac{1}{x} - \cos\dfrac{1}{x}\right) = \lim\limits_{x\to 0}\cos\dfrac{1}{x}$ does not exist

69. (a) $a = -\frac{1}{2}$, $b = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{\pi}{3}$ (b)



73. $A(x) = \frac{1}{2}c^2 \sin x$; $A'(x) = \frac{1}{2}c^2 \cos x$

75. (a) $f^{(4p)}(x) = k^{4p} \cos kx$, $f^{(4p+1)}(x) = -k^{4p+1} \sin kx$, $f^{(4p+2)}(x) = -k^{4p+2} \cos kx$, $f^{(4p+3)}(x) = k^{4p+3} \sin kx$ (b) $m = k^2$

77. f has a horizontal tangent at $x = \frac{1}{2}\pi$, $x = \frac{3}{2}\pi$, $x \cong 3.39$, $x \cong 6.03$ **79.** $y = x$; $|\sin x - x| < 0.01$ on $(-0.3924, 0.3924)$

SECTION 3.7

1. $-\dfrac{x}{y}$ **3.** $-\dfrac{4x}{9y}$ **5.** $-\dfrac{x^2(x+3y)}{x^3+y^3}$ **7.** $\dfrac{2(x-y)}{2(x-y)+1}$ **9.** $\dfrac{y - \cos(x+y)}{\cos(x+y) - x}$ **11.** $\dfrac{16}{(x+y)^3}$ **13.** $\dfrac{90}{(2y+x)^3}$

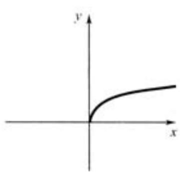
15. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{3}{2}x \cos^2 y - \frac{9}{8}x^4 \sin y \cos^3 y$ **17.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{5}{8}$, $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\dfrac{9}{128}$ **19.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{1}{2}$, $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$

21. tangent $2x + 3y - 5 = 0$; normal $3x - 2y + 12 = 0$ **23.** tangent $x + 2y + 8 = 0$; normal $2x - y + 1 = 0$

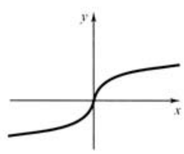
25. tangent: $y = \dfrac{-2}{\sqrt{3}}x + \left(\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}} + \dfrac{\pi}{3}\right)$; normal: $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x + \left(\dfrac{\pi}{3} - \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right)$ **27.** $\frac{3}{2}x^2(x^3+1)^{-1/2}$ **29.** $\dfrac{x}{(\sqrt[4]{2x^2+1})^3}$

31. $\dfrac{x(2x^2-5)}{\sqrt{2-x^2}\sqrt{3-x^2}}$ **33.** $\dfrac{1}{2}\left(\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}} - \dfrac{1}{x\sqrt{x}}\right)$ **35.** $\dfrac{1}{(\sqrt{x^2+1})^3}$

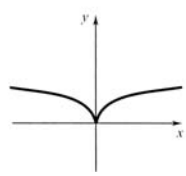
37. (a)



(b)



(c)



39. $-\dfrac{2b^2}{9(\sqrt[3]{a+bx})^5}$

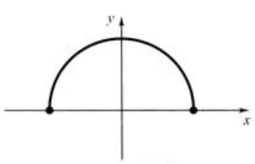
41. $\dfrac{\sqrt{x}\sec^2\sqrt{x} - \tan\sqrt{x} + 2x\sec^2\sqrt{x}\tan\sqrt{x}}{4x\sqrt{x}}$ **45.** at right angles **47.** at $(1, 1)$, $\alpha = \pi/4$; at $(0, 0)$, $\alpha = \pi/2$

53. $y - 2x + 12 = 0$, $y - 2x - 12 = 0$ **55.** $\left(-\dfrac{\sqrt{6}}{4}, \pm\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\right)$, $\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{6}}{4}, \pm\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\right)$

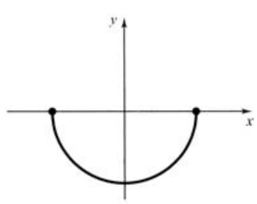
59. (b) $d(h) \to \infty$ as $h \to 0^-$ and as $h \to 0^+$
(c) The graph of f has a vertical tangent at $(0, 0)$.

61. $f'(x) > 0$ on $(-\infty, \infty)$

63.



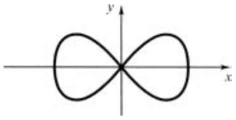
$x = t$, $y = \sqrt{4 - t^2}$



$x = t$, $y = -\sqrt{4 - t^2}$

65. $y'|_{(3,4)} = 3$ **67.** $\left.\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right|_{(1,3\sqrt{3})} = -\sqrt{3}$

69. (a)



(b) $x = \pm\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$

Chapter 3 Review Exercises

1. $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 4$ **3.** $g'(x) = -\dfrac{-1}{(x-2)^2}$ **5.** $y' = \dfrac{2}{3x^{1/3}}$ **7.** $y' = -\dfrac{x^4 + 4x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x + 2}{(x^3 - 1)^2}$ **9.** $f'(x) = \dfrac{x}{(a^2 - x^2)^{3/2}}$

11. $y' = -\dfrac{6b}{x^3}\left(a + \dfrac{b}{x^2}\right)^2$ **13.** $y' = \dfrac{\sec^2\sqrt{2x+1}}{\sqrt{2x+1}}$ **15.** $F'(x) = \dfrac{3x^3 + 8x^2 + 8x + 8}{\sqrt{x^2+2}}$ **17.** $h'(t) = \sec t^2 + 2t^2 \sec t^2 \tan t^2 + 6t^2$

19. $\dfrac{ds}{dt} = \dfrac{-4}{(2+3t)^{4/3}(2-3t)^{2/3}}$ **21.** $f'(\theta) = -3\csc^2(3\theta + \pi)$ **23.** $1/12$ **25.** $\dfrac{6 + \pi\sqrt{3}}{72}$ **27.** tangent: $y = 4x$; normal: $x + 4y = 17$

29. tangent: $y = 2x$; normal: $y = -\frac{1}{2}x$ **31.** $f''(x) = -\cos(2 - x)$ **33.** $y'' = 2\cos x - x\sin x$ **35.** $y^{(n)} = (-1)^n n! b^n$

37. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{3x^2y + y^3}{x^3 + 3xy^2}$ **39.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{6x^2 + 3\cos y - 2y}{2x + 3x\sin y}$ **41.** tangent: $5x - 3y = 9$; normal: $3x + 5y = 19$

43. (a) $x = 2, 4$; (b) $(-\infty, 2) \cup (4, \infty)$; (c) $(2, 4)$

45. (a) $x = \frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{2}{3}\pi, \frac{4}{3}\pi, \frac{5}{3}\pi$; (b) $(0, \frac{1}{3}\pi) \cup (\frac{2}{3}\pi, \frac{4}{3}\pi) \cup (\frac{5}{3}\pi, 2\pi)$; (c) $(\frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{2}{3}\pi) \cup (\frac{4}{3}\pi, \frac{5}{3}\pi)$

47. (a) $x = 1$; (b) $x = 3$; (c) $x = 1/3$ **49.** $y = -x, y = 26x + 54$ **51.** $A = 1, B = -1, C = 4, D = -3$

53. 0 **55.** $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$ **57.** -1

CHAPTER 4

SECTION 4.1

1. $c = \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \cong 0.577$ **3.** $c = \dfrac{\pi}{4}, \dfrac{3\pi}{4}, \dfrac{5\pi}{4}, \dfrac{7\pi}{4}$ **5.** $c = \frac{3}{2}$ **7.** $c = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{39}$ **9.** $c = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$ **11.** $c = 0$

13. No. By mean-value theorem there exists at least one number $c \in (0, 2)$ such that $f'(c) = \dfrac{f(2) - f(0)}{2 - 0} = \dfrac{3}{2}$.

17. $f'(x) = \begin{cases} 2, & x \le -1 \\ 3x^2 - 1, & x > -1; \end{cases}$ $-3 < c \le -1$ and $c = 1$ **21.** $\dfrac{f(1) - f(-1)}{(1) - (-1)} = 0$ and $f'(x)$ is never zero; f is not differentiable at 0.

31. (a) $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 3 = 3(x^2 - 1) \neq 0$ on $(-1, 1)$ **37.** Set, for instance, $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & a < x < b \\ 0, & x = a, b \end{cases}$
(b) $-2 < b < 2$

47. $c = 0.676$ **49.** $c = 0.3045$ **51.** $c = 0$ **53.** $c = 2.205$ **55.** $c = 8/3$

SECTION 4.2

1. increases on $(-\infty, -1]$ and $[1, \infty]$, decreases on $[-1, 1]$ **3.** increases on $(-\infty, -1]$ and $[1, \infty)$, decreases on $[-1, 0)$ and $(0, 1]$

5. increases on $\left[-\frac{3}{4}, \infty\right)$, decreases on $\left(-\infty, -\frac{3}{4}\right]$ **7.** increases on $[-1, \infty)$, decreases on $(-\infty, -1]$

9. increases on $(-\infty, 2)$, decreases on $(2, \infty)$ **11.** increases on $(-\infty, -1)$ and $(-1, 0]$, decreases on $[0, 1)$ and $(1, \infty)$

13. increases on $[-\sqrt{5}, 0]$ and $[\sqrt{5}, \infty)$, decreases on $(-\infty, -\sqrt{5}]$ and $[0, \sqrt{5}]$ **15.** increases on $(-\infty, -1)$ and $(-1, \infty)$

17. increases on $[0, \infty)$, decreases on $(-\infty, 0]$ **19.** increases on $[0, 2\pi]$

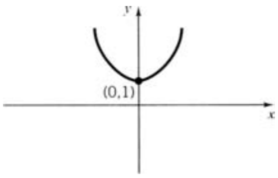
21. increases on $\left[\frac{2}{3}\pi, \pi\right]$, decreases on $\left[0, \frac{2}{3}\pi\right]$ **23.** increases on $\left[0, \frac{2}{3}\pi\right]$ and $\left[\frac{5}{6}\pi, \pi\right]$, decreases on $\left[\frac{2}{3}\pi, \frac{5}{6}\pi\right]$

25. $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 - x + \frac{8}{3}$ **27.** $f(x) = x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 5$ **29.** $f(x) = \frac{3}{4}x^{4/3} - \frac{2}{3}x^{3/2} + 1, x \ge 0$ **31.** $f(x) = 2x - \cos x + 4$

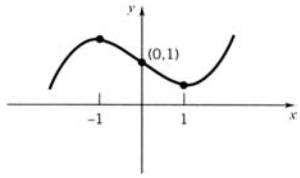
33. increases on $(-\infty, -3)$ and $[-1, 1]$, decreases on $[-3, -1]$ and $[1, \infty)$

35. increases on $(-\infty, 0]$ and $[3, \infty)$, decreases on $[0, 1)$ and $[1, 3]$

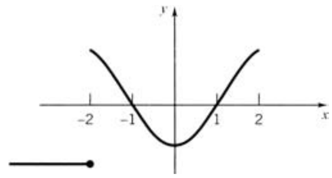
37.



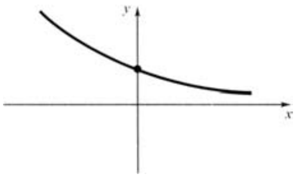
39.



41.



43.



45. Not possible; f is increasing, so $f(2)$ must be greater than $f(-1)$.

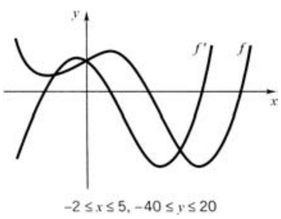
47. (a) true (b) false; see Figure 4.2.10

49. (a) true (b) false; $f(x) = x^3$ on $(-1, 1)$

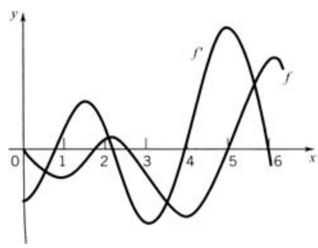
55. (b) $c = 1$ (c) $f(x) = \sin x$, $g(x) = \cos x$

61. $0.06975 < \sin 4^\circ < 0.06981$

63. $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = -0.633, 0.5, 2.633$
f is decreasing on $[-2, -0.633]$ and $[0.5, 2.633]$
f is increasing on $[-0.633, 0.5]$ and $[2.633, 5]$



65. $f'(x) = 0$ at $x = 0.770, 2.155, 3.798, 5.812$
f is decreasing on $[0, 0.770]$, $[2.155, 3.798]$, and $[5.812, 6]$
f is increasing on $[0.770, 2.155]$ and $[3.798, 5.812]$



67. (a) $0, \frac{\pi}{2}, \pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi$
(b) $(\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}) \cup (\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi)$
(c) $(0, \frac{\pi}{2}) \cup (\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi)$

69. (a) 0
(b) $(0, \infty)$
(c) $(-\infty, 0)$

71. $f = C$ constant; $f'(x) = 0$

SECTION 4.3

1. no critical pts; no local extreme values

3. critical pts. ± 1; local max $f(-1) = -2$, local min $f(1) = 2$

5. critical pts. $0, \frac{2}{3}$; $f(0) = 0$ local min, $f(\frac{2}{3}) = \frac{4}{27}$ local max

7. no critical pts; no local extreme values

9. critical pt. $-\frac{1}{2}$; local max $f(-\frac{1}{2}) = -8$

11. critical pts. $0, \frac{3}{5}, 1$; local max $f(\frac{3}{5}) = 2^2 3^3/5^5$, local min $f(1) = 0$

13. critical pts. $\frac{5}{8}, 1$; local max $f(\frac{5}{8}) = \frac{27}{2048}$

15. critical pts. $-2, 0$; local max $f(-2) = -4$, local min $f(0) = 0$

17. critical pts. $-2, -\frac{12}{7}, 0$; local max $f(-\frac{12}{7}) = \frac{144}{49}(\frac{2}{7})^{1/3}$, local min $f(0) = 0$

19. critical pts. $-\frac{1}{2}, 3$; local min $f(-\frac{1}{2}) = \frac{7}{2}$

21. critical pt. 1; local min $f(1) = 3$

23. critical pts. $\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{5}{4}\pi$; local max $f(\frac{1}{4}\pi) = \sqrt{2}$, local min $f(\frac{5}{4}\pi) = -\sqrt{2}$

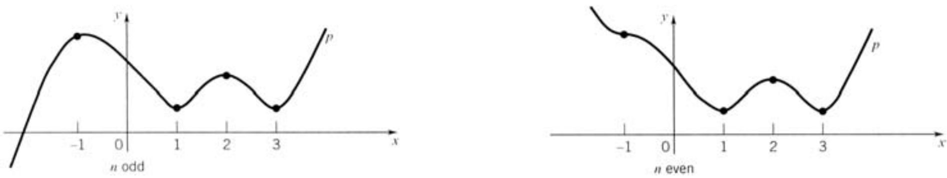
25. critical pts. $\frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{2}{3}\pi$; local max $f(\frac{1}{2}\pi) = 1 - \sqrt{3}$, local min $f(\frac{1}{3}\pi) = f(\frac{2}{3}\pi) = -\frac{3}{4}$

27. critical pts. $\frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{5}{3}\pi$; local max $f(\frac{5}{3}\pi) = \frac{5}{4}\sqrt{3} + \frac{10}{3}\pi$, local min $f(\frac{1}{3}\pi) = -\frac{5}{4}\sqrt{3} + \frac{2}{3}\pi$

29. (a) f increases on $[-2, 0] \cup [3, \infty)$; f decreases on $(-\infty, -2] \cup [0, 3]$
(b) $f(0)$ is a local max; $f(-2)$ and $f(3)$ are local minima.

35. critical points 1, 2, 3; local max $P(2) = -4$, local min $P(1) = P(3) = -5$

37.



39. $a = 4, b = \pm 2$.

43. (a) $f'(x) = 4x^3 - 14x - 8$; $f'(2) = -4$, $f'(3) = 58$. Therefore f' has a zero in (2, 3). Since $f''(x) = 12x^2 - 14 > 0$ on [2, 3], f' has exactly one zero in (2, 3).

47. (a) critical pts. $-0.692, 2.248$; local max $f(-0.692) \cong 29.342$, local min $f(2.248) \cong -8.766$
(b) f is increasing on $[-3, -0.692]$ and on $[2.248, 4]$; f is decreasing on $[-0.692, 2.248]$

49. (a) critical pts. $-2201, -0.654, 6.54, 2.201$; $f(-2.201) \cong 2.226$ and $f(0.654) \cong 6.634$ are local maxima, $f(-0.654) \cong -6.634$ and $f(2.201) \cong -2.226$ are local minima
(b) f is increasing on $[-3, -2.201]$, $[-0.654, 0.654]$, and $[2.201, 3]$; f is decreasing on $[-2.201, -0.654]$ and $[0.654, 2.201]$

51. $f'(x) > 0$ on $(\frac{2}{3}, \infty)$; no local extrema.

53. critical pts. $-1.326, 0, 1.816$; local maxima at -1.326 and 1.816, local minimum at 0.

SECTION 4.4

1. $f(-2) = 0$ endpt min and absolute min

3. critical pt. 2; $f(0) = 1$ endpt max and absolute max, $f(2) = -3$ local min and absolute min, $f(3) = -2$ endpt max.

5. critical pt. $2^{-1/3}$; $f(2^{-2/3}) = 3 \cdot 2^{-2/3}$ local min

7. critical pt. $2^{-1/3}$; $f(\frac{1}{10}) = 10\frac{1}{100}$ endpt max and absolute max; $f(2^{-1/3}) = 3 \cdot 2^{-2/3}$ local min and absolute min, $f(2) = 4\frac{1}{2}$ endpt max

9. critical pt. $\frac{3}{2}$; $f(0) = 2$ endpt max and absolute max, $f(\frac{3}{2}) = -\frac{1}{4}$ local min and absolute min, $f(2) = 0$ endpt max

11. critical pt. -2; $f(-3) = -\frac{3}{13}$ endpt max, $f(-2) = -\frac{1}{4}$ local min and absolute min, $f(1) = \frac{1}{3}$ endpt max and absolute max

13. critical pts. $\frac{1}{4}, 1$; $f(0) = 0$ endpt min and absolute min, $f(\frac{1}{4}) = \frac{1}{16}$ local max, $f(1) = 0$ local min and absolute min

15. critical pt. 2; $f(2) = 2$ local max and absolute max, $f(3) = 0$ endpt min

17. critical pt. 1; no extreme values

19. critical pt. $\frac{5}{6}\pi$; $f(0) = -\sqrt{3}$ endpt min and absolute min, $f(\frac{5}{6}\pi) = \frac{7}{4}$ local max and absolute max, $f(\pi) = \sqrt{3}$ endpt min

21. $f(0) = 5$ endpt max and absolute max, $f(\pi) = -5$ endpt min and absolute min

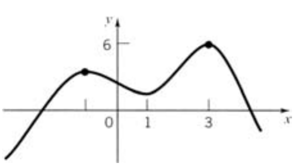
23. critical pt. 0; $f(-\frac{1}{3}\pi) = \frac{1}{3}\pi - \sqrt{3}$ endpt min and absolute min, no absolute max

25. critical pts. 1, 4; $f(0) = 0$ endpt, min, $f(1) = -2$ local min and absolute min, $f(4) = 1$ local max and absolute max, $f(7) = -2$ endpt min and absolute min

27. critical pts. $-1, 1, 3$; $f(-2) = 5$ endpt max, $f(-1) = 2$ local min and absolute min, $f(1) = 6$ local max and absolute max, $f(3) = 2$ local min and absolute min

29. critical pts. $-1, 0, 2$; $f(-3) = 2$ endpt max and absolute max, $f(-1) = 0$ local min, $f(0) = 2$ local max and absolute max, $f(2) = -2$ local min and absolute min

31.



33. Not possible: $f(1) = 0$, f increasing implies $f(3) > 0$.

41. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \text{ is a rational number} \\ 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is an irrational number.} \end{cases}$ **45.** $\left(\dfrac{p}{p+q}\right)^p \left(\dfrac{q}{p+q}\right)^q$

47. $x = \pi/4$ **49.** critical pts.: -1.452, local max; 0.727, local min; $f(-2.5)$ absolute min; $f(3)$ absolute max

51. critical pts.: -1.683, local max; -0.284, local min; 0.645, local max; 1.760, local min; $f(-\pi)$ absolute min; $f(\pi)$ absolute max.

53. Yes; $M = f(2) = 1; m = f(1) = f(3) = 0$ **55.** Yes; $M = f(6) = 2 + \sqrt{3}; m = f(1) = \frac{3}{2}$

SECTION 4.5

1. 400 **3.** 20 by 10 ft **5.** 32 **7.** 600 ft **9.** radius of semi-circle $\dfrac{3p}{12 + 5\pi}$ **11.** $x = 2, y = \frac{3}{2}$ **13.** $-\frac{5}{2}$

15. $\frac{10}{3}\sqrt{3}$ by $\frac{5}{3}\sqrt{3}$ in. **17.** equilateral triangle with side 4 **19.** $(1, 1)$ **21.** 24 sq. units

23. height of rectangle $\frac{15}{11}(5 - \sqrt{3}) \cong 4.46$ in; side of triangle $\frac{10}{11}(6 + \sqrt{3}) \cong 7.03$ in.

25. $\frac{5}{3} \times \frac{5}{3}$ **27.** $(0, \sqrt{3})$ **29.** $5\sqrt{5}$ ft **31.** 54 by 72 in. **33.** (a) use it all for the circle
(b) use $28\pi/(4 + \pi) \cong 12.32$ in. for the circle

35. base radius $\frac{10}{3}$ and height $\frac{8}{3}$ **37.** 10 by 10 by 12.5 ft **39.** equilateral triangle with side $2r\sqrt{3}$

41. base radius $\frac{1}{3}R\sqrt{6}$ and height $\frac{2}{3}R\sqrt{3}$ **43.** base radius $\frac{2}{3}R\sqrt{2}$ and height $\frac{4}{3}R$ **45.** \$160,000 **47.** $\tan\theta = m$

49. $x = \dfrac{a^{1/3}s}{a^{1/3} + b^{1/3}}$ **53.** $n = 1$ **55.** 125 customers **57.** $m = 1$ **59.** 59 mph

51. not possible **53.** walk along the shore

65. (b) $(1 + \sqrt{2}, 2 + \sqrt{2})$
(c) $y - (2 + \sqrt{2}) = \dfrac{1 - \sqrt{2}}{3 - \sqrt{2}}(x - [1 + \sqrt{2}])$
(e) $l_{PQ} = l_N$

67. $(\frac{21}{10}, \frac{7}{10})$

SECTION 4.6

1. (a) increasing on $[a, b]$, $[d, n]$, decreasing on $[b, d]$, $[n, p]$
(b) concave up on (c, k), (l, m), concave down on (a, c), (k, l), (m, p); points of inflection at $x = c, k, l$, and m.

3. (i) f', (ii) f, (iii) f'' **5.** concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$, concave up on $(0, \infty)$

7. concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$, concave up on $(0, \infty)$; pt of inflection $(0, 2)$

9. concave up on $(-\infty, -\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3})$, concave down on $(-\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3})$, concave up on $(\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \infty)$; pts of inflection $(-\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, -\frac{5}{36})$, $(\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, -\frac{5}{36})$

11. concave down on $(-\infty, -1)$ and on $(0, 1)$, concave up on $(-1, 0)$ and on $(1, \infty)$; pt of inflection $(0, 0)$

13. concave up on $(-\infty, -\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3})$, concave down on $(-\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3})$, concave up on $(\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \infty)$; pts of inflection $(-\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \frac{4}{9})$, $(\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}, \frac{4}{9})$

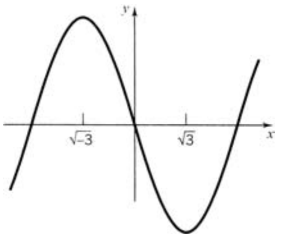
15. concave up on $(0, \infty)$ **17.** concave down on $(-\infty, -2)$, concave up on $(-2, \infty)$; pt of inflection $(-2, 0)$

19. concave up on $(0, \frac{1}{4}\pi)$, concave down on $(\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{3}{4}\pi)$, concave up on $(\frac{3}{4}\pi, \pi)$; pts of inflection $(\frac{1}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{2})$ and $(\frac{3}{4}\pi, \frac{1}{2})$

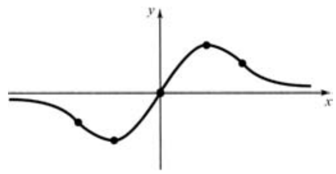
21. concave up on $(0, \frac{1}{12}\pi)$, concave down on $(\frac{1}{12}\pi, \frac{5}{12}\pi)$, concave up on $(\frac{5}{12}\pi, \pi)$; pts of inflection $(\frac{1}{12}\pi, \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{144}\pi^2)$ and $(\frac{5}{12}\pi, \frac{1}{2} + \frac{25}{144}\pi^2)$

23. $(\pm 3.94822, 10.39228)$ **25.** $(-3, 0)$, $(-2.11652, 2.39953)$, $(-0.28349, -18.43523)$

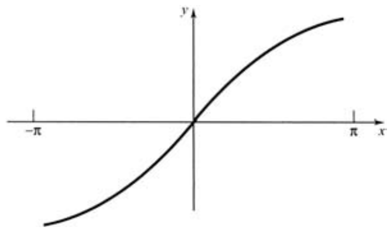
27. (a) f increases on $(-\infty, -\sqrt{3}]$ and $[\sqrt{3}, \infty)$, decreases on $[-\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{3}]$
(b) $f(-\sqrt{3}) \cong 10.39$ local max; $f(\sqrt{3}) \cong -10.39$ local min.
(c) concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$, concave up on $(0, \infty)$
(d) $(0, 0)$ is a point of inflection



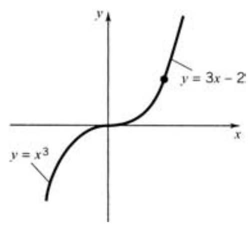
29. (a) f decreases on $(-\infty, -1]$ and $[1, \infty)$, increases on $[-1, 1]$
(b) $f(-1) = -1$ local min; $f(1) = 1$ local max
(c) concave down on $(-\infty, -\sqrt{3})$ and $(0, \sqrt{3})$, concave up on $(-\sqrt{3}, 0)$ and $(\sqrt{3}, \infty)$
(d) points of inflection $\left(-\sqrt{3}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$, $(0, 0)$, $\left(\sqrt{3}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$



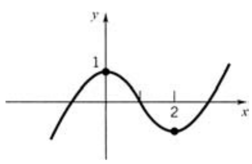
31. (a) increasing on $[-\pi, \pi]$
(b) no local max or min
(c) concave up on $(-\pi, 0)$, concave down on $(0, \pi)$
(d) point of inflection $(0, 0)$



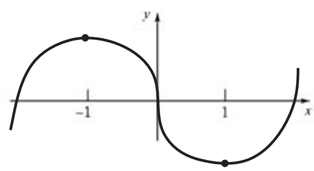
33. (a) increasing on $(-\infty, \infty)$
(b) no local max or min
(c) concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$, concave up on $(0, 1)$, no concavity on $(1, \infty)$
(d) point of inflection $(0, 0)$



35.



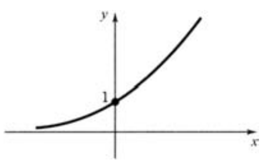
37.



39. $d = \frac{1}{3}(a + b + c)$ **41.** $a = -\frac{1}{2},\ b = \frac{1}{2}$ **43.** $A = 18, B = -4$ **45.** $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 3$; one

47. (a) $p''(x) = 6x - 2a$ has exactly one zero; $x = \frac{1}{3}a$

49. (a)



(b) No. If $f''(x) < 0$ and $f'(x) < 0$ for all x, then $f(x) < f'(0)x + f(0)$ on $(0, \infty)$ which implies $f(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to \infty$.

51. (a) concave up on $(-4, -0.913)$ and $(0.913, 4)$; concave down on $(-0.913, 0.913)$
(b) points of inflection at $x \cong -0.913, 0.913$

53. (a) concave up on $(-\pi, -1.996)$ and $(-0.345, 2.550)$; concave down on $(-1.996, -0.345)$ and $(2.550, \pi)$
(b) points of inflection at $x \cong -1.996, -0.345, 2.550$

55. (a) 0.68824, 2.27492, 4.00827, 5.59494
(b) $(0.68824, 2.27492) \cup (4.00827, 5.59494)$
(c) $(0, 0.68824) \cup (2.27492, 4.00827) \cup (5.59494, \pi)$

57. (a) $-1, \pm 0.71523, \pm 0.32654, 0.1$
(b) $(-0.71523, -0.32654) \cup (0, 0.32654) \cup (0.71523, 1), (1, \infty)$
(c) $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, -0.71523) \cup (-0.32654, 0) \cup (0.32654, 0.71523)$

SECTION 4.7

1. (a) ∞ (b) $-\infty$ (c) ∞ (d) 1 (e) 0 (f) $x = -1, x = 1$ (g) $y = 0, y = 1$ **3.** vertical; $x = \frac{1}{3}$; horizontal; $y = \frac{1}{3}$

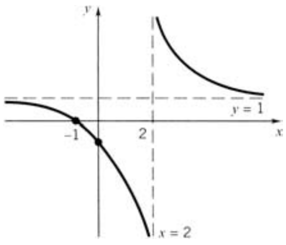
5. vertical: $x = 2$; horizontal: none **7.** vertical: $x = \pm 3$; horizontal: $y = 0$ **9.** vertical: $x = -\frac{4}{3}$; horizontal: $y = \frac{4}{9}$

11. vertical: $x = \frac{5}{2}$; horizontal; $y = 0$ **13.** vertical: none; horizontal: $y = \pm\frac{3}{2}$ **15.** vertical: $x = 1$; horizontal: $y = 0$

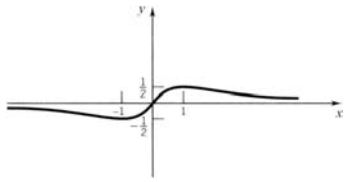
17. vertical: none; horizontal: $y = 0$ **19.** vertical: $x = (2n + \frac{1}{2})\pi$; horizontal: none **21.** neither **23.** cusp

25. tangent **27.** neither **29.** cusp **31.** cusp **33.** neither; f not continuous at $x = 0$

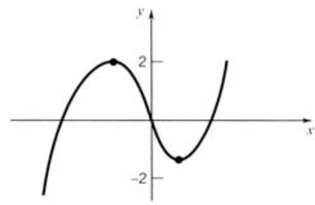
35.



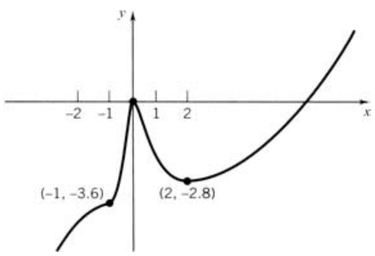
37.



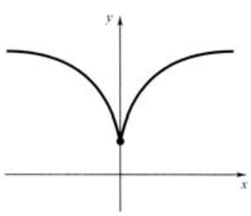
39. (a) increasing on $(-\infty, -1], [1, \infty)$; decreasing on $[-1, 1]$
(b) concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$; concave up on $(0, \infty)$
vertical tangent at $x = 0$



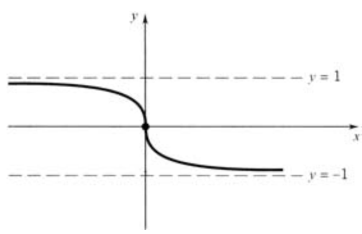
41. (a) decreasing on $[0, 2]$; increasing on $(-\infty, 0], [2, \infty)$
(b) concave up on $(-1, 0), (0, \infty)$; concave down on $(-\infty, -1)$ vertical cusp at $x = 0$



43. vertical cusp at $x = 0$

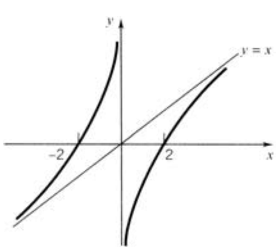


45. vertical tangent line at $x = 0$
$y = 1$ and $y = -1$ horizontal asymptotes

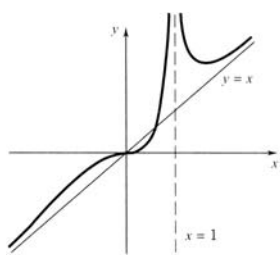


47. (a) p odd
(b) p even

49.



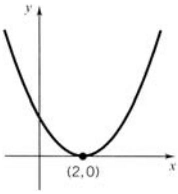
51.



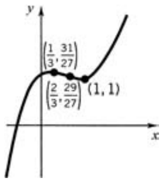
53. $y = 3x - 4$ **55.** $y = 1$

SECTION 4.8

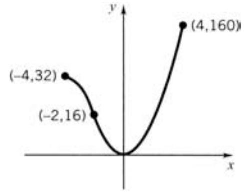
1.



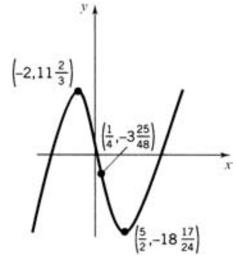
3.



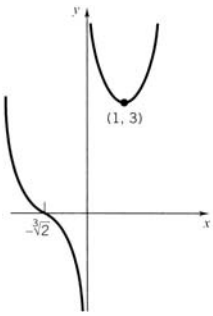
5.



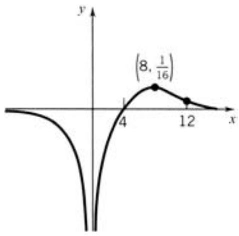
7.



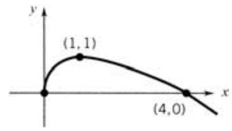
9.



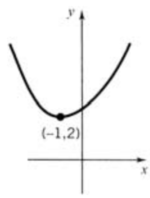
11.



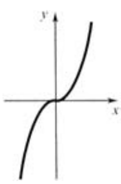
13.



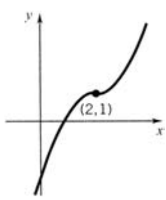
15.



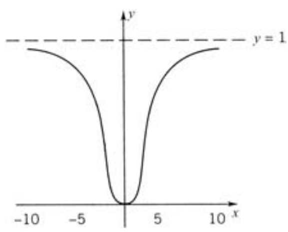
17.



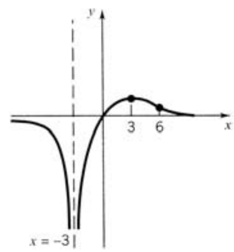
19.



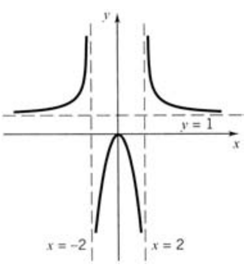
21.



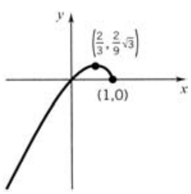
23.



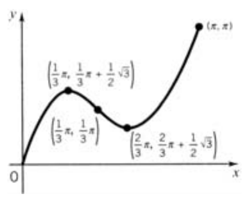
25.



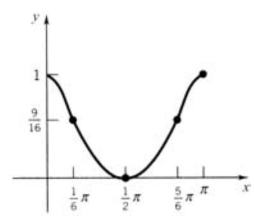
27.



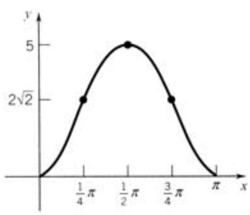
29.



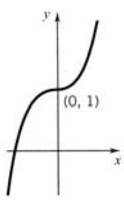
31.



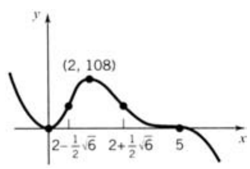
33.



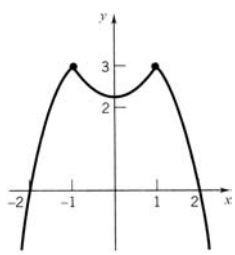
35.



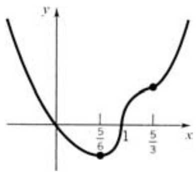
37.



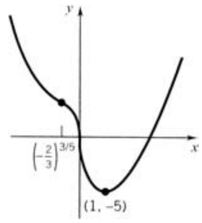
39.



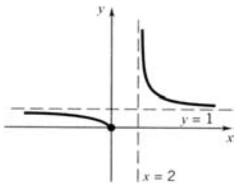
41.



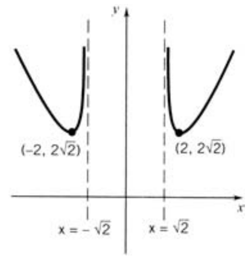
43.



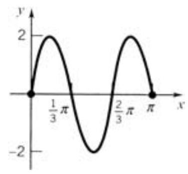
45.



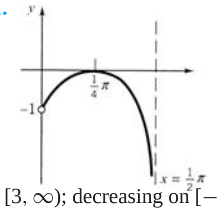
47.



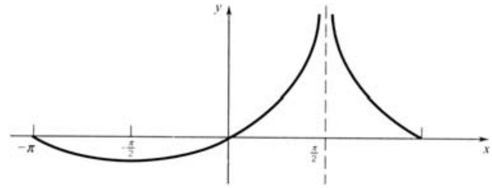
49.



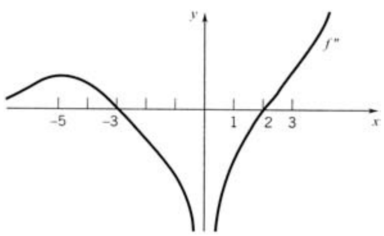
51.

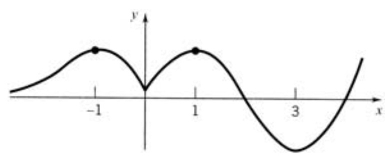


53.



55. (a) increasing on $(-\infty, -1]$, $(0, 1]$, $[3, \infty)$; decreasing on $[-1, 0)$, $[1, 3]$ critical pts. $x = -1, 0, 1, 3$
(b) concave up on $(-\infty, -3)$, $(2, \infty)$ concave down on $(-3, 0)$, $(0, 2)$ (c)





SECTION 4.9

1. $x(5) = -6$, $v(5) = -7$, $a(5) = -2$, speed = 7 **3.** $x(1) = 6$, $v(1) = -2$, $a(1) = \frac{4}{3}$, speed = 2

5. $x(1) = 0$, $v(1) = 18$, $a(1) = 54$, speed = 18 **7.** (a) none (b) $a(t) = 0$ for all $t \geq 0$ **9.** (a) $t = 1, 3$ (b) $t = 2$

11. A **13.** A **15.** A and B **17.** A **19.** A and C **21.** $(0, 2)$, $(7, \infty)$ **23.** $(0, 3)$, $(4, \infty)$ **25.** $(2, 5)$

27. $(0, 2 - \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{3})$, $(4, \infty)$ **29.** $t = 3$ **31.** $t = 2, 2\sqrt{3}$ **33.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi \leq t \leq \frac{2}{3}\pi$, $\frac{7}{6}\pi \leq t \leq \frac{4}{3}\pi$, $\frac{11}{6}\pi \leq t \leq 2\pi$

35. $0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\frac{7}{4}\pi \leq t \leq 2\pi$ **37.** $\frac{5}{6}\pi \leq t \leq \frac{3}{2}\pi$ **39.** 576 ft **41.** $v_0^2/2g$ **45.** 9 ft/sec

47. (a) 2 sec (b) 16 ft (c) 48 ft/sec **49.** (a) $\frac{1625}{16}$ ft (b) $\frac{6475}{64}$ ft (c) 100 ft **51.** 984 ft

55. Yes. by the mean-value theorem there is at least one time $t = c$ such that

$$v(c) = s'(c) = \frac{120 - 0}{1.67 - 0} \cong 71.86.$$

57. If the speed of the car is less than 60 mi/hr = 1 mi/min, then the distance traveled in 20 minutes is less than 20 miles. Therefore, the car must have gone at least 1 mi/min at some time $t < 20$. Let t_1 be the first instant the car's speed is 1 mi/min. Then the car traveled $r < t_1$ miles during the time interval $[0, t_1)$. Now apply the mean-value theorem on the interval $[t_1, 20]$.

59. The bob attains maximum speed of A_ω at the equilibrium point.

SECTION 4.10

1. (a) -2 units/sec (b) 4 units/sec **3.** 9 units/sec **5.** $\dfrac{-12 \sin t \cos t}{\sqrt{16 \cos^2 t + 4 \sin^2 t}}$; $-\frac{3}{5}\sqrt{10}$ **7.** $-\frac{2}{27}$ m/min, $-\frac{8}{3}$ m^2/min

9. $\frac{1}{2}\alpha\, k\sqrt{3}$ cm^2/min **11.** decreasing 7 in.^{2}/sec **13.** boat A **15.** $-\frac{119}{5}$ ft^2/sec **17.** 10 ft^3/hr

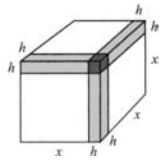
19. $\frac{1600}{3}$ ft/min, $\frac{2800}{3}$ ft/min **21.** 0.5634 lb/sec **23.** dropping $1/2\pi$ in./min **25.** $10/\pi$ cm^3/min **27.** decreasing 0.04 rad/min

29. 5π mi/min **31.** $\frac{4}{130} \cong 0.031$ rad/sec **33.** 0.1 ft/min **35.** decreasing 0.12 rad/sec **37.** increasing $\frac{4}{101}$ rad/min

39. $-\dfrac{15}{\sqrt{82}}$ ft/sec **41.** 4.961 m/sec **43.** 4

SECTION 4.11

1. $dV = 3x^2h$
$\Delta V - dV = 3xh^2 + h^3$ (see figure)



3. $10 + \frac{1}{150}$ taking $x = 1000$; 10.0067 **5.** $2 - \frac{1}{64}$ taking $x = 16$; 1.9844 **7.** 8.15 taking $x = 32$; 8.1491 **9.** 0.719; 0.7193

11. 0.531; 0.5317 **13.** 1.6 **15.** $2\pi rht$ **17.** error ≤ 0.01 ft **19.** 98 gallons **23.** 0.00307 sec **25.** within $\frac{1}{2}$%

27. (a) and (b) are true **31.** $m = f'(x)$

SECTION 4.12

1. (a) $x_{n+1} = \dfrac{x_n}{2} + \dfrac{12}{x_n}$ (b) $x_4 \cong 4.89898$ **3.** (a) $x_{n+1} = \dfrac{2x_n}{3} + \dfrac{25}{3}\left(\dfrac{1}{x_n}\right)^2$ (b) $x_4 \cong 2.92402$

5. (a) $x_{n+1} = \dfrac{x_n \sin x_n + \cos x_n}{\sin x_n + 1}$ (b) $x_4 \cong 0.73909$ **7.** (a) $x_{n+1} = \dfrac{6 + x_n}{2\sqrt{x_n + 3} - 1}$ (b) $x_4 \cong 2.30278$ **9.** $x_n = (-1)^{n-1}2^n x_1$

11. (c) $x_4 \cong 1.6777$, $f(x_4) \cong 0.00020$ **13.** (b) $x_4 \cong 2.23607$, $f(x_4) \cong 0.00001$ **15.** (b) $\dfrac{1}{2.7153} \cong 0.36828$

17. (b) $x_3 \cong 2.98827$; local min **19.** $r_1 \cong 2.029$, $r_2 \cong 4.913$

Chapter 4. Review Exercises

1. $c = \pm\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}$ **3.** $c = \pm\sqrt{7/3}$ **5.** $c = 1 + \sqrt{3}$ **7.** f is not differentiable on $(-1, 1)$. **9.** violates the mean-value theorem

11. increasing on $(-\infty, -1] \cup [0, \infty)$; decreasing on $[-1, 0]$
critical pts. $-1, 0$; $f(-1) = 2$ local max, $f(0) = 1$ local min

13. increasing on $(-\infty, -2] \cup [-\frac{4}{5}, \infty)$; decreasing on $[-2, -\frac{4}{5}]$
critical pts. $-2, -\frac{4}{5}, 1$; $f(-2) = 0$ local max, $f(-\frac{4}{5}) = -\frac{432}{5^5}$ local min

15. increasing on $[-1, 1]$; decreasing on $(-\infty, -1] \cup [1, \infty)$
critical pts. $-1, 1$; $f(-1) = -\frac{1}{2}$ local min, $f(1) = \frac{1}{2}$ local max

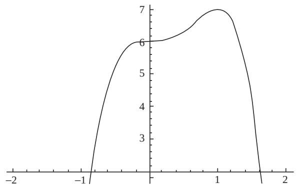
17. critical pts. $-1, -\frac{1}{3}$; $f(-1) = 1$ local max, $f(-\frac{1}{3}) = \frac{23}{27}$ local min;
$f(-2) = -1$ endpoint and absolute min, $f(1) = 5$ endpoint and absolute max

19. critical pt. $\sqrt{2}$; $f(\sqrt{2}) = 4$ absolute min, $f(4) = 16.25$ endpoint and absolute max

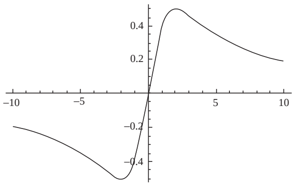
21. critical pt. $\frac{2}{3}$; $f(\frac{2}{3}) = \frac{2}{9}\sqrt{3}$ absolute max, $f(1) = 0$ endpoint min; no local or absolute min

23. vertical: $x = 4$, $x = -3$; horizontal: $y = 3$ **25.** vertical: $x = 1$; oblique: $y = x$ **27.** vertical cusp

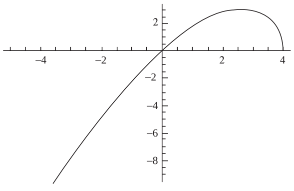
29.



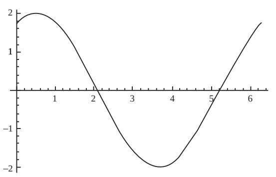
31.



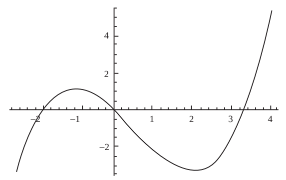
33.



35.



37.



39. (a) $3 \times 3 \times 3$ (b) $3\sqrt{2} \times 3\sqrt{2} \times 3/2$ **41.** $P/3 \times P/6$ **43.** $[0, \frac{1}{6}\pi] \cup [\frac{1}{2}\pi, \frac{5}{6}\pi] \cup [\frac{3}{2}\pi, 2\pi]$

45. (b) $x(17) \cong 4.25$, $v(17) \cong 0.1172$, $a(17) \cong 0.0032$ **47.** 1520 ft. **49.** 120 ft/min **51.** 15 mi/hr **53.** $\frac{1}{6}$ ft/min

55. $f(4.2) \cong 2.5375$ **57.** $\tan 43° \cong 0.9302$ **59.** (a) $x_{n+1} = \dfrac{2x_n^3 + 10}{3x_n^2}$ (b) $x_4 \cong 2.15443$, $f(2.15443) \cong 9.99993$

CHAPTER 5

SECTION 5.2

1. $L_f(P) = \frac{5}{8}, U_f(P) = \frac{11}{8}$ **3.** $L_f(P) = \frac{9}{64}, U_f(P) = \frac{37}{64}$ **5.** $L_f(P) = \frac{17}{16}, U_f(P) = \frac{25}{16}$ **7.** $L_f(P) = \frac{3}{16}, U_f(P) = \frac{43}{32}$

9. $L_f(P) = \frac{1}{6}\pi, U_f(P) = \frac{11}{12}\pi$ **11.** (a) $L_f(P) \le U_f(P)$ but $3 \not\le 2$

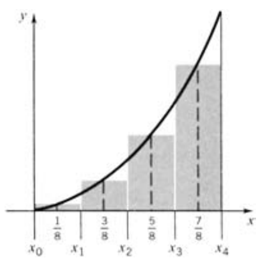
(b) $L_f(P) \le \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)\,dx \le U_f(P)$ but $3 \not\le 2 \le 6$

(c) $L_f(P) \le \int_{-1}^{1} f(x)\,dx \le U_f(P)$ but $3 \le 10 \not\le 6$

13. (a) $L_f(P) = -3x_1(x_1 - x_0) - 3x_2(x_2 - x_1) - \cdots - 3x_n(x_n - x_{n-1})$ (b) $-\frac{3}{2}(b^2 - a^2)$ **15.** $\int_{-1}^{2} (x^2 + 2x - 3)\,dx$

$U_f(P) = -3x_0(x_1 - x_0) - 3x_1(x_2 - x_1) - \cdots - 3x_{n-1}(x_n - x_{n-1})$

17. $\int_0^{2x} t^2 \sin(2t + 1)\,dt$ **19.**



21. (a) $L_f(P) = \frac{25}{32}$

(b) $S^*(P) = \frac{15}{16}$

(c) $U_f(P) = \frac{39}{32}$

(d) $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = 1$

23. $\frac{1}{4}$

25. necessarily holds: $L_g(P) \le \int_a^b g(x)\,dx < \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \le U_f(P)$ **27.** necessarily holds: $L_g(P) \le \int_a^b g(x)\,dx < \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$

29. necessarily holds: $U_f(P) \ge \int_a^b f(x)\,dx > \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$ **33.** (b) $n = 25$ (c) 3.0

41. (a) $L_f(P) \cong 0.6105$, $U_f(P) \cong 0.7105$ (b) $1/2[L_f(P) + U_f(P)] = 0.6605$ (c) $S^*(P) \cong 0.6684$

43. (a) $L_f(P) \cong 0.53138$ $U_f(P) \cong 0.73138$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}[L_f(P) + U_f(P)] = 0.63138$ (c) $S^*(P) \cong 0.63926$

SECTION 5.3

1. (a) 5 (b) -2 (c) -1 (d) 0 (e) -4 (f) 1

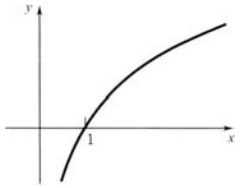
5. (a) $F(0) = 0$ (b) $F'(x) = x\sqrt{x+1}$ (c) $F'(2) = 2\sqrt{3}$ (d) $F(2) = \int_0^2 t\sqrt{t+1}\,dt$ (e) $-F(x) = \int_x^0 t\sqrt{t+1}\,dt$

7. (a) $\frac{1}{10}$ (b) $\frac{1}{9}$ (c) $\frac{4}{37}$ (d) $\dfrac{-2x}{(x^2+9)^2}$ **9.** (a) $\sqrt{2}$ (b) 0 (c) $-\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{5}$ (d) $-(\sqrt{x^2+1}+x^2/\sqrt{x^2+1})$

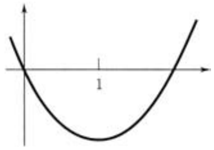
11. (a) -1 (b) 1 (c) 0 (d) $-\pi \sin \pi x$ **13.** (a) Since $P_1 \subseteq P_2$, $U_f(P_2) \le U_f(P_1)$. (b) Since $P_1 \subseteq P_2$, $L_f(P_1) \le L_f(P_2)$.

15. constant functions **17.** $x = 1$ is a critical number; F has a local minimum at $x = 1$.

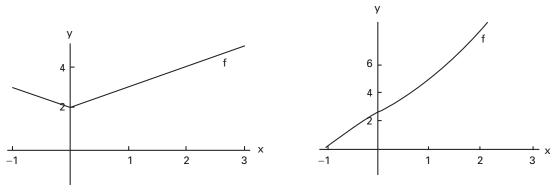
19. (a) F is increasing on $(0, \infty)$. (b) The graph of F is concave down on $(0, \infty)$. (c)



21. (a) f is continuous; Theorem 5.3.5
(b) $F'(x) = f(x)$ and f is differentiable; $F''(x) = f'(x)$
(c) $F'(1) = f(1) = 0$
(d) $F''(1) = f'(1) > 0$
(e) $F(0) = 0$, $F'(x) < 0$ on $(0, 1)$, $F''(x) > 0$ on $(0, \infty)$



23. (a)



(b) $F(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{5}{2}, & -1 \le x \le 0 \\ 2x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{5}{2}, & 0 < x \le 3 \end{cases}$

(c) f is continuous at $x = 0$, but not differentiable; F is continuous and differentiable at $x = 0$.

25. $F'(x) = 3x^5 \cos(x^3)$. **27.** $F'(x) = 2x[\sin^2(x^2) - x^2]$. **29.** (a) 0 (b) 2 (c) 2 **31.** (a) $f(0) = \frac{1}{2}$ (b) 2, -2

37. (a) $F'(x) = 0$ at $x = -1, 4$;
F increasing on $(-\infty, -1]$, $[4, \infty)$;
F decreasing on $[-1, 4]$
(b) $F(x) = 0$ at $x = \frac{3}{2}$;
the graph of F is concave up on $(\frac{3}{2}, \infty)$; concave down on $(-\infty, \frac{3}{2})$

39. (a) $F'(x) = 0$ at $x = 0, \frac{\pi}{2}, \pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi$;
F increasing on $[\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi]$, $[\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi]$;
F decreasing on $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$, $[\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$
(b) $F''(x) = 0$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$;
the graph of F is concave up on $(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4})$, $(\frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4})$;
the graph of F is concave down on $(0, \frac{\pi}{4})$, $(\frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4})$, $(\frac{7\pi}{4}, 2\pi)$

SECTION 5.4

1. -2 **3.** 1 **5.** $\frac{28}{3}$ **7.** $\frac{32}{3}$ **9.** $\frac{2}{3}$ **11.** $\frac{13}{2}$ **13.** $-\frac{4}{15}$ **15.** $\frac{1}{18}(2^{18} - 1)$ **17.** $\frac{1}{6}a^2$ **19.** $\frac{7}{4}$

21. $\frac{21}{2}$ **23.** 1 **25.** 2 **27.** $2 - \sqrt{2}$ **29.** 0 **31.** $\frac{\pi}{9} - 2\sqrt{3}$ **33.** $\sqrt{13} - 2$ **35.** $F'(x) = (x+2)^2$

37. $F'(x) = \sec(2x+1)\tan(2x+1)$ **39.** (a) $\displaystyle\int_2^x \frac{dt}{t}$ (b) $\displaystyle -3 + \int_2^x \frac{dt}{t}$ **41.** $\dfrac{32}{2}$ **43.** $2 + \sqrt{2}$ **45.** (a) 3/2 (b) 5/2

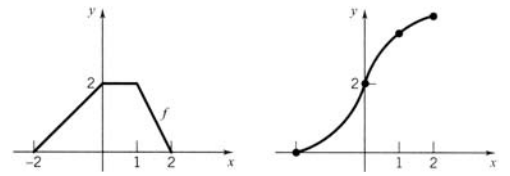
47. (a) 4/3 (b) 4 **49.** valid **51.** not valid; $1/x^3$ is not defined at $x = 0$.

53. (a) $x(t) = 5t^2 - \frac{1}{3}t^3, 0 \leq t \leq 10$ (b) At $t = 5$; $x(5) = \frac{250}{3}$ **55.** $\frac{13}{2}$ **57.** $\frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2} + 2\pi$

59. (a)

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}x^2 + 2x + 2, & -2 \leq x \leq 0 \\ 2x + 2, & 0 < x \leq 1 \\ -x^2 + 4x + 1, & 1 < x \leq 2 \end{cases}$$

(b)



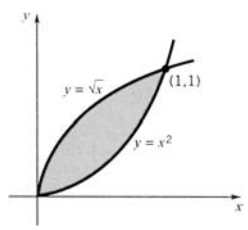
(c) f is continuous on $[-2, 2]$; f is differentiable on $(-2, 0), (0, 1), (1, 2)$; g is differentiable on $(-2, 2)$.

63. $f(x)$ and $f(x) - f(a)$, respectively

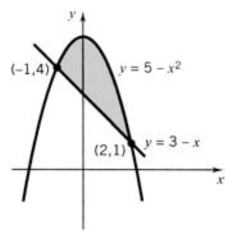
SECTION 5.5

1. $\frac{9}{4}$ **3.** $\frac{38}{3}$ **5.** $\frac{47}{15}$ **7.** $\frac{5}{3}$ **9.** $\frac{1}{2}$

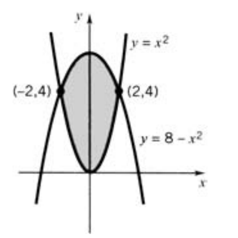
11. area $= \frac{1}{3}$



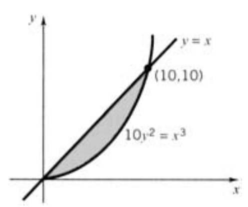
13. area $= \frac{9}{2}$



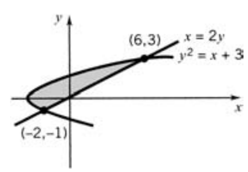
15. area $= \frac{64}{3}$



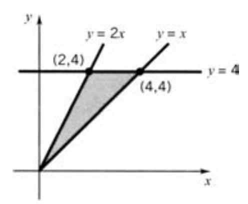
17. area = 10



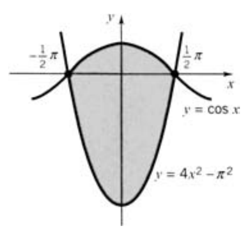
19. area $= \frac{32}{3}$



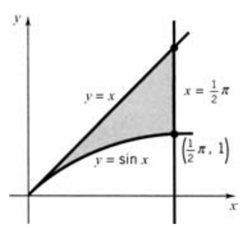
21. area = 4



23. area = $2 + \frac{2}{3}\pi^3$

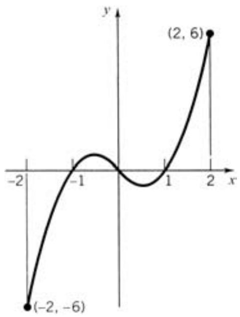


25. area = $\frac{1}{8}\pi^2 - 1$

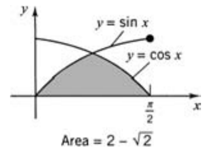


27. (a) $-\frac{91}{6}$, the area of the region bounded by f and the x-axis for $x \in [-3, -2] \cup [3, 4]$ minus the area of the region bounded by f and the x-axis for $x \in [-2, 3]$.
(b) $\frac{53}{2}$ (c) $\frac{125}{6}$

29. (a) 0 (b) 5



31. (a) $\frac{65}{4}$ (b) 17.87 **33.** $\frac{10}{3}$ **35.** area $= 2 - \sqrt{2}$



37. 2.86

39. (b) $\frac{608}{15}$ (c) $h \cong 9.4489$

SECTION 5.6

1. $-\dfrac{1}{3x^3} + C$ **3.** $\frac{1}{2}ax^2 + bx + C$ **5.** $2\sqrt{1+x} + C$ **7.** $\dfrac{1}{2}x^2 + \dfrac{1}{x} + C$ **9.** $\frac{1}{3}t^3 - \frac{1}{2}(a+b)t^2 + abt + C$

11. $\frac{2}{9}t^{9/2} - \frac{2}{5}(a+b)t^{5/2} + 2abt^{1/2} + C$ **13.** $\frac{1}{2}[g(x)]^2 + C$ **15.** $\frac{1}{2}\sec^2 x + C$ **17.** $-\dfrac{1}{4x+1} + C$ **19.** $x^2 - x - 2$

21. $\frac{1}{2}ax^2 + bx - 2a - 2b$ **23.** $3 - \cos x$ **25.** $x^3 - x^2 + x + 2$ **27.** $\frac{1}{12}(x^4 - 2x^3 + 2x + 23)$ **29.** $x - \cos x + 3$

31. $\frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{3}{2}x^2 - \frac{1}{3}x + 3$ **33.** $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\displaystyle\int f(x)\,dx\right) = f(x)$; $\displaystyle\int \dfrac{d}{dx}[f(x)]\,dx = f(x) + C$

35. (a) 34 units to the right of the origin (b) 44 units **37.** (a) $v(t) = 2(t+1)^{1/2} - 1$ (b) $x(t) = \frac{4}{3}(t+1)^{3/2} - t - \frac{4}{3}$

39. (a) 4.4 sec (b) 193.6 ft **43.** 42 sec **45.** $x(t) = x_0 + v_0 t + At^2 + Bt^3$ **47.** at $(\frac{160}{3}, 50)$ **49.** $A = -\frac{5}{2}, B = 2$

51. (a) at $t = \frac{11}{6}\pi$ sec (b) at $t = \frac{13}{6}\pi$ sec **53.** mean-value theorem **55.** $v(t) = v_0(1 - 2tv_0)^{-1}$

57. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left[\displaystyle\int (\cos x - 2\sin x)\,dx\right] = \cos x - 2\sin x$; $\displaystyle\int \dfrac{d}{dx}[f(x)]\,dx = \cos x - 2\sin x + C$ **59.** $f(x) = \sin x + 2\cos x + 1$

61. $f(x) = \frac{1}{12}x^4 - \frac{1}{2}x^3 + \frac{5}{2}x^2 + 4x - 3$

SECTION 5.7

1. $\dfrac{1}{3(2-3x)} + C$ **3.** $\frac{1}{3}(2x+1)^{3/2} + C$ **5.** $\dfrac{4}{7a}(ax+b)^{7/4} + C$ **7.** $-\dfrac{1}{8(4t^2+9)} + C$ **9.** $\frac{4}{15}(1+x^3)^{5/4} + C$

11. $-\dfrac{1}{4(2+s^2)^2} + C$ **13.** $\sqrt{x^2+1} + C$ **15.** $-\frac{5}{4}(x^2+1)^{-2} + C$ **17.** $-4(x^{1/4}+1)^{-1} + C$ **19.** $-\dfrac{b^3}{2a^4}\sqrt{1 - a^4x^4} + C$

21. $\frac{15}{8}$ **23.** 0 **25.** $\frac{1}{3}[a]^3$ **27.** $\frac{13}{3}$ **29.** $\frac{39}{400}$ **31.** $\frac{2}{5}(x+1)^{5/2} - \frac{2}{3}(x+1)^{3/2} + C$ **33.** $\frac{1}{10}(2x-1)^{5/2} + \frac{1}{6}(2x-1)^{3/2} + C$

35. $4\sqrt{1+\sqrt{x}} + C$ **37.** $\frac{16}{3}\sqrt{2} - \frac{14}{3}$ **39.** $y = \frac{1}{3}(x^2+1)^{3/2} + \frac{2}{3}$ **41.** $\frac{1}{3}\sin(3x+1) + C$ **43.** $-(\cot \pi x)/\pi + C$

45. $\frac{1}{2}\cos(3-2x) + C$ **47.** $-\frac{1}{5}\cos^5 x + C$ **49.** $-2\cos x^{1/2} + C$ **51.** $\frac{2}{3}(1+\sin x)^{3/2} + C$ **53.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi \sin^2 \pi x + C$

55. $-\frac{1}{3}\pi\cos^3 \pi x + C$ **57.** $\frac{1}{8}\sin^4 x^2 + C$ **59.** $2(1+\tan x)^{1/2} + C$ **61.** $-\sin(1/x) + C$ **63.** $\frac{1}{6}\tan^2(x^3+\pi) + C$

65. 0 **67.** $(\sqrt{3}-1)/\pi$ **69.** $\frac{1}{4}$ **73.** $\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{20}\sin 10x + C$ **75.** $\frac{\pi}{4}$ **77.** 2 **79.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ **81.** $(4\sqrt{3}-6)/3\pi$

83. (a) $\frac{1}{2}\sec^2 x + C$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x + C'$ (c) $\frac{1}{2}\sec^2 x + C = \frac{1}{2}(1+\tan^2 x) + C = \frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x + C'$

SECTION 5.8

1. yes; $\int_a^b [f(x)-g(x)]\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx - \int_a^b g(x)\,dx > 0$ **3.** yes; if $f(x) \le g(x)$ for all $x \in [a,b]$ then $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \le \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$

5. no; take $f(x)=0$, $g(x)=-1$ on $[0,1]$ **7.** no; take any odd function on an interval of the form $[-c,c]$

9. no; $\int_{-1}^{1} x\,dx = 0$, but $\int_{-1}^{1} |x|\,dx = 1$ **11.** yes; $U_f(P) \ge \int_a^b f(x)\,dx = 0$ **13.** no; $L_f(P) \le \int_a^b f(x)\,dx = 0$ **15.** yes

17. $\dfrac{2x}{\sqrt{2x^2+7}}$ **19.** $-f(x)$ **21.** $-\dfrac{2\sin(x^2)}{x}$ **23.** $\dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{2(1+x)}$ **25.** $\dfrac{1}{x}$ **27.** $4x\sqrt{1+4x^2} - \tan x \sec^2 x |\sec x|$ **31.** $\frac{20}{3}$

35. 0 **37.** $\frac{2}{3}\pi + \frac{2}{81}\pi^3 - \sqrt{3}$

SECTION 5.9

1. $A.V. = \frac{1}{2}mc + b, \quad x = \frac{1}{2}c$ **3.** $A.V. = 0, \quad x = 0$ **5.** $A.V = 1, \quad x = \pm 1$ **7.** $A.V. = \frac{2}{3}, \quad x = 1 \pm \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}$

9. $A.V. = 2, \quad x = 4$ **11.** $A.V. = 0, \quad x = 0, \pi, 2\pi$ **13.** $A.V. = \dfrac{b^{n+1}-a^{n+1}}{(n+1)(b-a)}$ **15.** $\dfrac{f(b)-f(a)}{b-a}$

17. $D = \sqrt{x^2+x^4}$; $A.V. = \frac{7}{9}\sqrt{3}$ **19.** (a) The terminal velocity is twice the average velocity.
(b) The average velocity during the first $\frac{1}{2}t$ seconds is one-third of the average velocity during the next $\frac{1}{2}t$ seconds.

23. (a) $v(t) = at$, $x(t) = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + x_0$ (b) $V_{\text{avg}} = \dfrac{1}{t_2-t_1}\displaystyle\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \text{at}\,dt = \dfrac{at_1+at_2}{2} = \dfrac{v(t_1)+v(t_2)}{2}$

25. (a) $M = 24\left(\sqrt{7}-1\right)$; $x_M = \dfrac{4\sqrt{7}+2}{3\sqrt{7}-3}$ (b) $A.V. = 4\left(\sqrt{7}-1\right)$ **27.** (a) $M = \frac{2}{3}kL^{3/2}$, $x_M = \frac{3}{5}L$ (b) $M = \frac{1}{3}kL^3$, $x_M = \frac{1}{4}L$

29. $x_{M_2} = (2M - M_1)L/8M_2$ **31.** $x = \dfrac{2M \pm kL^2}{2kL}$ **39.** (a) $A.V. = 2/\pi$ (b) $c \cong 0.691$

47. (a) $a \cong -3.4743$, $b \cong 3.4743$
(c) $f(c) = A.V. \cong 36.0948$ $c \cong \pm 2.9545$ or $c \cong \pm 1.1274$,

Chapter 5. Review Exercises

1. $\frac{2}{7}x^{7/2} - \frac{4}{3}x^{3/2} + 2x^{1/2} + C$ **3.** $\frac{1}{33}(1+t^3)^{11} + C$ **5.** $\frac{1}{2}(t^{3/2}-1)^3 + C$ **7.** $-\frac{2}{15}(2-x)^{3/2}(4+3x) + C$

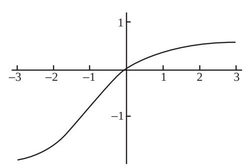
9. $\frac{1}{3}(1+\sqrt{x})^6 + C$ **11.** $2\sqrt{1+\sin x} + C$ **13.** $\frac{1}{3}\tan 3\theta - \frac{1}{3}\cot 3\theta - 4\theta + C$ **15.** $\frac{1}{2}\tan x + C$ **17.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi \sec^3 \pi x + C$

19. $\dfrac{2a}{15b^2}(1+bx)^{3/2}(3bx-2)$ **21.** $\sqrt{1+g^2(x)} + C$ **23.** 9 **25.** $\frac{1}{8}$ **27.** $4 - \frac{1}{4}(6)^{4/3}$

29. (a) -2 (b) 6 (c) $f_{\text{avg}} = 4$ (d) $\displaystyle\int_2^3 f = -2.$ **31.** $\frac{9}{2}$ **33.** $\frac{9}{2}$ **35.** $\frac{3}{4}$ **37.** $\dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$ **39.** $\dfrac{2x}{1+x^4} - \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$

41. $-\csc x$ **43.** (a) $x = 0$ (b) $F'(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2+2x+2} > 0$ (c) concave up on $(-\infty,-1)$, concave down on $(-1,\infty)$

(d)

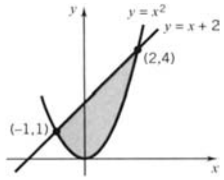


45. $\dfrac{8+\pi^2}{2\pi}$ **47.** $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ **49.** $\displaystyle\int_a^b \max(f(x),0)\,dx = \int_a^b \frac{|f(x)|+f(x)}{2}\,dx$ **51.** $\frac{4}{9}a$

CHAPTER 6

SECTION 6.1

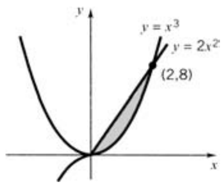
1.



(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{2}[(x+2)-x^2]\,dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1}[\sqrt{y}-(-\sqrt{y})]\,dy+\int_{1}^{4}[\sqrt{y}-(y-2)]\,dy$

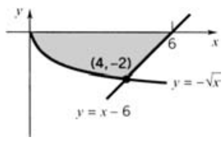
3.



(a) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2}[2x^2-x^3]\,dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{8}\left[y^{1/3}-\left(\frac{1}{2}y\right)^{1/2}\right]dy$

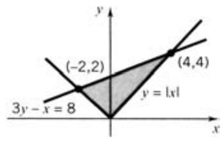
5.



(a) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{4}[0-(-\sqrt{x})]\,dx+\int_{4}^{6}[0-(x-6)]\,dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{0}[(y+6)-y^2]\,dy$

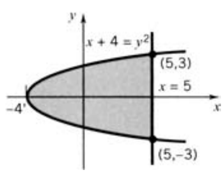
7.



(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{0}\left[\frac{8+x}{3}-(-x)\right]dx+\int_{0}^{4}\left[\frac{8+x}{3}-x\right]dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2}[y-(-y)]\,dy+\int_{2}^{4}[y-(3y-8)]\,dy$

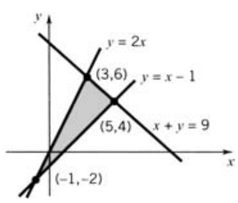
9.



(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-4}^{5}[\sqrt{4+x}-(-\sqrt{4+x})]\,dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{3}[5-(y^2-4)]\,dy$

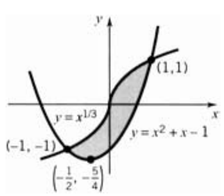
11.



(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{3}[2x-(x-1)]\,dx+\int_{3}^{5}[(9-x)-(x-1)]\,dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{4}\left[(y+1)-\frac{1}{2}y\right]dy+\int_{4}^{6}\left[(9-y)-\frac{1}{2}y\right]dy$

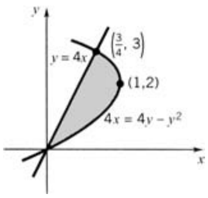
13.



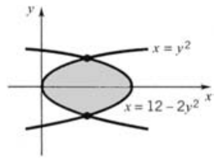
(a) $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{1}[x^{1/3}-(x^2+x-1)]\,dx$

(b) $\displaystyle\int_{-5/4}^{-1}\left[\left(-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4y+5}\right)-\left(-\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4y+5}\right)\right]dy+\int_{-1}^{1}\left[\left(-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4y+5}\right)-y^3\right]dy$

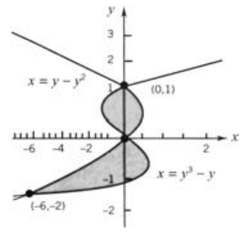
15. area $= \frac{9}{8}$



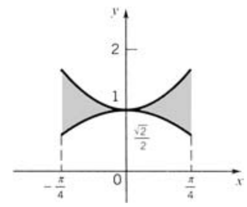
17. area $= 32$



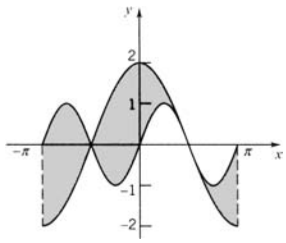
19. area $= \frac{37}{12}$



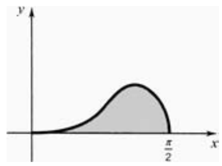
21. area $= 2 - \sqrt{2}$



23. area $= 8$



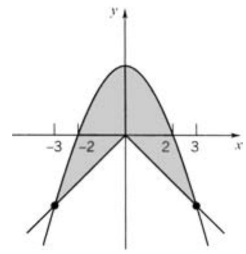
25. area $= \frac{1}{5}$



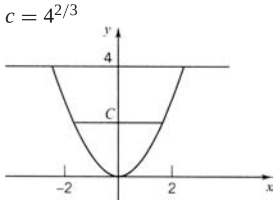
27. 4

29. $\frac{39}{2}$

31. area $= 27$



33. $c = 4^{2/3}$

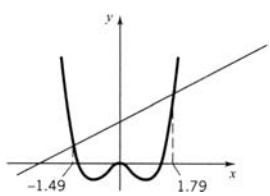


35. $A = \int_0^{\sqrt{3}} \left[\sqrt{4 - y^2} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}y\right] dy$

37. $A = \int_0^2 [\sqrt{4 - x^2} - (2 - \sqrt{4x - x^2})]\, dx$

39. The ratio is $\dfrac{1}{n+1}$.

41. area $= 7.93$



43. 1536 cu in. $\cong$ 0.89 cu ft

45. (a) $A(b) = 2\sqrt{b} - 2$
(b) $A(b) \to \infty$ as $x \to \infty$

SECTION 6.2

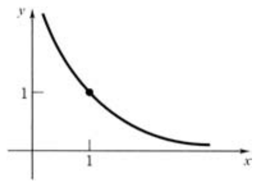
1. $\frac{1}{3}\pi$ **3.** $\frac{1944}{5}\pi$ **5.** $\frac{5}{14}\pi$ **7.** $\frac{3790}{21}\pi$ **9.** $\frac{72}{5}\pi$ **11.** $\frac{32}{3}\pi$ **13.** π **15.** $\dfrac{\pi^2}{24}(\pi^2 + 6\pi + 6)$

17. $\frac{16}{3}\pi$ **19.** $\frac{768}{7}\pi$ **21.** $\frac{2}{5}\pi$ **23.** $\frac{128}{3}\pi$ **25.** $\frac{16}{3}\pi$ **27.** (a) $\frac{16}{3}r^3$ (b) $\frac{4}{3}\sqrt{3}\,r^3$ **29.** (a) $\frac{512}{15}$ (b) $\frac{64}{15}\pi$ (c) $\frac{128}{15}\sqrt{3}$

31. (a) 32 (b) 4π (c) $8\sqrt{3}$ **33.** (a) $\frac{64}{3}$ (b) $\frac{16}{3}$ **35.** (a) $\sqrt{3}$ (b) 4 **37.** $\frac{4}{3}\pi ab^2$ **39.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi h(R^2 + rR + r^2)$

41. (a) $31\frac{1}{4}\%$ (b) $14\frac{22}{27}\%$ **43.** $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi(2r^3 - 3r^2h + h^3)$

45. (a)



(b) $A(b) = \int_1^b x^{-2/3}dx = 3(b^{1/3} - 1)$

(c) $V(b) = \int_1^b \pi(x^{-2/3})^2\,dx = 3\pi(1 - b^{-1/3})$

(d) As $b \to \infty$, $A(b) \to \infty$ and $V(b) \to 3\pi$

47. $\dfrac{1}{\pi}$ ft/min when the depth is 1 foot; $\dfrac{2}{3\pi}$ ft/min when the depth is 2 feet. **49.** (b) $x = 0,\ x = 2^{1/4} \cong 1.1892$; (c) 0.9428; (d) 5.1234

51. $\frac{40}{3}\pi$ **53.** $4\pi - \frac{1}{2}\pi^2$ **55.** 250π **57.** (a) $\frac{32}{3}\pi$ (b) $\frac{64}{5}\pi$ **59.** (a) 64π (b) $\frac{1024}{35}\pi$ (c) $\frac{704}{5}\pi$ (d) $\frac{512}{7}\pi$

SECTION 6.3

1. $\frac{2}{3}\pi$ **3.** $\frac{128}{5}\pi$ **5.** $\frac{2}{5}\pi$ **7.** 16π **9.** $\frac{72}{5}\pi$ **11.** 36π **13.** 8π **15.** $\frac{1944}{5}\pi$ **17.** $\frac{5}{14}\pi$

19. $\frac{72}{5}\pi$ **21.** 64π **23.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi$ **25.** (a) $V = \int_0^1 2\pi x(1 - \sqrt{x})\,dx$ (b) $V = \int_0^1 \pi y^4 dy$; $V = \dfrac{1}{5}\pi$

27. (a) $V = \int_0^1 \pi(x - x^4)\,dx$ (b) $V = \int_0^1 2\pi y(\sqrt{y} - y^2)\,dy$; $V = \frac{3}{10}\pi$

29. (a) $V = \int_0^1 2\pi x^3\,dx$ (b) $V = \int_0^1 \pi(1 - y)\,dy$; $V = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$ **31.** $\frac{4}{3}\pi ba^2$ **33.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi a^3\sqrt{3}$

35. (a) 64π (b) $\frac{1024}{35}\pi$ (c) $\frac{704}{5}\pi$ (d) $\frac{512}{7}\pi$ **37.** (a) $F'(x) = x\cos x$ (b) $V = \pi^2 - 2\pi$

39. (a) $V = \int_0^1 2\sqrt{3}\,\pi x^2 dx + \int_1^2 2\pi x\sqrt{4 - x^2}\,dx$ (b) $V = \int_0^{\sqrt{3}} \pi\left(4 - \dfrac{4}{3}y^2\right)dy$ (c) $V = \dfrac{8\pi\sqrt{3}}{3}$

41. (a) $V = \int_0^1 2\sqrt{3}\pi x(2 - x)\,dx + \int_1^2 2\pi(2 - x)\sqrt{4 - x^2}\,dx$ (b) $V = \int_0^{\sqrt{3}} \pi\left[\left(2 - \dfrac{y}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2 - \left(2 - \sqrt{4 - y^2}\right)^2\right]dy$

43. (a) $V = 2\int_{b-a}^{b+a} 2\pi x\sqrt{a^2 - (x - b)^2}\,dx$ (b) $V = \int_{-a}^{a} \pi\left[\left(b + \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}\right)^2 - \left(b - \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}\right)^2\right]dy$

45. $V = \int_0^r 2\pi x\left(-\left(\dfrac{h}{r}\right)x + h\right)dx = \dfrac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$ **47.** $\dfrac{\pi r^4}{2} - \pi a^2 r^2 + \dfrac{\pi a^4}{2}$

49. (b) $x = 0, x = 1.8955$ (c) 0.4208 (d) 2.6226

SECTION 6.4

1. $\left(\frac{12}{5}, \frac{3}{4}\right), V_x = 8\pi, V_y = \frac{128}{5}\pi$ **3.** $\left(\frac{3}{7}, \frac{12}{25}\right), V_x = \frac{2}{5}\pi, V_y = \frac{5}{14}\pi$ **5.** $\left(\frac{7}{3}, \frac{10}{3}\right), V_x = \frac{80}{3}\pi, V_y = \frac{56}{3}\pi$ **7.** $\left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{22}{5}\right), V_x = \frac{704}{15}\pi, V_y = 8\pi$

9. $\left(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{2}{5}\right), V_x = \frac{4}{15}\pi, V_y = \frac{4}{15}\pi$ **11.** $\left(\frac{45}{28}, \frac{93}{70}\right), V_x = \frac{31}{5}\pi, V_y = \frac{15}{2}\pi$ **13.** $\left(3, \frac{5}{3}\right), V_x = \frac{40}{3}\pi, V_y = 24\pi$ **15.** $\left(\frac{5}{2}, 5\right)$ **17.** $\left(1, \frac{8}{5}\right)$

19. $\left(\frac{10}{3}, \frac{40}{21}\right)$ **21.** $(2, 4)$ **23.** $\left(-\frac{3}{5}, 0\right)$ **25.** (a) $(0, 0)$ (b) $\left(\dfrac{14}{5\pi}, \dfrac{14}{5\pi}\right)$ (c) $\left(0, \dfrac{14}{5\pi}\right)$ **27.** $V = \pi ab(2c + \sqrt{a^2 + b^2})$

29. (a) $\left(\frac{2}{3}a, \frac{1}{3}h\right)$ (b) $\left(\frac{2}{3}a + \frac{1}{3}b, \frac{1}{3}h\right)$ (c) $\left(\frac{1}{3}a + \frac{1}{3}b, \frac{1}{3}h\right)$ **31.** (a) $\frac{1}{3}\pi R^3 \sin^2\theta(2\sin\theta + \cos\theta)$ (b) $\dfrac{2R\sin\theta(2\sin\theta + \cos\theta)}{3(\pi\sin\theta + 2\cos\theta)}$

33. An annular region; see Exercise 25(a). **35.** (a) $A = \frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\left(\frac{16}{35}, \frac{16}{35}\right)$ (c) $V = \frac{16}{35}\pi$ (d) $V = \frac{16}{35}\pi$

37. (a) $A = \frac{250}{3}$ (b) $\left(-\frac{9}{8}, \frac{290}{21}\right) \cong (-1.125, 13.8095)$

SECTION 6.5

1. 817.5 ft-lb **3.** $\frac{1}{3}(64 - 7^{3/2})$ ft-lb **5.** $\dfrac{35\pi^2}{72} - \dfrac{1}{4}$newton-meters **7.** 625 ft-lb **9.** (a) 25-ft-lb (b) $\frac{225}{4}$ ft-lb
11. 1.95 ft **13.** (a) $(6480\pi + 8640)$ ft-lb (b) $(15, 120\pi + 8640)$ ft-lb **15.** 8437.5 ft-lb
17. (a) $\frac{11}{192}\pi r^2 h^2 \sigma$ ft-lb (b) $\left(\frac{11}{192}\pi r^2 h^2 \sigma + \frac{7}{24}\pi r^2 hk\sigma\right)$ ft-lb **19.** (a) $384\pi\sigma$ newton-meters (b) $480\pi\sigma$ newton-meters
21. 48,000 ft-lb **23.** (a) 20,000 ft-lb (b) 30,000 ft-lb **25.** 796 ft-lb **27.** (a) $\frac{1}{2}\sigma l^2$ ft-lb (b) $\frac{3}{2}l^2\sigma$ ft-lb **29.** 20,800 ft-lb
33. $v = \sqrt{2gh}$ **35.** 94.8 ft-lb **37.** 9.714×10^9 ft-lb **39.** (a) 670 sec or 11 min, 10 sec (b) 1116 sec or 18 min, 36 sec

SECTION 6.6

1. 9000 lb **3.** 1.437×10^8 newtons **5.** 1.7052×10^6 newtons **7.** 2160 lb **9.** $\frac{8000}{3}\sqrt{2}$ lb **11.** 333.33 lb **13.** 2560 lb
15. (a) 41,250 lb (b) 41,250 lb **17.** (a) 297,267 newtons (b) 39,200 newtons at the shallow end; 352,800 newtons at the deep end
19. $F_2 = \dfrac{h_2}{h_1}F_1$ **21.** 2.217×10^6 newtons

Chapter 6. Review Exercises

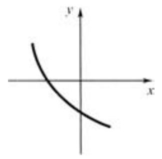
1. (a) $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{2}(2 - x^2 + x)\,dx$ (b) $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{1}(\sqrt{2-y} + y)\,dy$; $\frac{9}{2}$
3. (a) $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{3} 2\sqrt{2x-2}\,dx + \int_{3}^{9}\left(\sqrt{2x-2} - x + 5\right)dx$ (b) $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{4}\left(y - \tfrac{1}{2}y^2 + 4\right)dy$; 18
5. $2\sqrt{2}$ **7.** $\frac{8}{15}$ **9.** (a) $\frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$ (b) $\frac{4}{3}r^3$ **11.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ **13.** $\frac{4}{15}\pi$ **15.** $\frac{3}{5}\pi$ **17.** $\pi\left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\pi\right)$ **19.** 2π **21.** 27π
23. $\frac{72}{5}\pi$ **25.** 8π **27.** $\frac{104}{15}\pi$ **29.** $\frac{64}{3}\pi$ **31.** $\left(0, \frac{8}{5}\right)$ **33.** $\left(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right)$ **35.** $\left(\frac{5}{14}, \frac{38}{35}\right)$; around x-axis: $\frac{38}{15}\pi$, around y-axis: $\frac{5}{6}\pi$
37. $\frac{1}{3}(64 - 7\sqrt{7})$ **39.** (a) 8181.23 ft-lb (b) 6872.23 ft-lb **41.** 1100 ft-lb
43. $1 \times \frac{1}{2}$ side: 1225 newtons; $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}$ side: 612.5 newtons; bottom: 2450 newtons

CHAPTER 7

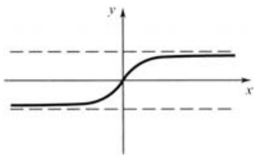
SECTION 7.1

1. $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{1}{5}(x - 3)$ **3.** not one-to-one **5.** $f^{-1}(x) = (x-1)^{1/5}$ **7.** $f^{-1}(x) = [\frac{1}{3}(x-1)]^{1/3}$ **9.** $f^{-1}(x) = 1 - x^{1/3}$
11. $f^{-1}(x) = (x-2)^{1/3} - 1$ **13.** $f^{-1}(x) = x^{5/3}$ **15.** $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{1}{3}(2 - x^{1/3})$ **17.** $f^{-1}(x) = \arcsin(x)$ (to be studied in Section 7.7)
19. $f^{-1}(x) = 1/x$ **21.** not one-to-one **23.** $f^{-1}(x) = \left(\dfrac{1-x}{x}\right)^{1/3}$ **25.** $f^{-1}(x) = (2-x)/(x-1)$ **27.** they are equal

29.



31.



33. (a) $k \geq 1$
(b) $-\sqrt{3} \leq k \leq \sqrt{3}$

35. $f'(x) = 3x^2 \geq 0$ on $(-\infty, \infty)$, $f'(x) = 0$ only at $x = 0$; $(f^{-1})'(9) = \frac{1}{12}$ **37.** $f'(x) = 1 + \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}} > 0$ on $(0, \infty)$; $(f^{-1})'(8) = \frac{2}{3}$

39. $f'(x) = 2 - \sin x > 0$ on $(-\infty, \infty)$; $(f^{-1})'(\pi) = 1$ **41.** $f'(x) = \sec^2 x > 0$ on $(-\pi/2, \pi/2)$; $(f^{-1})'(\sqrt{3}) = \frac{1}{4}$

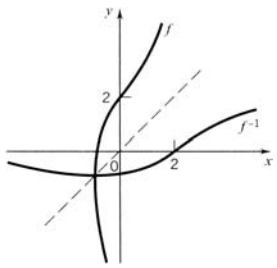
43. $f'(x) = 3x^2 + \dfrac{3}{x^4} > 0$ on $(0, \infty)$; $(f^{-1})'(2) = \frac{1}{6}$ **45.** $(f^{-1})'(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$ **47.** $(f^{-1})'(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$

49. (a) $f'(x) = \dfrac{ad - bc}{(cx+d)^2} \neq 0$ iff $ad - bc \neq 0$ (b) $f^{-1}(x) = \dfrac{dx - b}{a - cx}$ **51.** (a) $f'(x) = \sqrt{1+x^2} > 0$ (b) $(f^{-1})'(0) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$

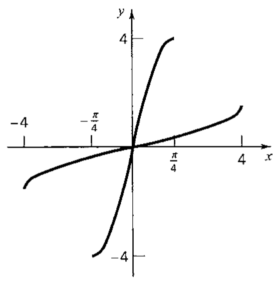
53. (b) If f is increasing, then the graphs of f and g have opposite concavity; if f is decreasing, then the graphs of f and g have the same concavity.

55. $(f^{-1})'(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ **57.** $f^{-1}(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 8x + 25}{9}$, $x \geq 4$ **59.** $f^{-1}(x) = 16 - 12x + 6x^2 - x^3$

61.



63.



SECTION 7.2

1. $\ln 2 + \ln 10 \cong 2.99$ **3.** $2\ln 4 - \ln 10 \cong 0.48$ **5.** $-\ln 10 \cong -2.30$ **7.** $\ln 8 + \ln 9 - \ln 10 \cong 1.98$ **9.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln 2 \cong 0.35$

11. $\displaystyle\int_k^{2k} \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \ln 2$ **13.** 0.406 **15.** (a) 1.65 (b) 1.57 (c) 1.71 **17.** $x = e^2$ **19.** $x = 1, e^2$ **21.** $x = 1$

23. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{\ln x}{x-1} = \left.\frac{d(\ln x)}{dx}\right|_{x=1} = 1$ **25.** $k = n - 1$ **27.** (a) $\ln 3 - \sin 3 \cong 0.96 > 0$; $\ln 2 - \sin 2 \cong -0.22 < 0$ (b) $r \cong 2.2191$ **29.** 1

SECTION 7.3

1. domain $(0, \infty)$, $f'(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$ **3.** domain $(-1, \infty)$, $f'(x) = \dfrac{3x^2}{x^3+1}$ **5.** domain $(-\infty, \infty)$, $f'(x) = \dfrac{x}{1+x^2}$

7. domain all $x \neq \pm 1$, $f'(x) = \dfrac{4x^3}{x^4 - 1}$ **9.** domain $(-\frac{1}{2}, \infty)$, $f'(x) = 2(2x+1)[1 + 2\ln(2x+1)]$

11. domain $(0, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$, $f'(x) = -\dfrac{1}{x(\ln x)^2}$ **13.** domain $(0, \infty)$; $f'(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}\cos(\ln x)$ **15.** $\ln|x+1| + C$ **17.** $-\frac{1}{2}\ln|3 - x^2| + C$

19. $\frac{1}{3}\ln|\sec 3x| + C$ **21.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln|\sec x^2 + \tan x^2| + C$ **23.** $\dfrac{1}{2(3-x^2)} + C$ **25.** $-\ln|2 + \cos x| + C$ **27.** $\ln|\ln x| + C$

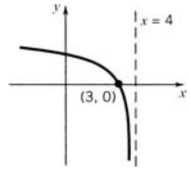
29. $\dfrac{-1}{\ln x} + C$ **31.** $-\ln|\sin x + \cos x| + C$ **33.** $\frac{2}{3}\ln\left[1 + x\sqrt{x}\right] + C$ **35.** $x + 2\ln|\sec x + \tan x| + \tan x + C$ **37.** 1

39. 1 **41.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln\frac{8}{5}$ **43.** $\ln\frac{4}{3}$ **45.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln 2$ **47.** The integrand is not defined at $x = 2$.

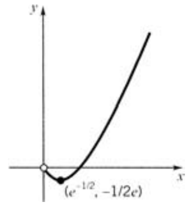
49. $g'(x) = (x^2+1)^2(x-1)^5x^3\left(\dfrac{4x}{x^2+1} + \dfrac{5}{x-1} + \dfrac{3}{x}\right)$ **51.** $g'(x) = \dfrac{x^4(x-1)}{(x+2)(x^2+1)}\left(\dfrac{4}{x} + \dfrac{1}{x-1} - \dfrac{1}{x+2} - \dfrac{2x}{x^2+1}\right)$

53. $\frac{1}{3}\pi - \frac{1}{2}\ln 3$ **55.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi - \frac{1}{2}\ln 2$ **57.** $\frac{15}{8} - \ln 4$ **59.** $\pi\ln 9$ **61.** $2\pi\ln(2 + \sqrt{3})$ **63.** $\ln 5$ ft **65.** $(-1)^{n-1}\dfrac{(n-1)!}{x^n}$

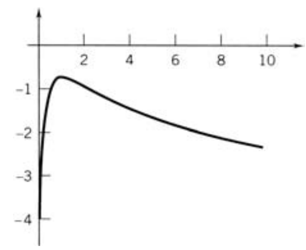
69. (i) domain $(-\infty, 4)$
(ii) decreases throughout
(iii) no extreme values
(iv) concave down throughout; no pts of inflection
(v)



71. (i) domain $(0, \infty)$
(ii) decreases on $(0, e^{-1/2})$, increases on $[e^{-1/2}, \infty]$
(iii) $f(e^{-1/2}) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-1}$ local and absolute min.
(iv) concave down on $(0, e^{-3/2})$; concave up on $(e^{3/2}, \infty)$ pt of inflection at $(e^{-3/2}, -\frac{3}{2}e^{-3})$
(v)



73. (i) domain $(0, \infty)$
(ii) increases on $(0, 1]$; decreases on $[1, \infty)$
(iii) $f(1) = \ln \frac{1}{2}$ local and absolute max
(iv) concave down on (0,2.0582); concave up on $(2.0582, \infty)$; point of inflection $(2.0582, -0.9338)$ (approx.)
(v)



75. average slope $= \dfrac{1}{b-a}\displaystyle\int_a^b \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \dfrac{1}{b-a}\ln(b/a)$ **77.** x-intercept: 1; absolute min at $x = e^{-2}$; absolute max at $x = 10$

79. x-intercepts: 1, 23.1407; absolute max at $x \cong 4.8105$, absolute min at $x = 100$

81. (a) $v(t) = 2 + 2t - t^2 + 3\ln(t+1)$ (c) max velocity at $t \cong 1.5811$; min velocity at $t = 0$

83. (b) x-coordinates of points of intersection: $x = 1, 3.30278$
(c) $A \cong 2.34042$

85. (a) $f'(x) = \dfrac{1 - 2\ln x}{x^3}$; $f''(x) = \dfrac{-5 + 6\ln x}{x^4}$
(b) $f(1) = 0$; $f'(e^{1/2}) = 0$; $f''(e^{5/6}) = 0$
(c) $f(x) > 0$ on $(1, \infty)$; $f'(x) > 0$ on $(0, e^{1/2})$; $f''(x) > 0$ on $(e^{5/6}, \infty)$;
$f(x) < 0$ on $(0, 1)$; $f'(x) < 0$ on $(e^{1/2}, \infty)$; $f''(x) < 0$ on $(0, e^{5/6})$

SECTION 7.4

1. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -2e^{-2x}$ **3.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 2x\,e^{x^2-1}$ **5.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = e^x\left(\dfrac{1}{x} + \ln x\right)$ **7.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -(x^{-1} + x^{-2})e^{-x}$ **9.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2}(e^x - e^{-x})$

11. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{1}{2}e^{\sqrt{x}}\left(\dfrac{1}{x} + \dfrac{\ln\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}\right)$ **13.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4x\,e^{x^2}(e^{x^2} + 1)$ **15.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = x^2\,e^x$ **17.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{2e^x}{(e^x + 1)^2}$ **19.** $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 4x^3$

21. $2e^{2x}\cos(e^{2x})$ **23.** $f'(x) = -e^{-2x}(2\cos x + \sin x)$ **25.** $\frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + C$ **27.** $\dfrac{1}{k}e^{kx} + C$ **29.** $\frac{1}{2}e^{x^2} + C$ **31.** $-e^{1/x} + C$

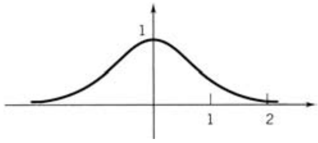
33. $\frac{1}{2}x^2 + C$ **35.** $-8e^{-x/2} + C$ **37.** $2\sqrt{e^x + 1} + C$ **39.** $\frac{1}{4}\ln(2e^{2x} + 3) + C$ **41.** $e^{\sin x} + C$ **43.** $e - 1$ **45.** $\frac{1}{6}(1 - \pi^{-6})$

47. $2 - \dfrac{1}{e}$ **49.** $\ln\frac{3}{2}$ **51.** $\frac{1}{2}e + \frac{1}{2}$ **53.** (a) $f^{(n)}(x) = a^n e^{ax}$ (b) $f^{(n)}(x) = (-1)^n a^n e^{-ax}$ **55.** at $\left(\pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{e}}\right)$

57. (a) f is an even function; symmetric with respect to the y-axis.
(b) f increases on $(-\infty, 0]$; f decreases on $[0, \infty)$.
(c) $f(0) = 1$ is a local and absolute maximum.

(d) the graph is concave up on $(-\infty, -1/\sqrt{2}) \cup (1/\sqrt{2}, \infty)$; the graph is concave down on $(-1/\sqrt{2}, 1/\sqrt{2})$; points of inflection at $(-1/\sqrt{2}, e^{-1/2})$ and $(1/\sqrt{2}, e^{-1/2})$

(e) the x-axis (f)



59. (a) $\pi(1 - e^{-1})$ (b) $\int_0^1 \pi e^{-2x^2}\,dx$ **61.** $\frac{1}{2}(3e^4 + 1)$ **63.** $e^2 - e - 2$

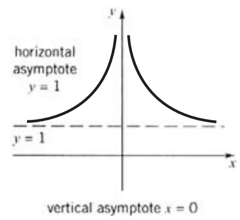
65. (a) domain $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$

(b) increases on $(-\infty, 0)$, decreases on $(0, \infty)$

(c) no extreme values

(d) concave up on $(-\infty, 0)$ and on $(0, \infty)$

(e)



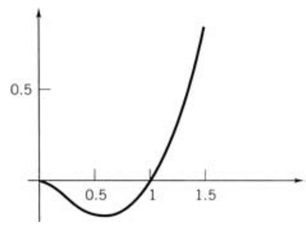
67. (a) domain $(0, \infty)$

(b) f increases on $(e^{-1/2}, \infty)$; f decreases on $(0, e^{-1/2})$.

(c) $f(e^{-1/2}) = -1/2e$ is a local and absolute minimum.

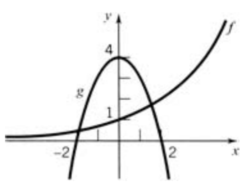
(d) the graph is concave down on $(0, e^{-3/2})$; the graph is concave up on $(e^{-3/2}, \infty)$; point of inflection at $(e^{-3/2}, -3/2e^3)$

(e)



69. $x_n = \ln(n + 1)$ **71.** (a) $\left(\pm\frac{1}{a}, e\right)$ (b) $\frac{1}{a}(e - 2)$ (c) $\frac{1 + 2a^2 e}{a^3 e}$

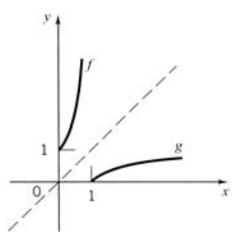
75. (a)



(b) $x = -1.9646$; $x = 1.0580$

(c) 6.4240

77.



79. (a) $x = \ln(|n\pi|)$, $n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$

81. (b) $x \cong 1.3098$

(c) $f'(1.3098) \cong -0.26987$; $g'(1.3098) \cong 0.76348$

(d) no

83. (a) $x - \ln|e^x - 1|, + C$

(b) $-\frac{1}{5}e^{-5x} + e^{-4x} - 2e^{-3x} + 2e^{-2x} - e^{-x} + C$

(c) $e^{\tan x} + C$

SECTION 7.5

1. 6 **3.** $-\frac{1}{6}$ **5.** 0 **7.** 3 **9.** $\log_p xy = \dfrac{\ln xy}{\ln p} = \dfrac{\ln x + \ln y}{\ln p} = \dfrac{\ln x}{\ln p} + \dfrac{\ln y}{\ln p} = \log_p x + \log_p y$

11. $\log_p x^y = \dfrac{\ln x^y}{\ln p} = y\dfrac{\ln x}{\ln p} = y\log_p x$ **13.** 0 **15.** 2 **17.** $t_1 < \ln a < t_2$ **19.** $f'(x) = 2(\ln 3)3^{2x}$

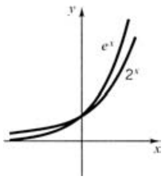
21. $f'(x) = \left(5\ln 2 + \dfrac{\ln 3}{x}\right)2^{5x}3^{\ln x}$ **23.** $g'(x) = \dfrac{1}{2\ln 3}\cdot\dfrac{1}{x\sqrt{\log_3 x}}$ **25.** $f'(x) = \dfrac{\sec^2(\log_5 x)}{x\ln 5}$

27. $F'(x) = \ln 2(2^{-x} - 2^x)\sin(2^x + 2^{-x})$ **29.** $\dfrac{3^x}{\ln 3} + C$ **31.** $\frac{1}{4}x^4 - \dfrac{3^{-x}}{\ln 3} + C$ **33.** $\log_5|x| + C$ **35.** $\dfrac{3}{\ln 4}(\ln x)^2 + C$ **37.** $\dfrac{1}{e\ln 3}$

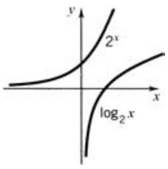
39. $\dfrac{1}{e}$ **41.** $f'(x) = p^x \ln p$ **43.** $(x+1)^x\left[\dfrac{x}{x+1} + \ln(x+1)\right]$ **45.** $(\ln x)^{\ln x}\left[\dfrac{1+\ln(\ln x)}{x}\right]$ **47.** $x^{\sin x}\left(\cos x\ln x + \dfrac{\sin x}{x}\right)$

49. $(\sin x)^{\cos x}\left[\dfrac{\cos^2 x}{\sin x} - \sin x\ln(\sin x)\right]$ **51.** $x^{2^x}\left[\dfrac{2^x}{x} + 2^x(\ln x)(\ln 2)\right]$

55.



57.



59. $\dfrac{1}{4\ln 2}$ **61.** 2 **63.** $\dfrac{45}{\ln 10}$ **65.** $\dfrac{1}{3} + \dfrac{1}{\ln 2}$ **67.** approx. 16.999999; $5^{(\ln 7)/(\ln 5)} = (e^{\ln 5})^{(\ln 17)/(\ln 5)} = e^{\ln 17} = 17$

69. (a) the x-coordinates of the points of intersection are: $x \cong -1.198$, $x = 3$ and $x \cong 3.408$.
(b) for the interval $[-1.198, 3]$, $A \cong 5.5376$; for the interval $[3, 3.408]$, $A \cong 0.1373$

SECTION 7.6

1. (a) \$411.06 (b) \$612.77 (c) \$859.14 **3.** about $5\frac{1}{2}\%$: $(\ln 3)/20 \cong 0.0549$

7. (a) $P(t) = 10,000e^{t\ln 2} = 10,000(2)^t$ (b) $P(26) = 10,000(2)^{26}$, $P(52) = 10,000(2)^{52}$ **9.** (a) $e^{0.35}$ (b) $k = \dfrac{\ln 2}{15}$

11. $P(20) \cong 317.1$ million; $P(11) \cong 284.4$ million **13.** in the year 2112 **15.** $200\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^{t/5}$ liters **17.** $5\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^{5/2} \cong 2.86$ gms

19. $100[1 - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{1/n}]\%$ **21.** 80.7%, 3240 yrs

23. (a) $x_1(t) = 10^6 t$, $x_2(t) = e^t - 1$

(b) $\dfrac{d}{dt}[x_1(t) - x_2(t)] = \dfrac{d}{dt}[10^6 t - (e^t - 1)] = 10^6 - e^t$.
This derivative is zero at $t = 6\ln 10 \cong 13.8$. After that the derivative is negative

(c) $x_2(15) < e^{15} = (e^3)^5 \cong 20^5 = 2^5(10^5) = 3.2(10^6) < 15(10^6) = x_1(15)$
$x_2(18) = e^{18} - 1 = (e^3)^6 - 1 \cong 20^6 - 1 = 64(10^6) - 1 > 18(10^6) = x_1(18)$
$x_2(18) - x_1(18) \cong 64(10^6) - 1 - 18(10^6) \cong 46(10^6)$

(d) If by time t_1 EXP has passed LIN, then $t_1 > 6\ln 10$. For all $t \geq t_1$ the speed of EXP is greater than the speed of LIN: for $t \geq t_1 > 6\ln 10$, $v_2(t) = e^t > 10^6 = v_1(t)$.

25. (a) $15(\frac{2}{3})^{1/2} \cong 12.25$ lb/in.^{2} (b) $15(\frac{2}{3})^{3/2} \cong 8.16$ lb/in.^{2} **27.** 6.4% **29.** (a) \$18,589.35 (b) \$20,339.99 (c) \$22,933.27

31. $176/\ln 2 \cong 254$ ft **33.** 11,400 years **35.** $f(t) = Ce^{t^2/2}$ **37.** $f(t) = Ce^{\sin t}$

SECTION 7.7

1. (a) 0 (b) $-\frac{1}{3}\pi$ **3.** (a) $\frac{2}{3}\pi$ (b) $\frac{3}{4}\pi$ **5.** (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ **7.** (a) does not exist (b) does not exist **9.** (a) $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (b) $-\dfrac{7}{25}$

11. $\dfrac{1}{x^2+2x+2}$ **13.** $\dfrac{2}{x\sqrt{4x^4-1}}$ **15.** $\dfrac{2x}{\sqrt{1-4x^2}}+\arcsin 2x$ **17.** $\dfrac{2\arcsin x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ **19.** $\dfrac{x-(1+x^2)\arctan x}{x^2(1+x^2)}$

21. $\dfrac{1}{(1+4x^2)\sqrt{\arctan 2x}}$ **23.** $\dfrac{1}{x[1+(\ln x)^2]}$ **25.** $-\dfrac{r}{|r|\sqrt{1-r^2}}$ **27.** $2x\,\text{arcsec}\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)-\dfrac{x^2}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$

29. $\cos[\text{arcsec}(\ln x)]\cdot\dfrac{1}{x|\ln x|\sqrt{(\ln x)^2-1}}$ **31.** $\sqrt{\dfrac{c-x}{c+x}}$

33. (a) x (b) $\sqrt{1-x^2}$ (c) $\dfrac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ (d) $\dfrac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x}$ (e) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ (f) $\dfrac{1}{x}$ **35.** $\arcsin\left(\dfrac{x+b}{a}\right)+C$

39. $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ **41.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ **43.** $\frac{1}{20}\pi$ **45.** $\frac{1}{24}\pi$ **47.** $\dfrac{1}{3}\text{arcsec}\,4-\dfrac{\pi}{9}$ **49.** $\frac{1}{6}\pi$ **51.** $\arctan 2-\frac{1}{4}\pi\cong 0.322$

53. $\frac{1}{2}\arcsin x^2+C$ **55.** $\frac{1}{2}\arctan x^2+C$ **57.** $\frac{1}{3}\arctan\left(\frac{1}{3}\tan x\right)+C$ **59.** $\frac{1}{2}(\arcsin x)^2+C$ **61.** $\arcsin(\ln x)+C$

63. $\dfrac{1}{3}\pi$ **65.** $2\pi-\frac{4}{3}$ **67.** $4\pi(\sqrt{2}-1)$

69. $\sqrt{s^2+sk}$ feet from the point where the line of the sign intersects the road.

71. (b) $\frac{1}{2}\pi a^2$; area of semicircle of radius a **75.** $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ is not defined for $x\geq 1$.

77. estimate $\cong 0.523$, $\sin 0.523\cong 0.499$ explanation: the integral = arcsin 0.5; therefore sin (integral) = 0.5

SECTION 7.8

1. $2x\cosh x^2$ **3.** $\dfrac{a\sinh ax}{2\sqrt{\cosh ax}}$ **5.** $\dfrac{1}{1-\cosh x}$ **7.** $ab(\cosh bx-\sinh ax)$ **9.** $\dfrac{a\cosh ax}{\sinh ax}$ **11.** $2e^{2x}\cosh(e^{2x})$

13. $-e^{-x}\cosh 2x+2e^{-x}\sinh 2x$ **15.** $\tanh x$ **17.** $(\sinh x)^x[\ln(\sinh x)+x\coth x]$ **27.** absolute max -3

31. $A=2$, $B=\frac{1}{3}$, $C=3$ **33.** $\dfrac{1}{a}\sinh ax+C$ **35.** $\dfrac{1}{3a}\sinh^3 ax+C$ **37.** $\dfrac{1}{a}\ln(\cosh ax)+C$ **39.** $-\dfrac{1}{a\cosh ax}+C$

41. $\frac{1}{2}(\sinh x\cosh x+x)+C$ **43.** $2\cosh\sqrt{x}+C$ **45.** $\sinh 1\cong 1.175$ **47.** $\frac{81}{20}$ **49.** π

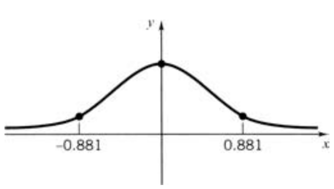
51. $\pi[\ln 5+\frac{1}{4}\sinh(4\ln 5)]\cong 250.492$ **53.** (a) (0.69315, 1.25)
(b) $A\cong 0.38629$

SECTION 7.9

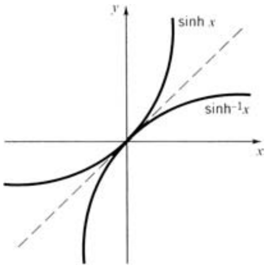
1. $2\tanh x\,\text{sech}^2 x$ **3.** $\text{sech}\,x\,\text{csch}\,x$ **5.** $\dfrac{2e^{2x}\cosh(\arctan e^{2x})}{1-e^{4t}}$ **7.** $\dfrac{-x\,\text{csch}^2\sqrt{x^2+1}}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$ **9.** $\dfrac{-\text{sech}\,x(\tanh x+2\sinh x)}{(1+\cosh x)^2}$

15. (a) $\frac{3}{5}$ (b) $\frac{5}{3}$ (c) $\frac{4}{3}$ (d) $\frac{5}{4}$ (e) $\frac{3}{4}$

25. (a) absolute max $f(0)=1$
(b) points of inflection at $x=\ln(1+\sqrt{2})\cong 0.881$, $x=-\ln(1+\sqrt{2})\cong -0.881$
(c) concave up on $(-\infty,-\ln(1+\sqrt{2}))\cup(\ln(1+\sqrt{2}),\infty)$; concave down on $(-\ln(1+\sqrt{2}),\ln(1+\sqrt{2}))$

(d)


27. (0, 0) is a point of inflection for both graphs **31.** $\ln(\cosh x) + C$ **33.** $2\arctan(e^x) + C$ **35.** $-\frac{1}{3}\text{sech}^3 x + C$



37. $\frac{1}{2}[\ln(\cosh x)]^2 + C$ **39.** $\ln|1 + \tanh x| + C$

Chapter 7. Review Exercises

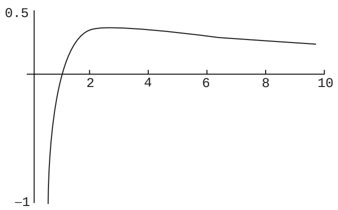
1. $f^{-1}(x) = (x-2)^3$ **3.** $f^{-1}(x) = \dfrac{x+1}{x-1}$ **5.** $f^{-1}(x) = \dfrac{1}{\ln x}$ **7.** not one-to-one **9.** -4 **11.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **13.** $\dfrac{24(\ln x)^2}{x}$

15. $\dfrac{e^x - e^{3x}}{(1+e^{2x})^2}$ **17.** $\dfrac{3x^2 + 3^x \ln x}{x^3 + 3^x}$ **19.** $(\cosh x)^{1/x}\left[\dfrac{\tanh x}{x} - \dfrac{\ln\cosh x}{x^2}\right]$ **21.** $\dfrac{2}{\ln 3\,(1-x^2)}$ **23.** $\arcsin e^x + C$

25. $\arctan(\sin x) + C$ **27.** $2\ln|\sec\sqrt{x} + \tan\sqrt{x}| + C$ **29.** $\dfrac{5^{\ln x}}{\ln 5} + C$ **31.** $\frac{3}{4}\ln\frac{17}{2}$ **33.** $\dfrac{\cosh 2^x}{\ln 2} + C$ **35.** $\frac{1}{12}\pi$

37. $2\tanh 1$ **39.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln 2$ **41.** $\frac{1}{6}\pi$ **45.** $a^2\ln 2$ **47.** (a) $\frac{1}{3}\pi^2$ (b) 2π

49. (a) increasing on $(0, e]$, decreasing on $[e, \infty)$
(b) absolute max $f(e) = \frac{1}{e}$
(c) concave down on $(0, e^{3/2})$, concave up on $(e^{3/2}, \infty)$, point of inflection $(e^{3/2}, f(e^{3/2}))$
(d) the x-axis is a horizontal asymptote



51. $b = a$ **53.** (a) 160 grams (b) approx. 6.64 hours **55.** (a) $A(t) = 100\,e^{-(\ln 2/140)t} \cong 100\,e^{-0.00495t}$ (b) approx. 58.12 days

57. (a) 6250 (b) approx. 5.36 years

CHAPTER 8

SECTION 8.1

1. $-e^{2-x} + C$ **3.** $2/\pi$ **5.** $-\tan(1-x) + C$ **7.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln 3$ **9.** $-\sqrt{1-x^2} + C$ **11.** 0 **13.** $e - \sqrt{e}$ **15.** $\pi/4c$

17. $\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{3\tan\theta + 1} + C$ **19.** $(1/a)\ln|a\,e^x - b| + C$ **21.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln[(x+1)^2 + 4] - \frac{1}{2}\arctan(\frac{1}{2}[x+1]) + C$ **23.** $\frac{1}{2}\arcsin x^2 + C$

25. $\arctan(x+3) + C$ **27.** $-\frac{1}{2}\cos x^2 + C$ **29.** $\tan x - x + C$ **31.** $3/2$ **33.** $\frac{1}{2}(\arcsin x)^2 + C$ **35.** $\ln|\ln x| + C$ **37.** $\sqrt{2}$

39. (Formula 99) $\dfrac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2-4} - 2\ln|x + \sqrt{x^2-4}| + C$ **41.** (Formula 18) $\frac{1}{2}[\sin 2t - \frac{1}{3}\sin^3 2t] + C$ **43.** (Formula 108) $\frac{1}{3}\ln\left|\dfrac{x}{2x+3}\right| + C$

45. (Formula 81) $-\dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+9}}{x} + \ln|x+\sqrt{x^2+9}| + C$ **47.** (Formula 11) $x^4\left[\dfrac{\ln x}{4} - \dfrac{1}{16}\right] + C$ **49.** $2\sqrt{2}$

53. (a) $\frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x - \ln|\sec x| + C$ (b) $\frac{1}{4}\tan^4 x - \frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x + \ln|\sec x| + C$ (c) $\frac{1}{6}\tan^6 x - \frac{1}{4}\tan^4 x + \frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x - \ln|\sec x| + C$

(d) $\displaystyle\int \tan^{2k+1} x\, dx = \frac{1}{2k}\tan^{2k} x - \int \tan^{2k-1} x\, dx$

55. (b) $A = \sqrt{2}$, $B = \dfrac{\pi}{4}$ (c) $\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\ln\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{2}+1}{\sqrt{2}-1}\right)$ **57.** (b) $-0.80, 5.80$ (c) 27.60

SECTION 8.2

1. $-xe^{-x} - e^{-x} + C$ **3.** $-\frac{1}{3}e^{-x^3} + C$ **5.** $2 - 5e^{-1}$ **7.** $-2x^2(1-x)^{1/2} - \frac{8}{3}x(1-x)^{3/2} - \frac{16}{15}(1-x)^{5/2} + C$

9. $\frac{3}{8}e^4 + \frac{1}{8}$ **11.** $2\sqrt{x+1}\ln(x+1) - 4\sqrt{x+1} + C$ **13.** $x(\ln x)^2 - 2x\ln x + 2x + C$

15. $3^x\left(\dfrac{x^3}{\ln 3} - \dfrac{3x^2}{(\ln 3)^2} + \dfrac{6x}{(\ln 3)^3} - \dfrac{6}{(\ln 3)^4}\right) + C$ **17.** $\frac{1}{15}x(x+5)^{15} - \frac{1}{240}(x+5)^{16} + C$ **19.** $\dfrac{1}{2\pi} - \dfrac{1}{\pi^2}$

21. $\frac{1}{10}x^2(x+1)^{10} - \frac{1}{55}x(x+1)^{11} + \frac{1}{660}(x+1)^{12} + C$ **23.** $\frac{1}{2}e^x(\sin x - \cos x) + C$ **25.** $\ln 2 + \dfrac{\pi}{2} - 2$

27. $\dfrac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}\ln x - \dfrac{x^{n+1}}{(n+1)^2} + C$ **29.** $-\frac{1}{2}x^2\cos x^2 + \frac{1}{2}\sin x^2 + C$ **31.** $\dfrac{\pi}{24} + \dfrac{\sqrt{3}-2}{4}$ **33.** $\dfrac{\pi}{8} - \dfrac{1}{4}\ln 2$

35. $\frac{1}{2}x^2\sinh 2x - \frac{1}{2}x\cosh 2x + \frac{1}{4}\sinh 2x + C$ **37.** $\ln x \arcsin(\ln x) + \sqrt{1-(\ln x)^2} + C$ **39.** $\dfrac{x}{2}[\sin(\ln x) - \cos(\ln x)] + C$

47. π **49.** $\dfrac{\pi}{12} + \dfrac{\sqrt{3}-2}{2}$ **51.** (a) 1 (b) $\bar{x} = \dfrac{e^2}{4} + \dfrac{1}{4}$, $\bar{y} = \dfrac{e}{2} - 1$ (c) x-axis; $\pi(e-2)$, y-axis; $\dfrac{\pi}{2}(e^2+1)$

53. $\bar{x} = 1/(e-1)$, $\bar{y} = (e+1)/4$ **55.** $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{2}\pi$, $\bar{y} = \frac{1}{8}\pi$ **57.** (a) $M = (e^k - 1)/k$ (b) $x_M = [(k-1)e^k + 1]/[k(e^k - 1)]$

59. $V = 4 - 8/\pi$ **61.** $V = 2\pi(e-2)$ **63.** $\bar{x} = (e^2+1)/[2(e^2-1)]$ **65.** area $= \sinh 1 = \dfrac{e^2-1}{2e}$; $\bar{x} = \dfrac{2}{e+1}$, $\bar{y} = \dfrac{e^4+4e^2-1}{8e(e^2-1)}$

69. $(\frac{1}{2}x^3 - \frac{3}{4}x^2 + \frac{3}{4}x - \frac{3}{8})e^{2x} + C$ **71.** $x[(\ln x)^3 - 3(\ln x)^2 + 6\ln x - 6] + C$ **73.** $e^x[x^3 - 3x^2 + 6x - 6] + C$

75. (a) $(x^2 - 5x + 6)e^x + C$ (b) $(x^3 - 3x^2 + 4x - 4)e^x + C$

79. (a) π
(b) 3π
(c) 5π
(d) $(2n+1)\pi$, $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

81. (a) $\pi - 2 \cong 1.1416$
(b) $\pi^3 - 2\pi^2 \cong 11.2671$
(c) $(\frac{1}{2}\pi, 0.31202)$

SECTION 8.3

1. $\frac{1}{3}\cos^3 x - \cos x + C$ **3.** $\dfrac{\pi}{12}$ **5.** $-\frac{1}{5}\cos^5 x + \frac{1}{7}\cos^7 x + C$ **7.** $\frac{1}{4}\sin^4 x - \frac{1}{6}\sin^6 x + C$ **9.** $(1/\pi)\tan \pi x + C$

11. $\frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x + \ln|\cos x| + C$ **13.** $\frac{3}{8}\pi$ **15.** $\frac{1}{2}\cos x - \frac{1}{10}\cos 5x + C$ **17.** $\frac{1}{3}\tan^3 x + C$

19. $\frac{1}{2}\sin^4 x + C$ **21.** $\frac{5}{16}x - \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x + \frac{3}{64}\sin 4x + \frac{1}{48}\sin^3 2x + C$ **23.** $\sqrt{3} - \dfrac{\pi}{3}$ **25.** $-\frac{1}{5}\csc^5 x + \frac{1}{3}\csc^3 x + C$

27. $\frac{1}{6}\sin 3x - \frac{1}{14}\sin 7x + C$ **29.** $\frac{2}{7}\sin^{7/2} x - \frac{2}{11}\sin^{11/2} x + C$ **31.** $\frac{1}{12}\tan^4 3x - \frac{1}{6}\tan^2 3x + \frac{1}{3}\ln|\sec 3x| + C$ **33.** $\dfrac{2}{105\pi}$

35. $-1/6$ **37.** $\frac{1}{7}\tan^7 x + \frac{1}{5}\tan^5 x + C$ **39.** $\frac{1}{3}\cos(\frac{3}{2}x) - \frac{1}{5}\cos(\frac{5}{2}x) + C$ **41.** $1/4$

43. $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \dfrac{\pi}{6}$ **45.** $\pi/2$ **47.** $\dfrac{3\pi^2}{8}$ **49.** $\dfrac{\pi^2}{2} - \pi$ **51.** $\pi\left[1 - \dfrac{\pi}{4} + \ln 2\right]$

55. (a) $\frac{16}{35}$ (b) $\frac{5}{32}\pi$ **57.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi^2 \cong 4.9348$

SECTION 8.4

1. $\arcsin\left(\dfrac{x}{a}\right)+C$ **3.** $\frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{x^2-1}-\frac{1}{2}\ln|x+\sqrt{x^2-1}|+C$ **5.** $2\arcsin\left(\dfrac{x}{2}\right)-\dfrac{1}{2}x\sqrt{4-x^2}+C$

7. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}+C$ **9.** $\dfrac{2\sqrt{3}-\pi}{6}$ **11.** $-\frac{1}{3}(4-x^2)^{3/2}+C$ **13.** $\dfrac{625\pi}{16}$ **15.** $\ln(\sqrt{8+x^2}+x)-\dfrac{x}{\sqrt{8+x^2}}+C$

17. $\dfrac{1}{a}\ln\left|\dfrac{a-\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}{x}\right|+C$ **19.** $18-9\sqrt{2}$ **21.** $-\dfrac{1}{a^2x}\sqrt{a^2+x^2}+C$ **23.** $\frac{1}{10}$ **25.** $\dfrac{1}{a^2x}\sqrt{x^2-a^2}+C$

27. $\frac{1}{9}e^{-x}\sqrt{e^{2x}-9}+C$ **29.** $\begin{cases}-\dfrac{1}{2(x-2)^2}+C, & x>2\\ \dfrac{1}{2(2-x)^2}+C, & x<2\end{cases}$ **31.** $-\frac{1}{3}(6x-x^2-8)^{3/2}+\frac{3}{2}\arcsin(x-3)+\frac{3}{2}(x-3)\sqrt{6x-x^2-8}+C$

33. $\dfrac{x^2+x}{8(x^2+2x+5)}-\dfrac{1}{16}\arctan\left(\dfrac{x+1}{2}\right)+C$ **39.** $\dfrac{3}{8}\arctan x+\dfrac{3x}{8(x^2+1)}+\dfrac{x}{4(x^2+1)^2}+C$

41. $\frac{1}{4}(2x^2-1)\arcsin x+\dfrac{x}{4}\sqrt{1-x^2}+C$ **43.** $\dfrac{\pi^2}{8}+\dfrac{\pi}{4}$ **45.** $A=\dfrac{1}{2}r^2\sin\theta\cos\theta+\displaystyle\int_{r\cos\theta}^{r}\sqrt{r^2-x^2}\,dx=\dfrac{1}{2}r^2\theta$

47. $\frac{8}{3}[10-\frac{9}{2}\ln 3]$ **49.** $M=\ln(1+\sqrt{2}),\ x_M=\dfrac{(\sqrt{2}-1)a}{\ln(1+\sqrt{2})}$

51. $A=\dfrac{1}{2}a^2[\sqrt{2}-\ln(\sqrt{2}+1)];\quad \bar{x}=\dfrac{2a}{3[\sqrt{2}-\ln(\sqrt{2}+1)]},\ \bar{y}=\dfrac{(2-\sqrt{2})a}{3[\sqrt{2}-\ln(\sqrt{2}+1)]}$ **53.** $V_y=\frac{2}{3}\pi a^3,\ \bar{y}=\frac{3}{8}a$

57. (b) $\ln(2+\sqrt{3})-\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ (c) $\bar{x}=\dfrac{2(3\sqrt{3}-\pi)}{2\ln(2+\sqrt{3})-\sqrt{3}},\ \bar{y}=\dfrac{5}{72[2\ln(2+\sqrt{3})-\sqrt{3}]}$

SECTION 8.5

1. $\dfrac{1/5}{x+1}-\dfrac{1/5}{x+6}$ **3.** $\dfrac{1/4}{x-1}+\dfrac{1/4}{x+1}-\dfrac{x/2}{x^2+1}$ **5.** $\dfrac{1/2}{x}+\dfrac{3/2}{x+2}-\dfrac{1}{x-1}$ **7.** $\dfrac{3/2}{x-1}-\dfrac{9}{x-2}+\dfrac{19/2}{x-3}$ **9.** $\ln\left|\dfrac{x-2}{x+5}\right|+C$

11. $x^2-2x+\dfrac{3}{x}+5\ln|x-1|-3\ln|x|+C$ **13.** $\dfrac{1}{4}x^4+\dfrac{4}{3}x^3+6x^2+32x-\dfrac{32}{x-2}+80\ln|x-2|+C$ **15.** $5\ln|x-2|-4\ln|x-1|+C$

17. $\dfrac{-1}{2(x-1)^2}+C$ **19.** $\dfrac{3}{4}\ln|x-1|-\dfrac{1}{2(x-1)}+\dfrac{1}{4}\ln|x+1|+C$ **21.** $\dfrac{1}{32}\ln\left|\dfrac{x-2}{x+2}\right|-\dfrac{1}{16}\arctan\dfrac{x}{2}+C$

23. $\dfrac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+1)+\dfrac{3}{2}\arctan x+\dfrac{5(1-x)}{2(x^2+1)}+C$ **25.** $\dfrac{1}{16}\ln\left[\dfrac{x^2+2x+2}{x^2-2x+2}\right]+\dfrac{1}{8}\arctan(x+1)+\dfrac{1}{8}\arctan(x-1)+C$

27. $\dfrac{3}{x}+4\ln\left|\dfrac{x}{x+1}\right|+C$ **29.** $-\frac{1}{6}\ln|x|+\frac{3}{10}\ln|x-2|-\frac{2}{15}\ln|x+3|+C$ **31.** $\ln\left(\frac{125}{108}\right)$ **33.** $\ln\left(\frac{27}{4}\right)-2$

35. $\dfrac{1}{6}\ln\left|\dfrac{\sin\theta-4}{\sin\theta+2}\right|+C$ **37.** $\dfrac{1}{4}\ln\left|\dfrac{\ln t-2}{\ln t+2}\right|+C$ **47.** $\dfrac{1}{ad-bc}\ln\left|\dfrac{c+du}{a+bu}\right|+C$

49. (a) $\frac{1}{4}\pi\ln 7$ (b) $\pi(4-\sqrt{7})$ **51.** $\bar{x}=(2\ln 2)/\pi,\quad \bar{y}=(\pi+2)/2\pi$

53. (a) $\dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{2}{x^2}+\dfrac{5}{x+1}-\dfrac{4}{(x+1)^3}$ **55.** $\dfrac{1}{3}x^3+2x-\dfrac{1}{2(4+x^2)}+\dfrac{3}{2}\arctan\left(\dfrac{x}{2}\right)+2\ln|x-1|+\ln|x+3|$

(b) $\dfrac{1}{x^2+4}+\dfrac{3}{x+3}-\dfrac{4}{x-3}$

(c) $\dfrac{2x-1}{x^2+2x+4}-\dfrac{3}{x}$

57. (b) $3\ln 7-5\ln 3$ **59.** (b) $11-\ln 12$

SECTION 8.6

1. $-2(\sqrt{x}+\ln|1-\sqrt{x}|)+C$ **3.** $2\ln(\sqrt{1+e^x}-1)-x+2\sqrt{1+e^x}+C$ **5.** $\frac{2}{5}(1+x)^{5/2}-\frac{2}{3}(1+x)^{3/2}+C$

7. $\frac{2}{5}(x-1)^{5/2}+2(x-1)^{3/2}+C$ **9.** $-\dfrac{1+2x^2}{4(1+x^2)^2}+C$ **11.** $x+2\sqrt{x}+2\ln|\sqrt{x}-1|+C$ **13.** $x+4\sqrt{x-1}+4\ln|\sqrt{x-1}-1|+C$

15. $2\ln(\sqrt{1+e^x}-1)-x+C$ **17.** $\frac{2}{3}(x-8)\sqrt{x+4}+C$ **19.** $\frac{1}{16}(4x+1)^{1/2}+\frac{1}{8}(4x+1)^{-1/2}-\frac{1}{48}(4x+1)^{-3/2}+C$

21. $\dfrac{4b+2ax}{a^2\sqrt{ax+b}}+C$ **23.** $-\ln\left|1-\tan\dfrac{x}{2}\right|+C$ **25.** $\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\arctan\left[\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(2\tan\dfrac{x}{2}+1)\right]+C$ **27.** $\dfrac{1}{2}\ln\left|\tan\dfrac{x}{2}\right|-\dfrac{1}{4}\tan^2\dfrac{x}{2}+C$

29. $\ln\left|\dfrac{1}{1+\sin x}\right|-\dfrac{2}{1+\tan(x/2)}+C$ **31.** $\frac{4}{5}+2\arctan 2$ **33.** $2+4\ln\frac{2}{3}$ **35.** $\ln\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{3}-1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)$

41. $2\arctan\left(\tanh\dfrac{x}{2}\right)+C$ **43.** $\dfrac{-2}{1+\tanh(x/2)}+C$

SECTION 8.7

1. (a) 506 (b) 650 (c) 572 (d) 578 (e) 576 **3.** (a) 1.394 (b) 0.9122 (c) 1.1776 (d) 1.1533 (e) 1.1614

5. (a) $\pi\cong 3.1312$ (b) $\pi\cong 3.1416$ **7.** (a) 1.8440 (b) 1.7915 (c) 1.8090 **9.** (a) 0.8818 (b) 0.8821

13. (a) $n\geq 8$ (b) $n\geq 2$ **15.** (a) $n\geq 238$ (b) $n\geq 10$ **17.** (a) $n\geq 51$ (b) $n\geq 4$ **19.** (a) $n\geq 37$ (b) $n\geq 3$

21. (a) $n\geq 78$ (b) $n\geq 7$ **27.** (a) $M_n\leq\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\leq T_n$ (b) $T_n\leq\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\leq M_n$

29. (a) 49.4578 (b) 1280.56 **31.** error $\leq 4.01\times 10^{-7}$

Chapter 6. Review Exercises

1. $\frac{1}{2}\arctan\left(\dfrac{\sin x}{2}\right)+C$ **3.** $2x\cosh x-2\sinh x+C$ **5.** $\dfrac{3}{x}+4\ln|x|-4\ln|x+1|+C$

7. $-\frac{1}{2}\cos x-\frac{1}{6}\cos 3x+C=-\frac{2}{3}\cos^3 x+C$ **9.** $-\frac{3}{2}+\ln 16$ **11.** $\ln|\sec x|-\frac{1}{2}\sin^2 x+C$ **13.** $\frac{3}{4}-\frac{1}{4}e^{-2}$

15. $\dfrac{1}{4}\ln\left|\dfrac{e^x-2}{e^x+2}\right|+C$ **17.** $\dfrac{x2^x}{\ln 2}-\dfrac{2^x}{(\ln 2)^2}+C$ **19.** $-\dfrac{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}{x^2}-\arcsin\dfrac{x}{a}+C$ **21.** $\frac{1}{2}x^2e^{x^2}-\frac{1}{2}e^{x^2}+C$

23. $\frac{1}{6}\tan^6 x+C$ **25.** $\frac{1}{2}\ln(2+\sqrt{3})-\frac{1}{4}\ln 3$ **27.** $\frac{1}{2}\left(\arcsin x-(x+2)\sqrt{1-x^2}\right)+C$ **29.** $-\frac{3}{2}x-\cot x-\frac{1}{4}\sin 2x+C$

31. $x+\frac{1}{2}\sin^2 2x+C$ **33.** $\ln\left|\dfrac{x-1}{x+2}\right|-\dfrac{2}{x-1}+C$ **35.** $\frac{2}{3}\left[x^{3/2}+(x+1)\sqrt{x+1}\right]+C$ **37.** $\frac{1}{2}x^2\sin 2x+\frac{1}{2}x\cos 2x-\frac{1}{4}\sin 2x+C$

39. $\tan 2x-\sec 2x-x+C$ **45.** $\left(\dfrac{6-3\sqrt{3}}{\pi},\dfrac{3\ln 3}{2\pi}\right)$ **47.** (a) $\frac{1}{2}\pi\ln 3$ (b) $\pi(2-\sqrt{3})$

49. $M_4=3.0270$, $T_4=2.7993$, $S_4=2.9975$ **51.** (a) 123 (b) 10

CHAPTER 9

SECTION 9.1

1. y_1 is; y_2 is not **3.** y_1 and y_2 are solutions **5.** y_1 and y_2 are solutions **7.** $y=-\frac{1}{2}+Ce^{2x}$ **9.** $y=\frac{2}{5}+Ce^{-5x/2}$

11. $y=x+Ce^{2x}$ **13.** $y=\frac{2}{3}nx+Cx^4$ **15.** $y=Ce^{e^x}$ **17.** $y=1+C(e^{-x}+1)$ **19.** $y=e^{-x^2}(\frac{1}{2}x^2+C)$

21. $y=C(x+1)^{-2}$ **23.** $y=2e^{-x}+x-1$ **25.** $y=e^{-x}[\ln(1+e^x)+e-\ln 2]$ **27.** $y=x^2(e^x-e)$ **29.** $y=C_1e^x+C_2xe^x$

35. $T(1) \cong 40.10°$; 1.62 min

37. (a) $v(t) = \dfrac{32}{k}(1 - e^{-kt})$
(b) $1 - e^{-kt} < 1$; $e^{-kt} \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$

39. (a) $i(t) = \dfrac{E}{R}[1 - e^{-(R/L)t}]$
(b) $i(t) \to \dfrac{E}{R}$(amps) as $t \to \infty$
(c) $t = \dfrac{L}{R}\ln 10$ seconds

41. (a) $200\,(\frac{4}{5})^{t/5}$
(b) $200\,(\frac{4}{5})^{t^2/25}$ liters

43. (a) $\dfrac{dp}{dt} = k(M - P)$
(b) $P(t) = M(1 - e^{-0.0357t})$
(c) 65 days

45. (a) $P(t) = 1000e^{(\sin 2\pi t/\pi)}$
(b) $P(t) = 2000e^{(\sin 2\pi t)/\pi} - 1000$

SECTION 9.2

1. $y = Ce^{-(1/2)\cos(2x+3)}$ **3.** $x^4 + \dfrac{2}{y^2} = C$ **5.** $y\sin y + \cos y = -\cos\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right) + C$ **7.** $e^{-y} = e^x - xe^x + C$

9. $\ln|y+1| + \dfrac{1}{y+1} = \ln|\ln x| + C$ **11.** $y^2 = C(\ln x)^2 - 1$ **13.** $\arcsin y = 1 - \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ **15.** $y + \ln|y| = \dfrac{x^3}{3} - x - 5$

17. $\dfrac{x^2}{2} + x + \dfrac{1}{2}\ln(y^2+1) - \arctan y = 4$ **19.** $y = \ln[3e^{2x} - 2]$ **21.** (a) $C(t) = \dfrac{kA_0^2 t}{1 + kA_0 t}$ (b) $C(t) = \dfrac{A_0 B_0 (e^{kA_0 t} - e^{kB_0 t})}{A_0\, e^{kA_0 t} - B_0\, e^{kB_0 t}}$

23. (a) $v(t) = \dfrac{\alpha}{C\,e^{(\alpha/m)t} - \beta}$, where C is an arbitrary constant. (b) $v(t) = \dfrac{\alpha v_0}{(\alpha + \beta v_0)e^{(\alpha/m)t} - \beta v_0} = \dfrac{\alpha v_0 e^{-(\alpha/m)t}}{\alpha + \beta v_0 - \beta v_0 e^{-(\alpha/m)t}}$
(c) $\lim_{t\to\infty} v(t) = 0$

25. (a) $y(t) = \dfrac{25{,}000}{1 + 249\,e^{-0.1398t}}$, $y(20) \cong 1544$ (b) 40 days **27.** (a) 88.82 m/sec (b) $v(t) = \dfrac{15.65(1 + 0.70\,e^{-1.25t})}{1 - 0.70\,e^{-1.25t}}$ (c) 15.65 m/sec

SECTION 9.3

1. $y = C_1e^{-4x} + C_2e^{2x}$ **3.** $y = C_1e^{-4x} + C_2\,xe^{-4x}$ **5.** $y = e^{-x}(C_1\cos 2x + C_2\sin 2x)$ **7.** $y = C_1\,e^{(1/2)x} + C_2\,e^{-3x}$

9. $y = C_1\cos 2\sqrt{3}x + C_2\sin 2\sqrt{3}x$ **11.** $y = C_1\,e^{(1/5)x} + C_2e^{-(3/4)x}$ **13.** $y = C_1\cos 3x + C_2\sin 3x$

15. $y = e^{-(1/2)x}(C_1\cos\frac{1}{2}x + C_2\sin\frac{1}{2}x)$ **17.** $y = C_1e^{(1/4)x} + C_2e^{-(1/2)x}$ **19.** $y = 2\,e^{2x} - e^{3x}$ **21.** $y = 2\cos\dfrac{x}{2} + \sin\dfrac{x}{2}$

23. $y = 7\,e^{-2(x+1)} + 5x\,e^{-2(x-1)}$ **25.** (a) $y = Ce^{2x} + (1 - C)\,e^{-x}$ (b) $y = C\,e^{2x} + (2C - 1)\,e^{-x}$ (c) $y = \frac{2}{3}\,e^{2x} + \frac{1}{3}\,e^{-x}$

31. (a) $y'' + 2y' - 8y = 0$ (b) $y'' - 4y' - 5y = 0$ (c) $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0$

39. $y = C_1\,x^4 + C_2\,x^{-2}$ **41.** $y = C_1\,x^2 + C_2\,x^2\ln x$

Chapter 9. Review Exercises

1. $y + Ce^{-x} - 2e^{-2x}$ **3.** $\ln(y^2+1) = x + \frac{1}{2}\sin 2x + C$ **5.** $y = -\dfrac{\cos 2x}{2x^2} - \dfrac{\sin 2x}{4x^3} + \dfrac{C}{x^2}$ **7.** $\arctan y = x + \frac{1}{3}x^3 + C$

9. $y = \dfrac{x^3}{5} + \dfrac{C}{x^2}$ **11.** $y = \dfrac{2}{x}\ln x + \dfrac{x}{2} + \dfrac{3}{2x}$ **13.** $y = \frac{1}{2} + e^{-e^{2x}}$ **15.** $y = e^x[C_1\cos x + C_2\sin x]$ **17.** $y = C_1e^{2x} + C_2e^{-x}$

19. $y = C_1e^{3x} + C_2xe^{3x}$ **21.** $y = e^{-2x}[C_1\cos 3x + C_2\sin 3x]$ **23.** $y = 1$ **25.** $y = e^{3x}[2\cos 2x - 2\sin 2x]$ **27.** $y^2 = C - x$

29. $r = -2, -1$ **31.** one year from now: \$3 million; one and one-half years from now: \$6 million; two years from now: ∞

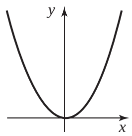
33. (a) $y = \frac{a}{b}[1 - e^{-bt}]$ (b) $\frac{a}{b}$ (c) $\frac{1}{b}\ln 10$ **35.** (a) $T(t) = 70 - \frac{500}{7}\left(\frac{7}{10}\right)^{t/10}$ (b) $T(0) = -\frac{10}{7}$

37. (a) 20 minutes (b) $P(t) = 4(20 - t) - \frac{7}{40}(20 - t)^2$ (c) 22.5 pounds **39.** (a) $\cong 2742$ (b) $\cong 40$ days

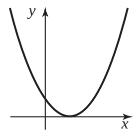
CHAPTER 10

SECTION 10.1

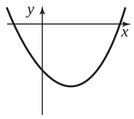
1. vertex $(0, 0)$
focus $(0, \frac{1}{2})$
axis $x = 0$
directrix $y = -\frac{1}{2}$



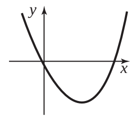
3. vertex $(1, 0)$
focus $(1, \frac{1}{2})$
axis $x = 1$
directrix $y = -\frac{1}{2}$



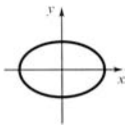
5. vertex $(2, -2)$
focus $(2, -1)$
axis $x = 2$
directrix $y = -3$



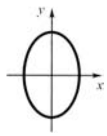
7. vertex $(2, -4)$
focus $(2, -\frac{15}{4})$
axis $x = 2$
directrix $y = -\frac{17}{4}$



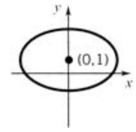
9. center $(0, 0)$
foci $(\pm\sqrt{5}, 0)$
length of major axis 6
length of minor axis 4



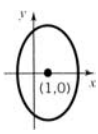
11. center $(0, 0)$
foci $(0, \pm\sqrt{2})$
length of major axis $2\sqrt{6}$
length of minor axis 4



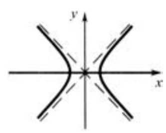
13. center $(0, 1)$
foci $(\pm\sqrt{5}, 1)$
length of major axis 6
length of minor axis 4



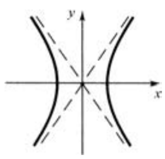
15. center $(1, 0)$
foci $(1, \pm 4\sqrt{3})$
length of major axis 16
length of minor axis 8



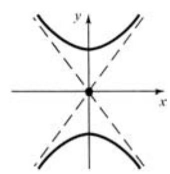
17. center $(0, 0)$
transverse axis 2
vertices $(\pm 1, 0)$
foci $(\pm\sqrt{2}, 0)$
asymptotes $y = \pm x$



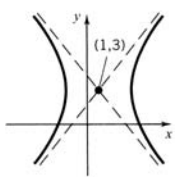
19. center $(0, 0)$
transverse axis 6
vertices $(\pm 3, 0)$
foci $(\pm 5, 0)$
asymptotes $y = \pm\frac{4}{3}x$



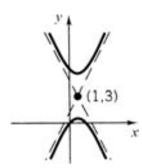
21. center $(0, 0)$
transverse axis 8
vertices $(0, \pm 4)$
foci $(0, \pm 5)$
asymptotes $y = \pm\frac{4}{3}x$



23. center $(1, 3)$
transverse axis 6
vertices $(4, 3)$ and $(-2, 3)$
foci $(6, 3)$ and $(-4, 3)$
asymptotes $y = \pm\frac{4}{3}(x - 1) + 3$



25. center $(1, 3)$
transverse axis 4
vertices $(1, 5)$ and $(1, 1)$
foci $(1, 3 \pm \sqrt{5})$
asymptotes $y = 2x + 1,\ y = -2x + 5$



31. center $(0, 0)$, vertices $(1, 1)$ and $(-1, -1)$, foci $(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$ and $(\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2})$, asymptotes $x = 0$ and $y = 0$, transverse axis $2\sqrt{2}$

33. $2\sqrt{\pi^2 a^4 - A^2}/\pi a$ **35.** 4C **37.** $A = \frac{8}{3}c^3; \bar{x} = 0, \bar{y} = \frac{3}{5}c$ **43.** $[2\sqrt{3} - \ln(2 + \sqrt{3})]ab$ **45.** $\frac{3}{5}$ **47.** $\frac{4}{5}$.

49. E_1 is fatter than E_2, more like a circle **51.** The ellipse tends to a line segment of length $2a$.

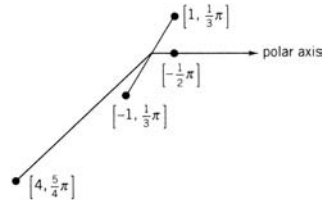
53. $x^2/9 + y^2 = 1$ **55.** $\frac{5}{3}$ **57.** $\sqrt{2}$

59. The branches of H_1 open up less quickly than the branches of H_2.

61. The hyperbola tends to a pair of parallel lines separated by the transverse axis.

SECTION 10.2

1–7. See figure to the right. **9.** $(0, 3)$ **11.** $(1, 0)$ **13.** $(-\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3})$ **15.** $(0, -3)$



17. $[1, \frac{1}{2}\pi + 2n\pi], [-1, \frac{3}{2}\pi + 2n\pi]$ **19.** $[3, \pi + 2n\pi], [-3, 2n\pi]$

21. $[2\sqrt{2}, \frac{7}{4}\pi + 2n\pi], [-2\sqrt{2}, \frac{3}{4}\pi + 2n\pi]$ **23.** $[8, \frac{1}{6}\pi + 2n\pi], [-8, \frac{7}{6}\pi + 2n\pi]$

25. $\sqrt{r_1^2 + r_2^2 - 2r_1r_2\cos(\theta_1 - \theta_1)}$ **27.** (a) $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{11}{6}\pi]$ (b) $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{6}\pi]$ (c) $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{7}{6}\pi]$

29. (a) $[2, \frac{2}{3}\pi]$ (b) $[2, \frac{5}{3}\pi]$ (c) $[2, \frac{1}{3}\pi]$ **31.** symmetry about the x-axis

33. no symmetry about the coordinate axes; no symmetry about the origin

35. symmetry about the origin **37.** $r\cos\theta = 2$ **39.** $r^2 \sin 2\theta = 1$ **41.** $r = 4\sin\theta$

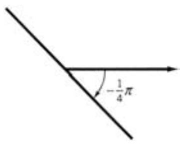
43. $\theta = \pi/4$ **45.** $r = 1 - \cos\theta$ **47.** $r^2 = \sin 2\theta$ **49.** the horizontal line $y = 4$

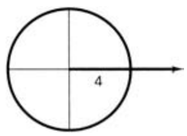
51. the line $y = \sqrt{3}x$ **53.** the parabola $y^2 = 4(x + 1)$ **55.** the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 3x$

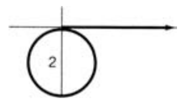
57. the line $y = 2x$ **59.** $3x^2 + 4y^2 - 8x = 16$, ellipse **61.** $y^2 = 8x + 16$, parabola

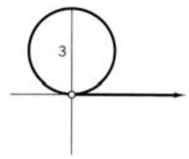
63. $\left(x - \dfrac{b}{2}\right)^2 + \left(y - \dfrac{a}{2}\right)^2 = \dfrac{a^2 + b^2}{4}$ center: $\left(\dfrac{b}{2}, \dfrac{a}{2}\right)$, radius: $\dfrac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{2}$ **65.** $r = \dfrac{d}{2 - \cos\theta}$

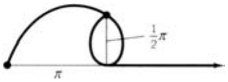
SECTION 10.3

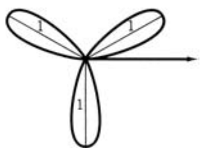
1.


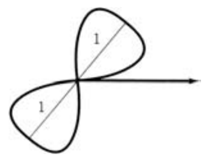
3.


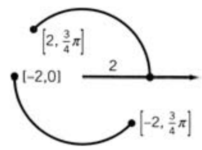
5.


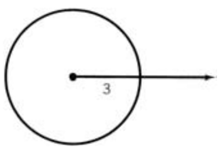
7.


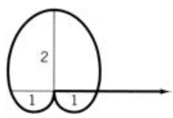
9.


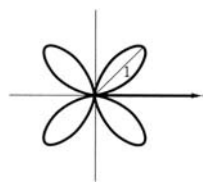
11.


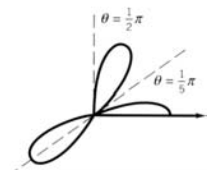
13.


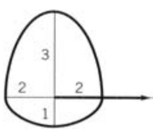
15.


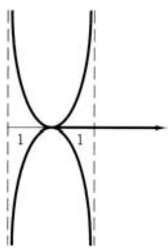
17.


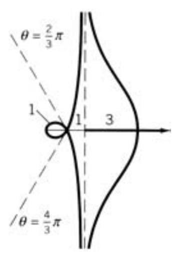
19.


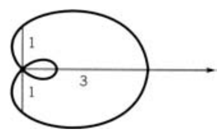
21.


23.


25.


27.


29.


31.


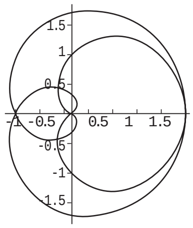
33. yes; $[1, \pi] = [-1, 0]$ and the pair $r = -1, \theta = 0$ satisfies the equation **35.** yes: the pair $r = \frac{1}{2}, \theta = \frac{1}{2}\pi$ satisfies the equation

37. $[2, \pi] = [-2, 0]$. The coordinates of $[-2, 0]$ satisfy the equation $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$, and the coordinates of $[2, \pi]$ satisfy the equation $r = 3 + \cos\theta$.

39. $(0, 0), (-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ **41.** $(-1, 0), (1, 0)$ **43.** $(0, 0), (\frac{1}{4}, \pm\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{3})$ **45.** $(0, 0), (\pm\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}, \frac{3}{4})$

47. $r = f(\theta - \alpha)$ to the curve $r = f(\theta)$ rotated counterclockwise α radians.

49.



The rectangular coordinates of the points of intersection are: (0, 0), (2, 0), (−1, 0), (−0.25, ±0.4330)

51. (b) The curves intersect at the pole and at:

$r = 1 - 3\cos\theta$	$r = 2 - 5\sin\theta$
[−2, 0]	[2, π]
[3.800, 3.510]	[3.800, 3.510]
[2.412, 4.223]	[−2.412, 1.081]
[−1.267, 0.713]	[−1.267, 0.713]

53. butterfly **55.** a petal curve with $2m$ petals

SECTION 10.4

1. $\frac{1}{4}\pi a^2$ **3.** $\frac{1}{2}a^2$ **5.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi a^2$ **7.** $\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{16}\pi$ **9.** $\frac{3}{16}\pi + \frac{3}{8}$ **11.** $\frac{5}{2}a^2$ **13.** $\frac{1}{12}(3e^{2\pi} - 3 - 2\pi^3)$

15. $\frac{1}{4}(e^{2\pi} + 1 - 2e^{\pi})$ **17.** $\int_{\pi/6}^{5\pi/6} \frac{1}{2}([4\sin\theta]^2 - [2]^2)\,d\theta$ **19.** $\int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}([4]^2 - [2\sec\theta]^2)\,d\theta$

21. $2\left[\int_0^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}(2\sec\theta)^2 d\theta + \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}(4)^2 d\theta\right]$ **23.** $\int_0^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}(2\sin 3\theta)^2 d\theta$ **25.** $2\left[\int_0^{\pi/6} \frac{1}{2}(\sin\theta)^2 d\theta + \int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}(1 - \sin\theta)^2 d\theta\right]$

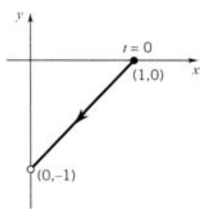
27. $\pi - 8\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1}{2}(\cos 2\theta)^2 d\theta$ **29.** $\frac{5}{12}\pi - \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$ **31.** $\dfrac{\pi a^2}{2}$ **35.** (5/6, 0) **37.** $\dfrac{9\pi}{2}$ **39.** $\dfrac{4\pi}{3} + 2\sqrt{3}$ **41.** (c) $8 - 2\pi$

SECTION 10.5

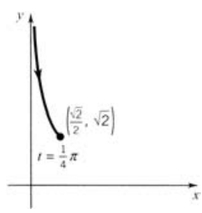
1. $4x = (y-1)^2$ **3.** $y = 4x^2 + 1,\ x \ge 0$ **5.** $9x^2 + 4y^2 = 36$ **7.** $1 + x^2 = y^2$ **9.** $y = 2 - x^2,\ -1 \le x \le 1$

11. $2y - 6 = x,\ -4 \le x \le 4$

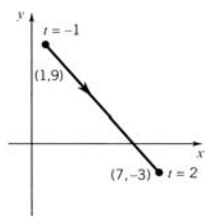
13. $y = x - 1$



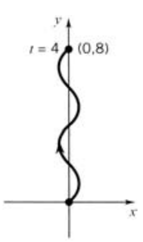
15. $xy = 1$



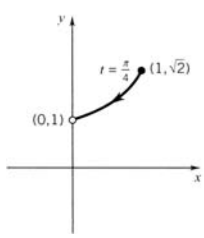
17. $y + 2x = 11$



19. $x = \sin\frac{1}{2}\pi y$



21. $y^2 = x^2 + 1$



23. (a) $x(t) = -\sin 2\pi t,\ y(t) = \cos 2\pi t$ (b) $x(t) = \sin 4\pi t,\ y(t) = \cos 4\pi t$ (c) $x(t) = \cos\frac{1}{2}\pi t,\ y(t) = \sin\frac{1}{2}\pi t$

(d) $x(t) = \cos\frac{3}{2}\pi t,\ y(t) = -\sin\frac{3}{2}\pi t$

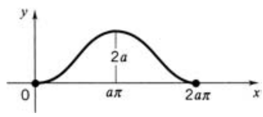
25. $x(t) = \tan \frac{1}{2}\pi t, \quad y(t) = 2$ **27.** $x(t) = 3 + 5t, \quad y(t) = 7 - 2t$ **29.** $x(t) = \sin^2 \pi t, \quad y(t) = -\cos \pi t$

31. $x(t) = (2 - t)^2, \; y(t) = (2 - t)^3$ **33.** $\int_c^d y(t)x'(t)\,dt = \int_c^d f(x(t))x'(t)\,dt = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx =$ area below C

35. $\int_c^d \pi[y(t)]^2 x'(t)\,dt = \int_c^d \pi[f(x(t))]^2 x'(t)\,dt = \int_a^b \pi[f(x)]^2 dx = V_x;$

$\int_c^d 2\pi x(t)y(t)x'(t)\,dt = \int_c^d 2\pi x(t) f(x(t))x'(t)\,dt = \int_a^b 2\pi x f(x)\,dx = V_y$

37. $A = 2\pi a^2$



39. (a) $V_x = 3\pi^2 r^3$ (b) $V_y = 4\pi^3 r^3$

41. $x(t) = -a\cos t, \, y(t) = b\sin t; \; t \in [0, \pi]$ **43.** (a) paths intersect at (6, 5) and (8, 1) (b) particles collide at (8, 1)

45. curve intersects itself at (0, 0) **47.** curve intersects itself at (0, 0) and $(0, \frac{3}{4})$

49. The particle moves along the parabola $y = 2x - \dfrac{x^2}{4}$ from (0, 0) to (12, −12).

51. The particle moves around the unit circle in the counterclockwise direction starting from the point (1, 0).

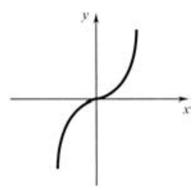
53. (d) The curve has a loop if $a < b$; no loop if $a > b$ (e) $r = a - b\sin\theta$

SECTION 10.6

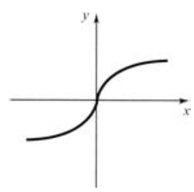
1. $3x - y - 3 = 0$ **3.** $y = 1$ **5.** $3x + y - 3 = 0$ **7.** $2x + 2y - \sqrt{2} = 0$ **9.** $2x + y - 8 = 0$ **11.** $x - 5y + 4 = 0$

13. $x + 2y + 1 = 0$

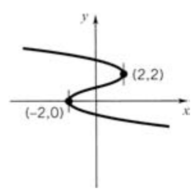
15. $x(t) = t, \, y(t) = t^3$;
tangent line $y = 0$



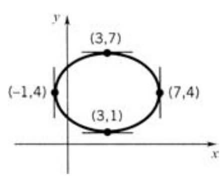
17. $x(t) = t^{5/3}, \, y(t) = t$;
tangent line $x = 0$



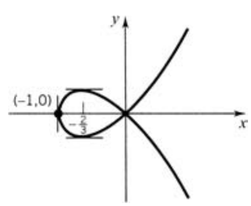
19. (a) none;
(b) at (2,2) and (−2, 0)



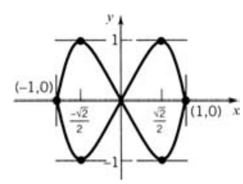
21. (a) at (3, 7) and (3, 1);
(b) at (−1, 4) and (7, 4)



23. (a) at $(-\frac{2}{3}, \pm\frac{2}{9}\sqrt{3})$;
(b) at (−1, 0)

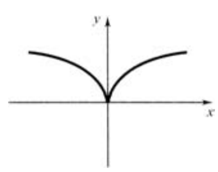


25. (a) at $(\pm\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \pm 1)$;
(b) at (±1, 0)

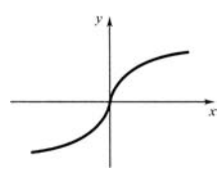


27. $y = 0, \, (\pi - 2)y + 32x - 64 = 0$

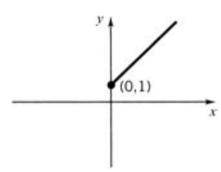
31.



33.



35.



37. −8 **39.** 2 **41.** $\dfrac{1}{\sin^3 t}$ **43.** $y - 2 = -\frac{16}{3}(x - \frac{1}{8})$

SECTION 10.7

1. $\sqrt{5}$ **3.** 7 **5.** $2\sqrt{3}$ **7.** $\frac{4}{3}$ **9.** $6+\frac{1}{2}\ln 5$ **11.** $\frac{63}{8}$ **13.** $\ln(1+\sqrt{2})$ **15.** $\frac{3}{2}$ **17.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi+\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$

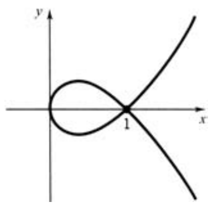
19. initial speed 2, terminal speed 4; $s=2\sqrt{3}+\ln(2+\sqrt{3})$ **21.** initial speed 0, terminal speed $\sqrt{13}$; $x=\frac{1}{27}(13\sqrt{13}-8)$

23. initial speed $\sqrt{2}$, terminal speed $\sqrt{2}\,e^{\pi}$; $s=\sqrt{2}(e^{\pi}-1)$ **25.** 8a

27. (a) $24a$ (b) use the identities $\cos 3\theta=4\cos^3\theta-3\cos\theta$, $\sin 3\theta=3\sin\theta-4\sin^3\theta$ **29.** 2π **31.** $\sqrt{2}(e^{4\pi}-1)$

33. $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{5}(e^{4\pi}-1)$ **35.** $4-2\sqrt{2}$ **37.** $\ln(1+\sqrt{2})$ **39.** $c=1$ **41.** (a) $(\frac{1}{2},-\frac{7}{2})$

45. $L\cong 4.6984$ **47.** (a)



(b) 2.7156

49. 4 **51.** (b) 28.3617 **53.** $\sqrt{1+[f'(x)]^2}=\sqrt{1+\tan^2[\alpha(x)]}=|\sec[\alpha(x)]|$

SECTION 10.8

1. $L=1$, $(\bar{x},\bar{y})=(\frac{1}{2},4)$, $A_x=8\pi$ **3.** $L=5$, $(\bar{x},\bar{y})=(\frac{3}{2},2)$, $A_x=20\pi$ **5.** $L=10$, $(\bar{x},\bar{y})=(3,4)$, $A_x=80\pi$

7. $L=\frac{1}{3}\pi$, $\bar{x}=6/\pi$, $\bar{y}=6(2-\sqrt{3})/\pi$, $A_x=4\pi(2-\sqrt{3})$ **9.** $L=\frac{1}{3}\pi a$; $\bar{x}=0$, $\bar{y}=3a/\pi$, $A_x=2\pi a^2$

11. $\frac{1}{9}\pi(17\sqrt{17}-1)$ **13.** $\frac{61}{432}\pi$ **15.** $\pi[\sqrt{2}+\ln(1+\sqrt{2})]$ **17.** $\frac{2}{5}\sqrt{2}\pi(2e^{\pi}+1)$ **19.** (a) $3\pi a^2$ (b) $\dfrac{64\pi a^2}{3}$

23. (a) the 3, 4, 5 sides have centroids
$(\frac{3}{2},0)$, $(4,2)$, $(\frac{3}{2},2)$
(b) $\bar{x}=2$, $\bar{y}=\frac{3}{2}$
(c) $\bar{x}=2$, $\bar{y}=\frac{4}{3}$
(d) $\bar{x}=\frac{13}{6}$, $\bar{y}=2$
(e) $A=20\pi$

25. $4\pi^2ab$

29. (a) $2\pi b^2+\dfrac{2\pi ab}{e}\arcsin e$ (b) $2\pi a^2+\dfrac{\pi b^2}{e}\ln\left|\dfrac{1+e}{1-e}\right|$, where e is the eccentricity $c/a=\sqrt{a^2-b^2}/a$

31. at the midpoint of the axis of the hemisphere **33.** on the axis of the cone $\left(\dfrac{2R+r}{R+r}\right)\dfrac{h}{3}$ units from the base of radius r

Chapter 10. Review Exercises

1. parabola; vertex $(0,-1)$, focus $(0,0)$, axis $x=0$, directrix $y=-2$

3. ellipse; center $(-3,0)$, focii $(-3\pm\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3},0)$, major axis 2, minor axis 1

5. hyperbola; center $(1,-1)$, vertices $(1,-3)$, $(1,1)$, focii $(1,-1\pm\sqrt{13})$, asymptotes $y+1=\pm\frac{2}{3}(x-1)$, transverse axis 4

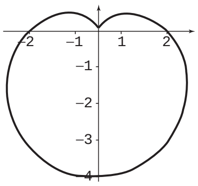
7. ellipse; center $(1,-2)$, focii $(5,-2)$, $(-3,-2)$, major axis 10, minor axis 6 **9.** $(-2,-2\sqrt{3})$

11. $[4,\frac{3}{2}\pi+2n\pi]$, $n=0,\pm1,\pm2,\cdots$; $[-4,\frac{1}{2}\pi+2n\pi]$, $n=0,\pm1,\pm2,\cdots$

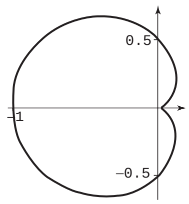
13. $[4,-\frac{1}{6}\pi+2n\pi]$, $n=0,\pm1,\pm2,\cdots$; $[-4,\frac{5}{6}\pi+2n\pi]$, $n=0,\pm1,\pm2,\cdots$ **15.** $r=\sec\theta\tan\theta$ **17.** $r=4\cos\theta-2\sin\theta$

19. $x=5$ **21.** $x^2+y^2-3x-4y=0$

23.

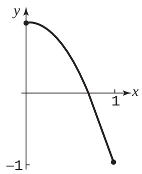


25.

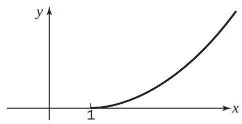


27. $\left[\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \frac{1}{6}\pi\right], \left[\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \frac{5}{6}\pi\right]$, the pole **29.** 6π **31.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ **33.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi - \frac{1}{2}$

35. $y = 1 - 2x^2, 0 \leq x \leq 1$



37. $y = (x-1)^2, x \geq 1$

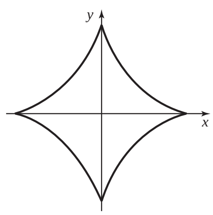


39. $x = 1 + 4t, y = 4 + 2t$ **41.** $x = 3\sin t, y = 2\cos t$ **43.** $5x + 3y = 30$

45. horizontal tangents at $(0, 10)$, $(3, -\frac{7}{2})$; vertical tangent at $(-1, \frac{13}{2})$ **47.** $dy/dx = 2t, d^2y/dx^2 = 1/3t$ **49.** $\frac{19}{27}$

51. $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{5} + \frac{1}{4}\ln(2 + \sqrt{5})$ **53.** 8 **55.** $\frac{992}{3}\pi$

57. $\frac{208}{9}\pi$ **61.**



63. $(\frac{2}{5}a.\frac{2}{5}a)$

CHAPTER 11

SECTION 11.1

1. lub = 2; glb = 0 **3.** no lub; glb = 0 **5.** lub = 2; glb = −2 **7.** no lub; glb = 2 **9.** lub = $2\frac{1}{2}$; glb = 2

11. lub = 1; glb = 0.9 **13.** lub = e; glb = 0 **15.** lub = $\frac{1}{2}(-1 + \sqrt{5})$; glb = $\frac{1}{2}(-1 - \sqrt{5})$ **17.** no lub; no glb

19. no lub; no glb **21.** glb $S = 0$, $0 \leq (\frac{1}{11})^3 < 0 + 0.001$ **23.** glb $S = 0$, $0 \leq \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^{2n-1} < 0 + \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^k$, $n > \frac{1}{2}(k+1)$

35. (a) 2.48832, 2.59374, 2.70481, 2.71692, 2.71815
(b) lub = e, glb = 2

37. (a)

a_1	a_2	a_3	a_4	a_5	a_6	a_7	a_8	a_9	a_{10}
1.4142	1.6818	1.8340	1.9152	1.9571	1.9785	1.9892	1.9946	1.9973	1.9986

(c) 2
(d) c

SECTION 11.2

1. $a_n = 2 + 3(n-1), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ **3.** $a_n = \dfrac{(-1)^{n-1}}{2n-1}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ **5.** $a_n = \dfrac{n^2+1}{n}, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$

7. $a_n = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n = 2k-1, \\ 1/n & \text{if } n = 2k, \end{cases}$ where $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ **9.** decreasing; bounded below by 0 and above by 2

11. not monotonic; bounded below by 0 and above by $\frac{3}{2}$ **13.** decreasing; bounded below by 0 and above by 0.9

15. increasing; bounded below by $\frac{1}{2}$ but not bounded above **17.** increasing; bounded below by $\frac{4}{5}\sqrt{5}$ and above by 2

19. increasing; bounded below by $\frac{2}{51}$ but not bounded above **21.** increasing; bounded below by 0 and above by $\ln 2$

23. decreasing; bounded below by 1 and above by 4 **25.** increasing; bounded below by $\sqrt{3}$ and above by 2

27. decreasing; bounded below by -1 but not bounded below **29.** increasing; bounded below by $\frac{1}{2}$ and above by 1

31. decreasing; bounded below by 0 and above by 1 **33.** decreasing; bounded below by 0 and above by $\frac{5}{6}$

35. decreasing; bounded below by 0 and above by $\frac{1}{2}$ **37.** decreasing; bounded below by 0 and above by $\frac{1}{3}\ln 3$

39. increasing; bounded below by $\frac{3}{4}$ but not bounded above

45. $a_1 = 1, a_2 = \frac{1}{2}, a_3 = \frac{1}{6}, a_4 = \frac{1}{24}, a_5 = \frac{1}{120}, a_6 = \frac{1}{720};\quad a_n = 1/n!$

47. $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = a_4 = a_5 = a_6 = 1;\quad a_n = 1$

49. $a_1 = 1, a_2 = 3, a_3 = 5, a_4 = 7, a_5 = 9, a_6 = 11;\quad a_n = 2n - 1$

51. $a_1 = 1, a_2 = 4, a_3 = 9, a_4 = 16, a_5 = 25, a_6 = 36;\quad a_n = n^2$

53. $a_1 = 1, a_2 = 1, a_3 = 2, a_4 = 4, a_5 = 8, a_6 = 16;\quad a_n = 2^{n-2}$ for $n \geq 3$

55. $a_1 = 1, a_2 = 3, a_3 = 5, a_4 = 7, a_5 = 9, a_6 = 11;\quad a_n = 2n - 1$

61. (a) n (b) $\dfrac{1-r^n}{1-r}$ **63.** (a) $150\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^{n-1}$ (b) $\dfrac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(\dfrac{3}{4}\right)^{(n-1)/2}$ **65.** increasing; limit $\frac{1}{2}$

67. (c) 2, 2.4142, 2.5538, 2.6118, $\cdots$, 2.6180; $\text{lub} = \frac{1}{2}(3+\sqrt{5}) \cong 2.6180$

SECTION 11.3

1. diverges **3.** converges to 0 **5.** converges to 1 **7.** converges to 0 **9.** converges to 0 **11.** diverges

13. converges to 0 **15.** converges to 1 **17.** converges to $\frac{4}{9}$ **19.** converges to $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$ **21.** diverges **23.** converges to 1

25. converges to 0 **27.** converges to $\frac{1}{2}$ **29.** converges to e^2 **31.** diverges **33.** 0 **35.** $\frac{1}{2}$

37. $\pi/2$ **39.** $-\pi/2$ **41.** (a) 1 (b) 0 **61.** converges to 0 **63.** converges to 0 **65.** diverges

67. $L = 0, n = 32$ **69.** $L = 0, n = 4$ **71.** $L = 0, n = 7$ **73.** $L = 0, n = 65$ **75.** (a) $\dfrac{3+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ (b) 3

77. (a)

a_2	a_3	a_4	a_5	a_6	a_7	a_8	a_9	a_{10}
0.5403	0.8576	0.6543	0.7935	0.7014	0.7640	0.7221	0.7504	0.7314

(b) 0.7391; it is the fixed point of $f(x) = \cos x$.

SECTION 11.4

1. converges to 1 **3.** converges to 0 **5.** converges to 0 **7.** converges to 0 **9.** converges to 1 **11.** converges to 0

13. converges to 1 **15.** converges to 1 **17.** converges to π **19.** converges to 1 **21.** converges to 0 **23.** diverges

25. converges to 0 **27.** converges to e^{-1} **29.** converges to 0 **31.** converges to 0 **33.** converges to e^x **35.** converges to 0

37. 2 **41.** (b) $2\pi r$. As $n \to \infty$, the perimeter of the polygon tends to the circumference of the circle. **43.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **45.** $\frac{1}{8}$ **51.** $L = 1$

53. (a)

a_3	a_4	a_5	a_6	a_7	a_8	a_9	a_{10}
2	3	5	8	13	21	34	55

(b)

r_1	r_2	r_3	r_4	r_5	r_6
1	2	1.5	1.6667	1.6000	1.625

(c) $L = \dfrac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \cong 1.618033989$

SECTION 11.5

1. 0 **3.** 1 **5.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **7.** $\ln 2$ **9.** $\frac{1}{4}$ **11.** 2 **13.** $\dfrac{1+\pi}{1-\pi}$ **15.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **17.** π **19.** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **21.** -2

23. $\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}$ **25.** $-\frac{1}{8}$ **27.** 4 **29.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **31.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **33.** 1 **35.** 1 **37.** 0 **39.** 1 **41.** 1

43. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0}(2+x+\sin x) \neq 0$, $\lim\limits_{x\to 0}(x^3+x-\cos x) \neq 0$ **45.** $a = \pm 4, b = 1$ **47.** $-\dfrac{e}{2}$

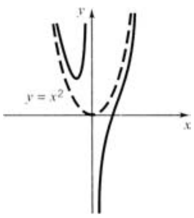
49. $f(0)$ **51.** (a) 1 (b) $-\frac{1}{3}$ **53.** $\frac{3}{4}$ **55.** (a) $f(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to \pm\infty$ (b) 10 **57.** (b) $\ln 2 \cong 0.6931$

SECTION 11.6

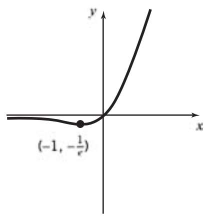
1. ∞ **3.** -1 **5.** ∞ **7.** $\frac{1}{5}$ **9.** 1 **11.** 0 **13.** ∞ **15.** $\frac{1}{3}$ **17.** e **19.** 1 **21.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **23.** 0

25. 1 **27.** e^3 **29.** e **31.** 0 **33.** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **35.** 0 **37.** 1 **39.** 1 **41.** 0 **43.** 1 **45.** 0

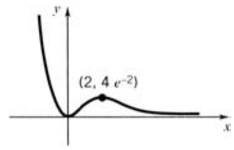
47. y-axis vertical asymptote



49. x-axis horizontal asymptote



51. x-axis horizontal asymptote



55. example: $f(x) = x^2 + \dfrac{(x-1)(x-2)}{x^3}$ **57.** $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} \cos x \neq 0$

61. (a) $A_b = 1-(1+b)e^{-b}$

(b) $\bar{x}_b = \dfrac{2-(2+2b+b^2)e^{-b}}{1-(1+b)e^{-b}}$, $\bar{y}_b = \dfrac{\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{4}(1+2b+2b^2)e^{-2b}}{2[1-(1+b)e^{-b}]}$

(c) $\lim\limits_{b\to\infty} A_b = 1$; $\lim\limits_{b\to\infty} \bar{x}_b = 2$, $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \bar{y}_b = \frac{1}{8}$

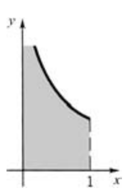
63. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+}(1+x^2)^{1/x} = 1.$ **65.** $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} g(x) = -5/3.$

SECTION 11.7

1. 1 **3.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi$ **5.** diverges **7.** 6 **9.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ **11.** 2 **13.** diverges **15.** $-\frac{1}{4}$ **17.** π **19.** diverges **21.** $\ln 2$

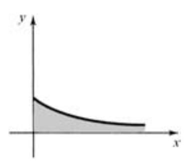
23. 4 **25.** diverges **27.** diverges **29.** diverges **31.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **33.** $2e-2$ **35.** (a) converges: $\frac{1}{32}$ (b) converges: $\frac{\pi}{16}$ (c) converges: $\frac{\pi}{16}$ (d) diverges **37.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi - 1$ **39.** π

43. (a)



(b) 2 (c) $V = \displaystyle\int_0^1 \pi\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)^2 dx = \pi\int_0^1 \frac{1}{x}\,dx$, diverges

45. (a)



(b) 1

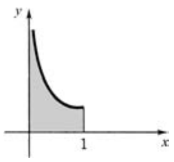
(c) $\frac{1}{2}\pi$

(d) 2π

(e) $\pi[\sqrt{2}+\ln(1+\sqrt{2})]$

47. (b) $V_y = \int_0^\infty 2\pi x\, e^{-x^2}\, dx = \pi$

49. (a)



(b) $\frac{4}{3}$
(c) 2π
(d) $\frac{8}{7}\pi$

51. converges by comparison with $\int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{x^{3/2}}$

53. diverges since for x large the integrand is greater than $\frac{1}{x}$ and $\int_1^\infty \frac{1}{x}\, dx$ diverges

55. converges by comparison with $\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^{3/2}}$

59. $L = (a\sqrt{1+c^2}/c)\, e^{c\theta_1}$ **61.** $\frac{1}{s}$; dom $(F) = (0, \infty)$ **63.** $\frac{s}{s^2+4}$; dom $(F) = (0, \infty)$ **67.** $\frac{1}{k}$

Chapter 11. Review Exercises

1. lub $= 5$, glb $= -1$ **3.** lub $= 2$, glb $= -1$ **5.** no lub, no glb **7.** increasing; bounded below by $\frac{1}{2}$, bounded above by $\frac{2}{3}$

9. not monotonic; bounded below by 0, bounded above by $\frac{3}{2}$ **11.** increasing from a_3 on; bounded below by $\frac{8}{9}$, not bounded above

13. diverges **15.** converges to 1 **17.** converges to 0 **19.** converges to 0 **21.** converges to $\frac{3}{2}$ **23.** converges to 0

25. converges to 0 **29.** $L \cong 0.7391$ **31.** 5 **33.** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **35.** e^8 **37.** 0 **39.** $-\frac{1}{4}$ **41.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **43.** $2e^{-1}$

45. diverges **47.** $2/\pi$ **49.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ **51.** $a \ln(1/a) + a$ **53.** (b) $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x\, dx$

CHAPTER 12

SECTION 12.1

1. 5 **3.** 15 **5.** -5 **7.** $\frac{13}{27}$ **9.** $\frac{85}{64}$ **11.** $\sum_{k=1}^{11}(2k-1)$ **13.** $\sum_{k=1}^{35} k(k+1)$ **15.** $\sum_{k=1}^{n} M_k \Delta x_k$ **17.** $\sum_{k=3}^{10} \frac{1}{2^k}$, $\sum_{i=0}^{7} \frac{1}{2i+3}$

19. $\sum_{k=3}^{10}(-1)^{k-1}\frac{k}{k+1}$, $\sum_{i=0}^{7}(-1)^i \frac{i+3}{i+4}$ **21.** set $k = n+3$ **23.** set $k = n-3$ **25.** $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{10_k}$ **27.** $1.33333\cdots$ **29.** $2.71828\cdots$

SECTION 12.2

1. $\frac{1}{2}$ **3.** $\frac{11}{18}$ **5.** $\frac{10}{3}$ **7.** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **9.** 24 **15.** $\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} x^{k+1}$ **17.** $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^k x^{2k+1}$

19. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^k$; geometric series with $r = \frac{3}{2} > 1$ **21.** $\lim_{k\to\infty}\left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right)^k = e \neq 0$ **23.** 18 **25.** $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} n_k \left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^{-k}$ **27.** \$9 **29.** 32

35. (b) (i) $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sqrt{k+1}-\sqrt{k}}{\sqrt{k(k+1)}} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{k}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{k+1}}\right) = 1$ (ii) $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2k+1}{2k^2(k+1)^2} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{k^2} - \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}$ **37.** $N = 6$

39. $N = 9999$ **41.** $N = \left[\left[\frac{\ln(\epsilon[1-x])}{\ln|x|}\right]\right]$, where [[ ]] denotes the greatest integer function.

SECTION 12.3

1. converges; comparison $\sum 1/k^2$ **3.** converges; comparison $\sum 1/k^2$ **5.** diverges; comparison $\sum 1/(k+1)$

7. diverges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$ **9.** converges; integral test **11.** diverges; p-series with $p = \frac{2}{3} \leq 1$ **13.** diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$

15. diverges; comparison $\sum 1/k$ **17.** diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$ **19.** converges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k^2$ **21.** diverges; integral test

23. converges; limit comparison with $\sum \frac{2^k}{5^k}$ **25.** diverges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$ **27.** converges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k^{3/2}$

29. converges; integral test **31.** converges; comparison $\sum 3/k^2$ **33.** converges; comparison $\sum 2/k^2$

35. converges; comparison $\sum 1/k^2$ **37.** $p > 1$

41. (a) 1.1777 (b) $0.02 < R_4 < 0.0313$ (c) $1.1977 < \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^3} < 1.209$ **43.** (a) $1/101 < R_{100} < 1/100$ (b) 10,001

45. (a) 15 (b) 7 (c) 1.082 **49.** (b) $\sum a_k$ may either converge or diverge.
$\sum 1/k^4$ converges and $\sum 1/k^2$ converges; $\sum 1/k^2$ converges and $\sum 1/k$ diverges.

53. $N = 3$

SECTION 12.4

1. converges; ratio test **3.** converges; root test **5.** diverges; ratio test **7.** diverges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$

9. converges; root test **11.** diverges; limit comparison $\sum 1/\sqrt{k}$ **13.** diverges; ratio test **15.** converges; comparison $\sum 1/k^{3/2}$

17. converges; comparison $\sum 1/k^2$ **19.** diverges; integral test **21.** diverges; $a_k \to e^{-100} \neq 0$ **23.** diverges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$

25. converges; ratio test **27.** converges; comparison $\sum 1/k^{3/2}$ **29.** converges; ratio test **31.** converges; ratio test: $a_{k+1}/a_k \to \frac{4}{27}$

33. converges; ratio test **35.** converges; root test **37.** converges; root test **39.** converges; ratio test **41.** $\frac{10}{81}$

45. $p \geq 2$

SECTION 12.5

1. diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$ **3.** diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$

5. (a) does not converge absolutely; integral test (b) converges conditionally; Theorem 12.5.3 **7.** diverges; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$

9. (a) does not converge absolutely; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$ (b) converges conditionally; Theorem 12.5.3 **11.** diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$

13. (a) does not converge absolutely; comparison $\sum 1/\sqrt{k+1}$ (b) converges conditionally; Theorem 12.5.3

15. converges absolutely (terms already positive); $\sum \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4k^2}\right) \leq \sum \frac{\pi}{4k^2} = \frac{\pi}{4} \sum \frac{1}{k^2}$ $(|\sin x| \leq |x|)$ **17.** converges absolutely; ratio test

19. (a) does not converge absolutely; limit comparison $\sum 1/k$ (b) converges conditionally; Theorem 12.5.3 **21.** diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$

23. diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$ **25.** converges absolutely; ratio test **27.** diverges; $a_k = \frac{1}{k}$ for all k **29.** converges absolutely; comparison $\sum 1/k^2$

31. diverges; $a_k \not\to 0$ **33.** 0.1104 **35.** 0.001 **37.** $\frac{10}{11}$ **39.** $N = 39{,}998$

41. (a) 4 (b) 6 **43.** No. For instance, set $a_{2k} = 2/k$ and $a_{2k+1} = 1/k$.

45. (b) $\sum 1/k^2$ is convergent, $\sum \frac{(-1)^k}{k}$ is not absolutely convergent.

SECTION 12.6

1. $-1 + x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - \frac{1}{24}x^4$ **3.** $-\frac{1}{2}x^2 - \frac{1}{12}x^4$ **5.** $1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5$ **7.** $x + \frac{1}{3}x^3 + \frac{2}{15}x^5$

9. $P_0(x) = 1$, $P_1(x) = 1 - x$, $P_2(x) = 1 - x + 3x^2$, $P_3(x) = 1 - x + 3x^2 + 5x^3$ **11.** $\sum_{k=0}^{n} (-1)^k \frac{x^k}{k!}$

13. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{m} \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k!)}$ where $m = \dfrac{n}{2}$ and n is even **15.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{r^k}{k!} x^k$ **17.** 0.00002 **19.** $n = 9$ **21.** $n = 5$ **23.** $|x| < 1.513$

25. 79/48 $(79/48 \cong 1.646)$ **27.** 5/6 $(5/6 \cong 0.833)$ **29.** 13/24 $(13/24 \cong 0.542)$ **31.** 0.1745 **33.** $\dfrac{4e^{2c}}{15} x^5, \quad |c| < |x|$

35. $\dfrac{-4\sin 2c}{15} x^5, \quad |c| < |x|$ **37.** $\dfrac{3\sec^4 c - 2\sec^2 c}{3} x^3, \quad |c| < |x|$ **39.** $\dfrac{3c^2 - 1}{3(1+c^2)^3} x^3, \quad |c| < |x|$ **41.** $\dfrac{(-1)^{n+1} e^{-c}}{(n+1)!} x^{n+1}, \quad |c| < |x|$

43. $\dfrac{1}{(1-c)^{n+2}} x^{n+1}, \quad |c| < |x|$ **45.** (a) 4 (b) 2 (c) 999 **47.** (a) 1.649 (b) 0.368

53. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a^k}{k!} x^k, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$ **55.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k a^{2k}}{(2k)!} x^{2k}, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$ **57.** $\displaystyle\ln a + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k-1}}{ka^k} x^k, \quad (-a, a]$

59. $\ln 2 = \ln\left(\dfrac{1+\frac{1}{3}}{1-\frac{1}{3}}\right) \cong 2\left[\dfrac{1}{3} + \dfrac{1}{3}\left(\dfrac{1}{3}\right)^3 + \dfrac{1}{5}\left(\dfrac{1}{3}\right)^5\right] = \dfrac{842}{1215} \quad \left(\dfrac{842}{1215} \cong 0.693\right)$

63. (d) 0 (e) $x = 0$

65. $P_2(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}x^2$, $P_3(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{3}x^3$, $P_4(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x^4$, $P_5(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x^4 + \frac{1}{5}x^5$

SECTION 12.7

1. $P_3(x) = 2 + \frac{1}{4}(x-4) - \frac{1}{64}(x-4)^2 + \frac{1}{512}(x-4)^3$
$R_3(x) = \dfrac{-5}{128c^{7/2}}(x-4)^4, \quad |c-4| < |x-4|$

3. $P_4(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right) - \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right)^2 - \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{12}\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right) + \dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{48}\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right)^4$
$R_4(x) = \dfrac{\cos c}{120}\left(x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right)^5, \quad \left|c - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right| < \left|x - \dfrac{\pi}{4}\right|$

5. $P_3(x) = \dfrac{\pi}{4} + \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1) - \dfrac{1}{4}(x-1)^2 + \dfrac{1}{12}(x-1)^3$ $\quad R_3(x) = \dfrac{c(1-c^2)}{(1+c^2)^4}(x-1)^4, \quad |c-1| < |x-1|$

7. $6 + 9(x-1) + 7(x-1)^2 + 3(x-1)^3, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$ **9.** $-3 + 5(x+1) - 19(x+1)^2 + 20(x+1)^3 - 10(x+1)^4 + 2(x+1)^5, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$

11. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{k+1} (x-1)^k, \quad (-1, 3)$ **13.** $\displaystyle\frac{1}{5}\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^k (x+2)^k, \quad \left(-\frac{9}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ **15.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k+1)!}(x-\pi)^{2k+1}, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$

17. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{(2k)!}(x-\pi)^{2k}, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$ **19.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^{2k}(x-1)^{2k}, \quad (-\infty, \infty)$ **21.** $\displaystyle\ln 3 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^k (x-1)^k, \quad \left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}\right]$

23. $\displaystyle 2\ln 2 + (1 + \ln 2)(x-2) + \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k(k-1)2^{k-1}}(x-2)^k$ **25.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!} x^{2k+2}$ **27.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (k+2)(k+1)\frac{2^{k-1}}{5^{k+3}}(x+2)^k$

29. $\displaystyle 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k 2^{2k-1}}{(2k)!}(x-\pi)^{2k}$ **31.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!}(x-1)^k$

33. (a) $\displaystyle\frac{e^x}{e^a} = e^{x-a} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(x-a)^k}{k!}, \quad e^x = e^a \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(x-a)^k}{k!}$ (c) $\displaystyle e^{-a}\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{(x-a)^k}{k!}$

35. $P_6(x) = \dfrac{\pi}{4} + \dfrac{1}{2}(x-1) - \dfrac{1}{4}(x-1)^2 + \dfrac{1}{12}(x-1)^3 - \dfrac{1}{40}(x-1)^5 + \dfrac{1}{48}(x-1)^6$

SECTION 12.8

1. (a) absolutely convergent (b) absolutely convergent (c) ? (d) ? **3.** $(-1, 1)$ **5.** $(-\infty, \infty)$ **7.** $\{0\}$

9. $[-2, 2)$ **11.** $\{0\}$ **13.** $\left[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ **15.** $(-1, 1)$ **17.** $(-10, 10)$ **19.** $(-\infty, \infty)$ **21.** $(-\infty, \infty)$ **23.** $(-3/2, 3/2)$

25. converges only at $x = 1$ **27.** $(-4, 0)$ **29.** $(-\infty, \infty)$ **31.** $(-1, 1)$ **33.** $(0, 4)$ **35.** $\left(-\frac{5}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ **37.** $(-2, 2)$

39. $\left[-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right]$ **41.** (a) absolutely convergent (b) absolutely convergent (c) ?

43. (a) $\sum |a_k r^k| = \sum |a_k(-r)^k|$
(b) If $\sum |a_k(-r)^k|$ converges, then $\sum a_k(-r)^k$ converges.

45. (a) 1
(b) $\sum a_k x^k = \dfrac{a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2}{1 - x^3}$

SECTION 12.9

1. $1 + 2x + 3x^2 + \cdots + nx^{n-1} + \cdots$ **3.** $1 + kx + \dfrac{(k+1)^k}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \dfrac{(n+k-1)!}{n!(k-1)!}x^n + \cdots$

5. $\ln(1 - x^2) = -x^2 - \frac{1}{2}x^4 - \frac{1}{3}x^6 - \cdots - \frac{1}{n+1}x^{2n+2} - \cdots$ **7.** $1 + x^2 + \frac{2}{3}x^4 + \frac{17}{45}x^6 + \cdots$ **9.** $-72.$ **11.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)!}x^{4k+2}$

13. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{3^k}{k!}x^{3k}$ **15.** $\displaystyle 2\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^{2k+1}$ **17.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(k!+1)}{k!}x^k$ **19.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}x^{3k+1}$ **21.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!}x^{3k+3}$ **23.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **25.** $-\frac{1}{2}$

27. $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k-1}}{k^2}x^k, -1, \le x \le 1$ **29.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^2}x^{2k+1}$ **31.** $0.804 \le I \le 0.808$ **33.** $0.600 \le I \le 0.603$

35. $0.294 \le I \le 0.304$ **37.** 0.9461 **39.** 0.4485 **41.** e^{x^2} **43.** $3x^2e^{x^3}$ **45.** (a) $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}x^{k+1}$

51. $f(x) = x - \frac{2}{3!}x^3 + \frac{4}{5!}x^5 - \frac{8}{7!}x^7 + \cdots = \displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k 2^k}{(2k+1)!}x^{2k+1}; \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\sin(x\sqrt{2})$ **53.** $0.0352 \le 1 \le 0.0359; I = \frac{3}{16} - \frac{3}{8}\ln 1.5 \cong 0.0354505$

55. $0.2640 \le I \le 0.2643; I = 1 - 2/e \cong 0.2642411$

Chapter 12. Review Exercises

1. 4 **3.** 2 **5.** diverges; limit comparison with $\sum 1/k$ **7.** converges; root test or ratio test

9. converges; limit comparison with $\sum 1/k^2$ **11.** converges; ratio test **13.** converges; integral test

15. absolutely convergent; limit comparison test with $\sum 1/k^2$ **17.** absolutely convergent; ratio test **19.** conditionally convergent

21. diverges **23.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^k}{k!}x^{2k+1}$ **25.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{2k+1}x^{k+1}$ **27.** $\displaystyle 2\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2k+1}x^{4k+3}$ **29.** $1 - \frac{1}{3}x - \frac{1}{9}x^2 - \frac{5}{81}x^3$ **31.** $\left[-\frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{5}\right)$

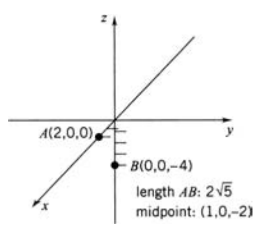
33. $(-\infty, \infty)$ **35.** $(-9, 9)$ **37.** $(-4, -2]$ **39.** $\displaystyle e^2\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k 2^k}{k!}(x+1)^k, \ r = \infty$ **41.** $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}(x-1)^k, \ r = 1$

43. 0.494 **45.** 0.4864 **47.** 0.74316 **51.** 2/e

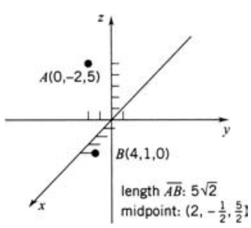
CHAPTER 13

SECTION 13.1

1.



3.



5. $z = -2$ **7.** $y = 1$ **9.** $x = 3$

11. $x^2 + (y-2)^2 + (z+1)^2 = 9$ **13.** $(x-2)^2 + (y-4)^2 + (z+4)^2 = 36$ **15.** $(x-3)^2 + (y-2)^2 + (z-2)^2 = 13$

17. center $(-2, 4, 1)$, radius 4 **19.** $(2, 3, -5)$ **21.** $(-2, 3, 5)$ **23.** $(-2, 3, -5)$ **25.** $(-2, -3, -5)$

27. $(2,-5,5)$ **29.** $(-2,1,-3)$ **31.** $d(P,R)=\sqrt{14}$, $d(Q,R)=\sqrt{45}$, $d(P,Q)=\sqrt{59}$, $[d(P,R)]^2+[d(Q,R)]^2=[d(P,Q)]^2$

33. The sphere of radius 2 centered at the origin, together with its interior

35. A rectangular box with sides on the coordinate planes and dimensions $1\times 2\times 3$, together with its interior

37. A circular cylinder with base the circle $x^2+y^2=4$ and height 4, together with its interior

39. $(0,1,2)$ **41.** $\left(\dfrac{2a_1+b_1}{2},\dfrac{2a_2+b_2}{2},\dfrac{2a_3+b_3}{2}\right)$, $\left(\dfrac{a_1+2b_1}{2},\dfrac{a_2+2b_2}{2},\dfrac{a_3+2b_3}{2}\right)$ **43.** $\dfrac{x}{x_0}+\dfrac{y}{y_0}+\dfrac{z}{z_0}=1$

45. (i) $\left(\dfrac{a_1}{a_3}z_0,\dfrac{a_2}{a_3}z_0,z_0\right)$ (ii) If $z_0\neq 0$, the line does not intersect the plane. If $z_0=0$, the line lies in the plane.

47. $\left(\dfrac{a_1}{\sqrt{a_1^2+a_2^2+a_3^2}},\dfrac{a_2}{\sqrt{a_1^2+a_2^2+a_3^2}},\dfrac{a_3}{\sqrt{a_1^2+a_2^2+a_3^2}}\right)$

SECTION 13.2

1. $(3,4,-2)$, $\sqrt{29}$ **3.** $(0,-2,-1)$, $\sqrt{5}$ **5.** $(-1,-4,7)$ **7.** $(5,2,-8)$ **9.** $3\mathbf{i}-4\mathbf{j}+6\mathbf{k}$ **11.** $-3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+8\mathbf{k}$

13. 5 **15.** 3 **17.** $\sqrt{6}$ **19.** (a) a, c, d (b) a, c (c) a and c both have direction opposite to d **21.** $R(2,-5,3)$

23. $R(1,-9,5)$ **25.** $\left(\frac{3}{5},-\frac{4}{5},0\right)$ **27.** $\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{i}-\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j}+\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{k}$ **29.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{14}}\mathbf{i}-\frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}\mathbf{j}-\frac{2}{\sqrt{14}}\mathbf{k}$

31. (i) $\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}$ (ii) $-(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})$ (iii) $\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}$ (iv) $\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}$ **33.** (a) $\mathbf{i}-3\mathbf{j}+10\mathbf{k}$ (b) $A=-2, B=\frac{3}{2}, C=-\frac{7}{2}$

35. $\alpha=\pm 3$ **37.** $\alpha=\pm\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}$ **39.** $\pm\frac{2}{13}\sqrt{13}(3\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k})$

41. (a) the parallelogram is a rectangle
(b) simplify $\sqrt{(a_1-b_1)^2+(a_2-b_2)^2+(a_3-b_3)^2}=\sqrt{(a_1+b_1)^2+(a_2+b_2)^2+(a_3+b_3)^2}$

43. $\mathbf{m}=\mathbf{p}+\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{p})$

SECTION 13.3

1. -1 **3.** 0 **5.** -1 **7.** $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$ **9.** $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c})$

11. (a) $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}=5$, $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}=8$, $\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c}=18$ (b) $\cos\sphericalangle(\mathbf{a},\mathbf{b})=\frac{1}{14}\sqrt{70}$, $\cos\sphericalangle(\mathbf{a},\mathbf{c})=\frac{8}{25}\sqrt{5}$, $\cos\sphericalangle(\mathbf{b},\mathbf{c})=\frac{9}{35}\sqrt{14}$
(c) $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a}=\frac{5}{14}\sqrt{14}$, $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{c}}\mathbf{a}=\frac{8}{5}$ (d) $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{a}=\frac{5}{14}(3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}+2\mathbf{k})$, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{c}}\mathbf{a}=\frac{8}{25}(4\mathbf{i}+3\mathbf{k})$ **13.** $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{i}+\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\mathbf{j}-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{k}$ **15.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi$

17. $\frac{1}{3}\pi, \frac{2}{3}\pi, \frac{1}{4}\pi$ **19.** 2.2 radians, or 126.3° **21.** 2.5 radians, or 145.3°

23. angles: 38.51°, 95.52°, 45.97°; perimeter: $P\cong 15.924$ **25.** $\cos\alpha=\frac{1}{3}, \cos\beta=\frac{2}{3}, \cos\gamma=\frac{2}{3}$; $\alpha\cong 70.5°, \beta\cong 48.2°, \gamma\cong 48.2°$

27. $\cos\alpha=\frac{3}{13}, \cos\beta=\frac{12}{13}, \cos\gamma=\frac{4}{13}$; $\alpha\cong 76.7°, \beta\cong 22.6°, \gamma\cong 72.1°$ **29.** $x=\pm 4$ **31.** $x=0, x=4$

35. $\pi-\alpha, \pi-\beta, \pi-\gamma$ **37.** $\mathbf{u}=\pm\frac{1}{165}\sqrt{165}(8\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-10\mathbf{k})$ **39.** $\theta=\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}\right)\cong 0.96$ radians

SECTION 13.4

1. $-2\mathbf{k}$ **3.** $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$ **5.** $-3\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}-2\mathbf{k}$ **7.** -1 **9.** 0 **11.** 1 **13.** $3\mathbf{i}-2\mathbf{j}-3\mathbf{k}$ **15.** $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}-2\mathbf{k}$ **17.** -3

19. $5\mathbf{i}-4\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{k}$ **21.** $\left(\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{6}},\dfrac{-1}{\sqrt{6}},\dfrac{-2}{\sqrt{6}}\right),\left(\dfrac{-1}{\sqrt{6}},\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{6}},\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\right)$ **23.** $\mathbf{N}=3\mathbf{j}$; area $=\frac{3}{2}$ **25.** $\mathbf{N}=8\mathbf{i}+4\mathbf{j}+4\mathbf{k}$; area $=2\sqrt{6}$ **27.** 1

29. 2 **31.** $-2(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})$ **33.** $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{0}$

37. (a) makes sense; dot product of two vectors (b) does not make sense; $(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})$ is a number
(c) does not make sense; $(\mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{c})$ is a number (d) makes sense; cross product of two vectors

39. $\mathbf{d}=\lambda[(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b})\times(\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{c})]$ **43.** $\mathbf{c}\times\mathbf{a}=\|\mathbf{a}\|^2\mathbf{b}$ **45.** either $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{0}$ or $\mathbf{b}=\mathbf{0}$

SECTION 13.5

1. P and Q **3.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = (3\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}) + t\,\mathbf{k}$ **5.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = t(x_i\,\mathbf{i} + y_1\,\mathbf{j} + z_1\,\mathbf{k})$ **7.** $x(t) = 1 + t, \quad y(t) = -t, \quad z(t) = 3 + t$

9. $x(t) = 2, \quad y(t) = t, \quad z(t) = 3$ **11.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = (-\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} - 3\,\mathbf{k}) + t(2\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k})$ **13.** intersect at $(1, 3, 1)$

15. skew **17.** parallel **19.** skew **21.** $P(1, 2, 0), \quad \frac{1}{4}\pi$ rad **23.** $(x_0 - [d_1/d_3]z_0, y_0 - [d_2/d_3]z_0, 0)$

25. The lines are parallel. **27.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = (2\,\mathbf{i} + 7\,\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) + t(2\,\mathbf{i} - 5\,\mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k}), \quad 0 \le t \le 1$ **29.** $\mathbf{u} = -\frac{2}{3}\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{3}\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{2}{3}\,\mathbf{k}, \quad 9 \le t \le 15$

31. triples of the form $X(u) = 3 + au, Y(u) = -1 + bu, Z(u) = 8 + cu$ with $2a - 4b + 6c = 0$ **33.** 1 **35.** $\sqrt{69/14} \cong 2.22$

37. $\sqrt{3} \cong 1.73$ **39.** (a) 1 (b) $\sqrt{3}$ **41.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{1}{11}(7\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}) \pm t[\frac{1}{11}\sqrt{11}(\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\,\mathbf{k})]$ **43.** $0 < t < s$ **45.** $d(l_1, l_2) = \dfrac{10}{\sqrt{285}}$

SECTION 13.6

1. Q **3.** $x - 4y + 3z - 2 = 0$ **5.** $3x - 2y + 5z - 9 = 0$ **7.** $y - z - 2 = 0$ **9.** $x_0(x - x_0) + y_0(y - y_0) + z_0(z - z_0) = 0$

11. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{30}}(2\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 5\,\mathbf{k}), \quad -\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{30}}(2\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 5\,\mathbf{k})$ **13.** $\dfrac{1}{15}x + \dfrac{1}{12}y - \dfrac{1}{10}z = 1$ **15.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ **17.** $\cos\theta = \frac{2}{21}\sqrt{42} \cong 0.617, \quad \theta \cong 0.91$ rad

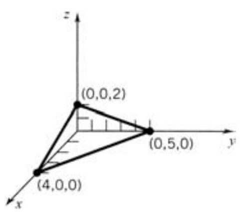
19. coplanar **21.** not coplanar **23.** $\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{21}}$ **25.** $\frac{22}{5}$ **27.** $x + z = 2$ **29.** $3x - 4z - 5 = 0$

31. $\dfrac{x - x_0}{A} = \dfrac{y - y_0}{B} = \dfrac{z - z_0}{C}$ **33.** $(x - x_0)/d_1 = (y - y_0)/d_2, \quad (y - y_0)/d_2 = (z - z_0)/d_3$ **35.** $x(t) = t, \quad y(t) = t, \quad z(t) = -t$

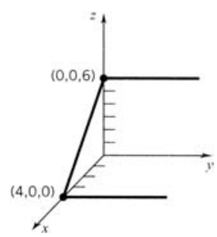
37. $P(-\frac{19}{14}, \frac{15}{7}, \frac{17}{14})$ **39.** $10x - 7y + z = 0$ **41.** circle centered at P with radius $\|\mathbf{N}\|$

43. If $\alpha > 0$, then P_1 lies on the same side of the plane as the tip of $\mathbf{N}$;
if $\alpha < 0$, then P_1 and the tip of $\mathbf{N}$ lie on opposite sides of the plane

45. (a) $(4, 0, 0), (0, 5, 0), (0, 0, 2)$
(b) $5x + 4y = 20, x + 2z = 4, 2y + 5z = 10$
(c) $\pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{141}}(5\,\mathbf{i} + 4\,\mathbf{j} + 10\,\mathbf{k})$
(d)



47. (a) $(4, 0, 0), (0, 0, 6)$, no y-intercept
(b) $x = 4, 3x + 2z = 12, z = 6$
(c) $\pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{13}}(3\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{k})$
(d)



49. $\cos\theta = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{105}}, \quad \theta \cong 1.52$ rad **51.** $3x + y + 4z = 1$ **53.** $10x + 4y + 5z = 20$ **55.** $5x + 3y = 15$

Review Exercises

1. (a) $3/\sqrt{10}$ (b) $(6, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ (c) $(11, -12, 9)$ (d) $(x - 4)^2 + (y - 4)^2 + (z + 2)^2 = 6$

3. $(x - 2)^2 + (y + 3)^2 + (z - 1)^2 = 14$ **5.** center $(-1, 2, 4)$, radius 2 **7.** $\frac{3}{2}\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \frac{1}{2}\,\mathbf{k}$ **9.** 22 **11.** 21 **13.** 0

15. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{14}}(3\,\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$ **17.** 1.51 radians **19.** direction cosines: $3/\sqrt{14}, 2/\sqrt{14}, -1/\sqrt{14}$; direction angles (radians) 0.64, 1.01, 1.84

21. $-\dfrac{27}{\sqrt{14}} \cong -7.22$ **23.** 27 cubic units **25.** (a) $x = 1 + 6t, y = 1 - 3t, z = 1 + 3t$ (b) $3x - 3y + 2z = 2$ (c) $x - y - 3z + 3 = 0$

27. intersect at $(2, -2, -2)$ **29.** skew **31.** (a) no (b) yes **33.** $2x - z = 1$ **35.** $3x + 2y - z = 0$

37. $10x - 17y + z + 25 = 0$ **39.** 3 units **41.** $\theta \cong 0.822$ radians **43.** $x = -2 - 9t, y = 2 + 5t, z = t$

45. $\pm\dfrac{4}{\sqrt{195}}(-5\,\mathbf{i} + 11\,\mathbf{j} + 7\,\mathbf{k})$

CHAPTER 14

SECTION 14.1

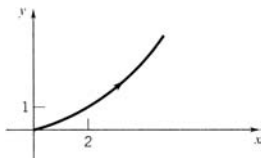
1. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = 2\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 3\,\mathbf{k}$ **3.** $\mathbf{f}'(t) = -\dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{1-t}}\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{1+t}}\mathbf{j} + \dfrac{1}{(1-t)^2}\mathbf{k}$ **5.** $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \cos t\;\mathbf{i} - \sin t\;\mathbf{j} + \sec^2 t\;\mathbf{k}.$

7. $-\dfrac{1}{1-t}\mathbf{i} - \sin t\;\mathbf{j} + 2t\;\mathbf{k}$ **9.** $12t\;\mathbf{j} + 2\,\mathbf{k}$ **11.** $-4\cos 2t\;\mathbf{i} - 4\sin 2t\;\mathbf{j}$ **13.** (a) $-\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \frac{5}{\sqrt{2}}\,\mathbf{k}$ **15.** $\mathbf{i} + 3\,\mathbf{j}$

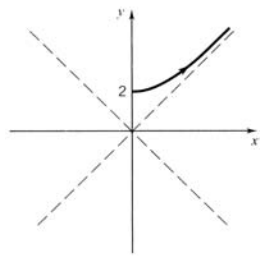
17. $(e-1)\,\mathbf{i} + (1 - 1/e)\,\mathbf{k}$ **19.** $\dfrac{\pi}{4}\,\mathbf{i} + \tan(1)\,\mathbf{j}$ **21.** $\frac{1}{2}\,\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$ **23.** $0\,\mathbf{i} + 0\,\mathbf{j} + 0\,\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$

25. (a) $\mathbf{i} + \frac{e-1}{2}\,\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\left[5 + \ln\left(\frac{4}{9}\right)\right]\mathbf{i} + \left[\frac{-5}{36} + \ln\left(\frac{9}{4}\right)\right]\mathbf{j} + \frac{295}{2592}\,\mathbf{k}$

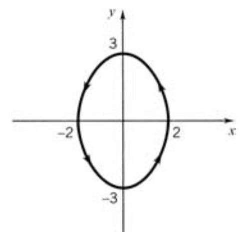
27.



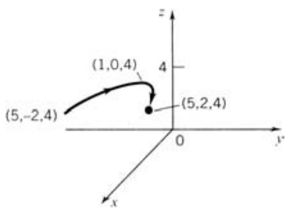
29.



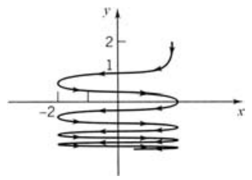
31.



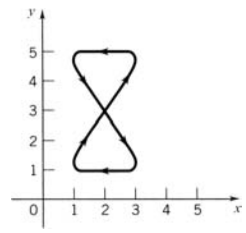
33.



35.



37.



39. (a) $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3\cos t\;\mathbf{i} + 2\sin t\;\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3\cos t\;\mathbf{i} - 2\sin t\;\mathbf{j}$ **41.** (a) $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\mathbf{f}(t) = -t\,\mathbf{i} + t^2\,\mathbf{j}$

43. $\mathbf{f}(t) = (1+2t)\,\mathbf{i} + (4+5t)\,\mathbf{j} + (-2+8t)\,\mathbf{k},\ 0 \le t \le 1$

45. $\mathbf{f}'(t_0) = \mathbf{i} + m\,\mathbf{j}$ $\displaystyle\int_a^b \mathbf{f}(t)\,dt = \tfrac{1}{2}(b^2 - a^2)\,\mathbf{i} + A\,\mathbf{j},$ $\displaystyle\int_a^b \mathbf{f}'(t)\,dt = (b-a)\,\mathbf{i} + (d-c)\,\mathbf{j}$ **47.** $\mathbf{f}(t) = t\,\mathbf{i} + \left(\frac{1}{3}t^3 + 1\right)\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ **49.** $\mathbf{f}(t) = e^{\alpha t}\,\mathbf{c}$

55. no; as a counterexample set $\mathbf{f}(t) = \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{g}(t)$

SECTION 14.2

1. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \mathbf{b},\quad \mathbf{f}''(t) = \mathbf{0}$ **3.** $\mathbf{f}'(t) = 2e^{2t}\,\mathbf{i} - \cos t\,\mathbf{j},\quad \mathbf{f}''(t) = 4e^{2t}\mathbf{i} + \sin t\,\mathbf{j}$ **5.** $\mathbf{f}'(t) = (3t^2 - 8t^3)\,\mathbf{j},\ \mathbf{f}''(t) = (6t - 24t^2)\,\mathbf{j}$

7. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = -2t\;\mathbf{i} + e^t(t+1)\,\mathbf{k},\quad \mathbf{f}''(t) = -2\,\mathbf{i} + e^t(t+2)\,\mathbf{k}$

9. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = (\mathbf{a} \times t\mathbf{b}) \times 2t\mathbf{b} + (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times (\mathbf{a} + t^2\mathbf{b})$
$\mathbf{f}''(t) = (\mathbf{a} \times t\mathbf{b}) \times 2\mathbf{b} + 2(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \times (2t\,\mathbf{b})$

11. $\mathbf{f}'(t) = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{t}\,\mathbf{g}'(\sqrt{t}) + \mathbf{g}(\sqrt{t}),\quad \mathbf{f}''(t) = \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{g}''(\sqrt{t}) + \frac{3}{4}(1/\sqrt{t})\mathbf{g}'(\sqrt{t})$ **13.** $-\sin t e^{\cos t}\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t e^{\sin t}\,\mathbf{j}$ **15.** $4e^{2t} - 4e^{-2t}$

17. $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{d}) + (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) + 2t(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{d})$ **19.** $(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d}) + (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}) + 2t(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{d})$ **21.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{a} + t\mathbf{b}$ **23.** $\mathbf{r}(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2\mathbf{a} + \frac{1}{6}t^3\mathbf{b} + t\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{d}$

25. $\mathbf{r}''(t) = -\sin t\,\mathbf{i} - \cos t\,\mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{r}(t)$; no. **27.** $\mathbf{r}(t) \cdot \mathbf{r}'(t) = 0,\quad \mathbf{r}(t) \times \mathbf{r}'(t) = \mathbf{k}$

SECTION 14.3

1. $\pi\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k},\quad \mathbf{R}(u) = (\mathbf{i} + 2\,\mathbf{k}) + u(\pi\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k})$ **3.** $\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{c},\quad \mathbf{R}(u) = (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) + u(\mathbf{b} - 2\,\mathbf{c})$

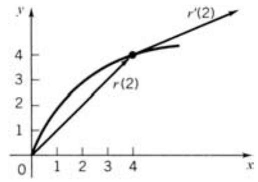
5. $4\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k},\quad \mathbf{R}(u) = (2\,\mathbf{i} + 5\,\mathbf{k}) + u(4\,\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\,\mathbf{k})$

7. $-\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{R}(u)=\left(\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{\pi}{4}\mathbf{k}\right)+u\left(-\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}\right)$

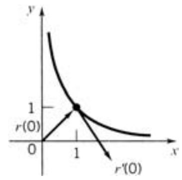
9. $a^2y=bx^2$ **11.** (a) $P(0,1)$ (b) $P(1,2)$ (c) $P(-1,2)$ **15.** $\pi/2\cong 1.57$

17. $P(1,2,-2)$; $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{5}\sqrt{5}\right)\cong 1.11$ rad **19.** (a) $\mathbf{r}(t)=a\cos t\,\mathbf{i}+b\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\mathbf{r}(t)=a\cos t\,\mathbf{i}-b\sin t\,\mathbf{j}$
(c) $\mathbf{r}(t)=a\cos 2t\,\mathbf{i}+b\sin 2t\,\mathbf{j}$ (d) $\mathbf{r}(t)=a\cos 3t\,\mathbf{i}-b\sin 3t\,\mathbf{j}$

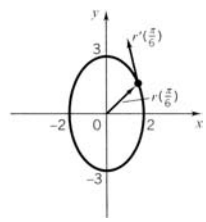
21. $\mathbf{r}'(t)=t^3\mathbf{i}+2t\,\mathbf{j}$



23. $\mathbf{r}'(t)=2e^{2t}\mathbf{i}-4e^{-4t}\mathbf{j}$

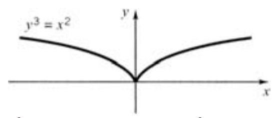


25. $\mathbf{r}'(t)=-2\sin t\,\mathbf{i}+3\cos t\,\mathbf{j}$



27. $\mathbf{r}(t)=(t^2+1)\,\mathbf{i}+t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t\ge 1$; or, $\mathbf{r}(t)=\sec^2 t\,\mathbf{i}+\tan t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t\in\left[\frac{1}{4}\pi,\frac{1}{2}\pi\right)$ **29.** $\mathbf{r}(t)=\cos t\sin 3t\,\mathbf{i}+\sin t\sin 3t\,\mathbf{j}$, $\quad t\in[0,\pi]$

31.



There is no tangent vector at the origin

33. $(2,4,8)$; $\cos^{-1}\left(\dfrac{24}{\sqrt{21}\sqrt{161}}\right)\cong 1.15$ rad

35. $\mathbf{T}(1)=\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{N}(1)=\dfrac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{k}$, $\quad x-1=0$ **37.** $\frac{1}{5}\sqrt{5}(-2\,\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{k})$, $\quad -\mathbf{j}$, $\quad x+2z=\frac{1}{2}\pi$

39. $\mathbf{T}(0)=\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{N}(0)=\mathbf{j}$, $\quad x-z=0$

41. $\mathbf{T}(0)=\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{N}(0)=\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{i}-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{j}$, $\quad x+y-2z+1=0$

45. (a) $x=1-t,\ y=1+t,\ z=-\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}-\dfrac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}t$
(c) the tangent line is parallel to the xy-plane at the points where $t=\dfrac{(2n+1)\pi}{10}$, $n=0,1,2,\ldots,9$.

SECTION 14.4

1. $\frac{52}{3}$ **3.** $2\pi\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$ **5.** $\ln(1+\sqrt{2})$ **7.** $\frac{1}{27}(13\sqrt{13}-8)$ **9.** $\sqrt{2}(e^{\pi}-1)$ **11.** e^2 **13.** $4\pi^2$

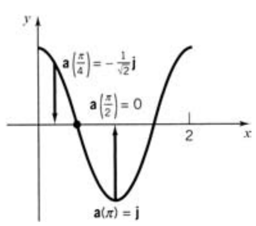
15. $6+\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\ln(2\sqrt{2}+3)$ **23.** $s=\dfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}t^2$, $\quad t=2^{1/4}\sqrt{s}$, $\quad \mathbf{R}(u)=(\sin u-u\cos u)\,\mathbf{i}+(\cos u+u\sin u)\,\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{1}{2}u^2\mathbf{k}$ where $u=2^{1/4}\sqrt{s}$

25. 0.5077 **27.** 22.0939 **29.** (b) $L\cong 17.6286$

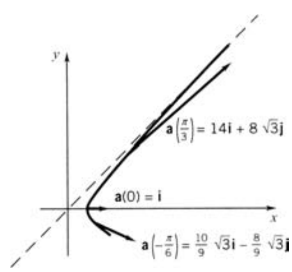
SECTION 14.5

1. $v/a,\ v^2/a$ **3.** $\|\mathbf{r}''(t)\|=a^2|b\sin at|=a^2|y(t)|$

5. $y=\cos\pi x$, $\quad 0\le x\le 2$



7. $x=\sqrt{1+y^2}$, $\quad y\ge -1$



9. (a) (x_0, y_0, z_0) (b) $\alpha\cos\theta\,\mathbf{j}+\alpha\sin\theta\,\mathbf{k}$ (c) $|\alpha|$ (d) $-32\mathbf{k}$
(e) arc from parabola $z=z_0+(\tan\theta)(y-y_0)-16(y-y_0)^2/(\alpha^2\cos^2\theta)$ in the plane $x=x_0$

13. $\dfrac{e^{-x}}{(1+e^{-2x})^{3/2}}$ **15.** $\dfrac{2}{(1+4x)^{3/2}}$ **17.** $|\cos x|$ **19.** $\dfrac{|\sin x|}{(1+\cos^2 x)^{3/2}}$ **21.** $2/5^{3/2}$ **23.** $1/5^{3/2}$ **25.** $3/10^{3/2}$

27. $\left(\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}, \frac{1}{2}\ln\frac{1}{2}\right)$ **29.** $\dfrac{1}{(1+t^2)^{3/2}}$ **31.** $\dfrac{12|t|}{(4+9t^4)^{3/2}}$ **33.** $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}\,e^{-1}$ **35.** $\dfrac{2+t^2}{(1+t^2)^{3/2}}$ **37.** $1/\sqrt{2}$ **39.** $\dfrac{a^4b^4}{(b^4x^2+a^4y^2)^{3/2}}$

41. $\kappa=\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{2}\,e^{-t}$, $a_T=\sqrt{3}\,e^t$, $a_N=\sqrt{2}\,e^t$ **43.** $\kappa=1$, $a_T=0$, $a_N=4$ **45.** $\kappa=9/24$, $a_T=0$, $a_N=9$

47. $\kappa=\dfrac{1}{8}\sqrt{\dfrac{2}{1-t^2}}$; $a_T=0$; $a_N=\dfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{\dfrac{2}{1-t^2}}$ **49.** $a_T=\dfrac{6t+12t^3}{\sqrt{1+t^2+t^4}}$; $a_N=6\sqrt{\dfrac{1+4t^2+t^4}{1+t^2+t^4}}$ **51.** $\dfrac{e^{-a\theta}}{\sqrt{1+a^2}}$

53. $\dfrac{3}{2\sqrt{2a^2(1-\cos\theta)}}=\dfrac{3}{2\sqrt{2ar}}$

SECTION 14.6

1. (a) $\mathbf{r}'(0)=b\omega\,\mathbf{j}$ (b) $\mathbf{r}''(t)=\omega^2\mathbf{r}(t)$ (c) The torque is **0** and the angular momentum is constant.

3. (a) $\mathbf{v}(t)=2\,\mathbf{j}+(\alpha/m)t\,\mathbf{k}$ (b) $v(t)=(1/m)\sqrt{4m^2+\alpha^2t^2}$ (c) $\mathbf{p}(t)=2m\,\mathbf{j}+\alpha t\,\mathbf{k}$
(d) $\mathbf{r}(t_1)=[2t+y_0]\,\mathbf{j}+[(\alpha/2m)t^2+z_0]\mathbf{k}$, $t\geq 0$, $z=(\alpha/8m)(y-y_0)^2+z_0$, $y\geq y_0$, $x=0$

5. $\mathbf{F}(t)=2m\mathbf{k}$ **7.** (a) $\pi b\,\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$ (b) $\sqrt{\pi^2b^2+1}$ (c) $-\pi^2a\,\mathbf{i}$ (d) $m(\pi b\,\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})$
(e) $m[b(1-\pi)\,\mathbf{i}-2a\,\mathbf{j}+2\pi ab\,\mathbf{k}]$ (f) $-m\pi^2a[\mathbf{j}-b\,\mathbf{k}]$

11. An equation of the plane can be written

$$[\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{v}(0)]\cdot[\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}(0)]=0.$$

[If either v(0) or **a** is zero, the motion is restricted to a straight line; if both of these vectors are zero, the particle remains at its initial position r(0).]

13. $\mathbf{r}(t)=\mathbf{i}+t\,\mathbf{j}+(qE_0/2m)t^2\mathbf{k}$ **15.** $\mathbf{r}(t)=(1+t^3/6m)\,\mathbf{i}+(t^4/12m)\,\mathbf{j}+t\,\mathbf{k}$.

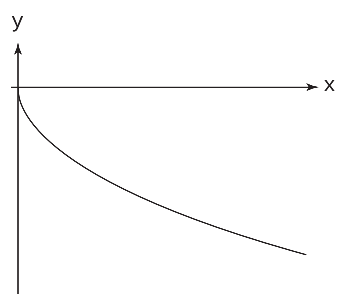
SECTION 14.7

1. about 61.1% of an earth year **3.** set $x=r\cos\theta$, $y=r\sin\theta$

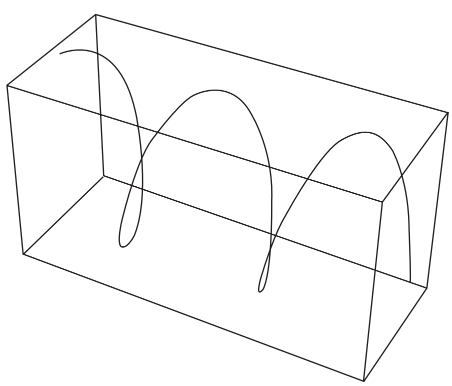
Review Exercises

1. $\mathbf{f}'(t)=6t\,\mathbf{i}-15t^2\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{f}''(t)=6\,\mathbf{i}-30\,\mathbf{j}$ **3.** $\mathbf{f}'(t)=(e^t\cos t-e^t\sin t)\,\mathbf{i}+2\sin 2t\,\mathbf{j}$; $\mathbf{f}''(t)=-2e^t\sin t\,\mathbf{i}+4\cos 2t\,\mathbf{j}$ **5.** $4\mathbf{i}+\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j}$

7.



9.



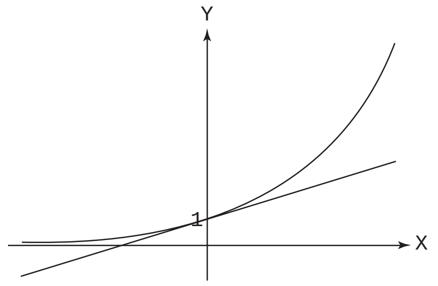
11. (a) $\mathbf{r}(t)=2\cos\left(t+\frac{1}{2}\pi\right)\,\mathbf{i}+4\sin\left(t+\frac{1}{2}\pi\right)\,\mathbf{j}$, $0\leq t\leq 2\pi$ (b) $\mathbf{r}(t)=2\cos(\pi-2t)\,\mathbf{i}+4\sin(\pi-2t)\,\mathbf{j}$, $0\leq t\leq 2\pi$

13. $\mathbf{f}(t)=\left(\frac{1}{3}t^3+1\right)\,\mathbf{i}+\left(\frac{1}{2}e^{2t}+t-\frac{7}{2}\right)\,\mathbf{j}+\left[\frac{1}{3}(1+2t)^{3/2}+\frac{8}{3}\right]\mathbf{k}$ **15.** $\mathbf{f}'(t)=(6+8t)\,\mathbf{i}+12t^3\mathbf{j}-12\,\mathbf{k}$

17. $\mathbf{f}'(t)=(6t^2+2t)\,\mathbf{i}+(4t-2t^{-3})\,\mathbf{j}+(4t^3-1)\,\mathbf{k}$ **19.** $x=e^{2t}, y=2e^{2t}, z=e^{2t}$, or $x=u, y=2u, z=u, u>0$, a line

21. $\mathbf{r}'(0)=2\,\mathbf{i}+3\,\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k}$; $x=1+2t, y=1+3t, z=1+t$ **23.** $\mathbf{r}_1(1)=\mathbf{r}_2(-1)$; $\theta=\pi/2$

25.



27. $\mathbf{T}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\cos t\,\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{2}\sin t\,\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}t\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{N}(t) = -\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + \cos t\,\mathbf{j}$

29. $\mathbf{T}(1) = \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{j} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{N}(1) = -\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{i} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{k}; \quad 2x - 2y + z = 3$ **31.** $\frac{38}{3}$ **33.** $\sqrt{2}\sinh 1$

35. (a) $s = \frac{2}{3}(1+t)^{3/2} - \frac{2}{3}$ (b) $t = \left(\frac{3}{2}s + 1\right)^{3/2} - 1$

(c) $\mathbf{R}(s) = \cos\left[\left(\frac{3}{2}s+1\right)^{3/2} - 1\right]\mathbf{i} + \sin\left[\left(\frac{3}{2}s+1\right)^{3/2} - 1\right]\mathbf{j} + \frac{2}{3}\left[\left(\frac{3}{2}s+1\right)^{3/2} - 1\right]^{3/2}\mathbf{k}$

37. $\mathbf{r}(t) = \cos t\,\mathbf{i} + (\sin t - t)\,\mathbf{j} + t\,\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v}(t) = -\sin t\,\mathbf{i} + (\cos t - 1)\,\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}, \quad \|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| = \sqrt{3 - 2\cos t}$

39. $\kappa = \dfrac{6}{\sqrt{x}(4+9x)^{3/2}}$ **41.** $\kappa = \dfrac{e^{2t}}{2(e^{2t}+1)^{3/2}}$ **43.** $\kappa = 9/25$ **47.** $\kappa = 1, \quad a_T = 0, \quad a_N = 1$

CHAPTER 15

SECTION 15.1

1. dom (f) = the first and third quadrants, including the axes; range $(f) = [0, \infty)$

3. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y) not on the line $y = -x$; range $(f) = (-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$

5. dom (f) = the entire plane; range $(f) = (-1, 1)$

7. dom (f) = the first and third quadrants, excluding the axes; range $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$

9. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y) with $x^2 < y$; in other words, the set of all points of the plane above the parabola $y = x^2$; range $(f) = (0, \infty)$

11. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y) with $-3 \le x \le 3$, $-2 \le y \le 2$ (a rectangle); range $(f) = [-2, 3]$

13. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y, z) not on the plane $x + y + z = 0$; range $(f) = \{-1, 1\}$

15. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y, z) with $|y| < |x|$; range $(f) = (-\infty, 0]$

17. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y) such that $x^2 + y^2 < 9$; in other words, the set of all points of the plane inside the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 9$; range $(f) = \left[\frac{2}{3}, \infty\right)$

19. dom (f) = the set of all points (x, y, z) with $x + 2y + 3z > 0$; in other words, the set of all points in space that lie on the same side of the plane $x + 2y + 3z = 0$ as the point $(1, 1, 1)$; range $(f) = (-\infty, \infty)$

21. dom (f) = all of space; range $(f) = (0, 1]$

23. dom $(f) = \{x : x \ge 0\}$; range $(f) = [0, \infty)$
dom $(g) = \{(x, y) : x \ge 0, y \text{ real}\}$; range $(g) = [0, \infty)$
dom $(h) = \{x, y, z) : x \ge 0, y, z \text{ real}\}$; range $(h) = [0, \infty)$

25. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h, y) - f(x, y)}{h} = 4x; \quad \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x, y+h) - f(x, y)}{h} = -1$

27. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h, y) - f(x, y)}{h} = 3 - y; \quad \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x, y+h) - f(x, y)}{h} = -x + 4y$

29. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h, y) - f(x, y)}{h} = -y\sin(xy); \quad \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x, y+h) - f(x, y)}{h} = -x\sin(xy)$

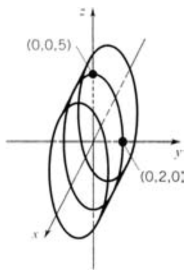
31. (a) $f(x, y) = x^2 y$ (b) $f(x, y) = \pi x^2 y$ (c) $f(x, y) = 2|y|$ **33.** $V = \dfrac{lh(10 - lh)}{l + h}$ **35.** $V = \pi r^2 h + \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

SECTION 15.2

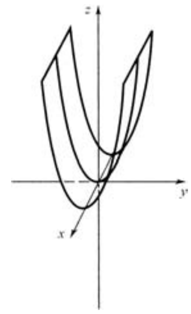
1. an elliptic cone **3.** a parabolic cylinder **5.** a hyperboloid of one sheet **7.** sphere of radius 2 centered at the origin

9. an elliptic paraboloid **11.** a hyperbolic paraboloid

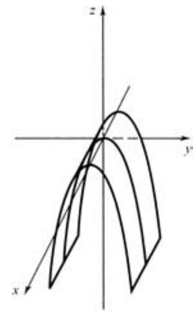
13.



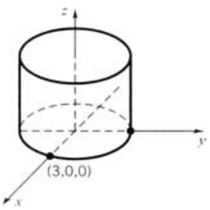
15.



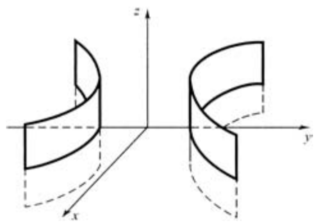
17.



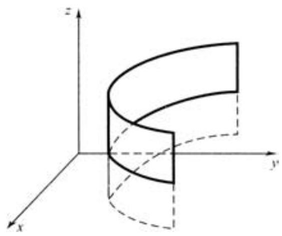
19.



21.



23.



25. elliptic paraboloid, xy-trace: the origin, xz-trace: the parabola $x^2 = 4z$, yz-trace: the parabola $y^2 = 9z$, surface has the form of Figure 14.2.5

27. an elliptic cone, xy-trace: the origin, xz-trace: the lines $x = \pm 2z$, yz-trace: the lines $y = \pm 3z$, surface has the form of Figure 14.2.4

29. a hyperboloid of two sheets, xy-trace: none, xz-trace: the hyperbola $4z^2 - x^2 = 4$, yz-trace: the hyperbola $9z^2 - y^2 = 9$, surface has the form of Figure 14.2.3

31. hyperboloid of two sheets, xy-trace: the hyperbola $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$, xz-trace: the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{4} - z^2 = 1$, yz-trace: none, see Figure 14.2.3 for an example

33. elliptic paraboloid, xz-trace: the origin, yz-trace: the parabola $z^2 = 4y$, xy-trace: the parabola $x^2 = 9y$, surface has the form of Figure 14.2.5

35. hyperboloid of two sheets, xy-trace: the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{4} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$, xz-trace: none, yz-trace: the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{4} - z^2 = 1$, see Figure 14.2.3 for an example

37. paraboloid of revolution, xy-trace: the origin, xz-trace: the parabola $x^2 = 4z$, yz-trace: the parabola $y^2 = 4z$, surface has the form of Figure 14.2.5.

39. (a) an elliptic paraboloid (opening up if A and B are both positive, opening down if A and B are both negative)
(b) a hyperbolic paraboloid (c) the xy-plane if A and B are both zero; otherwise, a parabolic cylinder

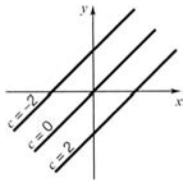
41. $x^2 + y^2 - 4z = 0$ (paraboloid of revolution) **43.** (a) a circle (b) (i) $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = -3z$ (ii) $\sqrt{x^2 + z^2} = \frac{1}{3}y$

45. the line $5x + 7y = 30$ **47.** the circle $x^2 + y^2 = \frac{5}{4}$ **49.** the ellipse $x^2 + 2y^2 = 2$ **51.** the parabola $x^2 = -4(y - 1)$

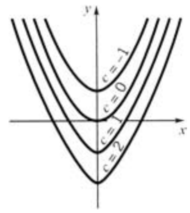
53. Set $\frac{x}{a} = \cos u \cos v$, $\frac{y}{b} = \cos u \sin v$, $\frac{z}{c} = \sin u$. **55.** Set $\frac{x}{a} = v \cos u$, $\frac{y}{b} = v \sin u$, $\frac{z}{c} = v$

SECTION 15.3

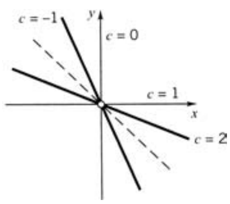
1. lines of slope 1 : $y = x - c$



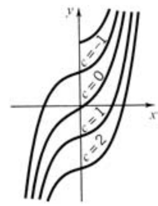
3. parabolas, $y = x^2 - c$



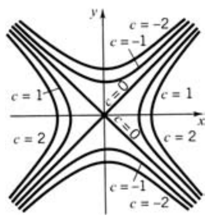
5. the y-axis and the lines $y = \left(\dfrac{1-c}{c}\right)x$, the origin omitted throughout



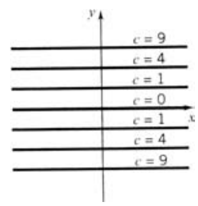
7. the cubics $y = x^3 - c$



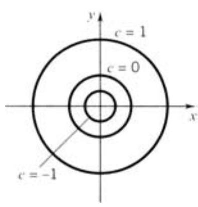
9. the lines $y = \pm x$ and the hyperbolas $x^2 - y^2 = c$



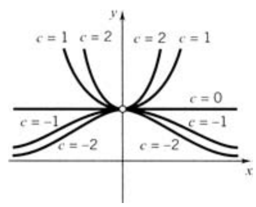
11. pairs of horizontal lines $y = \pm\sqrt{c}$ and the x-axis



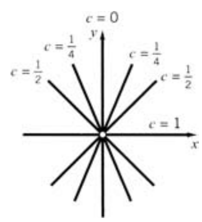
13. the circle $x^2 + y^2 = e^c$ with c real



15. the curves $y = e^{cx^2}$ with the point (0, 1) omitted



17. the coordinate axes and pairs of lines $y = \pm(\sqrt{1-c}/\sqrt{c})x$, the origin omitted throughout



19. $x + 2y + 3z = 0$, plane through the origin

21. $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, the upper nappe of the circular cone $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$; Figure 14.2.4

23. the elliptic paraboloid $\dfrac{x^2}{18} + \dfrac{y^2}{8} = z$ Figure 14.2.5

25. (i) hyperboloid of two sheets; Figure 14.2.3 (ii) circular cone; Figure 14.2.4 (iii) hyperboloid of one sheet; Figure 14.2.2

27. $4x^2 + y^2 = 1$

29. $y^2 \arctan x = \pi$

31. $x^2 + 2y^2 - 2xyz = 13$

35. (a) $\dfrac{3x+2y+1}{4x^2+9}=\dfrac{3}{5}$
(b) $x^2+2y^2-z^2=21$

37. $x^2+y^2+z^2=\dfrac{GmM}{c}$. The surfaces of constant gravitational force are concentric spheres.

39. (a) $T(x, y, z)=\dfrac{k}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}}$ (b) $x^2+y^2+z^2=C$ constant, spheres.
(c) $T(4, 0, 3)=10\sqrt{6}$

41. F **43.** A **45.** E

SECTION 15.4

1. $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=6x-y,\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=1-x$ **3.** $\dfrac{\partial \rho}{\partial \phi}=\cos\phi\cos\theta,\quad \dfrac{\partial \rho}{\partial \theta}=-\sin\phi\sin\theta$ **5.** $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=e^{x-y}+e^{y-x},\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=-e^{x-y}-e^{y-x}$

7. $\dfrac{\partial g}{\partial x}=\dfrac{(AD-BC)y}{(Cx+Dy)^2},\quad \dfrac{\partial g}{\partial y}=\dfrac{(BC-AD)x}{(Cx+Dy)^2}$ **9.** $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}=y+z,\quad \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y}=x+z,\quad \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial z}=x+y$

11. $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=z\cos(x-y),\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=-z\cos(x-y),\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial z}=\sin(x-y)$

13. $\dfrac{\partial \rho}{\partial \theta}=e^{\theta+\phi}[\cos(\theta-\phi)-\sin(\theta-\phi)],\quad \dfrac{\partial \rho}{\partial \phi}=e^{\theta+\phi}[\cos(\theta-\phi)+\sin(\theta-\phi)]$

15. $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=2xy\sec(xy)+x^2y^2\sec(xy)\tan(xy),\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=x^2\sec(xy)+x^3y\sec(xy)\tan(xy)$ **17.** $\dfrac{\partial h}{\partial x}=\dfrac{y^2-x^2}{(x^2+y^2)^2},\quad \dfrac{\partial h}{\partial y}=-\dfrac{2xy}{(x^2+y^2)^2}$

19. $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=\dfrac{\sin y(\cos x+x\sin x)}{y\cos^2 x},\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=\dfrac{x(y\cos y-\sin y)}{y^2\cos x}$ **21.** $\dfrac{\partial h}{\partial x}=2f(x)f'(x)g(y),\quad \dfrac{\partial h}{\partial y}=[f(x)]^2g'(y)$

23. $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=(y^2\ln z)z^{xy^2},\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=(2xy\ln z)z^{xy^2},\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial z}=xy^2z^{xy^2-1}$

25. $\dfrac{\partial h}{\partial r}=2re^{2t}\cos(\theta-t),\quad \dfrac{\partial h}{\partial \theta}=-r^2e^{2t}\sin(\theta-t),\quad \dfrac{\partial h}{\partial t}=r^2e^{2t}[2\cos(\theta-t)+\sin(\theta-t)]$

27. $\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}=-\dfrac{yz}{x^2+y^2},\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial y}=\dfrac{xz}{x^2+y^2},\quad \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial z}=\arctan(y/x)$ **29.** $f_x(0, e)=1,\quad f_y(0, e)=e^{-1}$ **31.** $f_x(1, 2)=\frac{2}{9},\quad f_y(1, 2)=-\frac{1}{9}$

33. $f_x(x, y)=2xy,\quad f_y(x, y)=x^2$ **35.** $f_x(x, y)=\dfrac{2}{x},\quad f_y(x, y)=\dfrac{1}{y}$

37. $f_x(x, y)=-\dfrac{1}{(x-y)^2},\quad f_y(x, y)=\dfrac{1}{(x-y)^2}$ **39.** $f_x(x, y, z)=y^2z,\quad f_y(x, y, z)=2xyz,\quad f_z(x, y, z)=xy^2$

41. (b) $x=x_0,\quad z-z_0=f_y(x_0, y_0)(y-y_0)$ **43.** $x=2,\quad z-5=2(y-1)$ **45.** $y=2,\quad z-9=6(x-3)$

47. (a) $m_x=-6$; tangent line: $y=2,\ z=-6x+13$
(b) $m_y=18$; tangent line: $x=1,\ z=18y-29$

53. (a) f depends only on y (b) f depends only on x

55. (a) $50\sqrt{3}$ in.^{2} (b) $5\sqrt{3}$ in.^{2} (c) 50 in.^{2} (d) $\frac{5}{18}\pi$ in.^{2} (e) -2

57. (a) y_0-section: $\mathbf{r}(x)=x\mathbf{i}+y_0\mathbf{j}+f(x_0, y_0)\mathbf{k}$

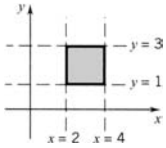
tangent line: $\mathbf{R}(t)=[x_0\mathbf{i}+y_0\mathbf{j}+f(x_0, y_0)\mathbf{k}]+t\left[\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\mathbf{k}\right]$

(b) x_0-section: $\mathbf{r}(y)=x_0\mathbf{i}+y\mathbf{j}+f(x_0, y)\mathbf{k}$

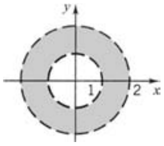
tangent line: $\mathbf{R}(t)=[x_0\mathbf{i}+y_0\mathbf{j}+f(x_0, y_0)\mathbf{k}]+t\left[\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0)\mathbf{k}\right]$

SECTION 15.5

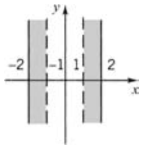
1. interior $=\{(x, y): 2<x<4,\ 1<y<3\}$. (the inside of the rectangle)
boundary = the union of the four line segments that bound the rectangle;
set is closed



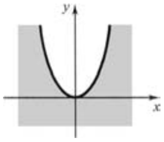
3. interior = the entire set (region between two concentric circles)
boundary = $\{(x, y) : x^2 + y^2 = 1 \text{ or } x^2 + y^2 = 4\}$ (the two circles);
set is open



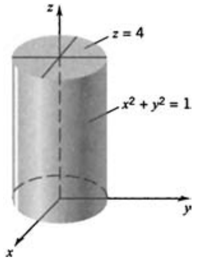
5. interior = $\{(x, y) : 1 < x^2 < 4\} = \{(x, y) : -2 < x < 1\} \cup \{(x, y) : 1 < x < 2\}$
(two vertical strips without the boundary lines)
boundary = $\{(x, y) : x = -2, x = -1, x = 1, \text{ or } x = 2\}$ (four vertical lines);
set is neither open nor closed



7. interior = $\{(x, y) : y < x^2\}$ (region below the parabola)
boundary = $\{(x, y) : y = x^2\}$ (the parabola);
set is closed



9. interior = $\{(x, y, z) : x^2 + y^2 < 1, 0 < z < 4\}$
(the inside of a cylinder)
boundary = the total surface of the cylinder
(the curved part, the top, the bottom);
set is closed



11. (a) ϕ (b) S (c) closed

13. interior = $\{x : 1 < x < 3\}$, boundary = $\{1, 3\}$; set is closed

15. interior = the entire set, boundary = $\{1\}$; set is open

17. interior = $\{x : |x| > 1\}$, boundary = $\{1, -1\}$; set is neither open nor closed

19. interior = ϕ, boundary = {the entire set} $\cup \{0\}$; the set is neither open nor closed

SECTION 15.6

1. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 2A, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 2C, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial x \partial y} = 2B$

3. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{dx^2} = Cy^2 e^{xy}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = Cx^2 e^{xy}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = Ce^{xy}(xy + 1)$

5. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 2, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 4(x + 3y^2 + z^3), \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} = 6z(2x + 2y^2 + 5z^3)$

$\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = 4y, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z} = 6z^2, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z} = 12yz^2$

7. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = \dfrac{1}{(x+y)^2} - \dfrac{1}{x^2}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = \dfrac{1}{(x+y)^2}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = \dfrac{1}{(x+y)^2}$

9. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 2(y + z), \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = 2(x + z), \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} = 2(x + y)$; the second mixed partials are all $2(x + y + z)$

11. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = y(y-1)x^{y-2}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = (\ln x)^2 x^y, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = x^{y-1}(1 + y \ln x)$

13. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = ye^x, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = xe^y, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = e^y + e^x = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}$

15. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = \dfrac{y^2 - x^2}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = \dfrac{x^2 - y^2}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = -\dfrac{2xy}{(x^2 + y^2)^2} = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}$

17. $\dfrac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = -2y^2 \cos 2xy, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = -2x^2 \cos 2xy, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = -[\sin 2xy + 2xy \cos 2xy] = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}$

19. $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 0, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = xz \sin y, \quad \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} = -xy \sin z$

$\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} = \sin z - z \cos y = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}$

$\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x} = y \cos z - \sin y = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z}$

$\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y} = x \cos z - x \cos y = \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z}$

23. (a) no, since $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} \neq \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}$ (b) no, since $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} \neq \dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}$ for $x \neq y$

27. (a) 0 (b) 0 (c) $\dfrac{m}{1+m^2}$ (d) 0 (e) $\dfrac{f'(0)}{1+[f'(0)]^2}$ (f) $\dfrac{1}{4}\sqrt{3}$ (g) does not exist

29. (a) $\dfrac{\partial g}{\partial x}(0, 0) = \lim\limits_{h \to 0} \dfrac{g(h, 0) - g(0, 0)}{h} = \lim\limits_{h \to 0} 0 = 0, \quad \dfrac{\partial g}{\partial y}(0, 0) = \lim\limits_{h \to 0} \dfrac{g(0, h) - g(0, 0)}{h} - \lim\limits_{h \to 0} = 0$

(b) as (x, y) tends to $(0, 0)$ along the x-axis, $g(x, y) = g(x, 0) = 0$ tends to 0;

as (x, y) tends to $(0, 0)$ along the line $y = x$, $g(x, y) = g(x, x) = \frac{1}{2}$ tends to $\frac{1}{2}$

33. f must have the form: $f(x, y) = g(x) + h(y)$

Chapter 15 Review Exercises

1. domain: $\{(x, y) : y > x^2\}$; range: $(0, \infty)$

3. domain: $\{(x, y, z) : z \geq x^2 + y^2\}$; range: $[0, \infty)$

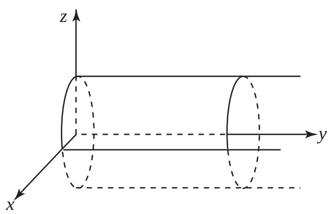
5. (a) $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi x^2 y$ (b) $V = 2x^2 y$ (c) $\theta = \arccos \dfrac{x + 2y}{\sqrt{5(x^2 + y^2)}}$

7. ellipsoid
xy-trace: the ellipse $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$
xz-trace: the ellipse $4x^2 + 36z^2 = 36$
yz-trace: the ellipse $9y^2 + 36z^2 = 36$

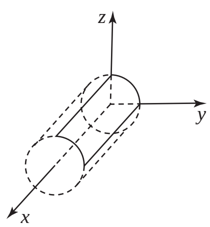
9. hyperbolic paraboloid
xy-trace; the lines $y = \pm x$
xz-trace; the parabola $z = -x^2$
yz-trace; the parabola $z = y^2$

11. circular cone
xy-trace: the lines $y = \pm x$
xz-trace: the lines $z = \pm x$
yz-trace: the origin

13.



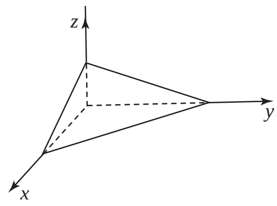
15.



17. ellipses centered at the origin, major axes horizontal

19. parabolas with vertex at the origin, vertices and foci on the x-axis

21. the plane $2x+y+3z=6$



23. (a) $(y^2+1)e^x=1$ (b) $(y^2+1)e^x=4$ (c) $(y^2+1)e^x=2e$

25. $f_x(x,y)=2xy+2y$ **27.** $f_x(x,y)=2xy-2y^3$, $f_y(x,y)=x^2-6xy^2$

29. $\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x}=2x\sin xy^2+x^2y^2\cos xy^2$, $\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial y}=2x^3y\cos xy^2$

31. $h_x(x,y)=-2e^{-x}\sin(2x-y)-e^{-x}\cos(2x-y)$, $h_y(x,y)=e^{-x}\sin(2x-y)$

33. $f_x(x,y,z)=\dfrac{2y^2+2yz}{(x+y+z)^2}$, $f_y(x,y,z)=\dfrac{2x^2+2xz}{(x+y+z)^2}$, $f_x(x,y,z)=\dfrac{-2xy}{(x+y+z)^2}$

35. $f_x(x,y,z)=\dfrac{x}{x^2+y^2+z^2}$, $f_y(x,y,z)=\dfrac{y}{x^2+y^2+z^2}$ $f_z(x,y,z)=\dfrac{z}{x^2+y^2+z^2}$

37. $f_{xx}(x,y)=6xy^2$, $f_{xy}(x,y)=6x^2y-12y^2$, $f_{yy}(x,y)=2x^3-24xy$

39. $g_{xx}(x,y)=2y^2\cos xy-xy^3\sin xy$,
$g_{xy}(x,y)=\sin xy+3xy\cos xy-x^2y^2\sin xy$
$g_{yy}(x,y)=2x^2\cos xy-x^3y\sin xy$

41. $f_{xx}(x,y,z)=2e^{2y}\cos(2z+1)$, $f_{xy}(x,y,z)=4xe^{2y}\cos(2z+1)$
$f_{xz}(x,y,z)=-4x^2e^{2y}\sin(2z+1)$, $f_{yy}(x,y,z)=4x^2e^{2y}\cos(2z+1)$,
$f_{yz}(x,y,z)=-8x^2e^{2y}\sin(2z+1)$, $f_{zz}(x,y,z)=-4x^2e^{2y}\cos(2z+1)$

43. $x=1+\frac{1}{10}t$, $y=2$, $z=8+t$

45. (a) $x=2$, $y=1-t$, $z=3+t$ (b) $x=2-\frac{3}{4}t$, $y=1$, $z=3+t$ (c) $4x+3y+3z=20$

47. interior: $\{(x,y): 0<x^2+y^2<4\}$, boundary: $(0,0)$, $x^2+y^2=4$, open

49. interior: $\{(x,y,z): 0<x<2,\ y^2+z^2<4\}$
boundary: the square $0\le x\le 2$, $0\le y\le 2$, the square $0\le x\le 2$, $0\le z\le 2$,
the quarter disks $0\le y^2+z^2\le 4$, $x=0$, $0\le y^2+z^2\le 4$, $x=2$

53. no; $\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x\partial y}=x^2e^{xy}\neq y^2e^{xy}=\dfrac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y\partial x}$

CHAPTER 16

SECTION 16.1

1. $(6x-y)\,\mathbf{i}+(1-x)\,\mathbf{j}$ **3.** $e^{xy}[(xy+1)\,\mathbf{i}+x^2\,\mathbf{j}]$ **5.** $[2y^2\sin(x^2+1)+4x^2y^2\cos(x^2+1)]\,\mathbf{i}+4xy\sin(x^2+1)\,\mathbf{j}$

7. $(e^{x-y}+e^{y-x})(\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j})$ **9.** $(z^2+2xy)\,\mathbf{i}+(x^2+2yz)\,\mathbf{j}+(y^2+2xz)\,\mathbf{k}$ **11.** $e^{-z}(2xy\,\mathbf{i}+x^2\mathbf{j}-x^2y\,\mathbf{k})$

13. $e^{x+2y}\cos(z^2+1)\,\mathbf{i}+2e^{x+2y}\cos(z^2+1)\,\mathbf{j}-2ze^{x+2y}\sin(z^2+1)\,\mathbf{k}$ **15.** $\left[2y\cos(2xy)+\dfrac{2}{x}\right]\mathbf{i}+2x\cos(2xy)\,\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{1}{z}\mathbf{k}$

17. $\nabla f=-\mathbf{i}+18\,\mathbf{j}$ **19.** $\frac{4}{5}\mathbf{i}+\frac{2}{5}\mathbf{j}$ **21.** $\mathbf{i}$ **23.** $\nabla f=-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}(\mathbf{i}+2\,\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})$ **25.** $\mathbf{i}+\frac{3}{5}\mathbf{j}-\frac{4}{5}\mathbf{k}$

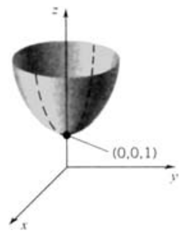
27. (a) $\nabla f(0,2)=4\,\mathbf{i}$

(b) $\nabla f(\pi/4,\pi/6)=\left(-1-\dfrac{-1+\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2}}\right)\mathbf{i}+\left(-\dfrac{1}{2}+\dfrac{-1+\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\mathbf{j}$ (c) $\nabla f(1,e)=(1-2e)\,\mathbf{i}-2\,\mathbf{j}$

29. $(6x-y)\,\mathbf{i}+(1-x)\,\mathbf{j}$ **31.** $(2xy+z^2)\,\mathbf{i}+(2yz+x^2)\,\mathbf{j}+(2xz+y^2)\,\mathbf{k}$

33. $f(x,y)=x^2y+y$ **35.** $f(x,y)=\dfrac{x^2}{2}+x\sin y-y^2$ **37.** (a) $(1/r^2)\,\mathbf{r}$ (b) $[(\cos r)/r]\mathbf{r}$ (c) $(e^r/r)\,\mathbf{r}$

39. (a) $(0,0)$ (b)



(c) f has an absolute minimum at $(0,\ 0)$

SECTION 16.2

1. $-2\sqrt{2}$ **3.** $\frac{1}{5}(7-4e)$ **5.** $\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{2}(a-b)$ **7.** $\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{65}}$ **9.** $\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{6}$ **11.** $-3\sqrt{2}$ **13.** $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}\pi}{12}$ **15.** $-(x^2+y^2)^{-1/2}$

17. (a) $\sqrt{2}[a(B-A)+b(C-B)]$ (b) $\sqrt{2}[a(A-B)+b(B-C)]$ **19.** $-\frac{7}{5}\sqrt{5}$ **21.** $\pm\frac{18}{\sqrt{14}}$

23. increases most rapidly in the direction of $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,\mathbf{j}$, rate of change $2\sqrt{2}$; decreases most rapidly in the direction of $-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,\mathbf{i}-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\,\mathbf{j}$, rate of change $-2\sqrt{2}$

25. increases most rapidly in the direction of $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\,\mathbf{i}-\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\,\mathbf{j}+\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\,\mathbf{k}$, rate of change 1; decreases most rapidly in the direction of $-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\mathbf{i}+\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\mathbf{j}-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\,\mathbf{k}$, rate of change -1

27. $\nabla f=f'(x_0)\,\mathbf{i}$. If $f'(x_0)\neq 0$, the gradient points in the direction in which f increases: to the right if $f'(x_0)>0$, to the left if $f'(x_0)<0$.

29. (a) $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(h,0)-f(0,0)}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\sqrt{h^2}}{h}=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{|h|}{h}$ does not exist (b) no; by Theorem 16.2.5 f cannot be differentiable at $(0,\ 0)$

31. (a) $-\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{97}$ (b) $-\frac{8}{3}$ (c) $-\frac{26}{3}\sqrt{2}$ **33.** (a) its projection onto the xy-plane is the curve $y=x^3$ from $(1,1)$ to $(0,0)$
(b) its projection onto the xy-plane is the curve $y=-2x^3$ from $(1,-2)$ to $(0,0)$

35. its projection onto the xy-plane is the curve $(b^2)^{a^2}x^{b^2}=(a^2)^{b^2}y^{a^2}$ from (a^2,b^2) to $(0,0)$

37. the curve $y=\ln|\sqrt{2}\sin x|$ in the direction of decreasing x

39. (a) 16 (b) 4 (c) $\frac{16}{17}\sqrt{17}$
(d) The limits computed in (a) and (b) are not directional derivatives. In (a) and (b) we have, in essence, computed $\nabla f(2,4)\cdot\mathbf{r}_0$ taking $\mathbf{r}_0=\mathrm{i}+4\mathrm{j}$ in (a) and $\mathbf{r}_0=\frac{1}{4}\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}$ in (b). In neither case is $\mathbf{r}_0$ a unit vector.

41. (b) $\dfrac{2\sqrt{3}-3}{2}$

SECTION 16.3

1. $C=\left(\frac{1}{3},\frac{5}{3}\right)$ **3.** (a) $f(x,y,z)=a_1x+a_2y+a_3z+C$ (b) $f(x,y,z)=g(x,y,z)+a_1x+a_2y+a_3z+C$

5. (a) U is not connected (b) (i) $g(\mathrm{x})=f(\mathrm{x})-1$ (ii) $g(\mathrm{x})=-f(\mathrm{x})$ **7.** e^t **9.** $\dfrac{-2\sin 2t}{1+\cos^2 2t}$

11. $t^t\left[\dfrac{1}{t}+\ln t+(\ln t)^2\right]+\dfrac{1}{t}$ **13.** $3t^2-5t^4$ **15.** $2\omega(b^2-a^2)\sin\omega t\cos\omega t+b\omega$ **17.** $\sin 2t-3\cos 2t$

19. $e^{t/2}\left(\frac{1}{2}\sin 2t+2\cos 2t\right)+e^{2t}\left(2\sin\frac{1}{2}t+\frac{1}{2}\cos\frac{1}{2}t\right)$ **21.** $e^{t^2}[2t\sin\pi t+\pi\cos\pi t]$ **23.** $1-4t+6t^2-4t^3$

25. increasing $\frac{1288}{3}\pi$ in.^{3}/sec **27.** 41.34 sq in./sec **29.** $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial s}=2s\cos^2 t-t\sin s\cos t-st\cos s\cos t$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}=-2s^2\sin t\cos t+st\sin s\sin t-s\sin s\cos t$$

31. $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial s} = 4s^3t^2 \tan(s+t^2) + s^4t^2 \sec^2(s+t^2);$

$\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial t} = 2s^4 t \tan(s+t^2) + 2s^4t^3 \sec^2(s+t^2)$

33. $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial s} = 2s\cos^2 t - \sin(t-s)\cos t + s\cos t\cos(t-s) + 2t^2 \sin s\cos s$

$\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -2s^2 \sin t\cos t + s\sin(t-s)\sin t - s\cos t\cos(t-s) + 2t\sin^2 s$

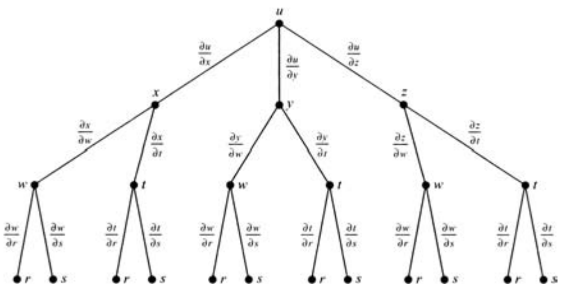
35. $\dfrac{d}{dt}[f(\mathbf{r}(t))] = \left[\nabla f(\mathbf{r}(t))\cdot\dfrac{\mathbf{r}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|}\right]\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\| = f_{\mathbf{u}}'(\mathbf{r}(t))\,\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|$ where $\mathbf{u}(t) = \dfrac{\mathbf{r}'(t)}{\|\mathbf{r}'(t)\|}$

37. (a) $(\cos r)\dfrac{\mathbf{r}}{r}$ (b) $(r\cos r + \sin r)\dfrac{\mathbf{r}}{r}$ **39.** (a) $(r\cos r - \sin r)\dfrac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}$ (b) $\left(\dfrac{\sin r - r\cos r}{\sin^2 r}\right)\dfrac{\mathbf{r}}{r}$

41. (a) See the figure

(b) $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial r} = \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}\left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial w}\dfrac{\partial w}{\partial r} + \dfrac{\partial x}{\partial t}\dfrac{\partial t}{\partial r}\right) + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y}\left(\dfrac{\partial y}{\partial w}\dfrac{\partial w}{\partial r} + \dfrac{\partial y}{\partial t}\dfrac{\partial t}{\partial r}\right) + \dfrac{\partial u}{\partial z}\left(\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial w}\dfrac{\partial w}{\partial r} + \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial t}\dfrac{\partial t}{\partial r}\right)$

To obtain $\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial s}$, replace each r by s.



45. (b) $\left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial r}\right)^2 + \dfrac{1}{r^2}\left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial \theta}\right)^2 = \left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)^2 + \left(\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)^2$

49. $\nabla u = r(2-\sin 2\theta)\,\mathbf{e}_r - r\cos 2\theta\,\mathbf{e}_\theta$

53. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{e^y + ye^x - 4xy}{xe^y + e^x - 2x^2}$

55. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{\cos xy - xy\sin xy - y\sin x}{x^2\sin xy - \cos x}$

57. $\dfrac{\partial z}{\partial x} = -\dfrac{2x - yz(x^2+y^2+z^2)\sin xyz}{2z - xy(x^2+y^2+z^2)\sin xyz};\quad \dfrac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -\dfrac{2y - xz(x^2+y^2+z^2)\sin xyz}{2z - xy(x^2+y^2+z^2)\sin xyz}$

59. $\dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial s} = \dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial x}\dfrac{\partial x}{\partial s} + \dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial y}\dfrac{\partial y}{\partial s},\quad \dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} = \dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial x}\dfrac{\partial x}{\partial t} + \dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial y}\dfrac{\partial y}{\partial t}$ where $\dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial x} = \dfrac{\partial u_1}{\partial x}\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{\partial u_2}{\partial x}\mathbf{j},\quad \dfrac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial y} = \dfrac{\partial u_1}{\partial y}\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{\partial u_2}{\partial y}\mathbf{j}$

SECTION 16.4

1. normal vector $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}$; tangent vector $\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}$
tangent line $x+y+2=0$; normal line $x-y=0$

3. normal vector $\sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{i} - 5\,\mathbf{j}$; tangent vector $5\,\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{2}\,\mathbf{j}$
tangent line $\sqrt{2}\,x - 5y + 3 = 0$; normal line $5x + \sqrt{2}\,y - 6\sqrt{2} = 0$

5. normal vector $7\,\mathbf{i} - 17\,\mathbf{j}$; tangent vector $17\,\mathbf{i} + 7\,\mathbf{j}$
tangent line $7x - 17y + 6 = 0$; normal line $17x + 7y - 82 = 0$

7. normal vector $\mathbf{i}-\mathbf{j}$; tangent vector $\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}$
tangent line $x-y-3=0$; normal line $x+y+1=0$

9. 0.

11. $4x - 5y + 4z = 0;\quad x = 1+4t,\ y = 2-5t,\quad z = \frac{3}{2} + 4t$

13. $x + ay - z - 1 = 0;\quad x = 1+t,\ y = \frac{1}{a} + at,\quad z = 1-t$

15. $2x + 2y - z = 0;\quad x = 2t,\ y = 2t,\quad z = -t$

17. $b^2c^2x_0x - a^2c^2y_0y - a^2b^2z_0z - a^2 - b^2 - c^2 = 0;$
$x = x_0 + 2b^2c^2x_0t,\quad y = y_0 - 2a^2c^2y_0t,\quad z = z_0 - 2a^2b^2z_0t$

19. $(a^2/b,\, b^2/a,\, 3ab)$ **21.** $(0,0,0)$ **23.** $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{11}{6}, -\frac{1}{12}\right)$ **25.** $\dfrac{x-x_0}{\partial f/\partial x(x_0,y_0,z_0)} = \dfrac{y-y_0}{\partial f/\partial y(x_0,y_0,z_0)} = \dfrac{z-z_0}{\partial f/\partial z(x_0,y_0,z_0)}$

27. the tangent planes meet at right angles and therefore the normals ∇F and ∇G must meet at right angles:

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}\frac{\partial G}{\partial x}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial y}\frac{\partial G}{\partial y}+\frac{\partial F}{\partial z}\frac{\partial G}{\partial z}=0$$

29. $\frac{9}{2}a^3 (V=\frac{1}{3}Bh)$ **31.** approx. 0.528 rad **33.** $3x+4y+6z=22, \quad 6x+y-z=11$

35. $(1,1,2)$ lies on both surfaces and the normals at this point are perpendicular.

37. (a) $3x+4y+6=0$ (b) $\mathbf{r}(t)=(4t-2)\,\mathbf{i}-3t\,\mathbf{j}+(43t^2-16t+6)\,\mathbf{k}$ (c) $\mathbf{R}(s)=(2\,\mathbf{i}-3\,\mathbf{j}+33\,\mathbf{k})+s(4\,\mathbf{i}-3\,\mathbf{j}+70\,\mathbf{k})$
(d) $4x-18y-z=29$ (e) $\mathbf{r}(t)=t\,\mathbf{i}-\left(\frac{3}{4}t+\frac{3}{2}\right)\,\mathbf{j}+\left(\frac{35}{2}t-2\right)\mathbf{k}$; $l=l'$

39. (a) $2\,\mathbf{i}+2\,\mathbf{j}+4\,\mathbf{k}$; $x=1+2t, \quad y=2+2t, \quad z=2+4t$
(b) $x+y+2z-7=0$

41. (c) $\nabla f(x,y)=\mathbf{0}$ at $(0,0), (\pm 1,0), (0,\pm 1), (1,\pm 1), (-1,\pm 1)$

SECTION 16.5

1. $(1,0)$ gives a local max of 1 **3.** $(-2,1)$ gives a local min of -2 **5.** $(4,-2)$ gives a local min of -10

7. $(0,0)$ is a saddle point; $(2,2)$ gives a local min of -8 **9.** $\left(1,\frac{3}{2}\right)$ is a saddle point; $\left(5,\frac{27}{2}\right)$ gives a local min of $-\frac{117}{4}$

11. $(0,n\pi)$ for integral n are saddle points; no local extreme values **13.** $(1,-1)$ and $(-1,1)$ are saddle points; no local extreme values

15. $\left(\frac{1}{2},4\right)$ gives a local min of 6 **17.** $(1,1)$ gives a local min of 3 **19.** $(1,0)$ gives a local min of -1; $(-1,\ 0)$ gives a local max of 1

21. $(0,0)$ is a saddle point; $(1,0)$ and $(-1,\ 0)$ give a local min of -3

23. (π,π) is a saddle point; $\left(\frac{\pi}{2},\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{3\pi}{2},\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ give a local maximum of 1;
$\left(\frac{\pi}{2},\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{3\pi}{2},\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ give a local minimum of -1.

25. (a) $f_x=2x+ky,\ f_y=2y+kx$; $f_x(0,0)=f_y(0,0)=0$ independent of k (b) $|k|>2$ (c) $|k|<2$ (d) $|k|=2$

27. $\left(\frac{32}{9},-\frac{16}{9},\frac{32}{9}\right)$; $\frac{16}{3}$ **29.** $\dfrac{\sqrt{114}}{6}$ **33.** $(0,0)$ is a saddle point; $(1,1)$ gives a local maximum of 3.

35. $(-1,0)$ gives a local maximum of 1; $(1,0)$ gives a local minimum of -1.

SECTION 16.6

1. $(1,1)$ gives absolute min of -1; $(2,4)$ gives absolute max of 10

3. $(4,-2)$ gives absolute min of -13; $(0,-3)$ gives absolute max of 8

5. $(\sqrt{2},-\sqrt{2})$ and $(-\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2})$ give absolute min of 0; $(\sqrt{2},\sqrt{2})$ and $(-\sqrt{2},-\sqrt{2})$ give absolute max of 12

7. $(1,1)$ gives absolute min of 0; $(-\sqrt{2},-\sqrt{2})$ gives absolute max of $6+4\sqrt{2}$

9. $(1,\ 0)$ gives absolute min of -1; $(-1,0)$ gives absolute max of 1

11. absolute min of 0 along the lines $x=0$ and $x=2$; $(1,0)$ gives absolute max of 2

13. $(\sqrt{2},2)$ and $(-\sqrt{2},-2)$ give absolute min of $-8-4\sqrt{2}$; $(-1,1)$ gives absolute max of 1

15. $(0,1)$ gives absolute min of -1; $(0,\ 1)$ gives absolute max of 1

17. absolute min of 0 along the line $y=x$, $0\le x\le 4$; $(0,12)$ gives absolute max of 144

19. $x=6,\ y=6,\ z=6$; maximum $=216$ **21.** $\frac{1}{27}$

23. (a) $(0,0)$ (b) no local extremes as $(0,0)$ is a saddle point
(c) $(1,\ 0)$ and $(-1,0)$ give absolute max of $\frac{1}{4}$; $(0,1)$ and $(0,-1)$ give absolute min of $-\frac{1}{9}$

25. $V = \dfrac{xy(S-2xy)}{2(x+y)}$ has a maximum value when $x = y = z = \sqrt{\dfrac{S}{6}}$.

27. $\left(\dfrac{x_1+x_2+x_3}{3}, \dfrac{y_1+y_2+y_3}{3}\right)$ **29.** $\theta = \frac{1}{6}\pi, x = (2-\sqrt{3})P, y = \frac{1}{6}(3-\sqrt{3})P$ **31.** $\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{6}$

33. (a) cross section 18×18 inches; length 36 inches
(b) radius of cross section $36/\pi$ inches; length 36 inches

35. $x = 4$ in, $\theta = \dfrac{\pi}{3}$ **37.** (a) $y = x - \frac{2}{3}$ (b) $y = \frac{14}{13}x^2 - \frac{19}{13}$

SECTION 16.7

1. 2 **3.** $-\frac{1}{2}ab$ **5.** $\frac{2}{9}\sqrt{3}ab^2$ **7.** 1 **9.** $\frac{1}{9}\sqrt{3}abc$ **11.** $19\sqrt{2}$ **13.** $\frac{1}{27}abc$ **15.** 1

17. closest point $\left(\frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}\right)$; furthest point $\left(-\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{2}{3}\right)$ **19.** $f(3, -2, 1) = 14$ **21.** $|D|(A^2+B^2+C^2)^{-1/2}$

23. $4A^2(a^2+b^2+c^2)^{-1}$, where A is the area of the triangle and a, b, c, are the sides **25.** $(2^{-1/3}, -2^{-1/3})$

29. (a) $f\left(\frac{k}{2}, \frac{k}{2}\right) = \frac{k}{2}$ is the maximum value (b) $(xy)^{1/2} = f(x, y) \le f\left(\frac{k}{2}, \frac{k}{2}\right) = \frac{k}{2} = \dfrac{x+y}{2}$

33. radius $\sqrt[3]{\dfrac{V}{2\pi}}$; height $2\sqrt[3]{\dfrac{V}{2\pi}}$ **35.** $\dfrac{abc}{27}$

39. The optimal container is a sphere of radius $r = \dfrac{50\sqrt{3}}{\pi}$. **41.** $\dfrac{16\sqrt{3}}{3}$ **43.** $Q_1 = 10{,}000, Q_2 = 20{,}000, Q_3 = 30{,}000$

SECTION 16.8

1. $df = (3x^2y - 2xy^2)\Delta x + (x^3 - 2x^2y)\Delta y$ **3.** $df = (\cos y + y\sin x)\Delta x - (x\sin y + \cos x)\Delta y$

5. $df = \Delta x - (\tan z)\Delta y - (y\sec^2 z)\Delta z$

7. $df = \dfrac{y(y^2+z^2-x^2)}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^2}\Delta x + \dfrac{x(x^2+z^2-y^2)}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^2}\Delta y - \dfrac{2xyz}{(x^2+y^2+z^2)^2}\Delta z$

9. $df = [\cos(x+y) + \cos(x-y)]\Delta x + [\cos(x+y) - \cos(x-y)]\Delta y$

11. $df = (y^2z\,e^{xz} + \ln z)\Delta x + 2y\,e^{xz}\Delta y + \left(xy^2\,e^{xz} + \dfrac{x}{z}\right)\Delta z$ **13.** $\Delta u = -7.15, du = -7.50$ **15.** $\Delta u = 2.896; du = 2.5$

17. $22\frac{249}{352}$ taking $u = x^{1/2}y^{1/4}$, $x = 121$, $y = 16$, $\Delta x = 4$, $\Delta y = 1$

19. $\frac{\pi}{14}\sqrt{2}$ taking $u = \sin x\cos y$, $x = \pi$, $y = \frac{1}{4}\pi$, $\Delta x = -\frac{1}{7}\pi$, $\Delta y = -\frac{1}{20}\pi$ **21.** $f(2.9, 0.01) \cong 8.67$

23. $f(2.94, 1.1, 0.92) \cong 2.3391$ **25.** $dz = -\frac{1}{90}, \Delta z = -\frac{1}{93}$ **27.** decreases about 13.6π in.^{2} **29.** $S \cong 246.8$

31. (a) $dv = 0.24$ (b) $\Delta V = 0.22077$ **33.** $dT = 2.9$

35. (a) $\Delta h = -\dfrac{(2r+\Delta r)h}{(r+\Delta r)^2}\Delta r$, $\Delta h \cong -\left(\dfrac{2h}{r}\right)\Delta r$ (b) $\Delta h = -\dfrac{(2r+h+\Delta r)}{(r+\Delta r)}\Delta r$, $\Delta h \cong -\left(\dfrac{2r+h}{r}\right)\Delta r$

37. (a) $dA = x\sin\theta\Delta x + \frac{x^2}{2}\cos\theta\Delta\theta$ (b) The area is more affected by the change in θ. **39.** $2.23 \le s \pm |\Delta s| \le 2.27$

SECTION 16.9

1. $f(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}x^2y^2 + C$ **3.** $f(x, y) = xy + C$ **5.** not a gradient **7.** $f(x, y) = \sin x + y\cos x + C$

9. $f(x, y) = e^x\cos y^2 + C$ **11.** $f(x, y) = xy\,e^x + e^{-y} + C$ **13.** not a gradient

15. $f(x, y) = x + xy^2 + \frac{1}{2}x^2y^2 + \frac{1}{2}y^2 + y + C$ **17.** $f(x, y) = \sqrt{x^2+y^2} + C$ **19.** $f(x, y) = \frac{1}{3}x^3\arcsin y + y - y\ln y + C$

21. (a) yes (b) yes (c) no **23.** $f(x, y) = Ce^{x+y}$ **25.** (d) $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + yz + C$

27. $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 - z^2 + xy + yz + C$ **29.** $f(x, y, z) = xy^2z^3 + x + \frac{1}{2}y^2 + z + C$ **31.** $\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{r}) = \nabla\left(G\dfrac{mM}{r}\right)$

Chapter 16. Review Exercises

1. $\nabla f = (4x - 4y)\,\mathbf{i} + (-4x + 3y^2)\,\mathbf{j}$ **3.** $\nabla f = (ye^{xy}\tan 2x + 2e^{xy}\sec^2 2x)\,\mathbf{i} + (xe^{xy}\tan 2x)\,\mathbf{j}$

5. $\nabla f = 2xe^{-yz}\sec z\,\mathbf{i} - x^2ze^{-yz}\sec z\,\mathbf{j} + (-x^2ye^{-yz}\sec z + x^2e^{-yz}\sec x\tan z)\,\mathbf{k}$ **7.** $2/\sqrt{5}$ **9.** $16/3$ **11.** $18/\sqrt{13}$

13. $\pm 19/26$ **15.** $\dfrac{\sqrt{39\pi^2+3}}{12}$ **17.** $y = \ln(\sec x)$ **19.** $\mathbf{u} = \dfrac{\pi}{\sqrt{\pi^2+4}}\,\mathbf{i} + \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{\pi^2+4}}\,\mathbf{j}$; $\dfrac{\sqrt{\pi^2+4}}{4}$ **21.** $2 - 18e^{6t}$

23. $\dfrac{1-\sin t}{\cos^2 t}$ **25.** $104t^3 + 150t^2 - 8t$ **27.** $-\dfrac{9\sqrt{3}}{10}$ radians/sec

31. normal line: $x = 1 + 9t, \quad y = -1 - 5t$
tangent line: $x = 1 + 5t, \quad y = -1 + 9t$

33. tangent plane: $x + y - 2z + 2 = 0$
normal line: $x = 1 + t, \quad y = 1 + t, \quad z = 2 - 2t$

35. tangent plane: $x + y + 4z = 6$
normal line: $x = 1 + t, \quad y = 1 + t, \quad z = 1 + 4t$

39. $(5, 0)$ saddle, $(-3, 0)$ saddle, $(1, 4)$ local min. **41.** $(0, 0)$ saddle, $(6, 6)$ local min. **43.** $(1, 1)$ saddle, $(-1, -1)$ saddle

45. absolute max. $6 + 4\sqrt{2}$ at $(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$, absolute min. 0 at $(1, -1)$

47. absolute max. $4 + \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3}$ at $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \sqrt{3}\right)$, absolute min. $-\frac{4}{15}$ at $\left(-\frac{1}{15}, -\frac{8}{15}\right)$ **49.** $\left(\frac{41}{14}, -\frac{5}{7}, \frac{33}{14}\right)$; $9/\sqrt{14}$

51. absolute max. 3 at $\left(\frac{4}{3}, \frac{4}{3}, -\frac{1}{3}\right)$, absolute min. -3 at $\left(-\frac{4}{3}, -\frac{4}{3}, \frac{1}{3}\right)$ **53.** $df = (9x^2 - 10xy^2 + 2)\,dx - (10x^2y + 1)\,dy$

55. $df = \dfrac{y^2z + yz^2}{(x+y+z)^2}dx + \dfrac{x^2z + xz^2}{(x+y+z)^2}dy + \dfrac{x^2y + xy^2}{(x+y+z)^2}dz$ **57.** $\cong 4.1088$ **59.** $\cong 4.8$ gallons

61. $f(x, y) = x^2y + 3x + y\cos x + y^2 + y + C$ **63.** $f(x, y, z) = xe^y\sin z + x^2 - \frac{1}{3}y^3 + C$

CHAPTER 17

SECTION 17.1

1. 819 **3.** 0 **5.** $a_2 - a_1$ **7.** $(a_2 - a_1)(b_2 - b_1)$ **9.** $a_2^2 - a_1^2$ **11.** $(a_2^2 - a_1^2)(b_2 - b_1)$

13. $2n(a_2 - a_1) - 3m(b_2 - b_1)$ **15.** $(a_2 - a_1)(b_2 - b_1)(c_2 - c_1)$ **17.** $a_{111} + a_{222} + \cdots + a_{nnn} = \sum_{p=1}^{n} a_{ppp}$

SECTION 17.2

1. $L_f(p) = 2\frac{1}{4}, \quad U_f(p) = 5\frac{3}{4}$ **3.** (a) $L_f(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(x_{i-1} + 2y_{i-1})\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j, \quad U_f(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n}(x_i + 2y_j)\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j$
(b) $I = 4$; the volume of the prism bounded above by the plane $z = x + 2y$ and below by R

5. $L_f(p) = -\frac{7}{24}, \quad U_f(P) = \frac{7}{24}$ **7.** (a) $L_f(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} 4x_{i-1}y_{j-1}\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j, \quad U_f(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} 4x_iy_j\,\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j$ (b) $I = b^2d^2$

9. (a) $L_f(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} 3\left(x_{i-1}^2 - y_j^2\right)\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j, \quad U_f\,p = \sum_{i=1}^{m}\sum_{j=1}^{n} 3\left(x_i^2 - y_{j-1}^2\right)\Delta x_i\,\Delta y_j$
(b) $I = bd(b^2 - d^2)$

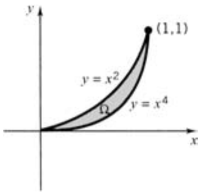
11. $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega} dx\,dy = \int_a^b \phi(x)\,dx$ **15.** 6 **19.** $\frac{1}{8}$ of a sphere of radius 2; $\frac{4}{3}\pi$

21. tetrahedron bounded by the coordinate planes and the plane $\dfrac{x}{3} + \dfrac{y}{2} + \dfrac{z}{6} = 1$; 6

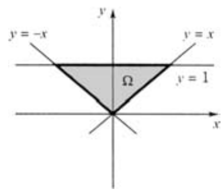
SECTION 17.3

1. 1 **3.** $\frac{9}{2}$ **5.** $\frac{1}{24}$ **7.** 2 **9.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi^2 + \frac{1}{64}\pi^4$ **11.** $\frac{2}{27}$ **13.** $\frac{512}{15}$ **15.** 0 **17.** $\frac{1}{4}(e^4 - 1)$

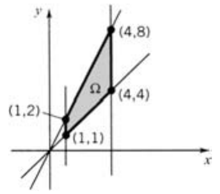
19. $\int_0^1 \int_{y^{1/2}}^{y^{1/4}} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy$



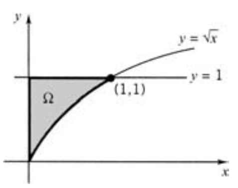
21. $\int_{-1}^{0} \int_{-x}^{1} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx + \int_0^1 \int_x^1 f(x, y)\,dy\,dx$

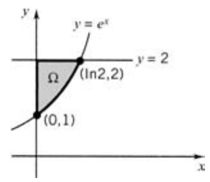


23. $\int_1^2 \int_1^y f(x, y)\,dx\,dy + \int_2^4 \int_{y/2}^{y} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy + \int_4^8 \int_{y/2}^{4} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy$ **25.** 9 **27.** $\frac{1}{160}$



29. $\frac{2}{3}(\cos\frac{1}{2} - \cos 1)$ **31.** $1 - \ln 2$ **33.** $\ln 4 - \frac{1}{2}$ **35.** 4 **37.** $\frac{2}{15}$





39. 3π **41.** $\frac{1}{6}$ **43.** $\frac{11}{70}$ **45.** $\frac{2}{3}a^3$ **47.** $\frac{1}{2}(e - 1)$ **49.** $\frac{1}{12}(e - 1)$ **51.** $\frac{2}{3}$ **53.** 1

61. (a) $\int_1^2 \int_{x^2-2x+2}^{1+\sqrt{x-1}} 1\,dy\,dx = \dfrac{1}{3}$ (b) $\int_1^2 \int_{y^2-2y+2}^{1+\sqrt{y-1}} 1\,dx\,dy = \dfrac{1}{3}$

SECTION 17.4

1. $\frac{1}{6}$ **3.** 6 **5.** (a) $\pi \sin 1$ (b) $\pi(\sin 4 - \sin 1)$ **7.** (a) $\frac{2}{3}$ (b) $\frac{14}{3}$ **9.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi$ **11.** $\frac{\pi}{6} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{8}$ **13.** $\frac{\pi}{2}(\sin 1 - \cos 1)$

15. $\dfrac{\pi}{2}$ **17.** $\dfrac{3\pi}{4}$ **19.** $\dfrac{4\pi}{3} + 2\sqrt{3}$ **21.** 4 **23.** $b^3\pi$ **25.** $\frac{16}{3}\sqrt{3}\pi$ **27.** $\frac{2}{3}(8 - 3\sqrt{3})\pi$ **29.** 2π **31.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi a^2 b$ **33.** $\frac{\pi}{2}$

SECTION 17.5

1. $M = \frac{2}{3}, \quad x_M = 0, \quad y_m = \frac{1}{2}$ **3.** $M = \frac{1}{6}, \quad x_M = \frac{4}{7}, \quad y_M = \frac{3}{4}$ **5.** $M = \frac{32}{3}, \quad x_M = \frac{16}{3}, \quad y_M = \frac{9}{7}$

7. $M = \frac{5}{8}, \quad x_M = \frac{4}{5}, \quad y_m = \frac{152}{75}$ **9.** $M = \dfrac{5\pi}{3}, \quad x_M = \dfrac{21}{20}, \quad y_M = 0$

11. $I_x = \frac{1}{12}MW^2, \quad I_y = \frac{1}{12}ML^2, \quad I_z = \frac{1}{12}M(L^2 + W^2); \quad K_x = \frac{1}{6}\sqrt{3}W, \quad K_y = \frac{1}{6}\sqrt{3}L, \quad K_z = \frac{1}{6}\sqrt{3}\sqrt{L^2 + W^2}$

13. $x_M = \frac{1}{6}L, \quad y_M = 0$ **15.** $I_x = I_y = \frac{1}{4}MR^2, \quad I_z = \frac{1}{2}MR^2; \quad K_x = K_y = \frac{1}{2}R, K_z = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}R$

17. center the disc at a distance $\sqrt{I_0 - \frac{1}{2}MR^2}\,/\sqrt{M}$ from the origin **19.** $I_x = \frac{1}{4}Mb^2, I_y = \frac{1}{4}Ma^2, I_z = \frac{1}{4}M(a^2 + b^2)$

21. $I_x = \frac{1}{10}, \quad I_y = \frac{1}{16}, \quad I_z = \frac{13}{80}$ **23.** $I_x = \dfrac{33\pi}{40}, \quad I_y = \dfrac{93\pi}{40}, \quad I_z = \dfrac{63\pi}{20}$

25. (a) $\frac{1}{4}M\left(r_2^2+r_1^2\right)$ (b) $\frac{1}{4}M\left(r_2^2+5r_1^2\right)$ (c) $\frac{1}{4}M\left(5r_2^2+r_1^2\right)$ **27.** $\frac{1}{2}M\left(r_2^2+r_1^2\right)$ **29.** $x_M=0, \quad y_M=R/\pi$

31. on the diameter through P at a distance $\frac{6}{5}R$ from P

SECTION 17.6

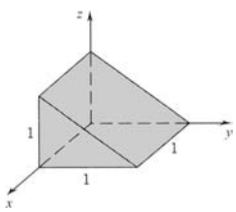
1. they are equal **5.** $\frac{1}{4}a^2b^2c$ **7.** $\bar{x}=\dfrac{A^2BC-a^2bc}{ABC-abc}, \quad \bar{y}=\dfrac{AB^2C-ab^2c}{ABC-abc}, \quad \bar{z}=\dfrac{ABC^2-abc^2}{ABC-abc}$

9. $M=\frac{1}{2}Ka^4$ where K is the constant of proportionality for the density function **11.** $I_z=\frac{2}{3}Ma^2$

SECTION 17.7

1. abc **3.** $\frac{2}{3}$ **5.** 16 **7.** $\frac{1}{3}$ **9.** $\frac{47}{24}$

13. 8 **15.** $\left(\frac{2}{3}a, \frac{2}{3}b, \frac{2}{3}c\right)$ **17.**



19. $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}\right)$

21. $\displaystyle\int_{-r}^{r}\int_{-\sqrt{r^2-x^2}}^{\sqrt{r^2-x^2}}\int_{-\sqrt{r^2-(x^2+y^2)}}^{\sqrt{r^2-(x^2+y^2)}} k\left(r-\sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}\right)dz\,dy\,dx$ **23.** $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_{-\sqrt{x-x^2}}^{\sqrt{x-x^2}}\int_{-2x-3y-10}^{1-y^2} dz\,dy\,dx$

25. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{1}\int_{-2\sqrt{2-2x^2}}^{2\sqrt{2-2x^2}}\int_{3x^2+y^2/4}^{4-x^2-y^2/4} k\left(z-3x^2-\tfrac{1}{4}y^2\right)dz\,dy\,dx$ **27.** $\frac{28}{3}$ **29.** $\frac{1}{270}$ **31.** $\frac{12}{5}$ **33.** $V=\frac{8}{3}, \left(\frac{11}{10}, \frac{9}{4}, \frac{11}{20}\right)$

35. $V=\frac{27}{2}, \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{12}{5}\right)$ **37.** $V=\frac{1}{6}abc, \left(\frac{1}{4}a, \frac{1}{4}b, \frac{1}{4}c\right)$ **39.** (a) $\frac{1}{3}M(a^2+b^2)$ (b) $\frac{1}{12}M(a^2+b^2)$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}Ma^2+\frac{1}{12}Mb^2$

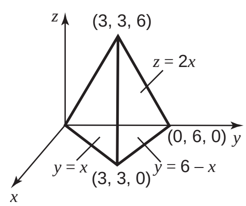
41. $M=\frac{1}{2}k, \quad \left(\frac{7}{12}, \frac{34}{45}, \frac{37}{90}\right)$ **43.** (a) 0 by symmetry (b) $\frac{4}{3}\pi a_4$ **45.** $\displaystyle 8\int_0^a\int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2-y^2}} dz\,dy\,dz=\frac{4}{3}\pi a^3$

47. $M=\frac{128}{15}k$

49. $M=\frac{135}{4}k, \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{9}{5}, \frac{12}{5}\right)$ **51.** (a) $\displaystyle V=\int_0^6\int_{z/2}^3\int_x^{6-x} dy\,dx\,dz$

(b) $\displaystyle V=\int_0^3\int_0^{2x}\int_x^{6-x} dy\,dz\,dx$

(c) $\displaystyle V=\int_0^6\int_{z/2}^3\int_{z/2}^{y} dx\,dy\,dz+\int_0^6\int_3^{(12-z)/2}\int_{z/2}^{6-y} dx\,dy\,dz$

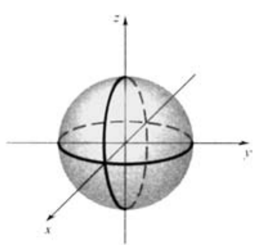


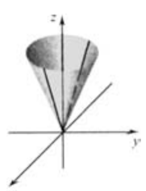
53. (a) $\displaystyle V=\iint_{\Omega_{yz}} 2y\,dy\,dz$ (b) $\displaystyle V=\iint_{\Omega_{yz}}\left(\int_{-y}^{y}dx\right)dy\,dz$ (c) $\displaystyle V=\int_0^4\int_{-\sqrt{4-y}}^{\sqrt{4-y}}\int_{-y}^{y} dx\,dz\,dy$ (d) $\displaystyle V=\int_{-2}^{2}\int_0^{4-z^2}\int_{-y}^{y} dx\,dy\,dz$

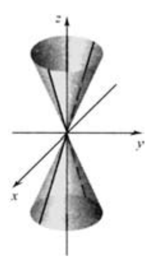
55. (a) 6.80703 (b) $\frac{16\sqrt{3}}{3}(4\sqrt{2}-2)\cong 33.7801$

SECTION 17.8

1. $r^2+z^2=9$ **3.** $z=2r$ **5.** $4r^2=z^2$ **7.** 2π **9.** 8π







11. $\frac{1}{6}(8-3\sqrt{3})\pi$ **13.** $\dfrac{9\pi^2}{8}$ **15.** $\dfrac{\pi}{2}(1-\cos 1)\cong 0.7221$ **17.** $r=1, \quad \theta=\frac{1}{2}\pi, \quad z=2$ **19.** $r=1, \quad \theta=\frac{3}{2}\pi, \quad z=2$ **21.** $\frac{32}{9}a^3$

23. $\frac{1}{36}a^3(9\pi-16)$ **25.** $\frac{1}{32}\pi$ **27.** $\frac{1}{3}\pi(2-\sqrt{3})$ **29.** $\frac{32}{3}\pi\sqrt{2}$ **31.** $M=\frac{1}{2}k\pi R^2h^2$ **33.** $\frac{1}{2}MR^2$

37. $\frac{3}{10}MR^2$ **39.** $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ **41.** $\frac{1}{4}k\pi$

SECTION 17.9

1. $\left(\sqrt{3}, \frac{1}{4}\pi, \arccos\left[\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}\right]\right)$ **3.** $\left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \sqrt{3}, \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3}\right)$ **5.** $(\rho,\theta,\phi)=\left(\dfrac{4\sqrt{6}}{3}, \dfrac{\pi}{4}, \dfrac{\pi}{3}\right)$ **7.** $(x,y,z)=(0,0,3)$

9. the circular cylinder $x^2+y^2=1$; the radius of the cylinder is 1 and the axis is the z-axis **11.** the lower nappe of the cone $z^2=x^2+y^2$

13. horizontal plane one unit above the xy-plane **15.** T: sphere centered at the origin, radius 2; $\frac{32\pi}{3}$

17. T: the portion of the sphere $x^2+y^2+z^2=9$ that lies between the planes $z=0$ and $z=\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{3}$; $\frac{9}{4}\pi\sqrt{3}$ **19.** $\dfrac{\pi}{3}(\sqrt{2}-1)$

21. $\dfrac{243\pi}{20}$ **23.** $V=\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3$ **25.** $V=\frac{2}{3}\alpha R^3$

27. $M=\frac{1}{6}k\pi h[(r^2+h^2)^{3/2}-h^3]$ **29.** (a) $\frac{2}{5}MR^2$ (b) $\frac{7}{5}MR^2$ **31.** (a) $\dfrac{2}{5}M\left(\dfrac{R_2^5-R_1^5}{R_2^3-R_1^3}\right)$ (b) $\frac{2}{3}MR^2$ (c) $\frac{5}{3}MR^2$

33. $V=\frac{2}{3}\pi(1-\cos\alpha)a^3$

35. (a) $\rho=2R\cos\phi$ (b) $0\le\theta\le 2\pi, \quad 0\le\phi\le\frac{1}{4}\pi, \quad R\sec\theta\le\rho\le 2R\cos\phi$ **37.** $V=\frac{1}{3}(16-6\sqrt{2})\pi$

41. $\mathbf{F}=\dfrac{GmM}{R^2}(\sqrt{2}-1)\mathbf{k}$

SECTION 17.10

1. $ad-bc$ **3.** $2(v^2-u^2)$ **5.** $-3u^2v^2$ **7.** abc **9.** $w(1+w\cos v)$ **13.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **15.** 0 **17.** $\frac{2}{3}$

19. (a) $A=3\ln 2$ (b) $\bar{x}=\dfrac{7}{9\ln 2}, \bar{y}=\dfrac{14}{9\ln 2}$ **21.** $I_x=\frac{4}{75}M, I_y=\frac{14}{75}M, I_z=\frac{18}{75}M$ **23.** $A=\frac{32}{15}$ **25.** $A=\pi/\sqrt{65}$

27. $V=\frac{4}{3}\pi abc$ **29.** $I_x=\frac{1}{5}M(b^2+c^2), I_y=\frac{1}{5}M(a^2+c^2), I_z=\frac{1}{5}M(a^2+b^2)$

Chapter 17. Review Exercises

1. 1/40 **3.** $\frac{8}{3}(e-1)$ **5.** $\dfrac{1}{3\sqrt{2}}$ **7.** $-2/3$ **9.** $-16/15$ **11.** $\frac{1}{2}e-\frac{1}{2}$ **13.** 1 **15.** 1/8 **17.** $-8/15$

19. 8/3 **21.** 32/15 **23.** $\dfrac{\pi}{2}(1+e^2)$ **25.** $81\pi/2$ **27.** 1/6 **29.** mass: $M=\frac{1}{4}\pi$; center of mass: $\left(0, \frac{16}{9}\pi\right)$

31. mass: $M=\frac{1}{8}\pi(R^4-r^4)$; center of mass: $\bar{x}=\bar{y}=\dfrac{8(R^5-r^5)}{5\pi(R^4-r^4)}$

33. (a) $(0, h/3)$ (b) $\frac{1}{6}Mh^2$ (c) $\frac{1}{24}Mb^2$ **35.** 10 **37.** 24π **39.** $5\pi/3$

41. $\pi\sqrt{2}/3$ **43.** (a) $\left(\frac{9}{64}\pi, \frac{9}{64}\pi, \frac{3}{8}\right)$ (b) $\frac{3}{10}\lambda$ **45.** (a) $\dfrac{\pi r^4 h}{2}$ (b) $(0,0,\frac{1}{2}h)$

47. (a) $\frac{1}{6}\pi$ (b) $\left(0,0,\frac{4}{5}\right)$ (c) $\frac{1}{15}\pi$ **49.** e^{2u} **51.** $\frac{3}{2}\sin 1$

CHAPTER 18

SECTION 18.1

1. (a) 1 (b) -2 **3.** 0 **5.** (a) $-\frac{17}{6}$ (b) $\frac{17}{6}$ **7.** -8 **9.** $-\pi$ **11.** (a) 1 (b) $\frac{23}{21}$

13. (a) $2+\sin 2-\cos 3$ (b) $\frac{4}{5}+\sin 1-\cos 1$ **15.** 26 **17.** $\frac{1}{3}$ **19.** $\dfrac{8\pi^3}{3}$

25. $|W| =$ area of ellipse

27. force at time $t = m\mathbf{r}''(t) = m(2\beta\mathbf{j}+6\gamma t\mathbf{k})$; $W = (2\beta^2+\frac{9}{2}\gamma^2)m$ **29.** 0 **31.** (a) $\left(\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5}}-\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{14}}\right)k$ (b) 0 **33.** $\alpha = \frac{5}{2}$

SECTION 18.2

1. 0 **3.** -1 **5.** 0 **7.** 0 **9.** 0 **11.** 4 **13.** e^3-2e^2+3 **15.** e^5-2e^2+1

17. 2π **19.** 14 **21.** 0 **25.** $f(x,y,z) = \dfrac{k}{3}(x^2+y^2+z^2)^{3/2}$ **27.** $W = mG\left(\dfrac{1}{r_2}-\dfrac{1}{r_1}\right)$ **29.** $f(x,y,z) = \dfrac{mGr_0^2}{r_0+z}$

SECTION 18.3

3. The scalar field $U(x,y,z) = cz+d$ is a potential energy function for F. Since the total mechanical energy remains constant, for any times t_1 and t_2, $\frac{1}{2}m[v(t_1)]^2+cz(t_1)+d = \frac{1}{2}m[v(t_2)]^2+cz(t_2)+d$. Solve this equation for $v(t_2)$.

5. (b) At a point where U has a minimum, $\nabla U = 0$ and therefore $\mathbf{F} = 0$.

9. $f(x,y,z) = -\dfrac{k}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}}$ is a potential function for **F**.

SECTION 18.4

1. $\frac{1}{2}$ **3.** $\frac{9}{2}$ **5.** $\frac{11}{6}$ **7.** 2 **9.** 16 **11.** $\frac{104}{5}$ **13.** 4 **15.** 4 **17.** 2

19. 3 **21.** $\frac{176}{3}$ **23.** 56 **25.** $\frac{1177}{30}$

27. (b) (i) 7, (ii) $\frac{-37}{3}$ **29.** (a) $M = 2ka^2$, $x_M = y_M = \frac{1}{8}a(\pi+2)$ (b) $I_x = ka^4 = \frac{1}{2}Ma^2$

31. (a) $I_z = 2ka^4 = Ma^2$ (b) $I = \frac{1}{3}ka^4 = \frac{1}{6}Ma^2$

33. (a) $L = 2\pi\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$ (b) $x_M = y_M = 0$, $z_M = \pi b$ (c) $I_x = I_y = \frac{1}{6}M(3a^2+8b^2\pi^2)$, $I_z = Ma^2$ **35.** $M = \frac{2}{3}\pi k\sqrt{a^2+b^2}\ (3a^2+4\pi^2b^2)$

SECTION 18.5

1. $\frac{1}{6}$ **3.** 6π **5.** 2π **7.** a^2b **9.** 7π **11.** $5a\pi r^2$ **13.** 0 **15.** 0 **17.** πa^2

19. $\frac{15}{2}-4\ln 4$ **21.** $(c-a)A$ **23.** $3\pi R^2$ **29.** $\oint_{C_1} = \oint_{C_2} + \oint_{C_3}$ **31.** (a) 0 (b) 0

SECTION 18.6

1. $4[(u^2-v^2)\mathbf{i}-(u^2+v^2)\mathbf{j}+2uv\mathbf{k}]$ **3.** $2(\mathbf{j}-\mathbf{i})$ **5.** $\mathbf{r}(u,v) = 3\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i}+2\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j}+6\sin v\,\mathbf{k}$, $u\in[0,2\pi]$, $v\in[0,\pi/2]$

7. $\mathbf{r}(u,v) = 2\cos u\cos v\,\mathbf{i}+2\sin u\cos v\,\mathbf{j}+2\sin v\,\mathbf{k}$, $u\in[0,2\pi]$, $v\in(\pi/4,\pi/2]$ **9.** $\mathbf{r}(u,v) = u\,\mathbf{i}+g(u,v)\,\mathbf{j}+v\,\mathbf{k}$, $(u,v)\in\Omega$

11. $x^2/a^2+y^2/b^2+z^2/c^2 = 1$; ellipsoid **13.** $x^2/a^2-y^2/b^2 = z$; hyperbolic paraboloid

15. $\mathbf{r}(u,v) = v\cos u\,\mathbf{i}+v\sin u\,\mathbf{j}+f(v)\,\mathbf{k}$; $0\le u\le 2\pi$, $a\le v\le b$ **17.** area of $\Gamma = A_\Omega \sec\gamma$ **19.** $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{a^2b^2+a^2c^2+b^2c^2}$

21. $\frac{1}{6}\pi(17\sqrt{17}-1)$ **23.** $\frac{1}{6}\pi[(4a^2+1)^{3/2}-(a^2+1)^{3/2}]$ **25.** $\frac{1}{15}(36\sqrt{6}-50\sqrt{5}+32)$ **27.** 4π

29. (a) $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega}\sqrt{\left[\frac{\partial g}{\partial y}(y,z)\right]^2+\left[\frac{\partial g}{\partial z}(y,z)\right]^2+1}\,dydz=\iint_{\Omega}\sec[\alpha(y,z)]\,dydz$

where α is the angle between the unit normal with positive **i** component and the x-axis

(b) $\displaystyle\iint_{\Omega}\sqrt{\left[\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x,z)\right]^2+\left[\frac{\partial h}{\partial z}(x,z)\right]^2+1}\,dxdz=\iint_{\Omega}\sec[\beta(x,z)]\,dxdz$

where β is the angle between the unit normal with positive **j** component and the y-axis

31. (a) $\mathrm{N}(u,v)=v\cos u\sin\alpha\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{i}+v\sin u\sin\alpha\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{j}-v\sin^2\alpha\,\mathbf{k}$ (b) $A=\pi s^2\sin\alpha$

33. (c) $\displaystyle A=\int_0^{2\pi}\int_{-\ln 2}^{\ln 2}\|\mathbf{N}(u,v)\|\,dudv$
$\displaystyle =\int_0^{2\pi}\int_{-\ln 2}^{\ln 2}\sqrt{64\cos^2 u\cosh^2 v+144\sin^2 u\cosh^2 v+36\cosh^2 v\sinh^2 v}\,du\,dv$

35. $A=\sqrt{A_1^2+A_2^2+A_3^2}$ **37.** (a) $\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{2\pi}\left[\sqrt{6}+\ln(\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{3})\right]$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}a^2\left[\sqrt{2e^{4\pi}+1}-\sqrt{3}+2\pi+\ln(1+\sqrt{3})-\ln(1+\sqrt{2e^{4\pi}+1})\right]$

SECTION 18.7

1. $\frac{1}{2}\left[\sqrt{2}+\ln(1+\sqrt{2})\right]$ **3.** $2\sqrt{2}-1$ **5.** $\frac{1}{3}[2\sqrt{2}-1]$ **7.** $\dfrac{9\sqrt{14}}{2}$ **9.** $\dfrac{4}{3}$ **11.** $\dfrac{4\pi}{3}$ **13.** $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}a^2k$

15. $\frac{1}{12}\sqrt{3}a^4k$ **17.** $(0,0,\frac{1}{2}a)$ **19.** 2 **21.** $\frac{4}{3}\pi a^3$ **23.** 0 **25.** $\dfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}a^3$ **27.** 0 **29.** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **31.** $2\pi a^2 l$

33. $\frac{8}{35}$ **35.** $-\frac{4}{63}$ **37.** $\bar{x}=\bar{y}=0,\quad \bar{z}=\frac{2}{3}s\cos\alpha$ **39.** $x_M=y_M=0,\quad z_M=\frac{3}{4}$ **43.** $x_M=\frac{11}{9}$ **45.** 0

47. $(4\sqrt{2}-\frac{7}{2})\pi$

SECTION 18.8

1. $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=2,\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{0}$ **3.** $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=0,\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{0}$ **5.** $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=6,\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{0}$

7. $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=yz+1,\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=-x\,\mathbf{i}+xy\,\mathbf{j}+(1-x)z\,\mathbf{k}$ **9.** $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=1/r^2,\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{0}$

11. $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=2(x+y+z)e^{r^2},\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=2e^{r^2}[(y-z)\,\mathbf{i}-(x-z)\,\mathbf{j}+(x-y)\,\mathbf{k}]$ **13.** $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=f'(x),\ \nabla\times\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{0}$

17. $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{v}=0$ **19.** $\nabla\times\mathbf{v}=0$ **21.** $\nabla^2 f=12(x^2+y^2+z^2)$

23. $\nabla^2 f=2y^3z^4+6x^2yz^4+12x^2y^3z^2$ **25.** $\nabla^2 f=e^r(1+2r^{-1})$ **27.** (a) $2r^2$ (b) $-1/r$

33. $n=-1$

SECTION 18.9

1. 4π **3.** 0 **5.** 3 **7.** 2 **9.** 36π **11.** $\frac{1}{24}$ **13.** 64π **15.** 0 **17.** $(A+B+C)V$

SECTION 18.10

For Exercises 1 and 3: $\mathbf{n}=x\,\mathbf{i}+y\,\mathbf{j}+z\,\mathbf{k}$ and $C:\mathbf{r}(u)=\cos u\,\mathbf{i}+\sin u\,\mathbf{j},\ u\in[0,2\pi]$.

1. (a) $\displaystyle\iint_S[(\nabla\times\mathrm{v})\cdot\mathbf{n}]d\sigma=\iint_S(0\cdot\mathbf{n})d\sigma=0.$

(b) S is bounded by the unit circle $C:\mathbf{r}(u)=\cos u\,\mathbf{i}+\sin u\,\mathbf{j},\ u\in[0,2\pi]$.

$\displaystyle\oint_c\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r})\cdot\mathbf{dr}=0$ since $\mathbf{v}$ is a gradient.

3. (a) $\displaystyle\iint_S[(\nabla\times\mathrm{v})\cdot\mathrm{n}]d\sigma=2\pi$

(b) $\displaystyle\oint_C\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r})\cdot\mathbf{dr}=\oint_C z^2dx+2xdy=\oint_C 2x\,dy=\int_0^{2\pi}2\cos^2 u\,du=2\pi$

For Exercises 5 and 7 take $S:z=2-x-y$ with $0\le x\le 2,\ 0\le y\le 2-x$ and C as the triangle $(2,0,0),(0,2,0),(0,0,2)$.
$\mathbf{n}=\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}(\mathbf{i}+\mathbf{j}+\mathbf{k})$.

5. (a) $\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \iint_S \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}\, d\sigma = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}A = 2$

(b) $\oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \left(\int_{C_1} + \int_{C_2} + \int_{C_3}\right) \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = -2 + 2 + 2 = 2$

7. (a) $\iint_S [(\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]\, d\sigma = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3} \iint_S y\, d\sigma = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}\bar{y}A = \frac{4}{3}$

(b) $\oint_C \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \left(\int_{C_1} + \int_{C_2} + \int_{C_3}\right) \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}) \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \left(\frac{4}{3} - \frac{32}{5}\right) + \frac{32}{5} + 0 = \frac{4}{3}$

9. 4π **11.** 0 **13.** $\pm\frac{1}{8}\pi$ **15.** $\pm\frac{1}{4}\pi$

Chapter 18. Review Exercises

1. (a) $-\frac{1}{12}$ (b) $-\frac{11}{72}$ **3.** (a) $\frac{119}{2}$ (b) $\frac{119}{2}$ (c) $\frac{119}{2}$ **5.** $-6\cos 3 + 2\sin 3 + \frac{1}{3}e^{27} - \cos 27 + \frac{2}{3}$ **7.** $\frac{2685}{28}$

9. $4C$ **11.** $\mathbf{e}^8 - 1$ **13.** 1 **15.** (a) $-\frac{4}{15}$ (b) $-\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $-\frac{2}{5}$ **17.** $\frac{1}{3}e^8 + \frac{17}{3} + 4\sin 2 + 2\cos 2$ **19.** $-\frac{1}{3}$ **21.** 6

23. -4 **25.** $-\frac{5}{2}\pi$ **27.** $\frac{32}{3}$ **29.** $8(\pi - 2)$ **31.** $9\pi\sqrt{2}$ **33.** $\frac{1}{4}\pi\sqrt{2}$ **35.** $\frac{128}{3}\pi$ **37.** $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = 4x$, $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = 2y\,\mathbf{k}$

39. $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = 1 + xy$, $\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = (xz - x)\,\mathbf{i} - yz\,\mathbf{j} + z\,\mathbf{k}$ **41.** $\frac{1}{2}$ **43.** 324π **45.** 4π

CHAPTER 19

SECTION 19.1

1. $y^2 = \dfrac{1}{1 + Ce^{x^2}}$ **3.** $y = (Ce^{2x} - e^x)^2$ **5.** $y = \left[(x-2)^2 + \dfrac{C}{\sqrt{x-2}}\right]^2$ **7.** $y^{-2} = 4e^{x^2} - 2xe^{x^2}$ **9.** $y^2 = \dfrac{x^3}{2 - x}$

11. $\ln y = x^2 + Cx$ **13.** $y^2 - x^2 = Cx$ **15.** $x^2 - 2xy - y^2 = C$ **17.** $y + x = xe^{y/x}[C - \ln x]$ **19.** $1 - \cos[y/x] = Cx\sin[y/x]$

21. $y^3 + 3x^3 \ln|x| = 8x^3$

SECTION 19.2

1. the whole plane; $\dfrac{x^2y^2}{2} - xy = C$ **3.** the whole plane; $xe^y - ye^x = C$ **5.** the upper half-plane; $x\ln y + x^2y = C$

7. the right half-plane; $y\ln x + 3x^2 - 2y = C$ **9.** the whole plane; $xy^3 + y^2\cos x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{2}e^{2y} = C$

11. (a) yes (b) $\dfrac{1}{p(y)q(x)}$, $(p(y)q(x) \neq 0)$ **13.** $xe^y - ye^x = C$ **15.** $x^3y^2 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + xe^y + \frac{1}{2}y^2 = C$ **17.** $y^3e^x + xe^x = C$

19. $x^3 + 3xy + 3e^y = 4$ **21.** $4x^2y^2 + x^4 + 4x^2 = 5$ **23.** $xy - \dfrac{1}{y} = 3$ **25.** $\sinh(x - y^2) + \frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + \frac{1}{2}y^2 = \frac{1}{2}e^4 + 1$

27. (a) $k = 3$ (b) $k = 1$ **29.** $y = \dfrac{-4}{x^4 + C}$ **31.** $y = \frac{1}{9}x^5 + Cx^{-4}$ **33.** $e^{xy} - x^2 + 2\ln|y| = C$

SECTION 19.3

1. (a) 2.48832, rel error 8.46% (b) 2.71825, rel error 0.001%

3. (a) 2.59374, rel error 4.58% (b) 2.71828, rel error 0% **5.** (a) 1.9, rel error 5.0% (b) 2.0 rel error 0%

7. (a) 1.42052, rel error -0.45% (b) 1.41421, rel error 0% **9.** (a) 2.65330, rel error 2.39% (b) 2.71828, rel error 0%

SECTION 19.4

1. $y = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{4}$ **3.** $y = \frac{1}{5}x^2 - \frac{4}{25}x - \frac{27}{125}$ **5.** $y = \frac{1}{36}e^{3x}$ **7.** $y = \frac{1}{5}e^x$ **9.** $y = -\frac{13}{170}\cos x - \frac{1}{170}\sin x$

11. $y = \frac{3}{100}\cos 2x + \frac{21}{100}\sin 2x$ **13.** $y = \frac{1}{20}e^{-x}\sin 2x + \frac{1}{10}e^{-x}\cos 2x$ **15.** $y = \frac{3}{2}xe^{-2x}$ **17.** $y = C_1\cos x + C_2\sin x + \frac{1}{2}e^x$

19. $y = C_1e^{5x} + C_2e^{-2x} + \frac{1}{10}x + \frac{7}{100}$ **21.** $y = C_1e^x + C_2e^{-4x} - \frac{1}{5}xe^{-4x}$ **23.** $y = C_1e^{-2x} + C_2e^x + \frac{1}{2}x^2e^x - \frac{1}{3}xe^x$

27. $y = C_1e^{-3x} + C_2e^{-x} + \frac{1}{4}xe^{-x} + \frac{1}{16}e^x$ **29.** $y = 2e^x\sin x - xe^x\cos x$ **31.** $y = \frac{1}{3}x\ln|x|e^{2x}$ **33.** $y = -\ln|x|e^{-2x}$

35. $y = e^x(x \sin x + \cos x \ln|\cos x|)$

37. (a) $i(t) = -CF_0\, e^{-(R/2L)t} + \dfrac{F_0}{2L}(2 - RC)\, t\, e^{-(R/2L)t} + CF_0$

(b) $i(t) = e^{-(R/2L)t}\left[\dfrac{F_0(2-RC)}{2L\beta}\sin\beta t - CF_0\cos\beta t\right] + CF_0, \quad$ where $\beta = \sqrt{\dfrac{4L - CR^2}{4L^2C}}$

39. (b) $y = \frac{1}{3}\sin(\ln x)$

SECTION 19.5

1. $x(t) = \sin\left(8t + \frac{1}{2}\pi\right);\ A = 1,\ \ f = 4/\pi$ **3.** $\pm 2\pi A/T$ **5.** $x(t) = (15/\pi)\sin\frac{1}{3}\pi t$ **7.** $x(t) = x_0\sin\left(t\sqrt{k/m} + \frac{1}{2}\pi\right)$

9. at $x = \pm\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}\,x_0$ **11.** $\frac{1}{4}kx_0^2$ **13.** Set $y(t) = x(t) - 2$. Then $y(t) = 2\sin(2t + \frac{3}{2}\pi)$. The amplitude is 2 and the period is π.

15. (a) $x''(t) + \omega^2 x(t) = 0$ with $\omega = r\sqrt{\pi\rho/m}$ (b) $x(t) = x_0\sin(r\sqrt{\pi p/m t} + \frac{1}{2}\pi)$, taking downward as positive; $A = x_0$, $T = (2/r)\sqrt{m\pi/\rho}$

17. amplitude and frequency both decrease **19.** at most once **21.** if $\omega/\gamma = m/n$, then $m/\omega = n/\gamma$ is a period

23. $x = e^{-\alpha t}[c_1\cos\sqrt{\alpha^2 - \omega^2}\, t) + c_2\sin(\sqrt{\alpha^2 - \omega^2}\, t)]$ or equivalently $x = Ae^{-\alpha t}\sin\left[t\sqrt{\alpha^2 - \omega^2} + \phi_0\right]$

25. $x_p = \dfrac{F_0}{2\alpha\gamma m}\sin\gamma t$; as $c = 2\alpha m \to 0^+$, the amplitude $\left|\dfrac{F_0}{2\alpha\gamma m}\right| \to \infty$

Chapter 19. Review Exercises

1. $y = Ce^{-x} - 2e^{-2x}$ **3.** $y^2 = Ce^{2\tan x} - 1$ **5.** $y = \dfrac{Cx^2}{1 - Cx}$ **7.** $xy\sin x + \frac{1}{3}y^3 = C$ **9.** $y + \ln|y| = \frac{1}{3}x^3 - x + C$

11. $y = \frac{1}{5}x^3 + Cx^{-2}$ **13.** $y^2 = x^2 + 3x$ **15.** $x^2y + xy^2 + \frac{1}{3}x^3 - y = \frac{4}{3}$ **17.** $y = \dfrac{2}{2 - e^{x^2/2}}$ **19.** $y = e^x(C_1\cos x + C_2\sin x)$

21. $y = C_1e^{2x} + C_2e^{-x} + \frac{1}{20}\cos 2x - \frac{3}{20}\sin 2x$ **23.** $y = C_1e^{3x} + C_2xe^{3x} + \frac{3}{2}x^2e^{3x}$ **25.** $y = C_1e^x + C_2xe^x + xe^x\ln x$

27. $y = C_1e^{-2x} + C_2xe^{-2x} + \frac{1}{8}e^{2x} + 2x^2e^{-2x}$ **29.** $y = 2 - e^{-x} + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - x$ **31.** $y = 9e^{3x} - 8e^{2x} - 10xe^{2x}$

33. $A = 2,\ \ f = 2/\pi$ **35.** $x(t) = -\frac{1}{2}\cos 4t + \frac{1}{16}\sin 4t - \frac{1}{4}t\cos 4t$

Appendix A.2. Answers

1. -2 **3.** 0 **5.** 5 **7.** -6

9. Calculate the determinant of A^T and compare it with the determinant of A.

11. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = -\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$ **13.** $\frac{1}{2}\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = \frac{1}{2}(2)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$

15. (c) Let $D = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$. Then $x = \dfrac{\begin{vmatrix} \alpha & a_2 & a_3 \\ \beta & b_2 & b_3 \\ \gamma & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}}{D}$, $y = \dfrac{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & \alpha & a_3 \\ b_1 & \beta & b_3 \\ c_1 & \gamma & c_3 \end{vmatrix}}{D}$, $z = \dfrac{\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & \alpha \\ b_1 & b_2 & \beta \\ c_1 & c_2 & \gamma \end{vmatrix}}{D}$

INDEX

D

E

TABLES OF INTEGRALS

POWERS

1. $\displaystyle\int u^n\,du = \frac{u^{n+1}}{n+1} + C,\ n \neq -1$

2. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u} = \ln|u| + C$

EXPONENTIALS AND LOGARITHMS

3. $\displaystyle\int e^u\,du = e^u + C$

4. $\displaystyle\int p^u\,du = \frac{p^u}{\ln p} + C$

5. $\displaystyle\int ue^u\,du = ue^u - e^u + C$

6. $\displaystyle\int u^2e^u\,du = u^2e^u - 2ue^u + 2e^u + C$

7. $\displaystyle\int u^ne^u\,du = u^ne^u - n\int u^{n-1}e^u\,du$

8. $\displaystyle\int \ln u\,du = u\ln u - u + C$

9. $\displaystyle\int (\ln u)^2\,du = u(\ln u)^2 - 2u\ln u + 2u + C$

10. $\displaystyle\int u\ln u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}u^2\ln u - \tfrac{1}{4}u^2 + C$

11. $\displaystyle\int u^n\ln u\,du = u^{n+1}\left[\frac{\ln u}{n+1} - \frac{1}{(n+1)^2}\right] + C$

12. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u\ln u} = \ln|\ln u| + C$

SINES AND COSINES

13. $\displaystyle\int \sin u\,du = -\cos u + C$

14. $\displaystyle\int \cos u\,du = \sin u + C$

15. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2 u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}u - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2u + C$

16. $\displaystyle\int \cos^2 u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}u + \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 2u + C$

17. $\displaystyle\int \sin^3 u\,du = \tfrac{1}{3}\cos^3 u - \cos u + C$

18. $\displaystyle\int \cos^3 u\,du = \sin u - \tfrac{1}{3}\sin^3 u + C$

19. $\displaystyle\int \sin^n u\,du = -\frac{\sin^{n-1} u\cos u}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n}\int \sin^{n-2} u\,du$

20. $\displaystyle\int \cos^n u\,du = \frac{\cos^{n-1} u\sin u}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n}\int \cos^{n-2} u\,du$

21. $\displaystyle\int u\sin u\,du = -u\cos u + \sin u + C$

22. $\displaystyle\int \cos u\,du = u\sin u + \cos u + C$

23. $\displaystyle\int u^n\sin u\,du = -u^n\cos u + n\int u^{n-1}\cos u\,du$

24. $\displaystyle\int u^n\cos u\,du = u^n\sin u - n\int u^{n-1}\sin u\,du$

25. $\displaystyle\int \sin mu\sin nu\,du = \frac{\sin[(m-n)u]}{2(m-n)} - \frac{\sin[(m+n)u]}{2(m+n)} + C,\ \ m^2 \neq n^2$

26. $\displaystyle\int \cos mu\cos nu\,du = \frac{\sin[(m-n)u]}{2(m-n)} + \frac{\sin[(m+n)u]}{2(m+n)} + C,\ \ m^2 \neq n^2$

27. $\displaystyle\int \sin mu\cos nu\,du = -\frac{\cos[(m-n)u]}{2(m-n)} - \frac{\cos[(m+n)u]}{2(m+n)} + C,\ \ m^2 \neq n^2$

28. $\displaystyle\int e^{au}\sin bu\,du = \frac{e^{au}}{a^2+b^2}(a\sin bu - b\cos bu) + C$

29. $\displaystyle\int e^{au}\cos bu\,du = \frac{e^{au}}{a^2+b^2}(a\cos bu + b\sin bu) + C$

TANGENTS AND SECANTS

30. $\int \tan u\, du = \ln|\sec u| + C$

31. $\int \sec u\, du = \ln|\sec u + \tan u| + C$

32. $\int \tan^2 u\, du = \tan u - u + C$

33. $\int \sec^2 u\, du = \tan u + C$

34. $\int \sec u \tan u\, du = \sec u + C$

35. $\int \tan^3 u\, du = \frac{1}{2}\tan^2 u + \ln|\cos u| + C$

36. $\int \sec^3 u\, du = \frac{1}{2}\sec u \tan u + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\sec u + \tan u| + C$

37. $\int \tan^n u\, du = \dfrac{\tan^{n-1} u}{n-1} - \int \tan^{n-2} u\, du$

38. $\int \sec^n u\, du = \dfrac{\sec^{n-2} u \tan u}{n-1} + \dfrac{n-2}{n-1}\int \sec^{n-2} u\, du$

CONTANGENTS AND COSECANTS

39. $\int \cot u\, du = \ln|\sin u| + C$

40. $\int \csc u\, du = \ln|\csc u - \cot u| + C$

41. $\int \cot^2 u\, du = -\cot u - u + C$

42. $\int \csc^2 u\, du = -\cot u + C$

43. $\int \csc u \cot u\, du = -\csc u + C$

44. $\int \cot^3 u\, du = -\frac{1}{2}\cot^2 u - \ln|\sin u| + C$

45. $\int \csc^3 u\, du = -\frac{1}{2}\csc u \cot u + \frac{1}{2}\ln|\csc u - \cot u| + C$

46. $\int \cot^n u\, du = -\dfrac{\cot^{n-1} u}{n-1} - \int \cot^{n-2} u\, du$

47. $\int \csc^n u\, du = -\dfrac{\csc^{n-2} u \cot u}{n-1} + \dfrac{n-2}{n-1}\int \csc^{n-2} u\, du$

HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

48. $\int \sinh u\, du = \cosh u + C$

49. $\int \cosh u\, du = \sinh u + C$

50. $\int \tanh u\, du = \ln(\cosh u) + C$

51. $\int \coth u\, du = \ln|\sinh u| + C$

52. $\int \operatorname{sech} u\, du = \arctan(\sinh u) + \mathrm{C}$

53. $\int \operatorname{csch} u\, du = \ln|\tanh \frac{1}{2}u| + \mathrm{C}$

54. $\int \operatorname{sech}^2 u\, du = \tanh u + \mathrm{C}$

55. $\int \operatorname{csch}^2 u\, du = -\coth u + \mathrm{C}$

56. $\int \operatorname{sech} u \tanh u\, du = -\operatorname{sech} u + \mathrm{C}$

57. $\int \operatorname{csch} u \coth u\, du = -\operatorname{csch} u + \mathrm{C}$

58. $\int \sinh^2 u\, du = \frac{1}{4}\sinh 2u - \frac{1}{2}u + C$

59. $\int \cosh^2 u\, du = \frac{1}{4}\sinh 2u + \frac{1}{2}u + C$

60. $\int \tanh^2 u\, du = u - \tanh u + C$

61. $\int \coth^2 u\, du = u - \coth u + C$

62. $\int u \sinh u\, du = u\cosh u - \sinh u + C$

63. $\int u \cosh u\, du = u \sinh u - \cosh u + C$

(*table continued at the back*)

THE GREEK ALPHABET

A	α	alpha
B	β	beta
Γ	γ	gamma
Δ	δ	delta
E	ϵ	epsilon
Z	ζ	zeta
H	η	eta
Θ	θ	theta
I	ι	iota
K	κ	kappa
Λ	λ	lambda
M	μ	mu
N	ν	nu
Ξ	ξ	xi
O	o	omicron
Π	π	pi
P	ρ	rho
Σ	σ	sigma
T	τ	tau
Υ	υ	upsilon
Φ	ϕ	phi
X	χ	chi
Ψ	ψ	psi
Ω	ω	omega

(*continued from the front*)

INVERSE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

64. $\displaystyle\int \arcsin u\,du = u\arcsin u + \sqrt{1-u^2} + C$

65. $\displaystyle\int \arccos u\,du = u\arccos u - \sqrt{1-u^2} + C$

66. $\displaystyle\int \arctan u\,du = u\arctan u - \tfrac{1}{2}\ln(1+u^2) + C$

67. $\displaystyle\int \operatorname{arccot} u\,du = u\operatorname{arccot} u + \tfrac{1}{2}\ln(1+u^2) + C$

68. $\displaystyle\int \operatorname{arcsec} u\,du = u\operatorname{arcsec} u - \ln|u+\sqrt{u^2-1}| + C$

69. $\displaystyle\int \operatorname{arccsc} u\,du = u\operatorname{arccsc} u + \ln\left|u+\sqrt{u^2-1}\right| + C$

70. $\displaystyle\int u\arcsin u\,du = \tfrac{1}{4}\left[(2u^2-1)\arcsin u + u\sqrt{1-u^2} + C\right]$

71. $\displaystyle\int u\arctan u\,du = \tfrac{1}{2}(u^2+1)\arctan u - \tfrac{1}{2}u + C$

72. $\displaystyle\int u\arccos u\,du = \tfrac{1}{4}\left[(2u^2-1)\arccos u - u\sqrt{1-u^2} + C\right]$

73. $\displaystyle\int u^n\arcsin u\,du = \frac{1}{n+1}\left[u^{n+1}\arcsin u - \int \frac{u^{n+1}}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}\,du\right], n \neq -1$

74. $\displaystyle\int u^n\arccos u\,du = \frac{1}{n+1}\left[u^{n+1}\arccos u + \int \frac{u^{n+1}}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}\,du\right], n \neq -1$

75. $\displaystyle\int u^n\arctan u\,du = \frac{1}{n+1}\left[u^{n+1}\arctan u - \int \frac{u^{n+1}}{1+u^2}\,du\right], n \neq -1$

$\sqrt{a^2+u^2},\ a>0$

76. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{a^2+u^2} = \frac{1}{a}\arctan\frac{u}{a} + C$

77. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}} = \ln\left(u+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\right) + C$

78. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{a^2+u^2}\,du = \frac{u}{2}\sqrt{a^2+u^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\ln\left(u+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\right) + C$

79. $\displaystyle\int u^2\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\,du = \frac{u}{8}(a^2+2u^2)\sqrt{a^2+u^2} - \frac{a^4}{8}\ln\left(u+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\right) + C$

80. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}}{u}\,du = \sqrt{a^2+u^2} - a\ln\left|\frac{a+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}}{u}\right| + C$

81. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}}{u^2}\,du = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}}{u} + \ln\left(u+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\right) + C$

82. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2\,du}{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}} = \frac{u}{2}\sqrt{a^2+u^2} - \frac{a^2}{2}\ln\left(u+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}\right) + C$

83. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u\sqrt{a^2+u^2}} = -\frac{1}{a}\ln\left|\frac{a+\sqrt{a^2+u^2}}{u}\right| + C$

84. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u^2\sqrt{a^2+u^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2+u^2}}{a^2u} + C$

85. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{(a^2+u^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{u}{a^2\sqrt{a^2+u^2}} + C$

$\sqrt{a^2-u^2},\ a>0$

86. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{a^2-u^2}} = \arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C$

87. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{a^2-u^2}\,du = \frac{u}{2}\sqrt{a^2-u^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C$

88. $\displaystyle\int u^2\sqrt{a^2-u^2}\;du = \frac{u}{8}(2u^2-a^2)\sqrt{a^2-u^2} + \frac{a^4}{8}\arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C$

89. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2-u^2}}{u}\,du = \sqrt{a^2-u^2} - a\ln\left|\frac{a+\sqrt{a^2-u^2}}{u}\right| + C$

90. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2-u^2}}{u^2}\,du = -\frac{1}{u}\sqrt{a^2-u^2} - \arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C$

91. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2\,du}{\sqrt{a^2-u^2}} = -\frac{u}{2}\sqrt{a^2-u^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C$

92. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u\sqrt{a^2-u^2}} = -\frac{1}{a}\ln\left|\frac{a+\sqrt{a^2-u^2}}{u}\right| + C$

93. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u^2\sqrt{a^2-u^2}} = -\frac{1}{a^2u}\sqrt{a^2-u^2} + C$

94. $\displaystyle\int (a^2-u^2)^{3/2}\,du = -\frac{u}{8}(2u^2-5a^2)\sqrt{a^2-u^2} + \frac{3a^4}{8}\arcsin\frac{u}{a} + C$

95. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{(a^2-u^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{u}{a^2\sqrt{a^2-u^2}} + C$

96. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{a^2-u^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\ln\left|\frac{a+u}{a-u}\right| + C$

$\sqrt{u^2-a^2},\ a>0$

97. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u\sqrt{u^2-a^2}} = \frac{1}{a}\operatorname{arcsec}\frac{|u|}{a} + C$

98. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{u^2-a^2}}{u}\,du = \sqrt{u^2-a^2} - a\operatorname{arcsec}\frac{u}{a} + C$

99. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{u^2-a^2}\,du = \frac{u}{2}\sqrt{u^2-a^2} - \frac{a^2}{2}\ln\left|u+\sqrt{u^2-a^2}\right| + C$

100. $\displaystyle\int u^2\sqrt{u^2-a^2}\,du = \frac{u}{8}(2u^2-a^2)\sqrt{u^2-a^2} - \frac{a^4}{8}\ln\left|u+\sqrt{u^2-a^2}\right| + C$

101. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sqrt{u^2-a^2}}{u^2}\,du = -\frac{\sqrt{u^2-a^2}}{u} + \ln\left|u+\sqrt{u^2-a^2}\right| + C$

102. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2\,du}{\sqrt{u^2-a^2}} = \frac{u}{2}\sqrt{u^2-a^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\ln\left|u+\sqrt{u^2-a^2}\right| + C$

103. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u^2\sqrt{u^2-a^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{u^2-a^2}}{a^2u} + C$

104. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{(u^2-a^2)^{3/2}} = -\frac{u}{a^2\sqrt{u^2-a^2}} + C$

105. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2\,du}{(u^2-a^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{-u}{\sqrt{u^2-a^2}} + \ln|u+\sqrt{u^2-a^2}| + C$

$a+bu,\ \sqrt{a+bu}$

106. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u\,du}{a+bu} = \frac{1}{b^2}(a+bu-a\ln|a+bu|) + C$

107. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2\,du}{a+bu} = \frac{1}{2b^3}[(a+bu)^2-4a(a+bu)+2a^2\ln|a+bu|] + C$

108. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u(a+bu)} = \frac{1}{a}\ln\left|\frac{u}{a+bu}\right| + C$

109. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u^2(a+bu)} = -\frac{1}{au} + \frac{b}{a^2}\ln\left|\frac{a+bu}{u}\right| + C$

110. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u\,du}{(a+bu)^2} = \frac{a}{b^2(a+bu)} + \frac{1}{b^2}\ln|a+bu| + C$

111. $\displaystyle\int \frac{du}{u(a+bu)^2} = \frac{1}{a(a+bu)} - \frac{1}{a^2}\ln\left|\frac{a+bu}{u}\right| + C$

112. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u^2\,du}{(a+bu)^2} = \frac{1}{b^3}\left(a+bu-\frac{a^2}{a+bu}-2a\ln|a+bu|\right) + C$

113. $\displaystyle\int \frac{u\,du}{\sqrt{a+bu}} = \frac{2}{3b^2}(bu-2a)\sqrt{a+bu} + C$

114. $\displaystyle\int u\sqrt{a+bu}\,du = \frac{2}{15b^2}(3bu-2a)(a+bu)^{3/2} + C$